

# imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6780i/6765i/6755i

## SERVICE MANUAL



# Canon

September 16, 2021  
Rev. 13

# Important Notices

## Application

This manual has been issued by Canon Inc. for qualified persons to learn technical theory, installation, maintenance, and repair of products.

This manual covers all localities where the products are sold. For this reason, there may be information in this manual that does not apply to your locality.

Following "Trademarks" and "Copyright" are not applicable if they are not supported by laws and regulations in the country or region that this document and products are used in.

## Corrections

This manual may contain technical inaccuracies or typographical errors due to improvements or changes in products.

When changes occur in applicable products or in the contents of this manual, Canon will release technical information as the need arises. In the event of major changes in the contents of this manual over a long or short period, Canon will issue a new edition of this manual.

## Trademarks

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Canon is under license.

Mopria®, the Mopria® Logo and the Mopria® Alliance logo are registered trademarks and service marks of Mopria Alliance, Inc. in the United States and other countries. Unauthorized use is strictly prohibited.

Apple, AppleTalk, Bonjour, iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, Mac, OS X and Safari are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows Vista, Windows Server, Internet Explorer, Microsoft Edge, Excel and PowerPoint are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Google Cloud Print, Google Chrome and Android are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Google Inc.

iHQC™ compression technology by I.R.I.S., copyright 2007-2015, All Rights Reserved.

PDF-iHQC™, XPS-iHQC™ technology by I.R.I.S., copyright 2007-2015, All rights Reserved.

Java is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Adobe is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Command WorkStation, EFI, Fiery, FreeForm, Spot-On, and WebTools are trademarks of Electronics For Imaging, Inc. and/or its wholly owned subsidiaries in the U.S. and/or certain other countries.

TORX® is a registered trademark of Acument Intellectual Properties, LLC in the United States.

Matrox is a registered trademark of Matrox Corporation in the Canada.

Other product names and other names in this document are generally registered trademarks or trademarks of the companies.



## Copyright



















The copyright of this document belongs to Canon Inc. This document may not be copied, reproduced or translated into another language, in whole or in part, without the prior consent of Canon Inc.  
Copyright CANON INC. 2019



## Caution

Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.



## Explanation of Symbols

The following symbols are used throughout this Service Manual.

| Symbols   | Explanation  | Symbols  | Explanation                 |
|---|--|--|-----------------------------|
|    | Check.   |    | Remove the claw.            |
|   | Check visually.  |   | Insert the claw.            |
|  | Check a sound.   |  | Push the part.              |
|  | Disconnect the connector.                                  |  | Connect the power cable.    |
|  | Connect the connector.                                     |  | Disconnect the power cable. |
|  | Remove the cable/wire from the cable guide or wire saddle. |  | Turn on the power.          |
|  | Install the cable/wire to the cable guide or wire saddle.  |  | Turn off the power.         |
|  | Remove the screw.  |  | Loosen the screw.           |
|  | Install the screw.   |  | Tighten the screw.          |

| Symbols   | Explanation         | Symbols  | Explanation            |
|---|---------------------|--|------------------------|
|  | Cleaning is needed. |  | Measurement is needed. |

The following rules apply throughout this Service Manual:

- Each chapter contains sections explaining the purpose of specific functions and the relationship between electrical and mechanical systems with reference to the timing of operation.  
In the diagrams,  represents the path of mechanical drive; where a signal name accompanies the symbol, the arrow  indicates the direction of the electric signal.  
The expression "turn on the power" means flipping on the power switch, closing the front door, and closing the delivery unit door, which results in supplying the machine with power.
- In the digital circuits, '1' is used to indicate that the voltage level of a given signal is "High", while '0' is used to indicate "Low". (The voltage value, however, differs from circuit to circuit.) In addition, the asterisk (\*) as in "DRMD\*" indicates that the DRMD signal goes on when '0'.  
In practically all cases, the internal mechanisms of a microprocessor cannot be checked in the field. Therefore, the operations of the microprocessors used in the machines are not discussed: they are explained in terms of from sensors to the input of the DC controller PCB and from the output of the DC controller PCB to the loads.

The descriptions in this Service Manual are subject to change without notice for product improvement or other purposes, and major changes will be communicated in the form of Service Information bulletins.

All service persons are expected to have a good understanding of the contents of this Service Manual and all relevant Service Information bulletins and be able to identify and isolate faults in the machine.

# Contents

- Safety Precautions..... 1**
- Laser..... 2
  - Laser Safety..... 2
  - Handling of Laser System..... 2
- Power Supply / Lithium Battery..... 3
  - Turn power switch ON..... 3
  - Power Supply..... 3
  - Notes When Handling a Lithium Battery..... 3
- Toner Safety..... 4
  - About Toner..... 4
  - Handling Adhered Toner..... 4
- Notes on works..... 4
  - Points to Note Before Servicing..... 4
  - Points to Note at Cleaning..... 4
  - Notes on Assembly/Disassembly..... 5
- 1. Product Overview..... 6**
- Product Lineup..... 7
  - Host machine..... 7
  - Pickup/Delivery System Options..... 8
  - Scanning System Options..... 10
  - Function Expansion System Options..... 10
- Features..... 12
  - Product Features..... 12
- Specifications..... 13
  - Product Specifications..... 13
  - Fax Specifications..... 14
  - Power Supply Specifications..... 14
  - Weight and Size..... 15
  - Productivity..... 15
  - Paper Type..... 17
- External View..... 36
  - External Cover..... 36
  - Cross Section View..... 40
- Operation..... 42
  - Power Switch..... 42
  - Control Panel..... 42
- 2. Technical Explanation (Device)..... 44**
- Basic Configuration..... 45
  - Functional Configuration..... 45
- Original Exposure System (Reader)..... 46
  - Features..... 46
  - Specifications..... 46

Basic configuration.....46

Controls.....50

Original Feed System (Single Pass ADF).....59

    Features.....59

    Specifications.....59

    Parts Name.....60

    Basic Configuration.....61

    ADF Driver PCB.....65

    Outline of Electric Circuits.....66

    Scanner Unit.....67

    Pickup Feed System.....70

    Power Supply Assembly.....81

Main Controller.....82

    Overview.....82

    Startup Sequence.....84

    Shutdown Sequence.....85

    Motion Sensor.....85

Laser Exposure System.....86

    Overview.....86

    Controls.....88

Image Formation System.....93

    Overview.....93

    Controls.....101

Fixing System.....138

    Overview.....138

    Controls.....142

Pickup / Feed System.....153

    Overview.....153

    Controls.....160

External Auxiliary System.....187

    Overview.....187

    Controls.....189

**3. Technical Explanation (System)..... 199**

Overview.....200

**4. Periodical Service..... 201**

Periodically Replaced Parts.....202

    DADF.....202

    Reader.....202

    Printer.....202

    Option.....203

Consumable Parts.....204

    DADF.....204

    Reader.....204

    Printer.....204

    Options.....206

Periodical Maintenance.....208

    Printer.....208

|              |     |
|--------------|-----|
| DADF.....    | 208 |
| Options..... | 209 |

## **5. Parts Replacement and Cleaning..... 210**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Preface.....   | 211 |
| Outline.....   | 211 |
| Parts List.....  | 212 |
| List of External / Internal Cover.....                     | 212 |
| List of Main Unit.....                                     | 216 |
| Periodic Replacing Parts,Durable Parts,Cleaning Parts..... | 219 |
| List of Electrical Parts .....                             | 230 |
| Original Feed System.....                                  | 246 |
| Removing the ADF.....                                      | 246 |
| Removing the Sensor Harness Cover.....                     | 249 |
| Removing the ADF Front Cover .....                         | 250 |
| Removing the ADF Rear Cover.....                           | 251 |
| Removing the Open/Close Cover.....                         | 252 |
| Removing the Lifter Drive Unit.....                        | 254 |
| Removing the Document Tray.....                            | 254 |
| Removing the ADF Scanner Unit.....                         | 255 |
| Removing the Cable Guide Unit.....                         | 257 |
| Removing the Left Hinge.....                               | 259 |
| Removing the Pickup Roller Unit.....                       | 262 |
| Removing the Separation Roller Unit.....                   | 263 |
| Removing the ADF Driver PCB.....                           | 264 |
| Removing the Multi Feed Detect Sensor PCB.....             | 264 |
| Removing the Pickup Roller Lifting Motor.....              | 266 |
| Removing the ADF Delivery Motor.....                       | 267 |
| Removing the ADF Pickup Motor Unit.....                    | 267 |
| Removing the ADF Pullout Motor Unit.....                   | 268 |
| Removing the Lead Motor Unit.....                          | 269 |
| Cleaning the Sensor.....                                   | 270 |
| Cleaning the Pullout Roller.....                           | 271 |
| Cleaning the Lead Roller 1.....                            | 271 |
| Cleaning the Lead Roller 2.....                            | 274 |
| Cleaning the Paper Back Reading Glass.....                 | 275 |
| Original Exposure System.....                              | 277 |
| Removing the Reader Unit.....                              | 277 |
| Removing the Covers.....                                   | 279 |
| Removing the Reader Controller PCB.....                    | 281 |
| Removing the Reader Scanner Unit.....                      | 284 |
| Cleaning the Reader Scanner Unit Scanner Mirror.....       | 288 |
| Removing the Reader Scanner Motor.....                     | 290 |
| Removing the Copyboard Glass.....                          | 293 |
| Cleaning the Copyboard Glass (Large).....                  | 294 |
| Cleaning the Copyboard Glass (Small).....                  | 295 |
| Controller System.....                                     | 297 |
| Removing the HDD.....                                      | 297 |
| Removing Main Controller PCB 1.....                        | 300 |
| Removing Main Controller PCB 2.....                        | 302 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Removing the Flat Control Panel Unit.....                                    | 306 |
| Removing the Control Panel CPU PCB/LCD Unit/LED PCB.....                     | 309 |
| Removing the Upright Control Panel.....                                      | 315 |
| Removing the Control Panel CPU PCB (Upright Control Panel).....              | 316 |
| Removing the LCD Unit (Upright Control Panel).....                           | 318 |
| Laser Exposure System.....   | 322 |
| Removing the Laser Scanner Unit.....   | 322 |
| Cleaning the Dust Collecting Glass.....                                      | 327 |
| Image Formation System.....  | 329 |
| Removing the Primary Charging Assembly.....                                  | 329 |
| Removing the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner, Cleaner Holder (Right/Left)..... | 334 |
| Replacing the Primary Charging Assembly Grid Wire.....                       | 336 |
| Replacing the Primary Charging Wire.....                                     | 342 |
| Cleaning the Primary Charging Assembly Grid Wire.....                        | 346 |
| Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly.....                             | 347 |
| Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner, Cleaner Holder.....         | 349 |
| Replacing the Pre-transfer Charging Wire.....                                | 353 |
| Cleaning the Pre-transfer Charging Wire.....                                 | 356 |
| Removing the Process Unit.....   | 357 |
| Cleaning the Process Unit.....   | 359 |
| Removing the Drum Cleaning Unit.....   | 360 |
| Removing the Drum Cleaning Blade.....  | 361 |
| Cleaning the Drum Cleaning Unit.....   | 363 |
| Replacing the Pre-exposure Plastic Film.....                                 | 365 |
| Removing the Drum Unit.....  | 366 |
| Removing the Photosensitive Drum.....  | 367 |
| Cleaning Photosensitive Drum.....  | 373 |
| Cleaning the Drum edges.....   | 374 |
| Removing the Cleaner Separation Claw.....                                    | 374 |
| Removing the Side Seal.....  | 375 |
| Removing the Developing Assembly.....  | 377 |
| Cleaning the Developing Assembly.....  | 381 |
| Removing the Developing Cylinder and the Developing Roller.....              | 382 |
| Removing the ETB Unit.....   | 388 |
| Removing the ETB.....  | 392 |
| Cleaning the ETB.....  | 394 |
| Removing the Transfer Roller.....  | 395 |
| Removing the ETB Cleaning Blade.....   | 397 |
| Removing the ETB Brush Roller.....   | 398 |
| Removing the Waste Toner Container.....                                      | 401 |
| Removing the Drum Heater.....  | 402 |
| Removing the Primary Charging Shutter Unit.....                              | 403 |
| Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Shutter Unit.....                | 406 |
| Removing the Drum Brush Roller.....  | 410 |
| Removing the ETB Drive Unit.....   | 412 |
| Removing the Transfer Cleaning Unit.....                                     | 415 |
| Removing the Post-transfer Static Eliminator.....                            | 416 |
| Removing the Toner Receptacle Tray.....                                      | 418 |
| Removing the Hopper Unit.....  | 419 |
| Removing the Buffer Unit.....  | 427 |
| Removing the Potential Control PCB Unit.....                                 | 432 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Removing the Waste Toner Feed Unit.....   | 435 |
| Removing the Drum Drive Unit.....   | 440 |
| Removing the Developing Drive Unit.....   | 443 |
| Fixing System.....  | 447 |
| Removing the Fixing Assembly.....   | 447 |
| Cleaning the Fixing Inlet Guide,Fixing Inlet Sensor Flag, Fixing Right Stay, Dowel, Dowel Holder..... | 452 |
| Cleaning the Inner Delivery Roller.....   | 455 |
| Cleaning the Fixing Oil Pan, Fixing Cleaning Web Guide.....   | 456 |
| Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web.....   | 456 |
| Separating the Fixing Upper Unit from the Fixing Lower Unit.....                                      | 461 |
| Removing the Fixing Roller, Insulating Bush and Thrust Stopper.....                                   | 466 |
| Removing the Pressure Roller.....   | 469 |
| Removing the Pressure Roller Static Eliminator.....   | 470 |
| Removing the Main Thermistor, Sub Thermistor2.....  | 471 |
| Removing the Sub Thermistor 1.....  | 474 |
| Removing the Upper Separation Claw.....   | 476 |
| Cleaning the Upper Separation Claw.....   | 477 |
| Removing the Thermoswitch.....  | 479 |
| Pickup Feed System.....   | 482 |
| Removing the Left Pickup Deck.....  | 482 |
| Removing the Left Deck Pickup Roller.....   | 482 |
| Removing the Left Deck Feed Roller.....   | 483 |
| Removing the Right Pickup Deck.....   | 484 |
| Removing the Left Deck Separation Roller.....   | 485 |
| Removing the Right Deck Pickup Roller.....  | 486 |
| Removing the Right Deck Feed Roller.....  | 487 |
| Removing the Right Deck Separation Roller.....  | 488 |
| Removing the Upper Cassette.....  | 490 |
| Removing the Upper Cassette Pickup Roller.....  | 490 |
| Removing the Upper Cassette Feed Roller.....  | 491 |
| Removing the Upper Cassette Separation Roller.....  | 491 |
| Removing the Lower Cassette.....  | 493 |
| Removing the Lower Cassette Pickup Roller.....  | 493 |
| Removing the Lower Cassette Feed Roller.....  | 494 |
| Removing the Lower Cassette Separation Roller.....  | 494 |
| Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Feed Roller.....  | 495 |
| Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Roller.....  | 497 |
| Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly.....   | 499 |
| Removing the Left Deck Pickup Unit.....   | 509 |
| Removing the Right Deck Pickup Unit.....  | 510 |
| Removing the Cassettes 3 and 4 Pickup Unit.....   | 512 |
| Removing the Vertical Path Cassette Pickup Drive Unit.....  | 515 |
| Removing the Registration Unit.....   | 521 |
| Removing the Left Deck Pickup Drive Unit.....   | 527 |
| Removing the Main Drive Unit.....   | 528 |
| External Auxiliary System.....  | 537 |
| Removing the Filter (for primary charging).....   | 537 |
| Removing the Ozone Filter.....  | 537 |
| Removing the DC Controller PCB.....   | 538 |
| Removing the Power Supply Assembly.....   | 542 |
| Removing the Fixing Power Unit.....   | 544 |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| Removing the Feed Driver PCB.....  | 546        |
| Removing the Upper High Voltage Unit.....  | 547        |
| <b>6. Adjustment.....</b>  | <b>550</b> |
| Pickup Feed System.....  | 551        |
| Setting the Deck.....  | 551        |
| Image Position Adjustment.....   | 553        |
| Skew Adjustment (at Stream Scanning of Originals).....   | 561        |
| Workflow1.....   | 561        |
| Workflow2.....   | 562        |
| A. Paper Front Skew Correction (Leading Edge, or Both Leading Edge and Trailing Edge).....                             | 563        |
| B. Paper Front Skew Correction (Trailing Edge on the Operator Side).....   | 563        |
| C. Paper Front Skew Correction (Trailing Edge on the Rear Side / Operator Side / Rear Side).....                       | 564        |
| D. Paper Pack Skew Correction (Operator Side).....   | 564        |
| E. Paper Back Skew Correction (Trailing Edge on the Operator Side).....  | 564        |
| F. Paper Back Skew Correction (Trailing Edge on the Rear Side / Operator Side / Rear Side).....                        | 565        |
| G. Edge Margin Adjustment after the Skew Adjustment (at Stream Scanning of the Originals).....                         | 565        |
| Adjusting the Height.....  | 567        |
| Height Check Sheet Preparation or Creation.....  | 567        |
| Height Adjustment.....   | 567        |
| Right Angle Adjustment (Slant Adjustment).....   | 571        |
| Light intensity adjustment .....   | 577        |
| Automatic Adjustment of the Stream Reading Position (Automatic Adjustment of the Reading Position at ADF Reading)..... | 578        |
| White Level Adjustment .....   | 579        |
| Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment.....  | 580        |
| Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment.....  | 580        |
| Manual Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment (Manual Back Side Position Adjustment).....                    | 581        |
| Parallelogram Correction.....  | 583        |
| Angle Correction (Front / Back).....   | 584        |
| Image Position Adjustment (at Stream Scanning of Originals).....   | 585        |
| Creating the Test Charts for Image Position Adjustment.....  | 585        |
| Side Registration Adjustment.....  | 586        |
| Leading Edge Margin Adjustment.....  | 588        |
| Magnification Ratio Adjustment.....  | 589        |
| Other Adjustments.....   | 594        |
| Eased Angle Guide (Opening Angle of 90 Degrees) .....  | 594        |
| Paper Tray Width Adjustment.....   | 594        |
| Adjustment of the White Plate .....  | 598        |
| Original Feed System.....  | 602        |
| ADF Scanner Unit.....  | 602        |
| Pickup Roller Unit.....  | 602        |
| Separation Roller.....   | 602        |
| Stamp.....   | 602        |
| Original Exposure System.....  | 603        |
| Reader Controller PCB.....   | 603        |
| Reader Scanner Unit.....   | 603        |
| Copyboard Glass.....   | 604        |
| Main Controller.....   | 605        |



|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Hard Disk.....                                | 605 |
| Main controller PCB 1.....                    | 607 |
| Main controller PCB 2.....                    | 607 |
| TPM PCB.....                                  | 607 |
| FLASH PCB.....                                | 607 |
| Control Panel Unit.....                       | 608 |
| Laser Exposure System.....                    | 610 |
| Procedure of parts replacement.....           | 610 |
| Adjustment when Replacing the Parts.....      | 610 |
| Image Formation System.....                   | 611 |
| Primary Charging Wire.....                    | 611 |
| Primary Charging Assembly.....                | 611 |
| Pre-transfer Charging Assembly.....           | 614 |
| Pre-transfer Charging Wire.....               | 614 |
| Photosensitive Drum.....                      | 614 |
| Drum Side Seals (Front and Rear).....         | 616 |
| Developing Cylinder/Developing Roller.....    | 616 |
| Potential Sensor / Potential Control PCB..... | 617 |
| ETB Unit / ETB.....                           | 617 |
| Waste Toner Container.....                    | 617 |
| Fixing System.....                            | 618 |
| Fixing Roller.....                            | 618 |
| External Auxiliary System.....                | 619 |
| DC Controller PCB.....                        | 619 |

## **7. Troubleshooting..... 620**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Making Initial Checks.....  | 621 |
| List of Initial Check Items.....  | 621 |
| Test Print.....   | 622 |
| Overview.....   | 622 |
| How to View the Test Print.....   | 623 |
| Solid white (TYPE=4).....   | 624 |
| Halftone (TYPE=5/6/11/12/13/14).....  | 624 |
| Solid black (TYPE=7).....   | 625 |
| Horizontal line (TYPE=8/9/10).....  | 625 |
| Image Faults.....   | 627 |
| Parts Pitch Related to Periodical Image Failure.....  | 627 |
| Image with a line on the trailing edge.....   | 627 |
| Uneven density correction by 2D shading *1.....   | 628 |
| ADF black line.....   | 631 |
| Separation Failure Jam due to Deformation of Separation Claw.....   | 632 |
| Image error due to soil attached to the Cleaning Brushes for the Duplex Right Roller and the Duplex<br>Outlet Roller..... | 633 |
| Uneven density.....   | 642 |
| Smearred image.....   | 643 |
| Adjusting the Edge Emphasis Level.....  | 645 |
| Soil at interval equal to Developing Sleeve circumference.....  | 646 |
| Ink Dripping.....   | 647 |
| The output of the image is skewed or misaligned when scanned by ADF.....  | 648 |
| Feed Faults.....  | 650 |

Paper wrinkle..... 650

Other..... 651

    Adjusting rotation of the Upright Control Panel Arm..... 651

    Remedy to be implemented when the ETB Disengage Member (Transfer Frame Stopper) is left unremoved..... 652

    Checking nip width..... 654

    ETB Displacement..... 655

    Remedies to be performed when E602-xxxx or E614-xxxx error is displayed..... 661

Debug Log..... 665

    Function Overview..... 665

    Saving and Collecting Debug Logs..... 668

    Service Mode Relating to Debug Logs..... 681

Startup System Failure Diagnosis..... 683

    How to See the Startup System Failure Diagnosis..... 683

    Startup Failure Analysis Policy..... 683

    Flow A: Control Panel LED Check Flow..... 684

    Flow B: Controller Self Diagnosis..... 686

    Flow C: Power Supply Assembly Check Flow..... 686

    Flow C-1: DC Power (12 V) Check Flow..... 688

    Flow C-2: All-night Power Supply (5 V) Check Flow..... 690

    Reference: Activation Conditions of the Control Panel Backlight..... 692

Controller Self Diagnosis..... 693

    Startup Method..... 694

    Diagnosis Result..... 694

    Limitations..... 697

**8. Error/Jam/Alarm..... 698**

Outline..... 699

    Error code notation..... 699

    Location Code..... 699

    Pickup Position Code..... 700

    Pickup size..... 700

    Points to Note When Clearing MN-CON ..... 702

    Points to Note When Clearing HDD..... 702

    Remedies to be performed when E602-xxxx or E614-xxxx error is displayed..... 702

Error Code..... 706

    Error Code Details..... 706

Error Code (FAX)..... 840

    How to View Fax Error Codes..... 840

    User error codes..... 840

    Service Error Code..... 840

Limited Functions Mode..... 843

    Original Exposure System..... 843

Alarm Code..... 844

    Alarm Code Details..... 844

Jam Code..... 896

    Jam Type..... 896

    Jam screen display specification..... 897

    Main Unit..... 897

    ADF..... 899

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| UniFlow (Advanced Scanning).....               | 901 |
| Paper Deck Unit-E1.....                        | 902 |
| POD Deck Lite-C1.....                          | 903 |
| Staple Finisher-AC1, Booklet Finisher-AC1..... | 904 |
| Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1.....      | 905 |
| PUNCHER UNIT-A1.....                           | 907 |
| Jam Code Details.....                          | 907 |

## **9. Service Mode..... 1127**

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Overview.....                                      | 1128 |
| Basic Operations.....                              | 1128 |
| SITUATION Mode.....                                | 1131 |
| Security Support.....                              | 1136 |
| Service Mode Backup.....                           | 1140 |
| Output of Service Print Data.....                  | 1140 |
| COPIER (Service mode for printer).....             | 1145 |
| DISPLAY (State display mode).....                  | 1145 |
| I/O.....   | 1166 |
| ADJUST (Adjustment mode).....                      | 1166 |
| FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode).....        | 1201 |
| OPTION (Specification setting mode).....           | 1230 |
| TEST (Print test mode).....                        | 1348 |
| COUNTER (Counter mode).....                        | 1353 |
| FEEDER (ADF service mode).....                     | 1404 |
| DISPLAY (State display mode).....                  | 1404 |
| ADJUST (Adjustment mode).....                      | 1404 |
| FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode).....        | 1409 |
| OPTION (Specification setting mode).....           | 1411 |
| SORTER (Service mode for delivery options).....    | 1413 |
| ADJUST (Adjustment mode).....                      | 1413 |
| FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode).....        | 1424 |
| OPTION (Specification setting mode).....           | 1426 |
| BOARD (Option board setting mode).....             | 1432 |
| OPTION (Specification setting mode).....           | 1432 |
| FAX (Service Mode for FAX).....                    | 1433 |
| Overview.....                                      | 1433 |
| Setting of Bit Switch (SSSW).....                  | 1436 |
| Setting of Menu Switch (MENU).....                 | 1447 |
| Setting of Numeric Parameter (NUMERIC Param.)..... | 1448 |
| Setting of Destination (TYPE).....                 | 1450 |
| Setting of Printer Functions (PRINTER).....        | 1451 |
| IPFAX Setting.....                                 | 1453 |
| Initialization of Set Value (CLEAR).....           | 1454 |
| Test Mode (TEST).....                              | 1454 |
| Service Report (REPORT).....                       | 1458 |

## **10. Installation..... 1462**

|   |      |
|---|------|
| How to Utilize This Installation Procedure.....       | 1464 |
| Description on the Parts Included in the Package..... | 1464 |
| Symbols.....  | 1464 |

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Checking before Installation.....                        | 1465 |
| Checking the Power Supply.....                           | 1465 |
| Checking the Installation Environment.....               | 1465 |
| Points to Note at Installation Work.....                 | 1465 |
| Points to Note When Moving This Host Machine.....        | 1465 |
| Checking Installation Space.....                         | 1465 |
| Table of Options Combination.....                        | 1466 |
| Order to Install the Host machine and the Options.....   | 1466 |
| Installation of Host Machine.....                        | 1468 |
| Unpacking.....   | 1468 |
| Checking the Contents.....                               | 1472 |
| Installation Procedure.....                              | 1473 |
| When Relocating the Machine.....                         | 1510 |
| Points to Note When Relocating the Host Machine.....     | 1510 |
| Overview.....  | 1510 |
| Works during Relocation.....                             | 1510 |
| Works after Relocation.....                              | 1517 |
| Printer Cover-H2.....                                    | 1518 |
| Points to Note before Installation.....                  | 1518 |
| Checking the Contents.....                               | 1518 |
| Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation..... | 1518 |
| Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....   | 1518 |
| Installation Outline Drawing.....                        | 1518 |
| Installation Procedure.....                              | 1519 |
| Operation Check.....                                     | 1527 |
| NFC Kit-E1/E2.....                                       | 1529 |
| Points to Note before Installation.....                  | 1529 |
| Checking the Contents.....                               | 1529 |
| Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation..... | 1529 |
| Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....   | 1530 |
| Installation Outline Drawing.....                        | 1530 |
| Installation Procedure.....                              | 1530 |
| Connection Kit-A2/A3 for Bluetooth LE.....               | 1548 |
| Points to Note before Installation.....                  | 1548 |
| Checking the Contents.....                               | 1548 |
| Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation..... | 1548 |
| Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....   | 1549 |
| Installation Outline Drawing.....                        | 1549 |
| Installation Procedure.....                              | 1549 |
| Setting after Installation.....                          | 1557 |
| Numeric Keypad-A1/A2.....                                | 1558 |
| Points to Note before Installation.....                  | 1558 |
| Checking the Contents.....                               | 1558 |
| Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation..... | 1558 |
| Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....   | 1558 |
| Installation Outline Drawing.....                        | 1558 |
| Installation Procedure.....                              | 1559 |
| Reader Heater-P1.....                                    | 1564 |
| Points to Note before Installation.....                  | 1564 |
| Checking the Contents.....                               | 1564 |
| Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation..... | 1564 |

Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power..... 1564

Installation Outline Drawing..... 1564

Installation Procedure..... 1565

Paper Deck Heater Unit-A1..... 1576

    Checking the Supplied Parts..... 1576

    Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation..... 1576

    Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power..... 1576

    Installation Procedure..... 1577

Shift Tray-F1..... 1584

    Points to Note before Installation..... 1584

    Checking the Contents..... 1584

    Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation..... 1585

    Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power..... 1585

    Installation Outline Drawing..... 1585

    Installation Procedure..... 1585

    Checking after Installation..... 1589

Utility Tray-B1..... 1590

    Points to Note at Installation..... 1590

    Checking the Contents..... 1590

    Installation Outline Drawing..... 1590

    Installation Procedure..... 1590

Copy Card Reader-F1..... 1594

    Points to Note at Installation..... 1594

    Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation..... 1594

    Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power..... 1594

    Installation Outline Drawing..... 1594

    Checking the Contents..... 1594

    Installation Procedure..... 1596

    Checking after Installation..... 1603

Serial Interface Kit-K3 / Copy Control Interface Kit-A1..... 1604

    Points to Note at Installation..... 1604

    Checking the Contents..... 1604

    Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation..... 1605

    Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power..... 1605

    Installation Outline Drawing..... 1605

    Installation Procedure..... 1606

Voice Operation Kit-D1..... 1610

    Points to Note Before Installation..... 1610

    Checking the Contents..... 1610

    Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation..... 1611

    Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power..... 1611

    Installation Outline Drawing..... 1611

    Installation Procedure..... 1611

    Checking after Installation..... 1617

    Operation Check..... 1617

Voice Guidance Kit-G1..... 1619

    Points to Note at Installation..... 1619

    Checking the Contents..... 1619

    Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation..... 1620

    Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power..... 1620

    Installation Outline Drawing..... 1620

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| Installation Procedure.....   | 1620        |
| Checking after Installation.....                                    | 1625        |
| Operation Check.....  | 1625        |
| <b>HDD-related Option.....</b>                                      | <b>1626</b> |
| Pre-checks.....   | 1626        |
| Removing the HDD Box Unit.....                                      | 1626        |
| [TYPE-1] Option HDD (1TB).....                                      | 1629        |
| [TYPE-2] Standard HDD + Option HDD (250GB) + HDD Mirroring Kit..... | 1632        |
| [TYPE-3] 2 Option HDDs (1TB) + HDD Mirroring Kit.....               | 1638        |
| <b>Super G3 FAX Board-AS1.....</b>                                  | <b>1646</b> |
| Product Name.....   | 1646        |
| Points to Note at Installation.....                                 | 1646        |
| Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....            | 1646        |
| Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....              | 1646        |
| Installation Outline Drawing.....                                   | 1646        |
| Checking the Contents.....  | 1647        |
| Installation Procedure.....   | 1647        |
| Checking the Operation.....   | 1650        |
| <b>Super G3 FAX Board-AS2.....</b>                                  | <b>1652</b> |
| Product Name.....   | 1652        |
| Points to Note at Installation.....                                 | 1652        |
| Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....            | 1652        |
| Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....              | 1652        |
| Installation Outline Drawing.....                                   | 1652        |
| Checking the Contents.....  | 1652        |
| Installation Procedure.....   | 1653        |
| Checking the Operation.....   | 1655        |
| <b>Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS1.....</b>                         | <b>1657</b> |
| Product Name.....   | 1657        |
| Points to Note at Installation.....                                 | 1657        |
| Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....            | 1657        |
| Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....              | 1657        |
| Installation Outline Drawing.....                                   | 1657        |
| Checking the Contents.....  | 1658        |
| Installation Procedure.....   | 1659        |
| Checking the Operation.....   | 1667        |
| <b>Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS2.....</b>                         | <b>1668</b> |
| Product Name.....   | 1668        |
| Points to Note at Installation.....                                 | 1668        |
| Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....            | 1668        |
| Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....              | 1668        |
| Installation Outline Drawing.....                                   | 1668        |
| Checking the Contents.....  | 1669        |
| Installation Procedure.....   | 1669        |
| Checking the Operation.....   | 1677        |
| <b>Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS1.....</b>                     | <b>1679</b> |
| Product Name.....   | 1679        |
| Points to Note at Installation.....                                 | 1679        |
| Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....            | 1679        |
| Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....              | 1679        |
| Installation Outline Drawing.....                                   | 1679        |

Checking the Contents.....1680  
 Installation Procedure..... 1680  
 Checking the Operation..... 1684  
**Super G3 3rd4th Line Fax Board-AS2..... 1686**  
 Product Name..... 1686  
 Points to Note at Installation.....1686  
 Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation..... 1686  
 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power..... 1686  
 Installation Outline Drawing..... 1686  
 Checking the Contents.....1687  
 Installation Procedure..... 1687  
 Checking the Operation..... 1690

**APPENDICES..... 1692**

Service Tools.....1693  
 Special Tools..... 1693  
 Solvent/Oil List..... 1694  
 General Circuit Diagram.....1695  
 Soft counter specifications..... 1725  
 Removal..... 1729  
 Overview..... 1729  
 Work Procedure..... 1729  
 List of Service Modes That Can Be Restored..... 1732

# Safety Precautions

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Laser.....                          | 2 |
| Power Supply / Lithium Battery..... | 3 |
| Toner Safety.....                   | 4 |
| Notes on works.....                 | 4 |





## Power Supply / Lithium Battery

### Turn power switch ON

The machine is equipped with 2 power switches: main power switch and control energy saver key.  
The machine goes on when the main power switch is turned on (i.e., other than in low power mode, sleep mode).

**CAUTION:**

Do not turn off the main power switch while the progress bar is indicated, during which access is made to the Storage. If deprived of power, the Storage can suffer a fault (E602).



### Power Supply

- As a general rule, do not use extension cords.  
If an extension cord must be used, however, use one for local rated voltage and over, untie the cord binding, and insert the power plug completely into the extension cord outlet to ensure a firm connection between the power cord and the extension cord.

**CAUTION:**

Do not plug multiple cords together to an extension cord. It may cause a fire or electrical shock.

- The socket-outlet shall be installed near the equipment and shall be easily accessible.

### Notes When Handling a Lithium Battery

Dispose of used batteries according to the instructions.

**CAUTION:**

Risk of explosion if battery is replaced by an incorrect type.

The following warnings are given to comply with Safety Principles (EN60950-1).

**CAUTION:**

Wenn mit dem falschen Typ ausgewechselt, besteht Explosionsgefahr.  
Gebrauchte Batterien gemäß der Anleitung beseitigen.

**警告**

如果更換不正確之電池型式會有爆炸的風險  
請依製造商說明書處理用過之電池

## Toner Safety

### About Toner

Toner is a nontoxic matter composed of plastic, iron and a trace of pigments.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

Never throw toner in flames to avoid explosion.

### Handling Adhered Toner

- Use dry tissue paper to wipe off toner adhered to skin or clothes and wash in water.
- Never use warm water for cleaning up toner to prevent toner particles from being gelated to soak into fibers permanently.
- Toner particles are reactive with vinyl polymers. Avoid contacting these materials.

## Notes on works

### Points to Note Before Servicing

- At servicing, be sure to turn OFF the power source according to the specified steps and disconnect the power plug.
- Be sure to disconnect the power plug on a regular basis and remove dust and dirt accumulated around the outlet with dry cloth.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

Leaving the power plug connected for a long time in an environment having a lot of dust, moisture, or oily smoke will cause a fire. (Because dust accumulated in the surrounding area will absorb moisture and cause an insulation failure)

- Be careful not to be injured by burrs of edges, sharp corners or protrusions.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

Hazardous area such as corners, edges, springs and other sharp sections may be remaining on products. Always be aware of the presence of hazardous area to avoid injury caused by contacting and/or striking those area, by not over-concentrating on service work.

### Points to Note at Cleaning

When performing cleaning using organic solvent such as alcohol, be sure to check that the component of solvent is vaporized completely before assembling.

## Notes on Assembly/Disassembly

Follow the items below to assemble/disassemble the device.

1. Disconnect the power plug to avoid any potential dangers during assembling/disassembling works.
2. If not specially instructed, reverse the order of disassembly to reinstall.
3. Ensure to use the right screw type (length, diameter, etc.) at the right position when assembling.
4. To keep electric conduction, binding screws with washers are used to attach the grounding wire and the varistor. Ensure to use the right screw type when assembling.
5. Unless it is specially needed, do not operate the device with some parts removed.
6. Never remove the paint-locked screws when disassembling.

### ⚠ CAUTION:

#### English

##### CAUTION

The fuse may be in the neutral, and that the mains shall be disconnected to de-energize the phase conductors.

#### German

##### VORSICHT

Die Sicherung kann sich im Nulleiter befinden und das Hauptnetz muss abgetrennt werden, um die Phasenleiter stromlos zu machen.

## ■ Points to Note when Tightening a Screw

When a thin plates is used in some parts for the light weighting purpose, warn the following.

In the case of a screw hole with a triangle mark near it as shown in the figure below, strongly tightening the screw may damage or deform the screw hole.

In the case of a screw hole with a triangle mark, take care not to apply too much force when tightening the screw.



The recommended torque value is shown below as a reference value.

|                         |    | Type of Screws |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |
|-------------------------|----|----------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
|                         |    | RS tight       |             | W Sems      |             | Binding     |             | TP          |             |
| Fastened member         |    | Metal          | Resin       | Metal       | Resin       | Metal       | Resin       | Metal       | Resin       |
| Tightening torque (N*m) | M4 | Approx. 1.6    | Approx. 1.6 | Approx. 1.6 | Approx. 0.8 | Approx. 1.6 | Approx. 0.8 | Approx. 1.6 | Approx. 0.8 |
|                         | M3 | Approx. 0.8    | Approx. 0.8 | Approx. 0.6 | Approx. 0.6 | Approx. 0.6 | Approx. 0.6 | Approx. 0.6 | Approx. 0.6 |

\* For PCB, refer to the tightening torque value of resin (fastened member).

| Type of Screws |        |         |    |
|----------------|--------|---------|----|
| RS tight       | W Sems | Binding | TP |
|                |        |         |    |



# Product Overview

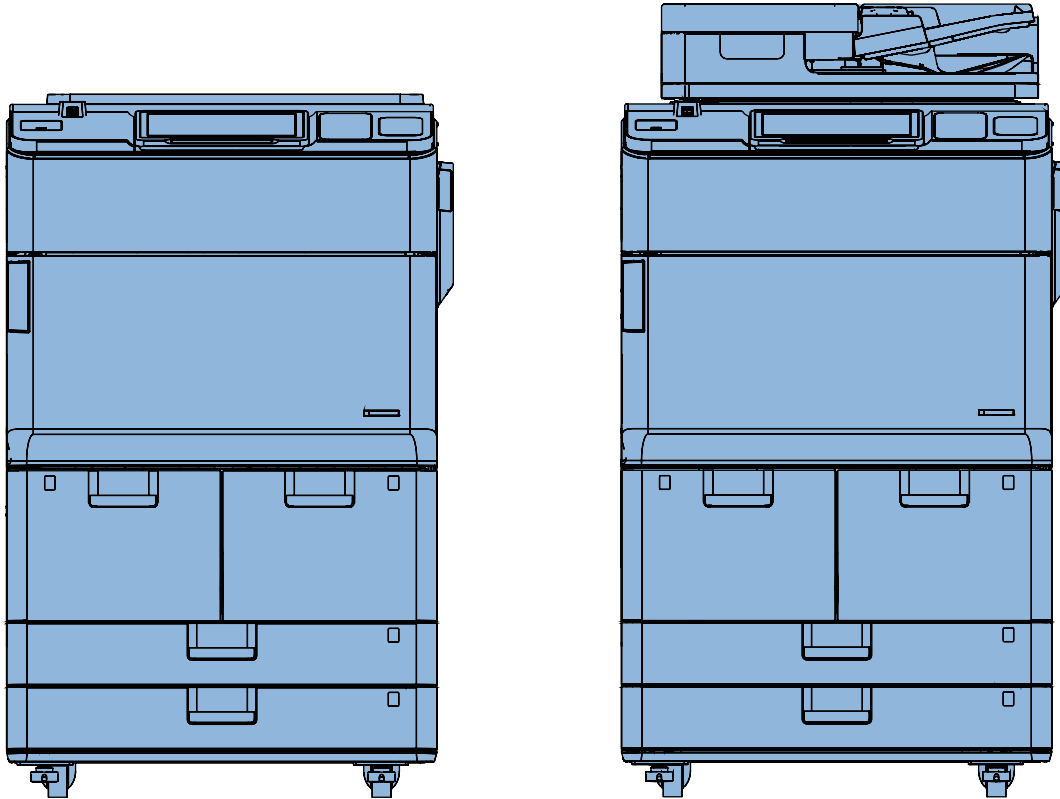
|                     |    |
|---------------------|----|
| Product Lineup..... | 7  |
| Features.....       | 12 |
| Specifications..... | 13 |
| External View.....  | 36 |
| Operation.....      | 42 |

## Product Lineup

### Host machine

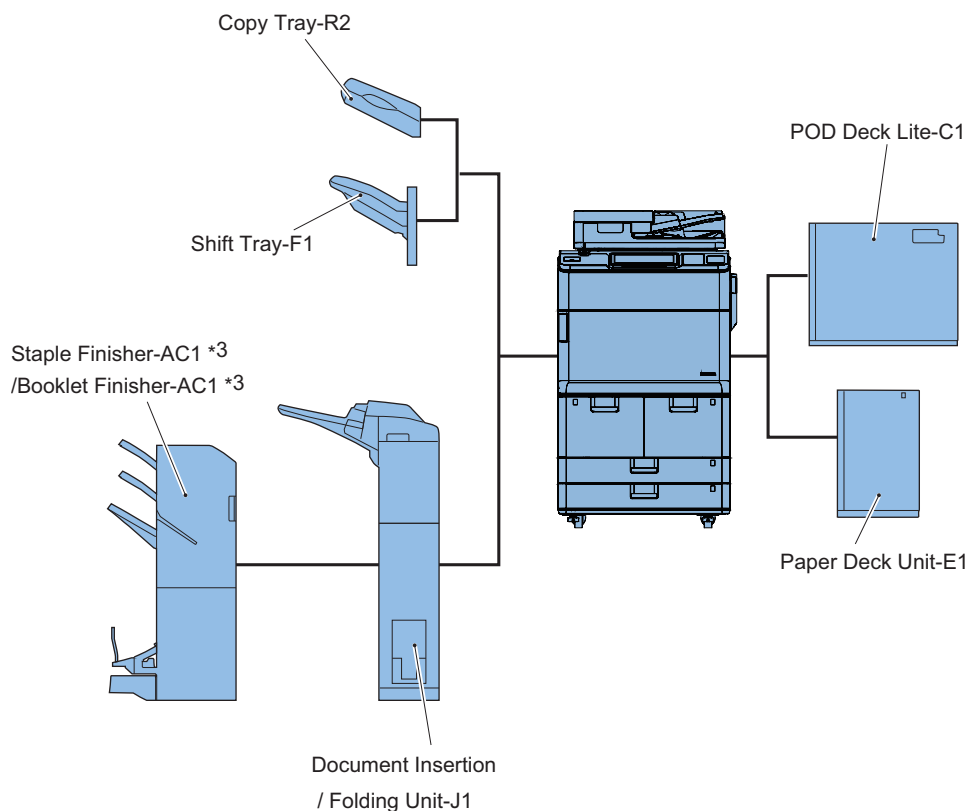
imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6780 / 6765 / 6755

The underlined numerical value indicates the print speed (ppm: print per minute).



|   | <b>imageRUNNER ADVANCE<br/>DX 6780 / 6780i</b>    | <b>imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX<br/>6765 / 6765i</b> | <b>imageRUNNER ADVANCE<br/>DX 6755 / 6755i</b> |
|---|---|--|--|
| Machine Configuration   | 2 models: Printer model, model with DADF + Reader |  |  |
| Print speed   | 80 ppm  | 65 ppm   | 55 ppm   |
| Control Panel   | Flat Control Panel                                |  |  |
| HDD   | Standard: 320 GB, Maximum: 1 TB                   |  |  |
| Communication method with pickup/delivery option Pickup/delivery option | Serial/UFDI                                       |  |  |

## Pickup/Delivery System Options



\*1: 2/3, 2/4, 4 Hole Puncher Unit-A1 are available as an option.

### Pickup System Required Options/Conditions

#### Pickup System Required Options/Conditions

| Product name                  | Required options, conditions, etc.   |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Paper Deck Unit-E1            | Using with POD Deck Lite-C1 is not available.<br>Pickup method: Retard method<br>Pickup capacity: 3,500 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )<br>Paper type: Thin paper, plain paper, heavy paper, color paper, recycled paper, bond paper, pre-punched paper, letterhead<br>Paper size: A4, B5, LTR<br>Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup><br>Double feed detection: Not available   |
| POD Deck Lite-C1              | Using with Paper Deck Unit-E1 is not available.<br>Pickup method: Air separation method<br>Pickup capacity: 3,500 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )<br>Paper type: Thin paper, plain paper, heavy paper, color paper, recycled paper, pre-punched paper, transparency, labels, tab paper, bond paper, letterhead, postcard<br>Paper size: 13"x19" to A5R<br>Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup><br>Double feed detection: Not available |
| Tab Feeding Attachment Kit-B1 |  |
| Cassette Heater Unit-38       | For cassette of main body  |
| Paper Deck Heater Unit-A1     | Option for Paper Deck Unit-E1  |

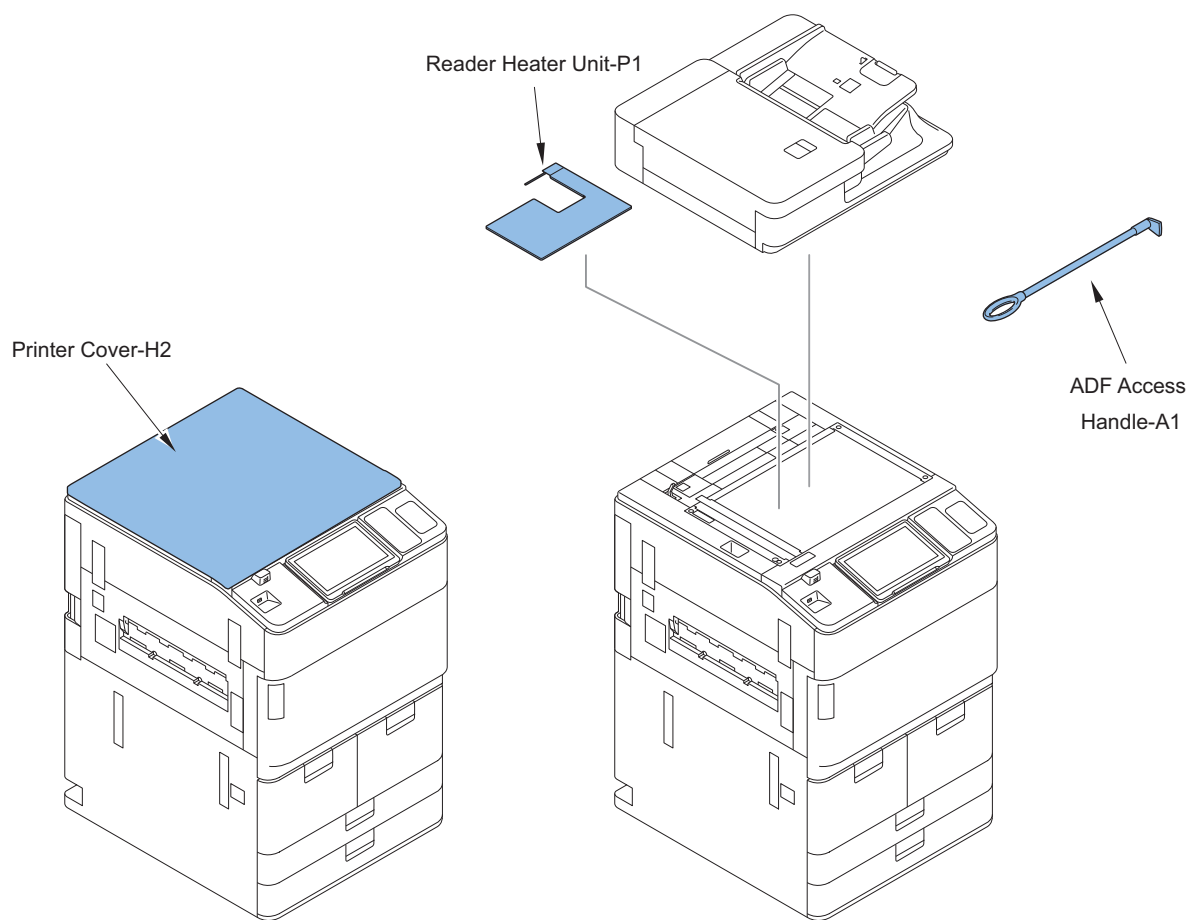
## Delivery System Required Options/Conditions

### Delivery System Required Options/Conditions

| Product name                         | Required options, conditions, etc.  |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Shift Tray-F1                        | Using with delivery-related options is not available.<br>Paper size: Paper available for the host machine<br>Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup><br>Tray capacity: 500 sheets (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> )   |
| Copy Tray-R2                         | Using with delivery-related options is not available.<br>Paper size: Paper available for the host machine<br>Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup><br>Tray capacity: 250 sheets (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> )   |
| Document Insertion Unit-P1           | Staple Finisher/Booklet Finisher is required at the downstream side.<br>Pickup capacity: 100 sheets x 1 bin<br>Paper type: Thin paper, plain paper, recycled paper, color paper, heavy paper, tab paper, bond paper, letterhead, coated paper<br>Paper size: B5R to A3/11x17<br>Paper weight: 60 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup>  |
| Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1 | Folding Unit + Insertion Unit<br>Staple Finisher/Booklet Finisher is required at the downstream side.<br><br><b>Folding Unit</b><br>Folding type: Z-Fold, C-Fold<br>Paper type: Thin paper, plain paper, recycled paper, color paper<br>Paper size: Z fold (A3, B4, A4R/11 x 17, LGL, LTRR), C fold (A4R/LTRR)<br>Paper weight: 60 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup><br><br><b>Insertion Unit</b><br>Pickup capacity: 100 sheets x 1 bin<br>Paper type: Thin paper, plain paper, recycled paper, color paper, heavy paper, tab paper, bond paper, letterhead, coated paper<br>Paper size: B5R to A3/11x17<br>Paper weight: 60 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> |
| Staple Finisher-AC1                  | Using with Booklet Finisher-AC1 is not available.<br>Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup><br>Maximum stacking capacity: 3,500 sheets (A4, B5, LTR)<br>The number of sheets to be stitched:<br>Staple: 65 sheets (A4, B5, LTR)<br>Staple-Free Stapling: 4 sheets (81.4 g/m <sup>2</sup> )<br>Manual Staple: 65 sheets (90 g/m <sup>2</sup> )   |
| Booklet Finisher-AC1                 | Using with Staple Finisher-AC1 is not available.<br>Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup><br>Maximum stacking capacity: 3,500 sheets (A4, B5, LTR)<br>The number of sheets to be stitched:<br>Staple: 65 sheets (A4, B5, LTR)<br>Staple-Free Stapling: 4 sheets (81.4 g/m <sup>2</sup> )<br>Manual Staple: 65 sheets (90 g/m <sup>2</sup> )<br>Saddle Stitch: 20 sheets/10 sets (81.4 g/m <sup>2</sup> )   |
| Finisher Jogger Kit-A1               | Booklet Finisher-AC1 and Staple Finisher-AC1 options  |
| 2/3, 2/4, 4 Hole Puncher Unit-A1     | Booklet Finisher-AC1 and Staple Finisher-AC1 options<br>Paper weight: 52 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup>  |
| Staple Cartridge-X1                  | Plain Staple Cartridge<br>Option for Booklet Finisher-AC1 and Staple Finisher-AC1   |
| Staple Cartridge-Y1                  | Saddle Staple Cartridge<br>Option for Booklet Finisher-AC1  |



## Scanning System Options



### Required Options and Conditions

| Product name          | Required options, conditions, etc.   |
|-----------------------|--|
| Reader Heater Unit-P1 | Option for Reader Unit   |
| ADF Access Handle-A1  | It is the handle to support opening and closing the Feeder.  |
| Printer Cover-H2      | It is the cover to be installed at the top of the host machine when using this equipment as a printer model. |

## Function Expansion System Options

### Hardware Products

| Product name                        | Required options, conditions, etc.  |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Numeric Keypad-A1                   | No particular options and conditions are required.  |
| Upright Control Panel-J1            | No particular options and conditions are required.  |
| NFC Kit-E1                          | No particular options and conditions are required.  |
| Utility Tray-B1                     | Using with Voice Guidance Kit-G1 and Voice Operation Kit-D1 is not available.   |
| Copy Card Reader-F1                 | Copy Card Reader Installation Kit-A3 is required.<br>Using with Serial Interface Kit-K2 and Copy Control Interface Kit-A1 is not available. |
| Copy Card Reader Attachment-A4      | Required when Copy Card Reader-F1 is installed.   |
| Card Set-A1 to A6                   | Copy Card Reader-F1 is required.  |
| Super G3 FAX Board-AS1              | No particular options and conditions are required.  |
| Super G3 FAX Board-AS2              | No particular options and conditions are required.  |
| Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS1     | Super G3 FAX Board-AS1 is required.   |
| Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS2     | Super G3 FAX Board-AS2 is required.   |
| Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS1 | Super G3 FAX Board-AS1 and Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS1 is required.   |

| Product name  | Required options, conditions, etc.   |
|---|--|
| Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS2                                 | Super G3 FAX Board-AS2 and Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS2 is required.  |
| imagePASS-Y1 V1.1   | No particular options and conditions are required.   |
| Voice Guidance Kit-G1   | Using with Utility Tray-B1 and Voice Operation Kit-D1 is not available.  |
| Voice Operation Kit-D1  | Using with Utility Tray-B1 and Voice Guidance Kit-G1 is not available.   |
| Serial Interface Kit-K3   | Required when the coin manager is connected.<br>Using with Copy Card Reader-F1 and Copy Control Interface Kit-A1 is not available. |
| Copy Control Interface Kit-A1                                       | Required when the coin manager is connected.<br>Using with Copy Card Reader-F1 and Serial Interface Kit-K2 is not available.       |
| 2.5inch/250GB HDD-N1  | This is used when the mirroring function is used with HDD Mirroring Kit-J1.  |
| 2.5inch/1TB HDD-P1  | This is used when the mirroring function is used with HDD Mirroring Kit-J1.  |
| HDD Mirroring Kit-J1  | When performing mirroring, either the Option HDD-N1 (250 GB) or the Option HDD-P1 (1 TB) is required.                              |
| Removable HDD Kit-B6  | No particular options and conditions are required.   |
| iR-ADV Security Kit-AJ1 for IEEE 2600 Common Criteria Certification |  |
| Connection Kit-A2 for Bluetooth LE                                  |  |
| Power Supply Cable-U1   | No particular options and conditions are required.   |

## License Products

At the time of installation, obtain the license number according to the license certificate included and then enter the obtained license number from the Control Panel of the machine. The applicable functions are now enabled.

There is no physical installation work at the time of installation.

| Parts name                    | Required options, conditions, etc.  |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Remote Fax Kit-A1             | No particular options and conditions are required.  |
| IP FAX Expansion Kit-B1       | Using with Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS1 or Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS1 is not available. |
| PCL Printer Kit-CH1           | No particular options and conditions are required.  |
| PCL International Font Set-A1 | No particular options and conditions are required.  |
| PCL Asian Font Set-A1         | No particular options and conditions are required.  |
| PS Printer Kit-BC1            | No particular options and conditions are required.  |
| PS Printer Kit-CH1            | No particular options and conditions are required.  |
| Barcode Printing Kit-D1       | No particular options and conditions are required.  |
| Picture Login-A1              | No particular options and conditions are required.  |
| Fiery Compose                 | No particular options and conditions are required.  |
| Fiery Impose                  | No particular options and conditions are required.  |
| Fiery Impose and Compose      | No particular options and conditions are required.  |
| Fiery imageViewer             | No particular options and conditions are required.  |

# Features

## Product Features

- Hardware keys were changed to software keys for the compact Control Panel with shortened eye-movement distances
- Internal installation of IC Card Reader
- Placement of hardware switches for servicing at the backside of Control Panel
- Feeder with the easy-operable design and newly implemented functions
- Improved image quality adjustment functions
- Improved productivity

# Specifications

## Product Specifications

| Item  | Description  |
|---|--|
| Machine installation method                       | Reader/Printer separated type, console type  |
| Photosensitive medium                             | 84 mm diameter amorphous silicon drum  |
| Exposure method                                   | Laser exposure method  |
| Charging method                                   | Grid charging method   |
| Developing method                                 | Dry, 1-component toner projection  |
| Transfer method                                   | Transfer Roller method   |
| Separation method                                 | Transfer Belt  |
| Pickup method                                     | Right/Left Deck: Separation retard method<br>Cassette 3/4: Separation retard method<br>Multi-purpose Tray: Simple retard method  |
| Cleaning method                                   | Drum: Cleaning Blade<br>ETB: Cleaning Blade + Brush Roller   |
| Fixing method                                     | Heat Roller method   |
| Delivery method                                   | Face-up/Face-down  |
| Toner type  | Magnetic negative toner  |
| Toner supply method                               | Set-on   |
| Toner level detection function                    | Available  |
| Leading edge image margin                         | 2.5 mm +1.5/-0.5 mm  |
| Left image margin                                 | 2.5 mm +/- 1.5 mm  |
| Warm-up time                                      | After Powering ON: 30 sec. or less<br>Returning from the Sleep mode: 30 sec. or less   |
| First copy time                                   | imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6780: 3.1 sec. or less<br>imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6765 /6755: 3.3 sec. or less   |
| Image gradations                                  | 256 gradations   |
| Print resolution                                  | Max. 1,200 dpi x 1,200 dpi   |
| Maximum image guaranteed area                     | 305.0 x 482.7 mm   |
| Maximum printable area                            | 310 x 625 mm   |
| Paper Type/Size                                   | "Paper Type" on page 17: Reference   |
| Pickup capacity                                   | Right/Left Deck: 1,500 sheets each (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )<br>Cassette 3/4: 550 sheets each (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )<br>Multi-purpose Tray: 100 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) |
| Duplex method                                     | Through path   |
| Memory capacity                                   | For Main Controller 1: Capacity of 2 GB (for controller control) + 1 GB (for image processing)   |
| HDD capacity                                      | Standard: 320 GB, Maximum: 1 TB  |
| Environment temperature/Humidity/Atmosphere range | "10. Installation" on page 1462: Reference   |
| Operation noise                                   | At printing: 75 dB or less   |
| Rated power supply                                | "Power Supply Specifications" on page 14: Reference  |

| Item                      | Description   |
|---------------------------|---|
| Maximum power consumption | 120V <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>At the time of printing: 2.0 kW or less</li> <li>During sleep mode: 0.9 W or less</li> <li>At main power-off:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When Quick Startup Settings for Main Power is set to On: 0.5 W or less</li> <li>When Quick Startup Settings for Main Power is set to Off: 0.5 W or less</li> </ul> </li> </ul> 230V <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>At the time of printing: 2.4 kW or less</li> <li>During sleep mode: 0.9 W or less</li> <li>At main power-off:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When Quick Startup Settings for Main Power is set to On: 0.5 W or less</li> <li>When Quick Startup Settings for Main Power is set to Off: 0.5 W or less</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| Dimensions/Weight         | "Weight and Size" on page 15  |

## Fax Specifications

| Item                   | Contents   |
|------------------------|--|
| Telephone Line Used *1 | Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN)   |
| Scan Line Density      | Normal G3: 8 pels <sup>2</sup> / mm x 3.85 line / mm<br>Fine G3: 8 pels <sup>2</sup> / mm x 7.7 line / mm<br>Super-Fine G3: 8 pels <sup>2</sup> / mm x 15.4 line / mm<br>Ultra-Fine G3: 16 pels <sup>2</sup> / mm x 15.4 line / mm |
| Transmission Speed     | Super G3 : 33.6 kbps, G3 : 14.4 kbps   |
| Compression Method     | MH, MR, MMR, JBIG  |
| Transmission Type      | SuperG3, G3  |
| Sending Original Sizes | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>AB configuration: A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5<sup>*2</sup>, B5R<sup>*3</sup>, A5<sup>*3</sup>, A5R<sup>*3</sup></li> <li>Inch configuration: 11" x 17", LGL, LTR, LTRR, STMTR</li> </ul>            |
| Receiving Paper Sizes  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>AB configuration: A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R</li> <li>Inch configuration: 11" x 17", LGL, LTR, LTRR, STMTR</li> <li>Other: K8, K16</li> </ul>  |
| No. of Memory RX Jobs  | Up to 320 jobs   |
| Transmission Times     | Approximately 2.6 seconds (When sending LTR Canon original paper, Normal 8 pels x 3.85 line/mm ECM (JBIG))   |

\*1 When using an IP telephone service, facsimile communication may not be performed normally via an IP telephone line. It is recommended to use facsimile communication via a general telephone (Public Switched Telephone Network) line.

\*2 Pels stands for picture elements (pixels).

\*3 Sent as A4.

## Power Supply Specifications

| Product name                              | Power supply source (number of cables) | Japan     |      | North America |      | Europe    |      | Asia      |      | Australia |      |
|---|--|-----------|------|---------------|------|-----------|------|-----------|------|-----------|------|
|   |  | V(V)      | I(A) | V(V)          | I(A) | V(V)      | I(A) | V(V)      | I(A) | V(V)      | I(A) |
| imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6780 / 6765 / 6755 | Power outlet (1)                       | 100       | 15   | 110 - 127     | 16   | 220 - 240 | 10   | 220 - 240 | 10   | 220 - 240 | 10   |
| POD Deck Lite-C1                          | Power outlet (1)                       | 100       | 2.4  | 120 - 127     | 2.2  | 220 - 240 | 1.2  | 220 - 240 | 1.2  | 220 - 240 | 1.2  |
| Paper Deck Unit-E1                        | Main body                              | -         | -    | -             | -    | -         | -    | -         | -    | -         | -    |
| Document Insertion Unit-P1                | Power outlet (1)                       | -         | -    | 100 - 240     | 1.0  | 100 - 240 | 1.0  | 100 - 240 | 1.0  | 100 - 240 | 1.0  |
| Paper Folding Insertion Unit-J1           | Finisher                               | 100 - 240 | 1.0  | 100 - 240     | 1.0  | 100 - 240 | 1.0  | 100 - 240 | 1.0  | 100 - 240 | 1.0  |
| Shift Tray-E1                             | Main body                              | -         | -    | -             | -    | -         | -    | -         | -    | -         | -    |
| Staple Finisher-AC1                       | Main body                              | -         | -    | -             | -    | -         | -    | -         | -    | -         | -    |

| Product name                     | Power supply source (number of cables) | Japan |      | North America |      | Europe |      | Asia |      | Australia |      |
|----------------------------------|--|-------|------|---------------|------|--------|------|------|------|-----------|------|
|                                  |  | V(V)  | I(A) | V(V)          | I(A) | V(V)   | I(A) | V(V) | I(A) | V(V)      | I(A) |
| Booklet Finisher-AC1             | Main body                              | -     | -    | -             | -    | -      | -    | -    | -    | -         | -    |
| 2/3, 2/4, 4 Hole Puncher Unit-A1 | Finisher                               | -     | -    | -             | -    | -      | -    | -    | -    | -         | -    |

## Weight and Size

| Product name   | Width (mm) | Depth (mm) | Height (mm) | Weight (kg) |
|--|------------|------------|-------------|-------------|
| imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6780 /6765 /6755<br>Without the Upright Control Panel | 670        | 770        | 1,185       | 219         |
| imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6780 /6765 /6755<br>With the Upright Control Panel    | 1,170      | 770        | 1,252       | 223         |
| POD Deck Lite-C1   | 656        | 686        | 574         | 68          |
| Paper Deck Unit-E1   | 363        | 630        | 572         | 34          |
| Paper Folding Insertion Unit-J1  | 662        | 679        | 1,242       | 76          |
| Copy Tray-R2   | 420        | 382        | 175         | 1.1         |
| Shift Tray-F1  | 366        | 547        | 256         | 4.2         |
| Booklet Finisher-AC1   | 525        | 623        | 1,195       | 60          |
| Staple Finisher-AC1  | 525        | 623        | 1,195       | 36          |

## Productivity

### ■ imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6780

Unit: images / min.

| Paper type                        | Size                           | Cassette/Host machine deck |    |         |    | MP Tray |    |         |    |    |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|----|---------|----|---------|----|---------|----|----|
|                                   |                                | 1-sided                    |    | 2-sided |    | 1-sided |    | 2-sided |    |    |
| Plain paper                       | B5                             | 80                         | 80 | 80      | 80 | 53      | 53 | 53      | 53 |    |
| Thin paper                        | A5_R                           | 35                         | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 |    |
| Recycled paper<br>(52 to 90 g/m2) | A5                             | -                          | -  | -       | -  | 53      | 53 | -       | -  |    |
|                                   | A6_R                           | -                          | -  | -       | -  | 35      | 35 | -       | -  |    |
|                                   | STMT_R                         | 35                         | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 |    |
|                                   | B5_R                           | 67                         | 67 | 67      | 67 | 47      | 47 | 47      | 47 |    |
|                                   | LTR_R                          | 61                         | 61 | 61      | 61 | 45      | 45 | 45      | 45 |    |
|                                   | A4_R                           | 58                         | 58 | 58      | 58 | 44      | 44 | 44      | 44 |    |
|                                   | LGL                            | 48                         | 48 | 45      | 45 | 38      | 38 | 38      | 38 |    |
|                                   | B4                             | 47                         | 47 | 45      | 45 | 38      | 38 | 38      | 38 |    |
|                                   | K8                             | 40                         | 40 | 40      | 40 | 33      | 33 | 33      | 33 |    |
|                                   | A3                             | 40                         | 40 | 40      | 40 | 33      | 33 | 33      | 33 |    |
|                                   | 11 x 17                        | 40                         | 40 | 40      | 40 | 33      | 33 | 33      | 33 |    |
|                                   | Heavy paper<br>(91 to 256g/m2) | B5                         | 65 | 65      | 65 | 65      | 53 | 53      | 53 | 53 |
|                                   |                                | A5_R                       | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35 |
| A5                                |                                | -                          | -  | -       | -  | 53      | 53 | -       | -  |    |
| A6_R                              |                                | -                          | -  | -       | -  | 35      | 35 | -       | -  |    |
| STMT_R                            |                                | 35                         | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 |    |
| B5_R                              |                                | 54                         | 54 | 54      | 54 | 47      | 47 | 47      | 47 |    |
| LTR_R                             |                                | 50                         | 50 | 50      | 50 | 45      | 45 | 45      | 45 |    |
| A4_R                              |                                | 46                         | 46 | 46      | 46 | 44      | 44 | 44      | 44 |    |
| LGL                               |                                | 39                         | 39 | 39      | 39 | 38      | 38 | 38      | 38 |    |
| B4                                |                                | 39                         | 39 | 39      | 39 | 38      | 38 | 38      | 38 |    |
| K8                                | 32                             | 32                         | 32 | 32      | 32 | 32      | 32 | 32      |    |    |

| Paper type                                     | Size    | Cassette/Host machine deck |    |         |    | MP Tray |    |         |    |
|--|---------|----------------------------|----|---------|----|---------|----|---------|----|
|  |         | 1-sided                    |    | 2-sided |    | 1-sided |    | 2-sided |    |
| Heavy paper<br>(91 to<br>256g/m <sup>2</sup> ) | A3      | 32                         | 32 | 32      | 32 | 32      | 32 | 32      | 32 |
|  | 11 x 17 | 32                         | 32 | 32      | 32 | 32      | 32 | 32      | 32 |

## ■ imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6765

Unit: images / min.

| Paper type  | Size    | Cassette/Host machine deck |    |         |    | MP Tray |    |         |    |
|---|---------|----------------------------|----|---------|----|---------|----|---------|----|
|   |         | 1-sided                    |    | 2-sided |    | 1-sided |    | 2-sided |    |
| Plain paper                                       | B5      | 65                         | 65 | 65      | 65 | 46      | 46 | 46      | 46 |
| Thin paper  | A5_R    | 35                         | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 |
| Recycled paper<br>(52 to 90<br>g/m <sup>2</sup> ) | A5      | -                          | -  | -       | -  | 46      | 46 | -       | -  |
|   | A6_R    | -                          | -  | -       | -  | 35      | 35 | -       | -  |
|   | STMT_R  | 35                         | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 |
|   | B5_R    | 55                         | 55 | 55      | 55 | 41      | 41 | 41      | 41 |
|   | LTR_R   | 50                         | 50 | 50      | 50 | 39      | 39 | 39      | 39 |
|   | A4_R    | 47                         | 47 | 47      | 47 | 38      | 38 | 38      | 38 |
|   | LGL     | 39                         | 39 | 39      | 39 | 33      | 33 | 33      | 33 |
|   | B4      | 39                         | 39 | 39      | 39 | 33      | 33 | 33      | 33 |
|   | K8      | 32                         | 32 | 32      | 32 | 29      | 29 | 29      | 29 |
|   | A3      | 32                         | 32 | 32      | 32 | 29      | 29 | 29      | 29 |
|   | 11 x 17 | 32                         | 32 | 32      | 32 | 29      | 29 | 29      | 29 |
| Heavy paper<br>(91 to<br>256g/m <sup>2</sup> )    | B5      | 56                         | 56 | 56      | 56 | 46      | 46 | 46      | 46 |
|   | A5_R    | 35                         | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 |
|   | A5      | -                          | -  | -       | -  | 46      | 46 | -       | -  |
|   | A6_R    | -                          | -  | -       | -  | 35      | 35 | -       | -  |
|   | STMT_R  | 35                         | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 |
|   | B5_R    | 47                         | 47 | 47      | 47 | 41      | 41 | 41      | 41 |
|   | LTR_R   | 43                         | 43 | 43      | 43 | 39      | 39 | 39      | 39 |
|   | A4_R    | 40                         | 40 | 40      | 40 | 38      | 38 | 38      | 38 |
|   | LGL     | 33                         | 33 | 33      | 33 | 33      | 33 | 33      | 33 |
|   | B4      | 33                         | 33 | 33      | 33 | 33      | 33 | 33      | 33 |
|   | K8      | 27                         | 27 | 27      | 27 | 27      | 27 | 27      | 27 |
| A3  | 27      | 27                         | 27 | 27      | 27 | 27      | 27 | 27      |    |
| 11 x 17   | 27      | 27                         | 27 | 27      | 27 | 27      | 27 | 27      |    |

## ■ imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6755

Unit: images / min.

| Paper type  | Size   | Cassette/Host machine deck |    |         |    | MP Tray |    |         |    |
|---|--------|----------------------------|----|---------|----|---------|----|---------|----|
|   |        | 1-sided                    |    | 2-sided |    | 1-sided |    | 2-sided |    |
| Plain paper                                       | B5     | 55                         | 55 | 55      | 55 | 46      | 46 | 46      | 46 |
| Thin paper  | A5_R   | 35                         | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 |
| Recycled paper<br>(52 to 90<br>g/m <sup>2</sup> ) | A5     | -                          | -  | -       | -  | 46      | 46 | -       | -  |
|   | A6_R   | -                          | -  | -       | -  | 35      | 35 | -       | -  |
|   | STMT_R | 35                         | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 |
|   | B5_R   | 46                         | 46 | 46      | 46 | 41      | 41 | 41      | 41 |
|   | LTR_R  | 43                         | 43 | 43      | 43 | 39      | 39 | 39      | 39 |
|   | A4_R   | 40                         | 40 | 40      | 40 | 38      | 38 | 38      | 38 |
|   | LGL    | 39                         | 39 | 39      | 39 | 33      | 33 | 33      | 33 |
|   | B4     | 39                         | 39 | 39      | 39 | 33      | 33 | 33      | 33 |

| Paper type                                     | Size    | Cassette/Host machine deck |    |         |    | MP Tray |    |         |    |
|--|---------|----------------------------|----|---------|----|---------|----|---------|----|
|  |         | 1-sided                    |    | 2-sided |    | 1-sided |    | 2-sided |    |
| Plain paper                                    | K8      | 32                         | 32 | 32      | 32 | 29      | 29 | 29      | 29 |
| Thin paper                                     | A3      | 32                         | 32 | 32      | 32 | 29      | 29 | 29      | 29 |
| Recycled paper<br>(52 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) | 11 x 17 | 32                         | 32 | 32      | 32 | 29      | 29 | 29      | 29 |
| Heavy paper<br>(91 to 256g/m <sup>2</sup> )    | B5      | 55                         | 55 | 55      | 55 | 46      | 46 | 46      | 46 |
|  | A5_R    | 35                         | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 |
|  | A5      | -                          | -  | -       | -  | 46      | 46 | -       | -  |
|  | A6_R    | -                          | -  | -       | -  | 35      | 35 | -       | -  |
|  | STMT_R  | 35                         | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 | 35      | 35 |
|  | B5_R    | 46                         | 46 | 46      | 46 | 41      | 41 | 41      | 41 |
|  | LTR_R   | 43                         | 43 | 43      | 43 | 39      | 39 | 39      | 39 |
|  | A4_R    | 40                         | 40 | 40      | 40 | 38      | 38 | 38      | 38 |
|  | LGL     | 33                         | 33 | 33      | 33 | 33      | 33 | 33      | 33 |
|  | B4      | 33                         | 33 | 33      | 33 | 33      | 33 | 33      | 33 |
|  | K8      | 27                         | 27 | 27      | 27 | 27      | 27 | 27      | 27 |
|  | A3      | 27                         | 27 | 27      | 27 | 27      | 27 | 27      | 27 |
|  | 11 x 17 | 27                         | 27 | 27      | 27 | 27      | 27 | 27      | 27 |

## Paper Type

The types of usable papers are shown below.

### Paper Types per Pickup Position

| Type      | Size      | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|-----------|-----------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|           |           |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Thin 2    | A3        | 420                    | 297                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|           | B4        | 364                    | 257                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|           | A4R       | 297                    | 210                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|           | A4        | 210                    | 297                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|           | B5R       | 257                    | 182                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|           | B5        | 182                    | 257                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|           | A5        | 148                    | 210                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|           | A5R       | 210                    | 148                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|           | A6R       | 148                    | 105                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|           | 11 x 17   | 431.8                  | 279.4                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|           | LGL       | 355.6                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|           | LTR       | 215.9                  | 279.4                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|           | LTRR      | 279.4                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|           | STMTR     | 215.9                  | 139.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|           | SRA3      | 450                    | 320                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|           | 12 x 18   | 457.2                  | 304.8                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|           | EXEC      | 184.1                  | 266.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|           | OFICIO    | 317.5                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|           | E-OFI-CIO | 320                    | 220                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|           | B-OFI-CIO | 355                    | 216                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
| M-OFI-CIO | 341       | 216                    | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |



| Type                        | Size               | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|                             |                    |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Thin 2                      | A-OFI-CIO          | 340                    | 220                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | A-LTR              | 220                    | 280                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | A-LTRR             | 280                    | 220                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | GLTR-R             | 266.7                  | 203.2                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | GLTR               | 203.2                  | 266.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | GLGL               | 330.2                  | 203.2                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | AFLS               | 337                    | 206                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | FLS                | 330.2                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | 13 x 19            | 482.6                  | 330.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | K8                 | 390                    | 270                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | K16                | 195                    | 270                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | K16R               | 270                    | 195                  | No                 | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | F4A                | 342.9                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | I-LGL              | 345                    | 215                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Free               | 182 to 487.7           | 100 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | Free (Long length) | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | Custom size 0-1    | 148 to 487.7           | 100 to 139.6         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | Custom size 0-2    | 148 to 181.9           | 139.7 to 297         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | Custom size 1-1    | 182 to 209.9           | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Custom size 1-2    | 210 to 431.8           | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Custom size 1-3    | 431.9 to 487.7         | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Custom size 2-1    | 182 to 209.9           | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Custom size 2-2    | 210 to 431.8           | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
| Custom size 2-3             | 431.9 to 487.7     | 182 to 209.9           | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| Custom size 3-1             | 182 to 209.9       | 210 to 297             | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| Custom size 3-2             | 210 to 431.8       | 210 to 297             | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| Custom size 3-3             | 431.9 to 487.7     | 210 to 297             | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| Custom size 4 (long length) | 487.8 to 630       | 100 to 297             | Yes *1               | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            |                |

| Type                                    | Size | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|---|------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|   |      |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Thin 1<br>Plain 1<br>Plain 2<br>Plain 3 | A3   | 420                    | 297                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|   | B4   | 364                    | 257                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|   | A4R  | 297                    | 210                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|   | A4   | 210                    | 297                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |

| Type                        | Size           | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|-----------------------------|----------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|                             |                |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Color paper 1<br>Recycled 1 | B5R            | 257                    | 182                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|                             | B5             | 182                    | 257                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|                             | A5             | 148                    | 210                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | A5R            | 210                    | 148                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | A6R            | 148                    | 105                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | 11 x 17        | 431.8                  | 279.4                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|                             | LGL            | 355.6                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|                             | LTR            | 215.9                  | 279.4                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|                             | LTRR           | 279.4                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|                             | STMTR          | 215.9                  | 139.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | SRA3           | 450                    | 320                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | 12 x 18        | 457.2                  | 304.8                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | EXEC           | 184.1                  | 266.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|                             | OFICIO         | 317.5                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | E-OFFICIO      | 320                    | 220                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | B-OFFICIO      | 355                    | 216                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | M-OFFICIO      | 341                    | 216                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | A-OFFICIO      | 340                    | 220                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | A-LTR          | 220                    | 280                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | A-LTRR         | 280                    | 220                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | GLTR-R         | 266.7                  | 203.2                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | GLTR           | 203.2                  | 266.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | GLGL           | 330.2                  | 203.2                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | AFLS           | 337                    | 206                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | FLS            | 330.2                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | 13 x 19        | 482.6                  | 330.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | K8             | 390                    | 270                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | K16            | 195                    | 270                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | K16R           | 270                    | 195                  | No                 | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | F4A            | 342.9                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | I-LGL          | 345                    | 215                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Free           | 182 to 487.7           | 100 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
| Free (Long length)          | 487.8 to 630   | 100 to 297             | Yes                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            |                |
| Custom size 0-1             | 148 to 487.7   | 100 to 139.6           | Yes                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            |                |
| Custom size 0-2             | 148 to 181.9   | 139.7 to 297           | Yes                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            |                |
| Custom size 1-1             | 182 to 209.9   | 139.7 to 181.9         | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| Custom size 1-2             | 210 to 431.8   | 139.7 to 181.9         | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| Custom size 1-3             | 431.9 to 487.7 | 139.7 to 181.9         | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| Custom size 2-1             | 182 to 209.9   | 182 to 209.9           | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| Custom size 2-2             | 210 to 431.8   | 182 to 209.9           | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |

| Type | Size                        | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|------|-----------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|      |                             |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
|      | Custom size 2-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|      | Custom size 3-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 210 to 297           | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|      | Custom size 3-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 210 to 297           | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|      | Custom size 3-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 210 to 297           | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|      | Custom size 4 (long length) | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | Yes *1             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |

| Type    | Size      | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|---------|-----------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|         |           |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Heavy 1 | A3        | 420                    | 297                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
| Heavy 2 | B4        | 364                    | 257                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
| Heavy 3 | A4R       | 297                    | 210                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | A4        | 210                    | 297                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | B5R       | 257                    | 182                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | B5        | 182                    | 257                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | A5        | 148                    | 210                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | A5R       | 210                    | 148                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | A6R       | 148                    | 105                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | 11 x 17   | 431.8                  | 279.4                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | LGL       | 355.6                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | LTR       | 215.9                  | 279.4                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | LTRR      | 279.4                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | STMTR     | 215.9                  | 139.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | SRA3      | 450                    | 320                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | 12 x 18   | 457.2                  | 304.8                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | EXEC      | 184.1                  | 266.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | OFICIO    | 317.5                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | E-OFI-CIO | 320                    | 220                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | B-OFI-CIO | 355                    | 216                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | M-OFI-CIO | 341                    | 216                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | A-OFI-CIO | 340                    | 220                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | A-LTR     | 220                    | 280                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | A-LTRR    | 280                    | 220                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | GLTR-R    | 266.7                  | 203.2                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | GLTR      | 203.2                  | 266.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | GLGL      | 330.2                  | 203.2                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | AFLS      | 337                    | 206                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | FLS       | 330.2                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | 13 x 19   | 482.6                  | 330.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | K8        | 390                    | 270                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | K16       | 195                    | 270                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |

| Type    | Size                        | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|---------|-----------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|         |                             |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Heavy 1 | K16R                        | 270                    | 195                  | No                 | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
| Heavy 2 | F4A                         | 342.9                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
| Heavy 3 | I-LGL                       | 345                    | 215                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Free                        | 182 to 487.7           | 100 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | Free (Long length)          | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | Custom size 0-1             | 148 to 487.7           | 100 to 139.6         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | Custom size 0-2             | 148 to 181.9           | 139.7 to 297         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | Custom size 1-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 1-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 1-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 2-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 2-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 2-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 3-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 210 to 297           | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 3-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 210 to 297           | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 3-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 210 to 297           | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 4 (long length) | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | Yes *1             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |

| Type    | Size    | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|---------|---------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|         |         |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Heavy 4 | A3      | 420                    | 297                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
| Heavy 5 | B4      | 364                    | 257                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | A4R     | 297                    | 210                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | A4      | 210                    | 297                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | B5R     | 257                    | 182                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | B5      | 182                    | 257                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | A5      | 148                    | 210                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | A5R     | 210                    | 148                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | A6R     | 148                    | 105                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | 11 x 17 | 431.8                  | 279.4                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | LGL     | 355.6                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | LTR     | 215.9                  | 279.4                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | LTRR    | 279.4                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | STMTR   | 215.9                  | 139.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | SRA3    | 450                    | 320                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |

| Type    | Size                        | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|---------|-----------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|         |                             |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Heavy 4 | 12 x 18                     | 457.2                  | 304.8                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
| Heavy 5 | EXEC                        | 184.1                  | 266.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|         | OFICIO                      | 317.5                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | E-OFI-CIO                   | 320                    | 220                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | B-OFI-CIO                   | 355                    | 216                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | M-OFI-CIO                   | 341                    | 216                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | A-OFI-CIO                   | 340                    | 220                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | A-LTR                       | 220                    | 280                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | A-LTRR                      | 280                    | 220                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | GLTR-R                      | 266.7                  | 203.2                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | GLTR                        | 203.2                  | 266.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | GLGL                        | 330.2                  | 203.2                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | AFLS                        | 337                    | 206                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | FLS                         | 330.2                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | 13 x 19                     | 482.6                  | 330.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | K8                          | 390                    | 270                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | K16                         | 195                    | 270                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | K16R                        | 270                    | 195                  | No                 | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | F4A                         | 342.9                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | I-LGL                       | 345                    | 215                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Free                        | 182 to 487.7           | 100 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | Free (Long length)          | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | Custom size 0-1             | 148 to 487.7           | 100 to 139.6         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | Custom size 0-2             | 148 to 181.9           | 139.7 to 297         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | Custom size 1-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 1-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 1-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 2-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 2-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 2-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 3-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 210 to 297           | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 3-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 210 to 297           | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 3-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 210 to 297           | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 4 (long length) | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | Yes *1             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |

| Type               | Size         | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|--------------------|--------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|                    |              |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Heavy 6            | A3           | 420                    | 297                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|                    | B4           | 364                    | 257                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|                    | A4R          | 297                    | 210                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|                    | A4           | 210                    | 297                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|                    | B5R          | 257                    | 182                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|                    | B5           | 182                    | 257                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|                    | A5           | 148                    | 210                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                    | A5R          | 210                    | 148                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                    | A6R          | 148                    | 105                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                    | 11 x 17      | 431.8                  | 279.4                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|                    | LGL          | 355.6                  | 215.9                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|                    | LTR          | 215.9                  | 279.4                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|                    | LTRR         | 279.4                  | 215.9                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|                    | STMTR        | 215.9                  | 139.7                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                    | SRA3         | 450                    | 320                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                    | 12 x 18      | 457.2                  | 304.8                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                    | EXEC         | 184.1                  | 266.7                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|                    | OFICIO       | 317.5                  | 215.9                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                    | E-OFI-CIO    | 320                    | 220                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                    | B-OFI-CIO    | 355                    | 216                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                    | M-OFI-CIO    | 341                    | 216                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                    | A-OFI-CIO    | 340                    | 220                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                    | A-LTR        | 220                    | 280                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                    | A-LTRR       | 280                    | 220                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                    | GLTR-R       | 266.7                  | 203.2                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                    | GLTR         | 203.2                  | 266.7                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                    | GLGL         | 330.2                  | 203.2                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                    | AFLS         | 337                    | 206                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                    | FLS          | 330.2                  | 215.9                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                    | 13 x 19      | 482.6                  | 330.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                    | K8           | 390                    | 270                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                    | K16          | 195                    | 270                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                    | K16R         | 270                    | 195                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                    | F4A          | 342.9                  | 215.9                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
| I-LGL              | 345          | 215                    | Yes                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| Free               | 182 to 487.7 | 100 to 297             | Yes                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            |                |
| Free (Long length) | 487.8 to 630 | 100 to 297             | Yes                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            |                |
| Custom size 0-1    | 148 to 487.7 | 100 to 139.6           | Yes                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            |                |
| Custom size 0-2    | 148 to 181.9 | 139.7 to 297           | Yes                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            |                |
| Custom size 1-1    | 182 to 209.9 | 139.7 to 181.9         | Yes                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| Custom size 1-2    | 210 to 431.8 | 139.7 to 181.9         | Yes                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |

| Type    | Size                        | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|---------|-----------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|         |                             |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Heavy 6 | Custom size 1-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 2-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 2-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 2-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 3-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 210 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 3-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 210 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 3-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 210 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | Custom size 4 (long length) | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | Yes *1             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |

| Type             | Size      | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|------------------|-----------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|                  |           |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| 1-Sided Coated 1 | A3        | 420                    | 297                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |
|                  | B4        | 364                    | 257                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |
| 1-Sided Coated 2 | A4R       | 297                    | 210                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |
|                  | A4        | 210                    | 297                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |
| 2-Sided Coated 1 | B5R       | 257                    | 182                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |
|                  | B5        | 182                    | 257                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |
| 2-Sided Coated 2 | A5        | 148                    | 210                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | A5R       | 210                    | 148                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | A6R       | 148                    | 105                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | 11 x 17   | 431.8                  | 279.4                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |
|                  | LGL       | 355.6                  | 215.9                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |
|                  | LTR       | 215.9                  | 279.4                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |
|                  | LTRR      | 279.4                  | 215.9                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |
|                  | STMTR     | 215.9                  | 139.7                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | SRA3      | 450                    | 320                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | 12 x 18   | 457.2                  | 304.8                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | EXEC      | 184.1                  | 266.7                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |
|                  | OFICIO    | 317.5                  | 215.9                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | E-OFI-CIO | 320                    | 220                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | B-OFI-CIO | 355                    | 216                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | M-OFI-CIO | 341                    | 216                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | A-OFI-CIO | 340                    | 220                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | A-LTR     | 220                    | 280                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | A-LTRR    | 280                    | 220                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | GLTR-R    | 266.7                  | 203.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | GLTR      | 203.2                  | 266.7                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | GLGL      | 330.2                  | 203.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |

| Type             | Size                        | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|                  |                             |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| 1-Sided Coated 1 | AFLS                        | 337                    | 206                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | FLS                         | 330.2                  | 215.9                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
| 1-Sided Coated 2 | 13 x 19                     | 482.6                  | 330.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | K8                          | 390                    | 270                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
| 2-Sided Coated 1 | K16                         | 195                    | 270                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | K16R                        | 270                    | 195                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
| 2-Sided Coated 2 | F4A                         | 342.9                  | 215.9                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | I-LGL                       | 345                    | 215                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | Free                        | 182 to 487.7           | 100 to 297           | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | Free (Long length)          | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | Custom size 0-1             | 148 to 487.7           | 100 to 139.6         | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | Custom size 0-2             | 148 to 181.9           | 139.7 to 297         | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | Custom size 1-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 139.7 to 181.9       | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | Custom size 1-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 139.7 to 181.9       | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | Custom size 1-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 139.7 to 181.9       | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | Custom size 2-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 182 to 209.9         | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | Custom size 2-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 182 to 209.9         | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | Custom size 2-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 182 to 209.9         | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | Custom size 3-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 210 to 297           | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | Custom size 3-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 210 to 297           | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | Custom size 3-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 210 to 297           | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | Custom size 4 (long length) | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | No *1              | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |

| Type             | Size    | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|------------------|---------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|                  |         |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| 1-Sided Coated 3 | A3      | 420                    | 297                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |
|                  | B4      | 364                    | 257                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |
| 2-Sided Coated 3 | A4R     | 297                    | 210                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |
|                  | A4      | 210                    | 297                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |
|                  | B5R     | 257                    | 182                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |
|                  | B5      | 182                    | 257                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |
|                  | A5      | 148                    | 210                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | A5R     | 210                    | 148                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | A6R     | 148                    | 105                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                  | 11 x 17 | 431.8                  | 279.4                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            |



| Type                                 | Size               | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |     |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|-----|
|                                      |                    |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |     |
| 1-Sided Coated 3<br>2-Sided Coated 3 | LGL                | 355.6                  | 215.9                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | Yes |
|                                      | LTR                | 215.9                  | 279.4                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | Yes |
|                                      | LTRR               | 279.4                  | 215.9                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | Yes |
|                                      | STMTR              | 215.9                  | 139.7                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | SRA3               | 450                    | 320                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | 12 x 18            | 457.2                  | 304.8                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | EXEC               | 184.1                  | 266.7                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | Yes |
|                                      | OFICIO             | 317.5                  | 215.9                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | E-OFI-CIO          | 320                    | 220                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | B-OFI-CIO          | 355                    | 216                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | M-OFI-CIO          | 341                    | 216                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | A-OFI-CIO          | 340                    | 220                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | A-LTR              | 220                    | 280                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | A-LTRR             | 280                    | 220                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | GLTR-R             | 266.7                  | 203.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | GLTR               | 203.2                  | 266.7                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | GLGL               | 330.2                  | 203.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | AFLS               | 337                    | 206                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | FLS                | 330.2                  | 215.9                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | 13 x 19            | 482.6                  | 330.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | K8                 | 390                    | 270                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | K16                | 195                    | 270                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | K16R               | 270                    | 195                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | F4A                | 342.9                  | 215.9                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | I-LGL              | 345                    | 215                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | Free               | 182 to 487.7           | 100 to 297           | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | Free (Long length) | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | Custom size 0-1    | 148 to 487.7           | 100 to 139.6         | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | Custom size 0-2    | 148 to 181.9           | 139.7 to 297         | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | Custom size 1-1    | 182 to 209.9           | 139.7 to 181.9       | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | Custom size 1-2    | 210 to 431.8           | 139.7 to 181.9       | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | Custom size 1-3    | 431.9 to 487.7         | 139.7 to 181.9       | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
|                                      | Custom size 2-1    | 182 to 209.9           | 182 to 209.9         | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No  |
| Custom size 2-2                      | 210 to 431.8       | 182 to 209.9           | No                   | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |     |
| Custom size 2-3                      | 431.9 to 487.7     | 182 to 209.9           | No                   | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |     |
| Custom size 3-1                      | 182 to 209.9       | 210 to 297             | No                   | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |     |
| Custom size 3-2                      | 210 to 431.8       | 210 to 297             | No                   | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |     |

| Type                                 | Size                        | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|                                      |                             |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| 1-Sided Coated 3<br>2-Sided Coated 3 | Custom size 3-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 210 to 297           | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                                      | Custom size 4 (long length) | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | No *1              | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |

| Type          | Size         | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|---------------|--------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|               |              |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Tracing paper | A3           | 420                    | 297                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | B4           | 364                    | 257                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | A4R          | 297                    | 210                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | A4           | 210                    | 297                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | B5R          | 257                    | 182                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | B5           | 182                    | 257                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | A5           | 148                    | 210                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | A5R          | 210                    | 148                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | A6R          | 148                    | 105                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | 11 x 17      | 431.8                  | 279.4                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | LGL          | 355.6                  | 215.9                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | LTR          | 215.9                  | 279.4                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | LTRR         | 279.4                  | 215.9                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | STMTR        | 215.9                  | 139.7                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | SRA3         | 450                    | 320                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | 12 x 18      | 457.2                  | 304.8                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | EXEC         | 184.1                  | 266.7                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | OFICIO       | 317.5                  | 215.9                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | E-OFI-CIO    | 320                    | 220                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | B-OFI-CIO    | 355                    | 216                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | M-OFI-CIO    | 341                    | 216                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | A-OFI-CIO    | 340                    | 220                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | A-LTR        | 220                    | 280                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | A-LTRR       | 280                    | 220                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | GLTR-R       | 266.7                  | 203.2                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | GLTR         | 203.2                  | 266.7                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | GLGL         | 330.2                  | 203.2                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | AFLS         | 337                    | 206                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | FLS          | 330.2                  | 215.9                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | 13 x 19      | 482.6                  | 330.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | K8           | 390                    | 270                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | K16          | 195                    | 270                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
| K16R          | 270          | 195                    | No                   | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            |                |
| F4A           | 342.9        | 215.9                  | Yes                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            |                |
| I-LGL         | 345          | 215                    | Yes                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            |                |
| Free          | 182 to 487.7 | 100 to 297             | Yes                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            |                |

| Type          | Size                        | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|---------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|               |                             |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Tracing paper | Free (Long length)          | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | Custom size 0-1             | 148 to 487.7           | 100 to 139.6         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | Custom size 0-2             | 148 to 181.9           | 139.7 to 297         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | Custom size 1-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | Custom size 1-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | Custom size 1-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | Custom size 2-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | Custom size 2-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | Custom size 2-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | Custom size 3-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 210 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | Custom size 3-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 210 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | Custom size 3-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 210 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|               | Custom size 4 (long length) | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | Yes *1             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |

| Type       | Size    | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|------------|---------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|            |         |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Clear Film | A3      | 420                    | 297                  | Yes *2             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes *2        | No             |
|            | B4      | 364                    | 257                  | Yes *2             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes *2        | No             |
|            | A4R     | 297                    | 210                  | Yes *2             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes *2        | No             |
|            | A4      | 210                    | 297                  | Yes *2             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes *2        | No             |
|            | B5R     | 257                    | 182                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|            | B5      | 182                    | 257                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|            | A5      | 148                    | 210                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|            | A5R     | 210                    | 148                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|            | A6R     | 148                    | 105                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|            | 11 x 17 | 431.8                  | 279.4                | Yes *2             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes *2        | No             |
|            | LGL     | 355.6                  | 215.9                | Yes *2             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes *2        | No             |
|            | LTR     | 215.9                  | 279.4                | Yes *2             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes *2        | No             |
|            | LTRR    | 279.4                  | 215.9                | Yes *2             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes *2        | No             |
|            | STMTR   | 215.9                  | 139.7                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|            | SRA3    | 450                    | 320                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|            | 12 x 18 | 457.2                  | 304.8                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|            | EXEC    | 184.1                  | 266.7                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
| OFICIO     | 317.5   | 215.9                  | Yes *2               | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | Yes *2     | No            |                |
| E-OFI-CIO  | 320     | 220                    | Yes *2               | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | Yes *2     | No            |                |

| Type                        | Size               | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |    |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|----|
|                             |                    |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |    |
| Clear Film                  | B-OFI-CIO          | 355                    | 216                  | Yes *2             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes *2         | No |
|                             | M-OFI-CIO          | 341                    | 216                  | Yes *2             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes *2         | No |
|                             | A-OFI-CIO          | 340                    | 220                  | Yes *2             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes *2         | No |
|                             | A-LTR              | 220                    | 280                  | Yes *2             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes *2         | No |
|                             | A-LTRR             | 280                    | 220                  | Yes *2             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes *2         | No |
|                             | GLTR-R             | 266.7                  | 203.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|                             | GLTR               | 203.2                  | 266.7                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|                             | GLGL               | 330.2                  | 203.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|                             | AFLS               | 337                    | 206                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|                             | FLS                | 330.2                  | 215.9                | Yes *2             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes *2         | No |
|                             | 13 x 19            | 482.6                  | 330.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|                             | K8                 | 390                    | 270                  | Yes *2             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes *2         | No |
|                             | K16                | 195                    | 270                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|                             | K16R               | 270                    | 195                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|                             | F4A                | 342.9                  | 215.9                | Yes *2             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes *2         | No |
|                             | I-LGL              | 345                    | 215                  | Yes *2             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes *2         | No |
|                             | Free               | 182 to 487.7           | 100 to 297           | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|                             | Free (Long length) | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|                             | Custom size 0-1    | 148 to 487.7           | 100 to 139.6         | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|                             | Custom size 0-2    | 148 to 181.9           | 139.7 to 297         | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|                             | Custom size 1-1    | 182 to 209.9           | 139.7 to 181.9       | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|                             | Custom size 1-2    | 210 to 431.8           | 139.7 to 181.9       | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|                             | Custom size 1-3    | 431.9 to 487.7         | 139.7 to 181.9       | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|                             | Custom size 2-1    | 182 to 209.9           | 182 to 209.9         | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|                             | Custom size 2-2    | 210 to 431.8           | 182 to 209.9         | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|                             | Custom size 2-3    | 431.9 to 487.7         | 182 to 209.9         | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
| Custom size 3-1             | 182 to 209.9       | 210 to 297             | No                   | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |    |
| Custom size 3-2             | 210 to 431.8       | 210 to 297             | Yes *2               | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes *2        | No             |    |
| Custom size 3-3             | 431.9 to 487.7     | 210 to 297             | No                   | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |    |
| Custom size 4 (long length) | 487.8 to 630       | 100 to 297             | No                   | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |    |

| Type         | Size | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|--------------|------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|              |      |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Transparency | A4R  | 297                    | 210                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|              | A4   | 210                    | 297                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|              | LTR  | 215.9                  | 279.4                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|              | LTRR | 279.4                  | 215.9                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |

| Type    | Size         | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|---------|--------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|         |              |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Label 1 | A3           | 420                    | 297                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | B4           | 364                    | 257                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | A4R          | 297                    | 210                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | A4           | 210                    | 297                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | B5R          | 257                    | 182                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | B5           | 182                    | 257                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | A5           | 148                    | 210                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | A5R          | 210                    | 148                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | A6R          | 148                    | 105                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | 11 x 17      | 431.8                  | 279.4                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | LGL          | 355.6                  | 215.9                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | LTR          | 215.9                  | 279.4                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | LTRR         | 279.4                  | 215.9                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | STMTR        | 215.9                  | 139.7                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | SRA3         | 450                    | 320                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | 12 x 18      | 457.2                  | 304.8                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | EXEC         | 184.1                  | 266.7                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | OFICIO       | 317.5                  | 215.9                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | E-OFI-CIO    | 320                    | 220                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | B-OFI-CIO    | 355                    | 216                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | M-OFI-CIO    | 341                    | 216                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | A-OFI-CIO    | 340                    | 220                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | A-LTR        | 220                    | 280                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | A-LTRR       | 280                    | 220                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | GLTR-R       | 266.7                  | 203.2                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | GLTR         | 203.2                  | 266.7                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | GLGL         | 330.2                  | 203.2                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | AFLS         | 337                    | 206                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | FLS          | 330.2                  | 215.9                | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | 13 x 19      | 482.6                  | 330.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|         | K8           | 390                    | 270                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | K16          | 195                    | 270                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|         | K16R         | 270                    | 195                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
| F4A     | 342.9        | 215.9                  | Yes                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| I-LGL   | 345          | 215                    | No                   | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| Free    | 182 to 487.7 | 100 to 297             | Yes                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            |                |

| Type    | Size                        | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |    |
|---------|-----------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|----|
|         |                             |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |    |
| Label 1 | Free (Long length)          | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|         | Custom size 0-1             | 148 to 487.7           | 100 to 139.6         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|         | Custom size 0-2             | 148 to 181.9           | 139.7 to 297         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|         | Custom size 1-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            | No |
|         | Custom size 1-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            | No |
|         | Custom size 1-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            | No |
|         | Custom size 2-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            | No |
|         | Custom size 2-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            | No |
|         | Custom size 2-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            | No |
|         | Custom size 3-1             | 182 to 209.9           | 210 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            | No |
|         | Custom size 3-2             | 210 to 431.8           | 210 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            | No |
|         | Custom size 3-3             | 431.9 to 487.7         | 210 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            | No |
|         | Custom size 4 (long length) | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | Yes *1             | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |

| Type         | Size    | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|--------------|---------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|              |         |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Bond paper 1 | A3      | 420                    | 297                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|              | B4      | 364                    | 257                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|              | A4R     | 297                    | 210                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|              | A4      | 210                    | 297                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|              | B5R     | 257                    | 182                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|              | B5      | 182                    | 257                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|              | A5      | 148                    | 210                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|              | A5R     | 210                    | 148                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|              | A6R     | 148                    | 105                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|              | 11 x 17 | 431.8                  | 279.4                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|              | LGL     | 355.6                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|              | LTR     | 215.9                  | 279.4                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|              | LTRR    | 279.4                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|              | STMTR   | 215.9                  | 139.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|              | SRA3    | 450                    | 320                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|              | 12 x 18 | 457.2                  | 304.8                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|              | EXEC    | 184.1                  | 266.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
| OFICIO       | 317.5   | 215.9                  | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| E-OFCIO      | 320     | 220                    | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |

| Type                        | Size               | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|                             |                    |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Bond paper 1                | B-OFI-CIO          | 355                    | 216                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | M-OFI-CIO          | 341                    | 216                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | A-OFI-CIO          | 340                    | 220                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | A-LTR              | 220                    | 280                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | A-LTRR             | 280                    | 220                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | GLTR-R             | 266.7                  | 203.2                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | GLTR               | 203.2                  | 266.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | GLGL               | 330.2                  | 203.2                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | AFLS               | 337                    | 206                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | FLS                | 330.2                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | 13 x 19            | 482.6                  | 330.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | K8                 | 390                    | 270                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | K16                | 195                    | 270                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | K16R               | 270                    | 195                  | No                 | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | F4A                | 342.9                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | I-LGL              | 345                    | 215                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Free               | 182 to 487.7           | 100 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | Free (Long length) | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | Custom size 0-1    | 148 to 487.7           | 100 to 139.6         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | Custom size 0-2    | 148 to 181.9           | 139.7 to 297         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | Custom size 1-1    | 182 to 209.9           | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Custom size 1-2    | 210 to 431.8           | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Custom size 1-3    | 431.9 to 487.7         | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Custom size 2-1    | 182 to 209.9           | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Custom size 2-2    | 210 to 431.8           | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Custom size 2-3    | 431.9 to 487.7         | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Custom size 3-1    | 182 to 209.9           | 210 to 297           | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
| Custom size 3-2             | 210 to 431.8       | 210 to 297             | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| Custom size 3-3             | 431.9 to 487.7     | 210 to 297             | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| Custom size 4 (long length) | 487.8 to 630       | 100 to 297             | Yes *1               | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            |                |

| Type                           | Size            | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |    |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|----|
|                                |                 |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |    |
| Postcard<br>4 on 1<br>postcard | Postcard        | 148                    | 100                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             | No |
|                                | Reply Postcard  | 200                    | 148                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            | No |
|                                | 4 on 1 postcard | 200                    | 296                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | Yes            | No |

| Type  | Size | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|-------|------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|       |      |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Tab 1 | A4   | 210                    | 297                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|       | LTR  | 215.9                  | 279.4                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |

| Type             | Size | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |    |
|------------------|------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|----|
|                  |      |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |    |
| Pre-Punched<br>1 | A4   | 210                    | 297                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            | No |
|                  | LTR  | 215.9                  | 279.4                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            | No |

| Type        | Size      | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|-------------|-----------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|             |           |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Letter-head | A3        | 420                    | 297                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|             | B4        | 364                    | 257                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|             | A4R       | 297                    | 210                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|             | A4        | 210                    | 297                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|             | B5R       | 257                    | 182                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|             | B5        | 182                    | 257                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|             | A5        | 148                    | 210                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|             | A5R       | 210                    | 148                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|             | A6R       | 148                    | 105                  | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|             | 11 x 17   | 431.8                  | 279.4                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|             | LGL       | 355.6                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|             | LTR       | 215.9                  | 279.4                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes       | Yes        | Yes           | Yes            |
|             | LTRR      | 279.4                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|             | STMTR     | 215.9                  | 139.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|             | SRA3      | 450                    | 320                  | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|             | 12 x 18   | 457.2                  | 304.8                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|             | EXEC      | 184.1                  | 266.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | Yes            |
|             | OFICIO    | 317.5                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|             | E-OFI-CIO | 320                    | 220                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|             | B-OFI-CIO | 355                    | 216                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
| M-OFI-CIO   | 341       | 216                    | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| A-OFI-CIO   | 340       | 220                    | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| A-LTR       | 220       | 280                    | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| A-LTRR      | 280       | 220                    | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |



| Type                        | Size               | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) | Pickup position    |            |            |            |           |            |               |                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------|
|                             |                    |                        |                      | Multi-purpose Tray | Cassette 3 | Cassette 4 | Right Deck | Left Deck | Paper Deck | POD Deck Lite | Insertion Unit |
| Letter-head                 | GLTR-R             | 266.7                  | 203.2                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | GLTR               | 203.2                  | 266.7                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | GLGL               | 330.2                  | 203.2                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | AFLS               | 337                    | 206                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | FLS                | 330.2                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | 13 x 19            | 482.6                  | 330.2                | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | K8                 | 390                    | 270                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | K16                | 195                    | 270                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | K16R               | 270                    | 195                  | No                 | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | F4A                | 342.9                  | 215.9                | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | I-LGL              | 345                    | 215                  | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Free               | 182 to 487.7           | 100 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | Free (Long length) | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 297           | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | Custom size 0-1    | 148 to 487.7           | 100 to 139.6         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | Custom size 0-2    | 148 to 181.9           | 139.7 to 297         | Yes                | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            | No             |
|                             | Custom size 1-1    | 182 to 209.9           | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Custom size 1-2    | 210 to 431.8           | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Custom size 1-3    | 431.9 to 487.7         | 139.7 to 181.9       | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Custom size 2-1    | 182 to 209.9           | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Custom size 2-2    | 210 to 431.8           | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Custom size 2-3    | 431.9 to 487.7         | 182 to 209.9         | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Custom size 3-1    | 182 to 209.9           | 210 to 297           | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
|                             | Custom size 3-2    | 210 to 431.8           | 210 to 297           | Yes                | Yes        | Yes        | No         | No        | No         | Yes           | No             |
| Custom size 3-3             | 431.9 to 487.7     | 210 to 297             | Yes                  | Yes                | Yes        | No         | No         | No        | Yes        | No            |                |
| Custom size 4 (long length) | 487.8 to 630       | 100 to 297             | Yes *1               | No                 | No         | No         | No         | No        | No         | No            |                |

\*1: It is necessary to set "1" in the following service mode (Lv.2).

COPIER > OPTION > USER > MF-LG-ST

\*2: It is necessary to set "1" in the following service mode (Lv.2).

COPIER > OPTION > USER > FLM-DSPL

\*3: Envelopes are not supported as a paper type.

### Custom size paper

See the table below for the custom paper size.

#### Size of Custom Size Paper

| Size | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) |
|------|------------------------|----------------------|
| Free | 182 to 487.7           | 100 to 330.2         |

| Size                           | Feeding direction (mm) | Width direction (mm) |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| Free (Long length)             | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 330.2         |
| Custom size 0-1                | 148 to 181.9           | 100 to 139.6         |
| Custom size 0-2                | 148 to 181.9           | 139.7 to 330.2       |
| Custom size 0-3                | 182 to 487.7           | 100 to 139.6         |
| Custom size 1-1                | 182 to 209.9           | 139.7 to 181.9       |
| Custom size 1-2                | 210 to 279.3           | 139.7 to 181.9       |
| Custom size 1-3                | 279.4 to 431.8         | 139.7 to 181.9       |
| Custom size 1-4                | 431.9 to 457.2         | 139.7 to 181.9       |
| Custom size 1-5                | 457.3 to 487.7         | 139.7 to 181.9       |
| Custom size 2-1                | 182 to 209.9           | 182 to 209.9         |
| Custom size 2-2                | 210 to 279.3           | 182 to 209.9         |
| Custom size 2-3                | 279.4 to 431.8         | 182 to 209.9         |
| Custom size 2-4                | 431.9 to 457.2         | 182 to 209.9         |
| Custom size 2-5                | 457.3 to 487.7         | 182 to 209.9         |
| Custom size 3-1                | 182 to 209.9           | 210 to 297           |
| Custom size 3-2                | 210 to 279.3           | 210 to 297           |
| Custom size 3-3                | 279.4 to 431.8         | 210 to 297           |
| Custom size 3-4                | 431.9 to 457.2         | 210 to 297           |
| Custom size 3-5                | 457.3 to 487.7         | 210 to 297           |
| Custom size 4-1                | 182 to 209.9           | 297.1 to 304.8       |
| Custom size 4-2                | 210 to 279.3           | 297.1 to 304.8       |
| Custom size 4-4                | 279.4 to 363.9         | 297.1 to 304.8       |
| Custom size 4-5                | 364 to 431.8           | 297.1 to 304.8       |
| Custom size 4-6                | 431.9 to 457.2         | 297.1 to 304.8       |
| Custom size 4-7                | 457.3 to 487.7         | 297.1 to 304.8       |
| Custom size 5-1                | 182 to 209.9           | 304.9 to 320         |
| Custom size 5-2                | 210 to 279.3           | 304.9 to 320         |
| Custom size 5-3                | 279.4 to 363.9         | 304.9 to 320         |
| Custom size 5-4                | 364 to 431.8           | 304.9 to 320         |
| Custom size 5-5                | 431.9 to 487.7         | 304.9 to 320         |
| Custom size 6-1                | 182 to 209.9           | 320.1 to 330.2       |
| Custom size 6-2                | 210 to 279.3           | 320.1 to 330.2       |
| Custom size 6-3                | 279.4 to 363.9         | 320.1 to 330.2       |
| Custom size 6-4                | 364 to 431.8           | 320.1 to 330.2       |
| Custom size 6-5                | 431.9 to 487.7         | 320.1 to 330.2       |
| Custom size 7 (long length) *1 | 487.8 to 630           | 100 to 330.2         |

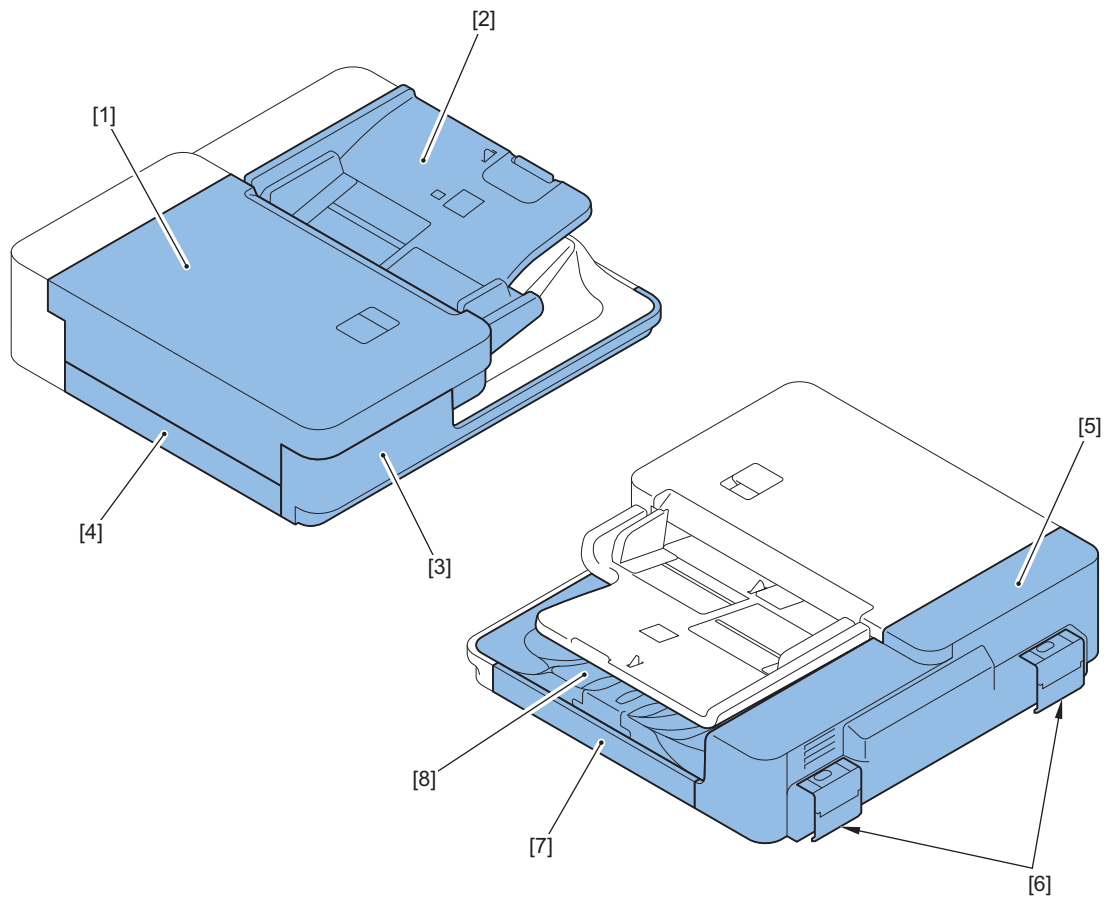
\*1: It is necessary to set "1" in the following service mode (Lv.2).

COPIER > OPTION > USER > MF-LG-ST

## External View

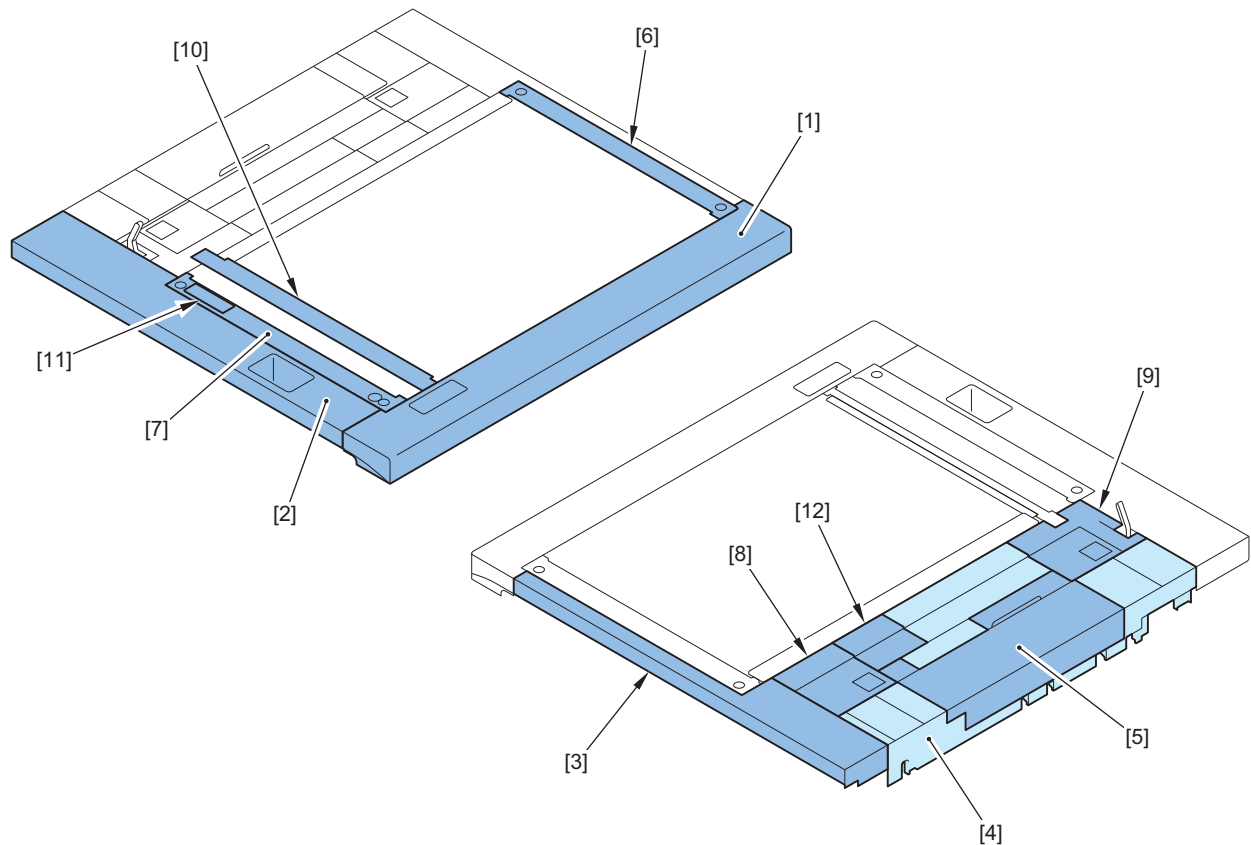
### External Cover

#### ADF



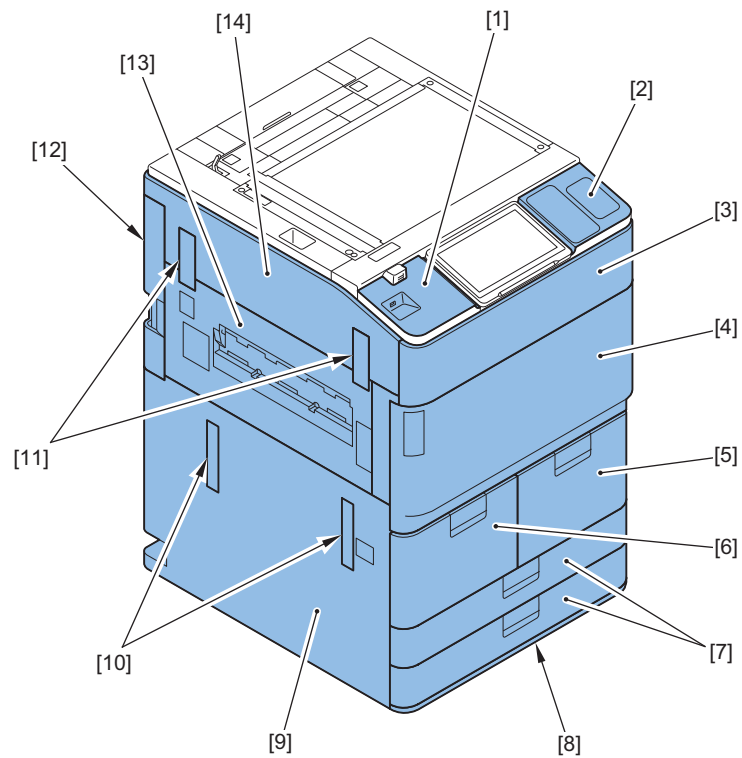
| No. | Name                 |  |
|-----|----------------------|--|
| [1] | Open/Close Cover     |  |
| [2] | Document Tray        |  |
| [3] | ADF Front Cover      |  |
| [4] | ADF Left Lower Cover |  |
| [5] | ADF Rear Cover       |  |
| [6] | Hinge Cover          |  |
| [7] | ADF Right Cover      |  |
| [8] | Delivery Tray        |  |

## ■ Reader

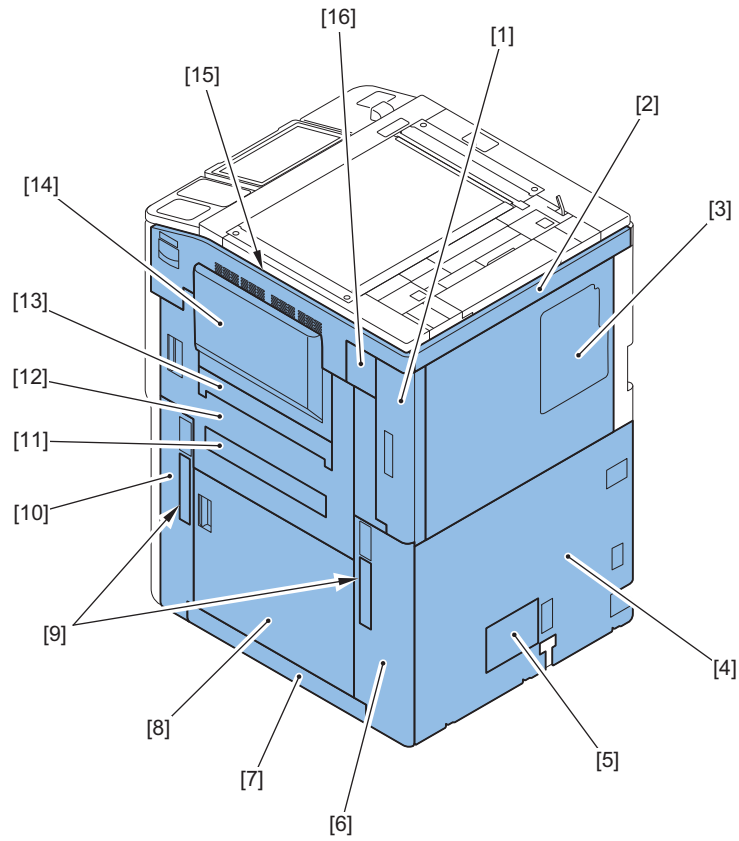


| No.  | Name                       |  |
|------|----------------------------|--|
| [1]  | Reader Front Cover         |  |
| [2]  | Reader Left Cover          |  |
| [3]  | Reader Right Cover         |  |
| [4]  | Reader Rear Cover          |  |
| [5]  | Maintenance Cover          |  |
| [6]  | Glass Retainer Right Cover |  |
| [7]  | Glass Retainer Left Cover  |  |
| [8]  | Right Hinge Lower Cover    |  |
| [9]  | Left Hinge Lower Cover     |  |
| [10] | Jump Guide                 |  |
| [11] | Left Upper Cover           |  |
| [12] | Maintenance Cover (Upper)  |  |

## ■ Printer

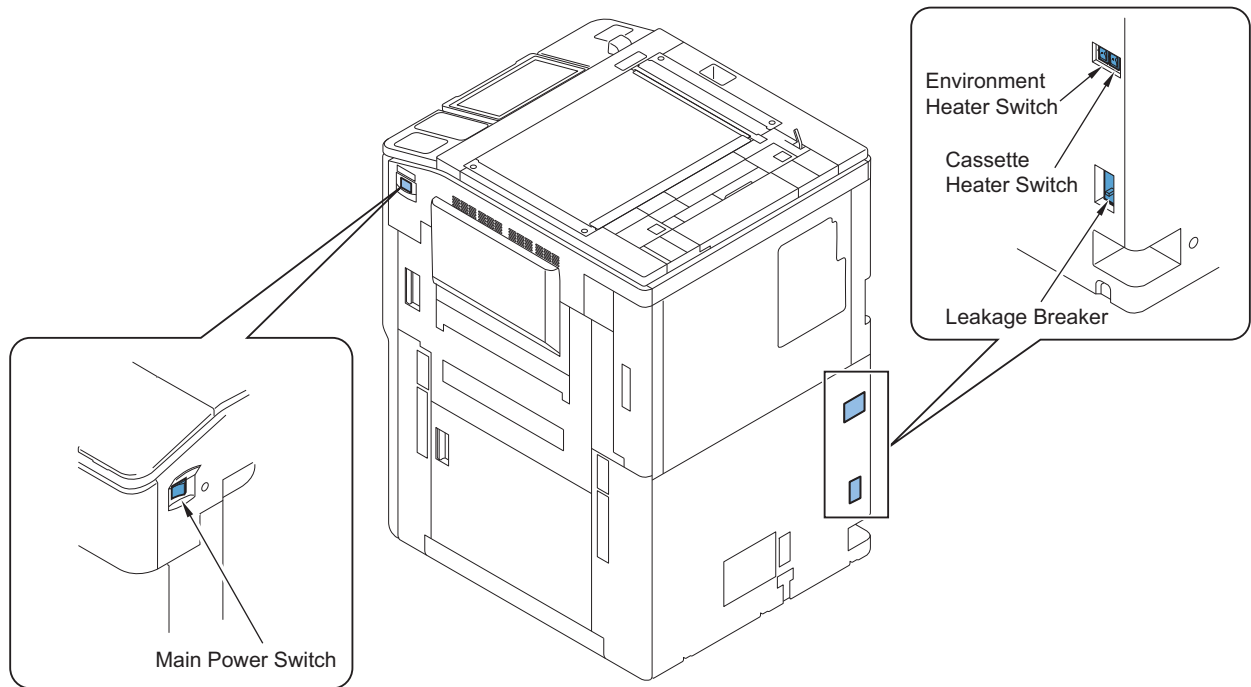


| No.  | Name                            |  |
|------|---------------------------------|--|
| [1]  | Control Panel Left Upper Cover  |  |
| [2]  | Control Panel Right Upper Cover |  |
| [3]  | Toner Replacement Cover         |  |
| [4]  | Front Cover                     |  |
| [5]  | Deck Right Cover                |  |
| [6]  | Deck Left Cover                 |  |
| [7]  | Cassette Front Cover            |  |
| [8]  | Cassette Lower Cover            |  |
| [9]  | Left Lower Cover                |  |
| [10] | Handle Cover                    |  |
| [11] | Finisher Connector Cover        |  |
| [12] | Left Rear Cover                 |  |
| [13] | Delivery Cover                  |  |
| [14] | Left Upper Cover                |  |



| No.  | Name                         |  |
|------|------------------------------|--|
| [1]  | Box Right Cover              |  |
| [2]  | Box Upper Cover              |  |
| [3]  | Rear Upper Cover             |  |
| [4]  | Rear Lower Cover             |  |
| [5]  | Filter Cover                 |  |
| [6]  | Waste Toner Container Cover  |  |
| [7]  | Right Lower Middle Cover     |  |
| [8]  | Vertical Path Cover          |  |
| [9]  | Handle Cover                 |  |
| [10] | Right Lower Front Cover      |  |
| [11] | Duplex Delivery Cover        |  |
| [12] | Right Door                   |  |
| [13] | Multi-purpose Tray Sub Cover |  |
| [14] | Multi-purpose Tray           |  |
| [15] | Right Upper Cover            |  |
| [16] | Right Rear Cover             |  |

## ■ Switches, I/F, Others

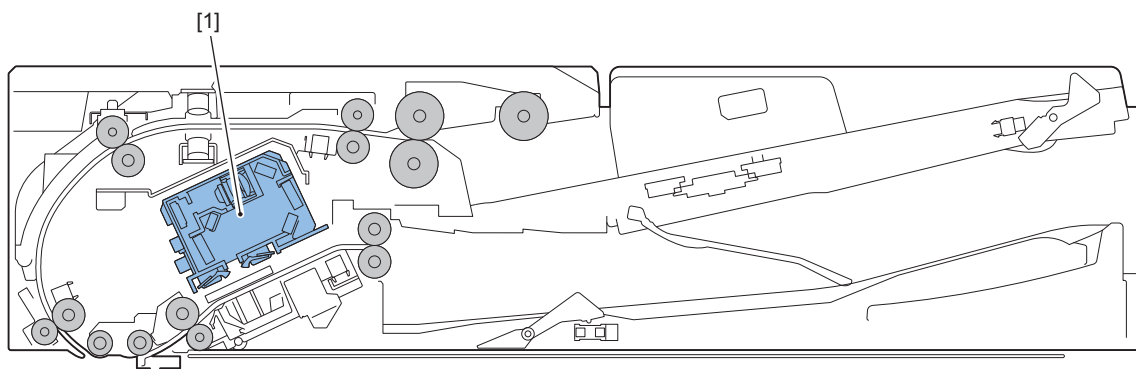


Be sure to perform the following procedure for checking the Leakage Breaker.

1. Turn OFF the main power and check that the Control Panel LED is off.
2. Using a pen point, press the test button of the breaker on the rear side of the host machine.
3. Check that the breaker switch is OFF ("o" side).
4. Return the breaker switch to ON ("I" side).
5. Turn ON the main power.

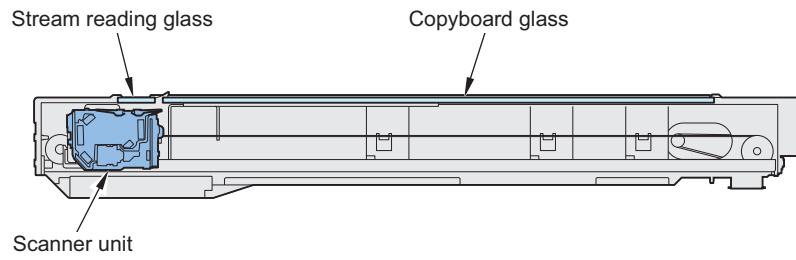
## ● Cross Section View

### ■ DADF

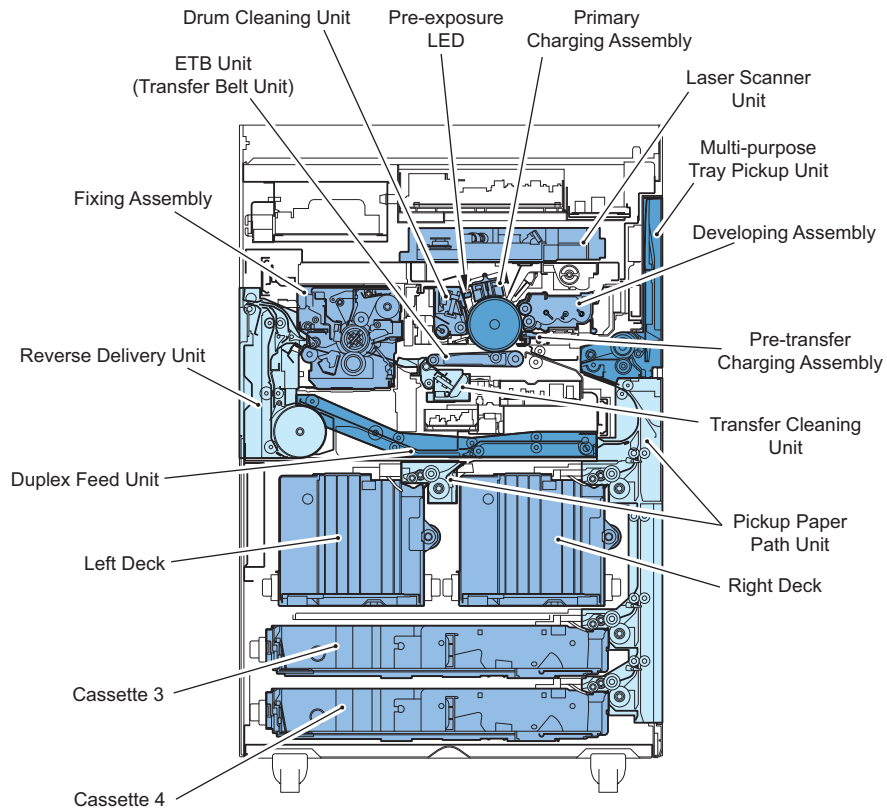


| Key No. | Name         |
|---------|--------------|
| [1]     | Scanner Unit |

■ Reader



■ Printer





## Operation

### Power Switch

#### Types of Power Switches

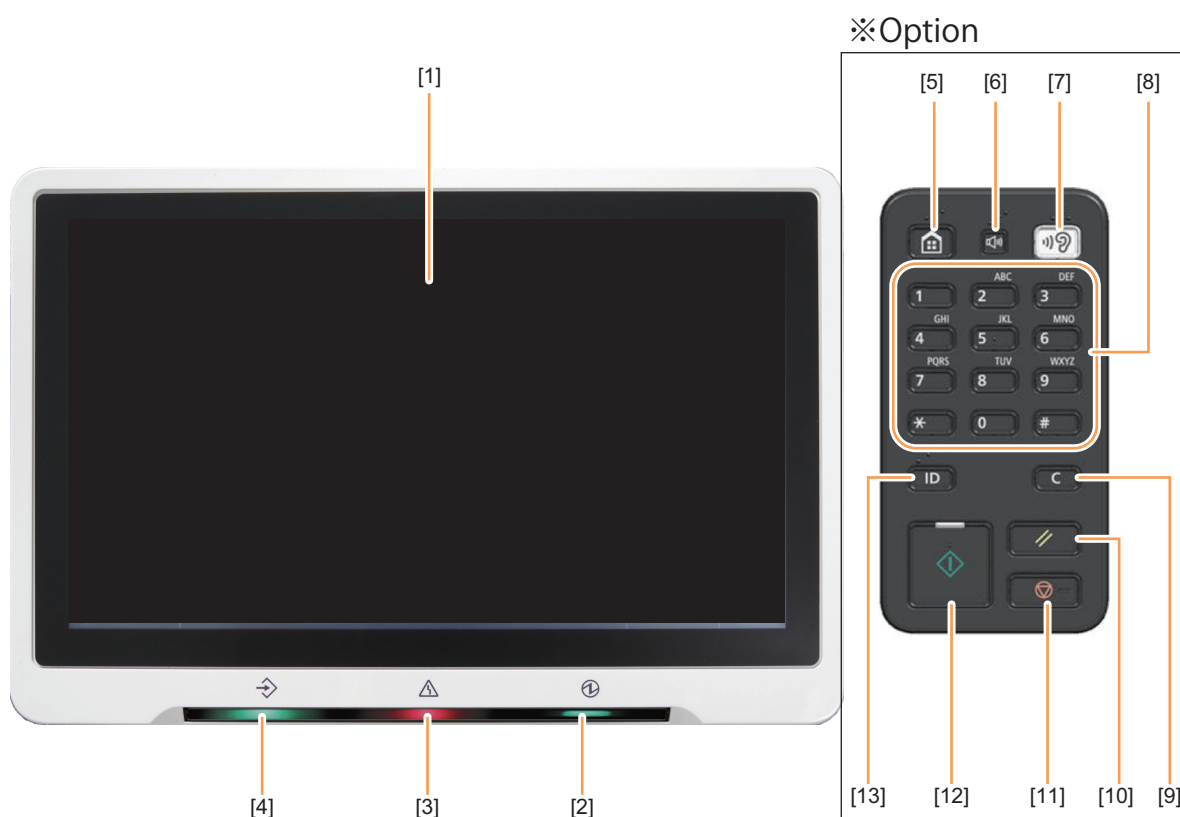
This machine has the Main Power Switch, the Control Panel Power Switch and the Environment Heater Switch. Turning ON the Main Power Switch supplies the power in the usual case (except when the machine is in sleep mode). The Environment Switch supplies or blocks the power to the Drum Heater, the Cassette Heater and the Reader Heater.

#### Points to Note on Turning ON/OFF the Power Switch

- Do not turn OFF the Main Power Switch while the progress bar (to be displayed when the power is turned ON) is displayed, which indicates access to the HDD.
- Be sure to turn OFF the Main Power Switch to cut the power (there is no need to perform the shutdown sequence which has been performed with the conventional machines).
- After turning OFF the power (after turning OFF the Main Power Switch), do not turn ON the Main Power Switch unless the screen disappears.
- Do not turn OFF the power during downloading.

### Control Panel

#### Control Panel + Numeric Keypad (Option)



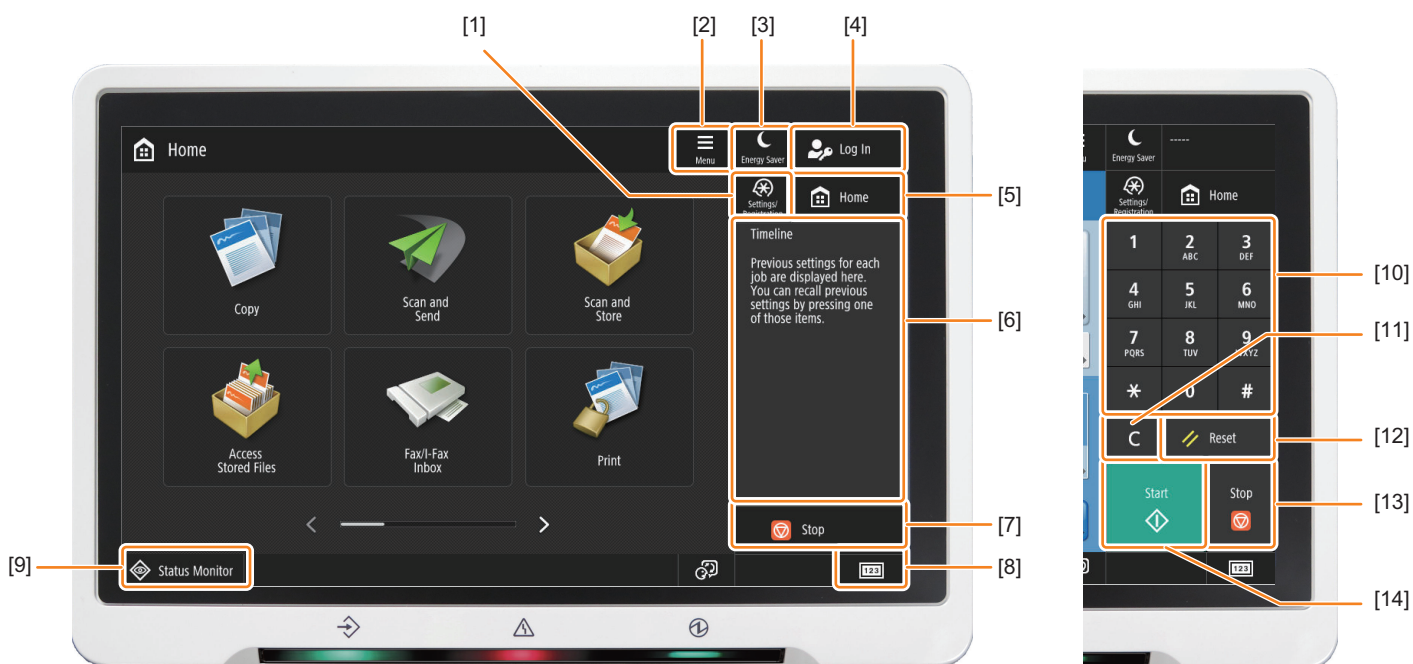
**NOTE:**

The Numeric Keypad at the right side of above figure is optional.

| No. | Name                |
|-----|---------------------|
| [1] | Touch Panel Display |
| [2] | Main Power LED      |
| [3] | Error LED           |

| No.  | Name                    |
|------|-------------------------|
| [4]  | Memory LED              |
| [5]  | [Home] key              |
| [6]  | [Volume Adjustment] key |
| [7]  | [Voice Guide Mode] key  |
| [8]  | Numeric key             |
| [9]  | [Clear] key             |
| [10] | [Reset] key             |
| [11] | [Stop] key              |
| [12] | [Start] key             |
| [13] | [Authentication] key    |

## ■ Main Menu



| No.  | Name                  |
|------|-----------------------|
| [1]  | Settings/Registration |
| [2]  | Menu                  |
| [3]  | Energy Saver          |
| [4]  | Login                 |
| [5]  | Home                  |
| [6]  | Timeline              |
| [7]  | Stop                  |
| [8]  | Counter               |
| [9]  | Status Check          |
| [10] | Numeric keys          |
| [11] | Clear                 |
| [12] | Reset                 |
| [13] | Stop                  |
| [14] | Start                 |

# 2

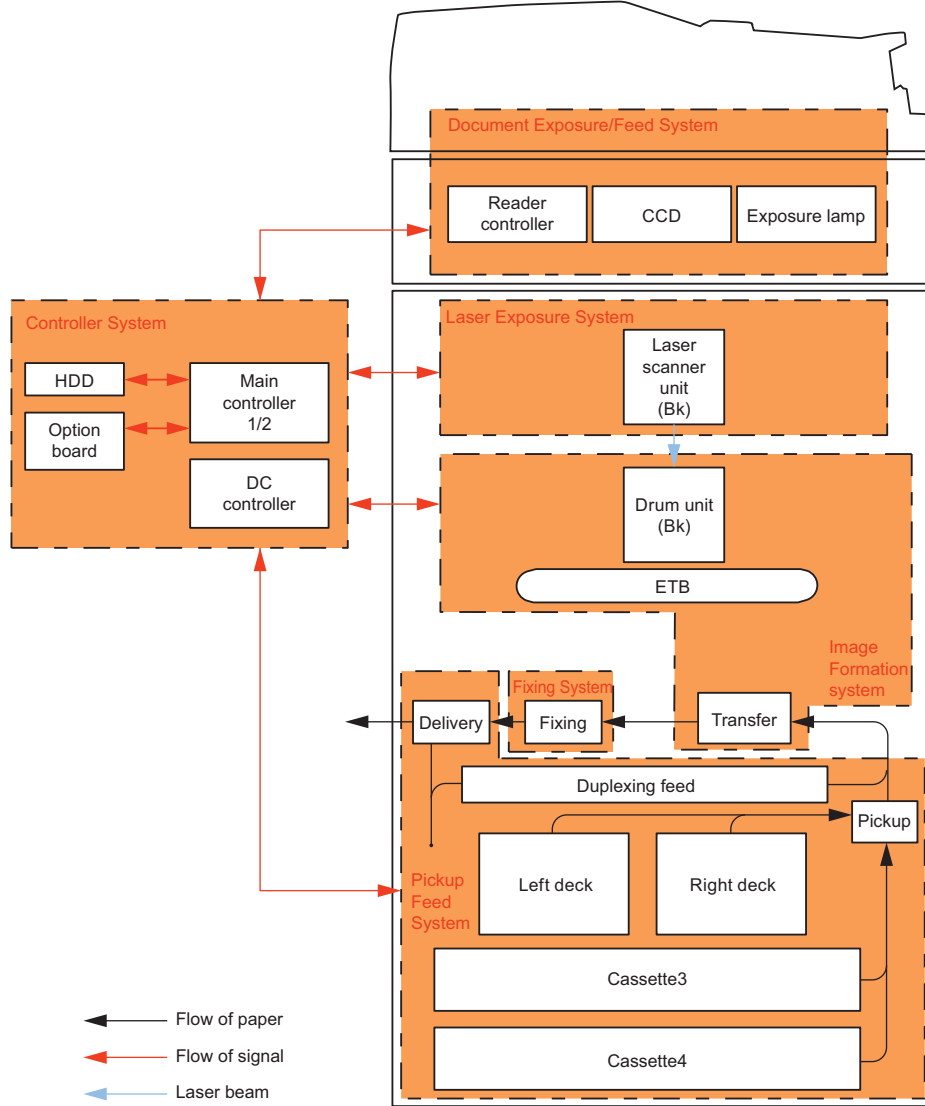
## Technical Explanation (Device)

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Basic Configuration.....                    | 45  |
| Original Exposure System (Reader)...        | 46  |
| Original Feed System (Single Pass ADF)..... | 59  |
| Main Controller.....                        | 82  |
| Laser Exposure System.....                  | 86  |
| Image Formation System.....                 | 93  |
| Fixing System.....                          | 138 |
| Pickup / Feed System.....                   | 153 |
| External Auxiliary System.....              | 187 |

# Basic Configuration

## Functional Configuration

The machine may broadly be divided into the following functional system blocks; document exposure/feed system block, controller system block, laser exposure system block, image formation system block, fixing system block and pickup/feed system block.



## Original Exposure System (Reader)

### Features

- Double Feed Sensor installed as standard  
Double feed detection during paper feed has been realized by the ultrasonic sensor on the feeding path.

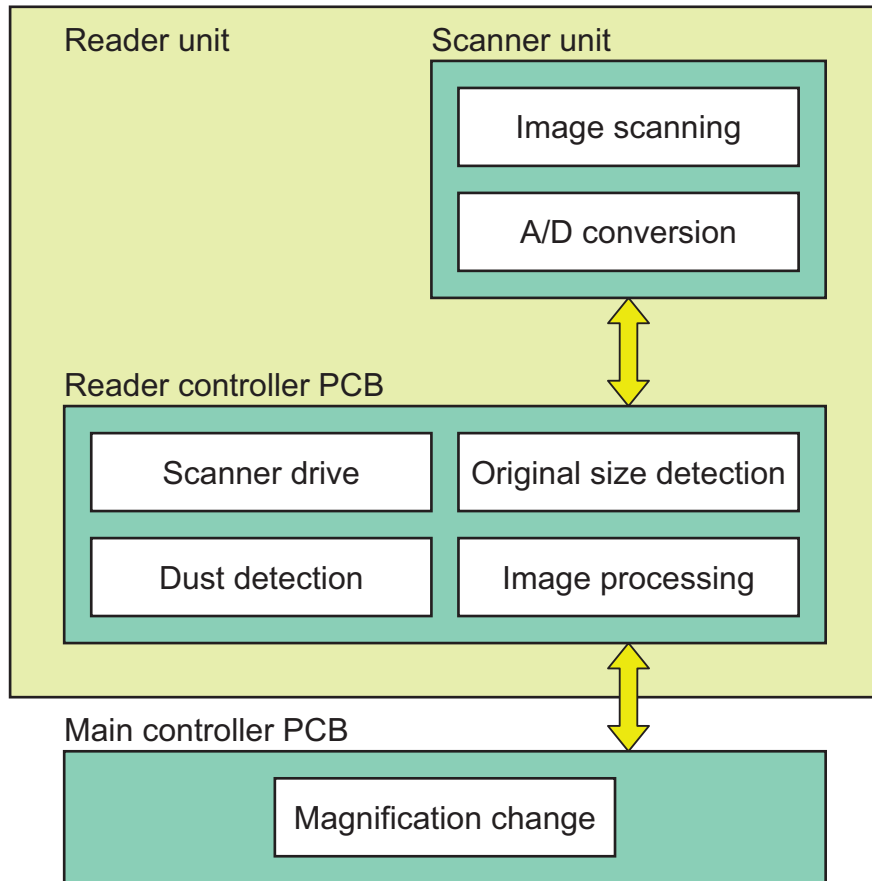
### Specifications

| Item                                  | Specification/Function                      | Remark  |
|---------------------------------------|---|---|
| Photo conductor                       | White high luminance LED + Reflection Plate | -   |
| Scanning of original                  | At copyboard reading                        | Scanning by moving Scanner Unit   |
|                                       | When using the DADF                         | Stream scanning of the original with the Scanner Unit fixed                           |
| Reading resolution                    | 600 dpi x 600 dpi                           | SEND: 300 x 300 dpi   |
| Number of gradations                  | 256 gradations                              | -   |
| Carriage position detection           | Scanner Unit Home Position Sensor (PS103)   | -   |
| Magnification Ratio                   | 25 % to 400 %                               | Digital magnification   |
|                                       | Horizontal scanning direction               | Image processing by the Main Controller PCB   |
|                                       | Vertical scanning direction                 | Image processing by the Main Controller PCB   |
| Number of lines of the Reading Sensor | 4 lines (R, G, B, B/W)                      | -   |
| Original size detection               | At copyboard reading                        | Horizontal scanning: Detection by the Reading Sensor (Scanner Unit)                   |
|                                       |   | Vertical scanning: Detection by the Reflection Sensor (Original Size Sensor)          |
|                                       | When using the DADF                         | Horizontal scanning: Detection by original width volume on the DADF/Photo Interrupter |
|                                       |   | Horizontal scanning: Detection by the Photo Interrupter on DADF                       |
| Maximum original size                 | At copyboard reading                        | 297 mm x 431.8 mm   |
|                                       | When using the DADF                         | 304.8 mm x 630 mm   |
| Option                                | Reader Heater                               | -   |

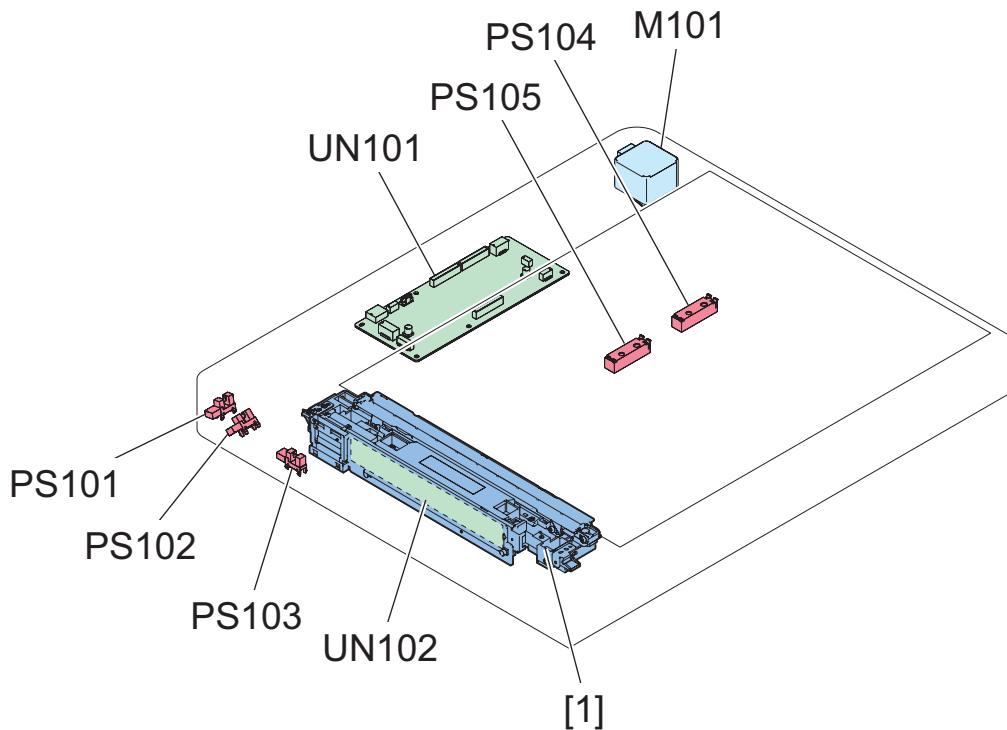
### Basic configuration

#### ■ Function configuration

Following is the list of functions.



■ Parts Configuration



| Symbol | Name                              | Function/Specification                            |
|--------|-----------------------------------|---|
| M101   | Scanner Motor                     | 2-phase Pulse Motor: Pulse control                |
| PS101  | DADF Open/Close Sensor 1          | DADF open/close detection (at 5 degrees)          |
| PS102  | DADF Open/Close Sensor 2          | DADF open/close detection (at 15 degrees)         |
| PS103  | Scanner Unit Home Position Sensor | Scanner Unit home position detection              |
| PS104  | Original Size Sensor 1            | Size detection in the vertical scanning direction |

| Symbol   | Name                    | Function/Specification                            |
|----------|-------------------------|---|
| PS105 *1 | Original Size Sensor 2  | Size detection in the vertical scanning direction |
| UN101    | Reader Controller PCB   | Overall reader control, digital image processing  |
| UN102    | Reader Scanner Unit PCB | Analog image processing                           |
| [1]      | Scanner Unit            | Image reading                                     |

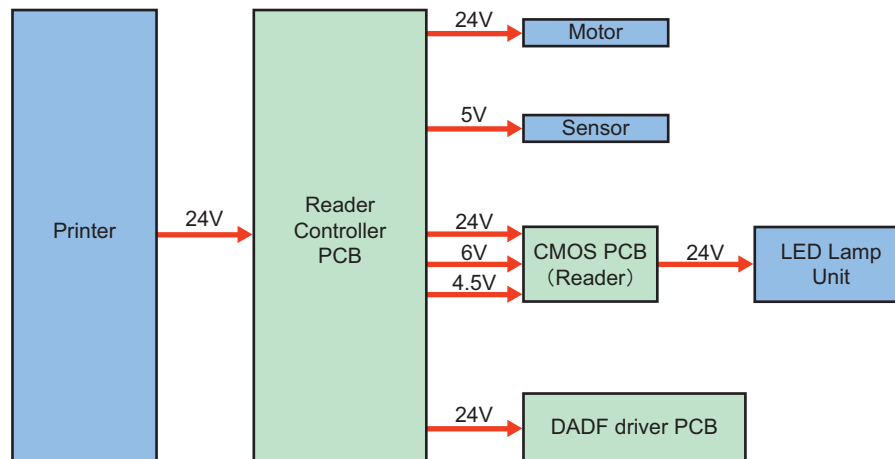
\*1 : Use the AB/INCH type sensor option only when connected.

## ■ Outline of Electric Circuits

This machine is controlled by the Reader Controller PCB.

The Reader Controller PCB also controls DADF Driver PCB and Scanner Unit of DADF.

The relations of the electrical components are shown below.



### <Related error codes>

E270-0001: Communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and Reader Scanner Unit(for paper front)

E270-0101: Communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and Reader Scanner Unit(for paper rear)

E280-0001: Communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and Reader Scanner Unit

E280-0002: Communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and Reader Scanner Unit

E280-0004: Communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and Reader Scanner Unit(for paper front)

E280-0104: Communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and Reader Scanner Unit(for paper rear)

E400-0002: Communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and DADF Driver PCB

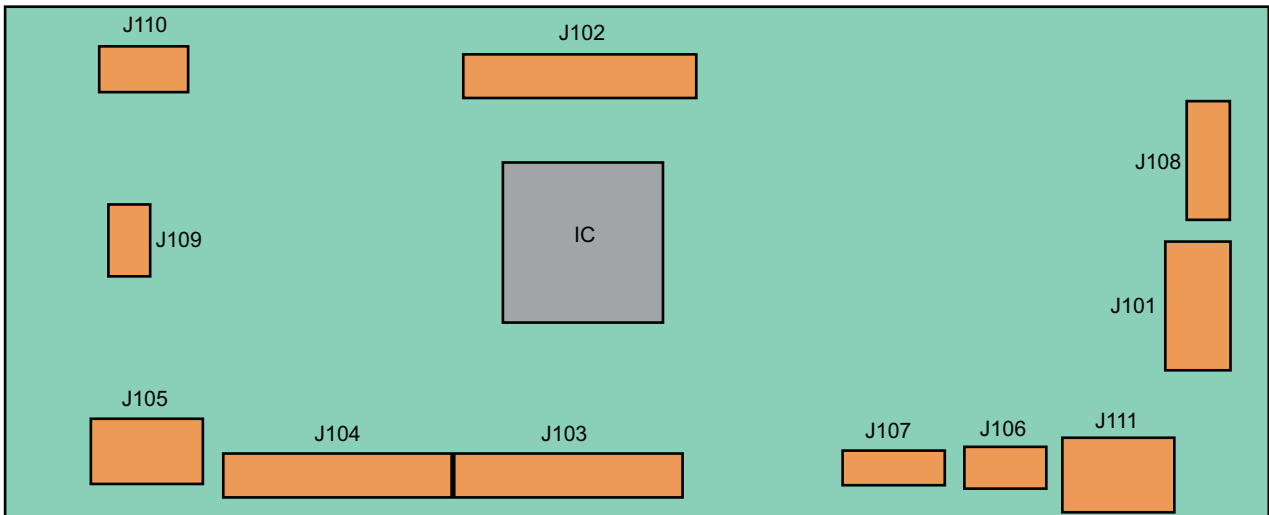
E400-0003: Communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and DADF Driver PCB

E743-0000: Communication error between the Main Controller PCB and Reader Controller PCB

## ■ Reader Controller PCB

The functional configuration of Reader Controller PCB is shown below.

| Jack No. | Connection destination  |
|----------|---|
| J101     | Host machine (for power supply)   |
| J102     | Scanner Unit (Reader)   |
| J103     | Scanner Unit (DADF)   |
| J104     | DADF Driver PCB (for communication)   |
| J105     | DADF Driver PCB (for power supply)  |
| J106     | For R&D use   |
| J107     | For R&D use   |
| J108     | DADF Open/Closed Sensor 1 (PS101)<br>Scanner Unit Home Position Sensor (PS103)<br>DADF Open/Closed Sensor 2 (PS102) |
| J109     | Scanner Motor (M101)  |
| J110     | Original Size Sensor 1 (PS104)<br>Original Size Sensor 2 (PS105)  |
| J111     | Main Controller PCB (for communication)   |



## ■ Scanner Unit

The Scanner Unit consisting of an LED, mirror, lens, and Reading Sensor is used to perform original exposure and reading. Light emitted from LED is reflected by the original and reaches the Reading Sensor through 5 Reflection Mirrors.

### a. LED Lamp Unit

The LED Lamp Unit emits light from the 2 LED Lamp PCBs (with 40 LED chips for each PCB). The emitted light exposes the original via the Reflection Plate.

### b. Reading Sensor

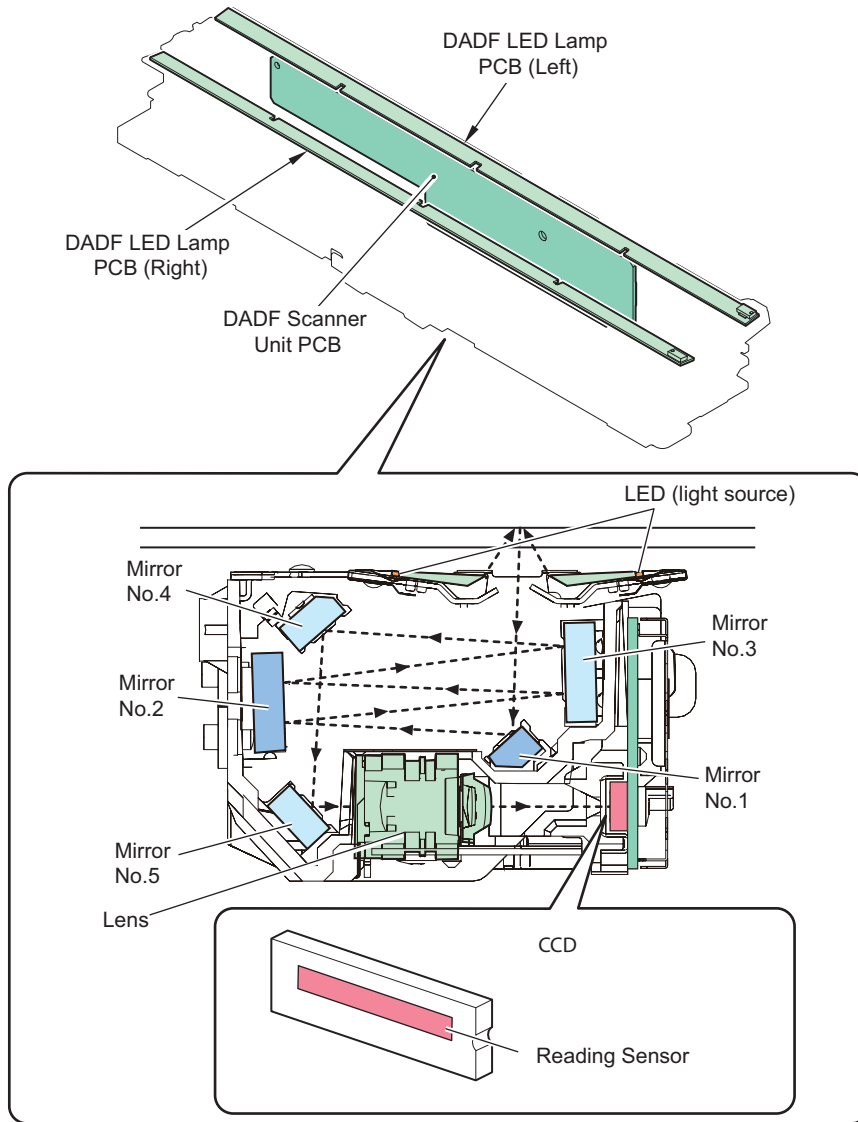
The Reading Sensor receives the light reflected on the original and reads the image.

#### <Related error codes>

E302-0001: Error in paper front white shading

E302-0002: Error in paper front black shading



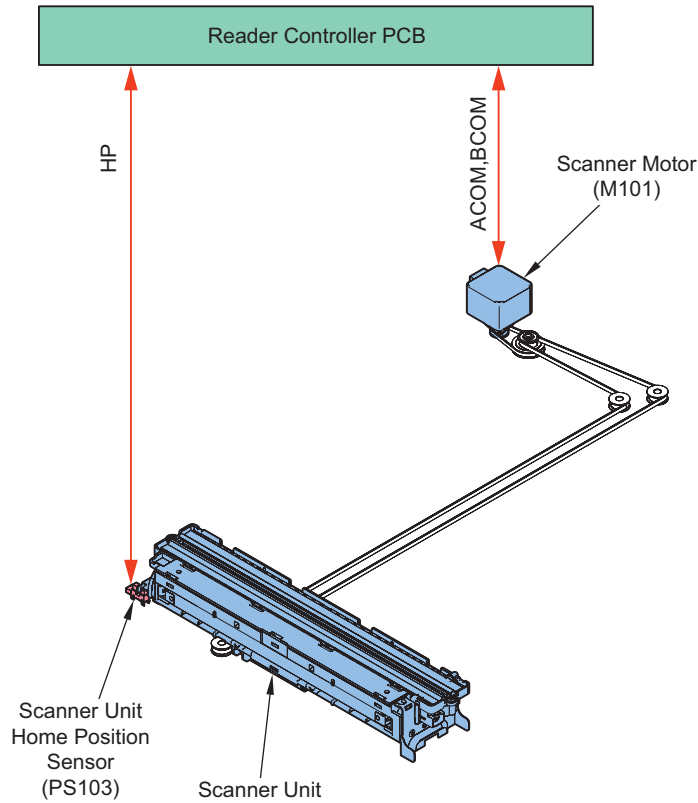


## Controls

### Scanner drive control

#### Drive System Configuration

The following shows component parts of scanner drive system.



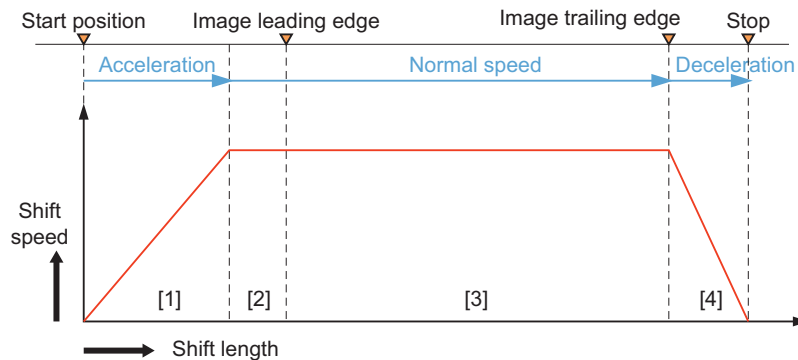
| Code  | Name                              | Functions   |
|-------|-----------------------------------|---|
| M101  | Scanner Motor                     | Controls the motor rotation/stop, rotation direction, and rotation speed. |
| PS103 | Scanner Unit Home Position Sensor | Scanner Unit home position detection                                      |
| -     | Scanner Unit                      | Image reading, analog image processing                                    |

### • Scanner Motor Control

The following shows the control components for the Scanner Motor control.

The Motor Driver on the Reader Controller PCB controls the rotation/stop, rotation direction, and rotation speed of Scanner Motor based on signals from the CPU.

- Reverse operation after scanning image  
After scanning an image, the reverse operation to the shading position of Scanner Unit is controlled at a constant speed regardless of color mode.
- Forward operation when scanning image  
When scanning an image, the operation of Scanner Unit is controlled by the following motor control.



- [1] Acceleration Zone: accelerates to suit the selected mode.
- [2] Approach Zone: moves for speed stabilization.
- [3] Image Read Zone: reads the image at a specific speed.  
(if black-and-white/SEND mode, twice as fast as in full-color mode.)
- [4] Deceleration Zone: past the image trailing edge, immediately decelerates and stops.

#### <Related error codes>

E202-0001: Reader Scanner Unit HP error (outward)

E202-0002: Reader Scanner Unit HP error (homeward)  
 E202-0003: Reader Scanner Unit HP error (at the start of a job)

<Related service modes>

- Adjustment of the start position (vertical scanning direction) at copyboard reading  
 COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-X

■ Original size detection

● Overview

This machine determines the size of an original by the combination of the measurement results of the reflected light at particular points of the Reflection Sensor and Scanner Unit.

Additionally, measurement is performed for each size to perform accurate detection even if an original is moved when the ADF is closed.

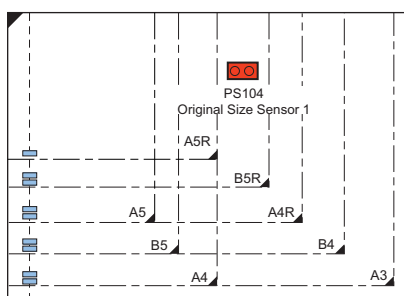
- Horizontal scanning direction: Reading Sensor
- Vertical scanning direction: Reflection Photosensor

● Original Size Detection Position

In horizontal scanning direction, sensor level of each original detection position is measured by moving the Scanner Unit to the detection position shown in the following positions.

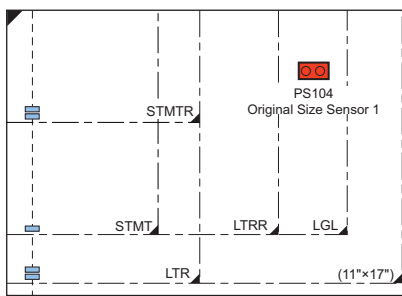
The size in the vertical scanning direction is determined by using sensors installed to the following positions.

A type , AB type



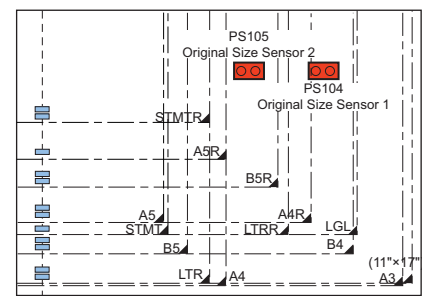
CCD original detection position

INCH type



CCD original detection position

AB type / INCH type



CCD original detection position

The sensor that reacts depends on the destination.

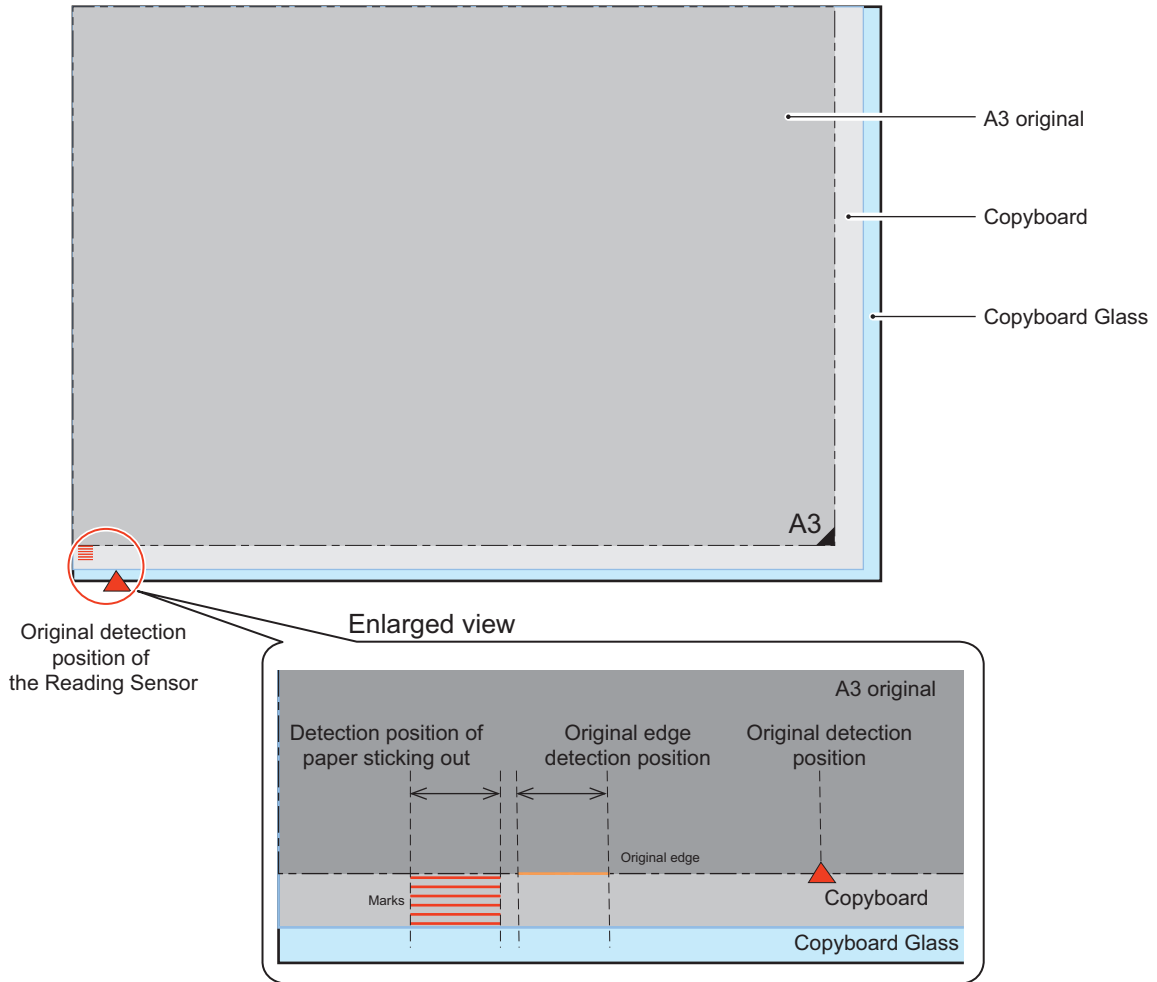
| Type   | Original pattern | No.   |
|--|------------------|-------|
| A type   | AB or INCH       | PS104 |
| AB type  | AB or INCH       | PS104 |
| INCH type  | AB or INCH       | PS104 |
| AB/INCH type *1<br>(Only with sensor option connections) | AB               | PS105 |
|  | INCH             | PS104 |

\*1 : If there is no option connection, the setting is AB or INCH(The presence or absence of option setting depends on the product.).

● Original Protrusion Detection

Marks are inscribed on the Copyboard outside of A3 size. Detection of original edge and detection of marks are successively executed.

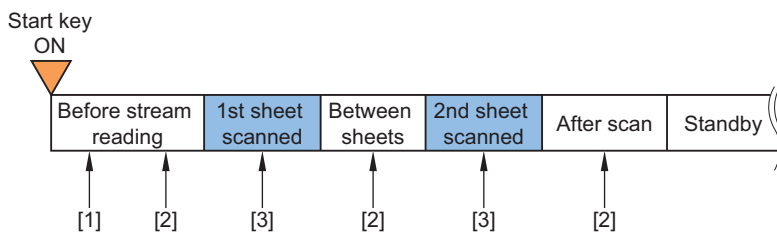
When no mark is detected, the original is identified as "sticking out" and the horizontal scanning direction is set to the maximum size (A3).



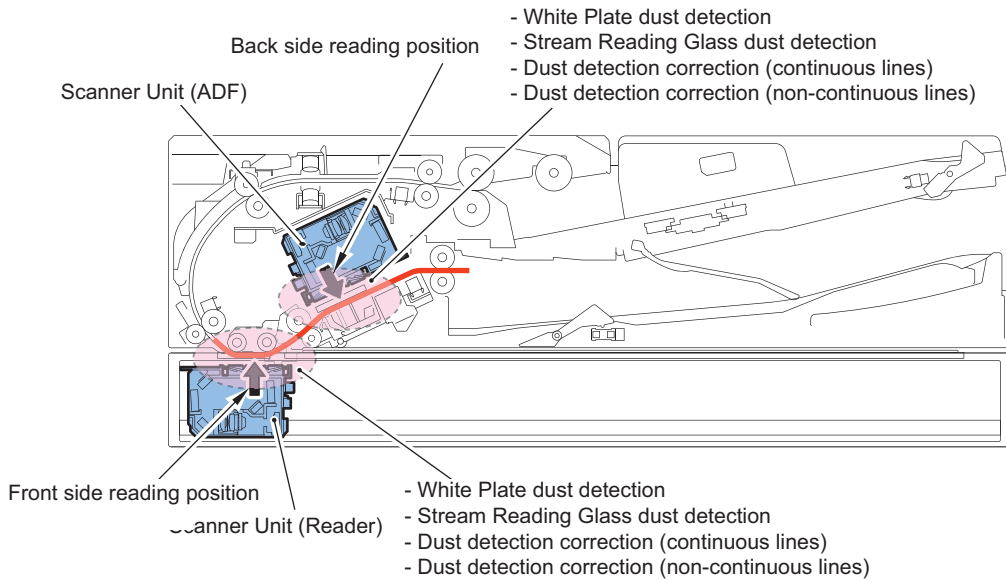
## ■ Dust detection control

### ● Overview

Detection timings of this detection are as follows.



| No. | Details   |
|-----|---|
| [1] | White Plate dust detection control  |
| [2] | Stream Reading Glass/Reading Glass dust detection control, dust detection correction control (continuous lines) |
| [3] | Dust detection correction control (non-continuous lines)  |



### • White Plate Dust Detection Control

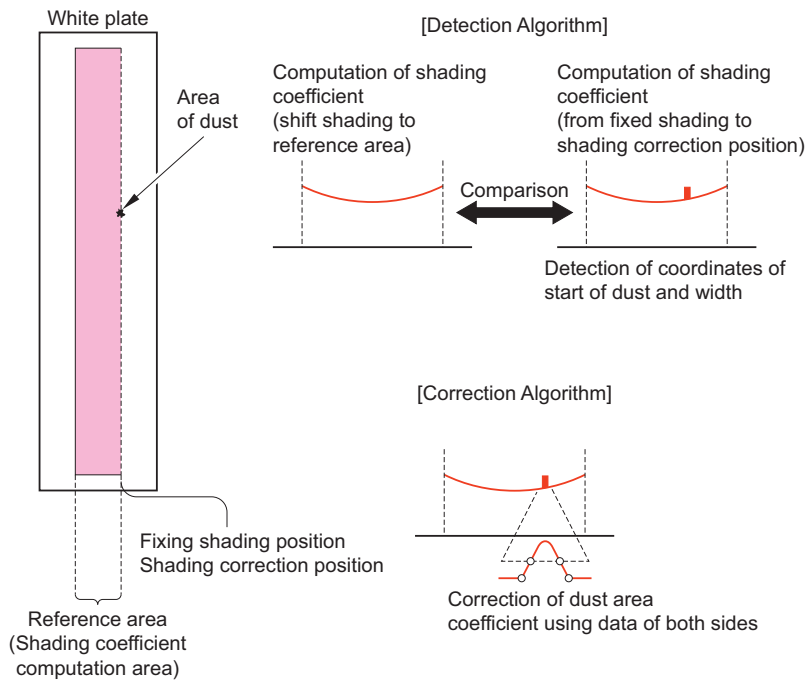
Floating dust inside the Reader may adhere to the White Plate and cause streaks on images. White Plate dust detection and correction are performed to reduce the effect of floating dust.

#### a. White Plate dust detection

Dust on the White Plate is detected and the coordinate and width of dust is detected by comparing the shading coefficient of shift shading and shading coefficient of fixed shading.

#### b. White Plate dust correction

When dust is detected by the White Plate dust detection, shading coefficient of dust area is compensated by coefficient on both sides to reduce the effect of dust. The coefficient after compensating is used for the shading correction. When dust is identified by the White Plate dust detection, shading coefficient of dust area that will be used for shading correction is compensated by coefficient on both sides to reduce the effect of dust. The coefficient after compensating is used for the shading correction.



### • Guide Plate Dust Detection Control

Dust adhering to the Stream Reading Glass and Guide Plate are identified and continuous lines due to dust adhering to the Stream Reading Glass are corrected.

## Dust Detection Control

1. Before the original reaches the Guide Plate, the Guide Plate is scanned and the coordinate and width of dust are detected.
2. When the original reached the Guide Plate, the leading edge of the original is detected.
3. Data scanned before and after the original reached are compared and any data that remained are identified as dust adhering to the Stream Reading Glass and the correction is applied.

## Dust Correction Control

When identified as dust adhering to the Stream Reading Glass, data of dust is recorded for each page.

When outputting recorded pages, the image correction is applied and pages are output.

Lines with the maximum width of 20 pixels can be corrected.

Additionally, if non-continuous lines due to floating dust had occurred, they can be corrected by up to 6 pixels.

## Related service mode

### Adjustment of dust detection level when using DADF (between originals)

- Adjustment of dust detection level when using DADF (between originals)  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-RDR > DFDST-L1
- Adjustment of dust detection level when using DADF (between originals) [back side]  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-RDR > DF2DSTL1

### Adjustment of dust detection level (at initial stream reading)

- Adjustment of dust detection level (at initial stream reading) [front side]  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-RDR > DFDST-L2
- Adjustment of dust detection level (at initial stream reading) [back side]  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-RDR > DF2DSTL2

## Settings/Registration Menu (Reference information)

- On/Off of line-like soiling removal  
[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Common] > [Scan Settings] > [Streak Prevention]

## ■ Blank Paper Detection

This machine can detect blank original included in the data read by stream reading when using the scan function and skip the blank original.

Data read by stream reading is used to perform the blank paper decision by the Image Processing part.

## ■ Magnification change

### ● Magnification change in main scanning direction

In main scanning direction at copy, image is always scanned by 100% size at copyboard scanning and DADF scanning, and then magnification is changed at image processing on the main controller block. At image SEND, reading size is changed in the reader controller PCB by the specified resolution and then magnification is changed at image processing on the main controller block.

#### <Related service mode>

- A fine adjustment of the front side image magnification ratio in horizontal scanning direction at DADF 2-sided reading  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJMSEN1
- A fine adjustment of the back side image magnification ratio in horizontal scanning direction at DADF 2-sided reading  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJMSEN2

### ● Changing the Magnification Ratio in Vertical Scanning Direction

Changing the magnification ratio in the vertical scanning direction when copying is performed by changing the original feed speed, scanning speed, and skipping ratio.

#### CAUTION:

The output side can expand the vertical scan lines by 200% with the ASIC function so the feed speed does not need to be reduced even when the magnification ratio is 100% or greater.

#### <Related service modes>

- Fine adjustment of the image magnification ratio in vertical scanning direction at DADF reading [front side]  
FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPEED

- Fine adjustment of the image magnification ratio in vertical scanning direction at DADF reading [back side]  
FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPD2

## ■ Image Processing

The functions of the PCB related to image processing are shown below:

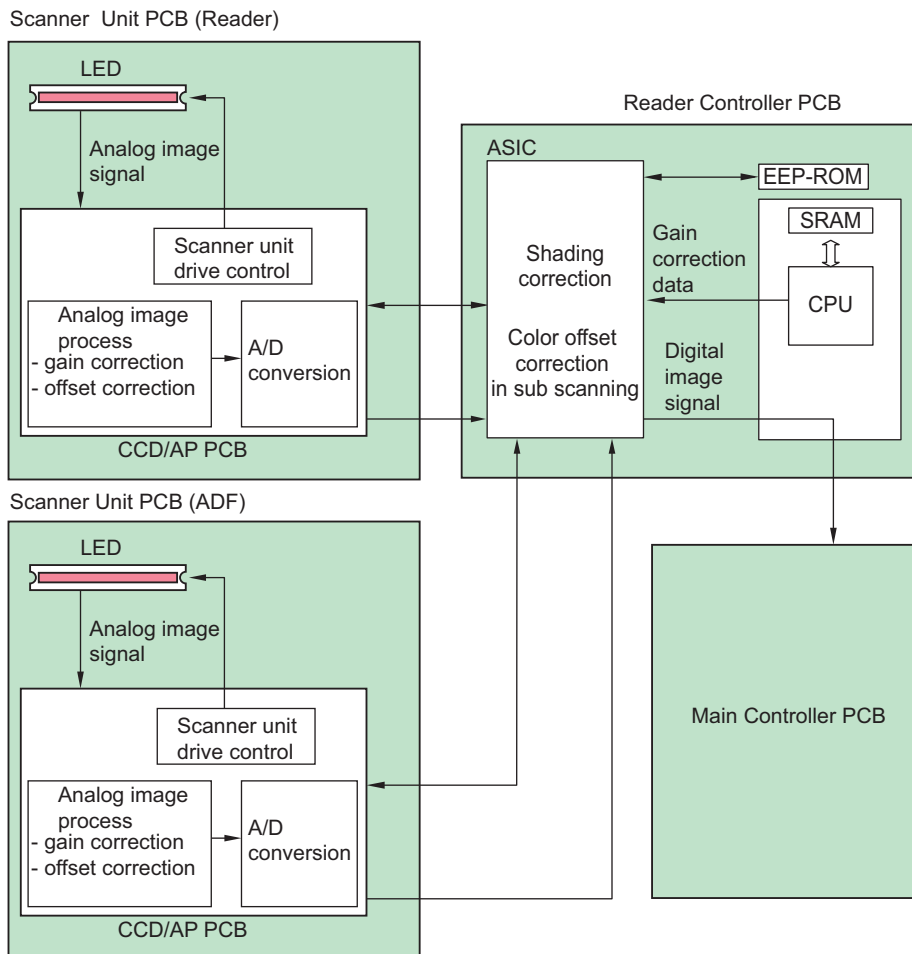
Image processing is performed by the Reader Controller PCB for each line of the images. The main functions are indicated below.

### Reader Controller PCB

- Shading correction
- Color displacement correction in vertical scanning direction

### Scanner Unit PCB (in the Scanner Unit)

- Scanner Unit Drive
- Gain correction of the Reading Sensor output, Offset correction



### ● Scanner Unit Drive

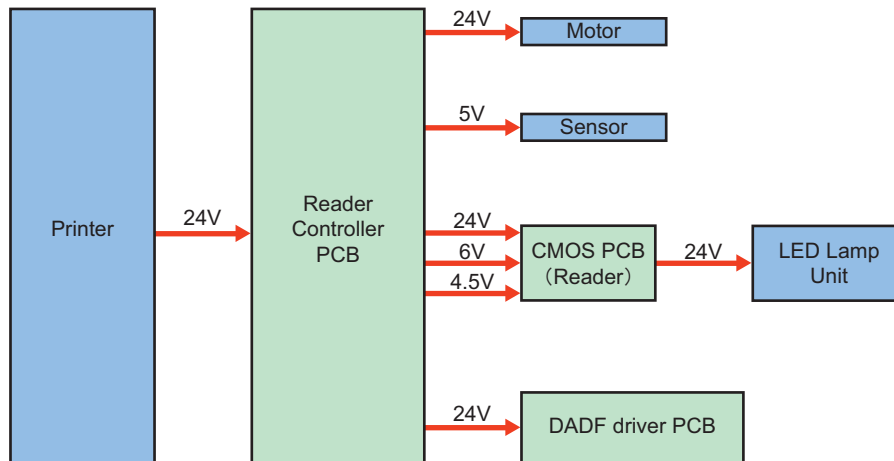
The Reading Sensor included in this equipment is comprised of approx. 7,500 pixels. The signal photoelectrically converted by the light-receiving part is output to the Analog Front-end Circuit on the Scanner Unit PCB.





The 24V power is mainly used for the motor, fan, and the LED Lamp Unit. Additionally, it is supplied to the DADF Driver PCB and Scanner Unit of DADF.

The 5V power is mainly used for the sensors.



**<Related error codes>**

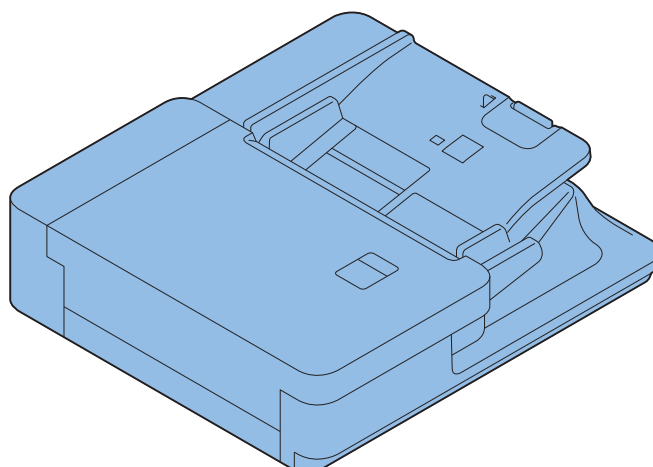
E227-0001: 24V Power Supply error of the Reader Controller PCB

E227-0101: 24V Power Supply error of the DADF Driver PCB

## Original Feed System (Single Pass ADF)

### Features

- Increased productivity (1-side/2-side): 135 ipm/270 ipm (300 dpi)
- Achieved the reduced operation noise by reducing the registration processing
- Support for Thin / Heavy paper: Supports 38 g/m<sup>2</sup> paper stack originals and 160 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup> paper
- Support for small sized paper: Supports 70 mm x 139.7 mm originals
- Increased tray capacity: 250 sheets (64 g/m<sup>2</sup>)
- Enhanced measures against lines at stream reading: Surf clear coat glass, image correction improvement
- Improved copyboard original size detection: Modified to no-dazzling method and improved accuracy of folded paper detection
- Abnormal original detection function: Stops feeding when stapled originals (for example) is detected
- Improved operability by location change of the handle



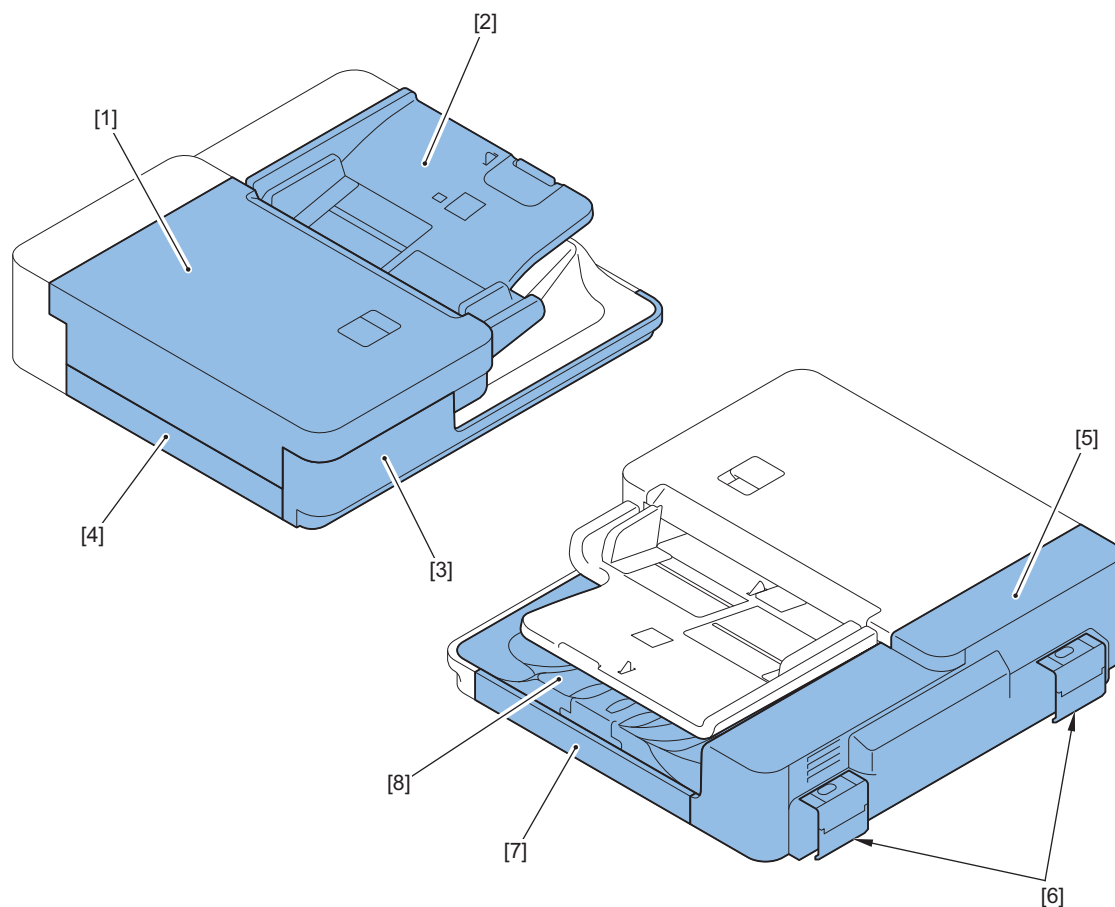
### Specifications

| Item                       | Specifications  | Remark   |
|----------------------------|---|--|
| Document size              | A3R, A4, A4R, A5, A5R, A6R, B4R, B5, B5R, B6R, 11"x17"R, LGLR, LTR, LTRR, STMT, STMT, 8KR, 16K<br><b>Crosstrack</b><br>70.0 mm to 304.8 mm (* 1)(* 2)<br><b>Intrack</b><br>139.7 to 431.8 mm, 431.8 to 990 mm (Long Original) (* 3) | * 1 Max Scanning Width 297 mm<br>* 2 A6R or less(Width):not supprt automatic paper size sensor.<br>* 3 Intrack range depends on the system function  |
| Paper Material             | <b>A/B</b><br>38 to 220 g/m <sup>2</sup> (* 1)(* 2)(* 3)<br><b>inch</b><br>50 to 220 g/m <sup>2</sup> (* 1)(* 3)  | * 1 38 to 50 g/m <sup>2</sup> :Thin mode, 160 to 220 g/m <sup>2</sup> :heavy mode.<br>* 2 A6R or less: 50 to 220 g/m <sup>2</sup><br>* 3 BW/CL mixed original: same as Non miexed BW or CL         |
| Input Capacity             | 250 sheets (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> )(* 1)<br>200 sheets (75/80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )  | A6R or less:100 sheets<br>Original feed length more than 432mm :1 sheet. Height22.0mm or less<br>* 1 A6R or less:100 sheets Original feed length more than 432 mm :1 sheet. Height 22.0 mm or less |
| 2-sided single pass ADF    | Yes   |  |
| Original separation method | Roller separation method  |  |
| Mixed Input                | Same configuration mode Yes<br>Different configuration mode Yes   |  |

| Item                    | Specifications  | Remark   |
|-------------------------|---|--|
| Scan Productivity (* 1) | <b>Platen</b><br>BW:A4:0.81 sec / LTR:0.83 sec<br>CL:A4:0.81 sec / LTR:0.83 sec<br><br><b>ADF 1-sided (Plain mode, Send)</b><br>BW 135 ipm (A4 / LTR)<br>CL 135 ipm (A4 / LTR)<br><br><b>ADF 1-sided (Plain mode, Copy)</b><br>BW 51 ipm (A4 / LTR)<br>CL 51 ipm (A4 / LTR)<br><br><b>ADF 2-sided (Plain mode, Send)</b><br>BW 270 ipm (A4 / LTR)<br>CL 270 ipm (A4 / LTR)<br><br><b>ADF 2-sided (Plain mode, Copy)</b><br>BW 51 ipm (A4 / LTR)<br>CL 51 ipm (A4 / LTR) | * P/S 260 mm/sec<br>* 1 : The reading speed varies depending on the connected Host machine, so please refer to the specifications of the Host machine. |
| ADF Durability          | 2,000K sheets (A4 / LTR) or 5 years   |  |
| Power supply            | From the Main Unit  |  |
| Max. power consumption  | Included in the Energy Consumption of main body   |  |

## Parts Name

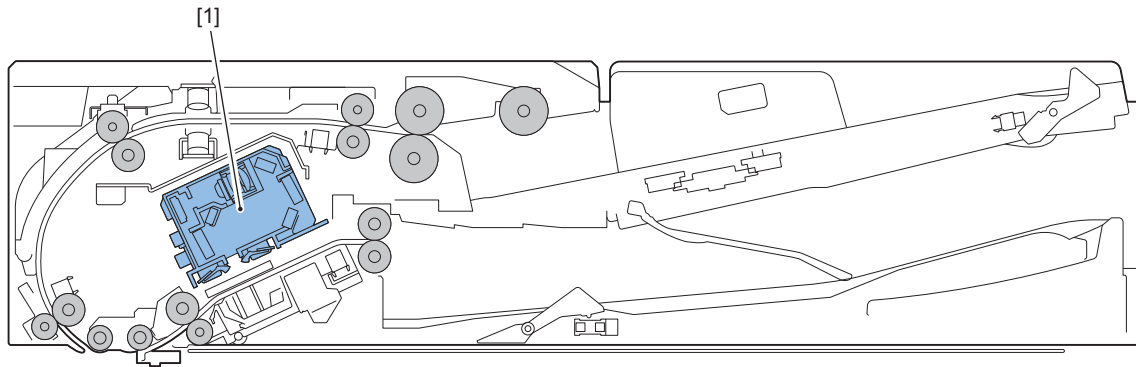
### External View



| No. | Name             |
|-----|------------------|
| [1] | Open/Close Cover |
| [2] | Document Tray    |
| [3] | ADF Front Cover  |

| No. | Name                 |
|-----|----------------------|
| [4] | ADF Left Lower Cover |
| [5] | ADF Rear Cover       |
| [6] | Hinge Cover          |
| [7] | ADF Right Cover      |
| [8] | Delivery Tray        |

### ■ Cross Section View

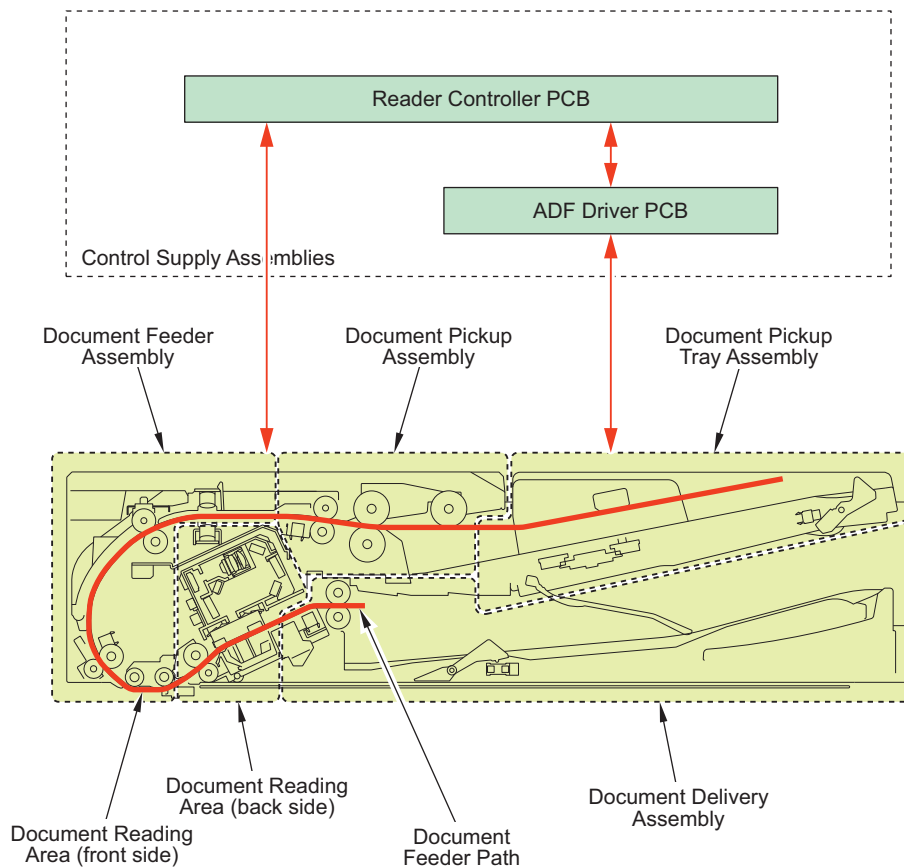


| Key No. | Name         |
|---------|--------------|
| [1]     | Scanner Unit |

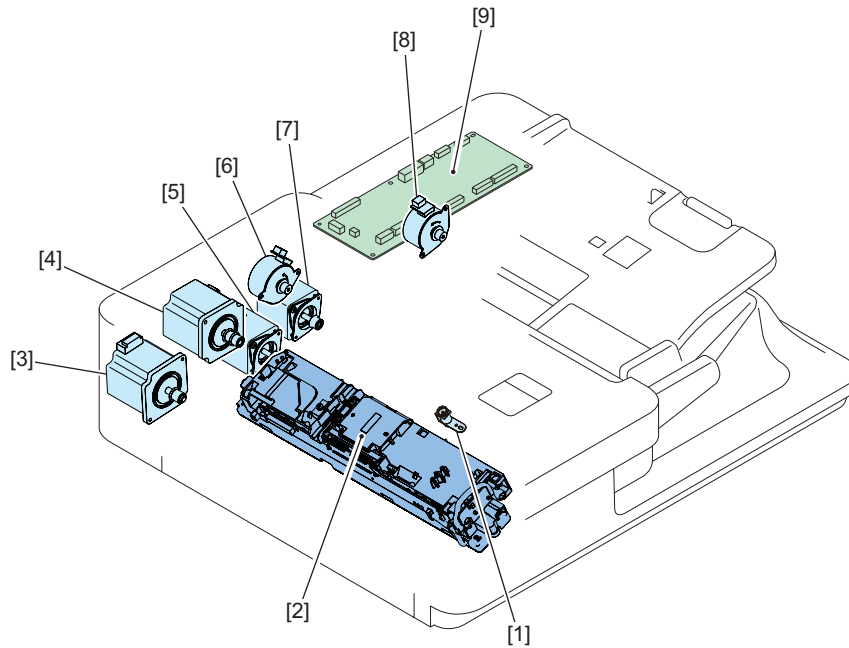
## ● Basic Configuration

### ■ Functional Configuration

A list of functions is indicated below.



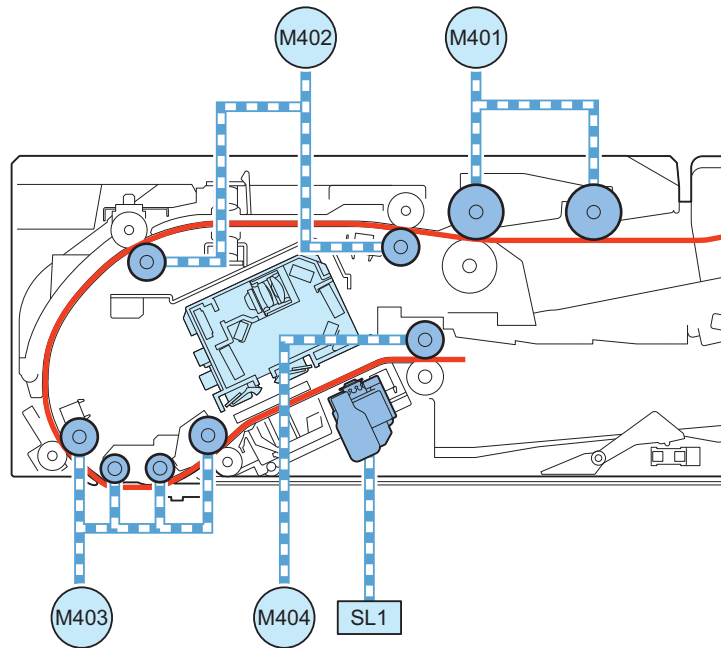
## ■ Parts Configuration



| Key No. | Name                        | Symbol |
|---------|-----------------------------|--------|
| [1]     | Stamp Solenoid              | SL401  |
| [2]     | Scanner Unit                | -      |
| [3]     | Read Motor                  | M403   |
| [4]     | ADF Pull-out Motor          | M402   |
| [5]     | ADF Delivery Motor          | M404   |
| [6]     | Pickup Roller Lifting Motor | M405   |
| [7]     | ADF Pickup Motor            | M401   |
| [8]     | Tray Lifting Motor          | M406   |
| [9]     | ADF Driver PCB              | UN_401 |

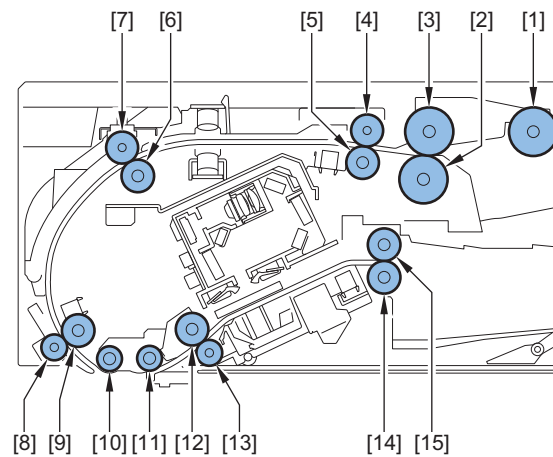
## ■ Drive Configuration List

This equipment is a document feeder for stream reading only.  
 This equipment has 4 motors and a solenoid as drive load.  
 It also has a unit for reading originals (for the back side) (Scanner Unit).  
 The drive configuration of this equipment is indicated below.



| Symbol | Name                        | Role                                       |
|--------|-----------------------------|--|
| M401   | Pickup Motor                | Drive of Pickup Roller                     |
| M402   | Pull-out Motor              | Drive of Pull-out Roller                   |
| M403   | Read Motor                  | Drive of Read Roller                       |
| M404   | Delivery Motor              | Drive of Delivery Motor, Movement of Glass |
| M405   | Pickup Roller Lifting Motor | Drive of Pickup Roller Lifting Roller      |
| M406   | Tray Lifting Motor          | Drive of Tray Lifting                      |
| SL401  | Stamp Solenoid              | Stamp drive                                |

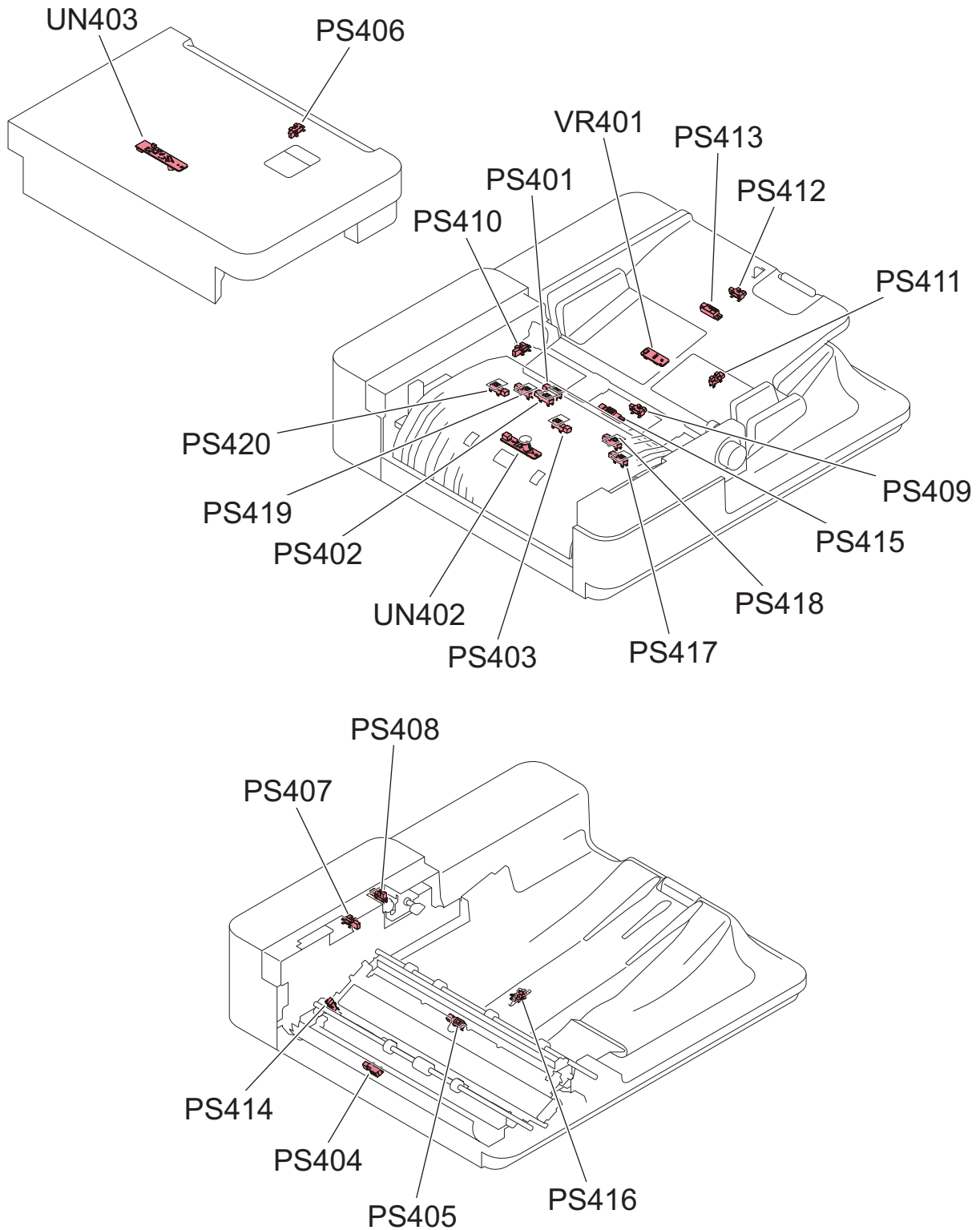
■ List of Rollers



| Key No. | Name              |
|---------|-------------------|
| [1]     | Pickup Roller     |
| [2]     | Separation Roller |
| [3]     | Feed Roller       |
| [4]     | Pullout Roller    |
| [5]     | Pullout Roller    |
| [6]     | Pullout Roller    |
| [7]     | Pullout Roller    |
| [8]     | Lead Roller 1     |
| [9]     | Lead Roller 1     |
| [10]    | Platen Roller 1   |

| Key No. | Name            |
|---------|-----------------|
| [11]    | Platen Roller 2 |
| [12]    | Lead Roller 2   |
| [13]    | Lead Roller 2   |
| [14]    | Delivery Roller |
| [15]    | Delivery Roller |

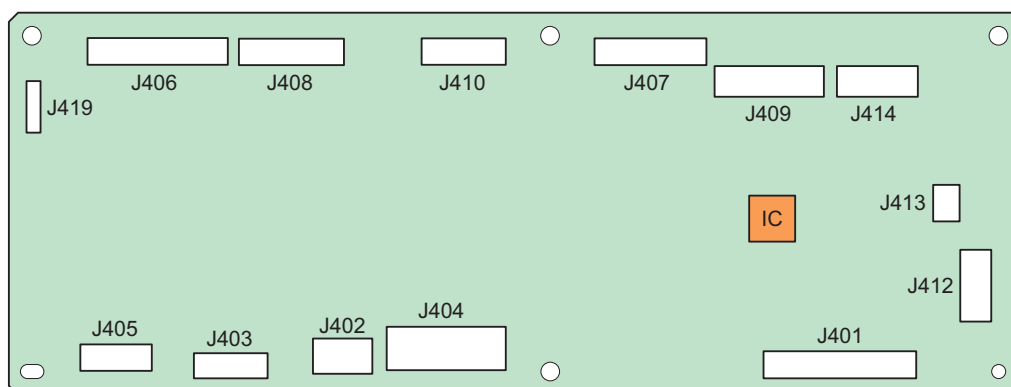
■ List of Sensors



| Symbol | Name  | Detection description  | Jam Detection |            |            |
|--------|---|--|---------------|------------|------------|
|        |   |  | Delay         | Stationary | Others     |
| VR401  | Original Width Detection Resistance             | Original width length detection  | -             | -          | -          |
| PS401  | Pre-separation Sensor                           | The position of the leading edge of the original immediately before pickup   | Applicable    | Applicable | Applicable |
| PS402  | Post-separation Sensor                          | The position of the leading edge of the original immediately after pickup    | Applicable    | Applicable | Applicable |
| PS403  | Pullout Sensor                                  | The position of the leading edge of the original after pulling out to pickup | Applicable    | Applicable | Applicable |
| PS404  | Read Sensor                                     | Image reading start/end timing   | Applicable    | Applicable | Applicable |
| PS405  | Pre-delivery Sensor                             | The position of the trailing edge of the original before delivery            | Applicable    | Applicable | Applicable |
| PS406  | Tray Paper Surface Sensor                       | Presence of original paper surface on the original pickup tray               | -             | -          | -          |
| PS407  | Cover Open/Closed Sensor                        | Opening/closing of the Feeder Cover  | -             | -          | -          |
| PS408  | Pickup Roller Lifting HP Sensor                 | Home position of the Pickup Roller that rises and lowers                     | -             | -          | -          |
| PS409  | ADF Sleep Exit Sensor                           | Presence of original on the Document Pickup Tray                             | -             | -          | -          |
| PS410  | Tray Lifting HP Sensor                          | Home position of the tray that rises and lowers                              | -             | -          | -          |
| PS411  | AB/Inch Identification Sensor                   | Distinguish between A4R and LTRR, between A5R and STMTR                      | -             | -          | -          |
| PS412  | LGL Identification Sensor                       | Distinguish between LTR-R and LGL  | -             | -          | -          |
| PS413  | Large Size/ Small Size Sensor                   | Identify the original warping and bending                                    | -             | -          | -          |
| PS414  | Paper Back Reading Glass HP Sensor              | Reading Glass position   | -             | -          | -          |
| PS415  | Original Sensor                                 | Presence of original on the Document Pickup Tray                             | -             | -          | -          |
| PS416  | Delivery Stack Detection Sensor                 | Capacity of Delivery Tray  | -             | -          | -          |
| PS417  | Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Front)            | Detect skewing of original by the time difference of detection timing        | -             | -          | -          |
| PS418  | Skew Detection Sensor (Small, Front)            |  | -             | -          | -          |
| PS419  | Skew Detection Sensor (Small, Rear)             |  | -             | -          | -          |
| PS420  | Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Rear)             |  | -             | -          | -          |
| UN402  | Double Feed Detection Sensor PCB (Transmission) | Double feed detection (transmission)   | -             | -          | Applicable |
| UN403  | Double Feed Detection Sensor PCB (Reception)    | Double feed detection (reception)  | -             | -          | Applicable |

## ADF Driver PCB

The following shows to which the ADF Driver PCB is connected.



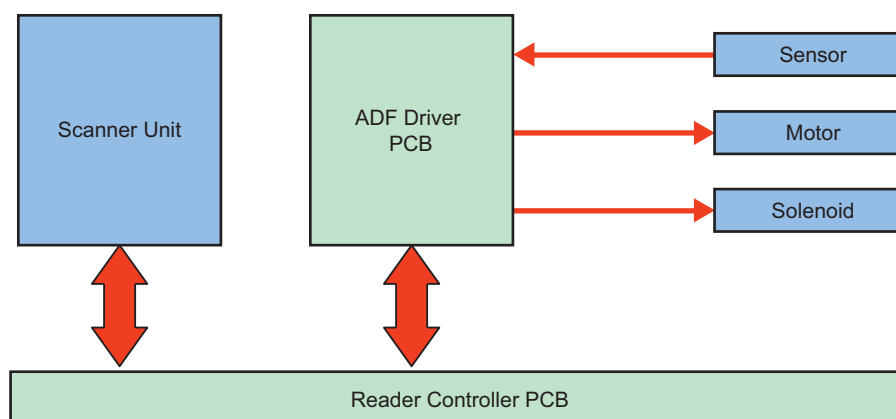
| ADF Driver PCB J No. | Connection destination |                       |
|----------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
|                      | Symbol                 | Name                  |
| J401                 | -                      | Reader Controller PCB |



| ADF Driver PCB J No. | Connection destination |  |
|----------------------|------------------------|--|
|                      | Symbol                 | Name   |
| J402                 | -                      | Reader Controller PCB                        |
| J403                 | M401                   | ADF Pickup Motor                             |
|                      | M404                   | ADF Delivery Motor                           |
| J404                 | M402                   | ADF Pull-out Motor                           |
|                      | M403                   | Read Motor                                   |
| J405                 | M405                   | Pickup Roller Lifting Motor                  |
|                      | M406                   | Tray Lifting Motor                           |
| J406                 | PS401                  | Pre-separation Sensor                        |
|                      | PS402                  | Post-separation Sensor                       |
|                      | PS407                  | Cover Open/Closed Sensor                     |
|                      | PS408                  | Pickup Roller Lifting HP Sensor              |
|                      | PS418                  | Skew Detection Sensor (Small, Front)         |
|                      | PS419                  | Skew Detection Sensor (Small, Rear)          |
| J407                 | SL401                  | Stamp Solenoid                               |
|                      | PS404                  | Lead Sensor                                  |
|                      | PS405                  | Pre-delivery Sensor                          |
|                      | PS414                  | Paper Back Reading Glass HP Sensor           |
|                      | PS416                  | Delivery Stack Detection Sensor              |
| J408                 | UN402                  | Post-separation Sensor                       |
|                      | PS403                  | Pullout Sensor                               |
|                      | PS417                  | Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Front)         |
|                      | PS420                  | Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Rear)          |
| J409                 | PS409                  | ADF Sleep Exit Sensor                        |
|                      | PS411                  | AB/Inch Identification Sensor                |
|                      | PS412                  | LGL Identification Sensor                    |
| J410                 | UN403                  | Double Feed Detection Sensor PCB (Reception) |
|                      | PS406                  | ADF Paper Surface Sensor                     |
|                      | LED401                 | Original Set LED                             |
| J412                 | PS413                  | Large Size/ Small Size Sensor                |
|                      | LED402                 | Delivery Lighting LED                        |
| J413                 | PS410                  | Tray Lifting HP Sensor                       |
| J414                 | VR401                  | Original Width Detection Resistance          |
|                      | PS415                  | Original Sensor                              |
| J419                 | -                      | for R&D                                      |

## Outline of Electric Circuits

This machine is controlled by the Reader Controller PCB.  
The relations of the electrical components are shown below.



## Related Error Codes

Communication error between Reader Controller PCB and Scanner Unit

- E270-0001: Communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and Reader Scanner Unit(for paper front)
- E270-0101: Communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and Reader Scanner Unit(for paper rear)
- E280-0001: Communication between the Reader Controller PCB and the Reader Scanner Unit was not completed within the specified period of time.
- E280-0002: Disconnection of FFC between the Reader Controller PCB and the Reader Scanner Unit was detected.
- E280-0101: Communication between the Reader Controller PCB and the DADF Scanner Unit was not completed within the specified period of time.
- E280-0102: Disconnection of FFC between the Reader Controller PCB and the DADF Scanner Unit was detected
- E280-0004: Communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and Reader Scanner Unit(for paper front)
- E280-0104: Communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and Reader Scanner Unit(for paper rear)

Communication error between Reader Controller PCB and DADF

- E400-0001: A communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and the DADF Driver PCB was detected.
- E400-0001: A communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and the DADF Driver PCB was detected.
- E400-0003: Disconnection of the harness between the Reader Controller PCB and the DADF Driver PCB was detected.
- E401-0001: Pickup Roller Unit Lifting HP Sensor error
- E401-0002: Pickup Roller Unit Lifting HP Sensor error
- E407-0001: Lifter Motor error
- E407-0002: Lifter error

ADF Fan error

- E412-0005: Rotation of fan was detected after the stop signal for the DADF Cooling Fan was transmitted.
- E412-0006: Stop of fan was detected after rotation signal for the DADF Cooling Fan was transmitted.

Different DADF model error

- E490-0001: An improper Scanner Unit is installed.
- E490-0101: An improper DADF is installed.

## Scanner Unit

### ■ Configuration of the Scanner Unit

The Scanner Unit has the same mechanism as that of the reader. For details, refer to "Scanner Unit" in "Basic Configuration" in the section "Reader Technology".

## Related Error Codes

### Shading error

- E302-0001: Error in paper front white shading
- E302-0002: Error in paper front black shading
- E302-0101: Error in paper back white shading
- E302-0102: Error in paper back black shading

## Related Alarm Codes

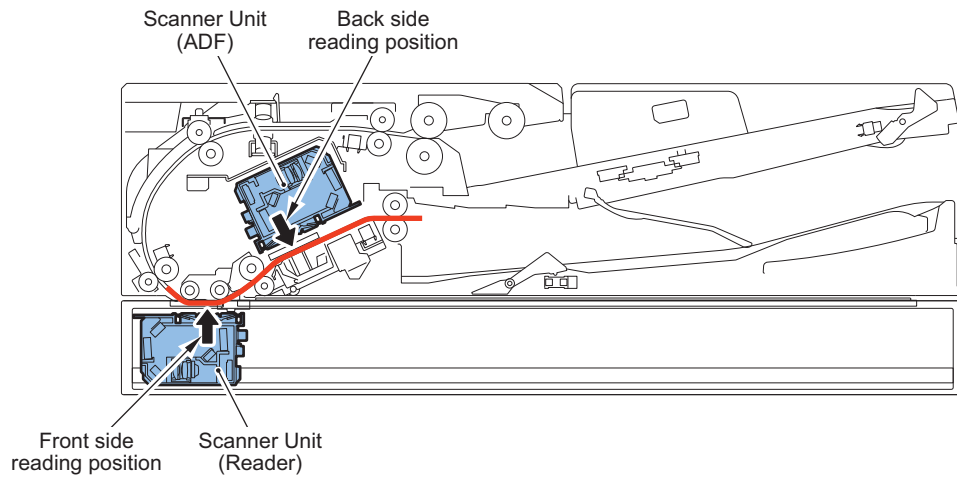
### Light intensity error

- 02-0025: Insufficient Scanner Unit (Paper Front) LED light intensity alarm (Some of the LEDs are OFF. Scanning can be continued.)

### ■ Duplex Reading Control

2-sided originals are read using simultaneous duplex reading.

With one feed, the Scanner Unit of the Reader Unit reads the front side and the Scanner Unit of the ADF reads the back side without reversing the paper.



### Related service mode

- Fine adjustment of image ratio in horizontal scanning direction when duplex scanning [paper front]  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJMSEN1
- Fine adjustment of image ratio in horizontal scanning direction when duplex scanning [back side]  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJMSEN2

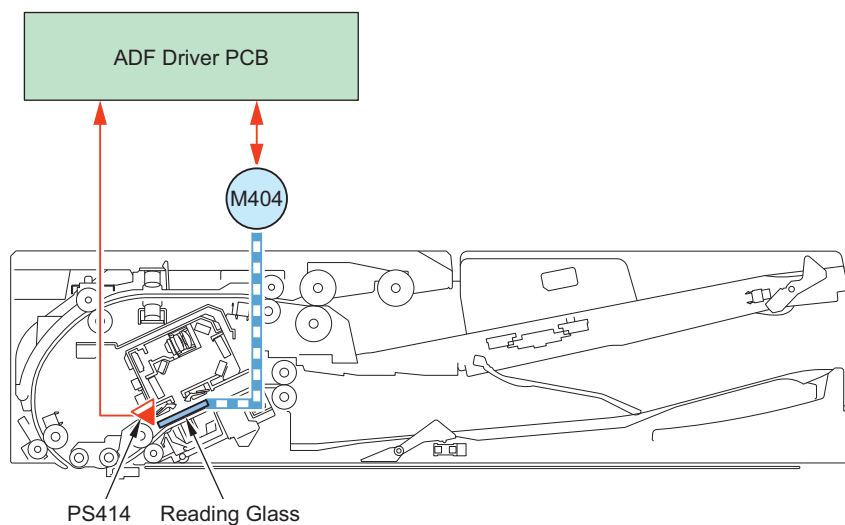
## ■ Glass Shift Control

This machine has a Reading Glass at the bottom of the Scanner Unit.

This Reading Glass has affixed on it a Standard White Plate used for shading correction and dust detection correction.

The Reader Controller drives the Glass Drive Motor (M404: shared as the Delivery Motor) as needed to move the Reading Glass.

With this, the Reader Controller executes the above-mentioned corrections by comparing the position of the Standard White Plate with the reflection data of the image reading position.



### Related Error Codes

Scanner HP error

- E202-0101: DADF Scanner Unit HP error
- E202-0102: DADF Scanner Unit HP error

## ■ Detecting and Correcting Skew Using Scanned Image

### Overview

Images are rotated (skew correction) on the output based on the amount of skew measured during stream reading.

This enables to increase productivity and reduce noise at the same time by eliminating the need for configuration to have a registration mechanism that presses the original document against the roller to make the skew of the leading edge of the original document and the horizontal scanning direction line closer.

## Skew Detection

Detects skew by determining it from a scanned image instead of using sensors. It binarizes the scanned image to detect the following three items.

### Edge

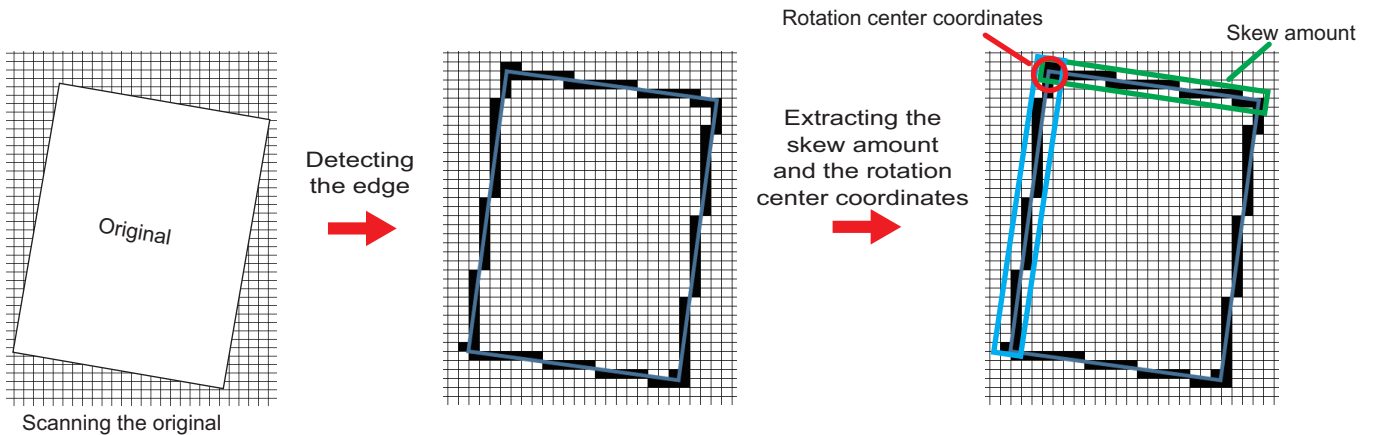
The shadow of the original on the opposed plate is detected as the edge of the original.

### Skew amount

Skew amount is detected from the degree of the edge detected.

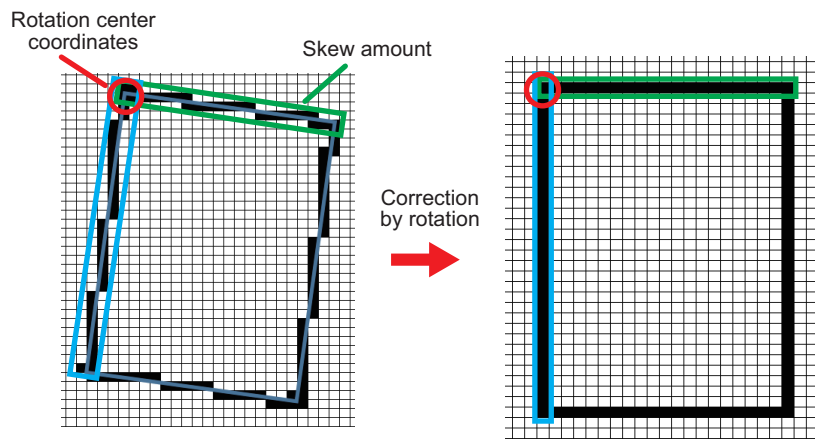
### Rotation center coordinates

Rotation center coordinates is detected from the edge and the skew amount.



## Skew Correction

Corrects the skew by rotating the image data according to the detected skew amount.



### NOTE:

- When the edge of original is damaged or bent, the accurate skew amount may not be detected and the correction function may fail to function.
  - The upper limit value of the cross-feed correction angle varies depending on the document size as shown below. When the cross-feed exceeding the upper limit value of the correction angle is detected, the read image is printed as it is without having the cross-feed correction.
    - Length in vertical scanning direction 250mm or more: 1.5°
    - Length in vertical scanning direction 200mm - 249mm: 2°
    - Length in vertical scanning direction 199mm or less: 3°
- In the mixed mode of the different width original, the cross-feed detection control by the sensor is canceled, and the cross-feed correction is performed up to a maximum of 3.5°.

### Correction of the leading edge

Corrects the leading edge of the scanned image after skew correction if the leading edge position of the image is not appropriate.

**Correction of the left edge**

Corrects the left edge of the scanned image after skew correction if the left edge position of the image is not appropriate.

**Angle correction**

Corrects rotation angle on the scanned image after skew correction.

**Parallelogram correction**

Corrects the angle of the image to be 90 degrees by outputting the image while shifting it towards the horizontal scanning direction.

**Related Service Mode****ON/OFF of the skew correction function**

- Switching between ON and OFF of the skew correction function at ADF stream reading  
FEEDER > OPTION > SKW-SW

**Adjustment of leading edge margin of the scanned image for the corrected image**

- Adjustment of the leading edge margin of the image at DADF reading [front side]  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-T1
- Adjustment of the leading edge margin of the image at DADF reading [back side]  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-T2

**Adjustment of the left edge margin of the scanned image for the corrected image**

- Adjustment of the left edge margin of the image at DADF reading [front side]  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-L1
- Adjustment of the left edge margin of the image at DADF reading [back side]  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-L2

**Angle correction of the corrected image**

- Angle correction at DADF reading [front side]  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-ROT1
- Angle correction at DADF reading [back side]  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-ROT2

**Parallelogram correction amount for corrected image**

- Parallelogram correction for DADF reading [front side]  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-PAR1
- Parallelogram correction for DADF reading [back side]  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-PAR2

## Pickup Feed System

### ■ Original size detection

**Overview**

Timing and sensors that perform original size detection for each copy mode are shown below.  
For details of detection description, refer to the following chapter.

| Timing       | Detection direction       | Detecting sensor   | Copy mode          |   |   |  |
|--------------|---------------------------|--|--------------------|---|---|--|
|              |                           |  | Normal copy (Copy) | Mix of same configuration mode (Copy > Options > Different Size Originals > Same Width) | Mix of different configuration mode (Copy > Options > Different Size Originals > Different Width) | Long original (Copy > Other Functions > Long Original) |
| Pickup start | Original length detection | LGL Identification Sensor (PS412)<br>Large Size/ Small Size Sensor (PS413) | Detect             | -   | -   | -  |
|              | Original width detection  | AB Inch Sensor (PS411)   | Detect             | Detect  | -   | -  |

| Timing       | Detection direction       | Detecting sensor                            | Copy mode          |   |   |  |
|--------------|---------------------------|---|--------------------|---|---|--|
|              |                           |   | Normal copy (Copy) | Mix of same configuration mode (Copy > Options > Different Size Originals > Same Width) | Mix of different configuration mode (Copy > Options > Different Size Originals > Different Width) | Long original (Copy > Other Functions > Long Original) |
| Pickup start | Original width detection  | Original Width Detection Resistance (VR401) | Detect             | Detect  | Detect  | Detect   |
| During feed  | Original length detection | Pullout Sensor (PS403)                      | Detect             | Detect  | Detect  | Detect   |
|              | Original width detection  | - *   | -                  | -   | Detect  | -  |

\*: This equipment does not have the Different Width Sensor that the existing machines had. It performs the width detection during feeding by the skew detection function.

**NOTE:**

Normal, Mix of the same configuration, and Mix of different configurations modes: The measured value is converted to a standard size.

Long original mode (custom size detection): The length of original is detected and the measured value itself is used as the original size.

**Tray Size Detection**

When the original is placed on the original tray, 3 sensors are used to detect the original size.

**AB regions**

| Width (mm)<br>(Original Width Detection Resistance) | AB/Inch Identification Sensor | Large Size/ Small Size Sensor Large/ Small Sensor | LGL Identification Sensor | Detection size        |
|---|-------------------------------|---|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| 272 mm or larger                                    | -                             | ON  | ON                        | A3                    |
|   | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | A4                    |
| Larger than 247 mm and 272 mm or smaller            | -                             | ON  | ON                        | B4                    |
|   | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | B5                    |
| Larger than 200 mm and 247 mm or smaller            | -                             | ON  | ON                        | A4R                   |
|   | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | A5                    |
| Larger than 172 mm and 200 mm or smaller            | -                             | ON  | OFF                       | B5R                   |
|   | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | A5R                   |
| Larger than 138.5 mm and 172 mm or smaller          | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | A5R                   |
| Larger than 105 mm and 138.5 mm or smaller          | OFF                           | OFF   | OFF                       | B6R                   |
| 120 mm or smaller                                   | ON                            | OFF   | OFF                       | A6R                   |
| 105 mm or smaller                                   | OFF                           | OFF   | OFF                       | Narrow width original |

**AB/K configuration**

| Width (mm)<br>(Original Width Detection Resistance) | AB/Inch Identification Sensor | Large Size/ Small Size Sensor Large/ Small Sensor | LGL Identification Sensor | Detection size |
|---|-------------------------------|---|---------------------------|----------------|
| 283 mm or larger                                    | -                             | ON  | ON                        | A3             |
|   | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | A4             |
| Larger than 263 mm and 283 mm or smaller            | -                             | ON  | ON                        | K8             |
|   | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | K16            |

| Width (mm)<br>(Original Width Detection Resistance) | AB/Inch Identification Sensor | Large Size/ Small Size Sensor Large/ Small Sensor | LGL Identification Sensor | Detection size        |
|---|-------------------------------|---|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| Larger than 247 mm and 263 mm or smaller            | -                             | ON  | ON                        | B4                    |
|   | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | B5                    |
| Larger than 200 mm and 247 mm or smaller            | -                             | ON  | OFF                       | A4R                   |
|   | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | A5                    |
| Larger than 172 mm and 200 mm or smaller            | -                             | ON  | OFF                       | B5R                   |
| Larger than 138.5 mm and 172 mm or smaller          | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | A5R                   |
| Larger than 105 mm and 138.5 mm or smaller          | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | B6R                   |
| 120 mm or smaller                                   | ON                            | OFF   | OFF                       | A6R                   |
| 105 mm or smaller                                   | OFF                           | OFF   | OFF                       | Narrow width original |

## Inch configuration

| Width (mm)<br>(Original Width Detection Resistance) | AB/Inch Identification Sensor | Large Size/ Small Size Sensor Large/ Small Sensor | LGL Identification Sensor | Detection size        |
|---|-------------------------------|---|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| 289 mm or larger                                    | -                             | ON  | ON                        | LDR                   |
|   | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | LTR                   |
| Larger than 272 mm and 289 mm or smaller            | -                             | ON  | ON                        | LDR                   |
|   | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | LTR                   |
| Larger than 247 mm and 272 mm or smaller            | -                             | ON  | ON                        | (LDR)                 |
|   | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | (LTR)                 |
| Larger than 200 mm and 247 mm or smaller            | -                             | ON  | ON                        | LGL                   |
|   | -                             | ON  | OFF                       | LTRR                  |
|   | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | STMT                  |
| Larger than 172 mm and 200 mm or smaller            | -                             | ON  | ON                        | (LGL)                 |
|   | -                             | ON  | OFF                       | (LTRR)                |
|   | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | (STMT)                |
| Larger than 105 mm and 172 mm or smaller            | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | STMTR                 |
| 105 mm or smaller                                   | OFF                           | OFF   | OFF                       | Narrow width original |

## AB/Inch configuration

| Width (mm)<br>(Original Width Detection Resistance) | AB/Inch Identification Sensor | Large Size/ Small Size Sensor Large/ Small Sensor | LGL Identification Sensor | Detection size |
|---|-------------------------------|---|---------------------------|----------------|
| 289 mm or larger                                    | -                             | ON  | ON                        | A3             |
|   | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | A4             |
| Larger than 272 mm and 289 mm or smaller            | -                             | ON  | ON                        | LDR            |
|   | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | LTR            |
| Larger than 247 mm and 272 mm or smaller            | -                             | ON  | ON                        | B4             |
|   | -                             | OFF   | OFF                       | B5             |
| Larger than 200 mm and 247 mm or smaller            | OFF                           | ON  | ON                        | LGL            |
|   | OFF                           | ON  | OFF-                      | LTRR           |
|   | OFF                           | OFF   | OFF                       | STMT           |
|   | ON                            | ON  | OFF                       | A4R            |
|   | ON                            | OFF   | OFF                       | A5             |
| Larger than 172 mm and 200 mm or smaller            | -                             | ON  | OFF                       | B5R            |
| Larger than 138.5 mm and 172 mm or smaller          | OFF                           | OFF   | OFF                       | A5R            |
|   | ON                            | OFF   | OFF                       | STMTR          |

| Width (mm)<br>(Original Width Detection Resistance) | AB/Inch Identification Sensor | Large Size/ Small Size Sensor Large/ Small Sensor | LGL Identification Sensor | Detection size        |
|---|-------------------------------|---|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| Larger than 105 mm and 138.5 mm or smaller          | OFF                           | OFF   | OFF                       | B6R                   |
| 120 mm or smaller                                   | ON                            | OFF   | OFF                       | A6R                   |
| 105 mm or smaller                                   | OFF                           | OFF   | OFF                       | Narrow width original |

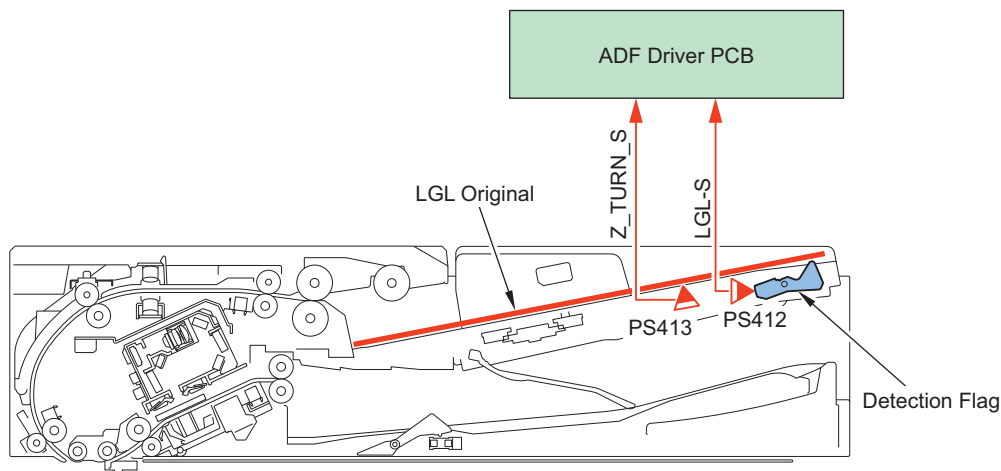
### • Detection when Starting Pickup

When starting pickup, the paper size is estimated by the length of feed direction and length of width.

#### Detection in the Feed Direction

The LGL Identification Sensor (PS412) and Large Size/ Small Size Sensor (PS413) are used to detect the length of original in the feed direction.

When the original is placed on the original pickup tray, the LGL Identification Sensor (PS412) or the Large Size/ Small Size Sensor (PS413) detects the original.



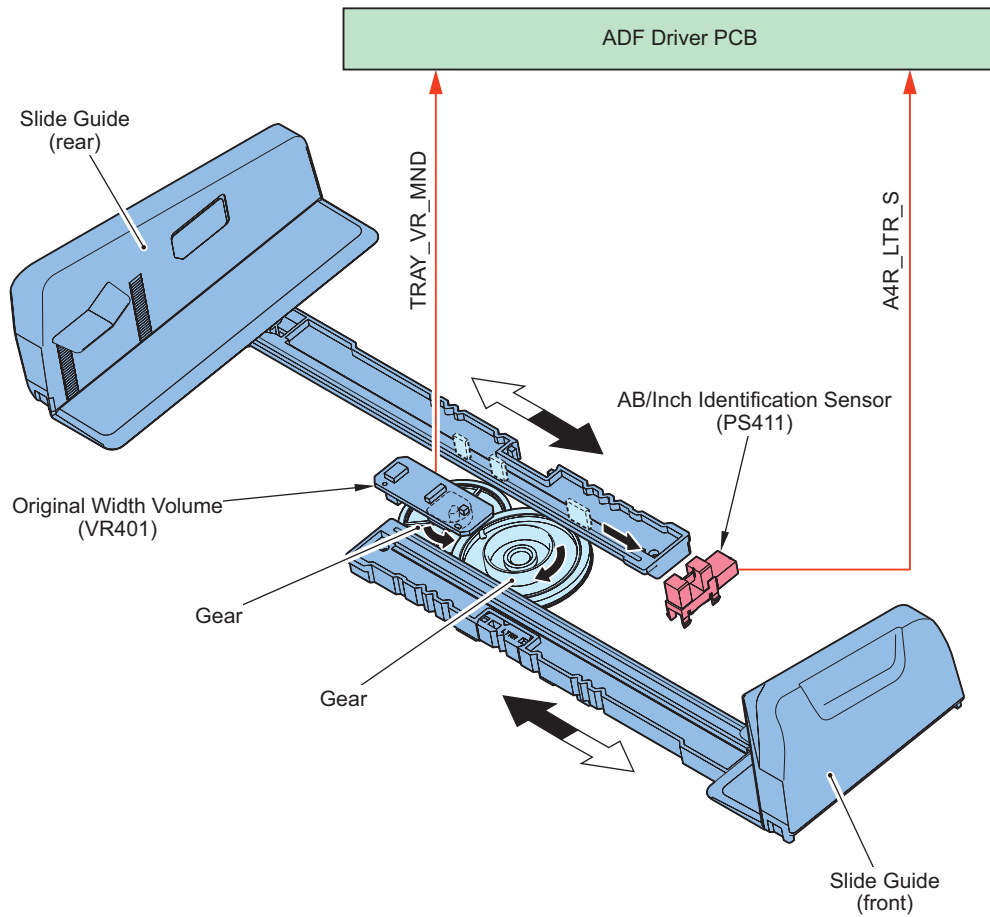
#### Detection in the Width Direction

The original size in the width direction is detected using the Original Width Detection Resistance (VR401) and AB/Inch Identification Sensor (PS411).

The Original Width Detection Resistance (VR401) is linked to the Slide Guide and its resistance value changes in analog manner. The ADF Driver PCB receives this change in the resistance value as an original size signal, and uses it as the size in the width direction.

To accurately detect the width of A4R and LTRR, A5R and STMTR, the combination of detection status of AB/Inch Sensor (PS411) and Original Width Detection Resistance (VR401) is used to judge and output the AB/Inch identification detection signal.

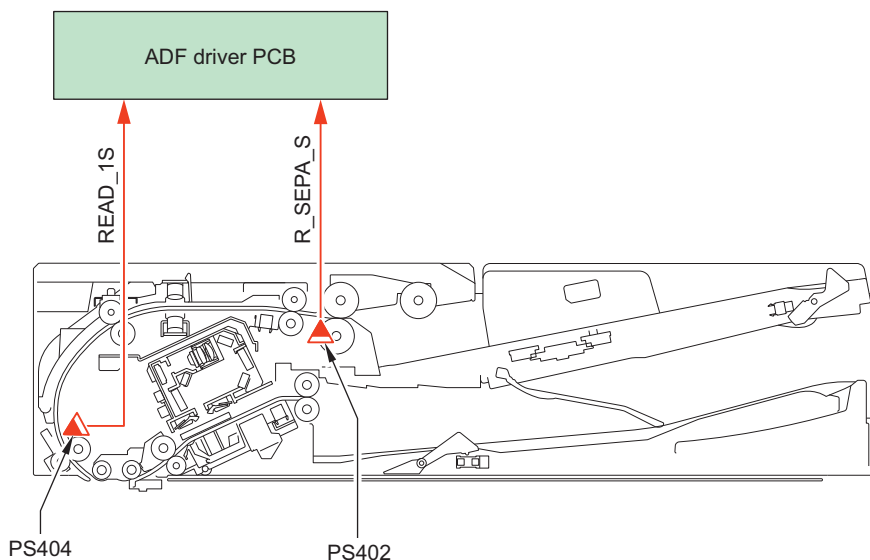




• Detection in the Feed Direction

**Detection in the Feed Direction**

Detection signals of the Post-separation Sensor (PS402) and the Lead Sensor (PS404) are used to calculate the original size in the feed direction.



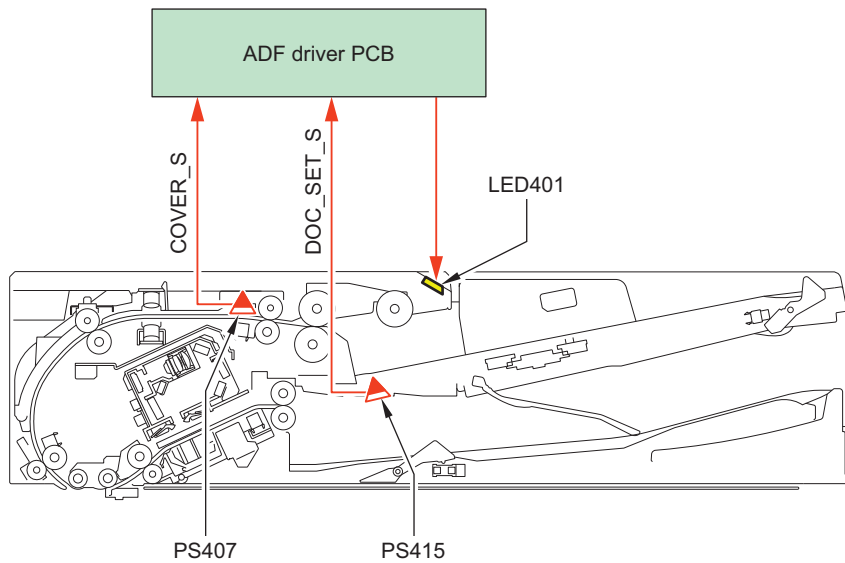
**Detection in the Width Direction (only when using the mix of different configurations)**

This equipment does not have the Different Width Sensor that the existing machines had. It performs the width detection during feeding by the skew detection function.

■ Original Detection Control

When all of following conditions are met, this equipment lights up the Original Set LED (LED401).

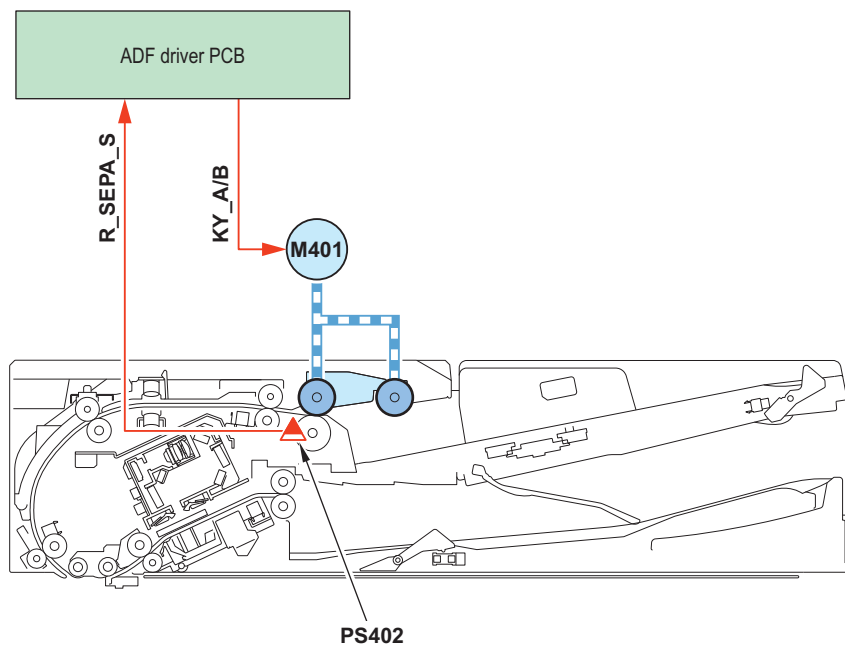
- The Original Sensor (PS415) detects that the original was placed on the original pickup tray and the original detection signal is sent to the ADF Driver PCB
- The Cover Open/Closed Sensor (PS407) detects that the Feeder Cover is closed and sends the feeder cover open/closed detection signal to the ADF Driver PCB



| No.    | Name                     |
|--------|--------------------------|
| LED401 | Original Set LED         |
| PS415  | Original Sensor          |
| PS407  | Cover Open/Closed Sensor |

## ■ Pickup Operation

The pickup operation is performed by the following rollers and motors driving rollers.



| Classification | No. | Name              | Description  |
|----------------|-----|-------------------|--|
| Roller         | -   | Pickup Roller     | Roller picking up originals                                |
|                | -   | Feed Roller       |  |
|                | -   | Separation Roller | Roller separating originals to prevent double feeding      |
|                | -   | Pullout Roller    | Roller pulling out the picked up original into the machine |
|                | -   | Lead Roller       |  |

| Classification | No.  | Name                        | Description                                  |
|----------------|------|-----------------------------|--|
| Motor          | M401 | Pickup Motor                | Motor driving the A/B Roller                 |
|                | M402 | Pull-out Motor              | Motor driving the Pullout Roller             |
|                | M405 | Pickup Roller Lifting Motor | Motor lifting and lowering the Pickup Roller |
|                | M406 | Tray Lifting Motor          | Motor lifting and lowering the tray          |

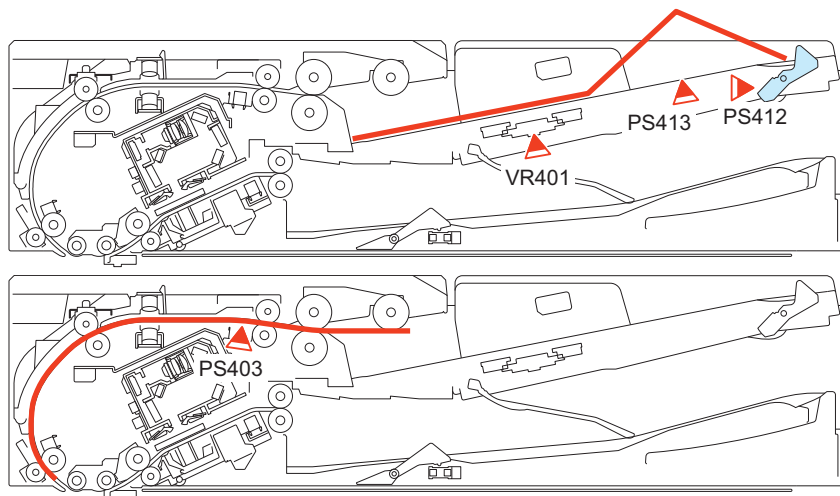
## ■ Detection of Folded Original

### Overview: System Configuration

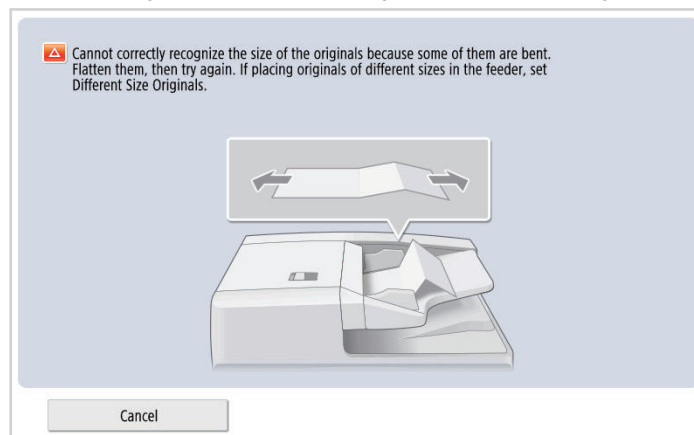
To prevent from a part of the image being lost in case the size of the original is not detected well because of the curl or the bent of the original on the Original Tray.

### Detection description

The reading job is stopped when it is determined that a part of the image may be lost due to the fact that the length of the original being fed is longer than the length of the original detected by the sensor (VR401/PS412) on the Original Tray after comparing those lengths.



In case to stop the job, after completing delivery without stopping the delivery, prompt to display the following message on the Control Panel and to straighten the bent originals or to set the Original Sizes mixed original.



### Detection condition

The following are the requirements to perform a bend detection.

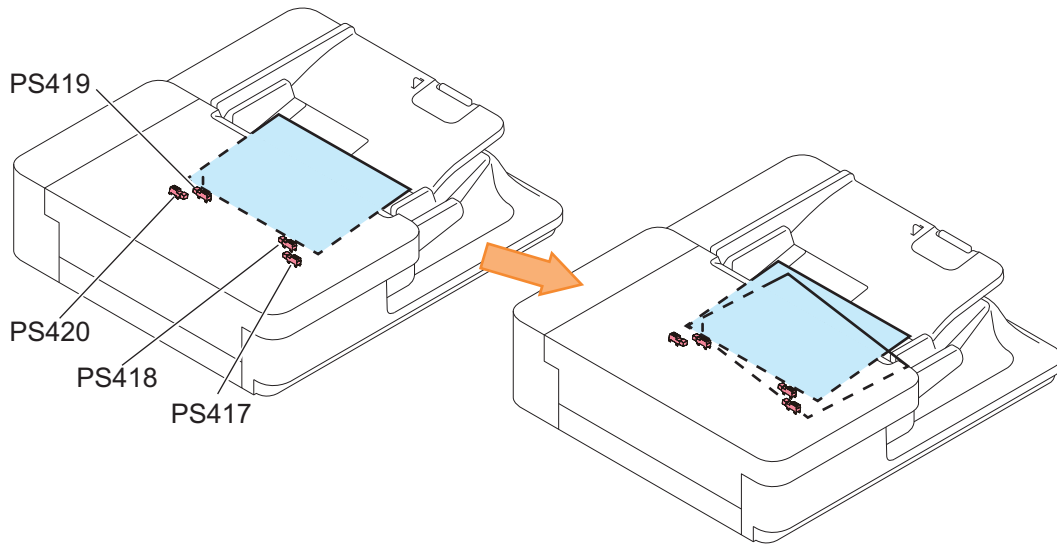
- The original length by vertical scanning on the original tray is smaller than A3.
- Mixed original is not specified
- Long Original is not specified

## ■ Skew Detection Control

### Overview of detection

Skew detection sensors are arranged along the horizontal scanning direction symmetrically with respect to the center line. This function measures the skew amount of originals from the difference of timings in which these sensors are turned ON.

This prevents jams inside the ADF by stopping the feed when a stapled original or an original placed on the Pickup Tray at an angle is picked up.



| Symbol | Name:                                |
|--------|--------------------------------------|
| PS417  | Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Front) |
| PS418  | Skew Detection Sensor (Small, Front) |
| PS419  |                                      |
| PS420  | Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Rear)  |

#### NOTE:

If the following conditions are met, the skew detection cannot be done.

- The paper width is smaller than the distance between the Skew Staple Detection Sensors (small) (i.e. less than 172 mm).
- Media with different paper widths
- Free Size Original

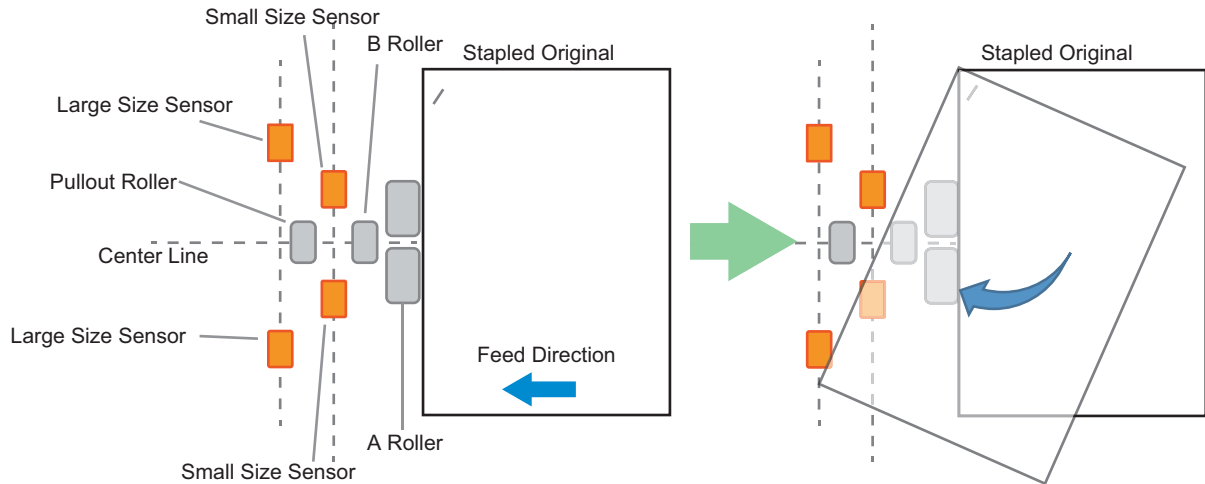
### Control Description

The following is an explanation using a case where a stapled original is picked up as an example.

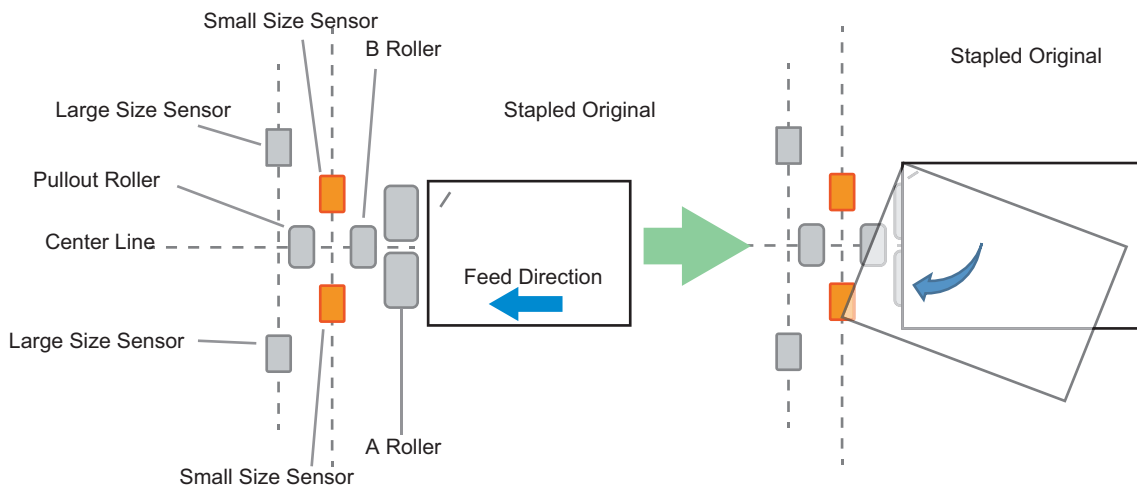
The stapled original has one end stapled and fixed so the non-stapled side is fed first.

As the original is picked up skewed, difference occurs in detection timing with the sensors.

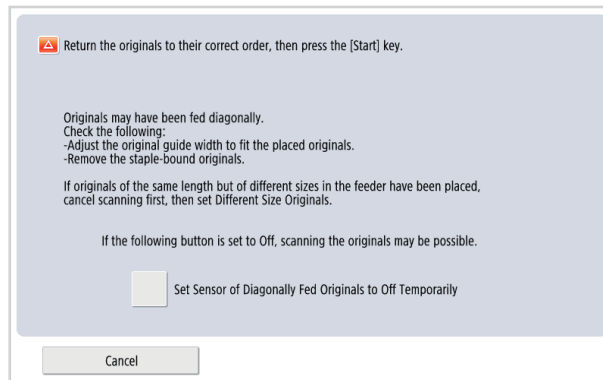
The sensors arranged along the feed path detect the skew from this difference in timings, determine that the original is skewed, and stop the delivery.



For the original width of 247 mm or more



For the original width of 172 mm or more and less than 247 mm



Screen display at the time of detection

Performing this prevents issues (e.g., jams, faulty images) that occurs by feeding skewed originals.

**NOTE:**

The above screen is displayed when the skew amount is more than approximately +/- 3 degrees.

**■ Dust Detection / Correction Control**

**Dust Detection Control**

This equipment detects dust adhered to the Stream Reading Glass that becomes the cause of continuous streak in the vertical scanning direction.

**NOTE:**

The Stream Reading Glass of this equipment is applied with the coating to prevent adhering of dust so the dust evasion control is not executed.

**Dust Correction Control**

When dust enters between the Stream Reading Glass and original and continuous streaks occur in the vertical scanning direction of scanned image, the image correction is performed.

Streaks with the width of up to 20 pixels can be corrected.

Additionally, if non-continuous streaks occurred due to floating dust, they can be corrected up to 6 pixels.

**Related service mode****Adjustment of the image correction level at stream reading**

- Adjustment of the image correction level at stream reading [front]  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-RDR > DFDST-L1
- ON/OFF of the image correction at stream reading [back] (single pass)  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-RDR > DF2DSTL1

**Adjustment of the image correction level at stream reading**

- Adjustment of the image detection level at stream reading [front]  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-RDR > DFDST-L2
- Adjustment of the dust detection level at stream reading (back) (single pass)  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-RDR > DF2DSTL2

**Settings/Registration Menu (Reference information)**

- ON/OFF of streak soiling removal  
[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Common] > [Scan Settings] > [Streak Prevention]

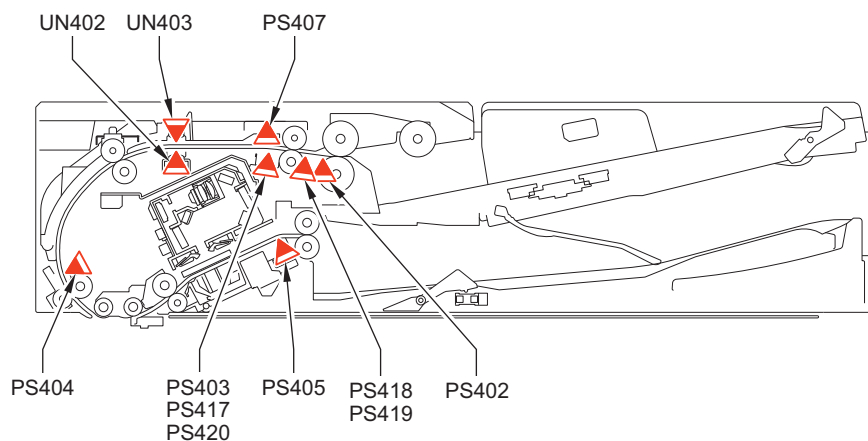
**■ Jam Detection**

This equipment detects original jam using the sensors shown in the figure below. The occurrence of jam is determined by the presence of an original in the areas of corresponding sensors.

When a jam occurs, the machine stores the information by the code.

This machine's jam code can be checked by printing out a jam error history report from service mode.

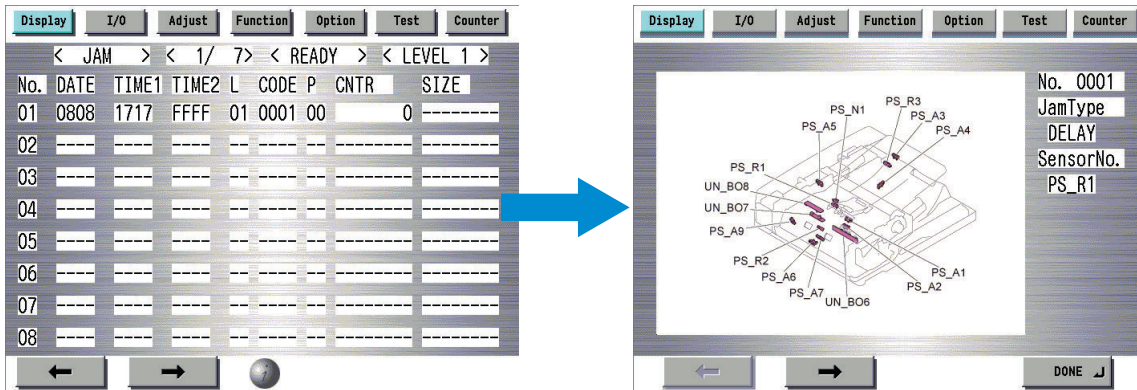
For details of jam, refer to Jam Code List of host machine's manual.

**Sensor Name List**

| Symbol | Sensor name                          |
|--------|--------------------------------------|
| PS402  | Post-separation Sensor               |
| PS403  | Pullout Sensor                       |
| PS404  | Lead Sensor                          |
| PS405  | Pre-delivery Sensor                  |
| PS417  | Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Front) |
| PS418  | Skew Detection Sensor (Small, Front) |
| PS419  | Skew Detection Sensor (Small, Rear)  |

| Symbol | Sensor name  |
|--------|--|
| PS420  | Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Rear)                |
| UN402  | Double Feed Detection Sensor PCB (Light-emitting)  |
| UN403  | Double Feed Detection Sensor PCB (Light-receiving) |
| PS407  | Cover Open/Closed Sensor                           |

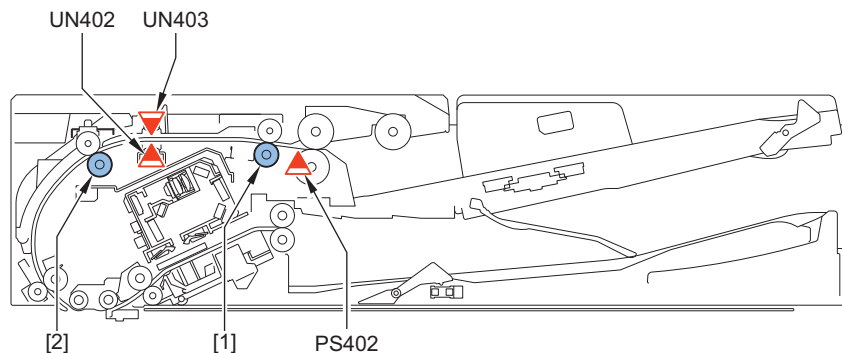
When a jam occurs, the sensor that detected the jam can be checked from the service mode.



### ■ Double Feed Detection Control

This machine has the Double Feed Sensors PCB (Transmission/Reception) (UN402/UN403) to detect double feeding of paper. The Double Feed Sensor PCBs (Transmission/Reception) (UN\_BO7/UN\_BO8) using ultrasonic method that are located between the Pullout Roller 1 and Pullout Roller 2 perform double feed detection. Once it is judged that double feed has occurred, the machine stops operation due to a jam.

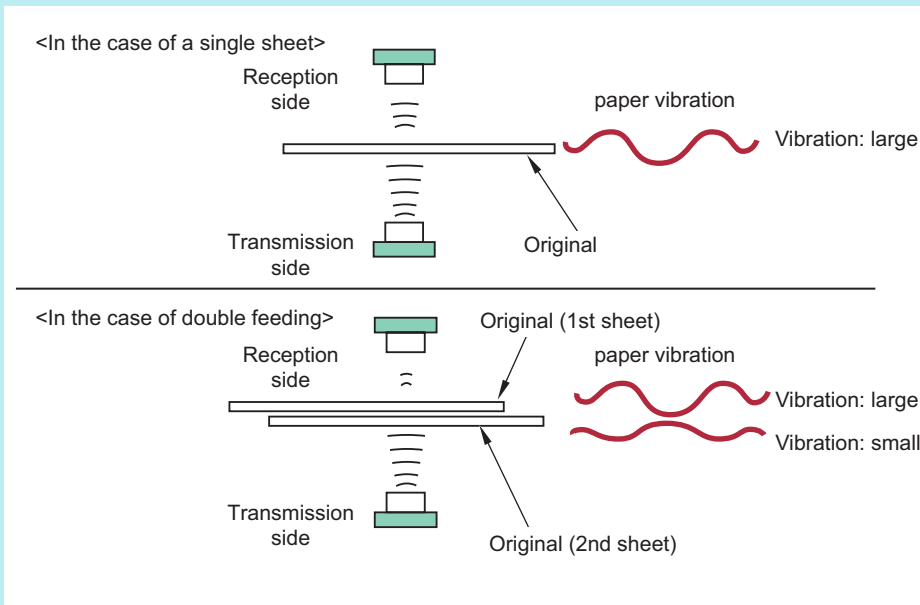
At the start of a job, the sensor level is checked while there is no original, and the threshold value for double feed detection is calculated. During a job, the sensor level is obtained for every detection and this is compared with the threshold value at the job start to judge whether double feed occurs.



| No.   | Name  |
|-------|---|
| [1]   | Pullout Roller 1                                |
| [2]   | Pullout Roller 2                                |
| PS402 | Post-separation Sensor                          |
| UN402 | Double Feed Detection Sensor PCB (Transmission) |
| UN403 | Double Feed Detection Sensor PCB (Reception)    |

**NOTE:**

The Double Feed Sensor PCB uses an ultrasonic sensor. With the ultrasonic method, the oscillation portion emits ultrasonic wave to the paper surface. In the result, new ultrasonic wave is generated as the paper vibrates, and the reception side reads the ultrasonic wave. A double feed is detected when the oscillation is smaller due to the second sheet of paper.

**Label False Judgment Workaround**

When only a part is detected as double feed, it is judged to have affixed label and the feeding is not stopped. When successively detected as double feed, it is judged that paper is double feeding and the Double Feed Detection Jam is detected.

**Related Alarm Code**

- 50-0015: Failure of the ADF Double Feed Sensor

**Power Supply Assembly**

An overview of the power supply is indicated below.

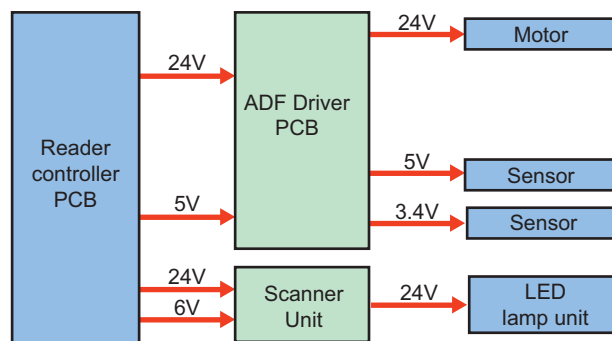
With this equipment, 3 types of power (24V, 6V, and 5V) are received from the Reader Unit.

The 24V power is mainly used for the motor, solenoid, and the Scanner Unit PCB.

The 6V power is mainly used for the Scanner Unit PCB.

The 5V power is mainly used for the sensors.

3.4V power is generated via a converter on the ADF Driver PCB and supplied to the sensors.

**Related Error Codes**

Power supply (24V) error

- Power Supply Error: When the main power is turned ON, the PCB did not detect 24V when the main power was turned ON. E227-0001
- Power Supply error: The DADF Driver PCB did not detect 24V when the main power was turned ON. E227-0101



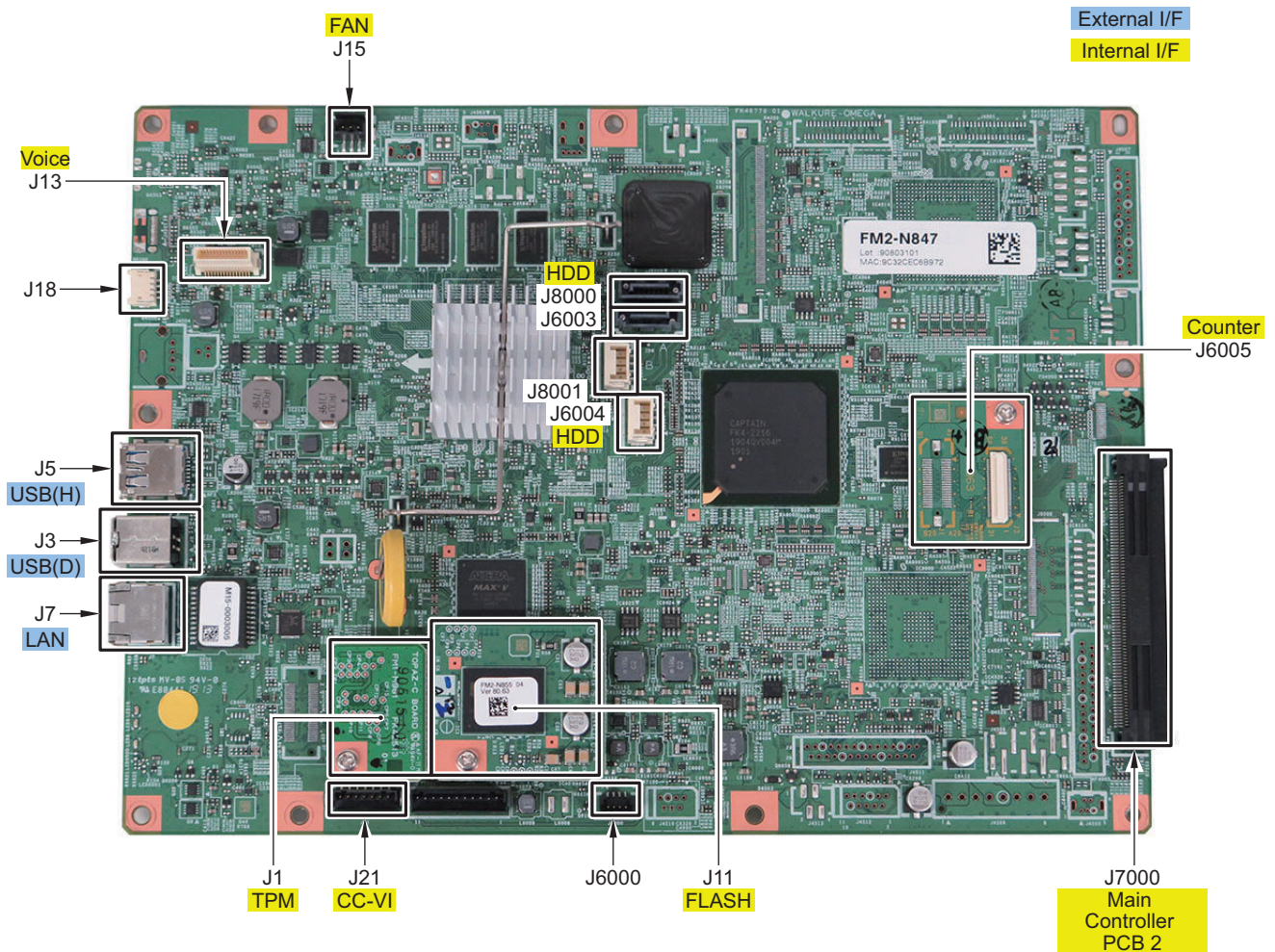
# Main Controller

## Overview

### Configuration/Function

| Item                | Functions  |
|---------------------|--|
| Main Controller PCB | System Control/Memory Control/Printer Output Image Processing Control, Reader Image Input Processing, Card Reader Connection I/F, Fax Image Processing, USB Extension HUB Connection I/F |
| RAM                 | Temporarily storage of image data: Capacity of 2 GB (for controller control) + 1 GB (for image processing)   |
| USB port            | USB2.0 Device I/F, USB3.0 Host I/F   |
| HDD                 | 2.5 inch SATA I/F Standard: 250 GB (250 GB usable area), address book, security information (password, certificate), image data, preferences   |
| Flash PCB           | Storage of system software: 2 GB   |
| TPM PCB             | Generation and storage of the encryption key: Only when Management Settings > Data Management > TPM Settings is "On". Default: OFF)  |

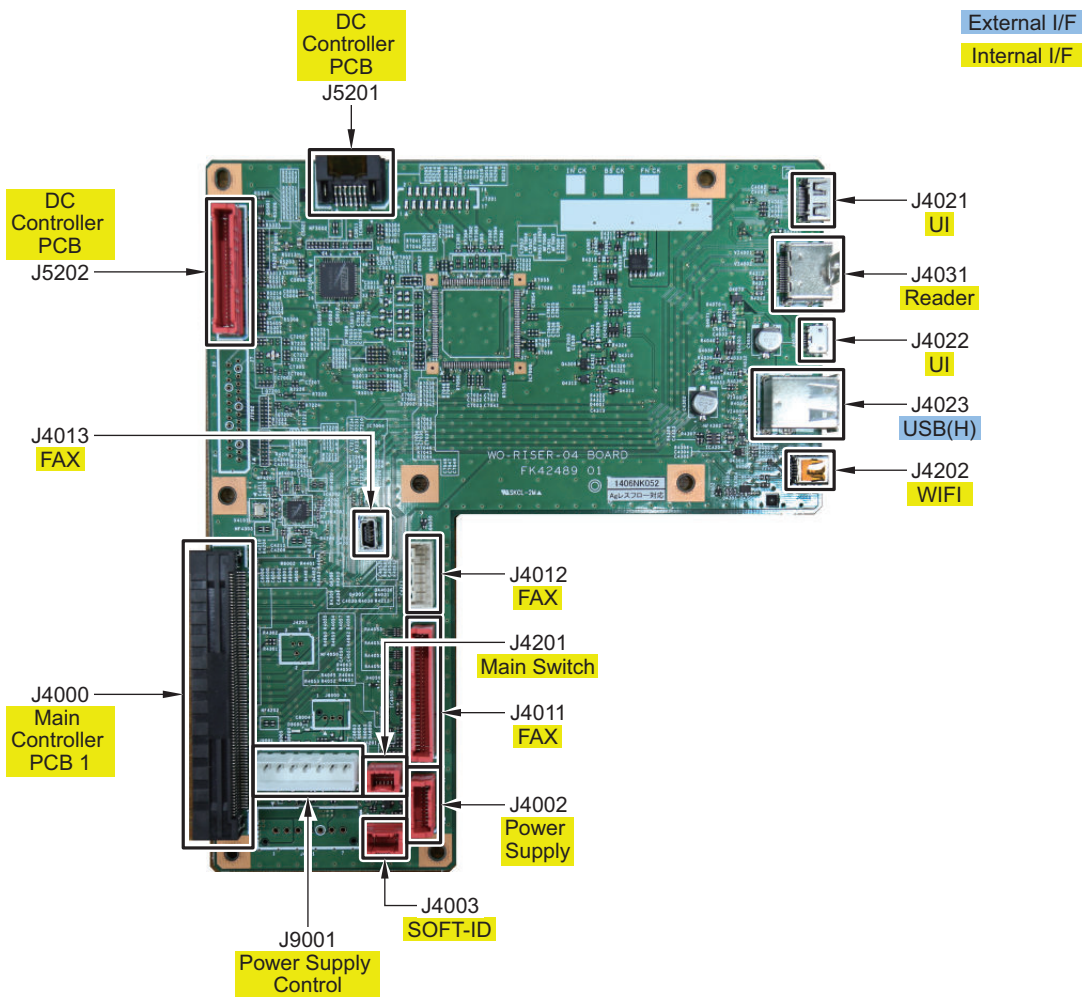
### Main Controller PCB 1



| No. | Roles and Specifications |
|-----|--------------------------|
| J1  | TPM PCB                  |
| J3  | USB I/F (Device)         |
| J5  | USB I/F (Host)           |
| J7  | LAN I/F                  |
| J11 | Flash PCB                |

| No.          | Roles and Specifications          |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| J13          | Voice-Operation<br>Voice-Guidance |
| J15          | Controller Fan                    |
| J18          | -                                 |
| J21          | Copy Card Reader                  |
| J6000        | -                                 |
| J6003 /J6004 | Standard hard disk                |
| J6005        | Counter PCB                       |
| J7000        | Main Controller PCB 2             |
| J8000 /J8001 | Hard disk for mirroring           |

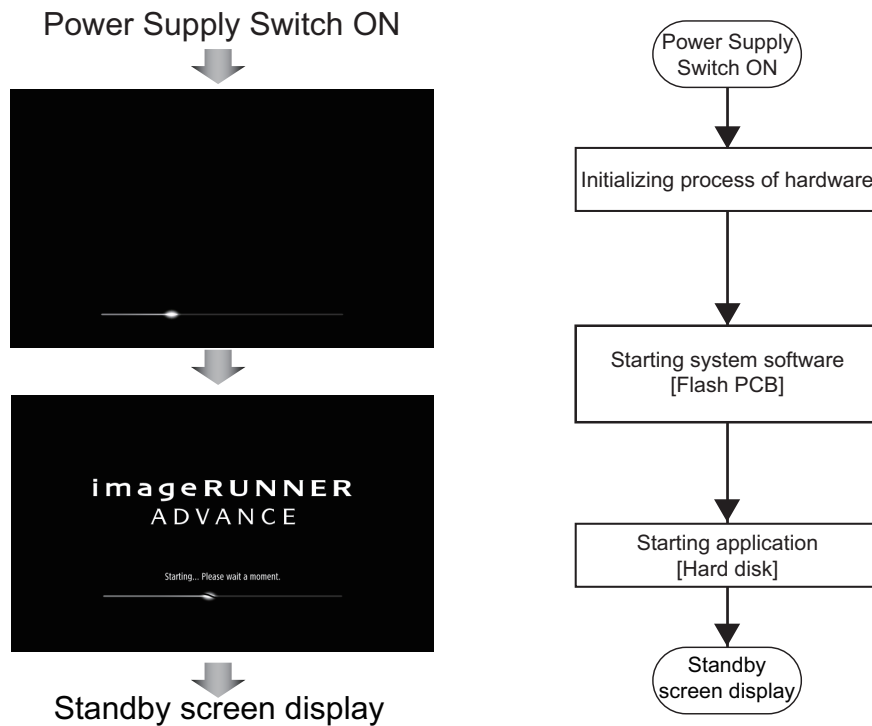
### ■ Main Controller PCB2



| No.         | Functions and specifications                                       |
|-------------|--|
| J4000       | Main Controller PCB1   |
| J4002       | Relay PCB  |
| J4003       | SOFT-ID PCB  |
| J4011 /4012 | Fax (1-Line)   |
| J4013       | Fax (2nd/3rd/4th Line)   |
| J4021/J4022 | Control Panel I/F  |
| J4023       | IC Card Reader (upper port)/USB flash drive for users (lower port) |
| J4031       | Reader   |
| J4201       | Main Switch  |
| J4202       | WIFI PCB   |
| J5201/5202  | DC Controller PCB  |

| No.   | Functions and specifications |
|-------|------------------------------|
| J9001 | Relay PCB                    |

## Startup Sequence



### Screen sequence and internal processing sequence

#### NOTE:

To achieve faster startup, the progress bar and the active PCB are not synchronized. For this reason, the progress bar cannot be utilized for troubleshooting. For information about troubleshooting, refer to "Related error codes (major error codes)" shown below.

#### NOTE:

When system verification\* at startup is ON, startup of system software takes more time than when OFF.

\*: Settings/Registration (login as an administrator) > [Management Settings] > [Security Settings] > [System verification at startup]  
Note that when the machine is recovering from sleep mode or at Quick Startup, system verification is not performed even it is set to ON.

#### Related error codes (major error codes):

- E602-0001: HDD detection error
- E614-0001: Flash PCB detection error
- E614-0002: Error in file system on the Flash PCB
- E614-4001: Error in file system on the Flash PCB
- E614-4002: Error in file system on the Flash PCB
- E748-2010: Flash PCB error / HDD error

#### NOTE:

When the following errors occur, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.

E602-XX01, E614-XX01, E748-2010

## Shutdown Sequence

Before shutting down the power supply, it is necessary to perform the HDD completion process (Purpose: to prevent damage on the HDD) and execute the fixing disengagement operation. This sequential process is called "shutdown sequence".

With this machine, the Main Controller PCB detects turning OFF the Main Power Supply Switch, and the shutdown sequence is started and executed automatically.

Note that the maximum shutdown time with this equipment is 90 seconds. (If the maximum of 90 seconds has elapsed, the power supply is turned OFF by the hard timer circuit on the Relay PCB.)

### NOTE:

If the power supply is stopped without shutting down the machine, or if the processing to completely delete the hard disk (deletion of the primary file) fails to be completed within the shutdown time (max. 90 sec.), data consistency is checked at startup, during which the progress bar is displayed.

## Motion Sensor

### Function

Features of the Motion Sensor functions are shown below.

- When the machine detects a person staying in front of it (in the area where the sensor works) for more than a certain period of time, it automatically recovers from sleep mode.
- It judges whether the person is a user or a passerby and controls not to perform recovery triggered by passersby in order to reduce unnecessary power consumption.
- Criteria for judging whether a person is a user or passerby are shown below.
  - If a person approaches the machine from the front, the sensor judges the person as a user and starts recovery from sleep mode quickly.
  - If a person approaches the machine from the side, the sensor judges the person walking fast as a passerby and the person walking slowly as a user.
- The machine may recover from sleep mode in response to the detection of the passerby walking slowly, but the machine shifts to sleep mode again if it is not operated within a specified period of time.

### CAUTION:

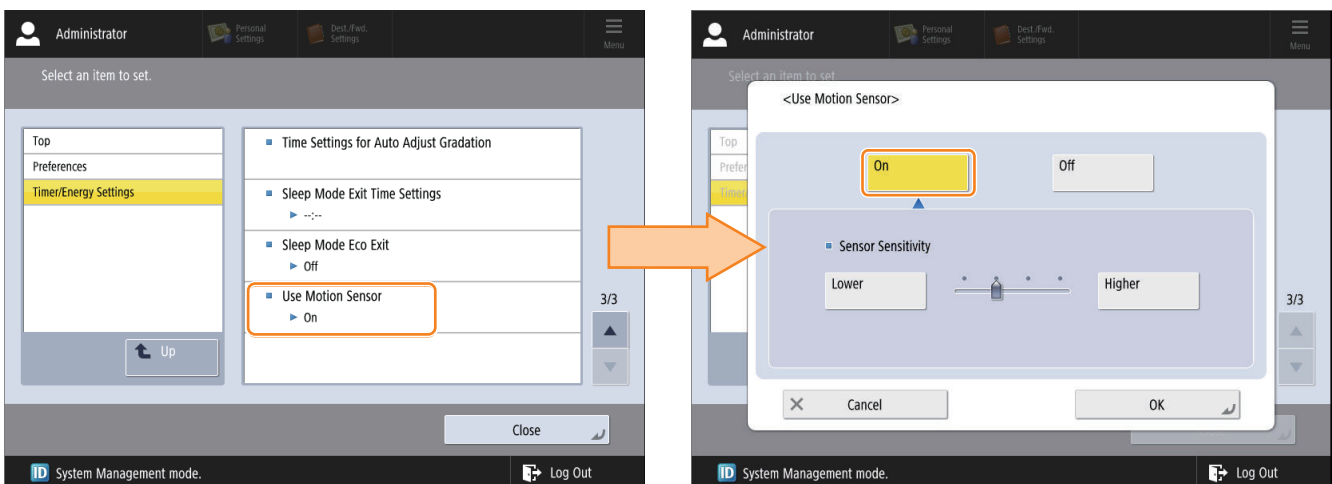
Do not block the opening because the sensor generates ultrasonic waves and detects reflected waves.

### Settings/Registration

This function can be set from the following menu.

[Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Timer/Energy Settings] > [Use Motion Sensor]

ON/OFF of this function and the sensor sensitivity can be configured.

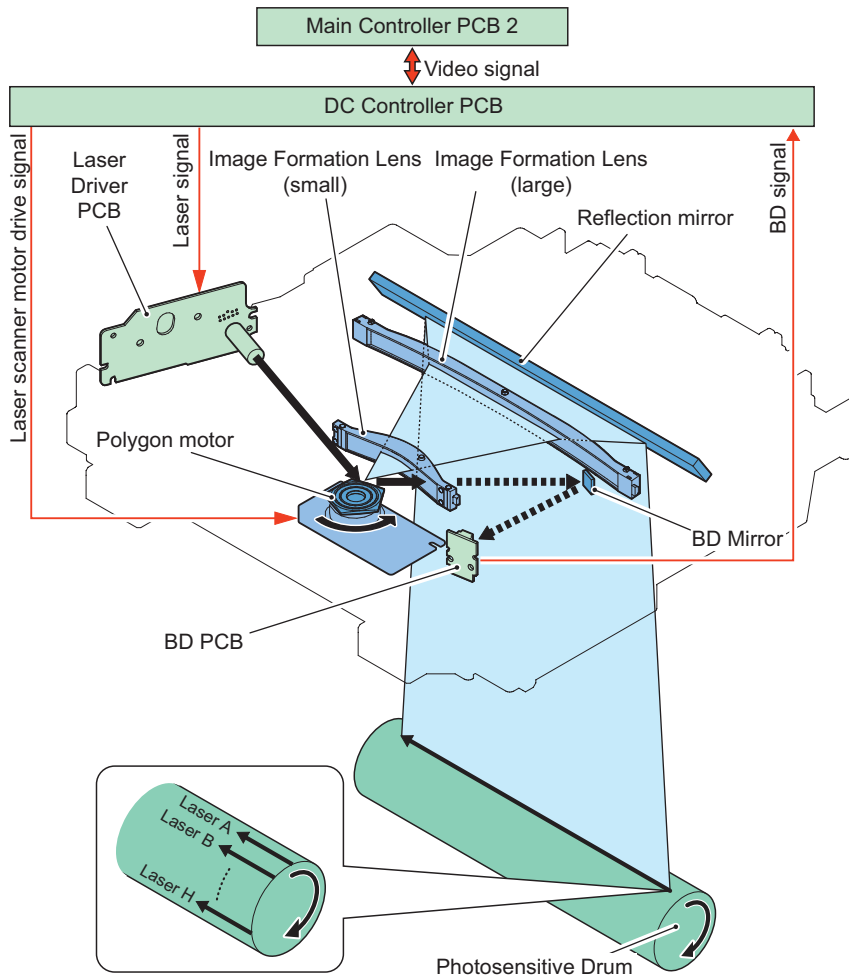


# Laser Exposure System

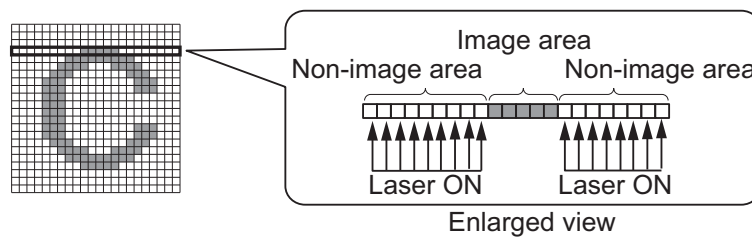
## Overview

### ■ Overview

This machine uses an 8-beam method that enables exposure of 8 beams per scanning direction for high productivity.



Laser is applied to the Non-image image on the positively-charged drum with this machine.



Laser Scanner Unit can be removed from the side of the main body.

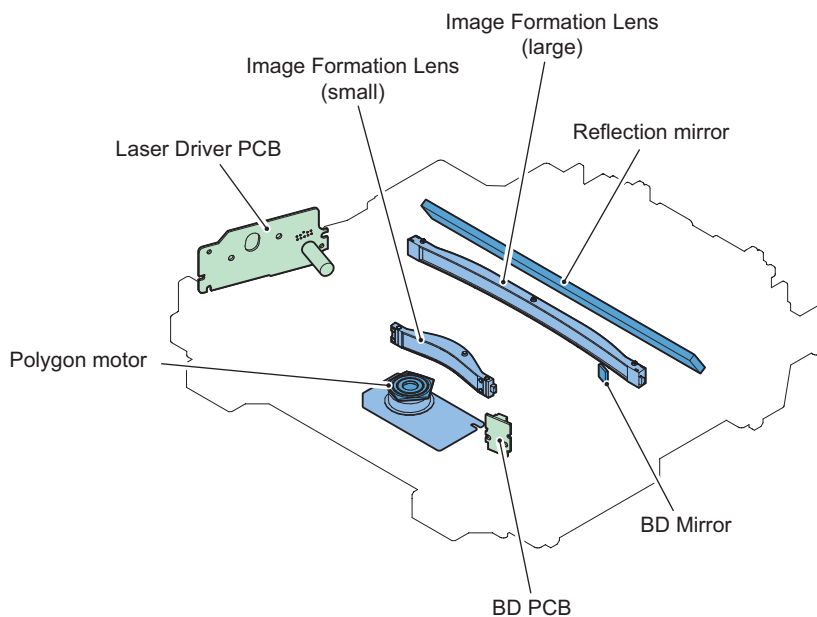




## ■ Specifications

| Item  |                              | Description  |
|---|------------------------------|--|
| Laser team                                  | Wave length                  | 670nm  |
|   | Laser type                   | Red color laser  |
|   | Laser output                 | 7mW(Max)   |
|   | Number of laser beams        | 8 beams  |
| Resolution                                  |                              | 1200dpi  |
| Laser scanner motor                         | Type                         | Brushless motor  |
|   | Number of rotations          | 24,800rpm(Process speed 350mm/sec)<br>20,500rpm(Process speed 290mm/sec) |
| Number of scanner mirror (polygon) surfaces |                              | 5  |
| Controls                                    | Laser ON timing control      | Laser ON/OFF control   |
|   |                              | Main scanning synchronization control                                    |
|   |                              | Sub scanning synchronization control                                     |
|   | Laser beam intensity control | APC control  |
|   | Others                       | Laser scanner motor control<br>Laser shutter control                     |

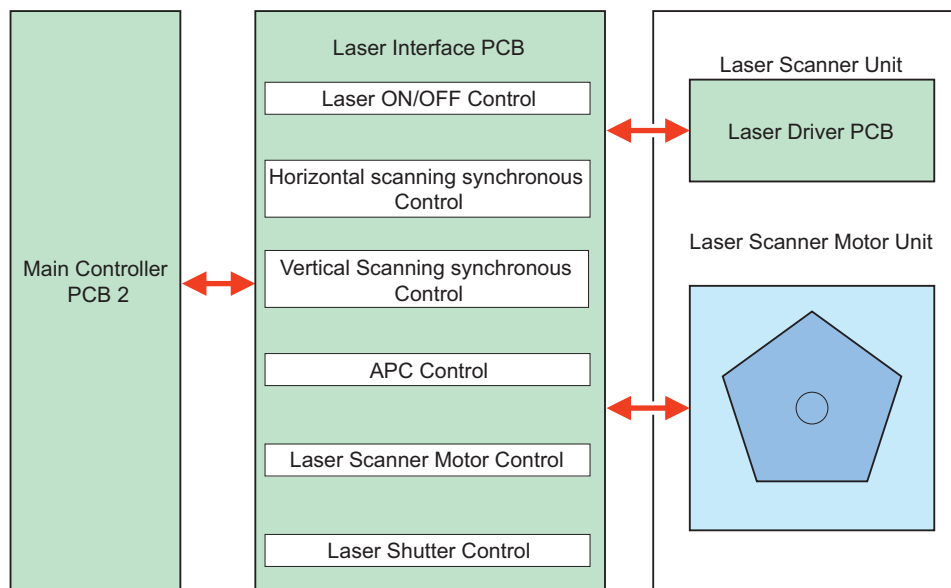
## ■ Parts Configuration



| Name                         | Role   |
|------------------------------|--|
| Laser driver                 | Laser driver   |
| Polygonal mirror             | Perform scanning with a laser beam in the main scanning direction.             |
| Reflection mirror            | Reflect a laser team to the drum.  |
| Correction lens              | Correct a main-scanning tilt of the laser beam coming from the folding mirror. |
| Tilt correction motor        | Correct a main-scanning tilt by moving the correction lens.                    |
| Image Formation Lens (small) | To connect focuses on the Drum to provide an image                             |
| Image Formation Lens (Large) | To connect focuses on the Drum to provide an image                             |

## Controls

### Overview

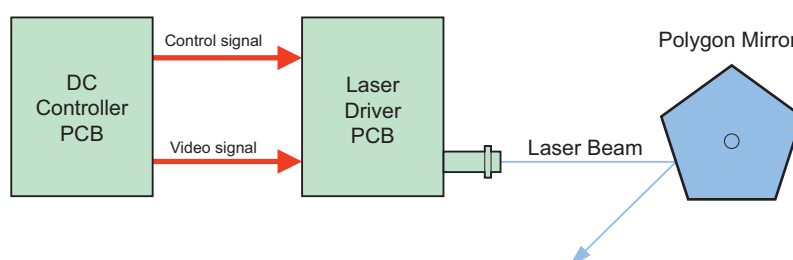


| Item                         | Purpose/Description                   |   |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| Laser ON timing control      | Laser ON/OFF control                  | Turn ON/OFF a laser beam according to the combination of laser control signals. |
|                              | Main scanning synchronization control | Performed to adjust the writing position in the main scanning direction.        |
|                              | Sub scanning synchronization control  | Performed to adjust the writing position in the sub scanning direction.         |
| Laser beam intensity control | APC control                           | 1Performed to keep a specified level of laser beam for each line.               |
| Laser scanner motor control  |                                       | To be executed to rotate the Polygon Mirror at the specified speed.             |
| Laser shutter control        |                                       | To prevent exposure of laser light in the machine when the Cover is open.       |

### Laser ON Timing Control

#### Laser ON/OFF Control

This control is performed to turn ON/OFF a laser beam according to the combination of laser control signals.



**<Timing of Execution>**

After the power is turned ON

**<Details of the Control>**

The DC controller switches the mode among four modes (Forcible OFF mode, APC mode, Print mode, Standby mode) according to the laser control signal.

| Mode         | Laser status | Remarks   |
|--------------|--------------|---|
| Forcible OFF | OFF          | Clear the laser beam intensity setting determined by APC. |
| APC          | ON           | Adjust the laser beam intensity.                          |
| Print mode   | OFF/ON       | Irradiate a laser beam according to the video signal.     |
| Standby mode | OFF          | The main unit is placed in the standby status.            |

### ● Main Scanning Synchronization Control

This control is performed to adjust the writing position in the main scanning direction.

**<Timing of Execution>**

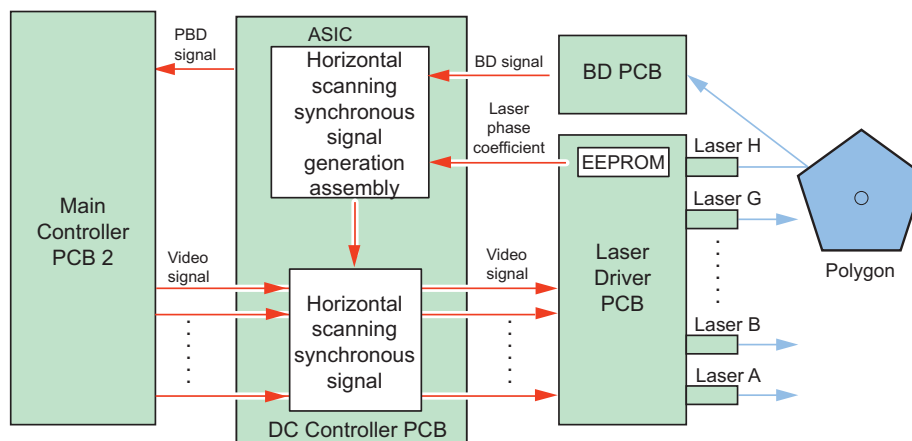
For every eight lines

**<Details of the Control>**

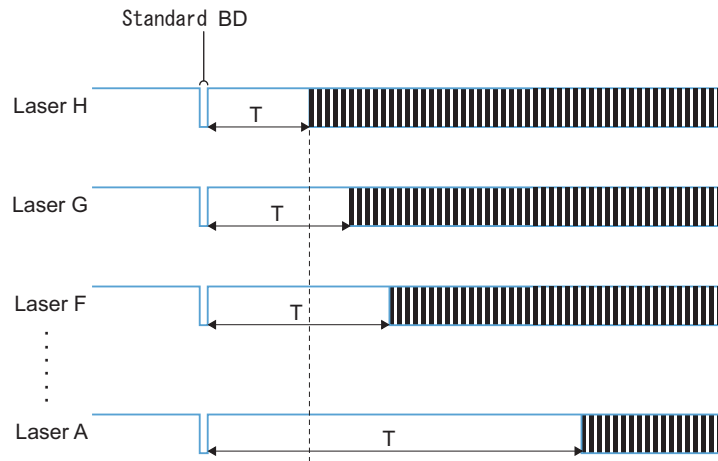
1. The synchronization control in horizontal scanning direction is executed with reference to Laser A.
2. The BD PCB is located on the light path of Laser A laser beam and the laser beam is emitted to the BD PCB.
3. The BD PCB detects laser beam of Laser A and generates BD signal to be sent to the DC Controller PCB.
4. The DC Controller sends the PBD signal to Main Controller PCB 2 according to BD signal.
5. Based on the laser phase coefficient and the BD signal, the DC Controller PCB generates synchronization signal in horizontal scanning direction on an 8 lines basis at the generation area of synchronization signal in horizontal scanning direction.
6. Once the PBD signal is received, Main Controller PCB 2 sends video signal to the DC Controller PCB.
7. The video signal sent from Main Controller PCB 2 is output to the Laser Driver PCB according to the synchronization signal in horizontal scanning direction.

**NOTE:**

EEPROM on the Laser Driver PCB stores the 8-beam phase displacement coefficient (laser phase coefficient), which is unique to the Laser Scanner Unit, and corrects 8-beam phase difference based on the stored coefficient. When a Laser Scanner Unit is replaced, the DC Controller PCB automatically retrieves the laser phase coefficient of EEPROM.







### • Sub Scanning Synchronization Control

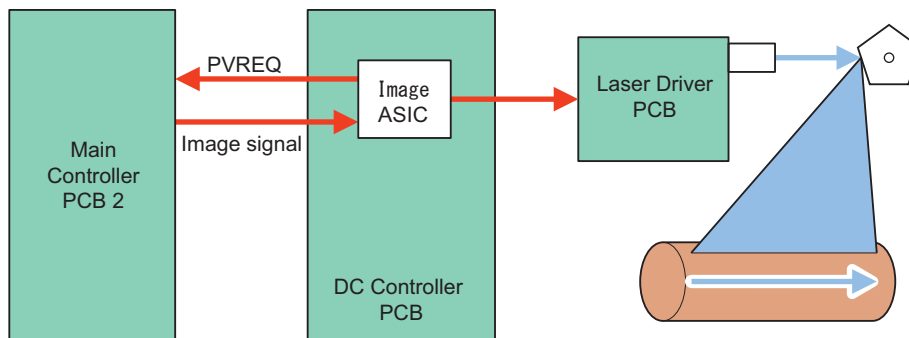
This control is performed to adjust the writing position in the sub scanning direction.

#### <Execution timing>

When printing is started

#### <Control Description>

1. The DC Controller PCB generates synchronization signal in vertical scanning direction (PVREQ) and sends to Main Controller PCB 2.
2. Main Controller PCB 2 receives PVREQ (synchronization signal in vertical scanning direction) and sends the video signal to the DC Controller PCB.
3. The DC Controller PCB sends drive signal to the Laser Driver PCB to turn on the laser.



## ■ Laser Beam Intensity Control

### • APC (Auto Power Control) Control

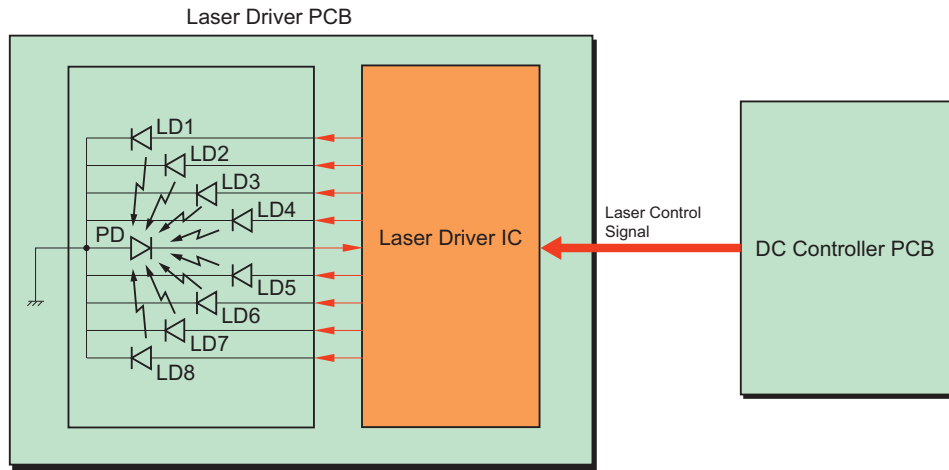
To keep constant laser light intensity per 8 beams (1BD basis)

#### <Execution timing>

When the laser is scanned (per line)

#### <Control Description>

1. The DC Controller PCB outputs laser control signal to the Laser Driver IC in the Laser Driver PCB to set in APC mode.
2. The Laser Driver IC is set in APC mode and makes laser diodes (LD1 to LD8) to forcibly emit in series.
3. The Laser Driver IC monitors laser diodes (LD1 to LD8) with the Photo Diode (PD) and adjusts output of laser diode until the laser light intensity reaches a specified level.



## ■ Polygon Motor Control

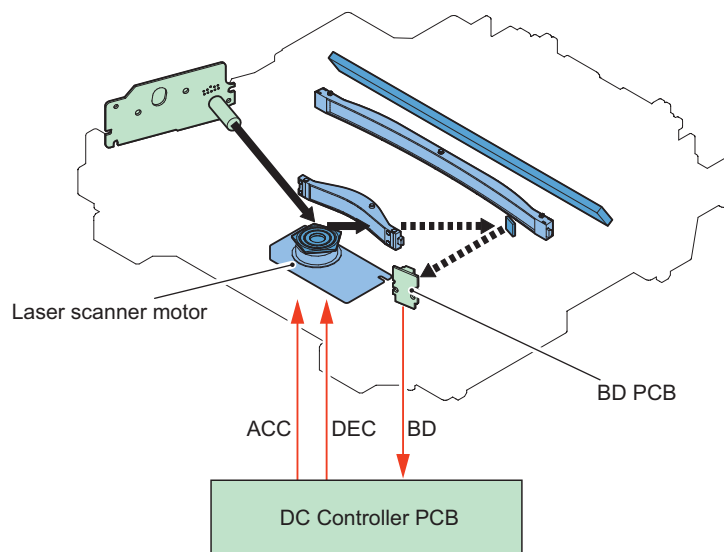
This control is performed to rotate the polygon mirror at a specified speed.

### <Execution timing>

When the Laser Scanner Motor is started

### <Control description>

1. The DC Controller PCB outputs acceleration signal (ACC) to forcibly rotate the Laser Scanner Motor.
2. The speed detection signals (FG, BD) are detected to be compared with the reference signal generated in the reference signal generation area, so that the acceleration signal (ACC) and the deceleration signal (DEC) are controlled to keep the specified speed.



### <Related error code>

E100: Scanner Motor BD unlock error

E110: Scanner Motor FG unlock error

## ■ Laser Shutter Control

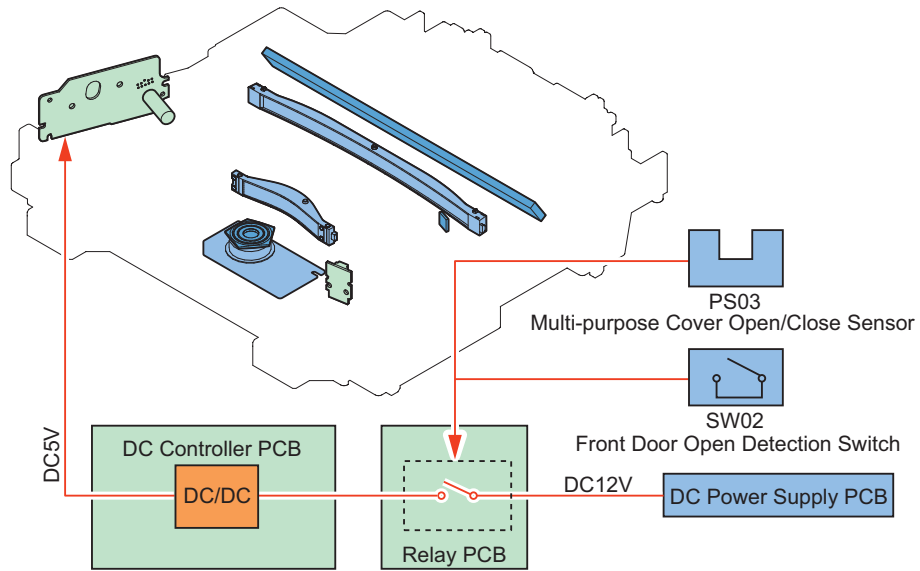
To prevent laser exposure in the machine when the Cover is open

### <Execution timing>

When the Front Door or Multi tray Cover opens/closes

### <Control description>

When the Front Door or Multi tray Cover opens, the DC Controller PCB stops power supply (DC5V) of the Laser Driver to prevent laser exposure.



**NOTE:**

This control is executed by the software only and there is no shutter to prevent laser exposure.

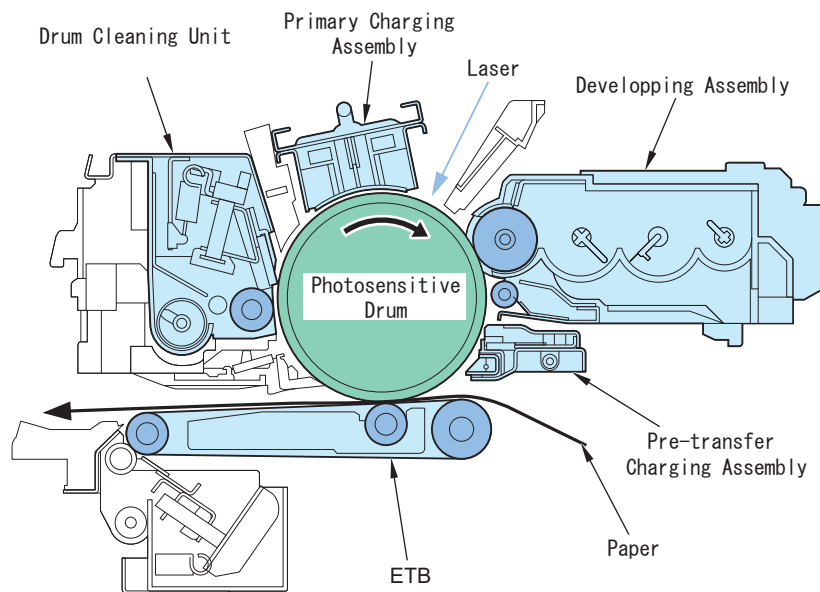
# Image Formation System

## Overview

### ■ Overview

Toner image is formed by the magnetic, 1-component toner projection developing method in image formation system. To ensure high quality print, this machine introduces the following new technologies:

- Small-diameter toner  
High resolution by fine-grained toner
- ETB transfer method  
Improved transfer/feeding performance by the ETB feeding
- The shutter mechanism is added to the Primary Charging Assembly and the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly.  
This prevents discharge products from attaching on the Drum, thus prevents image failure just after startup.
- Improved accessibility to the periodically replaced / durable parts provides increased serviceability.



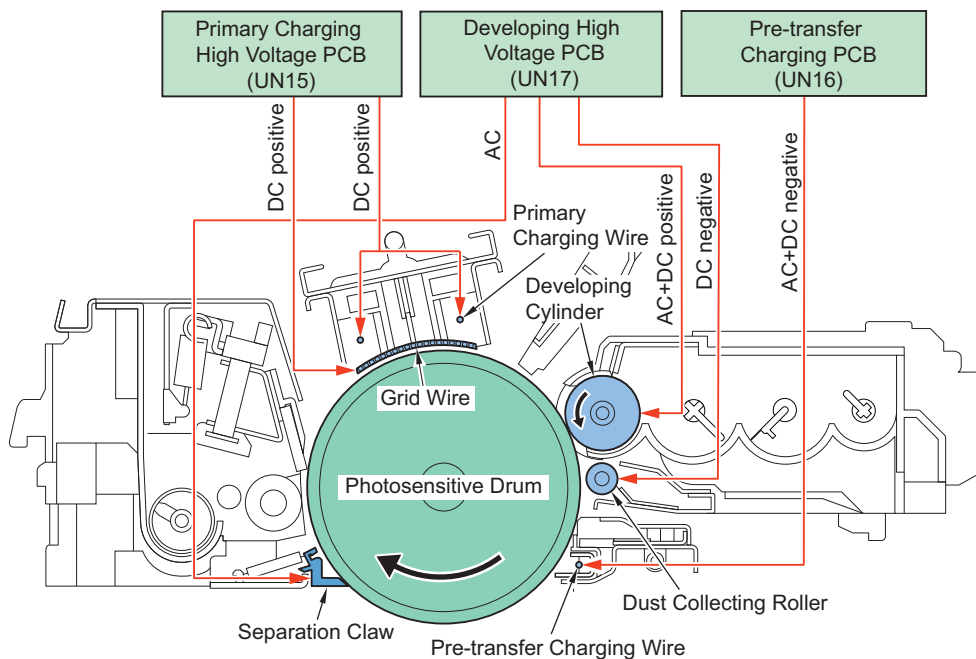
### ■ Specifications

#### ● Basic Specifications

| Item                  |                       | Function/Method   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|---|
| Photosensitive Drum   | Material              | A-Si  |
|                       | Drum diameter         | 84 mm in diameter   |
|                       | Cleaning              | Cleaning Blade  |
|                       | Process speed         | imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6780: 350 mm/sec<br>imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6765/6755: 290 mm/sec |
|                       | Separation method     | Curvature separation + Separation Claw  |
|                       | Drum Heater           | Yes (42 +/- 2 deg C)  |
|                       | Drum HP detection     | Available   |
| Developing Assembly   | Developing method     | Dry, 1-component toner projection method  |
|                       | Developing Cylinder   | 1 cylinder (single-developing method)<br>24.5 mm in diameter                            |
|                       | Toner                 | Magnetic negative toner   |
|                       | Toner Level Detection | Available (Magnetic Sensor)   |
| Primary Charging      | Charging method       | Corona charging (2 charging wires + grind wire)   |
|                       | Cleaning              | Cleaning Pad (Charging Wire)  |
|                       | Charging Shutter      | Available   |
| Pre-transfer charging | Charging method       | Corona charging (1 Charging Wire)   |
|                       | Cleaning              | Cleaning Pad (Charging Wire)  |

| Item                  |                            | Function/Method   |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|---|
| Pre-transfer charging | Charging Shutter           | Available   |
| Transfer method       |                            | Direct transfer (ETB: Electrostatic Transfer Belt)        |
| ETB Unit              | Material                   | CR rubber + urethane resin                                |
|                       | Circumferential length     | 298.5 mm  |
|                       | Cleaning                   | Brush Roller + Cleaning Blade                             |
|                       | Transfer method            | Transfer Roller (sponge roller)                           |
|                       | Separation method          | Curvature separation + Static Eliminator                  |
|                       | Disengagement mechanism    | Available   |
| Waste Toner Container | Capacity                   | Equivalent to 600,000 sheets (6% Duty A4 size conversion) |
|                       | Full level detection       | Available   |
|                       | Presence/absence detection | Available   |
| Toner Container       | Method                     | Set-on (manual)   |
| Patch Sensor          |                            | None  |

• Charging Specifications

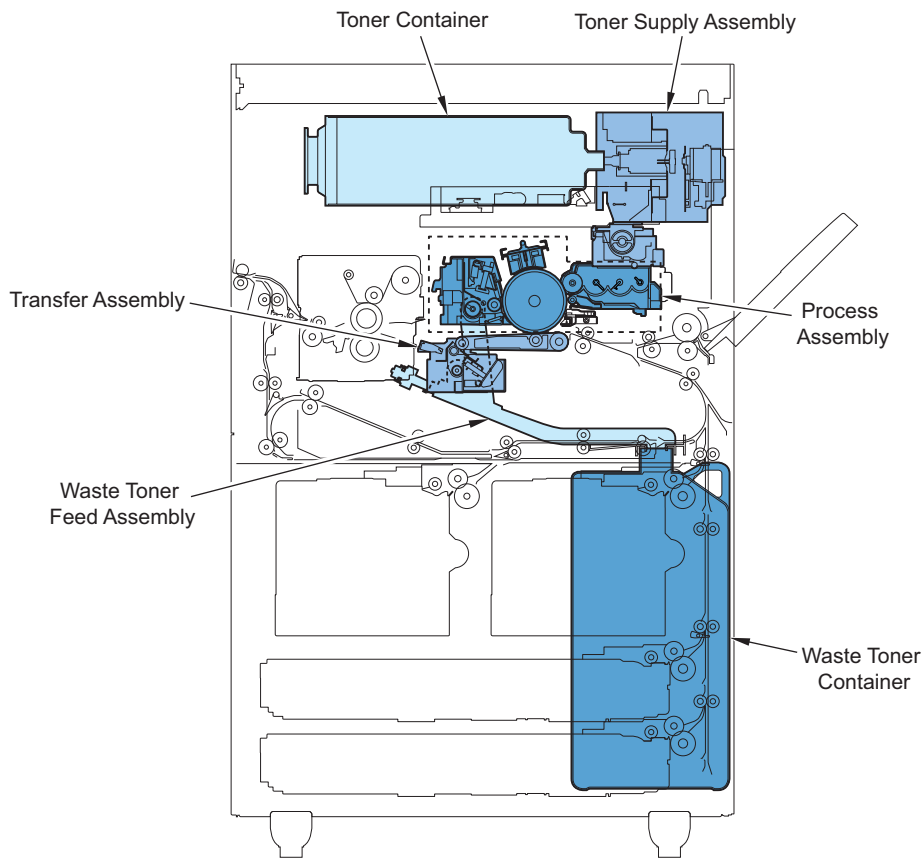


| Item                       |         | Bias value     | Remarks   |
|----------------------------|---------|----------------|---|
| Primary charging bias      | DC bias | 6000 to 9000 V | To be specified by the potential control  |
| Grid bias                  | DC bias | 530 to 800 V   | To be specified by the estimated life and environment*                                    |
| Developing bias            | AC bias | 1200 V         | Fixed value (ON/OFF only)   |
|                            | DC bias | 200 to 300 V   | To be specified by the estimated life and environment*                                    |
| Dust-collection bias       | DC bias | -800 V         | Constant voltage control  |
| Pre-transfer charging bias | AC bias | 8300 V         | Fixed value (ON/OFF only)   |
|                            | DC bias | -3500 to 0 V   | Constant current control (to be specified by the environment*)                            |
| Transfer bias              | DC bias | 0 to 6500 V    | Constant current control (to be specified by the environment*, paper type and print mode) |
| Separation claw bias       | AC bias | 690 V          | Fixed value (ON/OFF only)   |

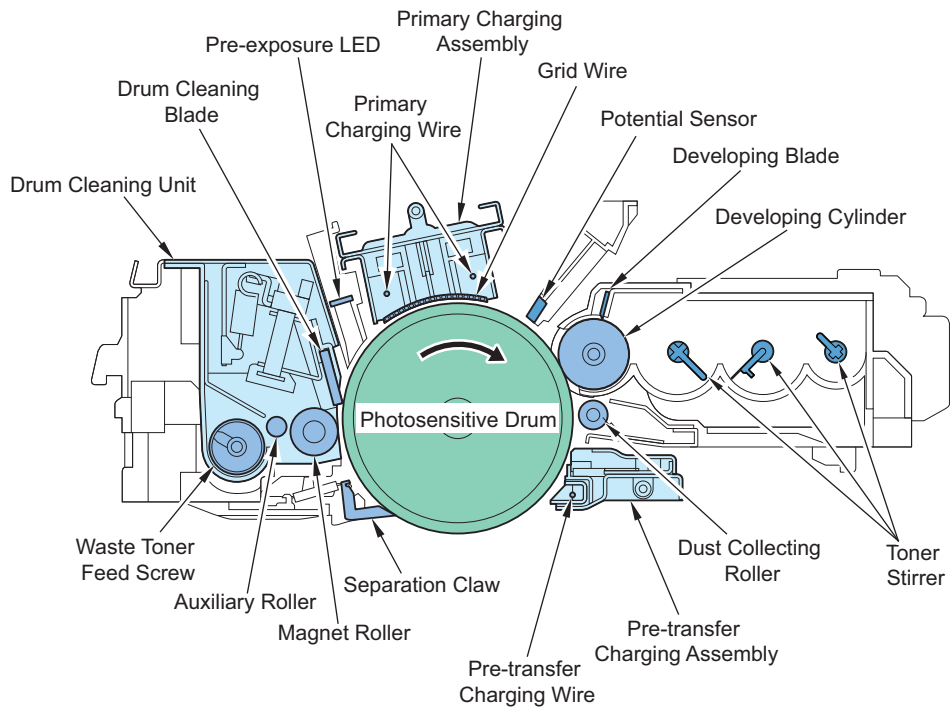
\* Detected by the Environment Sensor (THU01)

■ Parts Configuration

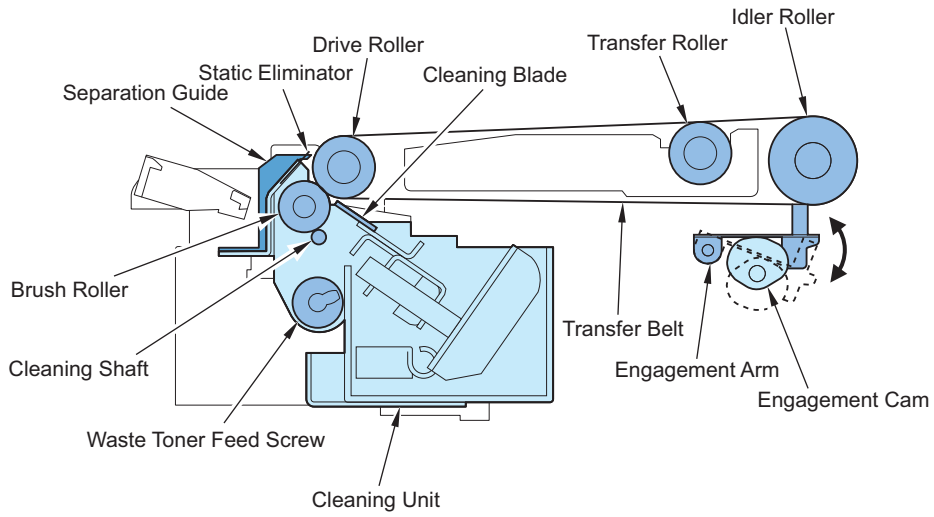
● Entire Configuration



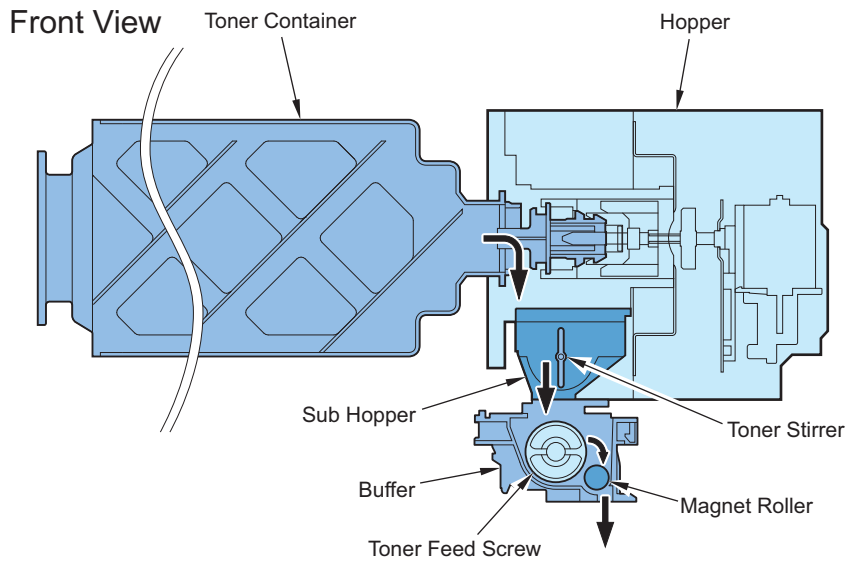
● Process Area



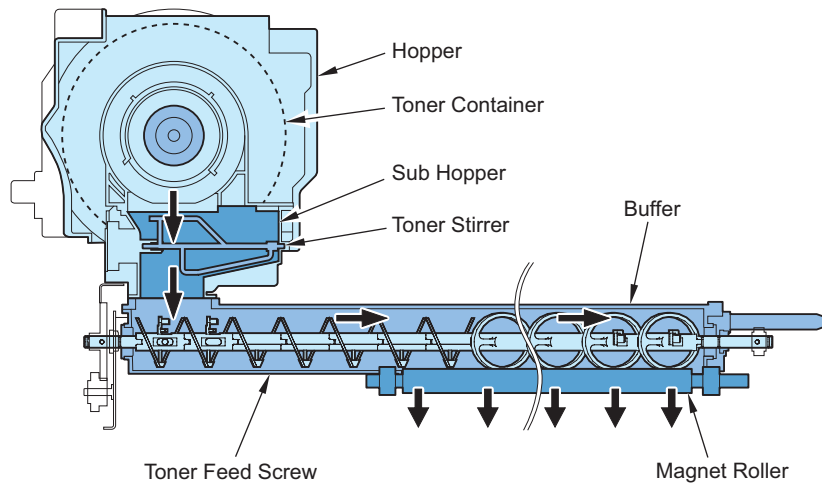
• Transfer Area



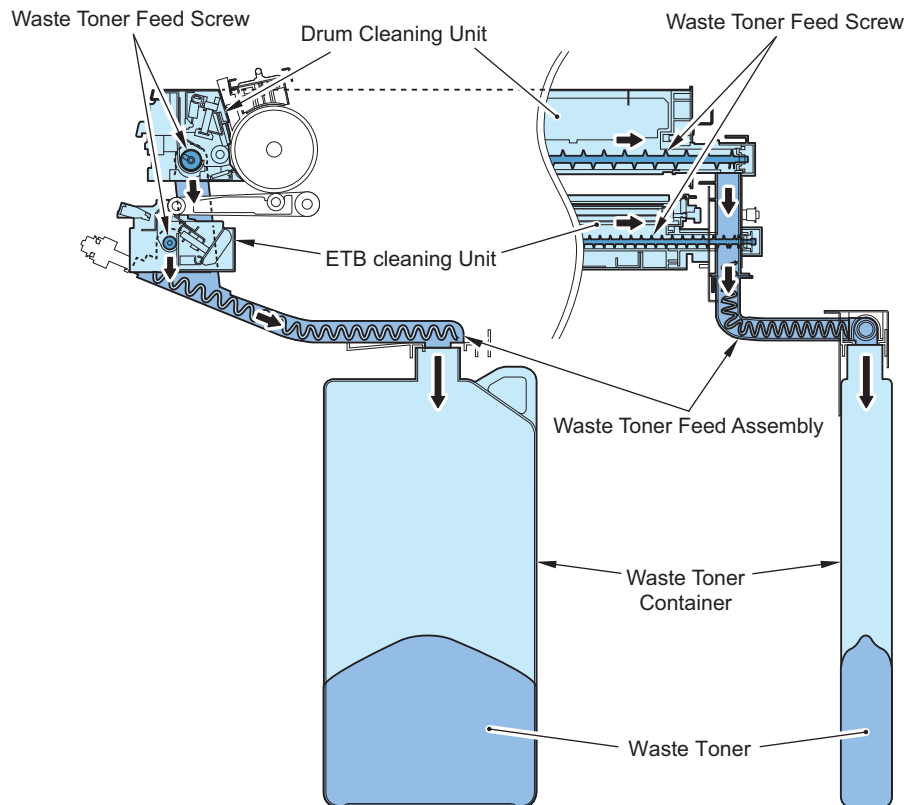
• Toner Supply Area



Right Side View

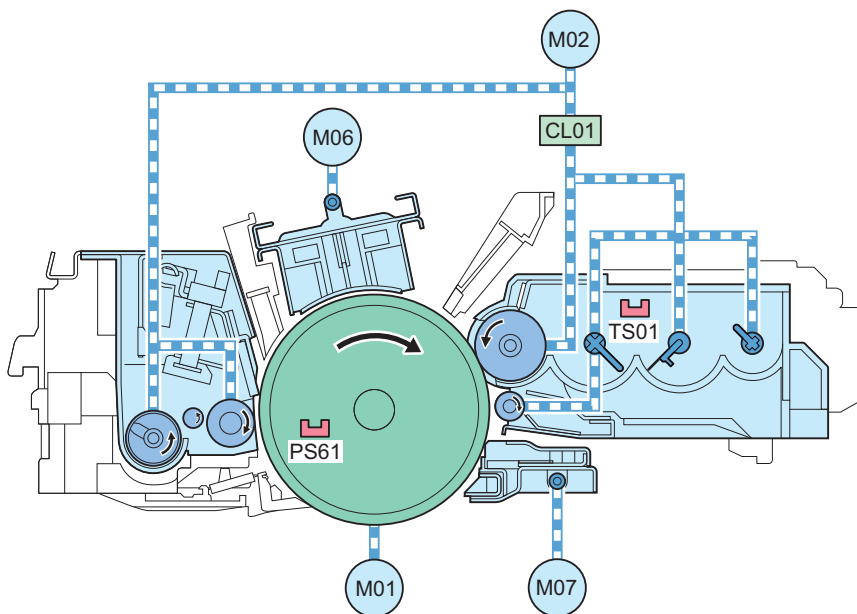


● Waste Toner Feeding Area



■ Drive Configuration

● Drive Configuration

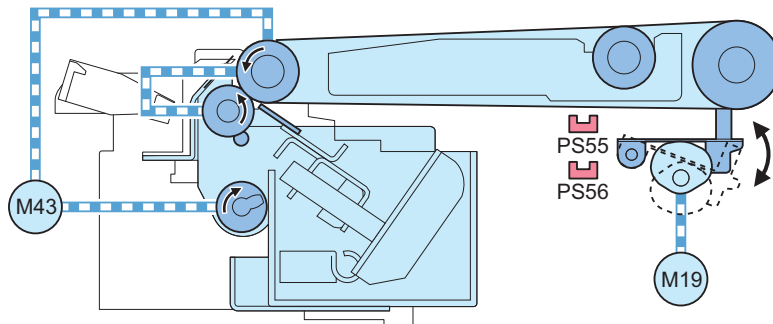


| Symbol | Name                                      | Function   |
|--------|---|--|
| M01    | Drum Motor                                | To drive the Photosensitive Drum and the Dustcollection Roller   |
| M02    | Developing Motor                          | To drive the Developing Cylinder, the Toner Stirring Plate, the Magnet Roller and the Waste Toner Feed Screw |
| M06    | Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Motor      | To drive the Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Pad and the Primary Charging Shutter                             |
| M07    | Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Motor | To drive the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Pad and the Pre-transfer Charging Shutter                   |



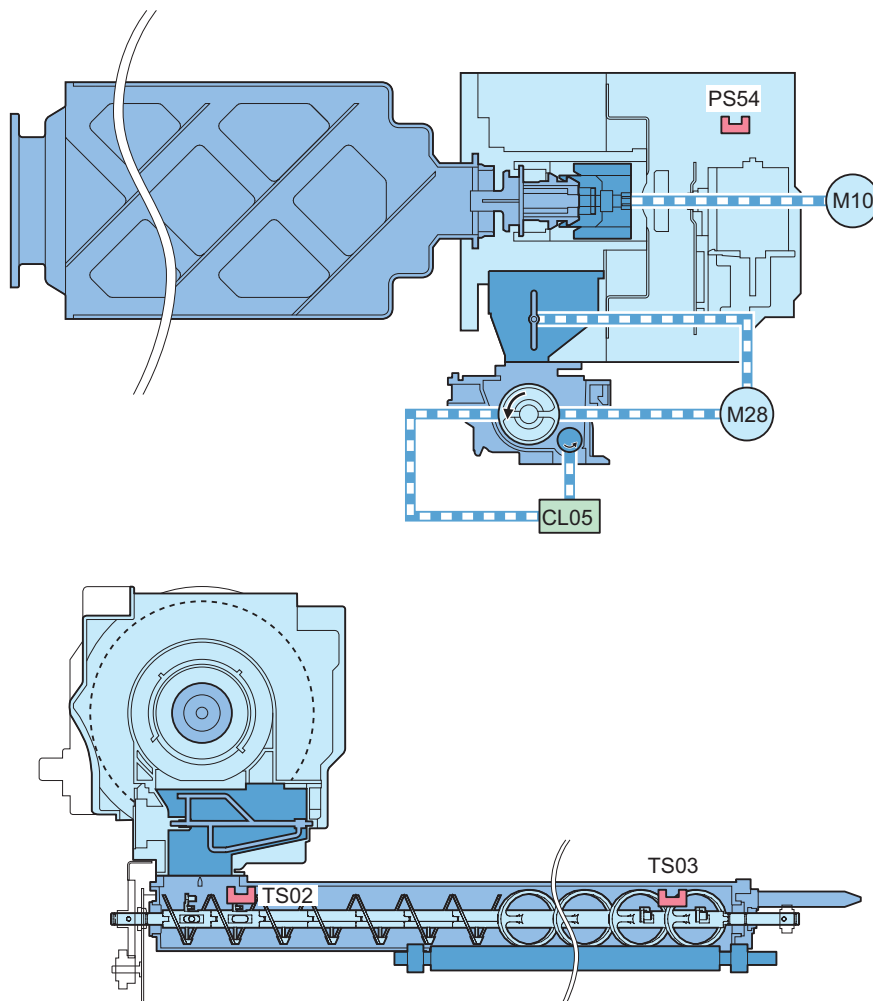
| Symbol | Name                      | Function  |
|--------|---------------------------|---|
| CL01   | Developing Clutch         | To drive the Developing Cylinder and the Toner Stirring Plate |
| TS01   | Developing Toner Sensor   | To detect toner level in the Developing Assembly              |
| PS61   | Drum Home Position Sensor | To detect home position of the Photosensitive Drum            |

• Transfer Area



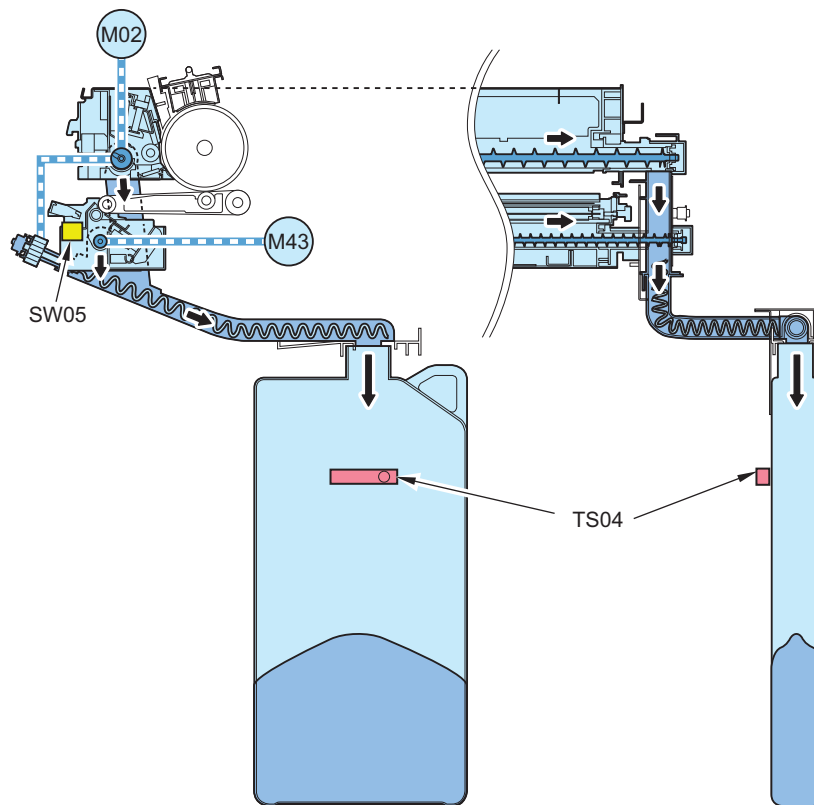
| Symbol | Parts name             | Function  |
|--------|------------------------|---|
| M19    | Duplex Feed Left Motor | To make the ETB Unit (ETB) engaged/disengaged                                   |
| M43    | ETB Motor              | To drive the ETB Drive Roller, the Brush Roller and the Waste Toner Feed Screw. |
| PS55   | ETB Engage Sensor      | To detect engagement of the.  |
| PS56   | ETB Disengage Sensor   | To detect disengagement of the ETB (home position).                             |

• Toner Supply Area



| Symbol | Parts name                  | Function  |
|--------|-----------------------------|---|
| M10    | Toner Supply Motor          | To drive the Toner Stirring Plate (to supply toner to the Buffer)                             |
| M28    | Toner Feed Motor            | To drive the Toner Feed Screw and the Toner Stirring Plate (to feed toner)                    |
| CL05   | Magnet Roller Clutch        | To drive the Magnet Roller (to supply toner to the Developing Assembly)                       |
| TS02   | Buffer Toner Sensor 1       | To detect toner excess supply*<br>* When toner clusters is supplied from the Sub Hopper, etc. |
| TS03   | Buffer Toner Sensor 2       | To detect toner level in the Buffer (to detect absence of toner in the Buffer)                |
| PS54   | Toner Exchange Cover Sensor | To detect whether the Toner Exchange Cover is opened/ closed.                                 |

● Waste Toner Feeding Area

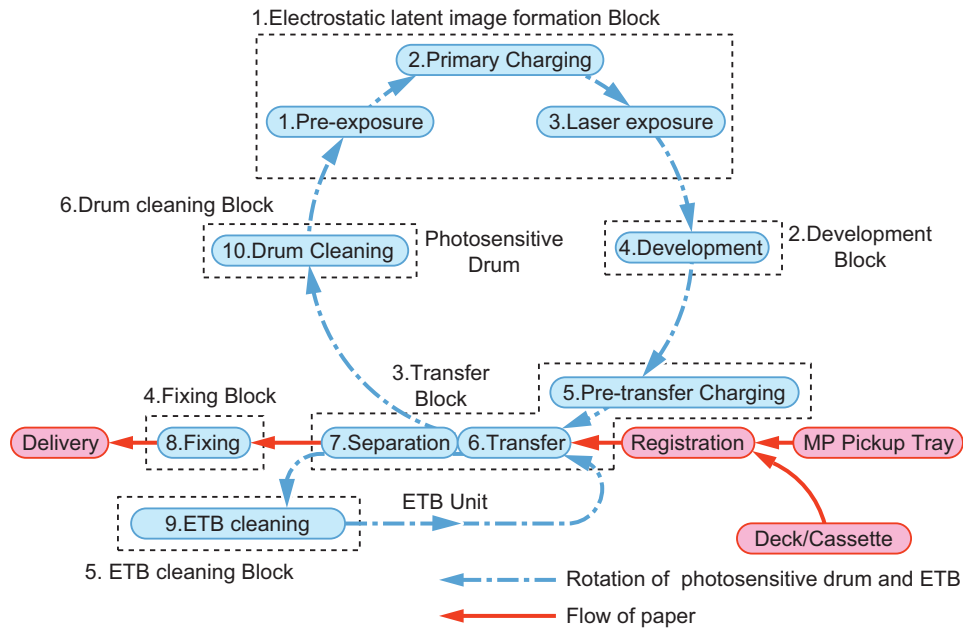


| Symbol | Parts name                        | Function  |
|--------|-----------------------------------|---|
| M02    | Developing Motor                  | To drive the Waste Toner Feed Screw(Drum Cleaning Unit) |
| M43    | ETB Motor                         | To drive the Waste Toner Feed Screw(ETB Cleaning Unit)  |
| SW5    | Waste Toner Lock Detection Switch | To detect lock of the Waste Toner Feed Screw            |
| TS04   | Waste Toner Full Sensor           | To detect whether the Waste Toner Container is full.    |

■ Print Process

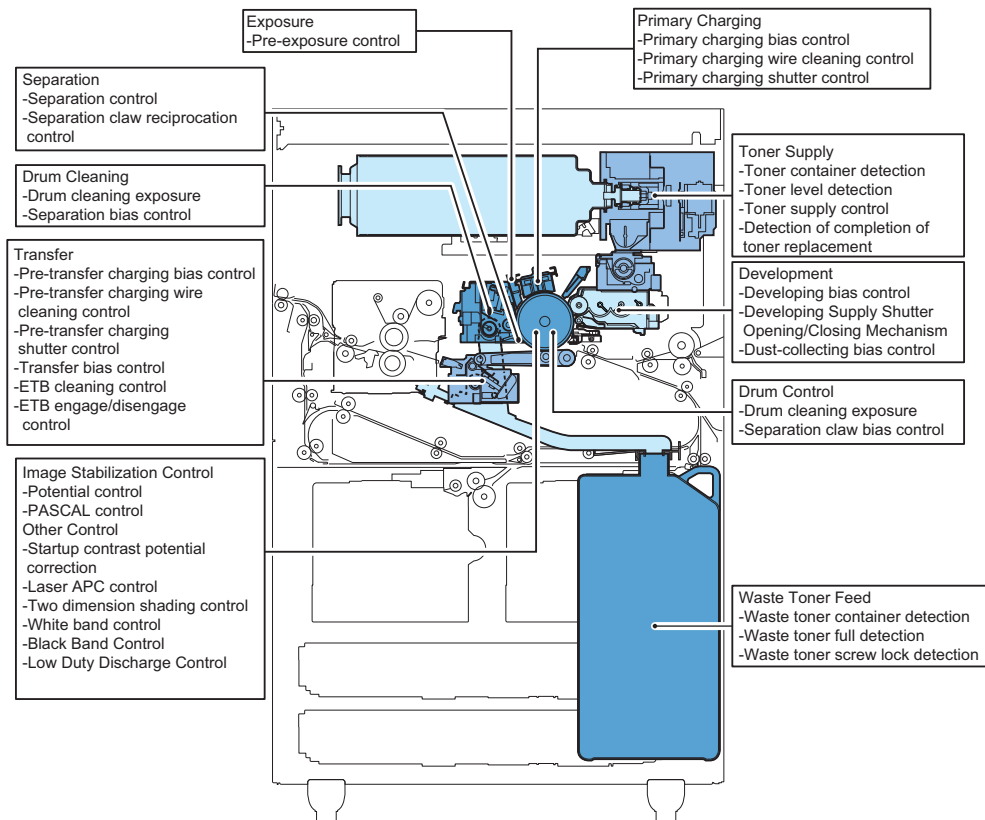
| Block                  | Step | Overview   |
|------------------------|------|--|
| Static formation block | 1    | Exposure<br>Light emission from the Pre-exposure LED removes residual potential on the surface of the Photosensitive Drum to prevent density unevenness.   |
|                        | 2    | Primary charging<br>The surface of the Photosensitive Drum is charged to make a uniform positive potential. This machine uses the Primary Charging Assembly which indirectly gives potential from the Charging Wire to the Photosensitive Drum.                |
|                        | 3    | Laser exposure<br>Emission of the laser beam forms a static latent image on the surface of the Photosensitive Drum. When the laser beam is applied on the surface of the positively charged Photosensitive Drum, the potential at the emitted part is reduced. |

| Block                              | Step | Step                  | Overview   |
|------------------------------------|------|-----------------------|--|
| Developing block<br>Transfer block | 4    | Developing            | With the magnetic, 1-component toner projection developing method, toner that has been negatively charged by the Developing Cylinder is attached to the latent image on the surface of the Photosensitive Drum to make it visible. |
|                                    | 5    | Pre-transfer charging | Toner on the Photosensitive Drum is made to be a uniform potential.  |
|                                    | 6    | Transfer              | Positive potential is applied to the Transfer Roller so that the toner on the Photosensitive Drum is transferred on a paper.   |
|                                    | 7    | Separation            | With the curvature separation method and the static eliminator, the paper is separated from the Photosensitive Drum and the ETB.   |
| Fixing block                       | 8    | Fixing                | The toner on the paper is fused on the paper by heat and pressure.   |
| ETB cleaning block                 | 9    | ETB cleaning          | The Cleaning Blade removes the residual toner attached on the ETB.   |
| Drum cleaning block                | 10   | Drum cleaning         | The Cleaning Blade removes the residual toner attached on the Photosensitive Drum.   |





■ Overview



| Control name     |   | Description  |
|------------------|---|--|
| Exposure         |   |  |
|                  | Pre-exposure control                                | To apply the light of the Pre-exposure LED on the surface of the Photosensitive Drum.  |
| Primary charging |   |  |
|                  | Primary charging wire bias control                  | To apply the positive potential to the Primary Charging Wire and the Grid Wire.  |
|                  | Primary charging wire cleaning control              | To clean the Primary Charging Wire.  |
|                  | Primary charging shutter control                    | To prevent image failure caused by ozone generated from the Primary Charging Wire.   |
| Developing       |   |  |
|                  | Developing bias control                             | To apply positive potential to the Developing Cylinder so that the toner on the Developing Cylinder is attached on the surface of the Photosensitive Drum. |
|                  | Developing Supply Shutter Opening/Closing Mechanism | There are shutters at the Supply Mouths of the Developing Assembly and the Buffer Unit to prevent toner scattering.  |
|                  | Toner collection sheet bias control                 | To apply negative potential to the Toner Collection Sheet.   |
| Transfer         |   |  |
|                  | Pre-transfer charging bias control                  | To charge toner negatively and evenly to ensure stability of transfer performance.   |
|                  | Pre-transfer charging wire cleaning control         | To clean the Pre-transfer Charging Wire to prevent the Charging Wire failure that is caused by soil of the Pre-transfer Charging Wire.                     |
|                  | Pre-transfer charging shutter control               | To prevent image failure caused by ozone generated from the Pretransfer Charging Wire.   |
|                  | Transfer bias control                               | To apply positive potential to the Transfer Roller so that the toner on the Photosensitive Drum is transferred on the paper.                               |
|                  | ETB cleaning control                                | To remove the residual toner on the ETB to prevent image failure that is caused by toner soil on the belt.   |

| Control name                |   | Description   |
|-----------------------------|---|---|
|                             | ETB engagement/disengagement control          | To engage/disengage the ETB with the Photosensitive Drum.   |
| Separation                  |   |   |
|                             | Separation control                            | To separate paper from the Photosensitive Drum and the ETB.   |
|                             | Separation Claw Reciprocation Control         | By moving the Separation Claw back and forth (reciprocation), scar on the drum caused by the Separation Claw can be prevented.  |
| Drum cleaning               |   |   |
|                             | Drum cleaning control                         | To remove residual toner on the Photosensitive Drum.  |
|                             | Separation bias control                       | To remove toner attached to the Drum Separation Claw.   |
| Drum control                |   |   |
|                             | Drum home position detection                  | To detect home position of the Photosensitive Drum.   |
|                             | Drum heater control                           | To keep constant temperature of the Photosensitive Drum.  |
| Toner supply                |   |   |
|                             | Toner Container Detection                     | Toner Container detection is not performed with this machine.   |
|                             | Toner level detection                         | To detect toner level in the Developing Unit and the Buffer Unit.   |
|                             | Toner supply control                          | To supply toner from the Toner Container to the Developing Assembly.  |
|                             | Toner Replacement Completion Detection        | To send a notice of Toner Replacement Completion when Toner Container is replaced.  |
| Waste toner feeding         |   |   |
|                             | Waste toner container detection               | To detect whether the Waste Toner Container is attached to the host machine.  |
|                             | Waste toner full level detection              | To detect whether the Waste Toner Container is full.  |
|                             | Waste toner screw lock detection              | To detect whether the Waste Toner Screw is locked.  |
| Image stabilization control |   |   |
|                             | Potential control                             | To determine primary current (VD), laser power (VL) and developing bias (Vdc) according to the deterioration level of the Photosensitive Drum and the environmental change. |
|                             | PASCAL control                                | To determine gradation adjustment value based on the image density scanned by the Reader.   |
| Other Control               |   |   |
|                             | Startup Contrast Potential (Vcont) Correction | To adjust the contrast potential (Vcont) at startup in order to maintain the density consistently.  |
|                             | Laser APC control                             | To correct the laser output control value to prevent changes in surface potential by the laser output.  |
|                             | 2D shading control *1                         | To correct uneven potential on the Photosensitive Drum by laser exposure.   |
|                             | White Band Control                            | To blow off the reversely-charged toner on the Developing Sleeve forcibly to the Drum surface in order to collect the toner into the Drum Cleaning Unit.                    |
|                             | Black Band Control                            | To supply toner thoroughly to the ends of the Cleaning Blade and prevent the blade from everting by forming the toner band at the Drum ends.                                |
|                             | Low Duty Discharge Control                    | To forcibly eject toner by forming the toner band at the Drum ends in order to avoid toner deterioration in case low duty images are continuously output.                   |

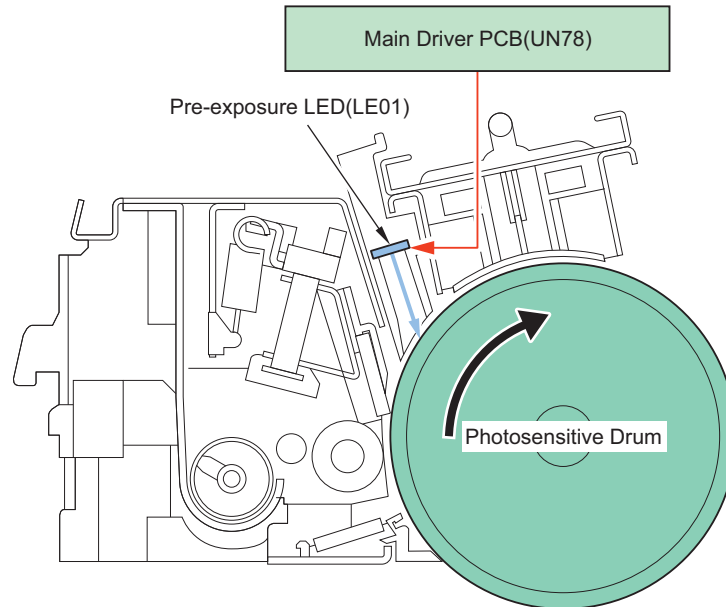
\*1: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported.

## ■ Exposure

### ● Pre-exposure Control

To prevent uneven density with the print image, residual potential on the Photosensitive Drum is removed before the primary charging.

With the command by the DC Controller PCB, the Pre-exposure LED (LE01) is emitted. By emitting the LED on the Photosensitive Drum, remove residual potential on the drum.



## ■ Primary Charging

### ● Primary Charging Bias Control

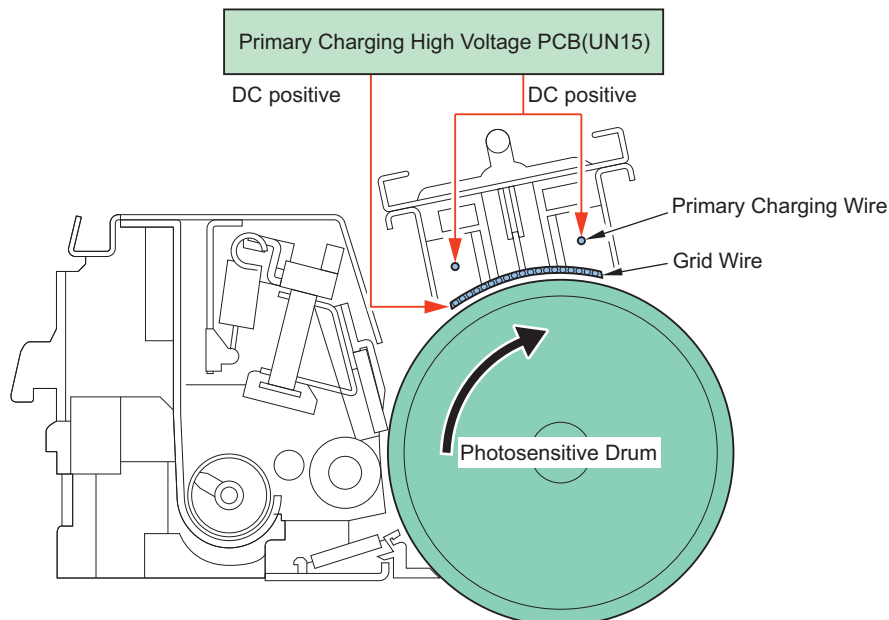
To make the surface of the Photosensitive Drum evenly and positively charged.

The primary charging bias (DC positive), which has been generated by the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN15), is applied to the Primary Charging Wire and the Grid Wire.

- Primary charging DC bias: the bias to be applied to the Primary Charging Wire
- Grid DC bias: the bias to be applied to the Grid Wire

The primary charging bias value is specified by the potential control.

The grid bias is specified based on the estimated life and the environment.



### ● Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Control

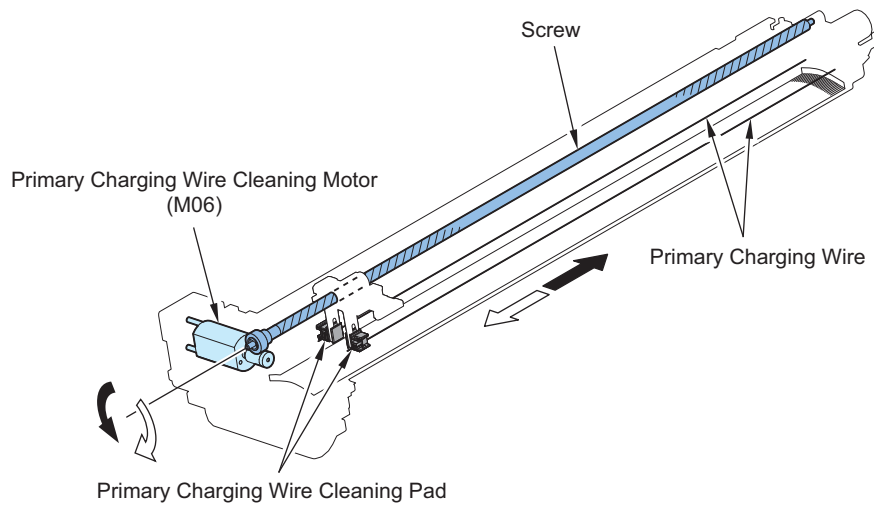
To prevent charging failure caused by soil of the Primary Charging Wire.

#### <Execution timing>

- Interruption at every 2000 sheets of continuous print (the value can be changed in service mode: 1,000 to 5,000 sheets)
- After last rotation which is performed on the 1500th sheet and later since the last cleaning (1-roundtrip)
- In the case of executing "Clean Wire" in user mode (1-roundtrip)
- In the case of executing the wire cleaning in service mode (1-roundtrip or 5-roundtrip)

**<Control description>**

The drive of the Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Motor (M06) makes the Cleaner Screw rotate clockwise/counterclockwise, which moves the Cleaning Pad back and forth to clean the Primary Charging Wire. Position detection of the Cleaning Pad is not performed.

**<Related service mode>**

- To clean the Charging Wires of Primary Charging Assembly and Pre-transfer Charging Assembly simultaneously (5-reciprocation).  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-CLN
- To clean the Charging Wires of Primary Charging Assembly and Pre-transfer Charging Assembly simultaneously (1-reciprocation).  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-EX
- To set the offset value of the paper interval for automatic cleaning of the Primary Charging Wire. (Lv.2)  
COPIER > OPTION > CLEANING > W-CLN-P

**• Primary Charging Shutter Control**

To prevent uneven potential on the Photosensitive Drum caused by discharge products (nitrogen oxide) accumulated on the Primary Charging Assembly.

**NOTE:**

In the environment which moisture content is lower than the one in power saving environment (temperature: 23 deg C, humidity: 70%, moisture content: 15g), set the Drum Heater to OFF in the sleep mode after a specified time passes. Discharge product (nitrogen compound) which is generated at the Charging Assembly when image is formed is deposited on the Drum when the time passes.

When the Drum Heater is OFF, the discharge product (nitrogen compound) has a chemical reaction with the moisture in the air and generates nitric acid. This nitric acid deteriorates the surface of the Drum and causes the image failure.

**<Execution timing>**

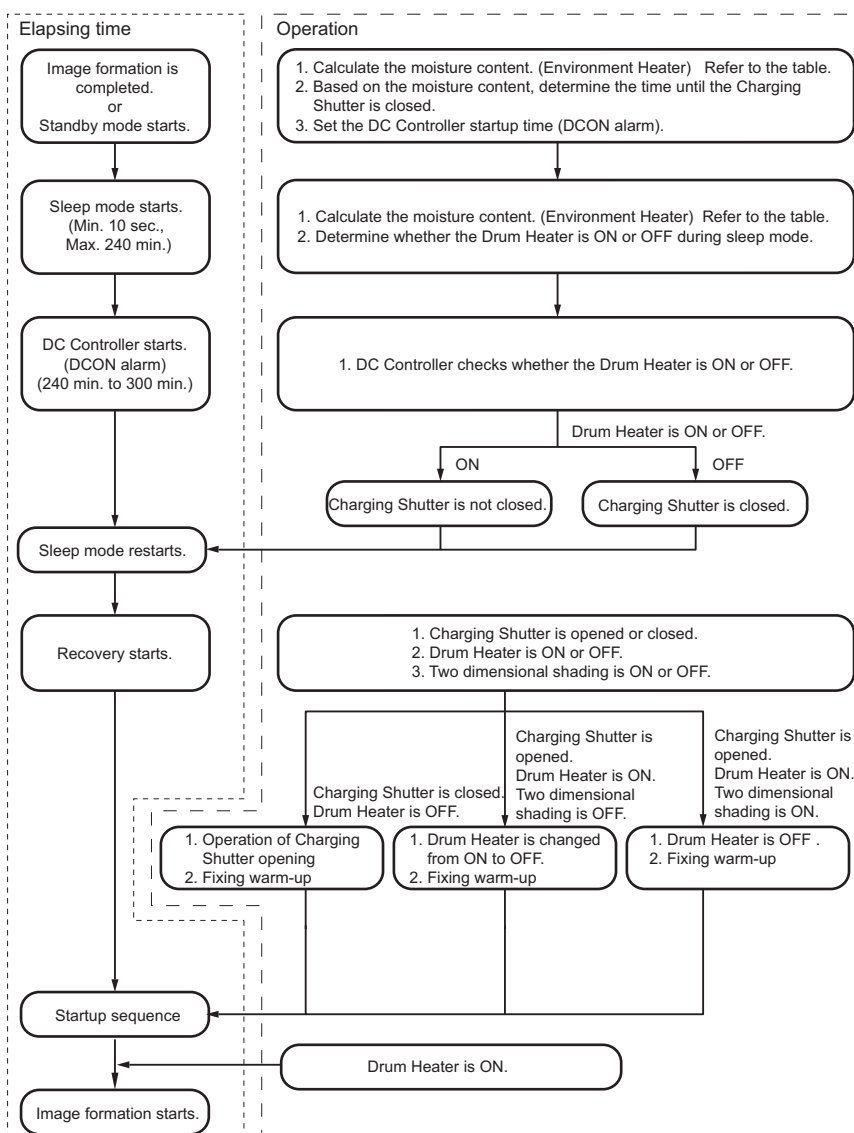
- When the Drum Heater is turned OFF
- During sleep mode

<Execution timing>

- After 4 or 5 hours since the drum was stopped\*  
 \*The time is determined by the environment (moisture content) when the drum operation was stopped.  
 The timing for closing the Primary/Pre-transfer Charging Shutter can be set in the following service mode.  
 COPIER > OPTION > IMG-DEV > PRI-SHUT

| Environment | Moisture content | Temperature/Humidity | Drum Heater | Time      |
|-------------|------------------|----------------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1           | to 0.86          | 23 deg C 5%          | OFF         | 300min.   |
| 2           | to 1.73          | 23 deg C 10%         | OFF         | 285min.   |
| 3           | to 5.8           | 23 deg C 30%         | OFF         | 270min.   |
| 4           | to 8.9           | 23 deg C 50%         | OFF         | 255min.   |
| Energy save | to 12.41         | 22 deg C 75%         | OFF         | 240 min.  |
| 5           | to 15            | 23 deg C 70%         | ON          | Not close |
| 6           | to 18            | 27 deg C 80%         | ON          | Not close |
| 7           | to 21.6          | 30 deg C 80%         | ON          | Not close |

Shutter Open/Close Operation Sequence



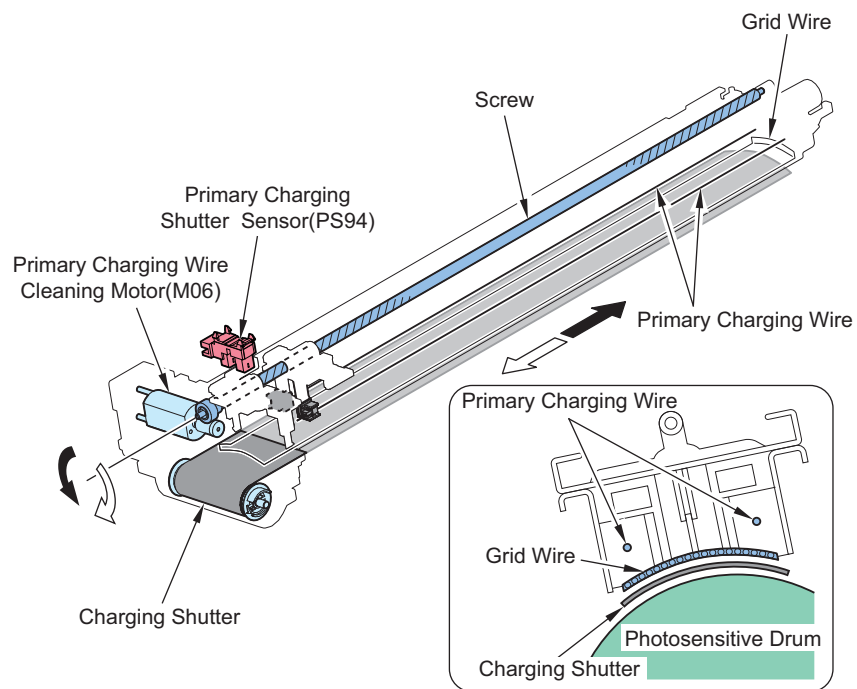
<Control description>

The shutter is open or closed by the cleaning mechanism of the Primary Charging Wire. The Primary Charging Shutter is made of fiber and usually taken up by the bobbin. The drive of the Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Motor (M06) moves the Cleaning Pad to the rear and the shutter taken up by the bobbin becomes extended to make the Shutter closed.



Because the Shutter comes between the Grid Wire and the Photosensitive Drum, discharge products from the Primary Charging Assembly do not reach the Photosensitive Drum.

The Primary Charging Shutter Sensor (PS94) detects opening/close of the shutter.



<Related error code>

E060-0001: Primary Charging Shutter HP open error

E060-0002: Primary Charging Shutter HP close error

## ■ Developing

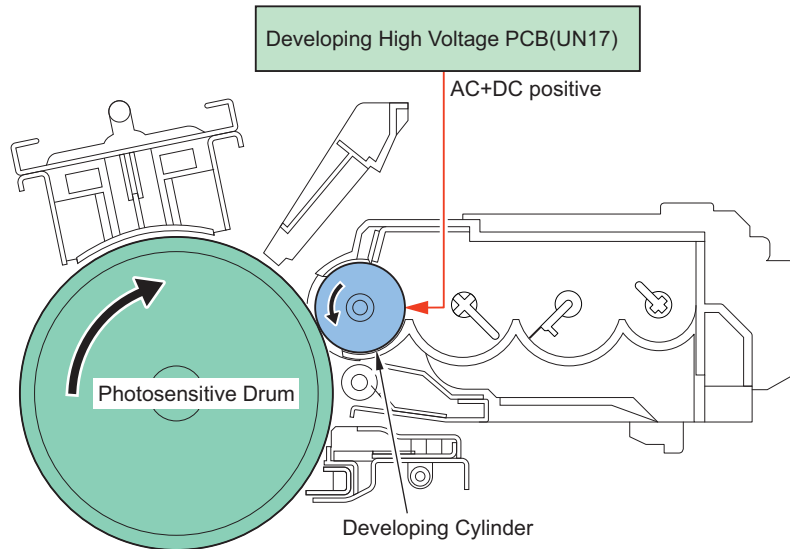
### ● Developing Bias Control

To form a toner image on the Photosensitive Drum by charging toner on the Developing Cylinder.

#### <Control description>

The developing bias (AC, DC positive), which has been generated on the Develop High Voltage PCB (UN17), is applied to the Developing Cylinder.

- Developing DC bias
  - The bias to generate potential difference with the Photosensitive Drum.
  - The bias value is determined based on the D-max control.
- Developing AC bias
  - The bias to improve image quality.
  - The bias value is fixed.

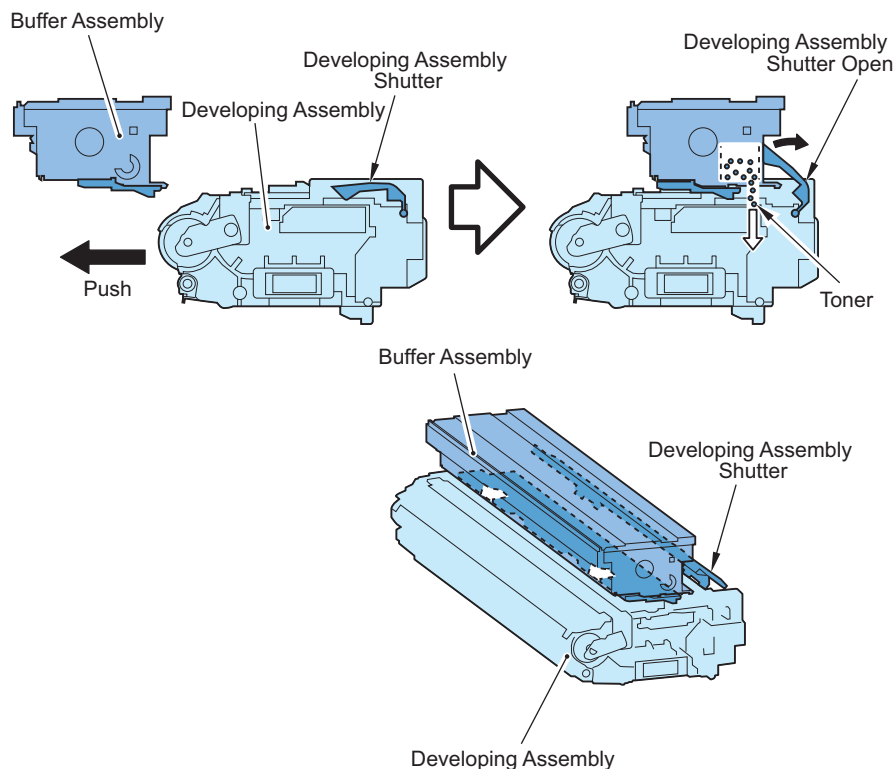


### • Developing Supply Shutter Opening/Closing Mechanism

There are shutters at the Supply Mouths of the Developing Assembly and the Buffer Unit to prevent toner scattering. The Developing Shutter and Buffer Shutter is opened/closed in conjunction with push-in and pull-out of the Developing Assembly.

#### <Opening and Closing Operations of the Developing Shutter>

By pushing the Developing Assembly in the main body, the Developing Shutter comes in contact with the Buffer Unit. By pushing the assembly in farther, the Developing Shutter opens along the side of the Buffer Unit. By pulling the Developing Assembly out from the main body, the Developing Shutter closes by its own weight so the Supply Mouth is closed.



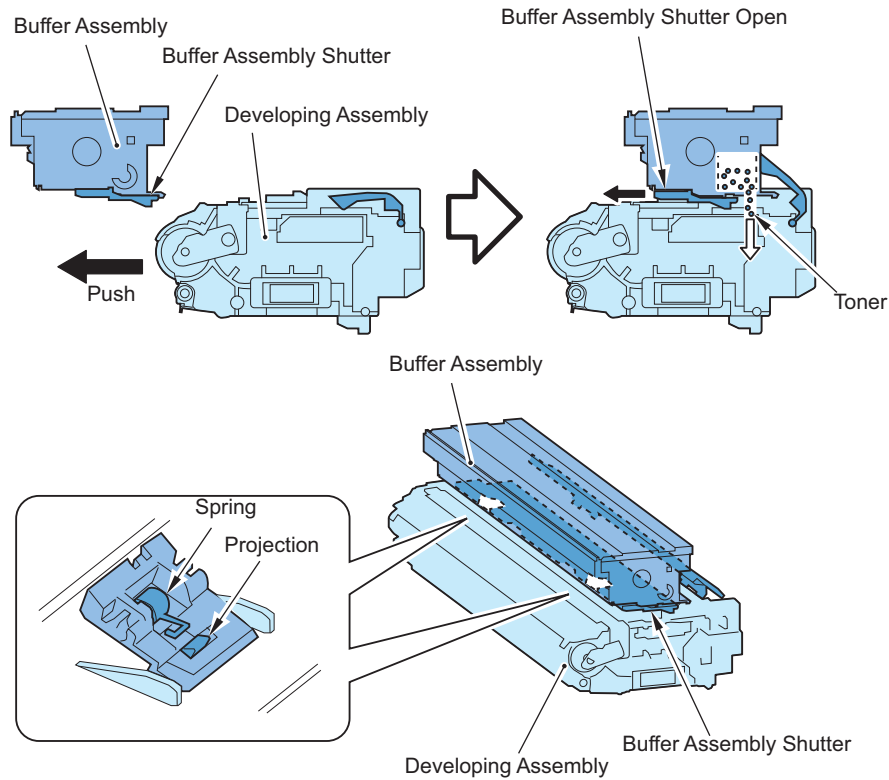
#### <Opening and Closing Operations of the Buffer Shutter>

By pushing the Developing Assembly in the main body, edge of the Supply Mouth on the assembly hits to leading edge of the Buffer Shutter.

By pushing the assembly in farther, the Buffer Shutter moves to the rear so the Supply Mouth is opened.

The Shutter Arm goes down by spring pressure, and it interlocks with the protrusion on the Developing Shutter.

By pulling the Developing Assembly out, the Shutter Arm is pushed by the protrusion on the Developing Shutter, so the Buffer Shutter is closed followed by the Supply Mouth. The Shutter Arm lifts up by hitting to the bottom of the Hopper.



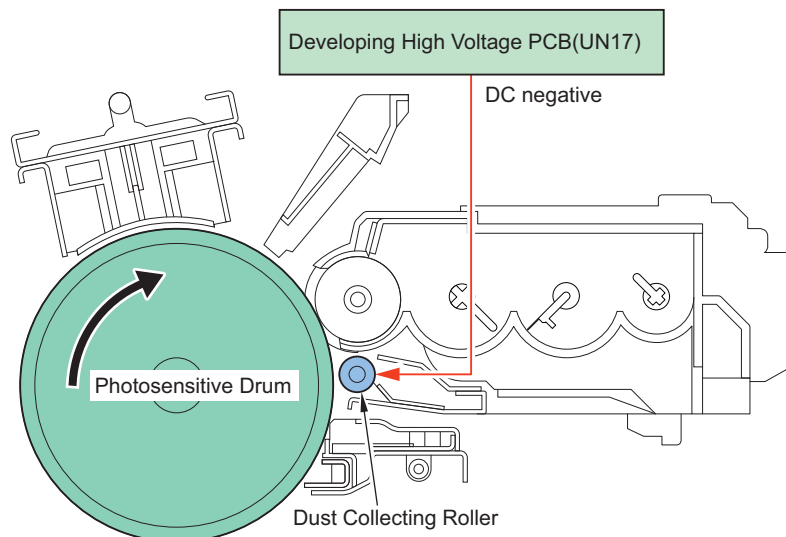
### ● Dust-collection Bias Control

To collect toner which floats over the Photosensitive Drum during developing process.

#### <Control description>

The dust-collection bias (DC negative), which has been generated on the Develop High Voltage PCB (UN17), is applied to the Dust-collection Roller.

The bias value is fixed.

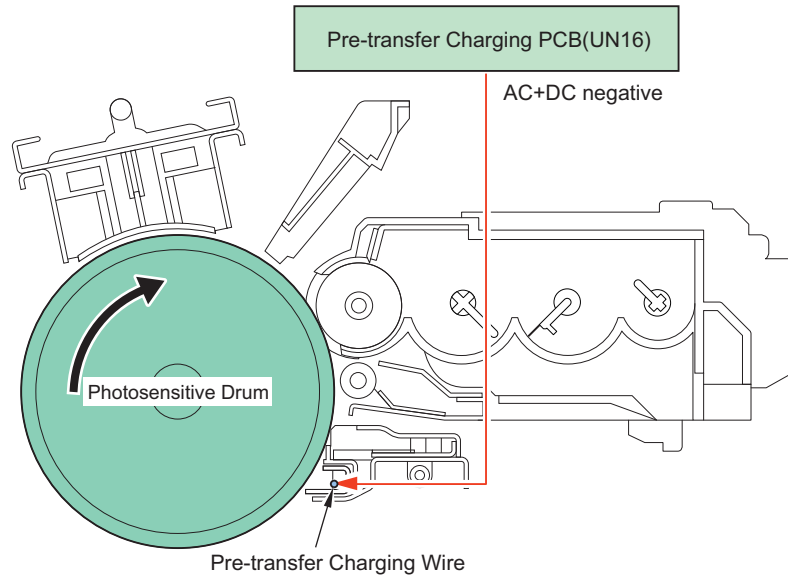


## ■ Transfer

### ● Pre-transfer Charging Bias Control

To make the charging amount of toner on the Photosensitive Drum appropriate to improve transfer performance.

The pre-transfer charging bias (AC + DC negative), which has been generated on the Pretransfer Charging PCB (UN16), is applied to the Pre-transfer Charging Wire.



### • Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Control

To prevent charging failure caused by soil of the Pre-transfer Charging Wire.

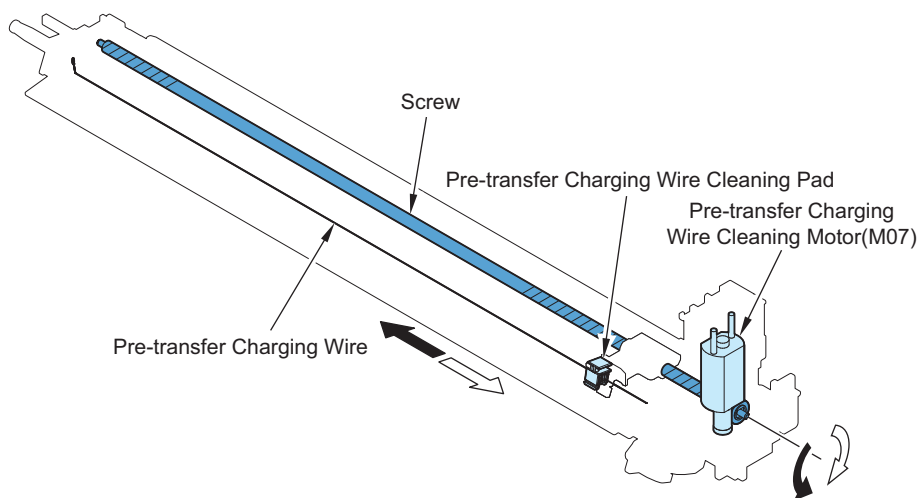
#### <Execution timing>

To be executed together with the primary charging wire cleaning control at the same time.

#### <Control description>

The drive of the Pre-Transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Motor (M7) makes the Cleaner Screw rotate clockwise/counterclockwise, which moves the Cleaning Pad back and forth to clean the Pre-transfer Charging Wire.

The Pre-transfer Charging Shutter Position Sensor ( ) detects position of the Cleaning Pad.



#### <Related service mode>

- To clean the Charging Wires of Primary Charging Assembly and Pre-transfer Charging Assembly simultaneously (5-reciprocation).  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-CLN
- To clean the Charging Wires of Primary Charging Assembly and Pre-transfer Charging Assembly simultaneously (1-reciprocation).  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-EX
- To set the offset value of the paper interval for automatic cleaning of the Primary Charging Wire. (Lv.2)  
COPIER > OPTION > CLEANING > W-CLN-P

### • Pre-transfer Charging Shutter Control

To prevent uneven potential on the Photosensitive Drum caused by discharge products (nitrogen oxide) accumulated on the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly.

**<Execution timing>**

- To be executed together with the Pre-transfer charging wire cleaning control at the same time.

**<Control description>**

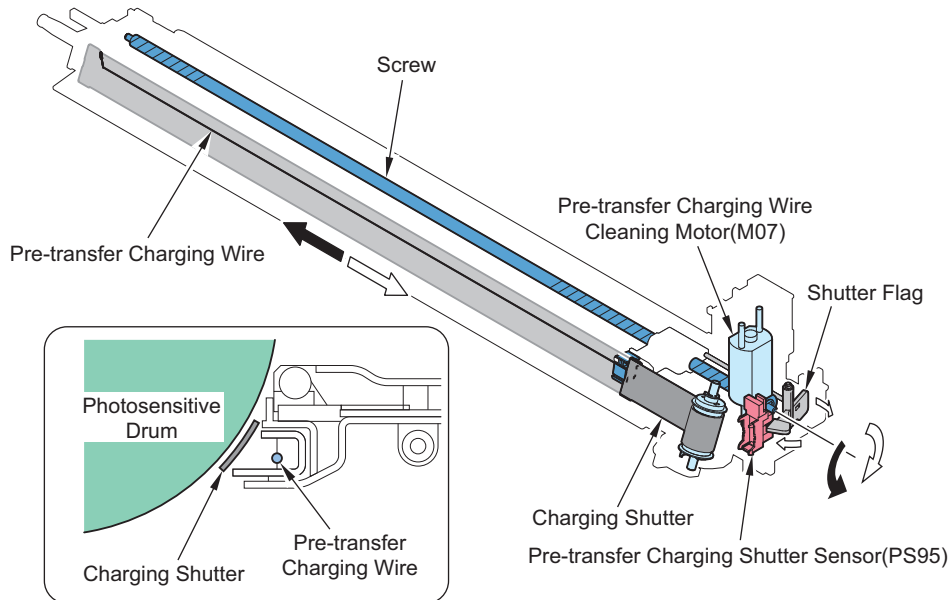
The shutter is opened or closed by the cleaning mechanism of the Pre-transfer Charging Wire.

The Pre-transfer Charging Shutter is made of fiber and usually taken up by the bobbin.

The drive of the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Motor (M07) moves the Cleaning Pad to the rear and the shutter taken up by the bobbin becomes extended to make the Shutter closed.

Because the Shutter comes between the Pre-transfer Charging Wire and the Photosensitive Drum, discharge products from the Primary Charging Assembly do not reach the Photosensitive Drum.

The Pre-transfer Charging Shutter Position Sensor (PS95) detects opening/close of the shutter.

**• Transfer Bias Control**

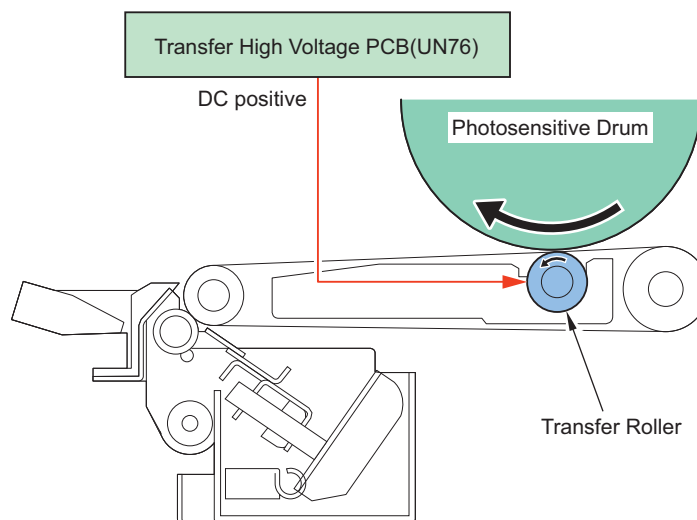
To transfer toner on the Photosensitive Drum to a paper.

The transfer bias (DC positive), which has been generated on the Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN76), is applied to the Transfer Roller.

Following shows the 3 types of transfer bias:

- Print bias: the bias to be applied during printing
- Paper leading edge weak bias: the bias to be applied to the leading edge of the paper (to prevent failure in paper separation)
- Paper interval bias: the bias to be applied between sheets

The bias value is determined by the environment, the paper type and the mode table.

**<Related service mode>**

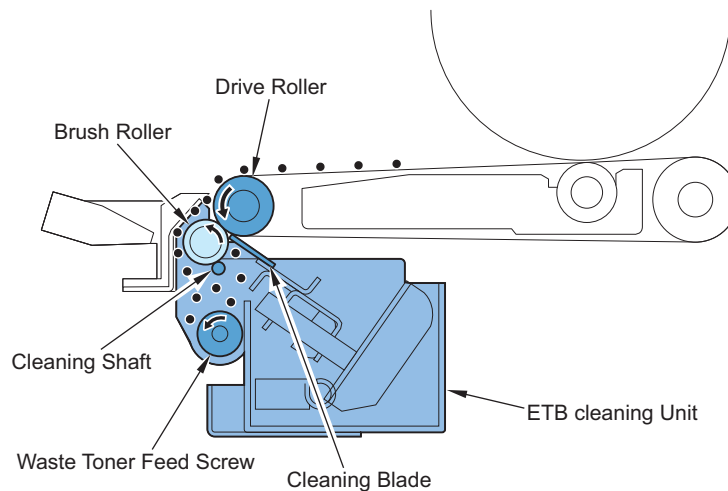
- To adjust the offset value of the target current of the Transfer Roller (Lv.2)  
COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-OFS1 to 6
- To adjust the leading edge transfer target current and the offset value of leading edge transfer bias output timing (Lv.2)  
COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-L-OF1 to 6
- To adjust the offset value of the pre-transfer charging current (Lv.2)  
COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > P-TR-OF1 to 6
- To set the paper type which the target current of the Transfer Roller is adjusted. (Lv.2)  
COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-SP1 to 2
- To set the paper type which the leading edge transfer target current and the leading edge transfer bias output timing are adjusted. (Lv.2)  
COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-L-SP1 to 2
- To set the paper type which the pre-transfer charging current is adjusted. (Lv.2)  
COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > P-TR-SP1 to 2

## • ETB Cleaning Control

To prevent image failure caused by toner soil on the ETB, the residual toner on the Transfer Belt is removed.

### <Control description>

1. The Brush Roller collects toner on the ETB.
2. The Cleaning Shaft scrapes toner on the Brush Roller.
3. The ETB Cleaning Blade scrapes toner on the ETB.
4. The scraped toner is fed to the Waste Toner Container.



### <Related service mode>

- To execute three idle rotations of the ETB and clean the ETB.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > TBLT-CLN
- To set the number of times to apply cleaning bias at the time of ETB cleaning.  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-DEV > TBLTTMS
- To set the timing to execute ETB cleaning control.  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-DEV > TBLTCLSW
- To set the transfer current value to apply cleaning bias(+) at the time of ETB cleaning.  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-DEV > TBLTBIS+
- To set the transfer current value to apply cleaning bias (-) at the time of ETB cleaning.  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-DEV > TBLTBIS-

## • ETB Engagement/Disengagement Control

To prevent image failure caused by toner soil on the ETB, the ETB is engaged or disengaged with the Photosensitive Drum.

### <Execution timing>

- To make the belt engaged: during printing
- To make the belt disengaged: any timing other than the above

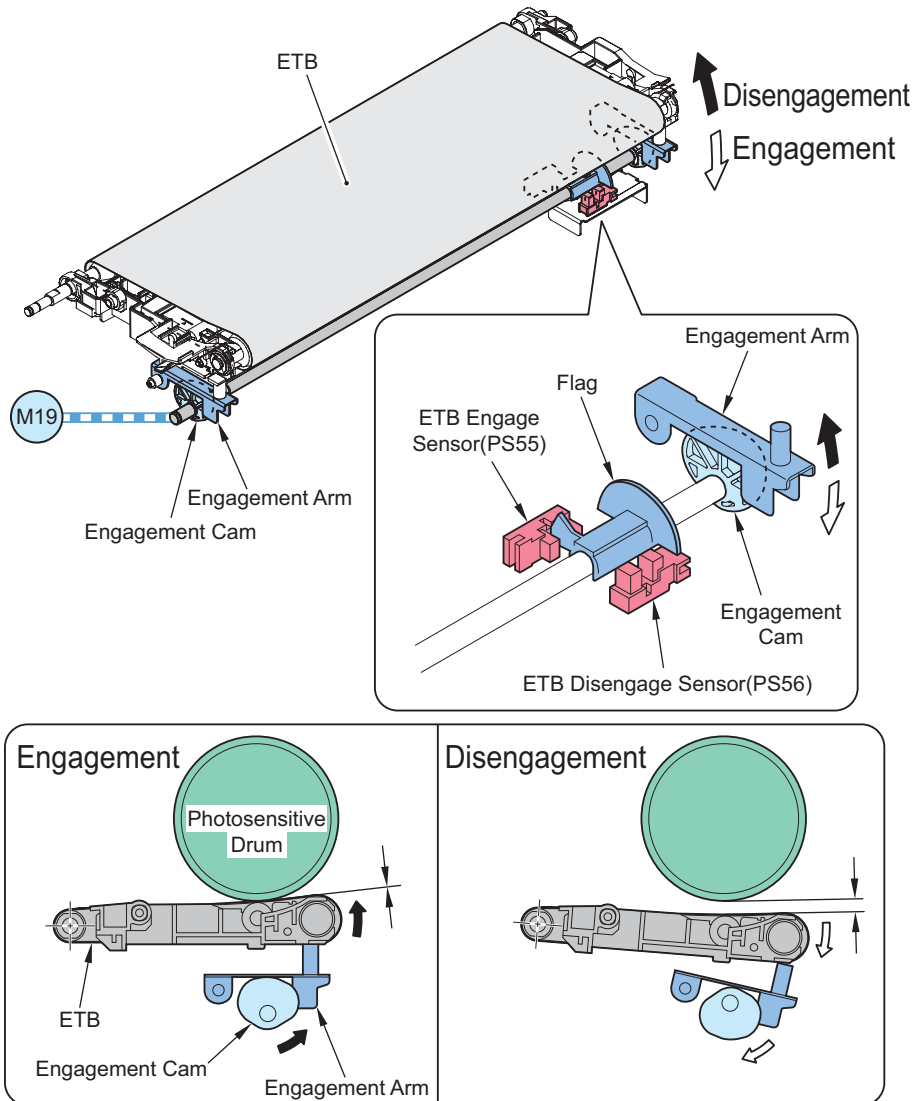
### <Control description>

1. Reverse rotation of the Duplex Feed Left Motor (M19) makes the Disengagement Cam rotate.

2. Rotation of the Disengagement Cam moves the Disengagement Arm up and down to make the ETB engaged/disengaged with the Photosensitive Drum.
3. Following 2 sensors detect position of the Transfer Belt.
  - ETB Engage Sensor (PS55): to detect engagement of the ETB.
  - ETB Disengage Sensor (PS56): to detect disengagement (home position) of the ETB.

**<Related error code>**

- E017-0001: ETB disengagement error  
 E017-0002: ETB engagement error  
 E017-0003: ETB HP error

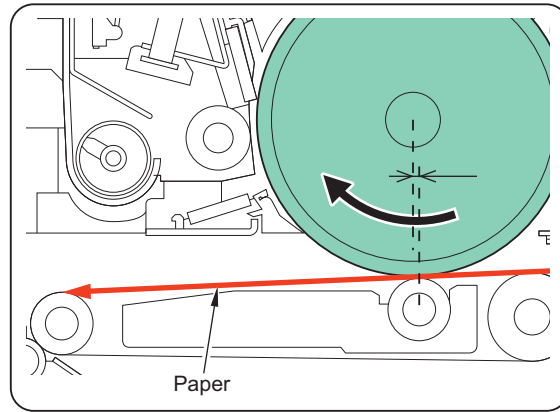


■ Separation

● Separation Control

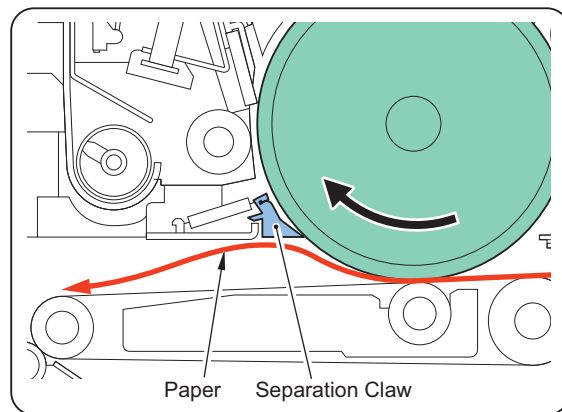
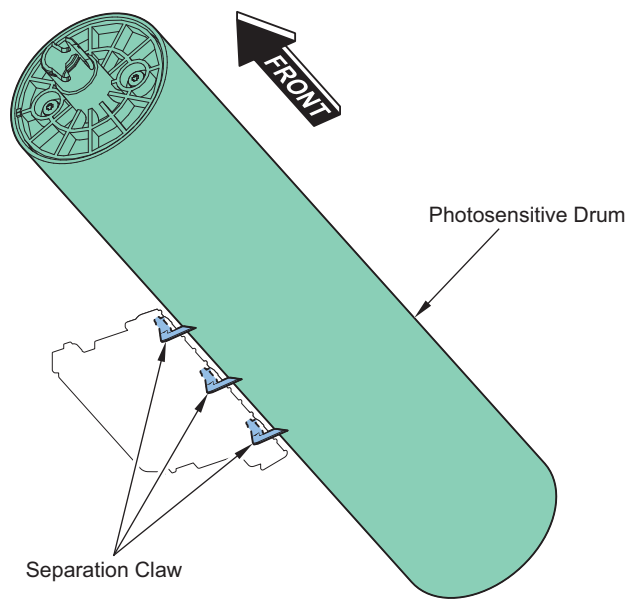
**<Separation from the Drum>**

Separation is performed using the curvature separation method.



**NOTE:**

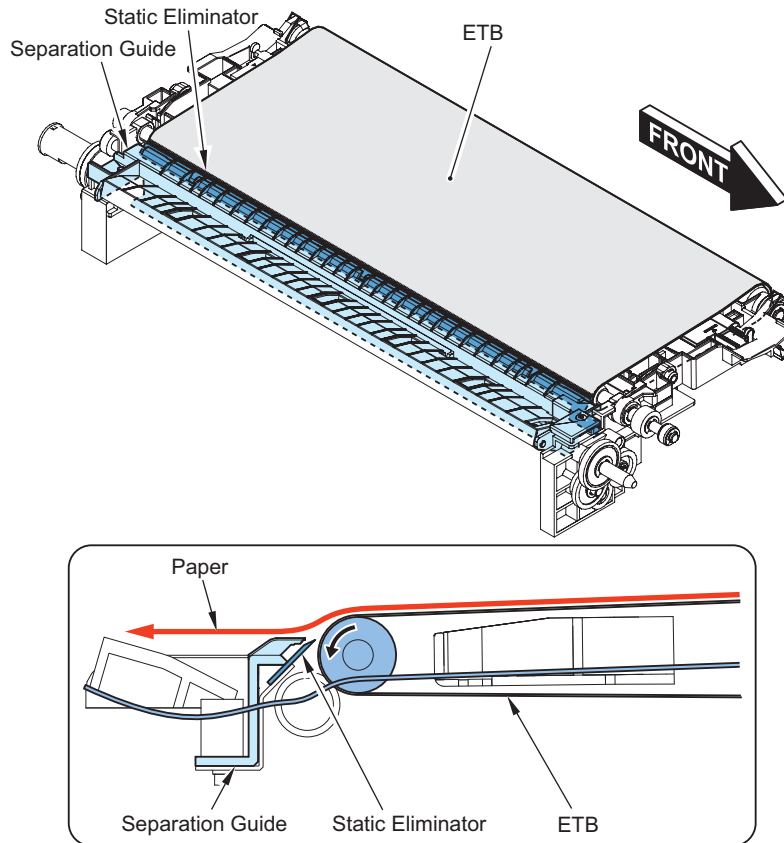
The Separation Claw separates sheets before entering the Drum Cleaning Unit. This effectively avoids failure in paper feed (double feed, etc.)



**<Separation from the ETB>**

Separation is performed using the curvature separation method and the Static Eliminator. There is no bias for separation.





### • Separation Claw Reciprocation Control

By moving the Separation Claw back and forth (reciprocation), scar on the drum caused by the Separation Claw can be prevented.

#### <Execution Timing>

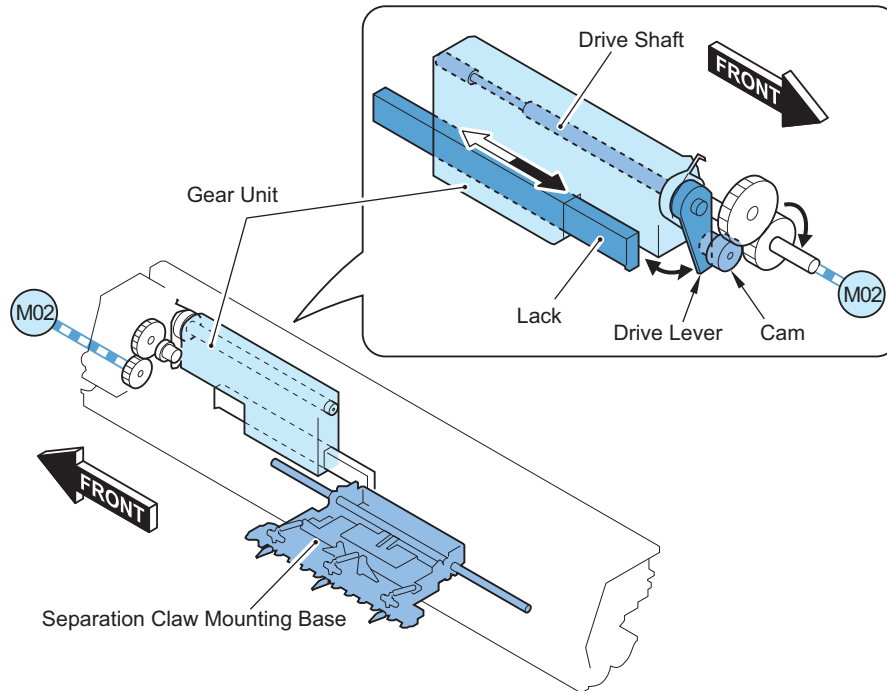
During printing (while the Developing Motor is driving)

#### <Control Description>

Making the Separation Claw move back and forth by transmitting the rotation force of the Developing Motor Drive via the cam and Gear Unit.

Reciprocation width: +/-25mm

1. The drive of the Developing Motor (M02) makes the cam rotate.
2. The Drive Lever moves in a pendulum motion by the rotation of the cam, which make the Drive Shaft rotates. (With the one-way bearing, the Drive Shaft rotates in only one direction.)
3. Making the Lack move back and forth by transmitting the rotating motion of the Drive Shaft via the Gear Unit. The Separation Mounting Base linked with the Lack moves back and forth.



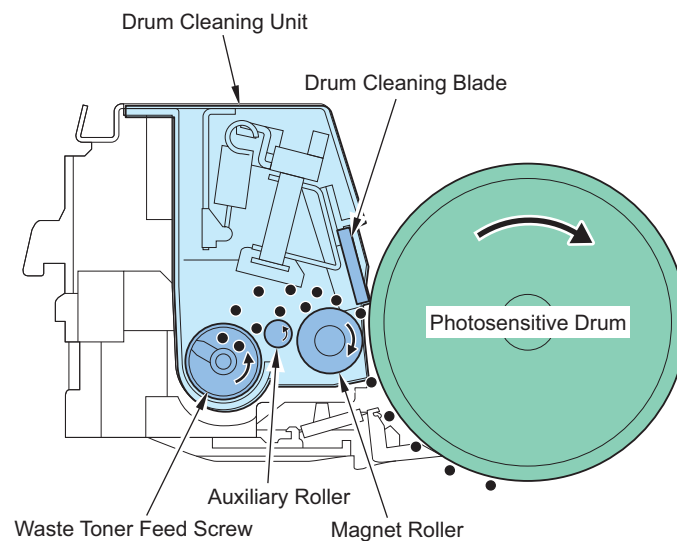
## ■ Drum Cleaning

### ● Drum Cleaning Control

The blade, which is in contact with the Drum, removes residual toner and paper dust on the Photosensitive Drum.

#### <Control description>

1. The drive of the Developing Motor (M02) makes the Magnet Roller rotate.
2. The Magnet Roller forms a thin toner coating layer on the surface of the Photosensitive Drum.
3. The Drum Cleaning Blade scrapes residual toner on the surface of the Drum.
4. The Toner Collection Feeding Screw feeds the scraped waste toner to the Waste Toner Container.



### ● Separation Bias Control

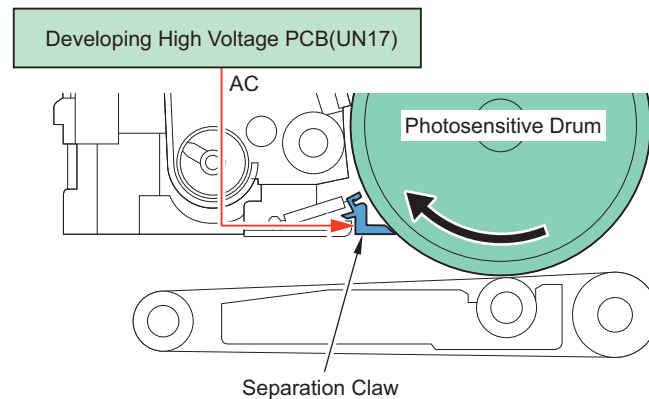
To prevent image soil caused by toner accumulated on the Drum Separation Claw, this control prevents attachment of toner on the Photosensitive Drum with the Drum Separation Claw.

#### <Execution timing>

When the developing bias is applied

### <Control description>

The separation claw bias (AC), which has been generated on the Develop High Voltage PCB (UN17), is applied to the Separation Claw so that vibration is given to the Separation Claw to prevent toner attachment. The bias value is fixed.



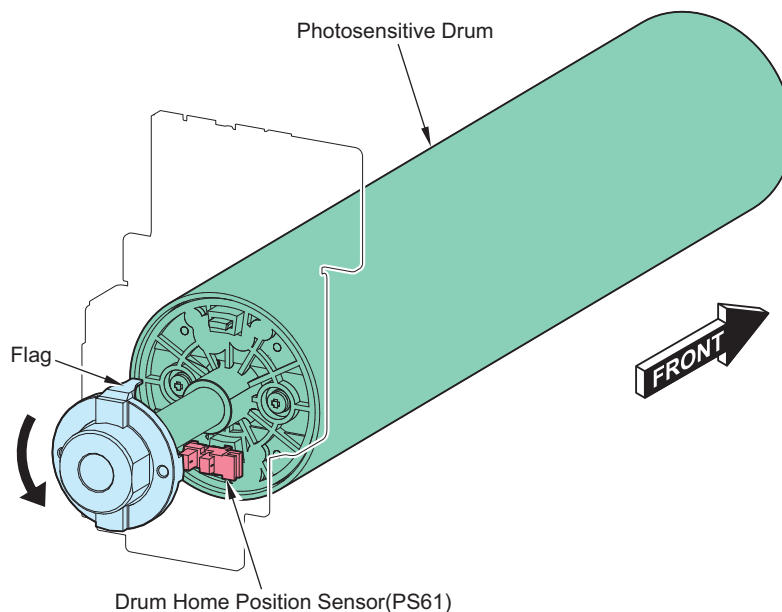
## ■ Drum-related Issues

### ● Drum HP Detection

To detect home position of the Photosensitive Drum.

There is a flag for HP detection on the shaft of the Photosensitive Drum. Once the Photosensitive Drum starts rotating, the flag passes through the Drum HP Sensor (PS61) and the home position of the Photosensitive Drum is detected.

This control is used during the 2D shading control \*1.



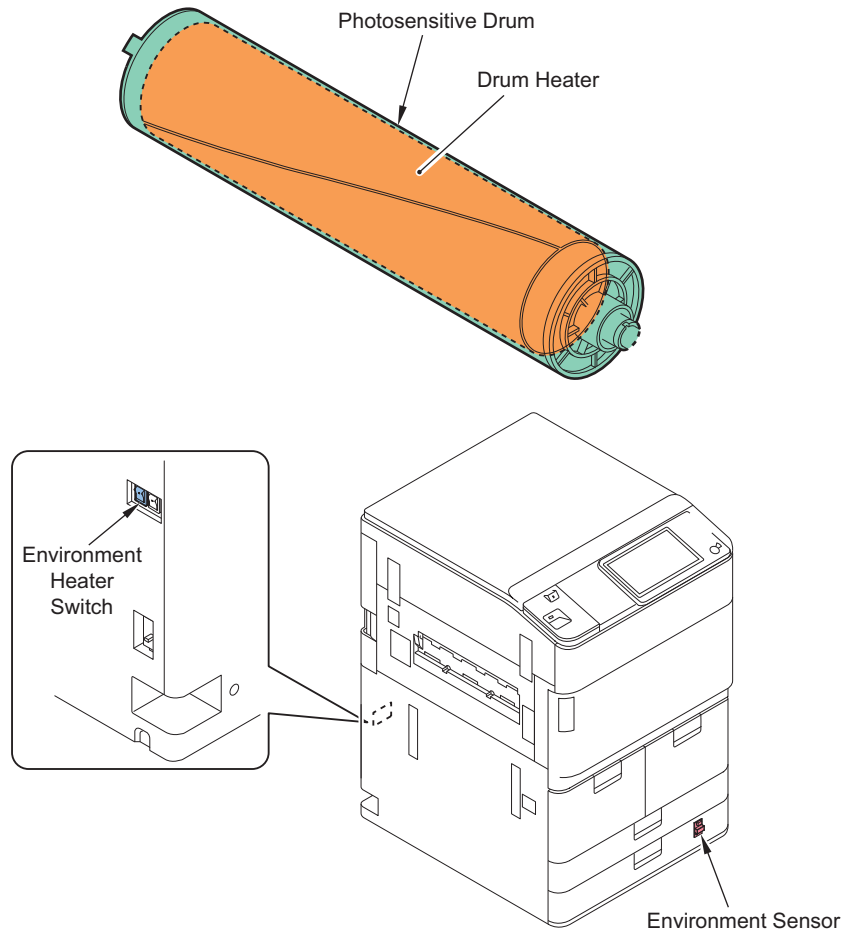
\*1: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported.

### ● Drum Heater Control

To make potential characteristic for charging or exposure stable by keeping the specified temperature of the Photosensitive Drum. The Drum Heater is the flat heater located inside the Photosensitive Drum to keep moisture content on the surface of the Photosensitive Drum constant by turning ON the heater.

#### NOTE:

Temperature of the drum is detected by the Thermistor in the Drum Control PCB, and is controlled by turning ON/OFF the Drum Heater to make it 42 deg C.



**<Operating condition>**

Operating condition of the heater differs according to the status of the Environment Switch and the host machine.

**A. In the case of normal image mode\*1 (DRM-H-SW: "2")**

<Environment Heater Switch: OFF>

| Mode   |                    | Main Power OFF |     | sleep mode |     | WarmUp (Recovery) |      | Standby/Energy Saver |     | Copy/Print |     |
|--------|--------------------|----------------|-----|------------|-----|-------------------|------|----------------------|-----|------------|-----|
| Switch | Main SW            | OFF            |     | ON         |     |                   |      |                      |     |            |     |
|        | Cassette Heater SW | OFF            | ON  | OFF        | ON  | OFF               | ON   | OFF                  | ON  | OFF        | ON  |
| Heater | Drum               | OFF            | OFF | OFF        | OFF | ON*3              | ON*3 | ON                   | ON  | ON         | ON  |
|        | Cassette           | OFF            | OFF | OFF        | OFF | OFF               | ON   | OFF                  | ON  | OFF        | ON  |
|        | Reader             | OFF            | OFF | OFF        | OFF | OFF               | OFF  | OFF                  | OFF | OFF        | OFF |

<Environment Heater Switch: ON>

| Mode   |                    | Main Power OFF |     | sleep mode |     | WarmUp (Recovery) |      | Standby/Energy Saver |     | Copy/Print |     |
|--------|--------------------|----------------|-----|------------|-----|-------------------|------|----------------------|-----|------------|-----|
| Switch | Main SW            | OFF            |     | ON         |     |                   |      |                      |     |            |     |
|        | Cassette Heater SW | OFF            | ON  | OFF        | ON  | OFF               | ON   | OFF                  | ON  | OFF        | ON  |
| Heater | Drum               | OFF            | OFF | OFF        | OFF | ON*3              | ON*3 | ON                   | ON  | ON         | ON  |
|        | Cassette           | OFF            | ON  | OFF        | ON  | OFF               | ON   | OFF                  | ON  | OFF        | ON  |
|        | Reader             | ON             | ON  | ON         | ON  | ON                | OFF  | OFF                  | OFF | OFF        | OFF |

**B. In the case of image priority mode\*1 (DRM-H-SW: "1")**

<Environment Heater Switch: OFF>

| Mode   |                    | Main Power OFF |     | sleep mode |     | WarmUp (Recovery) |      | Standby/Energy Saver |     | Copy/Print |     |
|--------|--------------------|----------------|-----|------------|-----|-------------------|------|----------------------|-----|------------|-----|
| Switch | Main SW            | OFF            |     | ON         |     |                   |      |                      |     |            |     |
|        | Cassette Heater SW | OFF            | ON  | OFF        | ON  | OFF               | ON   | OFF                  | ON  | OFF        | ON  |
| Heater | Drum               | OFF            | OFF | OFF        | OFF | ON*3              | ON*3 | ON                   | ON  | ON         | ON  |
|        | Cassette           | OFF            | OFF | OFF        | OFF | OFF               | ON   | OFF                  | ON  | OFF        | ON  |
|        | Reader             | OFF            | OFF | OFF        | OFF | OFF               | OFF  | OFF                  | OFF | OFF        | OFF |

<Environment Heater Switch: ON>

| Mode   |                    | Main Power OFF |    | sleep mode |    | WarmUp (Recovery) |      | Standby/Energy Saver |     | Copy/Print |     |
|--------|--------------------|----------------|----|------------|----|-------------------|------|----------------------|-----|------------|-----|
| Switch | Main SW            | OFF            |    | ON         |    |                   |      |                      |     |            |     |
|        | Cassette Heater SW | OFF            | ON | OFF        | ON | OFF               | ON   | OFF                  | ON  | OFF        | ON  |
| Heater | Drum               | ON             | ON | ON         | ON | ON*3              | ON*3 | ON                   | ON  | ON         | ON  |
|        | Cassette           | OFF            | ON | OFF        | ON | OFF               | ON   | OFF                  | ON  | OFF        | ON  |
|        | Reader             | ON             | ON | ON         | ON | ON                | OFF  | OFF                  | OFF | OFF        | OFF |

\*1: ON/OFF can be switched in the following service mode (Lv. 2).

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-MCON > DRM-H-SW

\*2: When 1 or 2 is set in the following service mode, the Drum Heater is turned ON.

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-LSR > 2D-SHADE

\*3: OFF when the detected temperature of the Environment Sensor is 15 deg C or higher.

## • Drum Unit Life Detection

### Purpose

To display the LIFE and Remaining Days of the Drum Unit (photosensitive drum) to notify the replacement timing. The LIFE and the Remaining Days can be checked in the service modes below.

### Consumption rate check

Service Mode:

COPIER > COUNTER > LIFE > PT-DRM

### Control description

1. This calculates the drum life from the drum rotation time and the application time of primary charging DC bias.
2. The calculated drum life value is added to the counter value stored in the drum memory.
3. The remaining days are calculated by the calculated life with the consideration for the usage conditions.

| Item  | Advance Notice Alarm   | Replacement display  | Replacement completion                 |
|---|--|--|--|
| Alarm code name                                     | Drum Unit prior notification alarm *1  | -  | Drum Unit replacement completion alarm |
| Alarm Code  | 40-0073  | -  | 43-0073                                |
| Message   | -  | Insert the drum cartridge.                                       |  |
| Host machine operation after displaying the message |  | Continuous printing is available                                 |  |
| Detection timing                                    | When the consumption rate of Drum Unit *2 reaches the setting value *1 of service mode | 7 days after sending the Advance Notice Alarm (default value) *1 | When clearing the life value           |
| Detected to (location)                              | DC controller PCB  |  |  |
| Alarm log display                                   | ALARM-3 *3   | -  | ALARM-3                                |

\*1. The display/hide and display timing settings for prior notification alarm can be changed from the following service mode items.  
COPIER > OPTION > PM-DLV-M > PT-DRM

\*2. The consumption rate of Drum Unit can be checked from the following service mode.  
COPIER > COUNTER > LIFE > PT-DRM

\*3. The next prior notification alarm is not sent from sending the previous prior notification alarm and then sending the replacement completion alarm.

**Service Mode**

- Drum Unit (Bk): Life VL/No. of days  
COPIER > COUNTER > LIFE > PT-DRM
- Set Drum-U(Bk) prior alarm notice timing  
COPIER > OPTION > PM-DLV-D > PT-DRM

**Alarm Code**

- Drum Unit prior notification alarm  
40-0073
- Drum Unit replacement completion alarm  
43-0073

**■ Toner Supply Area**

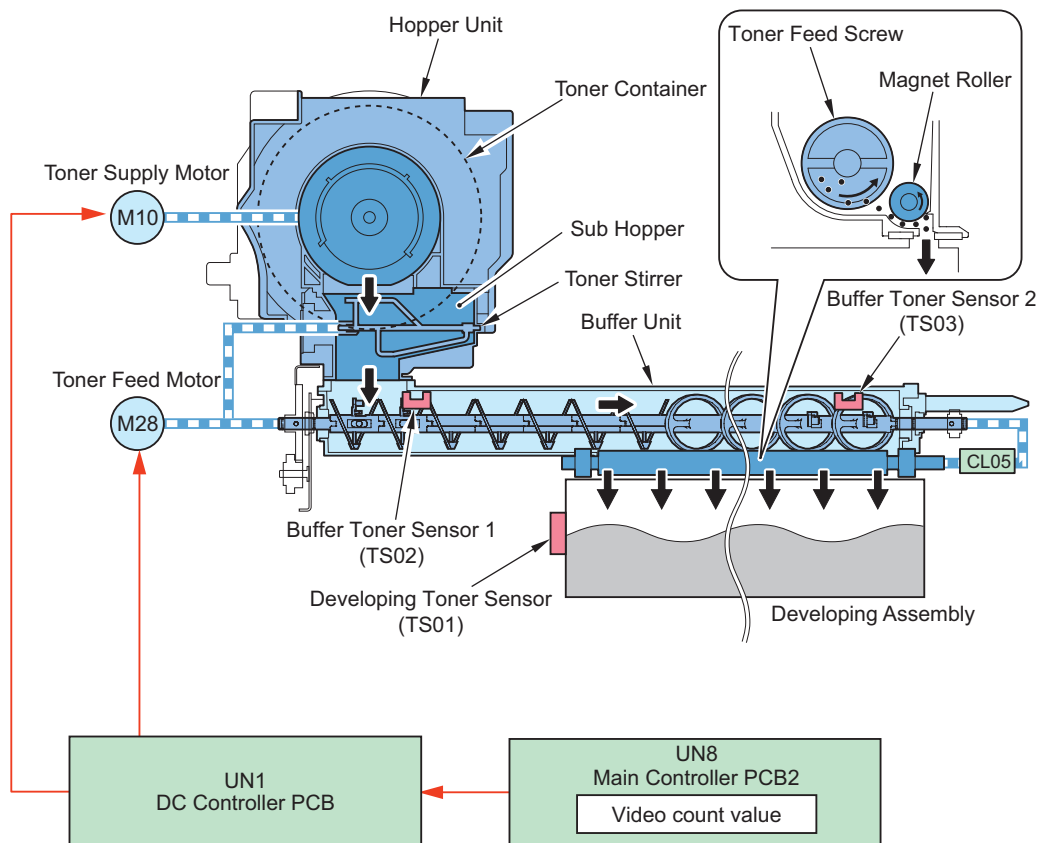
**● Toner Container Detection**

Toner Container detection is not performed with this machine.

**● Toner Supply Control**

To supply toner in the Toner Container to the Developing Assembly.

The Magnet Roller helps toner supplied to the Developing Assembly uniformly in the longitudinal direction to form an even toner layer in the Developing Cylinder.



| Title                | Description  | Supply timing  | Operation of the host machine |
|----------------------|--|--|-------------------------------|
| Supply to the Hopper | Toner in the Toner Container is supplied to the Buffer Unit. | When both the Buffer Toner Sensor 1 (TS02) and the Buffer Toner Sensor 2 (TS03) detect absence of toner, the Toner Supply Motor (M10) is driven.<br>When the Buffer Toner Sensor 1 (TS02) or the Buffer Toner Sensor 2 (TS03) detects presence of toner, the Toner Supply Motor (M10) is stopped.<br>When the Buffer Toner Sensor 2 (TS03) detects absence of toner, the Toner Supply Motor (M10) is driven.<br>When the Buffer Toner Sensor 1 (TS02) detects presence of toner, the Toner Supply Motor (M10) is stopped whereas the Toner Feed Motor (M28) is driven. |                               |

| Title                             | Description  | Supply timing  | Operation of the host machine   |
|-----------------------------------|--|--|---|
| Supply to the Developing Assembly | Developer in the Buffer Unit is supplied to the Developing Assembly. | When the Developing Toner Sensor (TS01) detects absence of toner | Drive the Toner Feed Motor (M28) and turn ON the Magnet Roller Clutch (CL05).<br>Drive the Toner Feed Motor (M28) and connect the Magnet Roller Clutch (CL05).<br>Toner is supplied intermittently until the Developing Toner Sensor (TS01) detects presence of toner.<br>The supply amount is determined based on the output value of the video count of the image (image duty). |

**NOTE:**

The Buffer Toner Sensor1 (TS02) detects amount of toner around the Buffer Inlet. If toner is supplied excessively from the Sub Hopper to the Buffer Unit (if there are toner clusters), toner in the Buffer may overflow.

If the Buffer Toner Sensor1 (TS02) detects presence of toner, regardless of presence/absence detection of toner by the Buffer Toner Sensor2 (TS03), the Toner Supply Motor (M10) is stopped so that toner supply to the Buffer is stopped to prevent toner leak.

**<Related service mode>**

- Toner supply to the Developing Assembly  
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > TONER-S

**<Related error code>**

E020-0000: Developing Assembly toner absence error

E020-0001: Error in Developing Toner Sensor (TS01) connection detection

E020-0002: Error in Buffer Toner Sensor 1 (TS02) connection detection

E020-0003: Error in Buffer Toner Sensor 2 (TS03) connection detection

E020-0004: Error in Magnet Roller Clutch connection detection

E020-0020: Error in Developing Toner Sensor Cleaning Scraper displacement (absence of toner)

E020-0021: Error in Developing Toner Sensor Cleaning Scraper displacement (presence of toner)

## • Toner Level Detection

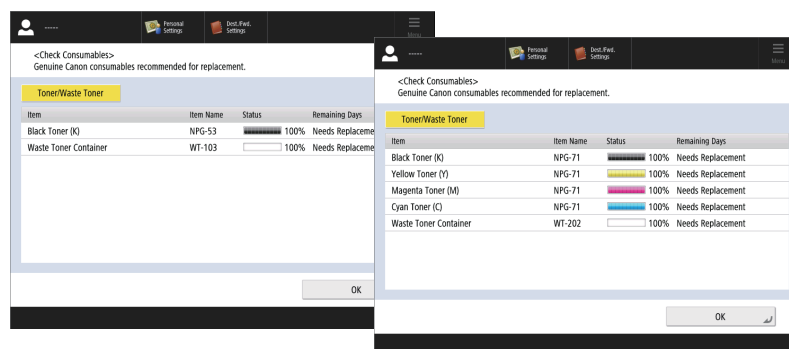
**Purpose**

To display the life/remaining days to notify the Toner Container replacement timing.

The life and remaining days can be seen in the following menu or service mode and whether to display/hide can be specified in the following service mode.

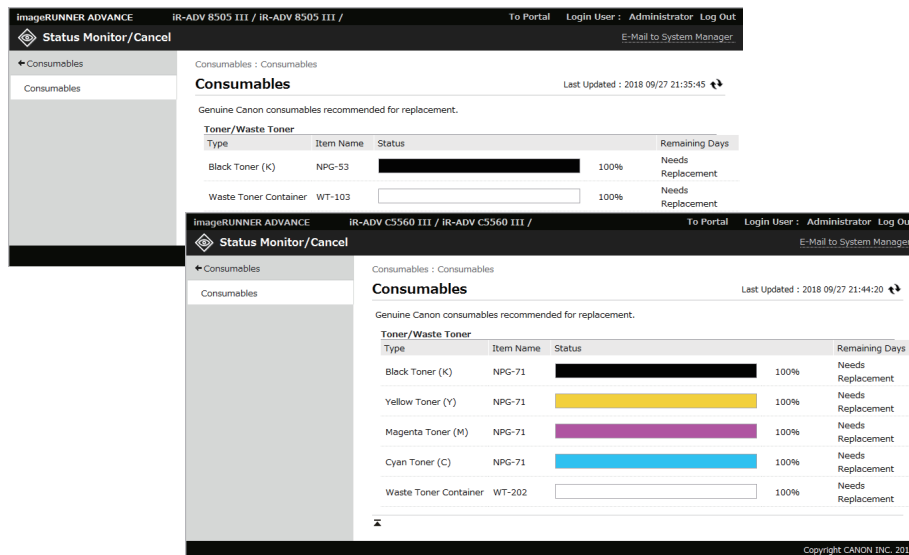
**Consumption confirmation**

Control Panel : Status Monitor > Consumables / Others > Check Consumables



Control Panel display example




Remote UI : Status Monitor / Cancel > Consumables



## Remote UI display example

Service Mode :

COPIER &gt; COUNTER &gt; LIFE &gt; TONER-K

| Status name   | Low remaining toner in container  |   | Toner Container Empty  | Toner Container / Buffer Empty   |
|---|---|---|--|--|
| Toner Status  |  <p>Toner Container: Low toner remaining<br/>Buffer: 100%</p> |   |  <p>Toner Container: 0%<br/>Buffer: 100%</p> |  <p>Toner Container: 0%<br/>Buffer: 0%</p> |
| Alarm code name                                       | Toner prior notification alarm *1 *4  | Toner low alarm *5                              | Toner Bottle empty alarm   | -  |
| Alarm codes   | 10-0020   | 10-0001   | 10-404   | None   |
| Message   | None  | Toner is low. Replacement is not yet needed. *2 | Replace the toner cartridge. (Replacement not yet needed.)   | Replace the toner cartridge. (Job is stopped.)   |
| Host machine operation after the message is displayed | Replacement not yet needed.   |   |  | Host machine is stopped.   |
| Detection timing                                      | Depends on the service mode setting *1  | Depends on the service mode setting *3          | When the Buffer Toner Sensor 2 (TS03) detects absence of toner even after performing a toner supply operation                    | After approx. 900 sheets have been printed by starting the toner supply count since an empty toner warning *6                  |
| Detected to (location)                                | Toner supply count  |   | Buffer Toner Sensor 2 (TS03)   | Toner supply count   |
| Alarm log storage location                            | ALARM-2   | -   | ALARM-2  | -  |
| Whether the Toner Container can be removed            | Not Available *7  |   | Available  |  |

\*1 : The detection timing can be changed in the following service modes (setting of the Toner advance notice alarm notification timing). The alarm can also be set to be disabled.

- COPIER > OPTION > PM-DLV-D > TONER-K

\*2 : Whether to display this message can be changed in the following service mode (setting of the ON/OFF of toner preparation message).

- COPIER > OPTION > PM-PRE-M > TONER-K

\*3 : The detection timing can be changed in the following service modes (setting of the days left before the Toner Preparation Warning).

- COPIER > OPTION > PM-MSG-D > TONER-K



\*4 : After an advance notice alarm is sent, the next advance notice alarm will not be sent until the replacement completion alarm is sent.

\*5 : The message is generated by UGW and displayed on the UGW portal screen. This is not displayed on this machine.

\*6 : The exact number of printed sheets differs depending on the usage environment/usage conditions.

### Service Mode

#### To display the life value and the number of days left of Toner (Bk).

COPIER > COUNTER > LIFE > TONER-K

#### Display/hide Toner (Bk) preparation warning

COPIER > OPTION > PM-PRM > TONER-K

#### Set Toner (Bk) prior alarm notice timing

COPIER > OPTION > PM-DLV-D > TONER-K

#### Set number of days left before Toner (Bk) preparation warning

COPIER > OPTION > PM-MSG-D > TONER-K

#### Display/hide of Toner Container counter

COPIER > OPTION > USER > TNRB-SW

### Alarm code

#### Toner Low (Black) alarm

10-0001

#### Toner (Bk) prior notification alarm

10-0020

#### Toner (Bk) empty alarm

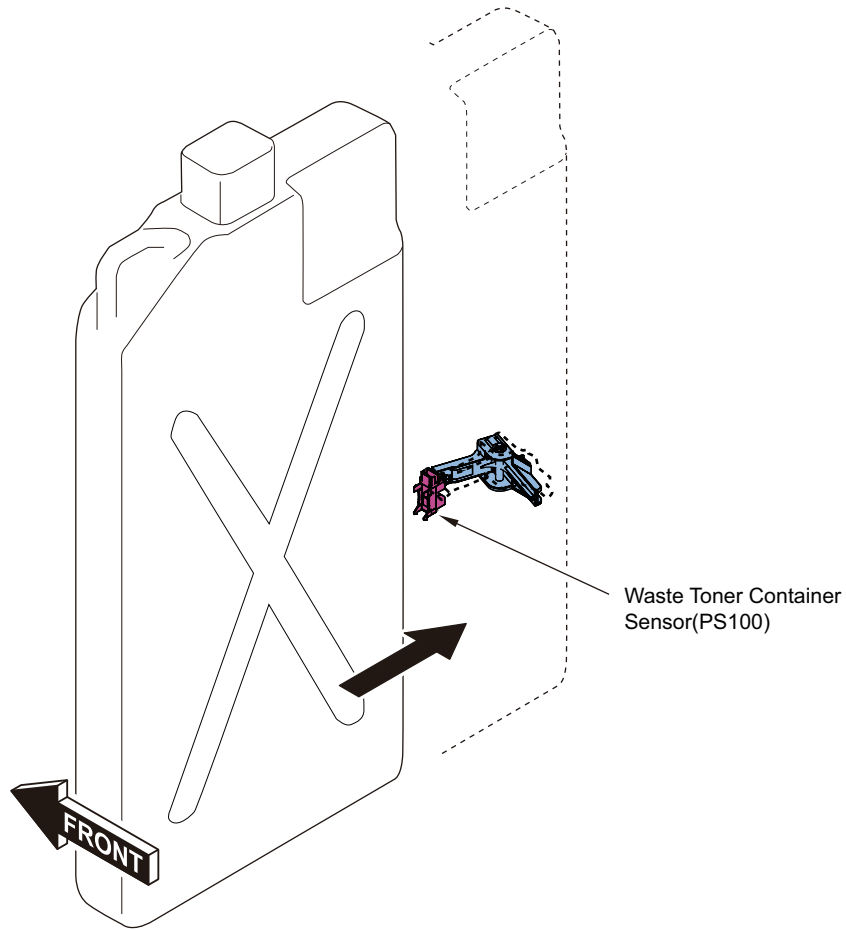
10-0404

## ■ Waste Toner Feed Unit

### ● Waste Toner Container Detection

Presence of the Waste Toner Container is detected by the Waste Toner Container Sensor (PS100).

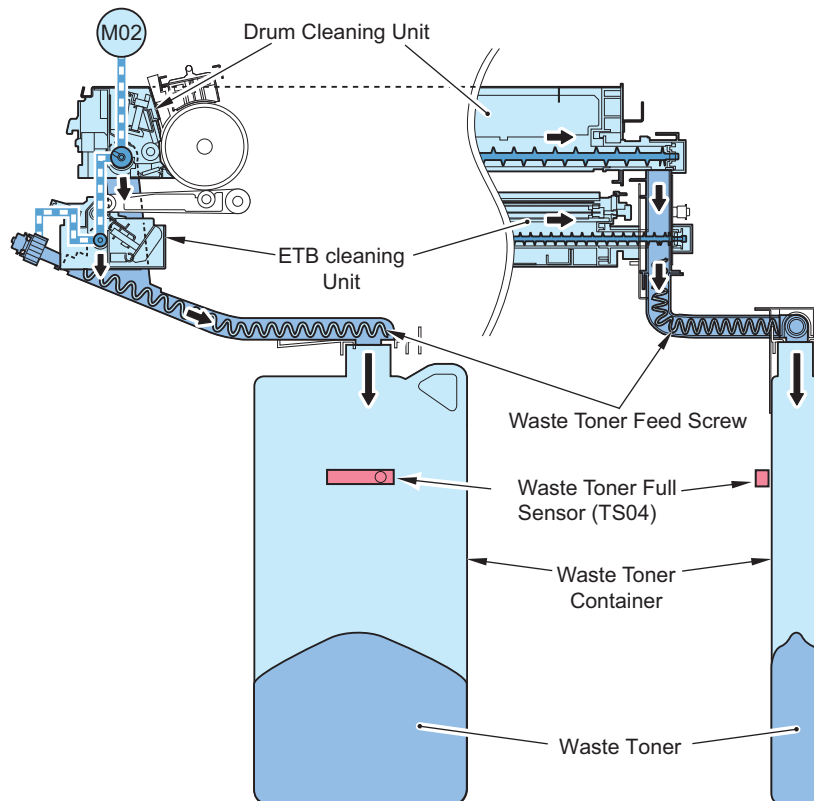
The Waste Toner Container Sensor (PS100) is turned ON when the Waste Toner Container is pushed into the host machine.



• **Waste Toner Feed Assembly**

**Overview**

Waste toner occurring in the Drum Cleaning Unit and ETB Cleaning Unit are fed to the Waste Toner Container.



## Control description

This machine performs the following controls.

- "Black band control" to maintain the drum cleaning performance
- "Low duty ejection control" to maintain the density stability when continuously outputting low duty images

Therefore the criterion of the full Waste Toner Container varies according to the environment and the image duty as shown in the following table.

| Temperature/<br>Humidity | Moisture con-<br>tent | Image duty (%)        |                         |                         |                         |                         |               |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|---------------|
|                          |                       | 0 to less than<br>1.0 | 1.0 to less<br>than 2.0 | 2.0 to less<br>than 3.0 | 3.0 to less<br>than 4.0 | 4.0 to less<br>than 5.0 | 5.0 to 6.0    |
| 23 deg C / 5%            | 0.86                  | 250,000 pages         | 1,000,000 pages         |                         | 800,000 pages           | 700,000 pages           | 600,000 pages |
| 23 deg C / 10%           | 1.73                  |                       |                         |                         |                         |                         |               |
| 23 deg C / 30%           | 5.8                   |                       |                         |                         |                         |                         |               |
| 23 deg C / 50%           | 8.9                   |                       |                         |                         |                         |                         |               |
| 27 deg C / 70%           | 15                    | 100,000 pages         | 250,000 pages           | 600,000 pages           |                         |                         | 500,000 pages |
| 28 deg C / 75%           | 18                    |                       | 120,000 pages           | 150,000 pages           | 300,000 pages           | 500,000 pages           |               |
| 30 deg C / 80%           | 21.6                  |                       | 100,000 pages           |                         | 150,000 pages           | 200,000 pages           |               |

The Drive Gear escapes when a certain load is applied to the Waste Toner Feeding Screw and an error is displayed after the Host Machine has been stopped.

## Error Code

### Waste Toner Lock detection error

- 013-0001: At power-on
- 013-0002: While the Developing Assembly is driven

## Service Mode

### Low duty ejection threshold value setting

COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMG-DEV > LWDTYADJ

### ON/OFF of low duty ejection

COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMG-DEV > LWDTY-SW

## ● Waste Toner Full Level Detection

### Purpose

The life/remaining days are detected to notify the Waste Toner Container replacement timing. Life and remaining days of Waste Toner Container can be checked by the following menu and service mode.

### Consumption rate check

- Menu (Control Panel): Status Monitor/Cancel > Consumables > Check Item Number
- Menu (Remote UI): Status Monitor/Cancel > Consumables
- Service Mode: COPIER > COUNTER > LIFE

## Waste Toner Container status notification

| Detection description                               | Waste Toner Container advance notice alarm *1  | Waste Toner Container preparation alarm *2   | Waste Toner Container full level  | Waste Toner Container replacement completion alarm   |
|---|--|--|---|--|
| Detection timing                                    | The number of remaining days before the Waste Toner Container becomes full has reached the setting value. *1 | The number of remaining days before the Waste Toner Container becomes full has reached the setting value. *3 | When 100,000 pages in terms of video counter (5.0 to 6.0% duty) have been printed from the Waste Toner Container preparation alarm  | When the Waste Toner Sensor PCB (UN75) detected absence of Waste Toner while "preparation warning" or "full" is detected. *4 |
| Detected to (location)                              | Waste Toner Full Sensor (TS04)   | Waste Toner Full Sensor (TS04)   | Waste toner counter   | Waste Toner Full Sensor (TS04)   |
| Message   | -  | Prepare a new Waste Toner Container. (Printing can be continued.)  | When service replacement is set: "The waste toner container is full. (Call service representative.)"<br>When user replacement is set, "Replace the waste toner container." (Host machine is stopped.)<br>*5 | -  |
| Host machine operation after displaying the message | Continuous printing is available   |  | Host machine is stopped.  | Continuous printing is available   |
| Alarm Code  | 11-0010  | -  | 11-0001   | 11-0100  |

**Alarm Code****Waste Toner Container full level**

11-0001

**Waste Toner Container preparation warning**

11-0010

**Waste Toner Container replacement completion alarm**

11-0100

**Waste Toner Container high consumption alarm**

11-F010

**Service Mode****Display/Hide the Waste Toner Container Preparation Warning**

COPIER &gt; OPTION &gt; PM-PRE-M &gt; WST-TNR

**Set days left before the Waste Toner Container Preparation Warning**

COPIER &gt; OPTION &gt; PM-MSG-D &gt; WST-TNR

\*1. The notification timing and display/hide for the Waste Toner Container Advance Notice Alarm can be set by the following service mode.

**COPIER > OPTION > PM-DLV-D > WST-TNR**

\*2. Whether to display/hide the Waste Toner Container preparation warning can be specified in the following service mode.

**COPIER > OPTION > PM-PRE-M > WST-TNR**

\*3. The remaining days to display the Waste Toner Container Preparation Warning message can be set by the following service mode.

**COPIER > OPTION > PM-MSG-D > WST-TNR**

\*4. The parts counter is automatically cleared; however, it is not cleared at replacement while "preparation warning" or "full" is not detected or at replacement when the power is OFF. In that case, the following service mode can be executed to manually clear.

**COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > WST-TNR**

Note that to manually clear, all following conditions must be fulfilled.

- A Waste Toner Container is available
- The sensor is not detecting waste toner full.

\*5. Whether to display the replacement procedure on the Control Panel when the Waste Toner Container is full is set in the following service mode.

**COPIER > OPTION > USER > W-TN-DSP**

**Set the Waste Toner Container prior notification alarm timing**

COPIER &gt; OPTION &gt; PM-DLV-D &gt; WST-TNR

**Check High Consumption Alarm Send Status**

COPIER &gt; DISPLAY &gt; MISC &gt; STC-REC

**● Waste Toner Feed Screw Lock Detection**

To detect lock state of the Waste Toner Feed Screw.

The drive by the Developing Motor (M02) is transmitted to the Screw Gear, which makes the Waste Toner Screw rotate. When this Screw Gear becomes unable to rotate, it slides sideways by the transmitted drive force.

The Screw Gear fails to rotate once the Waste Toner Screw is locked; therefore, the transmitted drive force makes the Screw Gear slide sideways. The Waste Toner Lock Detection Switch (SW05) is placed by the side of the Screw Gear and SW05 is pressed when the Screw Gear is moved. With this mechanism, it is detected that the Waste Toner Screw is locked.

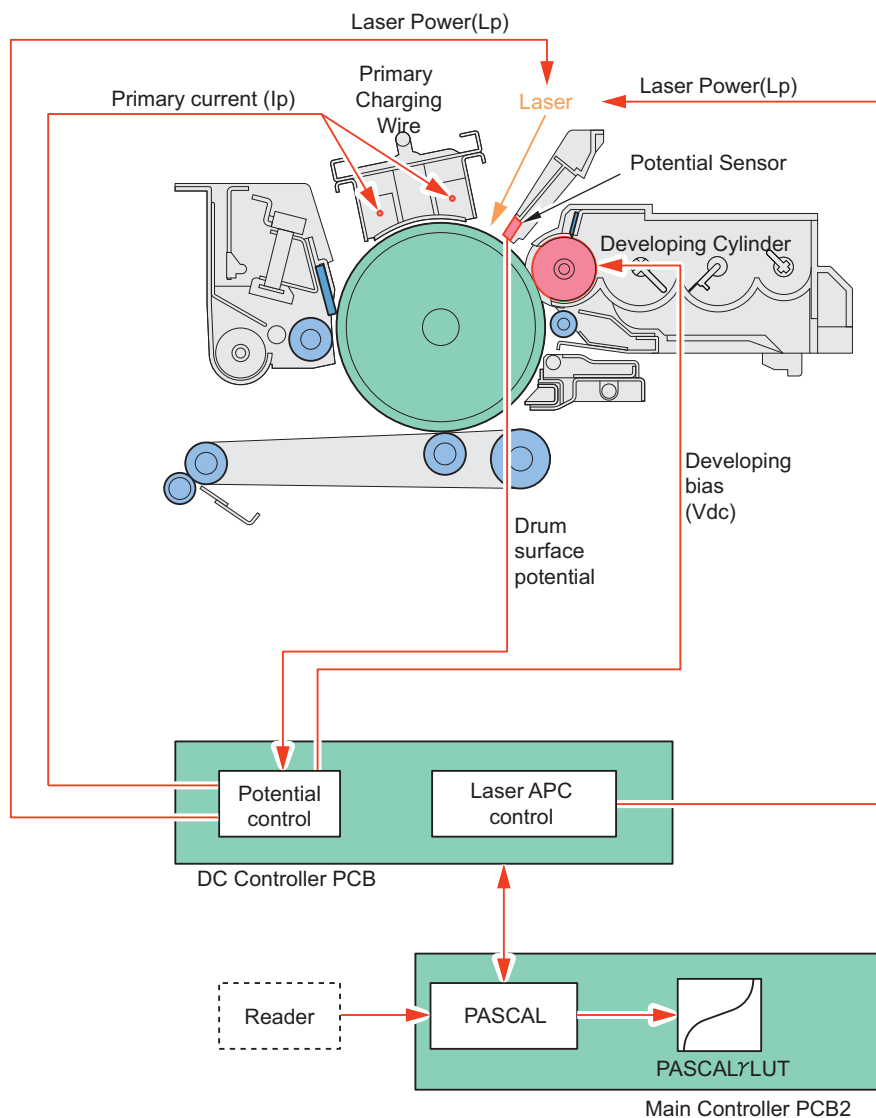
<Related error code>

E013-0001 Error in Waste Toner Lock Detection Connector disconnection

E013-0002 Error in Waste Toner Feed Screw Lock detection

**■ Image Stabilization Control****● Overview**

This control prevents image failure due to change of the environment or deterioration of the Photosensitive Drum to ensure stabilized print.



## ● Execution Timing

Execution items for image stabilization control differ according to the environment and condition of image formation parts. Following shows the control items at each sequence.

\*: 70 deg C or lower in the fixing temperature, \*\*: 60 sec.70 deg C or lower in the fixing temperature, \*\*\*: Fixing temperature remaining high at power OFF/ON

| Control                                | Stand-ard du-ration (second) Approx. | Timing  |                     |                   |           |                |                   |                 |              |           |                |              |  |
|--|--------------------------------------|---|---------------------|-------------------|-----------|----------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------|----------------|--------------|--|
|  |                                      | Warm-up rotation  |                     |                   |           |                | Initial rota-tion | Paper inter-val | Interruption |           | Last rota-tion | Arbitrary    |  |
|  |                                      | At star-tup *   | Nor-mal start-up ** | Power OFF/O N *** | Door open | Jam re-cov-ery |                   |                 |              |           |                |              | Forcible in-terruption at 2,000 sheets |
| Full Po-tential Control                | De-scrip-tion                        | 8   | Yes                 | -                 | -         | -              | -                 | (Yes) *<br>2    | -            | -         | -              | (Yes) *<br>1 | Yes                                    |
|  | Re-mark s                            | *1 Operation Criteria<br>- Last rotation after the first job right after startup first time for the day takes 10 minutes or longer<br>- Last rotation after processing 1,500 sheets or more following the last potential control execution<br>- Last rotation after the first job following 90 minutes or more elapsed from the last potential control execution<br>*2 Operation Criteria<br>- Every initial rotation for the job that start within 10 minutes after density judgment at normal startup mode (60 seconds startup) |                     |                   |           |                |                   |                 |              |           |                |              |  |
| APC Cor-rection at Paper In-terval     | De-scrip-tion                        | 0.2   | -                   | -                 | -         | -              | -                 | -               | Yes*         | -         | -              | -            | -                                      |
|  | Re-mark s                            | *3 At every 20-sheet interval   |                     |                   |           |                |                   |                 |              |           |                |              |  |
| APC Control at Warm-up Rotation        | De-scrip-tion                        | 2   | -                   | -                 | -         | -              | -                 | (Yes) *<br>4    | -            | -         | -              | -            | -                                      |
|  | Re-mark s                            | *4 Operation Criteria<br>- Initial rotation after the first job following 60 minutes or more elapsed from the last job completion   |                     |                   |           |                |                   |                 |              |           |                |              |  |
| APC Cor-rection at Last Ro-tation      | De-scrip-tion                        | 2   | -                   | -                 | -         | -              | -                 | -               | -            | -         | -              | (Yes) *<br>5 | -                                      |
|  | Re-mark s                            | *5 Operation Criteria<br>- Last rotation after the first job following 30 minutes or more elapsed from the last job completion  |                     |                   |           |                |                   |                 |              |           |                |              |  |
| Drum Idle Rotation at First in the Day | De-scrip-tion                        | 60  | Yes                 | -                 | -         | -              | -                 | -               | -            | -         | -              | -            | -                                      |
|  | Re-mark s                            |   |                     |                   |           |                |                   |                 |              |           |                |              |  |
| Charging Wire Cleaning                 | De-scrip-tion                        | 30  | -                   | -                 | -         | -              | -                 | -               | -            | (Yes) * 6 | -              | (Yes) *<br>6 | -                                      |
|  | Re-mark s                            | *6 Operation Criteria<br>- Last rotation after 1,500 sheets or more processed following the last Charging Wire cleaning execution<br>- Forcibly interruption at 2,000 sheets or more processed following the last Charging Wire cleaning execution  |                     |                   |           |                |                   |                 |              |           |                |              |  |
| Idle Rota-tion at First in the Day     | De-scrip-tion                        | 15 to 30  | Yes                 | Yes               | Yes       | Yes            | Yes               | -               | -            | -         | -              | -            | -                                      |
|  | Re-mark s                            | To stabilize toner toribology after long idle time  |                     |                   |           |                |                   |                 |              |           |                |              |  |

| Control   | Standard duration (second) Approx. | Timing   |                   |                  |           |              |                  |                |                                       |                   |               |           |     |     |
|---|------------------------------------|--|-------------------|------------------|-----------|--------------|------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------|-----------|-----|-----|
|   |                                    | Warm-up rotation   |                   |                  |           |              | Initial rotation | Paper interval | Interruption                          |                   | Last rotation | Arbitrary |     |     |
|   |                                    | At startup *   | Normal startup ** | Power OFF/ON *** | Door open | Jam recovery |                  |                | Forcible interruption at 2,000 sheets | Low duty ejection | Normal        | PASCAL    |     |     |
| Low Duty Ejection                                   | Description                        | -  | -                 | -                | -         | -            | -                | -              | -                                     | -                 | -             | Yes       | Yes | -   |
|   | Remarks                            | To prevent toner deterioration during continuous Low DUTY image printing   |                   |                  |           |              |                  |                |                                       |                   |               |           |     |     |
| White Band Control                                  | Description                        | *7   | -                 | -                | -         | -            | -                | -              | -                                     | -                 | -             | -         | Yes | -   |
|   | Remarks                            | *7 When the predefined sheets were printed   |                   |                  |           |              |                  |                |                                       |                   |               |           |     |     |
| Idle Rotation at First in the Day (H/H environment) | Description                        | 15 (30)  | (Yes)*8           | Yes              | -         | -            | -                | -              | -                                     | -                 | -             | -         | -   | -   |
|   | Remarks                            | *8 Only when the environment is in high temperature/humidity   |                   |                  |           |              |                  |                |                                       |                   |               |           |     |     |
| Contrast Potential Correction at Startup            | Description                        | 1  | -                 | Yes              | -         | -            | -                | -              | -                                     | -                 | -             | -         | -   | -   |
|   | Remarks                            |  |                   |                  |           |              |                  |                |                                       |                   |               |           |     |     |
| Disengagement of Transfer Unit                      | Description                        | 1  | Yes               | Yes              | Yes       | Yes          | Yes              | Yes            | -                                     | Yes               | Yes           | Yes       | Yes | Yes |
|   | Remarks                            | At jam recovery/after patch generation/at job completion   |                   |                  |           |              |                  |                |                                       |                   |               |           |     |     |
| Weak Bias Control at Leading Edge                   | Description                        |  | -                 | -                | -         | -            | -                | Yes            | Yes                                   | -                 | -             | -         | -   | -   |
|   | Remarks                            |  |                   |                  |           |              |                  |                |                                       |                   |               |           |     |     |
| Blank Band Control                                  | Description                        | 10   | x                 | x                | x         | x            | x                | x              | x                                     | x                 | x *9          | Δ *10     | x   | x   |
|   | Remarks                            | *9 Operation Criteria<br>At last rotation after the predefined sheets processed following the last black band control execution (2,000 sheets in default)<br>*10 Operation Criteria<br>If the operation criteria are met during low duty ejection control, the control is synchronized to also perform this control. |                   |                  |           |              |                  |                |                                       |                   |               |           |     |     |

### ● Potential Control

Perform the following controls according to the deterioration level of the Photosensitive Drum and the environmental change.

1. VD control

The primary current value (Ip) is determined to become the target dark area potential (VD).

2. VL control

The laser power (LP) is determined to become the target bright area potential (VL).

## 3. Vdc control

Developing bias is determined by adding the "fogging removal potential (Vback)" (based on the environment) to the bright area potential (VL).

## &lt;Execution timing&gt;

- Initial rotation except the following environment after Power-On first time for the day (the fixing roller is 70 deg C or less.)  
Environment: The room temperature is less than 17 deg C, the moisture content is 13 g or more.
  - Initial rotation After Power-On at the 2D shading \*1 ON.
  - Every initial rotation for the job that start within 10 minutes after density judgment at normal startup mode (60 seconds startup)
  - Forcible interruption when the accumulated value of the paper interval VL correction value exceeds 10V within 10 minutes after density judgment at normal startup mode (60 seconds startup).
  - Last rotation after processing 1,500 sheets or more following the last potential control execution
  - Last rotation after the first job right after startup first time for the day takes 10 minutes or long
  - Last rotation after the first job following 90 minutes or more elapsed from the last potential control execution
- \*1: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported.

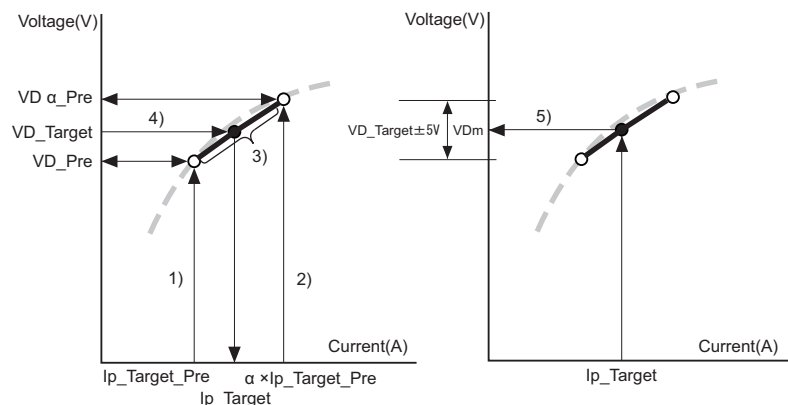
**NOTE:**

At normal startup mode (60 sec. startup), simple potential control is executed to shorten the startup time.

## &lt;Control description&gt;

## 1. VD control

1. The primary current ( $I_{p\_Target\_Pre}$ ), which has been determined in the last potential control \*1, is applied and the Potential Sensor measures drum surface potential ( $VD\_Pre$ ).  
\*1: At the time of installation, the primary current adjusted in the factory is applied.
2. The drum surface potential ( $VD\_Pre$ ) and the target potential ( $VD\_Target$ ) are compared to apply the primary current ( $\alpha \times I_{p\_Target\_Pre}$ ), which makes the target potential ( $VD\_Target$ ) to be in range between the drum surface potential ( $VD\_Pre$ ) and the drum surface potential ( $VD_{\alpha\_Pre}$ ), and then the drum surface potential ( $VD_{\alpha\_Pre}$ ) at that moment is read.
3. The 2 points of measured dark area potentials are connected with a straight line to calculate dark area potential characteristics.
4. Based on the obtained dark area potential characteristics, the primary current ( $I_{p\_Target}$ ) is calculated, which can obtain the target potential ( $VD\_Target$ ).
5. The calculated primary current is applied and this operation is repeated until the drum surface potential ( $VD_m$ ) is within the range of the target potential  $\pm 5V$ . Potential measurement is executed up to 8 times and correction is executed up to 8 times.

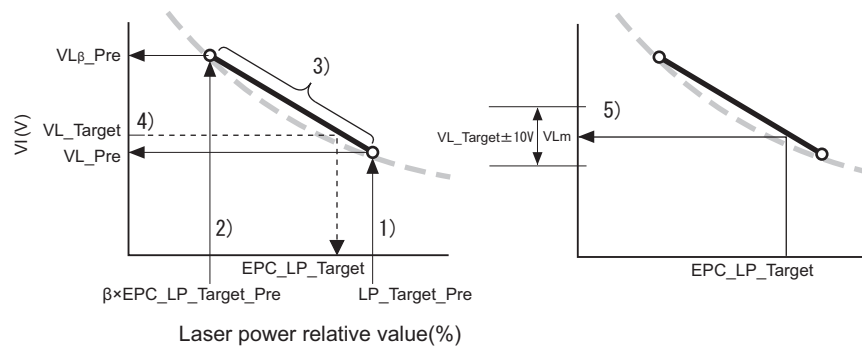


[When the drum surface potential ( $VD_m$ ) is not as follows:  $-5V \leq \text{target potential} \leq +5V$   
Potential control error (VD) "E061-0101" occurs.]



## 2. VL control

1. The laser power (LP\_Target\_Pre), which has been determined in the last bright area potential control \*1, is applied and the Potential Sensor measures the drum surface potential (VL\_Pre).  
\*1: At the time of installation, the primary current adjusted in the factory is applied.
2. The drum surface potential (VL\_Pre) and the target potential (VL\_Target) are compared to apply the primary current ( $\beta \times \text{EPC\_LP\_Target\_Pre}$ ), which makes the target potential (VL\_Target) to be in range between the drum surface potential (VL\_Pre) and the drum surface potential (VL $\beta$ \_Pre), and then the drum surface potential (VL $\beta$ \_Pre) at that moment is read.
3. The 2 points of measured bright area potentials are connected with a straight line to calculate the bright area potential characteristics.
4. Based on the obtained bright area potential characteristics, the laser power (EPC\_LP\_Target) is calculated, which can obtain the target potential (VL\_Target).
5. The Drum is exposed with the calculated laser power and this operation is repeated until the drum surface potential (VLm) is within the range of the target potential +/- 10V. Potential measurement is executed up to 8 times and correction is executed up to 8 times.



[When the drum surface potential is not as follows:  $-10V \leq \text{target potential} \leq +10V$ ]

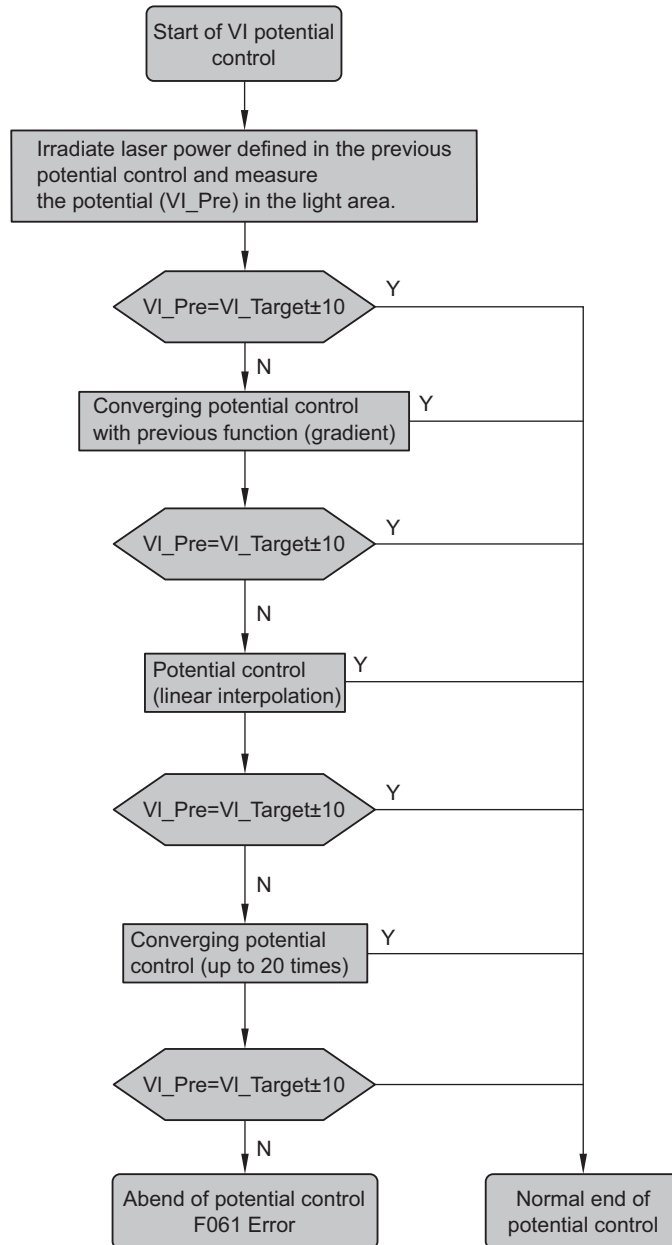
- When the drum surface potential is as follows:  $-10V > \text{target potential} > -30V$  or  $+10V < \text{target potential} < +30V$   
The laser power (LP) when the previous potential control was succeeded (within +/- 10V target potential) is applied. Refer to the alarm code "32-0002" for the processing when the image is influenced.
- When the target potential is as follows:  $\text{target potential} \leq -30V$  or  $\text{target potential} \geq +30V$   
Potential control error (VL) "E061-0001" occurs.

**NOTE:**

With this machine, laser APC control is executed to correct the bright area potential between sheets and jobs (see Other Control > Laser APC Control)

Lp is actually calculated by the laser power (LP) and the bright area potential characteristics that were obtained in the last VL control because executing VL control each time takes time.

When the bright area potential measured value fails to be within the range of the target potential +/- 10V, follow the workflow as described below to obtain bright area potential characteristics by the foregoing VL control to calculate LP.



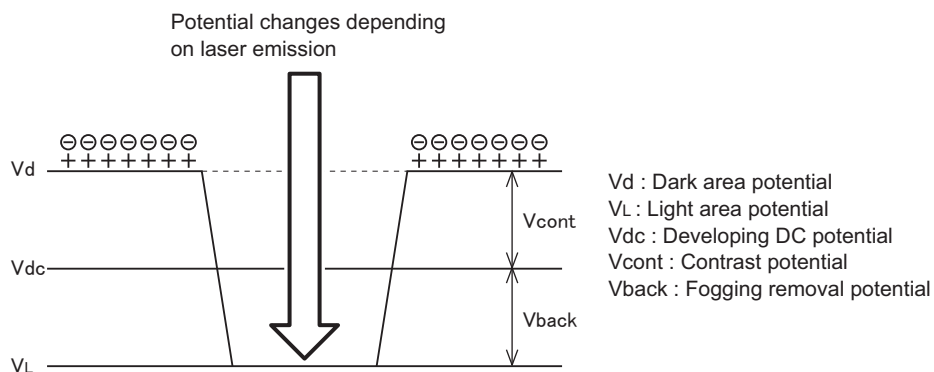
3. Determination of developing bias (Vdc)

Developing bias is determined by adding the Vback value (based on the environment table) to VL (bright area potential) determined in the foregoing control.

Developing bias (Vdc) = VL + Vback

VL: measured bright area potential determined by the potential control

Vback: the potential to remove foggy image that was determined in the environment table



<Related error codes>

E061-0001: error in potential control (VL)

E061-0101: error in potential control (VD)

## ● PASCAL Control

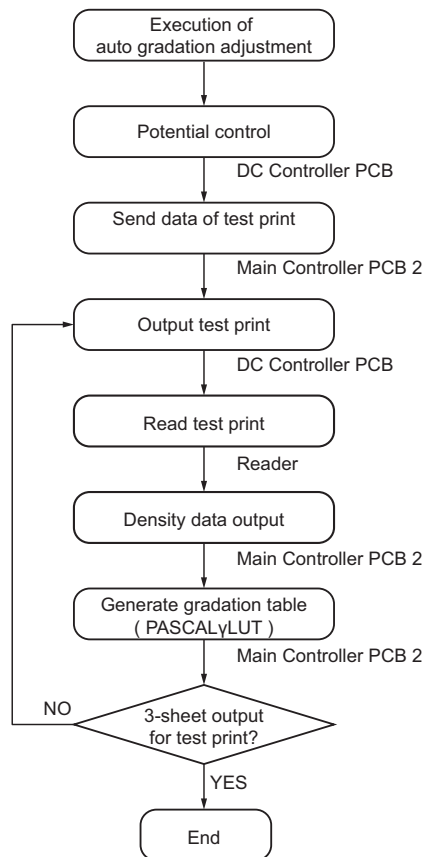
This control stabilizes gradation density characteristics on the image.

This control is executed when the following is selected in user mode: Auto Adjust Gradation

Patch pattern on the test print is scanned by the Reader to create a gradation table (PASCALyLUT).

### Execution timing

During execution of Adjust: User mode > Settings/Registration > Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Auto Adjust Gradation



#### NOTE:

Since Inbox images are binary, gradation adjustment cannot be performed after being stored in Inbox. Gradation adjustment is performed on the rasterized data before they are stored in Inbox.

When the stored image is output after a long time, gradation adjustment is not performed on the basis of the environment at the time of output, so appropriate printing results may not be able to be obtained.

If the environment changes with time, it is advisable to store the data into Inbox just before output.

## ■ Other Control

### ● Startup Contrast Potential (Vcont) Correction

Contrast potential (Vcont) is corrected to keep a constant density and prevent light image caused by reduced toner amount in an energy-saving environment.charging

#### NOTE:

Temperature in the Developing Assembly is reduced because the Drum Heater is turned OFF at sleep state in an energy-saving environment. This operation increases moisture content in the Developing Assembly and reduces toner charging amount.

### <Execution timing>

At the time of the normal startup mode (in the case that the two dimension shading control is OFF)

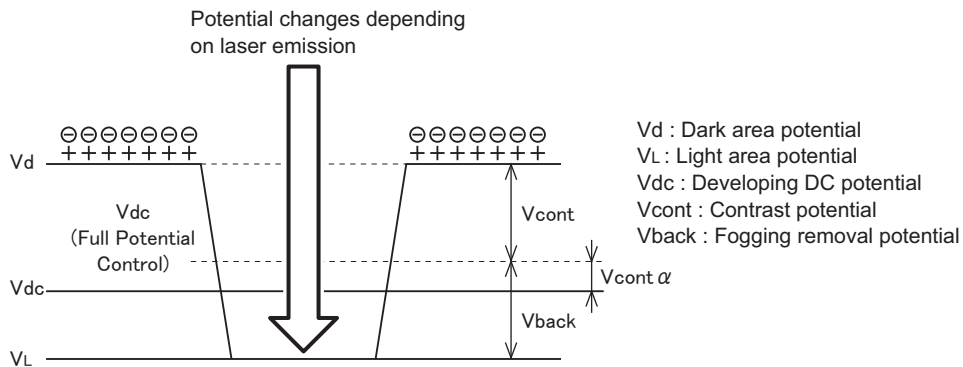
**NOTE:**

This control is not executed when the two dimension shading control \*1 is ON because the Drum Heater is turned ON.

\*1: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported.

**<Control description>**

- At the time of normal image formation, contrast potential ( $V_{cont\alpha}$ ) based on the environment table is added to the developing bias ( $V_{dc}$  (full potential control value)) determined by the full potential control to correct developing bias.  
 $V_{dc} = V_{dc} (\text{potential control value}) - V_{cont\alpha}$
- The corrected contrast potential ( $V_{cont}$ ) is reset (making  $V_{cont\alpha}$  0) when the next full potential correction is executed.

**• Laser APC Control**

This control corrects laser output control value to prevent change of surface potential by laser output.

**Correction type**

- Between-sheet APC control: to keep constant bright area potential ( $V_L$ ) without reducing productivity during continuous jobs.
- Initial rotation APC to determine  $V_L$  according to the laser and drum temperature characteristics.
- Last rotation APC control: to determine  $V_L$  according to the laser and drum temperature characteristics.

**Execution timing**

- Between-sheet APC control: at every paper interval of a job.
- Initial rotation APC control: to be executed during initial rotation of the first job after the machine has been left unattached for 60 minutes or more since execution of the last job.
- Last rotation APC control: to be executed during last rotation of the first job after the machine has been left unattached for 30 minutes or more since execution of the last job.

**Control description****A. Between-sheet APC control**

- Bright area potential is measured at every sheet interval by the Potential Sensor.
- Average sheet interval  $V_{L\_ave}$  of the measured paper interval  $V_L$  potential (for 20 sheet intervals) is calculated.
- Laser power correction value is determined by the difference between the measured potential  $V_L$  (measured at the time of potential control) and the average paper interval  $V_{L\_ave}$  in addition to the last bright area potential characteristics (gradient ( $\gamma$ )).

Correction formula

$$LP\_after = LP\_before - (V_L - V_{L\_ave}) \times \gamma$$

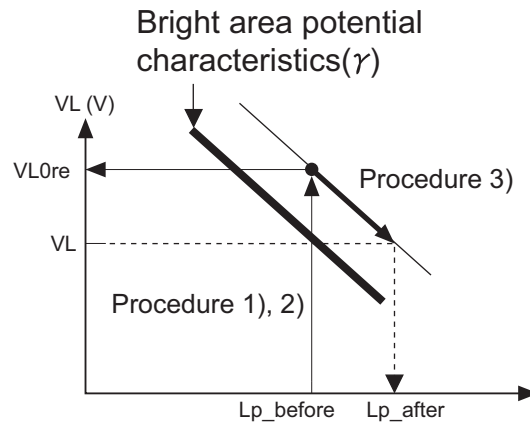
$LP\_after$ : laser power after correction

$LP\_before$ : laser power before correction

$V_L$ : measured  $V_L$  determined at the time of potential control

$V_{L\_ave}$ : average paper interval  $V_L$

$\gamma$ : gradient (control coefficient): gradient reciprocal of  $LP\_VI$  straight line in the range including  $V_L$  target



#### B. Initial rotation APC control

1. Bright area potential VL is measured during initial rotation to correct laser power. The primary current value and developing bias value are  $f_i$
2. Correction is executed by following the same way as between-sheet APC control.

#### C. Last rotation APC control

This correction follows the same way as initial rotation APC control

### • Two Dimension Shading Control \*1

Uneven potential on the Photosensitive Drum is corrected by laser exposure.

\*1: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported.

#### <Execution timing>

At the time of laser exposure (only when the two dimension shading control is ON. Default: OFF)

#### <Control description>

1. Potential data on the Drum surface is saved in EEPROM on the DC Controller PCB in the format supporting two-dimension coordinate (measured when the Drum was manufactured).
2. When the power is turned ON, EEPROM data is compared to RAM data. If there is any difference in the data, the EEPROM data is stored in the backup RAM.

#### NOTE:

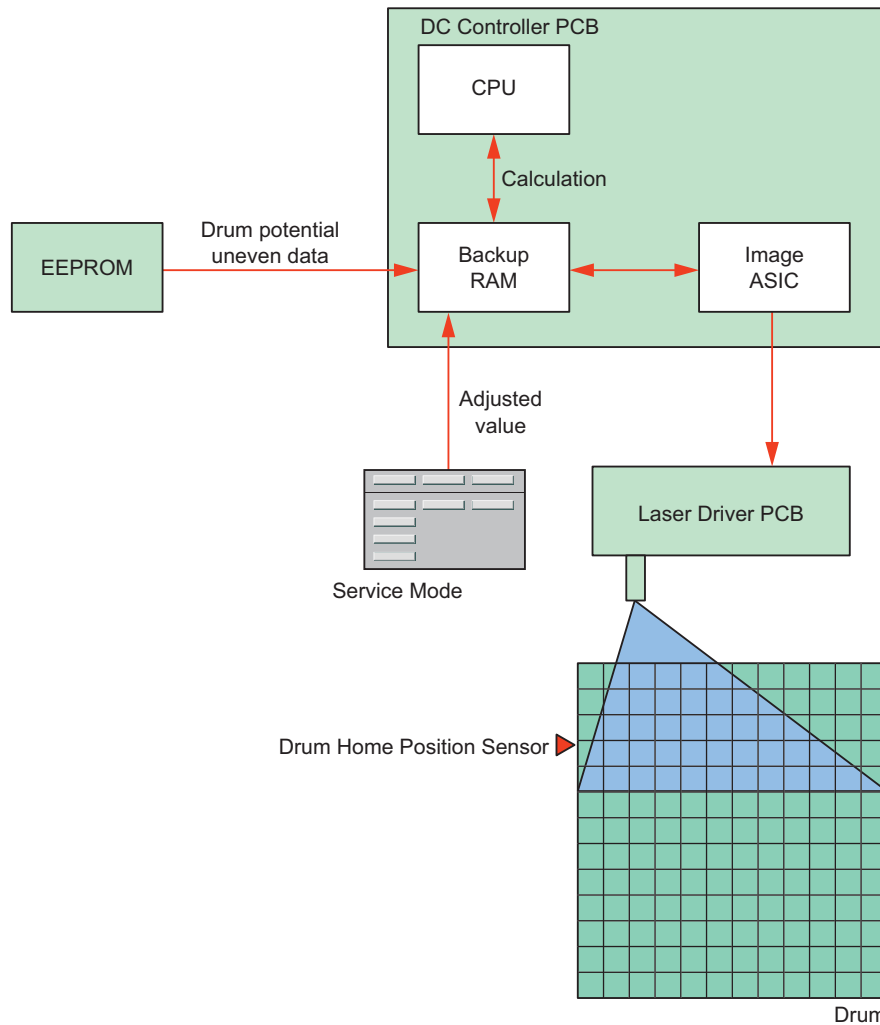
Whether the control is enabled can be checked with COPIER>DISPLAY>2D-SHD>2DSTS.

If 0 is displayed, check DRM-LOT number. When 0 is displayed, it means that the drum has not been registered; thus, execute FUNCTION/2D-SHADE/2D-READ to register the drum.

3. Potential data on the Drum surface is sent to the image ASIC and the image data is synchronized with the Drum home position, and then the uneven potential data is converted into light intensity to be sent to the Laser Driver PCB.
4. The Laser Driver PCB is exposed to remove uneven potential on the Drum.

#### NOTE:

- For Drum provided as a service part, EEPROM which stores potential unevenness data is included. Therefore, the EEPROM needs to be replaced when the Drum is replaced.
- As the life of the Drum advances, uneven density can occur when the halftone image is output despite correction of the drum uneven potential. In such a case, uneven density can be corrected by specifying a particular position in service mode. See Troubleshooting for procedure.
- FCOT (First Copy Time) is reduced to detect home position of the Drum by turning ON the two dimension shading.



#### <Related service mode>

- Display of 2D shading ON/OFF (Lv.2)  
COPIER > DISPLAY > 2D-SHADE > 2D-ST5
- Display of Drum Lot number  
COPIER > DISPLAY > 2D-SHADE > DRM-LOT
- Display of checksum calculation result (Lv.2)  
COPIER > DISPLAY > 2D-SHADE > CHK-SUM
- 2D shading horizontal scan correction  
COPIER > FUNCTION > 2D-SHADE > M-LINE1, M-LINE2
- 2D shading pattern output  
COPIER > FUNCTION > 2D-SHADE > SHD-P1 to 3
- Read 2D shading ROM  
COPIER > FUNCTION > 2D-SHADE > 2D-READ

#### • White Band Control

Oppositely-charged toner on the Developing Sleeve is forcibly applied on the Drum and collected by the Cleaning Unit.

##### NOTE:

Large-grained toner is less likely to be charged compared to small-grained toner and can be positively charged (opposite charging) in rare cases. Such oppositely-charged toner fails to be developed but remains on the Developing Sleeve, which causes image failure.

#### Execution timing

Last rotation after every job

#### Control description

Developing bias  $V_{dc}$  is increased once the image trailing edge passes through the developing position.

Vback is increased and the oppositely-charged toner on the Developing Cylinder is moved onto the Drum.

#### <Related service mode>

- Reverse toner forcible eject: blank band (Lv.2)  
COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > WB
- Setting of blank band ejection time (Lv.2)  
COPIER > ADJUST > MISC> TBSIS-WB

### • Black Band Control

This control maintains the cleaning performance by providing sufficient amount of toner to the edge of the Cleaning Blade.

#### NOTE:

Friction coefficient between the Blade and the Drum is increased unless sufficient amount of toner is applied on the Drum Cleaning Blade, which causes ride-up of the Blade. Although toner is properly applied to the center of the Blade by normal cleaning operation, toner is supplied insufficiently to the edge of the Blade.

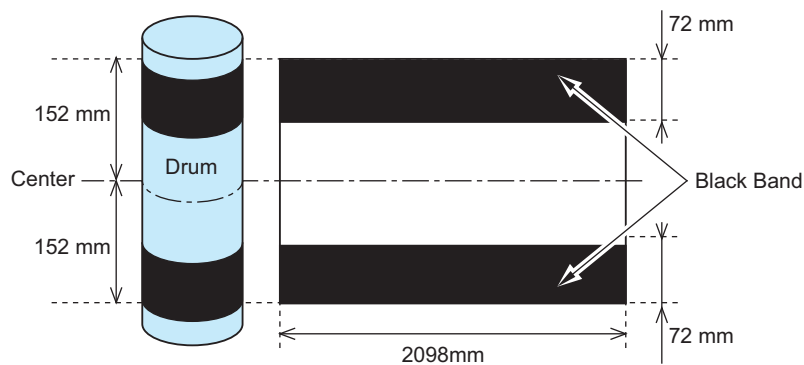
#### Execution timing

- Last rotation after the specified number of sheets\*1 has been fed since execution of the last black band control.
  - Paper interval after the specified number of sheets\*1 has been fed since execution of the last black band control.
- \*1: This value can be changed in service mode.

| Timing         | Moisture content | Interval (sheets) |
|----------------|------------------|-------------------|
| Last rotation  | 12g or more      | 1,500             |
| Paper interval |                  | 2,000             |

#### Control description

1. Black band described below is created on the Drum.
2. Black band is scraped by the Drum Cleaning Blade and toner is properly applied on the Cleaning Blade at that moment.
3. This control turns off the transfer high voltage and makes the Transfer Belt disengaged so that image is not applied on the Transfer Belt.



#### <Related service mode>

- To set the paper interval to output black band for preventing flip of the Cleaning Blade.  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-DEV > BB-CNT
- Set black band length for cleaning  
COPIER > OPTION > CLEANING > CLN-ADJ
- ON/OFF of cleaning black band sequence  
COPIER > OPTION > CLEANING > CLN-SW
- Toner forcible eject (black band)  
COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > BB

### • Low Duty Discharge Control

In the case of continuous output of low duty image, this control consumes toner at non-image area to maintain the density stability.

## Execution timing

While the video count for every page is accumulated, in the case that the average image duty is less than the threshold\*1, the ongoing job is interrupted at the time of last rotation of a job or the ongoing job is interrupting in the middle of the job to discharge the toner according to the average image duty.

\*1: Threshold is determined by the following environment table. The value can be changed in service mode

| Moisture content | Temperature/Humidity | Threshold |
|------------------|----------------------|-----------|
| 0.86             | 23deg C/5%           | 0.8%      |
| 1.73             | 23deg C/10%          | 0.8%      |
| 5.8              | 23deg C/30%          | 0.8%      |
| 8.9              | 23deg C/50%          | 0.8%      |
| 15               | 23deg C/70%          | 1.6%      |
| 18               | 28deg C/80%          | 2.0%      |
| 21.6             | 30deg C/80%          | 2.4%      |

## Control description

1. Video count on every page is retrieved.
2. The obtained video count is converted into A4 size and the value is accumulated.
3. Once the accumulated value reaches the threshold, the following patch is created on the Drum to discharge deteriorated toner.

### <Related service mode>

- ON/OFF of low duty ejection  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-DEV > LWDTY-SW
- Set low duty ejection threshold value  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-DEV > LWDTYADJ



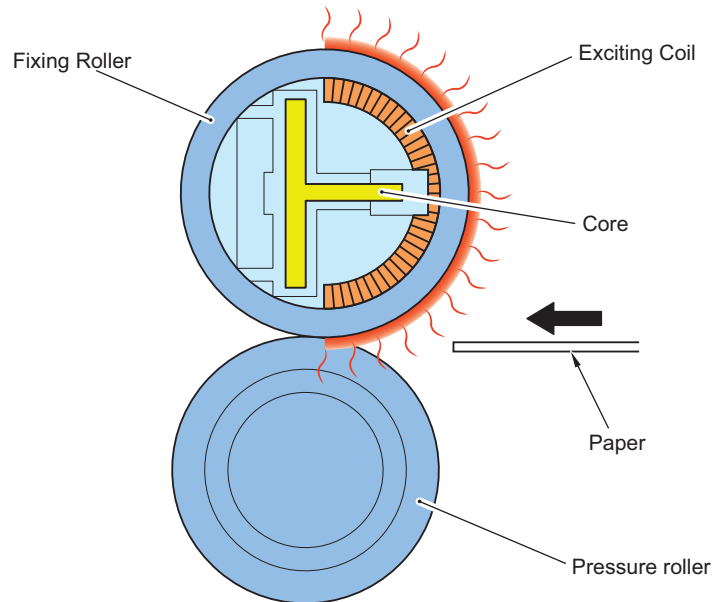
## Fixing System

### Overview

#### ■ Characteristics

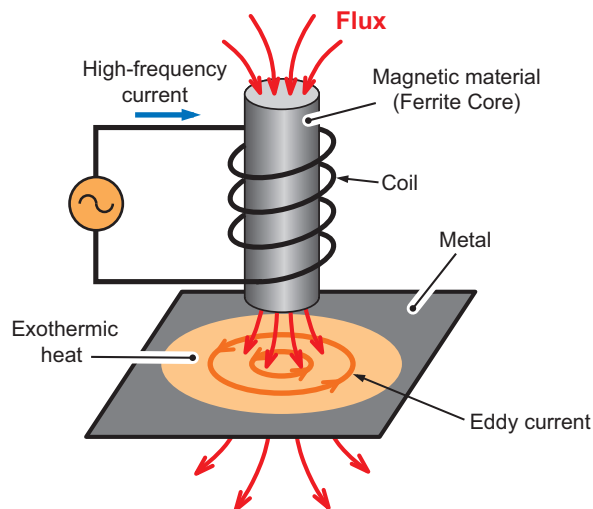
##### 1. IH heating method

This machine uses the IH heating method. This method enables to shorten the warm-up time and high-speed printing.



##### <IH (Induction Heating) method>

Supplying high frequency current to the coil inside the Heater Unit generates a high frequency magnetic field around the coil. By this magnetic field, an eddy current (induction current) runs through the Fixing Roller and the Fixing Roller generates electricity by itself.



##### 2. Making the Fixing Assembly as a unit

Maintenance performance has been improved by separating the Fixing Unit from the Host Machine to be assigned as a unit.

##### 3. Saving energy

Improved toner allows reduction of fixing temperature that enables less energy consumption.

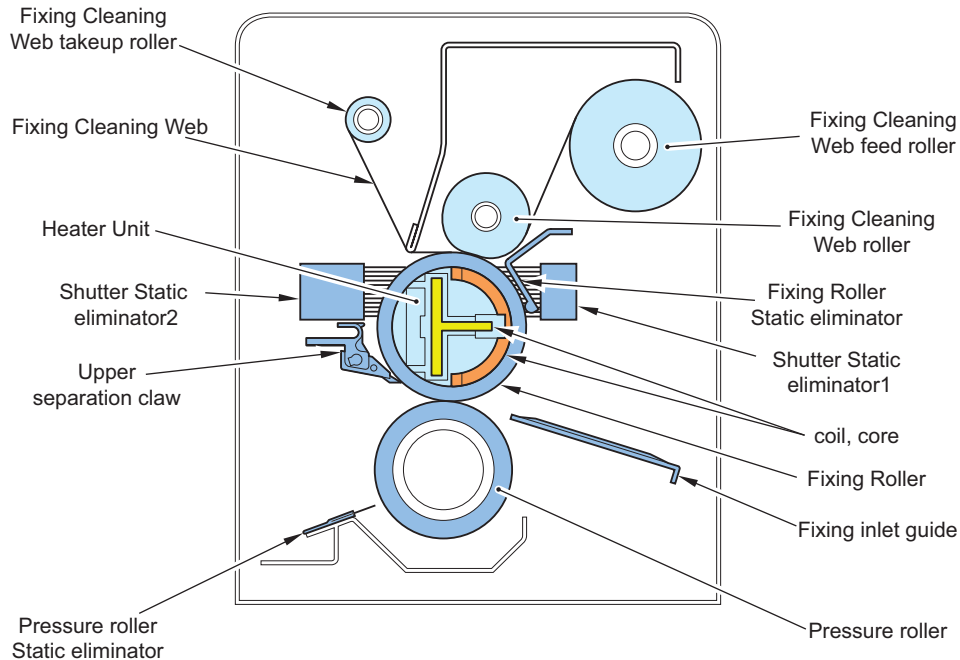
#### ■ Specifications

| Item          | Function/Method  |
|---------------|------------------|
| Fixing method | IH fixing method |
| Fixing Heater | IH Heater        |

| Item  | Function/Method   |
|---|---|
| Fixing Roller                                   | Diameter: 40 mm   |
| Pressure Roller                                 | Diameter: 38 mm   |
| Fixing Drive Control                            | Switching the print speed and warm-up speed (low speed)   |
| Thermistor                                      | Main Thermistor (contact type)<br>The center of the Fixing Roller, reciprocating width: 12 mm<br>Temperature control, failure detection |
|   | Sub Thermistor 1 (contact type)<br>The rear of the Fixing Roller, no reciprocation<br>Failure detection                                 |
|   | Sub Thermistor 2 (contact type)<br>The rear of the Fixing Roller, reciprocating width: 12 mm<br>Shutter control, failure detection      |
| Thermoswitch                                    | 1 pc. (non-contact type)  |
| Protection Function                             | Yes (detection by the Thermistor and the Thermal Switch)  |
| Separation mechanism                            | Upper separation claw: Contact type, reciprocating width: 3 mm  |
| Static Eliminator                               | Fixing Roller/ Pressure Roller/ Shutter   |
| Cleaning mechanism                              | Fixing Cleaning Web   |
| Inlet guide height control                      | N/A   |
| Bias application                                | N/A   |
| Control to prevent temperature rise at the edge | Control of heating area by the magnetic shield plate (shutter)  |
| Disengagement mechanism                         | N/A   |
| Idle rotation during standby                    | Available   |
| Other Controls                                  | See "Controls" described later.   |

## ■ Parts configuration

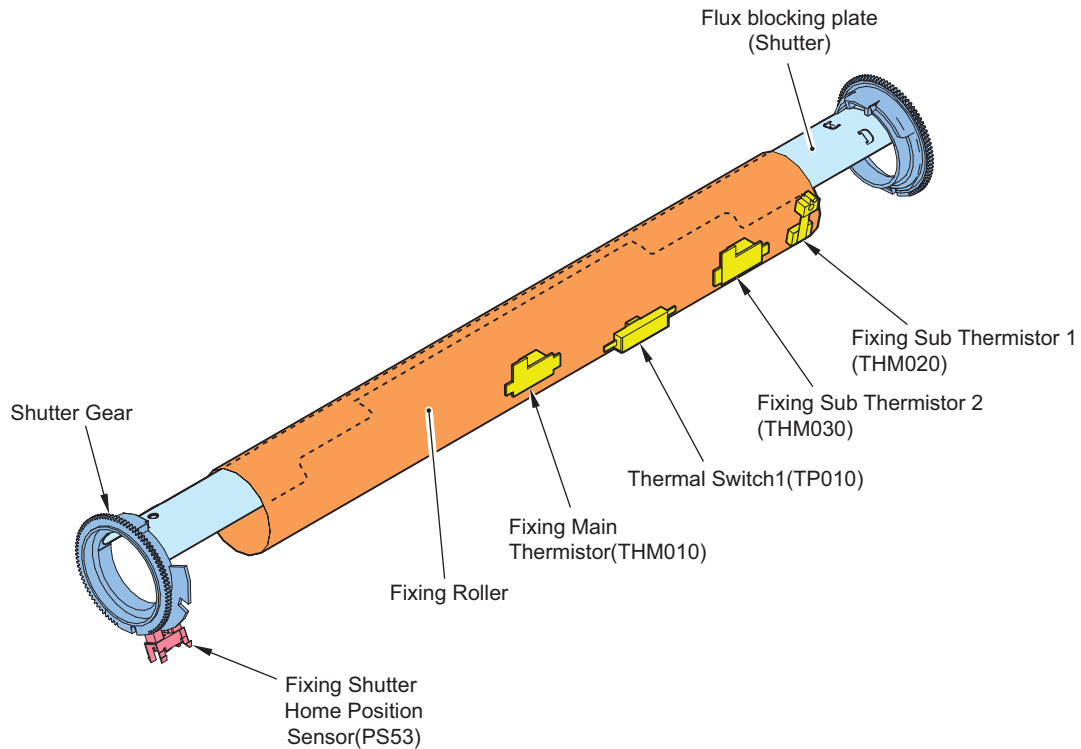
### ● Cross-section view



| Parts name                         | Function/method  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Fixing Roller                      | Heating toner and paper                                      |
| Pressure Roller                    | Pressing and feeding paper                                   |
| Heater Unit                        | IH Heater  |
| Coil Core                          | To heat the Fixing Roller                                    |
| Fixing Cleaning Web                | To remove residual toner on the surface of the Fixing Roller |
| Fixing Cleaning Web Roller         |  |
| Fixing Cleaning Web Take-up Roller |  |

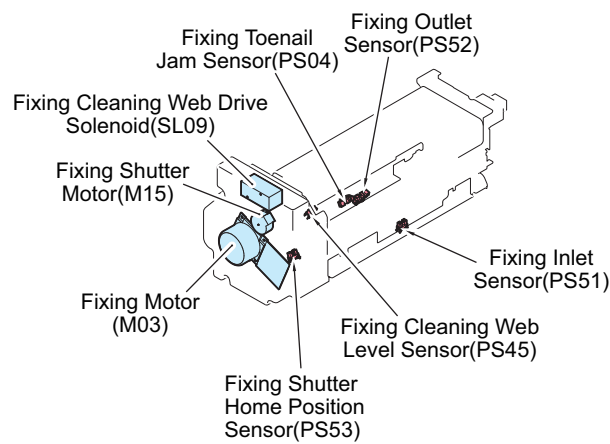
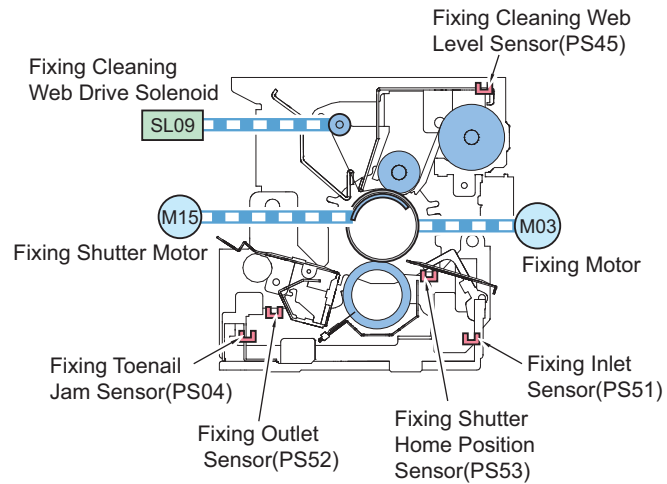
| Parts name                        | Function/method   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Fixing Cleaning Web Feed Roller   | To remove residual toner on the surface of the Fixing Roller                                    |
| Upper Separation Claw             | To separate paper from the Fixing Roller (to prevent paperwrapping)<br>Reciprocating width: 3mm |
| Fixing Inlet Guide                | Paper Feed Guide to the Fixing Assembly   |
| Fixing Roller Static Eliminator   | To prevent leak, static offset and noise  |
| Pressure Roller Static Eliminator |   |
| Shutter Static Eliminator         |   |

## ■ Thermistor, Thermal Switch



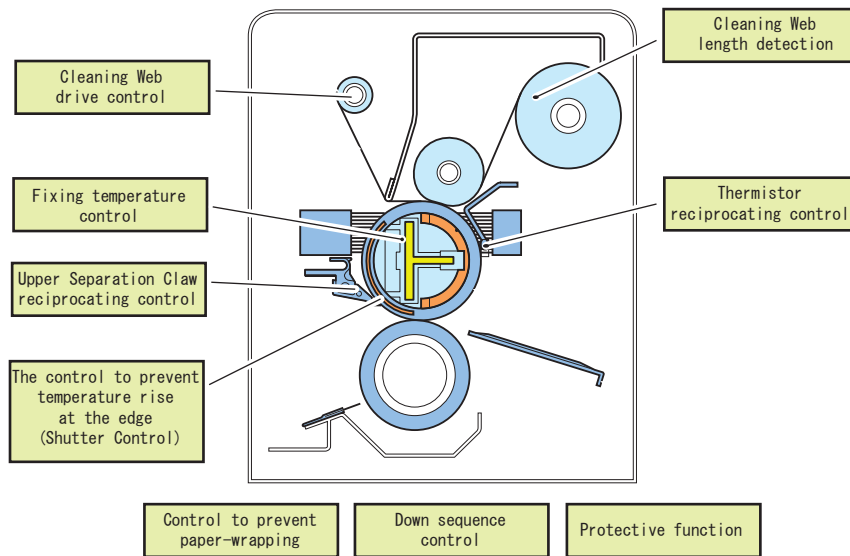
| Code   | Parts name                          | Function/method  |
|--------|-------------------------------------|--|
| THM010 | Fixing Main Thermistor              | Contact type<br>temperature control, failure detection                     |
| THM020 | Fixing Sub Thermistor 1             | Contact type<br>failure detection, Shutter operation temperature detection |
| THM030 | Fixing Sub Thermistor 2             | Contact type<br>failure detection, Shutter operation temperature detection |
| TP010  | Thermal Switch1                     | Non-Contact type (200 +/- 5 deg C)<br>To prevent abnormal temperature rise |
| PS53   | Fixing Shutter Home Position Sensor | to detect shutter position   |

## ■ Drive configuration



| Code | Parts name                          | Function/method                                  |
|------|-------------------------------------|--|
| M03  | Fixing Motor                        | To control drive of the Fixing Motor             |
| M15  | Fixing Shutter Motor                | To control drive of the Shutter                  |
| SL09 | Fixing Cleaning Web Drive Solenoid  | To control drive of the Cleaning Web             |
| PS04 | Fixing Toenail Jam Sensor           | To prevent scratches on Fixing Roller due to jam |
| PS45 | Fixing Cleaning Web Level Sensor    | To detect length of the Cleaning Web             |
| PS51 | Fixing Inlet Sensor                 | To detect paper wrapping and stationary          |
| PS52 | Fixing Outlet Sensor                |  |
| PS53 | Fixing Shutter Home Position Sensor | to detect shutter position                       |

## ■ Overview



| NO | Control/Function                            | Overview  |
|----|---|---|
| 1  | Fixing temperature control                  | To control temperature of the Fixing Roller to prevent fixing failure   |
| 2  | Down sequence control                       | In the case of large difference between the target temperature and the detected temperature, this control drops productivity to prevent fixing failure and image failure. |
| 3  | Paper anti-wrapping control                 | To prevent failure of the Fixing Assembly caused by wrapping of paper around the Fixing Roller and the Pressure Roller.   |
| 4  | Shutter Control                             | To control the shutter position in order to prevent the temperature rising at the edge.   |
| 5  | Thermistor reciprocating control            | To prevent scar on the Fixing Roller by the Main Thermistor, this control moves the Main Thermistor back and forth.   |
| 6  | Upper Separation Claw reciprocating control | To prevent scar on the Fixing Roller by the Upper Separation Claw, this control moves the Upper Separation Claw back and forth.   |
| 7  | Cleaning Web drive control                  | To prevent fixing offset, this control removes residual toner on the surface of the Fixing Roller.  |
| 8  | Cleaning Web level detection                | To detect level of the Cleaning Web.  |
| 9  | Protective function                         | To detect error by Thermistor.<br>To detect error by Thermoswitch.  |

## ■ Fixing temperature control

### ● Overview

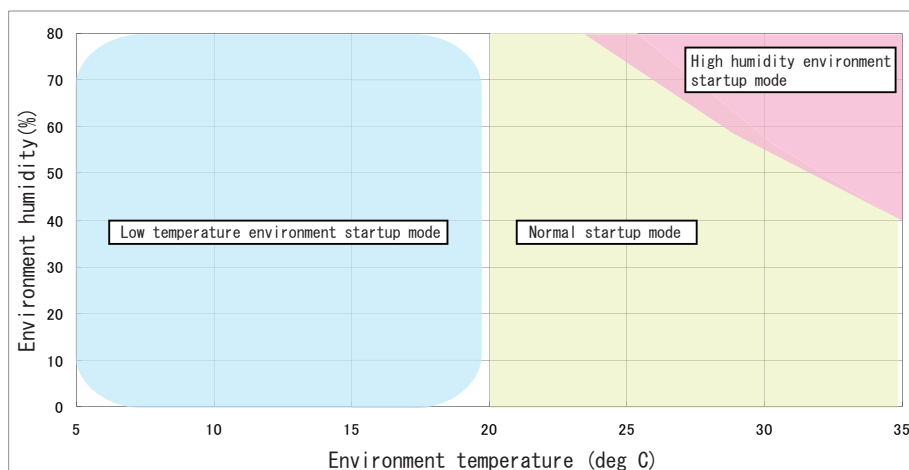
To prevent fixing failure, temperature control of the Fixing Roller is executed with the following timing.

| NO | Temperature control                 | Overview   |
|----|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1  | Temperature control during startup  | To control temperature to reach the standby temperature. To be switched from the following 4 modes according to the environment temperature/ humidity and the temperature of the Fixing Roller: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal startup mode</li> <li>• Low temperature environment startup mode</li> <li>• High humidity environment startup mode</li> <li>• Recovery mode</li> </ul> |
| 2  | Temperature control during standby  | To control temperature so that printing can be performed immediately after receiving the print request signal  |
| 3  | Temperature control during printing | To control temperature by the temperature table according to the paper type and the paper basis weight.  |
| 4  | Other temperature adjustments       | Following shows other temperature adjustments <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To control temperature for reducing power consumption.</li> </ul>   |

### • Temperature Control during Startup

Temperature is controlled to reach the standby temperature.

The startup mode changes as needed by the environment temperature and humidity. When starting with the Fixing Roller temperature from 70 deg C or higher, the recovery mode is used.



Following shows characteristics of each startup mode.

<Normal startup mode>

In the case of reaching the target temperature within 30 seconds due to quick temperature rise of the Fixing Roller, the target temperature is maintained to be shifted to the Ready state after 30 seconds had passed.

| Condition               |   |                           |
|-------------------------|---|---------------------------|
| Environment temperature | Environment humidity  | Fixing Roller temperature |
| 20 deg C or higher      | Low humidity environment (within 13 grams of absolute moisture content) | 70 deg C or lower         |

#### NOTE:

In the case of selecting the fixing improvement mode in the following service mode, the machine does not enter the startup state for 30 seconds and waits until it reaches a target temperature.

Selection of fixing improvement mode: (Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > BODY > FSPD-S1

<Low temperature environment startup mode>

After it reaches the target temperature, the target temperature is maintained until completion of the potential control, and then the machine enters Ready state.

| Condition               |                      |                           |
|-------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| Environment temperature | Environment humidity | Fixing Roller temperature |
| Less than 20 deg C      | -                    | 70 deg C or lower         |

<High humidity environment startup mode>

After it reaches the target temperature, the target temperature is maintained until completion of developing idle rotation as well as completion of the potential control, and then the machine enters Ready state.

| Condition               |  |                           |
|-------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| Environment temperature | Environment humidity   | Fixing Roller temperature |
| -                       | High humidity environment (13 grams or higher absolute moisture content) | 70 deg C or lower         |

<Recovery mode>

This mode is entered after Jam recovery, or when recovering from low power/power-saving mode.

The machine enters Ready state once it reaches the target temperature.

| Environment temperature | Environment humidity | Fixing Roller temperature |
|-------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| -                       | -                    | 70 deg C or higher        |

## • Temperature Control for Standby

To provide measures against temperature rise of the coil/Main Body and save energy consumption, the target temperature of Fixing Roller is reduced step by step on a specified time basis until it reaches a certain temperature. Additionally, during standby, the idle rotation operation is performed to evenly maintain the surface temperature of Fixing Roller.

The control temperature depends on the environment temperature and country/region.

## • Temperature Control during Printing

To provide measures against temperature rise of the coil/Main Body and save energy consumption, the target temperature of Fixing Roller is reduced step by step on a specified time basis until it reaches a certain temperature.

The control temperature depends on the environment temperature/country/paper type.

| Paper type  | Paper weight (g/m <sup>2</sup> ) |
|---|----------------------------------|
| Plain paper, recycled paper, color paper, pre-punched paper               | 64 to 90                         |
| Heavy paper (plain paper, recycled paper, color paper, pre-punched paper) | 91 to 256<br>All paper weight    |
| Bond paper  | All paper weight                 |
| Thin paper (plain paper, recycled paper, color paper, pre-punched paper)  | 52 to 63                         |

<Related error codes>

- E000: Fixing Assembly low temperature error
- E001: Fixing Assembly high temperature error
- E002: Fixing Assembly temperature rise error
- E003: Fixing Assembly temperature decrease error
- E004: IH power supply failure

### CAUTION:

When any of the above Error Codes, E000 to E0004, is displayed, the error code display will not be cleared even though the Main Power Switch is turned OFF. In such a case, go through the following service mode to clear the error and turn OFF and then ON the power.

- Error code clear  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR

<Related service modes>

- Setting of fixing improvement mode (Lv.2)  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > FSPD-S1
- Setting of paper wrinkle prevention mode (Lv.2)  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > FX-WNKL
- Set fixing control temperature table: Thin  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > TMP-TBL2
- Set fixing control temperature table: Plain  
COPIER > OPTION > CUSTOM > TEMP-TBL
- Set fixing control temperature table\*  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > TMP-TBL3
- Set fixing control temperature table: Bond  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > TMP-TBL4

\* Temperature table for 91 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 256 g/m paper

## ● Other temperature adjustments

### <Energy Saver mode>

By pressing the energy saver key on the Control Panel, energy consumption is reduced by reducing the control temperature when the Fixing Unit is at standby state according to the energy saving rate.

#### **NOTE:**

To be recovered to the normal mode according to the recovery mode.

<Related User Mode>

- The energy saving rate can be changed from "Settings/Registration > Preferences > Timer/Energy Settings > Change Energy Saver Mode".

### <Low power mode>

To save energy, in the case that no operation has been executed for a certain period of time, this machine is automatically to be in Low Energy Mode. Power distribution to the Fixing Unit is turned OFF in Low Energy Mode.

#### **NOTE:**

To be recovered to the normal mode according to the temperature control at warm-up.

<Related User Mode>

- The time to change to the low power mode can be changed from "Settings/Registration > Preferences > Timer/Energy Settings > Auto Sleep Time".

## ■ Down sequence control

### ● Overview

In the case of great difference between the target temperature and the detected temperature at the start of printing or during printing, productivity is dropped to prevent fixing failure or image failure.

### ● Execution timing

- During printing
- At the start of printing and when the paper type is switched

### ● Control description

This control has the 3 types of down sequences according to the execution timing.



## 1. In the case of decrease in fixing temperature (during printing)

When the fixing temperature drops during the job, the productivity is dropped or the job is stopped to prevent fixing failure.

<Plain Paper>

When the environment temperature is 17 deg C or higher, the fixing temperature of 100% productivity remains, so the down sequence does not start. When the environment temperature is lower than 17 deg C, it may start down sequence.

**NOTE:**

When the print temperature is reduced by the service mode although the environment temperature is 17 deg C or higher, the down sequence may be started.

<Heavy paper>

Right after the startup (including restoration from the sleep mode), a whole Fixing Assembly is not warm enough, so the down sequence may be started. However, as printing continues sequentially, the temperature of the Fixing Assembly is increased and reaches to the temperature of the 100% productivity

| Plain paper 1,2    |       |              | Plain paper 3,Heavy paper1to6 | Thin paper1,2 |
|--------------------|-------|--------------|-------------------------------|---------------|
| Temperature        | Level | Productivity |                               |               |
| 17 deg C or higher | Start | 100%         | 100%                          | 100%          |
|                    | Down1 | 85%          | 70%                           | 75%           |
|                    | Down2 | 70%          | -                             | -             |
|                    | Stop  | 0%           | 0%                            | 0%            |
| less than 17 deg C | Start | 100%         | 100%                          | 100%          |
|                    | Down1 | 75%          | 70%                           | 75%           |
|                    | Down2 | 50%          | -                             | -             |
|                    | Stop  | 0%           | 0%                            | 0%            |

| Bond paper         |       |                     |                                 |
|--------------------|-------|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| Temperature        | Level | Productivity(80ppm) | Productivity (other than 80ppm) |
| 17 deg C or higher | Start | 30ppm               | 30ppm                           |
|                    | Down1 | -                   | -                               |
|                    | Down2 | -                   | -                               |
|                    | Stop  | 0%                  | 0%                              |
| less than 17 deg C | Start | 30ppm               | 30ppm                           |
|                    | Down1 | -                   | -                               |
|                    | Down2 | -                   | -                               |
|                    | Stop  | 0%                  | 0%                              |

## 2. When printing is started and the paper type is switched

Because fixing temperature differs according to the paper type, switching the paper type causes downtime.

Up to 60 seconds downtime is expected with this machine (switching from heavy paper to thin paper). The following shows estimated downtime.

| pattern of paper type switching | downtime (reference value) | Remarks  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|--|
| Plain paper -> Heavy paper      | 5 sec                      | -  |
| Thin paper -> Heavy paper       | 10 sec                     | -  |
| Heavy paper -> Plain paper      | -                          | Switching the temperature control is conducted, but print operation continues, so downtime does not occur. |
| Heavy paper -> Thin paper       | 60 sec                     | -  |
| Bond paper -> Heavy paper       | -                          | Switching the temperature control is conducted, but print operation continues, so downtime does not occur. |
| Bond paper -> Plain paper       | -                          |  |
| Bond paper -> Thin paper        | 60 sec                     | -  |
| Thin paper -> Bond paper        | 80 sec                     | -  |
| Plain paper -> Bond paper       | 30 sec                     | -  |
| Heavy paper -> Bond paper       | 10 sec                     | -  |

## &lt; Related Service Mode&gt;

- Set fixing/productivity: Heavy paper  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > FIX-TEMP
- Set fixing/productivity: Plain paper A3+  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > FIX-TMP2
- Set fixing/productivity: Special paper A3+  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > FIX-TMP3
- Image quality/productivity level : Quality Priority(Lv.2)  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > FX-IMGLV

## ■ Shutter Control

### ● Overview

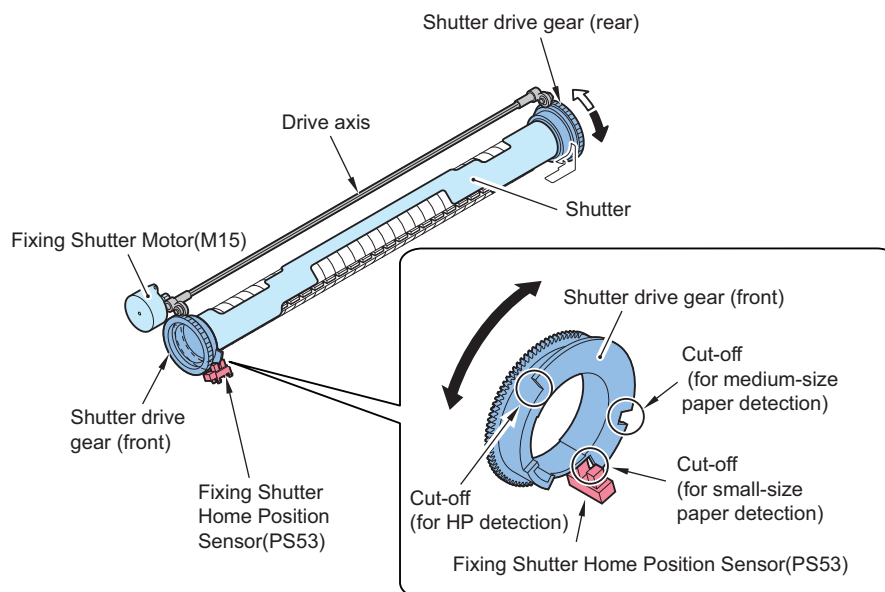
To prevent image failure and reduction in productivity caused by temperature rise at the edge, this machine introduces the Shutter (to shield magnetic flux; nonmagnetic substance), so that position of the Shutter is controlled according to the detected temperature of the edge.

### ● Execution timing

- When reaching the detection temperature of Sub Thermistor (THM020) and Shutter Thermistor (THM030) to the Shutter operation temperature
- When printing is completed

### ● Control description

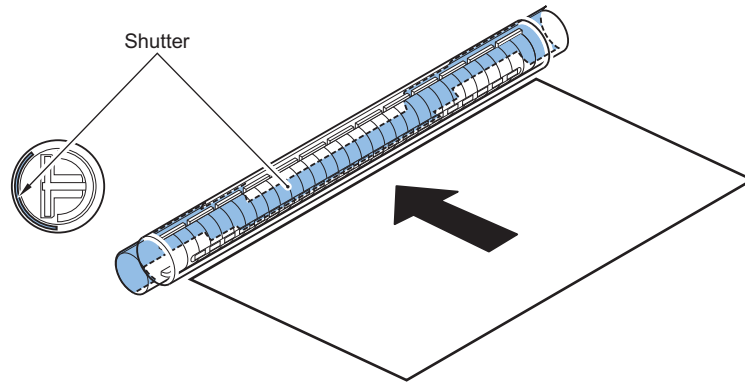
By rotating the Shutter Motor (M15) for the specified amount, the Shutter is set in the specified position. There are cut-offs on the circumference of the Shutter Drive Gear (front) which is engaged with the Shutter. Detection of this cut-offs by the Shutter HP Sensor (PS53) determines whether the Shutter is set in the specified position.



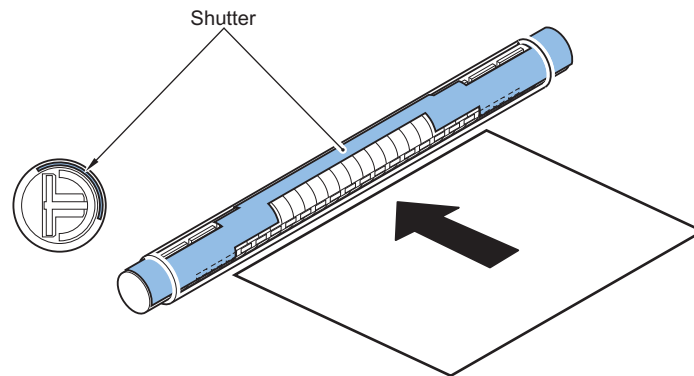
The shutter is set in any of the specified positions during printing according to the paper size and detected temperature of the Thermistor.

The shutter is set in the home position when printing is completed.

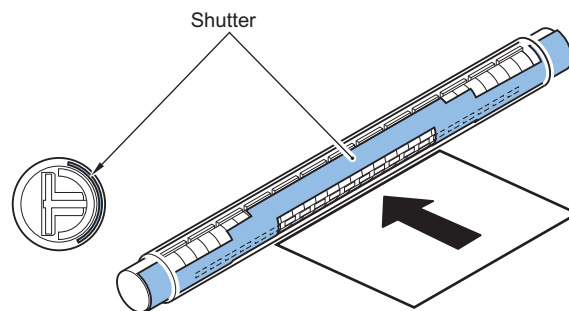
< Home Position (HP)>



< Position for middle paper size >



< Position for small paper size >



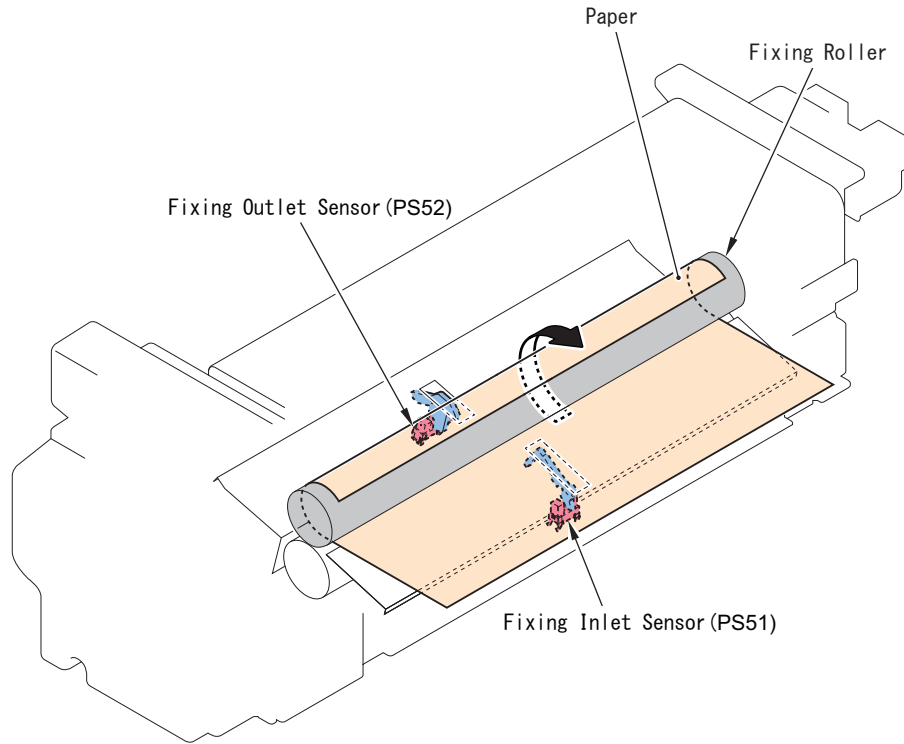
< Related Error Code >

E840-0001: IH Shutter Motor error

## ■ Paper Anti-wrapping Control

### ● Overview

With this control, failure of the Fixing Assembly caused by paper wrapping around the Fixing Roller and the Pressure Roller is prevented.



### ● Control description

In the case of delay jam at the fixing outlet, the DC Controller determines paper wrapping if the paper remains in the Fixing Assembly and executes the following.

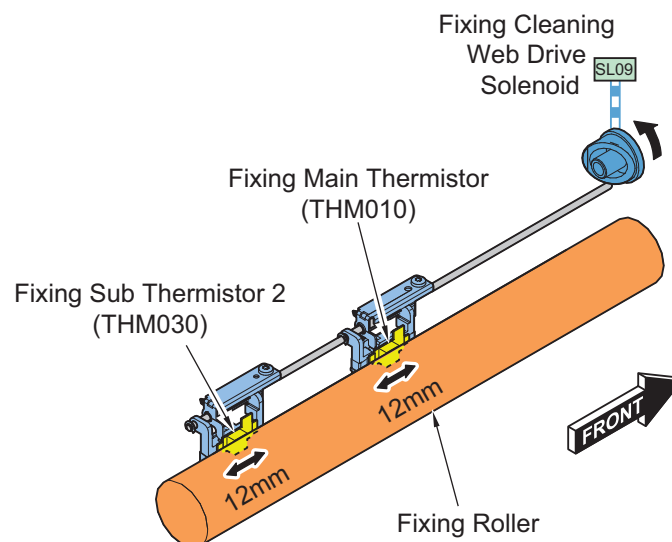
- The brake is applied to the Fixing Motor to immediately stop operation of the Fixing Motor (to minimize the paper wrapping level)
- Power distribution to the coil is stopped (to ensure safety).
- A jam is displayed.(Jam Code:0111)
- Cleaning of the Fixing Roller is executed (5 times of web cleaning)

#### NOTE:

Paper presence in the Fixing Assembly is determined by the paper detection log with the Fixing Inlet Sensor (to see whether the paper passes through the Sensor).

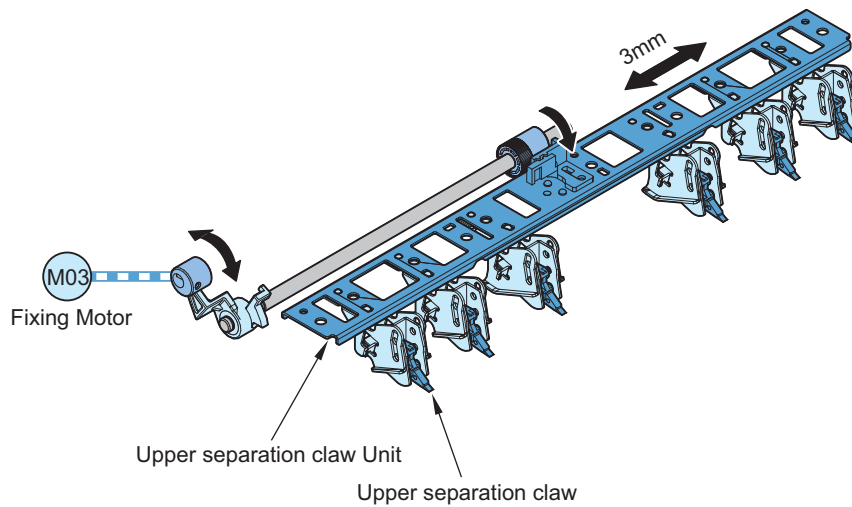
### ■ Thermistor reciprocating control

To prevent scar on the Fixing Roller detected by the Fixing Main Thermistor (THM010) and Fixing Sub Thermistor 2 (THM030) the Fixing Main Thermistor and Fixing Sub Thermistor 2 are moved back and forth by 12mm in the shaft direction of the Fixing Roller. The drive of the Fixing Cleaning Web Drive Solenoid (SL09) is transmitted to the Reciprocating Cam.



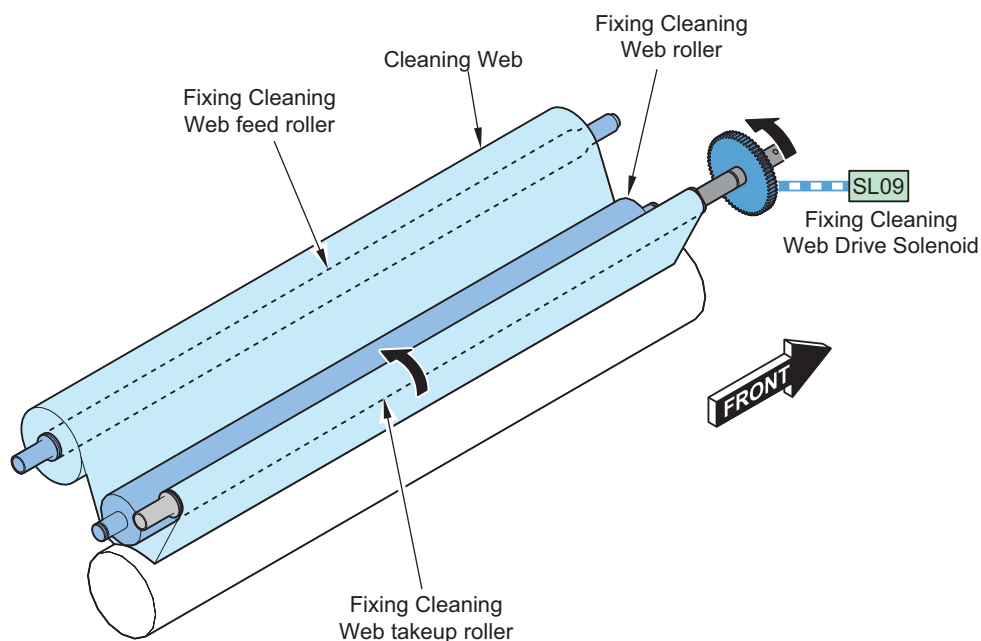
## ■ Upper separation claw reciprocating control

To prevent scar on the Fixing Roller by the Upper Separation Claw, the Upper Separation Claw is moved back and forth by 3mm in the direction of the Fixing Roller.



## ■ Cleaning web drive control

To prevent fixing offset, the residual toner on the surface of the Fixing Roller is removed with the Cleaning Web.



The take-up length of the Cleaning Web is determined by the paper size and the number of sheets (in 1 job).

| Paper size   | 1st sheet | 2nd sheet | 3rd sheet | 4th sheet or later                                 |
|--|-----------|-----------|-----------|--|
| Small<br>The size with less than 220mm length in feeding direction (LTR or less) | 1-time    | 1-time    | 0-time    | Repeat wrapping amount of the 1st to the 3rd sheet |
| Middle<br>The size between 237mm and 364mm in feeding direction (B5R to LGL/B4)  | 1-time    | 1-time    | 1-time    |  |
| Large<br>The size with 365mm or more length in feeding direction (B5R or more)   | 2-time    | 1-time    | 1-time    |  |

When the paper is stationed in the Fixing Unit due to a jam or an error, the Fixing Web Drive Solenoid is turned ON for 5 times at the time of recovery.

<Related Error Code>

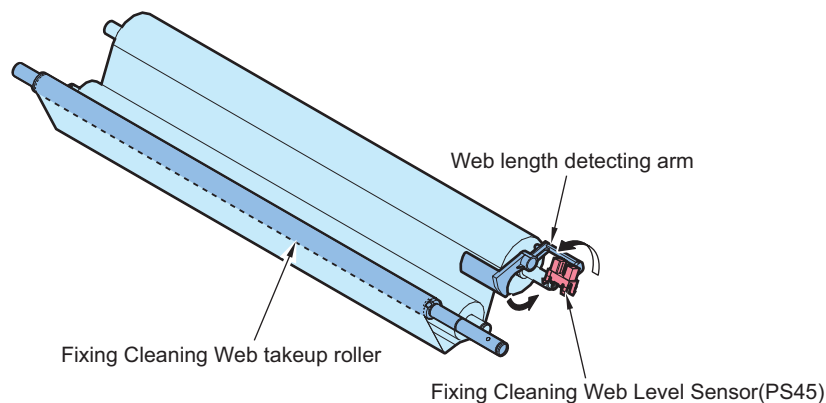
E005-0001:Error in Fixing Cleaning Web Drive Solenoid connection

<Related Service Mode>

- Setting of Fixing Web Solenoid ON times  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > CBLTINVL  
Setting Value  
0 :Normal  
1 :1.5 times of normal\*  
2 :0.5 times of normal  
3 :0.75 times of normal  
\* Only for paper which length in feed direction is 236.0 mm or less or 364.0 mm or longer

## ■ Cleaning web length detection

When the length of the Cleaning Web is reduced, the Web Level Detection Arm is moved in the direction of the arrow to block the light path of the Fixing Cleaning Web Level Detection Sensor (PS45). When the Fixing Web Drive Solenoid has been turned ON for 4 times after the detection by this sensor, a fixing web length warning message is displayed on the Control Panel.



After the display of the fixing web length warning message, the number of turning ON the Fixing Cleaning Web Drive Solenoid is to be counted.

The Error Code "E005-0000" is displayed once the counter value reaches 65250 ( 97875 sheets of copy/print in A4 size)

### CAUTION:

In the case of replacing the Fixing Cleaning Web, be sure to clear the Fixing Web Counter by the following Service Mode

- Fixing Cleaning Web take-up counter after the level warning  
COPIER > COUNTER > MISC > FIX-WEB
- Fixing Cleaning Web take-up counter  
COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > FX-WEB

<Related Error Code>

- E005-0000 : Error in absence of the Fixing Web  
After the advance notice detection for the absence of the Fixing Web, the web has continued to be pulled for 65250 times.

<Related Service Mode>

- Set Fixing Web level alarm notice timing  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > WEB-LIFE  
Setting Value  
0 : Detection by the sensor  
1 : Count of 500,000 sheets (on a A4 size conversion basis)  
2 to 7: As the value is incremented by 1, the counted number of sheets is increased by 50,000 sheets. The maximum setting value is 7 (800,000 sheets).

## ■ Protective function

### ● Detecting an Error Using the Thermistor

In the event of the following, the machine will set the DC power (12 V) used to drive the AC relay (found on the fixing heater power supply PCB), thereby stopping the AC power to the fixing heater.

- the main thermistor (THM010)/sub thermistor2 (THM030) has detected overheating.
- the difference between temperature of each thermistors has deviated from a specific value.

### ● Detecting an Error Using the Thermal Switch

In response to a deviation in temperature , bimetal contact of the thermal switch (TP010; non-contact type) will open to cut the power supply line (12 V) used to drive the AC relay on the fixing heater power supply PCB, thereby stopping the AC power to the fixing heater.

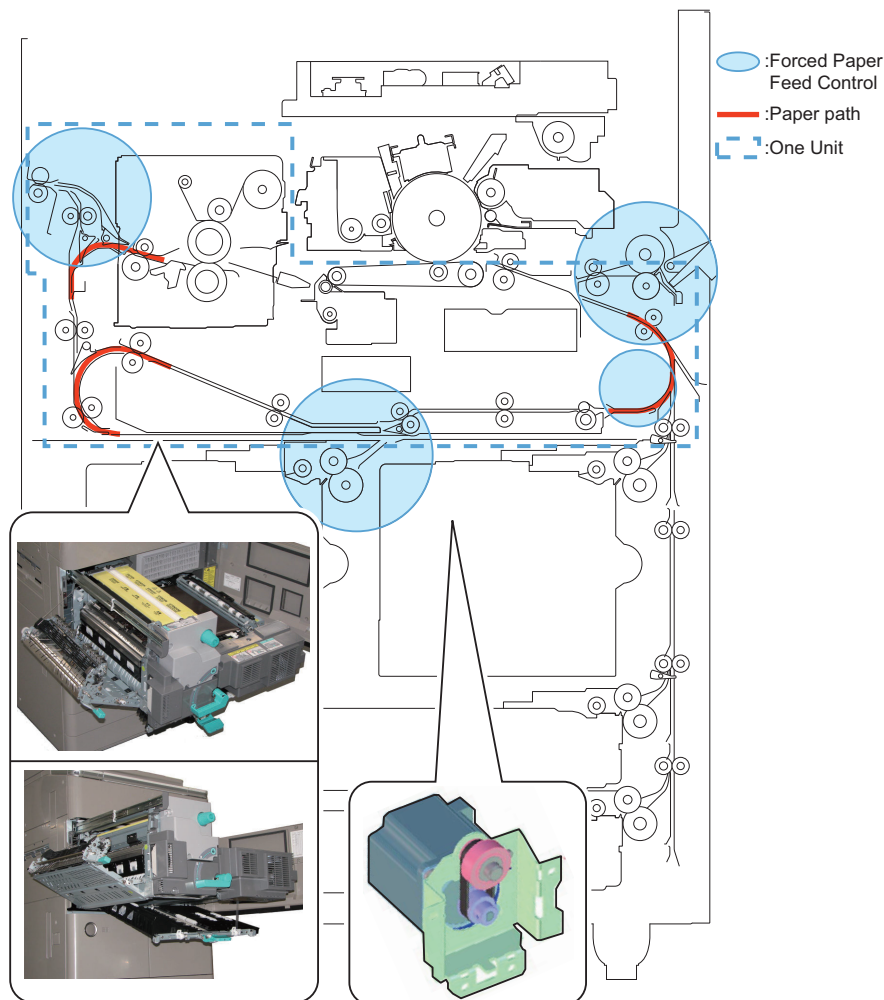
**CAUTION:**

Once the contact point of the Thermal Switch is open, it will not be recovered even though the high temperature becomes to be normal temperature. Be sure to eliminate the cause of the error, and then replace the Thermal Switch.

# Pickup / Feed System

## Overview

- Supported media (heavy paper) (52g/m<sup>2</sup> -> 256g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
This feature is enabled by making gentler curve of the pre-registration path, reverse path and duplex merging path.
- Improved jam processing performance  
This feature is enabled by making the Fixing/Feed Assembly and the Duplex Assembly as one unit as well as making the Delivery Unit and the Door of the Fixing Assembly as one unit.  
This feature is enabled by using forcible paper feed control that feeds paper to the position where the jammed paper is easily removed in the case of paper jam.
- Increased pickup capacity of the Multi-purpose Tray (50 sheets -> 100 sheets)  
Simple retard method is used for pickup.  
Stacking capacity has increased from 50 sheets to 100 sheets thanks to the pickup tray that moves up and down.
- Improved Multi-purpose Tray usability  
Automatic paper size recognition by the Multi-purpose Tray improves usability.
- Reduced noise  
This feature is enabled by using a belt-type motor.



## Specifications

These show major specifications of the Pickup/Feed System.

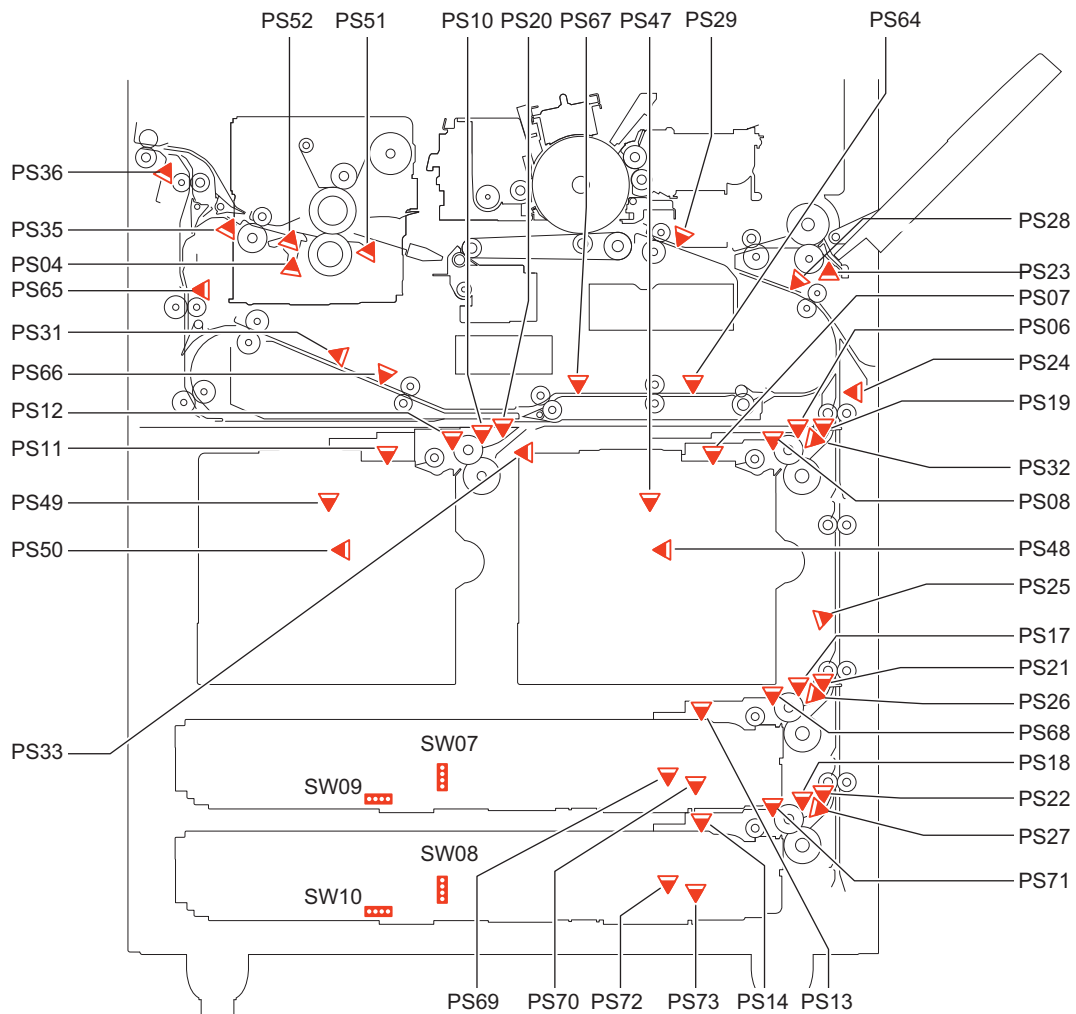
| Item                 |                 | Function/Method          |
|----------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| Paper Storage Method |                 | Front loading method     |
| Pickup Method        | Left/Right Deck | Separation retard method |
|                      | Cassette 3/4    | Separation retard method |



| Item                   |                    | Function/Method   |
|------------------------|--------------------|---|
| Pickup Method          | Multi-purpose Tray | Simple retard method  |
| Paper Feed Standard    |                    | Center  |
| Paper stack capacity   | Left/Right Deck    | 1500 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )  |
|                        | Cassette 3/4       | 550 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )   |
|                        | Multi-purpose Tray | 100 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )   |
| Paper size             | Left/Right Deck    | A4, B5, LTR   |
|                        | Cassette 3/4       | A3, B4, A4R, A4, B5, B5R, A5, 11"x17" (279.4 x 431.8 mm), LGL, LTRR, LTR, EXECR, STMT, 8K, 16KR, 16K<br>Custom paper size (139.7 x 182 to 297 x 431.8 mm)   |
|                        | Multi-purpose Tray | A3, A4R, A4, B4, B5, B5R, A5, 11"x17" (279.4 x 431.8 mm), LGL, LTRR, LTR, STMT, EXECR, 8K, 16KR, Postcard, Reply Postcard, 4 on 1 Postcard<br>Custom paper size (100 x 148 mm to 297 x 431.8 mm)<br>Long Length Paper (297 to 630.0 mm) |
| Paper Grammage         | Left/Right Deck    | 52 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 220 g/m <sup>2</sup>   |
|                        | Cassette 3/4       | 52 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 220 g/m <sup>2</sup>   |
|                        | Multi-purpose Tray | 52 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> (Duplex printing 52 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 220 g/m <sup>2</sup> )  |
| Paper Size Switching   | Left/Right Deck    | Service Switching   |
|                        | Cassette 3/4       | Auto size detection   |
|                        | Multi-purpose Tray | Auto size detection   |
| Duplexing method       |                    | Through path  |
| Transparency detection |                    | N/A   |

## ■ Parts configuration

### ● Parts configuration

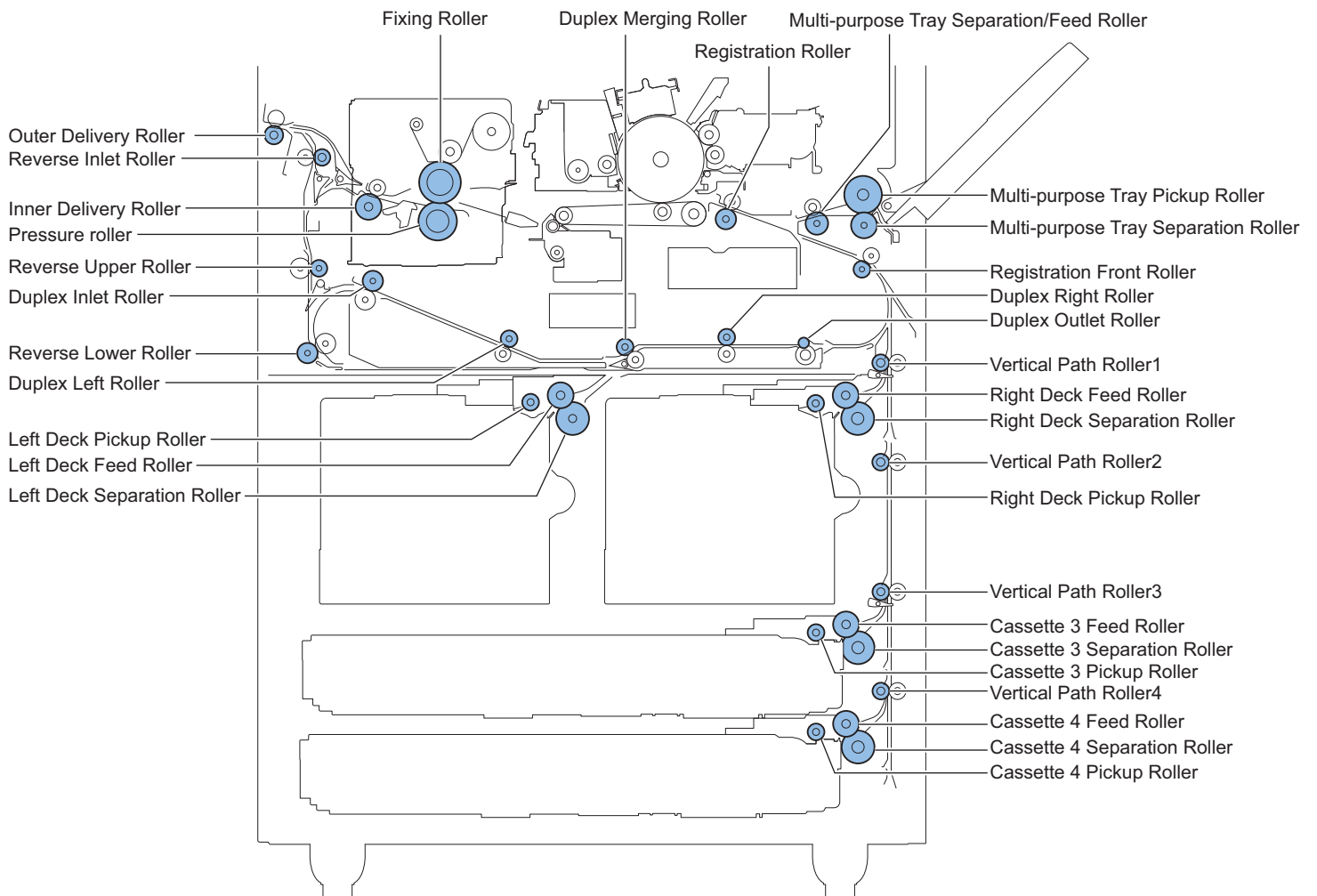


| Sensor No. | Name  |
|------------|---|
| PS02       | Vertical Path Cover Open/Close Sensor             |
| PS03       | Multi-purpose Cover Open/Close Sensor             |
| PS04       | Fixing Toenail Jam Sensor                         |
| PS06       | Right Deck Paper Height Sensor                    |
| PS07       | Right Deck Paper Sensor                           |
| PS08       | Right Deck Upper Limit Sensor                     |
| PS10       | Left Deck Paper Height Sensor                     |
| PS11       | Left Deck Paper Sensor                            |
| PS12       | Left Deck Paper Height Sensor                     |
| PS13       | Cassette 3 Paper Sensor                           |
| PS14       | Cassette 4 Paper Sensor                           |
| PS17       | Cassette 3 Paper Height Sensor                    |
| PS18       | Cassette 4 Paper Height Sensor                    |
| PS19       | Right Deck Pull Out Sensor                        |
| PS20       | Left Deck Pickup Sensor                           |
| PS21       | Vertical Path Sensor3                             |
| PS22       | Vertical Path Sensor4                             |
| PS23       | Multi-purpose Tray Paper Sensor                   |
| PS24*/25   | Vertical Path Sensor1/Vertical Path Sensor2       |
| PS26/27    | Cassette 3 Pickup Sensor/Cassette 4 Pickup Sensor |
| PS28*      | Writing Judging Sensor                            |

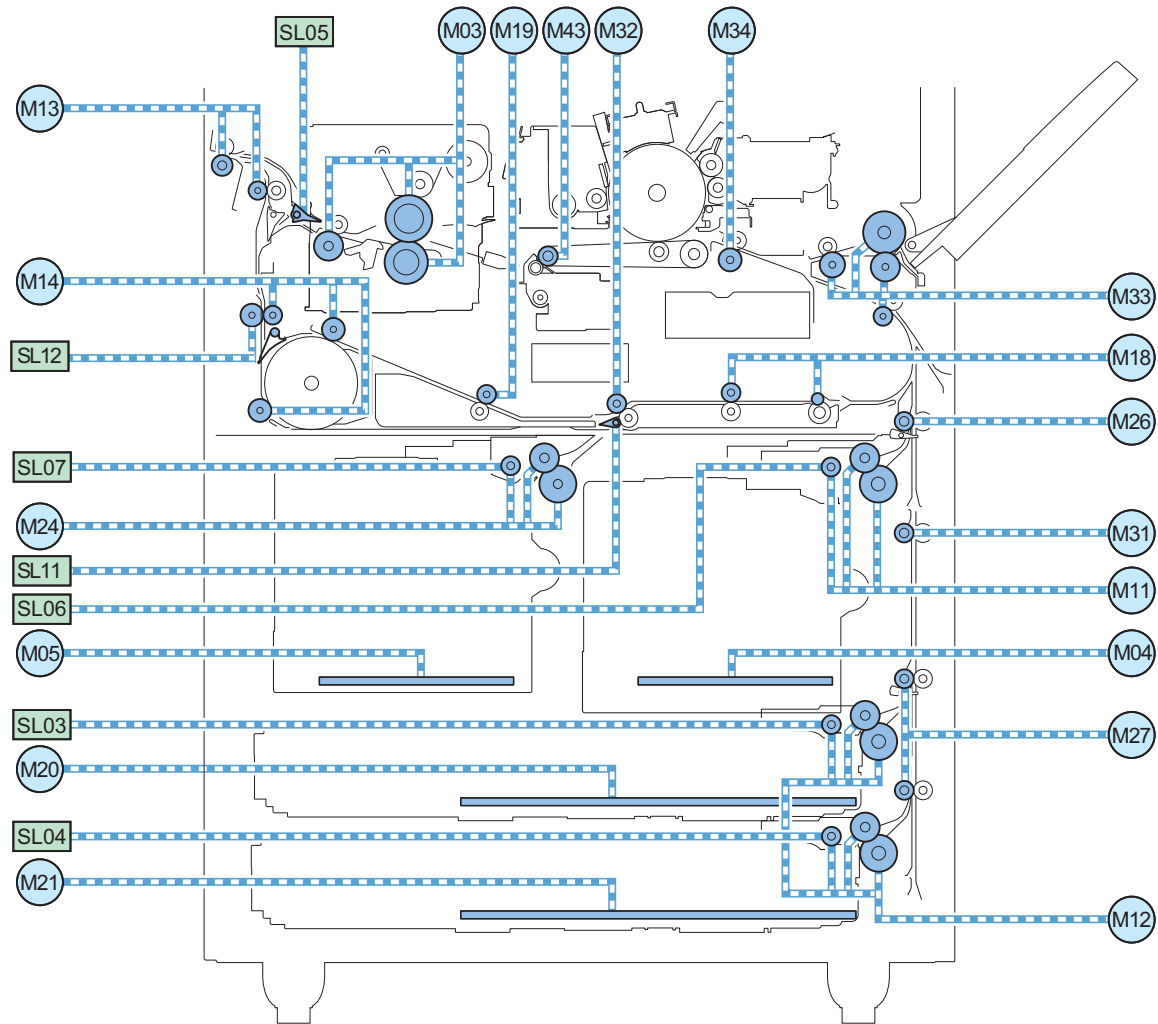
| Sensor No. | Name  |
|------------|---|
| PS29*      | Registration Sensor   |
| PS31       | Side Registration Sensor  |
| PS32       | Right Pickup Sensor   |
| PS33       | Left Deck Pull Out Sensor                                       |
| PS35       | Inner Delivery Sensor   |
| PS36       | Outer Delivery Sensor   |
| PS47/48    | Right Deck Paper Level Sensor 1/2                               |
| PS49/50    | Left Deck Paper Level Sensor 1/2                                |
| PS51       | Fixing Inlet Sensor   |
| PS52       | Fixing Outlet Sensor  |
| PS64*      | Duplex Outlet Sensor  |
| PS65*      | Reverse Vertical Path Sensor                                    |
| PS66*      | Duplex Left Sensor  |
| PS67*      | Duplex Merging Sensor   |
| PS68       | Cassette 3 Upper Limit Sensor                                   |
| PS69/70    | Cassette 3 Paper Level Sensor 1/Cassette 3 Paper Level Sensor 2 |
| PS71       | Cassette 4 Upper Limit Sensor                                   |
| PS72/73    | Cassette 4 Paper Level Sensor 1/Cassette 4 Paper Level Sensor 2 |
| SW07       | Cassette 3 Paper Width Detection Switch                         |
| SW08       | Cassette 4 Paper Width Detection Switch                         |
| SW09       | Cassette 3 Paper Length Detection Switch                        |
| SW10       | Cassette 4 Paper Length Detection Switch                        |

\*Scanner Sensor

● Roller



## ■ Drive Configuration

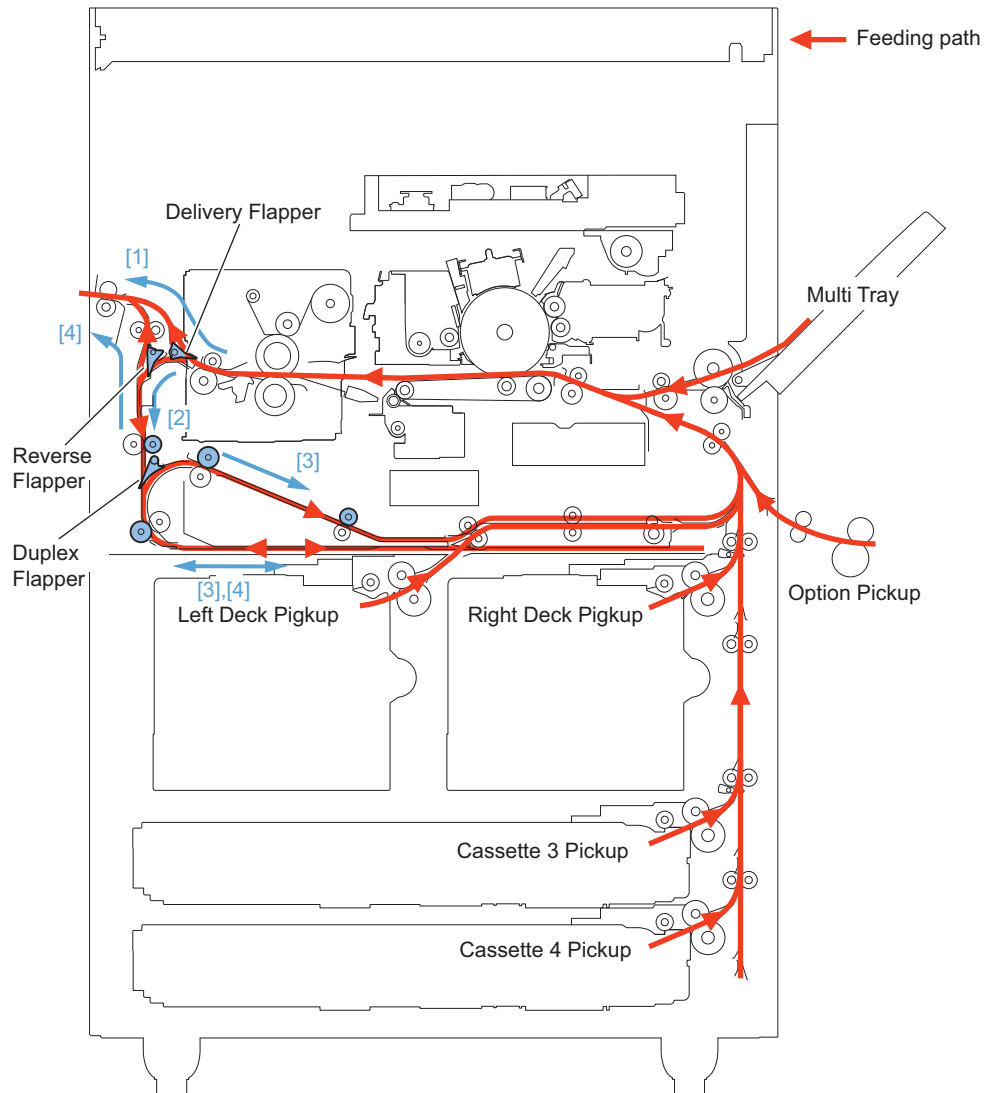


| No.  | Name  |
|------|---|
| M03  | Fixing Motor                                |
| M04  | Right Deck Lifter Motor                     |
| M05  | Left Deck Lifter Motor                      |
| M11  | Right Deck Pickup Motor                     |
| M12  | Cassette 3/4 Pickup Motor                   |
| M13  | Delivery Motor                              |
| M14  | Reverse Motor                               |
| M18  | Duplex Feed Right Motor                     |
| M19  | Duplex Feed Left Motor                      |
| M20  | Cassette3 Lifter Motor                      |
| M21  | Cassette4 Lifter Motor                      |
| M24  | Left Deck Pickup Motor                      |
| M26  | Vertical Path Upper Motor                   |
| M27  | Vertical Path Lower Motor                   |
| M31  | Vertical Path Middle Motor                  |
| M32  | Duplex Feed Merging Motor                   |
| M33  | Multi-purpose Tray Registration Front Motor |
| M34  | Registration Motor                          |
| M43  | ETB Motor                                   |
| SL03 | Cassette 3 Pickup Solenoid                  |
| SL04 | Cassette 4 Pickup Solenoid                  |
| SL05 | Reverse Upper Flapper Solenoid              |
| SL06 | Right Deck Pickup Solenoid                  |

| No.     | Name                        |
|---------|-----------------------------|
| SL07    | Left Deck Pickup Solenoid   |
| SL11    | Left Deck Merging Solenoid  |
| SL12 *1 | Reverse Detachment Solenoid |

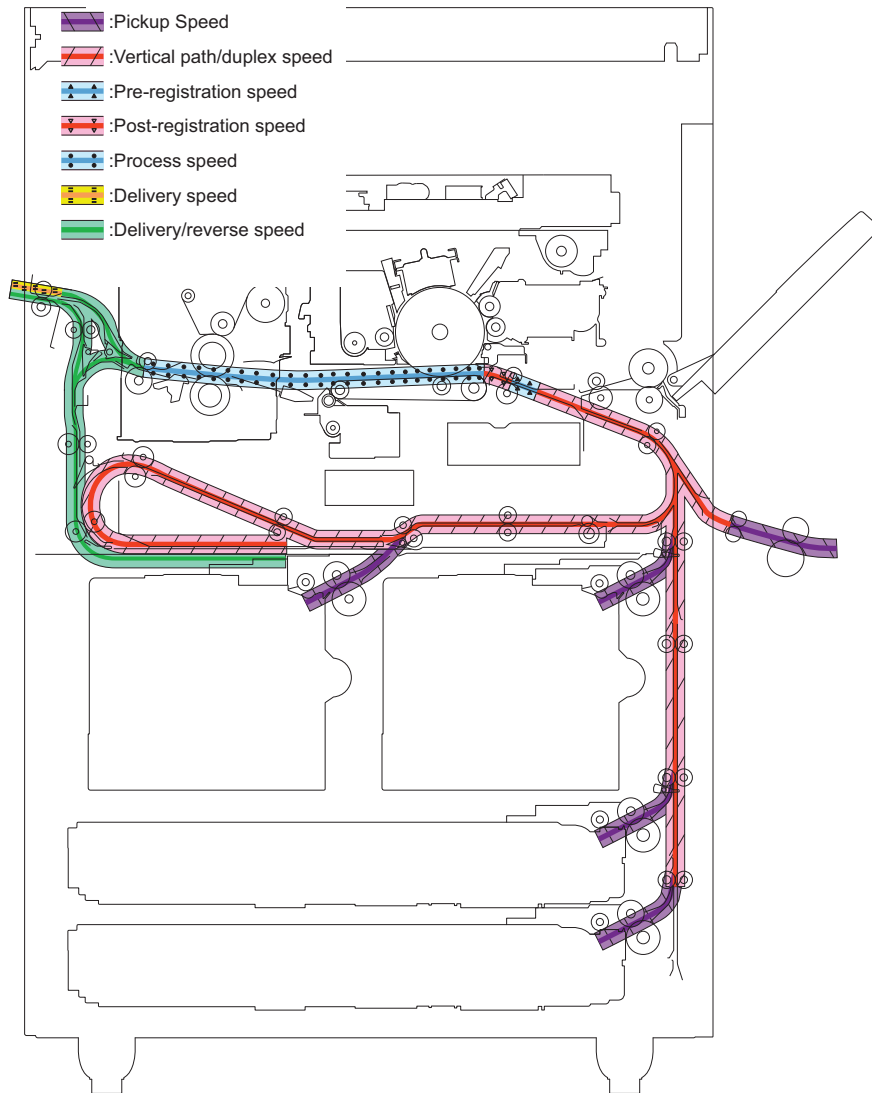
\*1: Support only for the imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6780 model

### ■ Paper path



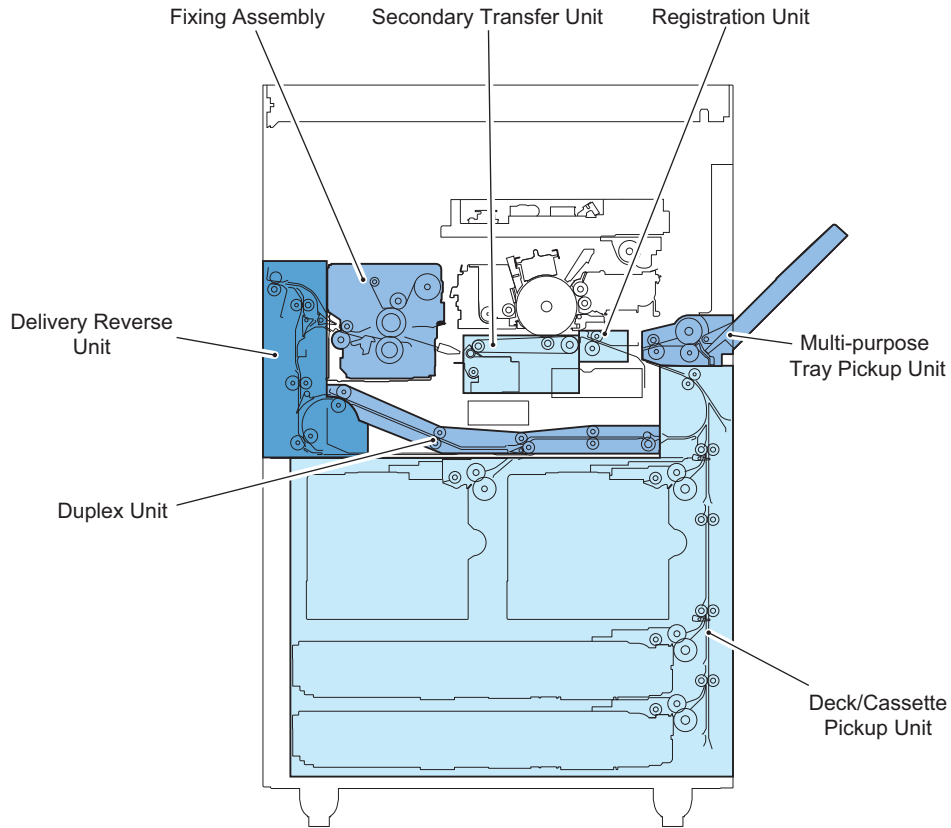
| No. | Feeding path                                       |
|-----|--|
| [1] | 1-side face-up delivery, duplex face-down delivery |
| [2] | 1-side face-down delivery, duplex printing         |
| [3] | Duplex printing                                    |
| [4] | 1-side face-down delivery                          |

■ Interval speed



| Print speed [ppm]                 | 75               | 65  | 55 |
|-----------------------------------|------------------|-----|----|
| Pickup speed [mm/s]               | 500              |     |    |
| Vertical path/duplex speed [mm/s] | 500              |     |    |
| Pre-registration speed [mm/s]     | 350              | 290 |    |
| Post-registration speed [mm/s]    | 500              |     |    |
| Process speed [mm/s]              | 350              | 290 |    |
| Delivery speed [mm/s]             | 350* / 750 (ACC) |     |    |
| Delivery/Reverse speed [mm/s]     | 350* / 750 (ACC) |     |    |

\* The delivery speed is slowed down to prevent the paper from being fallen out of the Delivery Tray (the delivery speed).



| Unit                               | Control                                |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Deck/cassette pickup unit          | Basic Movement                         |
|                                    | Deck/Cassette Detection                |
|                                    | Paper Size Detection                   |
|                                    | Paper Level Detection                  |
|                                    | Paper Detection                        |
|                                    | Lifter Control                         |
|                                    | Pickup Retry Control                   |
| Multi-purpose pickup tray unit     | Basic Movement                         |
|                                    | Paper Size Detection                   |
|                                    | Paper Detection                        |
| Pre-registration/Registration Unit | Pre-registration Control               |
|                                    | Registration Control                   |
|                                    | Registration Deceleration Control      |
|                                    | Registration Acceleration Control      |
| Secondary transfer Unit            | Post-transfer Guide Attraction Control |
| Delivery unit Duplex unit          | Face-up Delivery                       |
|                                    | Face-down Delivery                     |
|                                    | Duplex Reverse Delivery                |
|                                    | Side Registration Control              |
|                                    | Circulation quantity and limit         |
| Jam detection                      | Jam Code List                          |
|                                    | Forced Paper Feed Control              |

## ■ Deck/Cassette Pickup Unit

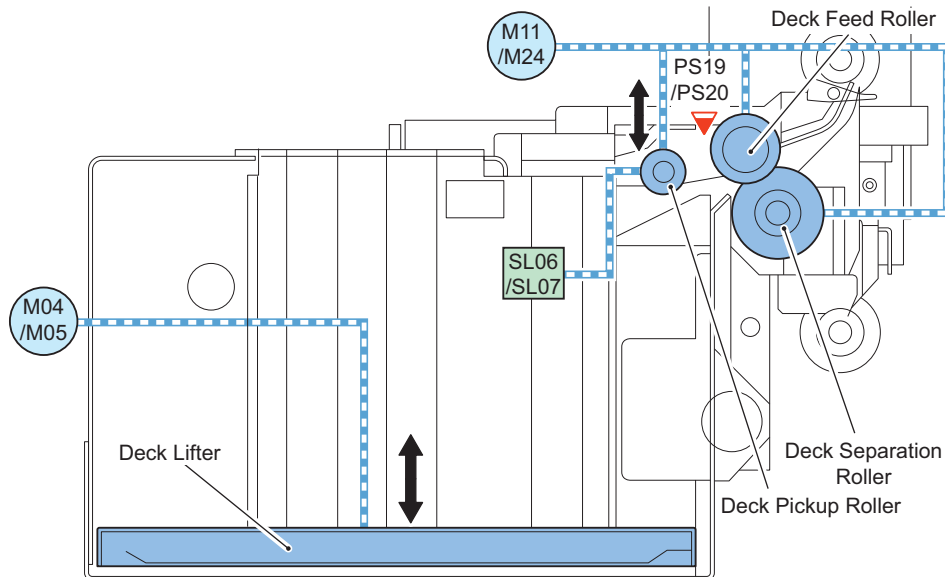
### ● Basic Movement

When Deck/Cassette is installed, Motor drives to maintain the height which paper surface attaches to Pickup Roller (This is the height of Pickup Roller when Pickup Solenoid is OFF).

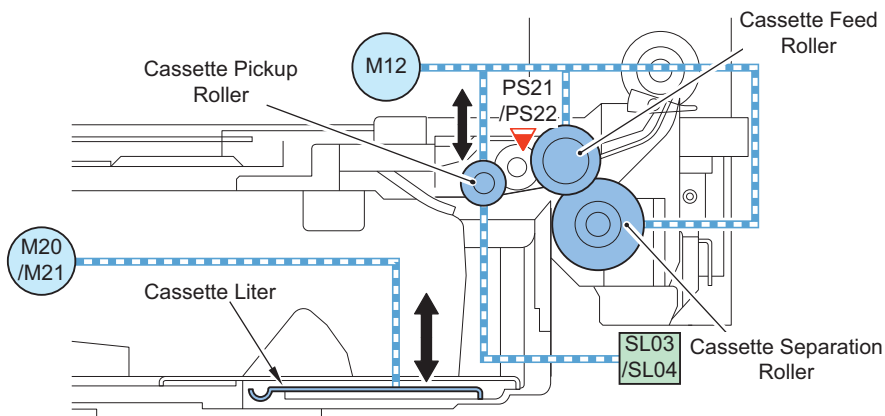
If the Pickup Motor (M11/M12/M24) is turned ON, the Pickup Roller will rotate and the paper will be fed.

When the Pickup Sensor (PS19/PS20/PS21/PS22) detects paper, the Pickup Solenoid(SL03/SL04/SL06/SL07)will turn ON, and Pickup Roller will draw away from paper surface. Only 1 sheet of paper is sent to feed path by the Feed Roller and the Separation Roller, and fed to Vertical Path Roller.

### Deck



### Cassette



#### NOTE:

The same single motor is used as a pickup motor for both Cassette 3 and Cassette 4.

The drive is transmitted to Cassette 3 when the motor is in normal rotation and the drive is transmitted to Cassette 4 when the motor is in reverse rotation. The drive is switched by the One-way Clutch.

#### <Related Service Mode>

- ON/OFF of Pickup Roller Post-Rotation on Right Deck  
COPIER > OPTION > FEED-SW > DK1-TURN
- ON/OFF of Pickup Roller Post-Rotation on Left Deck  
COPIER > OPTION > FEED-SW > DK2-TURN
- ON/OFF of Pickup Roller Post-Rotation on Cassette3  
COPIER > OPTION > FEED-SW > DK3-TURN



- ON/OFF of Pickup Roller Post-Rotation on Cassette4  
COPIER > OPTION > FEED-SW > DK4-TURN

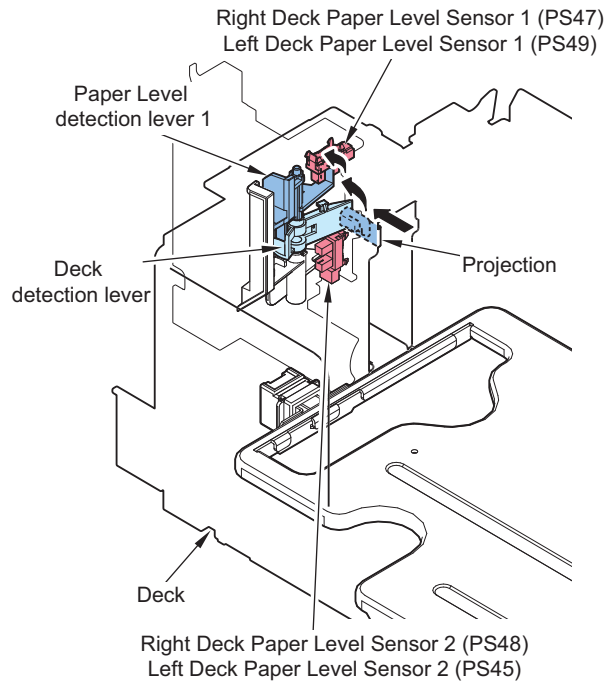
Setting Value 0: (Default), 1: ON after a job , 2 : ON at warm-up rotation , 3 : ON after a job and at warm-up rotation

### • Deck/Cassette detection

Whether Deck/Cassette is installed is detected

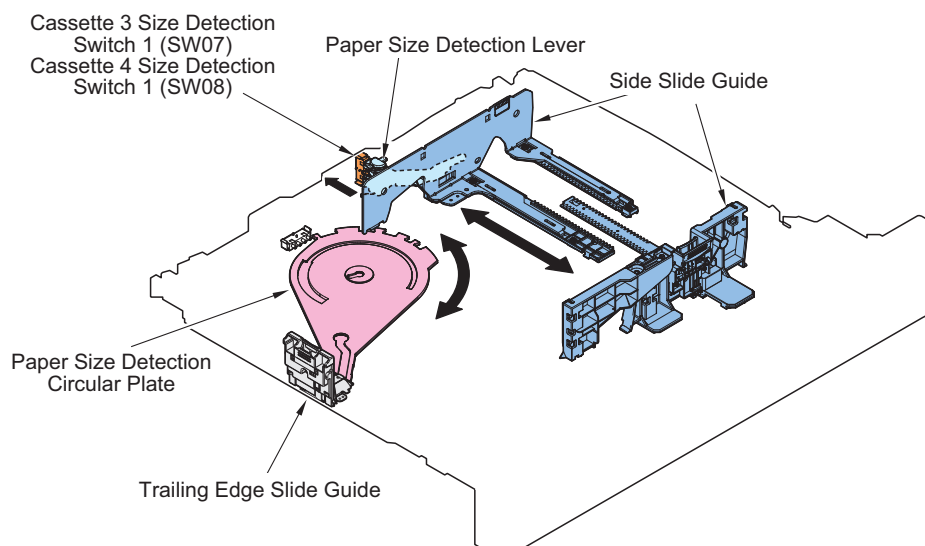
#### Deck

Deck is detected by Paper Level Sensor. When light from 2 Paper Level Sensors is not blocked, it is detected as no deck installed



#### Cassette

Cassette is detected by Paper Size Detection Switch. When all actuators of the Paper Size Detection Switch(SW07/SW08)are not pressed, it is detected as no cassette installed



### • Paper Size Detection

#### Deck

Set in Service Mode.

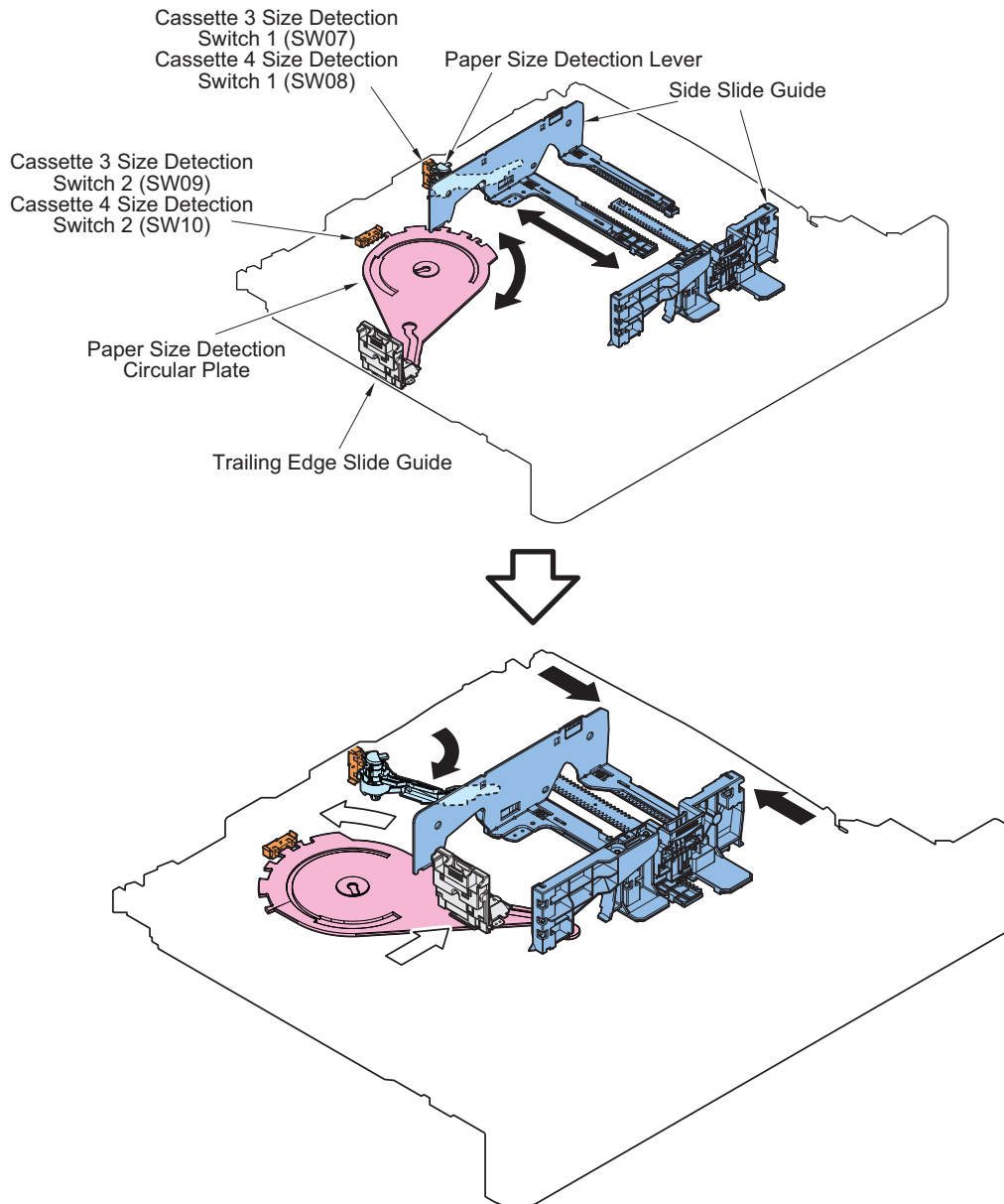
There is no mechanism to detect paper size.

<Related Service Mode>

- Right Deck Paper setting  
COPIER > OPTION > CST > P-SZ-C1
- Left Deck Paper setting  
COPIER > OPTION > CST > P-SZ-C2  
Setting Value  
0: A4 (default) ,1: B5 , 2: LTR

**Cassette**

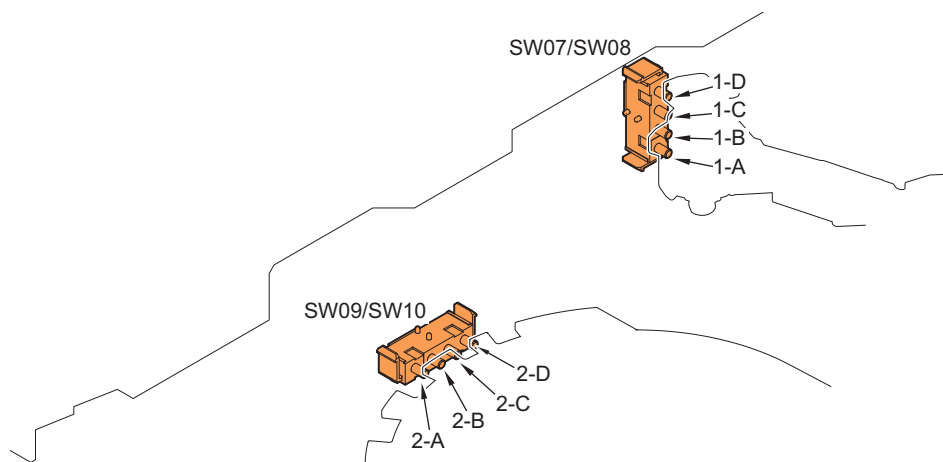
Paper size in cassette 3/4 is each detected by 2 paper size detection switches.  
ON/OFF of 4-actuator in the Host Machine changes according to the Paper Size Detection Circular Plate/Lever Position linked to Trailing Edge/Side Slide Guide. Paper size is detected by two 4-actuator ON/OFF combinations. And, if all 4-actuator are OFF is detected, it means no-cassette.



**Paper size detection Switch**

| Paper Size | Width (mm) | Length (mm) | Width SW07/SW08 |     |     |     | Length SW09/SW10 |     |     |     |
|------------|------------|-------------|-----------------|-----|-----|-----|------------------|-----|-----|-----|
|            |            |             | 1-A             | 1-B | 1-C | 1-D | 2-A              | 2-B | 2-C | 2-D |
| B5         | 257.0      | 182.0       | ON              | -   | -   | ON  | ON               | ON  | ON  | ON  |
| EXEC       | 267.0      | 184.0       | ON              | -   | -   | ON  | ON               | ON  | ON  | ON  |
| 16K        | 270.0      | 195.0       | ON              | -   | -   | ON  | -                | ON  | ON  | ON  |
| A5-R       | 148.5      | 210.0       | -               | ON  | -   | ON  | ON               | -   | ON  | ON  |
| A4         | 297.0      | 210.0       | ON              | -   | ON  | ON  | ON               | -   | ON  | ON  |

| Paper Size | Width (mm) | Length (mm) | Width SW07/SW08 |     |     |     | Length SW09/SW10 |     |     |     |
|------------|------------|-------------|-----------------|-----|-----|-----|------------------|-----|-----|-----|
|            |            |             | 1-A             | 1-B | 1-C | 1-D | 2-A              | 2-B | 2-C | 2-D |
| STMT-R     | 139.7      | 215.9       | -               | ON  | -   | ON  | ON               | -   | ON  | ON  |
| LTR        | 279.4      | 215.9       | ON              | -   | -   | ON  | ON               | -   | ON  | ON  |
| B5-R       | 182.0      | 257.0       | -               | ON  | -   | ON  | ON               | -   | ON  | -   |
|            |            |             | -               | ON  | -   | ON  | ON               | ON  | ON  | -   |
| 16K-R      | 195.0      | 270.0       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | ON               | ON  | -   | ON  |
|            |            |             | -               | ON  | -   | ON  | ON               | ON  | -   | ON  |
| LTR-R      | 215.9      | 279.4       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | -                | ON  | ON  | ON  |
|            |            |             | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | -                | ON  | ON  | -   |
| A4-R       | 210.0      | 297.0       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | -                | -   | ON  | ON  |
| LGL        | 215.9      | 355.6       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | ON               | ON  | -   | -   |
| B4         | 257.0      | 364.0       | ON              | -   | -   | ON  | ON               | ON  | ON  | -   |
| 8K         | 270.0      | 390.0       | ON              | -   | -   | ON  | -                | -   | ON  | ON  |
| A3         | 297.0      | 420.0       | ON              | -   | ON  | ON  | -                | ON  | -   | -   |
| LDR        | 279.4      | 431.8       | ON              | -   | -   | ON  | -                | -   | ON  | -   |
| SRA3       | 320.0      | 450.0       | ON              | -   | ON  | -   | -                | -   | -   | ON  |
| 12 x 18    | 304.8      | 457.2       | ON              | -   | ON  | ON  | -                | -   | -   | ON  |
| 13 x 19    | 330.2      | 483.0       | ON              | -   | ON  | -   | -                | -   | -   | -   |
| K_LGL      | 268.0      | 190.0       | ON              | -   | -   | ON  | ON               | ON  | ON  | ON  |
| K_LGL-R    | 190.0      | 268.0       | -               | ON  | -   | ON  | ON               | ON  | -   | ON  |
| G_LTR      | 267.0      | 203.0       | ON              | -   | -   | ON  | -                | ON  | ON  | ON  |
| G_LTR-R    | 203.0      | 267.0       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | ON               | ON  | -   | ON  |
| G_LGL      | 203.2      | 330.2       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | -                | ON  | ON  | -   |
| OFI        | 216.0      | 317.0       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | ON               | ON  | -   | -   |
| E_OFI      | 220.0      | 320.0       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | ON               | ON  | -   | -   |
| M_OFI      | 216.0      | 341.0       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | ON               | -   | ON  | ON  |
| B_OFI      | 216.0      | 355.0       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | ON               | ON  | -   | -   |
| A_OFI      | 220.0      | 340.0       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | -                | -   | ON  | ON  |
| FOLIO      | 216.0      | 330.0       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | -                | ON  | ON  | -   |
| FLSP       | 216.0      | 330.0       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | -                | ON  | ON  | -   |
| A_FLSP     | 206.0      | 337.0       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | -                | -   | ON  | ON  |
| A_LTR      | 280.0      | 220.0       | ON              | -   | -   | ON  | ON               | -   | ON  | ON  |
| A_LTR-R    | 220.0      | 280.0       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | -                | ON  | ON  | -   |
| A_LGL      | 220.0      | 340.0       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | -                | -   | ON  | ON  |
| FA4        | 216.0      | 343.0       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | ON               | -   | -   | ON  |
| FB4        | 216.0      | 330.0       | ON              | ON  | -   | ON  | -                | ON  | ON  | -   |



<Related User Mode>




- Settings/registration > Preferences > Paper Settings > Paper Size Group for Auto Recognition in Drawer  
Setting Value: All Sizes, A/B Size, Inch Size, A/K Size

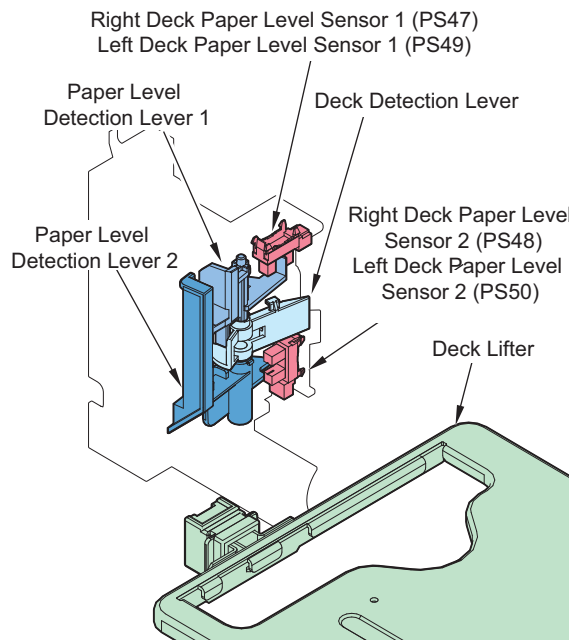
- Settings/registration > Preferences > Paper Settings > A5R/STMTR Original Selection  
Setting value Cassette3: A5R, STMTR Cassette4: A5R, STMTR
- Settings/registration > Preferences > Paper Settings > B5/EXEC Original Selection  
Setting value Cassette3: B5, EXEC Cassette4: B5, EXEC
- Settings/registration > Preferences > Paper Settings > Register Custom Size  
Setting Value: Register, Delete, Rename

• Paper Level Detection

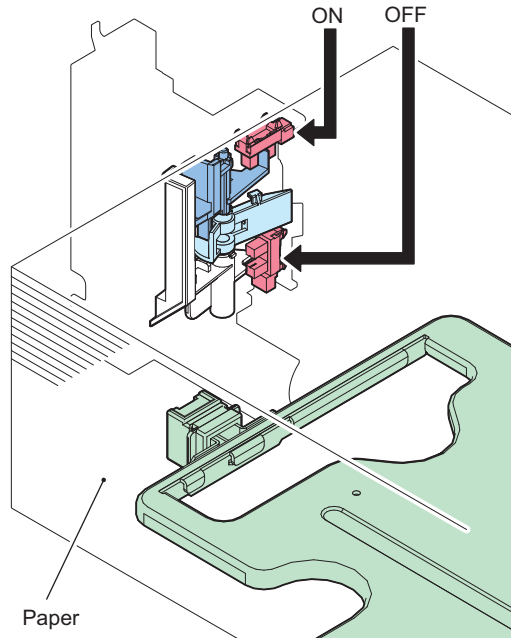
Paper level is detected by two Paper Level sensors in each cassette

Deck

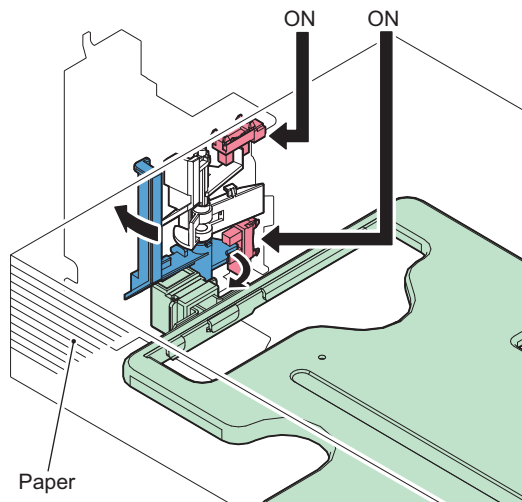
|                      | Right Deck Paper Level Sensor 1 (PS47)<br>Left Deck Paper Level Sensor 1 (PS49) | Right Deck Paper Level Sensor 2 (PS48)<br>Left Deck Paper Level Sensor 2 (PS50) | Control Panel Screen Display  |
|----------------------|---|---|---|
| Full<br>(100%~50%)   | ON  | OFF   |  |
| Half<br>(50%~25%)    | ON  | ON  |  |
| Few<br>(25% or less) | OFF   | ON  |  |



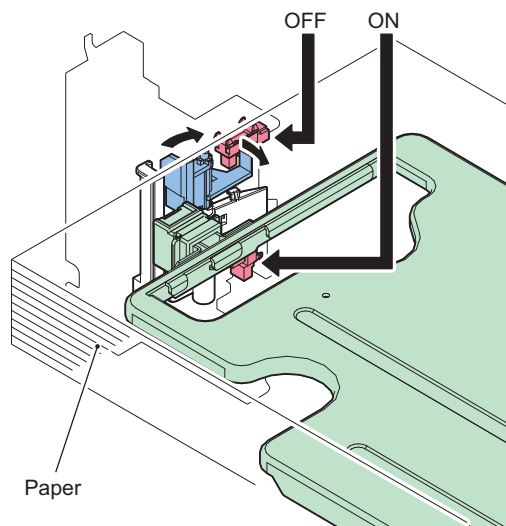
- Full (100%~50%)



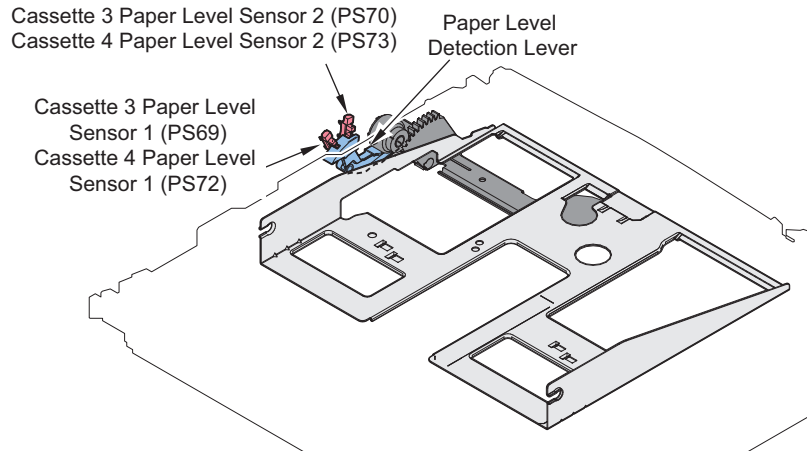
- Half (50%~25%)



- Few (25% or less)

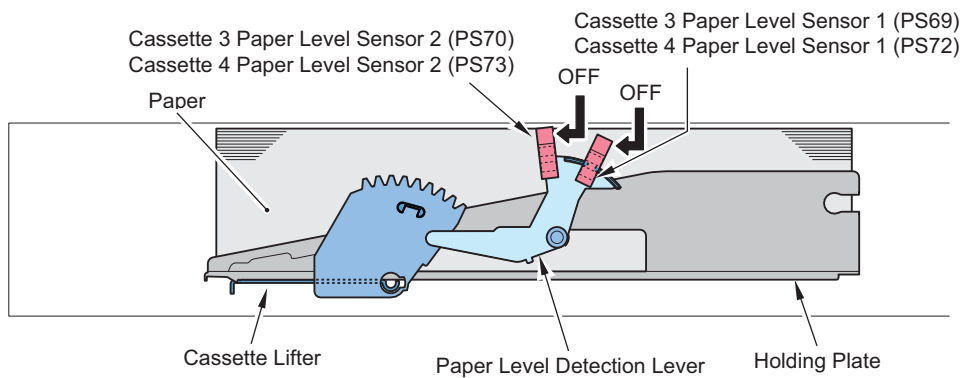


Cassette

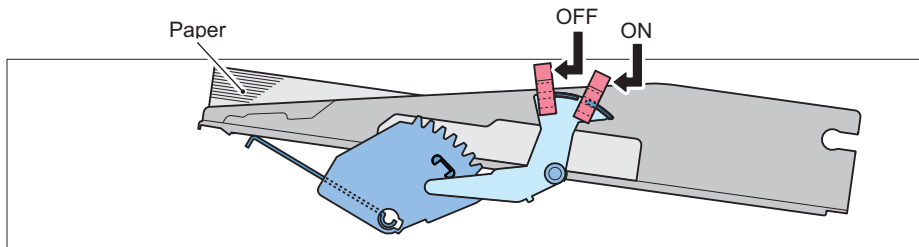


|                   | Cassette 3 Paper Level Sensor 1 (PS69)<br>Cassette 4 Paper Level Sensor 1 (PS72) | Cassette 3 Paper Level Sensor 2 (PS70)<br>Cassette 4 Paper Level Sensor 2 (PS73) | Control Panel Screen Display |
|-------------------|--|--|------------------------------|
| Full (100%~50%)   | OFF  | OFF  |                              |
| Half (50%~25%)    | ON   | OFF  |                              |
| Few (25% or less) | ON   | ON   |                              |

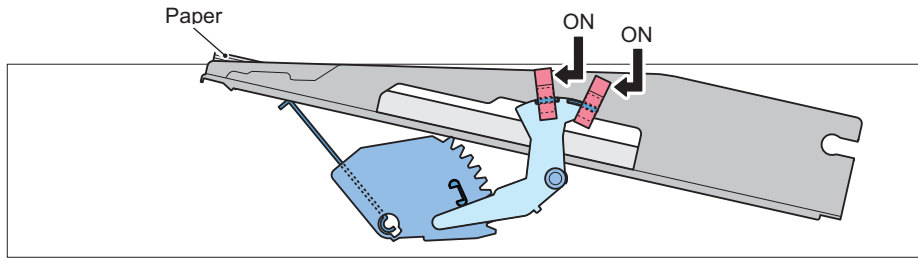
- Full (100%~50%)



- Half (50%~25%)



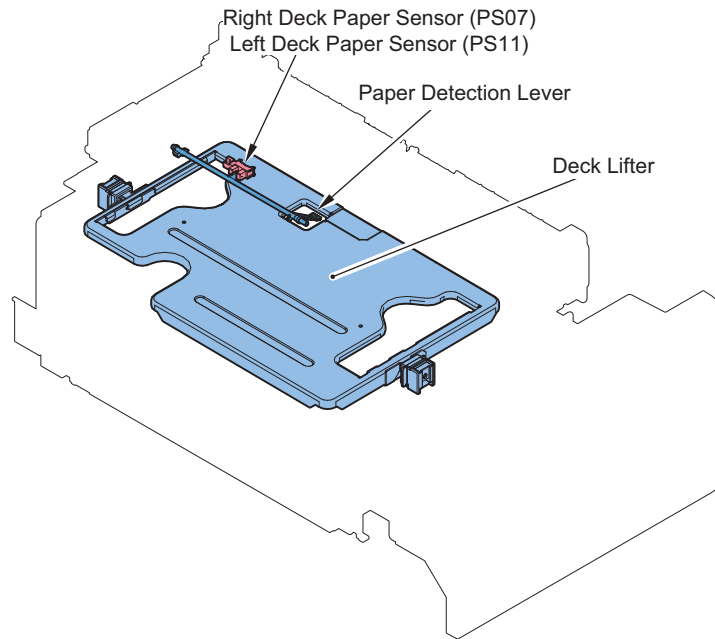
- Few (25% or less)



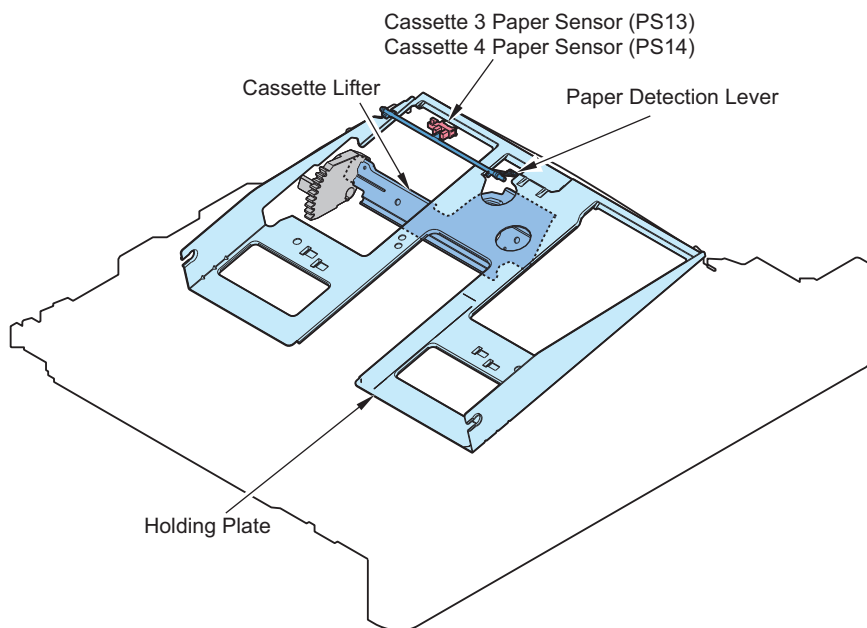
### • Paper Detection

If paper is present, the Detection Lever is pushed upward when lifter ascends, and Paper Sensor is turned OFF.  
 If paper finishes, the Detection Lever enters lifter hole, and Paper Sensor is turned ON

### Deck



### Cassette

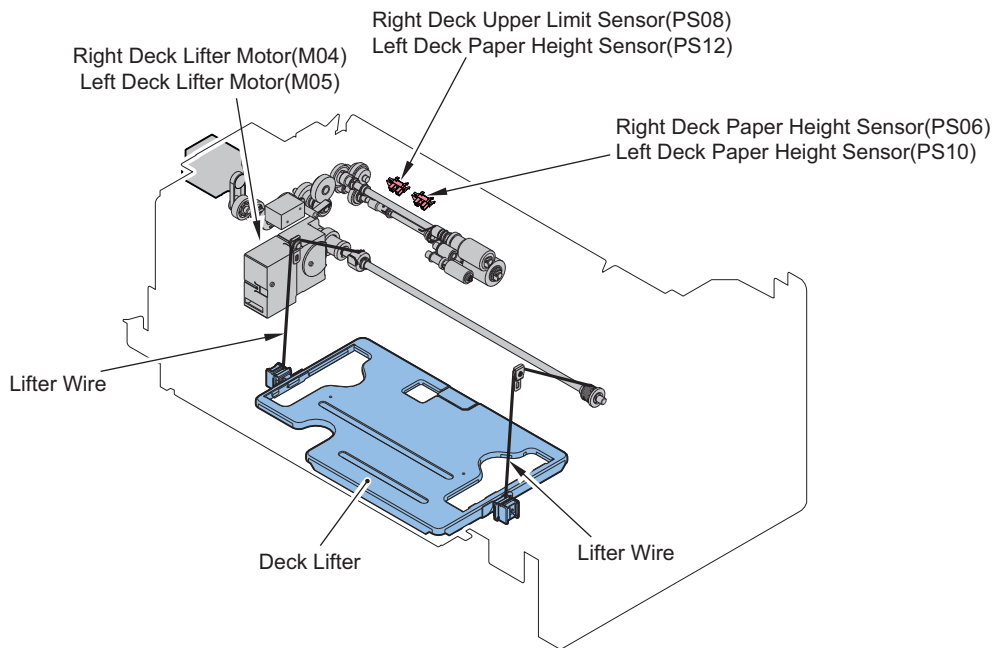


### • Lifter Control

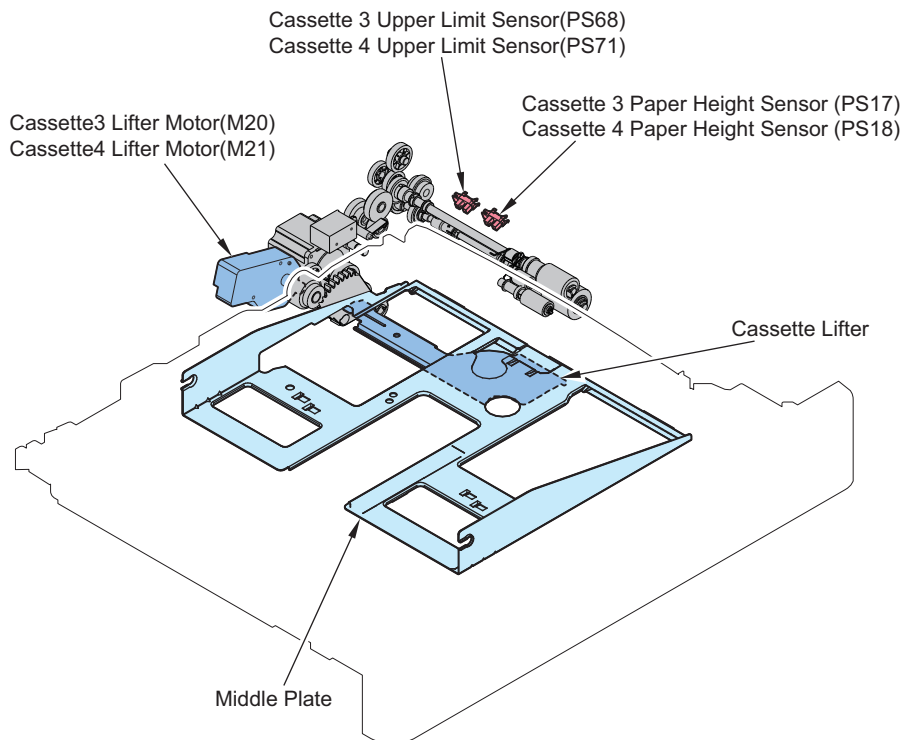
Paper is lifted to the pickup position by the Lifter.

In the machine configuration with the Deck / Cassette set, the Pickup Motor is driven to raise the Lifter to fit the paper level to the height of the pickup position. The Lifter is also raised when the Paper Level Sensor went OFF during the pickup operation.

### Deck



### Cassette



### Lifter Error Detection

In case due to some reason the lifter keep ascending even the Paper Surface Height Sensor is turned ON, the Upper Limit Sensor is provided to prevent damage in this equipment due to the error in ascending.

And, if the lifter starts ascending, but not detected by the Paper Surface Sensor and the Upper Limit Sensor within 3 minutes, the alarm corresponds to the concerned Pickup Cassette will be triggered. The alarm will release if the corresponding deck/ cassette is open or closed, or the power is turned OFF/ON.

### ● Pickup Retry Control

If paper leading edge is not detected by Pickup sensor within the specified time after pickup movement starts, it is not immediately determined as jam, and re-pickup movement will be executed.

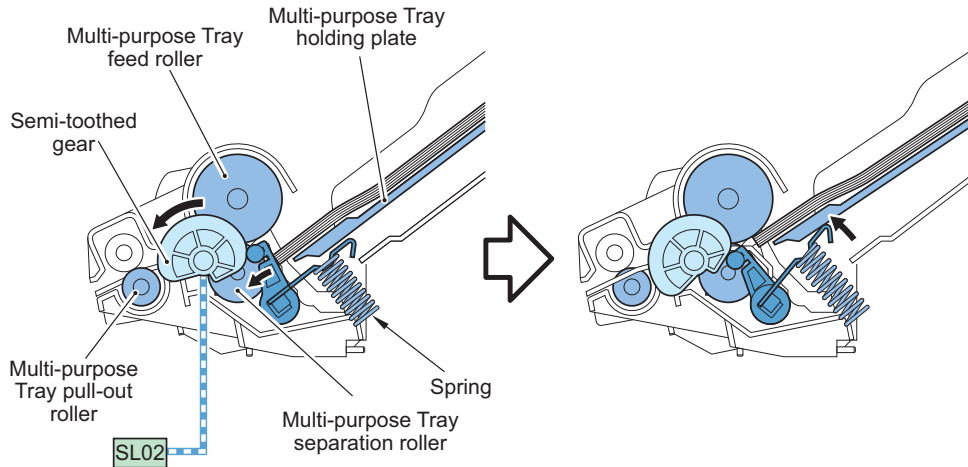


During pickup retry, the Pickup Motor will be repeatedly turned ON/OFF with the Pickup Roller is in descended condition.

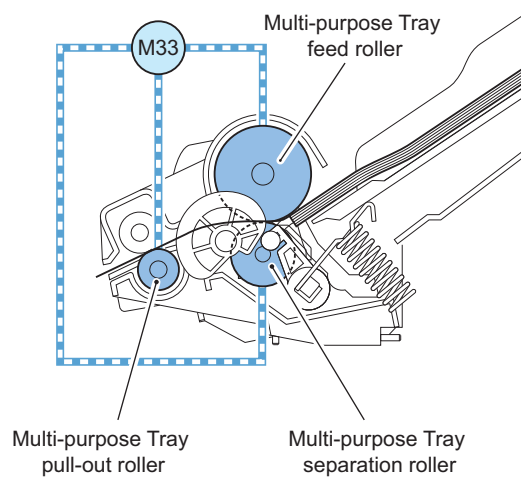
## ■ Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Unit

### ● Basic Movement

1. If the Multi-purpose Pickup Solenoid (SL02) is turned ON, the semi-toothed gear will rotate.
2. The holding plate Fixing Members will be released and the holding plate will ascend.

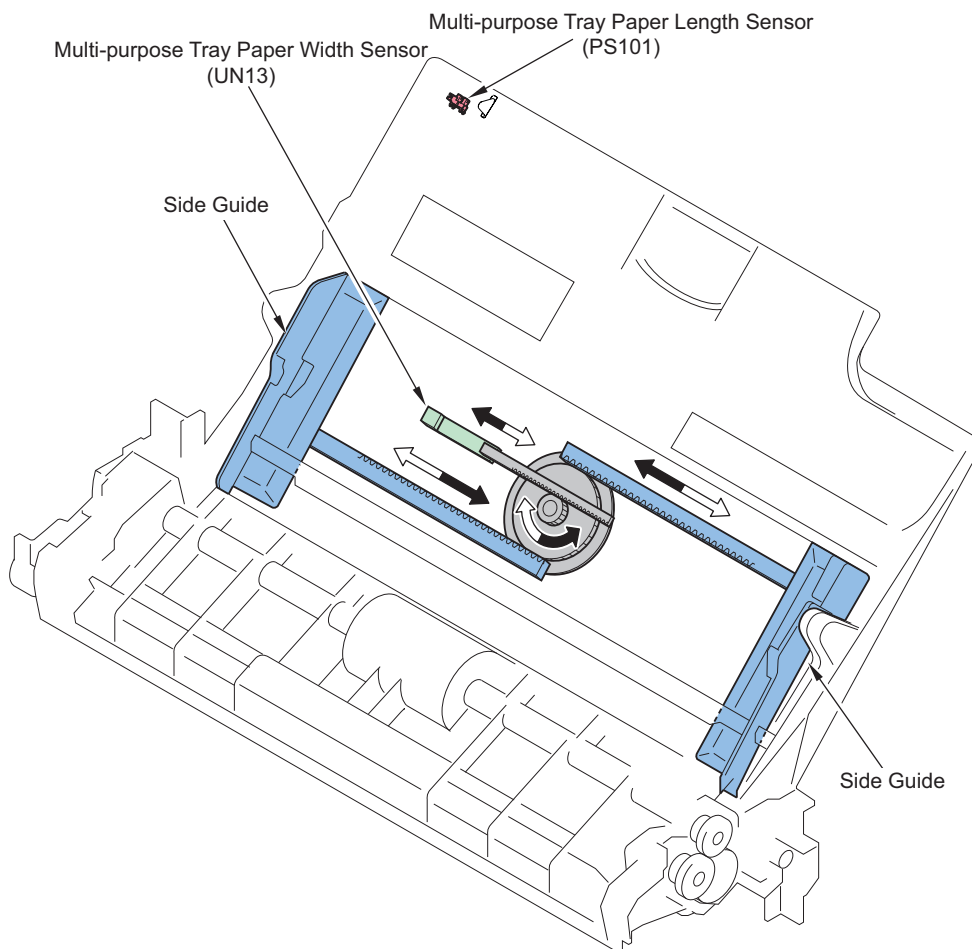


3. When the Pre-registration Multi-purpose Tray Drive Motor drives, the Multi-purpose Pull Out Roller and the Multi-purpose Feed Roller/Multi-purpose Separation Roller will rotate, and only 1 sheet of paper will be picked up/fed.



### ● Paper Size Detection

The paper width is detected according to the output value from the variable resistor (Multi-purpose Tray Paper Width Detection PCB (UN13)) driven by the Slide Guide movement. The Multi-purpose Tray Paper Length Sensor (PS101) detects paper length. Paper size is determined by paper width and the detection result of the Multi-purpose Tray Paper Length Sensor (PS101). User adjusts the position of the Slide Guide on the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Tray when placing paper on the tray.



Size indication is determined by the setting of auto-detected size for each location (Multi-purpose Tray) and the detection results of the 2 sensors.

| Country                           | Default Setting |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|
| US                                | Inch Size       |
| CN                                | A/K Size        |
| Destinations other than the above | A/B Size        |

| Paper Size | Paper Width [mm] | Multi-purpose Tray Paper Width Sensor (UN13) Detection Width [mm] | Multi-purpose Tray Paper Length Sensor (PS101) | Paper Size Indication |                  |             |
|------------|------------------|---|--|-----------------------|------------------|-------------|
|            |                  |   |  | A/B Size              | Inch Size        | A/K Size    |
| A3         | 297              | 293 - 303   | ON   | A3                    | 12x18/11x17/Free | A3          |
| A4         | 297              | 293 - 303   | OFF  | A4                    | LTR/Free         | A4          |
| B4         | 257              | 253 - 263   | ON   | B4                    | 11x17/Free       | 8K/Free     |
| B5         | 257              | 253 - 263   | OFF  | B5                    | LTR/EXEC/Free    | 16K/Free    |
| A4R        | 210              | 206 - 216   | ON/OFF   | A4R                   | LGL/LTRR/Free    | A4R         |
| B5R        | 182              | 178 - 188   | OFF  | B5R                   | Free             | Free        |
| A5R        | 148              | 144 - 154   | OFF  | A5R                   | STMTR/Free       | A5R         |
| A6R        | 105              | 101 - 111   | OFF  | A6R                   | Free             | A6R         |
| 11x17      | 279.4            | 275.4 - 285.4   | ON   | A3/B4/Free            | 11x17            | A3/8K/Free  |
| LTR        | 279.4            | 275.4 - 285.4   | OFF  | A4/B5/Free            | LTR              | A4/16K/Free |
| EXEC       | 266.7            | 262.7 - 272.7   | OFF  | B5/Free               | EXEC             | 16K/Free    |
| LGL        | 215.9            | 211.9 - 221.9   | ON   | A4R/Free              | LGL              | A4R/Free    |
| LTRR       | 215.9            | 211.9 - 221.9   | OFF  | A4R/Free              | LTRR             | A4R/Free    |
| STMTR      | 139.7            | 135.7 - 145.7   | OFF  | A5R/Free              | STMTR            | A5R/Free    |
| 16K        | 270              | 266 - 276   | OFF  | B5/Free               | LTR/EXEC/Free    | 16K         |
| 8K         | 270              | 266 - 276   | ON   | B4/Free               | 11x17/Free       | 8K          |

| Paper Size  | Paper Width [mm]   | Multi-purpose Tray Paper Width Sensor (UN13)<br>Detection Width [mm] | Multi-purpose Tray Paper Length Sensor (PS101) | Paper Size Indication |           |          |
|-------------|--|--|--|-----------------------|-----------|----------|
|             |  |  |  | A/B Size              | Inch Size | A/K Size |
| Post Card   | "Paper Settings" needs to be performed due to non-standard size. |  |  |                       |           |          |
| Custom size |  |  |  |                       |           |          |

**NOTE:**

If multiple sizes are indicated using "/" as the result of automatic size detection shown in the table above, it means that any one of them may be detected depending on the position of Slide Guide on the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Tray.

Example: In case of placing 11 x 17 size paper on the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Tray while A/B size is set, one of the following size is detected: A3, B4, or Free-Size.

**Service Mode**

- Adjust of MP Tray A4R paper width  
COPIER > ADJUST > CST-ADJ > MF-A4R
- Adjust of MP Tray A6R paper width  
COPIER > ADJUST > CST-ADJ > MF-A6R
- Adjust of MP Tray A4 paper width  
COPIER > ADJUST > CST-ADJ > MF-A4
- Registration Multi-purpose Tray A4R standard width  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > MF-A4R
- Registration Multi-purpose Tray A6R standard width  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > MF-A6R
- Registration Multi-purpose Tray A4 standard width  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > MF-A4

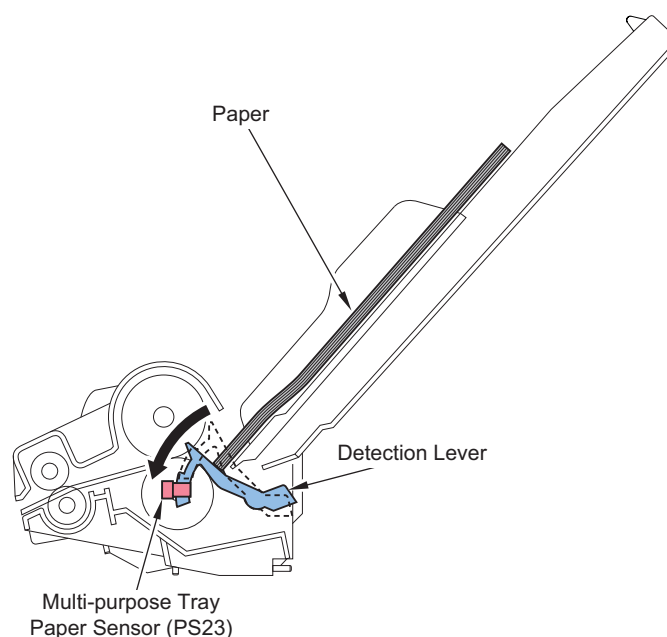
**User Mode**

This is used to change the auto recognition size of Multi-purpose Tray.

- Settings/Registration > Preferences > Paper Settings > Paper Size Group for Auto Recognition in Drawer

**• Paper Detection**

When paper is set, Paper Presence Detection Lever will be pushed, and the Multi-purpose Tray Paper Sensor (PS23) will turn ON.

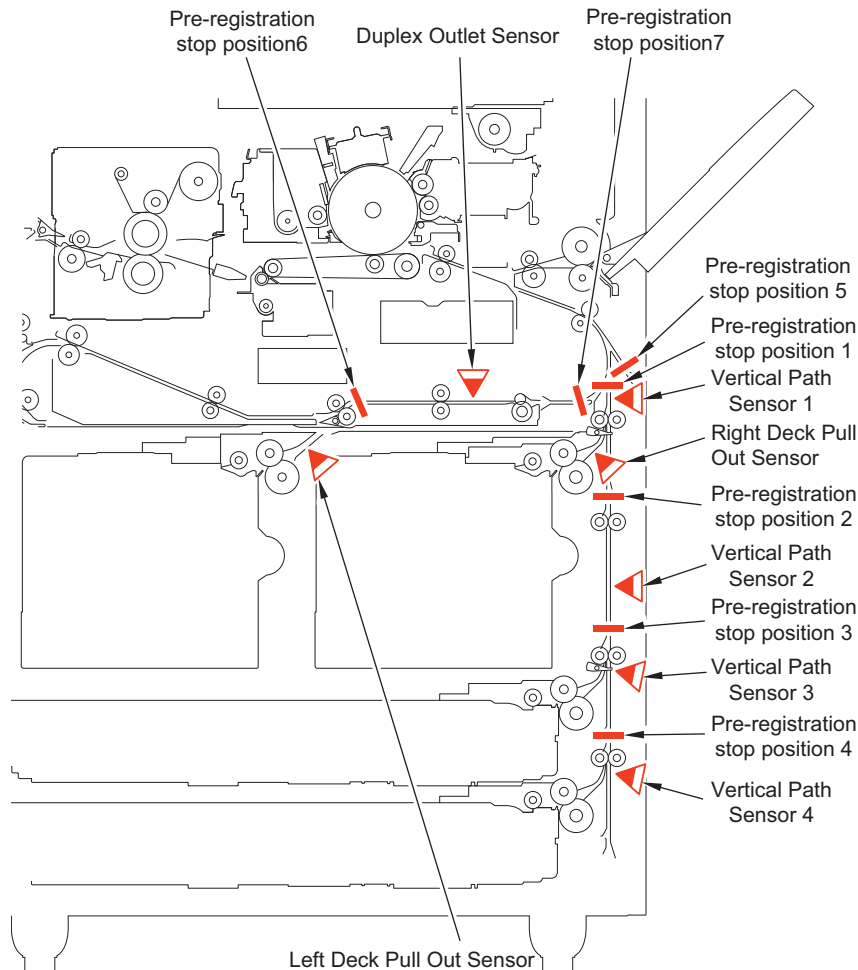


## ■ Registration Unit

### ● Pre-registration Control

Pickup processing time can vary depending on the paper type and paper size in use as well as the environment. Therefore, the machine executes pre-registration control to ease such variation.

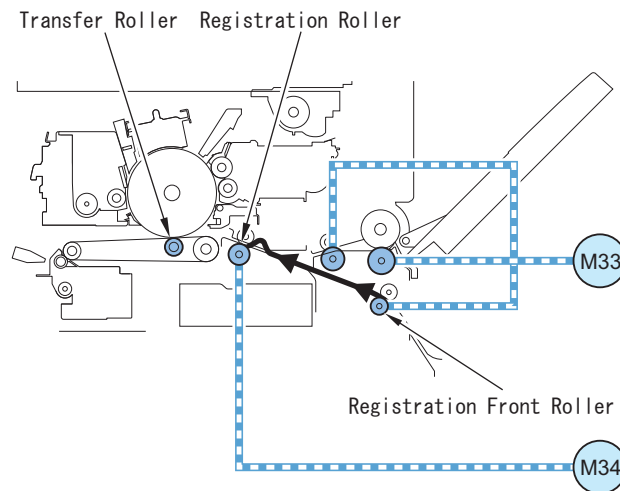
After the paper is picked up from the pickup cassette, the following reference sensor is used as a reference to feed the paper for a specified distance, and then the paper is stopped at the pre-registration position.



| Stop position name               | Pickup Assembly        | Paper size                          | Reference sensor                | Stop position                                   |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---|
| Pre-registration stop position 1 | Right Deck             | Size LTR (215.9mm)                  | Vertical Path Sensor1(PS24)     | Vertical Path Roller 1<br>Downstream 10mm       |
|                                  | Cassette3              |                                     |                                 |   |
|                                  | Cassette4              |                                     |                                 |   |
| Pre-registration stop position 2 | Cassette3              | LTRR=< Size =< A4R                  | Vertical Path Sensor2(PS25)     | Vertical Path Roller 2<br>Downstream 10mm       |
|                                  | Cassette4              |                                     |                                 |   |
| Pre-registration stop position 3 | Cassette3              | 11"x17"(431.8mm) < Size             | Vertical Path Sensor3(PS26)     | Vertical Path Roller 3<br>Downstream 10mm       |
|                                  | Cassette3<br>Cassette4 | Size ≤ LTR<br>LTRR < Size ≤ 11"x17" |                                 |   |
| Pre-registration stop position 4 | Cassette4              | 11"x17" < Size                      | Vertical Path Sensor4(PS27)     | Vertical Path Roller 4<br>Downstream 10mm       |
| Pre-registration stop position 5 | OP Deck                | All Size                            | Option Deck Pull Out Sensor     | Vertical Path Upper Roller 1<br>Downstream 10mm |
| Pre-registration stop position 6 | Left Deck              | Size =< LTR                         | Left Deck Pull Out Sensor(PS33) | Duplex Merging Roller<br>Downstream 10mm        |
| Pre-registration stop position 7 | Left Deck              | Size =< LTR                         | Duplex Outlet Sensor(PS64)      | Duplex Outlet Sensor(PS64)<br>Downstream 10mm   |

## • Registration Control

The Registration Motor (M34) is rotated to make the image on the drum and the paper to be aligned at the specified position and feeds the paper to the Transfer Assembly. The rotating speed of the Registration Motor (M34) is increased to be higher than the process speed and then reduced to meet the process speed.



### <Related Service Mode>

#### Adjust register start timing

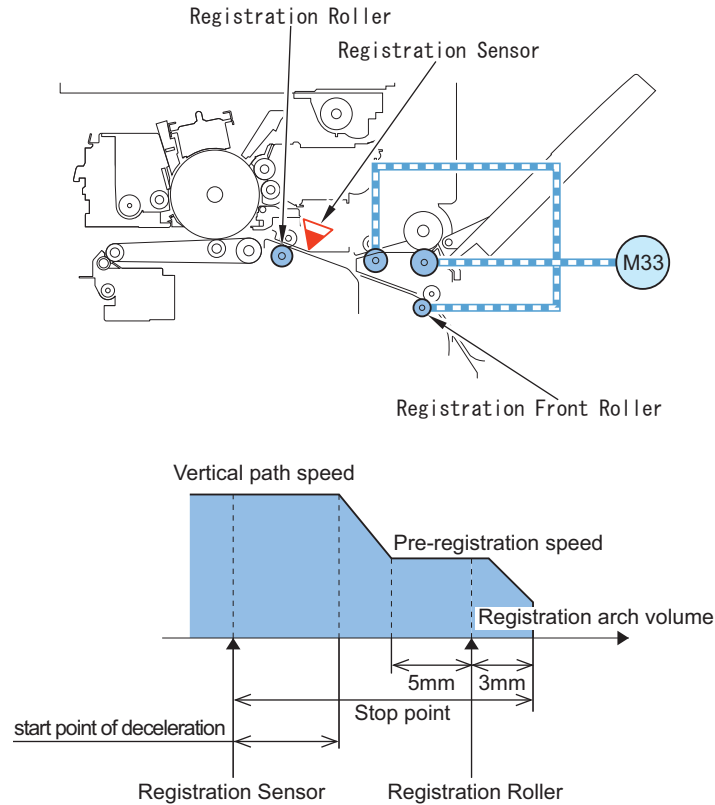
- Adjust register start timing:  $\leq 90\text{g/m}^2$ , 1st  
COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REGIST
- Adjust register start timing:  $\leq 90\text{g/m}^2$ , MP Tray  
COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > RG-MF
- Adjust register start timing:  $\geq 91\text{ g/m}^2$   
COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REG-THCK
- Adjust register start timing: transparency, clear film  
COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REG-OHT
- Adjust register start timing:  $\leq 90\text{g/m}^2$ , 2nd  
COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REG-DUP1
- Adjust register start timing:  $\geq 91\text{ g/m}^2$ , 2nd  
COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REG-DUP2

#### Adjust pre-registration arch amount

- Adjust pre-registration arch amount: cassette,  $\leq 90\text{g/m}^2$   
COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > LP-FEED1
- Adjust pre-registration arch amount: cassette,  $\geq 91\text{g/m}^2$   
COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > LP-FEED2
- Adjust pre-registration arch amount: MP Tray,  $\leq 90\text{g/m}^2$   
COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > LP-MULT1
- Adjust pre-registration arch amount: MP Tray,  $\geq 91\text{g/m}^2$   
COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > LP-MULT2
- Adjust pre-registration arch amount: 2-side,  $\leq 90\text{g/m}^2$   
COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > LP-DUP1
- Adjust pre-registration arch amount: 2-side,  $\geq 91\text{g/m}^2$   
COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > LP-DUP2

## • Registration Deceleration Control

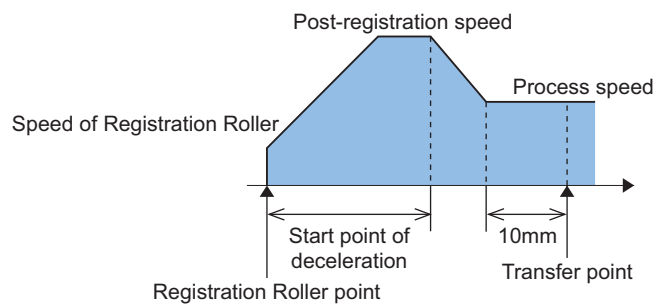
This control reduces speed of Multi-purpose Tray Registration Front Motor (M33) (Registration feed speed) by using Registration Sensor (PS29) as a reference and pushes the paper against the Registration Roller to reduce hitting noise.



| Print speed [ppm]                | 75  | 65  | 55 |
|----------------------------------|---|-----|----|
| Vertical path speed [mm/s]       | 500   |     |    |
| Registration feed speed [mm/s]   | 350   | 290 |    |
| Start point of deceleration [mm] | 7.6   | 5.3 |    |
| Stop point [mm]                  | 23 (20(distance between the Registration Sensor and the Registration Roller)+3(registration arch volume)) |     |    |

### • Registration Acceleration Control

The Registration Motor (M34) is rotated to make the image on the drum and the paper to be aligned at the specified position and feeds the paper to the Transfer Assembly. The rotating speed of the Registration Motor (M34) is increased to be higher than the process speed and then reduced to meet the process speed.

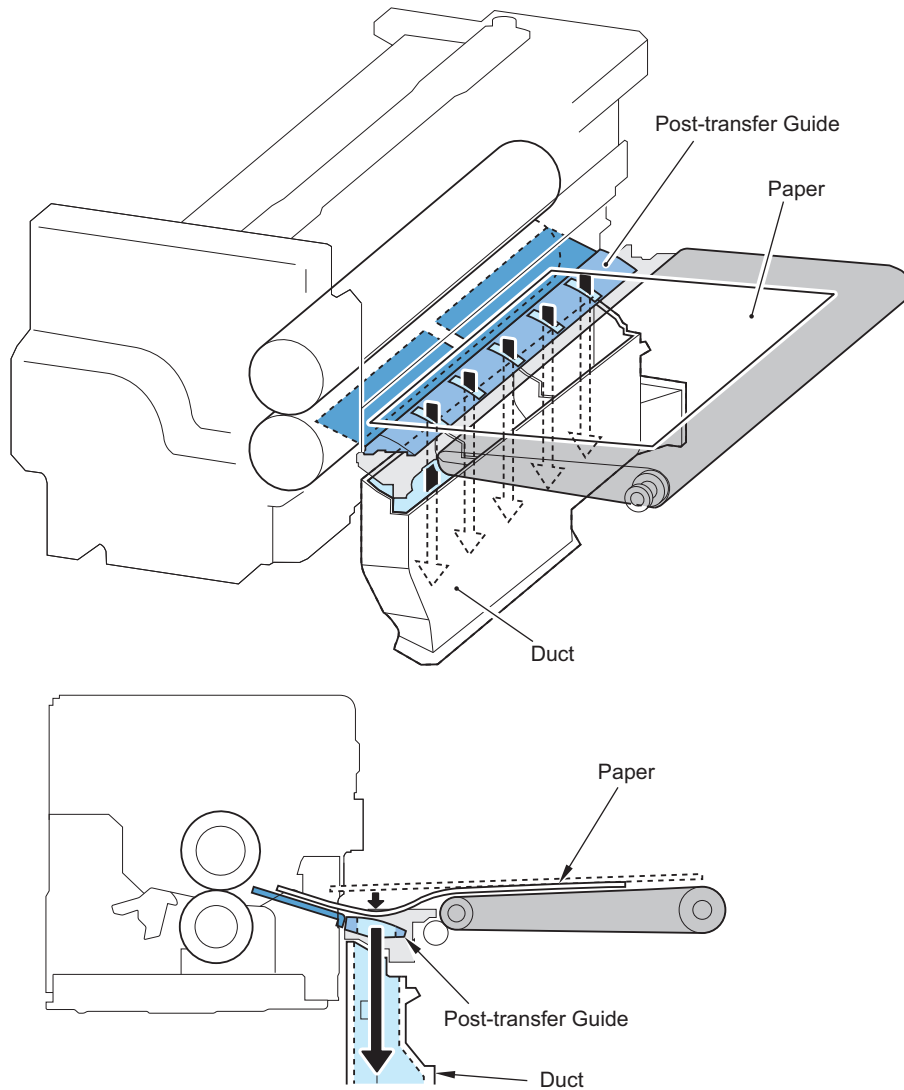


| Print speed [ppm]                | 75   | 65   | 55 |
|----------------------------------|------|------|----|
| Post-registration speed [mm/s]   | 500  |      |    |
| Process speed [mm/s]             | 350  | 290  |    |
| Start point of deceleration [mm] | 48.6 | 46.4 |    |

## ■ Transfer

### • Post-transfer Guide Attraction Control

With this machine, paper is attracted to the Post-transfer Guide by exhaust from the Image Formation System Exhaust Fan (FM01 or FM03). Therefore, behavior of papers between transfer and fixing becomes stable, which increase the paper feed capabilities.



## ■ Delivery/Reverse Unit

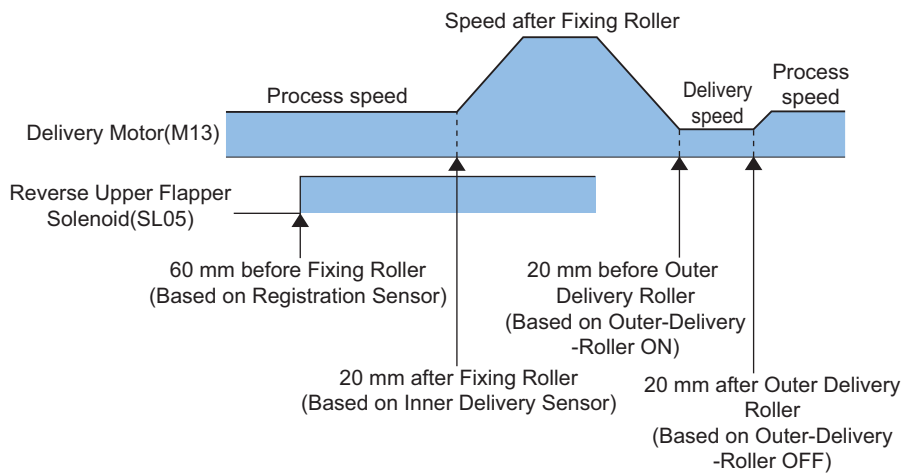
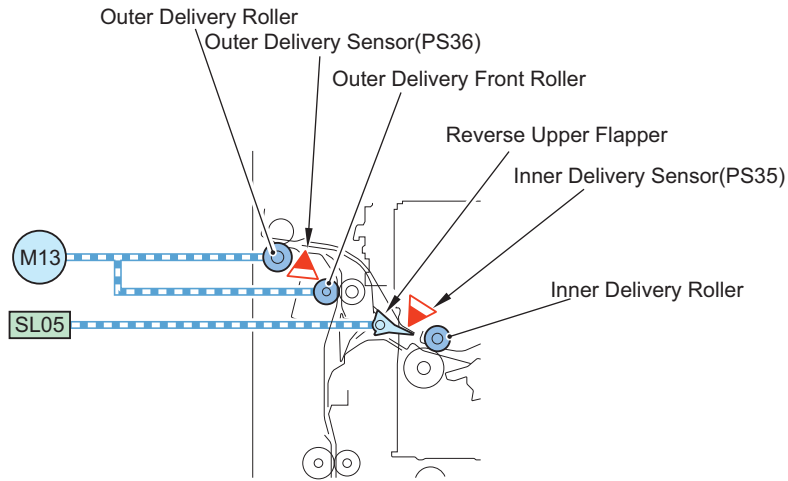
### ● Basic Operation

#### Face-up Delivery

1. The Reverse Upper Flapper Solenoid (SL05) is turned ON to switch the feeding path to the Delivery Assembly side.
2. Rotating speed of the Delivery Motor (M13) is increased once the paper's trailing edge passes through the Fixing Roller (fixing-through speed)
3. Feeding speed is reduced to meet the delivery speed once the paper's trailing edge reaches the specified position.

#### **NOTE:**

Delivery speed is changed according to the paper size. Delivery speed remains the same if delivery option is connected.



| Print speed [ppm]               | 75             | 65  | 55 |
|---------------------------------|----------------|-----|----|
| Process speed [mm/s]            | 350            | 290 |    |
| Speed after Fixing Roller[mm/s] | 750            |     |    |
| Delivery speed [mm/s]           | 350 / 750(ACC) |     |    |

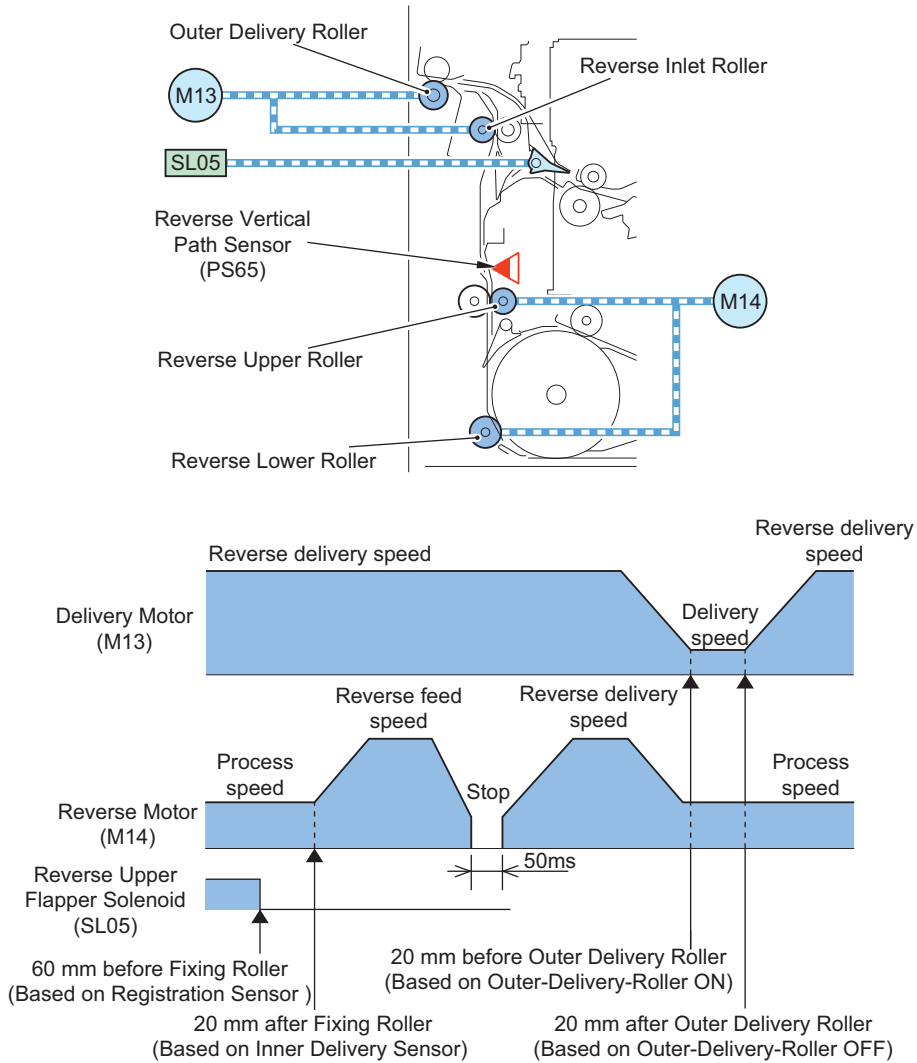
### Face-down Delivery

1. The Reverse Upper Flapper Solenoid(SL05)is turned OFF to switch the feeding path to the Delivery Assembly side.
2. Rotating speed of the Reverse Motor (M14) is increased (reverse feed speed) once the trailing edge of the preceding paper passes through the Fixing Roller to make the paper stopped/rotate reversely at the reverse position (reverse delivery speed)
3. Succeeding paper is fed to the reverse path to make the Reverse Motor (M14) stopped/ rotate normally.
4. Succeeding paper is fed to the reverse stop position.
5. Once the trailing edge of the preceding paper reaches the specified position, rotating speed of the Delivery Motor (M13) is reduced.

**NOTE:**

Delivery speed is changed according to the paper size. Delivery speed remains the same if delivery option is connected.



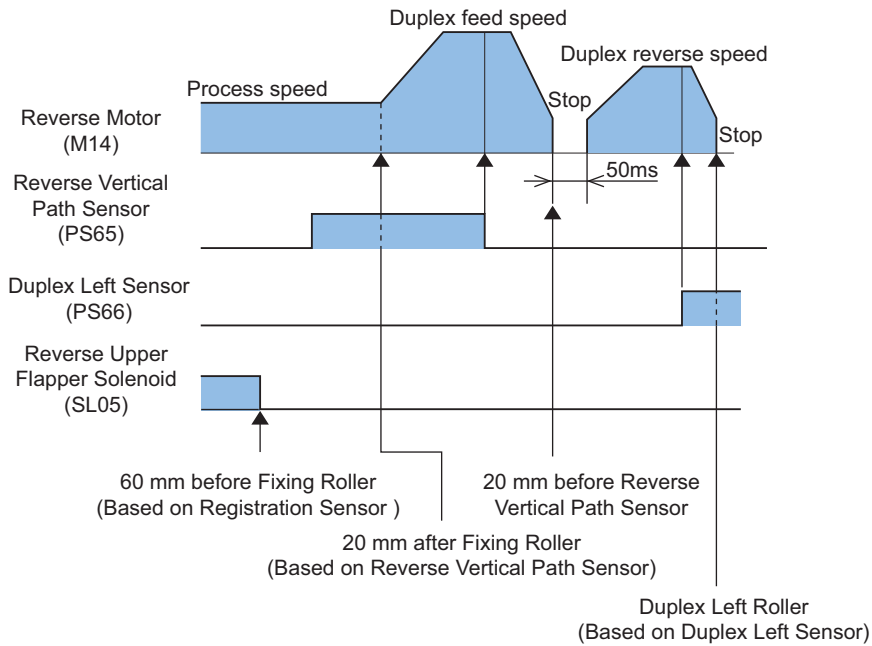
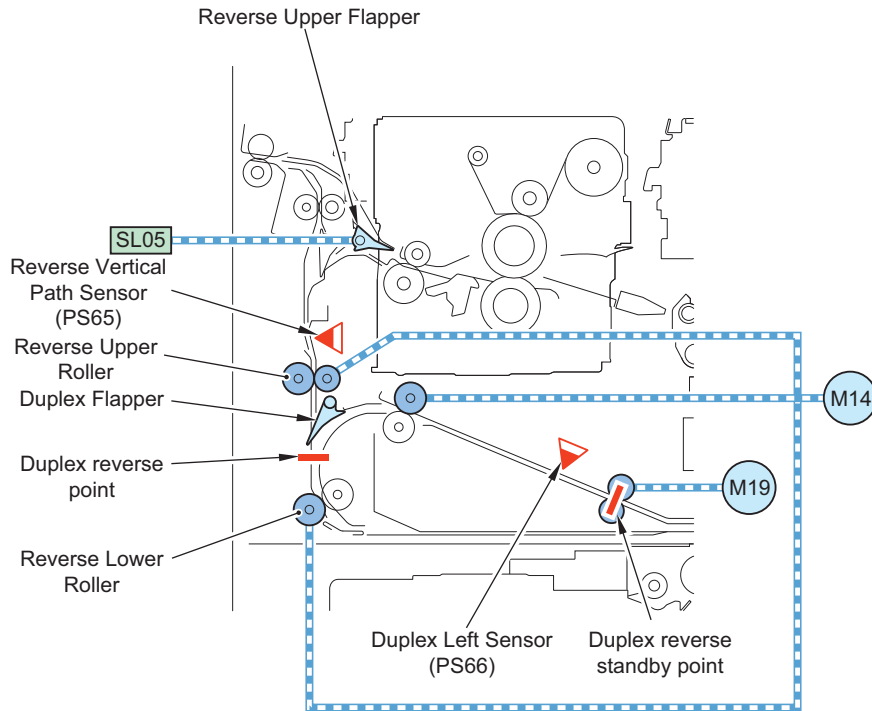


| Print speed [ppm]             | 75             | 65  | 55 |
|-------------------------------|----------------|-----|----|
| Process speed [mm/s]          | 350            | 290 |    |
| Reverse feed speed [mm/s]     | 750            |     |    |
| Reverse delivery speed [mm/s] | 750            |     |    |
| Delivery speed [mm/s]         | 350 / 750(ACC) |     |    |

## ■ Duplex Unit

### ● Basic Operation

1. The Reverse Upper Flapper Solenoid (SL05) is turned OFF to switch the feeding path to the Reverse Assembly side.
2. When the paper's trailing edge passes through the Fixing Roller, rotating speed of the Reverse Motor (M14) is increased (duplex pull-in speed) to make the paper stopped at the duplex reverse position.
3. The Reverse Motor is driven by the duplex pull-in speed to feed the paper to the Duplex Assembly (the flapper feeds the paper to the Duplex Assembly). Then, the Duplex Left Sensor (PS66) detects the paper's leading edge, and the paper is fed for a specified distance to stop at the position of Duplex Left Roller.



| Print speed [ppm]            | 75  | 65  | 55 |
|------------------------------|-----|-----|----|
| Process speed [mm/s]         | 350 | 290 |    |
| Duplex feed speed [mm/s]     | 500 |     |    |
| Duplex reserve speed [mm/s]  | 500 |     |    |
| Duplex delivery speed [mm/s] | 500 |     |    |

### • Side Registration Control

In the case of printing the 2nd side of the 2-sided print, side registration displacement level is measured to adjust the write start timing and correct side registration.

<Execution timing>

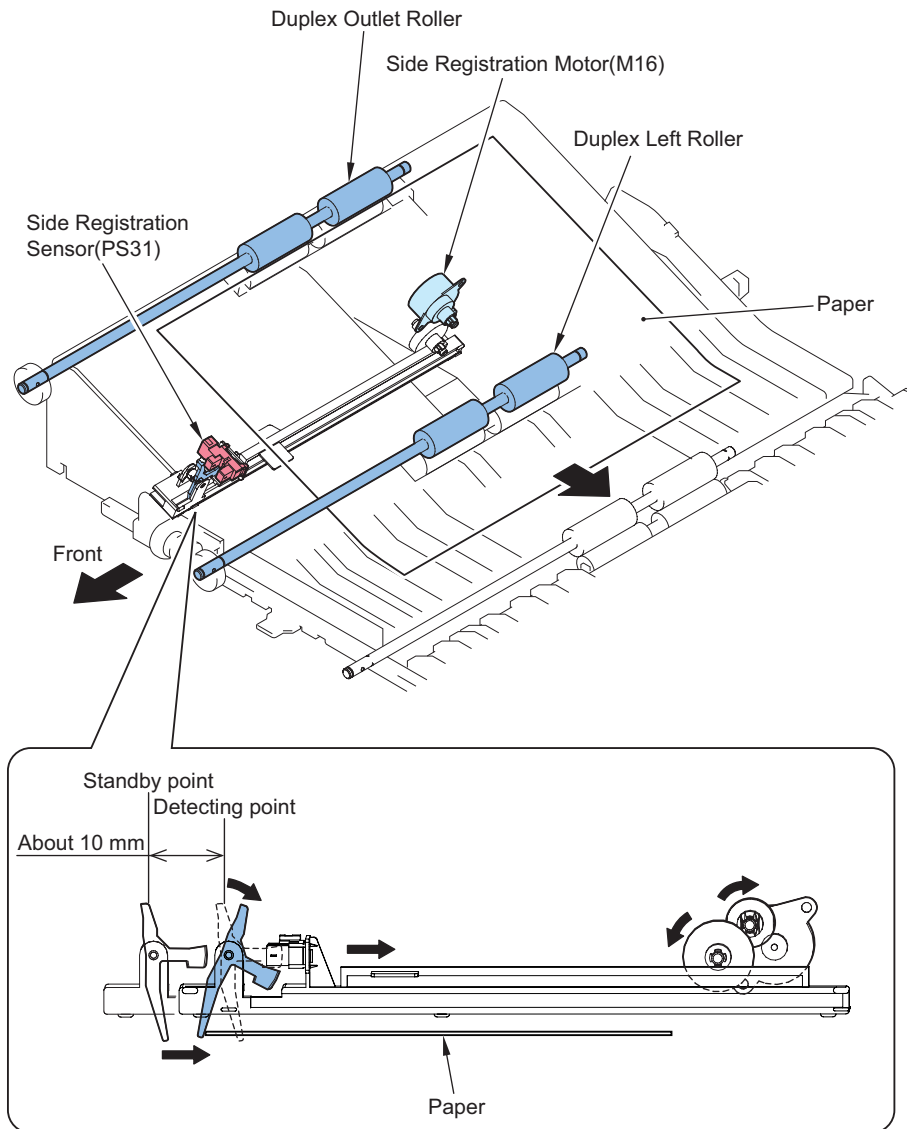
When the paper is stopped at the duplex standby position

<Control description>

Side Registration Sensor (PS31) detects side registration.

The side registration control executes detection of the home position as well as operation and detection of the standby position.

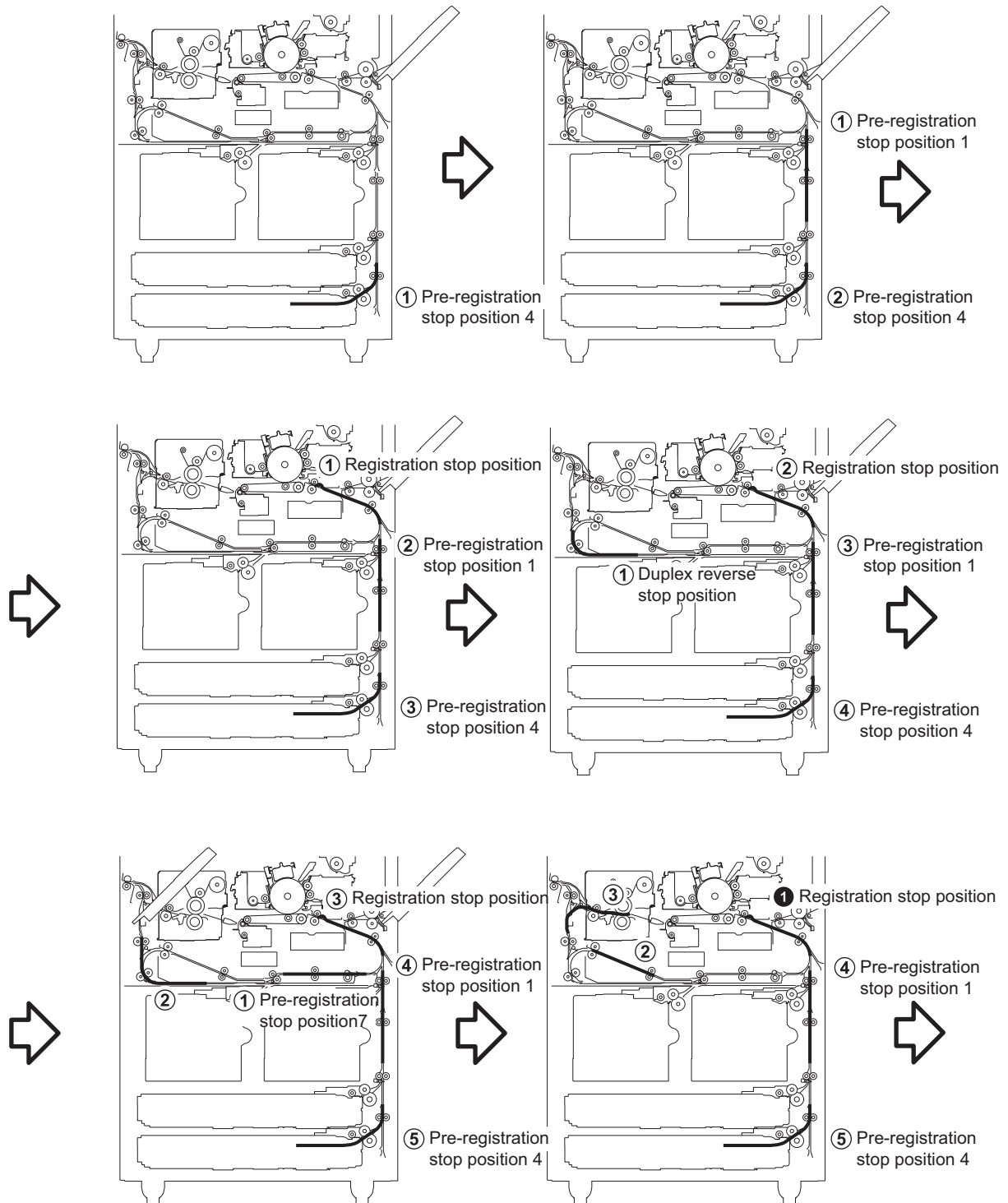
1. Home position operation  
 Side Registration Unit is moved to the home position.  
 Home position: at 13mm from the nominal dimension of A4 size  
 Timing  
 - When the main power is turned ON/when the Front Cover is closed/at the recovery from JAM process/at job completion
2. Standby position operation  
 The unit is moved to the side registration standby position (10 mm front) corresponding the paper size.
3. Detection operation  
 The Side Registration Motor (M16) is driven until Side Registration Sensor(PS31) is turned OFF to detect side registration displacement level from the travel distance.
4. The displacement level measured for side registration correction is converted into pixels to adjust the laser write start timing according to the displaced direction.  
 The write start timing is pushed forward when the paper is displaced to the front.  
 The write start timing is pushed back when the paper is displaced to the rear.

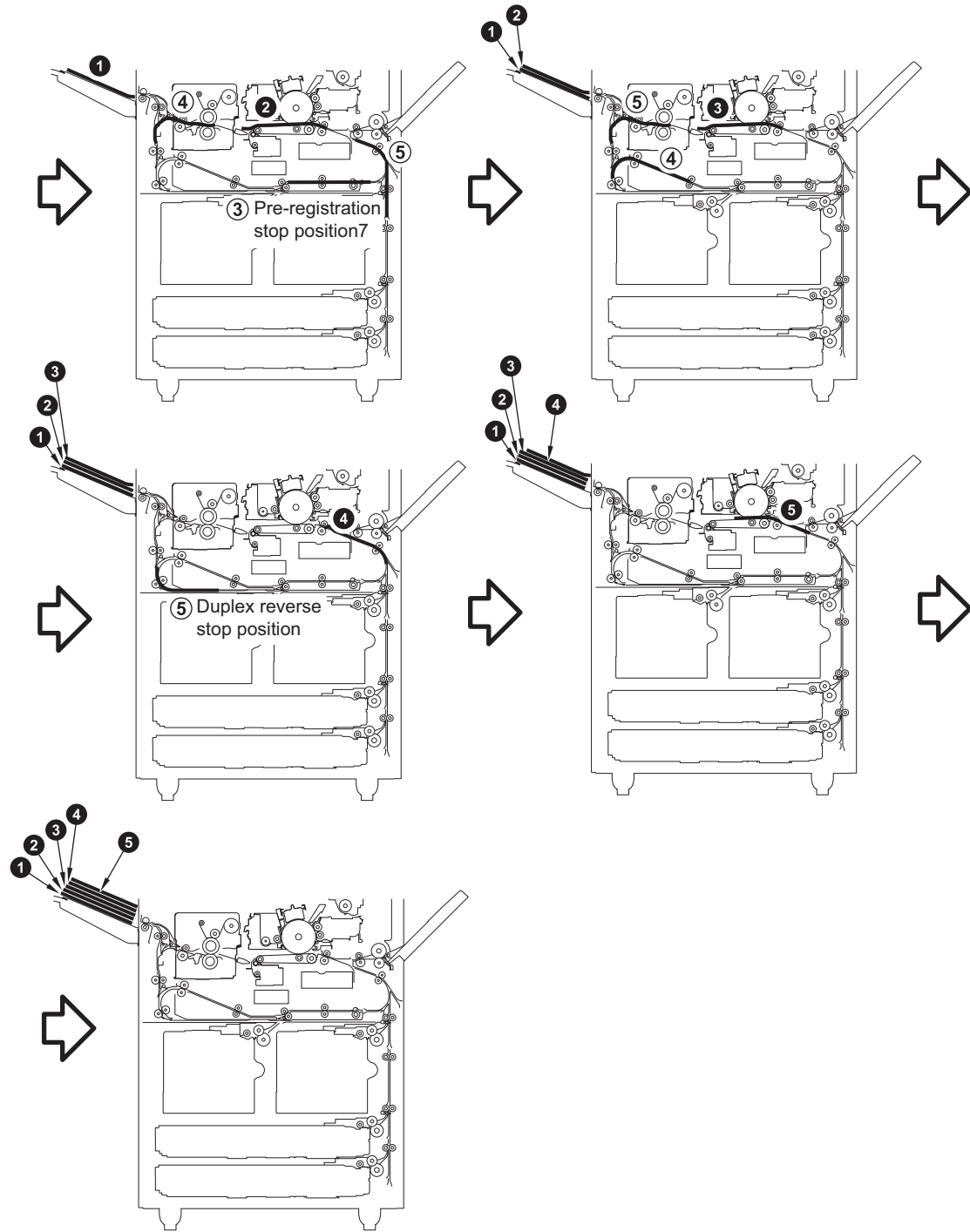


• **Circulation quantity and limit**

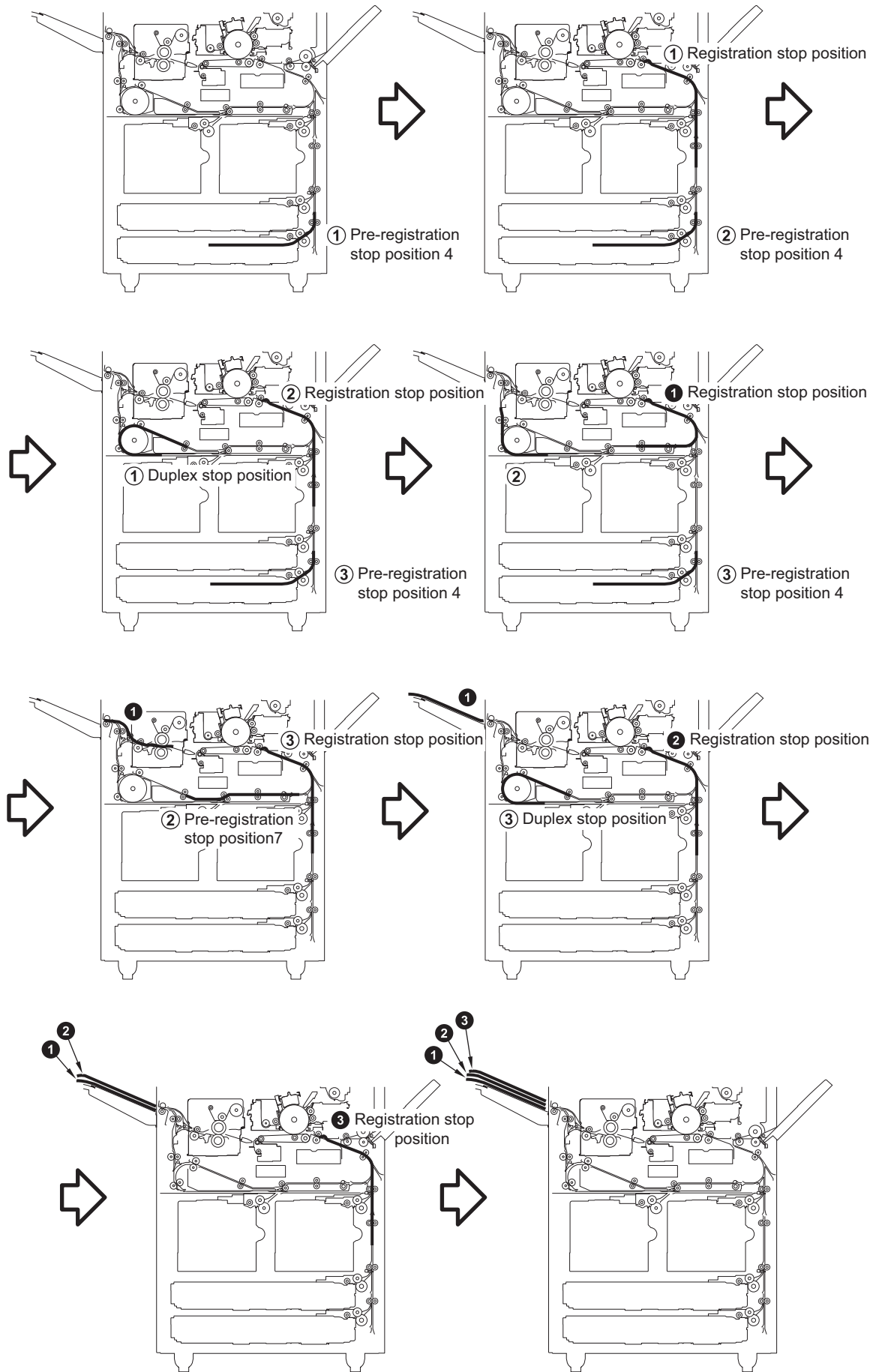
The numbers in white background and the numbers in black background show each the first page and second page.

Less than 314 mm in size/5 sheets in circulation (B5 to A4R)



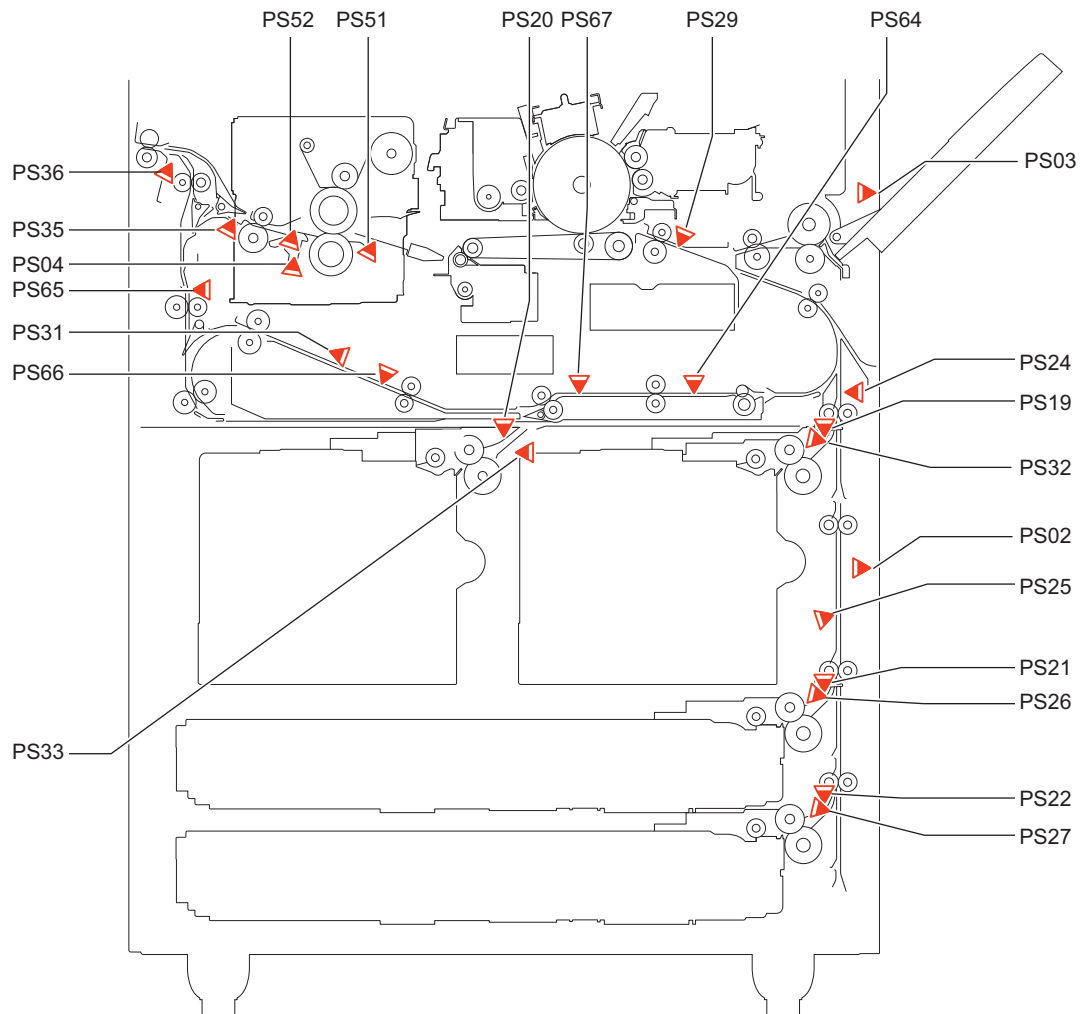


Exceeds 314 mm in size/3 sheets in circulation(B4 to LDR(431.8mm))



## ■ Jam Detection

### ● Jam Code List



### Jam in Feed System

xx = 01: Delay, 02: Stationary, 0A: Residue

Yes: Detects, -: Does not detect

| Sensor No. | Sensor name |                            | Jam type |            |         |
|------------|-------------|----------------------------|----------|------------|---------|
|            |             |                            | Delay    | Stationary | Residue |
| xx01       | PS19        | Right Deck Pickup Sensor   | Yes      | -          |         |
| xx02       | PS32        | Right Deck Pull Out Sensor | Yes      | Yes        | Yes     |
| xx03       | PS24        | Vertical Path Sensor1      | Yes      | Yes        | Yes     |
| xx04       | PS28        | Writing Judging Sensor     | Yes      | Yes        | Yes     |
| xx05       | PS29        | Registration Sensor        | Yes      | Yes        | Yes     |
| xx06       | PS20        | Left Deck Pickup Sensor    | Yes      | -          | -       |
| xx07       | PS33        | Left Deck Pull Out Sensor  | Yes      | Yes        | Yes     |
| xx08       | PS67        | Duplex Merging Sensor      | Yes      | Yes        | Yes     |
| xx09       | PS64        | Duplex Outlet Sensor       | Yes      | Yes        | Yes     |
| xx0A       | PS21        | Cassette 3 Pickup Sensor   | Yes      | -          | -       |
| xx0B       | PS26        | Vertical Path Sensor3      | Yes      | Yes        | Yes     |
| xx0C       | PS25        | Vertical Path Sensor2      | Yes      | Yes        | Yes     |
| xx0D       | PS22        | Cassette 4 Pickup Sensor   | Yes      | -          | -       |
| xx0E       | PS27        | Vertical Path Sensor4      | Yes      | Yes        | Yes     |
| xx0F       | PS51        | Fixing Inlet Sensor        | -        | -          | Yes     |
| xx10       | PS04        | Fixing Toenail Jam Sensor  | -        | -          | Yes     |
| xx11       | PS52        | Fixing Outlet Sensor       | Yes      | -          | Yes     |

| Sensor No. | Sensor name |                              | Jam type             |            |         |     |
|------------|-------------|------------------------------|----------------------|------------|---------|-----|
|            |             |                              | Delay                | Stationary | Residue |     |
| xx12       | PS35        | Inner Delivery Sensor        | Yes                  | Yes        | Yes     |     |
| xx13       | PS36        | Outer Delivery Sensor        | Yes                  | Yes        | Yes     |     |
| xx14       | PS65        | Reverse Vertical Path Sensor | Yes                  | Yes        | Yes     |     |
| xx15       | PS66        | Duplex Left Sensor           | Yes                  | Yes        | Yes     |     |
| xx17       | PS1         | Deck Pickup Roller           | Paer Deck / POD Deck | Yes        | -       | -   |
| xx18       | PS6         | Deck Pull Out Sensor         | Paer Deck / POD Deck | Yes        | Yes     | Yes |
| 0305       | PS29        | Registration Sensor          | early timing jam     |            |         |     |

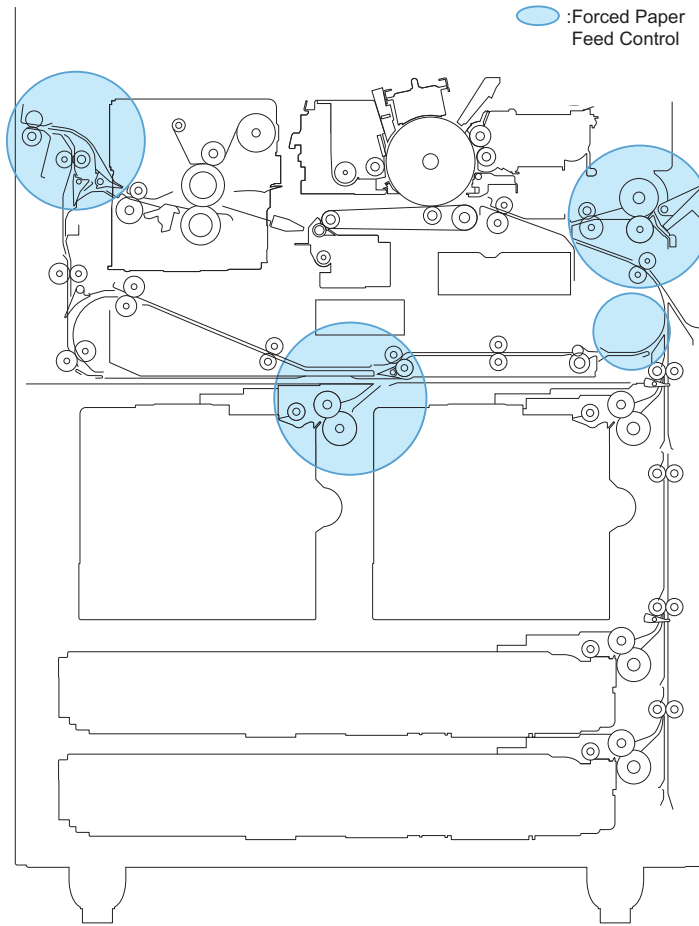
### Other Jams

| Sensor No. | Sensor name |   | Jam type   |
|------------|-------------|---|--|
| 0B01       | SW02        | Front Door Open Detection Switch        | Door Open jam  |
| 0B02       | PS03        | Vertical Path Cover Open/Close Sensor   | Door Open jam  |
| 0B03       | PS02        | Multi-purpose Cover Open/Close Sensor   | Door Open jam  |
| 0C10       | PS04        | Fixing Toenail Jam Sensor               | Fixing Toenail jam   |
| 0CA1       | -           | FeedSts time out jam                    | REFEED command is not received.<br>(Former: E240-0001)   |
| 0CA2       | -           | RefeedStart time out jam                | RefeedStart command is not received.<br>(Former: E240-0002)  |
| 0CA3       | -           | ImageSet time out jam                   | ImageSet command is not received.<br>(Former: E240-0003)   |
| 0CA4       | -           | PageComplete time out jam               | PageCompletemcommand is not received.<br>(Former: E240-0004)   |
| 0CA5       | -           | Fixing temperature control time out jam | -  |
| 0CAF       | -           | Finisher time out jam                   | Erroneous communication with finisher.   |
| 0CF1       | -           | Retry jam                               | An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected. it is detected as an error if the same symptom occurs again after the first retry.                                      |
| 0D91       | -           | Size error jam                          | A size error jam occurs when the difference between the paper length detected by the Cassette Guide Plate/specified on the Control Panel and the length measured by the Registration Sensor is out of the specified range. |

### • Forced Paper Feed Control

If there is paper in the following place after jam is detected, the paper will be forcedly fed to downstream direction. This control suppresses paper damage during jam handling.



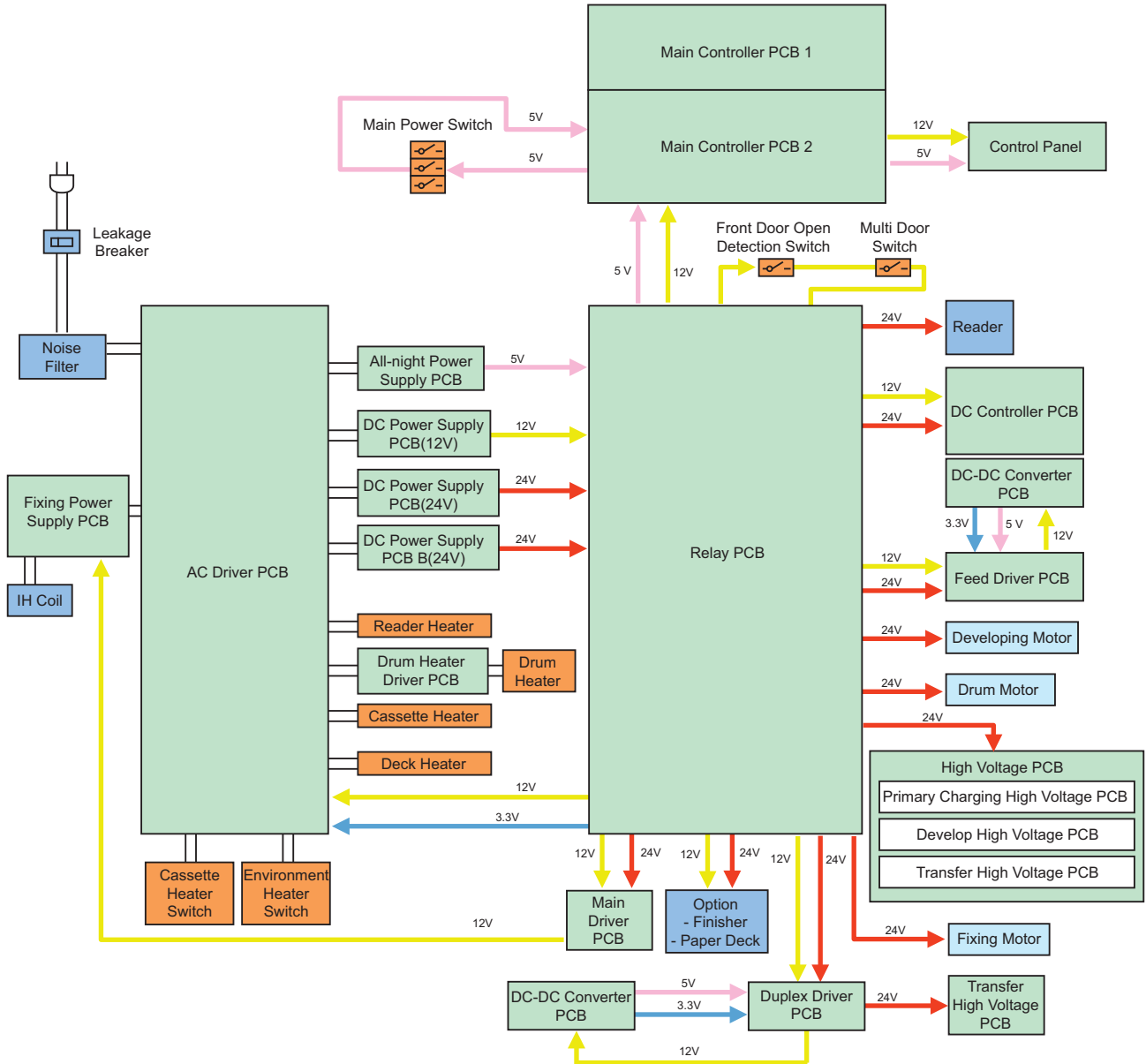


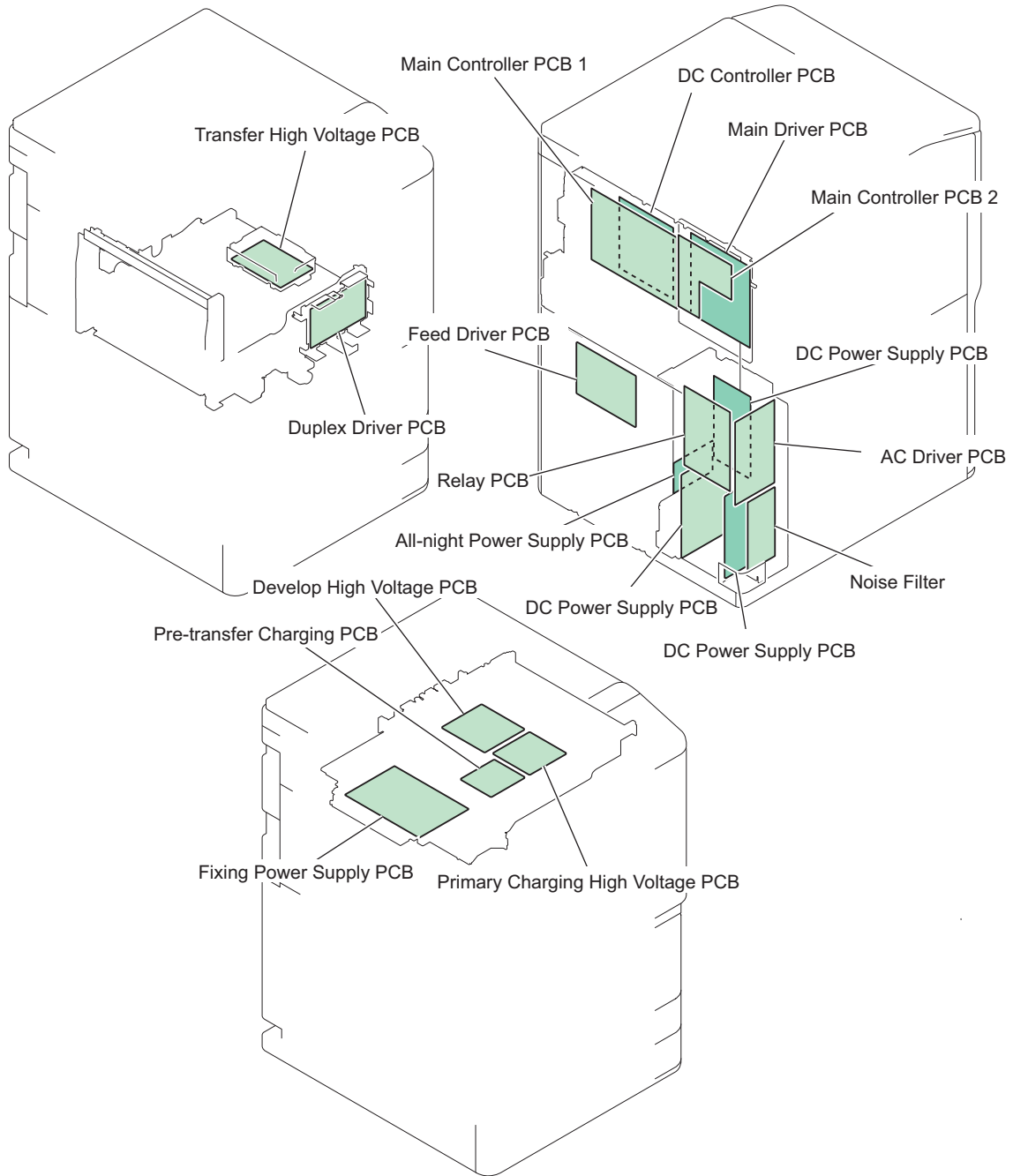
# External Auxiliary System

## Overview

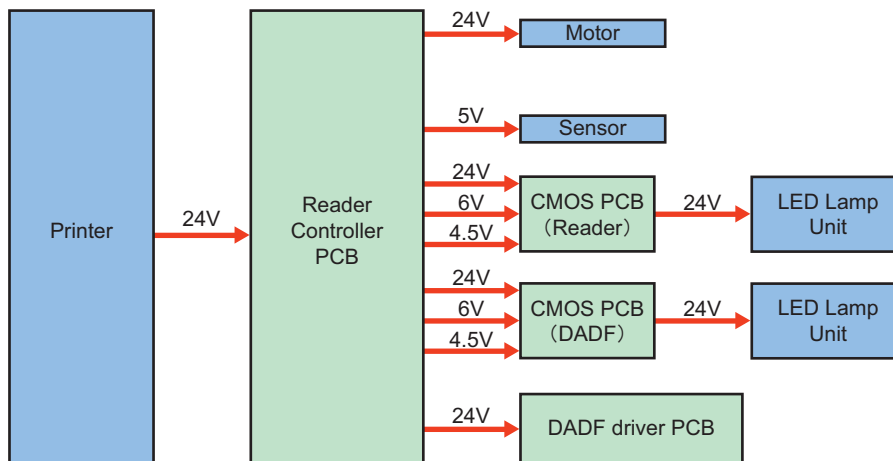
### ■ Power Supply Configuration

#### ● Power Supply Configuration Inside the Host Machine





• Power Configuration of the Reader Unit



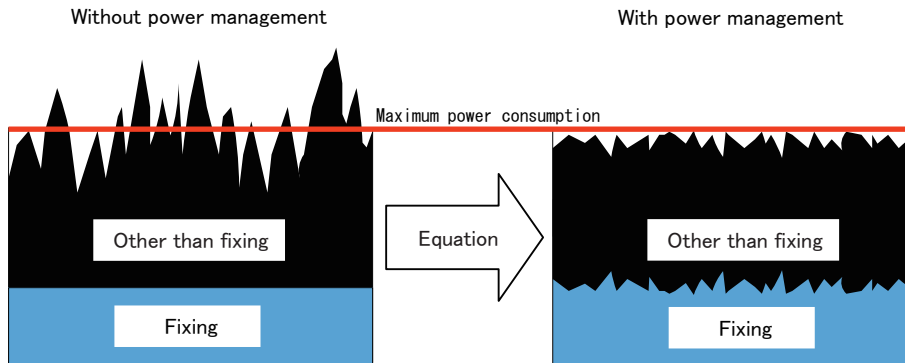
# Controls

## ■ Power supply control

### ● Electric Power Management

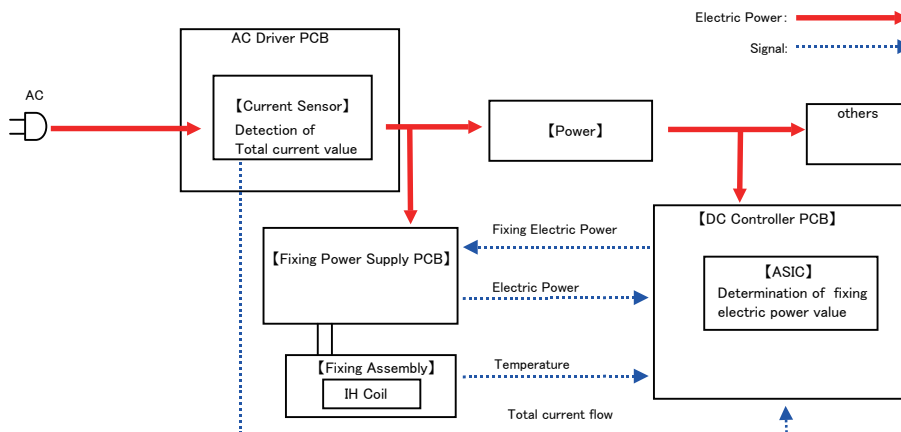
<Over View>

By equating the electric power in the machine, the maximum power consumption is reduced in comparison with the conventional models (iR7105/7095/7086 series).



<Control description>

This machine executes electric power management to prevent temporary power shortage. The electric power management detects current value of the entire product with the Current Sensor. In the case that the current value is likely to exceed the electric power reference value, the DC Controller temporarily reduces electric power supply to the fixing area to compensate for power shortage.



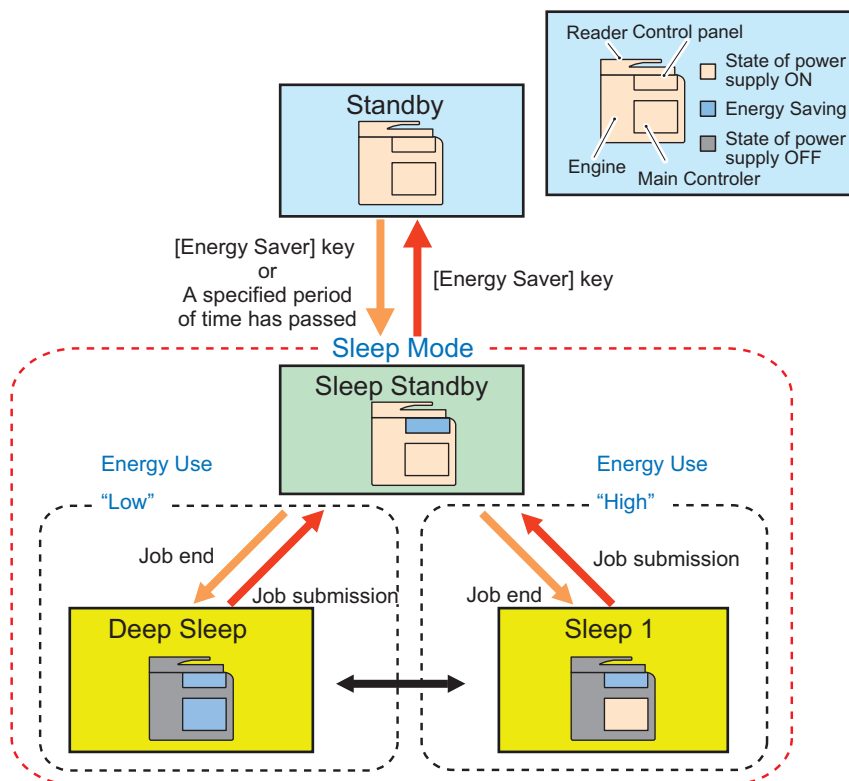
Current Sensor : Converts the flux occurred by current to the voltage.

### ● Power-saving Function

#### Overview

This machine has the following power supply mode: "Standby" and "Sleep".

"Sleep" is further divided into the following 5 modes: "Sleep Standby", "Sleep 1", "Sleep 1 (when [Consider Network Connection] is enabled)", "Sleep Exit", and "Deep Sleep".



\*The time specified in Settings/Registration> Preferences> Timer/Energy Settings> Auto Sleep Time

### Standby

The state where the machine is operating or can start operation immediately and all the power is supplied.

The machine enters Sleep mode when the [Energy Saver] key on the Control Panel is pressed or the specified period of time has passed.

The machine enters this mode when the Touch Panel Display on the Control Panel is tapped during Sleep Standby.

### Sleep Standby

The state where only the Control Panel is turned OFF and power is supplied to all the other parts.

The machine enters Deep Sleep/Sleep 1 if there is no job after checking whether there is a job.

The machine enters this mode when a job is submitted during Sleep (Deep Sleep/Sleep 1).

### Sleep 1

The state where the Control Panel is turned OFF and power is supplied only to the processing circuitry for the printer and scanner.

The All-night/Non-all-night Power Supply is supplied to the controller.

The machine enters this mode from Sleep Standby during Sleep if Sleep Mode Energy Use is set "High" in Settings/Registration > Preferences > Timer/Energy Settings > Sleep Mode Energy Use.

The machine enters Sleep Standby when a job is submitted during this mode.

The machine enters Standby when the Touch Panel Display on the Control Panel is tapped during this mode.

### Sleep 1 (when [Consider Network Connection] is enabled)

The state where the Control Panel is turned OFF and only the All-night Power (5 V) is supplied to the printer/scanner/controller. This mode should be selected in advance in order to allow the machine to respond to requests for exiting Sleep from external sources such as faxes or the network.

The machine enters Sleep Standby when a job is submitted during this mode.

The machine enters Standby when the Touch Panel Display on the Control Panel is tapped during this mode.

#### CAUTION:

The machine can enter this mode if Settings/Registration > Preferences > Timer/Energy Settings > Sleep Mode Energy Use > Low > Consider Network Connection has been turned ON.

The machine does not enter this mode if a 2-, 3-, or 4-line Fax or a coin vendor is connected.

The machine does not enter Deep Sleep when this mode is activated.

## Sleep Exit

The machine first enters this mode when returning to Standby from Sleep. The state where power supply is maintained to return from Sleep.

## Deep Sleep

The state where the Control Panel is turned OFF and only the All-night Power (5 V) is supplied.

The machine enters this mode from Sleep Standby during Sleep.

The machine enters Sleep Standby when a job is submitted during this mode.

The machine enters Sleep Exit first, and then Standby when the Touch Panel Display on the Control Panel is tapped during this mode.

The machine does not enter this mode when any of the following "Conditions for Not Entering Deep Sleep" applies.

## Conditions for Not Entering Deep Sleep Mode (Check Items)

### Settings of Settings/Registration

When the following settings are enabled in the [Settings/Registration] menu, the machine does not enter Deep Sleep mode. The corresponding items are shown below.

#### Preferences > Timer/Energy Settings

- Sleep Mode Energy Use > High
- Sleep Mode Energy Use > Low > Compensate for Network Comm.
- Within the time specified in Auto Sleep Time

#### Preferences > Network

- NetWare Settings > Use NetWare > ON
- AppleTalk Settings > Use AppleTalk > ON
- TCP/IP Settings > BMLinkS Settings > Use BMLinkS > ON (\*1)
- IEEE 802.1X Settings > Use IEEE 802.1X > ON
- TCP/IP Settings > IPv4 Settings > IP Address Settings > Auto IP > ON
- TCP/IP Settings > DNS Settings > mDNS Settings > Use mDNS > ON
- Google Cloud Print Settings > Use Google Cloud Print > ON (\*2)
- TCP/IP Settings > SIP Settings > NGN Settings > Use NGN > ON (\*1)
- Direct Connection Settings > Use Direct Connection > ON

#### Function Settings > Receive/Forward

- Fax Settings > Select RX Mode > Fax/Tel (Auto Switch) (\*1)
- Fax Settings > Remote RX > ON (\*1)
- Fax Settings > Set Number Display > ON (\*1)

#### Function Settings > Send

- Fax Settings > Modem Dial-in Settings > ON (\*1)

## Other Settings

- Volume Settings key > Fax Volume Settings > Incoming Fax Ring > ON (\*1)

\*1: This may not be displayed depending on the country/region, model, and configuration of the options.

\*2: This must be already registered on Google Cloud Print in advance.

## Hardware status

- It is connected to the coin vendor.

## System Performance Status

- The system is running/communicating.

### CAUTION:

The system is in a running/communicating state for approx. 10 minutes after startup in many cases.

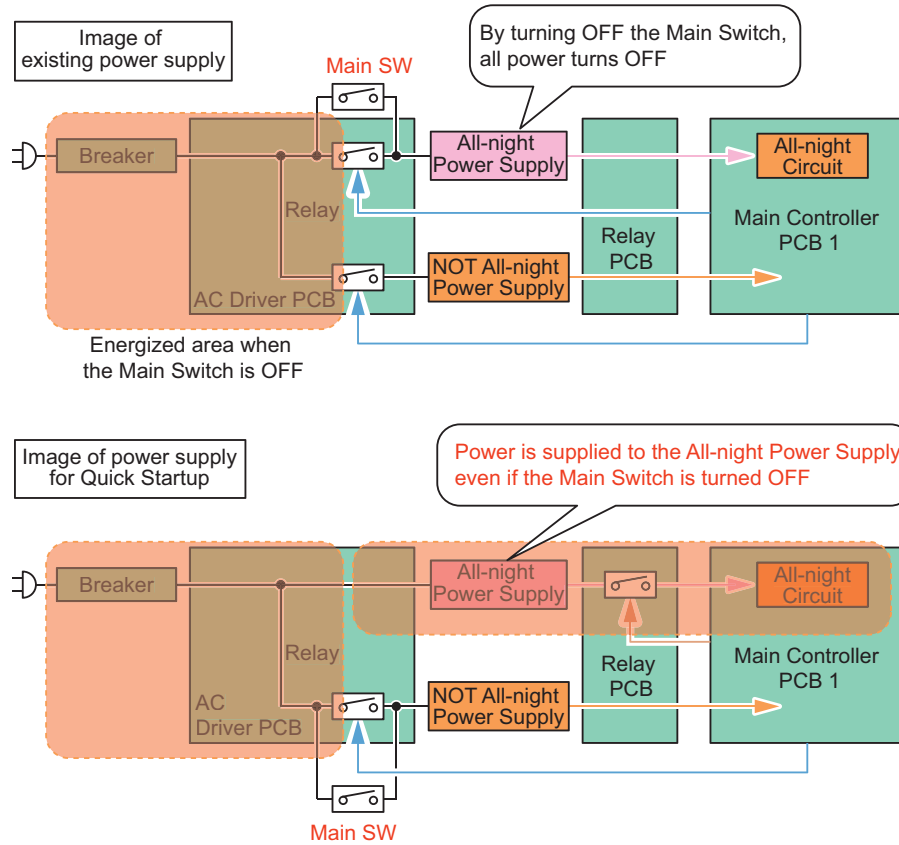
## • Quick Startup

To realize faster startup, power configuration has been changed to always supply power to the All-night Power Supply PCB. Thereby, the main menu can be displayed after 7 seconds from turning ON the Main Power Supply Switch.

Although when the Main Power Supply Switch is OFF, power is supplied to the following PCBs.

- AC Driver PCB
- All-night Power Supply PCB

- Relay PCB
- Main Controller PCB 1



**NOTE:**

The quick startup function can be set from "Settings/Registration".

- Settings/Registration > Preferences > Timer/Energy Settings > Quick Startup Settings for Main Power  
 [On]: Quick startup is executed (default)  
 [Off]: Quick startup is not executed

Disconnect the plug from outlet or turn OFF the Breaker when performing work with the possibility to come in contact with the PCBs above. PCBs may get damage. If a conductive material comes in contact with the PCB, short circuit may occur in the PCB, and may cause damage on it.

The following illustration is used at the place where attention needs. When the following label is affixed, be sure to disconnect the plug from outlet or turn OFF the Breaker.



**Conditions for not executing quick startup**

This machine does not execute quick startup if the following conditions are met at first startup after the power plug is connected to the outlet.

**Connection status of the hardware**

- A coin vendor is connected.

**Either of the following network settings is set to "ON":**

Settings/Registration > Preferences > Network

- AppleTalk Settings > Use AppleTalk > ON
- Select Wired/Wireless LAN > Wireless LAN
- Bluetooth Settings > ON

**When turning ON the main power of the machine after turning OFF the main power in any of the conditions below**

- The system is running/communicating.

#### Others

- More than 110 hours have elapsed after quick startup
- When turning ON the main power of the machine in 20 seconds after turning OFF the main power
- Startup after 8 hours or more have passed since the power of this product was turned OFF
- When turning ON the main power of the machine after turning OFF the main power from the Remote UI
- The next time the power is turned ON after occurrence of the error code
- The next time the power is turned ON after shifting to the service mode screen

### • Effects of Spanning Tree-supported Hub

If you set the network as a loop, data keeps staying in this loop and efficiency of data transfer might be decreased. In order to prevent this symptom, some hubs have the function called "spanning tree". If this function is enabled, the device newly connected to the hub can make data communication with network 10 to 50 seconds (time changes due to the conditions) after the connection. When the machine enters Deep sleep mode and restores from the sleep mode, the machine electrically disconnects with the network once. Therefore, if the machine connects with the spanning tree-installed hub, the machine cannot communicate with network for approximately 1 minute at a maximum after restoring from the Deep sleep mode.

For this reason, right after restoring from the Deep sleep mode, the following symptoms might occur: Device status cannot be collected, printing cannot be made, and login using a login application cannot be made. If such symptoms become any problems, perform the following operations.

- Using user mode, set not to enter the Deep sleep mode.  
Preferences > Timer/Energy Settings > Sleep Mode Energy Use > High
- Disable the spanning tree function of hub.
- Request users to use the hub which supports Rapid Spanning-Tree
- Protocol (RSTP) that resolved such problems.

### ■ Heater Control

The power of this machine is supplied to each load side by linking with the following switches, etc.

#### <Operating condition>

Operating condition of the heater differs according to the status of the Environment Switch and the host machine.

#### A. In the case of normal image mode\*1 (DRM-H-SW: "2")

<Environment Heater Switch: OFF>

| Mode   |                    | Main Power OFF |     | sleep mode |     | WarmUp (Recovery) |      | Standby/Energy Saver |     | Copy/Print |     |
|--------|--------------------|----------------|-----|------------|-----|-------------------|------|----------------------|-----|------------|-----|
| Switch | Main SW            | OFF            |     | ON         |     |                   |      |                      |     |            |     |
|        | Cassette Heater SW | OFF            | ON  | OFF        | ON  | OFF               | ON   | OFF                  | ON  | OFF        | ON  |
| Heater | Drum               | OFF            | OFF | OFF        | OFF | ON*3              | ON*3 | ON                   | ON  | ON         | ON  |
|        | Cassette           | OFF            | OFF | OFF        | OFF | OFF               | ON   | OFF                  | ON  | OFF        | ON  |
|        | Reader             | OFF            | OFF | OFF        | OFF | OFF               | OFF  | OFF                  | OFF | OFF        | OFF |

<Environment Heater Switch: ON>

| Mode   |                    | Main Power OFF |     | sleep mode |     | WarmUp (Recovery) |      | Standby/Energy Saver |     | Copy/Print |     |
|--------|--------------------|----------------|-----|------------|-----|-------------------|------|----------------------|-----|------------|-----|
| Switch | Main SW            | OFF            |     | ON         |     |                   |      |                      |     |            |     |
|        | Cassette Heater SW | OFF            | ON  | OFF        | ON  | OFF               | ON   | OFF                  | ON  | OFF        | ON  |
| Heater | Drum               | OFF            | OFF | OFF        | OFF | ON*3              | ON*3 | ON                   | ON  | ON         | ON  |
|        | Cassette           | OFF            | ON  | OFF        | ON  | OFF               | ON   | OFF                  | ON  | OFF        | ON  |
|        | Reader             | ON             | ON  | ON         | ON  | ON                | OFF  | OFF                  | OFF | OFF        | OFF |



**B. In the case of image priority mode\*1 (DRM-H-SW: "1")**

<Environment Heater Switch: OFF>

| Mode   |                    | Main Power OFF |     | sleep mode |     | WarmUp (Recovery) |      | Standby/Energy Saver |     | Copy/Print |     |
|--------|--------------------|----------------|-----|------------|-----|-------------------|------|----------------------|-----|------------|-----|
| Switch | Main SW            | OFF            |     | ON         |     |                   |      |                      |     |            |     |
|        | Cassette Heater SW | OFF            | ON  | OFF        | ON  | OFF               | ON   | OFF                  | ON  | OFF        | ON  |
| Heater | Drum               | OFF            | OFF | OFF        | OFF | ON*3              | ON*3 | ON                   | ON  | ON         | ON  |
|        | Cassette           | OFF            | OFF | OFF        | OFF | OFF               | ON   | OFF                  | ON  | OFF        | ON  |
|        | Reader             | OFF            | OFF | OFF        | OFF | OFF               | OFF  | OFF                  | OFF | OFF        | OFF |

<Environment Heater Switch: ON>

| Mode   |                    | Main Power OFF |    | sleep mode |    | WarmUp (Recovery) |      | Standby/Energy Saver |     | Copy/Print |     |
|--------|--------------------|----------------|----|------------|----|-------------------|------|----------------------|-----|------------|-----|
| Switch | Main SW            | OFF            |    | ON         |    |                   |      |                      |     |            |     |
|        | Cassette Heater SW | OFF            | ON | OFF        | ON | OFF               | ON   | OFF                  | ON  | OFF        | ON  |
| Heater | Drum               | ON             | ON | ON         | ON | ON*3              | ON*3 | ON                   | ON  | ON         | ON  |
|        | Cassette           | OFF            | ON | OFF        | ON | OFF               | ON   | OFF                  | ON  | OFF        | ON  |
|        | Reader             | ON             | ON | ON         | ON | ON                | OFF  | OFF                  | OFF | OFF        | OFF |

\*1: ON/OFF can be switched in the following service mode (Lv. 2).

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-MCON > DRM-H-SW

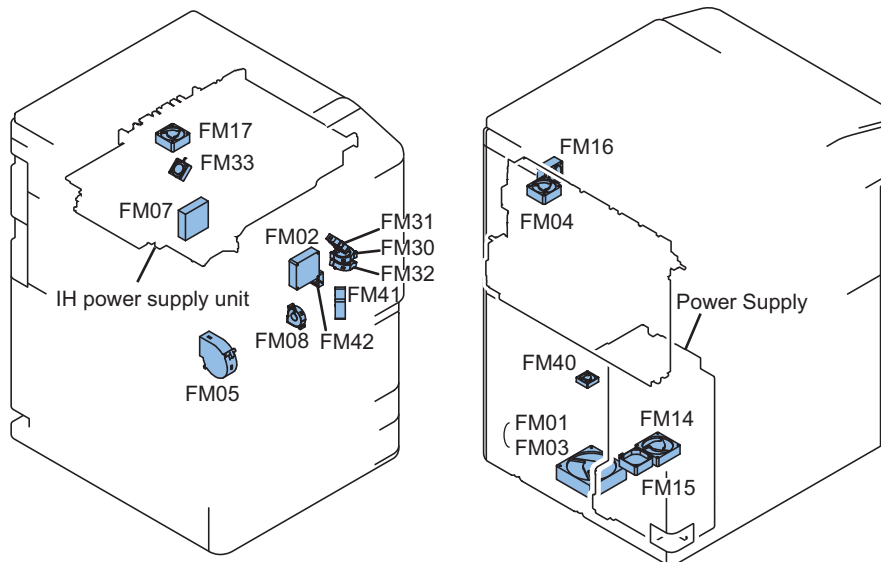
\*2: When 1 or 2 is set in the following service mode, the Drum Heater is turned ON.

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-LSR > 2D-SHADE

\*3: OFF when the detected temperature of the Environment Sensor is 15 deg C or higher.

■ Fan Control

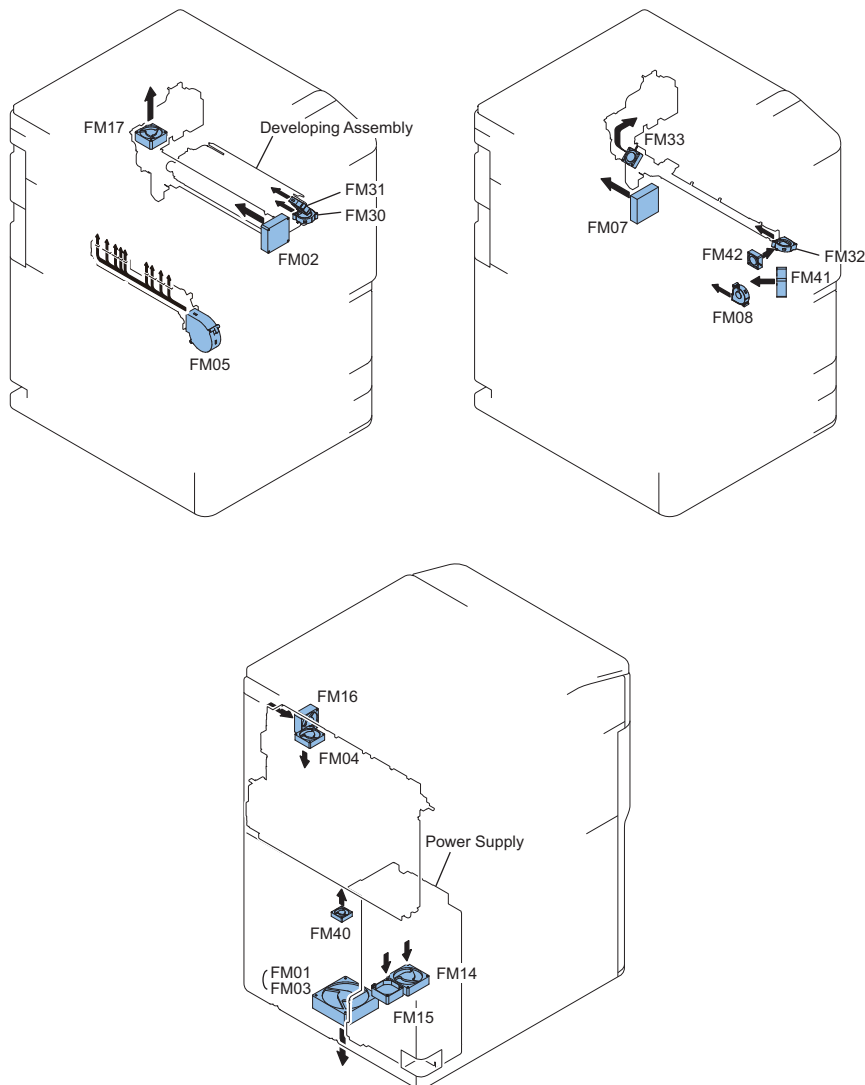
● Location of Fans



| Circuit code | Name                            | Function  | Error/Alarm code |
|--------------|---------------------------------|---|------------------|
| FM01<br>FM03 | Making Image Exhaust Fan        | To exhaust air in the image formation area          | E806-0000        |
| FM02         | Primary Charging Air-supply Fan | To intake air around the Primary Charging Assembly  | E824-0000        |
| FM04         | Main Controller Cooling Fan     | To cool the Main Controller PCB                     | E880-0001        |
| FM05         | Paper Cooling Fan               | To cool the paper passing through the delivery area | 33-0001          |
| FM07         | Fixing Power Supply Cooling Fan | To cool the fixing power supply                     | E804-0001        |

| Circuit code | Name  | Function   | Error/Alarm code |
|--------------|---|--|------------------|
| FM08         | Transfer Cleaner Cooling Fan                | To cool the Transfer Cleaner / To cool the Duplex Feed Guide | E820-0002        |
| FM14         | Power Supply Cooling Fan 1                  | To cool the power supply                                     | E804-0000        |
| FM15         | Power Supply Cooling Fan 2                  | To cool the power supply                                     | E804-0000        |
| FM16         | Laser Scanner Cooling Fan                   | To cool the Laser Scanner                                    | E121-0001        |
| FM17         | Primary Charging Exhaust Fan                | To exhaust air around the Primary Charging Assembly          | 33-0027          |
| FM30         | Developer Lower Cooling Fan                 | To cool the Developing Unit                                  | E820-0000        |
| FM31         | Developer Upper Cooling Fan                 | To cool the Developing Unit                                  | E820-0001        |
| FM32         | Pre-transfer Charging Unit Air-supply Fan   | To intake air around the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly      | 33-0026          |
| FM33         | Pre-transfer Charging Unit Exhaust Fan      | To exhaust air around the Pretransfer Charging Assembly      |                  |
| FM40         | Feed Driver Cooling Fan                     | To cool the Feed Driver                                      | 33-0013          |
| FM41         | Duplex Driver Cooling Fan                   | To cool the Duplex Driver                                    | 33-0028          |
| FM42         | Registration Motor/Duplex Motor Cooling Fan | To cool the Duplex Motor and the Registration Motor          | 33-0002          |

• Airflow



| Circuit code | Name                            | Function   | Error/Alarm code |
|--------------|---------------------------------|--|------------------|
| FM01FM03/    | Making Image Exhaust Fan        | To exhaust air in the image formation area         | E806-0000        |
| FM02         | Primary Charging Air-supply Fan | To intake air around the Primary Charging Assembly | E824-0000        |

| Circuit code | Name  | Function   | Error/Alarm code |
|--------------|---|--|------------------|
| FM04         | Main Controller Cooling Fan                 | To cool the Main Controller PCB                              | E880-0001        |
| FM05         | Paper Cooling Fan                           | To cool the paper passing through the delivery area          | 33-0001          |
| FM07         | Fixing Power Supply Cooling Fan             | To cool the fixing power supply                              | E804-0001        |
| FM08         | Transfer Cleaner Cooling Fan                | To cool the Transfer Cleaner / To cool the Duplex Feed Guide | E820-0002        |
| FM14         | Power Supply Cooling Fan 1                  | To cool the power supply                                     | E804-0000        |
| FM15         | Power Supply Cooling Fan 2                  | To cool the power supply                                     | E804-0000        |
| FM16         | Laser Scanner Cooling Fan                   | To cool the Laser Scanner                                    | E121-0001        |
| FM17         | Primary Charging Exhaust Fan                | To exhaust air around the Primary Charging Assembly          | 33-0027          |
| FM30         | Developer Lower Cooling Fan                 | To cool the Developing Unit                                  | E820-0000        |
| FM31         | Developer Upper Cooling Fan                 | To cool the Developing Unit                                  | E820-0001        |
| FM32         | Pre-transfer Charging Unit Air-supply Fan   | To intake air around the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly      | 33-0026          |
| FM33         | Pre-transfer Charging Unit Exhaust Fan      | To exhaust air around the Pretransfer Charging Assembly      |                  |
| FM40         | Feed Driver Cooling Fan                     | To cool the Feed Driver                                      | 33-0013          |
| FM41         | Duplex Driver Cooling Fan                   | To cool the Duplex Driver                                    | 33-0028          |
| FM42         | Registration Motor/Duplex Motor Cooling Fan | To cool the Duplex Motor and the Registration Motor          | 33-0002          |

## • Fan Sequence

| NO.  | NAME  | WAIT UP | INTR               | STBY | PRINT | LSTR | JAM | ERR | Power saving | DEEP Sleep |
|------|---|---------|--------------------|------|-------|------|-----|-----|--------------|------------|
| FM02 | Primary Charging Air-supply Fan             |         | ■                  | ■    | ■     | ■    | ■   | ■   | ■            | ■          |
| FM01 | FM03  |         | ■                  | ■    | ■     | ■    | ■   | ■   | ■            | ■          |
| FM03 | Making Image Exhaust Fan                    |         | ■                  | ■    | ■     | ■    | ■   | ■   | ■            | ■          |
| FM04 | Main Controller Cooling Fan                 |         | Controller control |      |       |      |     |     |              |            |
| FM05 | Paper Cooling Fan                           |         | ■                  | ■    | ■     | ■    | ■   | ■   | ■            | ■          |
| FM07 | Fixing Power Supply Cooling Fan             | ■       | ■                  | ■    | ■     | ■    | ■   | ■   | ■            | ■          |
| FM08 | Transfer Cleaner Cooling Fan                |         | ■                  | ■    | ■     | ■    | ■   | ■   | ■            | ■          |
| FM14 | Power Supply Cooling Fan 1                  | ■       | ■                  | ■    | ■     | ■    | ■   | ■   | ■            | ■          |
| FM15 | Power Supply Cooling Fan 2                  | ■       | ■                  | ■    | ■     | ■    | ■   | ■   | ■            | ■          |
| FM16 | Laser Scanner Cooling Fan                   |         | ■                  | ■    | ■     | ■    | ■   | ■   | ■            | ■          |
| FM17 | Primary Charging Exhaust Fan                |         | ■                  | ■    | ■     | ■    | ■   | ■   | ■            | ■          |
| FM30 | Developer Lower Cooling Fan                 |         | ■                  | ■    | ■     | ■    | ■   | ■   | ■            | ■          |
| FM31 | Developer Upper Cooling Fan                 |         | ■                  | ■    | ■     | ■    | ■   | ■   | ■            | ■          |
| FM32 | Pre-transfer Charging Unit Air-supply Fan   |         | ■                  | ■    | ■     | ■    | ■   | ■   | ■            | ■          |
| FM33 | Pre-transfer Charging Unit Exhaust Fan      |         | ■                  | ■    | ■     | ■    | ■   | ■   | ■            | ■          |
| FM40 | Feed Driver Cooling Fan                     |         | ■                  | ■    | ■     | ■    | ■   | ■   | ■            | ■          |
| FM41 | Duplex Driver Cooling Fan                   |         | ■                  | ■    | ■     | ■    | ■   | ■   | ■            | ■          |
| FM42 | Registration Motor/Duplex Motor Cooling Fan |         | ■                  | ■    | ■     | ■    | ■   | ■   | ■            | ■          |

:Full speed  
 :half speed

## ■ Counter Control

Count-up timing differs according to the following.

- Print mode (1-sided print/2nd side of 2-sided print, 1st side of 2-sided print)
- Delivery position (Finisher)

| Delivery position |  | Print mode   |   |
|-------------------|--|--|---|
|                   |  | 1-sided print/2nd side of 2-sided print                    | 1st side of 2-sided print   |
|                   |  | Count-up timing  |   |
| 1                 | When the machine configuration consists of the Host Machine only | Reference sensor:<br>Outer Delivery Sensor (PS36)          | Reference sensor:<br>Small (when the length is up to LTR)                     |
| 2                 | Staple Finisher-AC1  | Reference sensor:<br>Upper Escape Delivery Sensor (PS133)  | -> Duplex left Sensor (PS66)  |
|                   | Booklet Finisher-AC1   | Reference sensor:<br>Bottom Escape Delivery Sensor (PS111) | R-configuration (when the length exceeds LTR and up to A4R)                   |
|                   | Tray C (Stack Tray)  | Reference sensor:<br>Delivery Sensor (PS102)               | -> Duplex Merging Sensor (PS67)   |
|                   | Saddle area  | Reference sensor:<br>Saddle Inlet Sensor (PS101)           | Large (the length is A4R or larger)<br>-> Reverse Vertical Path Sensor (PS65) |

The default counters for each country (model) are listed below.

| Target                 | Number displayed for each counter (in service mode)/Item |                     |                |                 |           |           | Target region code                                       |
|------------------------|--|---------------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------|-----------|--|
|                        | Counter 1  | Counter 2           | Counter 3      | Counter 4       | Counter 5 | Counter 6 |  |
| 100V Japan model type1 | Total 1  | *1                  | *1             | *1              | *1        | *1        | JP   |
|                        | 101  | 000                 | 000            | 000             | 000       | 000       |  |
| 100V Japan model type2 | Total2   | Copy (Total2)       | Total A2       | *1              | *1        | *1        | JP   |
|                        | 102  | 202                 | 127            | 000             | 000       | 000       |  |
| 120V Taiwan model      | Total 1  | Total (Large)       | Copy (Total 1) | Copy (Large)    | *1        | *1        | TW   |
|                        | 101  | 103                 | 201            | 203             | 000       | 000       |  |
| 120V UL model type1    | Total 1  | Total (Large)       | Copy (Total 1) | Copy (Large)    | *1        | *1        | US   |
|                        | 101  | 103                 | 201            | 203             | 000       | 000       |  |
| 120V UL model type2    | Total2   | Copy (Total2)       | *1             | *1              | *1        | *1        | US   |
|                        | 102  | 202                 | 000            | 000             | 000       | 000       |  |
| 230V General model     | Total 1  | Total (Large)       | Copy (Total 1) | Copy (Large)    | *1        | *1        | SG/KO/CN   |
|                        | 101  | 103                 | 201            | 203             | 000       | 000       |  |
| 240V UK model type1    | Total (Black/Large)                                      | Total (Black/Small) | Scan (Total 1) | Print (Total 1) | *1        | *1        | GB   |
|                        | 112  | 113                 | 501            | 301             | 000       | 000       |  |
| 240V UK model type2    | Total 1  | *1                  | *1             | *1              | *1        | *1        | GB   |
|                        | 101  | 000                 | 000            | 000             | 000       | 000       |  |
| 240V CA model          | Total 1  | Total (Large)       | Copy (Total 1) | Copy (Large)    | *1        | *1        | AU   |
|                        | 101  | 103                 | 201            | 203             | 000       | 000       |  |
| 230V FRN model type1   | Total (Black/Large)                                      | Total (Black/Small) | Scan (Total 1) | Print (Total 1) | *1        | *1        | FR   |
|                        | 112  | 113                 | 501            | 301             | 000       | 000       |  |
| 230V FRN model type2   | Total 1  | *1                  | *1             | *1              | *1        | *1        | FR   |
|                        | 101  | 000                 | 000            | 000             | 000       | 000       |  |
| 230V GER model type1   | Total (Black/Large)                                      | Total (Black/Small) | Scan (Total 1) | Print (Total 1) | *1        | *1        | DE   |
|                        | 112  | 113                 | 501            | 301             | 000       | 000       |  |
| 230V GER model type2   | Total 1  | *1                  | *1             | *1              | *1        | *1        | DE   |
|                        | 101  | 000                 | 000            | 000             | 000       | 000       |  |
| 230V AMS model type1   | Total (Black/Large)                                      | Total (Black/Small) | Scan (Total 1) | Print (Total 1) | *1        | *1        | ES/SE/PT/NO/DK/FI/PL/HU/CZ/SI/GR/EE/RU/NL/SK/RO/HR/BG/TR |
|                        | 112  | 113                 | 501            | 301             | 000       | 000       |  |
| 230V AMS model type2   | Total 1  | *1                  | *1             | *1              | *1        | *1        | ES/SE/PT/NO/DK/FI/PL/HU/CZ/SI/GR/EE/RU/NL/SK/RO/HR/BG/TR |
|                        | 101  | 000                 | 000            | 000             | 000       | 000       |  |

| Target               | Number displayed for each counter (in service mode)/Item |                     |                     |                 |           |           | Target region code |
|----------------------|--|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------|-----------|-----------|--------------------|
|                      | Counter 1  | Counter 2           | Counter 3           | Counter 4       | Counter 5 | Counter 6 |                    |
| 230V ITA model type1 | Total (Black/Large)                                      | Total (Black/Small) | Scan (Total 1)      | Print (Total 1) | *1        | *1        | IT                 |
|                      | 112  | 113                 | 501                 | 301             | 000       | 000       |                    |
| 230V ITA model type2 | Total 1  | *1                  | *1                  | *1              | *1        | *1        | IT                 |
|                      | 101  | 000                 | 000                 | 000             | 000       | 000       |                    |
| 230VGeneral model    | Total 1  | Total (Black/Large) | Total (Black/Small) | *1              | *1        | *1        | CN                 |
|                      | 101  | 112                 | 113                 | 000             | 000       | 000       |                    |

\*1 : Hidden by default. Can be changed in service mode.

#### Description of symbols

- Large: Large size paper (when paper length exceeds 364 mm in paper feed direction)
- Small: Small size paper (when paper length is 364 mm or less in paper feed direction)
- Total: When a sheet of paper is delivered, the counter is advanced by 1
- 2-Sided: The counter is advanced by 1 for paper delivered in 2-sided mode
- Country/region code change of CONFIG is executed from COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > CONFIG.
- Three-digit number in the counter column shows the setting value of the following service mode items.  
COPIER > OPTION > USER > COUNTER1 to COUNTER6
- COUNTER 2 to COUNTER 6 can be changed in the following service mode.  
COPIER > OPTION > USER
- The change of the counter display type (New method/Conventional method) can be changed from the following service mode.  
COPIER > OPTION > USER > CNT-SW



# Technical Explanation (System)

Overview..... 200

## Overview

For following items, refer to the "imageRUNNER ADVANCE V3.x System Service Manual".

- System Management
- Authentication
- Security Function
- Firmware Management
- Management of System Options
- MEAP Application Management
- Backup/Restoration
- Monitoring ( e-Maintenance/imageWARE Remote ) Function



# Periodical Service

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Periodically Replaced Parts..... | 202 |
| Consumable Parts.....            | 204 |
| Periodical Maintenance.....      | 208 |



## Periodically Replaced Parts

### DADF

This DADF does not have parts that require periodical replacement.

### Reader

This Reader does not have parts that require periodical replacement.

### Printer

| No. | Parts name                                | Parts number *1 | Q'ty | Interval *2      | Service mode                     |                                   | Alarm Code     |                                     | Remark   |
|-----|---|-----------------|------|------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------|--|
|     |   |                 |      |                  | Parts counter (COUNTER > PRDC-1) | Consumption rate (COUNTER > LIFE) | Advance Notice | Replacement completion notification |  |
| 1   | Primary Charging Wire                     | FB4-3687        | 2    | 500,000 sheets   |                                  | PRM-WIRE                          | 40-0133        | 43-0133                             | With spring: FL3-4558<br>In a high temperature/humidity environment (30 deg C/ 80%), it is 250,000 sheets. |
| 2   | Primary Charging Wire cleaner             | FL2-7750        | 2    | 500,000 sheets   |                                  | PRM-CLN                           | 40-0350        | 43-0350                             | In a high temperature/humidity environment (30 deg C/ 80%), it is 250,000 sheets.                          |
| 3   | Primary Charging Wire Cleaner Holder      | FL3-7560        | 2    | 500,000 sheets   |                                  |                                   |                |                                     |  |
| 4   | Grid Wire                                 | FY1-0883        | 1    | 500,000 sheets   |                                  | -                                 | -              | -                                   | -  |
| 5   | Pre-transfer Charging Wire                | FB4-3687        | 1    | 500,000 sheets   |                                  | PO-WIRE                           | 40-0376        | 43-0376                             | With spring: FL3-4559<br>In a high temperature/humidity environment (30 deg C/ 80%), it is 250,000 sheets. |
| 6   | Pre-transfer Charging Wire cleaner        | FL2-7750        | 1    | 500,000 sheets   |                                  | PO-CLN                            | 40-0377        | 43-0377                             | In a high temperature/humidity environment (30 deg C/ 80%), it is 250,000 sheets.                          |
| 7   | Pre-transfer Charging Wire cleaner holder | FL3-7560        | 1    | 500,000 sheets   |                                  |                                   |                |                                     |  |
| 8   | Fixing Main Thermistor (THM010/ THM030)   | FK2-7683        | 1    | 500,000 sheets   |                                  | FIX-TH1                           | 40-0390        | 43-0390                             |  |
| 9   | Fixing Sub Thermistor 1 (THM020)          | FK2-7693        | 1    | 500,000 sheets   |                                  | FIX-TH2                           | 40-0391        | 43-0391                             |  |
| 10  | Ozone Filter                              | FL3-2134        | 1    | 6,000,000 sheets |                                  | OZ-FIL1                           | 40-0483        | 43-0483                             |  |

| No. | Parts name       | Parts number<br>*1 | Q'ty | Inter-<br>val<br>*2     | Service mode                                  |  | Alarm Code        |  | Remark |
|-----|------------------|--------------------|------|-------------------------|---|--|-------------------|--|--------|
|     |                  |                    |      |                         | Parts coun-<br>ter (COUN-<br>TER ><br>PRDC-1) | Consump-<br>tion rate<br>(COUNTER<br>> LIFE) | Advance<br>Notice | Replace-<br>ment com-<br>pletion noti-<br>fication |        |
| 11  | Dustproof Filter | FC8-956<br>4       | 1    | 2,000,0<br>00<br>sheets | AR-FIL1                                       |  | 40-0488           | 43-0488  |        |

\*1: The parts number may be changed due to engineering change.

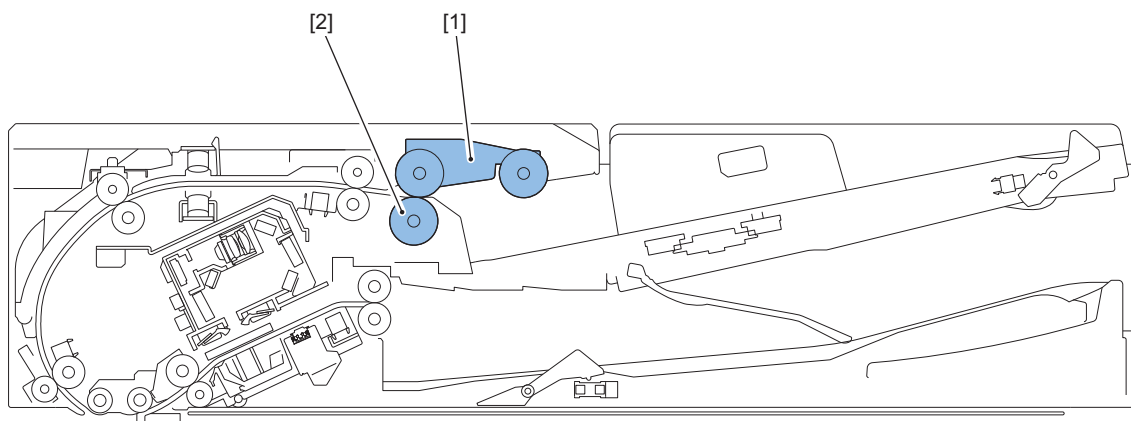
\*2: All the values described in this column are estimated replacement timing in A4 size. The replacement timing is a reference value in the case of usage in general offices, and the actual value differs depending on the customer environment, operation conditions in the field, etc.



This Option does not have parts that require periodical replacement.

## Consumable Parts

### DADF



| No. | Parts name         | Parts number<br>*1 | Q'ty | Interval<br>*2 | Service Mode                     |                                   | Alarm Code         |                                     |
|-----|--------------------|--------------------|------|----------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
|     |                    |                    |      |                | Parts counter (COUNTER > DRBL-2) | Consumption rate (COUNTER > LIFE) | Prior notification | Replacement completion notification |
| 1   | Pickup Roller Unit | FM1-T417           | 1    | 200,000 sheets |                                  | DF-PU-RL                          | 40-0125            | 43-0125                             |
| 2   | Separation Roller  | FM1-T423           | 1    | 200,000 sheets |                                  | DF-SP-RL                          | 40-0092            | 43-0092                             |

\*1: The parts number may be changed due to engineering change.

\*2: All the values described in this column are estimated replacement timing in A4 size. The replacement timing is a reference value in the case of usage in general offices, and the actual value differs depending on the customer environment, operation conditions in the field, etc.

### Reader

The reader does not have parts that are classified as durables.

### Printer

| No. | Parts name                     | Parts number<br>*1 | Q'ty | Interval<br>*2   | Service mode                       |                                   | Alarm Code         |                        | Remark  |
|-----|--------------------------------|--------------------|------|------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|---|
|     |                                |                    |      |                  | Parts counter (COUNTER > DRBL-1/2) | Consumption rate (COUNTER > LIFE) | Prior notification | Replacement completion |   |
| 1   | Primary Charging Assembly      | FM3-7288           | 1    | 1,000,000 sheets |                                    | PRM-UNIT                          | 40-0173            | 43-0173                |   |
| 2   | Pre-transfer Charging Assembly | FM3-7297           | 1    | 1,000,000 sheets |                                    | PO-UNIT                           | 40-0378            | 43-0378                |   |
| 3   | Developing Cylinder            | FM4-5438           | 1    | 1,000,000 sheets |                                    | DV-UNT-K                          | 40-0123            | 43-0123                | 500,000 in high temp/high hmdty environ (30 deg C/ 80%) |
| 4   | Developing Roller              | FC0-2276           | 2    | 1,000,000 sheets |                                    |                                   |                    |                        |   |

| No. | Parts name  | Parts number *1 | Q'ty | Interval *2    | Service mode                       |                                   | Alarm Code               |   | Remark   |
|-----|---|-----------------|------|----------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|---|--|
|     |   |                 |      |                | Parts counter (COUNTER > DRBL-1/2) | Consumption rate (COUNTER > LIFE) | Prior notification       | Replacement completion                                    |  |
| 5   | Drum Cleaning Blade   | FL3-6291        | 1    | 600,000 sheets | CLN-BLD                            |                                   | 40-0193                  | 43-0193   | The blade movement is reversed at every 300,000 sheets (1-sided).                |
| 6   | Drum Separation Claw  | FB4-8018        | 3    | 500,000 sheets | SP-CLAW                            |                                   | 40-0354                  | 43-0354   | In a high temperature/humidity environment (30 deg C/80%), it is 250,000 sheets. |
| 7   | Drum Front Side Seal  | FC9-9024        | 1    | 500,000 sheets | BS-SL-F                            |                                   | 40-0352                  | 43-0352   |  |
| 8   | Drum Rear Side Seal   | FC9-9024        | 1    | 500,000 sheets | BS-SL-R                            |                                   | 40-0353                  | 43-0353   |  |
| 9   | Pre-exposure Scraper  | FC9-9153        | 2    | 500,000 sheets | EXP-SCRIP                          |                                   | 40-0355                  | 43-0355   | Clean with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.                               |
| 10  | ETB   | FC8-7160        | 1    | 500,000 sheets | TR-BLT                             |                                   | 40-0006                  | 43-0006   |  |
| 11  | Transfer Roller   | FC8-7159        | 1    | 500,000 sheets | TR-ROLL                            |                                   | 40-0013                  | 43-0013   |  |
| 12  | Brush Roller  | FC8-7175        | 1    | 500,000 sheets | T-CN-BRU                           |                                   | 40-372                   | 43-0372   |  |
| 13  | ETB Cleaning Blade  | FC6-1647        | 1    | 500,000 sheets | T-CLN-BD                           |                                   | 40-0370                  | 43-0370   |  |
| 14  | Fixing Cleaning Web   | FE2-E540        | 1    | 500,000 sheets | FX-WEB1                            |                                   | -                        | 43-0419   |  |
| 15  | Fixing Roller   | FM0-3465        | 1    | 500,000 sheets | FX-UP-RL                           |                                   | 40-0389                  | 43-0389   |  |
| 16  | Fixing Roller Insulating Bush                               | FM1-C081        | 2    | 500,000 sheets | FX-IN-BS                           |                                   | -                        | -   |  |
| 17  | Fixing Roller Thrust retainer                               | FC6-3501        | 2    | 500,000 sheets | FX-RTNR                            |                                   | 40-0394                  | 43-0394   | Be sure to replace it together with the Fixing Roller.                           |
| 18  | Pressure Roller Unit  | FM4-3160        | 1    | 500,000 sheets | FX-LW-RL                           |                                   | 40-0398                  | 43-0398   |  |
| 19  | Pressure Roller Static Eliminator                           | FC7-4287        | 1    | 500,000 sheets | FX-L-STC                           |                                   | 40-0402                  | 43-0402   |  |
| 20  | Upper Separation Claw                                       | FB5-3625        | 6    | 500,000 sheets | DLV-UCLW                           |                                   | 40-0470                  | 43-0470   | Clean this part when it is not replaced. Alcohol, lint-free paper                |
| 21  | Cassette 3 Pickup Roller / Cassette 4 Pickup Roller         | FC5-2524        | 2    | 500,000 sheets | 3: C3-PU-RL<br>4: C4-PU-RL         | 3: 40-0085<br>4: 40-0088          | 3: 43-0085<br>4: 43-0088 | Actual use in terms of number of prints; 1 pc. each (3/4) |  |
| 22  | Cassette 3 Feed Roller / Cassette 4 Feed Roller             | FC5-2526        | 2    | 500,000 sheets | 3: C3-FD-RL<br>4: C4-FD-RL         | 3: 40-0086<br>4: 40-0089          | 3: 43-0086<br>4: 43-0089 | Actual use in terms of number of prints; 1 pc. each (3/4) |  |
| 23  | Cassette 3 Separation Roller / Cassette 4 Separation Roller | FC5-2528        | 2    | 500,000 sheets | 3: C3-SP-RL<br>4: C4-SP-RL         | 3: 40-0087<br>4: 40-0090          | 3: 43-0087<br>4: 43-0090 | Actual use in terms of number of prints; 1 pc. each (3/4) |  |

| No. | Parts name   | Parts number<br>*1 | Q'ty | Interval<br>*2 | Service mode                             |   | Alarm Code                      |                                 | Remark   |
|-----|--|--------------------|------|----------------|--|---|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|
|     |  |                    |      |                | Parts counter<br>(COUNTER ><br>DRBL-1/2) | Consumption rate<br>(COUNTER ><br>LIFE) | Prior notification              | Replacement completion          |  |
| 24  | Right Deck Pickup Roller / Left Deck Pickup Roller         | FC5-2524           | 2    | 500,000 sheets | Right: C1-PU-RL<br>Left: C2-PU-RL        |   | Right: 40-0079<br>Left: 40-0082 | Right: 43-0079<br>Left: 43-0082 | Actual use in terms of number of prints. 1 pc. each (Left/Right) |
| 25  | Right Deck Feed Roller / Left Deck Feed Roller             | FC5-2526           | 2    | 500,000 sheets | Right: C1-FD-RL<br>Left: C2-FD-RL        |   | Right: 40-0080<br>Left: 40-0083 | Right: 43-0080<br>Left: 43-0083 | Actual use in terms of number of prints. 1 pc. each (Left/Right) |
| 26  | Right Deck Separation Roller / Left Deck Separation Roller | FC5-2528           | 2    | 500,000 sheets | Right: C1-SP-RL<br>Left: C2-SP-RL        |   | Right: 40-0081<br>Left: 40-0084 | Right: 43-0081<br>Left: 43-0084 | Actual use in terms of number of prints. 1 pc. each (Left/Right) |
| 27  | Multi-purpose Tray Separation Roller                       | FC6-6661           | 1    | 120,000 sheets | M-SP-RL                                  |   | 40-0078                         | 43-0078                         | Actual use in terms of number of prints                          |
| 28  | Multi-purpose Tray Feed Roller                             | FB1-8581           | 1    | 120,000 sheets | M-FD-RL                                  |   | 40-0077                         | 43-0077                         | Actual use in terms of number of prints                          |

\*1: The parts number may be changed due to engineering change.

\*2: All the values described in this column are estimated replacement timing in A4 size. The replacement timing is a reference value in the case of usage in general offices, and the actual value differs depending on the customer environment, operation conditions in the field, etc.

## Options

### Paper Deck Unit-E1

| No. | Parts name             | Parts number | Q'ty | Interval         | Service mode                     |                                   | Alarm Code     |                                     |
|-----|------------------------|--------------|------|------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------|
|     |                        |              |      |                  | Parts counter (COUNTER > DRBL-2) | Consumption rate (COUNTER > LIFE) | Advance Notice | Replacement completion notification |
| 1   | Deck Pickup Roller     | FL0-4500     | 1    | 1,000,000 sheets |                                  | PD-PU-RL                          | 40-0568        | 43-0568                             |
| 2   | Deck Feed Roller       | FC0-9450     | 1    | 1,000,000 sheets |                                  | PD-FD-RL                          | 40-0576        | 43-0576                             |
| 3   | Deck Separation Roller | FC0-9631     | 1    | 1,000,000 sheets |                                  | PD-SP-RL                          | 40-0572        | 43-0572                             |

### POD Deck Lite-C1

| No. | Parts name             | Parts number | Q'ty | Interval         | Service mode                     |                                   | Alarm Code     |                                     |
|-----|------------------------|--------------|------|------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------|
|     |                        |              |      |                  | Parts counter (COUNTER > DRBL-2) | Consumption rate (COUNTER > LIFE) | Advance Notice | Replacement completion notification |
| 1   | Deck Pickup Roller     | FL0-4500     | 1    | 1,000,000 sheets |                                  | PD-PU-RL                          | 40-0568        | 43-0568                             |
| 2   | Deck Feed Roller       | FC0-9450     | 1    | 1,000,000 sheets |                                  | PD-FD-RL                          | 40-0576        | 43-0576                             |
| 3   | Deck Separation Roller | FC0-9631     | 1    | 1,000,000 sheets |                                  | PD-SP-RL                          | 40-0572        | 43-0572                             |

## Paper Folding Inserter Unit-J1

| No. | Parts name        | Parts number | Q'ty | Interval        | Counter |          |
|-----|-------------------|--------------|------|-----------------|---------|----------|
| 1   | Pickup Roller     | 4A3-3870     | 1    | 100,000 sheets  | DRBL-2  | IS-P-RL1 |
| 2   | Feed Roller       | 4A3-3869     | 1    | 100,000 sheets  | DRBL-2  | IS-F-RL1 |
| 3   | Separation Roller | 4A3-3868     | 1    | 100,000 sheets  | DRBL-2  | IS-S-RL1 |
| 4   | Torque limiter    | 4A3-3888     | 1    | 1,000,000 times | DRBL-2  | IS-TQLM  |

## Document Insertion Unit-P1

| No. | Parts name        | Parts number | Q'ty | Interval        | Counter |          |
|-----|-------------------|--------------|------|-----------------|---------|----------|
| 1   | Pickup roller     | 4A3-3870     | 1    | 100,000 sheets  | DRBL-2  | IS-P-RL1 |
| 2   | Feed roller       | 4A3-3869     | 1    | 100,000 sheets  | DRBL-2  | IS-F-RL1 |
| 3   | Separation roller | 4A3-3868     | 1    | 100,000 sheets  | DRBL-2  | IS-S-RL1 |
| 4   | Torque limiter    | 4A3-3888     | 1    | 1,000,000 times | DRBL-2  | IS-TQLM  |

## Staple Finisher-AC1

| No. | Parts name                | Parts number | Q'ty | Interval        | Counter |          |
|-----|---------------------------|--------------|------|-----------------|---------|----------|
| 1   | Staple Unit               | FM1-H337     | 1    | 500,000 times   | DRBL-2  | FIN-STPR |
| 2   | Staple-free Staple Unit   | FM1-K422     | 1    | 30,000 times    | DRBL-2  | FR-STPL  |
| 3   | Stack Tray Torque Limiter | FE3-9778     | 2    | 200,000 times   | DRBL-2  | TRY-TQLM |
| 4   | Paddle Unit               | FE3-6957     | 4    | 1,000,000 times | DRBL-2  | FIN-MPDL |
| 5   | Paper Retainer Lever      | FM1-U597     | 2    | 3,000,000 times | DRBL-2  |          |

## Booklet Finisher-AC1

| No. | Parts name                | Parts number | Q'ty | Interval        | Counter |          |
|-----|---------------------------|--------------|------|-----------------|---------|----------|
| 1   | Staple Unit               | FM1-H337     | 1    | 500,000 times   | DRBL-2  | FIN-STPR |
| 2   | Stitcher Unit             | FL0-6966     | 1    | 100,000 times   | DRBL-2  | SDL-STP  |
| 3   | Staple-free Staple Unit   | FM1-K422     | 1    | 30,000 times    | DRBL-2  | FR-STPL  |
| 4   | Stack Tray Torque Limiter | FE3-9778     | 2    | 200,000 times   | DRBL-2  | TRY-TQLM |
| 5   | Paddle Unit               | FE3-6957     | 4    | 1,000,000 times | DRBL-2  | FIN-MPDL |
| 6   | Paper Retainer Lever      | FM1-U597     | 2    | 3,000,000 times | DRBL-2  |          |

## Periodical Maintenance

### Printer

△: Cleaning, ×: Lubrication, □: Adjustment, ◎: Inspection

|    | Location for maintenance   | Interval           | Details | Remark  |
|----|--|--------------------|---------|---|
| 1  | Shield Plate for Charging Assemblies                                     | 500,000 pages      | △       | In a high temperature/humidity environment (30 deg C/80%), it is 250,000 sheets                                   |
| 2  | Primary Duct Toner Blocking Sheet  | 500,000 pages      | △       | In a high temperature/humidity environment (30 deg C/80%), it is 250,000 sheets                                   |
| 3  | Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Dust Collecting Roller Assembly           | 500,000 pages      | △       | In a high temperature/humidity environment (30 deg C/80%), it is 250,000 sheets                                   |
| 4  | Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Dust Collecting Roller Electrode Assembly | 500,000 pages      | △       | In a high temperature/humidity environment (30 deg C/80%), it is 250,000 sheets                                   |
| 5  | ETB Drive Roller/Idler Roller  | 500,000 pages      | △       |   |
| 6  | Dustproof Glass  | 500,000 pages      | △       |   |
| 7  | Photosensitive Drum  | 300,000 pages      | △       | Use alcohol + cleaning powder (CK-0429)<br>Perform when replacing the Cleaning Blade                              |
| 8  | Drum Heater Sliding Assembly   | 1,000,000 pages    | △/×     |   |
| 9  | Drum Cleaning Unit Plate   | 500,000 pages      | △       |   |
| 10 | Cleaner Separation Claw Mounting Plate                                   | 500,000 pages      | △       |   |
| 11 | Developing Roller  | 500,000 pages      | △       |   |
| 12 | Transfer Separation Guide/Static Eliminator                              | 500,000 pages      | △       |   |
| 13 | Delivery Separation Claw   | 500,000 pages      | △       |   |
| 14 | Fixing Oil Receiver  | 500,000 pages      | △       |   |
| 15 | Fixing Inlet Guide/ Sensor/ Dowel Assembly                               | 500,000 pages      | △       |   |
| 16 | Scanner Sensor (Pickup Assembly)   | 500,000 pages      | △       | Perform when replacing the Separation Roller  |
| 17 | Scanner Sensor (Feed Assembly)   | 1,000,000 pages    | △       |   |
| 18 | Developing Toner Blocking Sheet  | 500,000 pages      | △       |   |
| 19 | Developing Assembly Lower Side   | 500,000 pages      | △       |   |
| 20 | The host machine surface below the Developing Assembly                   | Whenever needed    | △       | Perform when removing the Developing Assembly   |
| 21 | Feed Rollers (Brush)/Rollers/Guides                                      | 500,000 pages      | △       |   |
| 22 | Registration Unit Magnet/Plastic Film                                    | 500,000 pages      | △       |   |
| 23 | Patch Sensor   | 500,000 pages      | △       |   |
| 24 | Waste Toner Container  | 500,000 pages      | ◎/△     | Remove waste toner and clean the container when the message is displayed.<br>Estimated by A4 size, image ratio 5% |
| 25 | Leakage Breaker  | Once or twice/year | ◎       |   |

### DADF

△: Cleaning, ×: Lubrication, □: Adjustment, ◎: Inspection

#### Single Pass DADF-C1

|   | Location for maintenance | Interval    | Details | Remark   |
|---|--------------------------|-------------|---------|--|
| 1 | Post-Separation Sensor   | When needed | △       | Performed as needed during a visit for parts replacement, etc. |
| 2 | Registration Roller      | When needed | △       |  |
| 3 | Lead Roller 1            | When needed | △       |  |
| 4 | Lead Roller 2            | When needed | △       |  |
| 5 | Delivery Roller          | When needed | △       |  |
| 6 | Pullout Roller           | When needed | △       |  |

|    | Location for maintenance                 | Interval    | Details | Remark   |
|----|--|-------------|---------|--|
| 7  | Rollers/Slave Rollers                    | When needed | △       | Performed as needed during a visit for parts replacement, etc. |
| 8  | Original Tray Sensor                     | When needed | △       |  |
| 9  | Double Feed Sensor (lightemitting side)  | When needed | △       |  |
| 10 | Double Feed Sensor (lightreceiving side) | When needed | △       |  |
| 11 | ADF height adjustment                    | When needed | □       |  |

**CAUTION:**

See Service Manual of the ADF (Single Pass DADF-C1) for Cleaning/Check/Adjustment Locations, Parts Replacement and Cleaning Procedure of the ADF.

## Options

△: Cleaning, ×: Lubrication, □: Adjustment, ◎: Inspection

### POD Deck Lite-C1

|   | Location for maintenance    | Interval        | Details | Remark |
|---|-----------------------------|-----------------|---------|--------|
| 1 | Deck pull-put roller/collar | Whenever needed | △       |        |
| 2 | Deck Pickup Roller          | Whenever needed | △       |        |
| 3 | Deck Feed Roller            | Whenever needed | △       |        |
| 4 | Deck Separation Roller      | Whenever needed | △       |        |

### Staple Finisher-AC1/Booklet Finisher-AC1

|   | Location for maintenance | Interval        | Details | Remark |
|---|--------------------------|-----------------|---------|--------|
| 1 | Transmission Sensor      | Whenever needed | △       |        |
| 2 | Each Roller              | Whenever needed | △       |        |

### Shift Tray-F1

|   | Location for maintenance | Interval      | Details | Remark |
|---|--------------------------|---------------|---------|--------|
| 1 | Height Sensor            | 250,000 pages | △       |        |

### Paper Deck Unit-E1

|   | Location for maintenance    | Interval        | Details | Remark |
|---|-----------------------------|-----------------|---------|--------|
| 1 | Deck pull-put roller/collar | Whenever needed | △       |        |
| 2 | Deck Pickup Roller          | Whenever needed | △       |        |
| 3 | Deck Feed Roller            | Whenever needed | △       |        |
| 4 | Deck Separation Roller      | Whenever needed | △       |        |

### Booklet Trimmer-F1

|   | Location for maintenance | Interval               | Details | Remark  |
|---|--------------------------|------------------------|---------|---|
| 1 | Feed Belt                | Every 200,000 booklets | △       | Wipe soiling from surface using alcohol       |
| 2 | Booklet Sensor           | Every 200,000 booklets | △       | Use the blower brush and remove dusts and oil |





# 5

## Parts Replacement and Cleaning

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Preface.....                   | 211 |
| Parts List.....                | 212 |
| Original Feed System.....      | 246 |
| Original Exposure System.....  | 277 |
| Controller System.....         | 297 |
| Laser Exposure System.....     | 322 |
| Image Formation System.....    | 329 |
| Fixing System.....             | 447 |
| Pickup Feed System.....        | 482 |
| External Auxiliary System..... | 537 |

## Preface

### Outline

This chapter describes disassembly and reassembly procedures of the printer.

The service technician is to identify the cause of printer failures according to the "Chapter 6 TROUBLESHOOTING" and to follow the disassembly procedures of each part to replace the defective parts or the consumable parts.

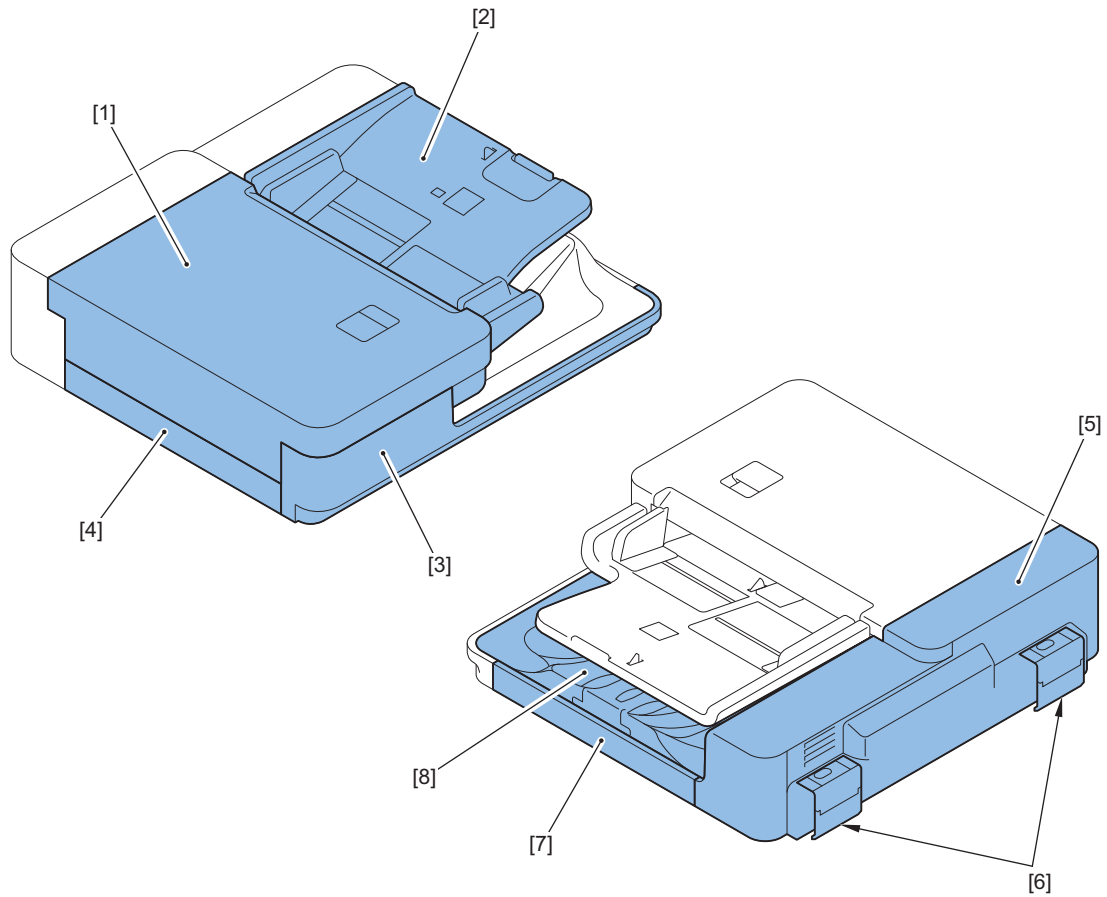
Note the following precautions when working on the printer.

1. CAUTION: Before disassembling or reassembling the printer, be sure to disconnect its power cord from the electrical outlet
2. During disassembly, reassembly or transportation of the printer, remove the cartridge if required.  
When the cartridge is out of the printer, put it in a protective bag even in a short period of time to prevent the adverse effect of light.
3. Reassembling procedures are followed by the reverse of disassembly unless otherwise specified.
4. Note the length, diameters, and locations of screws as you remove them. When reassembling the printer, be sure to use them in their original locations.
5. Do not run the printer with any parts removed as a general rule.
6. Ground yourself by touching the metal part of the printer before handling the PCB to reduce the possibility of damage caused by static electricity.
7. When you replace the part that the rating plate or the product code label is attached, be sure to remove the rating plate or the product code label and put it to the new part.

## Parts List

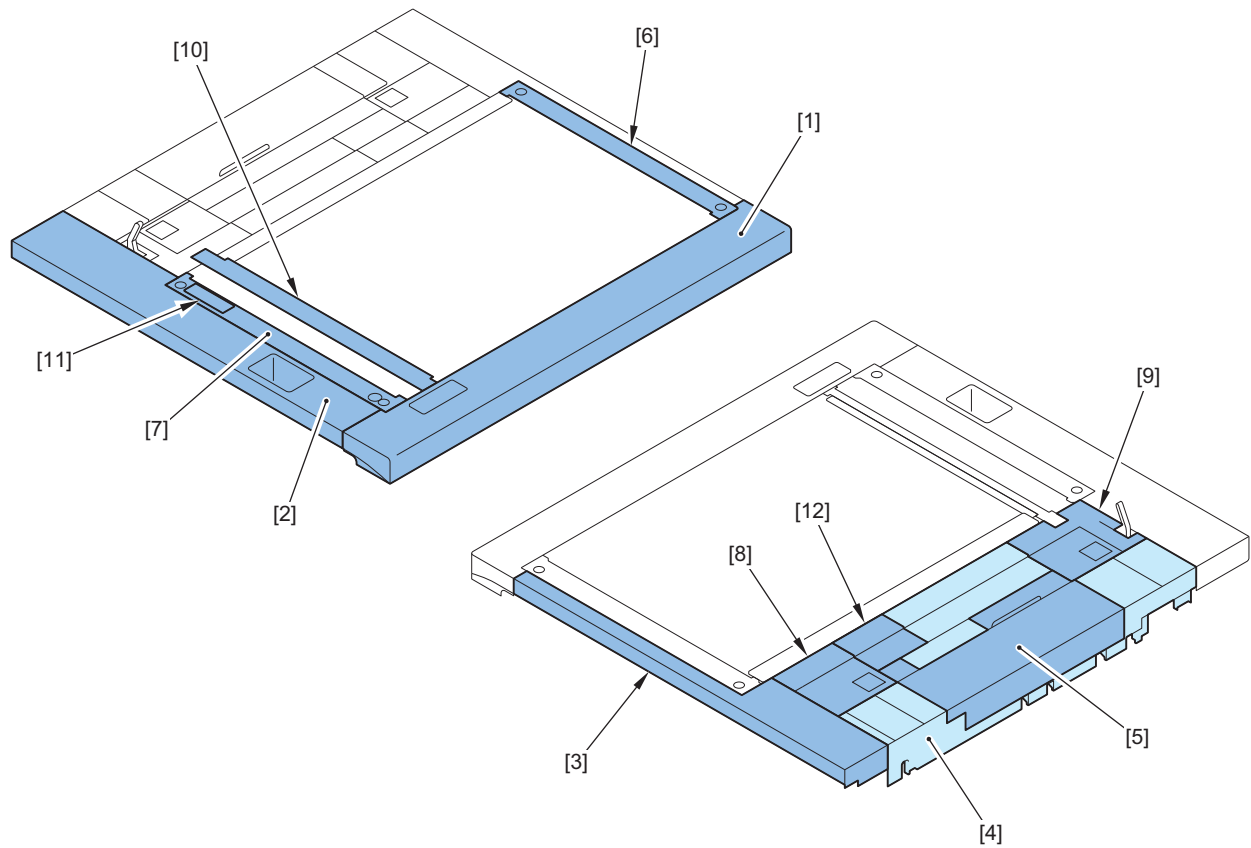
### List of External / Internal Cover

#### ADF



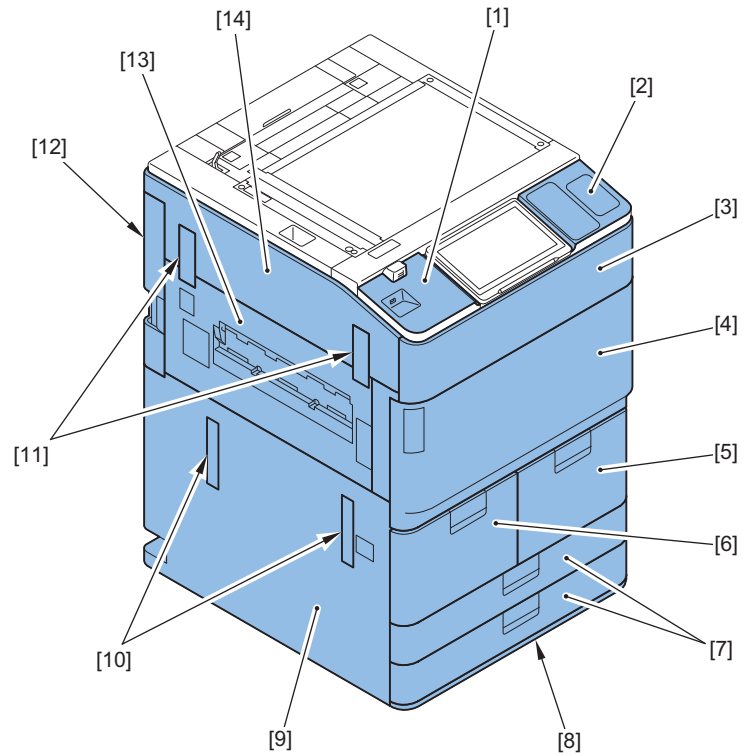
| No. | Name                 |  |
|-----|----------------------|--|
| [1] | Open/Close Cover     |  |
| [2] | Document Tray        |  |
| [3] | ADF Front Cover      |  |
| [4] | ADF Left Lower Cover |  |
| [5] | ADF Rear Cover       |  |
| [6] | Hinge Cover          |  |
| [7] | ADF Right Cover      |  |
| [8] | Delivery Tray        |  |

## ■ Reader

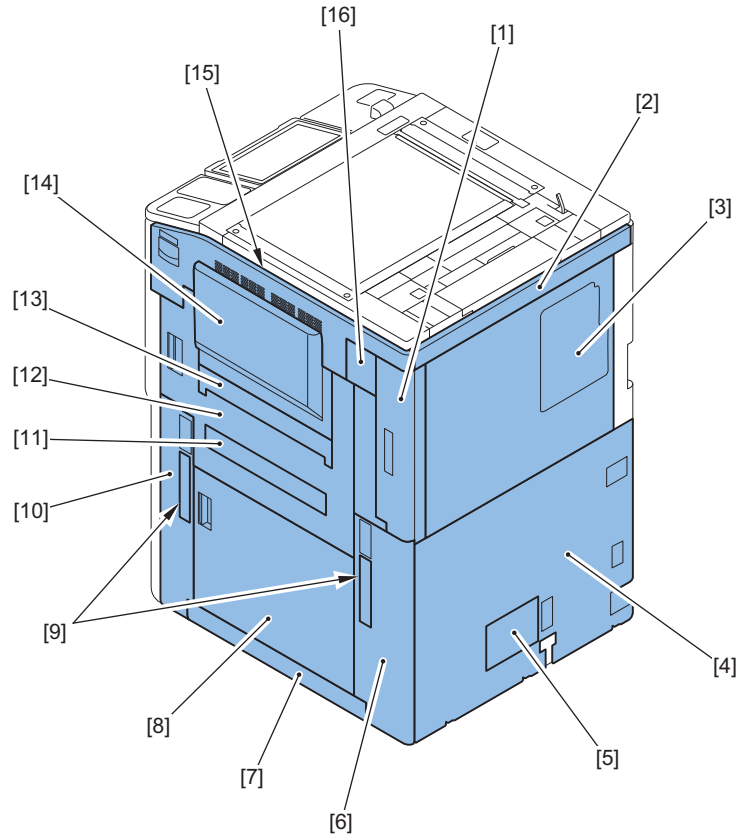


| No.  | Name                       |  |
|------|----------------------------|--|
| [1]  | Reader Front Cover         |  |
| [2]  | Reader Left Cover          |  |
| [3]  | Reader Right Cover         |  |
| [4]  | Reader Rear Cover          |  |
| [5]  | Maintenance Cover          |  |
| [6]  | Glass Retainer Right Cover |  |
| [7]  | Glass Retainer Left Cover  |  |
| [8]  | Right Hinge Lower Cover    |  |
| [9]  | Left Hinge Lower Cover     |  |
| [10] | Jump Guide                 |  |
| [11] | Left Upper Cover           |  |
| [12] | Maintenance Cover (Upper)  |  |

## ■ Printer



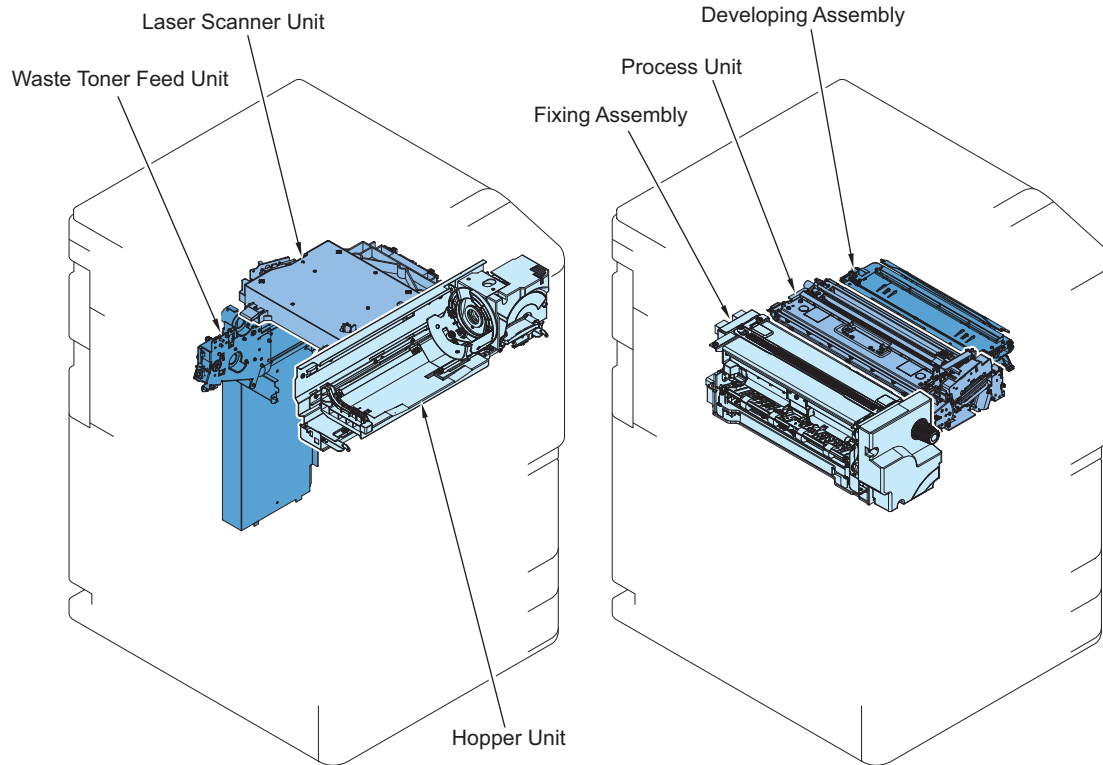
| No.  | Name                            |  |
|------|---------------------------------|--|
| [1]  | Control Panel Left Upper Cover  |  |
| [2]  | Control Panel Right Upper Cover |  |
| [3]  | Toner Replacement Cover         |  |
| [4]  | Front Cover                     |  |
| [5]  | Deck Right Cover                |  |
| [6]  | Deck Left Cover                 |  |
| [7]  | Cassette Front Cover            |  |
| [8]  | Cassette Lower Cover            |  |
| [9]  | Left Lower Cover                |  |
| [10] | Handle Cover                    |  |
| [11] | Finisher Connector Cover        |  |
| [12] | Left Rear Cover                 |  |
| [13] | Delivery Cover                  |  |
| [14] | Left Upper Cover                |  |



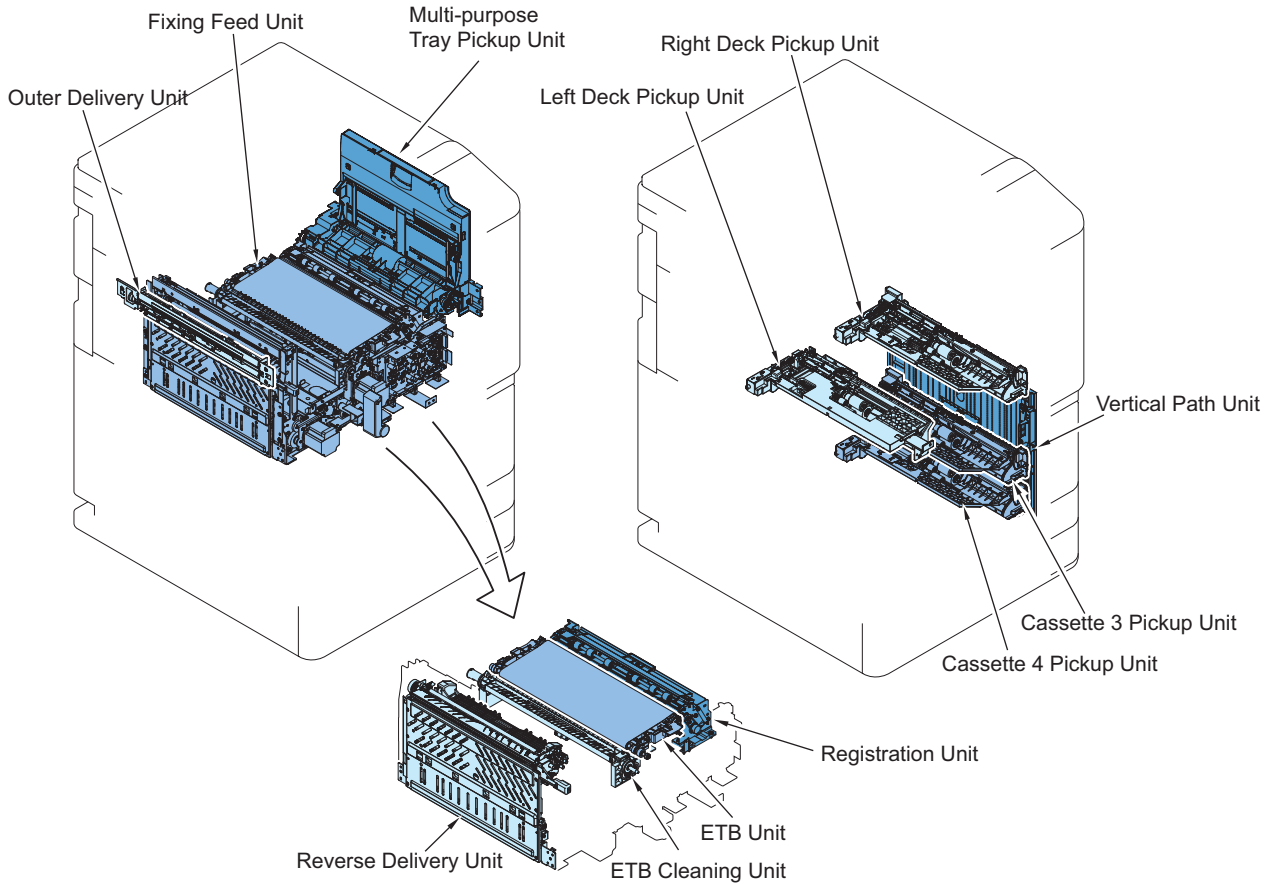
| No.  | Name                         |  |
|------|------------------------------|--|
| [1]  | Box Right Cover              |  |
| [2]  | Box Upper Cover              |  |
| [3]  | Rear Upper Cover             |  |
| [4]  | Rear Lower Cover             |  |
| [5]  | Filter Cover                 |  |
| [6]  | Waste Toner Container Cover  |  |
| [7]  | Right Lower Middle Cover     |  |
| [8]  | Vertical Path Cover          |  |
| [9]  | Handle Cover                 |  |
| [10] | Right Lower Front Cover      |  |
| [11] | Duplex Delivery Cover        |  |
| [12] | Right Door                   |  |
| [13] | Multi-purpose Tray Sub Cover |  |
| [14] | Multi-purpose Tray           |  |
| [15] | Right Upper Cover            |  |
| [16] | Right Rear Cover             |  |

## List of Main Unit

### ■ Printer

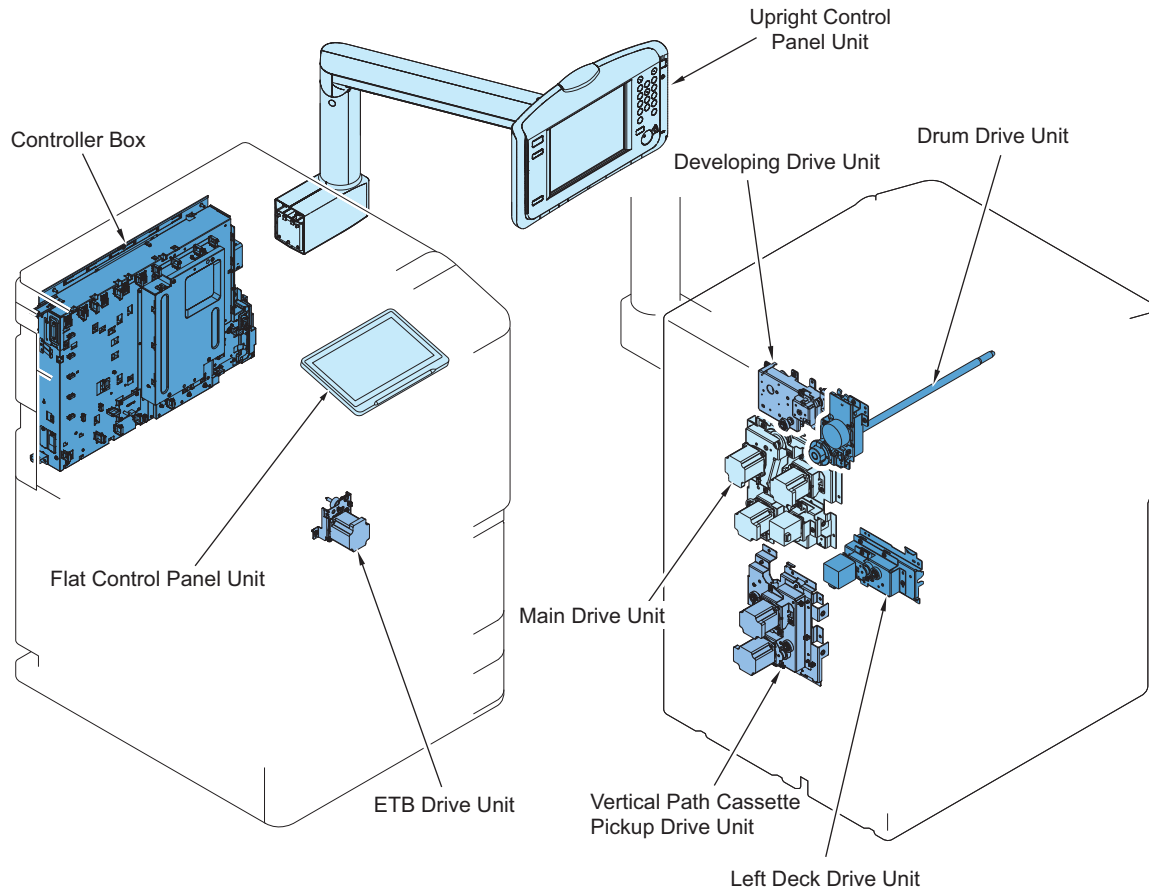


| No  | Name                  | Reference  |
|-----|-----------------------|--|
| [1] | Waste Toner Feed Unit | "Removing the Waste Toner Feed Unit" on page 435 |
| [2] | Laser Scanner Unit    | "Removing the Laser Scanner Unit" on page 322    |
| [3] | Hopper Unit           | "Removing the Hopper Unit" on page 419           |
| [4] | Fixing Assembly       | "Removing the Fixing Assembly" on page 447       |
| [5] | Process Unit          | "Removing the Process Unit" on page 357          |
| [6] | Developing Assembly   | "Removing the Developing Assembly" on page 377   |



| No   | Name                           | Reference  |
|------|--------------------------------|--|
| [7]  | Outer Delivery Unit            | -  |
| [8]  | Fixing Feed Unit               | -  |
| [9]  | Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Unit | -  |
| [10] | Left Deck Pickup Unit          | <a href="#">"Removing the Left Deck Pickup Unit" on page 509</a>         |
| [11] | Right Deck Pickup Unit         | <a href="#">"Removing the Right Deck Pickup Unit" on page 510</a>        |
| [12] | Vertical Path Unit             | -  |
| [13] | Cassette 3 Pickup Unit         | <a href="#">"Removing the Cassettes 3 and 4 Pickup Unit" on page 512</a> |
| [14] | Cassette 4 Pickup Unit         | <a href="#">"Removing the Cassettes 3 and 4 Pickup Unit" on page 512</a> |
| [15] | Registration Unit              | <a href="#">"Removing the Registration Unit" on page 521</a>             |
| [16] | Reverse Delivery Unit          | -  |
| [17] | ETB Cleaning Unit              | <a href="#">"Removing the ETB Unit" on page 388</a>                      |
| [18] | ETB Unit                       | <a href="#">"Removing the ETB Unit" on page 388</a>                      |



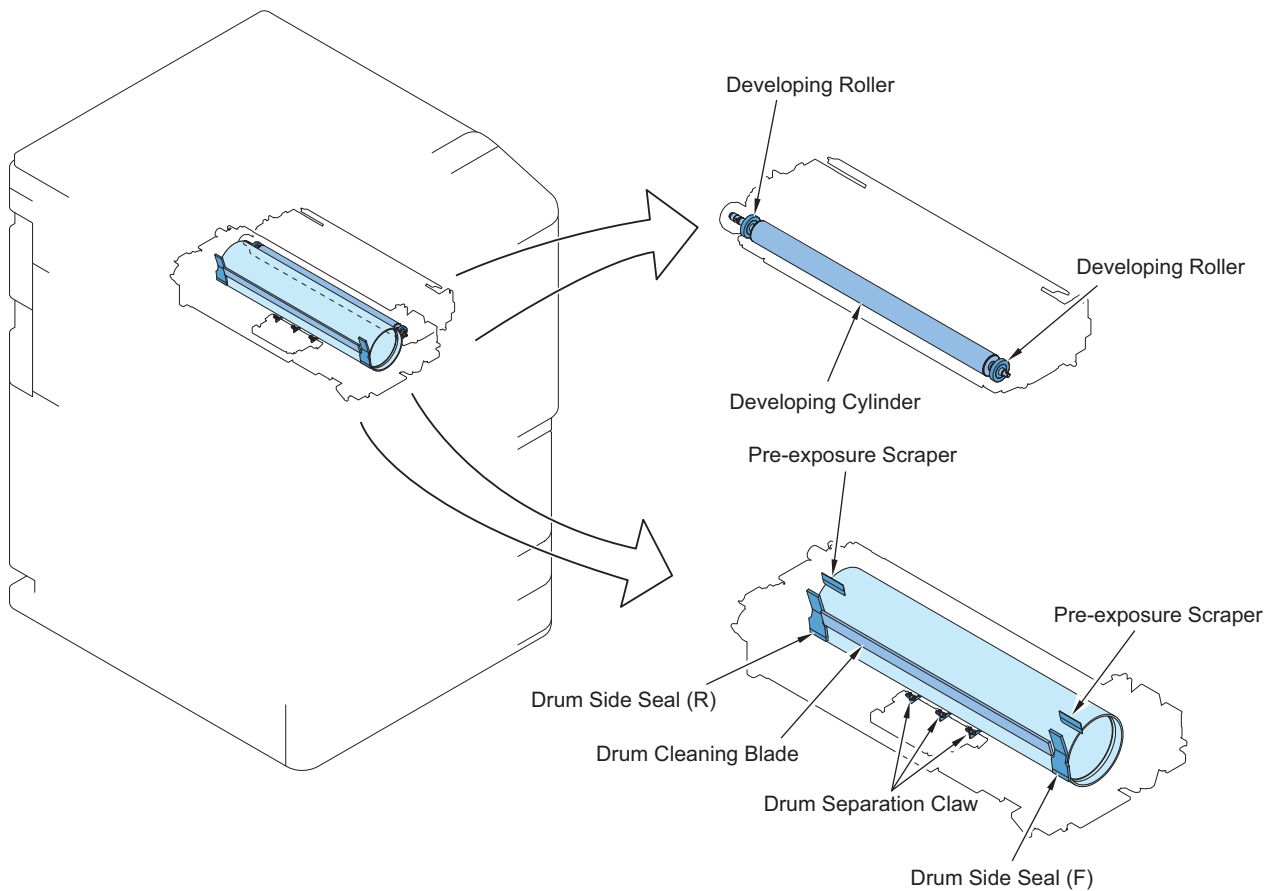


| No   | Name                                     | Reference   |
|------|--|---|
| [19] | Flat Control Panel Unit                  | <a href="#">"Removing the Flat Control Panel Unit" on page 306</a>                  |
| [20] | Upright Control Panel Unit               | <a href="#">"Removing the Upright Control Panel" on page 315</a>                    |
| [21] | Controller Box                           | -   |
| [22] | Drum Drive Unit                          | <a href="#">"Removing the Drum Drive Unit" on page 440</a>                          |
| [23] | Developing Drive Unit                    | <a href="#">"Removing the Developing Drive Unit" on page 443</a>                    |
| [24] | Main Drive Unit                          | <a href="#">"Removing the Main Drive Unit" on page 528</a>                          |
| [25] | Vertical Path Cassette Pickup Drive Unit | <a href="#">"Removing the Vertical Path Cassette Pickup Drive Unit" on page 515</a> |
| [26] | Left Deck Drive Unit                     | <a href="#">"Removing the Left Deck Pickup Drive Unit" on page 527</a>              |
| [27] | ETB Drive Unit                           | <a href="#">"Removing the ETB Drive Unit" on page 412</a>                           |

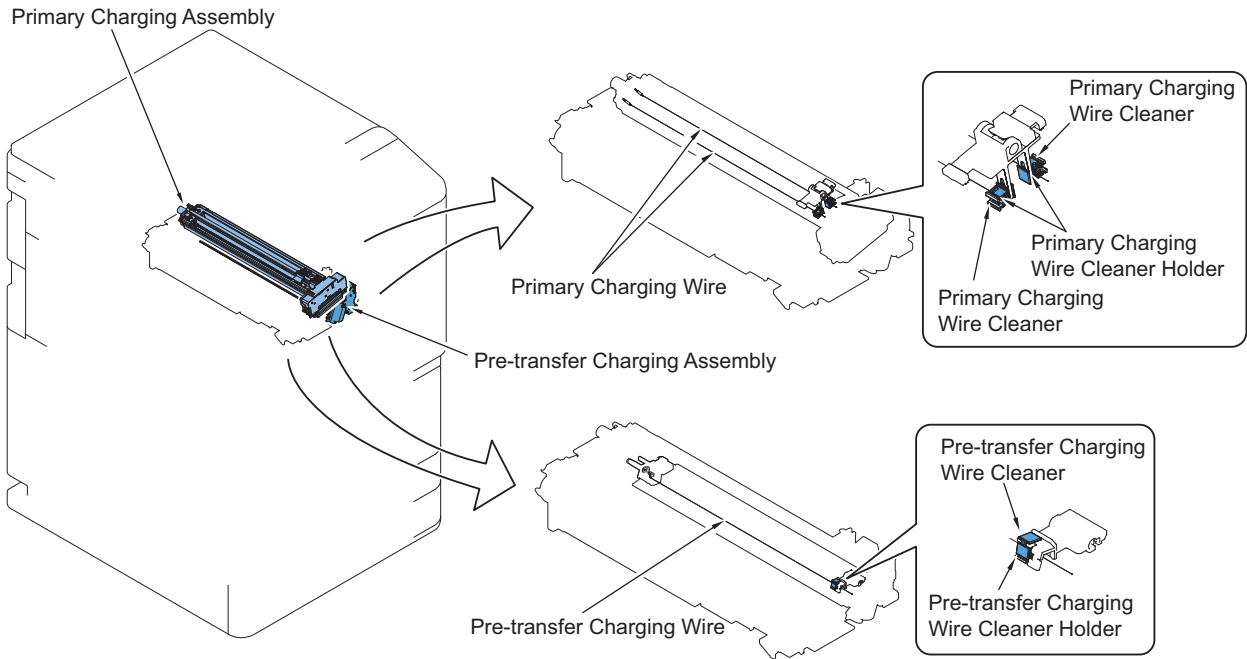
## Periodic Replacing Parts, Durable Parts, Cleaning Parts

### Printer

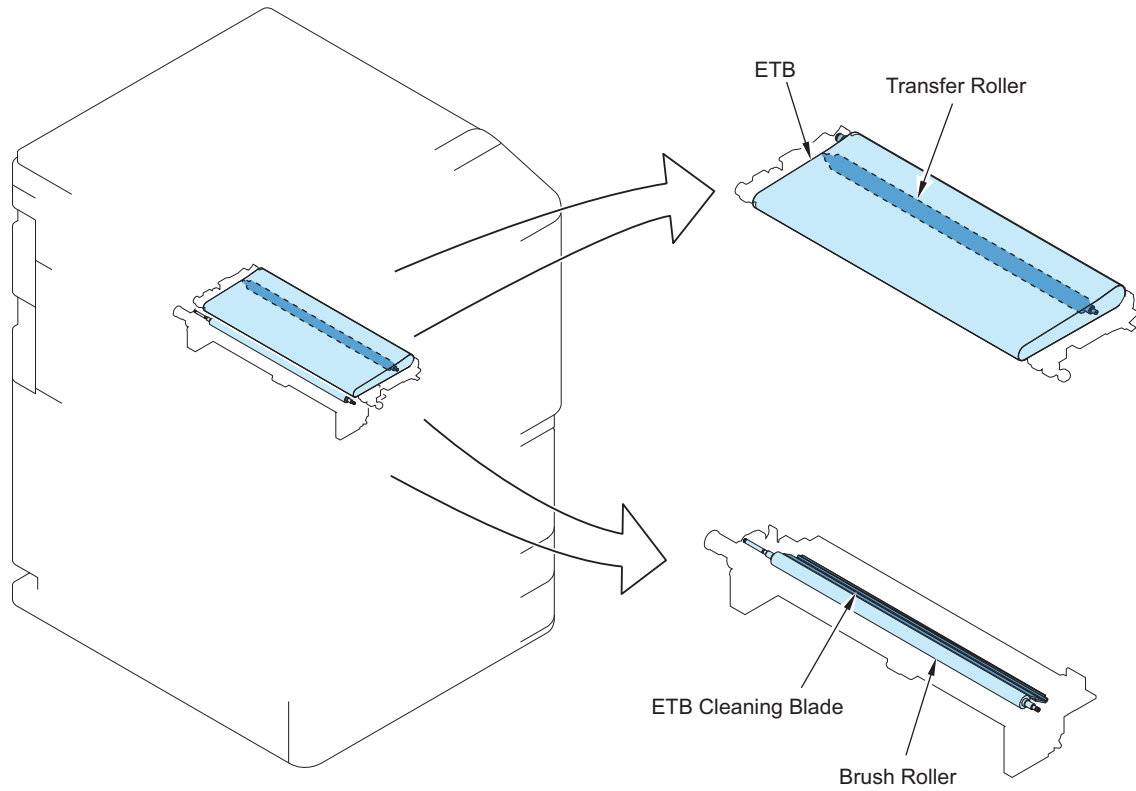
#### Periodic Replacing Parts, Durable Parts



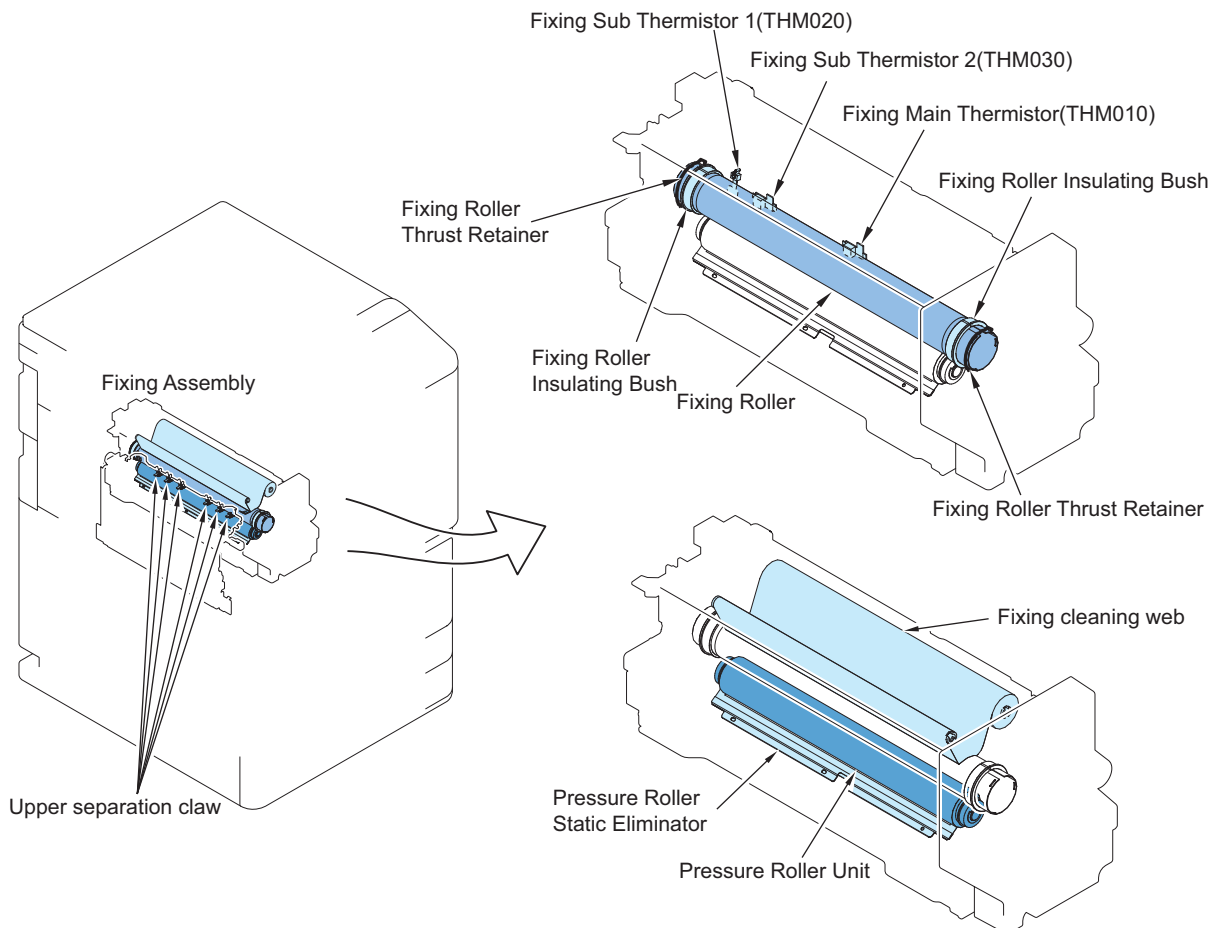
| No  | Name                  | Main Unit           | Reference  |
|-----|-----------------------|---------------------|--|
| [1] | Developing Cylinder   | Developing Assembly | "Removing the Developing Cylinder and the Developing Roller" on page 382 |
| [2] | Developing Roller     | Developing Assembly | "Removing the Developing Cylinder and the Developing Roller" on page 382 |
| [3] | Drum Side Seal(Rear)  | Process Unit        | "Removing the Side Seal" on page 375                                     |
| [4] | Drum Cleaning Blade   | Process Unit        | "Removing the Drum Cleaning Blade" on page 361                           |
| [5] | Drum Separation Claw  | Process Unit        | "Removing the Cleaner Separation Claw" on page 374                       |
| [6] | Drum Side Seal(Front) | Process Unit        | "Removing the Side Seal" on page 375                                     |
| [7] | Pre-exposure Scraper  | Drum Cleaning Unit  | "Replacing the Pre-exposure Plastic Film" on page 365                    |



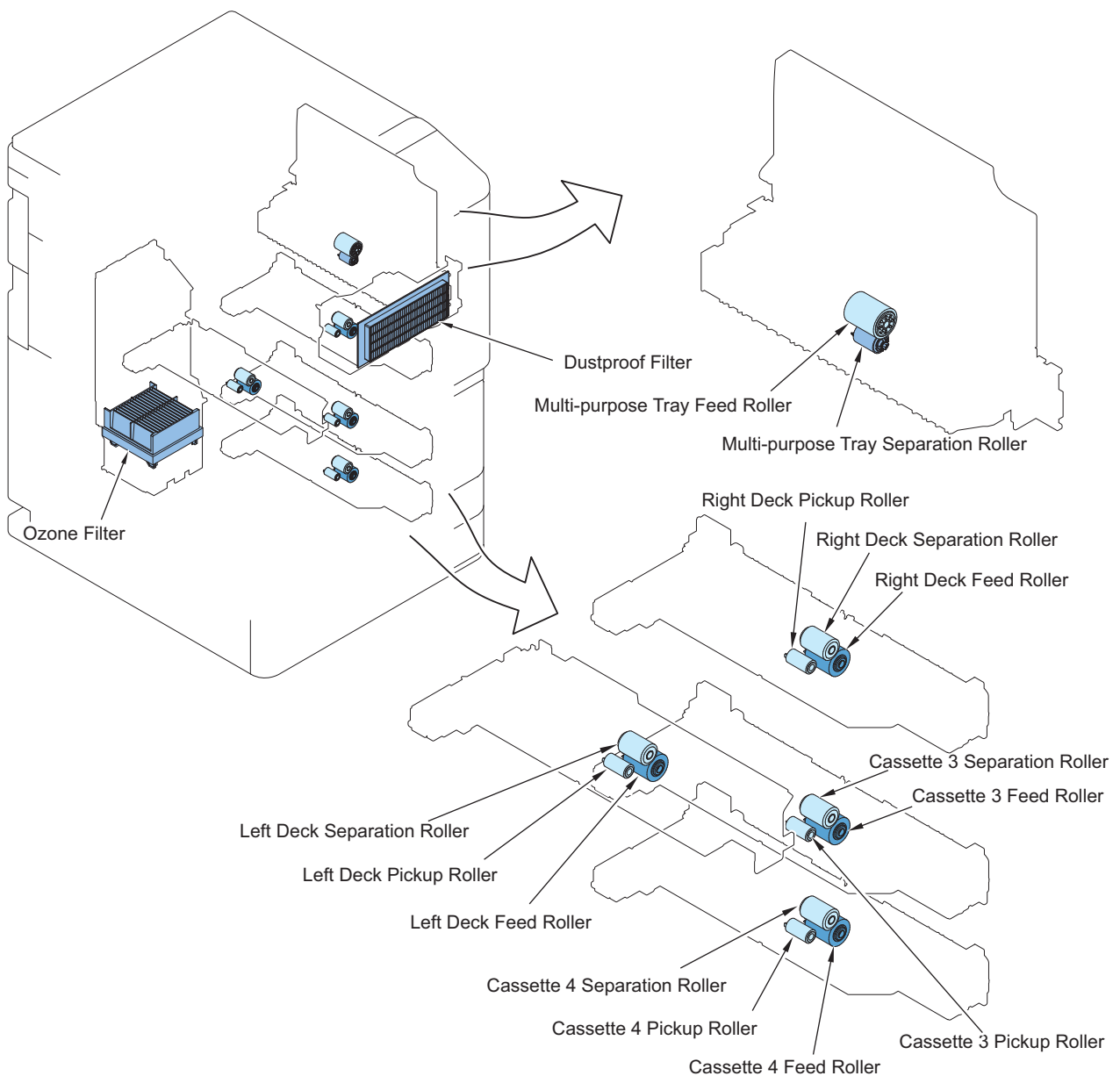
| No  | Name                                      | Main Unit                      | Reference   |
|-----|---|--------------------------------|---|
| [1] | Primary Charging Assembly                 | Process Unit                   | <a href="#">“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329</a>  |
| [2] | Pre-transfer Charging Assembly            | Process Unit                   | <a href="#">“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347</a>   |
| [3] | Primary Charging Wire                     | Primary Charging Assembly      | <a href="#">“Replacing the Primary Charging Wire” on page 342</a><br>Primary Charging Wire(with Spring)           |
| [4] | Pre-transfer Charging Wire                | Pre-transfer Charging Assembly | <a href="#">“Replacing the Pre-transfer Charging Wire” on page 353</a><br>Pre-transfer Charging Wire(with Spring) |
| [5] | Primary Charging Wire Cleaner             | Primary Charging Assembly      | <a href="#">“Removing the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner, Cleaner Holder (Right/Left)” on page 334</a>             |
| [6] | Primary Charging Wire Cleaner Holder      | Primary Charging Assembly      | <a href="#">“Removing the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner, Cleaner Holder (Right/Left)” on page 334</a>             |
| [7] | Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner        | Pre-transfer Charging Assembly | <a href="#">“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner, Cleaner Holder” on page 349</a>                     |
| [8] | Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner Holder | Pre-transfer Charging Assembly | <a href="#">“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner, Cleaner Holder” on page 349</a>                     |



| No  | Name               | Main Unit         | Reference   |
|-----|--------------------|-------------------|---|
| [1] | ETB                | ETB Unit          | <a href="#">“Removing the ETB Unit” on page 388</a>           |
| [2] | Transfer Roller    | ETB Unit          | <a href="#">“Removing the Transfer Roller” on page 395</a>    |
| [3] | ETB Cleaning Blade | ETB Cleaning Unit | <a href="#">“Removing the ETB Cleaning Blade” on page 397</a> |
| [4] | Brush Roller       | ETB Cleaning Unit | <a href="#">“Removing the ETB Brush Roller” on page 398</a>   |



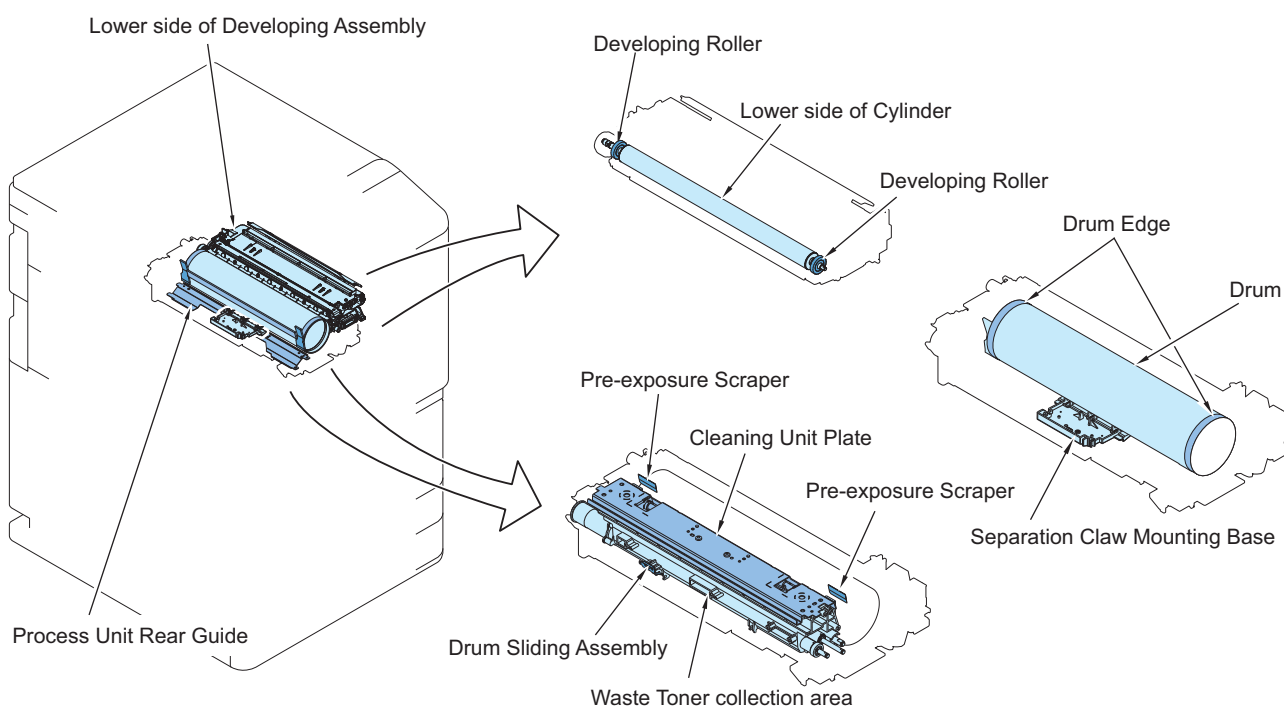
| No   | Name                              | Main Unit       | Reference  |
|------|-----------------------------------|-----------------|--|
| [1]  | Fixing Sub Thermister 1((THM020)  | Fixing Assembly | "Removing the Sub Thermistor 1" on page 474                                  |
| [2]  | Fixing Sub Thermister 2(THM030)   | Fixing Assembly | "Removing the Main Thermistor, Sub Thermistor2" on page 471                  |
| [3]  | Fixing Main Thermister(THM010)    | Fixing Assembly | "Removing the Main Thermistor, Sub Thermistor2" on page 471                  |
| [4]  | Fixing Roller                     | Fixing Assembly | "Removing the Fixing Roller, Insulating Bush and Thrust Stopper" on page 466 |
| [5]  | Fixing Roller Insulating Bushing  | Fixing Assembly | "Removing the Fixing Roller, Insulating Bush and Thrust Stopper" on page 466 |
| [6]  | Fixing Roller Thrust Retainer     | Fixing Assembly | "Removing the Fixing Roller, Insulating Bush and Thrust Stopper" on page 466 |
| [7]  | Fixing Cleaning Web               | Fixing Assembly | "Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web" on page 456                               |
| [8]  | Pressure Roller Static Eliminator | Fixing Assembly | "Removing the Pressure Roller Static Eliminator" on page 470                 |
| [9]  | Pressure Roller Unit              | Fixing Assembly | "Removing the Pressure Roller" on page 469                                   |
| [10] | Upper Separation Claw             | Fixing Assembly | "Removing the Upper Separation Claw" on page 476                             |



| No  | Name                           | Main Unit                 | Reference   |
|-----|--------------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| [1] | Multi-purpose Tray Feed Roller | Multi-purpose Pickup Unit | "Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Feed Roller" on page 495 |

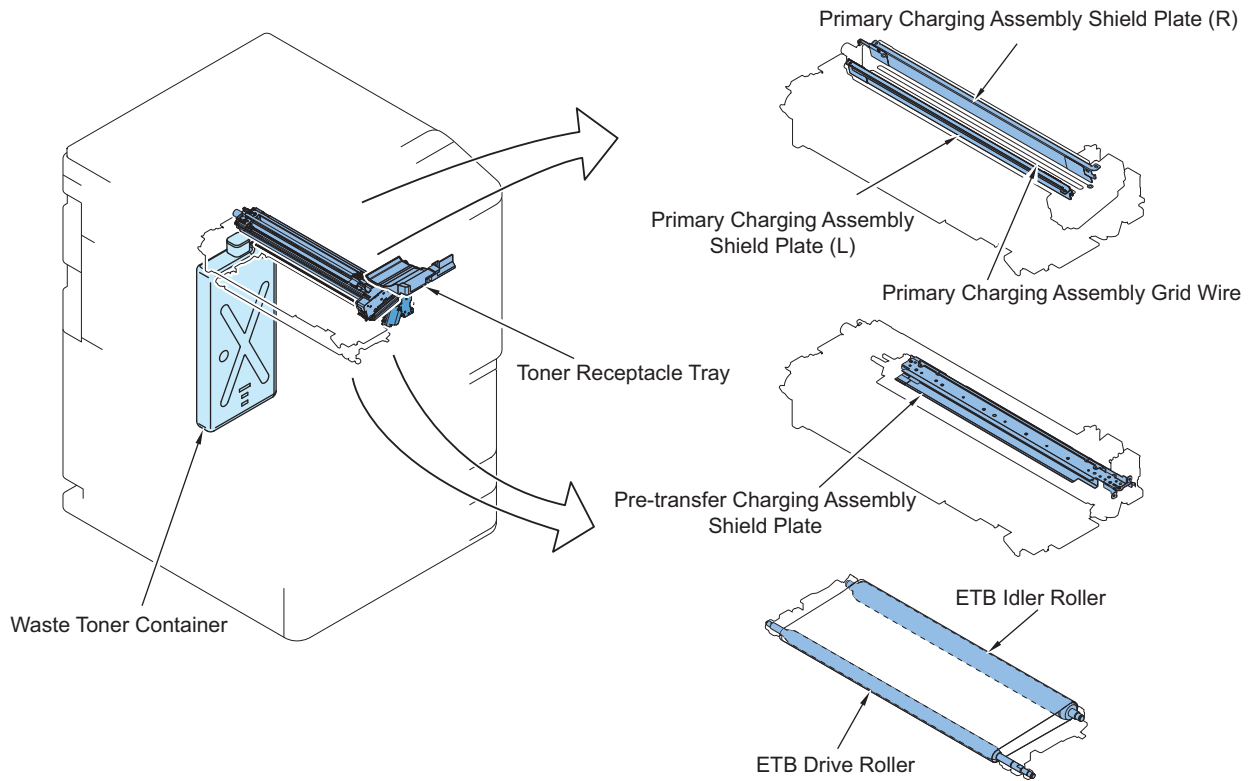
| No   | Name                                 | Main Unit                 | Reference   |
|------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| [2]  | Multi-purpose Tray Separation Roller | Multi-purpose Pickup Unit | "Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Roller" on page 497 |
| [3]  | Right Deck Pickup Roller             | Right Deck Pickup Unit    | "Removing the Right Deck Pickup Roller" on page 486             |
| [4]  | Right Deck Separation Roller         | Right Deck Pickup Unit    | "Removing the Right Deck Separation Roller" on page 488         |
| [5]  | Right Deck Feed Roller               | Right Deck Pickup Unit    | "Removing the Right Deck Feed Roller" on page 487               |
| [6]  | Left Deck Separation Roller          | Left Deck Pickup Unit     | "Removing the Left Deck Separation Roller" on page 485          |
| [7]  | Left Deck Pickup Roller              | Left Deck Pickup Unit     | "Removing the Left Deck Pickup Roller" on page 482              |
| [8]  | Left Deck Feed Roller                | Left Deck Pickup Unit     | "Removing the Left Deck Feed Roller" on page 483                |
| [9]  | Cassette 3 Separation Roller         | Cassette 3 Pickup Unit    | "Removing the Upper Cassette Separation Roller" on page 491     |
| [10] | Cassette 3 Feed Roller               | Cassette 3 Pickup Unit    | "Removing the Upper Cassette Feed Roller" on page 491           |
| [11] | Cassette 3 Pickup Roller             | Cassette 3 Pickup Unit    | "Removing the Upper Cassette Pickup Roller" on page 490         |
| [12] | Cassette 4 Separation Roller         | Cassette 4 Pickup Unit    | "Removing the Lower Cassette Separation Roller" on page 494     |
| [13] | Cassette 4 Pickup Roller             | Cassette 4 Pickup Unit    | "Removing the Lower Cassette Pickup Roller" on page 493         |
| [14] | Cassette 4 Feed Roller               | Cassette 4 Pickup Unit    | "Removing the Lower Cassette Feed Roller" on page 494           |
| [15] | Dustproof Filter                     | Product configuration     | "Removing the Filter (for primary charging)" on page 537        |
| [16] | Ozone Filter                         | Product configuration     | "Removing the Ozone Filter" on page 537                         |

### • List of Cleaning Parts



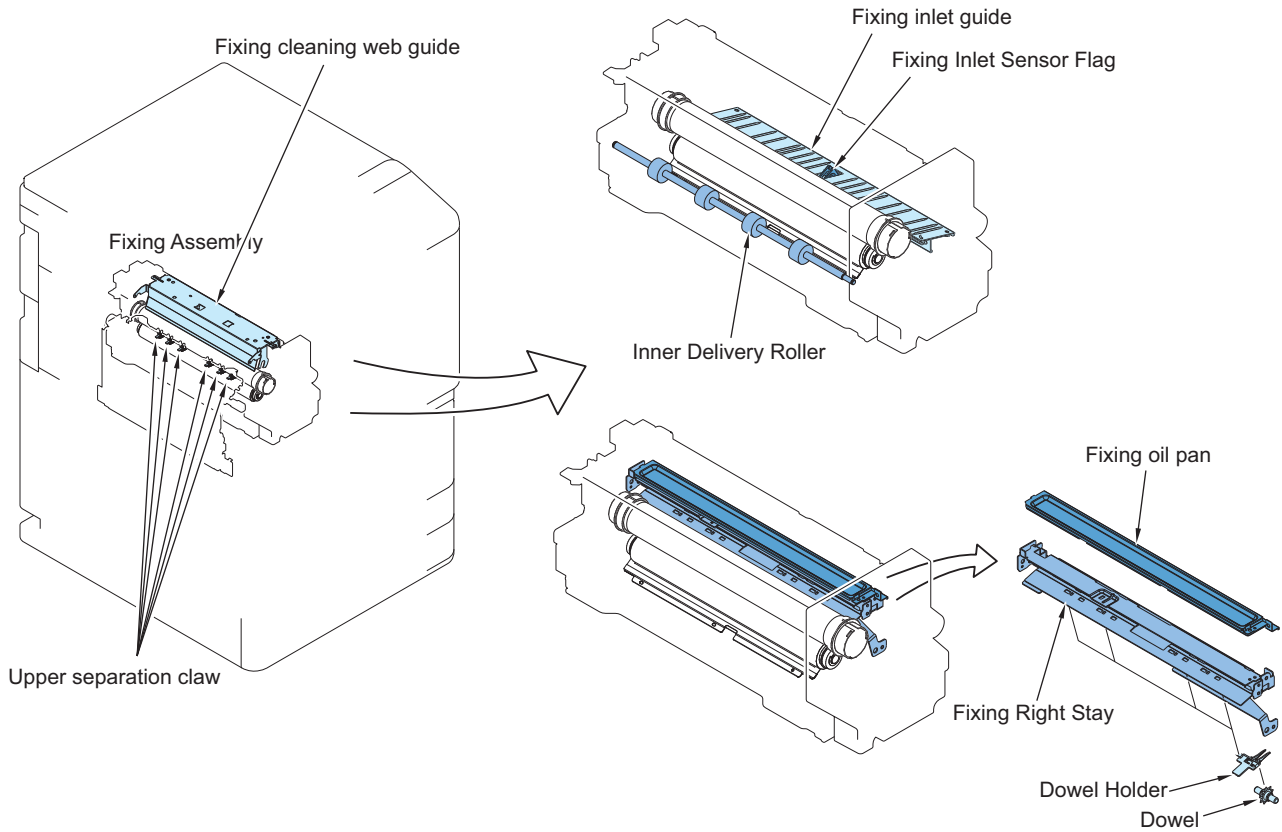
| No  | Name                          | Main Unit          | Reference                                     |
|-----|-------------------------------|--------------------|---|
| [1] | Cleaning Unit Plate           | Drum Cleaning Unit | "Cleaning the Drum Cleaning Unit" on page 363 |
| [2] | Pre-exposure Scraper          | Drum Cleaning Unit | "Cleaning the Drum Cleaning Unit" on page 363 |
| [3] | Waste Toner Collection Area   | Drum Cleaning Unit | "Cleaning the Drum Cleaning Unit" on page 363 |
| [4] | Separation Claw Mounting Base | Process Unit       | "Cleaning the Process Unit" on page 359       |
| [5] | Process Unit Rear Guide       | Process Unit       | "Cleaning the Process Unit" on page 359       |
| [6] | Drum Sliding Assembly         | Process Unit       | "Cleaning the Process Unit" on page 359       |
| [7] | Drum                          | Process Unit       | "Cleaning Photosensitive Drum" on page 373    |

| No   | Name                              | Main Unit           | Reference                                      |
|------|-----------------------------------|---------------------|--|
| [8]  | Drum Edge                         | Process Unit        | "Cleaning the Drum edges" on page 374          |
| [9]  | Lower side of Developing Assembly | Developing Assembly | "Cleaning the Developing Assembly" on page 381 |
| [10] | Developing Roller                 | Developing Assembly | "Cleaning the Developing Assembly" on page 381 |
| [11] | Lower side of Cylinder            | Developing Assembly | "Cleaning the Developing Assembly" on page 381 |



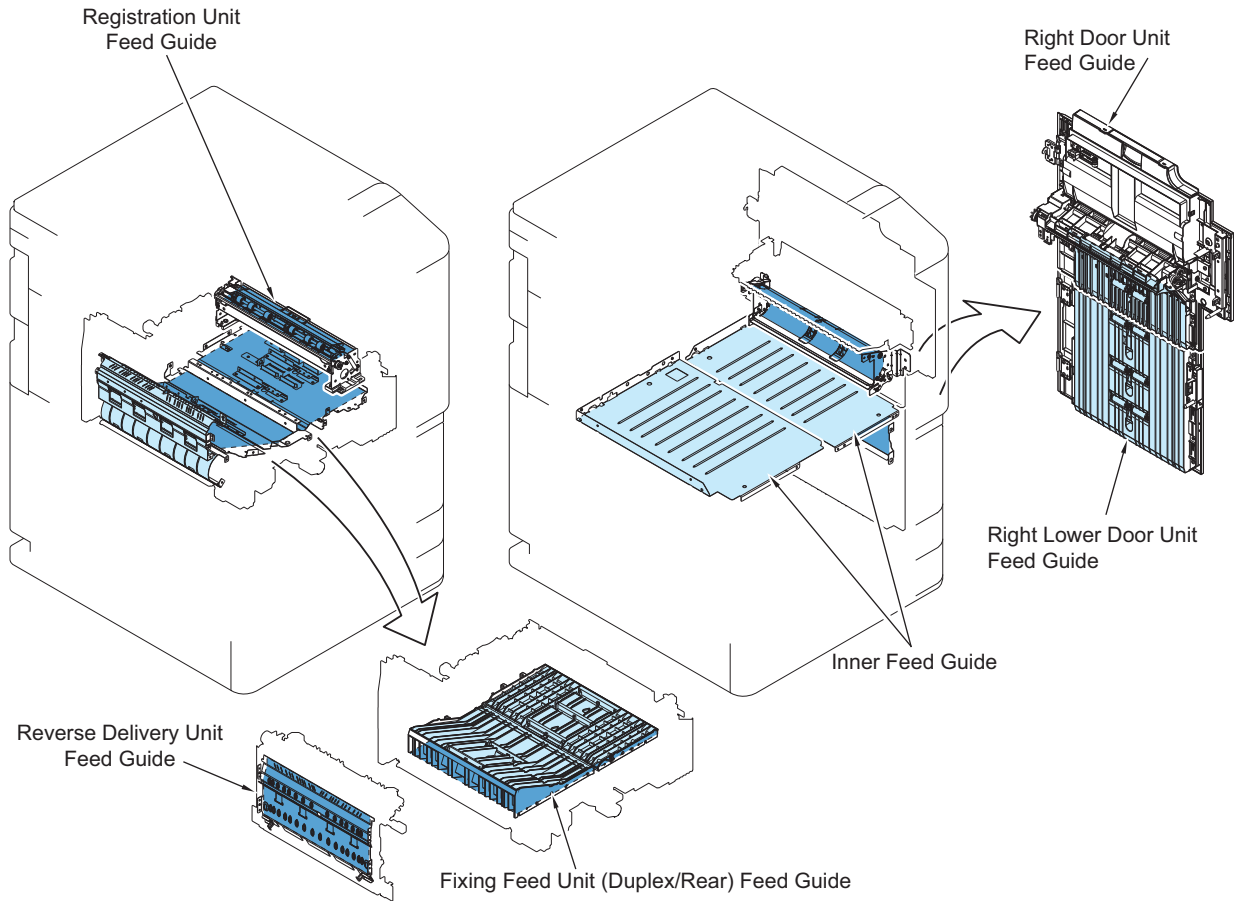
| No  | Name  | Main Unit                      | Reference  |
|-----|---|--------------------------------|--|
| [1] | Primary Charging Assembly Grid Wire         | Primary Charging Assembly      | "Cleaning the Primary Charging Assembly Grid Wire" on page 346 |
| [2] | Primary Charging Assembly Shield Plate      | Primary Charging Assembly      | "Cleaning the Primary Charging Assembly Grid Wire" on page 346 |
| [3] | Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Shield Plate | Pre-transfer Charging Assembly | "Cleaning the Pre-transfer Charging Wire" on page 356          |
| [4] | ETB Drive Roller                            | ETB                            | "Cleaning the ETB" on page 394                                 |
| [5] | ETB Idler Roller                            | ETB                            | "Cleaning the ETB" on page 394                                 |
| [6] | Toner Receptacle Tray                       | Hopper Unit                    | "Removing the Toner Receptacle Tray" on page 418               |
| [7] | Waste Toner Container                       | Hopper Unit                    | "Removing the Waste Toner Container" on page 401               |

## 5. Parts Replacement and Cleaning

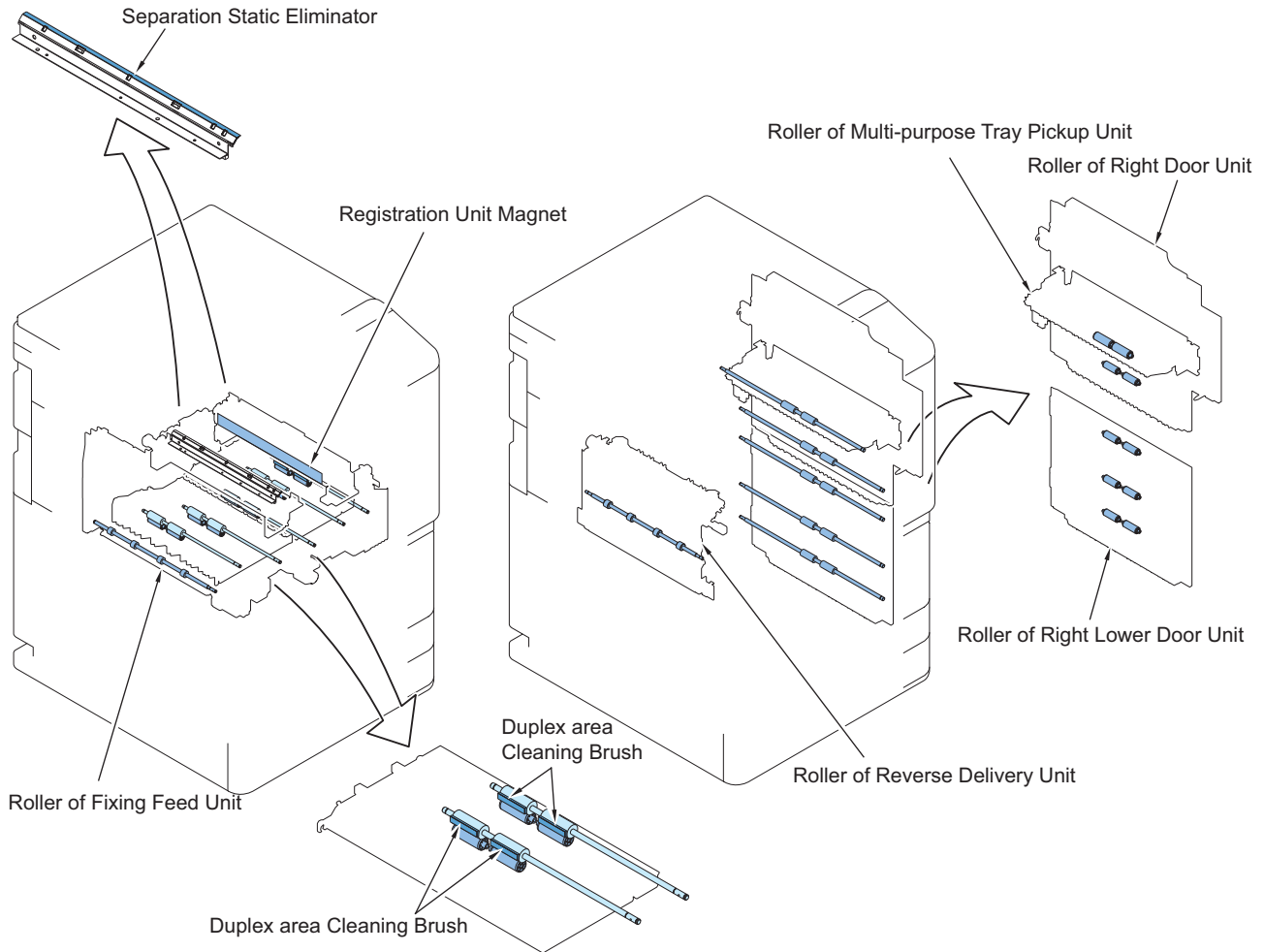


| No  | Name                      | Main Unit       | Reference   |
|-----|---------------------------|-----------------|---|
| [1] | Fixing Inlet Guide        | Fixing Assembly | "Cleaning the Fixing Inlet Guide, Fixing Inlet Sensor Flag, Fixing Right Stay, Dowel, Dowel Holder" on page 452 |
| [2] | Fixing Right Stay         | Fixing Assembly | "Cleaning the Fixing Inlet Guide, Fixing Inlet Sensor Flag, Fixing Right Stay, Dowel, Dowel Holder" on page 452 |
| [3] | Dowel                     | Fixing Assembly | "Cleaning the Fixing Inlet Guide, Fixing Inlet Sensor Flag, Fixing Right Stay, Dowel, Dowel Holder" on page 452 |
| [4] | Dowel Holder              | Fixing Assembly | "Cleaning the Fixing Inlet Guide, Fixing Inlet Sensor Flag, Fixing Right Stay, Dowel, Dowel Holder" on page 452 |
| [5] | Fixing Oil Pan            | Fixing Assembly | "Cleaning the Fixing Oil Pan, Fixing Cleaning Web Guide" on page 456  |
| [6] | Upper Separation Claw     | Fixing Assembly | "Cleaning the Upper Separation Claw" on page 477  |
| [7] | Fixing Cleaning Web Guide | Fixing Assembly | "Cleaning the Fixing Oil Pan, Fixing Cleaning Web Guide" on page 456  |
| [8] | Fixing Inlet Sensor Flag  | Fixing Assembly | "Cleaning the Fixing Inlet Guide, Fixing Inlet Sensor Flag, Fixing Right Stay, Dowel, Dowel Holder" on page 452 |
| [9] | Inner Delivery Roller     | Fixing Assembly | "Cleaning the Inner Delivery Roller" on page 455  |

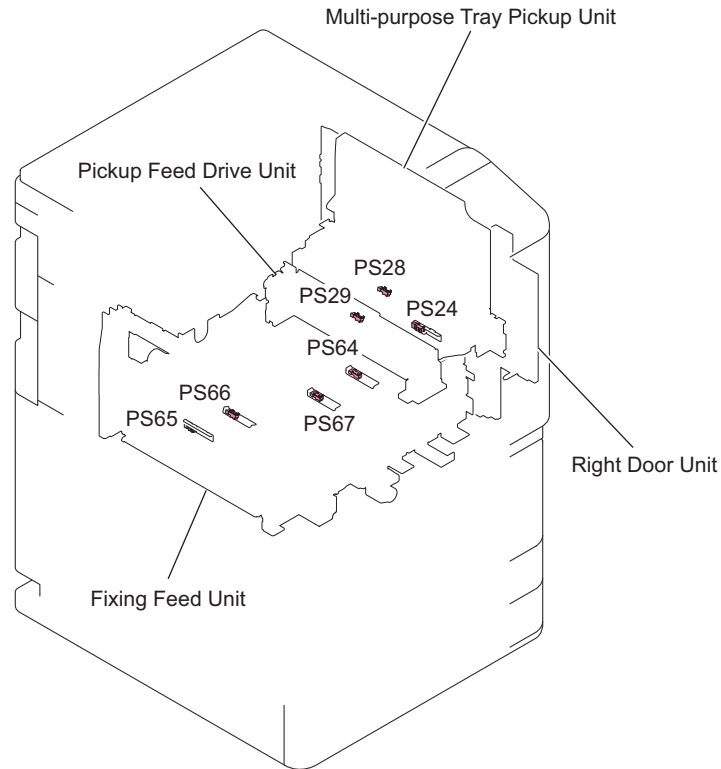




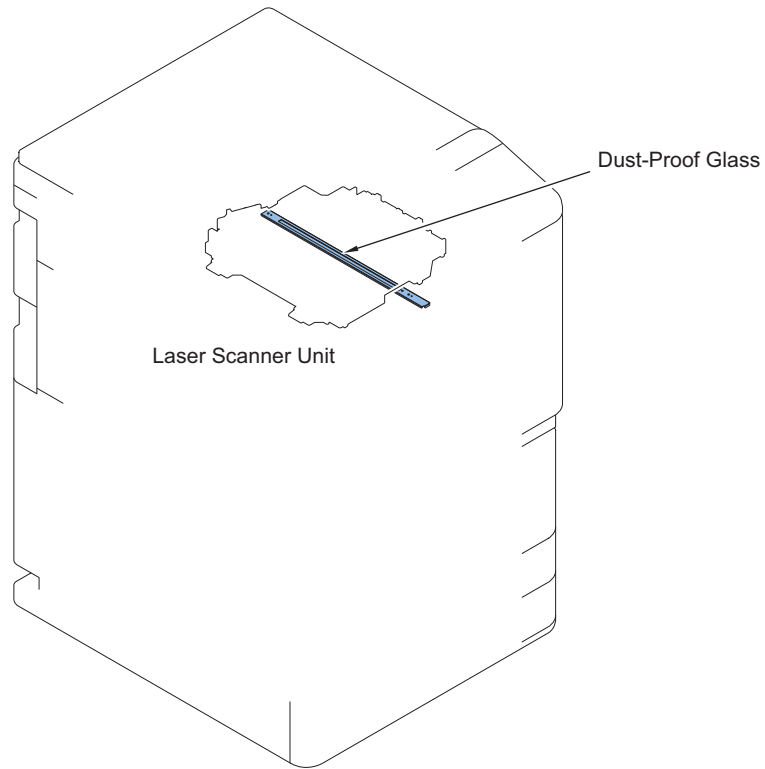
| No  | Name                                     | Main Unit             | Reference  |
|-----|--|-----------------------|--|
| [1] | Registration Unit Feed Guide             | Fixing Feed Unit      | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |
| [2] | Reverse Delivery Unit Feed Guide         | Reverse Delivery Unit | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |
| [3] | Fixing Feed Unit (Duplex/Rear)Feed Guide | Fixing Feed Unit      | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |
| [4] | Inner Feed Guide                         | Product Specification | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |
| [5] | Right Door Unit Feed Guide               | Right Door Unit       | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |
| [6] | Right Lower Door Unit Feed Guide         | Right Lower Door Unit | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |



| No  | Name                                     | Main Unit                      | Reference  |
|-----|--|--------------------------------|--|
| [1] | Roller of Fixing Feed Unit               | Fixing Feed Unit               | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |
| [2] | Registration Unit Magnet                 | Registration Unit              | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |
| [3] | Roller of Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Unit | Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Unit | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |
| [4] | Roller of Right Door Unit                | Right Door Unit                | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |
| [5] | Roller of Right Lower Door Unit          | Right Lower Door Unit          | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |
| [6] | Roller of Reverse Delivery Unit          | Reverse Delivery Unit          | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |
| [7] | Duplex area Cleaning Brush               | Fixing Feed Unit               | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |
| [8] | Separation Static Eliminator             | Fixing Feed Unit               | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |



| No   | Name                   | Main Unit                      | Reference  |
|------|------------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| PS24 | Vertical Path Sensor 1 | Vertical Path Unit             | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |
| PS28 | Writing Judging Sensor | Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Unit | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |
| PS29 | Registration Sensor    | Pickup Feed Drive Unit         | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |
| PS64 | Duplex Outlet Sensor   | Fixing Feed Unit               | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |
| PS66 | Duplex Left Sensor     | Fixing Feed Unit               | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |
| PS67 | Duplex Merging Sensor  | Fixing Feed Unit               | "Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly" on page 499 |

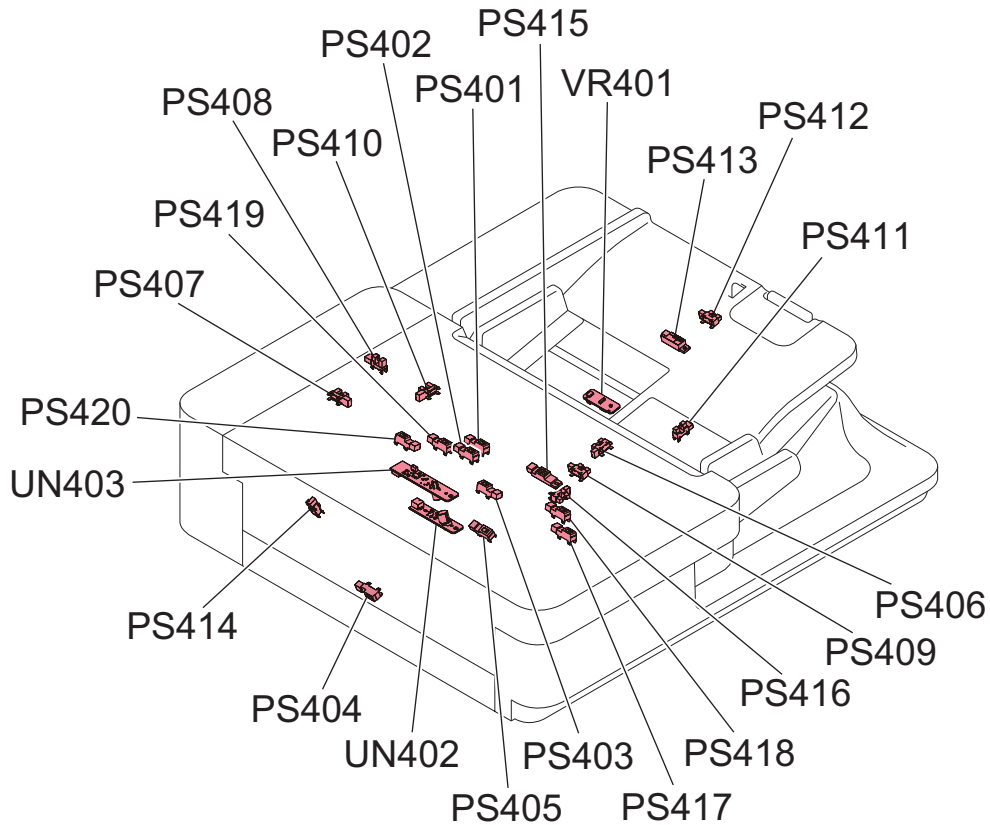


| No  | Name            | Main Unit             | Reference  |
|-----|-----------------|-----------------------|--|
| [1] | Dustproof Glass | Product Configuration | <a href="#">"Cleaning the Dust Collecting Glass" on page 327</a> |

## List of Electrical Parts

### ■ ADF

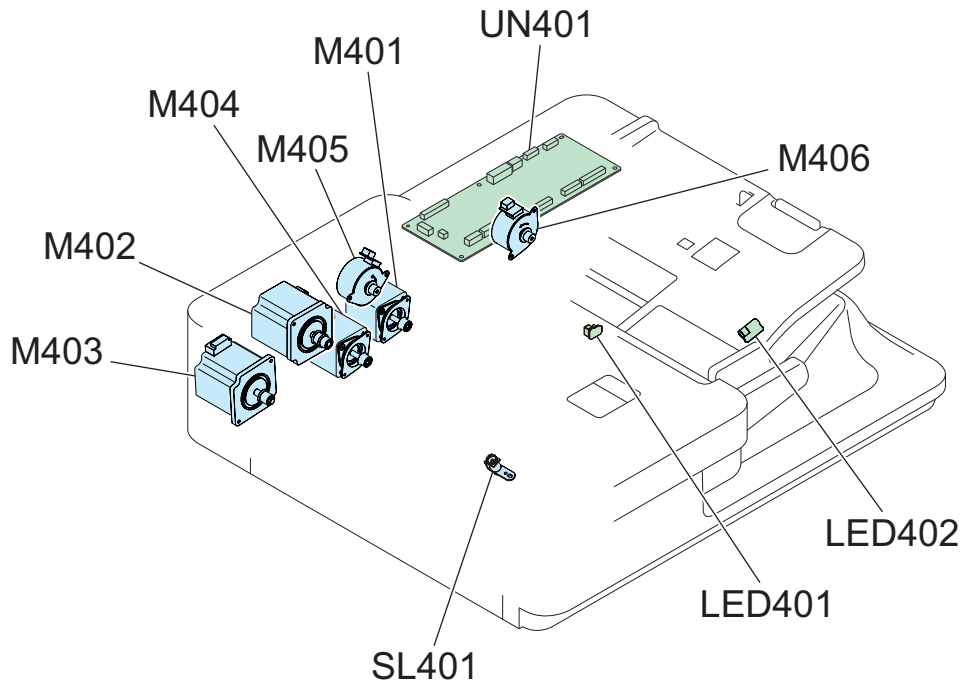
#### ● Sensor



| No.   | Name                                 |
|-------|--------------------------------------|
| PS401 | Pre-separation Sensor                |
| PS402 | Post-separation Sensor               |
| PS403 | Post-pullout Sensor                  |
| PS404 | Lead Sensor                          |
| PS405 | Pre-delivery Sensor                  |
| PS406 | Tray Paper Surface Sensor            |
| PS407 | Cover Open/Closed Sensor             |
| PS408 | Pickup Roller Lifting HP Sensor      |
| PS409 | ADF Sleep Recover Sensor             |
| PS410 | Tray Lifting HP Sensor               |
| PS411 | AB/Inch Identification Sensor        |
| PS412 | LGL Sensor                           |
| PS413 | Large Size/ Small Size Sensor        |
| PS414 | Paper Back Reading Glass HP Sensor   |
| PS415 | Original Sensor                      |
| PS416 | Delivery Stack Detection Sensor      |
| PS417 | Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Front) |
| PS418 | Skew Detection Sensor (Small, Front) |
| PS419 | Skew Detection Sensor (Small, Rear)  |
| PS420 | Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Rear)  |

| No.   | Name  |
|-------|---|
| UN402 | Double Feed Detection Sensor PCB (Transmission) |
| UN403 | Double Feed Detection Sensor PCB (Reception)    |
| VR401 | Original Width Volume                           |

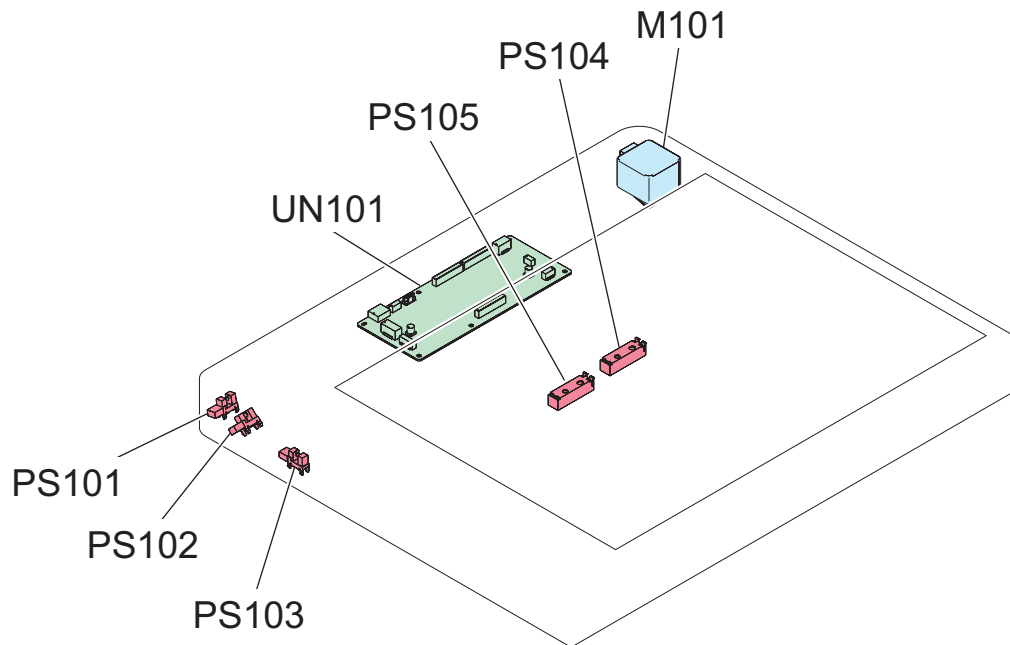
• Clutch / Solenoid / Motor / PCB



| No.    | Name                        |
|--------|-----------------------------|
| M401   | ADF Pickup Motor            |
| M402   | ADF Pullout Motor           |
| M403   | Lead Motor                  |
| M404   | ADF Delivery Motor          |
| M405   | Pickup Roller Lifting Motor |
| M406   | Tray Lifting Motor          |
| LED401 | Original Set LED            |
| LED402 | Delivery LED                |
| SL401  | Stamp Solenoid              |
| UN401  | ADF Driver PCB              |

## ■ Reader

### ● Sensor / Motor / PCB

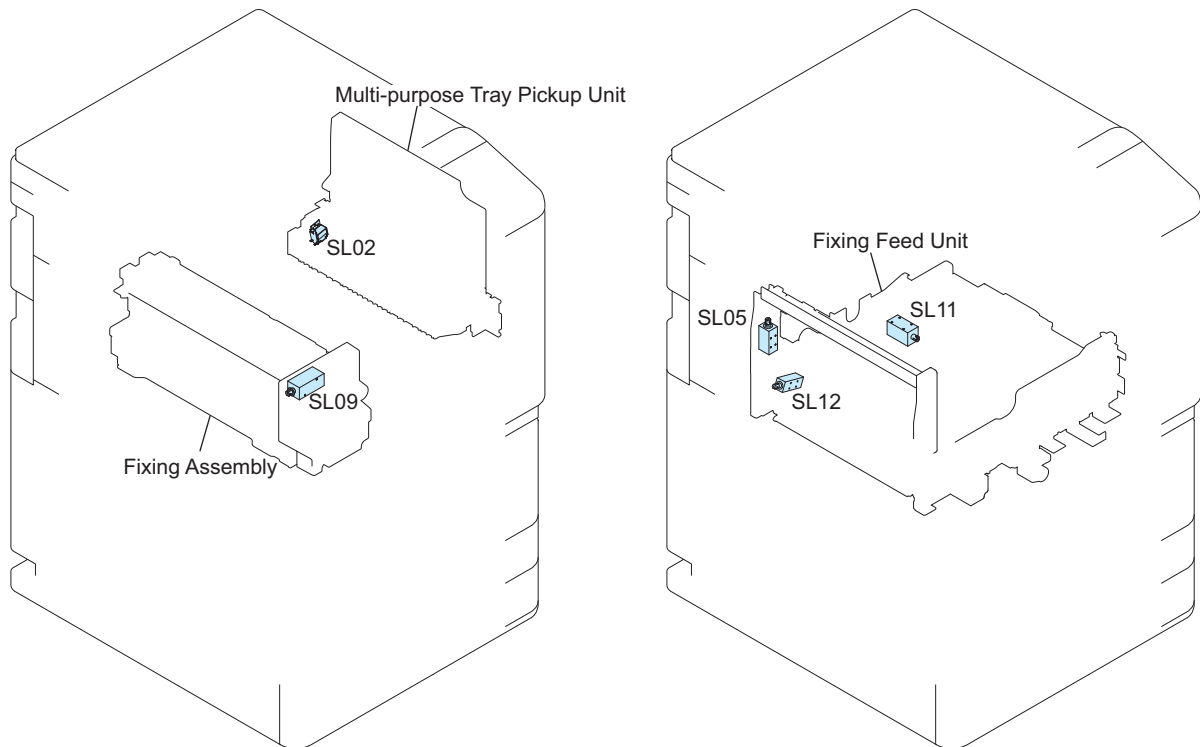


| No       | Name                          |
|----------|-------------------------------|
| M101     | Reader Scanner Motor          |
| PS101    | ADF Open/Close Sensor 1       |
| PS102    | ADF Open/Close Sensor 2       |
| PS103    | Reader Scanner Unit HP Sensor |
| PS104    | Original Size Sensor 1        |
| PS105 *1 | Original Size Sensor 2        |
| UN101    | Reader Controller PCB         |

\*1 : Use the AB/INCH type sensor option only when connected.

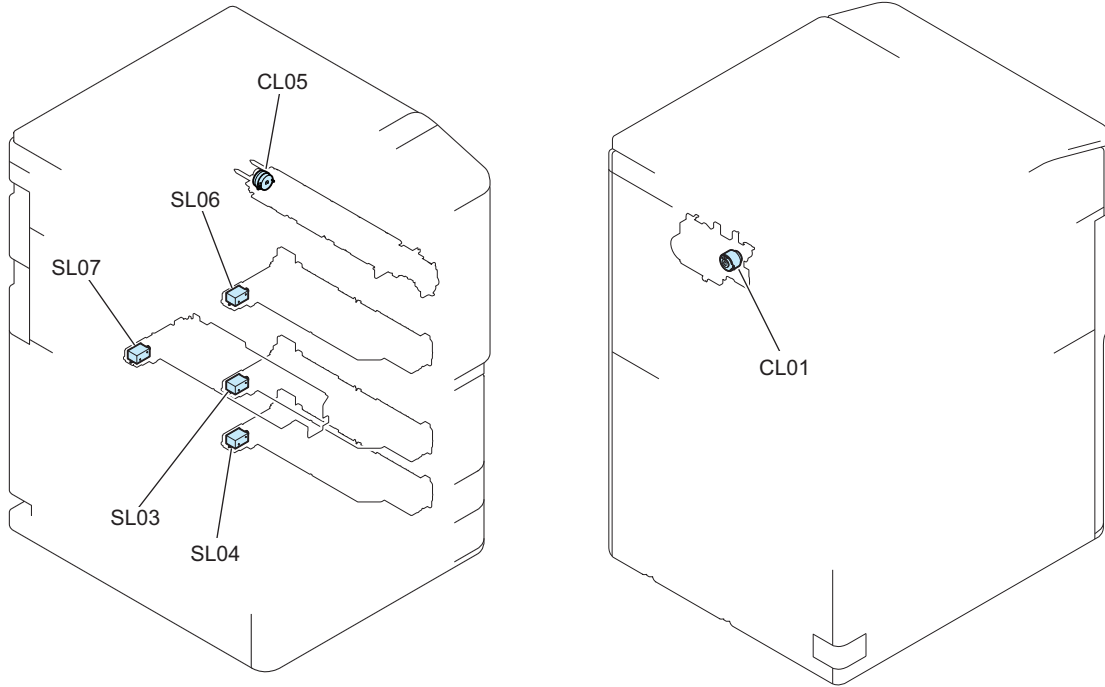
## ■ Printer

### ● Clutch / Solenoid



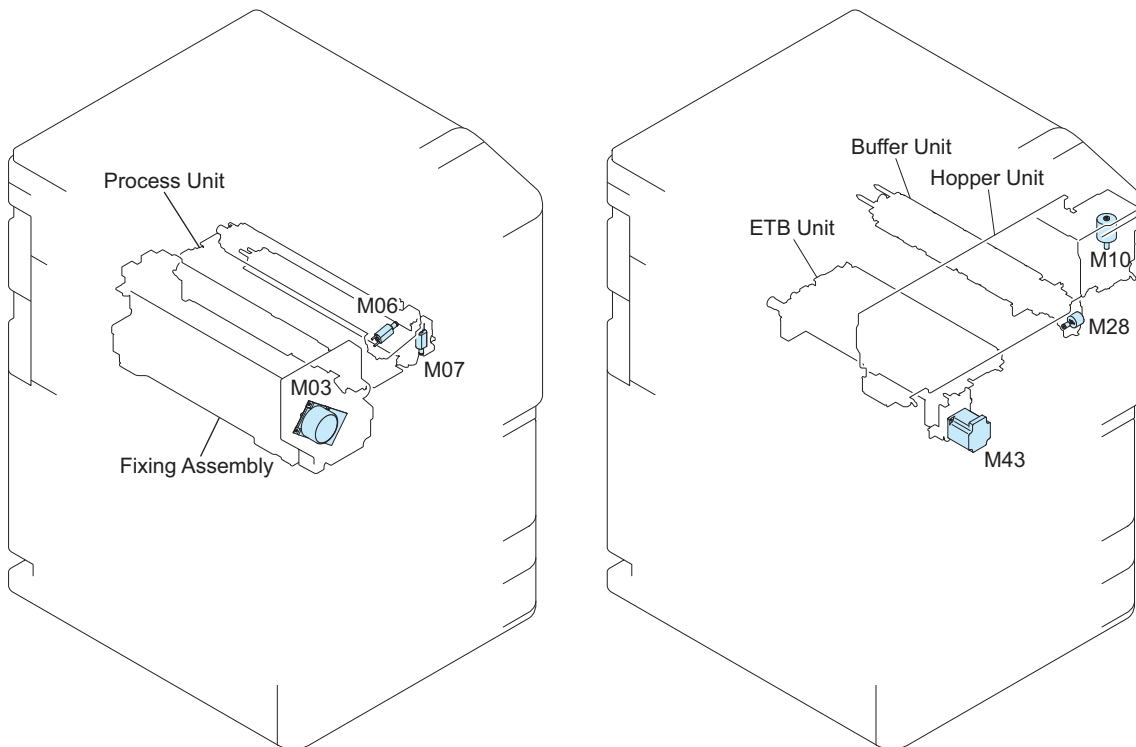
| No   | Name                               | Main Unit                 | COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK |            | Reference |
|------|------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|------------|-----------|
|      |                                    |                           | Item No.                     | Remarks    |           |
| SL02 | Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Solenoid | Multi-purpose Pickup Unit | SL > 1                       | SL-ON > OK | -         |
| SL05 | Reverse Upper Flapper Solenoid     | Fixing Feed Unit          | SL > 4                       | SL-ON > OK | -         |
| SL09 | Fixing Cleaning Web Drive Solenoid | Fixing Assembly           | SL > 8                       | SL-ON > OK | -         |
| SL11 | Left Deck Merging Solenoid         | Fixing Feed Unit          | SL > 7                       | SL-ON > OK | -         |
| SL12 | Reverse Detachment Solenoid        | Fixing Feed Unit          | SL > 12                      | SL-ON > OK |           |



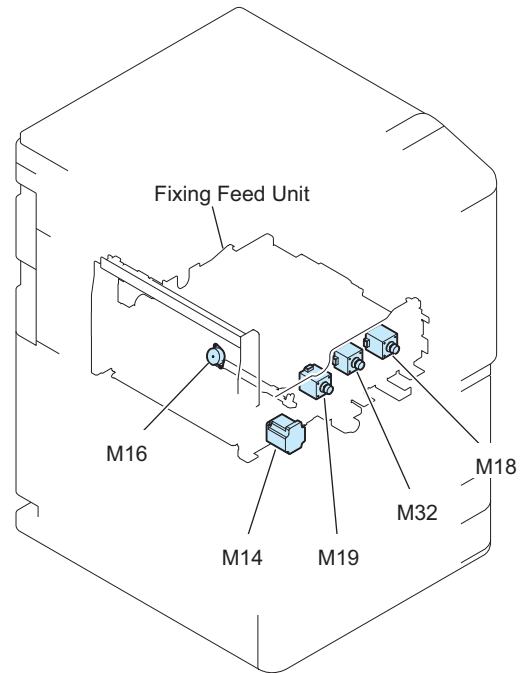
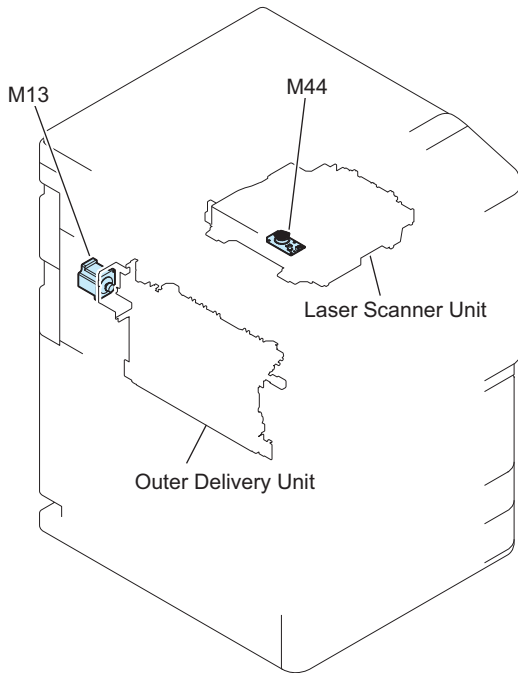


| No   | Name                       | Main Unit              | COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK |            | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------|------------|-----------|
|      |                            |                        | Item No.                     | Remarks    |           |
| CL01 | Developing Clutch          | Developing Assembly    | CL > 1                       | CL-ON > OK | -         |
| CL05 | Magnet Roller Clutch       | Hopper Unit            | CL > 2                       | CL-ON > OK | -         |
| SL03 | Cassette 3 Pickup Solenoid | Cassette 3 Pickup Unit | SL > 2                       | SL-ON > OK | -         |
| SL04 | Cassette 4 Pickup Solenoid | Cassette 4 Pickup Unit | SL > 3                       | SL-ON > OK | -         |
| SL06 | Right Deck Pickup Solenoid | Right Deck Pickup Unit | SL > 5                       | SL-ON > OK | -         |
| SL07 | Left Deck Pickup Solenoid  | Left Deck Pickup Unit  | SL > 6                       | SL-ON > OK | -         |

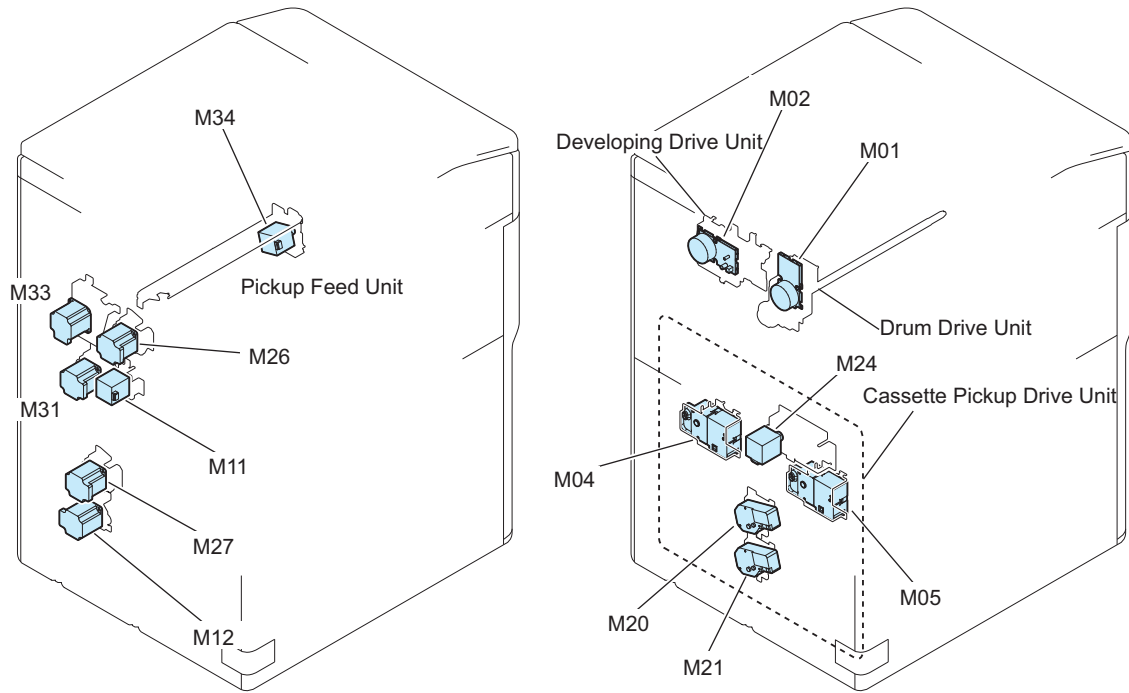
• List of Motor



| No  | Name                                      | Main Unit       | COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK |             | Reference |
|-----|---|-----------------|------------------------------|-------------|-----------|
|     |   |                 | Item No.                     | Remarks     |           |
| M03 | Fixing Motor                              | Fixing Assembly | MTR > 17                     | MTR-ON > OK | -         |
| M06 | Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Motor      | Process Unit    | -                            | -           | -         |
| M07 | Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Motor | Process Unit    | -                            | -           | -         |
| M10 | Toner Supply Motor                        | Hopper Unit     | -                            | -           | -         |
| M15 | Fixing Shutter Motor                      | Fixing Assembly | -                            | -           | -         |
| M28 | Toner Feed Motor                          | Buffer Unit     | MTR > 2                      | MTR-ON > OK | -         |
| M43 | ETB Motor                                 | ETB Unit        | MTR > 14                     | MTR-ON > OK | -         |

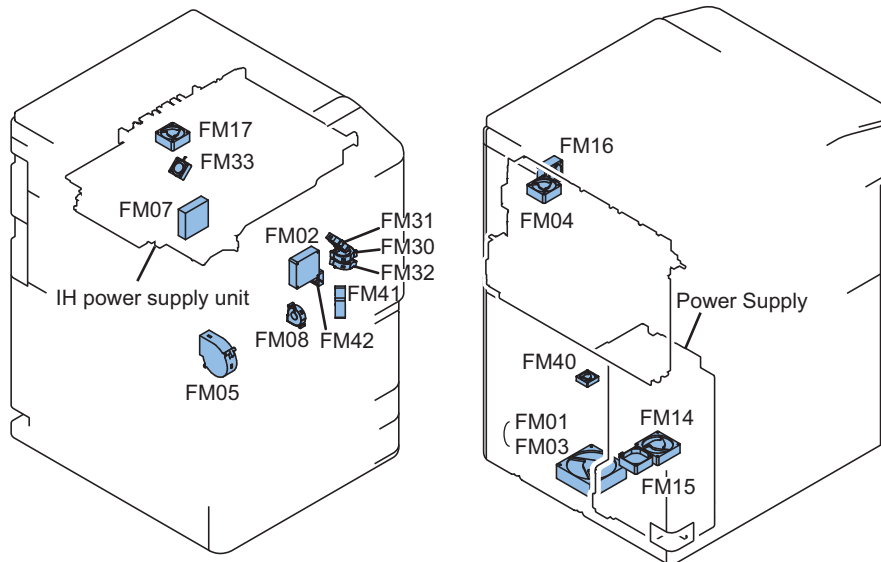


| No  | Name                      | Main Unit           | COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK |             | Reference |
|-----|---------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|-------------|-----------|
|     |                           |                     | Item No.                     | Remarks     |           |
| M13 | Delivery Motor            | Outer Delivery Unit | MTR > 3                      | MTR-ON > OK | -         |
| M14 | Reverse Motor             | Fixing Feed Unit    | MTR > 4                      | MTR-ON > OK | -         |
| M16 | Side Registration Motor   | Fixing Feed Unit    | MTR > 5                      | MTR-ON > OK | -         |
| M18 | Duplex Feed Right Motor   | Fixing Feed Unit    | MTR > 6                      | MTR-ON > OK | -         |
| M19 | Duplex Feed Left Motor    | Fixing Feed Unit    | MTR > 7                      | MTR-ON > OK | -         |
| M32 | Duplex Feed Merging Motor | Fixing Feed Unit    | MTR > 11                     | MTR-ON > OK | -         |
| M44 | Laser Scanner Motor       | Laser Scanner Unit  | -                            | -           | -         |



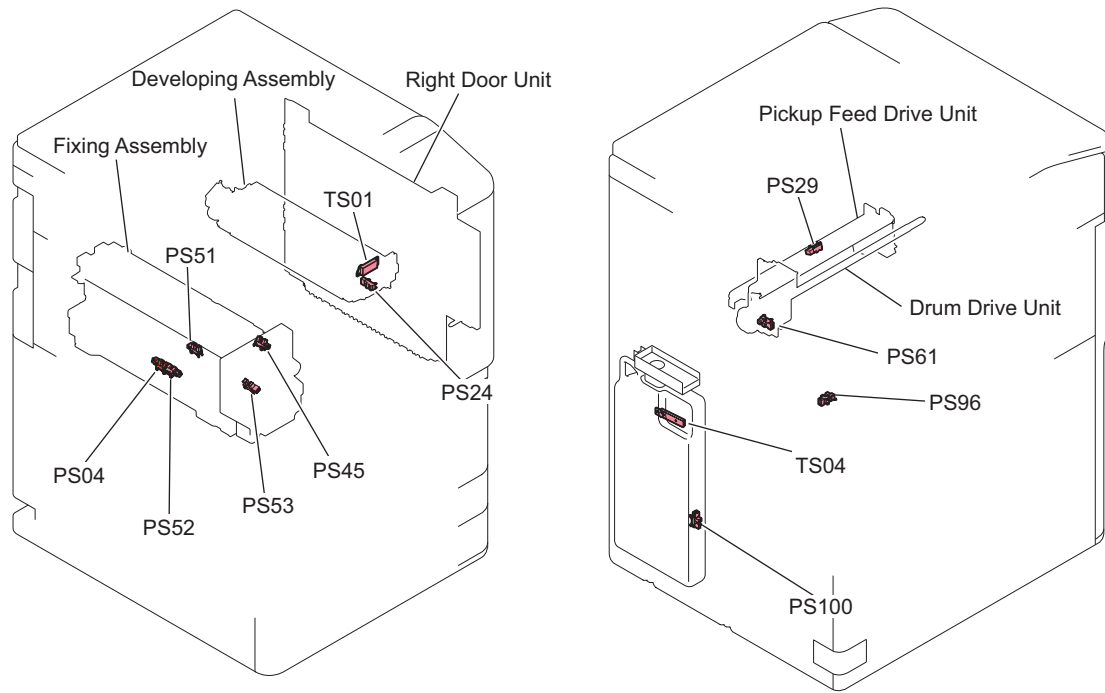
| No  | Name  | Main Unit                      | COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK |             | Reference |
|-----|---|--------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------|-----------|
|     |   |                                | Item No.                     | Remarks     |           |
| M01 | Drum Motor                                  | Drum Drive Unit                | -                            | -           | -         |
| M02 | Developing Motor                            | Developing Assembly Drive Unit | -                            | -           | -         |
| M04 | Right Deck Lifter Motor                     | Cassette Pickup Drive Unit     | -                            | -           | -         |
| M05 | Left Deck Lifter Motor                      | Cassette Pickup Drive Unit     | -                            | -           | -         |
| M11 | Right Deck Pickup Motor                     | Pickup Feed Unit               | -                            | -           | -         |
| M12 | Cassette 3,4 Pickup Motor                   | Pickup Feed Unit               | -                            | -           | -         |
| M20 | Cassette 3 Lifter Motor                     | Cassette Pickup Drive Unit     | -                            | -           | -         |
| M21 | Cassette 4 Lifter Motor                     | Cassette Pickup Drive Unit     | -                            | -           | -         |
| M24 | Left Deck Pickup Motor                      | Cassette Pickup Drive Unit     | -                            | -           | -         |
| M26 | Vertical Path Upper Motor                   | Pickup Feed Unit               | MTR > 8                      | MTR-ON > OK | -         |
| M27 | Vertical Path Lower Motor                   | Pickup Feed Unit               | MTR > 9                      | MTR-ON > OK | -         |
| M31 | Vertical Path Middle Motor                  | Pickup Feed Unit               | MTR > 10                     | MTR-ON > OK | -         |
| M33 | Multi-purpose Tray Registration Front Motor | Pickup Feed Unit               | MTR > 12                     | MTR-ON > OK | -         |
| M34 | Registration Motor                          | Pickup Feed Unit               | MTR > 13                     | MTR-ON > OK | -         |

- List of Fan

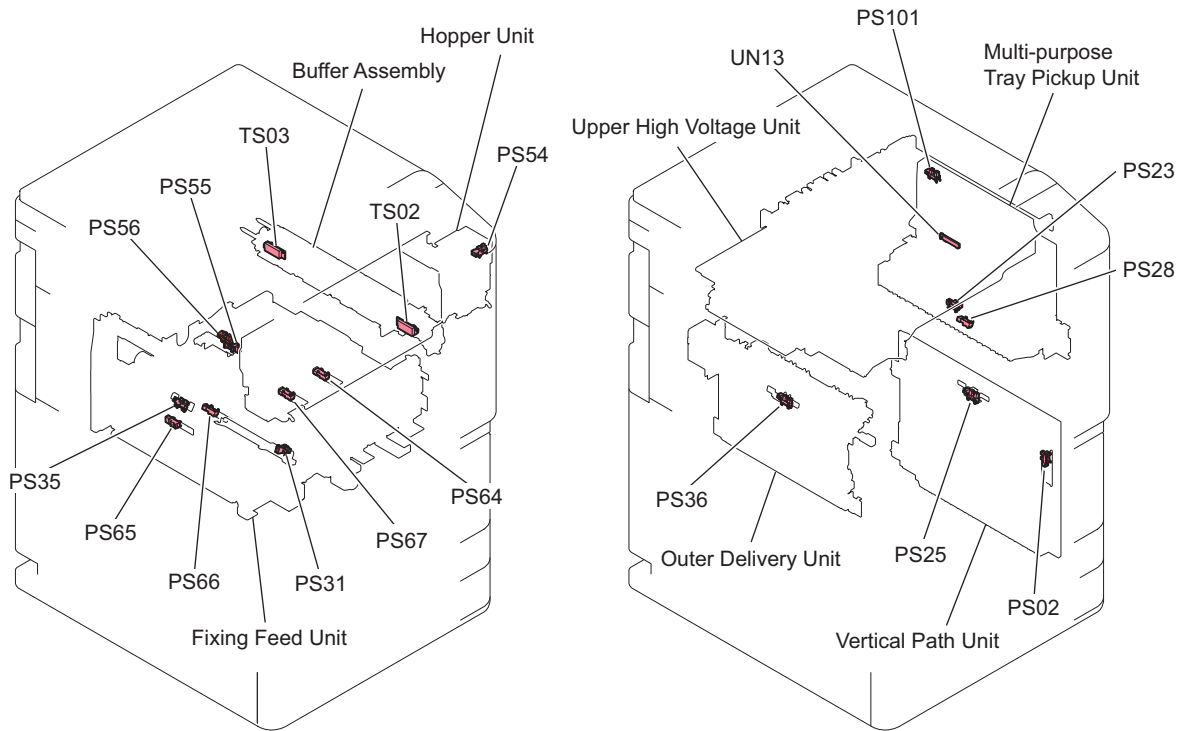


| No.        | Name  | Main Unit             | Reference |
|------------|---|-----------------------|-----------|
| FM01 FM03/ | Making Image Exhaust Fan                      | Product configuration | -         |
| FM02       | Primary Charging Assembly Air Supply Fan      | Product configuration | -         |
| FM04       | Main Controller Cooling Fan                   | Product configuration | -         |
| FM05       | Paper Cooling Fan                             | Product configuration | -         |
| FM07       | Fixing Power Supply Cooling Fan               | Product configuration | -         |
| FM08       | Transfer Cleaner Cooling Fan                  | Product configuration | -         |
| FM14       | Power Supply Cooling Fan 1                    | Product configuration | -         |
| FM15       | Power Supply Cooling Fan 2                    | Product configuration | -         |
| FM16       | Laser Scanner Cooling Fan                     | Product configuration | -         |
| FM17       | Primary Charging Assembly Exhaust Fan         | Product configuration | -         |
| FM30       | Developing Assembly Lower Cooling Fan         | Product configuration | -         |
| FM31       | Developing Assembly Upper Cooling Fan         | Product configuration | -         |
| FM32       | Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Air Supply Fan | Product configuration | -         |
| FM33       | Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Exhaust Fan    | Product configuration | -         |
| FM40       | Feed Driver Cooling Fan                       | Product configuration | -         |
| FM41       | Duplex Driver Cooling Fan                     | Product configuration | -         |
| FM42       | Registration Motor/Duplex Motor Cooling Fan   | Product configuration | -         |

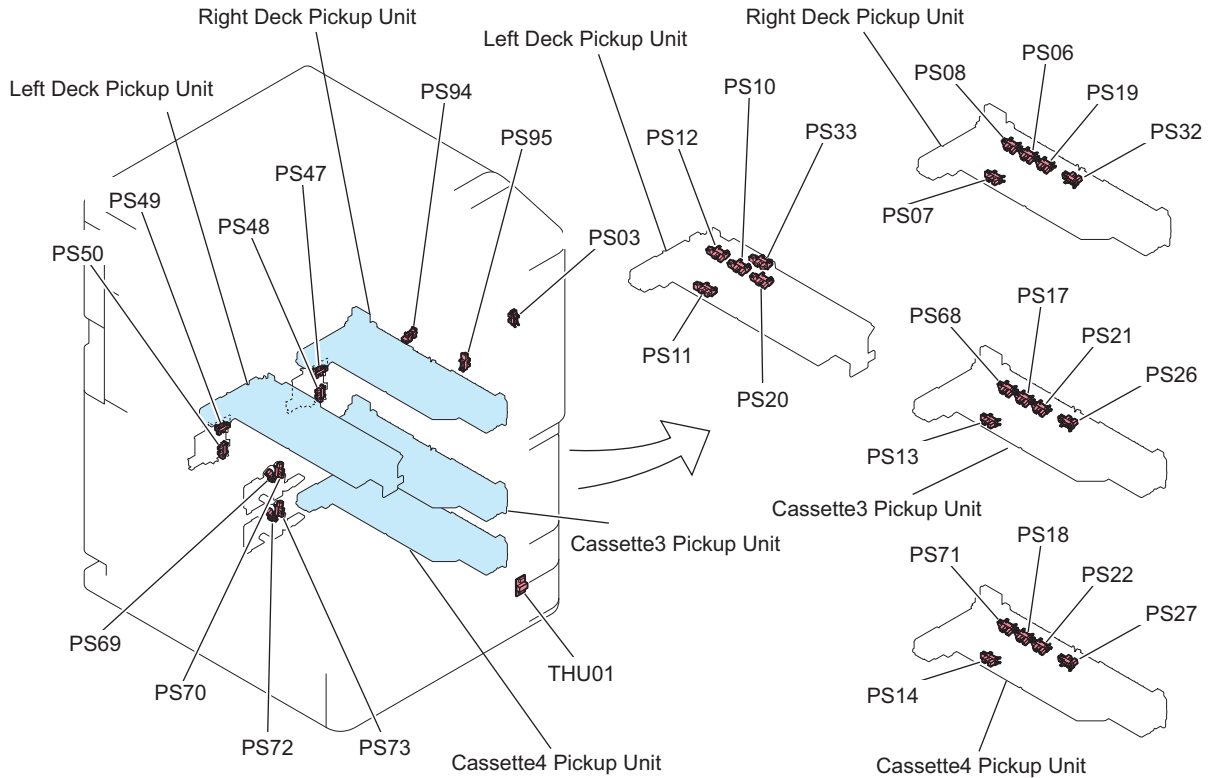
## • Sensor



| No.   | Name                                | Main Unit              | Reference |
|-------|-------------------------------------|------------------------|-----------|
| PS04  | Fixing Toenail Jam Sensor           | Fixing Assembly        | -         |
| PS24  | Vertical Path Sensor 1              | Vertical Path Unit     | -         |
| PS29  | Registration Sensor                 | Pickup Feed Drive Unit | -         |
| PS45  | Fixing Cleaning Web Level Sensor    | Fixing Assembly        | -         |
| PS51  | Fixing Inlet Sensor                 | Fixing Assembly        | -         |
| PS52  | Fixing Outlet Sensor                | Fixing Assembly        | -         |
| PS53  | Fixing Shutter Home Position Sensor | Fixing Assembly        | -         |
| PS61  | Drum Home Position Sensor           | Drum Drive Unit        | -         |
| PS96  | Fixed Feed Lever Sensor             | Fixing Feed Unit       | -         |
| PS100 | Waste Toner Container Sensor        | -                      | -         |
| TS01  | Developing Assembly Toner Sensor    | Developing Assembly    | -         |
| TS04  | Waste Toner Full Sensor             | -                      | -         |



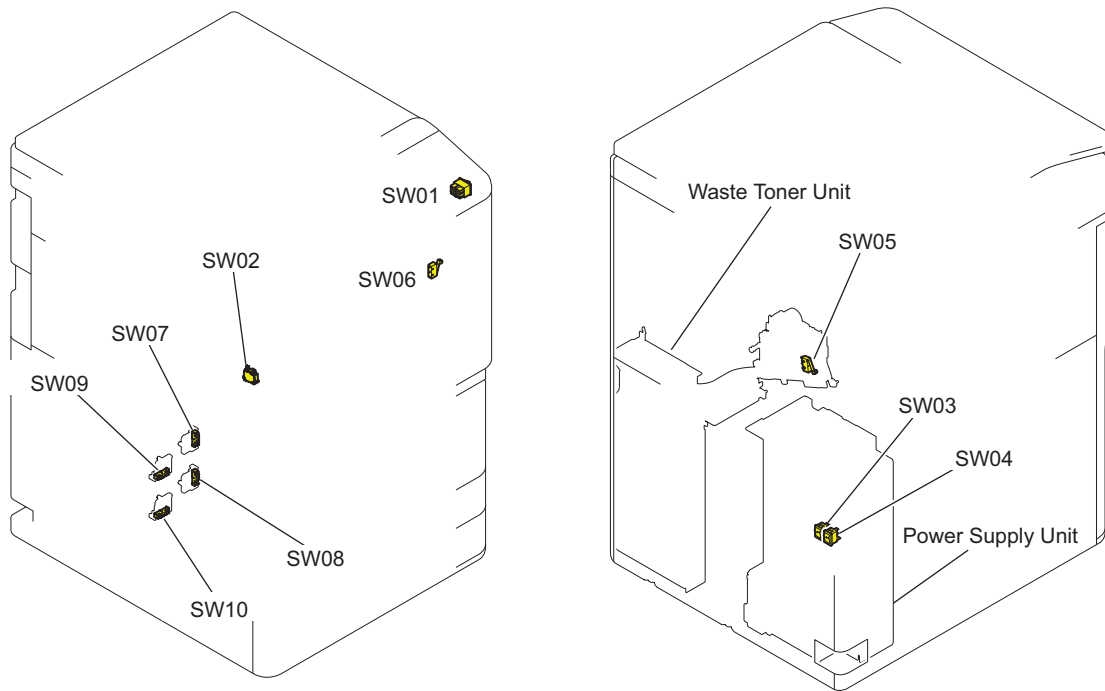
| No    | Name                                   | Main Unit                 | Reference |
|-------|--|---------------------------|-----------|
| PS02  | Vertical Path Cover Open/Close Sensor  | Vertical Path Unit        | -         |
| PS23  | Multi-purpose Tray Paper Sensor        | Multi-purpose Pickup Unit | -         |
| PS25  | Vertical Path Sensor 2                 | Vertical Path Unit        | -         |
| PS28  | Writing Judging Sensor                 | Multi-purpose Pickup Unit | -         |
| PS31  | Side Registration Sensor               | Fixing Feed Unit          | -         |
| PS35  | Inner Delivery Sensor                  | Fixing Feed Unit          | -         |
| PS36  | Outer Delivery Sensor                  | Outer Delivery Unit       | -         |
| PS54  | Toner Exchange Cover Open/Close Sensor | Hopper Unit               | -         |
| PS55  | Transfer Belt Engage Sensor            | Fixing Feed Unit          | -         |
| PS56  | Transfer Belt Disengage Sensor         | Fixing Feed Unit          | -         |
| PS64  | Duplex Outlet Sensor                   | Fixing Feed Unit          | -         |
| PS65  | Reverse Vertical Path Sensor           | Fixing Feed Unit          | -         |
| PS66  | Duplex Left Sensor                     | Fixing Feed Unit          | -         |
| PS67  | Duplex Merging Sensor                  | Fixing Feed Unit          | -         |
| PS101 | Multi-purpose Tray Paper Length Sensor | Multi-purpose Pickup Unit | -         |
| TS02  | Buffer Toner Sensor 1                  | Hopper Unit               | -         |
| TS03  | Buffer Toner Sensor 2                  | Hopper Unit               | -         |
| UN13  | Multi-purpose Tray Paper Width Sensor  | Multi-purpose Pickup Unit | -         |



| No.  | Name  | Main Unit                      | Reference |
|------|---|--------------------------------|-----------|
| PS03 | Multi-purpose Tray Cover Open/Close Sensor          | Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Unit | -         |
| PS06 | Right Deck Paper Height Sensor                      | Right Deck Unit                | -         |
| PS07 | Right Deck Paper Sensor                             | Right Deck Unit                | -         |
| PS08 | Right Deck Upper Limit Sensor                       | Right Deck Unit                | -         |
| PS10 | Left Deck Paper Height Sensor                       | Left Deck Unit                 | -         |
| PS11 | Left Deck Paper Sensor                              | Left Deck Unit                 | -         |
| PS12 | Left Deck Upper Limit Sensor                        | Left Deck Unit                 | -         |
| PS13 | Cassette 3 Paper Sensor                             | Cassette 3 Pickup Unit         | -         |
| PS14 | Cassette 4 Paper Sensor                             | Cassette 4 Pickup Unit         | -         |
| PS17 | Cassette 3 Paper Height Sensor                      | Cassette 3 Pickup Unit         | -         |
| PS18 | Cassette 4 Paper Height Sensor                      | Cassette 4 Pickup Unit         | -         |
| PS19 | Right Deck Pickup Sensor                            | Right Deck Unit                | -         |
| PS20 | Left Deck Pickup Sensor                             | Left Deck Unit                 | -         |
| PS21 | Cassette 3 Pickup Sensor                            | Cassette 3 Pickup Unit         | -         |
| PS22 | Cassette 4 Pickup Sensor                            | Cassette 4 Pickup Unit         | -         |
| PS26 | Vertical Path Sensor 3                              | Vertical Path Unit             | -         |
| PS27 | Vertical Path Sensor 4                              | Vertical Path Unit             | -         |
| PS32 | Right Deck Pull Out Sensor                          | Right Deck Unit                | -         |
| PS33 | Left Deck Pull Out Sensor                           | Left Deck Unit                 | -         |
| PS47 | Right Deck Paper Level Sensor 1                     | Right Deck Unit                | -         |
| PS48 | Right Deck Paper Level Sensor 2                     | Right Deck Unit                | -         |
| PS49 | Left Deck Paper Level Sensor 1                      | Left Deck Unit                 | -         |
| PS50 | Left Deck Paper Level Sensor 2                      | Left Deck Unit                 | -         |
| PS68 | Cassette 3 Upper Limit Sensor                       | Cassette 3 Pickup Unit         | -         |
| PS69 | Cassette 3 Paper Level Sensor 1                     | Cassette 3 Pickup Unit         | -         |
| PS70 | Cassette 3 Paper Level Sensor 2                     | Cassette 3 Pickup Unit         | -         |
| PS71 | Cassette 4 Upper Limit Sensor                       | Cassette 4 Pickup Unit         | -         |
| PS72 | Cassette 4 Paper Level Sensor 1                     | Cassette 4 Pickup Unit         | -         |
| PS73 | Cassette 4 Paper Level Sensor 2                     | Cassette 4 Pickup Unit         | -         |
| PS94 | Primary Charging Assembly Shutter Open/Close Sensor | Primary Charging Assembly      | -         |

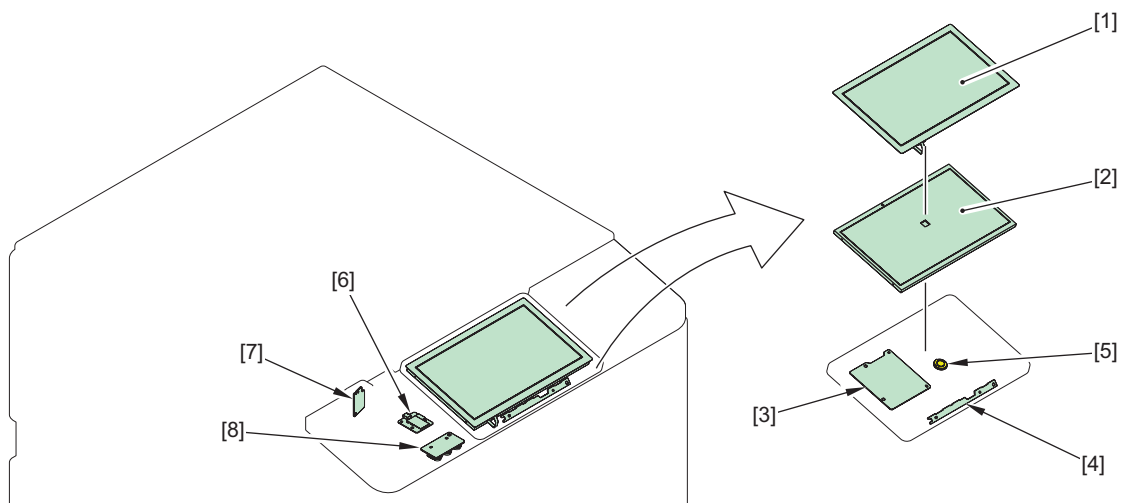
| No.   | Name   | Main Unit                      | Reference |
|-------|--|--------------------------------|-----------|
| PS95  | Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Shutter Open/Close Sensor | Pre-transfer Charging Assembly | -         |
| THU01 | Environment Sensor                                       | Main Body                      | -         |

• List of Switch



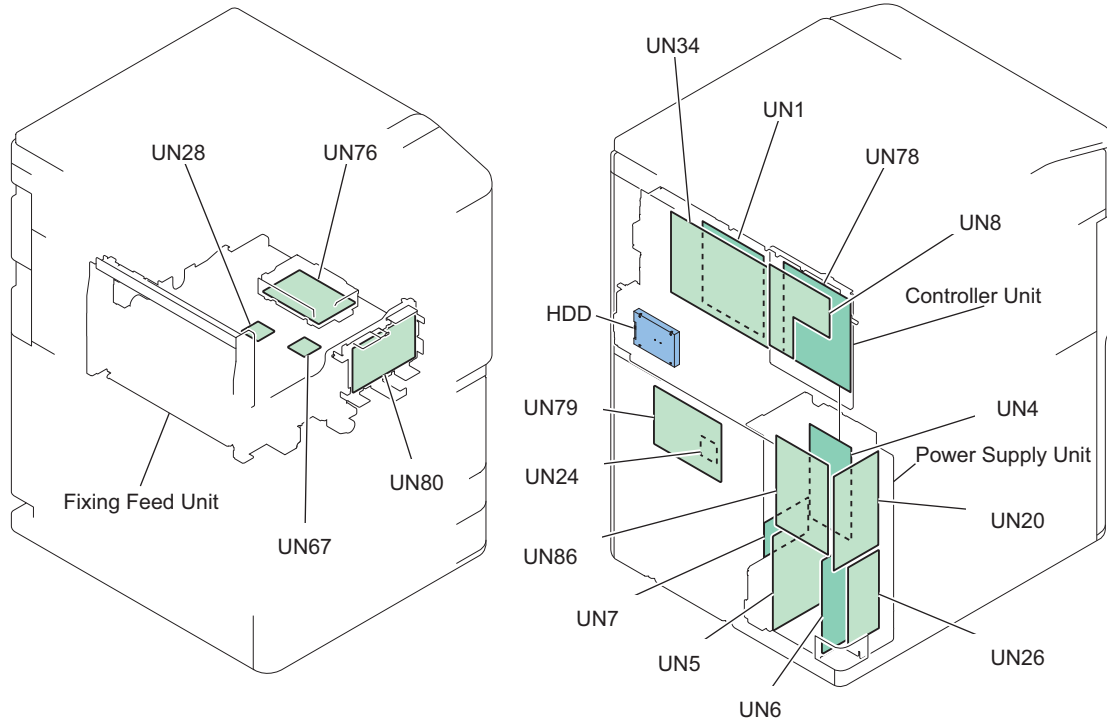
| No   | Name                                     | Main Unit              | Reference |
|------|--|------------------------|-----------|
| SW01 | Power Switch                             | Product configuration  | -         |
| SW02 | Front Door Open Detection Switch         | Product configuration  | -         |
| SW03 | Environment Switch                       | Product configuration  | -         |
| SW04 | Cassette Heater Switch                   | Product configuration  | -         |
| SW05 | Waste Toner Lock Detection Switch        | Waste Toner Unit       | -         |
| SW06 | Multi Door Switch                        | Product configuration  | -         |
| SW07 | Cassette 3 Paper Width Detection Switch  | Cassette 3 Pickup Unit | -         |
| SW08 | Cassette 4 Paper Width Detection Switch  | Cassette 4 Pickup Unit | -         |
| SW09 | Cassette 3 Paper Length Detection Switch | Cassette 3 Pickup Unit | -         |
| SW10 | Cassette 4 Paper Length Detection Switch | Cassette 4 Pickup Unit | -         |

• List of PCB

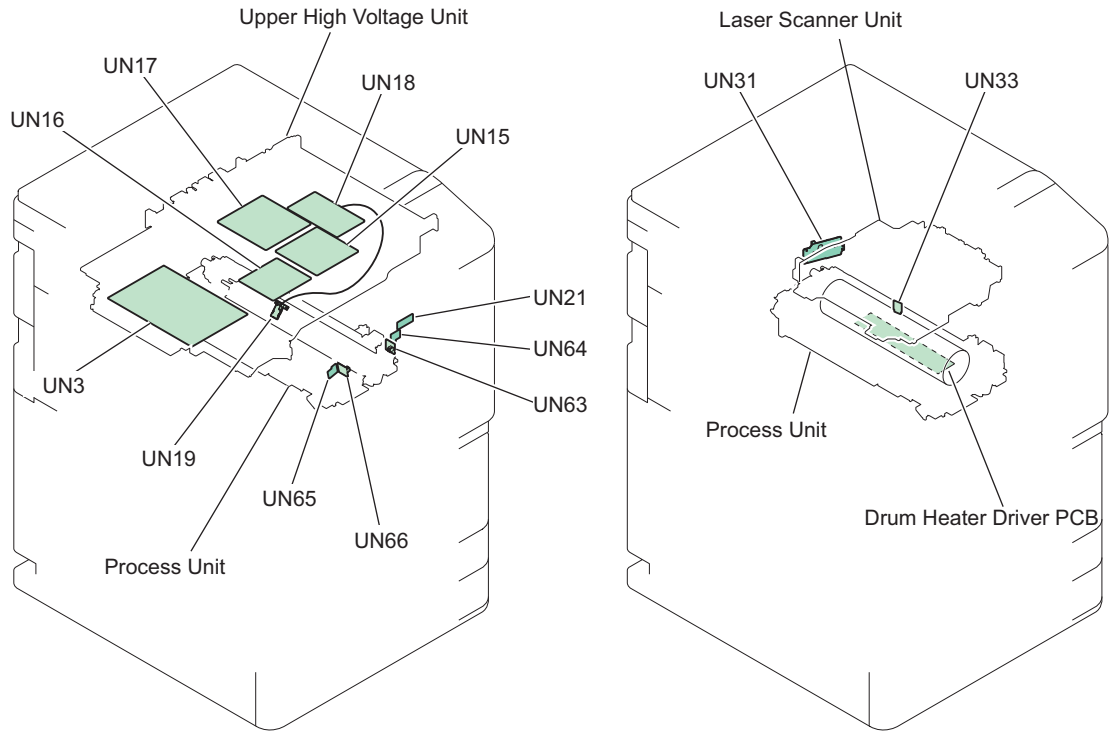




| No. | Name                  | Main Unit               | Reference   |
|-----|-----------------------|-------------------------|---|
| [1] | Touch Panel           | Flat Control Panel Unit | "Removing the Control Panel CPU PCB/LCD Unit/LED PCB" on page 309 |
| [2] | LCD Unit              | Flat Control Panel Unit |   |
| [3] | Control Panel CPU PCB | Flat Control Panel Unit |   |
| [4] | Control Panel LED PCB | Flat Control Panel Unit |   |
| [5] | Control Panel Speaker | Flat Control Panel Unit |   |
| [6] | Wireless LAN PCB      | Product configuration   | -   |
| [7] | Motion Sensor PCB     | Product configuration   | -   |
| [8] | Switch PCB            | Product configuration   | -   |

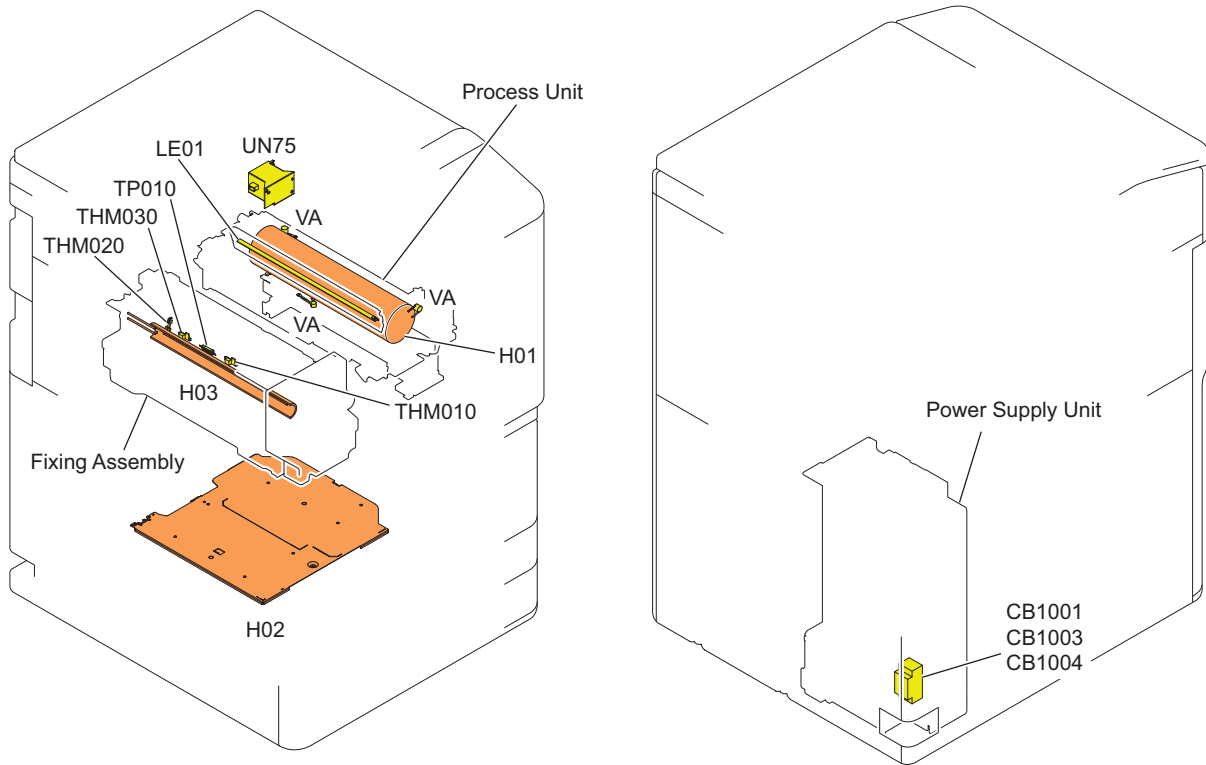


| No.  | Name                                 | Main Unit             | Reference                                    |
|------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|--|
| UN1  | DC Controller PCB                    | Product configuration | "Removing the DC Controller PCB" on page 538 |
| UN4  | DC Power Supply PCB                  | Product configuration | -  |
| UN5  | DC Power Supply PCB                  | Product configuration | -  |
| UN6  | DC Power Supply PCB                  | Product configuration | -  |
| UN7  | All-night Power Supply PCB           | Product configuration | -  |
| UN8  | Main Controller PCB 2                | Product configuration | "Removing Main Controller PCB 2" on page 302 |
| UN20 | AC Driver PCB                        | Product configuration | -  |
| UN24 | DC-DC Converter PCB                  | Product configuration | -  |
| UN26 | Noise Filter                         | Product configuration | -  |
| UN28 | DC-DC Converter PCB                  | Product configuration | -  |
| UN34 | Main Controller PCB 1                | Product configuration | "Removing Main Controller PCB 1" on page 300 |
| UN67 | Transfer High Voltage Resistance PCB | Product configuration | -  |
| UN76 | Transfer High Voltage PCB            | Product configuration | -  |
| UN78 | Main Driver PCB                      | Product configuration | -  |
| UN79 | Feed Driver PCB                      | Product configuration | -  |
| UN80 | Duplex Driver PCB                    | Product configuration | -  |
| UN86 | Relay PCB                            | Product configuration | -  |



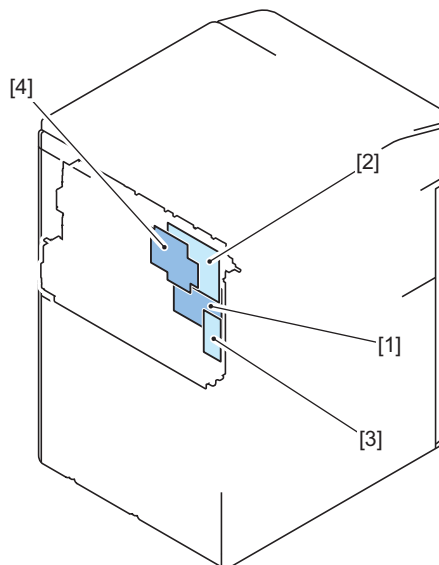
| No.  | Name                              | Main Unit             | Reference   |
|------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| UN3  | Fixing Power Supply PCB           | Product configuration | -   |
| UN15 | Primary Charging High Voltage PCB | Product configuration | -   |
| UN16 | Pre-transfer Charging PCB         | Product configuration | -   |
| UN17 | Develop High Voltage PCB          | Product configuration | -   |
| UN18 | Voltage Control PCB               | Product configuration | <a href="#">"Removing the Potential Control PCB Unit" on page 432</a> |
| UN19 | Voltage Sensor PCB                | Product configuration | <a href="#">"Removing the Potential Control PCB Unit" on page 432</a> |
| UN21 | Drum ROM                          | Product configuration | -   |
| UN31 | Laser Driver PCB                  | Product configuration | -   |
| UN33 | BD PCB                            | Product configuration | -   |
| UN63 | Contact A PCB                     | Product configuration | -   |
| UN64 | Contact B PCB                     | Product configuration | -   |
| UN65 | Contact A PCB                     | Product configuration | -   |
| UN66 | Contact B PCB                     | Product configuration | -   |
| -    | Drum Heater Driver PCB            | Product configuration | -   |

● Heater,others



| No     | Name                    | Main Unit             | Reference |
|--------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-----------|
| H01    | Drum Heater             | Process Unit          | -         |
| H02    | Multi Cassette Heater   | Product configuration | -         |
| H03    | Fixing Heater           | Fixing Assembly       | -         |
| LE01   | Pre-exposure LED        | Process Unit          | -         |
| TP010  | Fixing Thermal Switch 1 | Fixing Assembly       | -         |
| THM010 | Fixing Main Thermistor  | Fixing Assembly       | -         |
| THM020 | Fixing Sub Thermistor 1 | Fixing Assembly       | -         |
| THM030 | Fixing Sub Thermistor 2 | Fixing Assembly       | -         |
| CB1001 | Leakage Breaker         | Product configuration | -         |
| CB1003 | Leakage Breaker         | Product configuration | -         |
| CB1004 | Leakage Breaker         | Product configuration | -         |

■ Power Unit System



| No. | Name                 |
|-----|----------------------|
| [1] | Fax PCB              |
| [2] | 2nd Line G3 FAX PCB  |
| [3] | Modular PCB          |
| [4] | G3 FAX Expansion PCB |

## Original Feed System

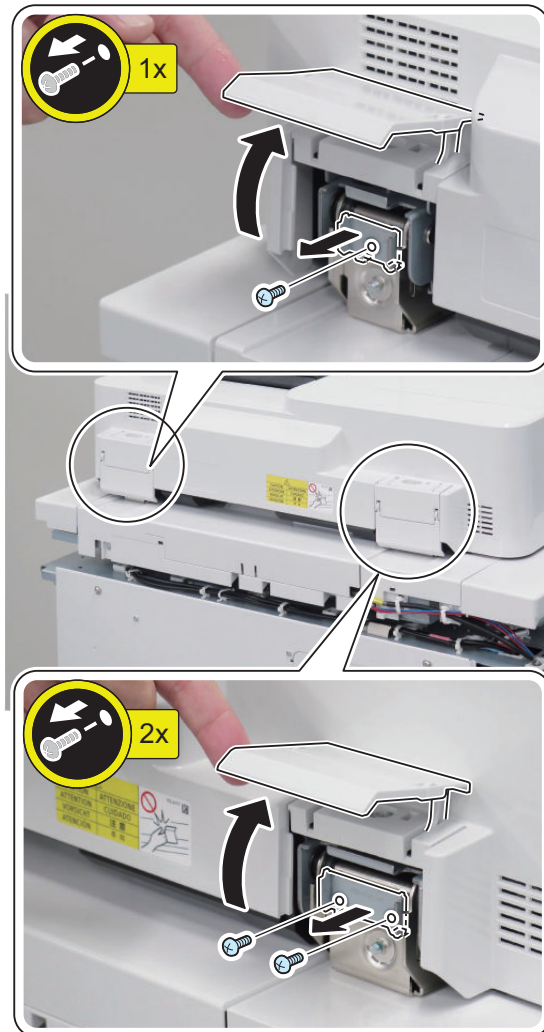
### ● Removing the ADF

#### ■ Preparation

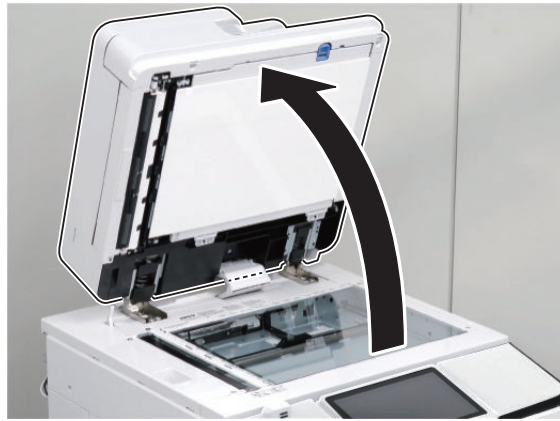
1. "Removing the Covers" on page 279

#### ■ Procedure

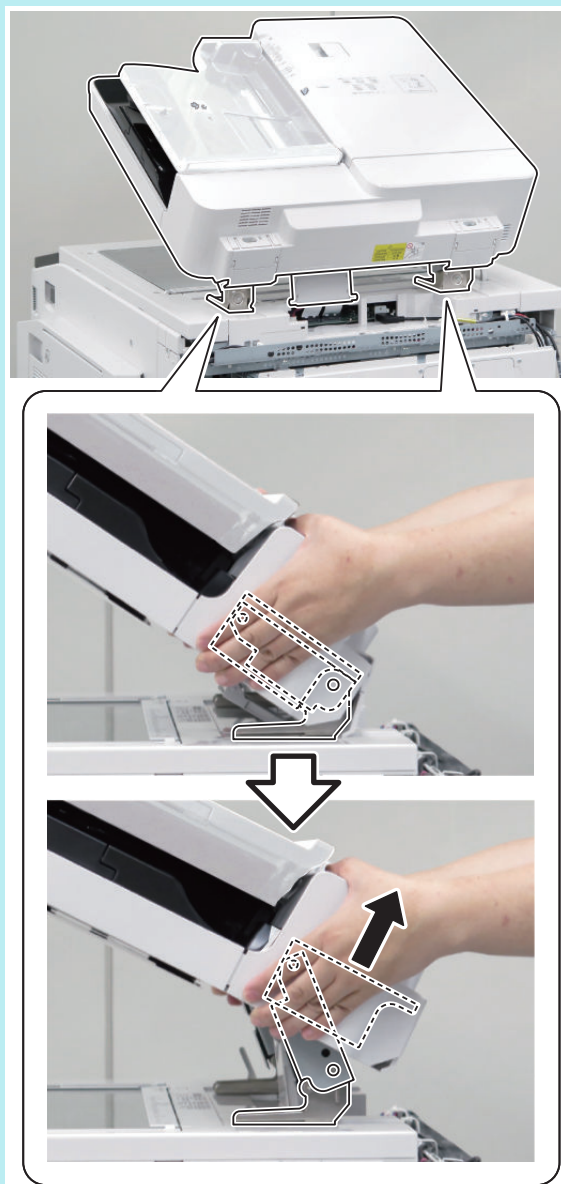
1.



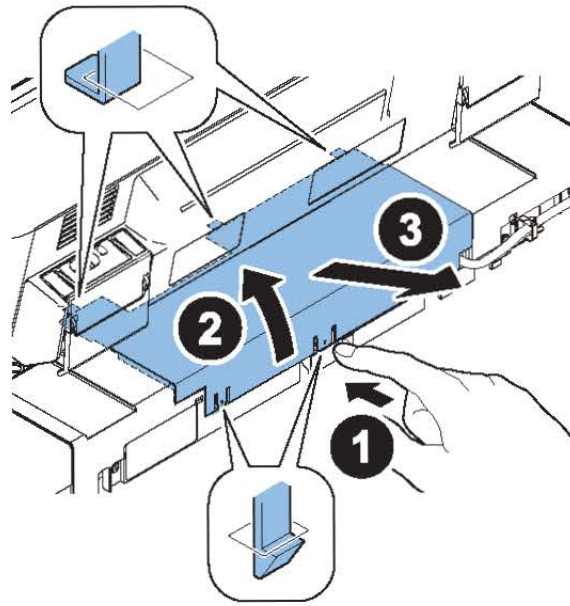
## 2.

**NOTE:**

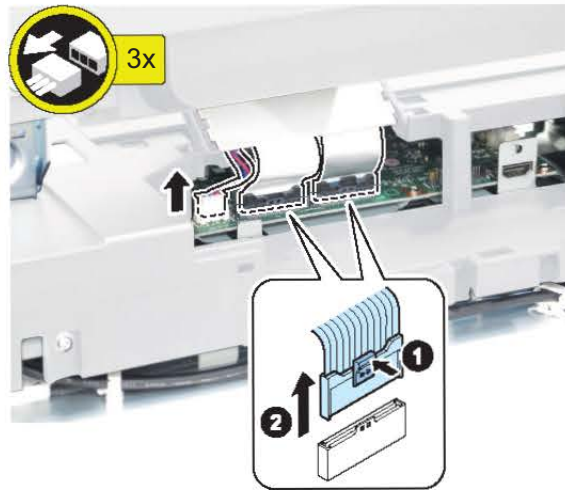
- When performing the following procedures, using ADF in the book mode makes the work easy.
- The book mode can be released by fully opening the ADF.



3.

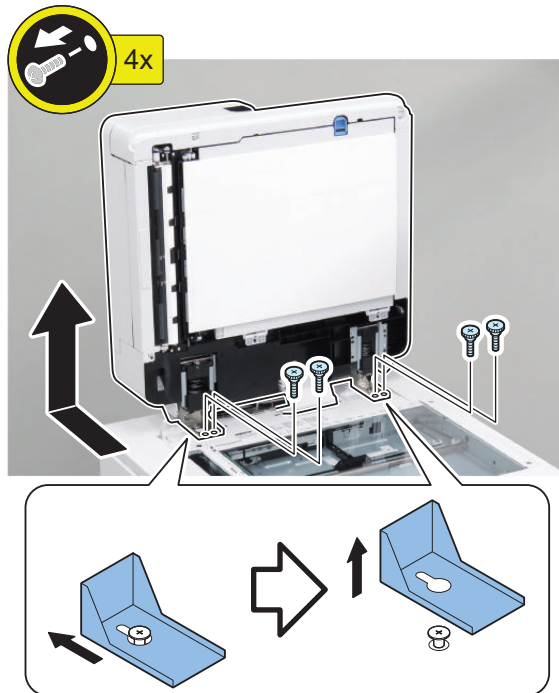


4.



## 5.

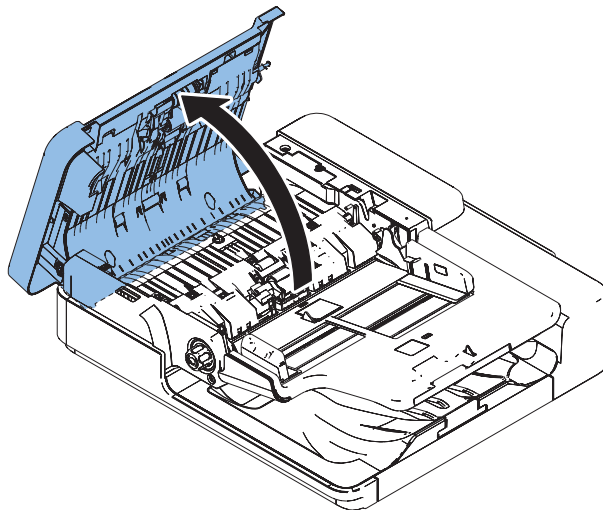
**CAUTION:**  
Be careful not to drop the ADF.



## ● Removing the Sensor Harness Cover

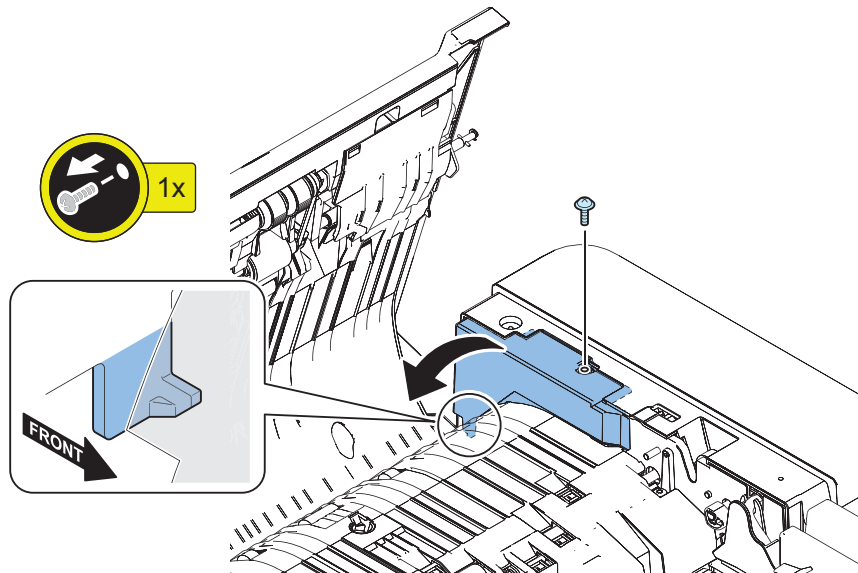
### ■ Procedure

#### 1.





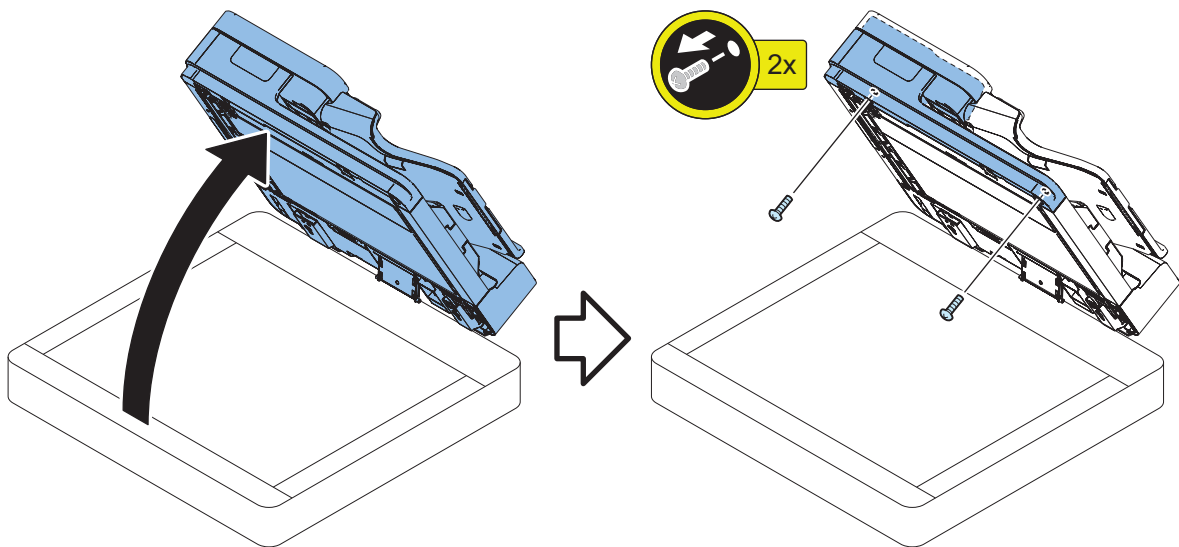
2.



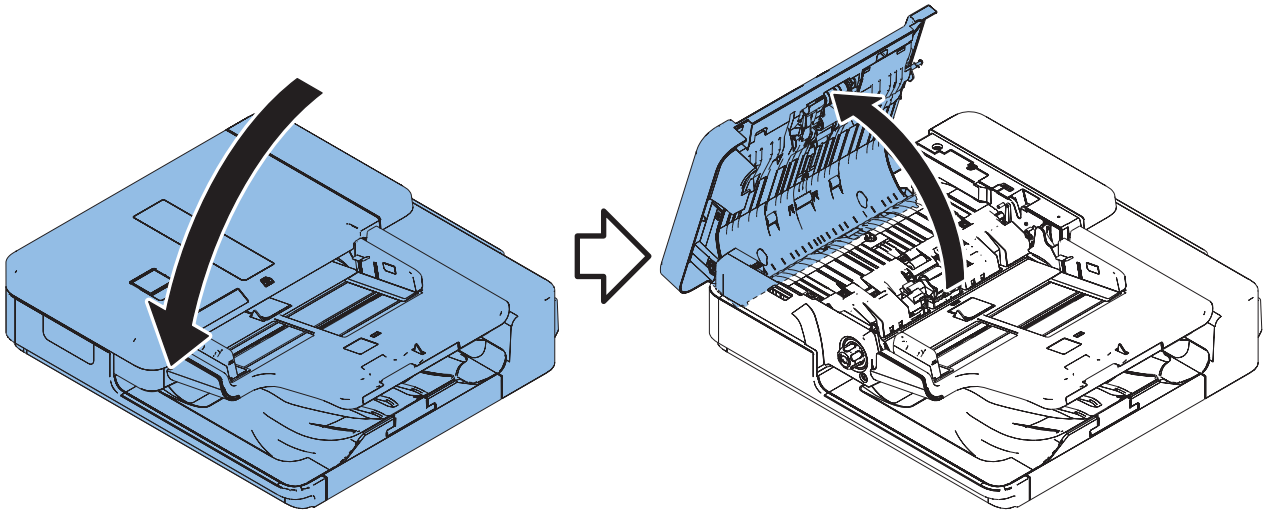
## ● Removing the ADF Front Cover

### ■ Procedure

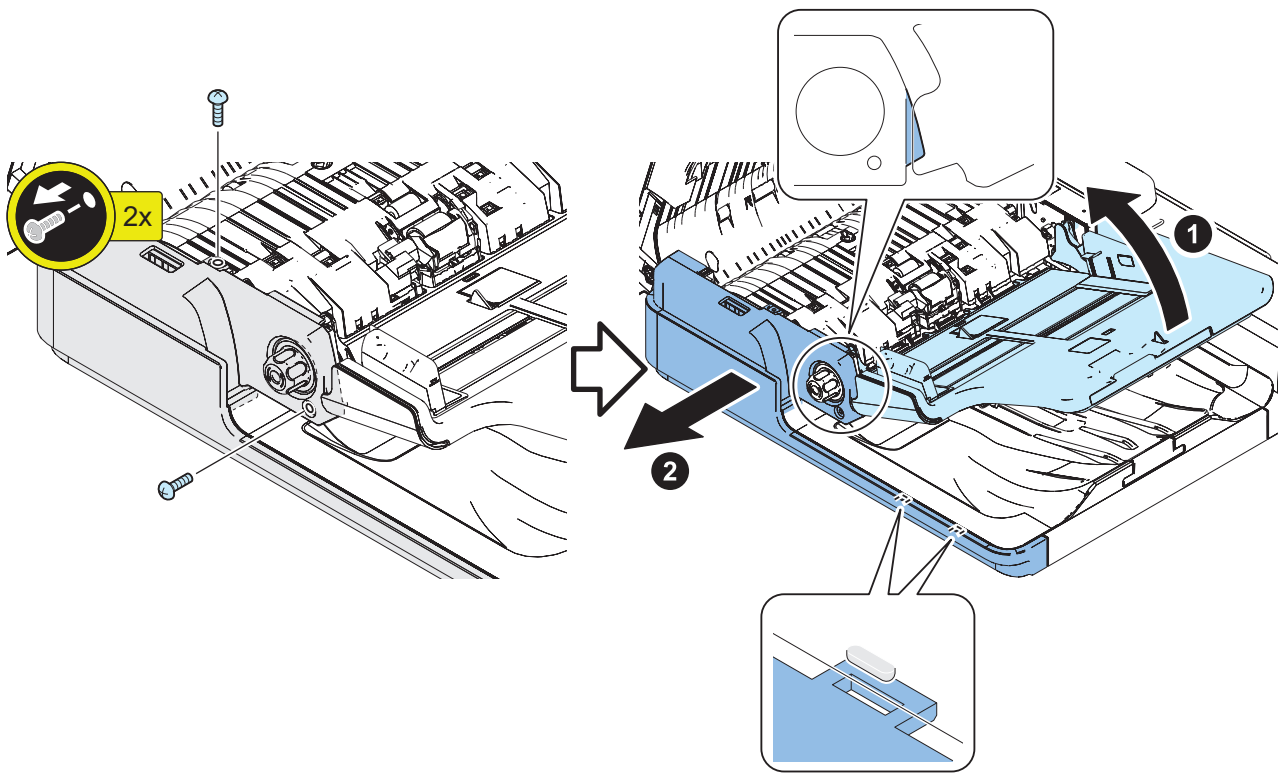
1.



2.



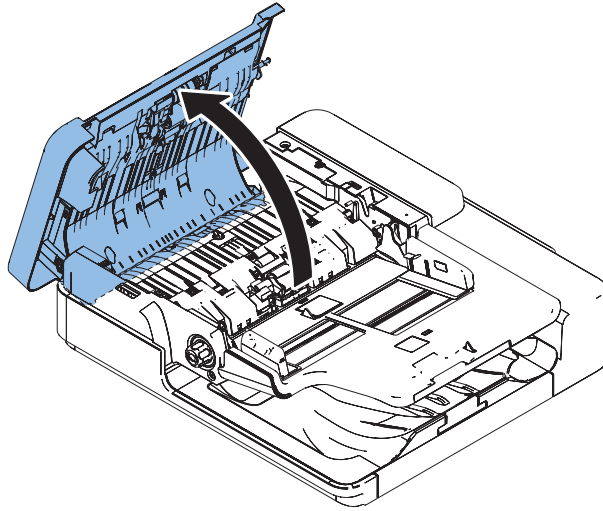
3.



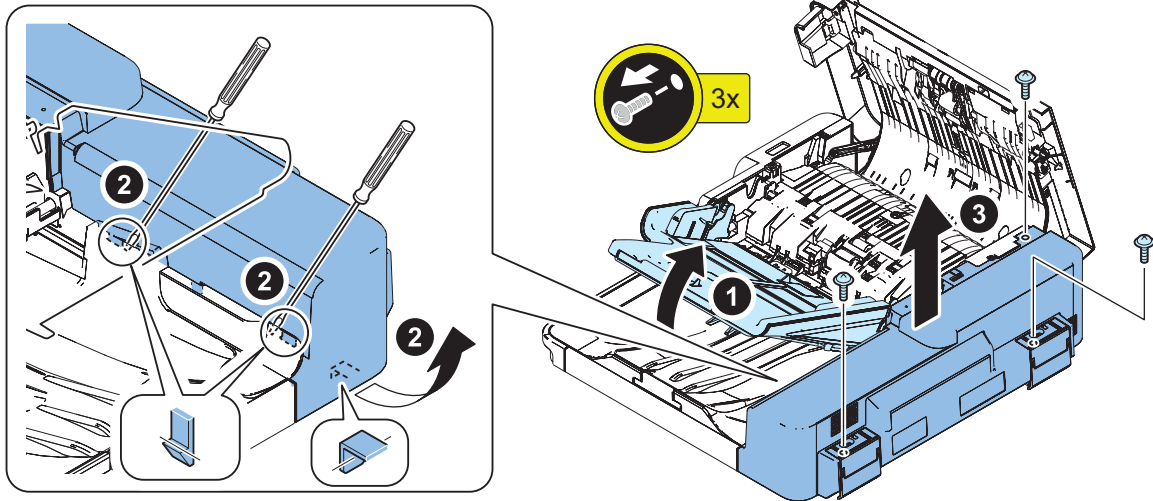
## ● Removing the ADF Rear Cover

### ■ Procedure

1.



2.



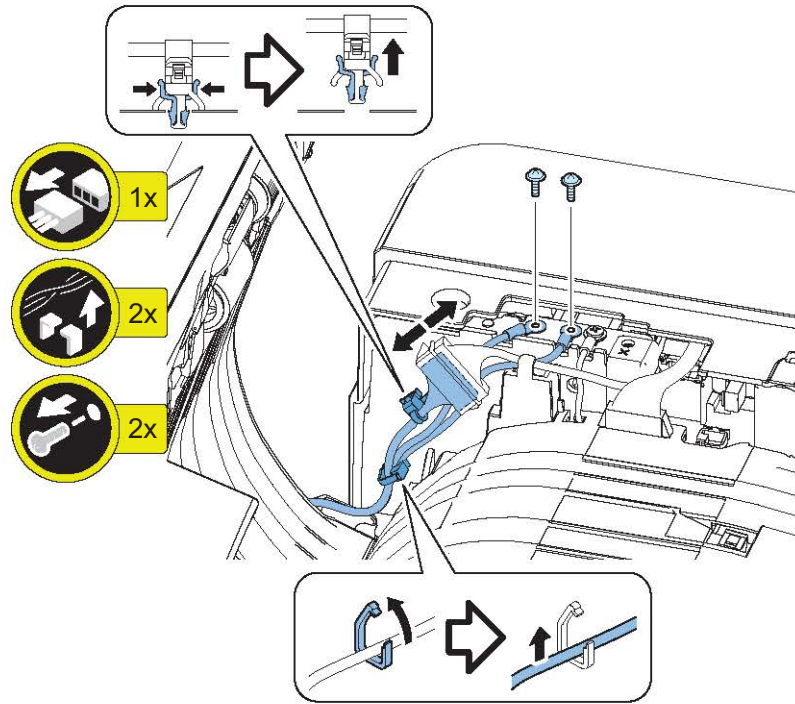
## ● Removing the Open/Close Cover

### ■ Preparation

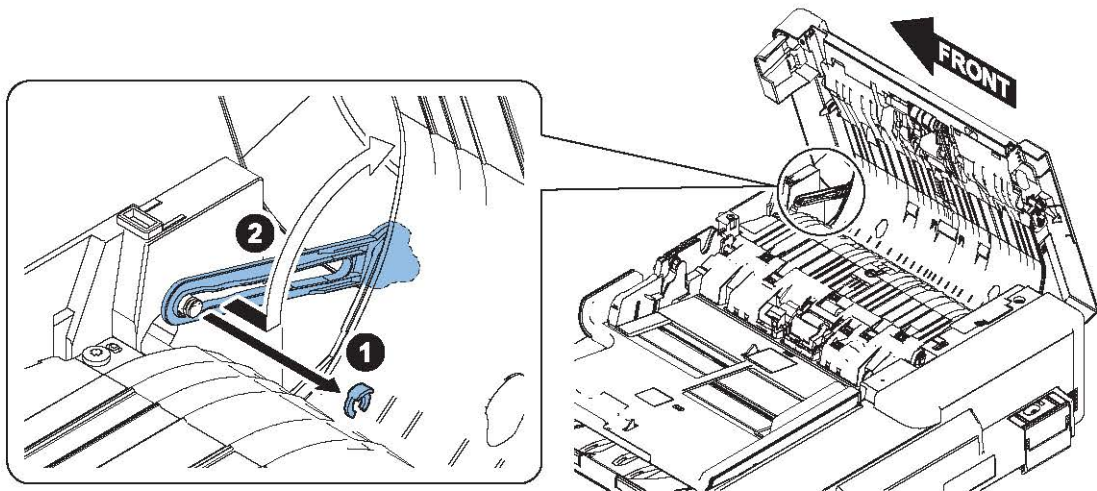
1. "Removing the ADF Front Cover" on page 250
2. "Removing the Sensor Harness Cover" on page 249

### ■ Procedure

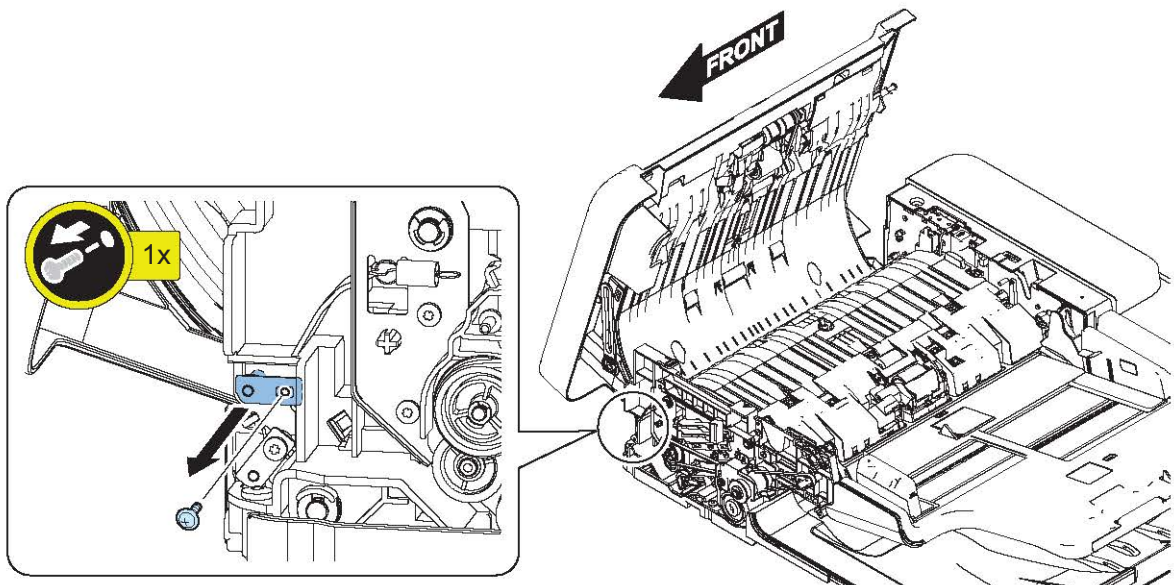
1.



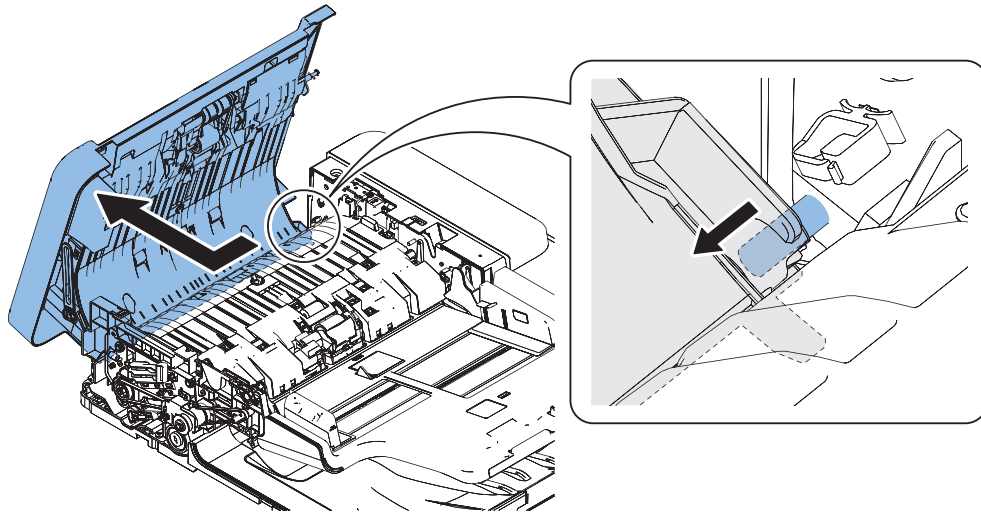
2.



3.



## 4.



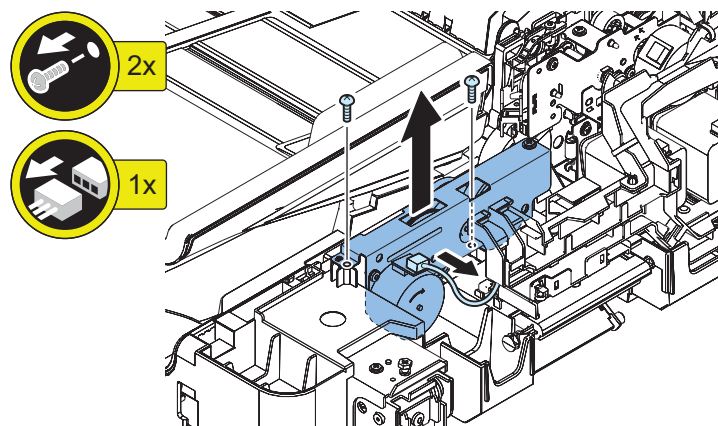
## ● Removing the Lifter Drive Unit

### ■ Preparation

1. "Removing the ADF Rear Cover" on page 251
2. "Removing the ADF Driver PCB" on page 264

### ■ Procedure

## 1.



## ● Removing the Document Tray

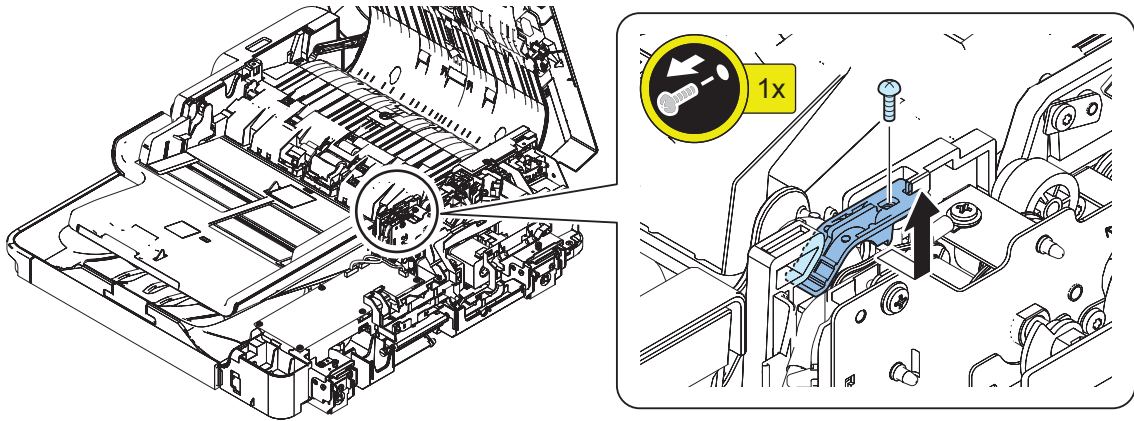
### ■ Preparation

1. "Removing the ADF Rear Cover" on page 251

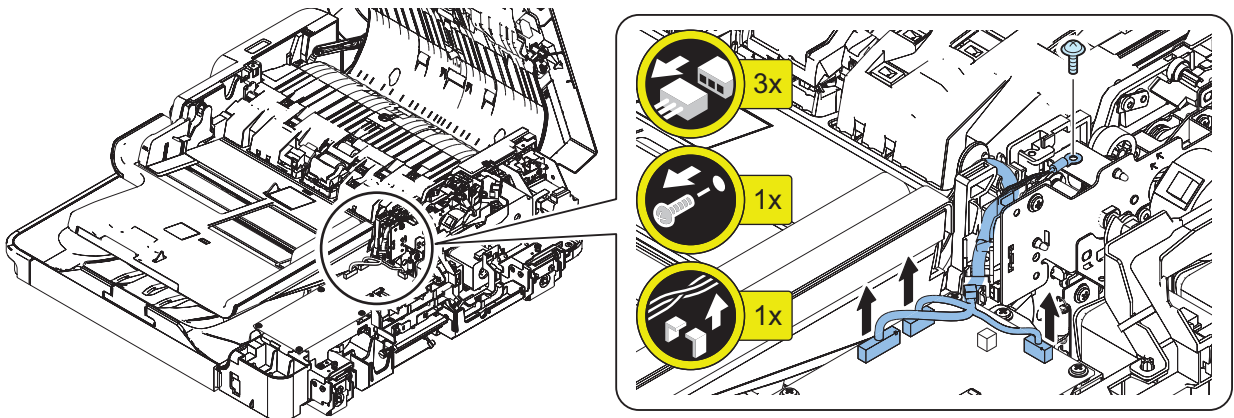
### ■ Procedure



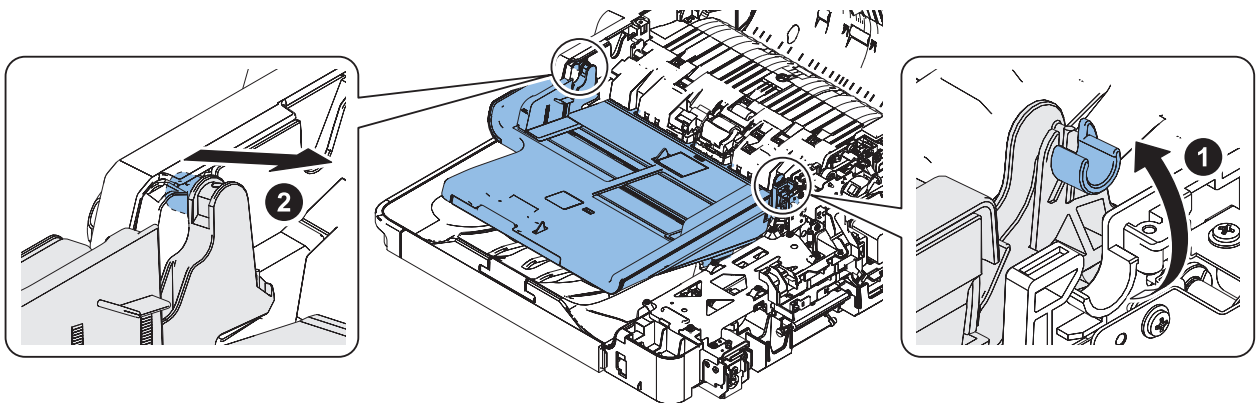
1.



2.



3.



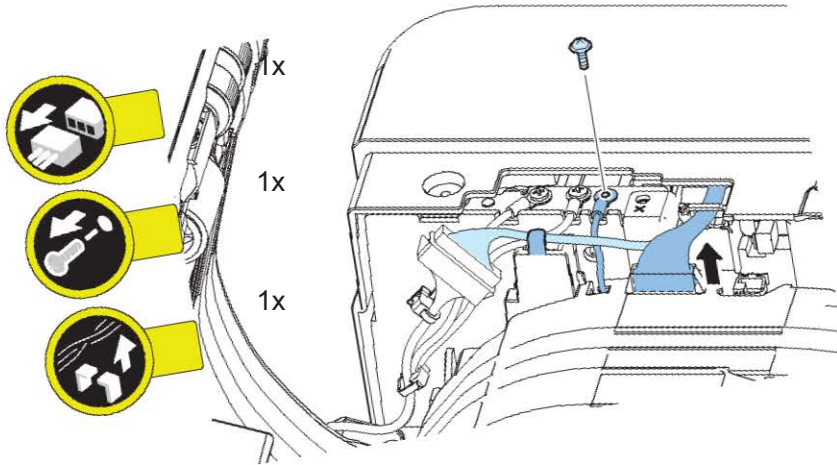
## ● Removing the ADF Scanner Unit

### ■ Preparation

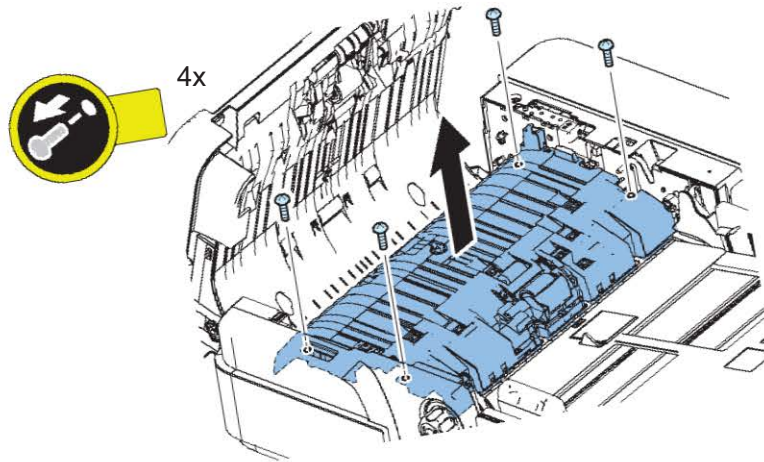
1. "Removing the Sensor Harness Cover" on page 249

■ Procedure

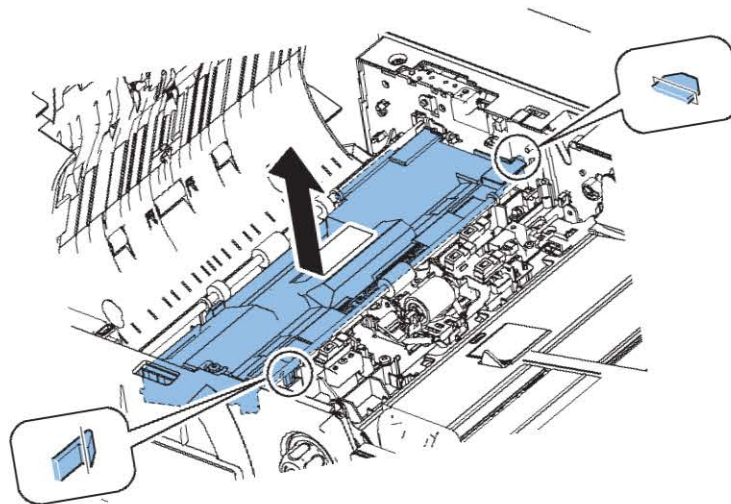
1.



2.



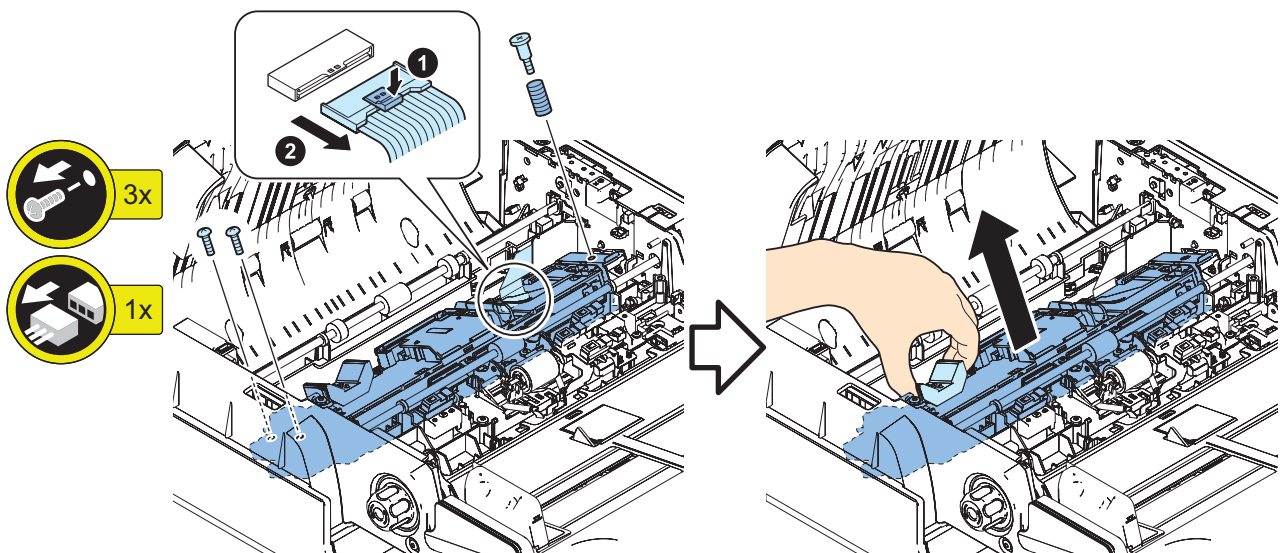
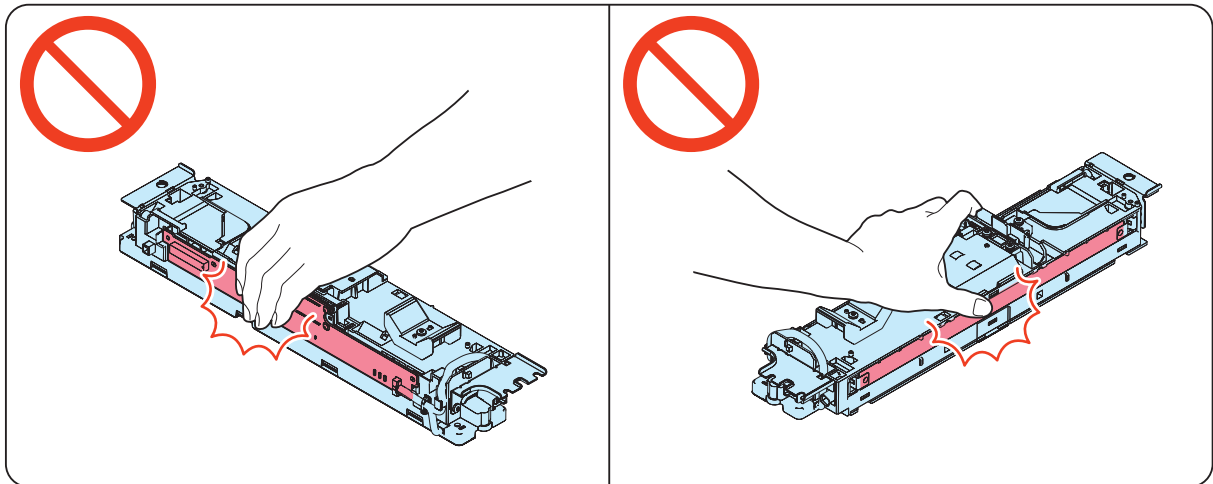
3.



## 4.

**CAUTION:**

Do not touch the Scanner Unit PCB and the mirror.



## 5. Actions after parts replacement: “ADF Scanner Unit” on page 602

## ● Removing the Cable Guide Unit

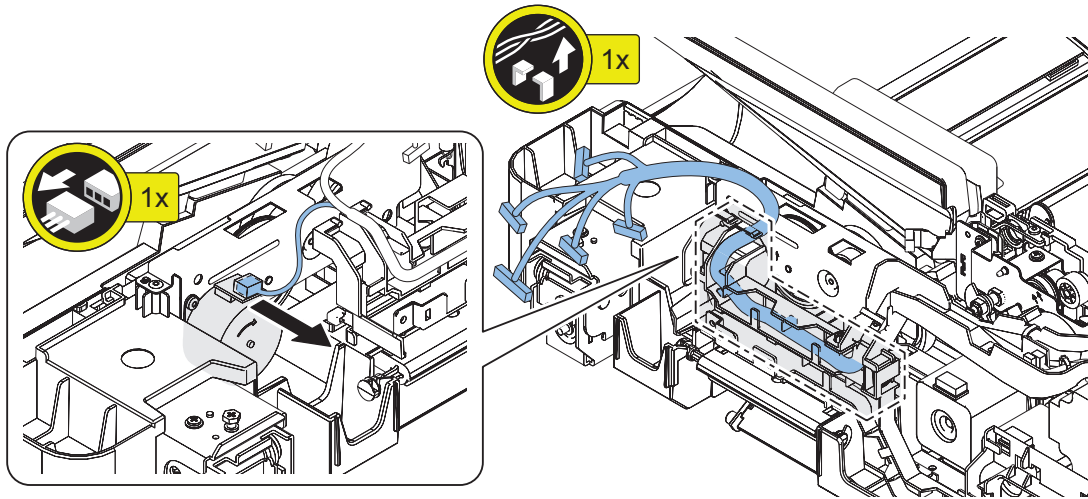
### ■ Preparation

1. “Removing the ADF Rear Cover” on page 251
2. “Removing the Sensor Harness Cover” on page 249
3. “Removing the ADF Driver PCB” on page 264

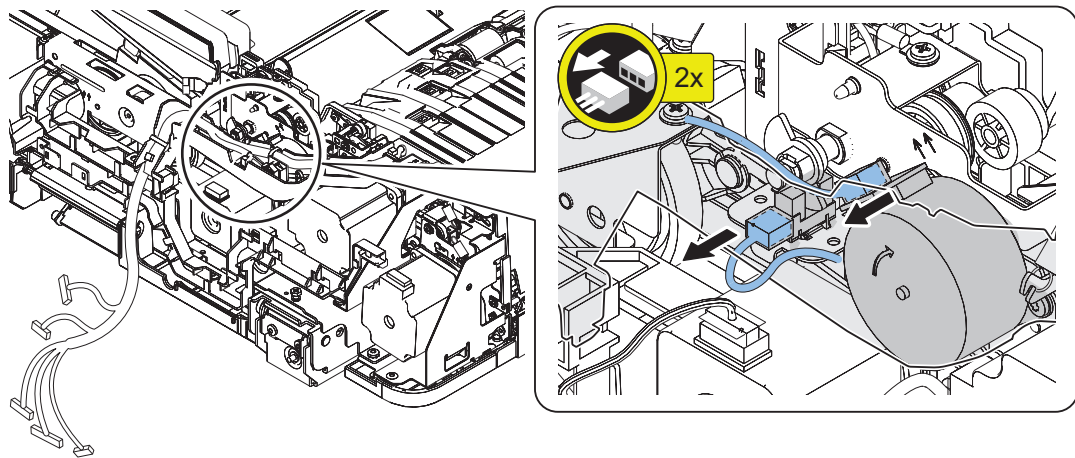
### ■ Procedure



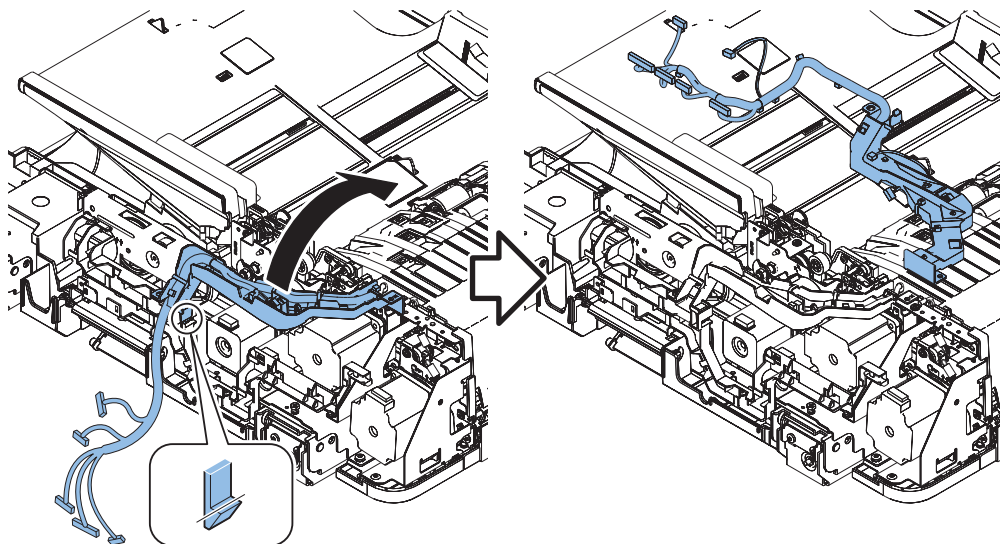
1.



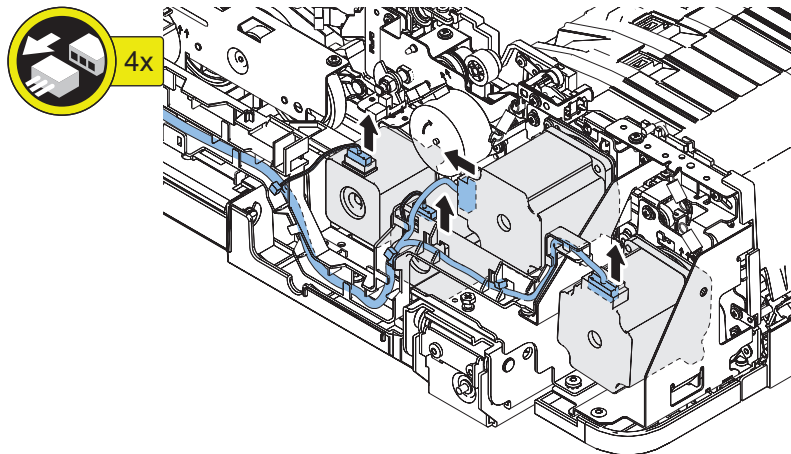
2.



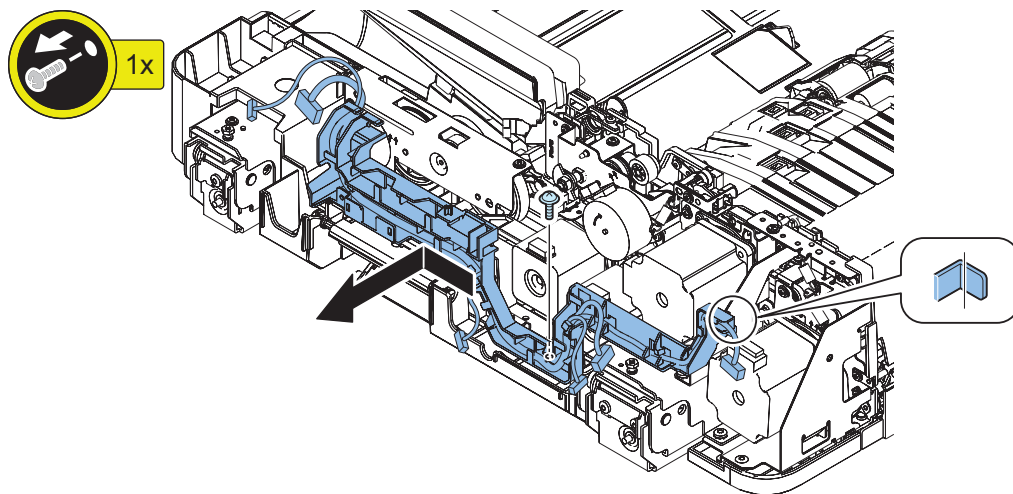
3.



4.



5.



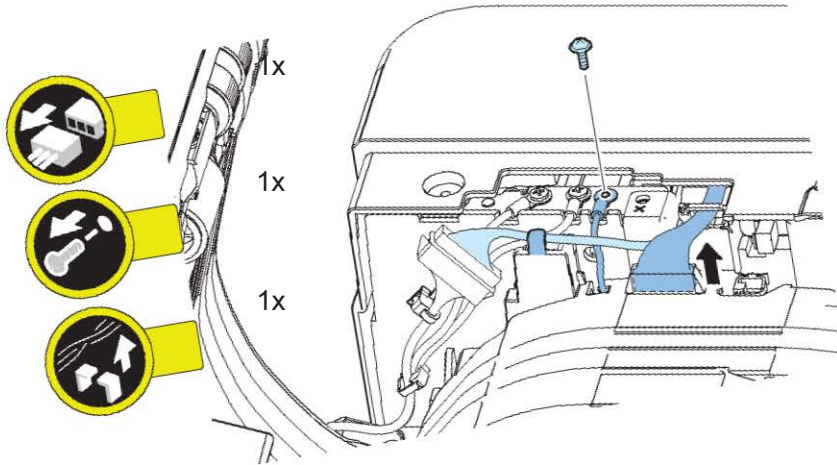
## ● Removing the Left Hinge

### ■ Preparation

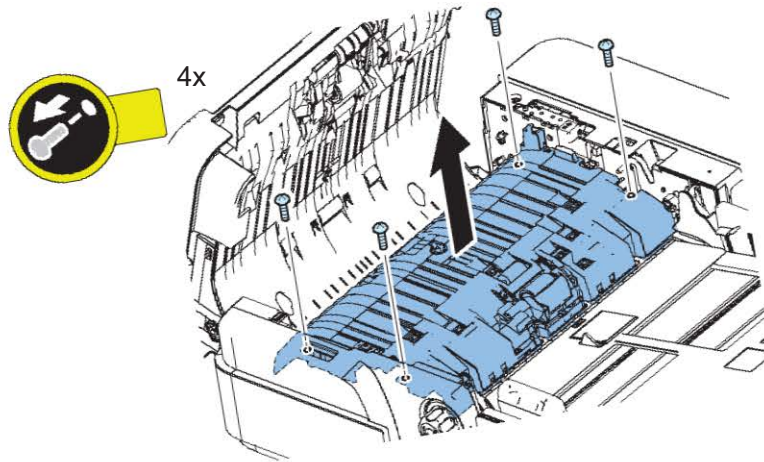
1. "Removing the ADF" on page 246
2. "Removing the ADF Rear Cover" on page 251
3. "Removing the Sensor Harness Cover" on page 249
4. "Removing the ADF Driver PCB" on page 264
5. "Removing the Cable Guide Unit" on page 257
6. "Removing the ADF Delivery Motor" on page 267
7. "Removing the ADF Pickup Motor Unit" on page 267
8. "Removing the ADF Pullout Motor Unit" on page 268
9. "Removing the Lead Motor Unit" on page 269

■ Procedure

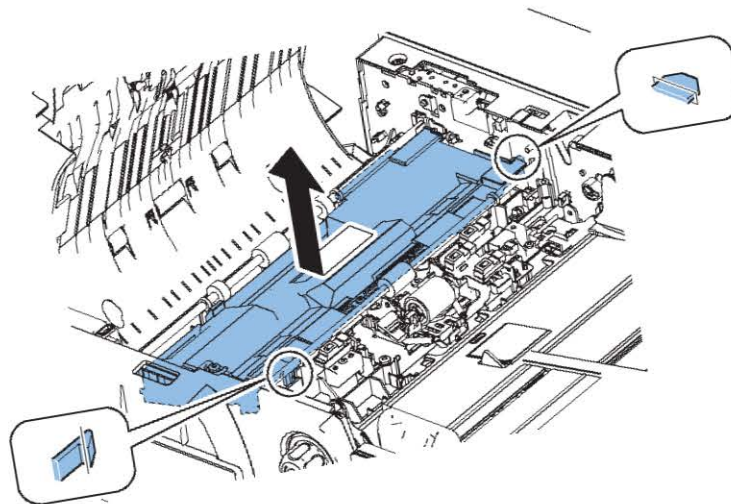
1.



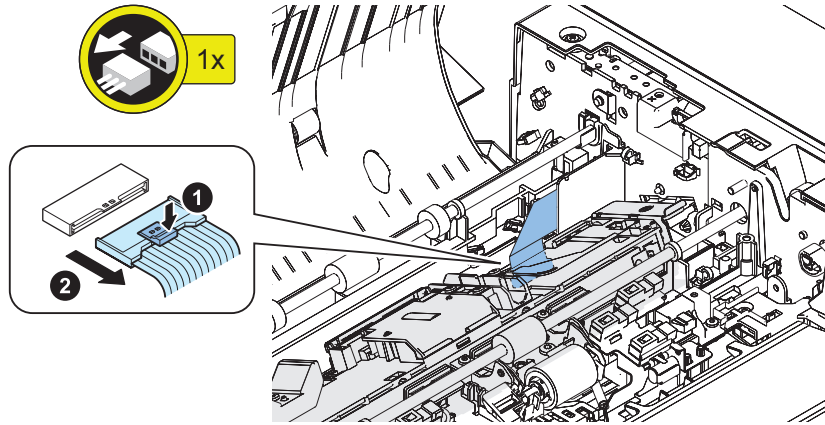
2.



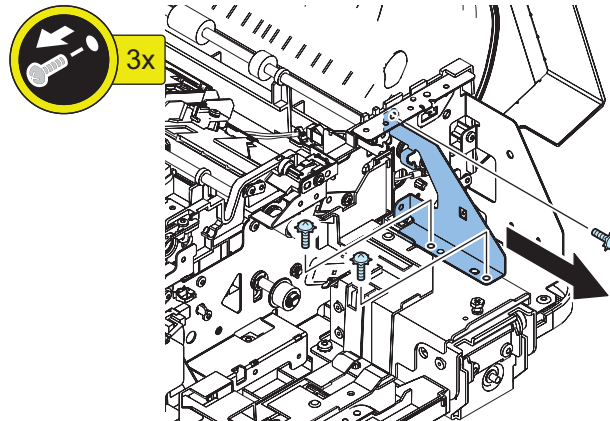
3.



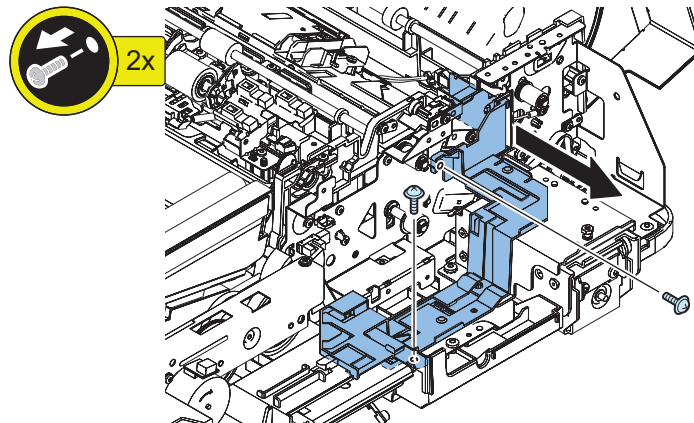
4.



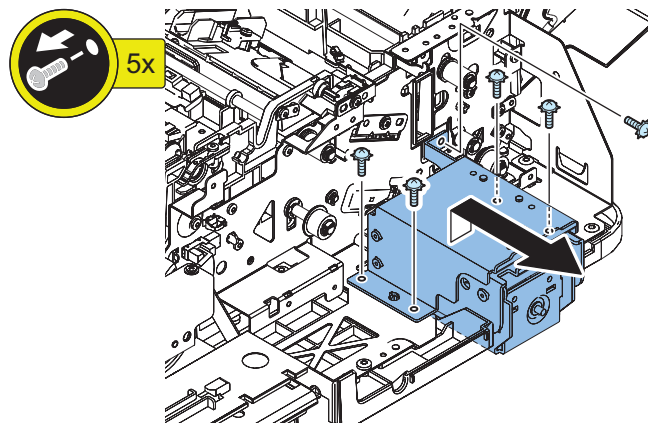
5.



6.



7.

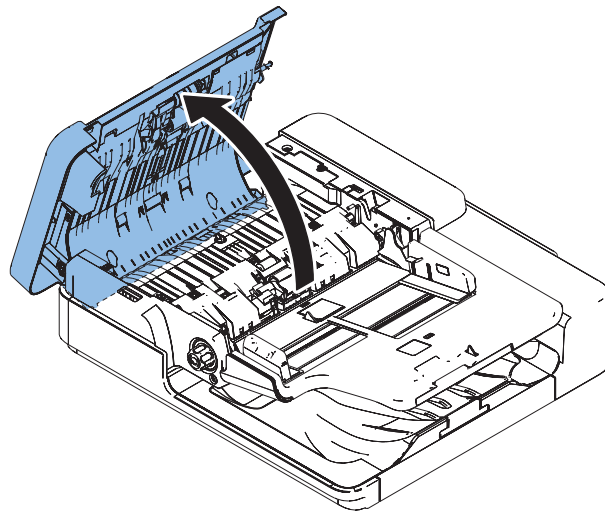




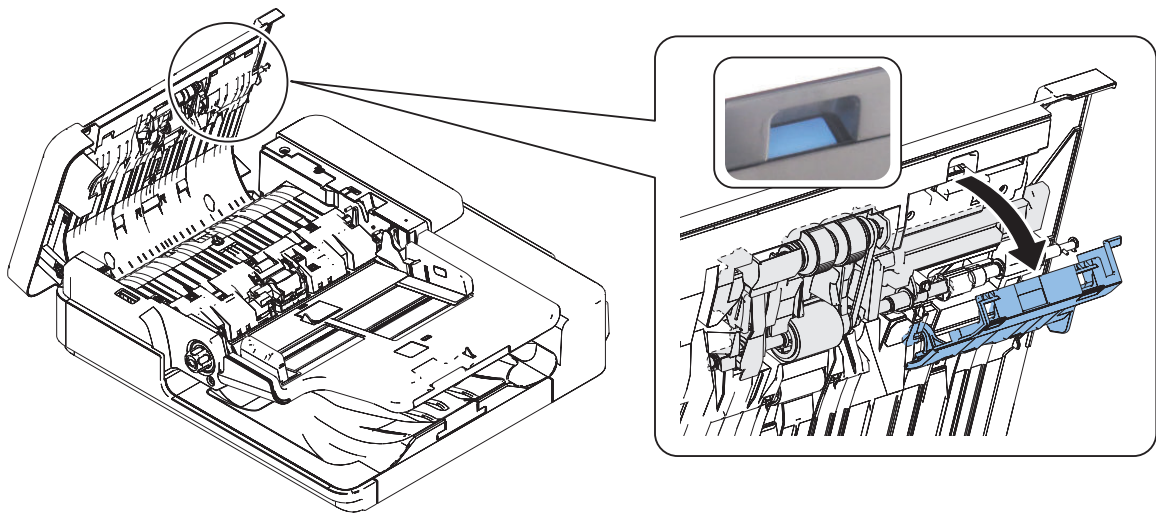
## ● Removing the Pickup Roller Unit

### ■ Procedure

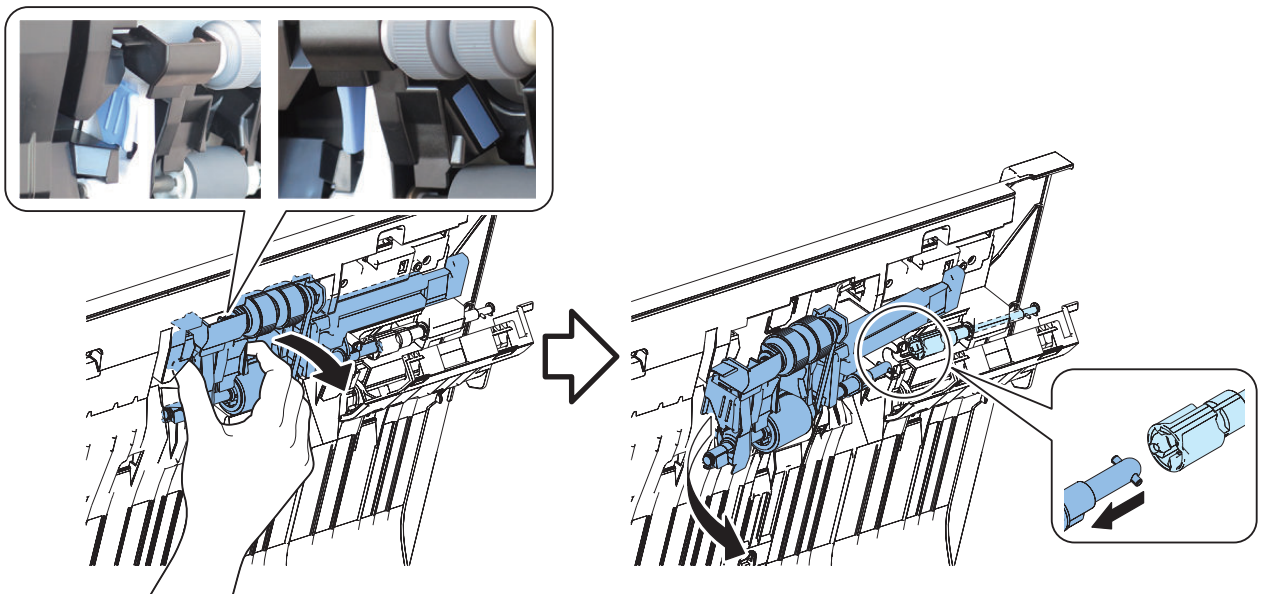
1.



2.



3.



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

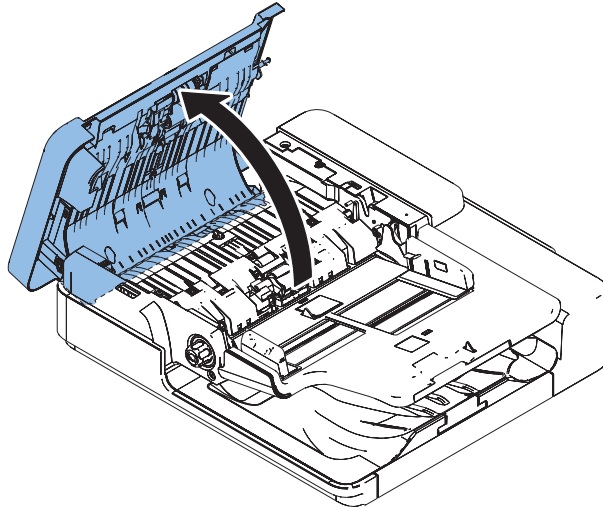
### 1. Clear the parts counter.

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2 > DF-PU-RL

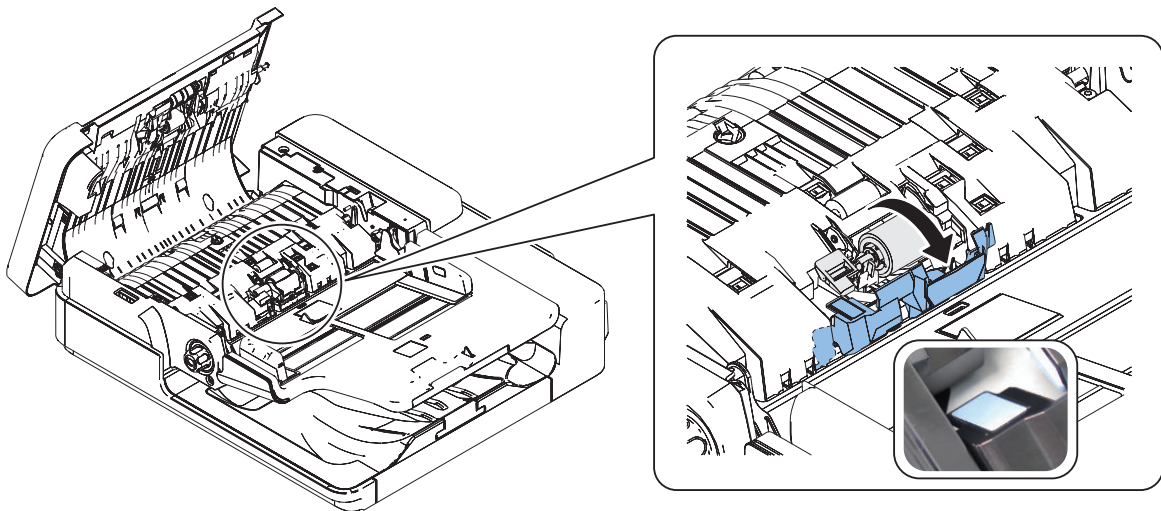
## ● Removing the Separation Roller Unit

### ■ Procedure

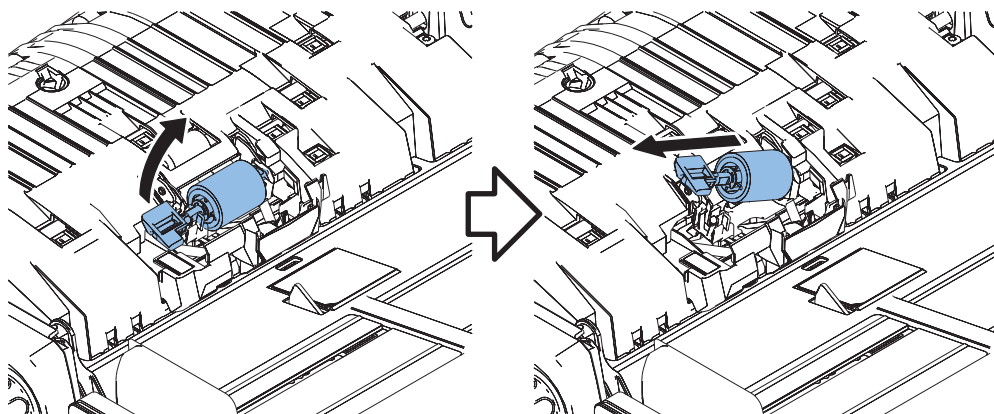
1.



2.



3.



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

### 1. Clear the parts counter.

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2 > DF-SP-RL

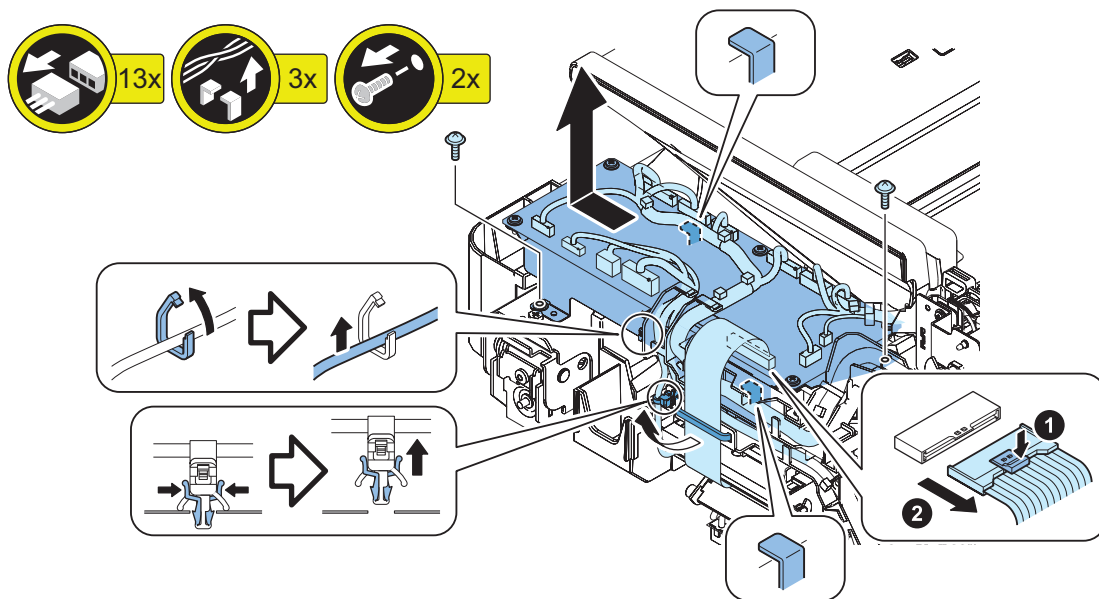
## ● Removing the ADF Driver PCB

### ■ Preparation

1. "Removing the ADF Rear Cover" on page 251

### ■ Procedure

1.



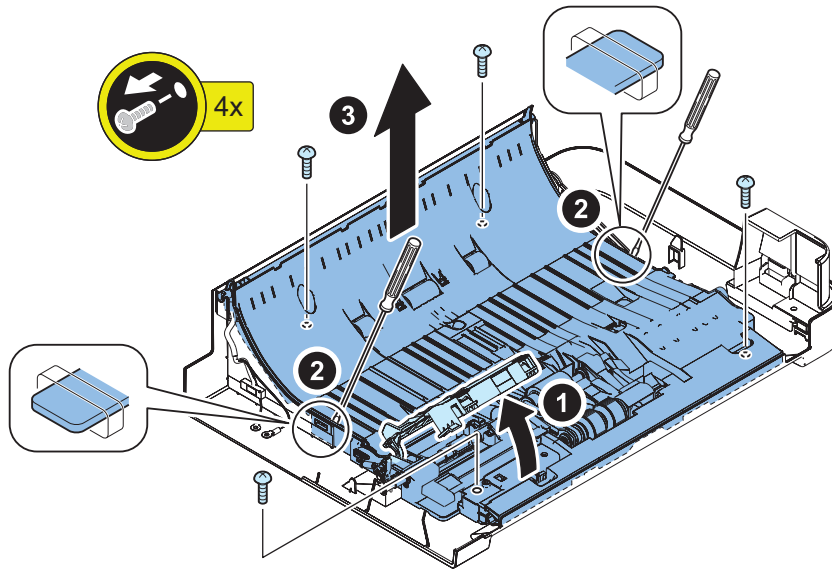
## ● Removing the Multi Feed Detect Sensor PCB

### ■ Preparation

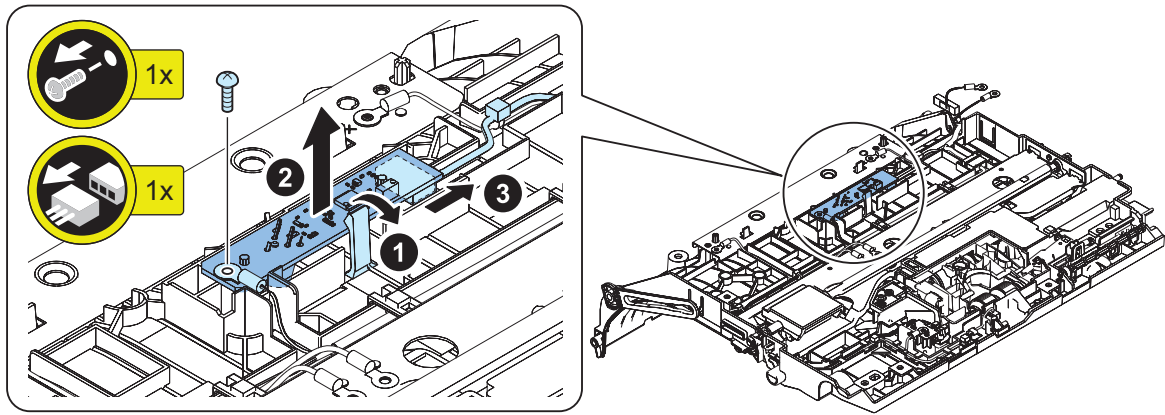
1. "Removing the ADF Front Cover" on page 250
2. "Removing the Sensor Harness Cover" on page 249
3. "Removing the Open/Close Cover" on page 252

### ■ Procedure

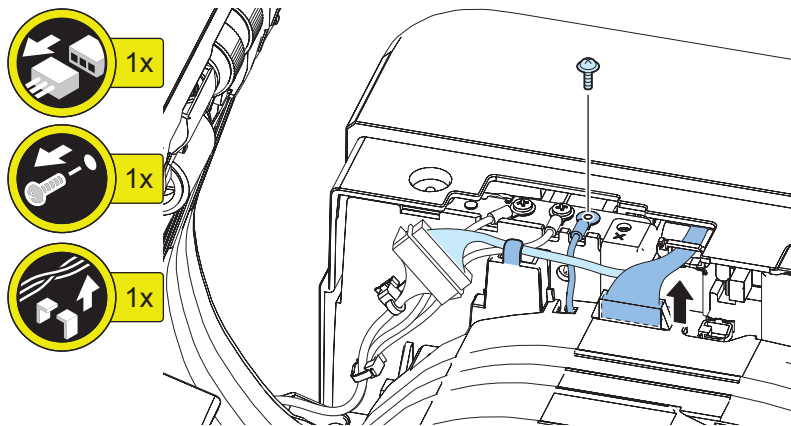
1.



2.

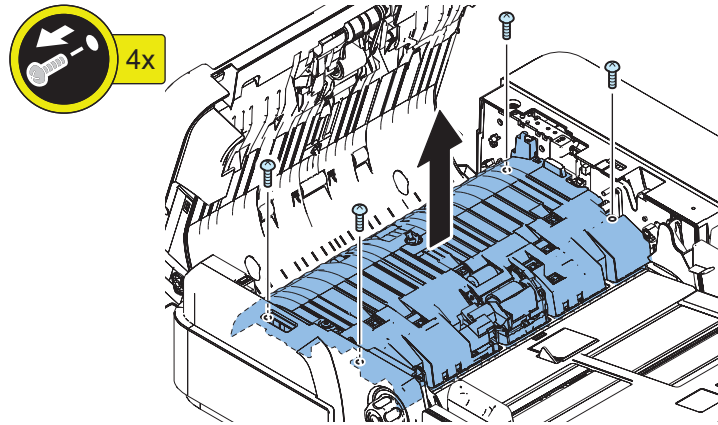


3.

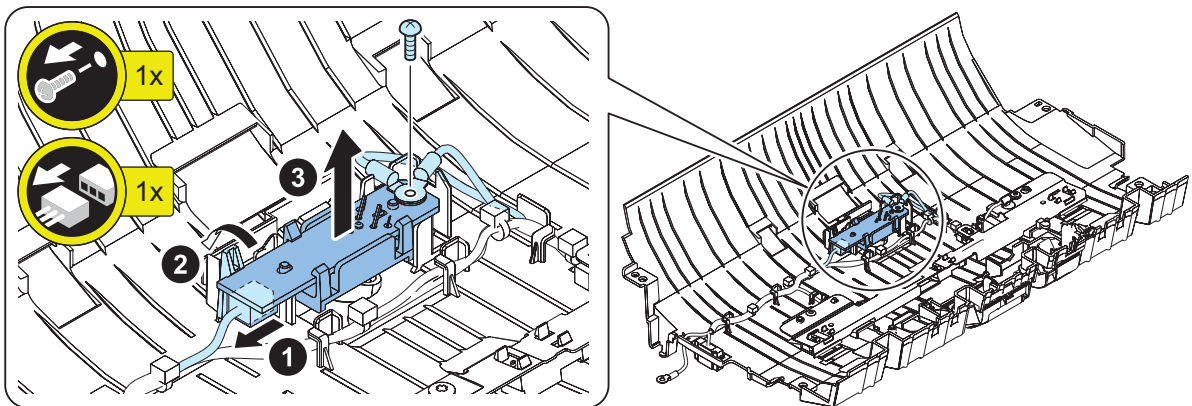




4.



5.



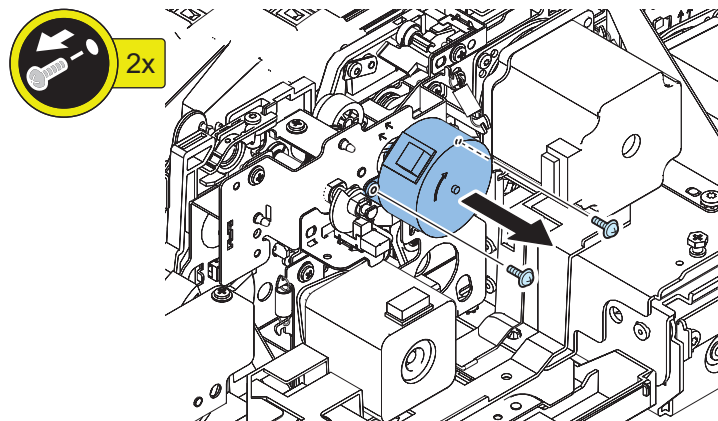
## ● Removing the Pickup Roller Lifting Motor

### ■ Preparation

1. "Removing the ADF Rear Cover" on page 251
2. "Removing the Sensor Harness Cover" on page 249
3. "Removing the ADF Driver PCB" on page 264
4. "Removing the Cable Guide Unit" on page 257
5. "Removing the ADF Delivery Motor" on page 267

### ■ Procedure

1.



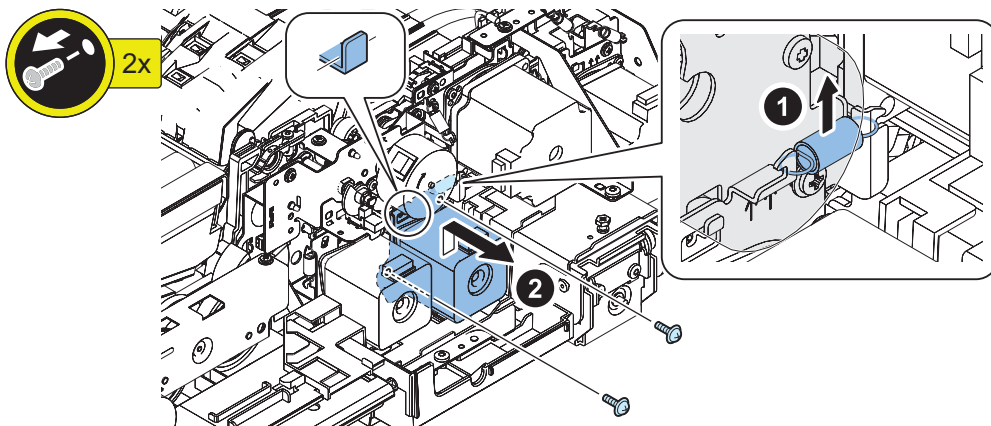
## ● Removing the ADF Delivery Motor

### ■ Preparation

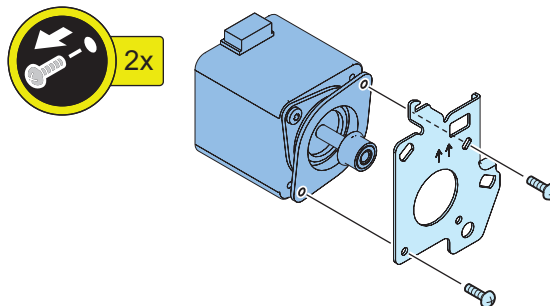
1. "Removing the ADF Rear Cover" on page 251
2. "Removing the Sensor Harness Cover" on page 249
3. "Removing the ADF Driver PCB" on page 264
4. "Removing the Cable Guide Unit" on page 257

### ■ Procedure

1.



2.



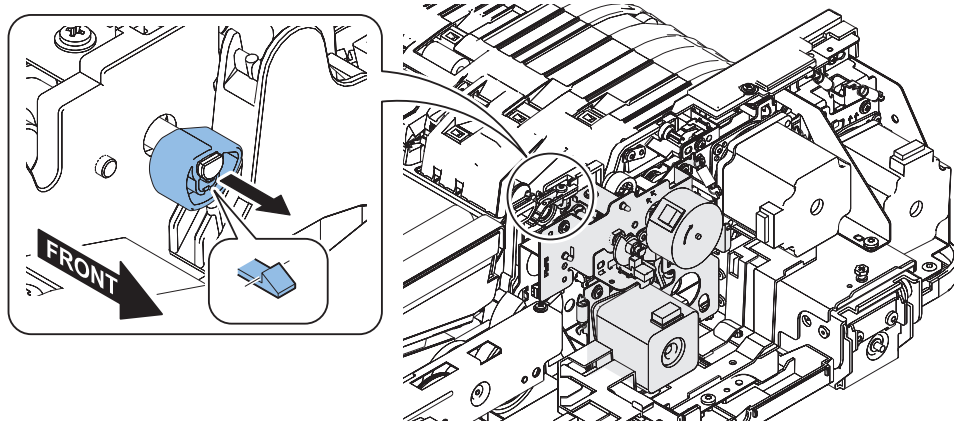
## ● Removing the ADF Pickup Motor Unit

### ■ Preparation

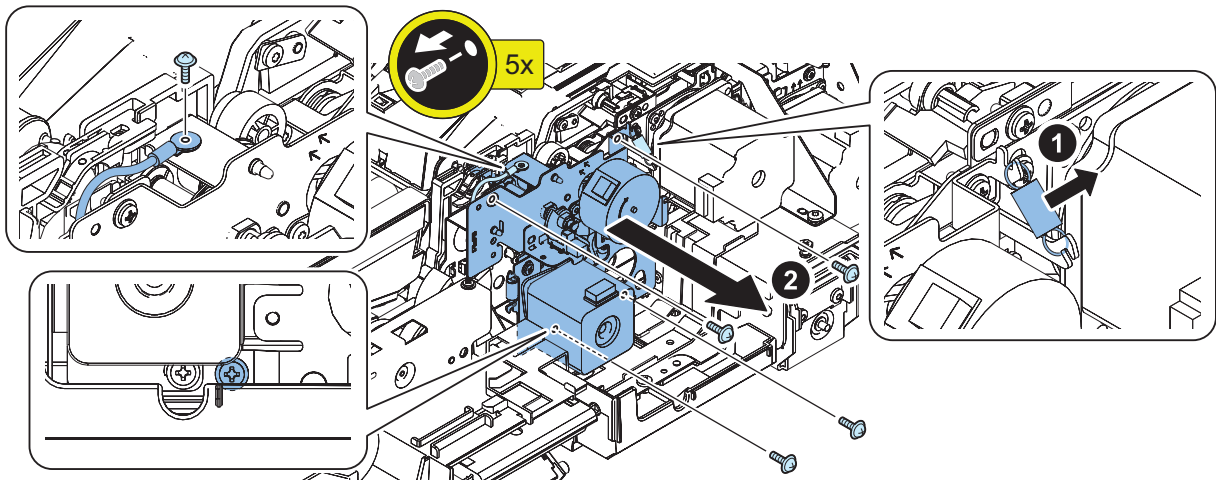
1. "Removing the ADF Rear Cover" on page 251
2. "Removing the Sensor Harness Cover" on page 249
3. "Removing the ADF Driver PCB" on page 264
4. "Removing the Cable Guide Unit" on page 257
5. "Removing the ADF Delivery Motor" on page 267

### ■ Procedure

1.



2.



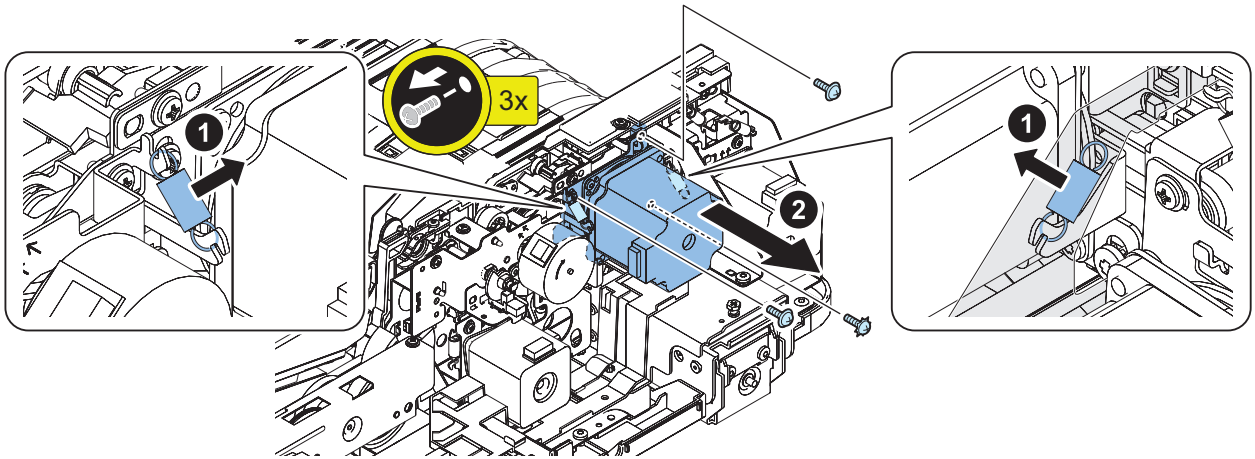
## ● Removing the ADF Pullout Motor Unit

### ■ Preparation

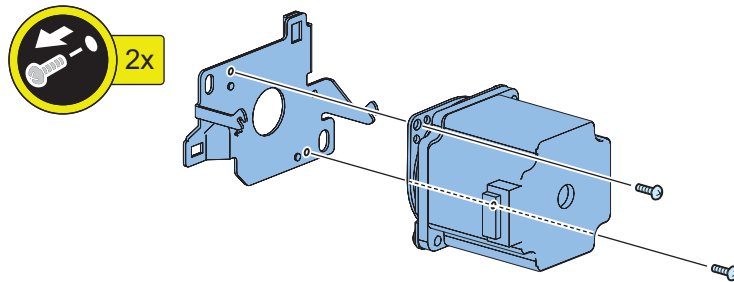
1. "Removing the ADF Rear Cover" on page 251
2. "Removing the Sensor Harness Cover" on page 249
3. "Removing the ADF Driver PCB" on page 264
4. "Removing the Cable Guide Unit" on page 257

### ■ Procedure

1.



2.



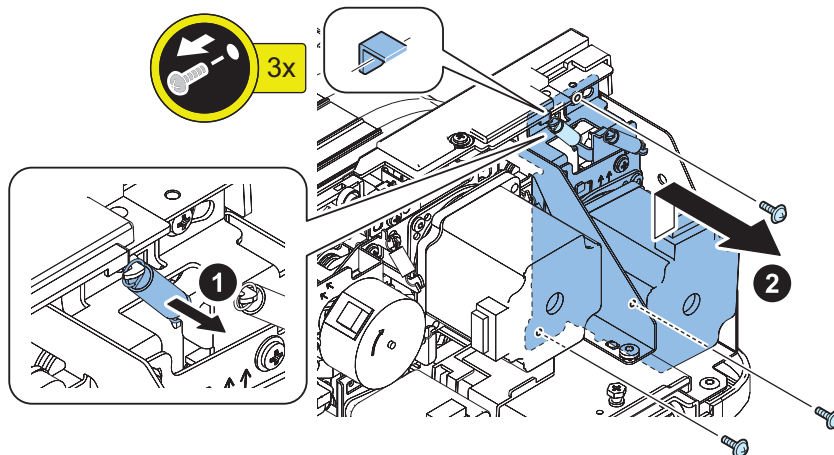
## ● Removing the Lead Motor Unit

### ■ Preparation

1. "Removing the ADF Rear Cover" on page 251
2. "Removing the Sensor Harness Cover" on page 249
3. "Removing the ADF Driver PCB" on page 264
4. "Removing the Cable Guide Unit" on page 257

### ■ Procedure

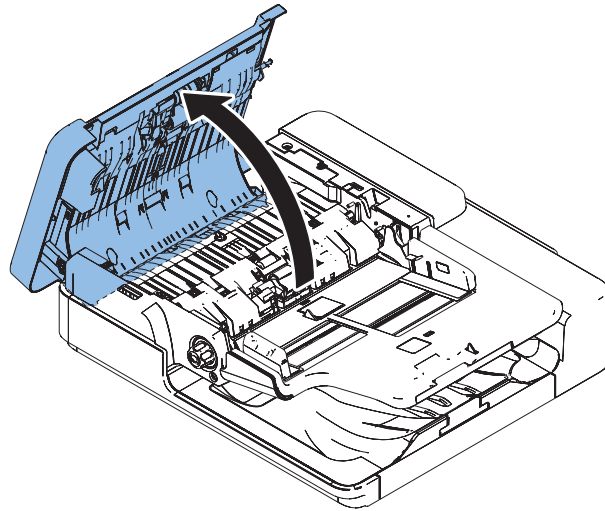
1.



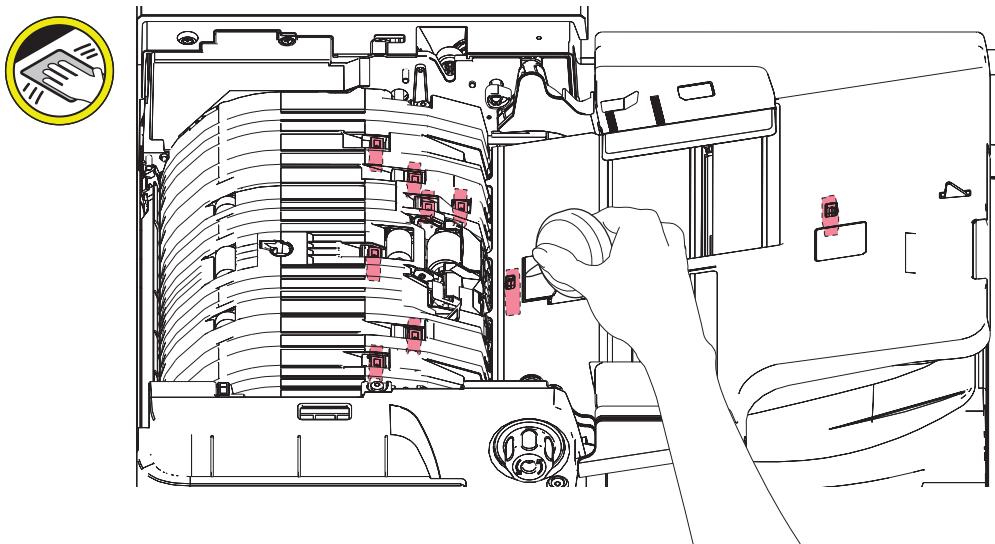
## Cleaning the Sensor

### ■ Procedure

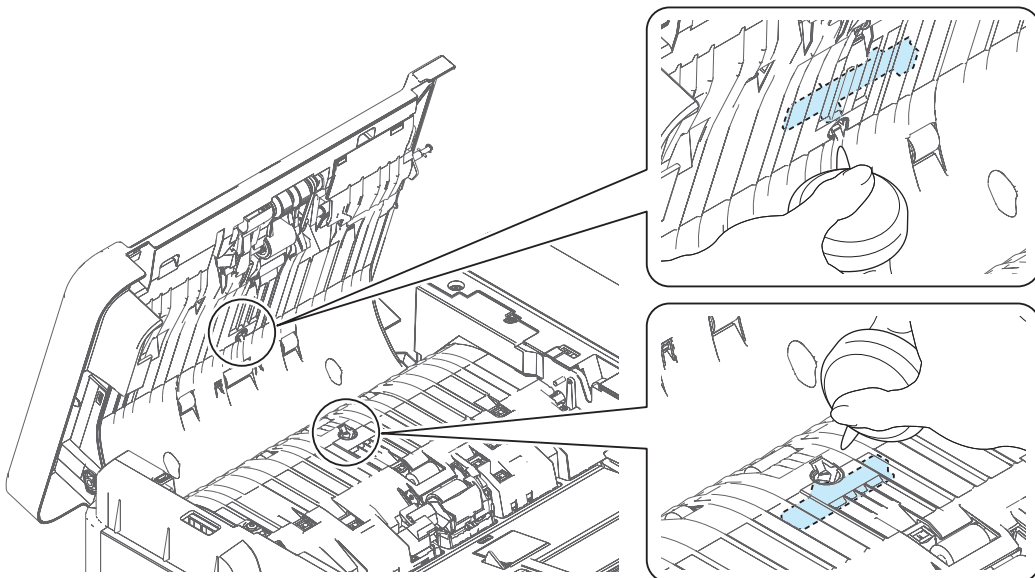
1.



2.



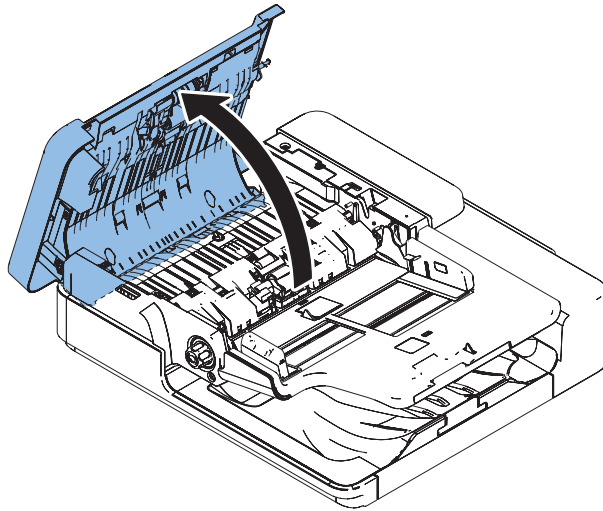
3.



## Cleaning the Pullout Roller

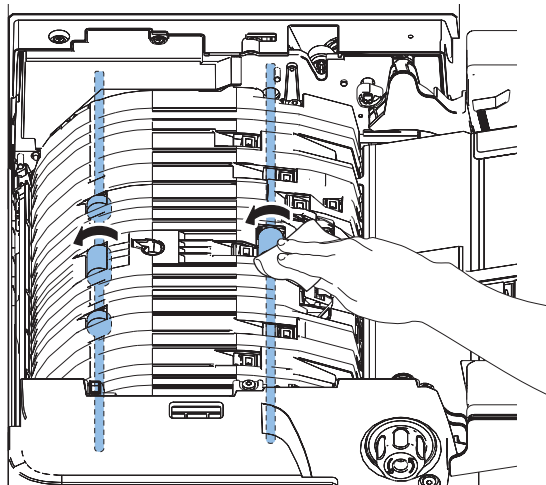
### ■ Procedure

1.



2. Clean the Roller with squeezed lint-free paper moistened with water while rolling the roller in the following service mode.

FEEDER > FUNCTION > ROLL-CLN



## Cleaning the Lead Roller 1

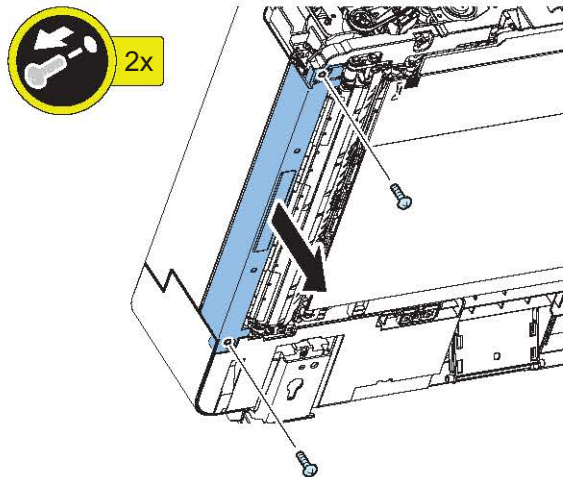
### ■ Preparation

1. “Removing the ADF Front Cover ” on page 250

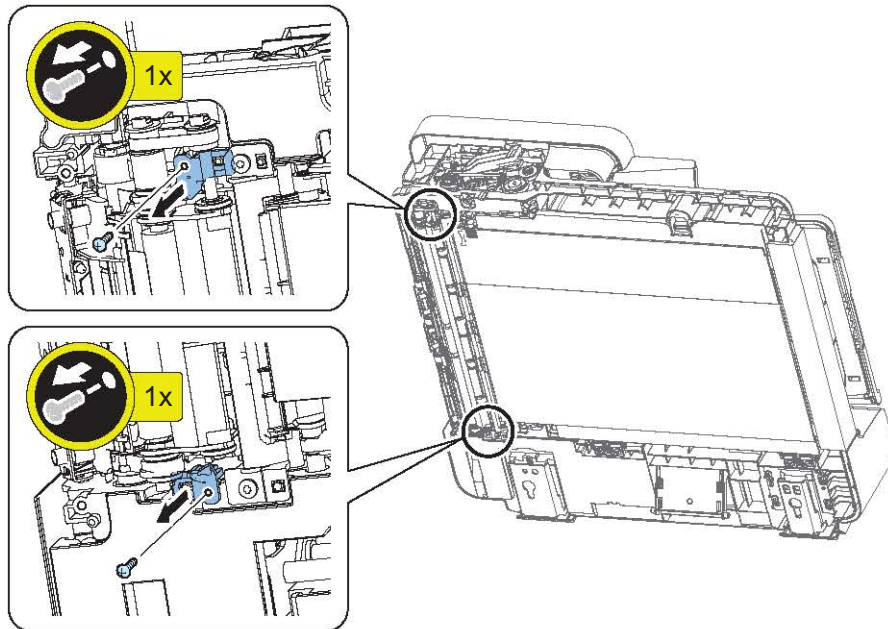


■ Procedure

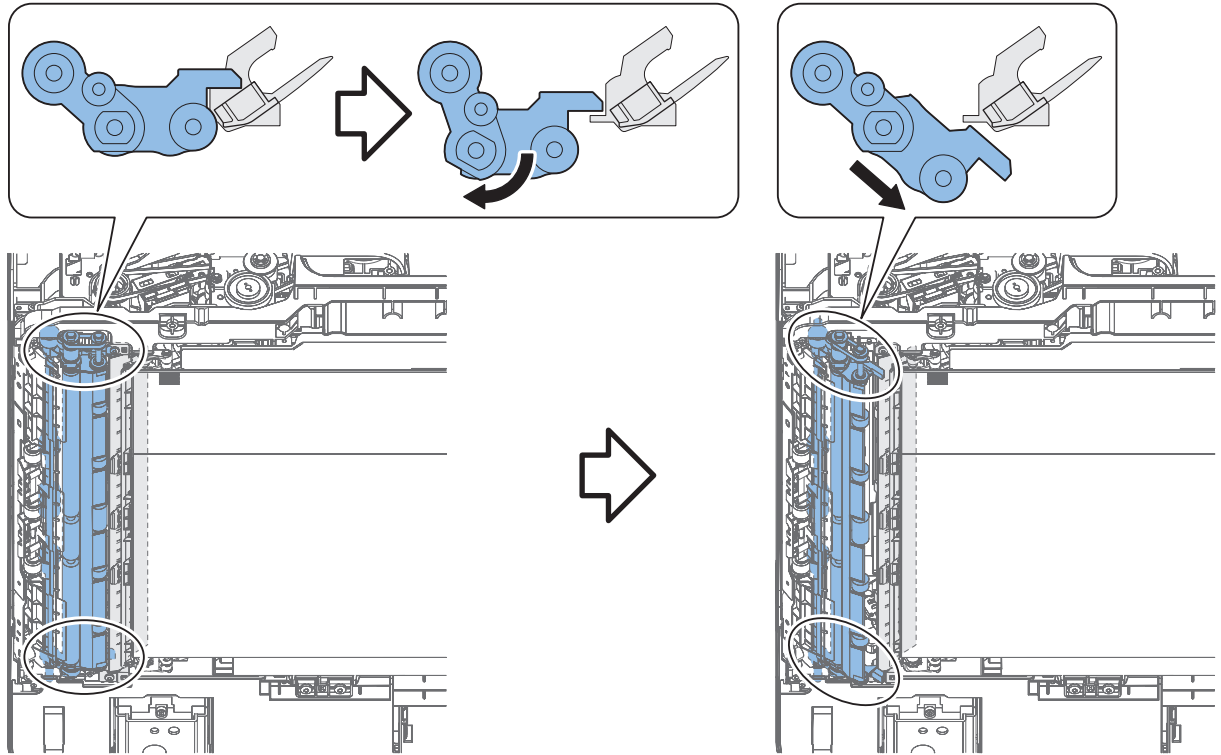
1.



2.

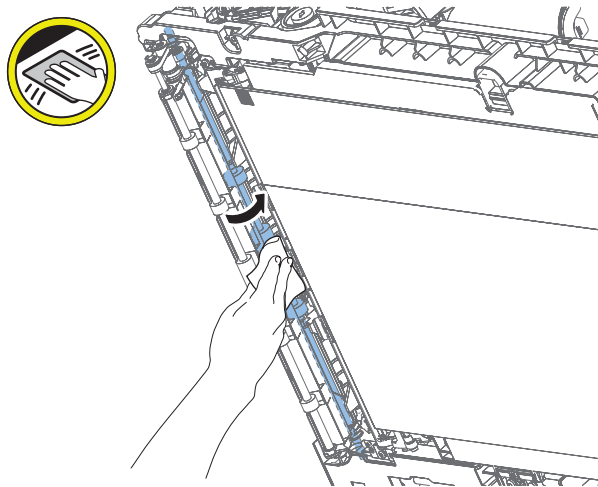


3.



4. Clean the Roller with squeezed lint-free paper moistened with water while rolling the roller in the following service mode.

FEEDER > FUNCTION > ROLL-CLN





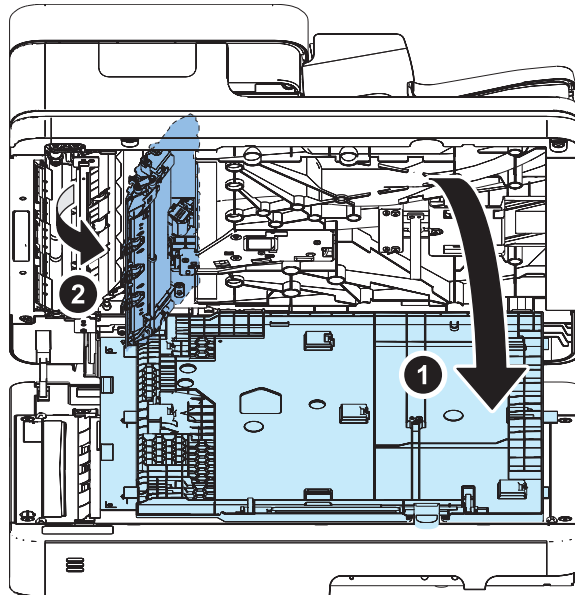
## Cleaning the Lead Roller 2

### ■ Procedure

1.

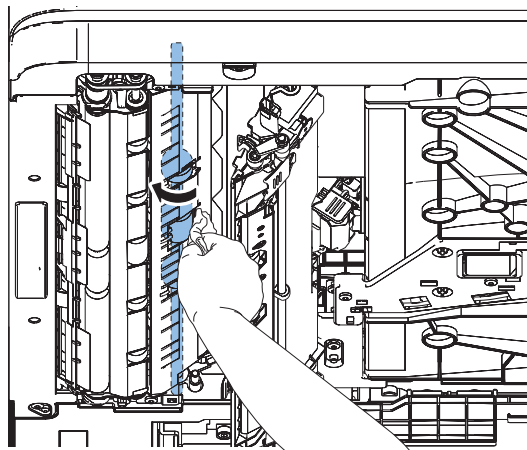


2.



3. Clean the Roller with squeezed lint-free paper moistened with water while rolling the roller in the following service mode.

FEEDER > FUNCTION > ROLL-CLN



## Cleaning the Paper Back Reading Glass

### ■ Preparation

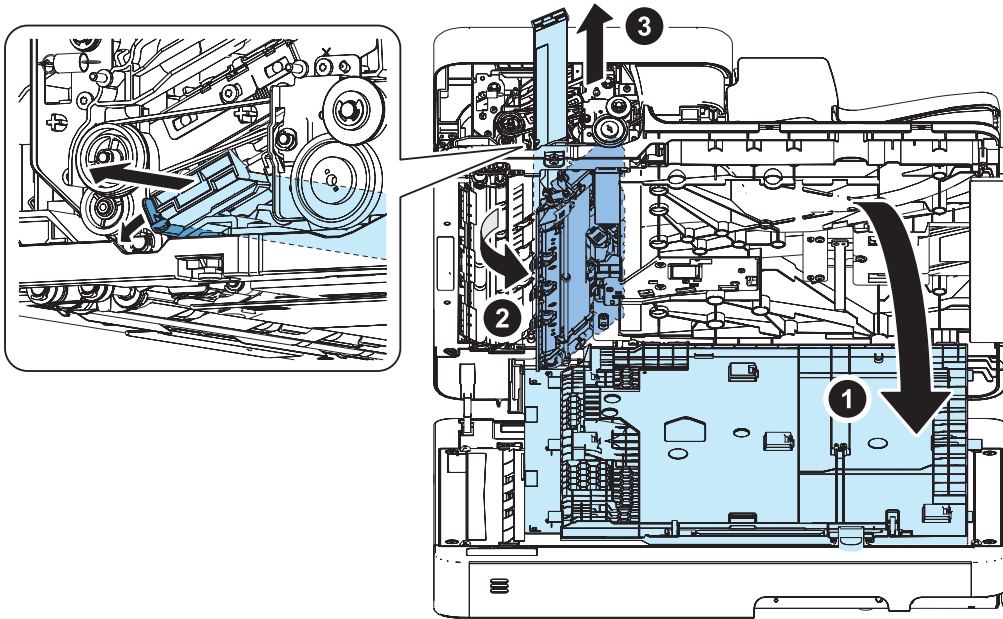
1. "Removing the ADF Front Cover" on page 250

### ■ Procedure

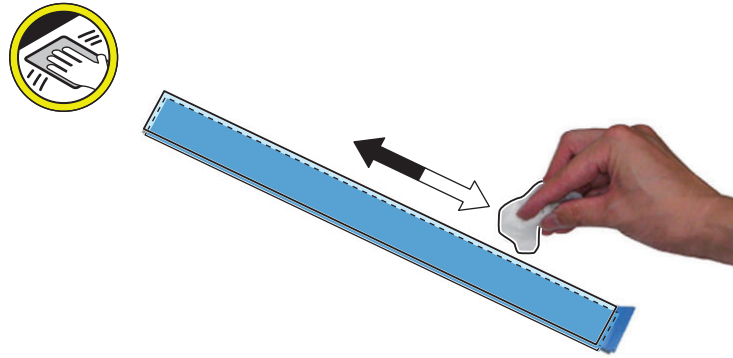
1.

**CAUTION:**

Open the White Plate before removing the Copyboard Glass as the Copyboard Glass is rubbed with the Plate.

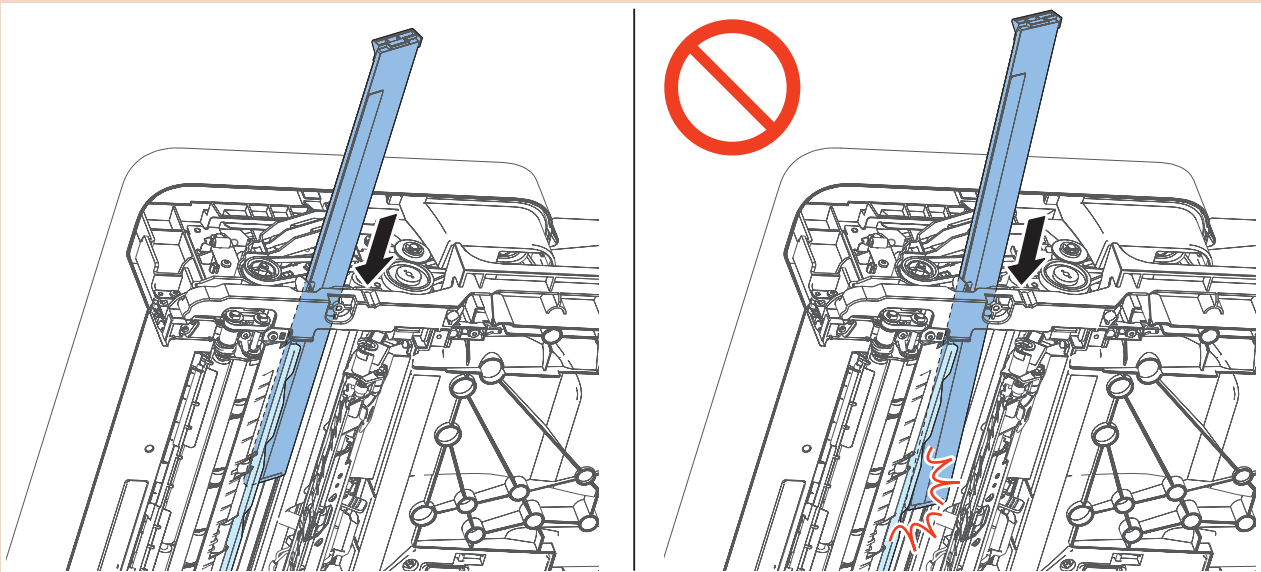


- 2.** Clean the front and back surface of the Copyboard Glass with squeezed lint-free paper moistened with water.



**CAUTION:**

When installing the Reading Glass, slowly and carefully slide it in. Do not install it over the film sheet.



## Original Exposure System

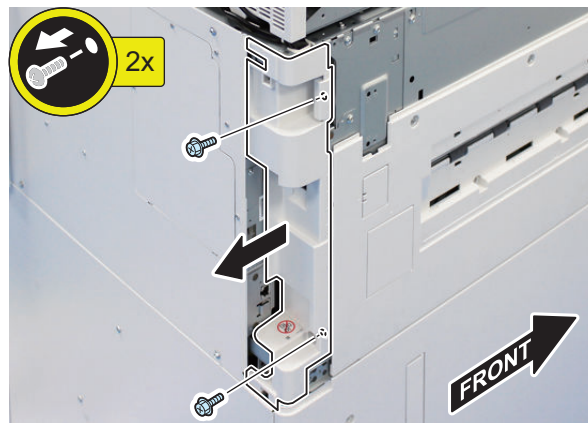
### ● Removing the Reader Unit

#### ■ Preparation

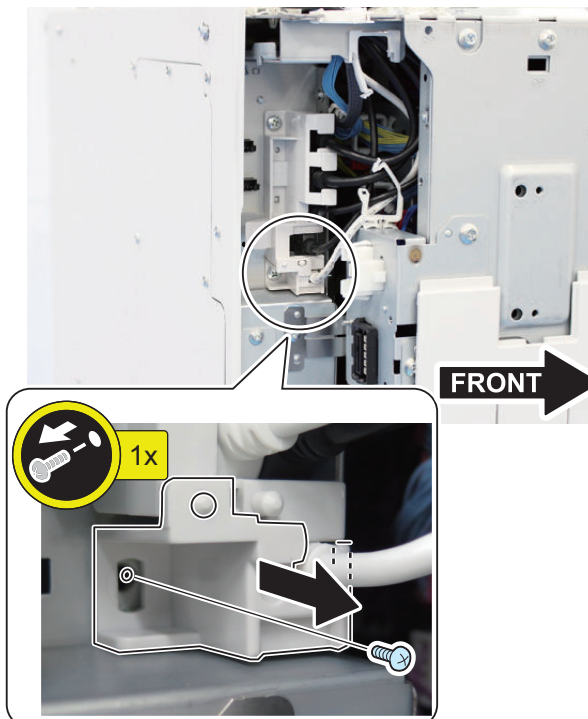
1. "Removing the Covers" on page 279
2. "Removing the ADF" on page 246

#### ■ Procedure

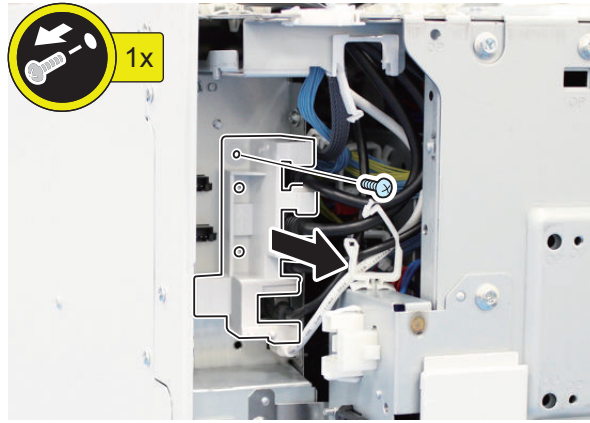
1.



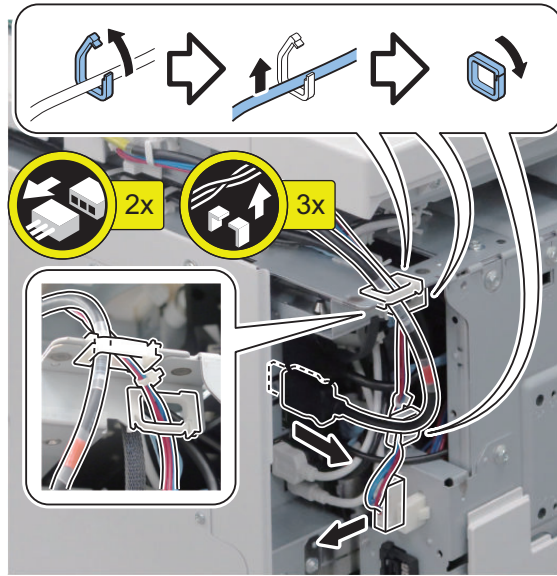
2.



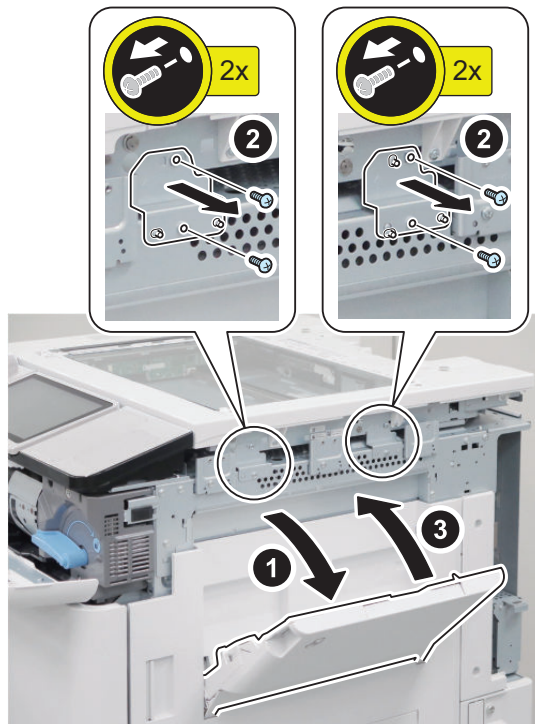
3.



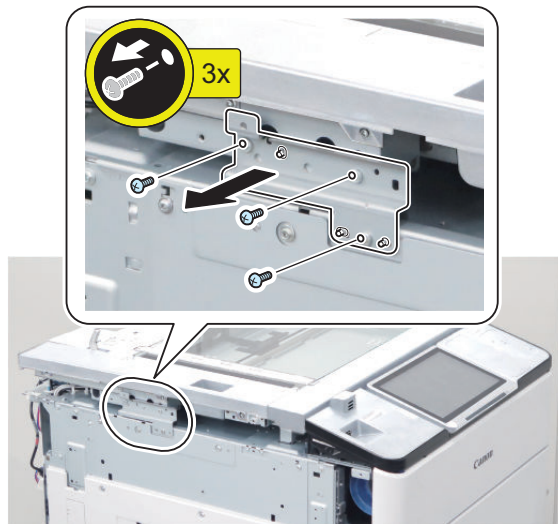
4.



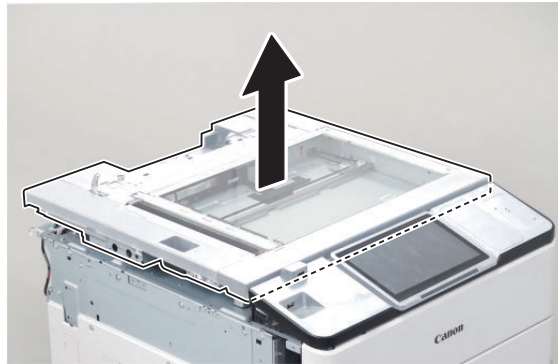
5.



6.



7.



## ● Removing the Covers

1.





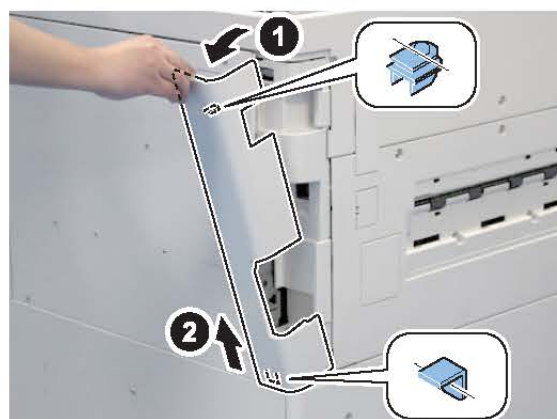
2.



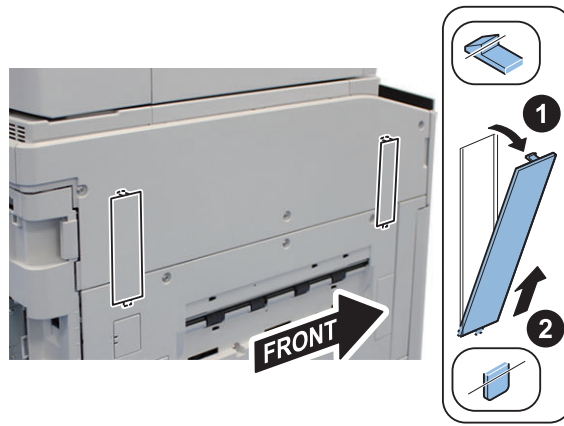
3.



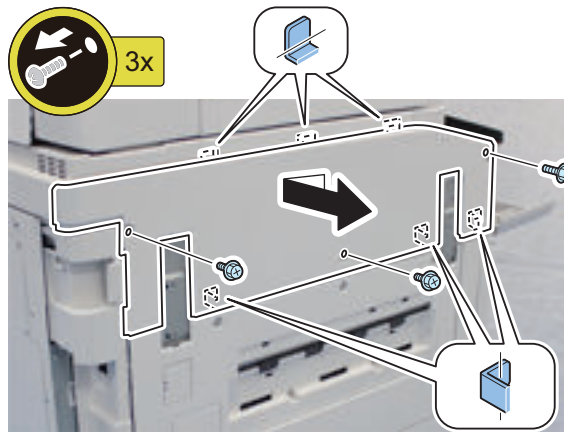
4.



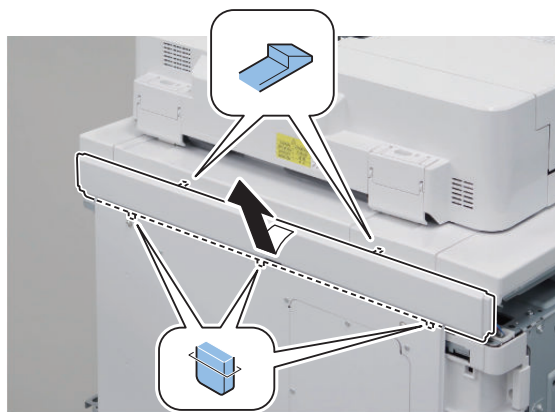
5.



6.



7.

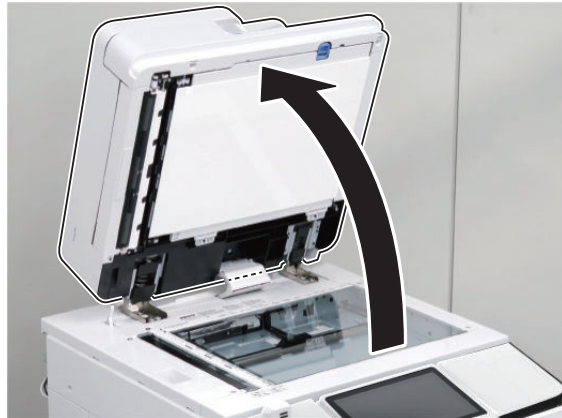


## ● Removing the Reader Controller PCB

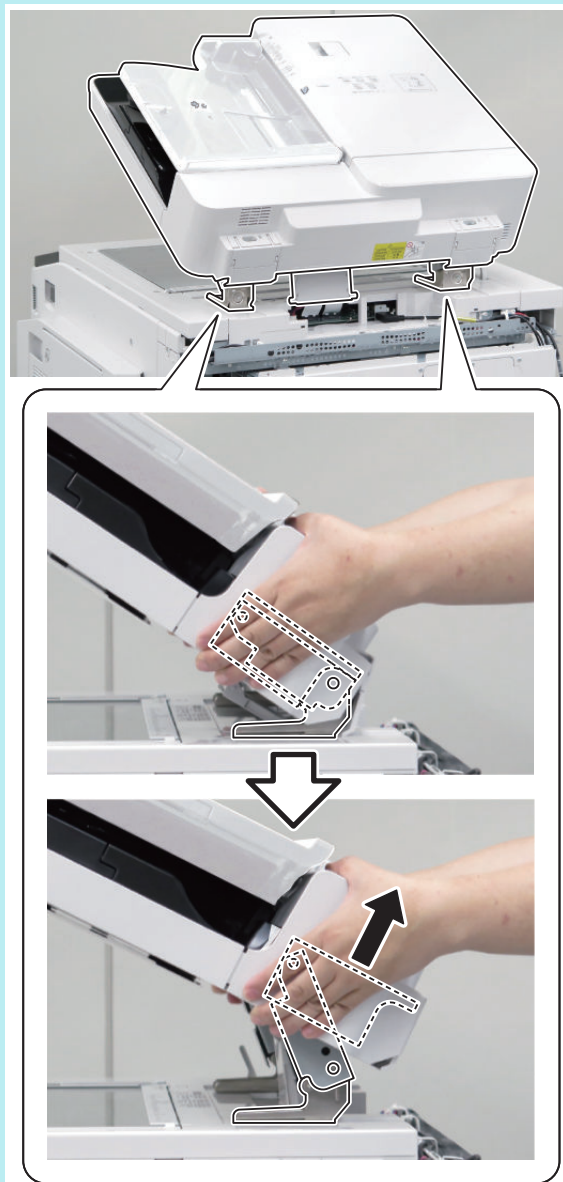
### ■ Preparation

1. Actions before Parts Replacement: [“Reader Controller PCB” on page 603](#)
2. [“Removing the Covers” on page 279](#)

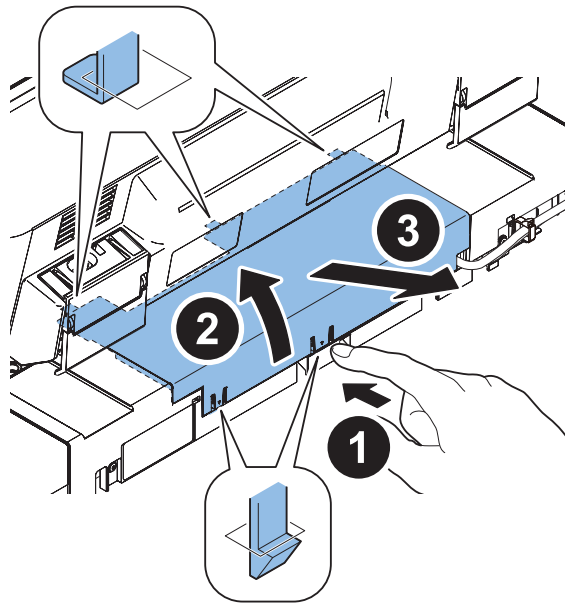


**■ Procedure****1.****NOTE:**

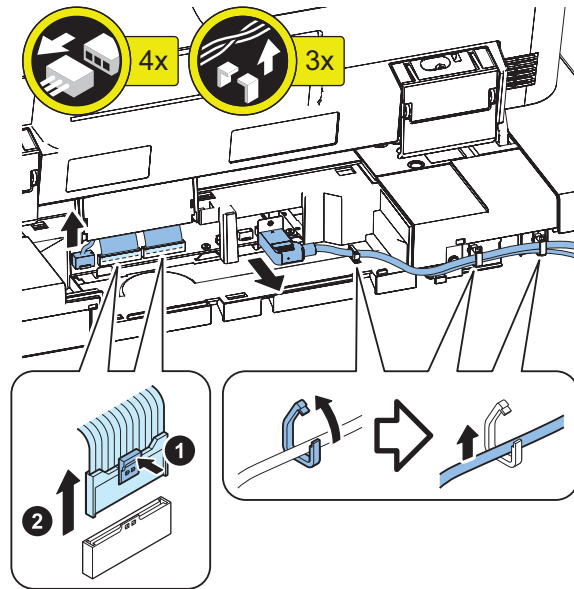
- When performing the following procedures, using ADF in the book mode makes the work easy.
- The book mode can be released by fully opening the ADF.



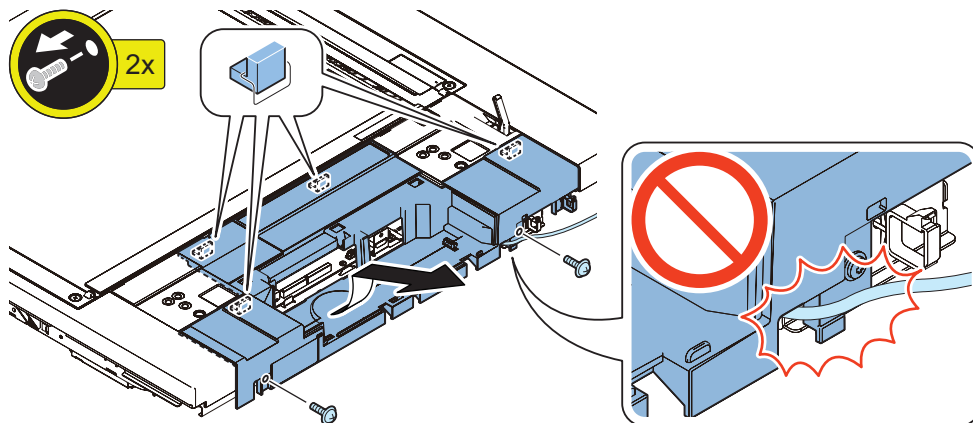
2.



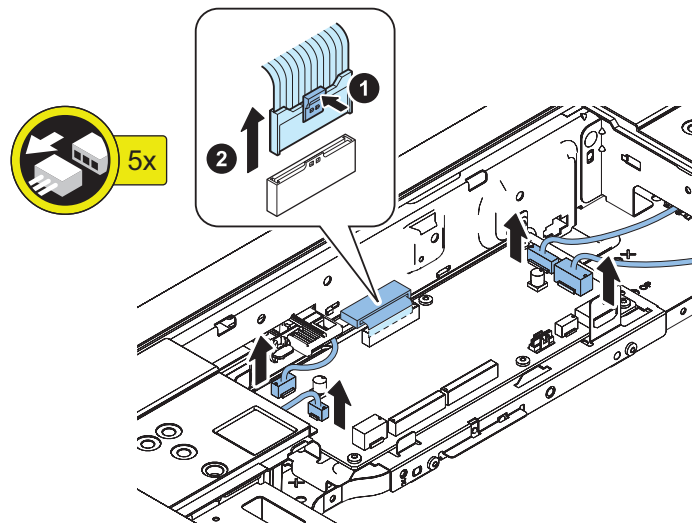
3.



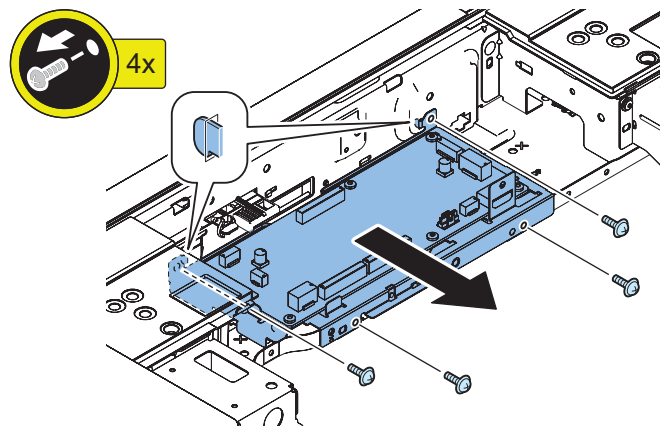
4.



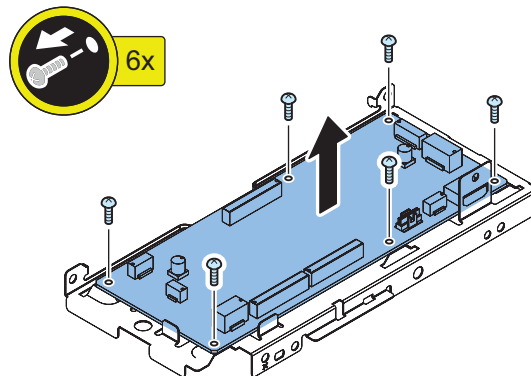
5.



6.



7.

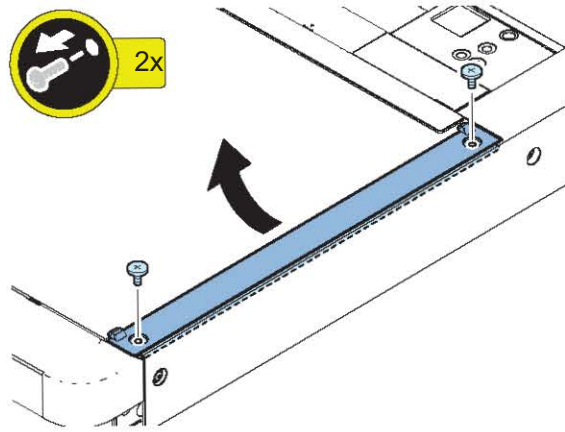


8. Actions after Replacement: [“Reader Controller PCB” on page 603](#)

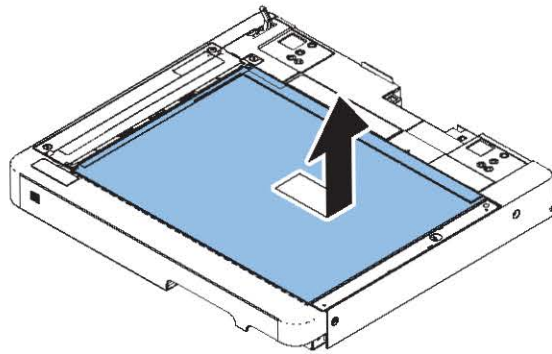
## ● Removing the Reader Scanner Unit

### ■ Procedure

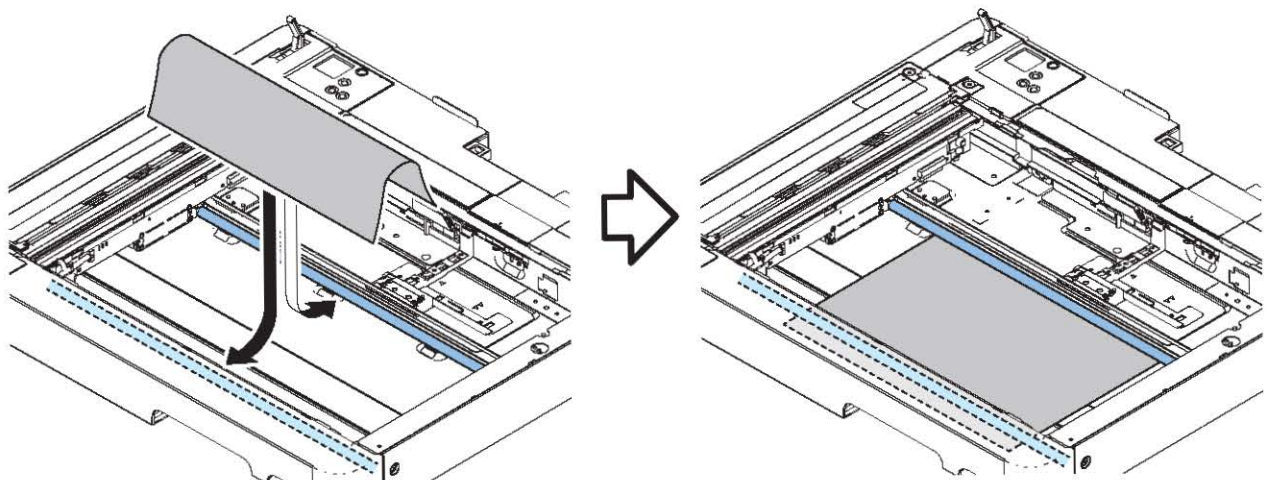
1.



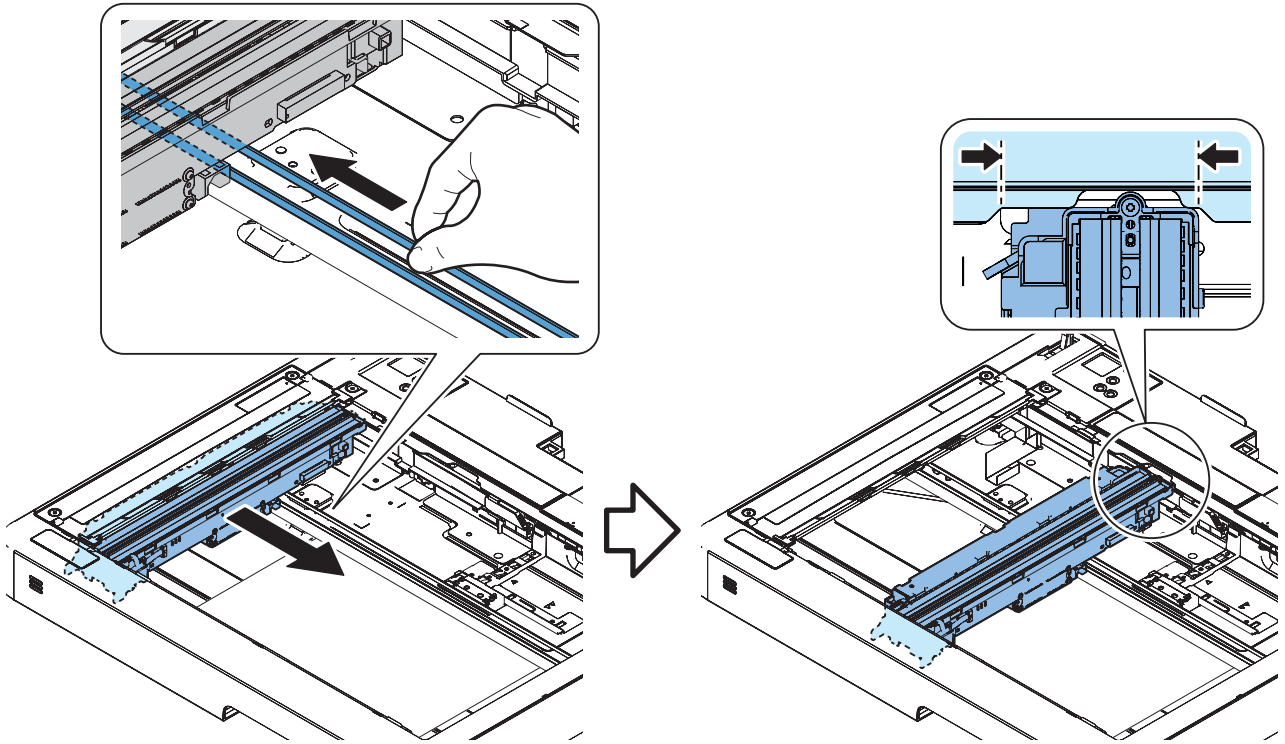
2.



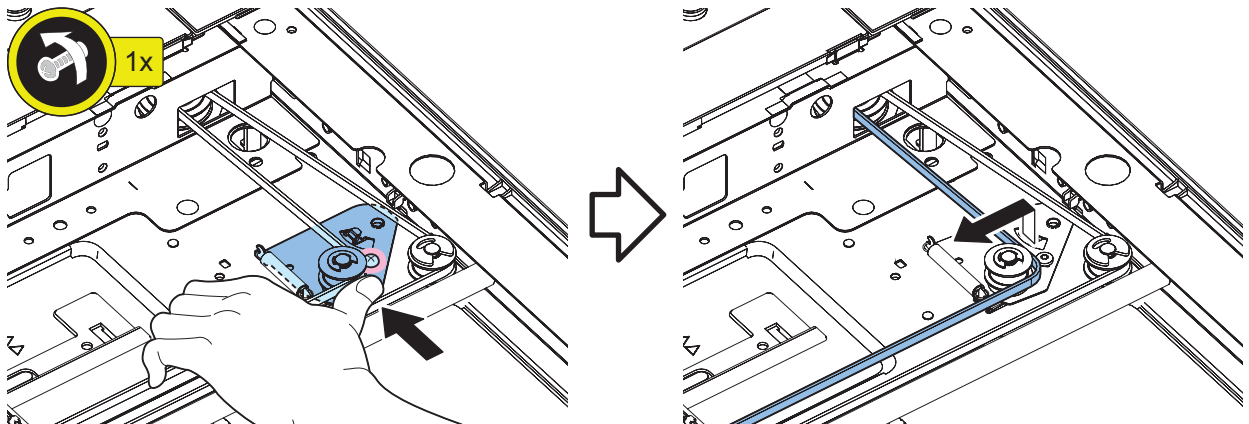
3.



4.

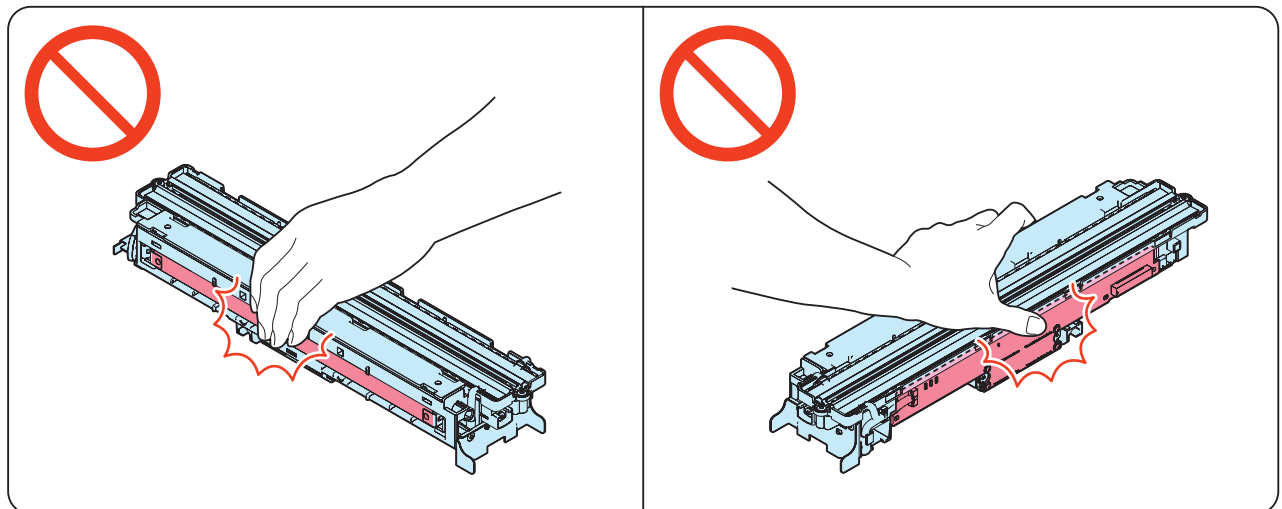


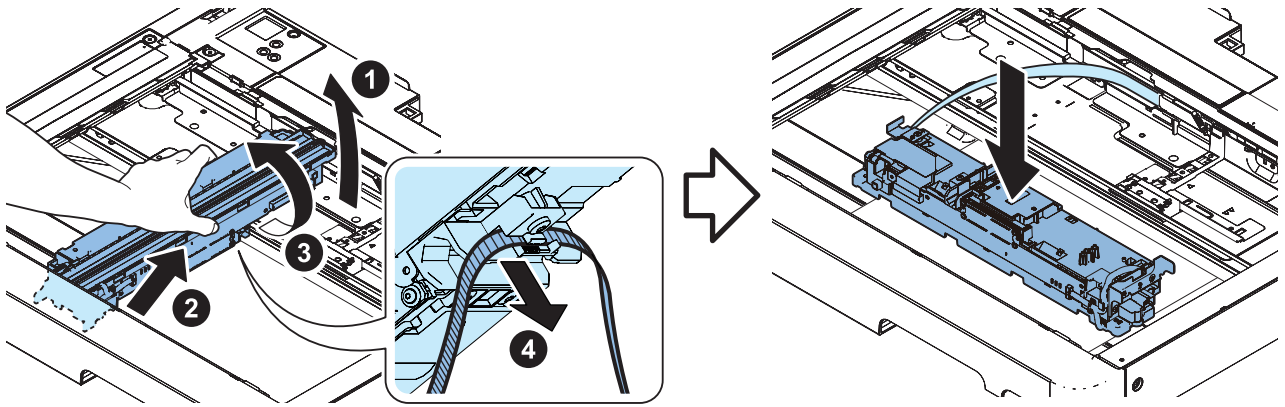
5.



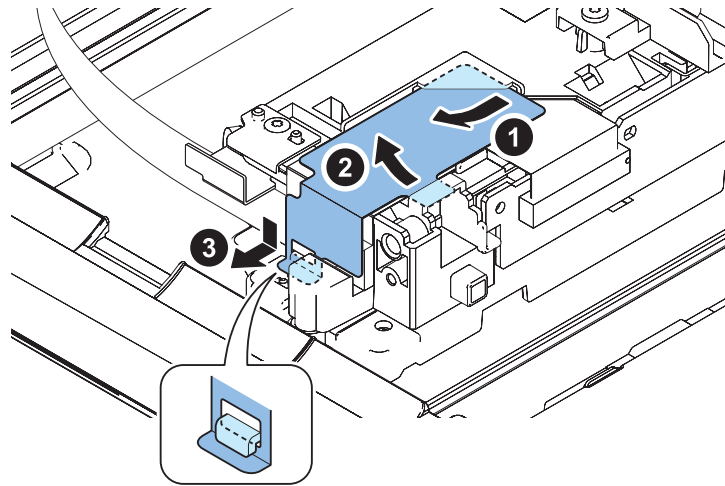
6.

**CAUTION:**  
Do not touch the Scanner Unit PCB and the mirror.

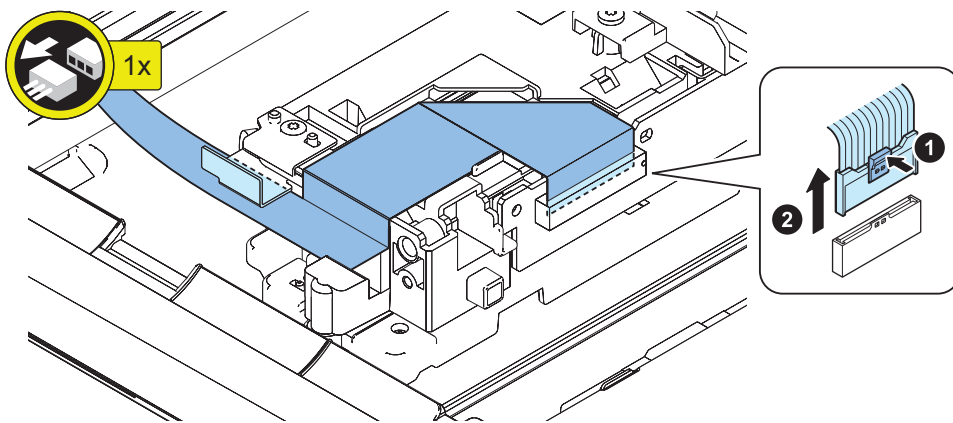




7.



8.



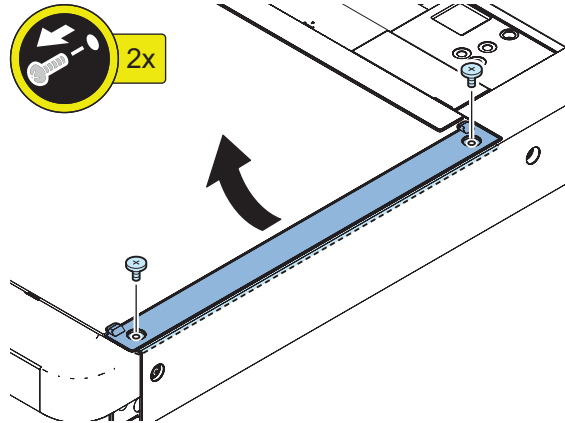
9. Actions after parts replacement: [“Reader Scanner Unit” on page 603](#)



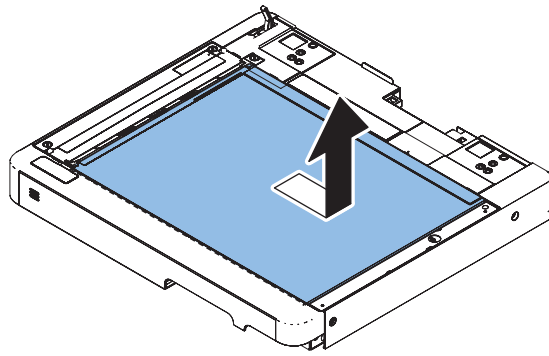
## Cleaning the Reader Scanner Unit Scanner Mirror

### ■ Procedure

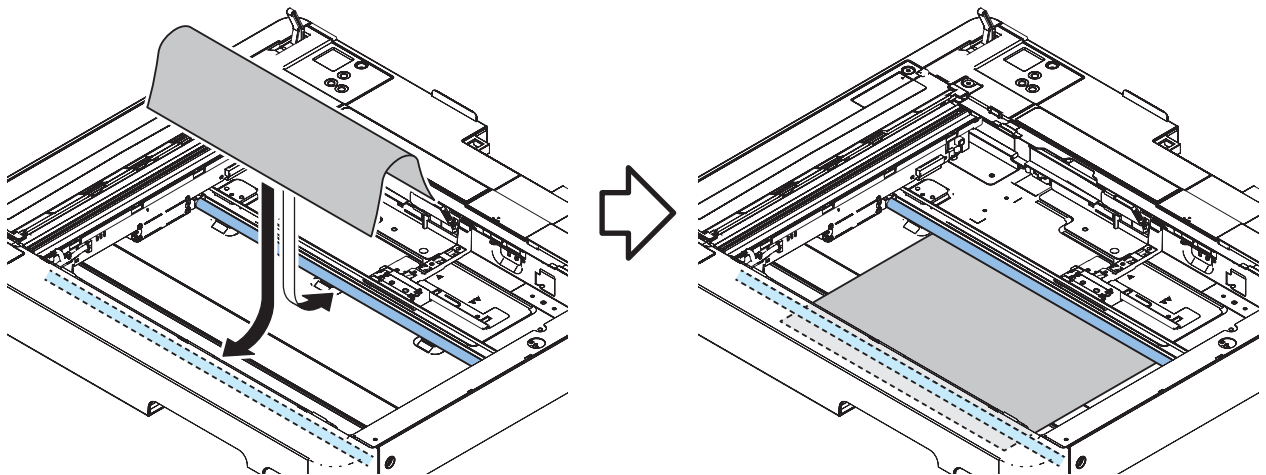
1.



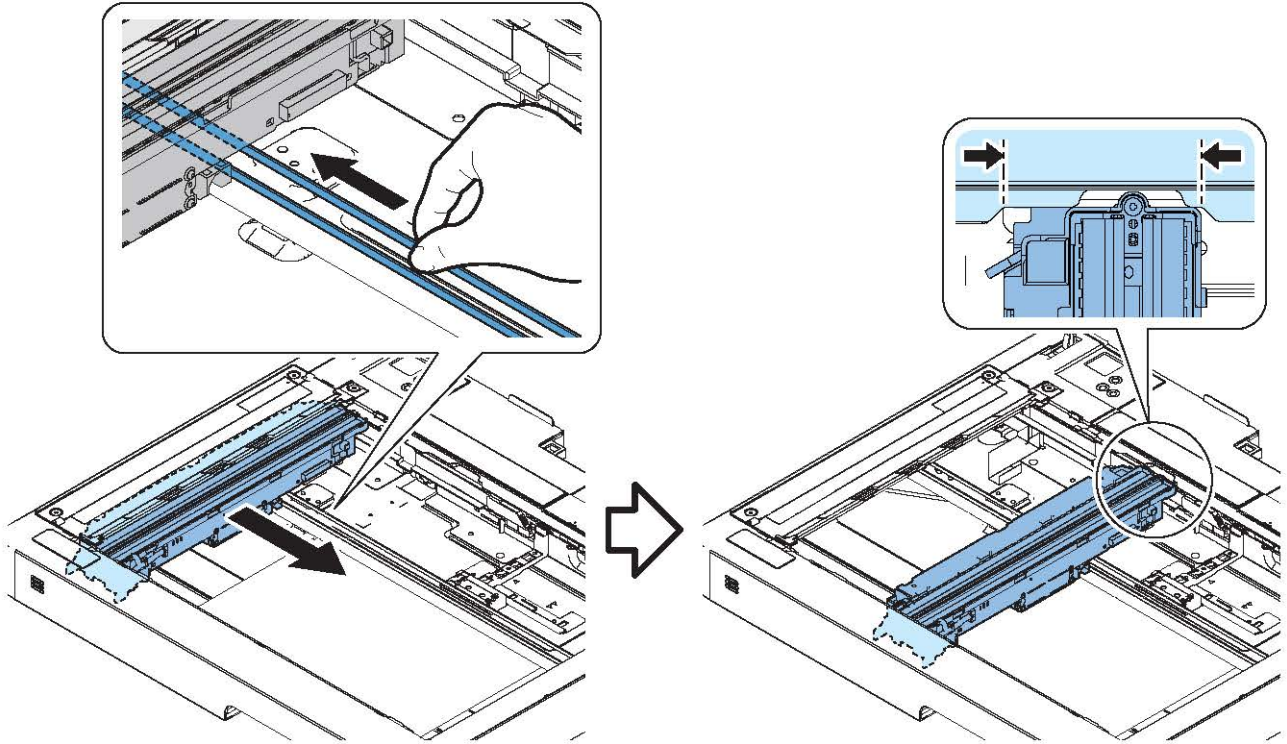
2.



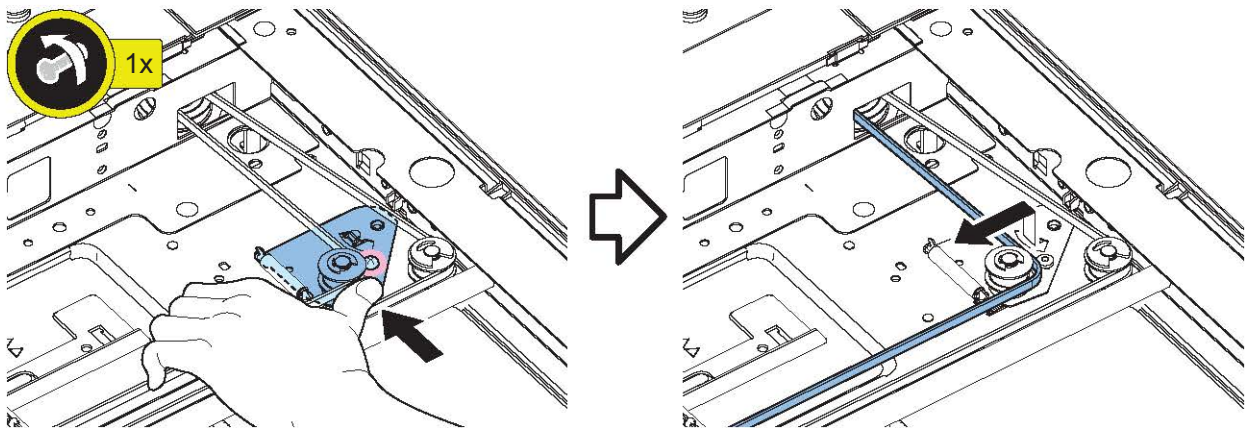
3.



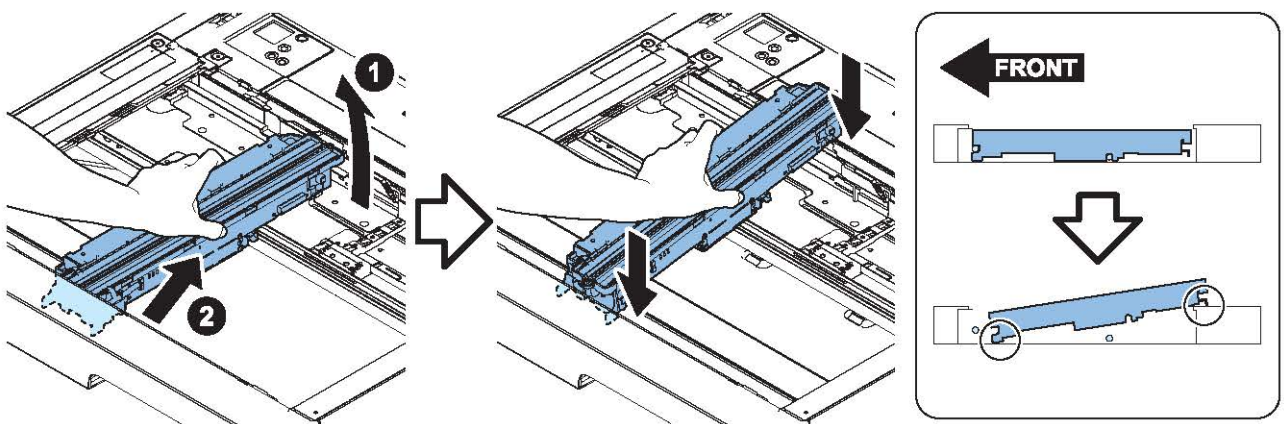
4.



5.

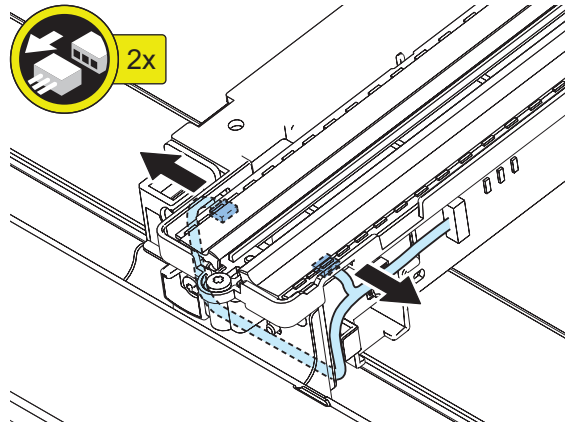


6.

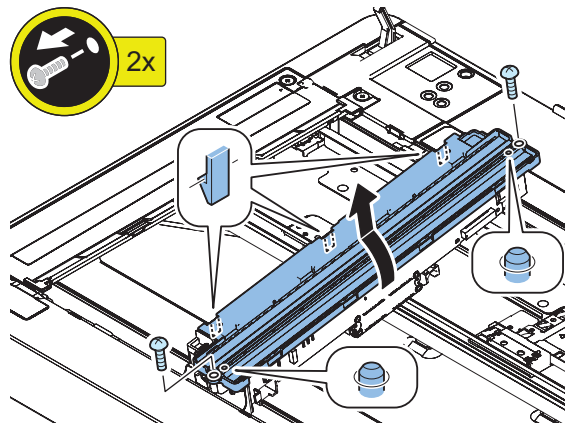




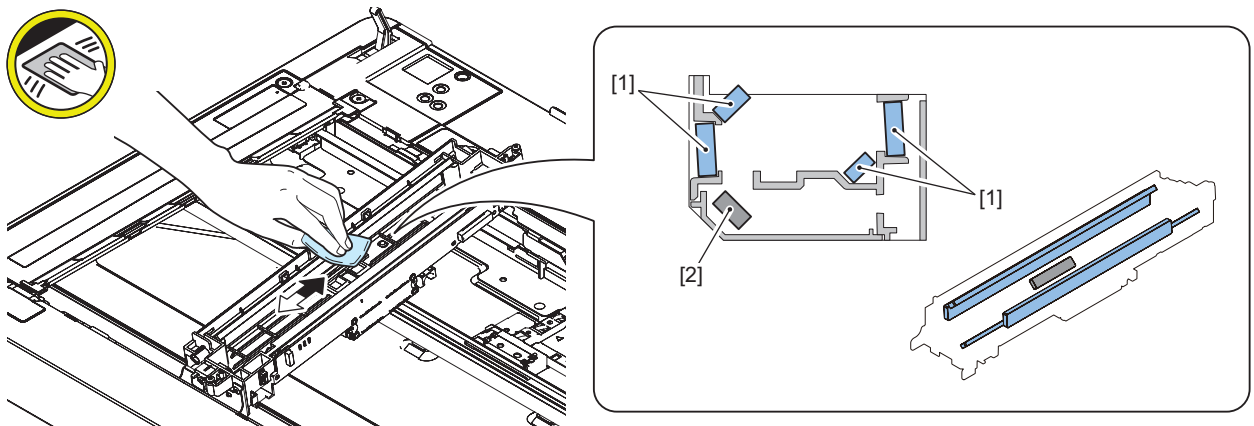
7.



8.



9. Clean the mirror [1] with lint-free paper. Use a cotton swab to clean the mirror [2].



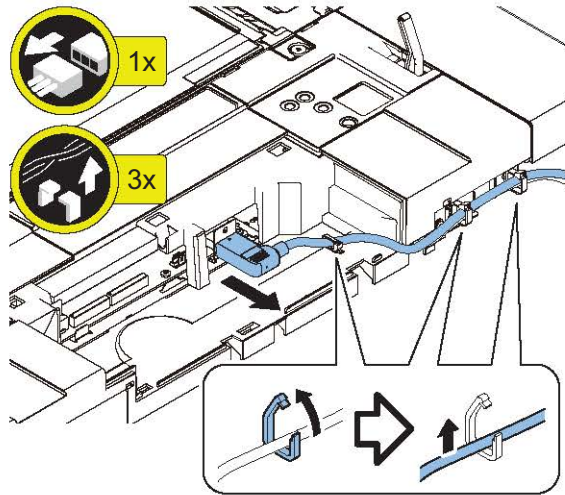
## ● Removing the Reader Scanner Motor

### ■ Preparation

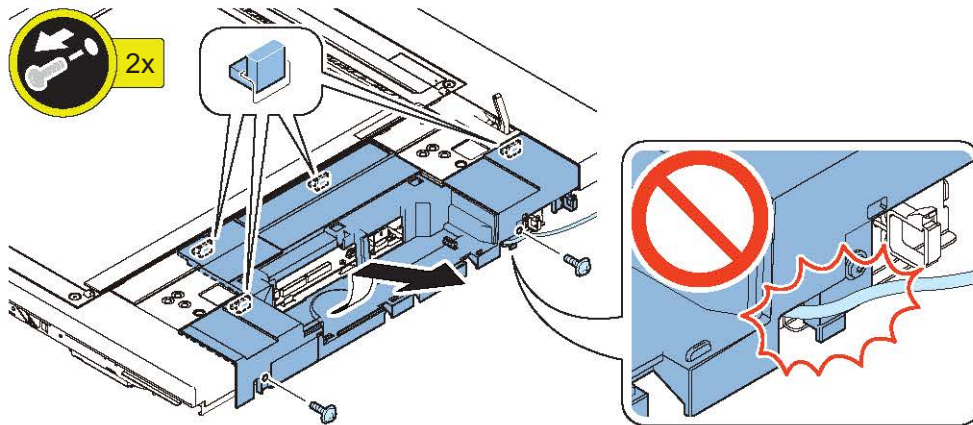
1. "Removing the Covers" on page 279
2. "Removing the ADF" on page 246

■ Procedure

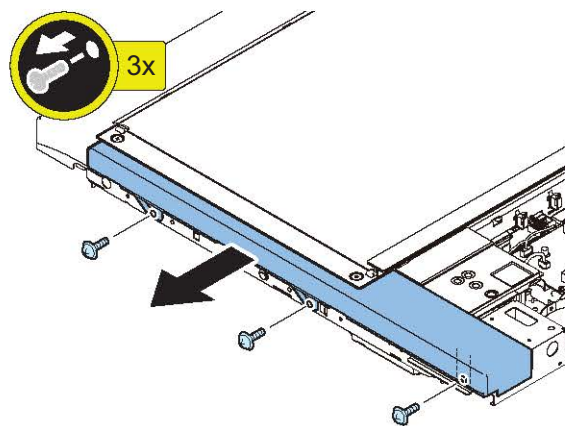
1.



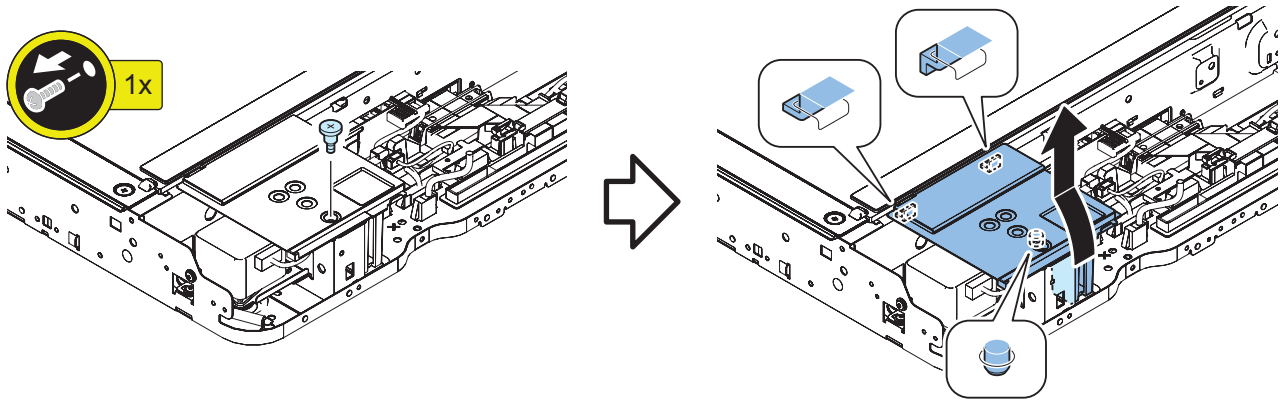
2.



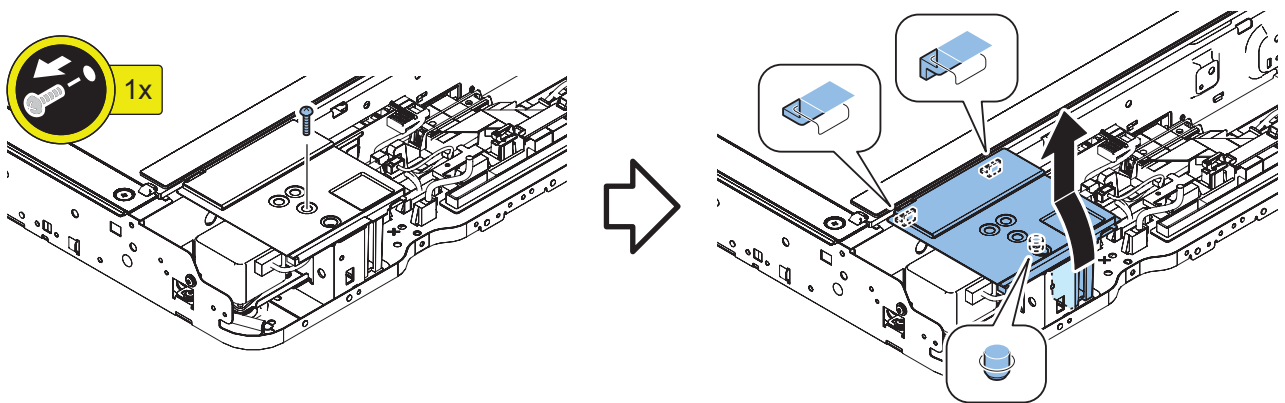
3.



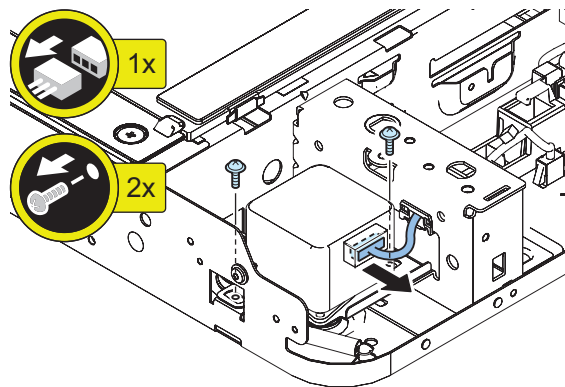
**4.** When ADF is installed.



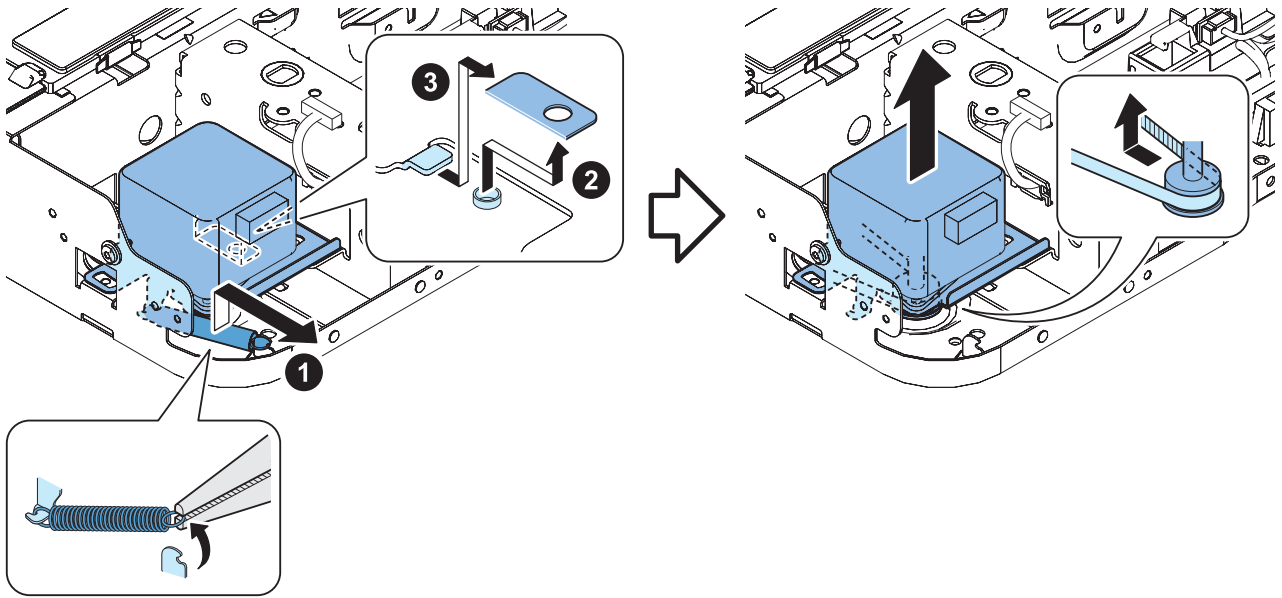
**5.** When Platen Cover is installed.



**6.**



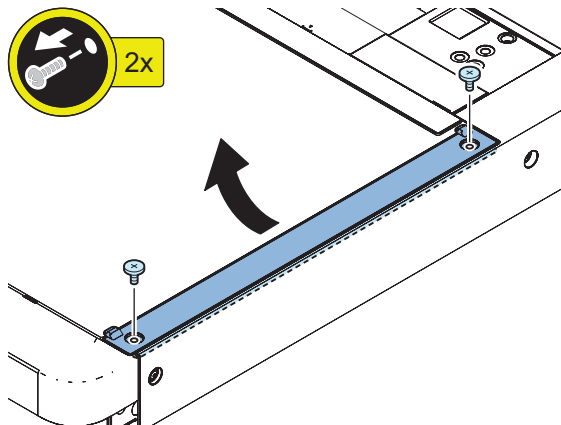
7.



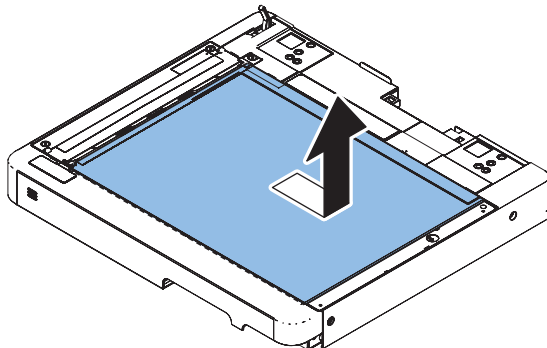
## ● Removing the Copyboard Glass

### ■ Procedure

1.



2.

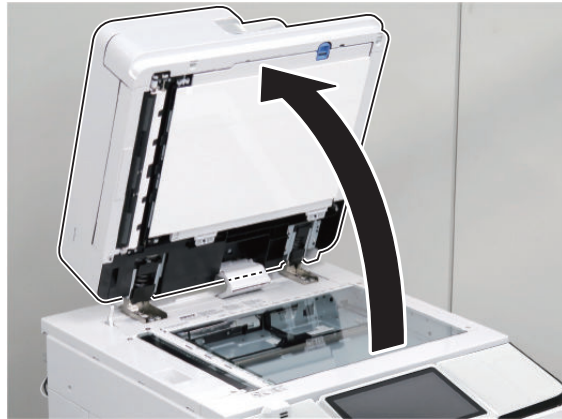


3. Actions after Replacement: [“Copyboard Glass” on page 604](#)

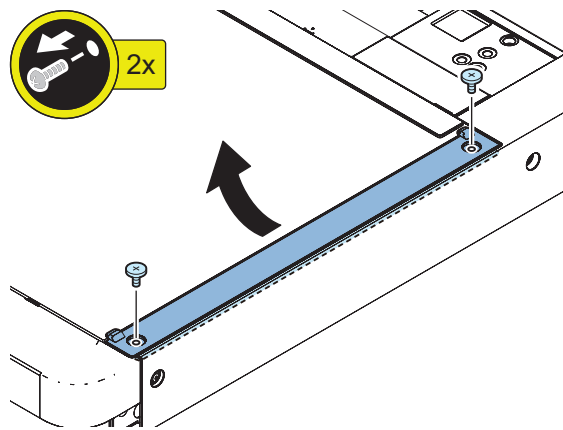
## Cleaning the Copyboard Glass (Large)

### ■ Procedure

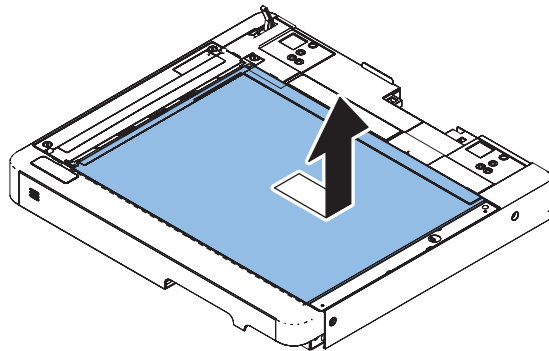
1.



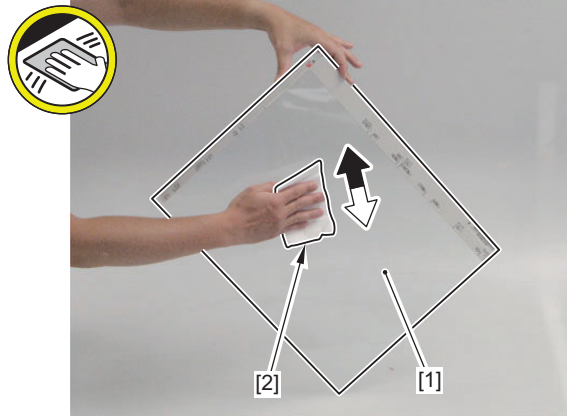
2.



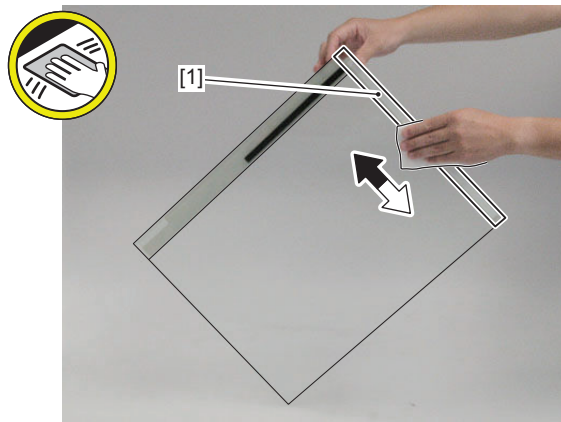
3.



- 4.** Clean the front surface and back surface of the Copyboard Glass (Large) [1] with lint-free paper [2].



- 5.** Clean the White Plate [1].

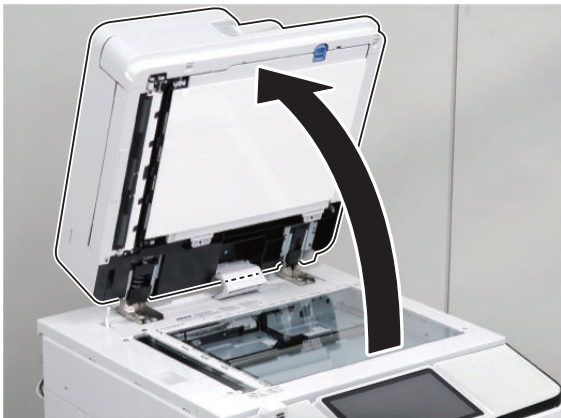


- 6.** Install the Copyboard Glass (Large) and the Right Upper Panel to the original positions.

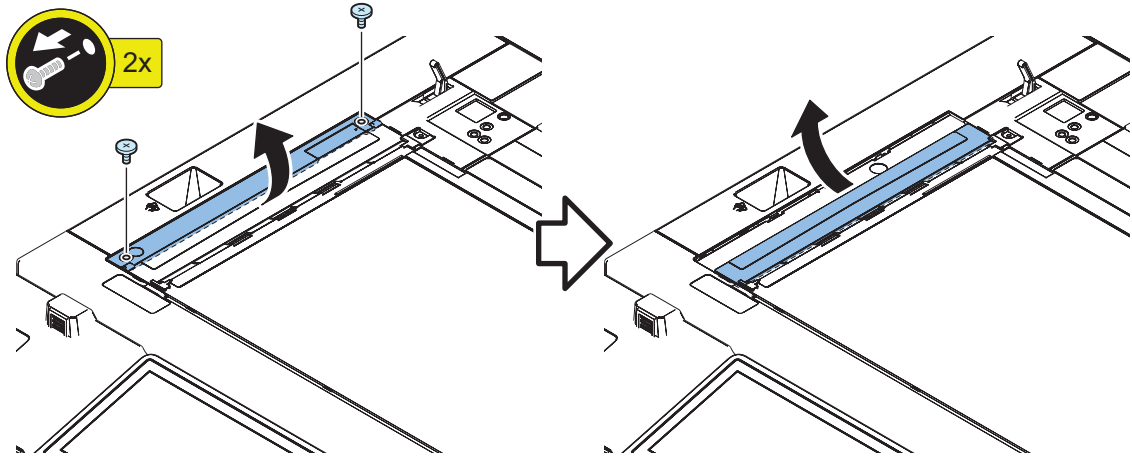
## **Cleaning the Copyboard Glass (Small)**

### **Procedure**

**1.**



2.

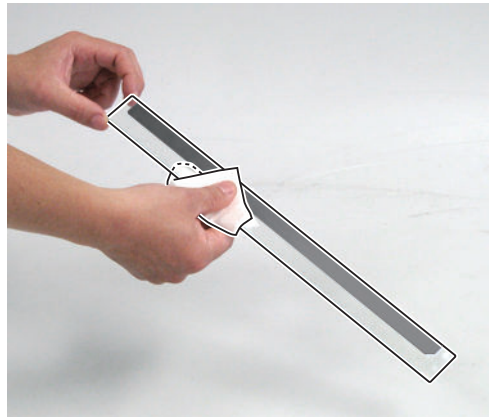


3.

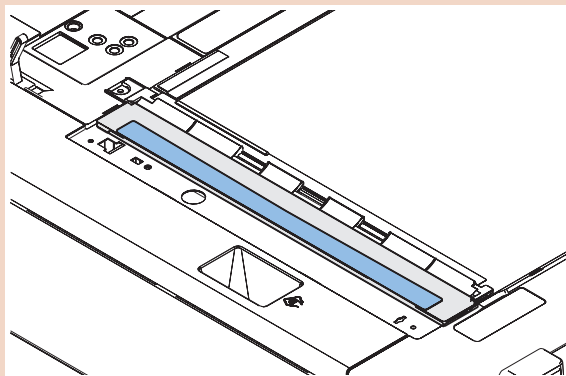
**CAUTION:**

To clean the Stream Reading Glass, wipe the glass for front and back using a lint-free paper wet with water and squeezed well, or a dry lint-free paper with Oil Glass Cleaner FY9-6035.

Clean the front surface and back surface of the Copyboard Glass (Small) with lint-free paper.

**CAUTION:**

When installing the Copyboard Glass (Small), install it in a way that the sticker affixed on the Copyboard Glass (Small) is located on the left side of its surface.





# Controller System

## Removing the HDD

### Before Replacing

1. Back up the necessary data based on the table shown below.

2. Printing the set/registered data

- COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > USER-PRT
- COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT

### Backup List

| Backup target data  | Backup Method   |         |       |           |
|---|-----------------|---------|-------|-----------|
|   | User            | Service | DCM   | Power OFF |
|   | (excluding DCM) |         |       |           |
| Address List  | Yes*1           | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Forwarding Settings   | Yes*1           | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Settings / Registration   |                 |         |       |           |
| Preferences (Except for Paper Type Management Settings)   | -               | -       | Yes*9 | Yes*10    |
| Adjustment/Maintenance(*)   | -               | -       | Yes*9 | Yes*10    |
| Function Settings (Except for Printer Custom Settings, Forwarding Settings)   | -               | -       | Yes*9 | Yes*10    |
| Set Destination (Except for Address List)   | -               | -       | Yes*9 | Yes*10    |
| Management Settings (Except for Address List)   | -               | -       | Yes*9 | Yes*10    |
| User authentication information used for local device authentication of UA (User Authentication)                          | Yes*2           | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Printer Settings  | Yes*1           | -       | Yes*9 | Yes*10    |
| Set Paper Information   | Yes*1           | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Setting items for each menu in Main Menu (Copy, Scan and Send, Fax, Scan and Store, Access Stored Files, Fax/I-Fax Inbox) |                 |         |       |           |
| Favorite Settings   | Yes*1           | Yes*8   | Yes*9 | -         |
| Default Settings  | -               | Yes*8   | Yes*9 | -         |
| Shortcut settings for "Options"   | -               | Yes*8   | Yes*9 | -         |
| Previous Settings   | -               | Yes*8   | -     | -         |
| Setting items for Quick Menu  |                 |         |       |           |
| Button Size information   | -               | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Wallpaper Setting   | -               | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Button information in Quick Menu  | -               | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Restrict Quick Menu   | -               | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Setting items for Main Menu   |                 |         |       |           |
| Button settings in Main Menu  | -               | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Button settings on the top of the screen  | -               | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Wallpaper Setting for Main Menu   | -               | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Other settings for Main Menu  | -               | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Function Settings > Store/Access Files  |                 |         |       |           |
| Mail Box Settings (Register Box Name, PIN, Time Until File Auto Delete, Printer upon Storing from Printer Driver)         | Yes*4           | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Image data in Mail Box, Fax Inbox, and Memory RX Inbox  | Yes*4           | -       | -     | -         |
| Network Place Settings  | -               | -       | Yes*9 | Yes*10    |
| Web browser settings  |                 |         |       |           |
| Web Access setting information  | -               | Yes*8   | Yes*9 | -         |
| MEAP settings   |                 |         |       |           |
| MEAP application  | -               | Yes*8   | -     | -         |
| License files for MEAP applications   | Yes*5           | -       | -     | -         |
| Data saved using MEAP applications  | Yes*5           | Yes*8   | Yes*9 | -         |



| Backup target data  | Backup Method   |         |        |           |
|---|-----------------|---------|--------|-----------|
|   | User            | Service | DCM    | Power OFF |
|   | (excluding DCM) |         |        |           |
| SMS (Service Management Service) password   | -               | Yes*8   | -      | -         |
| Universal data settings   |                 |         |        |           |
| Unsent documents (documents waiting to be sent with the Delayed Send mode)  | -               | -       | -      | -         |
| Job logs  | -               | -       | -      | -         |
| Audit Log   | Yes*6           | -       | -      | -         |
| Key Pair and Server Certificate in Certificate Settings in TCP/IP Settings in Network Set-tings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) | -               | -       | Yes*9  | -         |
| Auto Adjust Gradation setting values  | -               | -       | -      | -         |
| PS font   | -               | -       | -      | -         |
| Key information to be used for encryption when TPM is OFF   | -               | -       | -      | -         |
| Key and settings information to be used for encryption when TPM is ON   | Yes*7           | -       | -      | -         |
| Personal Settings   |                 |         |        |           |
| Display Language  | -               | -       | Yes *9 | -         |
| Accessibility Settings  | -               | -       | Yes *9 | -         |
| Default Screen  | -               | -       | Yes *9 | -         |
| Default Job Settings  | -               | -       | Yes *9 | -         |
| Quick Menu (Personal, layout of the Personal tab, and background of the Personal tab)   | -               | -       | Yes *9 | -         |
| Address Book (Personal/Group)   | Yes *1          | -       | Yes *9 | -         |
| Key ring (for host machine functions)   | -               | -       | Yes *9 | -         |
| Personal settings of MEAP   | Yes *11         | Yes *8  | Yes *9 | -         |
| Service Mode  |                 |         |        |           |
| Service Mode setting values (MN-CON)  | -               | -       | Yes*9  | Yes*10    |

\*1: Remote UI > Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Import or Export

\*2: Remote UI > Settings/Registration > Management Settings > User Management > Authentication Management > User Management

\*3: Remote UI > Quick Menu > Export

\*4: Remote UI > Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Back Up or Restore

\*5: Remote UI > Service Management Service

\*6: Remote UI > Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Device Management > Save Audit Log

Audit log that was exported cannot be put back to the device from which the log was exported.

\*7: Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > TPM Settings

\*8: Download mode > [5]: Backup/Restore > [3] : MEAP Backup > Meapback.bin Backup is possible using SST or USB memory  
The data saved using a MEAP application can be backed up only when the MEAP application has a backup function.

\*9: Backup Method using DCM When You set it in COPIER> OPTION> USER> SMD-EXPT> ON, a backup/restore is possible in Service Mode Settings from the Remote UI. There is a backup button on the TOP page of the service mode.

1. Remote UI > Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export All

2. Remote UI > Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export

3. Service mode top screen > BACKUP

4. Web Service

\*10: The setting value that was set when the main power was turned OFF the last time is automatically backed up to the Flash PCB. When a HDD is replaced with a new one, the setting value is automatically inherited from the Flash PCB at the time of HDD formatting.

\*11: iWEMC DAM plug-in

## ■ Procedure

1. Open the Right Rear Cover 1.

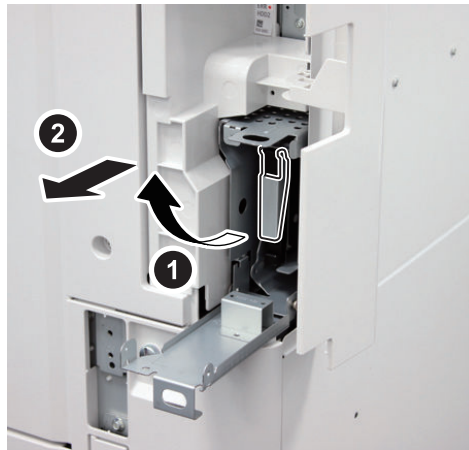


2. Open the HDD Front Cover.

- 1 Screw



**3. Lift up the HDD Case Hinge and pull out the HDD.**



**CAUTION:**

Points to Note when Installing the HDD

Be sure to push the HDD into the machine horizontally.

If it is not installed horizontally, it may cause poor contact/damage of connector or deformation of plate.

## ■ After Replacement

**1. HDD format**

Start the machine in safe mode, and format all partitions using SST or a USB memory.

**2. Turning OFF and ON the main power switch**

**3. Restoring the backup data**

**4. Resetting/registering the data**

While referring to the list which was printed before replacement, reset/register the data.

**5. When the user generates and adds the encryption key, certificate and/or CA certificate, request the user to generate them again.**

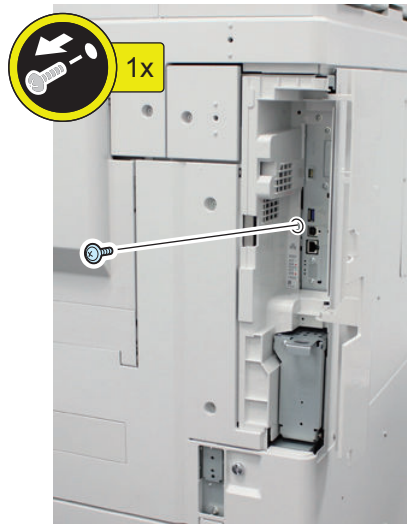
## ● Removing Main Controller PCB 1

### ■ Preparation

**1. Open the Right Rear Cover 1.**



**2. Remove the 1 Screw.**



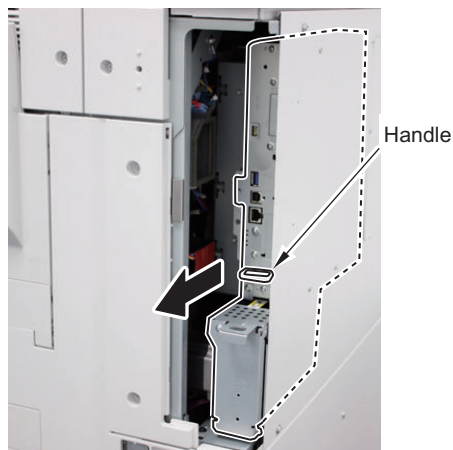
**3. Remove the Side Cover.**

- 1 Screw
- 1 Hook



**■ Procedure**

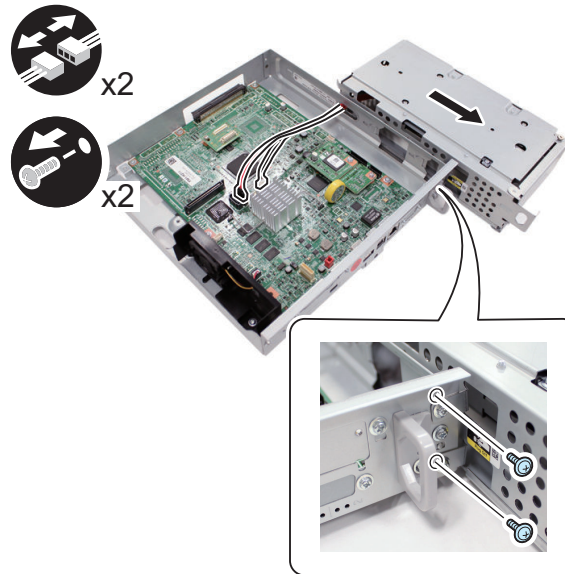
**1. Remove the Main Controller PCB 1 and the HDD.**



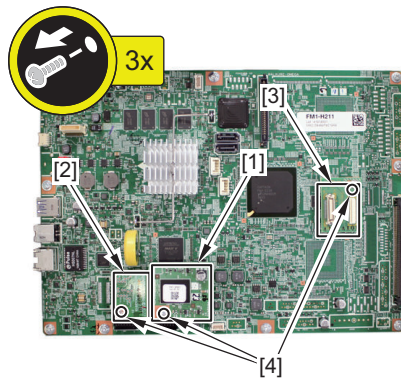
**2. Disconnect the USB Cable and the Connector.**

**3. Remove the HDD.**

- 2 Screws

**4. Remove the Flash PCB[1],TPM PCB[2],Memory PCB[3].**

- 3 Screws[4]

**■ After Replacement****1. Replace parts from an old PCB to a new PCB.**

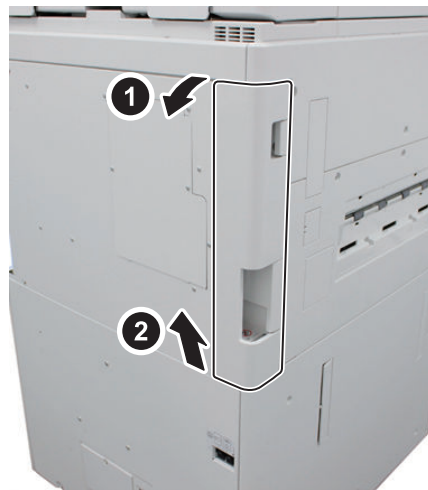
- Memory PCB
- FLASH PCB
- TPM PCB

**● Removing Main Controller PCB 2****■ Preparation****NOTE:**

No action needs to be performed when replacing the parts of the Main Controller PCB 2.

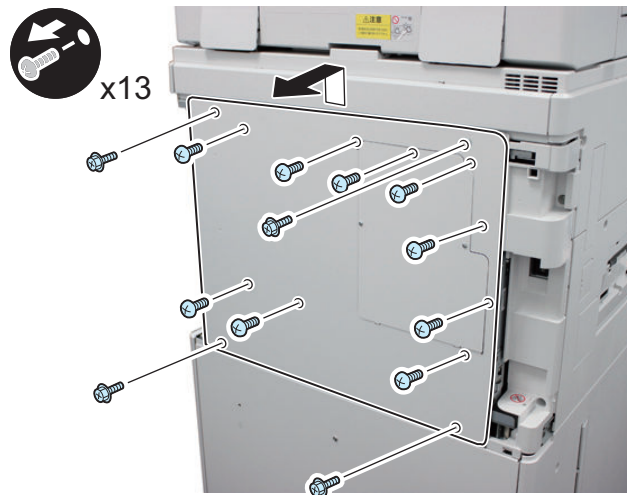
**1. Remove the Main Controller PCB 1. (“Removing Main Controller PCB 1” on page 300)**

**2. Remove the Left Rear Cover.**



**3. Remove the Rear Upper Cover.**

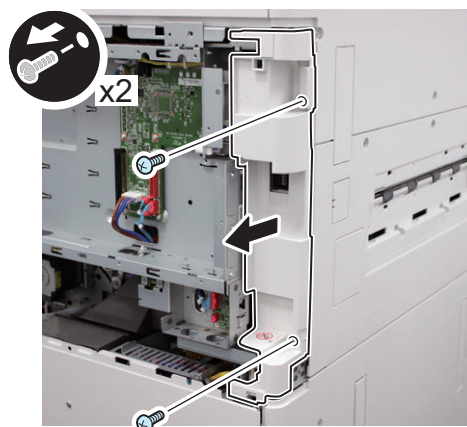
- 13 Screws



**■ Procedure**

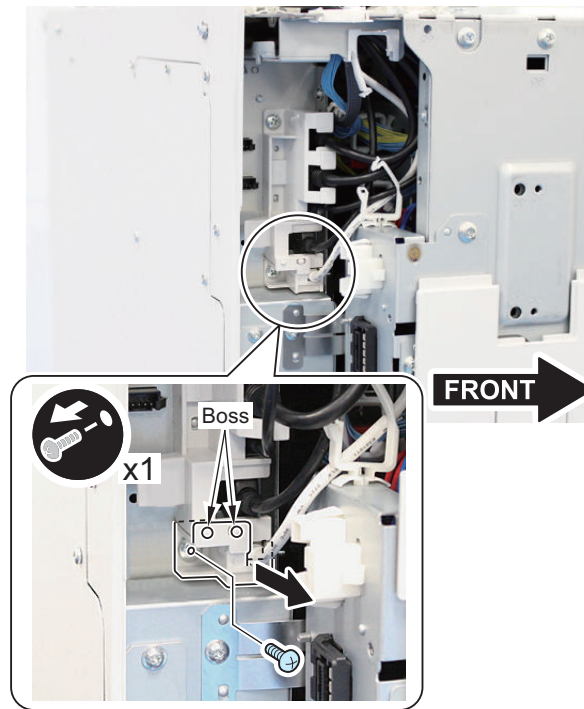
**1. Remove the Left Rear Inner Cover.**

- 2 Screws



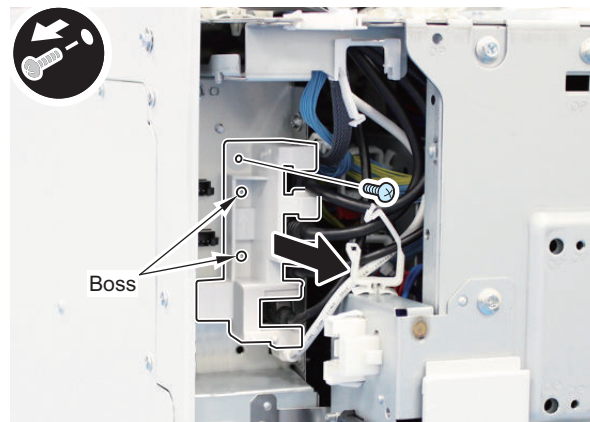
**2. Remove the ECBOX Harness Guide (Lower).**

- 1 Screw
- 2 Bosses



**3. Remove the ECBOX Harness Guide (Upper).**

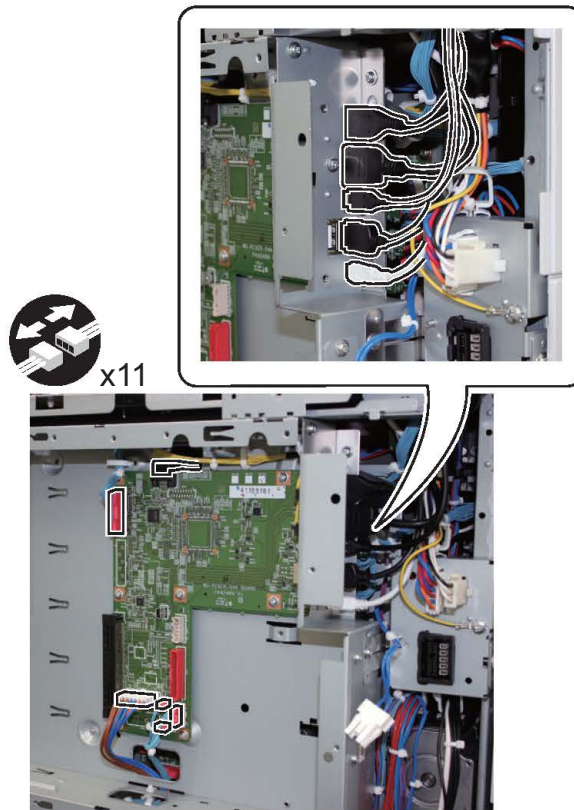
- 1 Screw
- 1 Boss





4. Disconnect the All Cables and the All Connectors.

- 11 Connectors



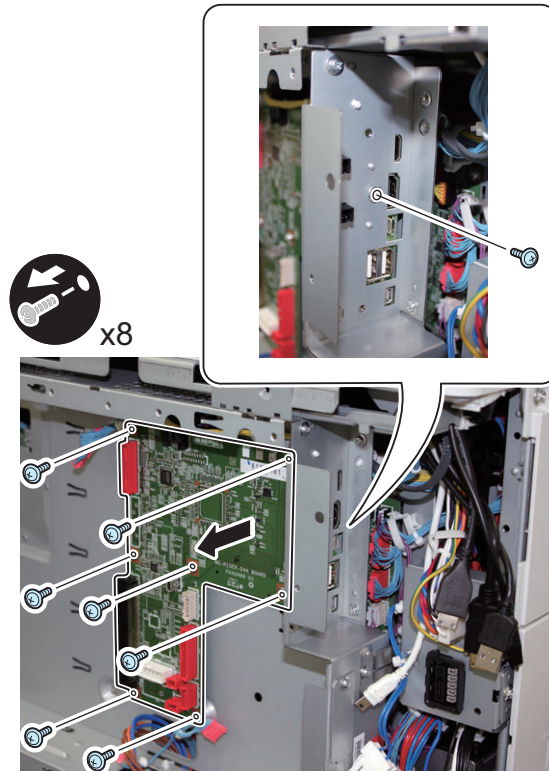


### 5. Remove the Main Controller PCB 2

- 8 Screws

**CAUTION:**

Be sure to hold the Main Controller PCB 2 so as not to drop it when removing it.



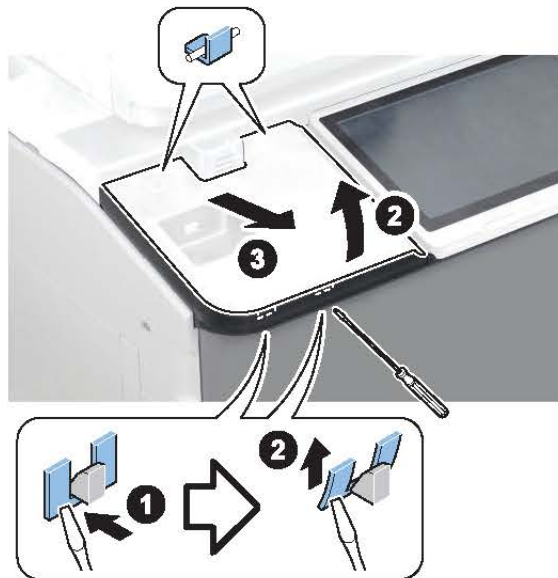
### ● Removing the Flat Control Panel Unit

#### ■ Procedure

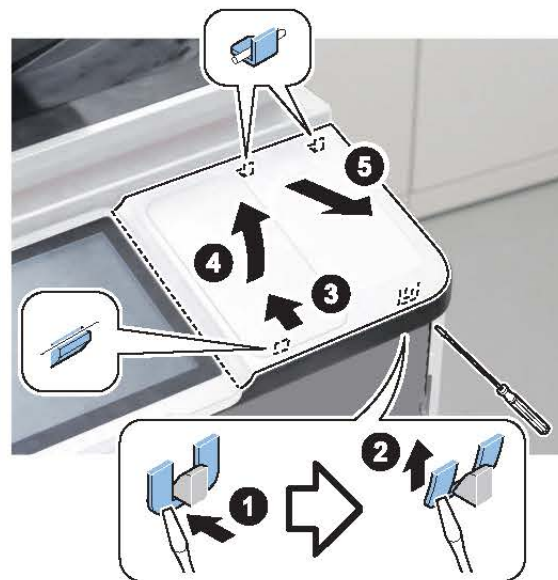
1.



2.



3.



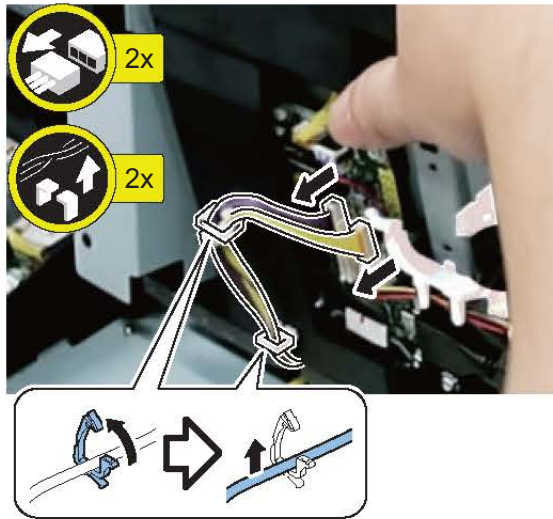
4.



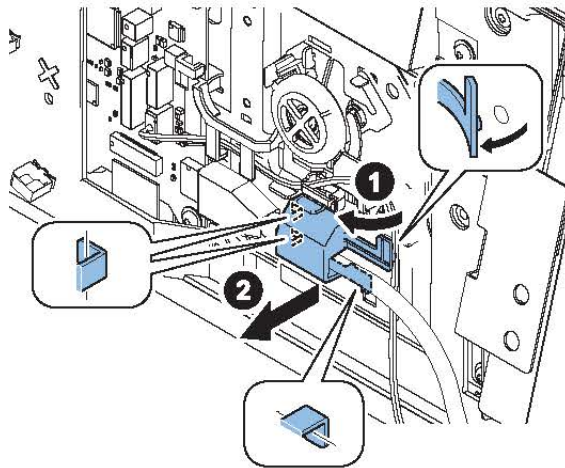
5.



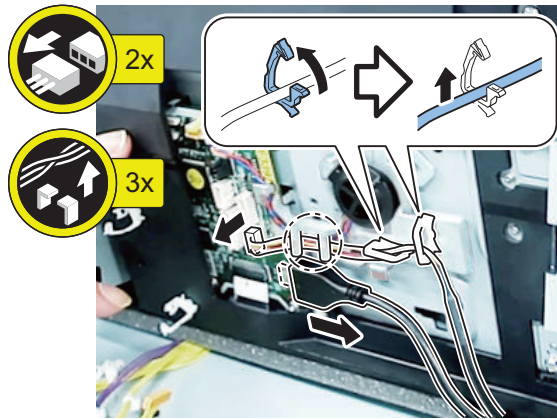
6.



7.



8.



9.



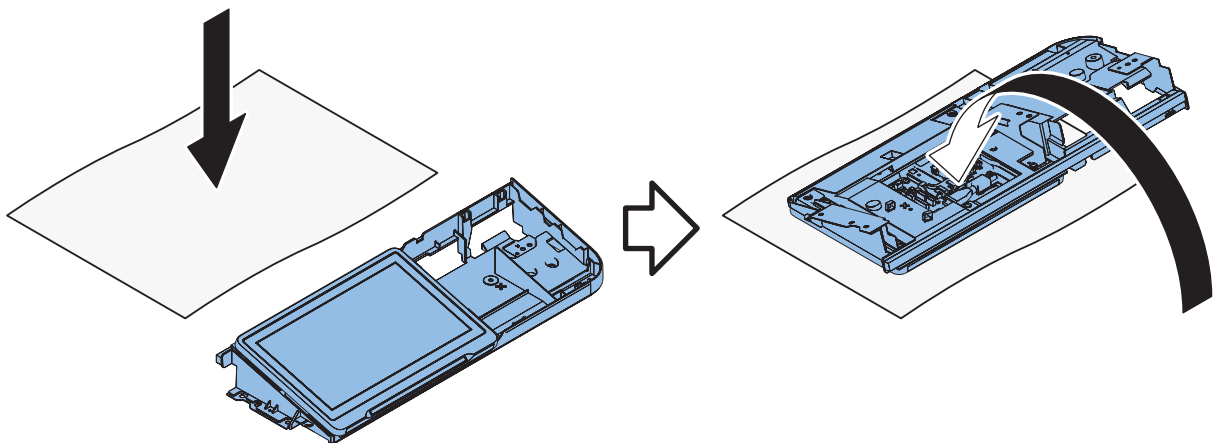
## ● Removing the Control Panel CPU PCB/LCD Unit/LED PCB

### ■ Preparation

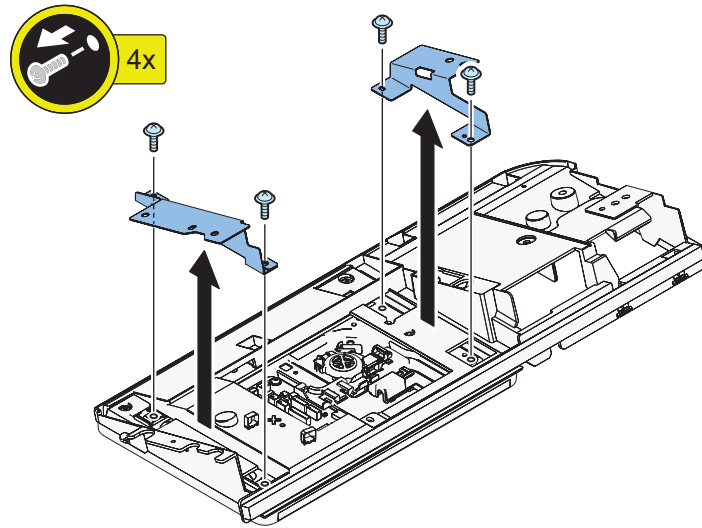
1. "Removing the Flat Control Panel Unit" on page 306

### ■ Procedure

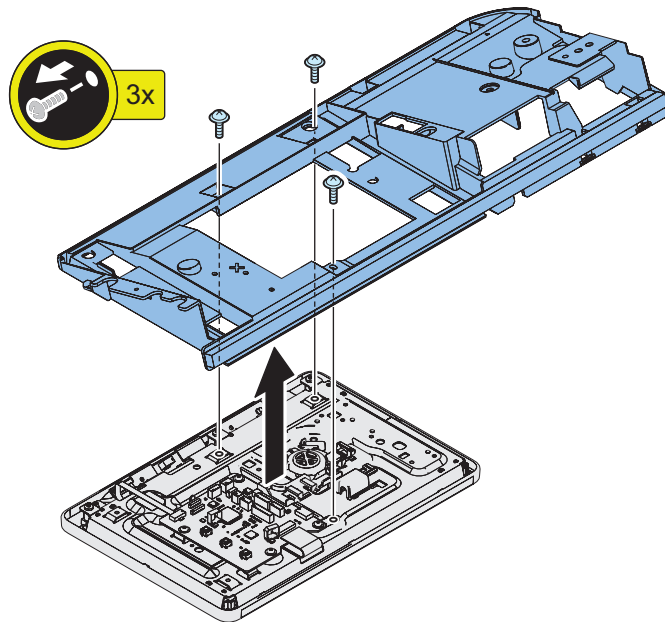
1.



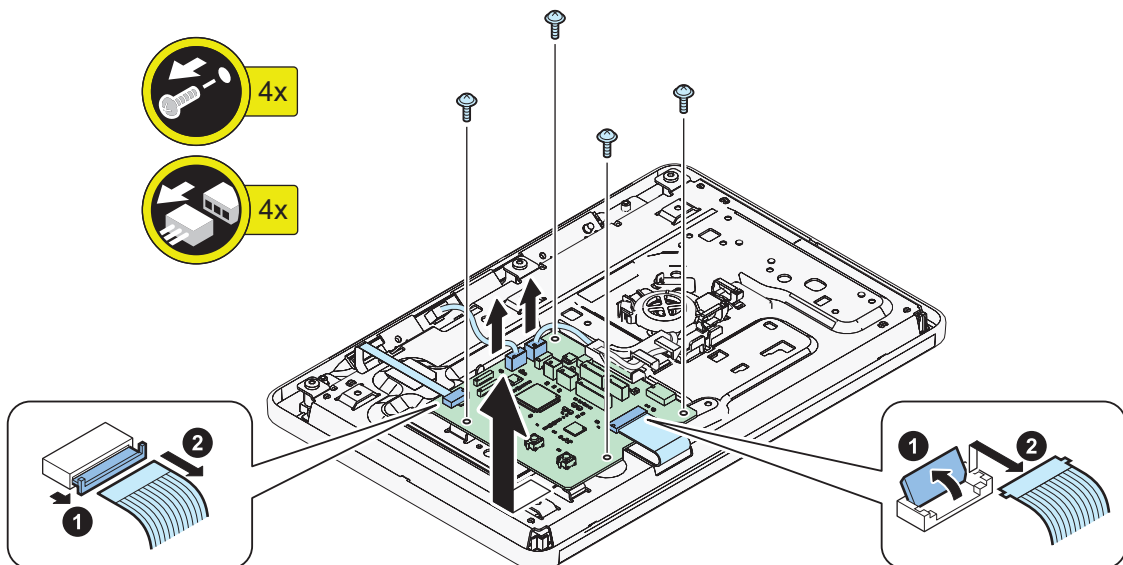
2.



3.

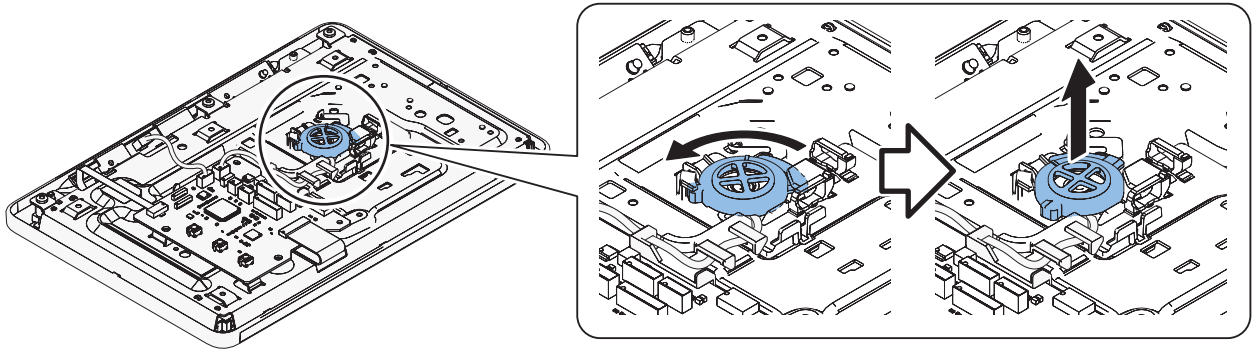


4. Removing the Control Panel CPU PCB



## 5. Removing the Speaker

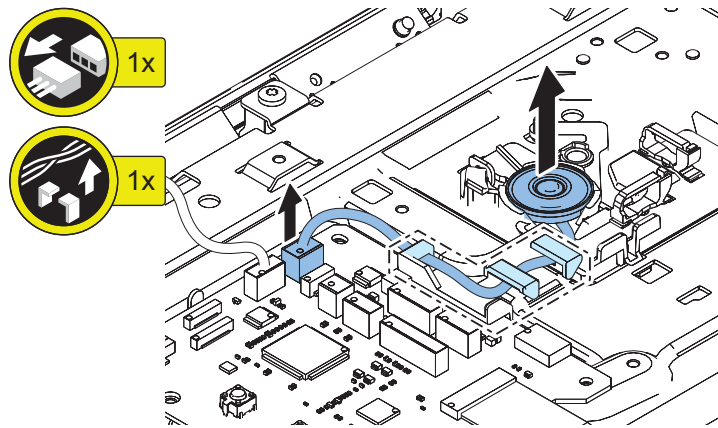
1.



2.

**CAUTION:**

- Do not directly touch the speaker.
- Do not damage the speaker.

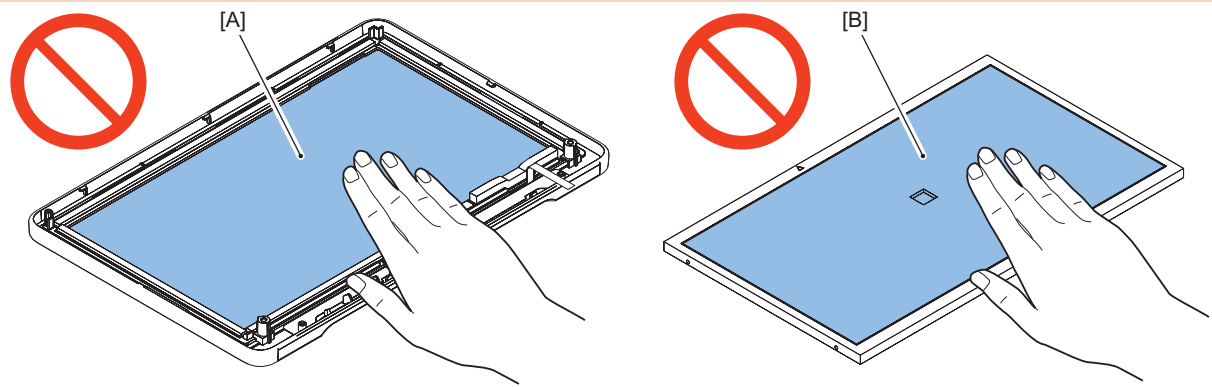




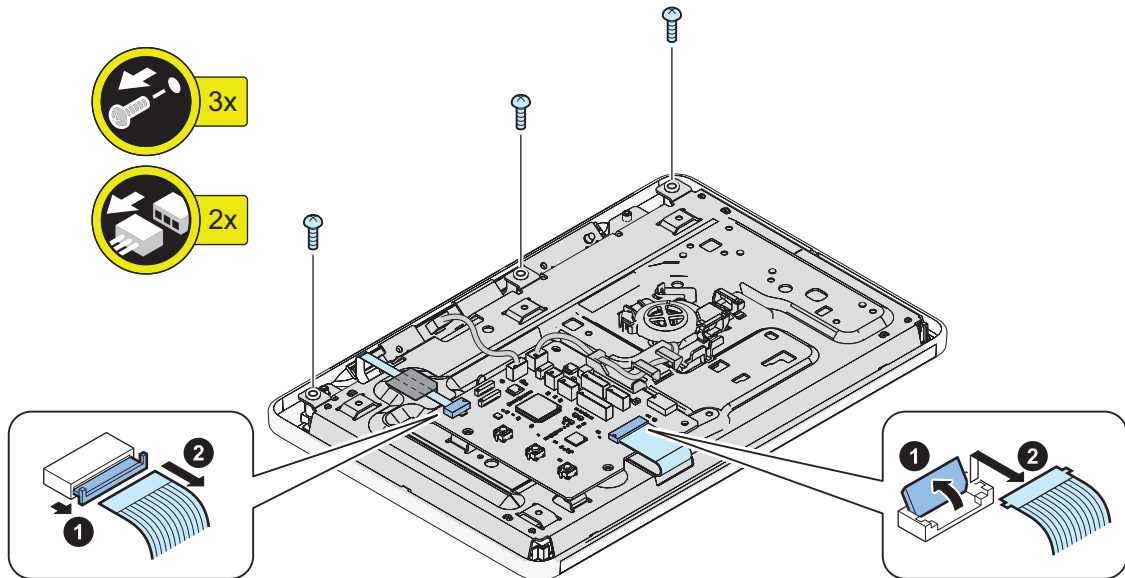
## 6. Removing the LCD Unit

### CAUTION:

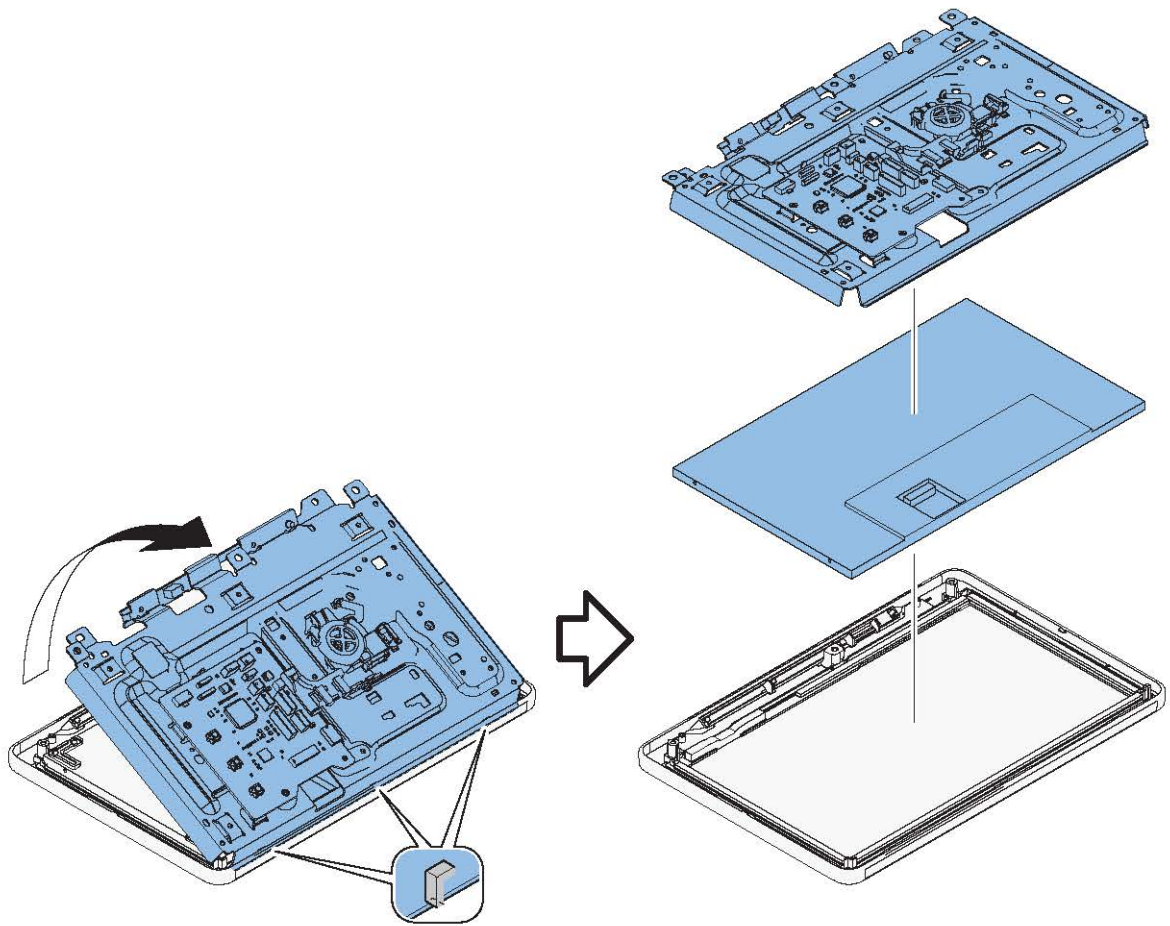
Do not touch the surface of the Touch Panel [A] and LCD Unit [B] when assembling/disassembling.



1.



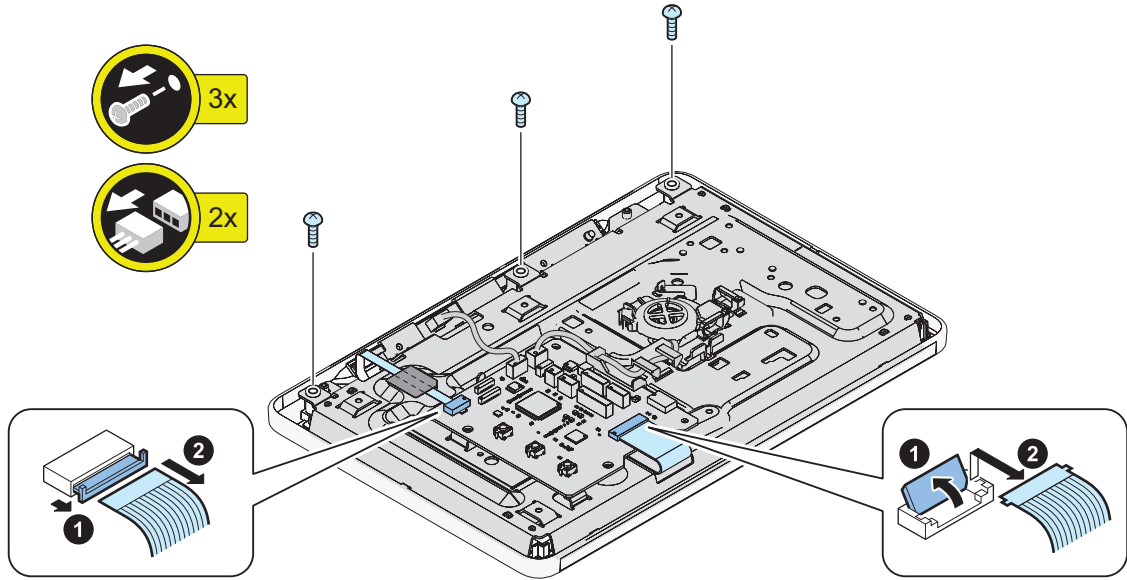
2.



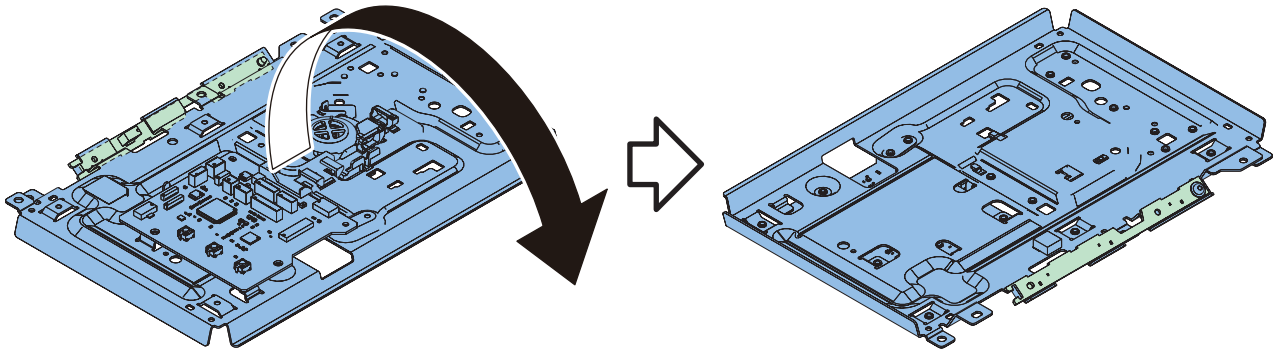


## 7. Removing the LED PCB

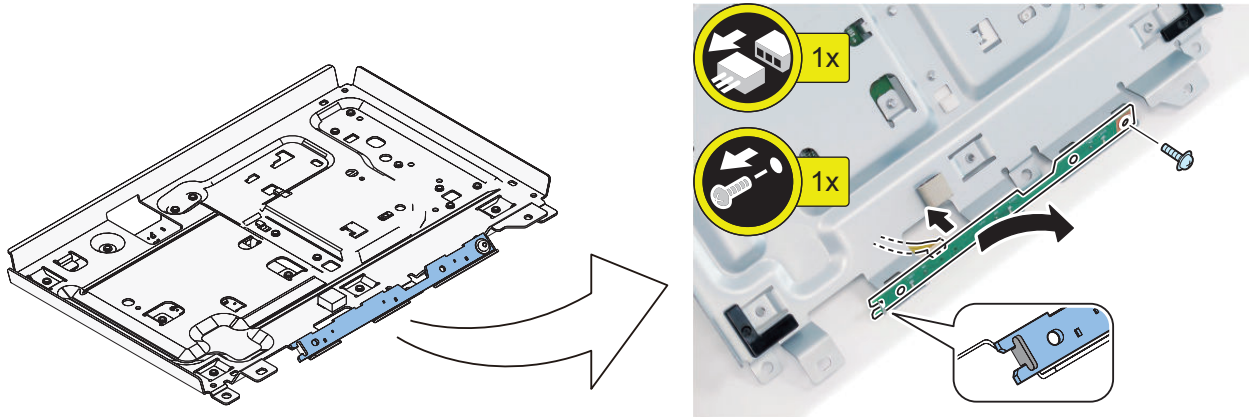
1.



2.



3.



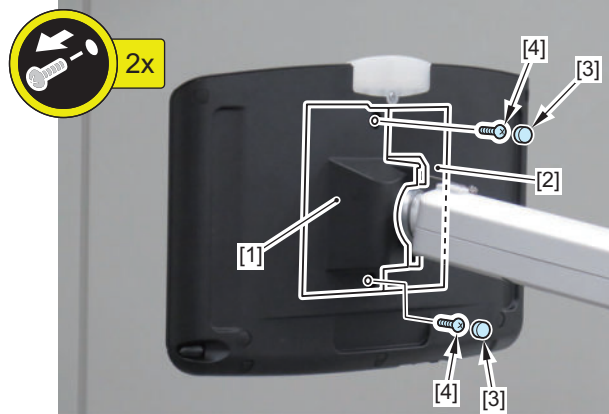
## 8. Actions after Replacement: "Control Panel Unit" on page 608

## ● Removing the Upright Control Panel

### ■ Procedure

#### 1. Remove the Joint Cover R [1] and the Joint Cover L [2].

- 2 Rubber Caps [3]
- 2 Screws (P Tightening; M3x8) [4]



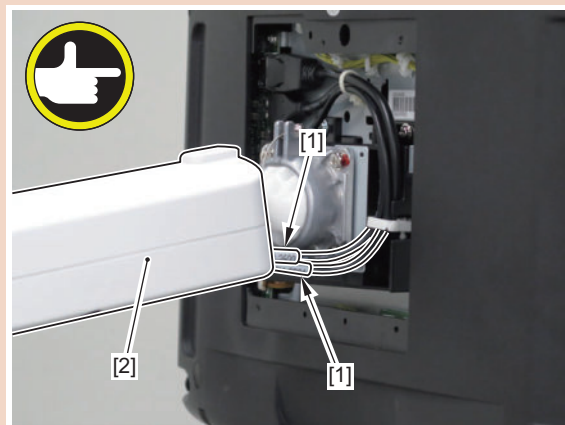
#### 2. Disconnect the 3 cables [1].

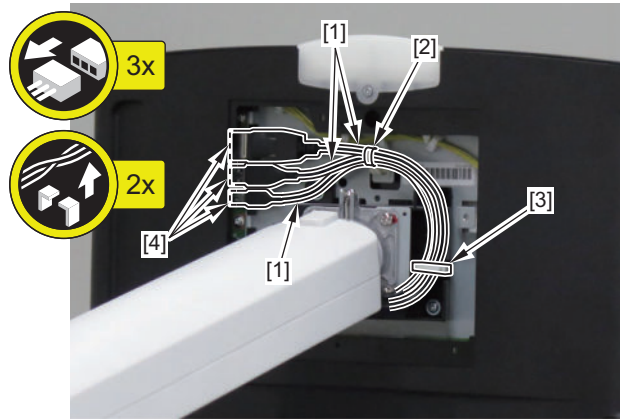
- 1 Reuse Band [2]
- 1 Wire Saddle [3]
- 3 Connectors [4]

#### CAUTION:

When assembling, pay attention to the following points.

- Check that the white tape [1] of the Control Panel Cable is completely outside the Pipe Cover [2].
- If not, make adjustments so that the white tape [1] can be seen from the Pipe Cover [2].
- Do not route the Control Panel Cable clockwise.



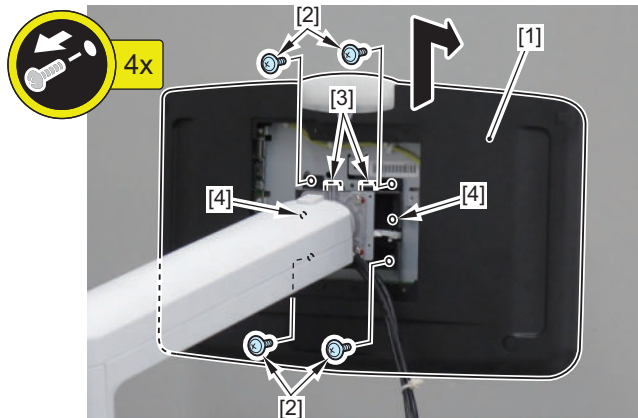


### 3. Remove the Upright Control Panel Unit [1].

- 4 Screws (TP; M4x8) [2]
- 2 Protrusions [3]
- 2 Bosses [4]

#### NOTE:

When assembling, be sure to tighten the screws from the upper part.



## ● Removing the Control Panel CPU PCB (Upright Control Panel)

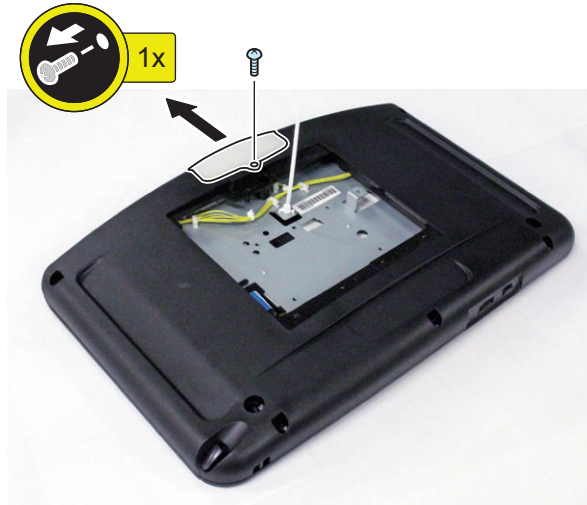
### ■ Preparation

1. Removing the Upright Control Panel. [“Removing the Upright Control Panel” on page 315](#)

## ■ Procedure

### 1. Remove the Tarry Lamp Cover.

- 1 Screw

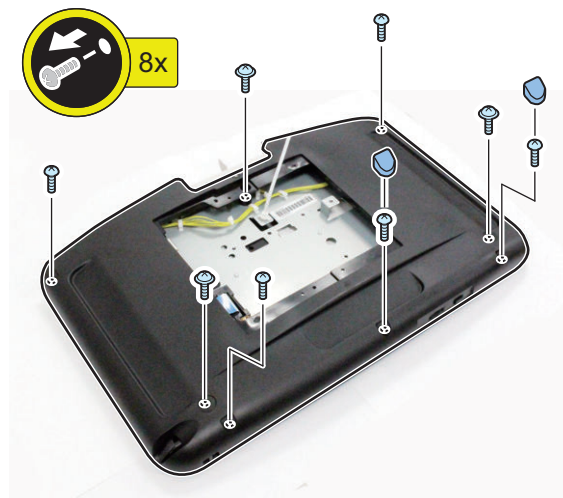


### 2. Remove the Panel Rear Cover.

- 2 Caps
- 8 Screws

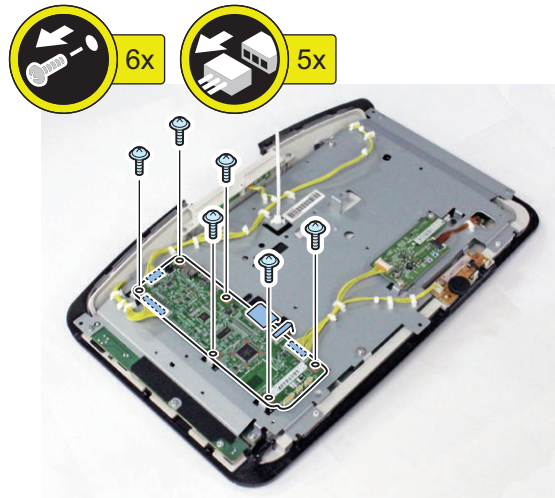
#### NOTE:

Be sure to remove the Touch Pen when removing the Rear Cover.



**3. Remove the Control Panel CPU PCB.**

- 6 Screws
- 3 Connectors
- 2 Flat Cables

**4. Actions after Replacement: “Upright Control Panel Adjustment” on page 609**

## ● Removing the LCD Unit (Upright Control Panel)

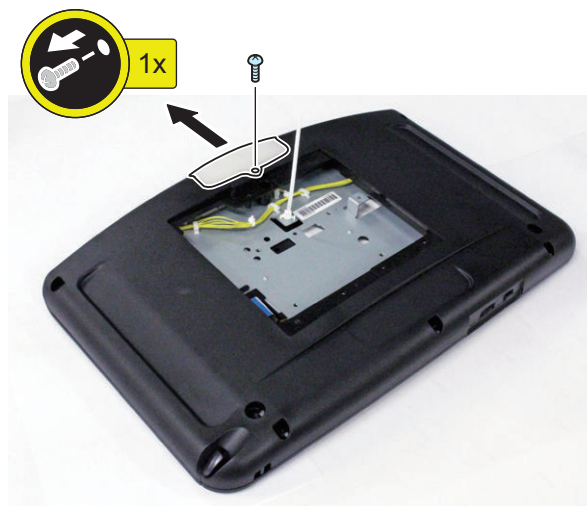
### ■ Preparation

1. Removing the Upright Control Panel. “Removing the Upright Control Panel” on page 315

### ■ Procedure

1. Remove the Tarry Lamp Cover.

- 1 Screw

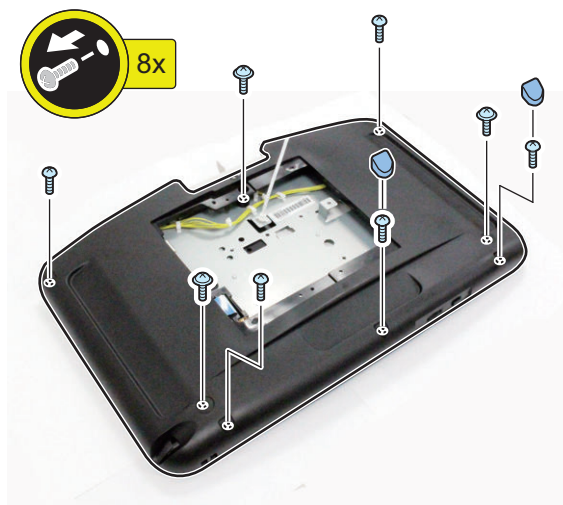


**2. Remove the Panel Rear Cover.**

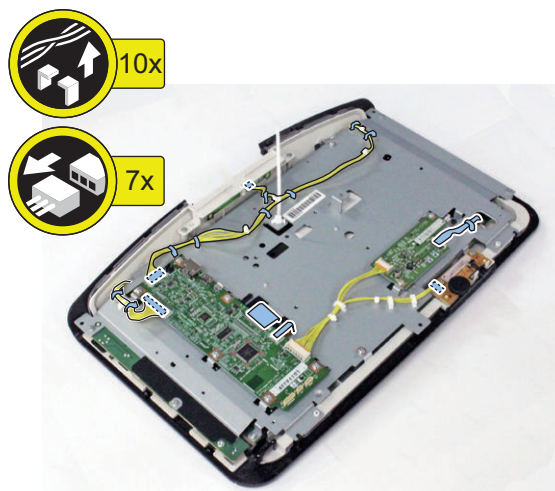
- 2 Caps
- 8 Screws

**NOTE:**

Be sure to remove the Touch Pen when removing the Rear Cover.

**3. Remove the Connectors and the Cables.**

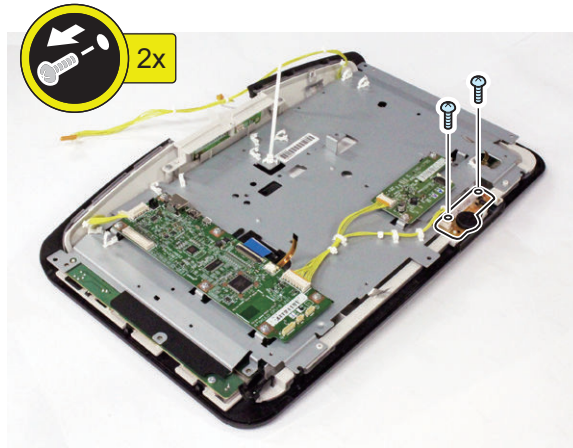
- 4 Connectors
- 3 Flat Cables
- 10 Wire Saddles





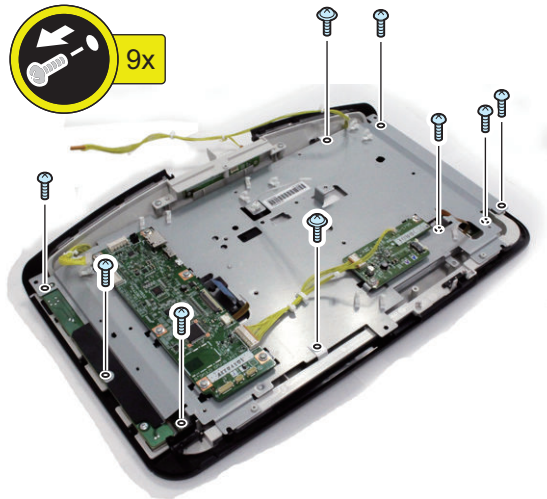
**4. Remove the Volume PCB.**

- 2 Screws

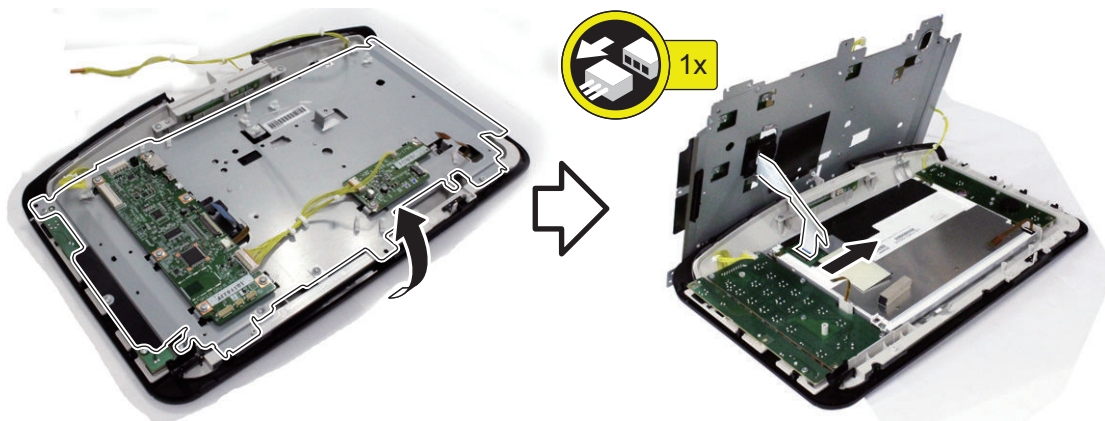


**5. Remove the screws on the Control Panel Frame.**

- 9 Screws

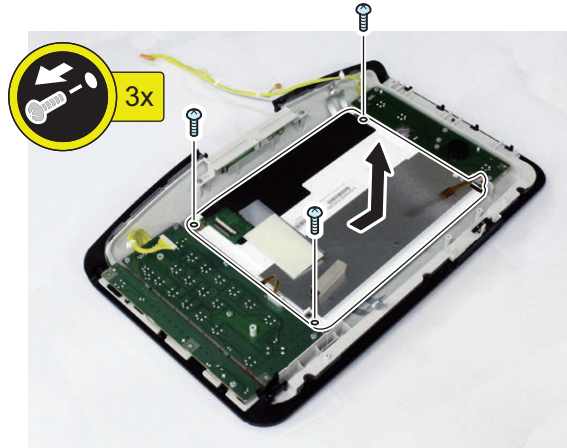


**6. Lift up the Control Panel Frame, disconnect the Flat Cable, and remove the Control Panel Frame.**



**7. Remove the LCD Unit.**

- 3 Screws



**8. Actions after Replacement: [“Upright Control Panel Adjustment”](#) on page 609**



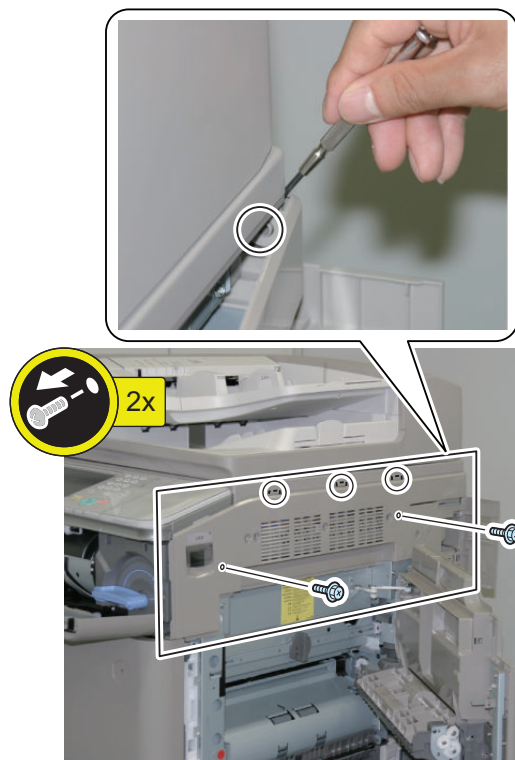
## Laser Exposure System

### Removing the Laser Scanner Unit

#### ■ Preparation

##### 1. Removing the Right Upper Cover.

1. Open the Toner Exchange Cover.
2. Open the Right Cover.
3. Open the Right Rear Cover 1.
4. Remove the Right Upper Cover.
  - 2 Screws
  - 1 Boss
  - 3 Protrusions



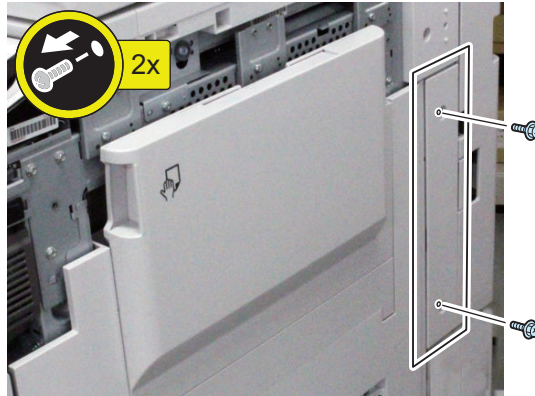
##### 2. Removing the Right Cover.

**NOTE:**

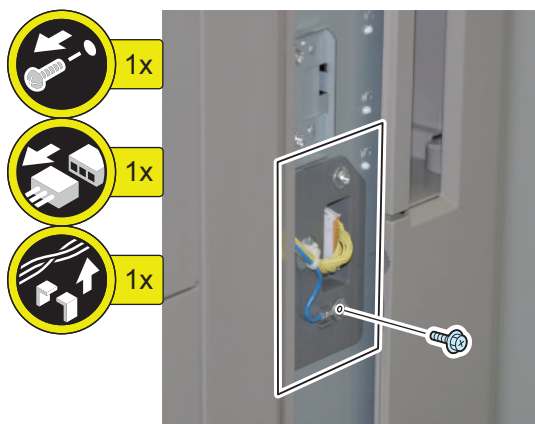
Laser Scanner Unit can be removed without removing the Right Cover.

However, removing the Right Cover is recommended here for better operability.

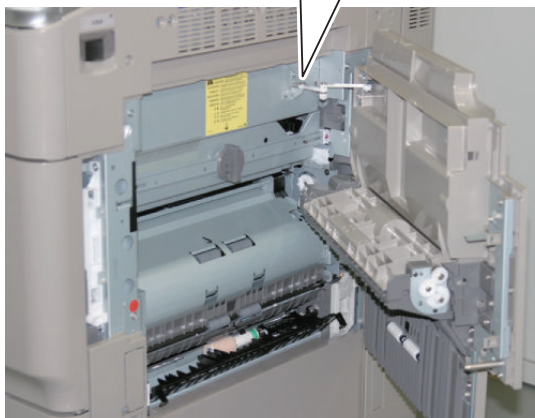
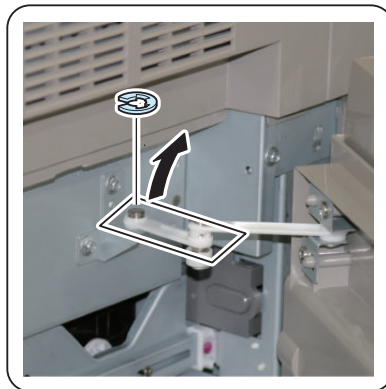
1. Remove the Right Rear Cover2.
  - 2 Screws



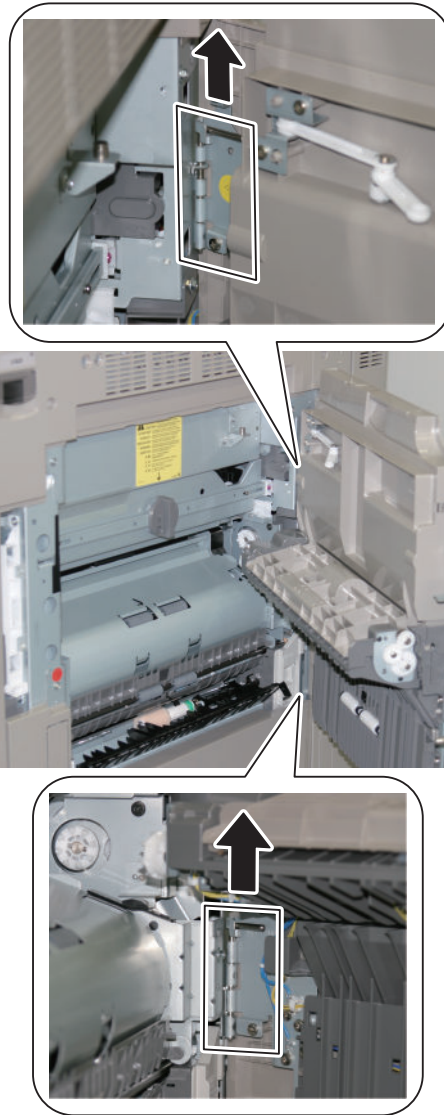
2. Disconnect the Connector and remove the Grounding Wire and the Reuse Band.
  - 1 Screw



3. Open the Right Cover.
4. Remove the E-ring to remove the Door Link.



5. Remove the 2 Hinge Pins to remove the Right Cover.

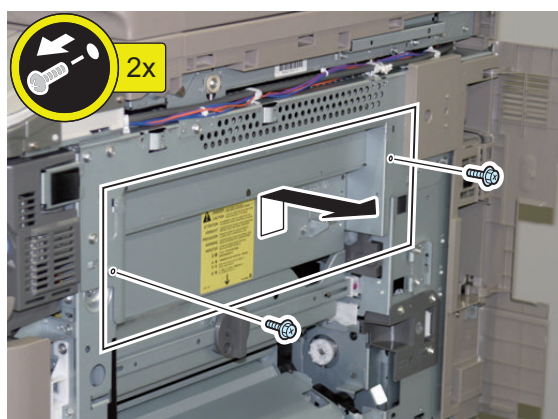


**CAUTION:**  
To prevent falling of Right Cover, hold the Right Cover to remove the Hinge Pins.

■ <Procedure>

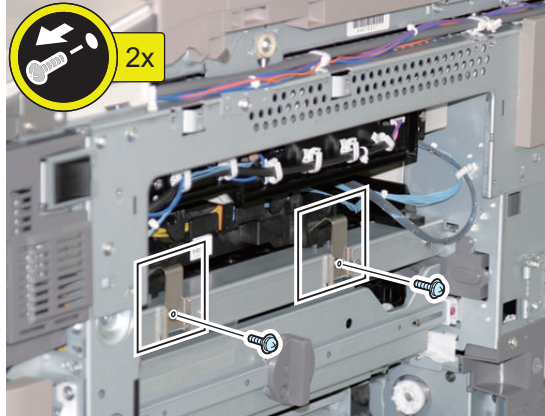
1. Lift the Plate to remove.

- 2 Screws



**2. Remove the 2 Retainer Fixtures.**

- 2 Screws

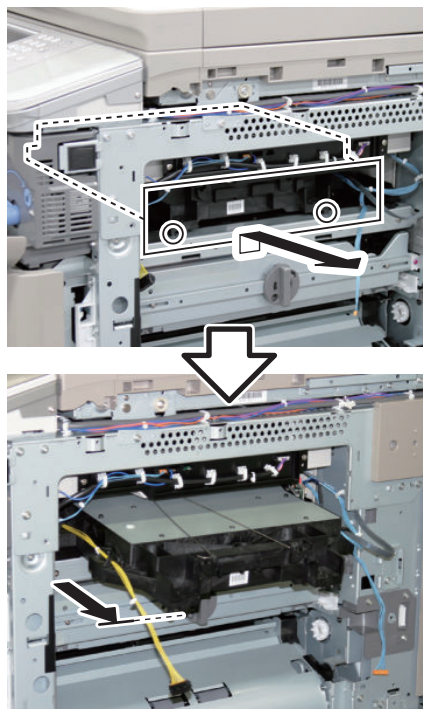


**3. Free the Harness from the Harness Guide and Disconnect the Connector.**



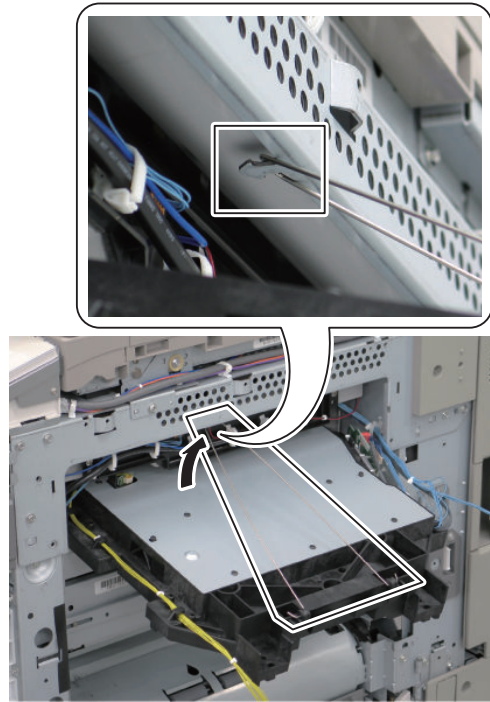
**4. Pull out the Laser Scanner Unit halfway.**

- 2 Bosses



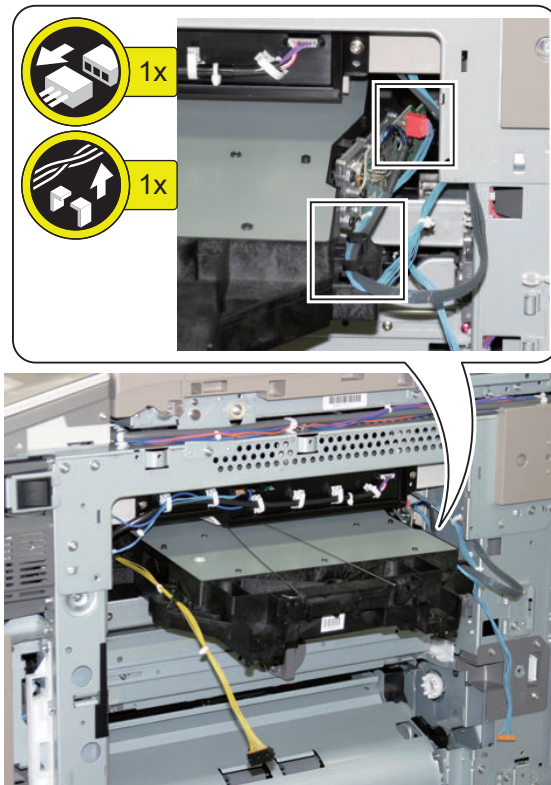


5. Hook the wire of the Laser Scanner Unit to the hook of the main body.



**CAUTION:**  
Do not use the wire when the Right Cover is not removed.

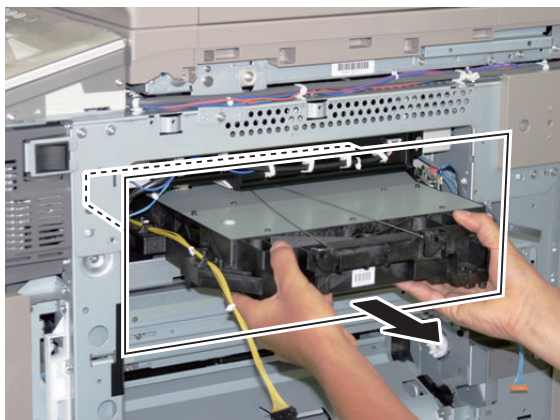
6. Free the Harness from the Harness Guide and Disconnect the Connector.



## 7. Remove the Laser Scanner Unit.

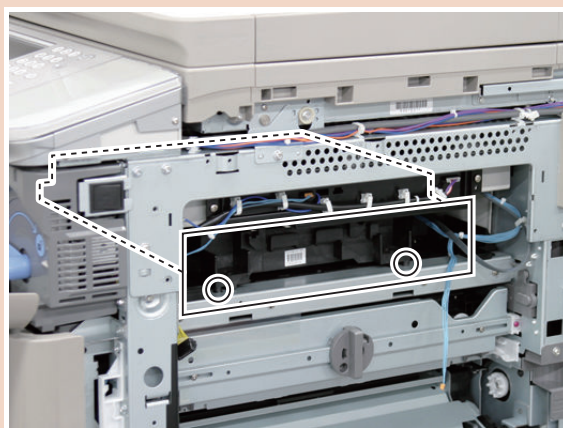
### CAUTION:

Before removing the Laser Scanner Unit, check that the hooking wire of the unit is not hooked to the frame of the main body.



### CAUTION:

When installing the Laser Scanner Unit, be sure to check that the bosses are fitted into the holes.



## ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

1. **Execute the potential control.**  
(Lv.1) COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > DPC2
2. **Write the value in service label.**  
(Lv.1) COPIER > ADJUST > LASER > PVE-OFST (Adjust of write start position of laser)

## ● Cleaning the Dust Collecting Glass

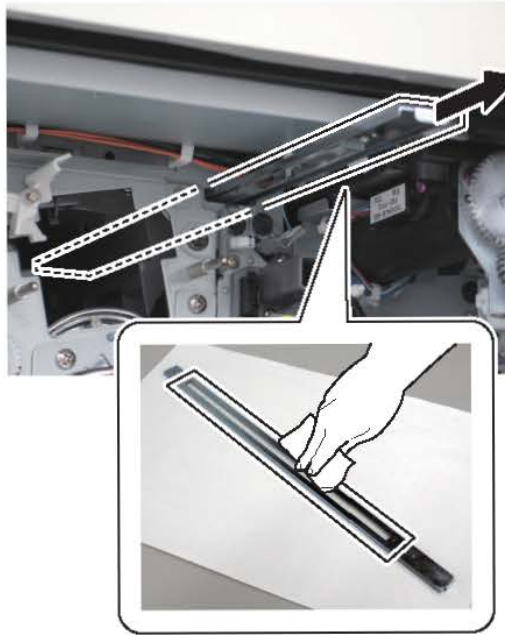
### ■ Preparation

1. **Open the Front Cover.**
2. **Remove the Primary Charging Assembly.** (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)

### ■ <Procedure>

Removing the Dustproof Glass

1. Pull out the Dustproof Glass and clean it with lint-free paper.



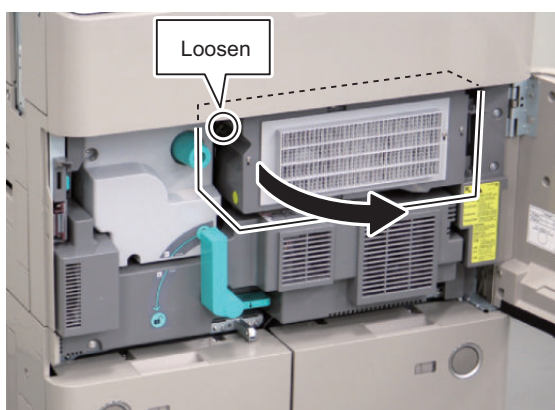
## Image Formation System

### ● Removing the Primary Charging Assembly

#### ■ <Preparation>

##### 1. Open the Inner Cover.

1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Open the Inner Cover.
  - 1 Screw (to loosen)



#### ■ <Procedure>

##### CAUTION:

- When removing the Primary Charging Assembly and the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly, go through the following procedure while the Charging Shutter is open.
- At sleep mode, press the Power Switch on the Control Panel, check that the machine is in standby condition, turn OFF the Main Power, and then perform removing.
- In the case that the condition of the Charging Shutter (open/close) is unknown while the power of the host machine is OFF, turn ON the power, check that the machine is in standby condition, turn OFF the Main Power, and then perform removing.

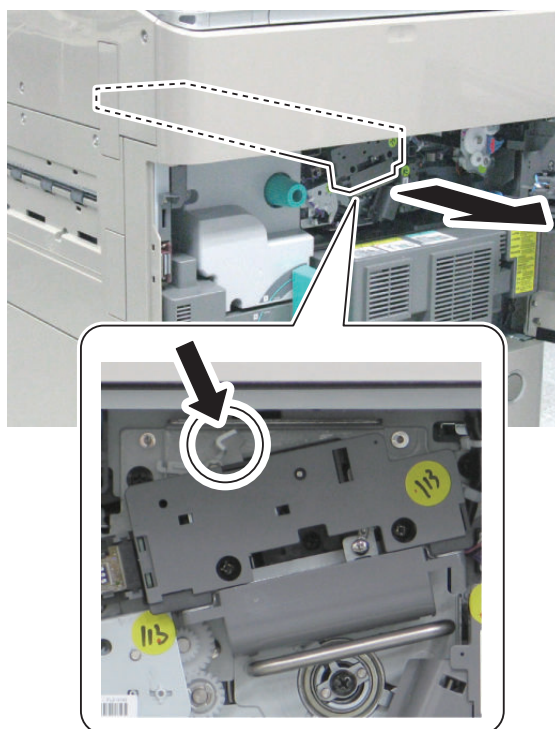
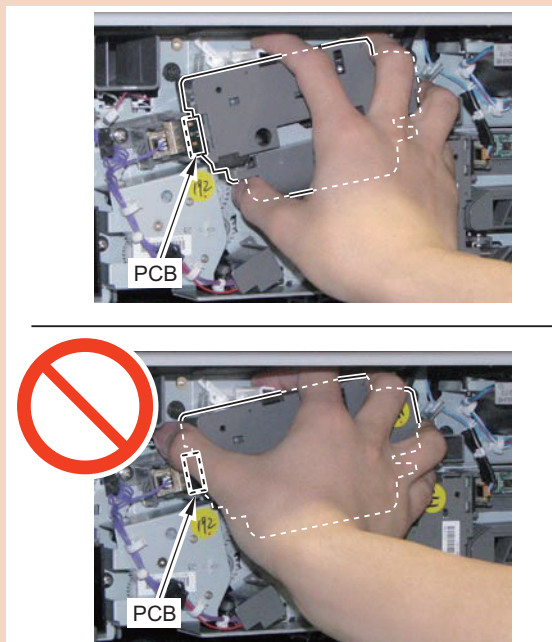
If the above operations are not performed, it may be possible to remove the assembly while the Charging Shutter is closed, which may damage the drum or the shutter.



1. While pushing the Release Lever in the direction of the arrow, pull out the Primary Charging Assembly.

**CAUTION:**

When removing the Primary Charging Assembly, be careful not to hold the PCB of the Primary Charging Assembly.



## ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

1. Clear the parts counter.  
(Lv.1)COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > PRM-UNIT
2. Output a halftone image using the service mode.  
(Lv.1)COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE : 5

**3. Execute the following procedure according to the density difference on the front and rear sides of the test print image.**

- When the front side test print image is dark, execute step 3.
- When the rear side test print image is dark, execute step 4.
- When there is no uneven density, execute step 5 and the following.

When the front side test print image is dark

**NOTE:**

- When the front side test print image is dark [1], execute step 3 until the density becomes even. When the density becomes even, execute step 5 and the following.
- When the adjustment screw is turned clockwise, the Charging Wire goes down and up (gap between grid and Charging Wire becomes narrow and wide). As a result, the density of output image becomes light.

**CAUTION:**

- Be sure to adjust the dark side (density of the test print image) to be the light side.

4. Make the resin screws [A] and [C] a full turn clockwise. While referring to the replacement procedure of the Primary Charging Assembly, install it to the main body, output a test print and check the image.

**CAUTION:**

- Since uneven density might occur, be sure to adjust by turning the 2 adjustment screws with the same amount.



When the rear side test print image is dark

**NOTE:**

- When the rear side test print image is dark [2], execute step 4 until the density becomes even. When the density becomes even, execute step 5 and the following.
- When the adjustment screw is turned clockwise, the Charging Wire goes down and up (gap between grid and Charging Wire becomes narrow and wide). As a result, the density of output image becomes light.

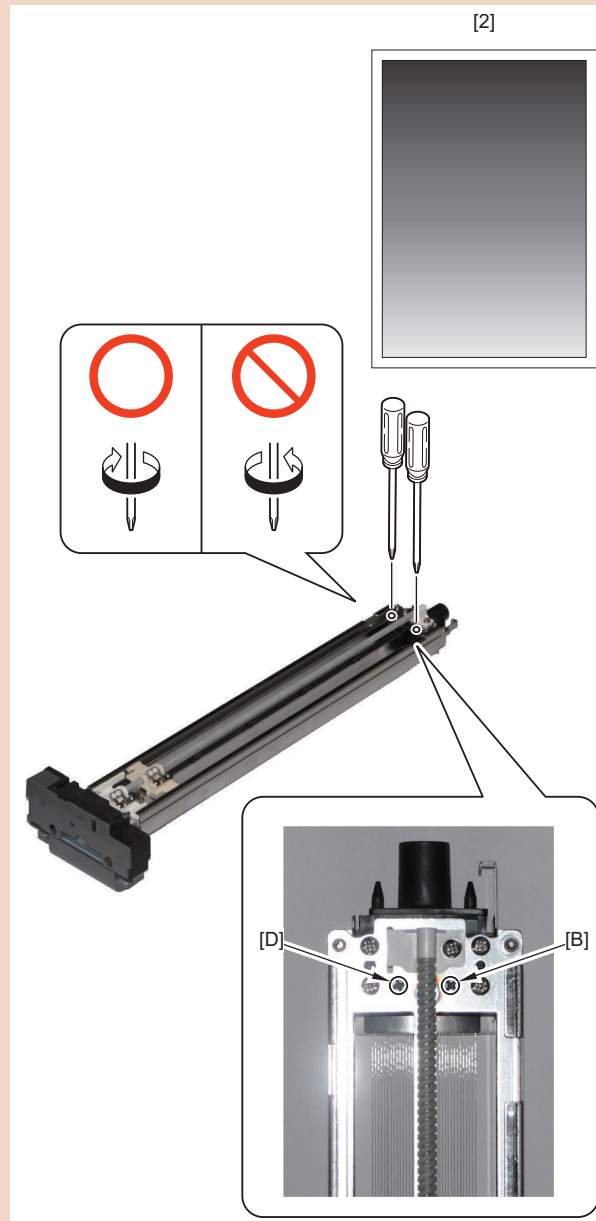
**CAUTION:**

- Be sure to adjust the dark side (density of the test print image) to be the light side.

5. Make the resin screws [B] and [D] a full turn clockwise. While referring to the replacement procedure of the Primary Charging Assembly, install it to the main body, output a test print and check the image.

**CAUTION:**

- Since uneven density might occur, be sure to adjust by turning the 2 adjustment screws with the same amount.



6. Clean the Charging Wire. (necessary time : about 120 second)

(Lv.1)COPIER > FUNCTION > CLAENING > WIRE-CLN

7. Init of Primary Charging Wire current VL.

(Lv.1)COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > GRD-CRNT

8. Execute the potential control.

(Lv.1)COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > DPC2

9. Execute the density correction using the user mode.

Settings/Registration > Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Correct Density

## ● Removing the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner, Cleaner Holder (Right/Left)

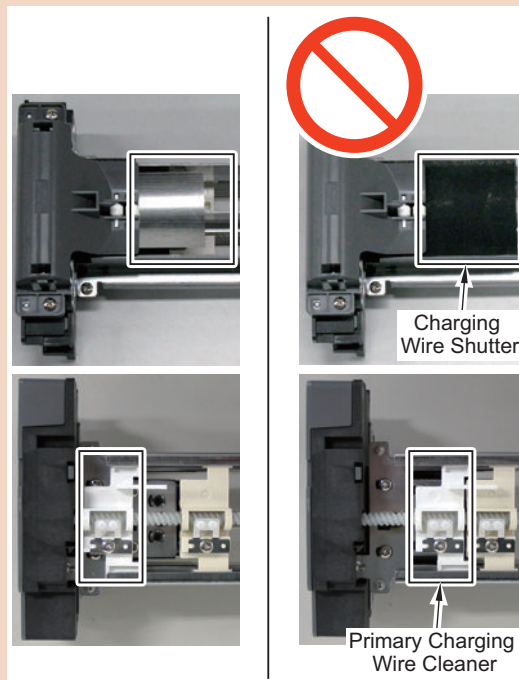
### ■ Preparation

1. Open the Inner Cover. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
2. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)

### ■ <Procedure>

#### CAUTION:

Do not move the Charging Wire Shutter; otherwise, the shutter can be damaged when installing the Charging Assembly. When the Charging Wire Shutter is moved by chance, be sure to move the Shutter until it is invisible.

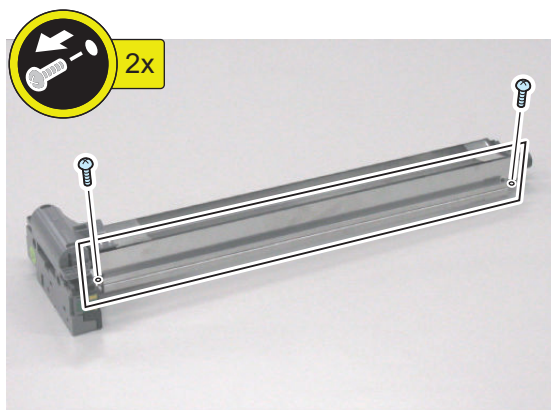


#### CAUTION:

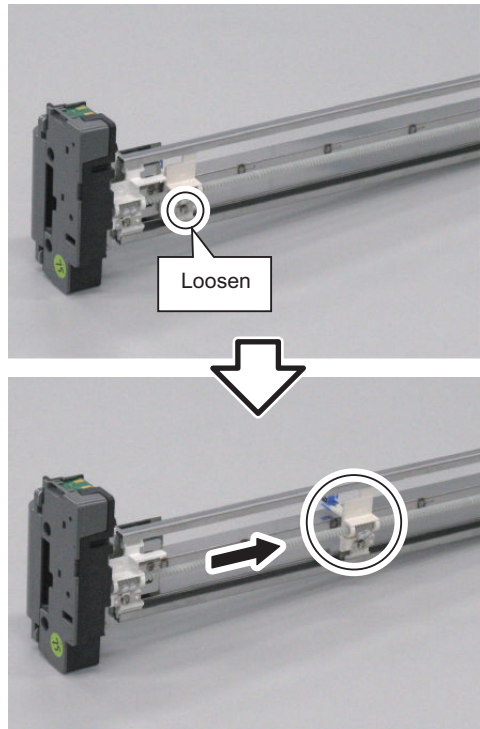
Do not remove both Shield Plates (Right and Left) of the Primary Charging Assembly at the same time. Be sure to work on one Shield Plate at a time (otherwise, the Frame of the Primary Charging Assembly can be deformed).

1. Remove the Shield Plate (Right). When removing the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner Holder (Left), remove the Shield Plate (Left).

- 2 Screws

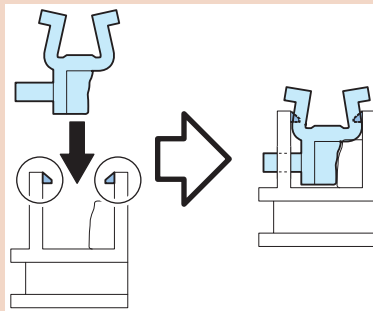


2. Loosen the screw to move the Primary Charging Assembly Cleaner to the center.

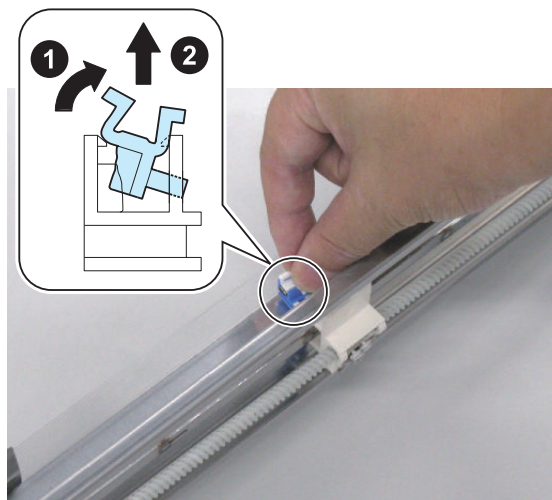


**CAUTION:**

Points to Caution when Installing the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner Holder  
 Be sure to push in the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner Holder until it is secured with the Claw.



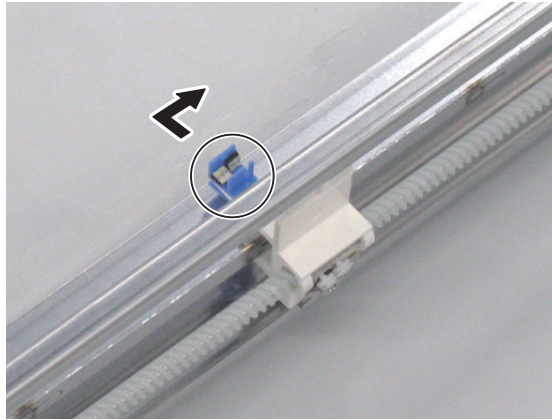
3. Bring up the Primary Charging Assembly and pinch the Hook to remove the Primary Charging Assembly Cleaner Holder (Right) in the direction of the arrow.



#### 4. Remove the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner (Right) in the direction of the arrow.

##### CAUTION:

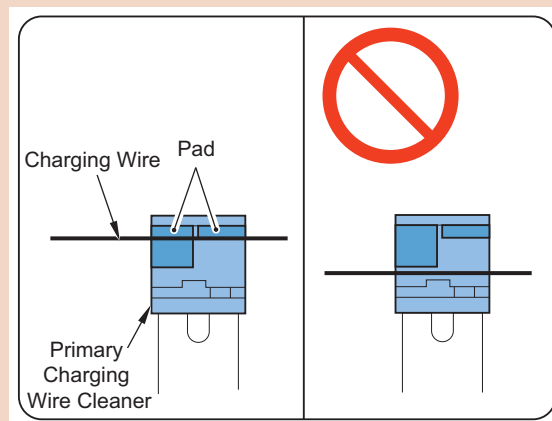
Be careful not to damage the Primary Charging Wire and the Grid Wire when removing the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner (Right).



##### CAUTION:

Points to Caution at Installation

Be sure to push the Charging Wire against the 2 pads of the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner to install.



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

### 1. Clear the Parts Counter.

(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1 > PRM-CLN

## ● Replacing the Primary Charging Assembly Grid Wire

### ■ Preparation

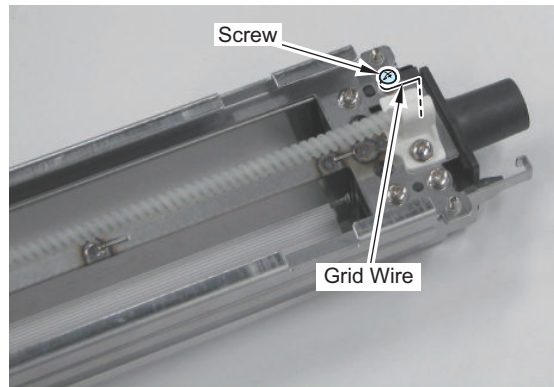
1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Open the Inner Cover. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
3. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
4. Remove the Primary Charging Shutter Unit. (“Removing the Primary Charging Shutter Unit” on page 403)



## ■ Procedure

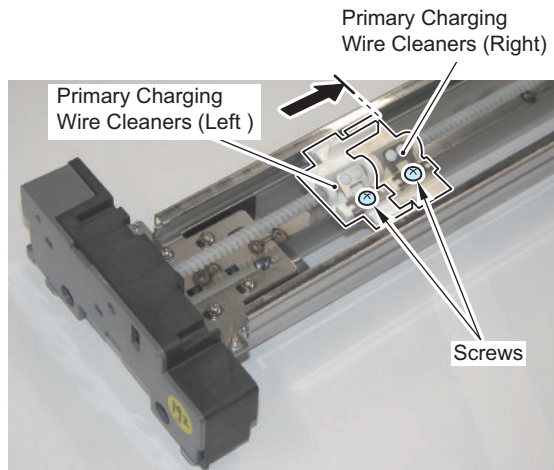
### 1. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly Grid Wire

- 1 Screw

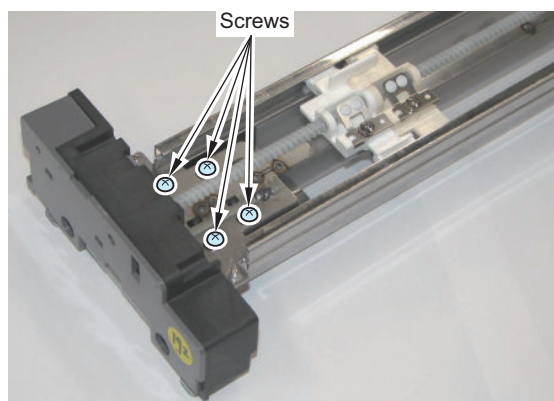


### 2. Shift the Primary Charging Wire Cleaners (Left and Right).

- 2 Screws (to loosen)



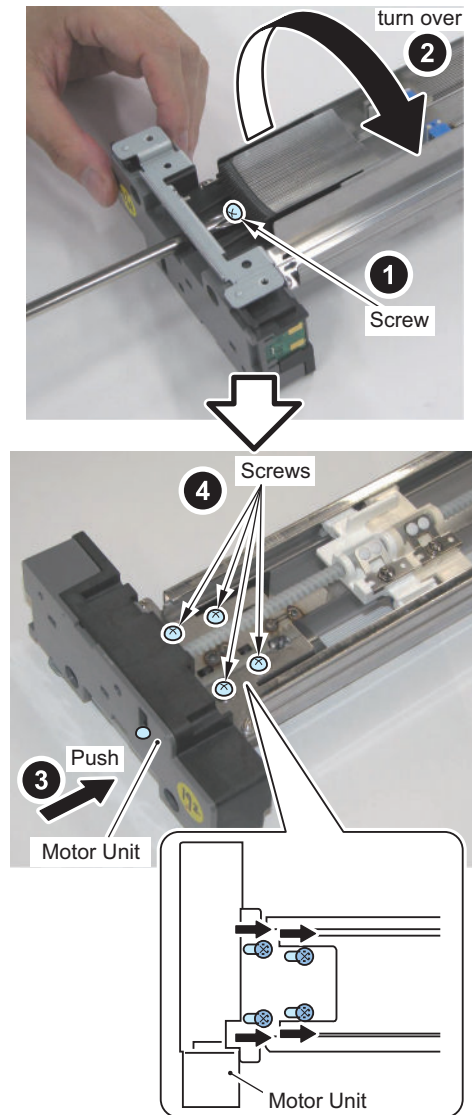
### 3. Loosen the 4 screws fixing the Motor Unit in the front.



### 4. Loosen the screw and turn over the Primary Charging Assembly.



5. Push the front Motor Unit in the direction of the arrow and tighten the 4 screws.



6. Untie approx. 5cm of the Charging Wire from the 0.1mm (wire-diameter) Charging Wire Reel to make a 2mm-diameter ring at the edge.

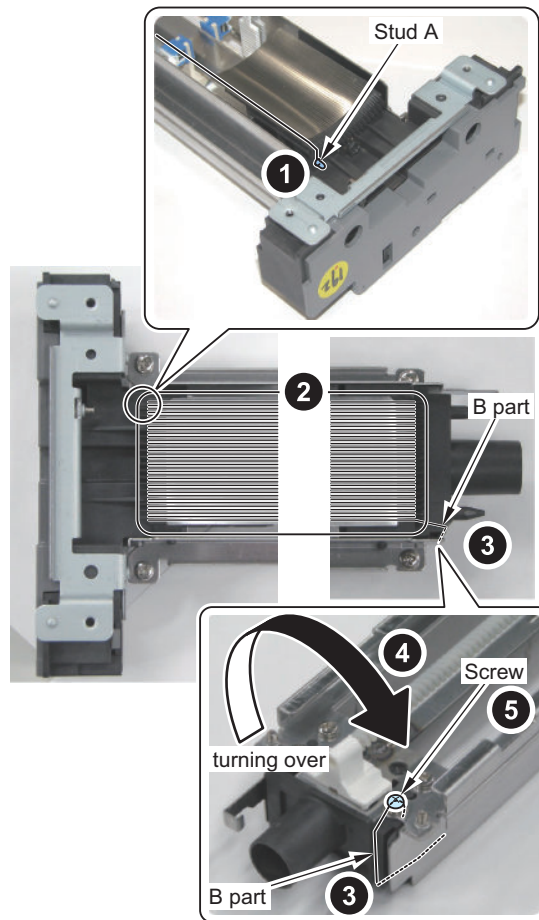
**NOTE:**

The ring can be easily made by the following procedure: Wrap the Charging Wire around the Hex Key to make a full round, and then turn the Hex Key for 3 to 4 times to twist the Charging Wire.

7. Cut the twisted Charging Wire (extra length) with nippers.

8. Hook the ring to the Stud A as shown in the figure.

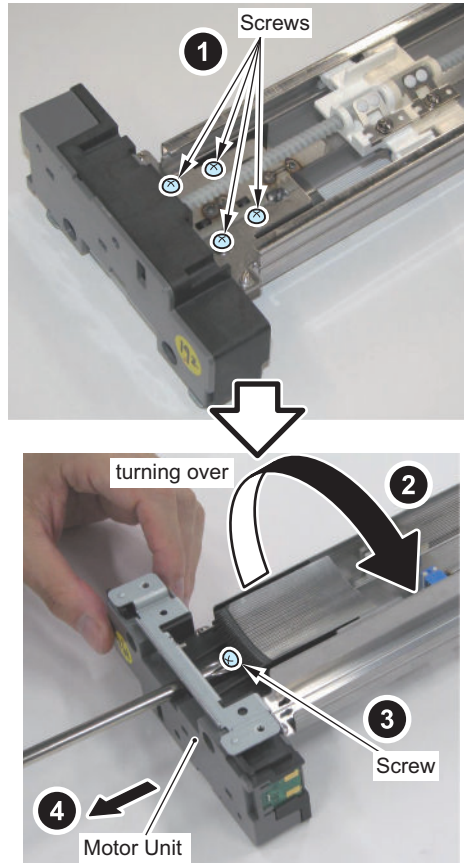
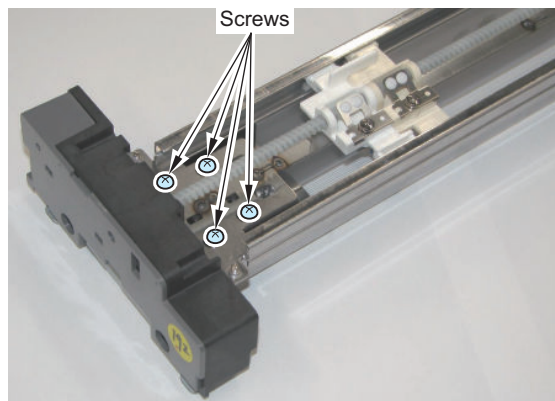
9. After setting the wire 35 times around, pass through B part. After turning over the Primary Charging Assembly, pass the wire between the washer and the Motor Unit, wrap around the screw clockwise to make a full round and secure with the screw.



10. Cut the extra length of the Charging Wire with nippers.

**11. Loosen the 4 screws and tighten the screw until the tension of the Grid Wire is uniformed.**

Be careful not to deform (bend) the Charging Assembly.

**12. Tighten the loosened 4 screws.****CAUTION:**

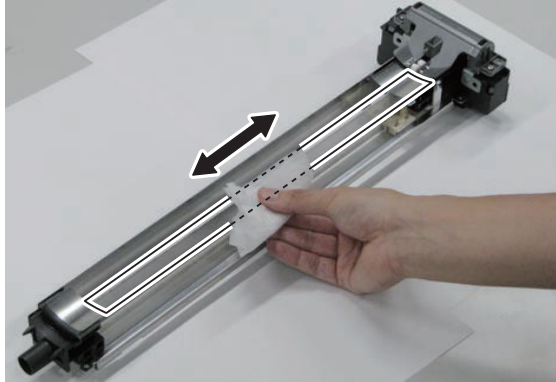
Be sure to check the following items.

- No bend or twist is found with the Grid Wire.
- The wire is set evenly spaced apart. (The Grid Wire is fitted into the groove of the Block.)

13. Remove the Shield Plate (Left) and pinch the Grid Wire from the left side to clean it on the left side with lint-free paper moistened with water.

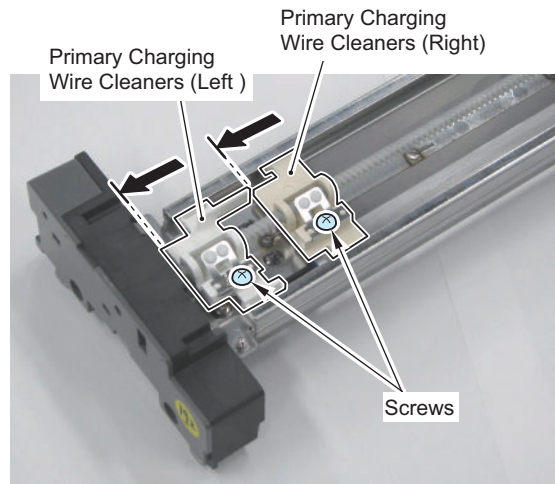
**CAUTION:**

- The frame of the Primary Charging Assembly may be distorted, so be careful not to remove both Left and Right Shield Plates simultaneously.

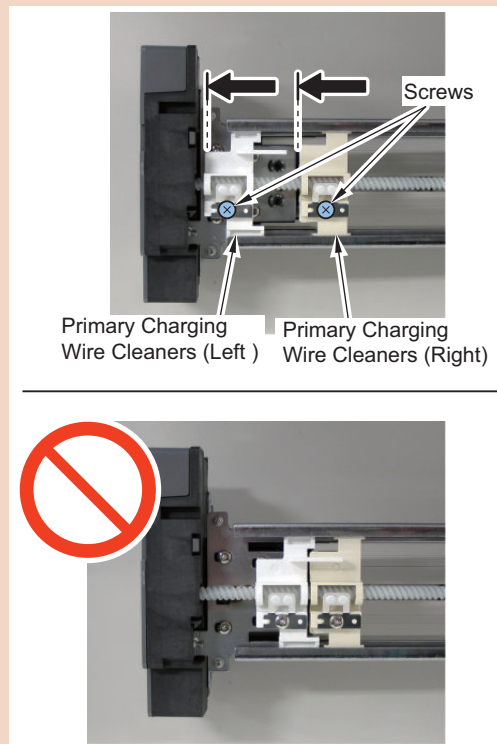


14. Shift the Primary Charging Wire Cleaners (Left and Right).

## 15. Tighten the 2 screws.

**CAUTION:**

Be sure to move the Primary Charging Wire Cleaners (Left and Right) until they stop and tighten the screws.

16. Install the Primary Charging Shutter Unit. ([“Removing the Primary Charging Shutter Unit”](#) on page 403)

## Replacing the Primary Charging Wire

**NOTE:**

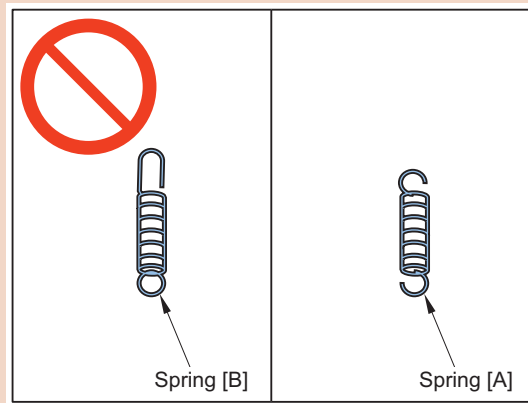
Replacement procedure is the same between the Primary Charging Wire (Left) and the Primary Charging Wire (Right). The following explains the procedure of the Primary Charging Wire (Right).

**NOTE:**

The Primary Charging Wire with spring is set as a service part.

**CAUTION:**

In the case of replacing the Charging Wire on a Charging Wire basis, be sure to use the dedicated Charging Wire Tension Spring (97-5527) [A]. Do not use the Spring [B] attached to the Charging Wire.



## ■ Preparation

1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Open the Inner Cover. (“[Removing the Primary Charging Assembly](#)” on page 329)
3. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly (“[Removing the Primary Charging Assembly](#)” on page 329)
4. Remove the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner Holder (Right). (“[Removing the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner, Cleaner Holder \(Right/Left\)](#)” on page 334)
5. Remove the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner (Right). (“[Removing the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner, Cleaner Holder \(Right/Left\)](#)” on page 334)

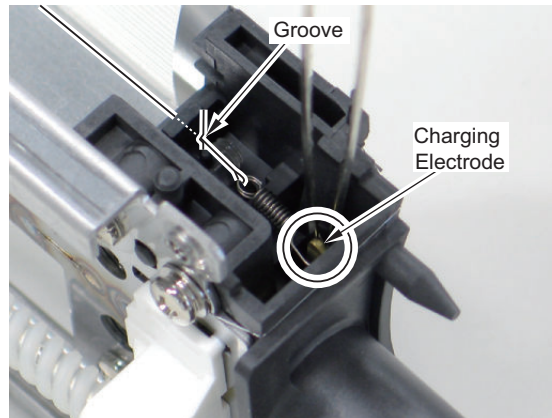
## ■ <Procedure>

### ● <Removing the Charging Wire>

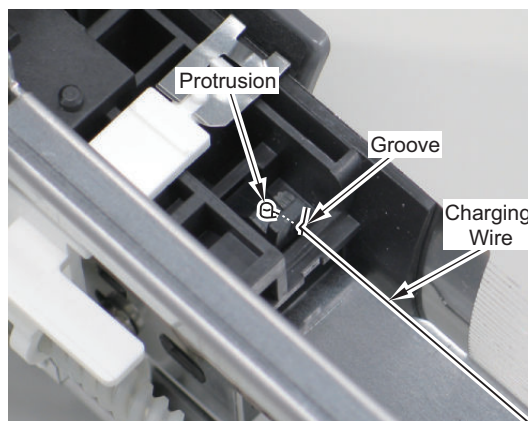
1. Remove the Sheet.



2. Use tweezers to hold the tip of the Spring at the rear side to remove the Spring from the charging electrode and remove the Charging Wire from the groove of the Positioning Block.



3. Remove the Charging Wire from the protrusion and the groove of the Positioning Block at the front side.



### ● <Installing the Charging Wire>

**NOTE:**

When installing the Charging Wire set as a service part, steps 4, 5, 7, and 8 are not required.

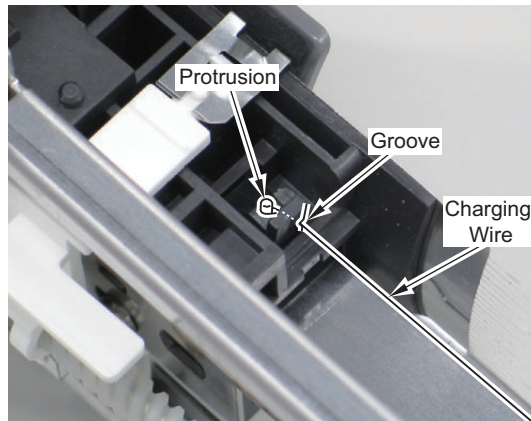
- 4) Untie approx. 5cm of the Charging Wire from the 0.06mm (wire-diameter) Charging Wire Reel to make a 2mm-diameter ring at the edge.

**NOTE:**

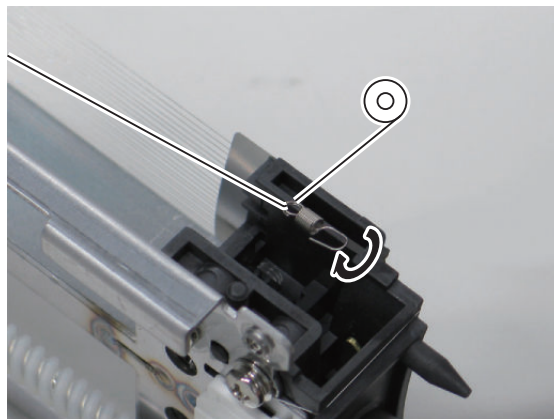
The ring can be easily made by the following procedure: Wrap the Charging Wire around the Hex Key to make a full round, and then turn it for 3 to 4 times to twist the Charging Wire.

- 5) Cut the edge of the twisted Charging Wire with nippers.  
6) Hook the ring to the front protrusion of the Positioning Block to hook the Charging Wire to the groove.



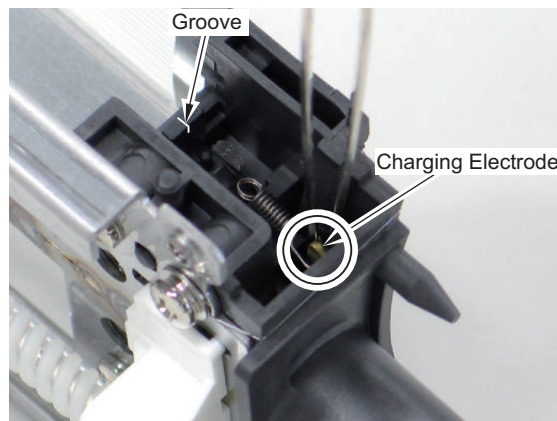


7) Hook the Charging Wire Tension Spring to the Charging Wire to twist with it.



8) Cut extra length of the Charging Wire with nippers.

9) Hook the Charging Wire to the rear groove of the Charging Wire Positioning Block and hold the edge of the Charging Wire Tension Spring with tweezers to hook it to the charging electrode.



**CAUTION:**

Be sure to keep the following in mind after installation.

- No bend or twist is found with the Charging Wire.
- The Charging Wire is fitted into the groove of the Charging Wire Positioning Block.

10) Clean the Charging Wire with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

11) Install the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner (Right).

12) Install the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner Holder (Right).

13) Install the Shield Plate (Right).



## ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

1. **Clear the parts counter.**  
(Lv.1)COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1 > PRM-WIRE
2. **Clean the Charging Wire. (necessary time : about 120 second)**  
(Lv.1)COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-CLN
3. **Init of Primary Charging Wire current VL**  
(Lv.1)COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > GRD-CRNT
4. **Execute the potential control.**  
(Lv.1)COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > DPC2

## ● Cleaning the Primary Charging Assembly Grid Wire

### ■ Preparation

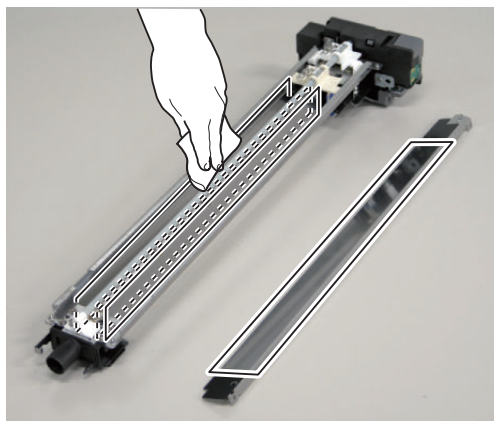
1. Open the Inner Cover. (“[Removing the Primary Charging Assembly](#)” on page 329)
2. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly (“[Removing the Primary Charging Assembly](#)” on page 329)
3. Remove the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner Holder. (“[Removing the Primary Charging Wire Cleaner, Cleaner Holder \(Right/Left\)](#)” on page 334)
4. Remove the Primary Charging Wire. (“[Replacing the Primary Charging Wire](#)” on page 342)

#### NOTE:

With this machine, discharge products tend to be accumulated inside the Charging Assembly. To remove the discharge products efficiently, clean with lint-free paper moistened with water. (If there is toner stain, clean with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.)

### ■ <Procedure>

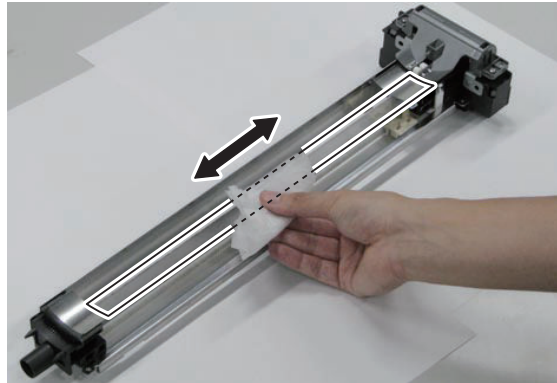
1. Clean the inside of Shield Plate (Right) and Inner Shield Plate (Left) removed from the Primary Charging Assembly with lint-free paper moistened with water.
2. Clean both sides of the Inner Shield Plate (Middle) of the Primary Charging Assembly with lint-free paper moistened with water.



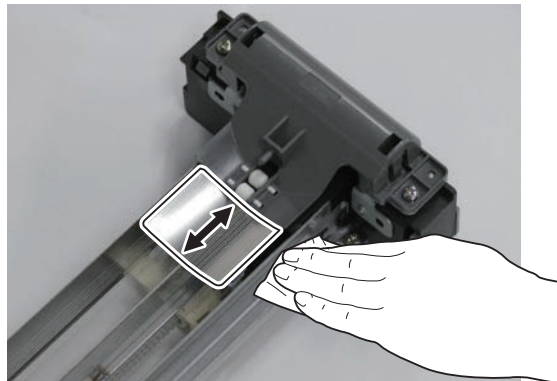
3. Remove the Shield Plate (Left) and pinch the Grid Wire from the left side to clean it on the left side with lint-free paper moistened with water.

**CAUTION:**

- The frame of the Primary Charging Assembly may be distorted, so be careful not to remove both Left and Right Shield Plates simultaneously.



4. Remove the Shield Plate (Right) and pinch the Grid Wire to clean it on the right side with lint-free paper moistened with water.



## Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly

### ■ Preparation

1. Open the Inner Cover.(Refer to“[Removing the Primary Charging Assembly](#)” on page 329)

### ■ <Procedure>

**CAUTION:**

When removing the Primary Charging Assembly and the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly, go through the following procedure while the Charging Shutter is open.

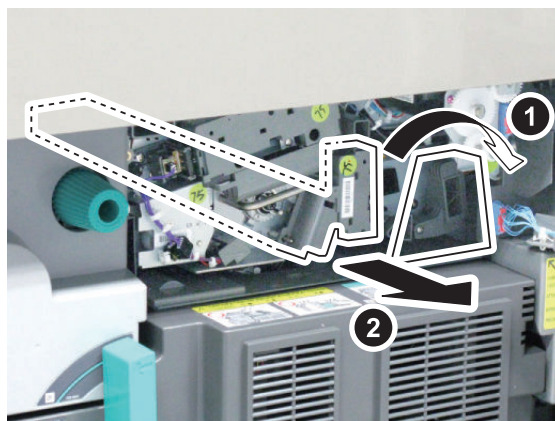
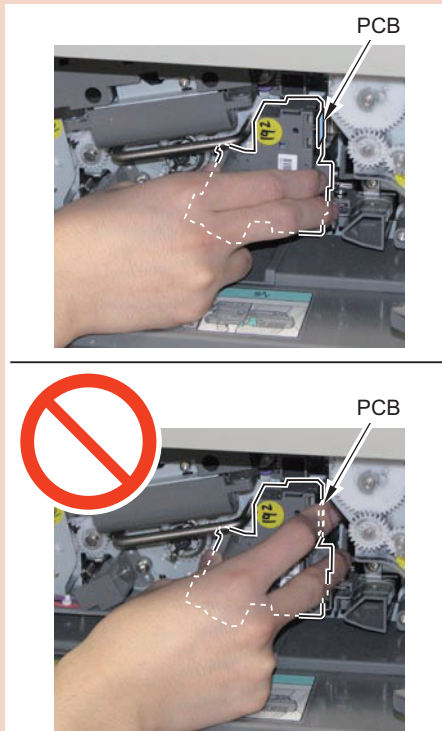
- At sleep mode, press the Power Switch on the Control Panel, check that the machine is in standby condition, turn OFF the Main Power, and then perform removing.
- In the case that the condition of the Charging Shutter (open/close) is unknown while the power of the host machine is OFF, turn ON the power, check that the machine is in standby condition, turn OFF the Main Power, and then perform removing.

If the above operations are not performed, it may be possible to remove the assembly while the Charging Shutter is closed, which may damage the drum or the shutter.

1. Turn the Lock Lever in the direction of the arrow to pull out the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly.

**CAUTION:**

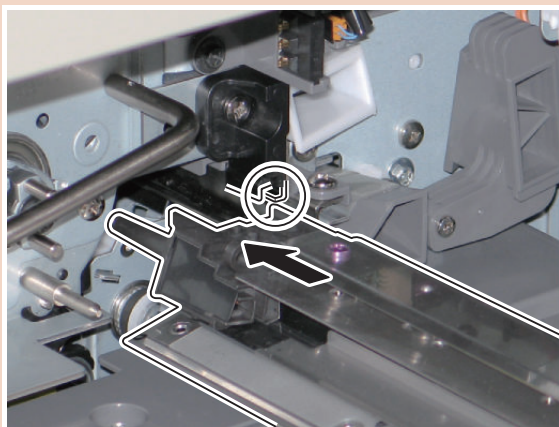
When removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly, be careful not to hold the PCB of the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly.



**CAUTION:**

Points to Caution at Installation

Be sure to fit the Transfer Charging Assembly to the groove on the host machine and install it horizontally.



## ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

1. **Clear the parts counter.**  
(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > PO-UNIT
2. **Clean the Charging Wire. (necessary time : about 120 second)**  
(Lv.1) COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-CLN

## ● Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner, Cleaner Holder

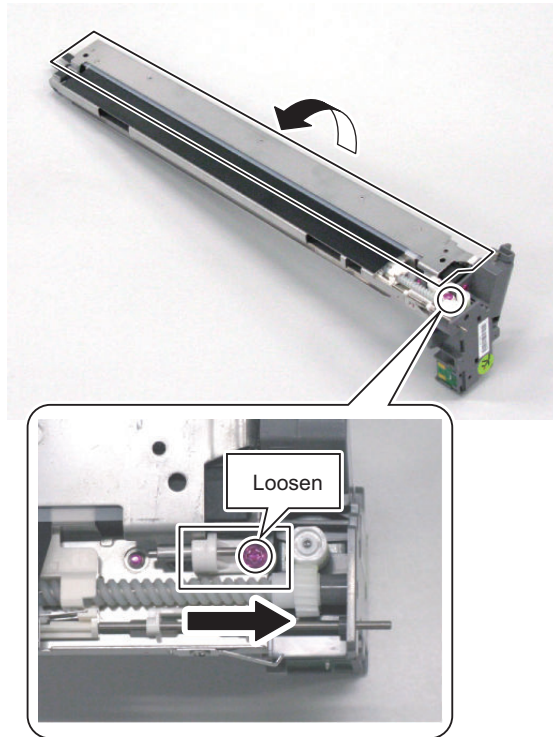
### ■ Preparation

1. **Open the Inner Cover.**([“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329](#) )
2. **Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly.** ([“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347](#) )

■ <Procedure>

1. Displace the Shield Plate Retainer Block to open the Shield Plate in the direction of the arrow.

- 1 Screw (to loosen)

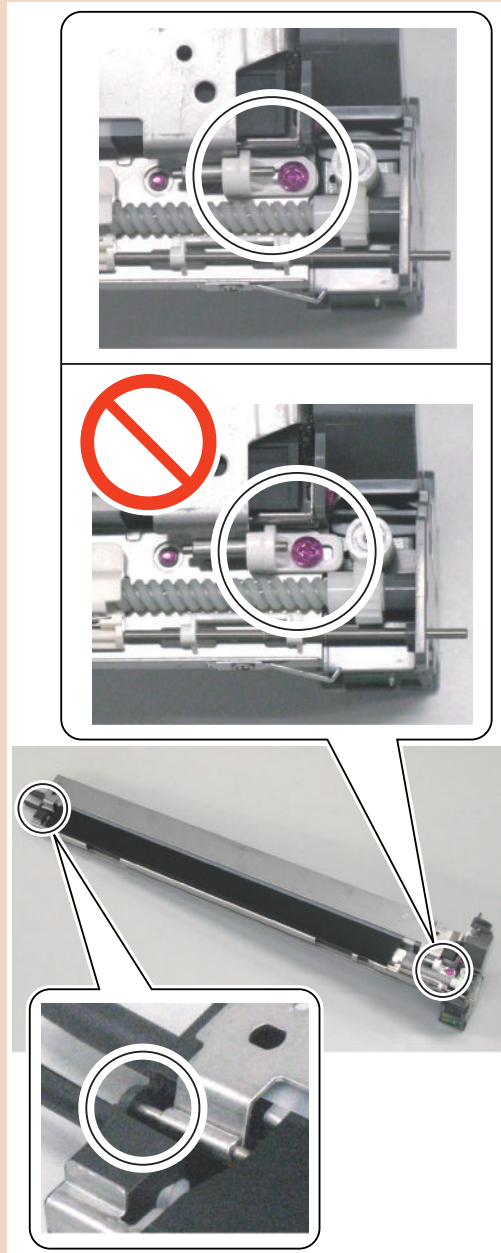


**CAUTION:**

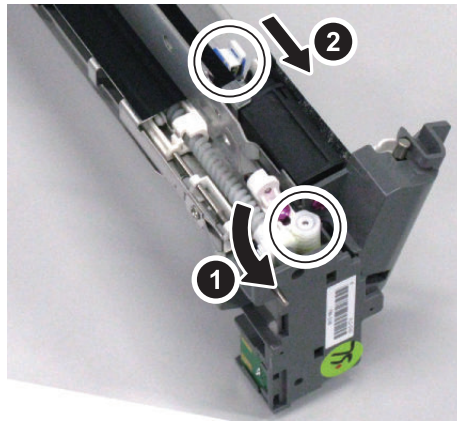
Points to Caution when Securing the Shield Plate

Move the Shield Plate Retainer Block fully to the inside to secure with the screw.

Check that the rear Pin is fitted into the Frame hole, and then move the Shield Plate back and forth to check that the Shield Plate is secured.

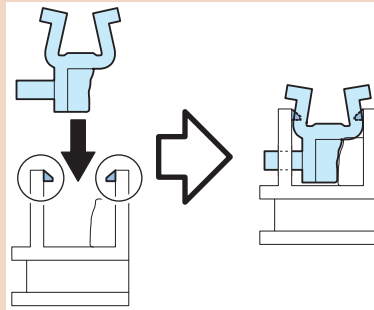


2. Turn the Gear by hand to move the Cleaning Pad Arm to the front.

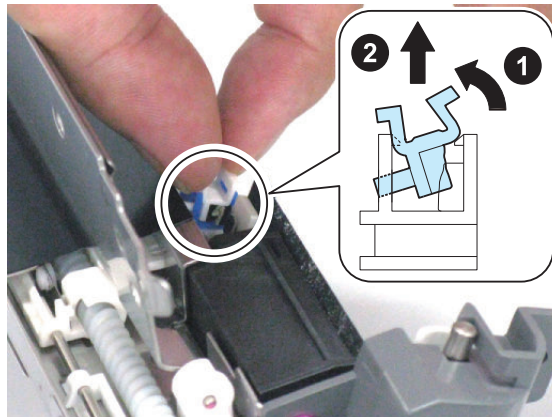


**CAUTION:**

Points to Caution when Installing the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner Holder  
Push in the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner Holder until it is secured with the Claw.



3. Pinch the Hook and turn it in the direction of the arrow to remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Cleaner Holder.

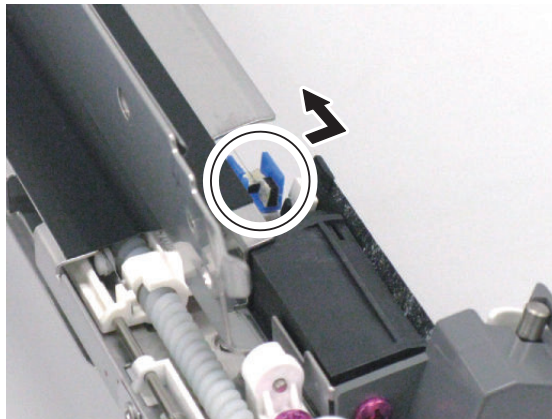




#### 4. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner in the direction of the arrow.

##### CAUTION:

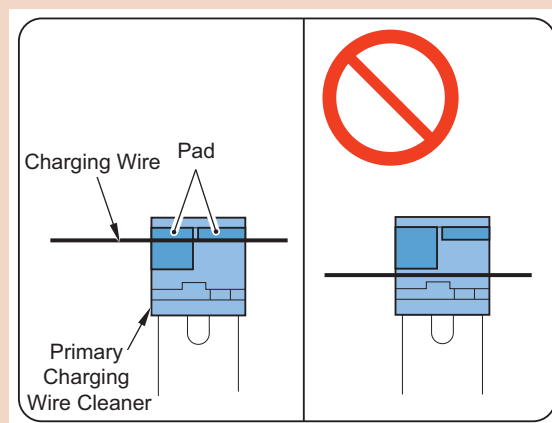
Be careful not to damage the Pre-transfer Charging Wire when removing the Pretransfer Charging Wire Cleaner.



##### CAUTION:

Points to Caution at Installation

Be sure to push the Charging Wire against the 2 pads of the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner to install.



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

### 1. Clear the Parts Counter.

(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1 > PO-CLN

## ● Replacing the Pre-transfer Charging Wire

##### NOTE:

The Primary Charging Wire with spring is set as a service part.

## ■ Preparation

1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Open the Inner Cover. ([“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329](#))
3. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. ([“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347](#))
4. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner Holder. ([“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner, Cleaner Holder” on page 349](#))

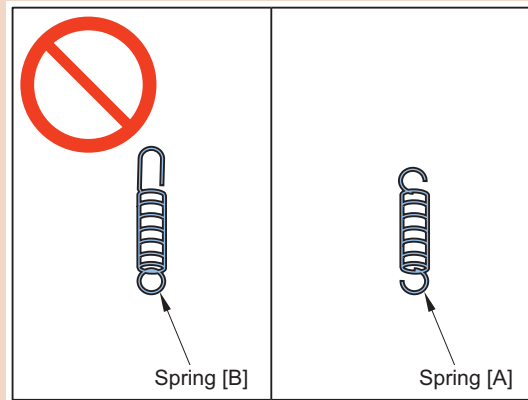


5. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner, Cleaner Holder” on page 349)

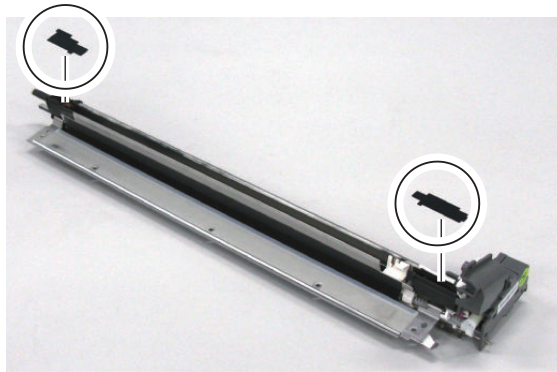
### ■ <Procedure>

#### CAUTION:

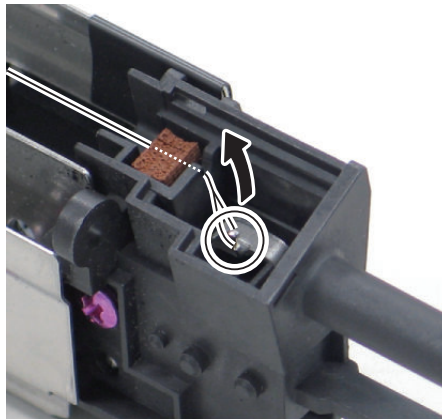
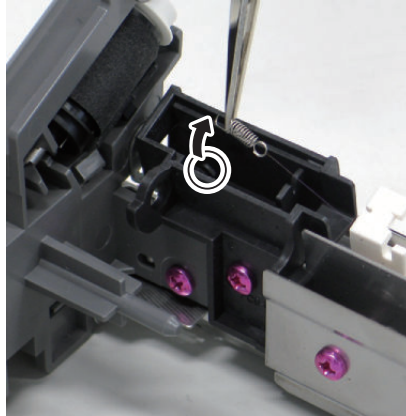
In the case of replacing the Charging Wire on a Charging Wire basis, be sure to use the dedicated Charging Wire Tension Spring (97-5527) [A]. Do not use the Spring [B] attached to the Charging Wire.



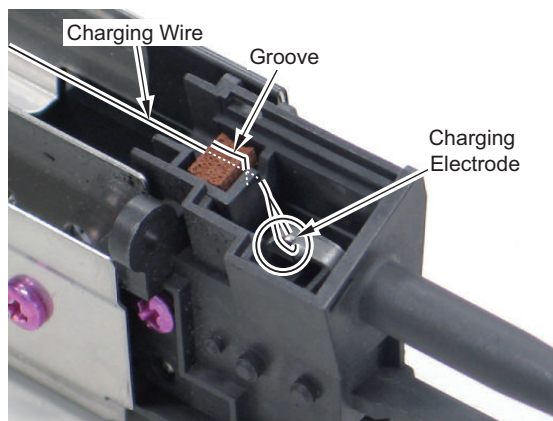
1. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Covers (Front and Rear).



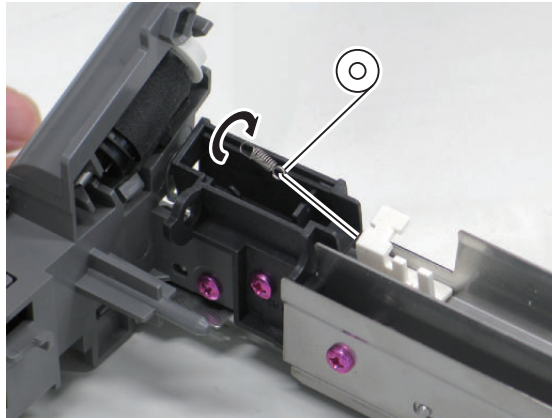
2. Use tweezers to remove the front Spring from the Hook and then remove the Charging Wire from the rear charging electrode.



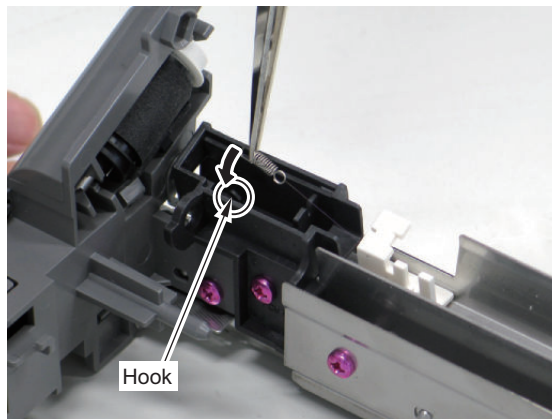
3. Untie approx. 5cm of the Charging Wire from the 0.06mm (wire-diameter) Charging Wire Reel to make a 2mm-diameter ring at the edge.
4. Cut the edge of the twisted Charging Wire with nippers.
5. Hook the ring to the rear charging electrode of the Pre-charging Assembly and put the ring through the rear groove and the sponge groove.



6. On the front side of the Pre-charging Assembly, hook the Charging Wire Tension Spring to the Charging Wire to twist with it.



7. Cut extra length of the Charging Wire with nippers.  
8. Hold the tip of the Spring with tweezers and hook the Charging Wire to the groove to hook the Spring to the Hook.



9. Clean the Charging Wire with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.  
10. Install the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Covers (Front and Rear).  
11. Install the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Cleaner and the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Cleaner Holder.

## ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

1. Clear the parts counter.  
(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1 > PO-WIRE
2. Clean the Charging Wire. (necessary time : about 120 second)  
(Lv.1) COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-CLN

## ● Cleaning the Pre-transfer Charging Wire

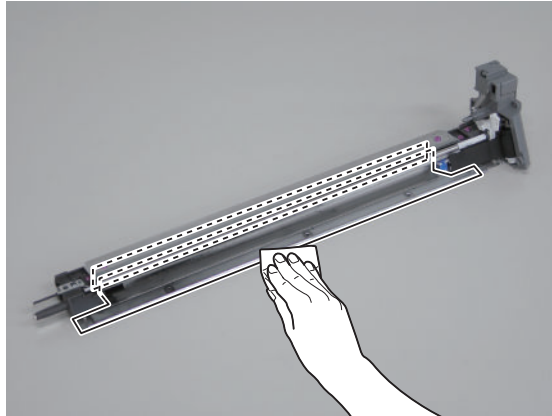
### ■ Preparation

1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Open the Inner Cover. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
3. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347)
4. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner Holder. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner, Cleaner Holder” on page 349)
5. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaner, Cleaner Holder” on page 349)

6. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Wire. (“Replacing the Pre-transfer Charging Wire” on page 353)

## ■ Procedure

1. Clean the Shield Plate with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



## ● Removing the Process Unit

### ■ Preparation

1. Open the Inner Cover. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
2. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
3. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347)

### ■ <Procedure>

**CAUTION:**

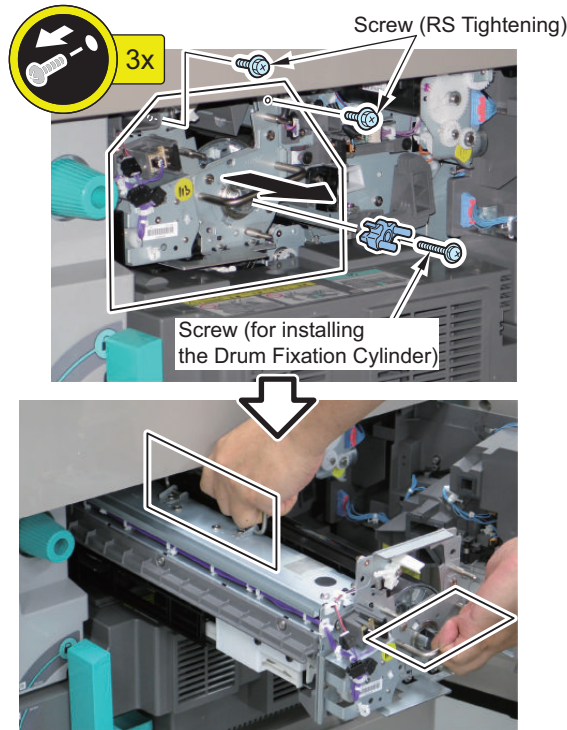
Do not touch the surface of the Photosensitive Drum.

**1. Remove the Drum Fixation Cylinder to remove the Process Unit.**

- 2 Screws
- 1 Screw (for installing the Drum Fixation Cylinder)

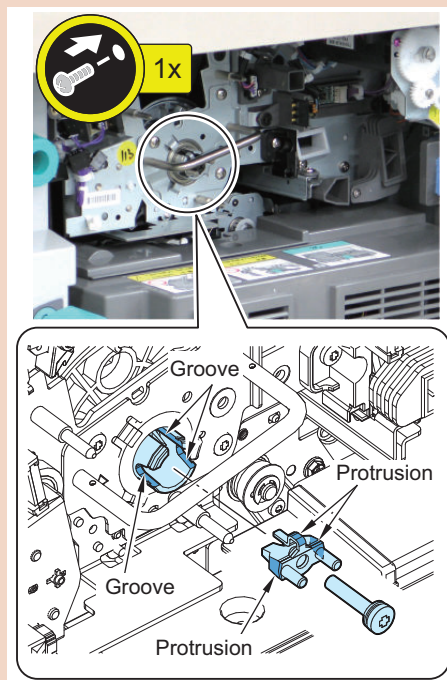
**NOTE:**

When removing the Process Unit, hold both the upper and front Handles to pull out the Process Unit.

**CAUTION:**

Points to Caution at Installation

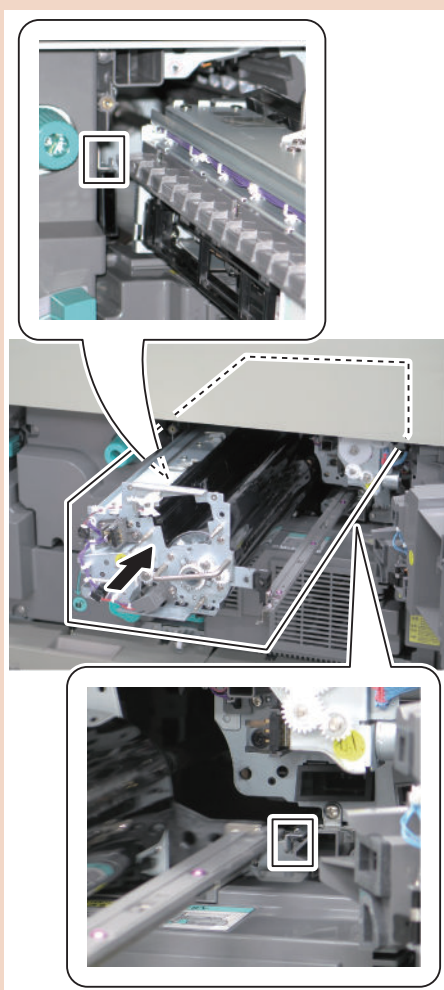
When installing the Process Unit, fit the 3 grooves at the edge of the Drum Shaft with the 3 protrusions of the Drum Fixation Cylinder to install the Drum Shaft Fixing Screw.



**CAUTION:**

Points to Caution at Installation

Be sure to fit the Drum Cleaning Unit to the rail on the host machine and install it horizontally.



## Cleaning the Process Unit

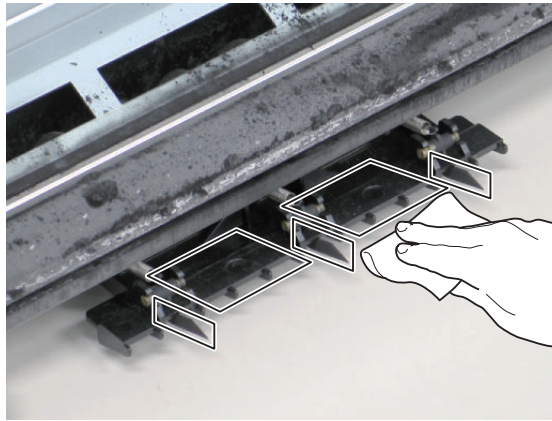
### ■ Preparation

1. Open the Inner Cover. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
2. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
3. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347)
4. Remove the Process Unit. (“Removing the Process Unit” on page 357)
5. Remove the Drum Cleaning Unit. (“Removing the Drum Cleaning Unit” on page 360)
6. Remove the Drum Unit. (“Removing the Drum Unit” on page 366)

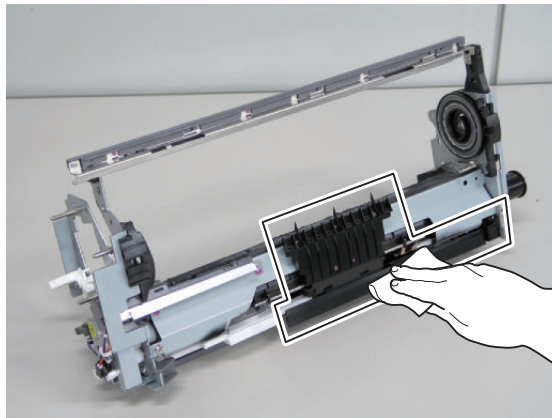


## ■ Procedure

1. Clean the Separation Claw Mounting Base and Separation Claw with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



2. Clean the rear side of the Process Unit with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



## ● Removing the Drum Cleaning Unit

### ■ Preparation

1. Open the Inner Cover. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
2. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
3. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347)
4. Remove the Process Unit. (“Removing the Process Unit” on page 357)

### ■ <Procedure>

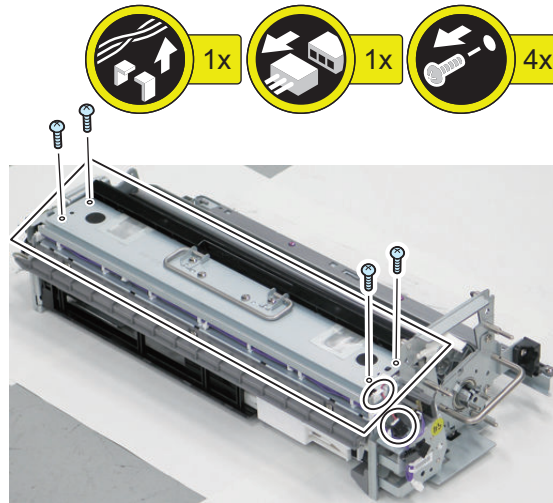
#### CAUTION:

Do not touch the surface of the Photosensitive Drum.

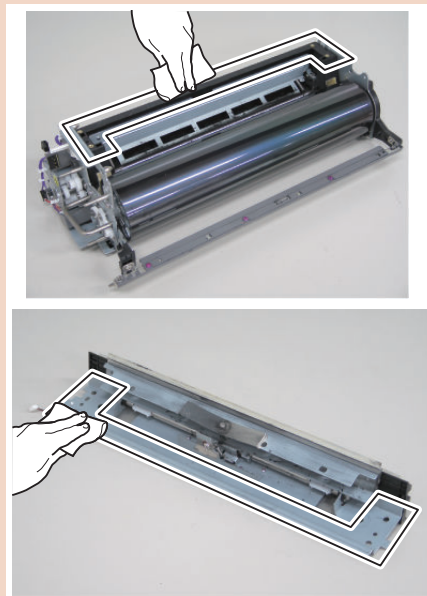
After removing the Drum Cleaning Unit, place paper over the Photosensitive Drum to block light.

**1. Remove the Drum Cleaning Unit.**

- Edge Saddle
- 1 Connector
- 4 Screws

**CAUTION:**

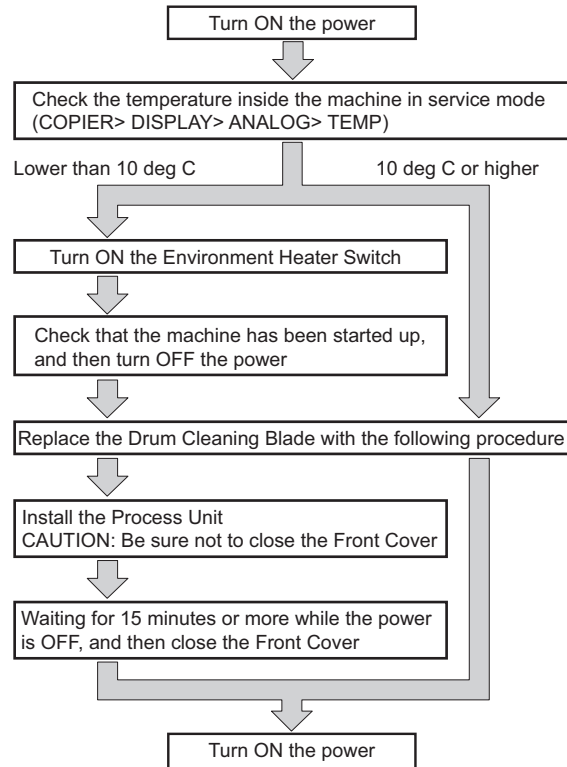
When installing the Drum Cleaning Unit, clean the area shown with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol. If the Drum Cleaning Unit is installed without removing toner, it cannot be installed in the correct position, causing the cleaning error.



## Removing the Drum Cleaning Blade

Procedure differs according to the temperature inside the machine. Be sure to perform the work by following the flow indicated below.



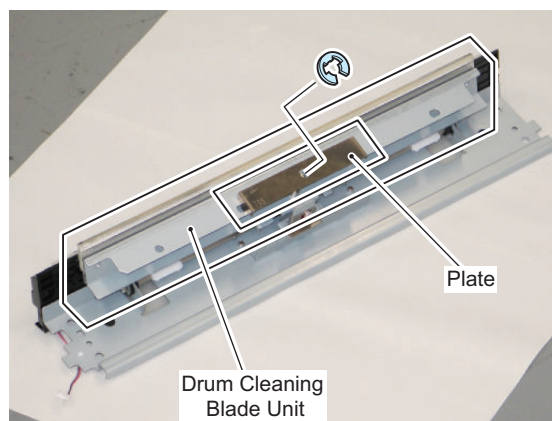


## ■ Preparation

1. Open the Inner Cover. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
2. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
3. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347)
4. Remove the Process Unit (“Removing the Process Unit” on page 357)
5. Remove the Drum Cleaning Unit. (“Removing the Drum Cleaning Unit” on page 360)

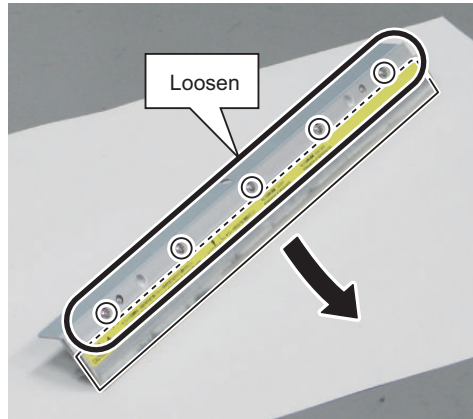
## ■ <Procedure>

1. Turn over the Drum Cleaning Unit to remove the Drum Cleaning Blade Unit.
  - 1 E-ring
  - 1 Plate



**2. Remove the Drum Cleaning Blade.**

- 5 Screws (to loosen)

**CAUTION:**

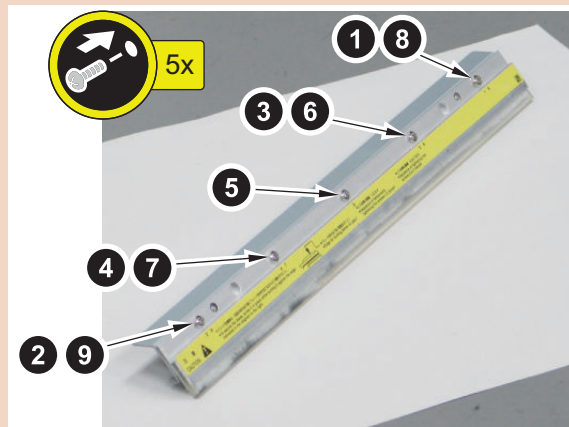
Points to Caution when Installing the Drum Cleaning Blade

Be sure to apply toner on the contact area (edge) on the Drum of the Drum Cleaning Blade. In particular, be sure to apply toner on both edges of the Blade.

**CAUTION:**

Points to Caution when Installing the Drum Cleaning Blade Unit

1. Wipe out the toner on both edges of the Drum Cleaning Unit before installation.
2. Be sure to fit in the center position, and then temporarily tighten the screws following the numeric order (from 1 to 4) and also securely tighten the screws (from 5 to 9).



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. Clear the parts counter.

(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > CLN-BLD

## ● Cleaning the Drum Cleaning Unit

### ■ Preparation

1. Open the Inner Cover. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
2. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
3. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347)
4. Remove the Process Unit. (“Removing the Process Unit” on page 357)

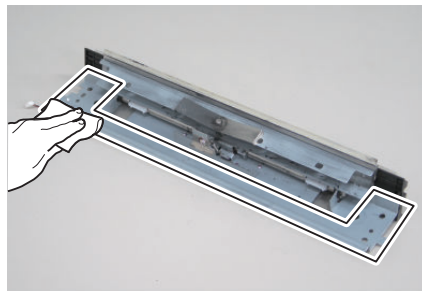
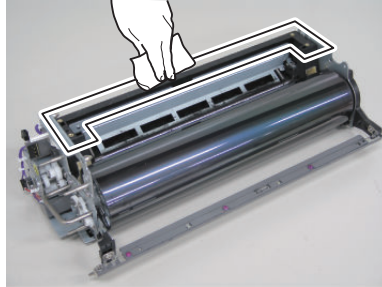
5. Remove the Drum Cleaning Unit. (“Removing the Drum Cleaning Unit” on page 360)

■ <Procedure>

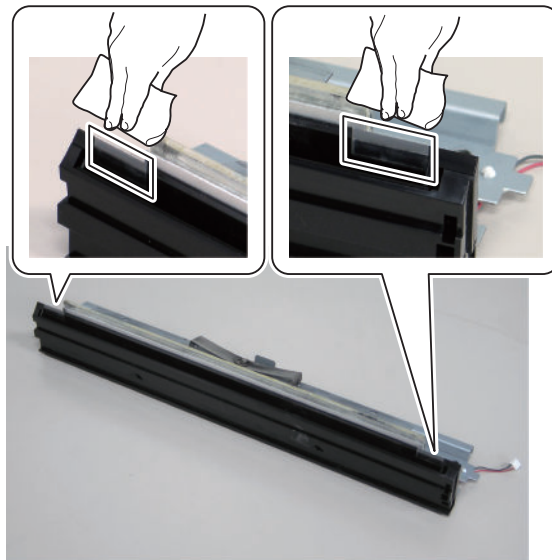
**CAUTION:**

Do not touch the surface of the Photosensitive Drum.

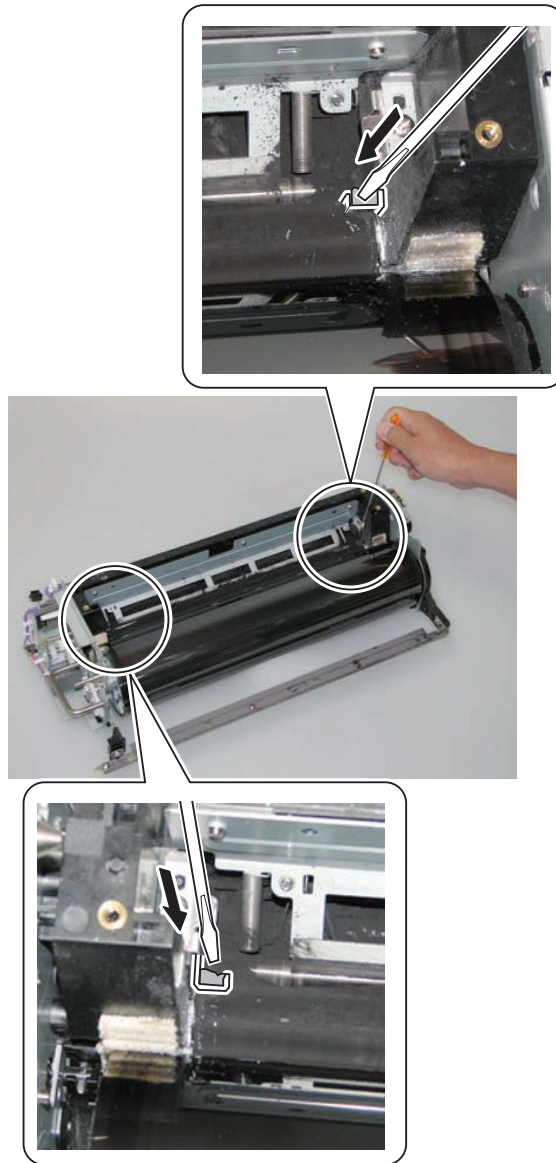
1. Clean the Drum Cleaning Unit Plate with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



2. Clean the 2 Pre-exposure Plastic Films of the Drum Cleaning Blade Unit with lint-free paper.



3. Crumb toner clusters in the toner collection area and then clean it.



## ● Replacing the Pre-exposure Plastic Film

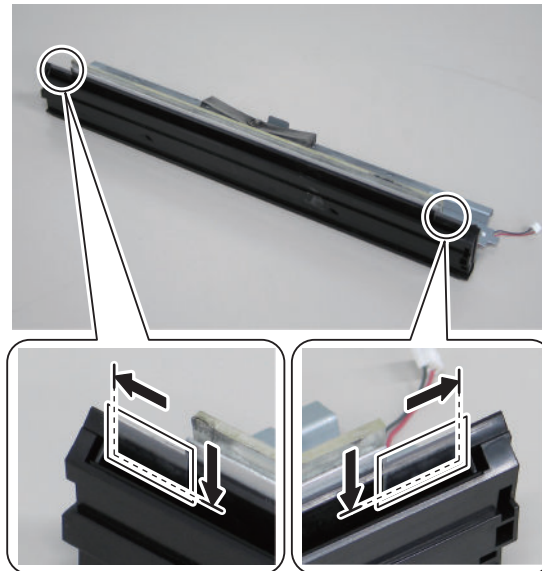
### ■ Preparation

1. Open the Inner Cover. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
2. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
3. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347)
4. Remove the Process Unit. (“Removing the Process Unit” on page 357)
5. Remove the Drum Cleaning Unit. (“Removing the Drum Cleaning Unit” on page 360)

### ■ <Procedure>

1. Remove the Pre-exposure Plastic Film.

## 2. Fit the Pre-exposure Plastic Film to the edge and lower grooves of the Drum Cleaning Unit.



### ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

#### 1. Clear the parts counter.

(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > EXP-SCRIP

## ● Removing the Drum Unit

### ■ Preparation

1. Open the Inner Cover. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
2. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
3. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347)
4. Remove the Process Unit (“Removing the Process Unit” on page 357)
5. Put paper on the Photosensitive Drum, so that it is not exposed to direct sunlight.
6. Remove the Drum Cleaning Blade. (“Removing the Drum Cleaning Blade” on page 361)

### ■ Procedure

#### CAUTION:

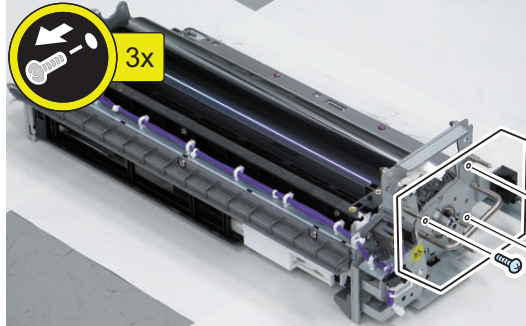
When handling the Process Unit and Photosensitive Drum, be sure to follow the following points to note.

1. When removing the Process Unit, be sure to block light to the Photosensitive Drum. Cover with the Photosensitive Drum Protection Sheet or wrap 5 or more papers around the drum to block light.
2. Do not place the Process Unit and Photosensitive Drum in a location where is exposed to direct rays of the sun (e.g. near the window).
3. Do not store in a location with high/low temperature/humidity, or in a location where temperature or humidity is dramatically changed.
4. Do not store in a dusty area or in a location full of ammonia gas or organic solvent gas.

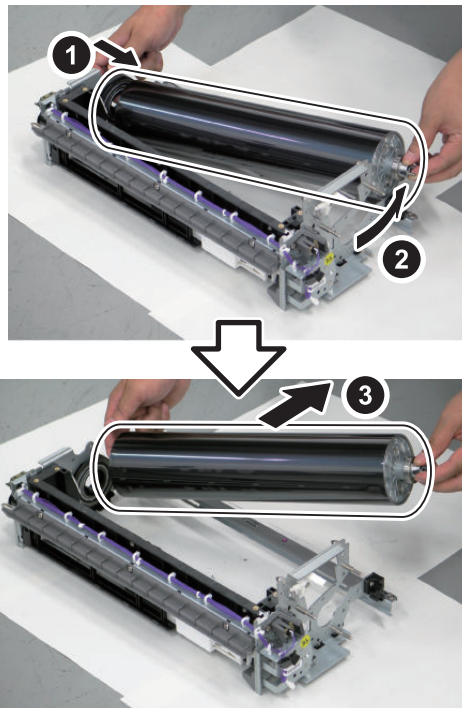
When installing a new Photosensitive Drum, be sure to remove the Lightproof Sheet after installing the drum to the main body. In addition, be sure to rotate the drum counterclockwise at removal of the Lightproof Sheet. If the drum is rotated clockwise, the Drum Cleaner Blade may be everted.

### 1. Remove the Drum Retainer Plate.

- 3 Screws



### 2. Push to move the rear side of the Photosensitive Drum with your fingers and pull out the Drum Unit to the front to remove.



## ● Removing the Photosensitive Drum

### ■ Preparation

1. Open the Inner Cover. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
2. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
3. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347)
4. Remove the Process Unit. (“Removing the Process Unit” on page 357)
5. Put paper on the Photosensitive Drum, so that it is not exposed to direct sunlight.
6. Remove the Drum Cleaning Blade. (“Removing the Drum Cleaning Blade” on page 361)
7. Remove the Drum Retainer Plate. (“Removing the Drum Unit” on page 366)
8. Remove the Drum Unit. (“Removing the Drum Unit” on page 366)



## ■ Procedure

### CAUTION:

When handling the Process Unit and Photosensitive Drum, be sure to follow the following points to note.

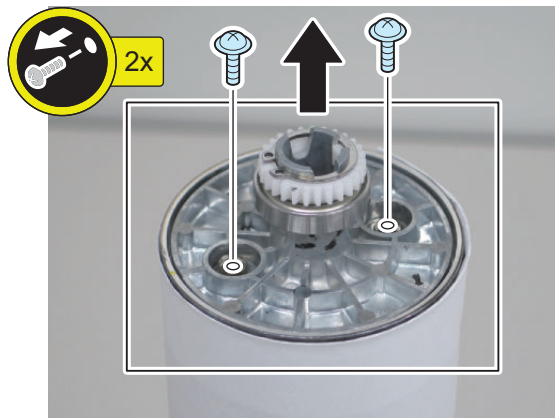
1. When removing the Process Unit, be sure to block light to the Photosensitive Drum.  
Cover with the Photosensitive Drum Protection Sheet or wrap 5 or more papers around the drum to block light.
2. Do not place the Process Unit and Photosensitive Drum in a location where is exposed to direct rays of the sun (e.g. near the window).
3. Do not store in a location with high/low temperature/humidity, or in a location where temperature or humidity is dramatically changed.
4. Do not store in a dusty area or in a location full of ammonia gas or organic solvent gas.

When installing a new Photosensitive Drum, be sure to remove the Lightproof Sheet after installing the drum to the main body. In addition, be sure to rotate the drum counterclockwise at removal of the Lightproof Sheet. If the drum is rotated clockwise, the Drum Cleaning Blade may be everted.

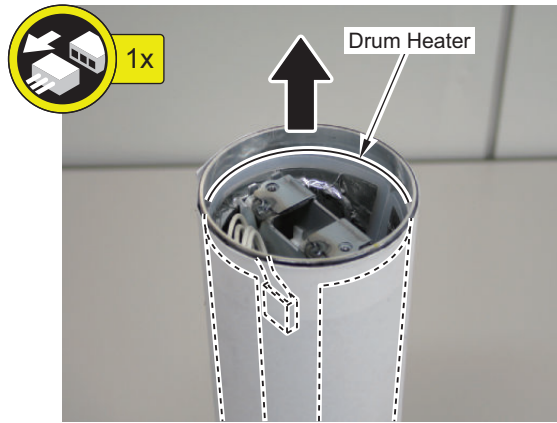
### 1. Wrap paper around the Drum Unit to block light.



### 2. Remove the 2 screws and the Flange.



3. Disconnect the connector and remove the Drum Heater.





4. Remove the Heater Control PCB Unit.



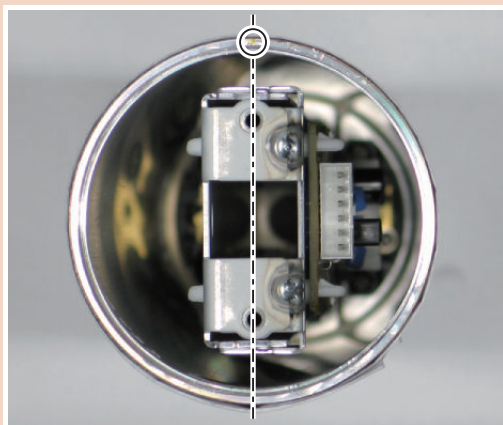
**NOTE:**

Serial ID of the drum is written on the seal inside the drum.



**CAUTION:**

- Align the yellow marker of the drum with the hole position of the unit when installing the Heater Control PCB Unit to the drum.



- When securing the Flange, align the protrusion of the Flange with the yellow marker to install.

**NOTE:**

If the yellow marker is not aligned with the protrusion, the following control cannot be executed properly.

- 2D shading \*1
- D-MAX control
- D-half control

\*1: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported.

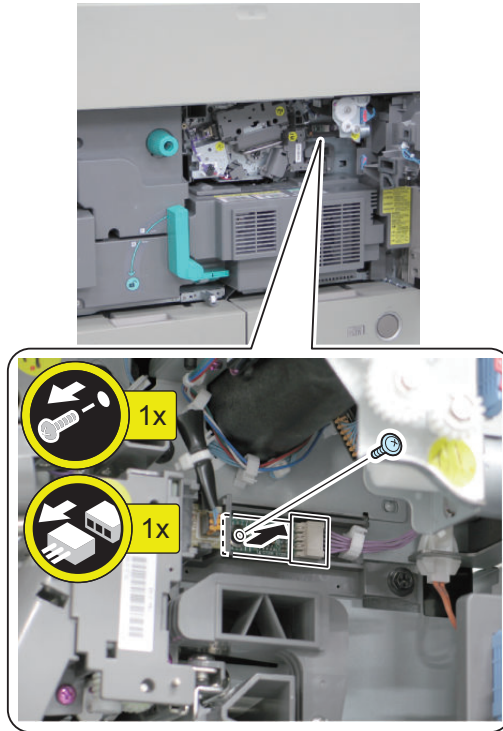
## ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

**NOTE:**

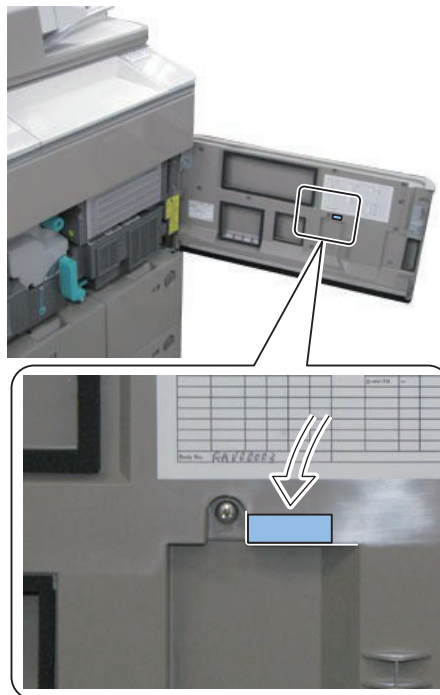
Since the 2D shading function is not supported when the serial number of the host machine is 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx 50000 or later, the following 1, 2, and 5 operations are unnecessary.

**1. Remove the EEROM.**

- 1 Screw
- 1 Connector

**2. Replace the ROM connected to the host machine with the drum ROM included in the drum.****CAUTION:**

If the ROM is not replaced, the replaced drum and the drum-unique data stored in the ROM are not matched. As a result, the 2D shading is not functioned normally.

**3. Affix the ID Label included in the drum to the inside of the Front Cover.****4. Activate the drum replacement mode.**

(Lv.1) COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > DRM-INIT

**5. Check the 2-dimensional shading ROM.**

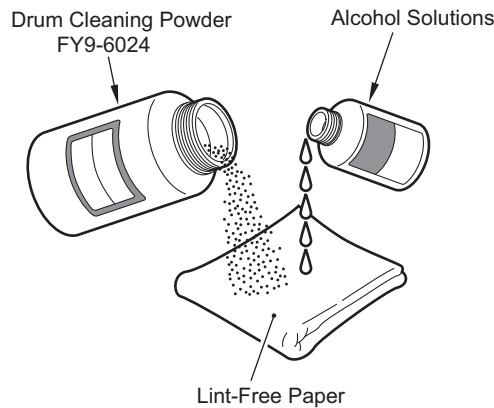
(Lv.1) COPIER &gt; FUNCTION &gt; 2D-SHADE &gt; 2D-READ

**6. Execute the auto adjust gradation using the user mode.**

Settings/Registration &gt; Adjustment/Maintenance &gt; Image Quality Adjustment &gt; Auto Adjust Gradation

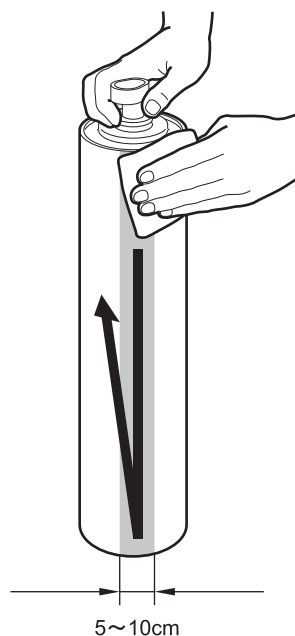
## Cleaning Photosensitive Drum

1. Moisten lint-free paper with 5 to 10 cc of alcohol solutions ; then, pour 0.2 to 0.3 g of the drum cleaning powder (FY9-6024) on the lint-free paper.
2. While butting the lint-free paper relatively strongly against the photosensitive drum, wipe the surface of the drum from the front to the rear and from the rear to the front.

**CAUTION:**

- Keep the widths of cleaning to 5 to 10 cm in the peripheral direction of the drum.
- Move the lint-free paper back and forth 15 to 20 times over a single area. Forcing the lint-free paper will not affect the life of the drum.

3. After the alcohol has evaporated, dry wipe the surface with the lint-free paper. If the area is uneven, go back to the step 1, and increase the back-and-forth movements.
4. Rotate the drum for the width (5 to 10 cm), and repeat the step 1 through 3 until the entire area of the surface has been cleaned.



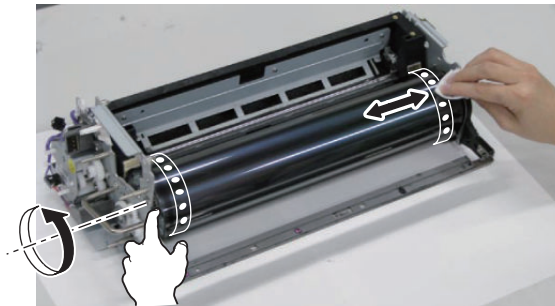
## Cleaning the Drum edges

### ■ Preparation

1. Open the Inner Cover. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
2. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
3. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347)
4. Remove the Process Unit. (“Removing the Process Unit” on page 357)
5. Put paper on the Photosensitive Drum, so that it is not exposed to direct sunlight.
6. Remove the Drum Cleaning Blade. (“Removing the Drum Cleaning Blade” on page 361)
7. Remove the Drum Retainer Plate. (“Removing the Drum Unit” on page 366)
8. Remove the Drum Unit. (“Removing the Drum Unit” on page 366)

### ■ <Procedure>

1. Rotate the Drum and dry wipe the soiling on the surface of the Drum edges with lint-free paper.



## Removing the Cleaner Separation Claw

### ■ Preparation

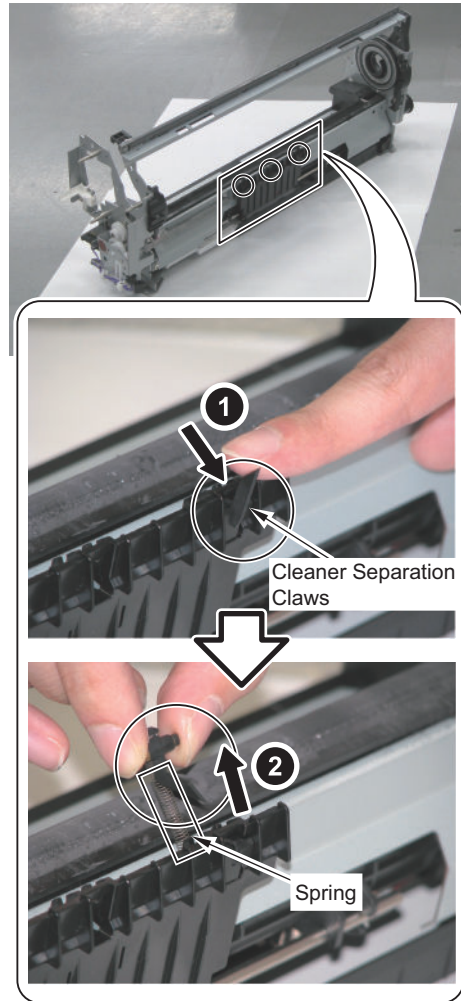
1. Open the Inner Cover. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
2. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
3. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347)
4. Remove the Process Unit. (“Removing the Process Unit” on page 357)
5. Remove the Drum Cleaning Blade. (“Removing the Drum Cleaning Blade” on page 361)
6. Remove the Drum Unit. (“Removing the Drum Unit” on page 366)

### ■ <Procedure>

1. Put the Process Unit Frame perpendiculararly.

**2. Remove the 3 Cleaner Separation Claws.**

- 1 Spring each

**■ Actions after Parts Replacement**

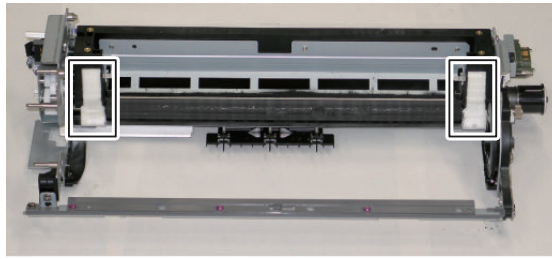
1. Clear the parts counter.  
(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > SP-CLAW

**● Removing the Side Seal****■ Preparation**

1. Open the Inner Cover. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
2. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
3. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347)
4. Remove the Process Unit. (“Removing the Process Unit” on page 357)
5. Remove the Drum Cleaning Blade. (“Removing the Drum Cleaning Blade” on page 361)
6. Remove the Drum Unit. (“Removing the Drum Unit” on page 366)

## ■ Procedure

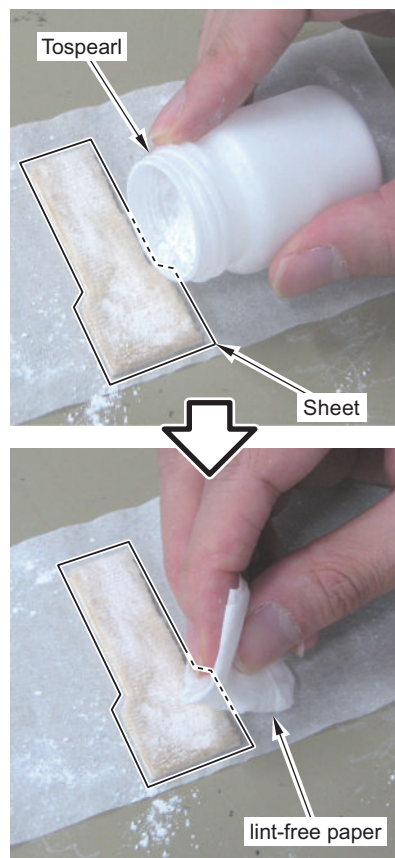
### 1. Remove the Side Seals (Front and Rear).



### 2. Apply Tospearl on the surfaces of the new Drum Side Seals (Front and Rear) and adhere it uniformly with lint-free paper.

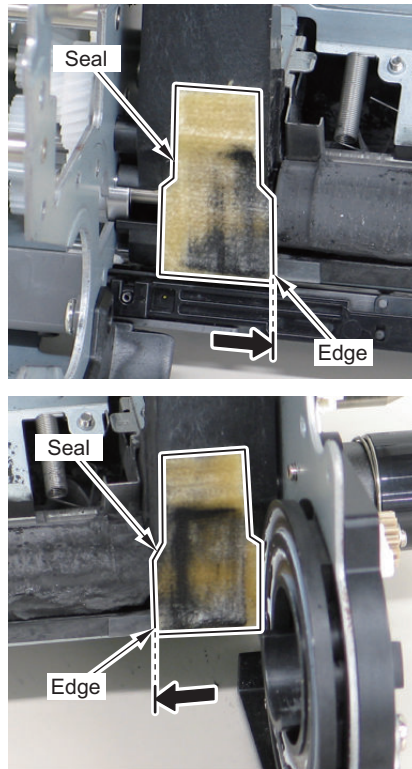
**NOTE:**

In order to reduce adhesion of toner at both ends of the Photosensitive Drum





3. Align the Drum Side Seals (Front and Rear) with the edges of the sheets and affix them.

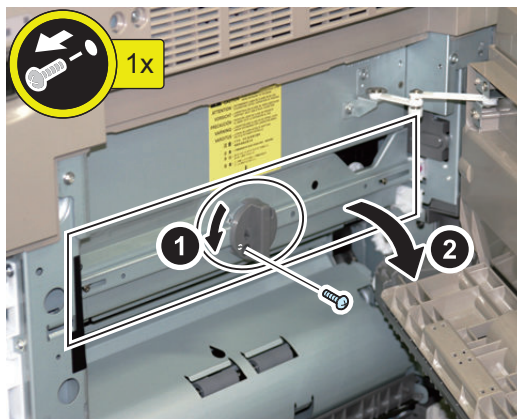


## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. Clear the parts counter.  
(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > BS-SL-F
2. Clear the parts counter.  
(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > BS-SL-R

## ● Removing the Developing Assembly

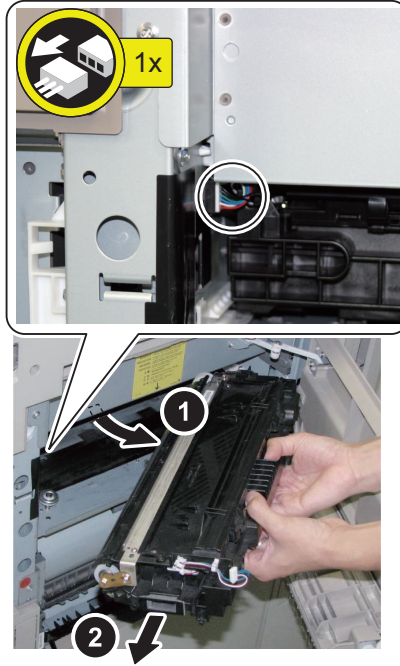
1. Place paper underneath the Developing Assembly.
2. Open the Right Cover.
3. Turn the Tab to open the Plate Cover.
  - 1 Screw





#### 4. Remove the Developing Assembly by following the Rail.

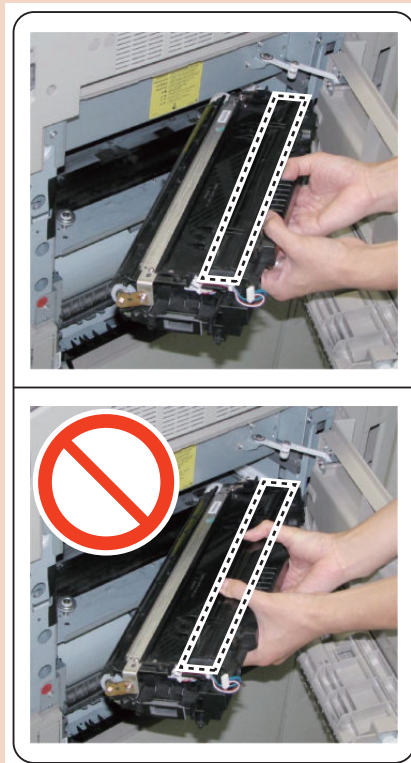
- 1 Connector



#### CAUTION:

How to Hold the Developing Assembly

When holding the Developing Assembly, be sure to hold the handle of the Developing Assembly as shown in the figure. Do not touch the shutter area of the Developing Assembly. The shutter area is slippery, so it may cause a fall of the assembly.

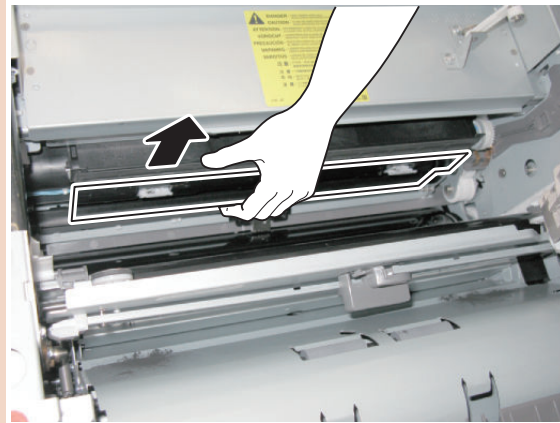


**CAUTION:**

Points to Caution when Installing the Developing Assembly

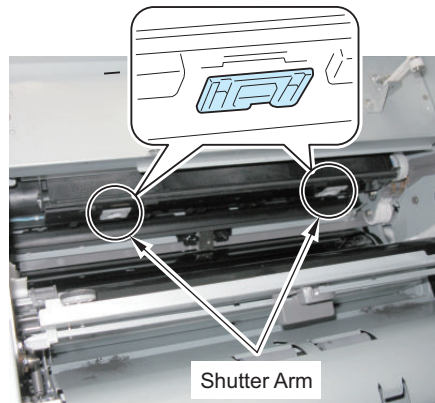
Before installing the Developing Assembly, check that the Buffer Shutter is not open.

If the Developing Assembly is forcibly installed while the Buffer Shutter is open, the shutter may get damage. When the Buffer Shutter is open, pull out the shutter to the front and then close it.

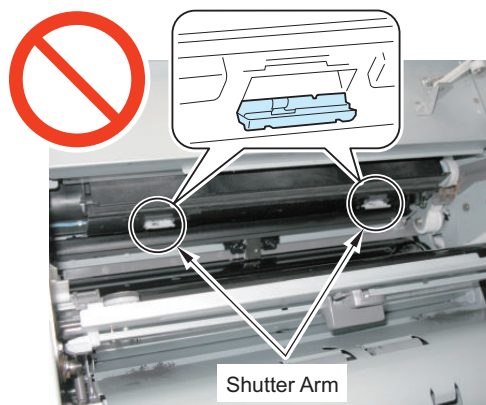


Whether the shutter is open or not can be checked with the Shutter Arm.

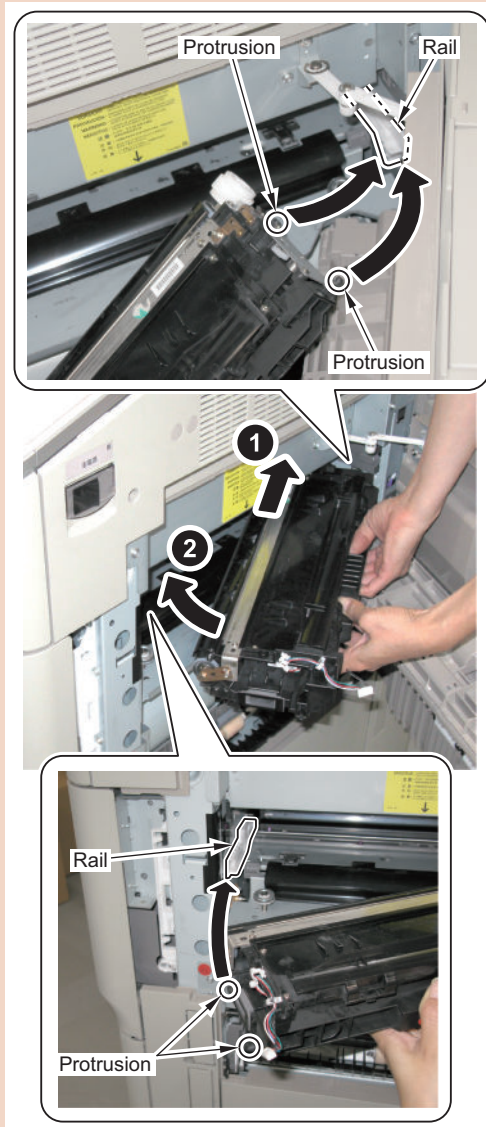
<Buffer Shutter is closed>



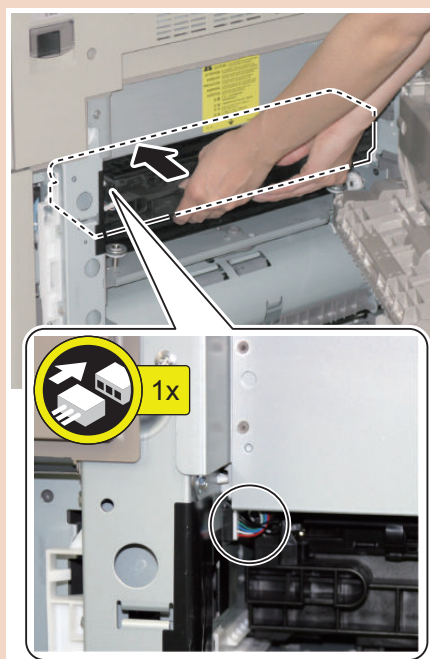
<Buffer Shutter is open>



- As shown in the figure, hold the Developing Assembly and fit the protrusions at right and left sides of the Developing Assembly to the rail of the host machine.



- Install the Developing Assembly horizontally by following the rail.



## Cleaning the Developing Assembly

### ■ Preparation

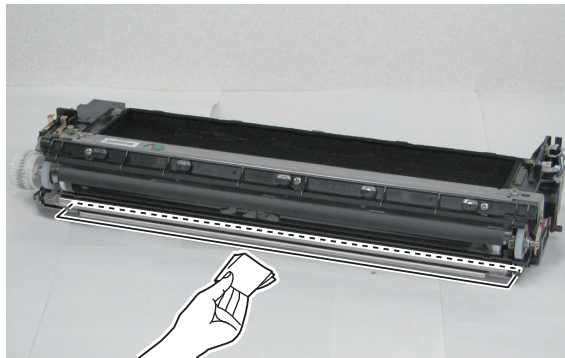
1. Remove the Developing Assembly. (“Removing the Developing Assembly” on page 377)

### ■ Procedure

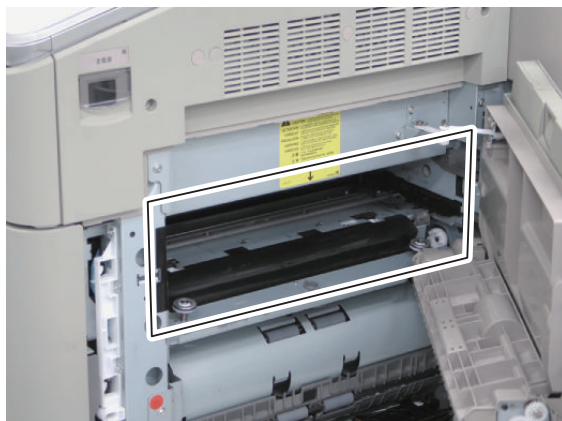
1. Clean the 2 Developing Rollers with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol while rotating them.



2. Clean the lower side of Cylinder in the Developing Assembly with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



3. Remove toner in the main body.





## Removing the Developing Cylinder and the Developing Roller

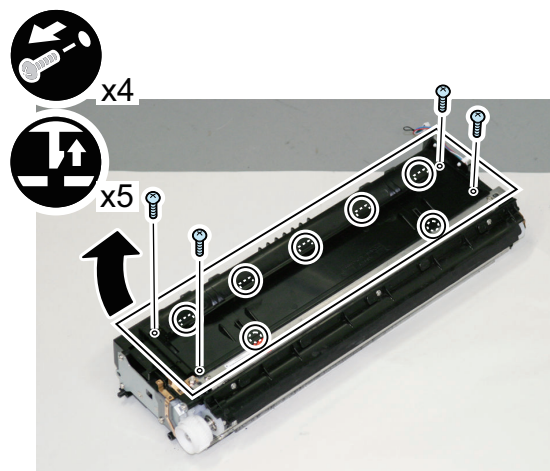
### ■ Preparation

1. Remove the Developing Assembly. “Removing the Developing Assembly” on page 377

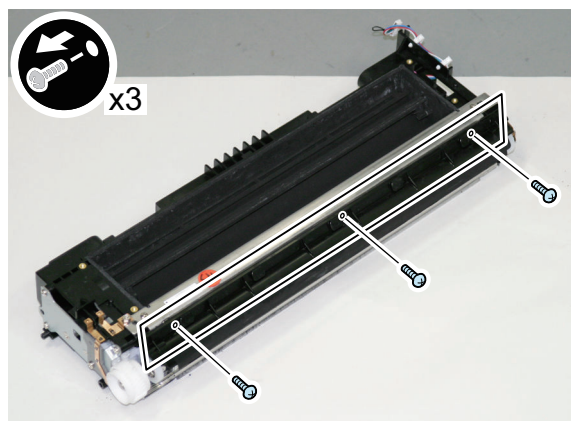
#### NOTE:

When the Developing Assembly is put on the floor or the desk, be sure to place paper underneath to work on the Developing Assembly.

2. Remove the Developing Cylinder Blade.
3. Remove the Developing Assembly Cover.
  - 4 Screws
  - 5 Claws
  - 2 Protrusions



4. Empty the toner in the Developing Assembly on the paper.
5. Remove the Developing Assembly Front Cover.
  - 3 Screws

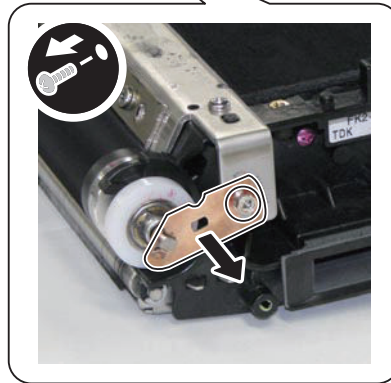
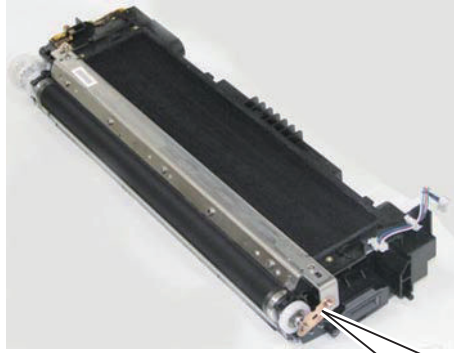


#### CAUTION:

Be sure to hold the Developing Assembly Front Cover to remove the screw. Otherwise, the Developing Assembly Front Cover may fall, which can cause damage on the Developing Cylinder.

**6. Remove the Sleeve Bias Plate.**

- 1 Screw

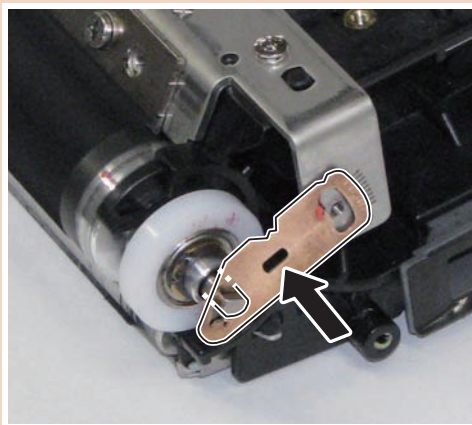


**CAUTION:**

Points to Caution at Installation:

Since white lines may occur on the image, go through the following steps to match the phase of the Sleeve Bias Plate and Developing Cylinder Blade.

Fit the Sleeve Bias Plate with the shaft of the Developing Cylinder to install.

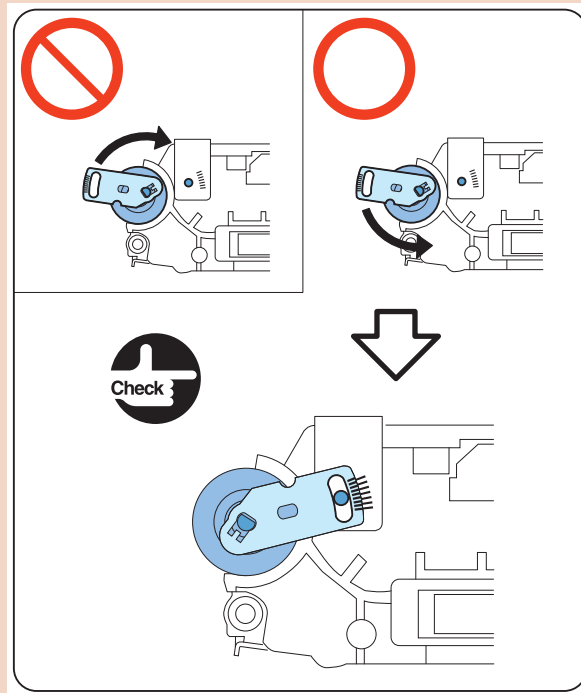


**CAUTION:**

Points to Caution at Installation:

Check that the long hole of the Sleeve Bias Plate is fitted with the hole of the Developing Cylinder Blade. If it is not fitted, rotate the Sleeve Bias Plate counterclockwise to match the phase.

Be careful not to rotate the Sleeve Bias Plate clockwise since this direction is to be a reverse direction of the proper Developing Cylinder rotation.



**CAUTION:**

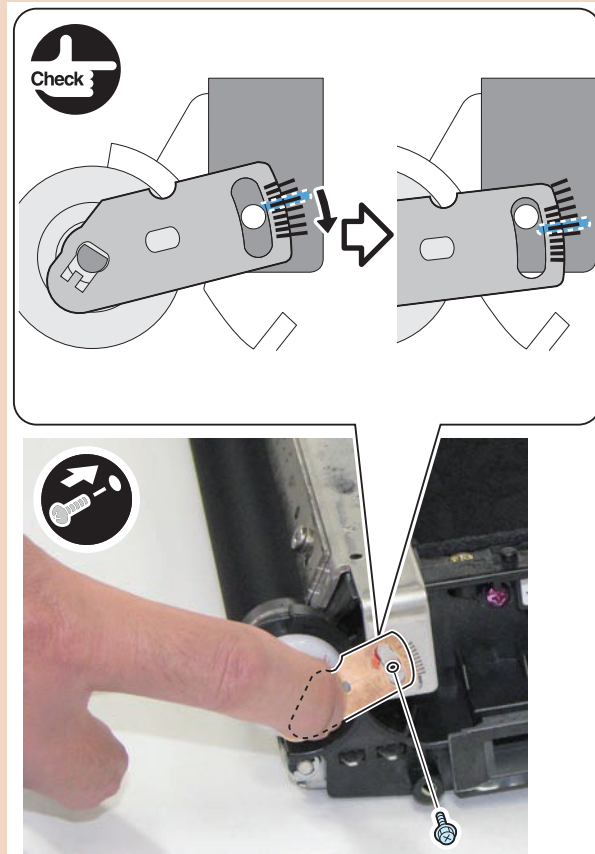
Points to Caution at Installation:

Find the position in which either scale of Sleeve Bias Plate is most matched with one of the Developing Cylinder Blade scales.

(If the Developing Cylinder Blade is not marked with scales, put a mark on the Developing Cylinder Blade at a point that matches one of the scales on the Sleeve Bias Plate and use the point as a reference point.)

See the Sleeve Bias Plate from the front side, and from the most matched position (scales), rotate the plate clockwise by 3 scales of the Developing Cylinder Blade.

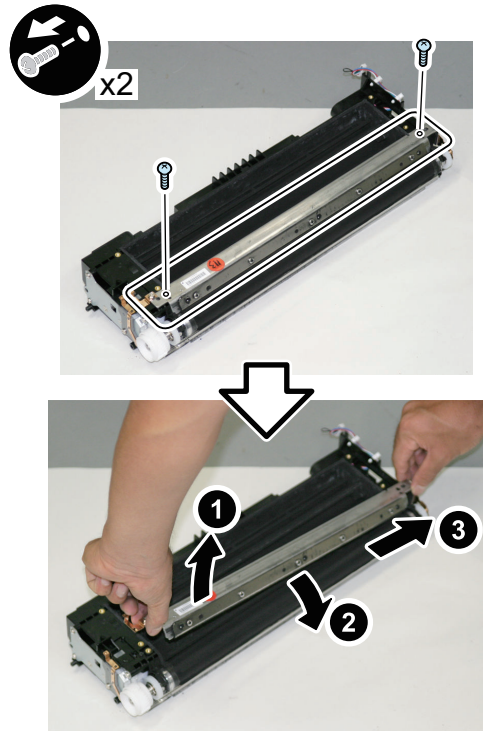
With the position where the plate was rotated by 3 scales, hold the Sleeve Bias Plate and secure with the removed screw. This is a reverse direction of the proper Developing Cylinder rotation, but this would be no problem in this procedure.





7. Lift the left side to remove the Developing Cylinder Blade in the direction of the arrow.

- 2 Bosses



**CAUTION:**

Do not disassemble the Developing Cylinder Blade. Otherwise, cleaning of the Developing Cylinder is not properly executed when removing just the Blade (as a single part).

## ■ Procedure

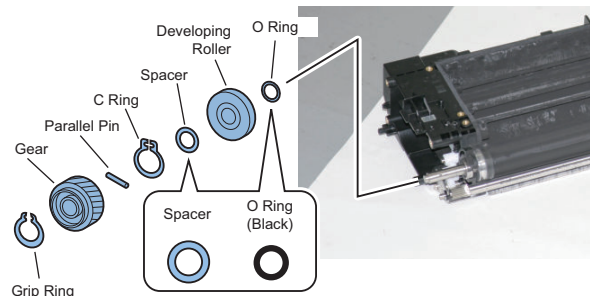
1. Remove the Grip Ring, the Gear, the Parallel Pin, the C Ring, the Spacer, the Developing Roller and the O Ring in the rear.

**CAUTION:**

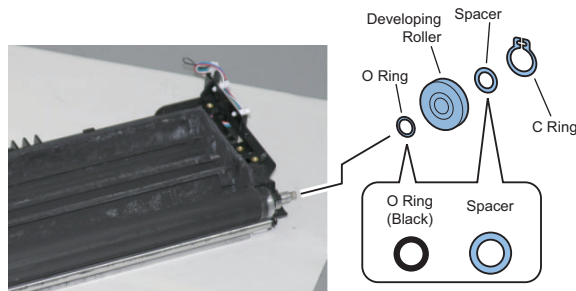
Point to Caution at Installation

Be sure to install the C Ring and the Spacer correctly.

Be sure to use a dedicated tool when installing/removing the Grip Ring and C Ring.



## 2. Remove the C Ring, the Spacer, the Developing Roller and the O Ring.



### CAUTION:

The C Rings and the O Rings removed in step 2 and 3 cannot be reused. Be sure to use the C Rings and the O Rings included in the package.

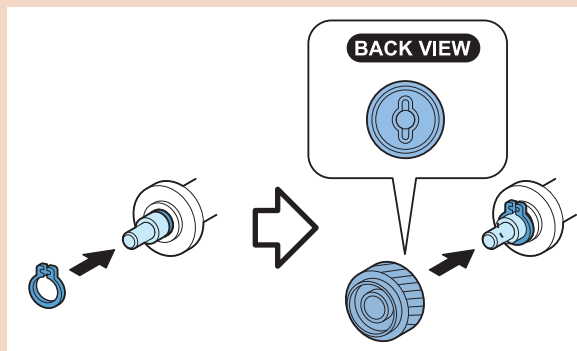
Be sure to use a dedicated tool when installing/removing the Grip Ring and C Ring.

### CAUTION:

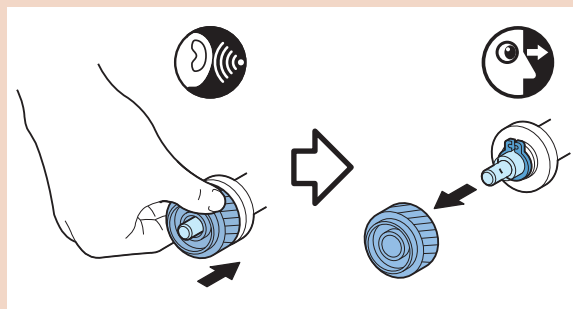
How to Install the C Ring

When installing the C Rings removed in step 2 and 3, be sure to perform the following to fit the C Rings into the groove of the Developing Cylinder Shaft securely.

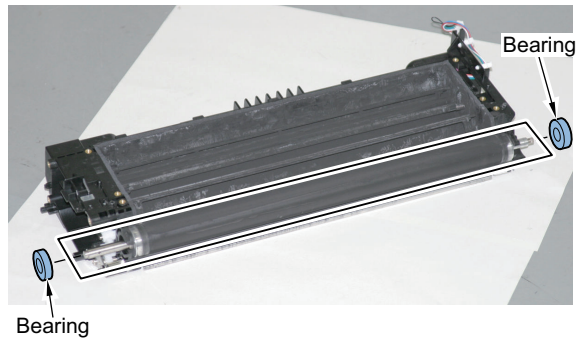
1. Fit the C Ring into the groove of the Developing Cylinder Shaft using a dedicated tool.
2. Locate the side of the Gear where the Parallel Pin removed in step 2 was set inside, and install the Gear to the Developing Cylinder Shaft temporarily.



3. Insert the Gear while pushing it against the C Ring, and check that click sound which occurs when the C Ring fits into the groove of the Developing Cylinder Shaft is heard.
4. Pull out the Gear from the Developing Cylinder Shaft, and check visually that the C Ring is fitted into the groove of the shaft.



## 3. Remove the Bearing to remove the Developing Cylinder.



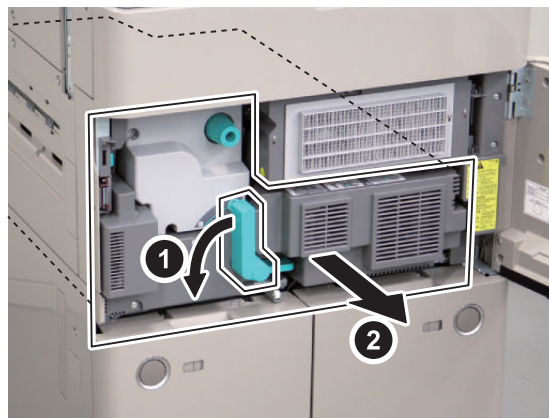
## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. **Clear the parts counter.**  
(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > DVG-CYL
2. **Supplying Developing Assembly toner.**  
(Lv.1) COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > TONER-S

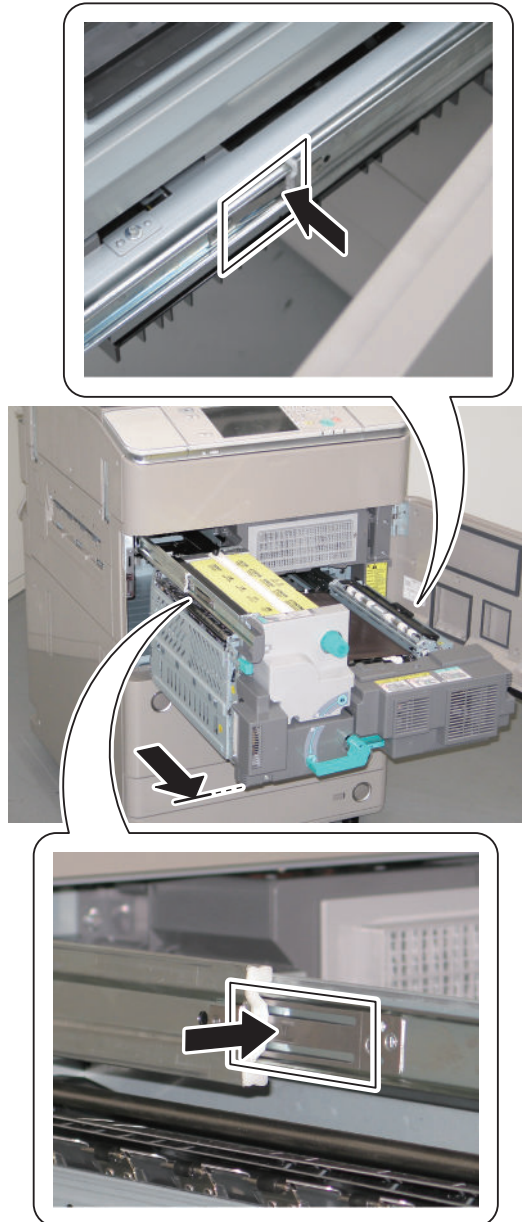
## ● Removing the ETB Unit

### ■ <Preparation>

1. **Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit.**
  1. Open the Front Cover.
  2. Turn the Fixing Feed Unit Pressure Release Lever in the direction of the arrow to pull out the Fixing Feed Unit.



3. Push to release the Release Springs at both sides of the Rail, and then further pull out the Fixing Feed Unit until it stops.

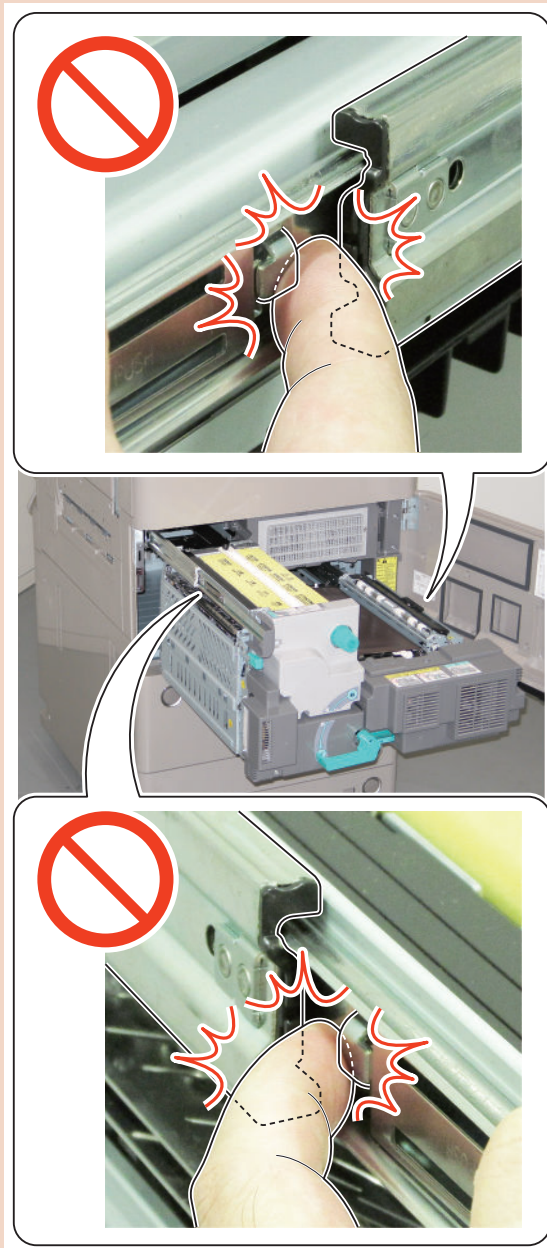


**CAUTION:**  
Do not touch the surface of the ETB when handling the ETB Unit.

**CAUTION:**

Caution when pushing the Fixing Feed Unit in

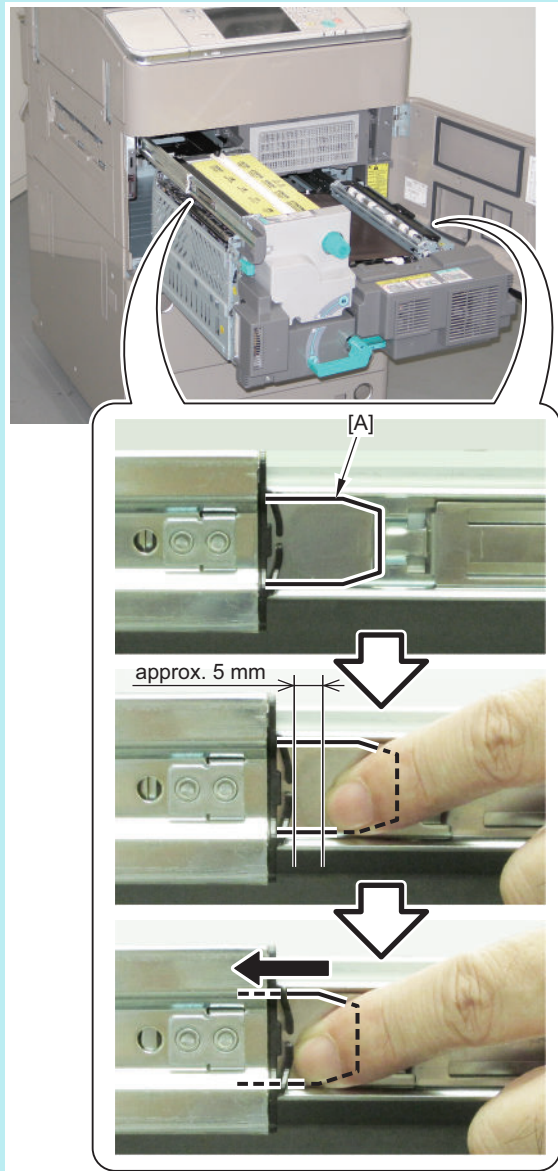
While pressing the Release Springs, slowly push the Fixing Feed Unit in so that the fingers do not get caught.



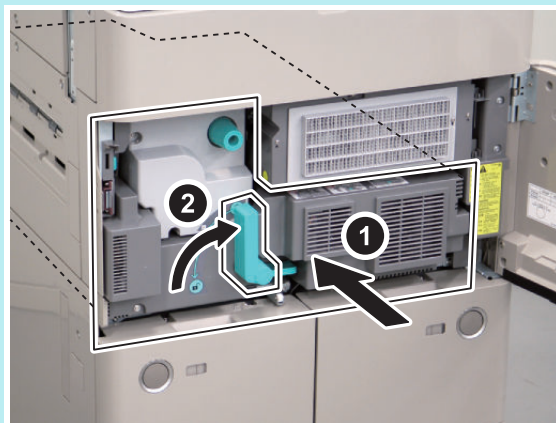
**NOTE:**

How to push the Fixing Feed Unit in

1. Release the Release Springs [A] on the side of either rail.  
Slowly push the Fixing Feed Unit in by approximately 5 mm while keeping it level.



2. Take the fingers off the Release Springs and slowly push the Fixing Feed Unit in to the end.

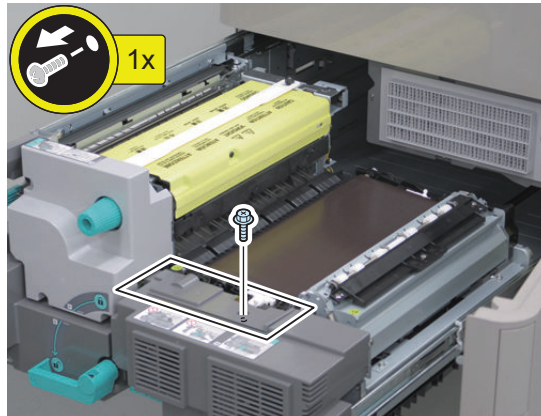




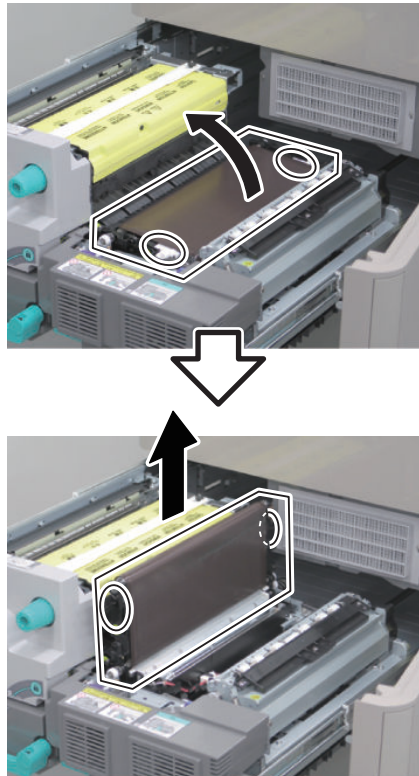
## ■ Procedure

### 1. Remove the Fixing Feed Right Front Upper Cover.

- 1 Screw



### 2. Hold the 2 Handles to remove the ETB Unit in the direction of the arrow.



## ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

### 1. Clear the ETB control counter.

(Lv.1)COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > TR-BLT

Parts counter(COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > TR-BLT)is also cleared coincidentally.

## ● Removing the ETB

### ■ Preparation

1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit.(“Removing the ETB Unit” on page 388)

## 2. Remove the ETB Unit. (“Removing the ETB Unit” on page 388)

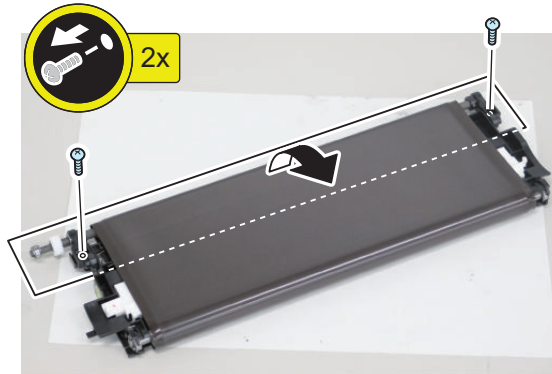
### CAUTION:

Do not touch the surface of the ETB when handling the ETB Unit.

## ■ <Procedure>

### 1. Fold the ETB Drive Roller Unit.

- 2 Screws



### 2. Set up the ETB Unit to remove the Roller Unit from the ETB.



### CAUTION:

- Be sure to hold within 10mm from both edges of the ETB when handling the ETB.
- Do not touch the surface of the ETB Drive Roller and the Transfer Roller; otherwise, it can cause image faults.



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

### 1. Clear the ETB control counter.

(Lv.1)COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > TR-BLT

Parts counter(COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > TR-BLT)is also cleared coincidentally.

#### CAUTION:

Points to Caution when Installing the ETB

Set the ETB to make the ETB located inside the Guides at both edges.



## ● Cleaning the ETB

### ■ Preparation

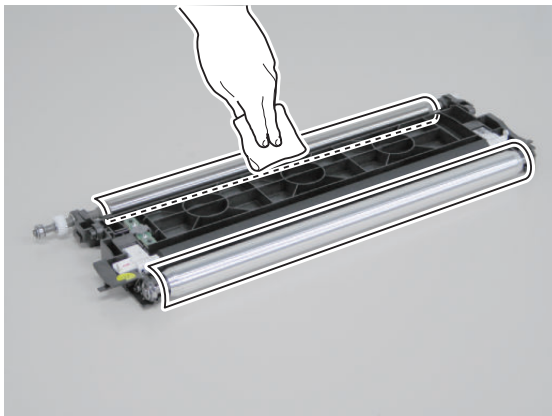
1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. (“Removing the ETB Unit” on page 388)
2. Remove the ETB Unit. (“Removing the ETB Unit” on page 388)
3. Remove the Roller Unit from the ETB Unit.

## ■ <Procedure>

1. Clean the Transfer Roller and Drive Roller with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

**CAUTION:**

Do not touch the surface of the ETB Drive Roller and the Transfer Roller; otherwise, it can cause image faults.



## ● Removing the Transfer Roller

### ■ Preparation

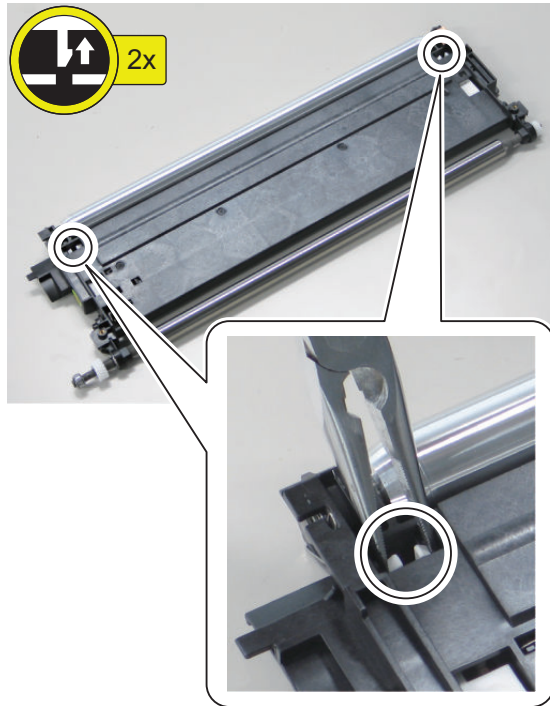
1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. (“Removing the ETB Unit” on page 388)
2. Remove the ETB Unit. (“Removing the ETB Unit” on page 388)
3. Remove the ETB (“Removing the ETB” on page 392)

**CAUTION:**

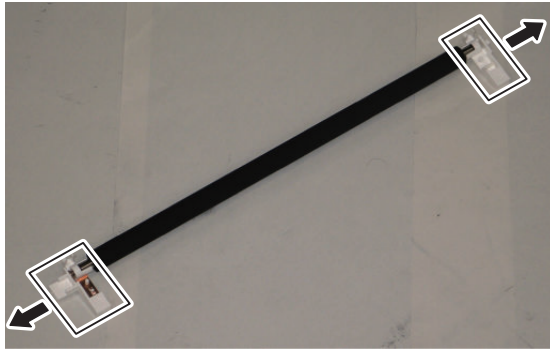
Do not touch the surface of the ETB Drive Roller and the Transfer Roller; otherwise, it can cause image faults.

**■ <Procedure>**

1. Turn over the Roller Unit to remove the Claw of the Transfer Roller Shaft Support with needlenose pliers.



## 2. Remove the Transfer Roller Shaft Support from the Transfer Roller.



### NOTE:

When installing the Transfer Roller Shaft Support to the Roller Unit, be sure to check that the bosses of the Transfer Roller Shaft Support are fitted into the Springs.



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

### 1. Clear the parts counter.

(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > TR-ROLL

## ● Removing the ETB Cleaning Blade

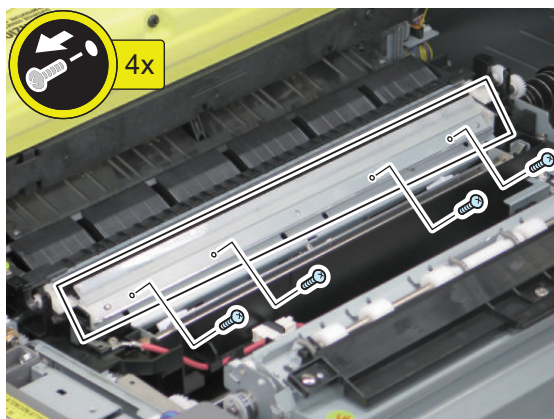
### ■ Preparation

1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. (“Removing the ETB Unit” on page 388)
2. Remove the ETB Unit. (“Removing the ETB Unit” on page 388)

## ■ <Procedure>

### 1. Remove the ETB Cleaning Blade.

- 4 Screws



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

### 1. Clear the parts counter.

(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > T-CLN-BD

## ● Removing the ETB Brush Roller

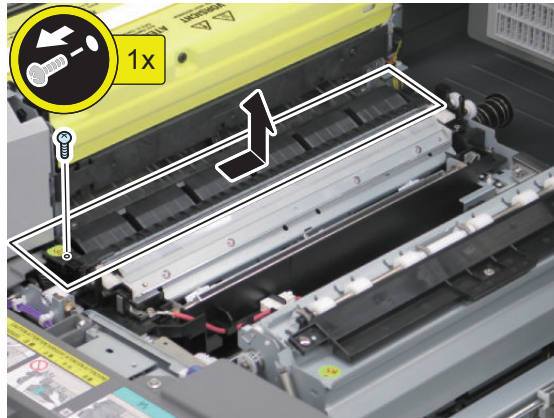
### ■ Preparation

1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. (“Removing the ETB Unit” on page 388)
2. Remove the ETB Unit. (“Removing the ETB Unit” on page 388)

## ■ <Procedure>

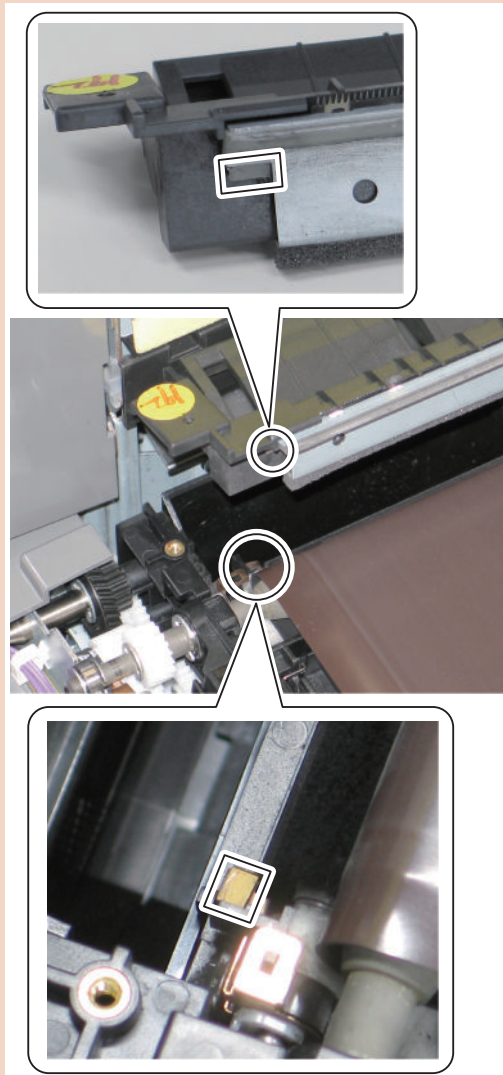
### 1. Remove the Post-transfer Guide.

- 1 Screw



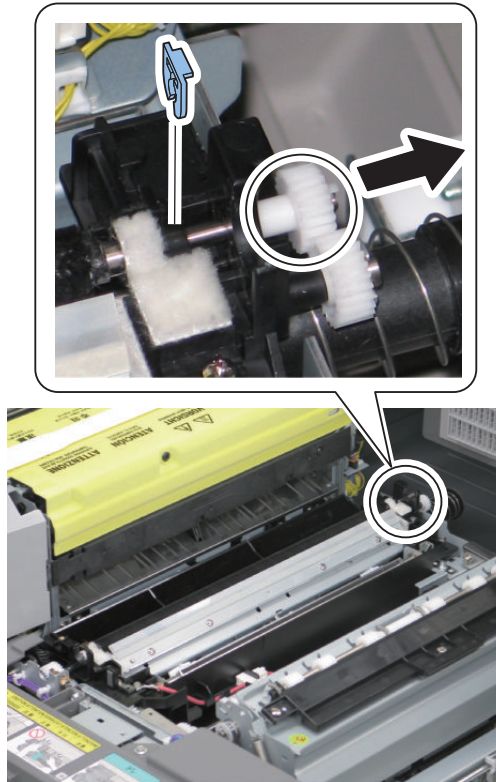
### CAUTION:

- Be sure to keep in contact with the Grounding Plate when installing the Post-transfer Guide.
- Do not deform the Grounding Plate when installing the Post-transfer Guide.



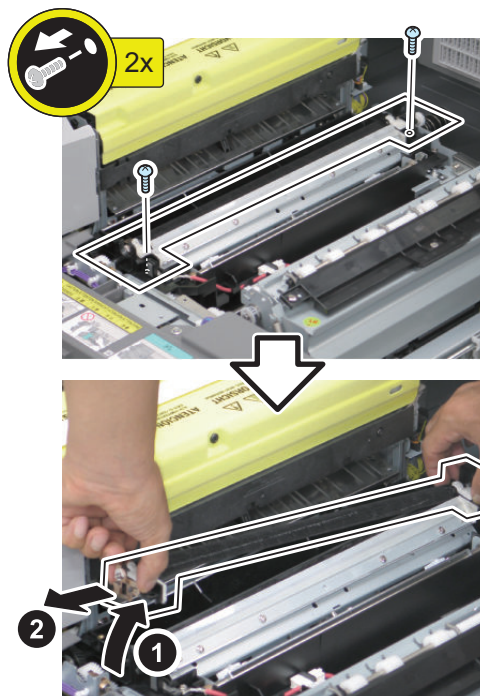


2. Remove the Connection Gear and the N-ring from the ETB Brush Roller.



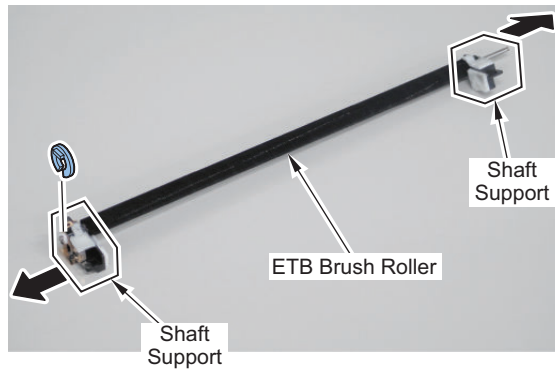
3. Remove the ETB Brush Roller Unit.

- 2 Screws



#### 4. Remove the Shaft Support from the ETB Brush Roller.

- 1 N-ring



### ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

#### 1. Clear the parts counter.

(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > T-CN-BRU

### ● Removing the Waste Toner Container

#### 1. Loosen the 1 Coin Screw and then remove the Right Rear Lower Cover.



#### 2. Remove the Waste Toner Container.



#### NOTE:

- In the case of toner spill when removing the Waste Toner Container, be sure to wipe out the spilled toner.
- After taking the Waste Toner Container out of the machine, be sure to promptly collect waste toner to prevent toner scattering.



## ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

### 1. Set the new Waste Toner Container.

#### NOTE:

When replacing the Waste Toner Container with a new one after preparation warning or full warning is displayed, display on the LUI is cleared after a certain period of time has passed. The parts counter ((Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > WST-TNR) is automatically cleared at replacement.

#### NOTE:

Related service modes when a user replaces the Waste Toner Container

The Waste Toner Container preparation warning message can be set to be displayed or hidden by executing the following service mode.

(Lv.1) COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > WT-WARN

Setting value 0: Hide, 1: Display

Procedure for replacing the Waste Toner Container can be set to be displayed or hidden by executing the following service mode.

When a user replaces the Waste Toner Container, set 1.

(Lv.1) COPIER > OPTION > USER > W-TN-DSP

Setting value 0: OFF, 1: ON

## ● Removing the Drum Heater

### ■ Preparation

1. Open the Inner Cover. (“[Removing the Primary Charging Assembly](#)” on page 329)
2. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly. (“[Removing the Primary Charging Assembly](#)” on page 329)
3. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. (“[Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly](#)” on page 347)
4. Remove the Process Unit. (“[Removing the Process Unit](#)” on page 357)
5. Put paper on the Photosensitive Drum, so that it is not exposed to direct sunlight.
6. Remove the Drum Cleaning Blade. (“[Removing the Drum Cleaning Blade](#)” on page 361)
7. Remove the Drum Retainer Plate. (“[Removing the Drum Unit](#)” on page 366)
8. Remove the Drum Unit. (“[Removing the Drum Unit](#)” on page 366)

### ■ <Procedure>

#### CAUTION:

When handling the Process Unit and Photosensitive Drum, be sure to follow the following points to note.

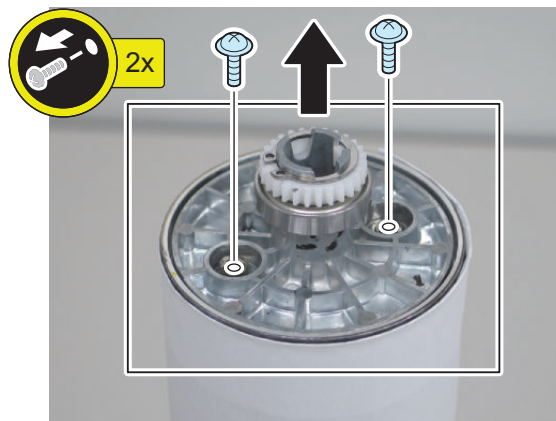
1. When removing the Process Unit, be sure to block light to the Photosensitive Drum.  
Cover with the Photosensitive Drum Protection Sheet or wrap 5 or more papers around the drum to block light.
2. Do not place the Process Unit and Photosensitive Drum in a location where is exposed to direct rays of the sun (e.g. near the window).
3. Do not store in a location with high/low temperature/humidity, or in a location where temperature or humidity is dramatically changed.
4. Do not store in a dusty area or in a location full of ammonia gas or organic solvent gas.

When installing a new Photosensitive Drum, be sure to remove the Lightproof Sheet after installing the drum to the main body. In addition, be sure to rotate the drum counterclockwise at removal of the Lightproof Sheet. If the drum is rotated clockwise, the Drum Cleaner Blade may be everted.

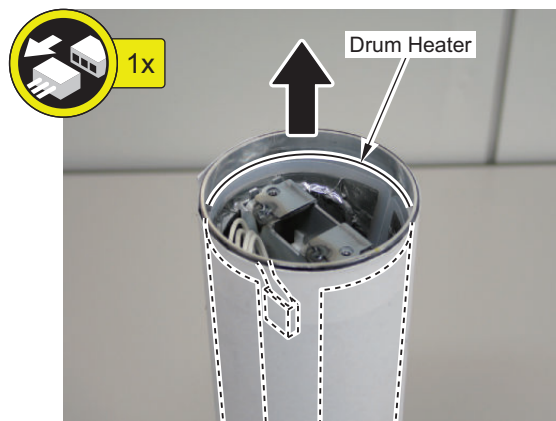
1. Wrap paper around the Drum Unit to block light.



2. Remove the 2 screws and the Flange.



3. Disconnect the connector and remove the Drum Heater.



## ● Removing the Primary Charging Shutter Unit

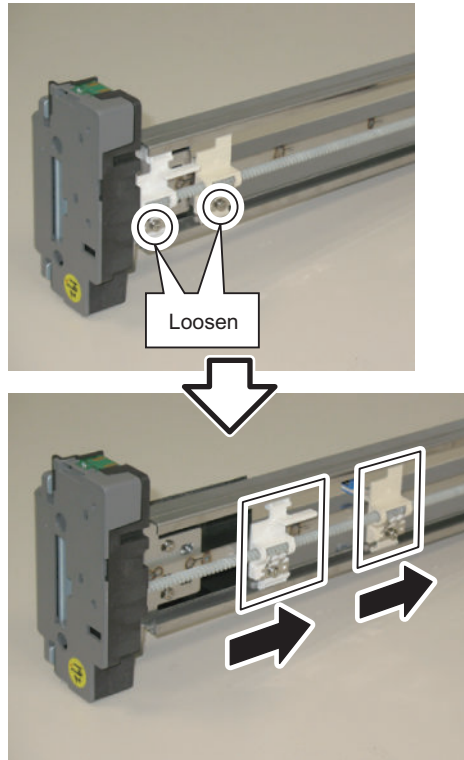
### ■ Preparation

1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Open the Inner Cover. ([“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329](#))
3. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly. ([“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329](#))

## ■ <Procedure>

### 1. Move the Primary Charging Wire Cleaners (Left and Right).

- 2 Screws (to loosen)

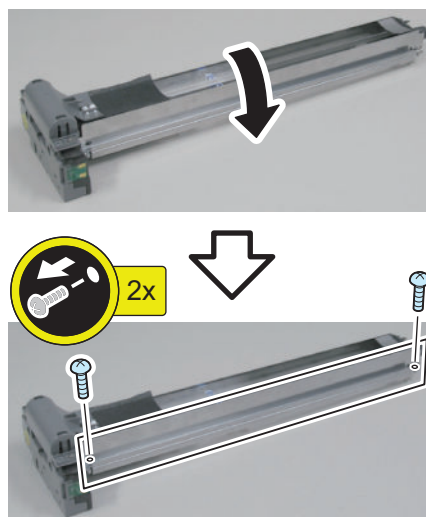


#### CAUTION:

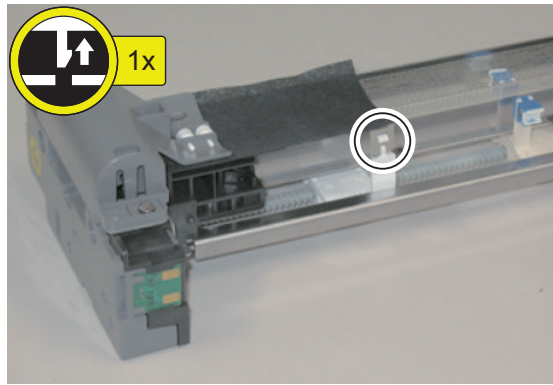
Do not remove both Shield Plates (Right and Left) of the Primary Charging Assembly at the same time. Be sure to work on one Shield Plate at a time. (Otherwise, the frame of the Primary Charging Assembly can be deformed.)

### 2. Move down the Primary Charging Assembly to remove the Shield Plate (Right).

- 2 Screws



3. Remove the Leaf Spring of the Primary Charging Shutter from the claw.

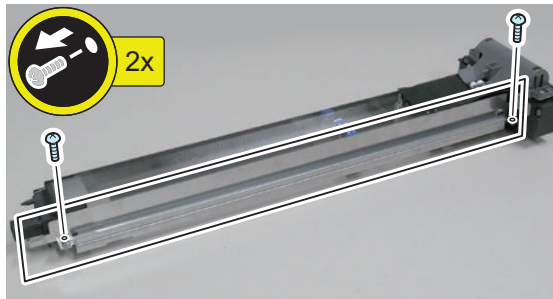


4. Install the Shield Plate (Right).

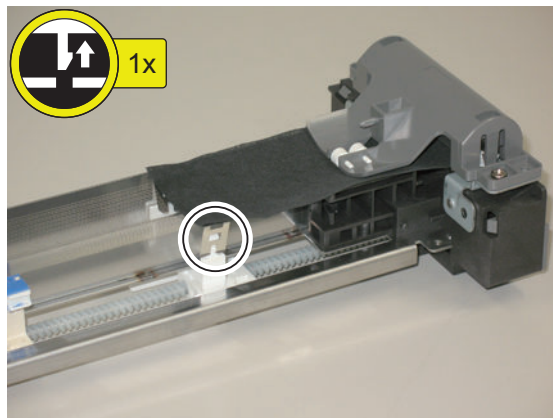
- 2 Screws

5. Remove the Shield Plate (Left).

- 2 Screws



6. Remove the Leaf Spring of the Primary Charging Shutter from the claw.



7. Install the Shield Plate (Left).

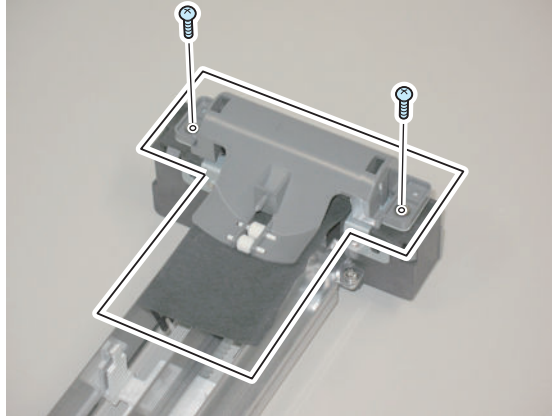
- 2 Screws

**CAUTION:**

Do not make the Leaf Spring caught by the Charging Wire when removing the Primary Charging Shutter Unit.

**8. Remove the Primary Charging Shutter Unit.**

- 2 Screws



### ■ <Installation Method>

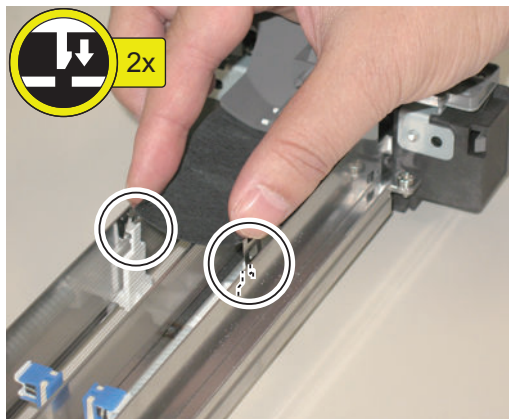
**CAUTION:**

Points to Caution at Installation

Be careful not to get the Leaf Spring caught by the Charging Wire to install it to the Cleaner Claw.

**NOTE:**

The Shield Plate does not need to be removed when installing the Shutter Unit.

**1. Set the Leaf Spring of the Primary Charging Shutter to the Cleaner Claw.****2. Install the Primary Charging Shutter Unit.**

- 2 Screws

**3. Return the Primary Charging Wire Cleaners (Left and Right) to the original position.**

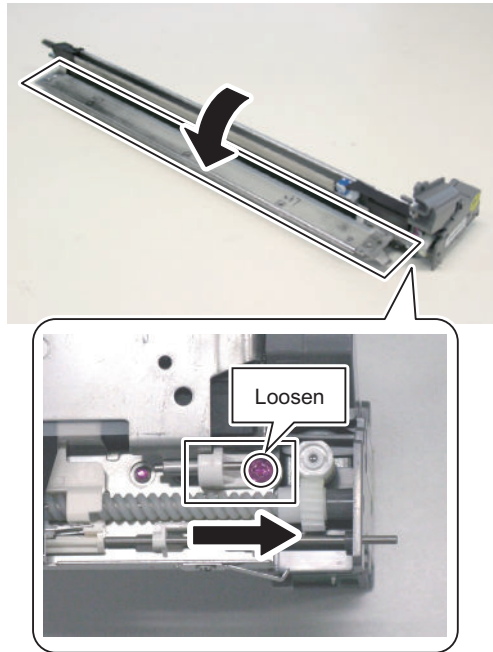
## ● Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Shutter Unit

### ■ Preparation

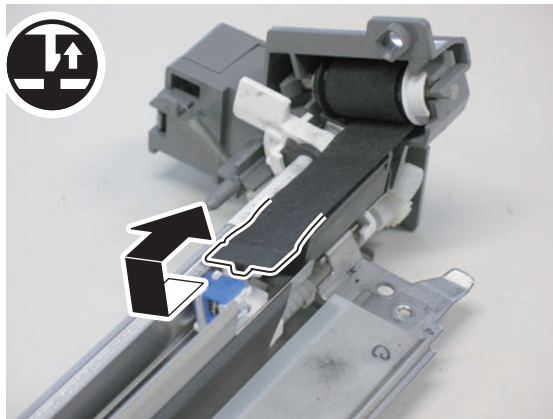
1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Open the Inner Cover. ([“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329](#))
3. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. ([“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347](#))

## ■ Procedure

1. Move the **Shield Plate Retainer Block** to open the **Shield Plate** in the direction of the arrow.
  - 1 Screw (to loosen)



2. Remove the claw at the edge of the Shutter.

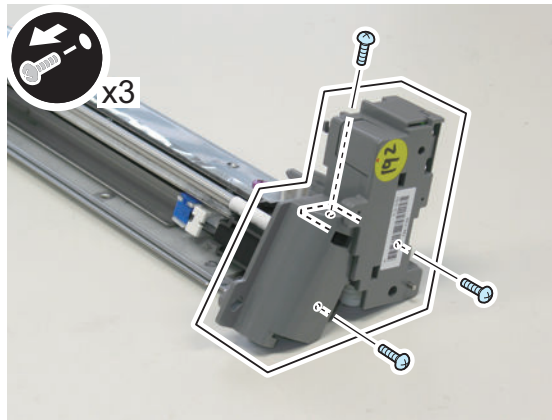


**3. Hold the screw to remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Shutter Unit while the Motor Unit is Installed.**

- 3 Screws

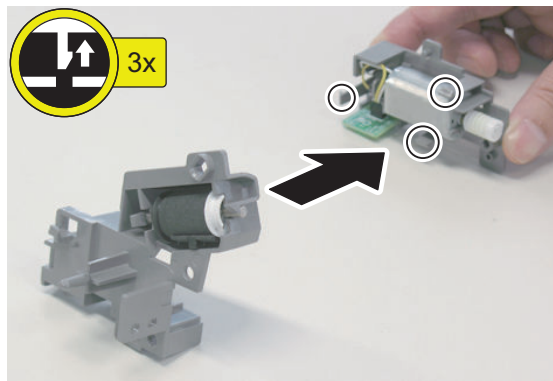
**CAUTION:**

Be careful not to remove the screw and the Screw Gear when removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Shutter Unit.



**4. Remove the Motor Unit from the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Shutter Unit.**

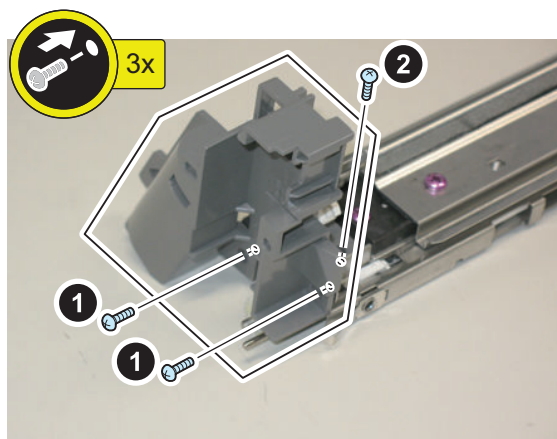
- 3 Claws



**■ Installation Method**

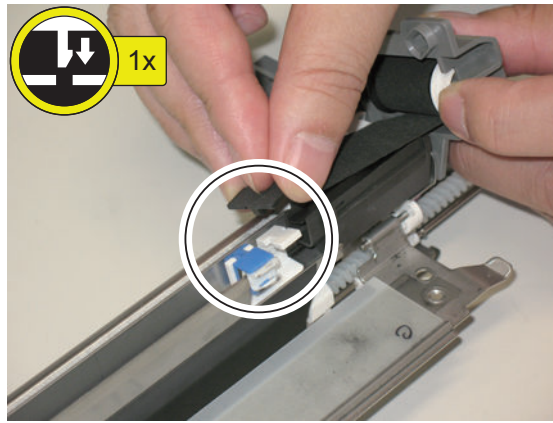
**1. Install the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Shutter Unit.**

- 3 Screws





2. Pull the Shutter with your fingers to hook it to the Cleaner Unit.

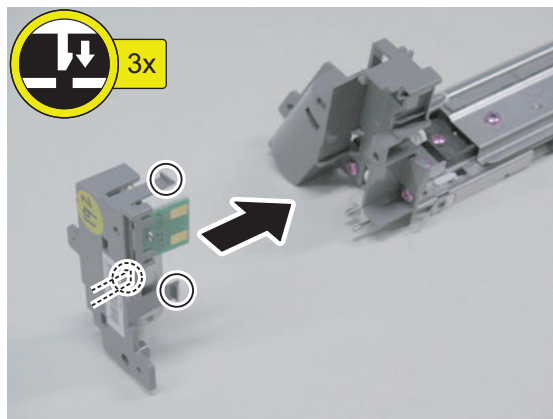
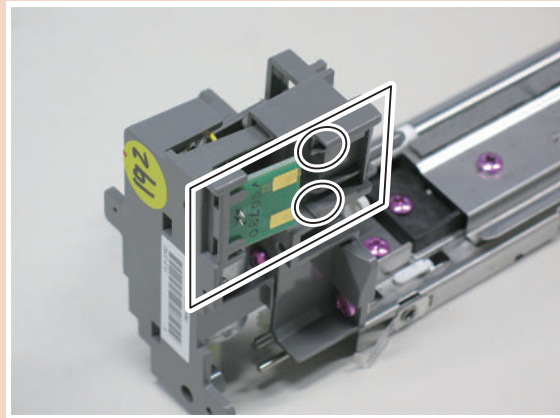


3. Install the Motor Unit.

- 3 Claws

**CAUTION:**

When installing the Motor Unit, fit the PCB into the slot.



**NOTE:**

Be sure to check that the rear shaft is secured.

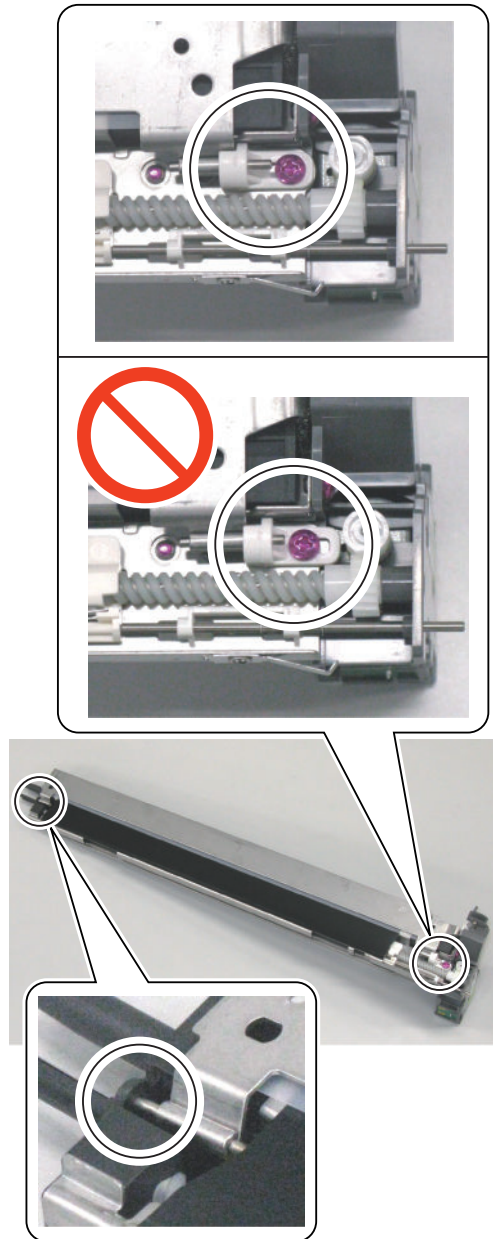


#### 4. Move the Shield Plate Retainer Block fully to the inside to secure with the screw.

**CAUTION:**

Points to Caution when Securing the Shield Plate

Be sure to check that the rear pin is fit into the frame hole.



**NOTE:**

Move the Shield Plate back and forth to check that the Shield Plate is secured.

## ● Removing the Drum Brush Roller

**CAUTION:**

- Do not touch the Photosensitive Drum.
- Cover the Photosensitive Drum with paper to avoid direct exposure to light.

## ■ Preparation

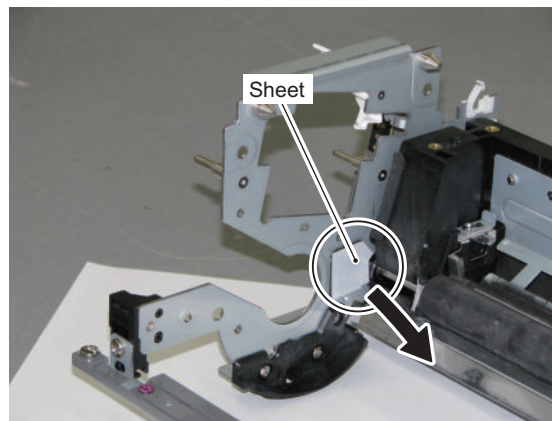
1. Open the Inner Cover. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
2. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
3. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347)
4. Remove the Process Unit. (“Removing the Process Unit” on page 357)
5. Remove the Drum Cleaning Unit. (“Removing the Drum Cleaning Unit” on page 360)
6. Remove the Drum Unit. (“Removing the Drum Unit” on page 366)
7. Remove the Side Seal. (“Removing the Side Seal” on page 375)

## ■ Procedure

1. Remove the sheet.

### CAUTION:

The removed sheet will be used at the time of assembly, so be sure to remove the sheet neatly and keep it in a safe place.

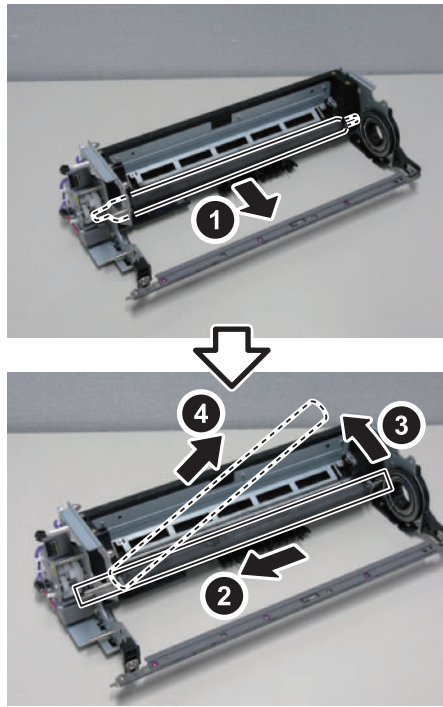


2. Remove the 2 Gears and the 2 Bearings.

- 3 E-rings



3. Remove the Drum Brush Roller by following the procedure as shown in the figure.



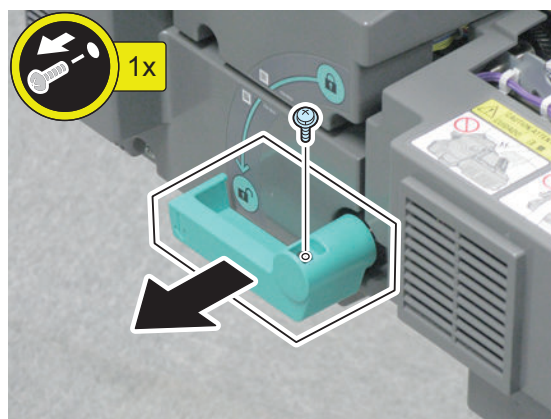
## ● Removing the ETB Drive Unit

### ■ Preparation

1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. ("Removing the ETB Unit" on page 388 )
2. Remove the ETB Unit ("Removing the ETB Unit" on page 388)

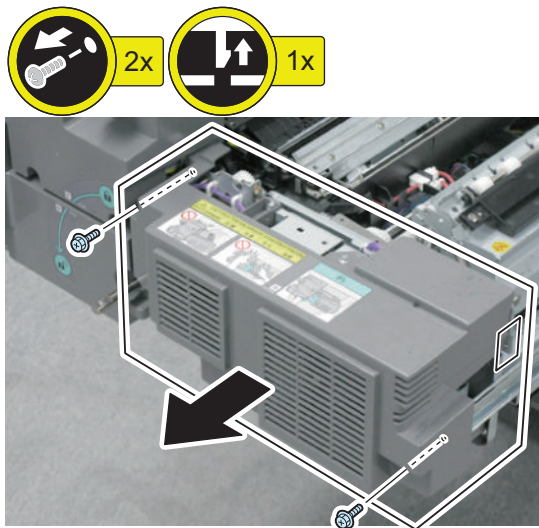
### ■ <Procedure>

1. Remove the Fixing Feed Lever.
  - 1 Screw

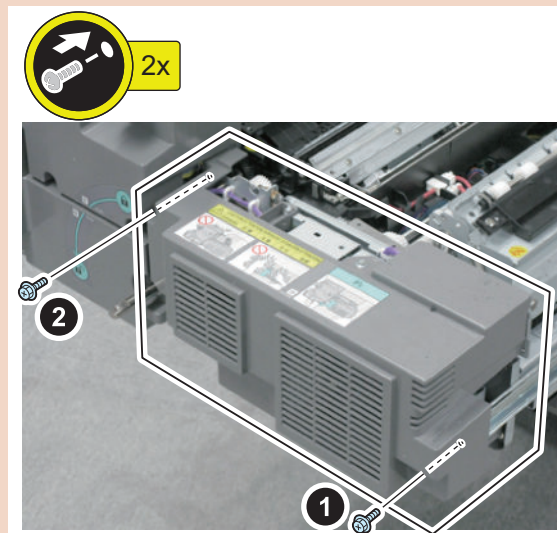


**2. Remove the Fixing Feed Right Front Cover.**

- 2 Screws
- 1 Claw

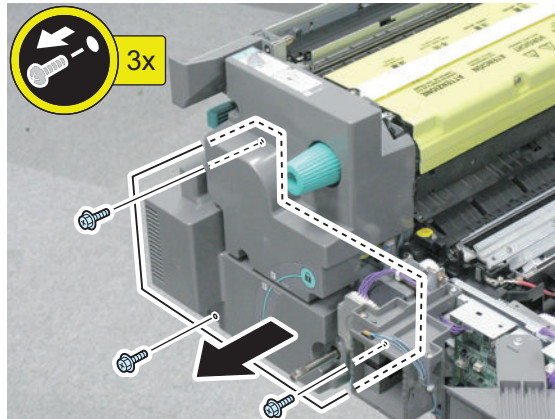
**CAUTION:**

When installing the Fixing Feed Right Front Cover, be sure to follow the order as shown in the figure to tighten screws.



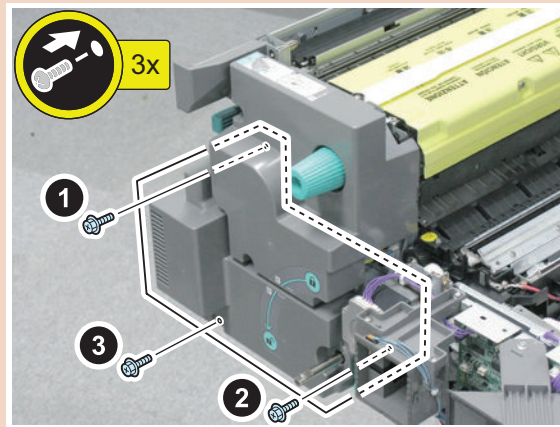
**3. Remove the Fixing Feed Left Cover.**

- 3 Screws



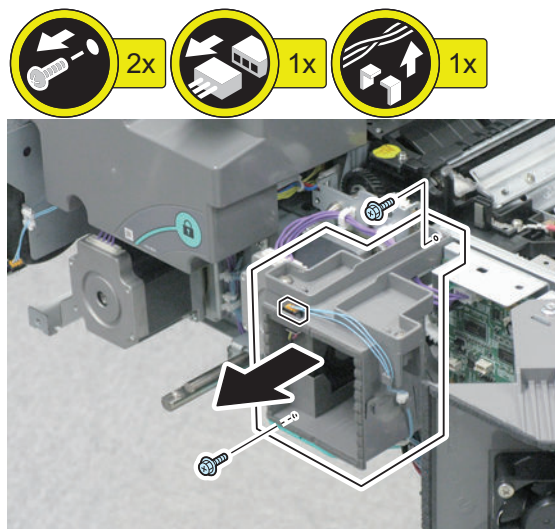
**CAUTION:**

When installing the Fixing Feed Left Cover, be sure to follow the order as shown in the figure to tighten screws.



**4. Remove the Duct.**

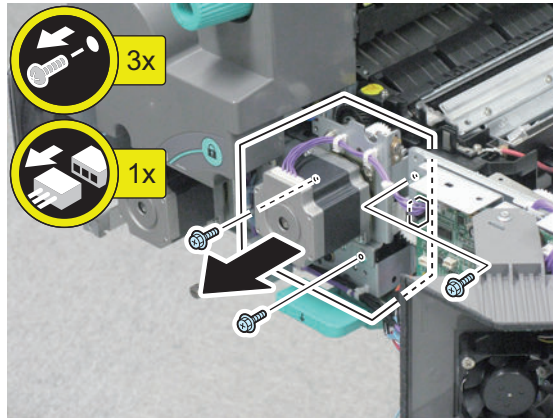
- 2 Screws
- 1 Connector
- Harness



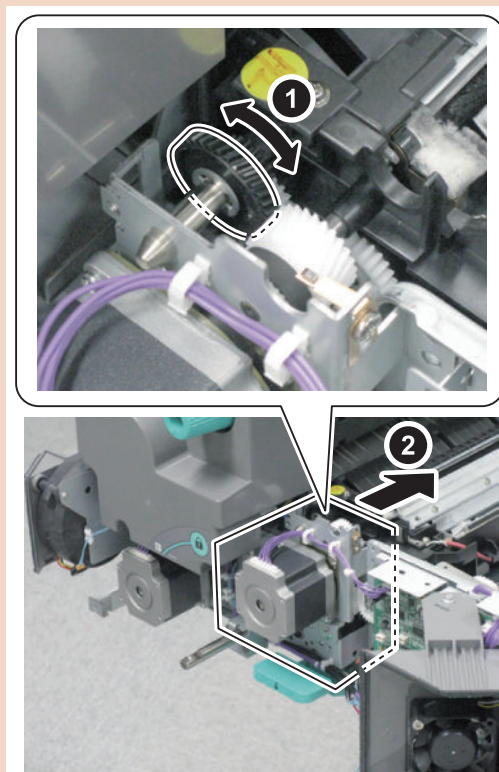


**5. Remove the ETB Drive Unit.**

- 3 Screws
- 1 Connector

**CAUTION:**

When installing, turn the gear so that the gear is engaged.



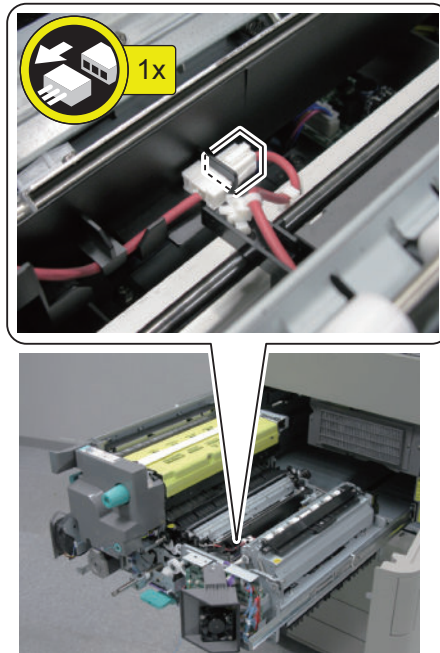
## Removing the Transfer Cleaning Unit

### ■ Preparation

1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. (“Removing the ETB Unit” on page 388)
2. Remove the ETB Unit. (“Removing the ETB Unit” on page 388)
3. Remove the ETB Drive Unit. (“Removing the ETB Drive Unit” on page 412)

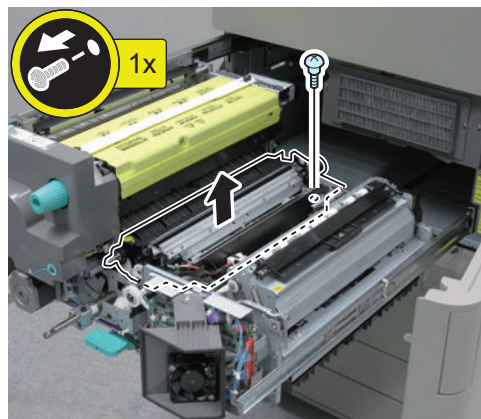
## ■ <Procedure>

1. Disconnect the connectors.



2. Remove the Transfer Cleaning Unit.

- 1 Stepped Screw



## ● Removing the Post-transfer Static Eliminator

### ■ <Preparation>

1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. (Refer to “Removing the ETB Unit” on page 388)

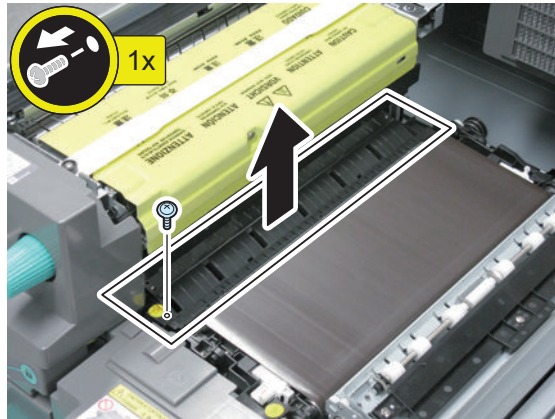
### ■ <Procedure>

#### CAUTION:

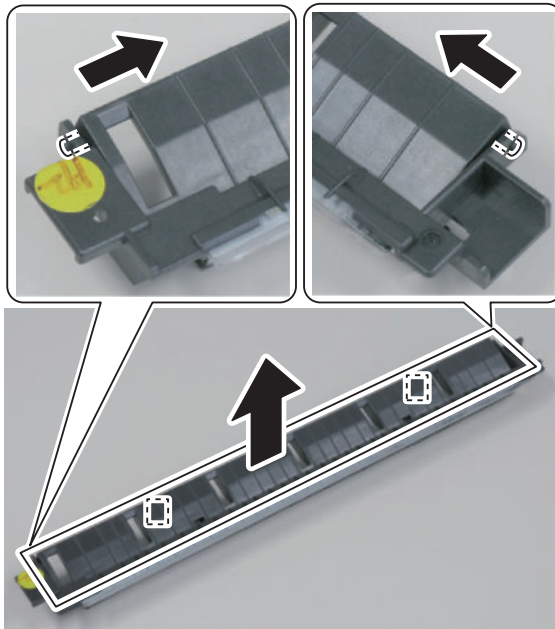
Do not touch the surface of the ETB when handling the ETB Unit.

**1. Remove the Post-transfer Guide Unit.**

- 1 Screw

**2. Remove the Post-transfer Guide.**

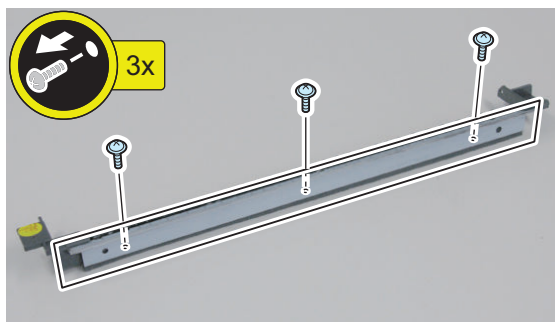
- 2 Protrusions
- 2 Springs

**CAUTION:**

Be careful not to lose the springs when removing the Post-transfer Guide.

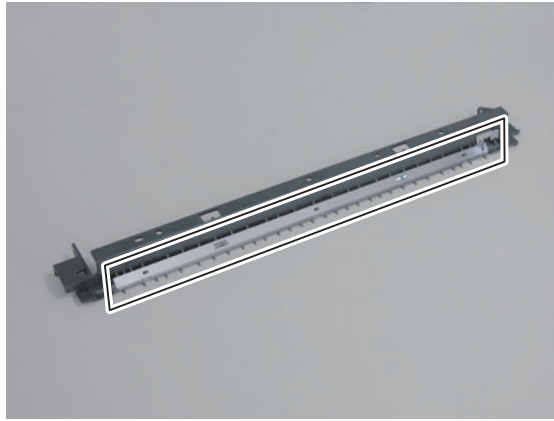
**3. Remove the Separation Guide Reinforcing Plate.**

- 3 Screws





**4. Remove the Post-transfer Static Eliminator.**



## Removing the Toner Receptacle Tray

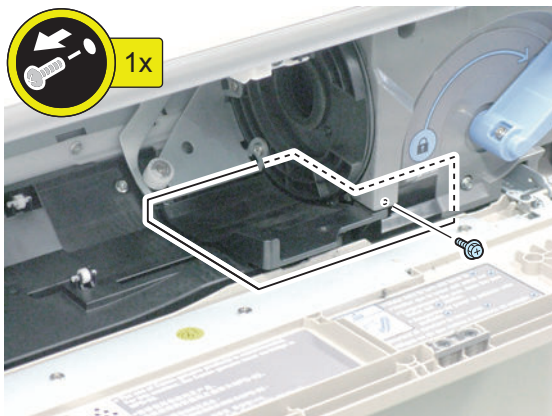
### ■ <Preparation>

1. Open the Front Upper Cover.
2. Remove the Toner Bottle.

## ■ <Procedure>

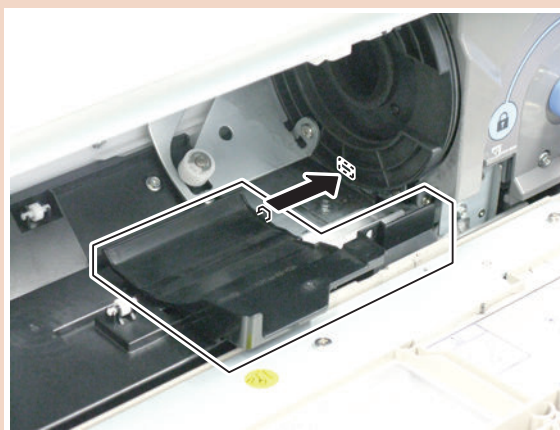
### 1. Remove the Toner Receptacle Tray.

- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion

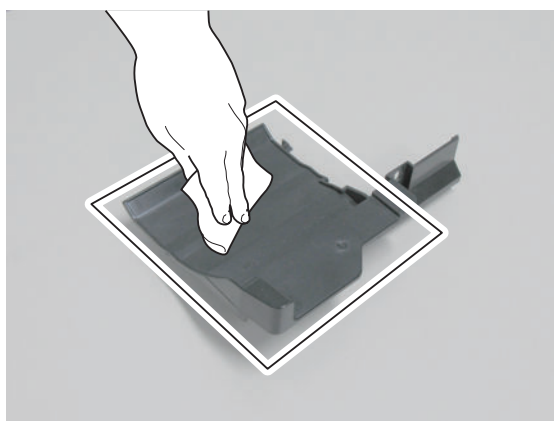


#### CAUTION:

1. Be sure to fit the protrusion into the groove of the plate to install.
2. Toner can be accumulated in the Toner Receptacle Tray; therefore, be careful not to spill toner when removing.



### 2. Clean the Toner Receptacle Tray with lint-free paper.



## ● Removing the Hopper Unit

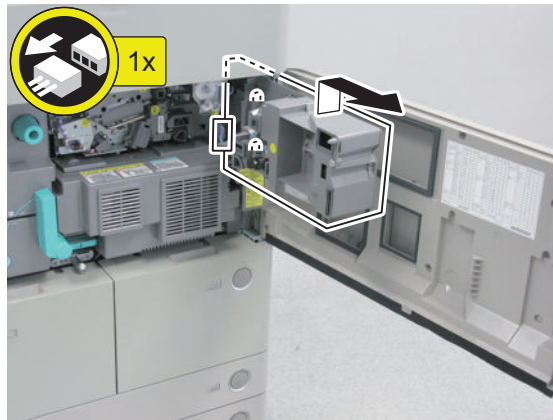
### 1. Open the Front Cover.

**2. Open the Inner Cover (Primary Charging Air Supply Fan Unit).**

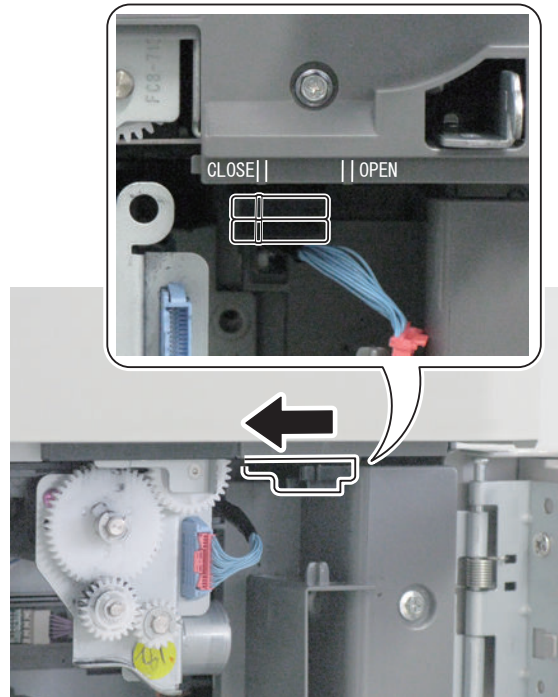
- 1 Screws (to loosen)

**3. Remove the Inner Cover (Primary Charging Air Supply Fan Unit).**

- 1 Connector
- 2 Protrusions



**4. Move the lever in the direction of the arrow to close the Shutter.**

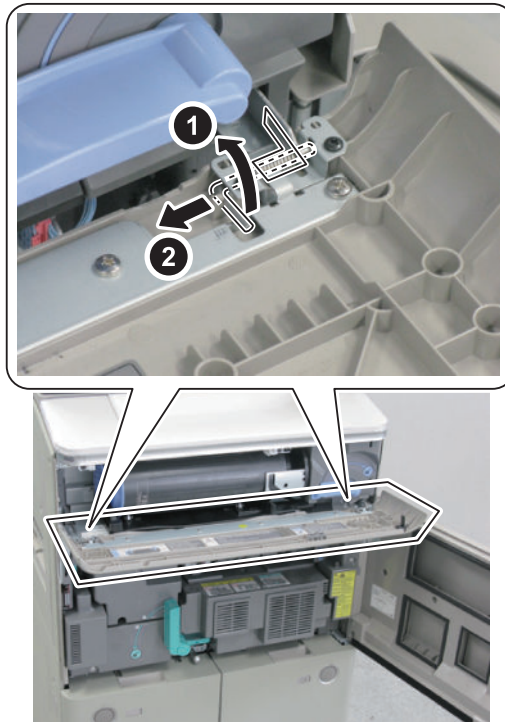


**CAUTION:**

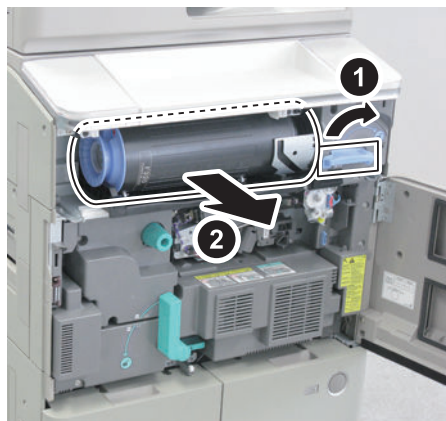
When starting the host machine, be sure to set the Shutter from CLOSE to OPEN.

**5. Remove the Front Upper Cover.**

- 2 Hinge Pins
- 2 Springs

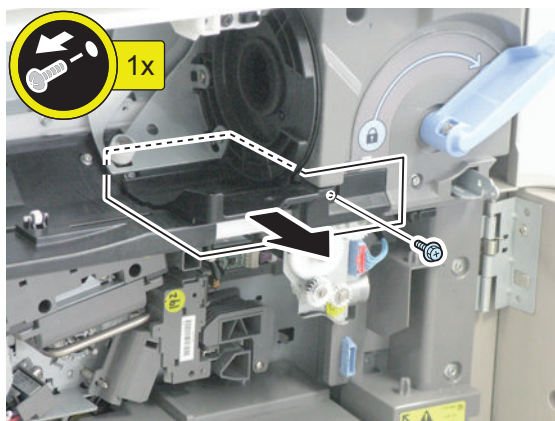


**6. Release the Lock Lever to remove the Toner Bottle.**



**7. Remove the Toner Receptacle Tray.**

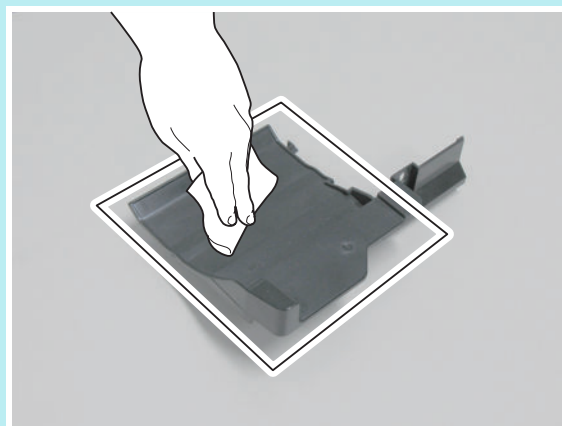
- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion

**CAUTION:**

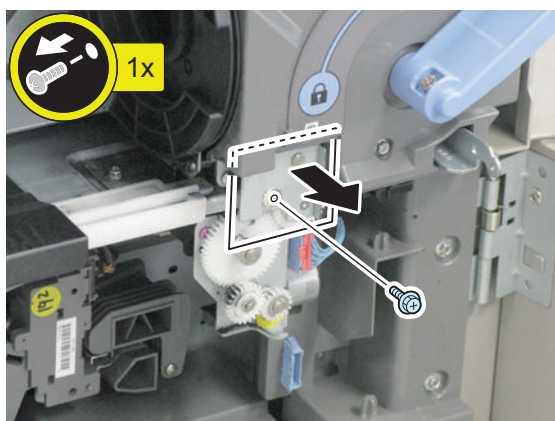
1. Toner can be accumulated in the Toner Receptacle Tray; therefore, be careful not to spill toner when removing.
2. Be sure to fit the protrusion into the groove of the plate to install.

**NOTE:**

Clean the Toner Receptacle Tray with lint-free paper.

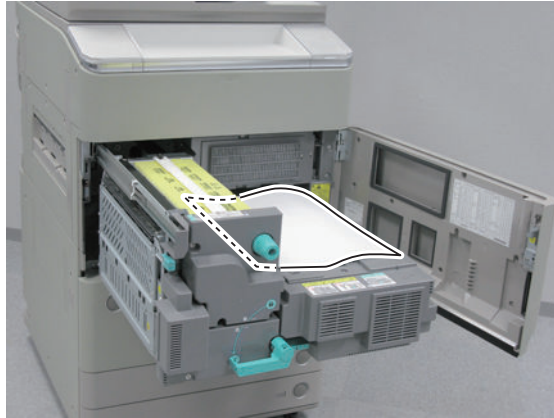
**8. Remove the Connecting Drive Unit.**

- 1 Screw

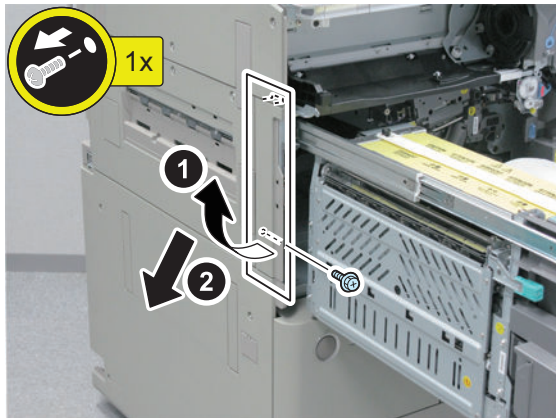


**9. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit.****CAUTION:**

When pulling out the Fixing Feed Unit, be sure to place paper over the ETB Unit for protection.

**10. Remove the Left Upper Cover 2.**

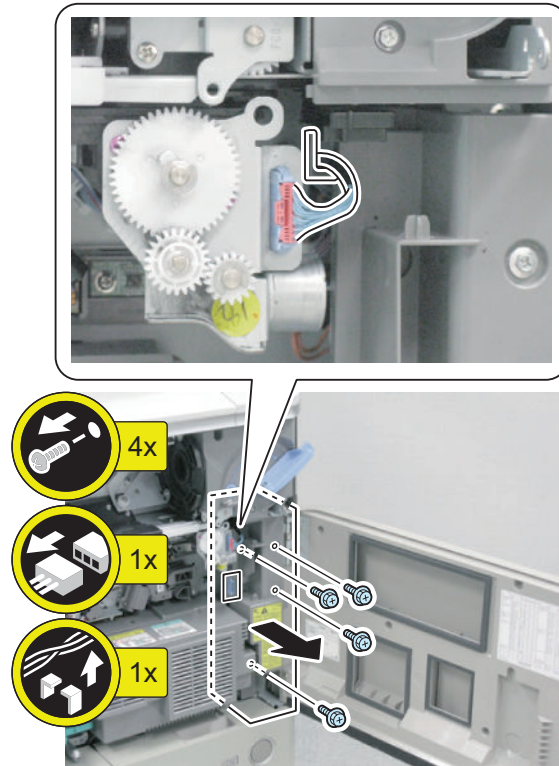
- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion

**11. Set the Fixing Feed Unit back.**

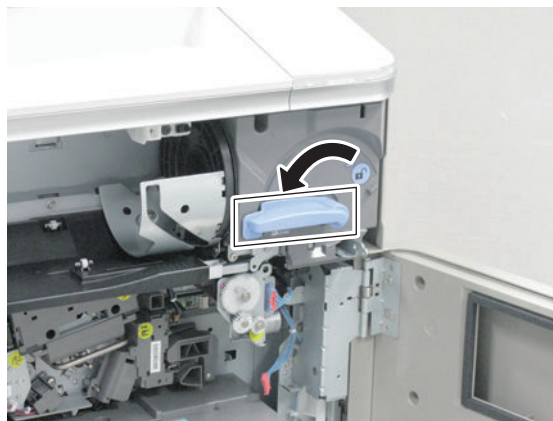


**12. Remove the Right Upper Inner Cover.**

- 4 Screws
- 1 Connector
- Harness



**13. Set the Lock Lever back.**

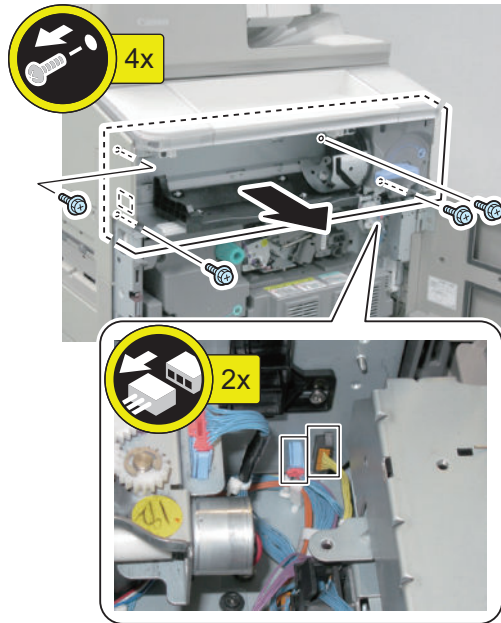


**14. Remove the Hopper Unit.**

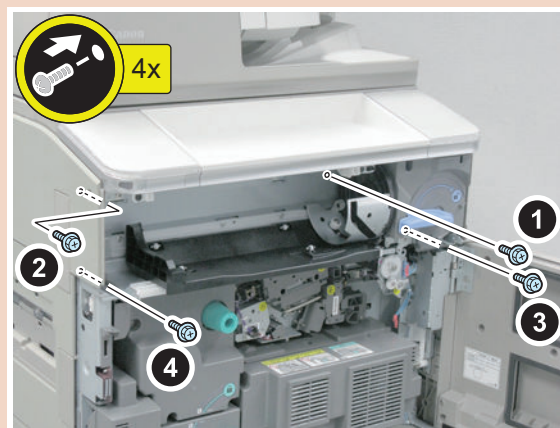
- 4 Screws
- 2 Connectors
- 1 Hook

**CAUTION:**

Put the removed Hopper Unit on paper placed on the work space.

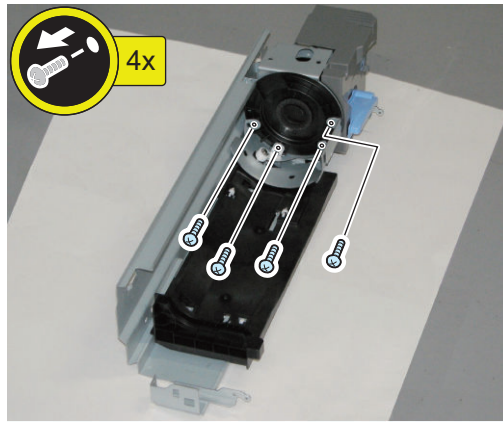
**CAUTION:**

When installing the Hopper Unit, be sure to follow the order as shown in the figure to tighten screws.





### 15. Remove the 4 Tapping Screws.



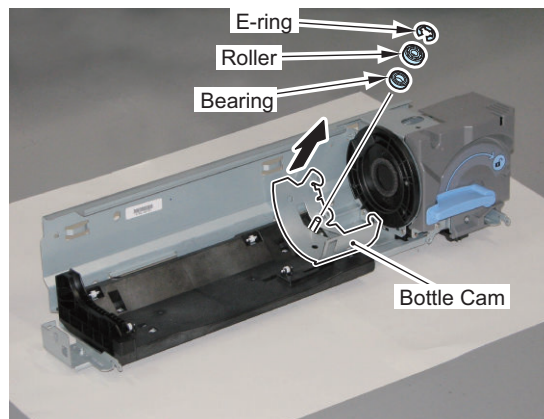
#### CAUTION:

Points to Note when Installing the Tapping Screws

When tightening the Tapping Screws, turn them in the reverse direction to check the screw thread on the Hopper Unit side before tightening them. Otherwise, the screw thread on the Hopper Unit side may be broken, which makes it impossible to tighten the screw.

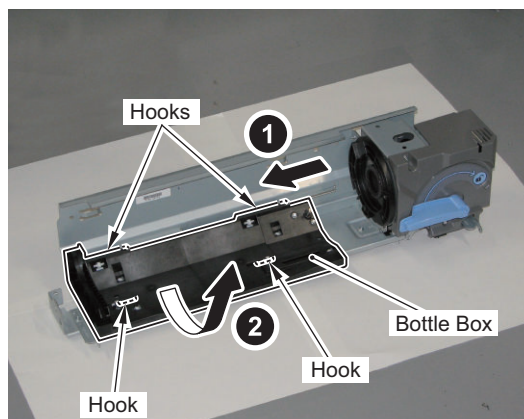
### 16. Remove the Bottle Cam.

- 1 E-ring
- 1 Roller
- 1 Bearing



### 17. Remove the Bottle Box.

- 4 Hooks



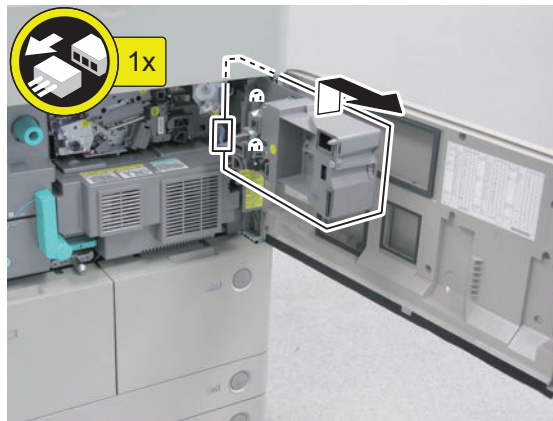
## ● Removing the Buffer Unit

### ■ Preparation

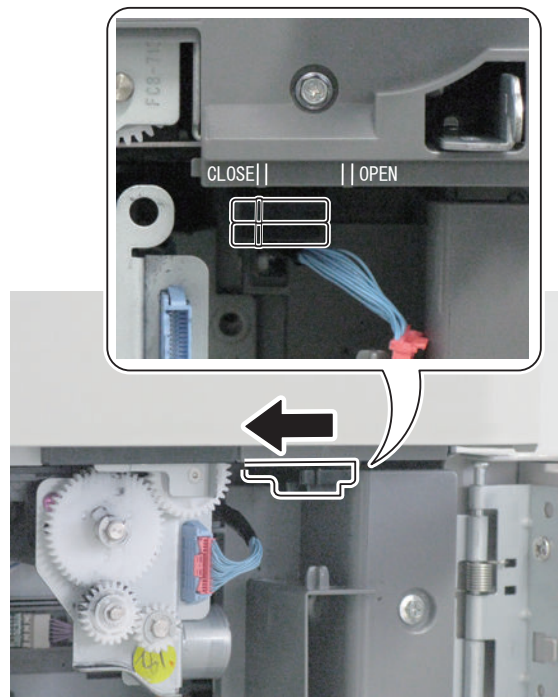
1. Open the Right Cover.
2. Remove the Developing Assembly. (“Removing the Developing Assembly” on page 377)

### ■ <Procedure>

1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Open the Inner Cover (Primary Charging Air Supply Fan Unit).
  - 1 Screws (to loosen)
3. Remove the Inner Cover (Primary Charging Air Supply Fan Unit).
  - 1 Connector
  - 2 Protrusions



4. Move the lever in the direction of the arrow to close the Shutter.

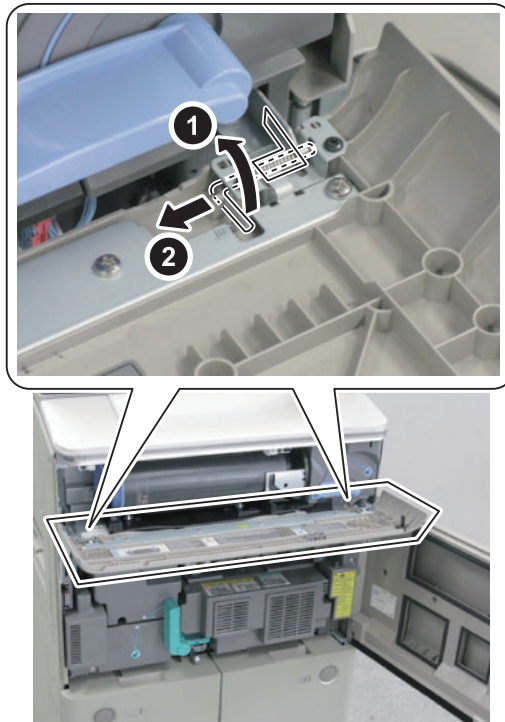


#### CAUTION:

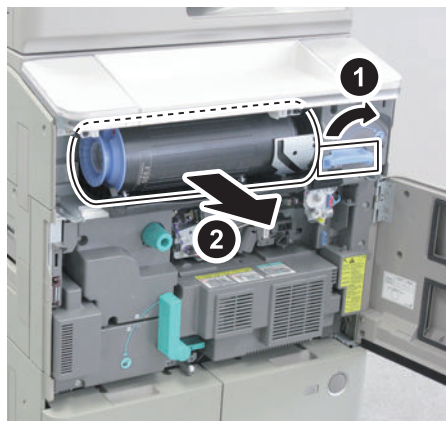
When starting the host machine, be sure to set the Shutter from CLOSE to OPEN.

**5. Remove the Front Upper Cover.**

- 2 Hinge Pins
- 2 Springs

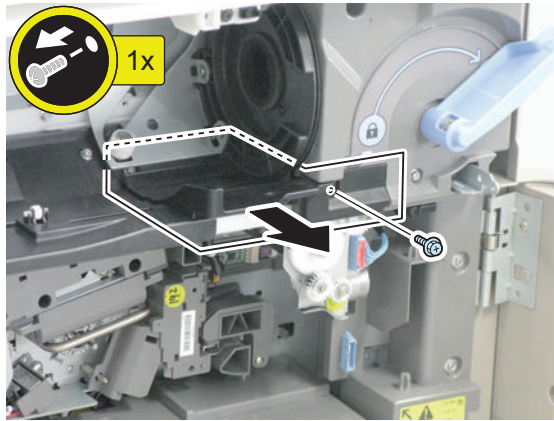


**6. Release the Lock Lever to remove the Toner Bottle.**



**7. Remove the Toner Receptacle Tray.**

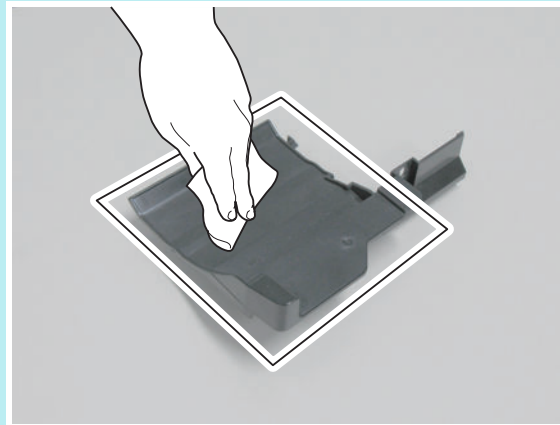
- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion

**CAUTION:**

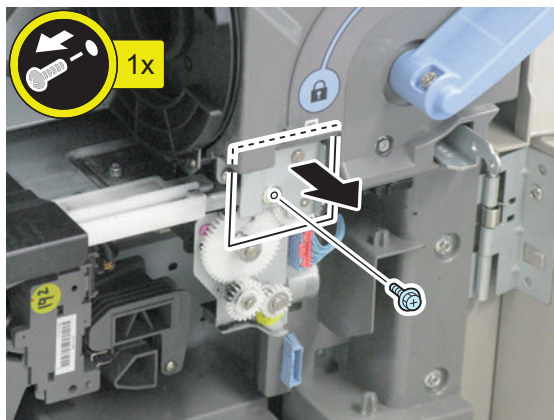
1. Be sure to fit the protrusion into the groove of the plate to install.
2. Toner can be accumulated in the Toner Receptacle Tray; therefore, be careful not to spill toner when removing.

**NOTE:**

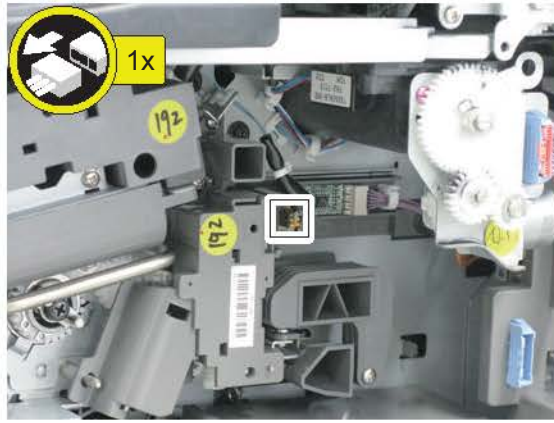
Clean the Toner Receptacle Tray with lint-free paper.

**8. Remove the Connecting Drive Unit.**

- 1 Screw



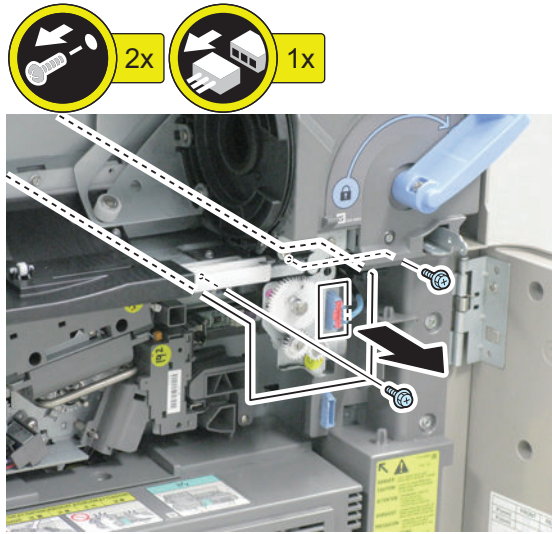
9. Disconnect the connector of the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly.





**10. Remove the Buffer Unit.**

- 2 Screws
- 1 Connector

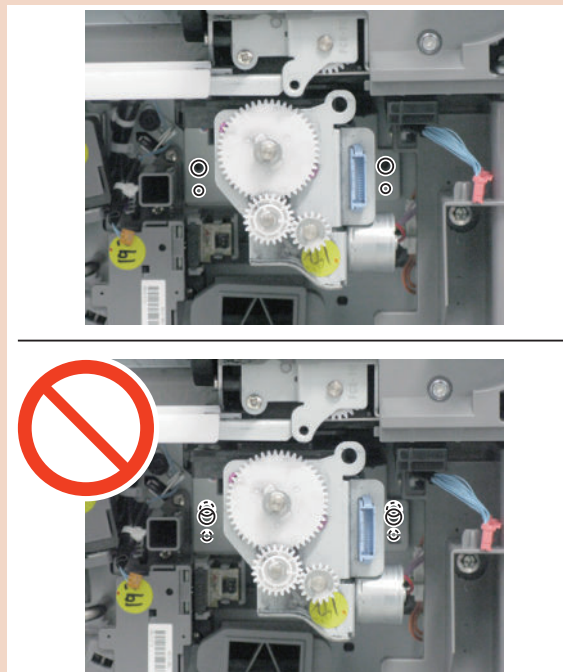
**CAUTION:**

When removing the Buffer Unit, be sure not to tilt the unit to prevent toner scattering.

**CAUTION:**

Points to Caution When Installing the Buffer Unit

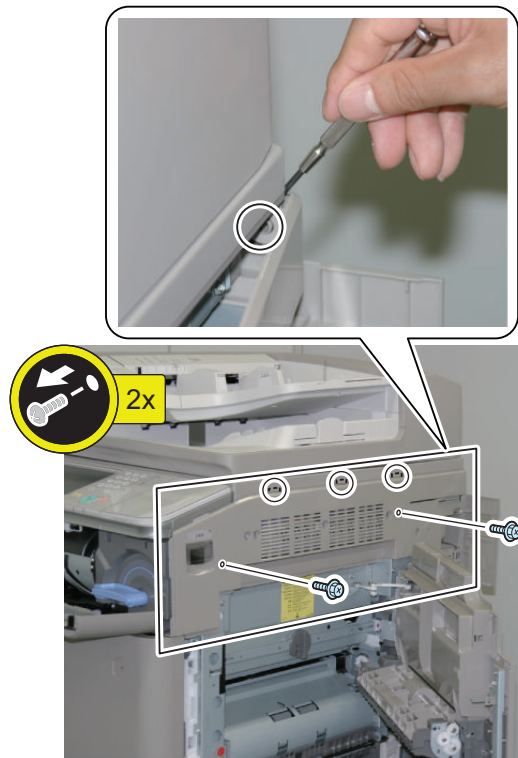
- Be sure to securely set the Buffer Unit on the Rail.
- Do not get the harness caught.
- Fit the emboss into the proper position; otherwise, toner can be scattered.
- Be sure to set the Shutter from CLOSE to OPEN.



## ● Removing the Potential Control PCB Unit

### ■ Preparation

1. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly Unit. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
2. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347)
3. Remove the Process Unit. (“Removing the Process Unit” on page 357)
4. Remove the Hopper Unit. (“Removing the Hopper Unit” on page 419)
5. Open the Right Door.
6. Remove the Right Upper Cover.
  1. Open the Front Upper Cover.
  2. Open the Right Door.
  3. Open the Box Cover (Right).
  4. Remove the Right Upper Cover.
    - 2 Screws
    - 1 Boss
    - 3 Protrusions



## ■ <Procedure>

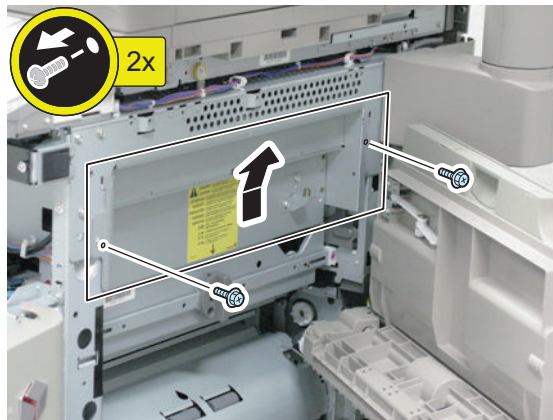
### 1. Remove the Right Door Link Unit from the pin.

- 1 E-ring



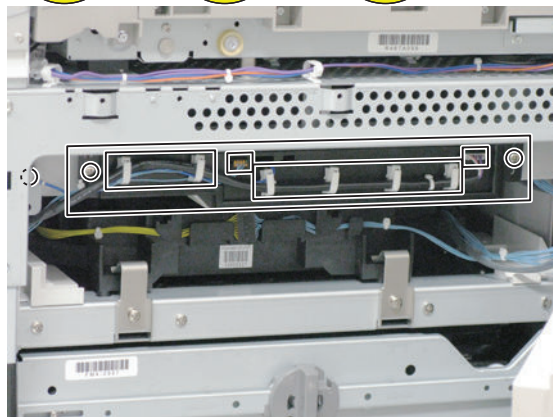
### 2. Remove the Right Shield Plate.

- 2 Screws



### 3. Remove the Potential Control Tray.

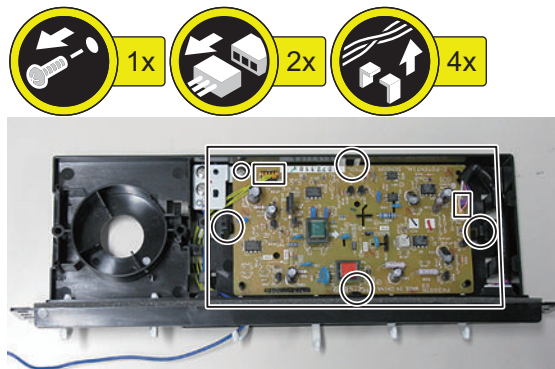
- 3 Screws
- 2 Connectors
- Wire Saddle



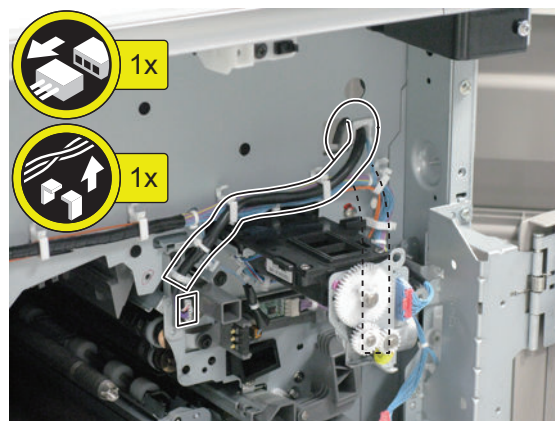


**4. Remove the Potential Sensor Control PCB.**

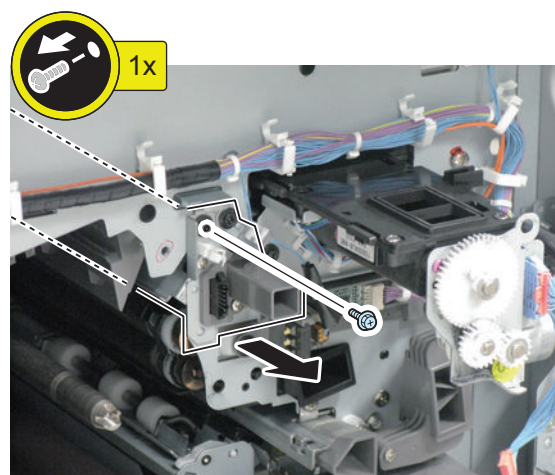
- 1 Screw
- 4 Claws
- 2 Connectors

**5. Remove the harness.**

- 1 Connector
- Edge Saddle
- Wire Saddle

**6. Remove the Potential Sensor.**

- 1 Screw

**■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts****1. Adjust the Potential Sensor offset.**

(Lv.1) COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > OFST

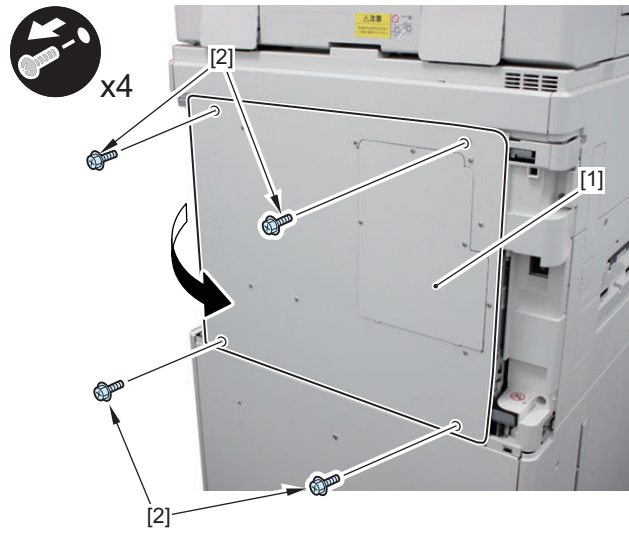
## ● Removing the Waste Toner Feed Unit

### ■ Preparation

1. Remove the Left Rear Cover .



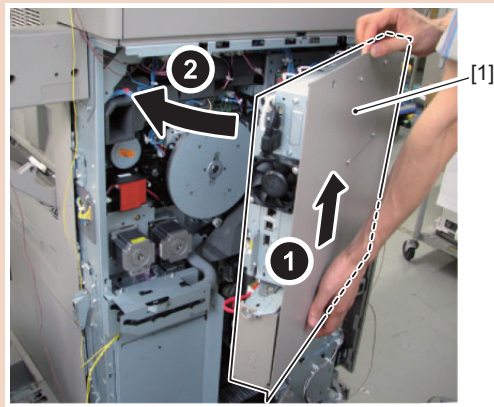
2. Open the Controller Box [1].
  - 4 Screws [2]



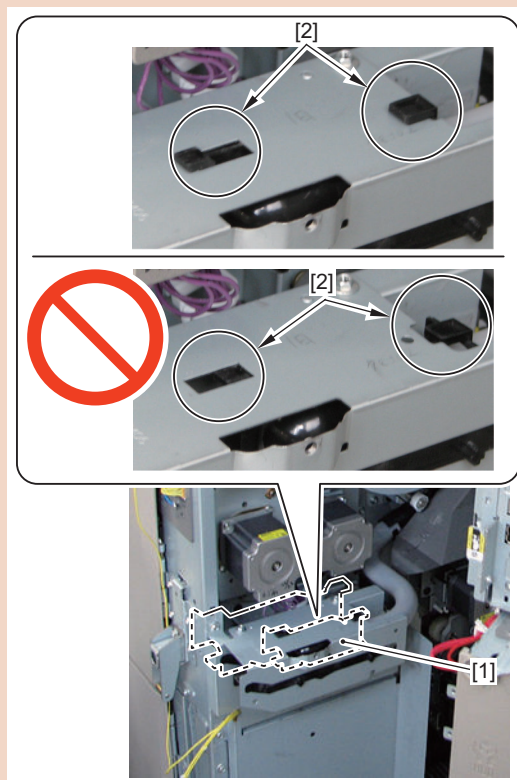
**CAUTION:**

Points to Note when Installing the Controller Box

While installing the Controller Box, be sure to lift it to avoid hitting the hook of the Waste Toner Container Shutter Unit.

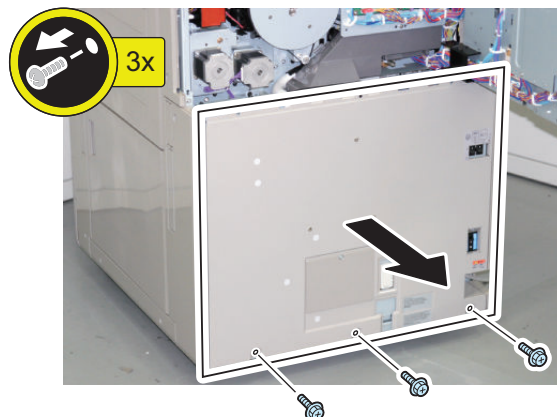


If the Inner Cover of the Controller Box hits the hook of the Waste Toner Container Shutter Unit, the hook may be removed.



**3. Remove the Rear Lower Cover.**

- 3 Screws



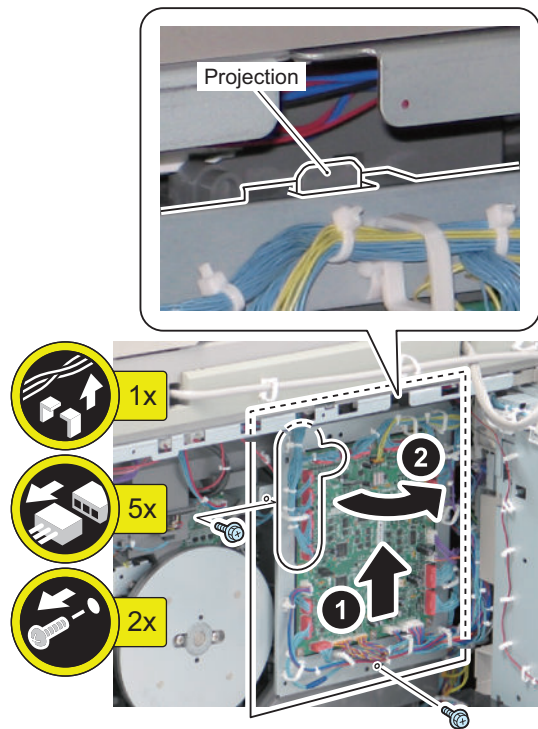
## ■ <Procedure>

### 1. Open the Motor Driver Support Plate.

- 2 Screws
- 5 Connectors
- Wire Saddle
- Reuse Band

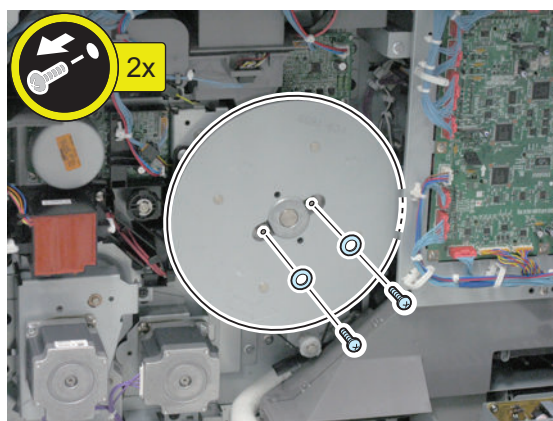
#### NOTE:

When opening the Motor Driver Support Plate, be sure to free from the protrusion.



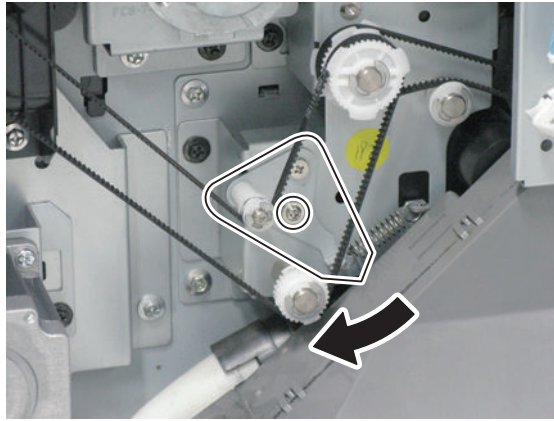
### 2. Remove the Flywheel.

- 2 Screws

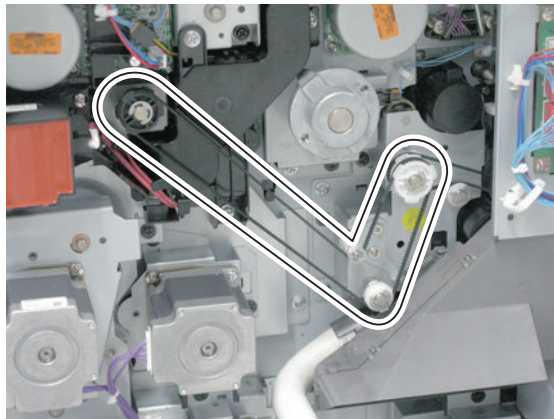




3. Loosen the screw and move the Belt Tensioner in the direction of the arrow, and then again tighten the screw.

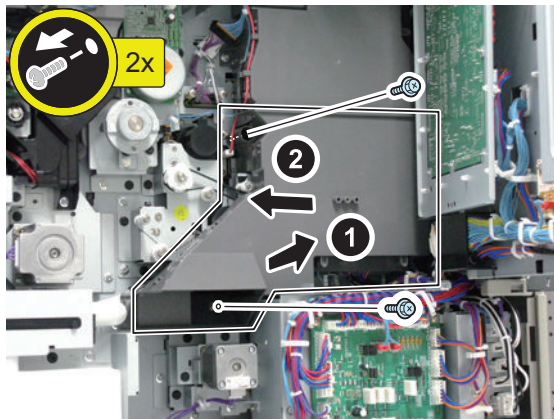


4. Remove the belt from the pulley.



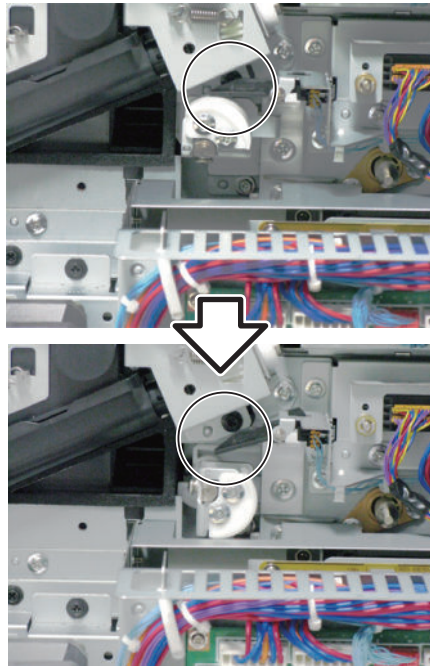
5. Remove the Duct.

- 2 Screws

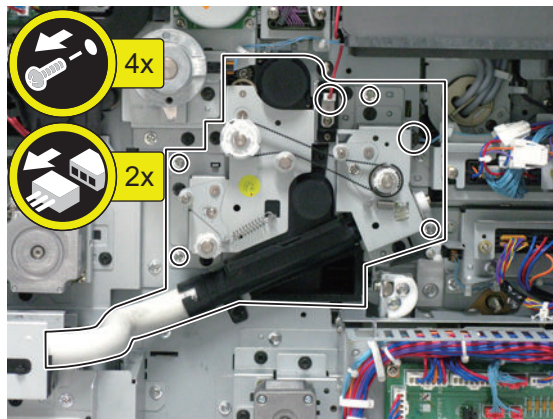


**6. Open the Front Cover to move the Fixing Feed Lever down.**

(To move the cam at the rear of the Fixing Feed Lever Shaft to the position where it does not interfere with the Waste Toner Feed Unit.)

**7. Remove the Waste Toner Feed Unit.**

- 2 Connectors
- 4 Screws



## Removing the Drum Drive Unit

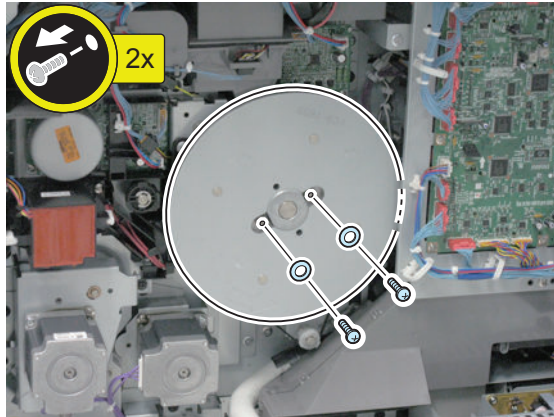
### ■ Preparation

1. Open the Inner Cover. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
2. Remove the Primary Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329)
3. Remove the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly. (“Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly” on page 347)
4. Remove the Process Unit. (“Removing the Process Unit” on page 357)
5. Remove the Left Rear Cover. (“Removing the Waste Toner Feed Unit” on page 435)
6. Open the Controller Box. (“Removing the Waste Toner Feed Unit” on page 435)

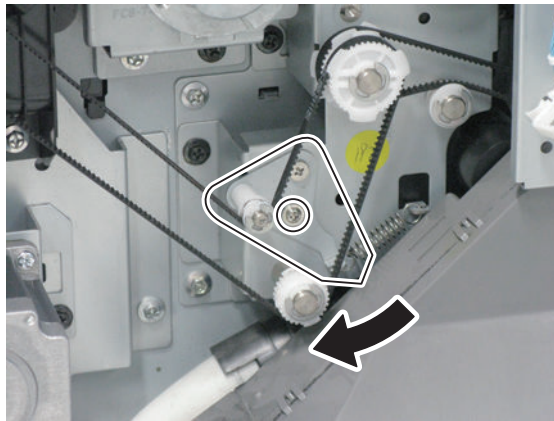
## ■ Procedure

### 1. Remove the Flywheel.

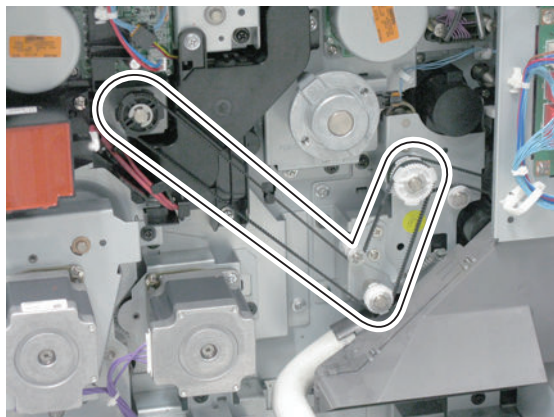
- 2 Screws
- 2 Washers



### 2. Loosen the screw and move the Belt Tensioner in the direction of the arrow, and then again tighten the screw.



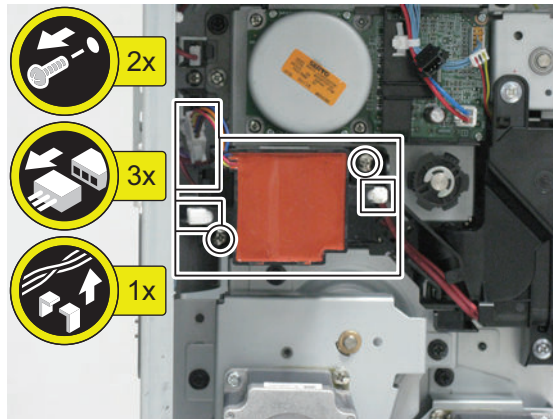
### 3. Remove the belt from the pulley.





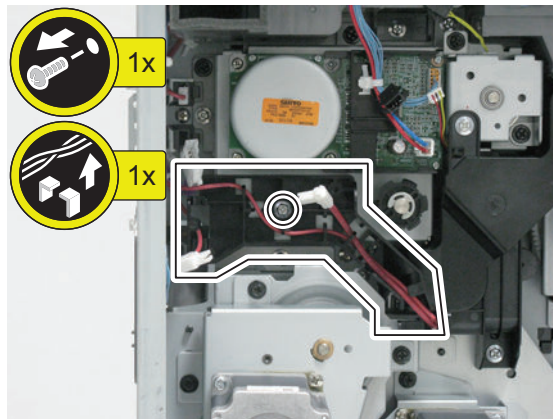
**4. Remove the transformer.**

- 2 Screws
- 3 Connectors
- 1 Wire Saddle



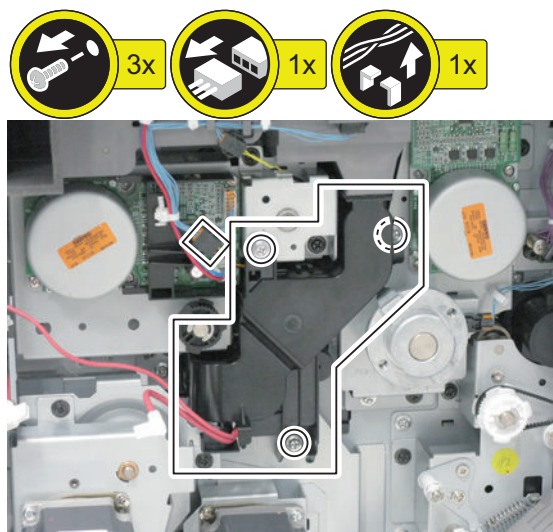
**5. Free the harness and remove the Transformer Support Base.**

- 1 Screw
- Harness



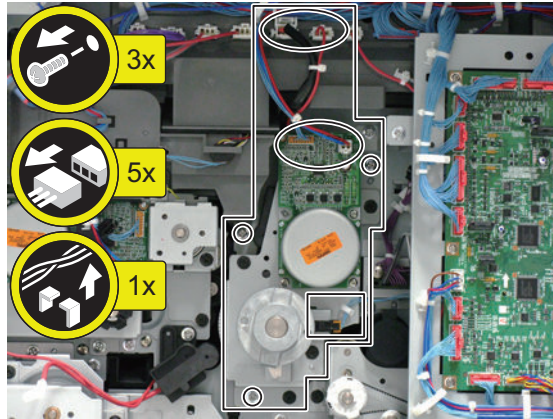
**6. Remove the Duct Unit.**

- 3 Screws
- 1 Connector
- Harness



**7. Remove the Drum Drive Unit.**

- 5 Connectors
- 1 Wire Saddle
- 3 Screws



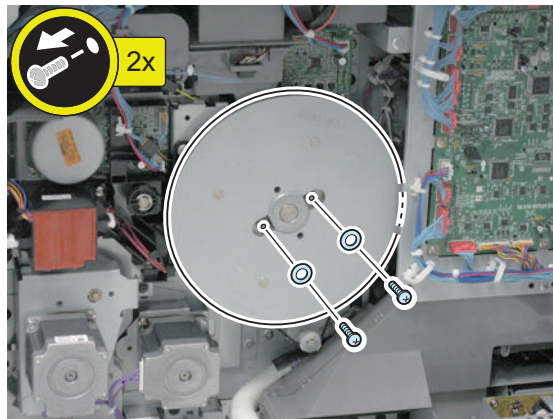
## Removing the Developing Drive Unit

### ■ Preparation

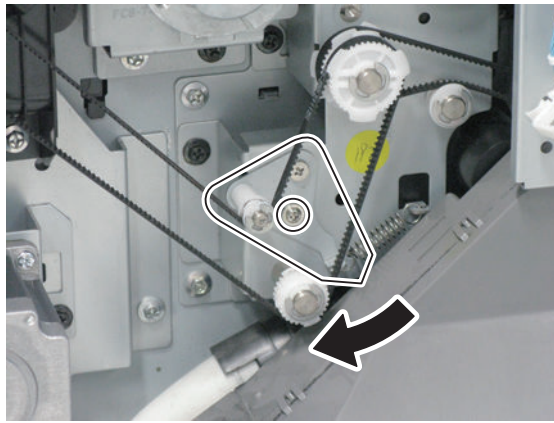
1. Remove the Developing Assembly. (“Removing the Developing Assembly” on page 377)
2. Remove the Box Cover (Left). (“Removing the Waste Toner Feed Unit” on page 435)
3. Open the Controller Box. (“Removing the Waste Toner Feed Unit” on page 435)

### ■ <Procedure>

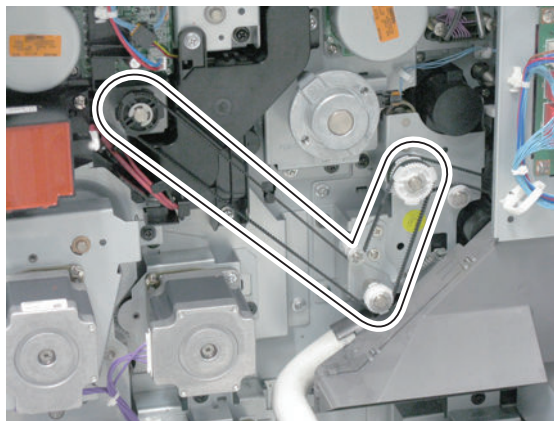
1. Remove the Flywheel.
  - 2 Screws
  - 2 Washers



2. Loosen the screw and move the Belt Tensioner in the direction of the arrow, and then again tighten the screw.

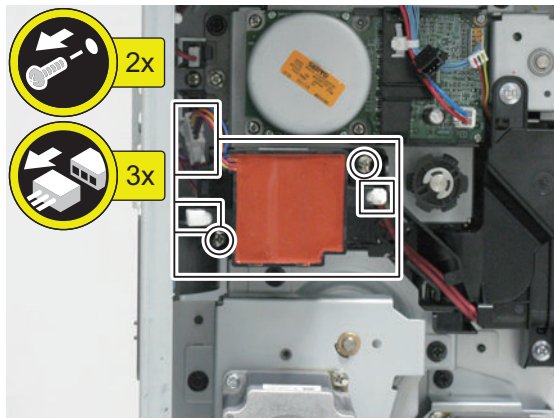


3. Remove the belt from the pulley.



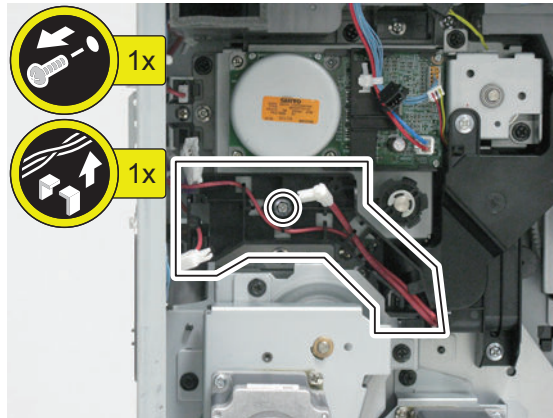
4. Remove the transformer.

- 2 Screws
- 3 Connectors



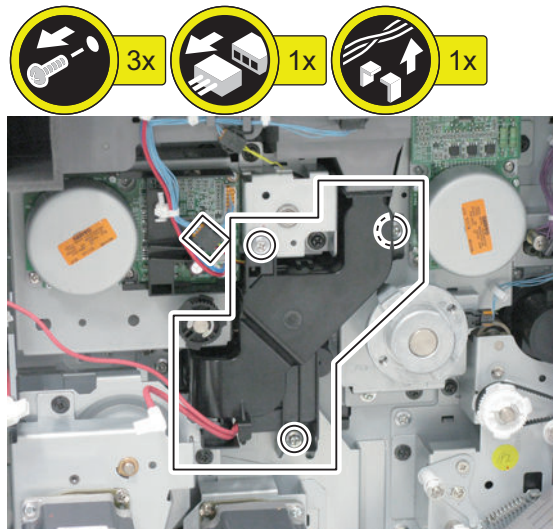
**5. Free the harness and remove the Transformer Support Base.**

- 1 Screw
- Harness



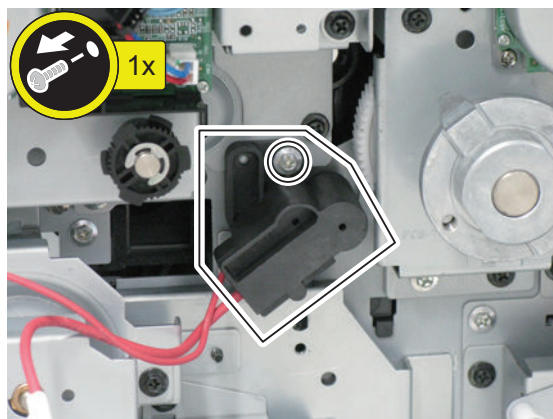
**6. Remove the Duct Unit.**

- 3 Screws
- 1 Connector
- Harness



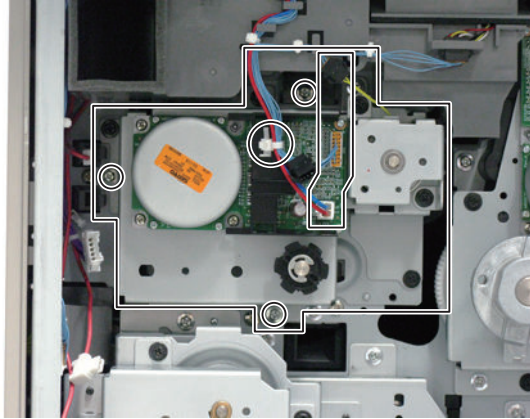
**7. Disconnect the Pre-transfer Charging High Voltage Connector.**

- 1 Screw



**8. Remove the Developing Drive Unit.**

- 3 Connectors
- 1 Reuse Band
- 3 Screws





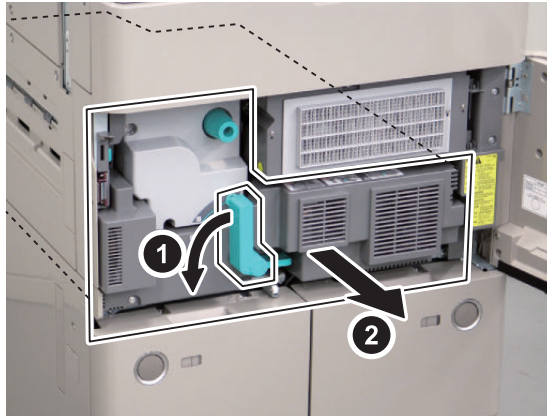
## Fixing System

### ● Removing the Fixing Assembly

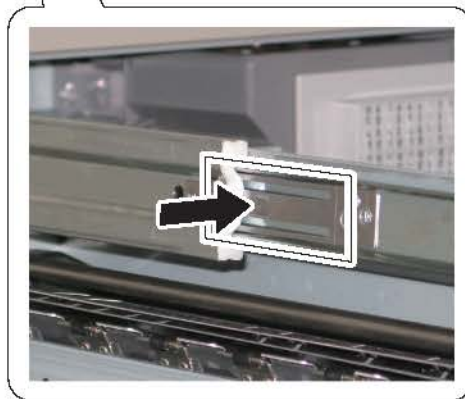
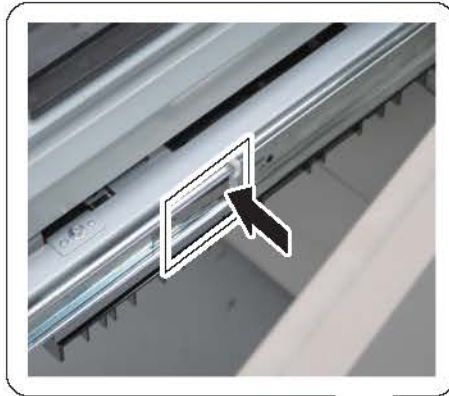
#### ■ <Preparation>

##### 1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit.

1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Turn the Fixing Feed Unit Pressure Release Lever in the direction of the arrow to pull out the Fixing Feed Unit.



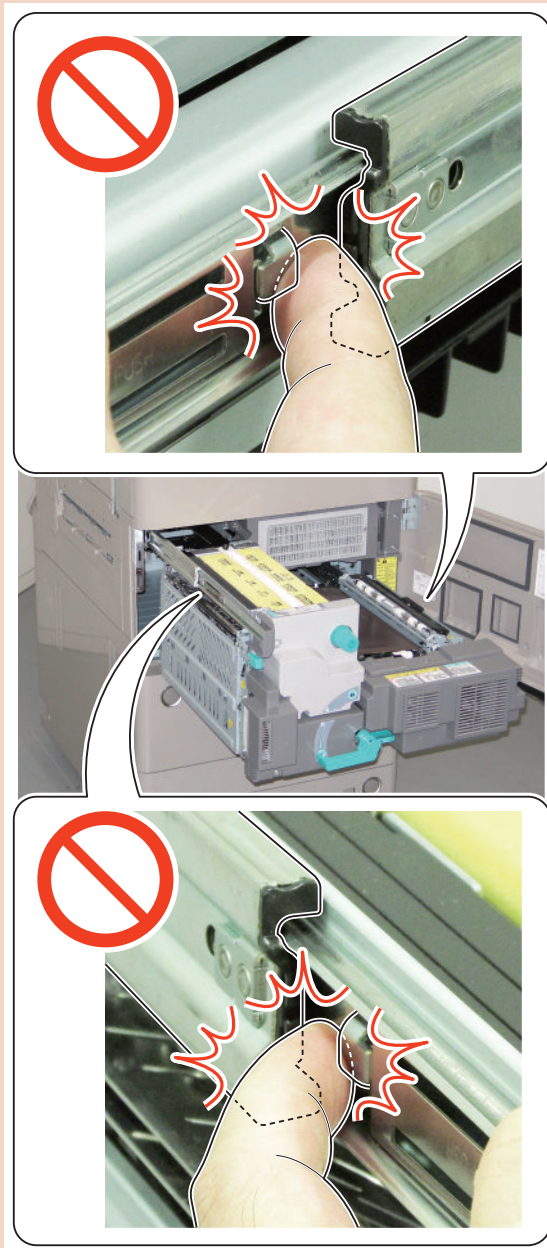
3. Push to release the Release Springs at both sides of the Rail, and then further pull out the Fixing Feed Unit until it stops.



**CAUTION:**

Caution when pushing the Fixing Feed Unit in

While pressing the Release Springs, slowly push the Fixing Feed Unit in so that the fingers do not get caught.

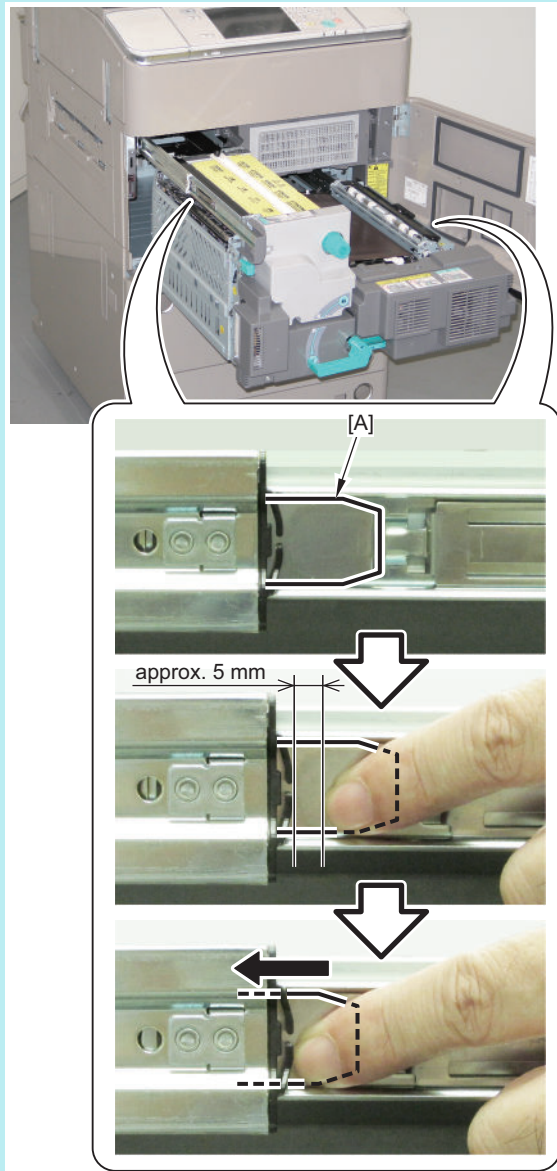




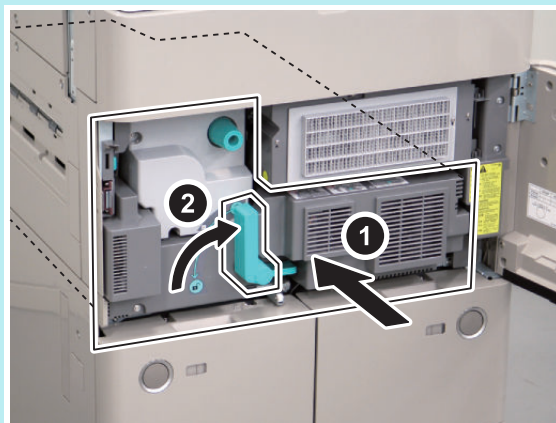
**NOTE:**

How to push the Fixing Feed Unit in

1. Release the Release Springs [A] on the side of either rail.  
Slowly push the Fixing Feed Unit in by approximately 5 mm while keeping it level.



2. Take the fingers off the Release Springs and slowly push the Fixing Feed Unit in to the end.

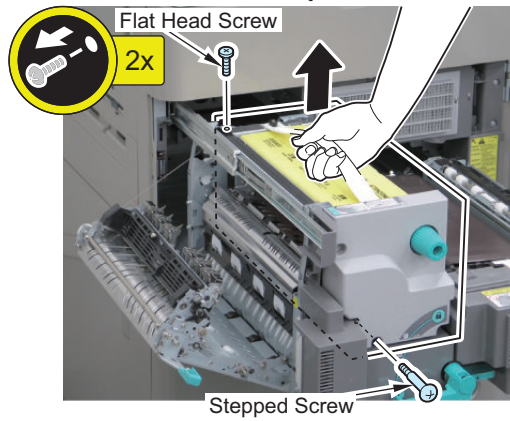
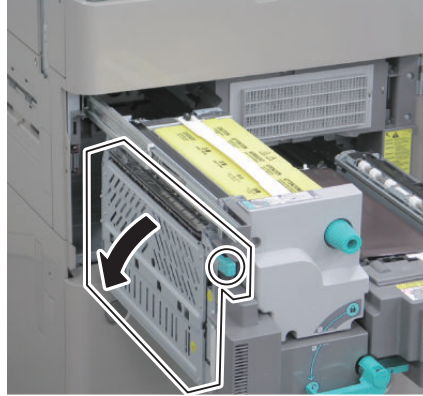


## ■ <Procedure>

1. Hold the Lever of the Feed Unit to open the Feed Unit.

**2. Remove the Fixing Assembly.**

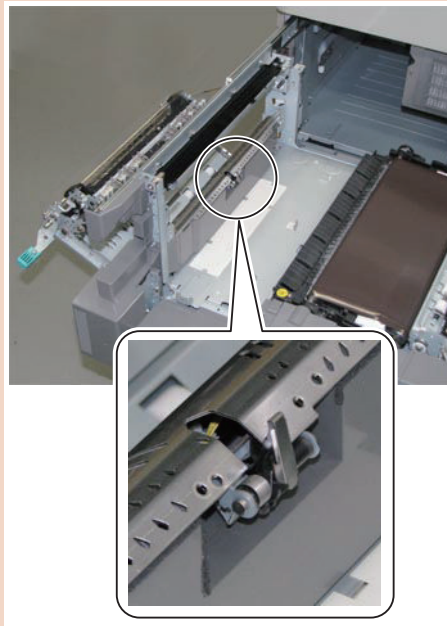
- 2 Screws



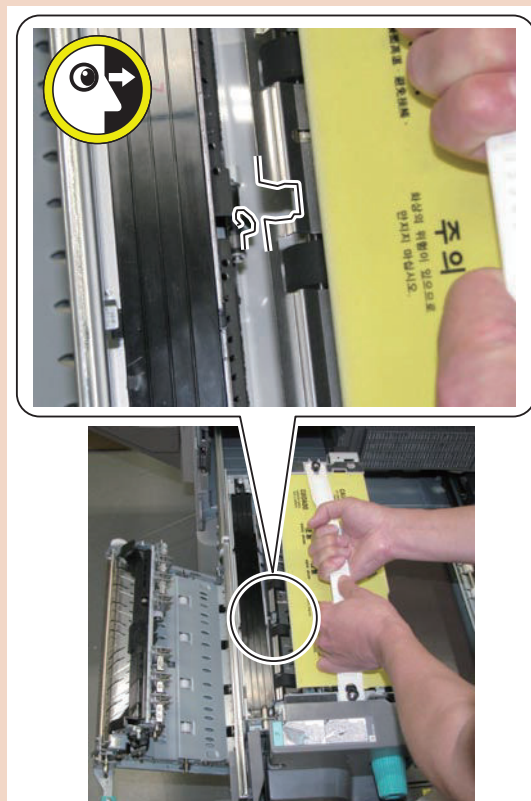
**CAUTION:**

Points to Caution at Installation

- Be careful not to damage the Inner Delivery Sensor Flag.



- When installing the Fixing Assembly, be sure that the Inner Delivery Sensor Flag passes through the cut-off of the Fixing Outlet Guide.



## **● Cleaning the Fixing Inlet Guide, Fixing Inlet Sensor Flag, Fixing Right Stay, Dowel, Dowel Holder**

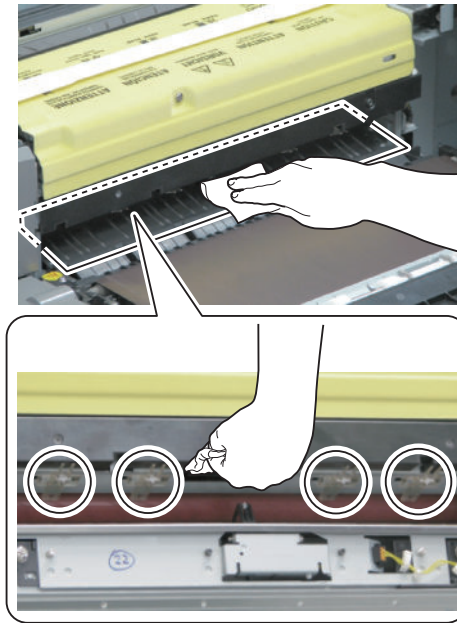
### **■ Preparation**

1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. (“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447)

2. Remove the Fixing Assembly. (“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447)

■ <Procedure>

1. Clean the Fixing Inlet Guide with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.
2. Clean the Fixing Right Stay, Dowel, Dowel Holder with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

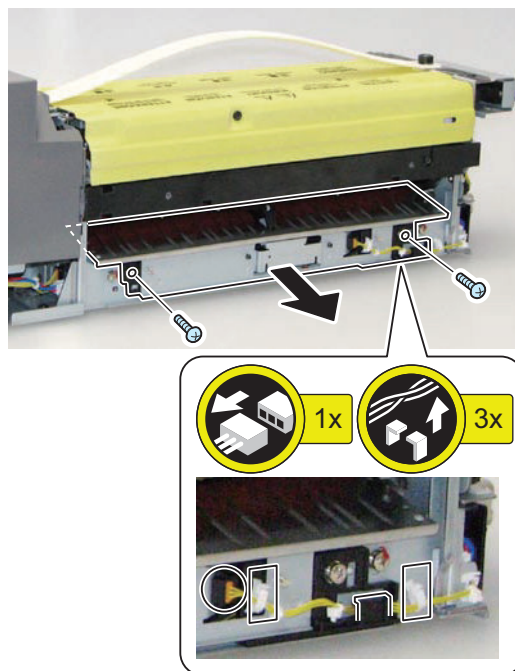
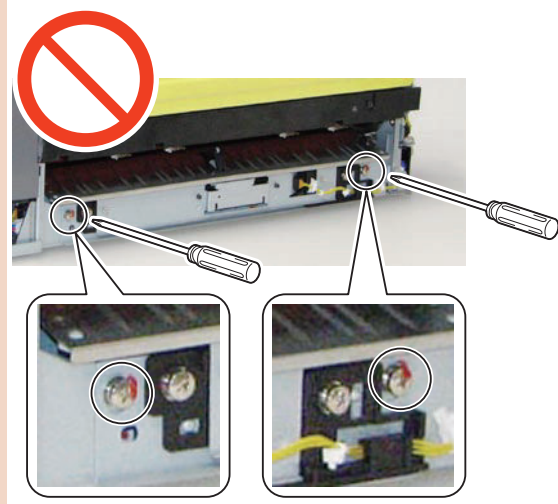


**3. Remove the Fixing Inlet Guide Unit.**

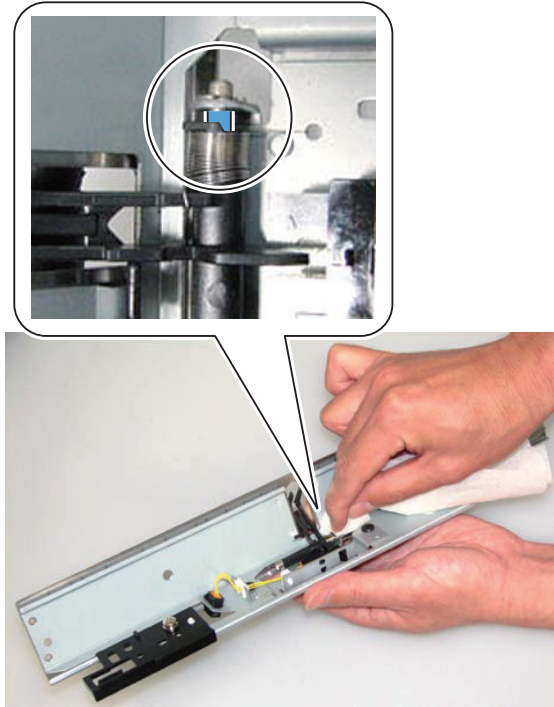
- 1 Connector
- 2 Wire Saddles
- 1 Harness Guide
- 2 Screws

**CAUTION:**

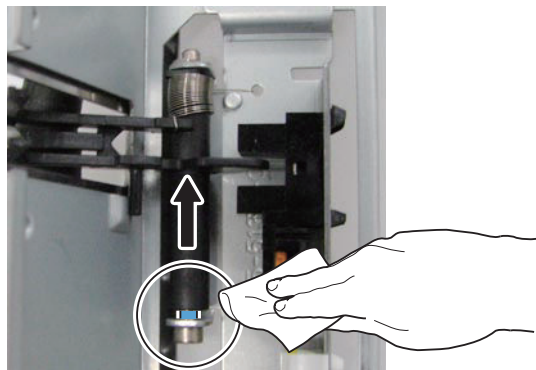
When removing the Fixing Inlet Guide Unit, be careful no to turn the 2 Adjustment Screws.



4. Turn over the Fixing Inlet Guide Unit, and insert lint-free paper into the clearance (front side) between the Fixing Inlet Sensor Flag Shaft and the Shaft Support Plate to remove the accumulated paper lint by dry wipe.



5. Slide the sensor flag to the rear side, and insert lint-free paper into the clearance (rear side) between the Fixing Inlet Sensor Flag Shaft and the Shaft Support Plate to remove the accumulated paper lint by dry wipe.



**CAUTION:**

Checking after Cleaning the Fixing Inlet Sensor Flag Shaft

Be sure to check that the sensor flag rotates and moves back and forth smoothly by moving it manually.

## Cleaning the Inner Delivery Roller

### ■ Preparation

1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. (“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447)
2. Remove the Fixing Assembly. (“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447)



## ■ <Procedure>

1. Clean the Inner Delivery Roller with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



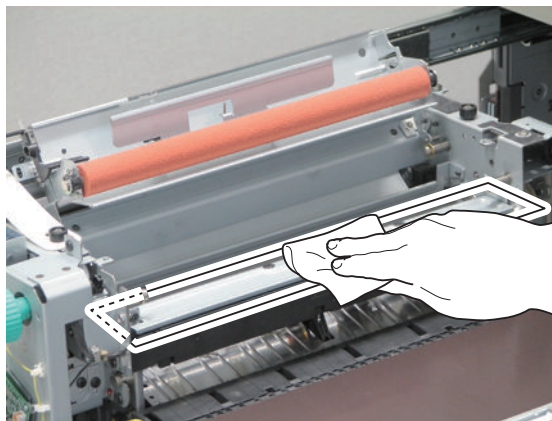
## ● Cleaning the Fixing Oil Pan, Fixing Cleaning Web Guide

### ■ Preparation

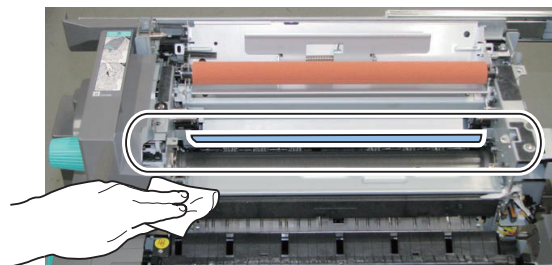
1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. (“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447)
2. Remove the Fixing Front Cover. (“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456)
3. Remove the Fixing Upper Cover. (“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456)

### ■ Procedure

1. Clean the surface of the Fixing Oil Pan with lint-free paper.



2. Clean the surface of the Fixing Cleaning Web Guide with lint-free paper.



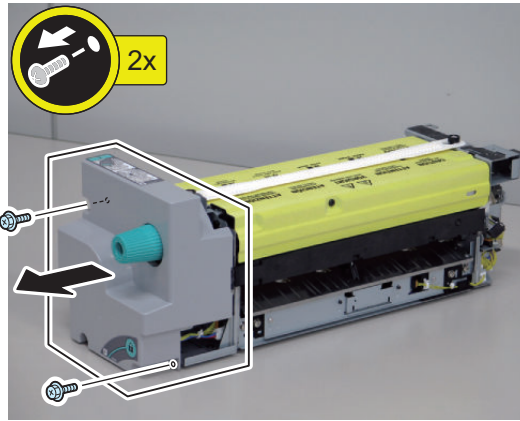
## ● Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web

### ■ Preparation

1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. (“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447)

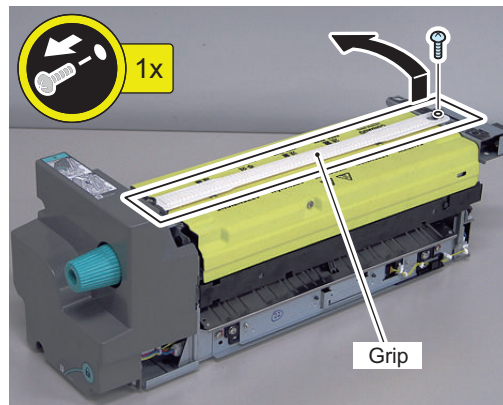
**2. Remove the Fixing Front Cover.**

1. Remove the Fixing Front Cover.
  - 2 Screws

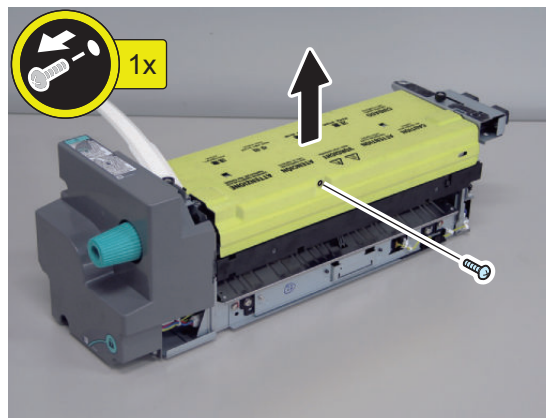


**3. Remove the Fixing Upper Cover.**

1. Remove the Handle
  - 1 Screw



2. Remove the Fixing Upper Cover.
  - 1 Screw





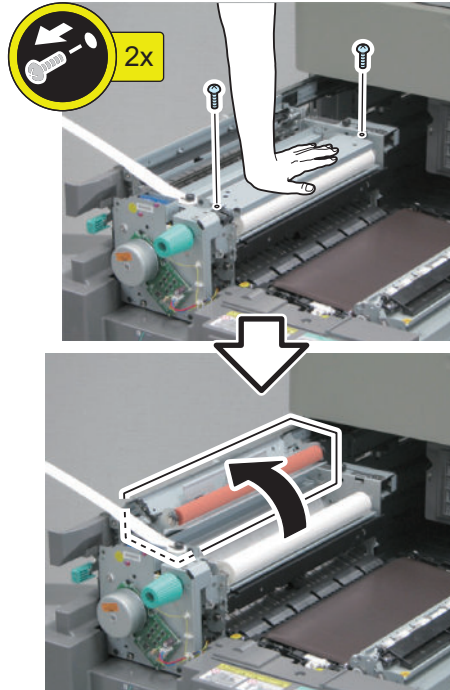
## ■ <Procedure>

### 1. Open the Fixing Cleaning Web Cover.

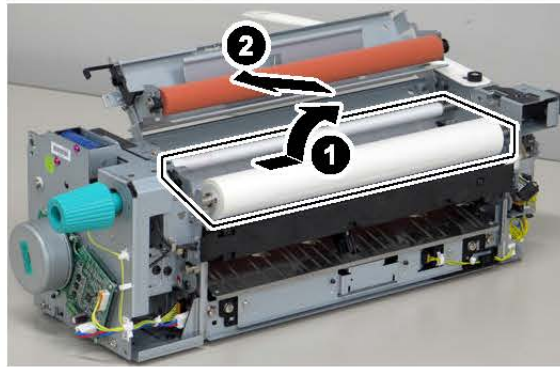
- 2 Screws

**NOTE:**

Because it is engaged, hold the Fixing Cleaning Web Cover to remove the screws.



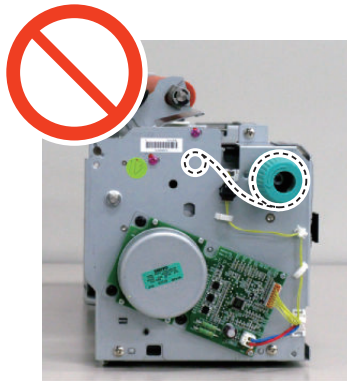
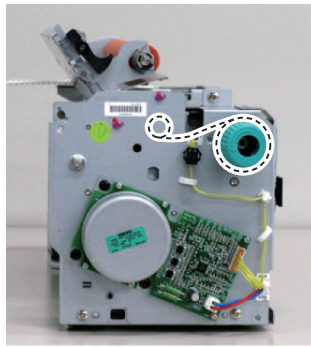
2. Remove the Fixing Cleaning Web.



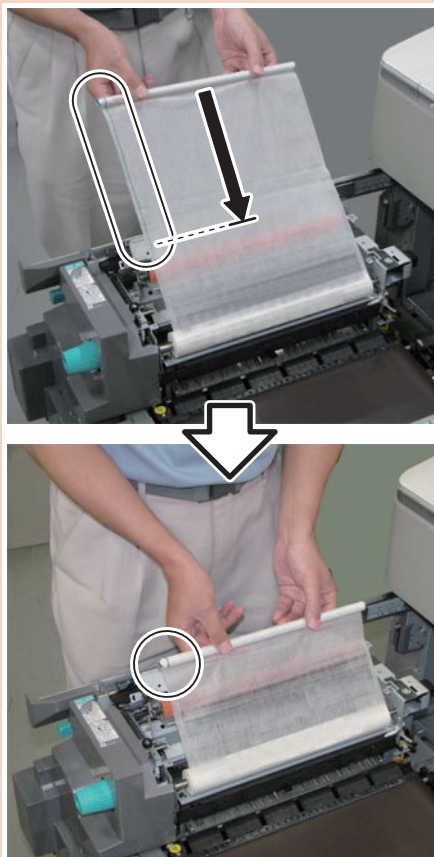
**CAUTION:**

## Points to Caution at Installation

- Be sure to install the Fixing Cleaning Web in the correct direction.



- When installing the Fixing Cleaning Web, be sure to wind the web around the Web Take-up Roller until green and red line on the web disappears from view.



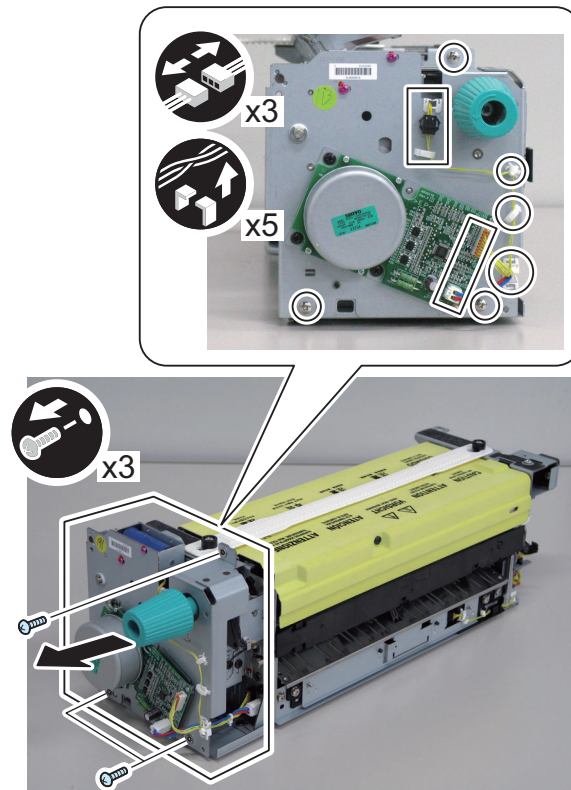
## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. Clear the Fixing Cleaning Web take-up counter.(COPIER > COUNTER > MISC > FIX-WEB)
2. Clear the parts counter.(COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > FX-WEB)

## ● Separating the Fixing Upper Unit from the Fixing Lower Unit

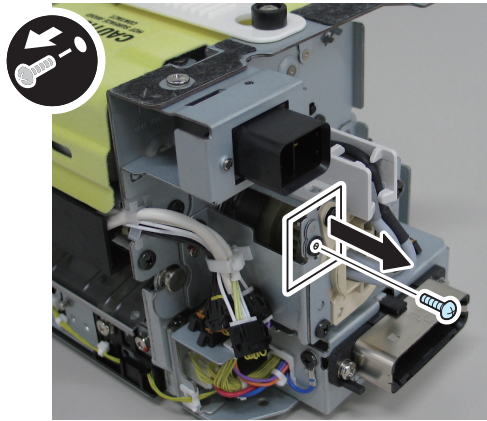
### ■ Preparation

1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit.(“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447)
2. Remove the Fixing Assembly.(“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447)
3. Remove the Fixing Front Cover.(“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456)
4. Remove the Fixing Drive Unit 1.
  - Wire Saddle
  - Edge Saddle
  - Reuse Band
  - 3 Connectors
  - 3 Screws

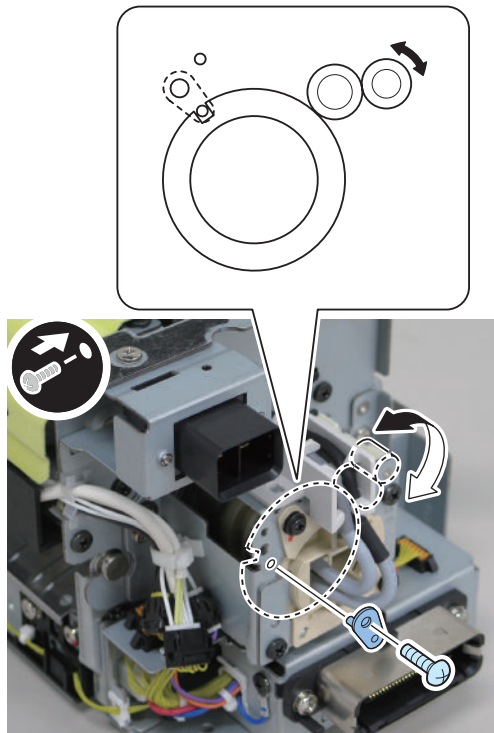


**5. Secure the Shutter Drive Gear.**

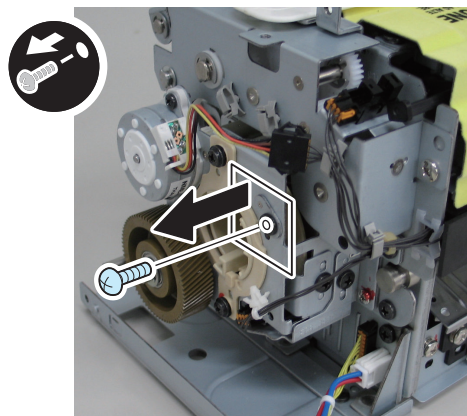
1. Remove the Fixing Pin for the Shutter Drive Gear (Rear).
  - 1 Screw



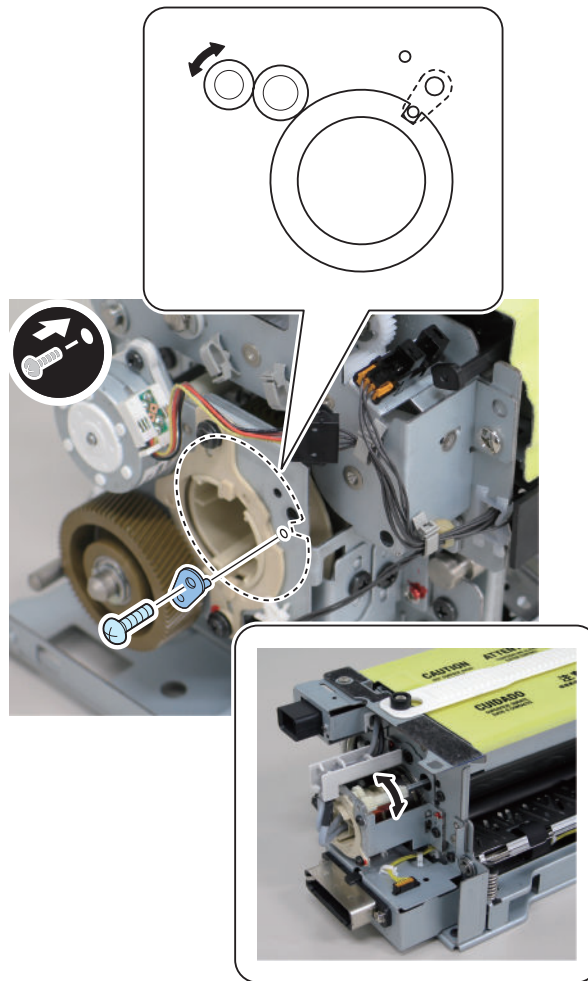
2. Rotate the Shutter Drive Gear (Rear) with fingers. Then, align the cut-off of the Shutter Gear with the hole position, and secure with the Fixing Pin removed in step 5-1.
  - 1 Screw



3. Remove the Fixing Pin for the Shutter Drive Gear (Front).
  - 1 Screw



4. Align the cut-off of the Shutter Drive Gear (Front) with the hole position of the Plate, and then secure with the Fixing Pin removed previously.
  - 1 Screw

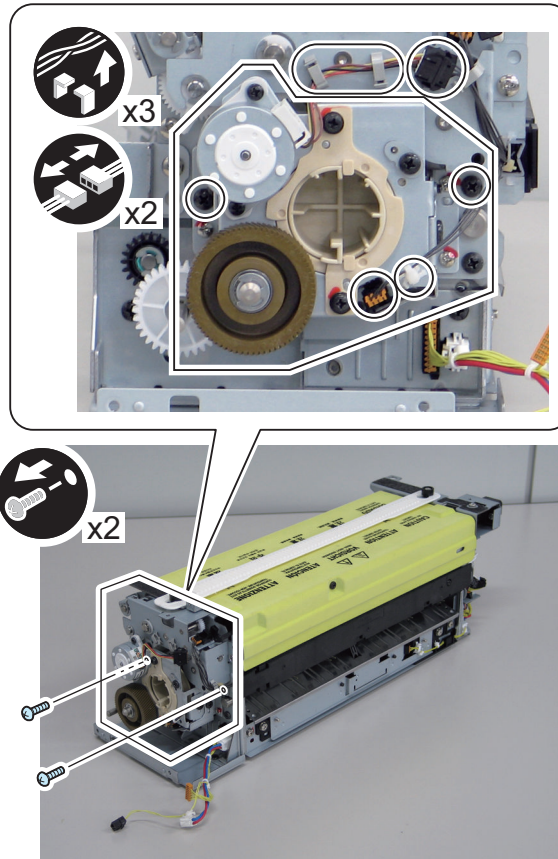




## ■ Procedure

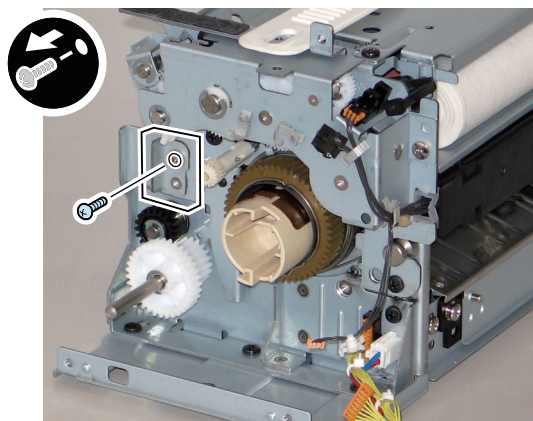
### 1. Remove the Fixing Drive Unit 2.

- Wire Saddle
- Reuse Band
- 2 Connectors
- 2 Screws



### 2. Remove the Fixing Pin.

- 1 Screw



### 3. Disconnect the 5 Connectors on the other side of the Fixing Assembly.

- Wire Saddle

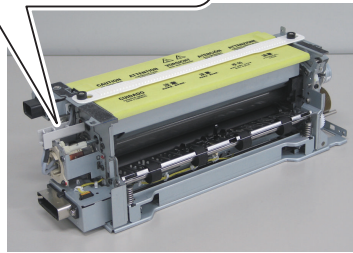
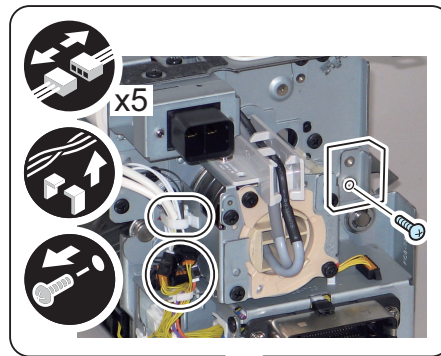
### 4. Remove the Fixing Pin.

- 1 Screw

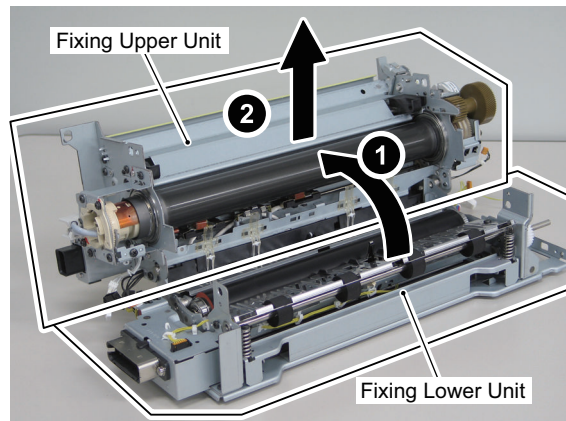


**NOTE:**

Because it is engaged, hold the Fixing Upper Unit to remove the Fixing Pin.



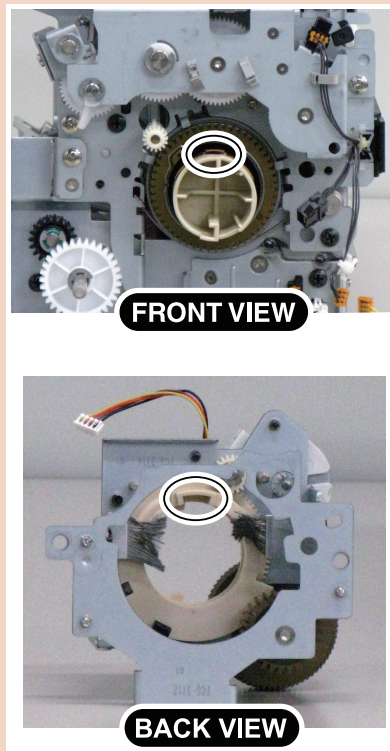
### 5. Separate the Fixing Upper Unit from the Fixing Lower Unit.



#### CAUTION:

Points to Caution at Installation of the Fixing Drive Unit 2

Be sure to fit the protrusion of the Fixing Shutter to the groove of the Fixing Shutter Drive Gear (Front) to install.



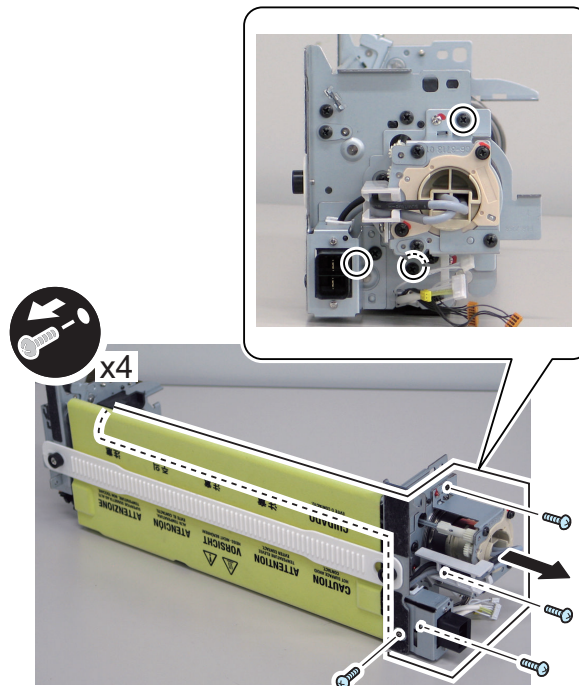
Remove the Fixing Pin for the Shutter Drive Gear (Front) and return to the original position. (Refer to "Separating the Fixing Upper Unit from the Fixing Lower Unit")

## ● Removing the Fixing Roller, Insulating Bush and Thrust Stopper

### ■ Preparation

1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. ("Removing the Fixing Assembly" on page 447)
2. Remove the Fixing Assembly. ("Removing the Fixing Assembly" on page 447)
3. Remove the Fixing Front Cover. ("Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web" on page 456)
4. Remove the Fixing Drive Unit 1. ("Separating the Fixing Upper Unit from the Fixing Lower Unit" on page 461)
5. Secure the Shutter Drive Gear. ("Separating the Fixing Upper Unit from the Fixing Lower Unit" on page 461)

6. Separate the Fixing Upper Unit from the Fixing Lower Unit. (“Separating the Fixing Upper Unit from the Fixing Lower Unit” on page 461)
7. Remove the Heater Unit.
- 4 Screws

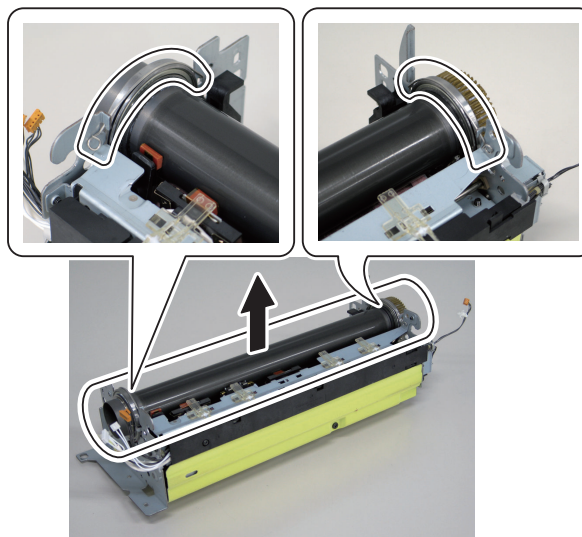
**CAUTION:**

Points to Caution at Installation of the Heater Unit

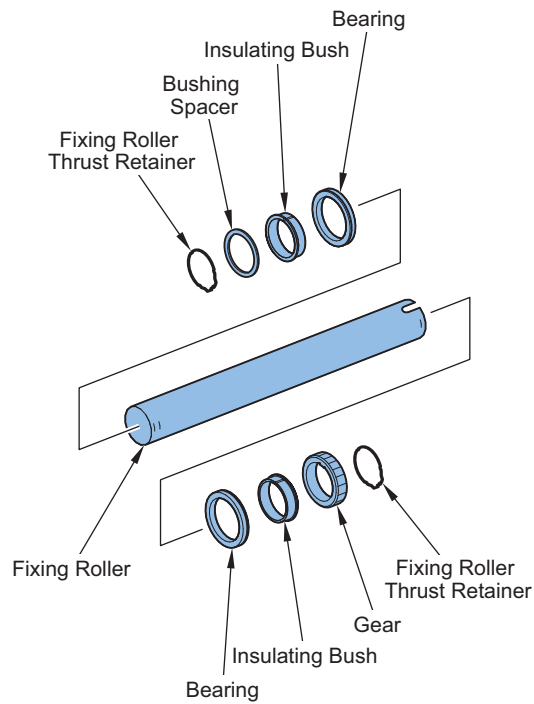
Remove the Fixing Pin for the Shutter Drive Gear (Rear) and return to the original position. (Refer to “Separating the Fixing Upper Unit from the Fixing Lower Unit” on page 461)

## ■ Procedure

1. Place the Fixing Upper Unit as shown in the figure and remove the Fixing Roller Bearing Retainer.
2. Remove the Fixing Roller Unit.



### 3. Remove the Thrust Stopper from the Fixing Roller Unit to remove the Fixing Roller.



#### CAUTION:

Points to Caution at Installation

Be sure to locate the groove of the Fixing Roller Bearing inside the Fixing Upper Unit to install.



#### CAUTION:

Points to Caution when Replacing the Fixing Roller

Do not reuse the once removed Thrust Stopper.

If the Thrust Stopper is reused, it may come off during printing.

## ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

### 1. Grease Application

Apply approx. 20mg of grease (MOLYKOTE HP-300; CK-8012) to inner circumference and outer circumference of the Insulating Bush so that all circumferences are covered with white film.

### 2. Clear the parts counter.

(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > FX-UP-RL

(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > FX-IN-BS

(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > FX-RTNR

## ● Removing the Pressure Roller

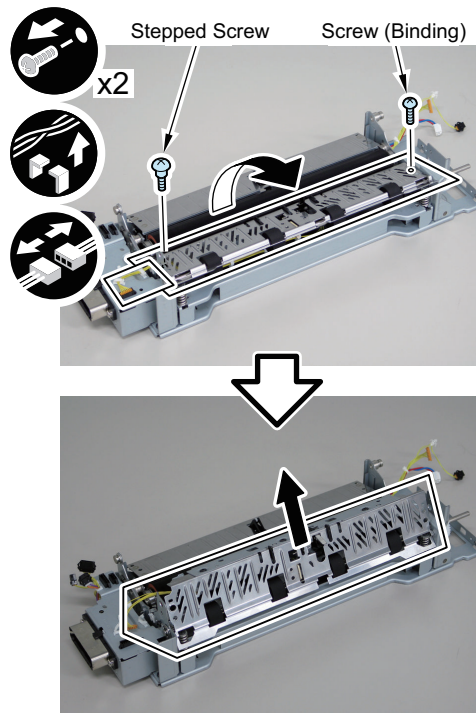
### ■ Preparation

1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. (“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447)
2. Remove the Fixing Assembly. (“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447)
3. Remove the Fixing Front Cover. (“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456)
4. Remove the Fixing Drive Unit 1. (“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456)
5. Secure the Shutter Drive Gear. (“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456)
6. Separate the Fixing Upper Unit from the Fixing Lower Unit. (“Separating the Fixing Upper Unit from the Fixing Lower Unit” on page 461 )

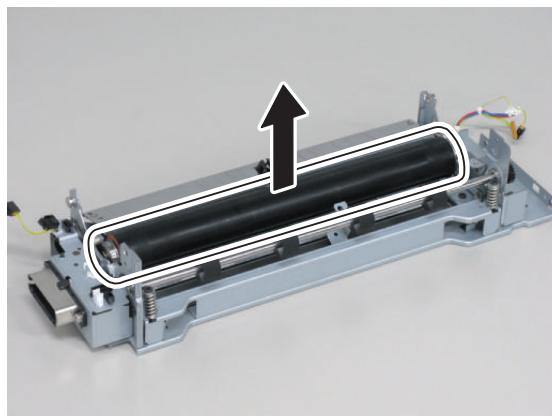
### ■ Procedure

#### 1. Remove the Fixing Inlet Guide.

- 2 Screws
- Wire Saddle
- Edge Saddle
- 1 Connector



#### 2. Remove the Pressure Roller Unit.



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. Clear the parts counter.(COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > FX-LW-RL)

## ● Removing the Pressure Roller Static Eliminator

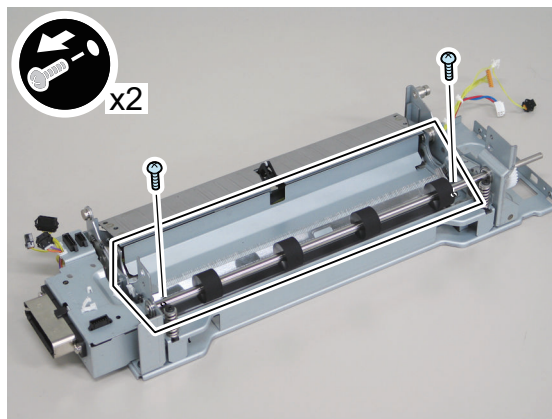
### ■ Preparation

1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit.(“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447 )
2. Remove the Fixing Assembly. (“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447)
3. Remove the Fixing Front Cover.(“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456 )
4. Remove the Fixing Drive Unit 1.(“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456)
5. Secure the Shutter Drive Gear.(“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456)
6. Separate the Fixing Upper Unit from the Fixing Lower Unit.(“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456)
7. Remove the Pressure Roller Unit.(“Removing the Pressure Roller” on page 469)

### ■ Procedure

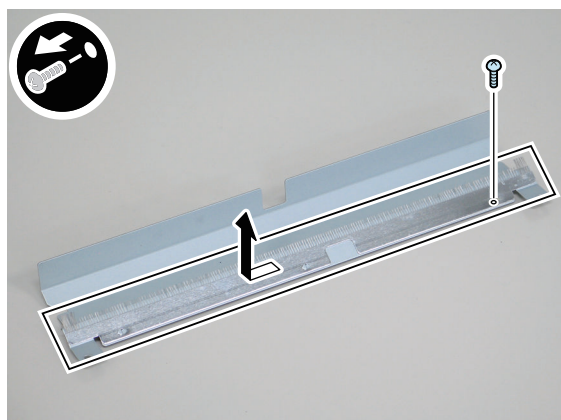
1. Remove the Pressure Roller Static Eliminator Unit.

- 2 Screws



2. Remove the Pressure Roller Static Eliminator.

- 1 Screw



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. Clear the parts counter.(COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > FX-L-STC)



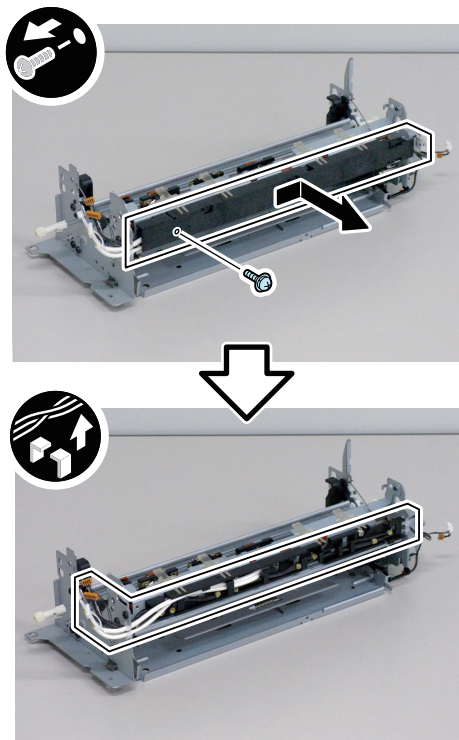
## Removing the Main Thermistor, Sub Thermistor2

### ■ Preparation

1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. (“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447 )
2. Remove the Fixing Assembly. (“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447)
3. Remove the Fixing Front Cover. (“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456 )
4. Remove the Fixing Upper Cover. (“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456 )
5. Remove the Fixing Cleaning Web. (“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456 )
6. Remove the Fixing Drive Unit 1. (“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456)
7. Secure the Shutter Drive Gear. (“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456)
8. Separate the Fixing Upper Unit from the Fixing Lower Unit. (“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456)
9. Remove the Heater Unit. (“Removing the Fixing Roller, Insulating Bush and Thrust Stopper” on page 466)
10. Remove the Fixing Roller. (“Removing the Fixing Roller, Insulating Bush and Thrust Stopper” on page 466)

### ■ Procedure

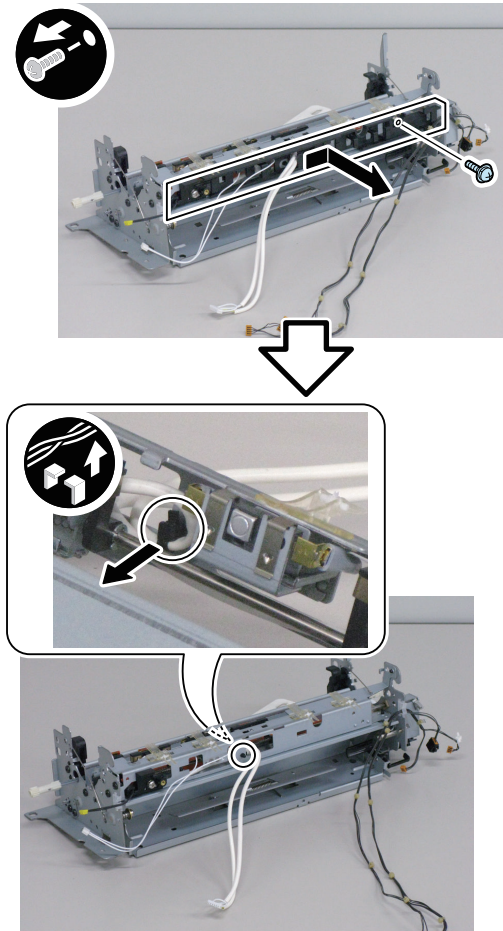
1. Remove the Harness Guide Cover and free the Harness from the Guide.
  - 1 Screw
  - Edge Saddle
  - Harness Guide





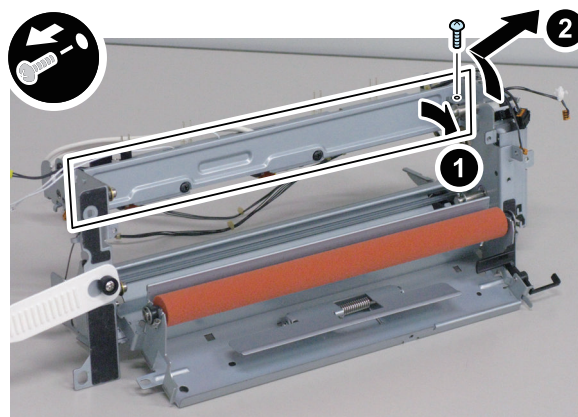
**2. Remove the Harness Guide and remove the Harness Band.**

- 1 Screw



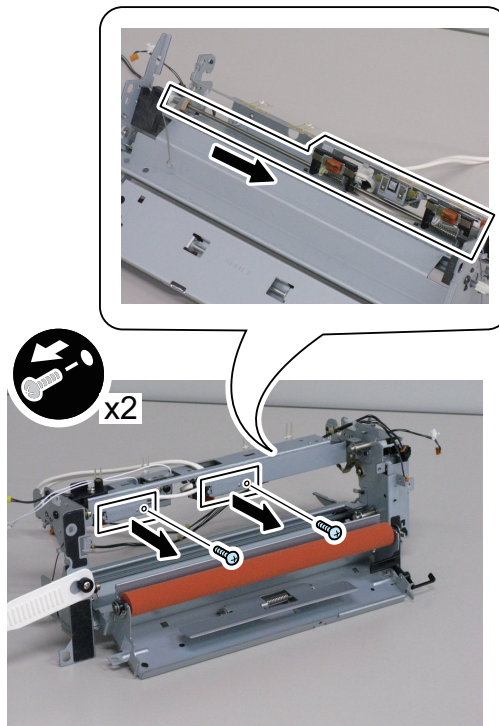
**3. Place the Fixing Upper Unit as shown in the figure and remove the Fixing Oil Pan.**

- 1 Screw

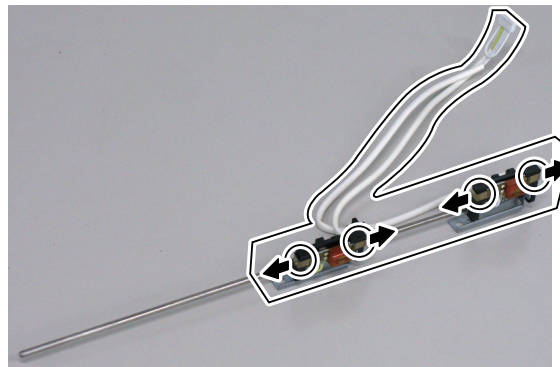


**4. Remove the Thermistor Unit Support Plate to remove the Thermistor Reciprocating Shaft from the Fixing Upper Unit.**

- 2 Screws



**5. Remove the Leaf Spring and remove the Main Thermistor and the SubThermistor 2 from the Thermistor Holder.**

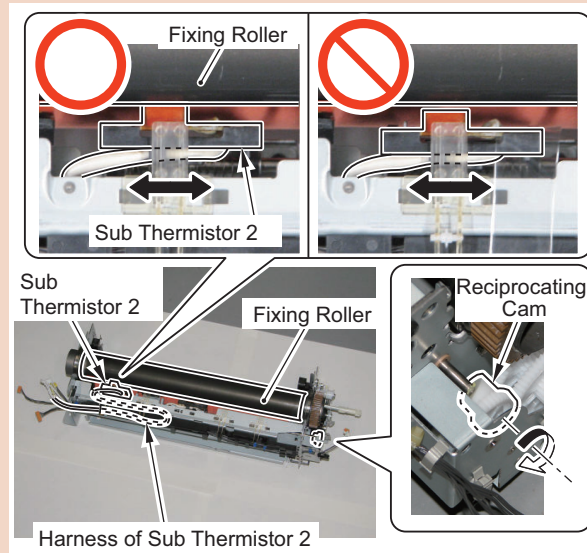


**CAUTION:**

Points to Note when Installing the Main Thermistor and the Sub Thermistor 2

When the harness on the Thermistor side is short, the Sub Thermistor 2 may not be engaged with the Fixing Roller. Perform the following procedure to check the engagement.

1. After installing the Thermistor, temporarily place the Fixing Roller.
2. While sliding the Thermistor for at least one reciprocation by rotating the Reciprocating Cam, check that there is no gap between the Sub Thermistor 2 and the Fixing Roller.  
If a gap is found, perform the following procedure.
3. Remove the Fixing Roller.
4. Arrange the harness of the Sub Thermistor 2 so as to give the harness some slack on the Thermistor side.
5. Perform steps 1 and 2 for double check.



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. Clear the parts counter.  
(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1 > FIX-TH1

## ● Removing the Sub Thermistor 1

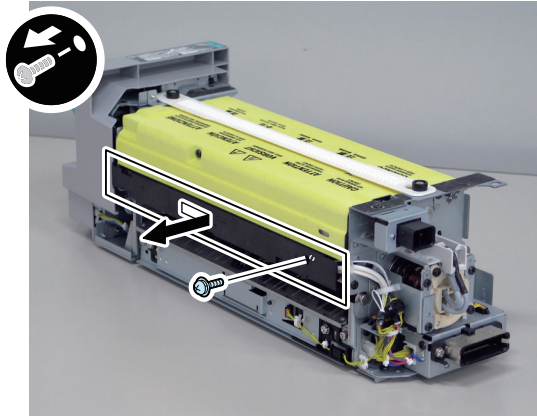
### ■ Preparation

1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. (“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447)
2. Remove the Fixing Assembly. (“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447)

## ■ Procedure

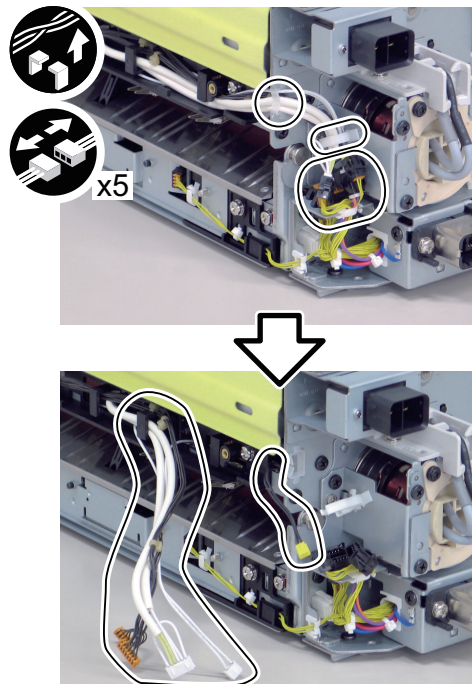
### 1. Remove the Harness Guide Cover.

- 1 Screw



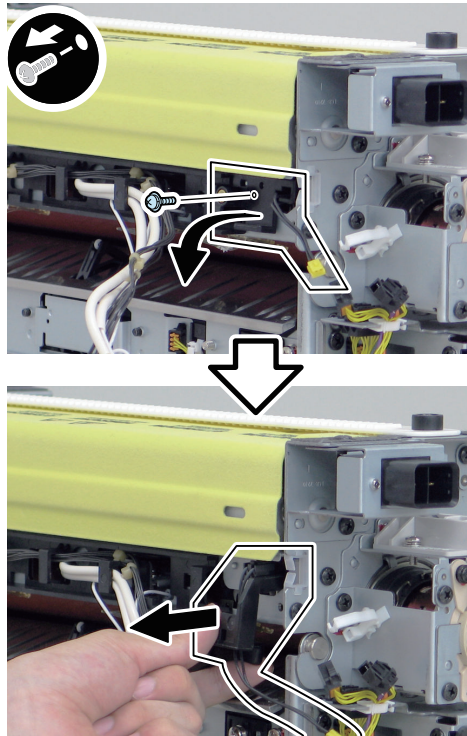
### 2. Remove the Harness to free as shown in the figure.

- 5 Connectors
- Edge Saddle
- Wire Saddle

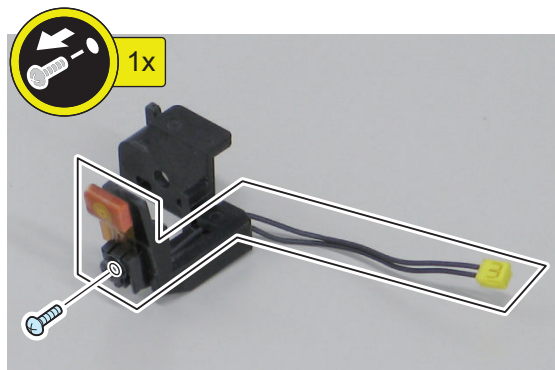


**3. Remove the Sub Thermistor Holder.**

- 1 Screw

**4. Remove the Sub Thermistor 1.**

- 1 Screw



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

### 1. Clear the parts counter.

(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1 > FIX-TH2

## ● Removing the Upper Separation Claw

### ■ <Preparation>

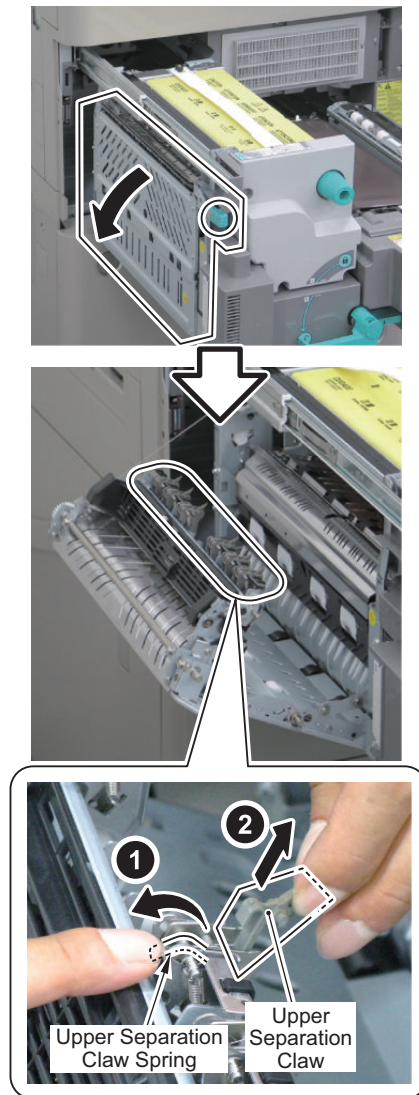
1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. (Refer to “[Removing the Fixing Assembly](#)” on page 447)

### ■ <Procedure>

1. Hold the Lever of the Left Guide to open the Left Guide.



2. While holding the Upper Separation Claw Retaining Spring, remove the Upper Separation Claw.



### ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. Clear the parts counter.(COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > DLV-UCLW)

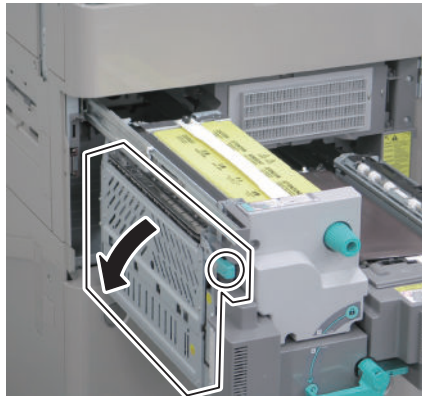
## ● Cleaning the Upper Separation Claw

### ■ <Preparation>

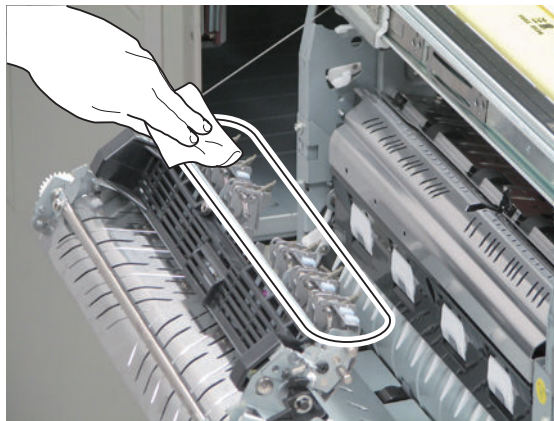
1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. (Refer to“[Removing the Fixing Assembly](#)” on page 447)

## ■ Procedure

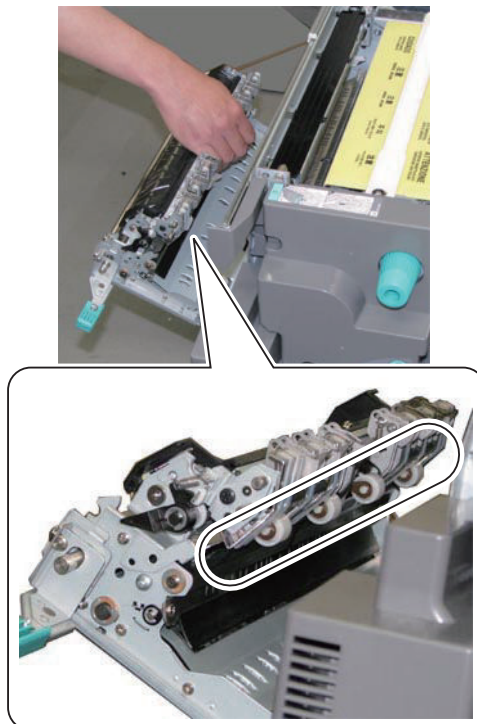
1. Hold the Lever of the Feed Unit to open the Feed Unit.



2. Clean the Upper Separation Claw with lint-free paper moistened.



3. Wipe toner off the 4 Inner Delivery Rollers with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.





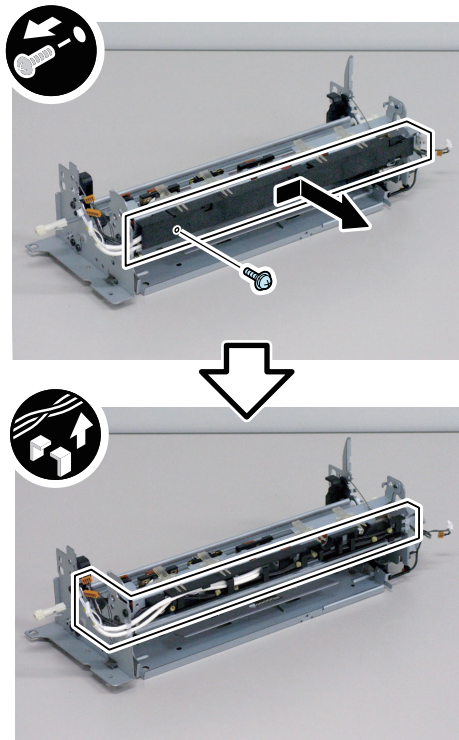
## Removing the Thermoswitch

### Preparation

1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit. (“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447 )
2. Remove the Fixing Assembly. (“Removing the Fixing Assembly” on page 447)
3. Remove the Fixing Upper Cover. (“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456 )
4. Remove the Fixing Cleaning Web. (“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456 )
5. Remove the Fixing Drive Unit 1. (“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456)
6. Secure the Shutter Drive Gear. (“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456)
7. Separate the Fixing Upper Unit from the Fixing Lower Unit. (“Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web” on page 456)
8. Remove the Heater Unit. (“Removing the Fixing Roller, Insulating Bush and Thrust Stopper” on page 466)
9. Remove the Fixing Roller. (“Removing the Fixing Roller, Insulating Bush and Thrust Stopper” on page 466)

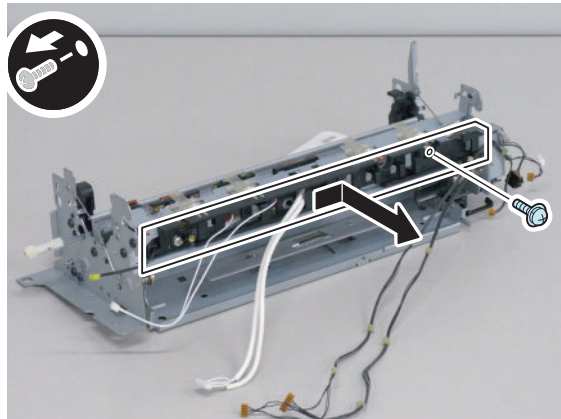
### Procedure

1. Remove the Harness Guide Cover and free the harness from the Harness Guide.
  - 1 Screw
  - Edge Saddle
  - Harness Guide



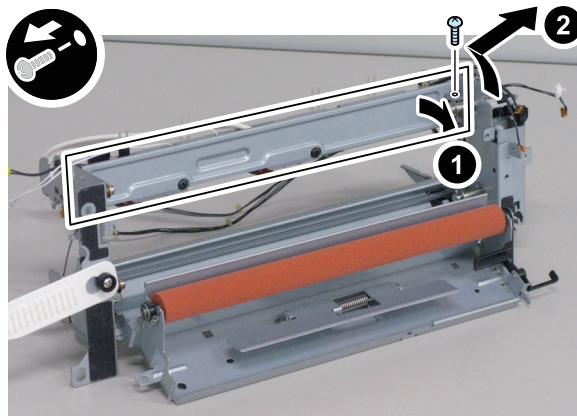
**2. Remove the Harness Guide.**

- 1 Screw



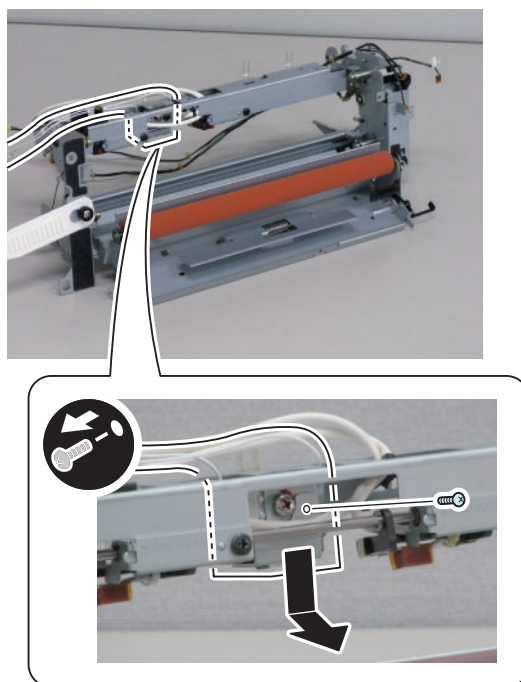
**3. Place the Fixing Upper Unit as shown in the figure and remove the Web Lower Cover.**

- 1 Screw

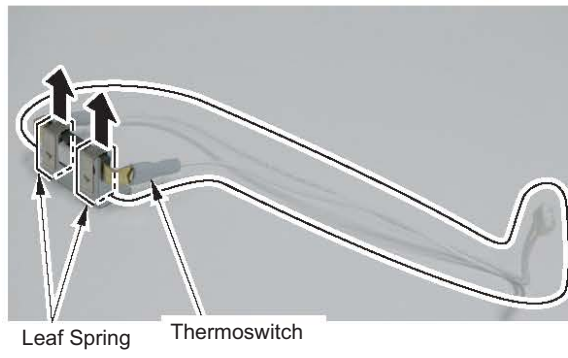


**4. Remove the Thermoswitch Unit.**

- 1 Screw



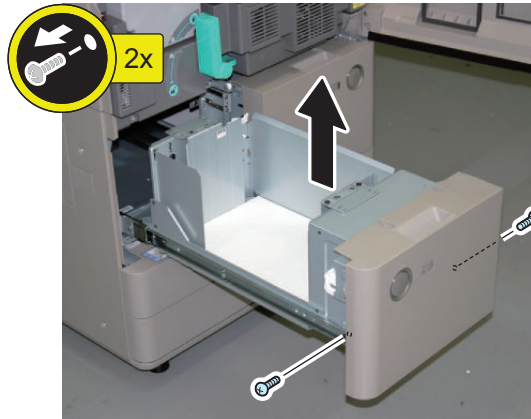
**5. Remove the Retainer Plate and Thermoswitch.**



## Pickup Feed System

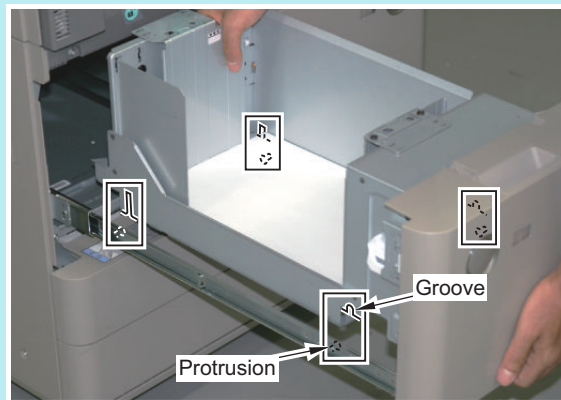
### Removing the Left Pickup Deck

1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Pull out the Left Pickup Deck to remove.
  - 2 Screws



#### NOTE:

When installing the Left Pickup Deck, be sure to fit the 4 protrusions on the Rail into the 4 grooves of the Left Pickup Deck to install.



### Removing the Left Deck Pickup Roller

#### ■ Preparation

1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Remove the Left Pickup Deck. ([“Removing the Left Pickup Deck” on page 482](#))

## ■ <Procedure>

### 1. Remove the Left Deck Pickup Roller.

- 1 Claw



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. Clear the parts counter.(COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > C2-PU-RL)

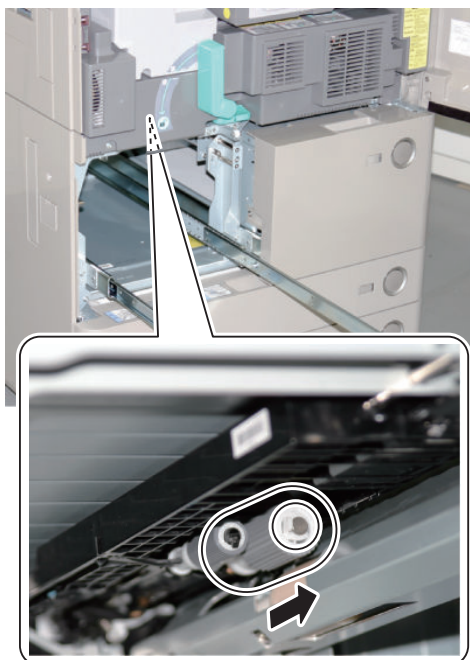
## ● Removing the Left Deck Feed Roller

### ■ Preparation

1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Remove the Left Pickup Deck.(“Removing the Left Pickup Deck” on page 482)

## ■ <Procedure>

1. Remove the Stopper to remove the Left Deck Feed Roller.



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

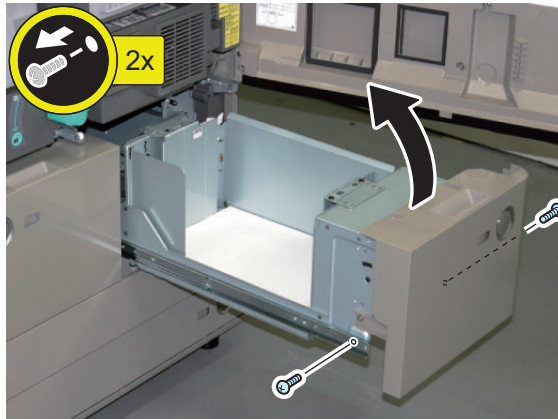
1. Clear the parts counter.(COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > C2-FD-RL)

## ● Removing the Right Pickup Deck

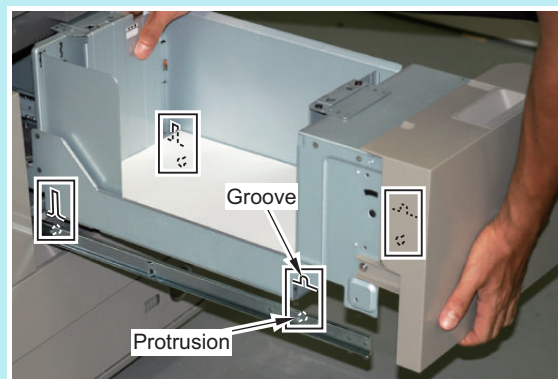
1. Open the Front Cover.

**2. Pull out the Right Pickup Deck to remove.**

- 2 Screws

**NOTE:**

When installing the Right Pickup Deck, be sure to fit the 4 protrusions on the Rail into the 4 grooves of the Right Pickup Deck to install.



## Removing the Left Deck Separation Roller

### ■ Preparation

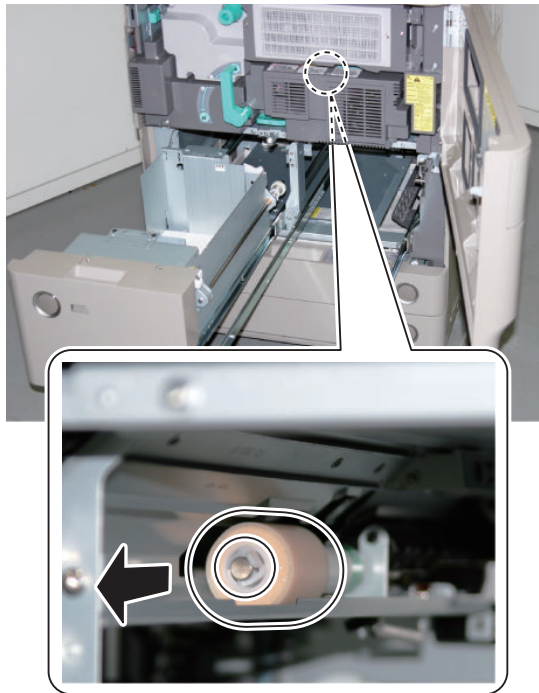
1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Remove the Right Pickup Deck. ([“Removing the Right Pickup Deck” on page 484](#) )

### ■ Procedure

1. Pull out the Left Pickup Deck.



**2. Remove the Stopper to remove the Left Deck Separation Roller.**



**■ Actions after Parts Replacement**

1. Clear the parts counter.  
(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > C2-SP-RL

**● Removing the Right Deck Pickup Roller**

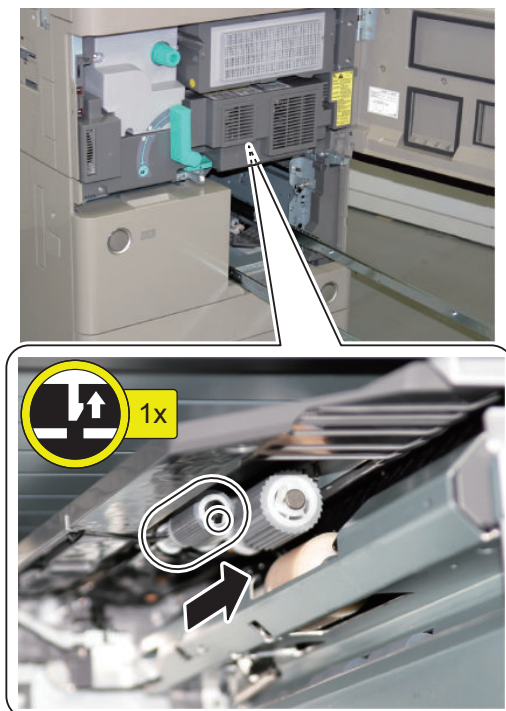
**■ Preparation**

1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Remove the Right Pickup Deck.(Removing the Right Pickup Deck)

## ■ <Procedure>

### 1. Remove the Right Deck Pickup Roller.

- 1 Claw



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. Clear the parts counter.(COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > C1-PU-RL)

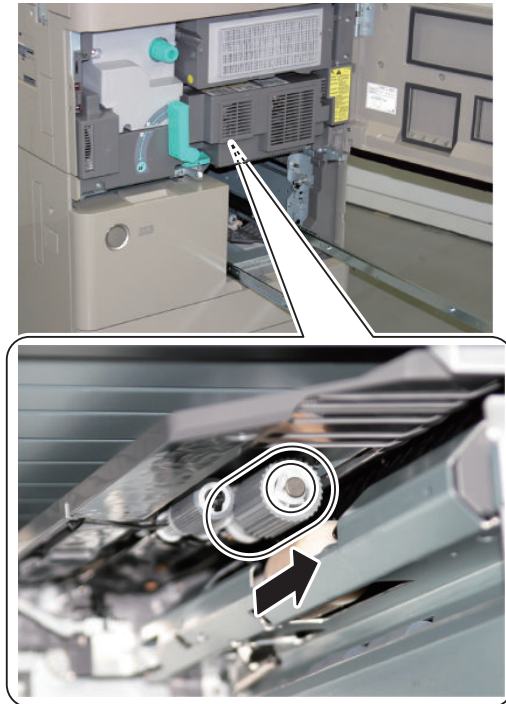
## ● Removing the Right Deck Feed Roller

### ■ Preparation

1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Remove the Right Pickup Deck.(Removing the Right Pickup Deck)

## ■ <Procedure>

1. Remove the Stopper to remove the Right Deck Feed Roller.



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

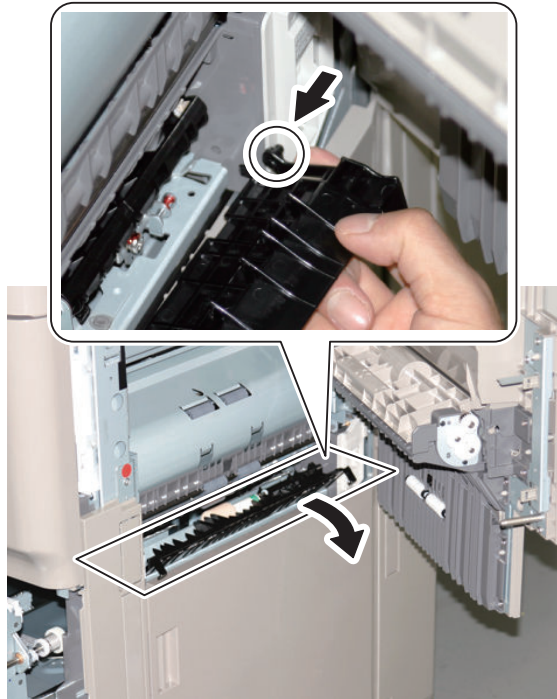
1. Clear the parts counter.(COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > C1-FD-RL)

## ● Removing the Right Deck Separation Roller

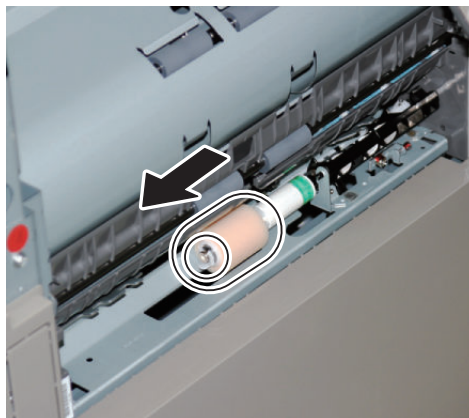
1. Open the Right Upper Cover.
2. Pull out the Right Pickup Deck.

**3. Remove the Feed Guide.**

- 1 Boss



**4. Remove the Stopper to remove the Right Deck Separation Roller.**



**■ Actions after Parts Replacement**

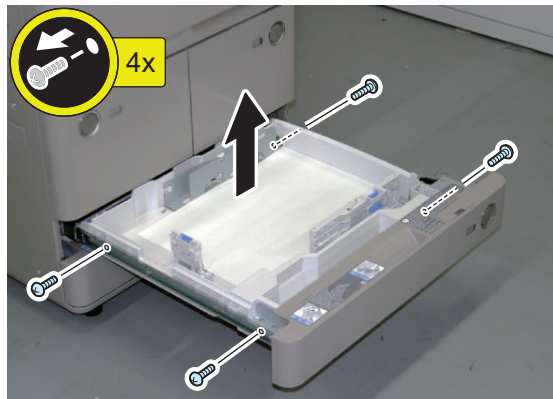
**1. Clear the parts counter.**

(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > C1-SP-RL

## ● Removing the Upper Cassette

1. Pull out the Upper Cassette to remove.

- 4 Screws



## ● Removing the Upper Cassette Pickup Roller

### ■ Preparation

1. Remove the Upper Cassette. ("Removing the Upper Cassette" on page 490)

### ■ <Procedure>

1. Remove the Upper Cassette Pickup Roller.

- 1 Claw



### ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. Clear the parts counter. (COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > C3-PU-RL)

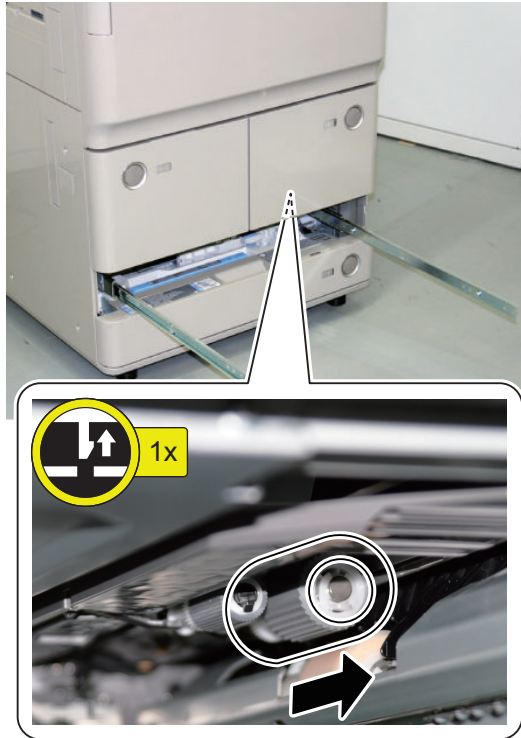
## ● Removing the Upper Cassette Feed Roller

### ■ Preparation

1. Remove the Upper Cassette. (“Removing the Upper Cassette” on page 490)

### ■ Procedure

1. Remove the Stopper to remove the Upper Cassette Feed Roller.



### ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. Clear the parts counter.(COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > C3-FD-RL)

## ● Removing the Upper Cassette Separation Roller

1. Open the Right Lower Cover.
2. Remove the Upper Cassette. (“Removing the Upper Cassette” on page 490)

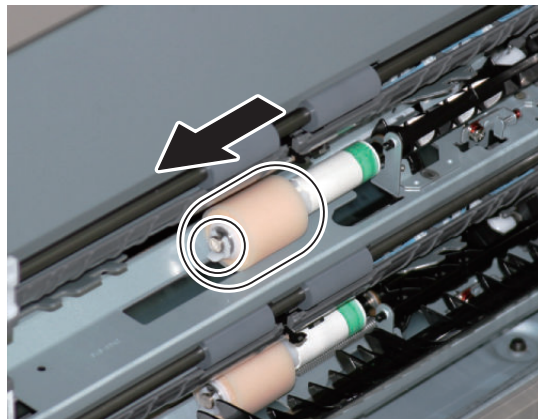


**3. Remove the Feed Guide.**

- 1 Boss



**4. Remove the Stopper to remove the Upper Cassette Separation Roller.**



**■ Actions after Parts Replacement**

**1. Clear the parts counter.**

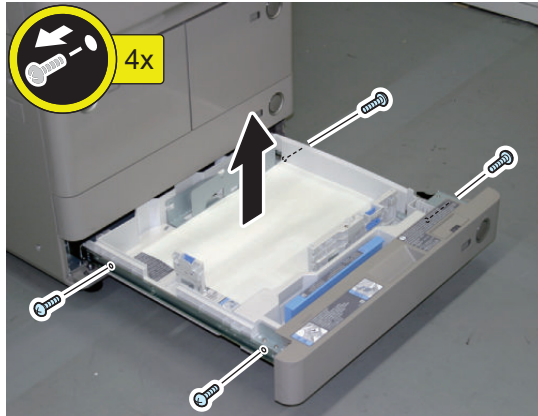
(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > C3-SP-RL



## ● Removing the Lower Cassette

1. Pull out the Lower Cassette to remove.

- 4 Screws



## ● Removing the Lower Cassette Pickup Roller

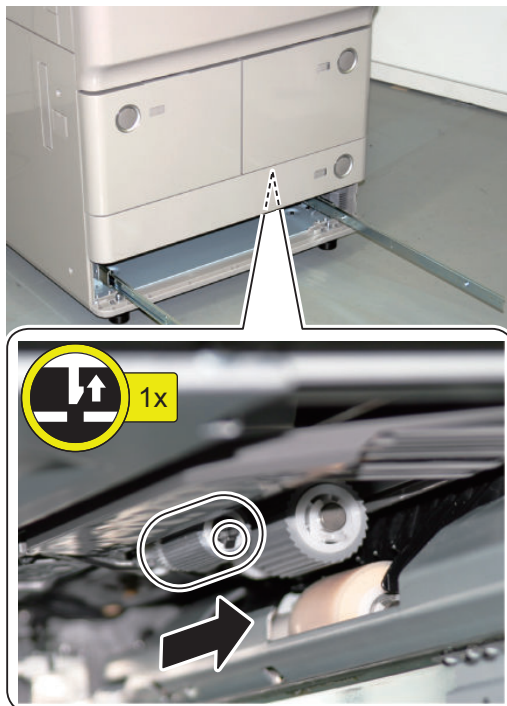
### ■ Preparation

1. Remove the Lower Cassette. ("Removing the Lower Cassette" on page 493)

### ■ <Procedure>

1. Remove the Lower Cassette Pickup Roller.

- 1 Claw



### ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. Clear the parts counter.(COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > C4-PU-RL)

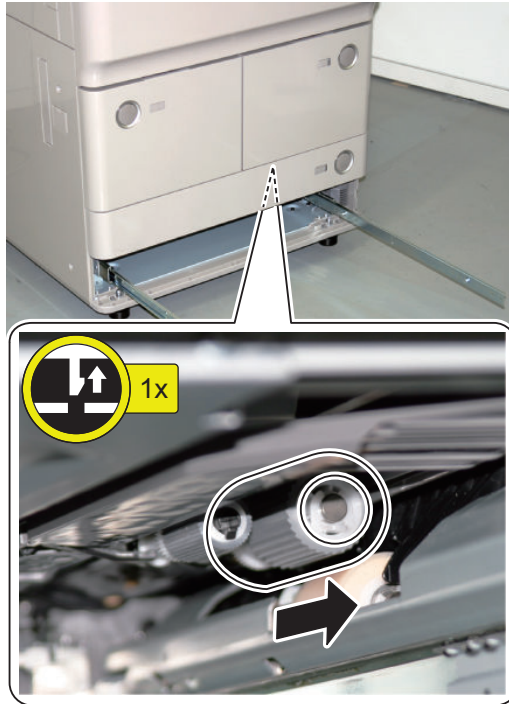
## ● Removing the Lower Cassette Feed Roller

### ■ Preparation

1. Remove the Lower Cassette. ([Removing the Lower Cassette](#))

### ■ <Procedure>

1. Remove the Stopper to remove the Lower Cassette Feed Roller.



### ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

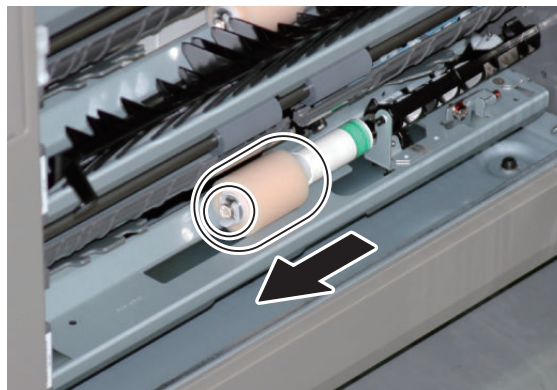
1. Clear the parts counter. (COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > C4-FD-RL)

## ● Removing the Lower Cassette Separation Roller

1. Open the Right Lower Cover.
2. Remove the Lower Cassette. (["Removing the Lower Cassette" on page 493](#))

**3. Remove the Feed Guide.**

- 1 Boss

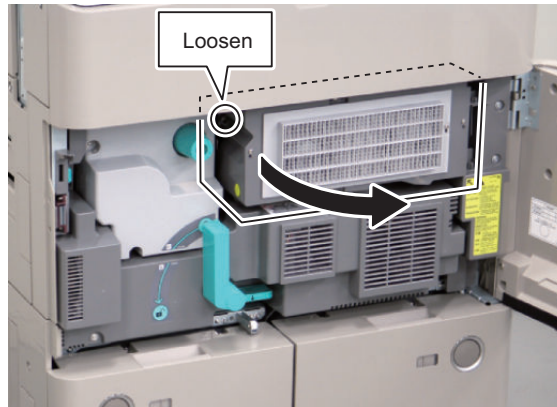
**4. Remove the Stopper to remove the Lower Cassette Separation Roller.****■ Actions after Parts Replacement****1. Clear the parts counter.**

(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > C4-SP-RL

**● Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Feed Roller****■ <Preparation>****1. Open the Inner Cover.**

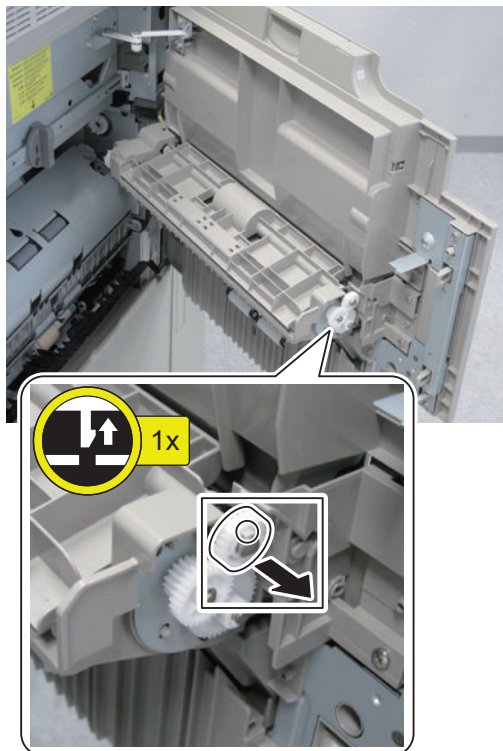
1. Open the Front Cover.

2. Open the Inner Cover.
  - 1 Screw (to loosen)



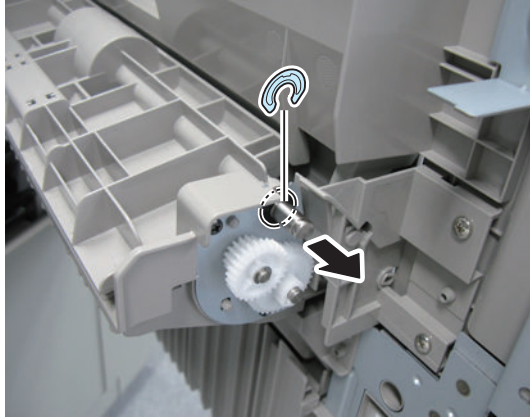
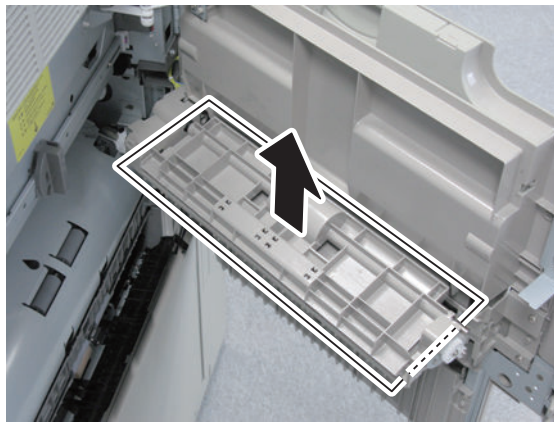
■ <Procedure>

1. Remove the gear.
  - 1 Claw

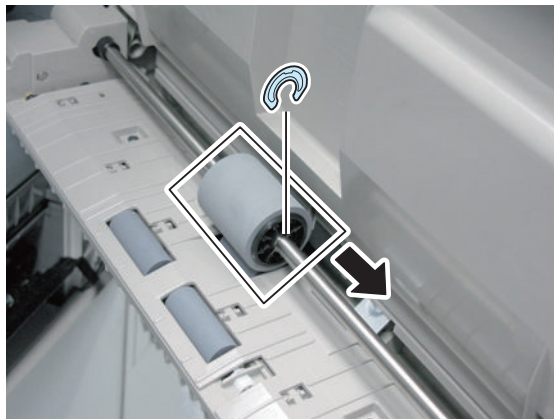


**2. Remove the bushing.**

- 1 E-ring

**3. Remove the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Guide.****4. Remove the Multi-purpose Tray Feed Roller.**

- 1 E-ring

**■ Actions after Parts Replacement**

1. Clear the parts counter.(COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > M-FD-RL)

**● Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Roller****■ Preparation**

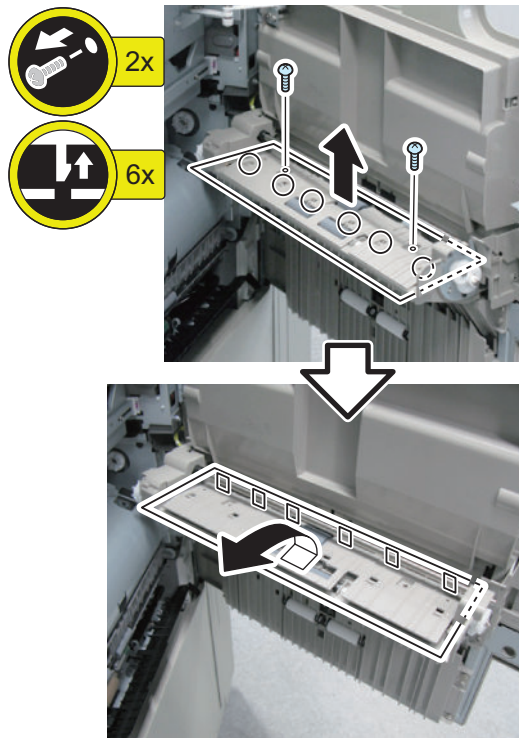
1. Open the Inner Cover.(“Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Feed Roller” on page 495)
2. Remove the Multi-purpose Tray Feed Roller.(“Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Feed Roller” on page 495)



## ■ <Procedure>

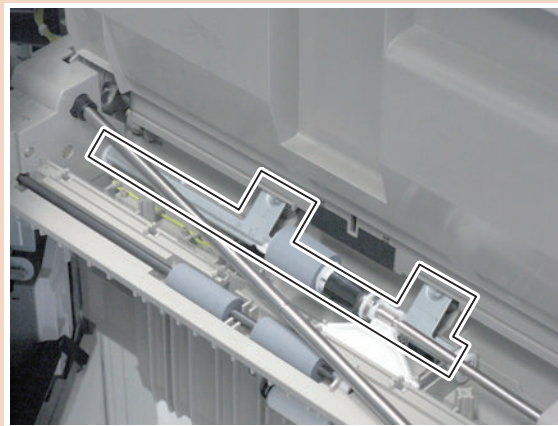
### 1. Remove the Multi-purpose Tray Lower Guide.

- 2 Screws
- 6 Claws
- 6 Protrusions



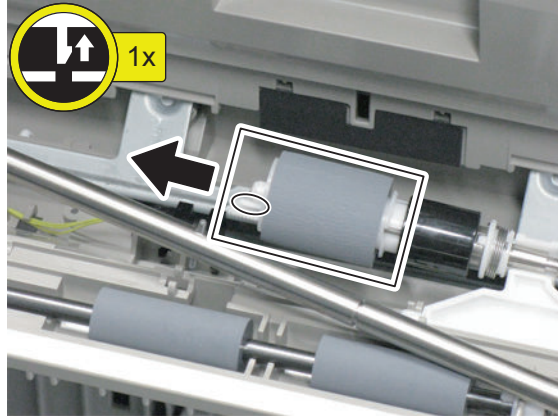
#### **CAUTION:**

Installation work gets difficult if the plate and the spring (as shown in the figure) are removed when removing the cover; therefore, be careful not to remove them.



## 2. Remove the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Roller.

- 1 Claw



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. Clear the parts counter.(COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > M-SP-RL)

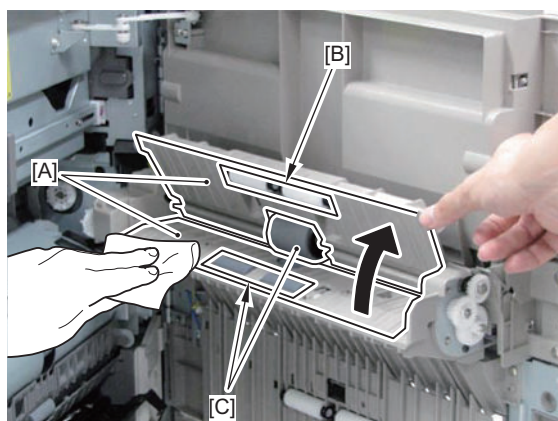
## ● Cleaning the Pickup and Fixing Feed Assembly

### ■ Cleaning the Vertical Path Assembly

1. Open the Right Cover.
2. Open the Right Lower Cover.
3. Open the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Guide Unit, and clean the 2 areas of the Feed Guide [A]. (Remove paper lint.)
4. Clean a whole circumference of 2 Rollers [B] and the 3 Rollers [C] by manually rotating them with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

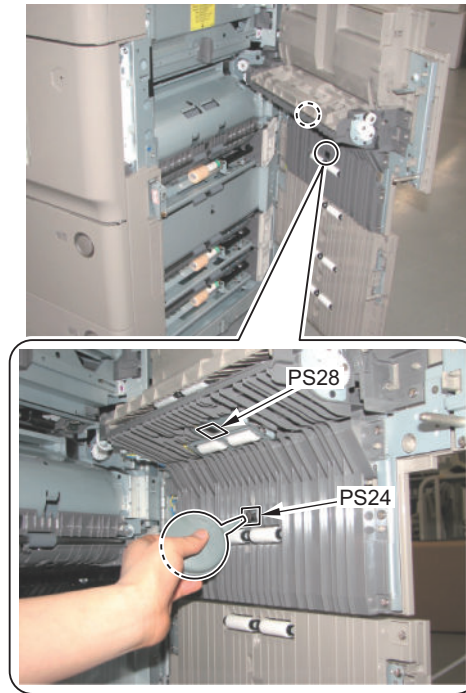
#### CAUTION:

When rotating the Roller by hand, do not touch the surface of the Roller. Be sure to hold the side of the Roller to rotate manually.

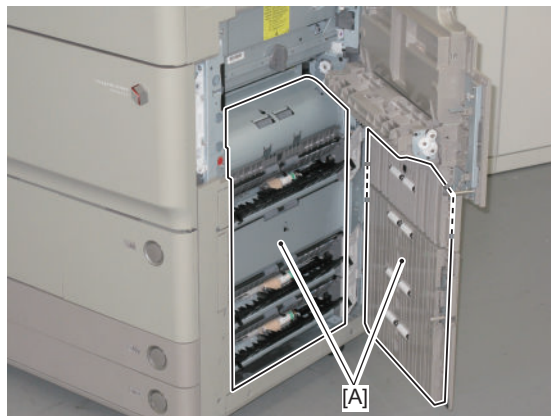




5. Clean paper dust on the Vertical Path Sensor 1 (PS24) and the Writing Judging Sensor (PS28) with a blower.



6. Clean paper dust on the Feed Guide [A] with lint-free paper.



7. Clean a whole circumference of 10 Rollers by manually rotating them with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

**CAUTION:**

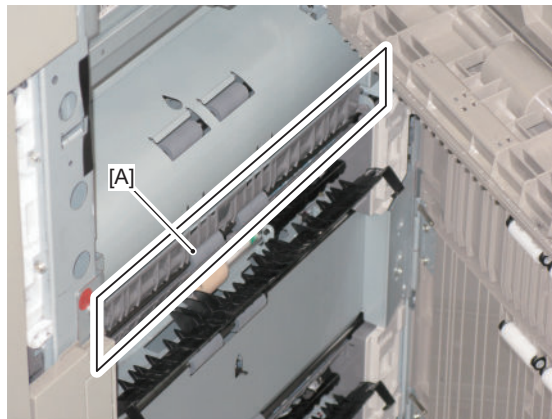
When rotating the Roller by hand, do not touch the surface of the Roller. Be sure to hold the side of the Roller to rotate manually.



8. Clean a whole circumference of 10 Rollers by manually rotating them with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



9. Open the Duplex Merging Guide and clean paper dust on the Feed Guide [A] with lint-free paper.

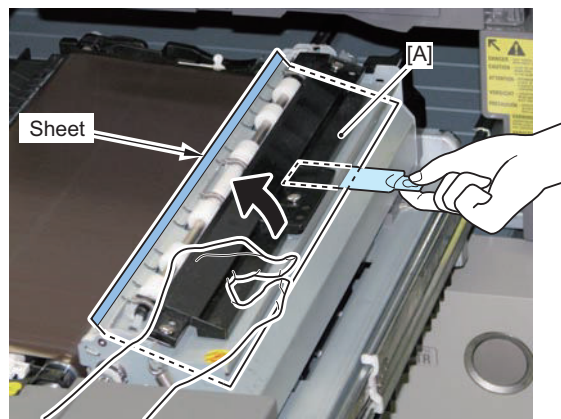


### ■ <Cleaning the Fixing Feed Assembly>

1. Open the Fixing Feed Unit fully.
2. Open the Registration Upper Guide, insert the paper lint cleaning tool into the clearance between the Registration Upper Guide and the Registration Lower Guide, and clean the feed area [A].

#### CAUTION:

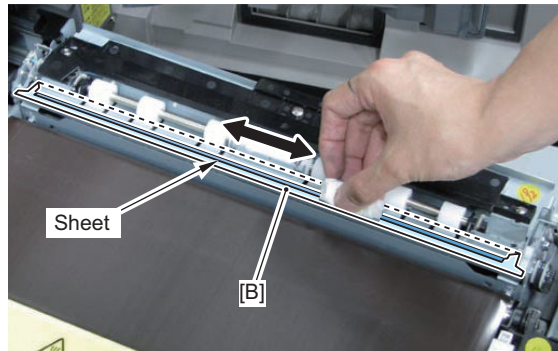
Be careful not to damage the sheet on the edge of the Registration Upper Guide.



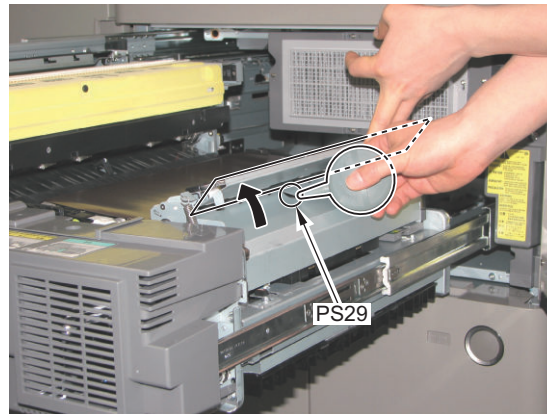
3. Insert lint-free paper into the clearance between the Registration Upper Guide and the Registration Lower Guide, and clean the feed area [B] and the sheet on the edge of the Registration Upper Guide.

**CAUTION:**

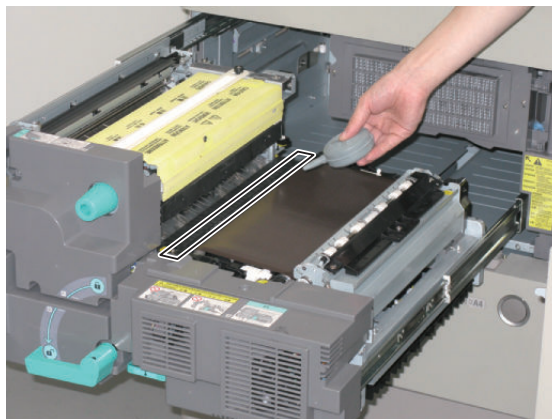
Be careful not to damage the sheet on the edge of the Registration Upper Guide.



4. Open the Registration Upper Guide and clean paper dust on the Registration Sensor (PS29) with a blower.

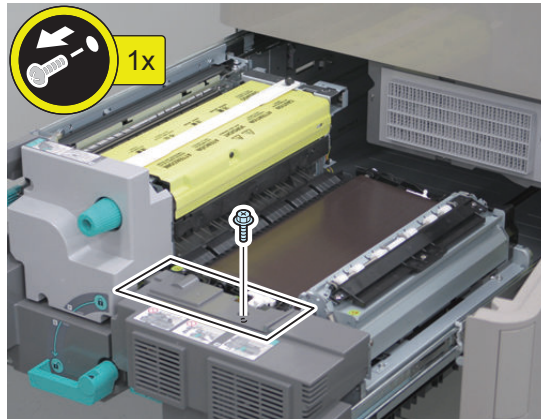


5. Point the leading edge of Blower to the Static Eliminator and clean adhered soiling.

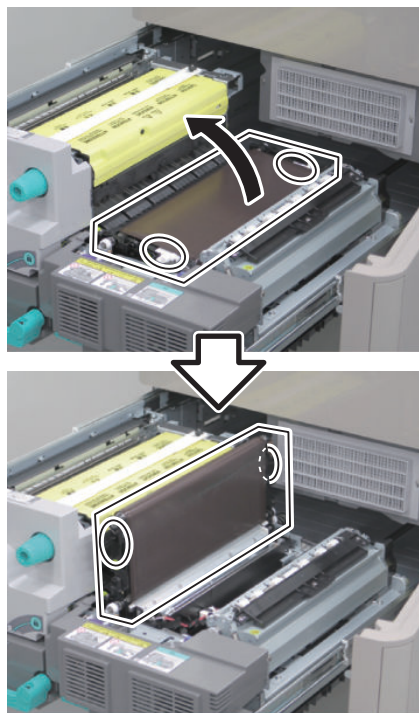


**6. Remove the Fixing Feed Cover (Upper).**

- 1 Screw

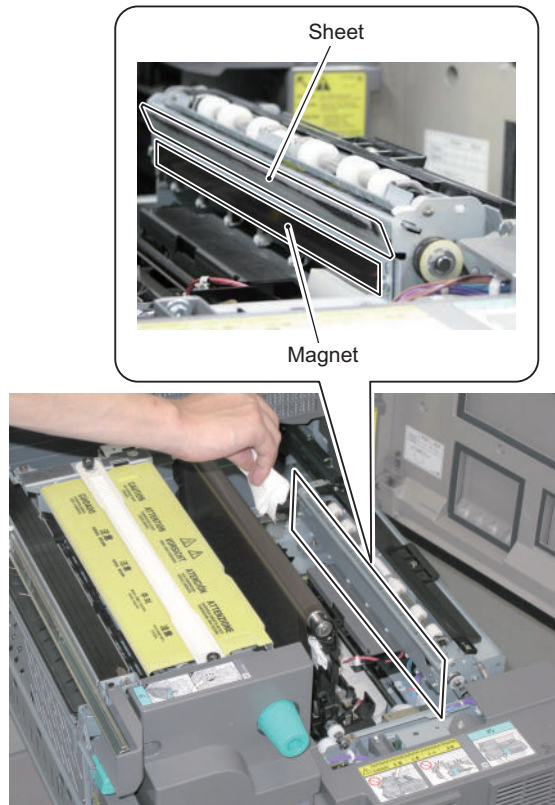


**7. Hold the 2 handles to lift the ETB Unit in the direction of the arrow.**



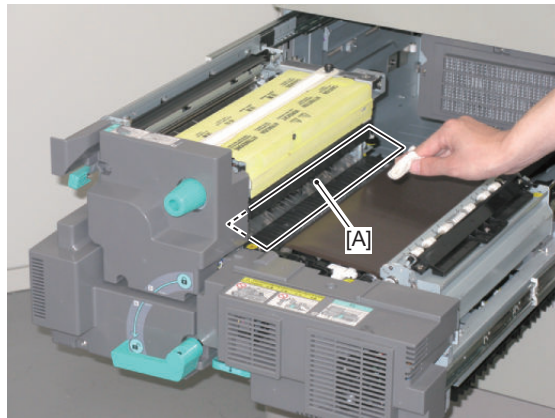


8. Clean the soiling adhered on the Magnet and the Sheet with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



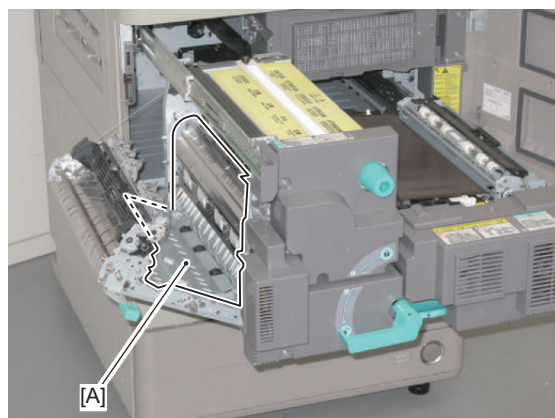
9. I return an ETB unit to the original position.

10. Clean the Fixing Inlet Guide [A] with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



11. Hold the lever of the Feed Unit to open the Feed Unit.

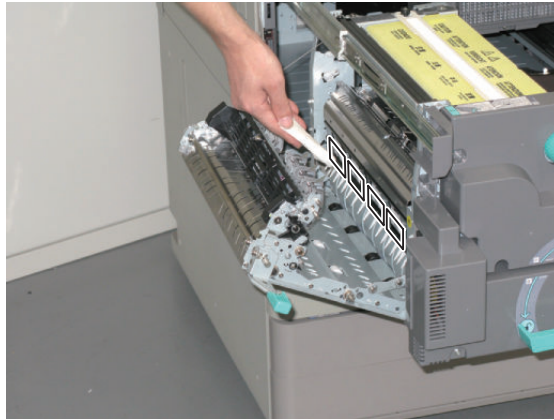
12. Clean paper dust on the Feed Guide [A] with lint-free paper.



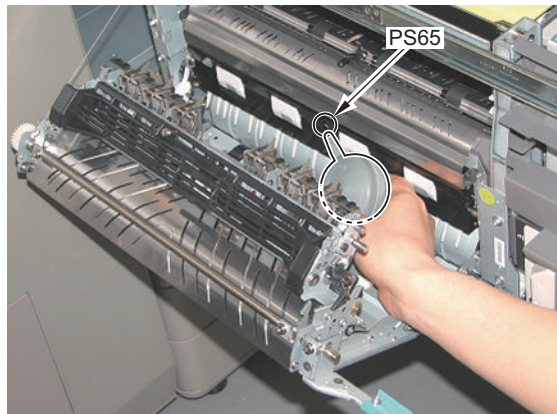
13. Clean a whole circumference of 4 Rollers by manually rotating them with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

**CAUTION:**

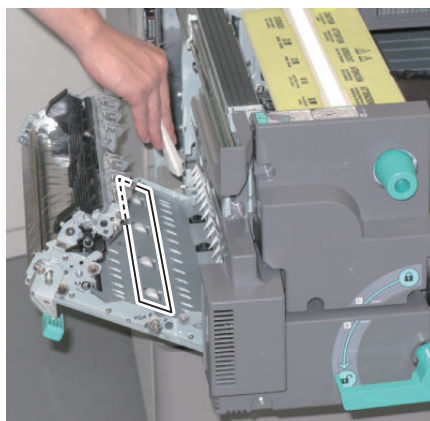
When rotating the Roller by hand, do not touch the surface of the Roller. Be sure to hold the side of the Roller to rotate manually.



14. Clean paper dust on the Reverse Vertical Path Sensor (PS65) with a blower.

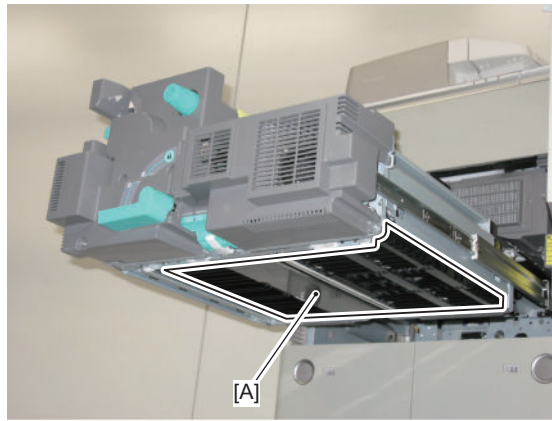


15. Clean a whole circumference of 4 Rollers by manually rotating them with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

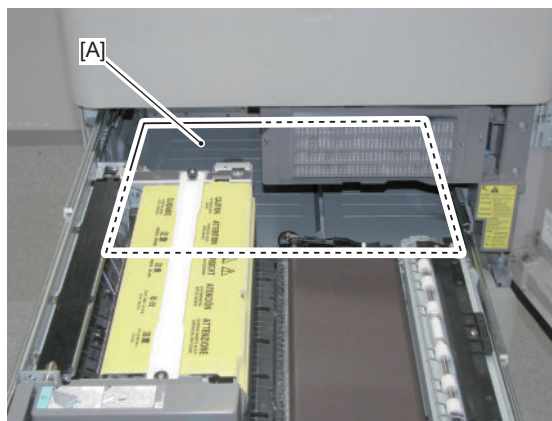


16. Hold the lever of the Feed Unit to close the Feed Unit.

17. Clean paper dust on the feed area [A] of the Reverse Path with lint-free paper.

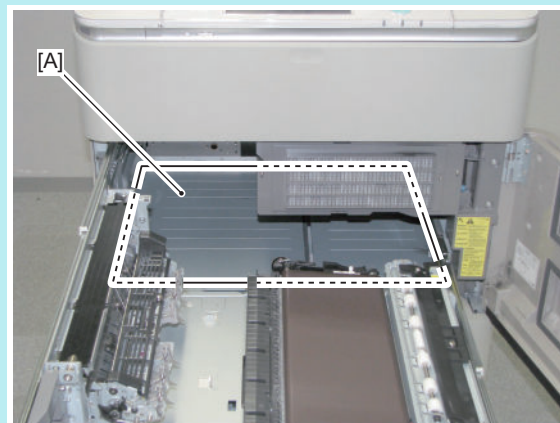


18. Clean paper dust on the feed area [A] inside the equipment with lint-free paper.



**NOTE:**

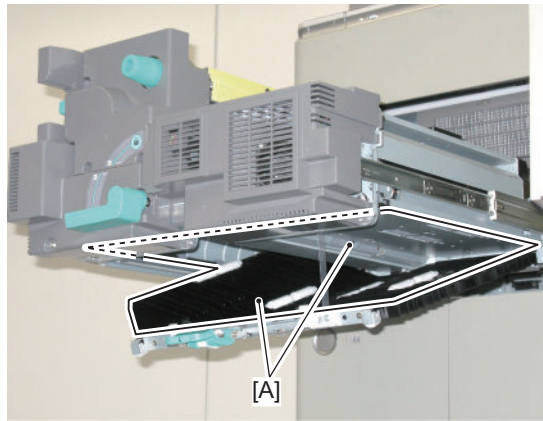
To clean the feed area [A] inside main body, removing the Fixing Assembly can improve the operability.



19. Open the Duplex Path.



20. Clean paper dust on the feed area [A] of the Duplex Path (Upper/Lower) with lint-free paper.



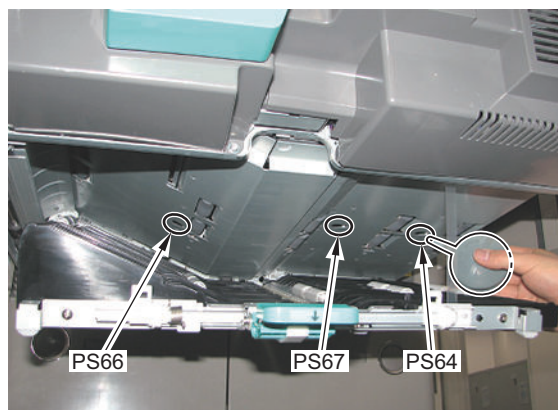
21. Clean a whole circumference of 10 Rollers by manually rotating them with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

**CAUTION:**

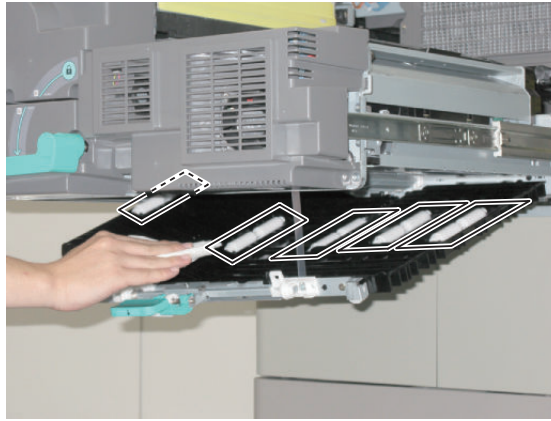
When rotating the Roller by hand, do not touch the surface of the Roller. Be sure to hold the side of the Roller to rotate manually.



22. Clean paper dust on the Duplex Outlet Sensor (PS64), Duplex Merge Sensor (PS67), and Duplex Left Sensor (PS66) with a blower.



23. Clean a whole circumference of 5 Rollers by manually rotating them with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



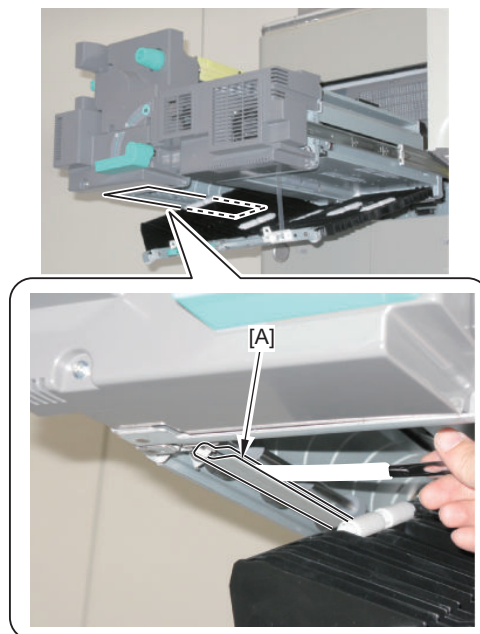
24. Place a paper on the Duplex Path. Then, point the leading edge of Blower to the Roller frame to remove paper lint.

**NOTE:**

The Cleaning Brush is engaged with 4 Rollers, causing accumulation of paper lint. By blowing air with the Blower, paper lint can be fallen down.



25. Insert the paper lint cleaning tool to the gap of Reverse Path [A] to remove paper lint.



26. Close the Duplex Path.

27. Install the Fixing Feed Cover (Upper).

28. Push in the Fixing Feed Unit.

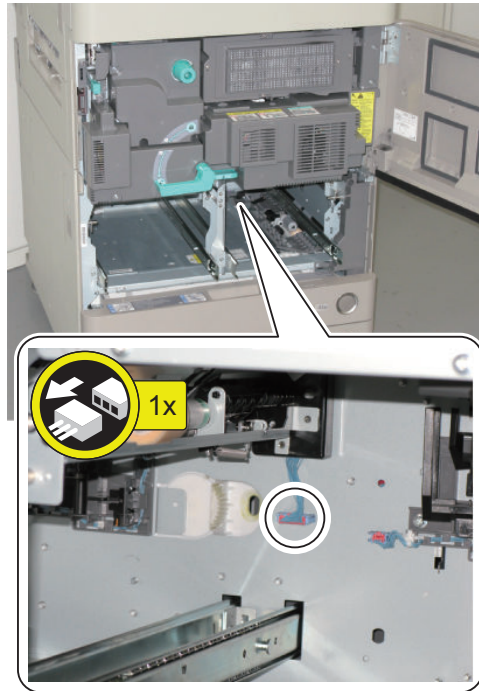
## ● Removing the Left Deck Pickup Unit

### ■ Preparation

1. Remove the Right Pickup Deck. ("Removing the Right Pickup Deck" on page 484)
2. Remove the Left Pickup Deck. ("Removing the Left Pickup Deck" on page 482)

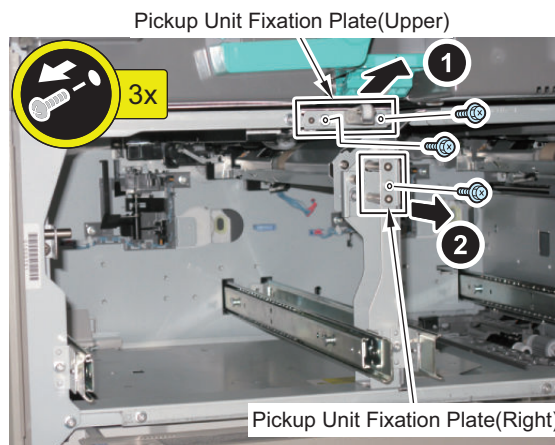
### ■ <Procedure>

1. Disconnect the Connectors.

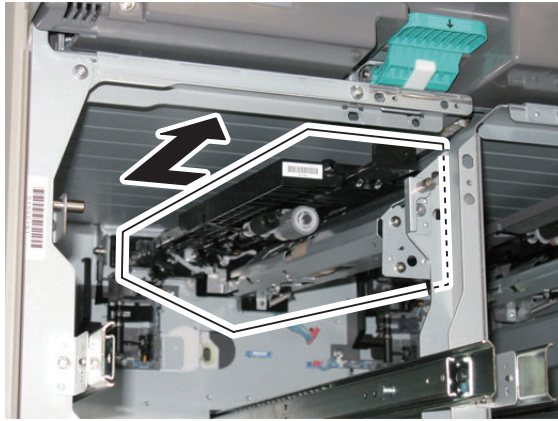


2. Remove the Pickup Unit Fixation Plate (Upper/Right).

- 3 Screws



### 3. Remove the Left Deck Pickup Unit.



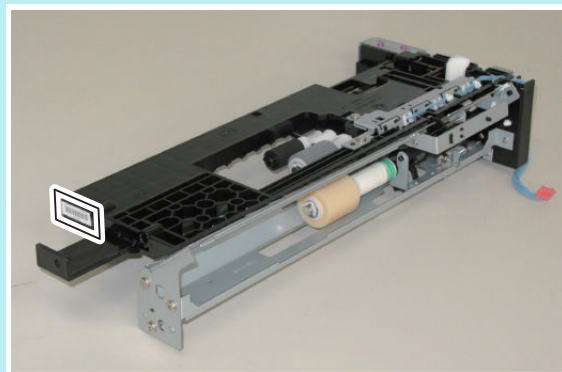
#### CAUTION:

Points to Caution at Installation

When installing the Left Deck Pickup Unit, pull out the Fixing Feed Unit for approx. 10cm to install, and then return the unit to its original position after installation.

#### NOTE:

Be sure to check that the parts number of Pickup Unit is correct.



## ● Removing the Right Deck Pickup Unit

### ■ Preparation

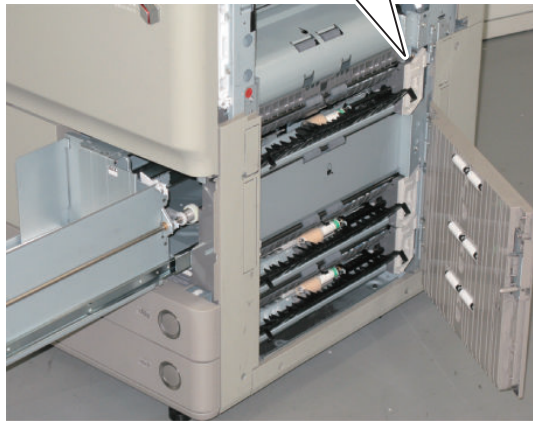
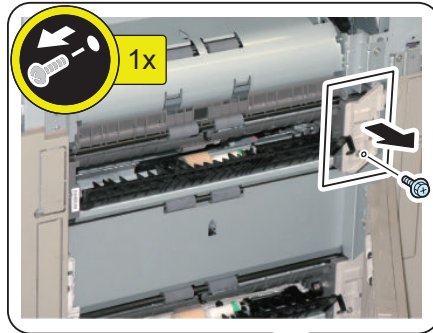
1. Remove the Right Cover. (“Removing the Laser Scanner Unit” on page 322)
2. Pull out the Right Deck. (“Removing the Right Pickup Deck” on page 484)

### ■ <Procedure>

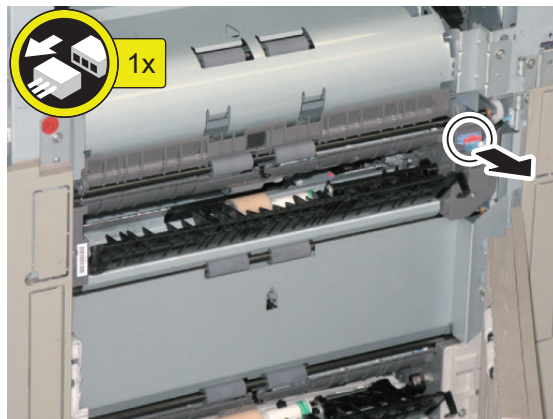
1. Open the Right Lower Cover.

**2. Remove the Connector Cover.**

- 1 Screw



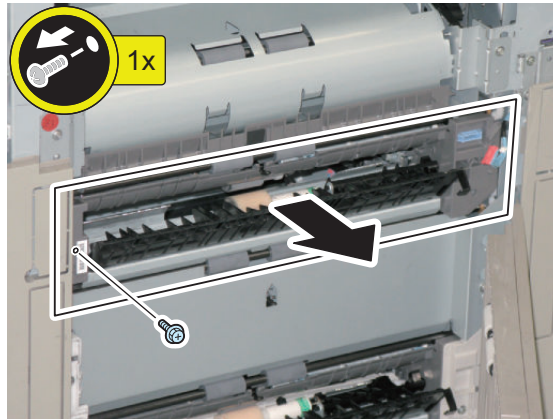
**3. Disconnect the Connectors.**



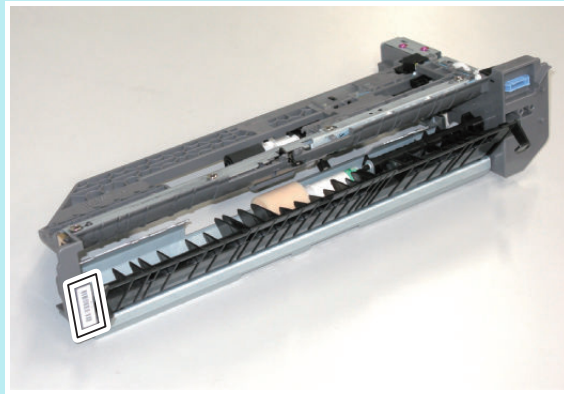


**4. Remove the Right Deck Pickup Unit.**

- 1 Screw

**NOTE:**

Be sure to check that the parts number of Pickup Unit is correct.

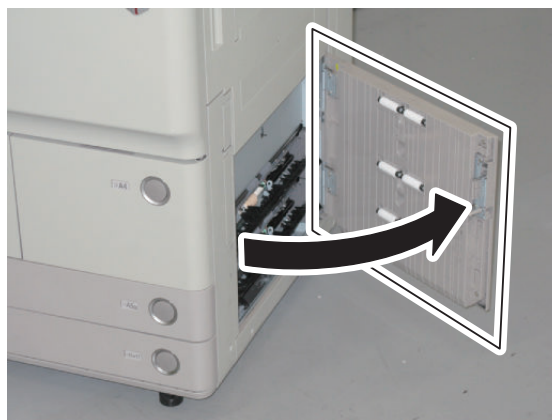


## ● Removing the Cassettes 3 and 4 Pickup Unit

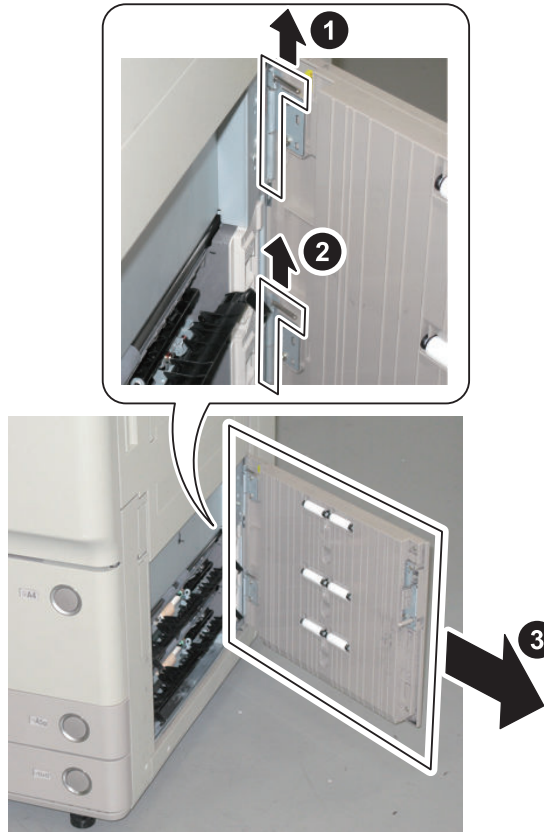
### ■ <Preparation>

#### 1. Remove the Right Lower Cover.

1. Open the Right Lower Cover.



2. Remove the Right Lower Cover.
  - 2 Hinge Pins



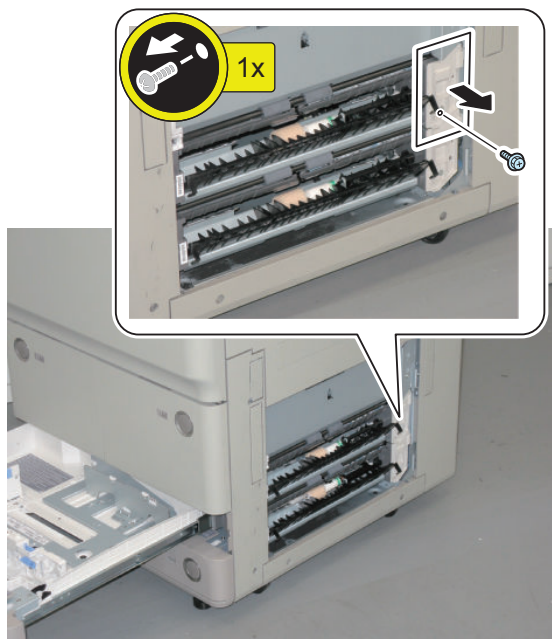
2. Pull out the Cassettes 3 and 4.

### ■ <Procedure>

**NOTE:**

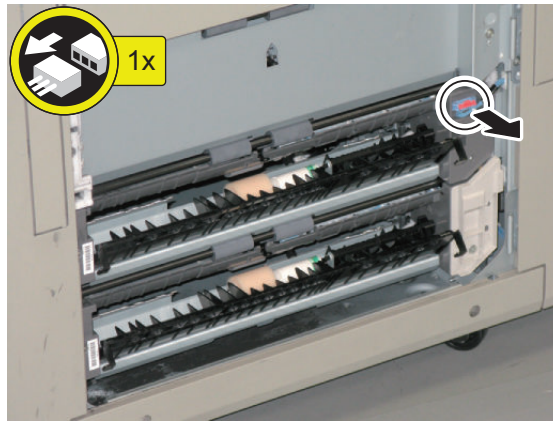
This procedure explains the case for Cassette 3 Pickup Unit.  
Be sure to perform the same procedure when the Cassette 4 Pickup Unit is used.

1. Remove the Connector Cover.
  - 1 Screw



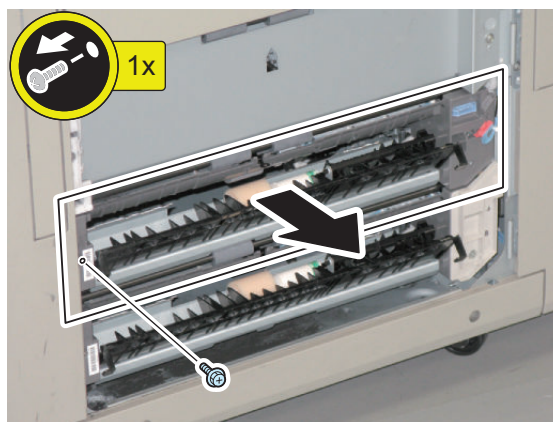


2. Disconnect the Connectors.



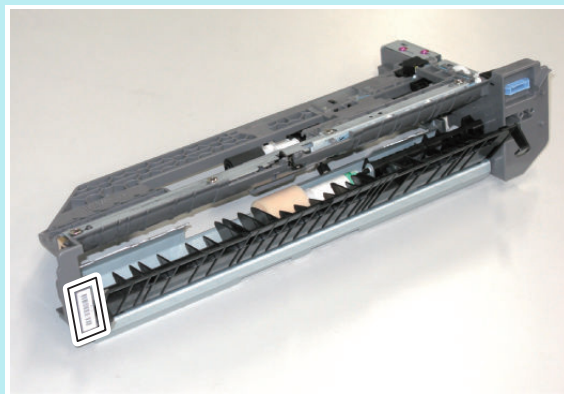
3. Remove the Pickup Unit.

- 1 Screw



**NOTE:**

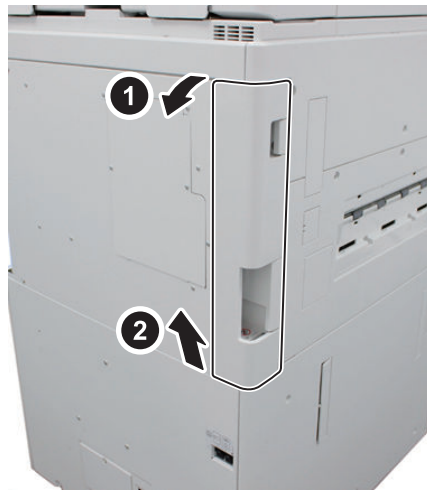
Be sure to check that the parts number of Pickup Unit is correct.



## ● Removing the Vertical Path Cassette Pickup Drive Unit

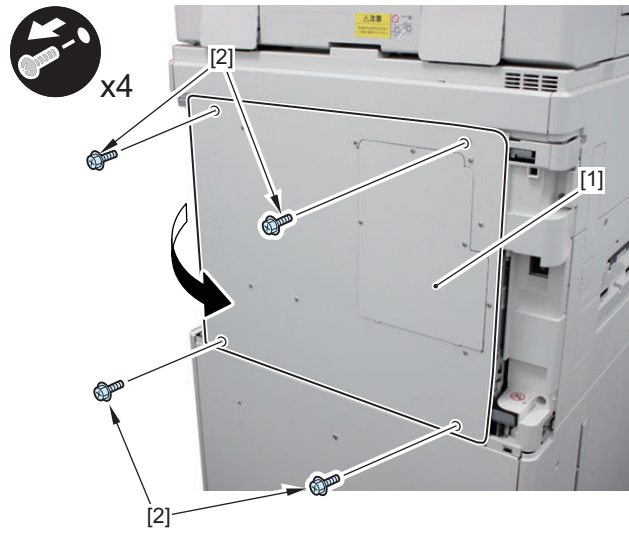
### ■ Preparation

1. Remove the Box Cover (Left).



2. Open the Controller Box in the direction of the arrow.

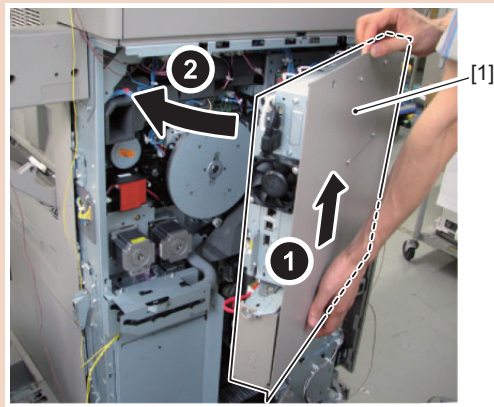
- 4 Screws



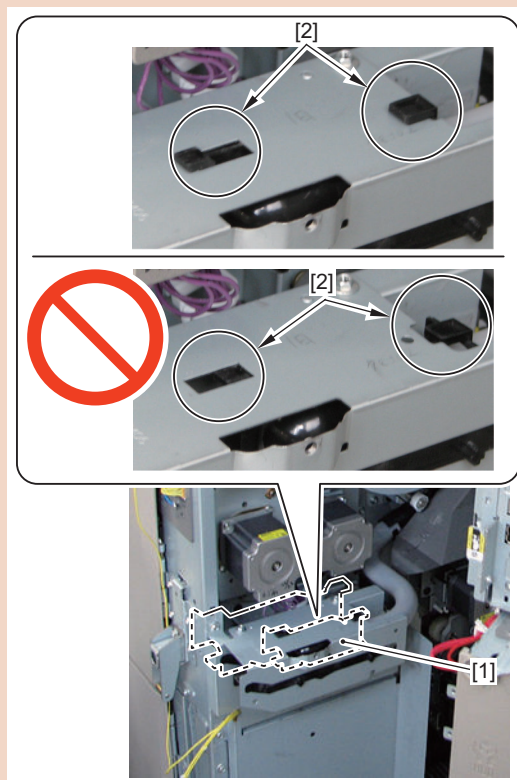
**CAUTION:**

Points to Note when Installing the Controller Box

While installing the Controller Box, be sure to lift it to avoid hitting the hook of the Waste Toner Container Shutter Unit.

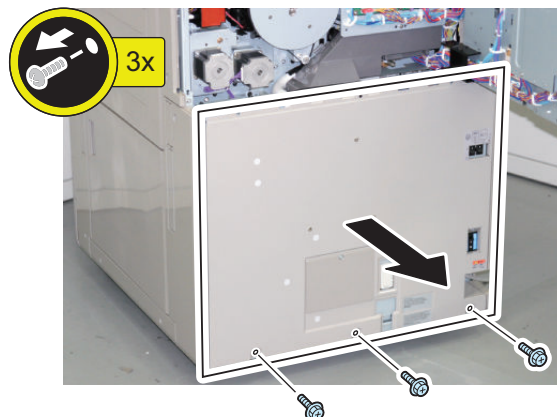


If the Inner Cover of the Controller Box hits the hook of the Waste Toner Container Shutter Unit, the hook may be removed.



**3. Remove the Rear Lower Cover.**

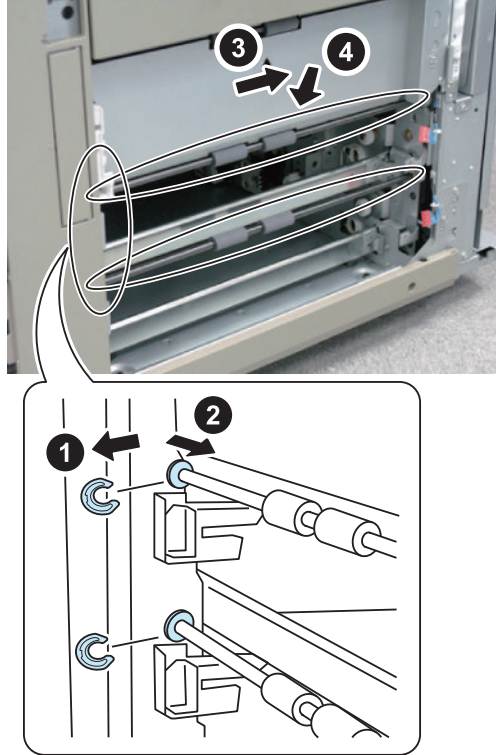
- 3 Screws



4. Remove the Waste Toner Container. (“Removing the Waste Toner Container” on page 401)
5. Remove the Cassette 3 and Cassette 4 Pickup Units. (“Removing the Cassettes 3 and 4 Pickup Unit” on page 512)

## ■ Procedure

1. Remove the 2 E-rings and move the bushings to remove the Vertical Path Rollers 3 and 4 in the direction of the arrow.

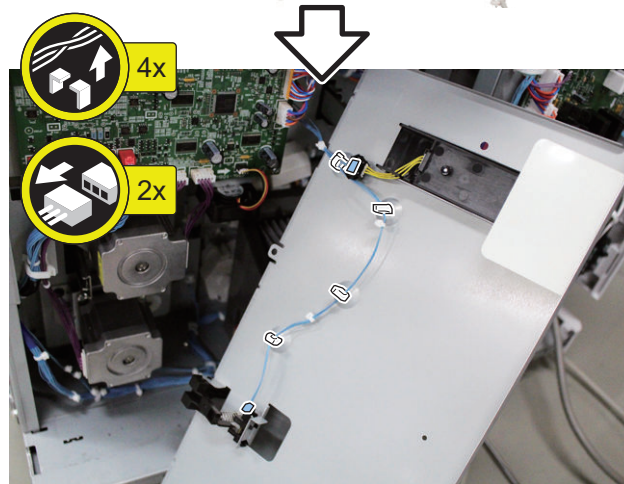
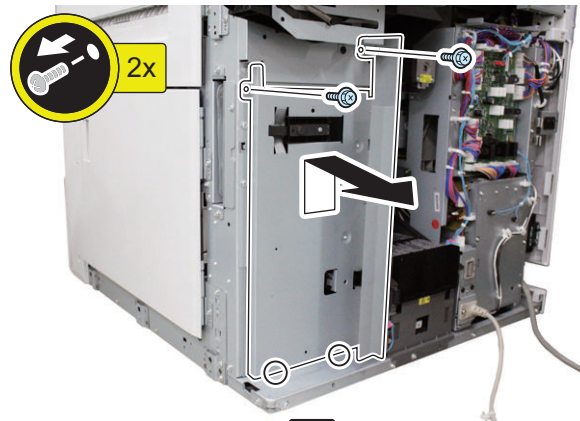


### CAUTION:

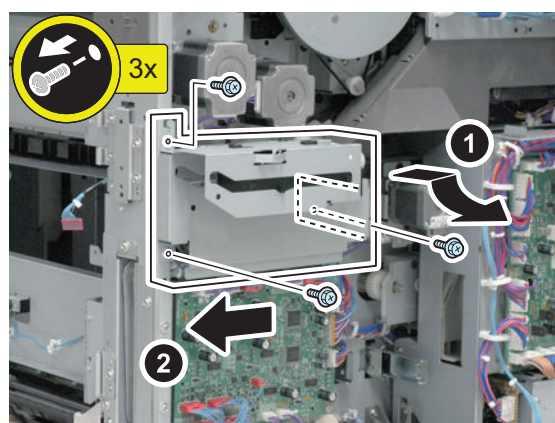
Do not lose the bushings when removing the Roller Shaft.

**2. Remove the Shield Plate.**

- 2 Screw
- 2 Protrusions
- 4 Wire Saddles
- 2 Connectors

**3. Remove the Waste Toner Container Shutter Unit.**

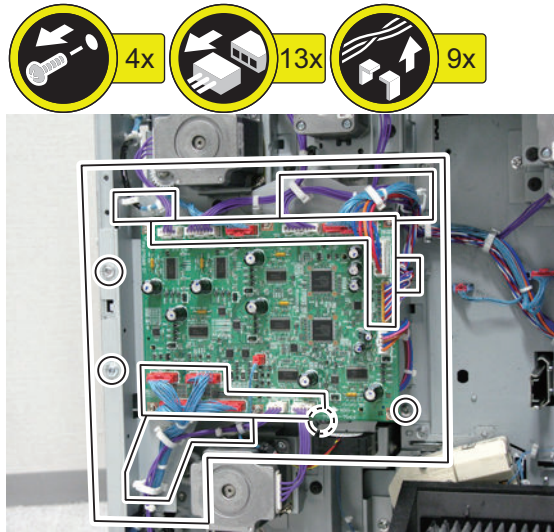
- 3 Screws
- 1 Hook





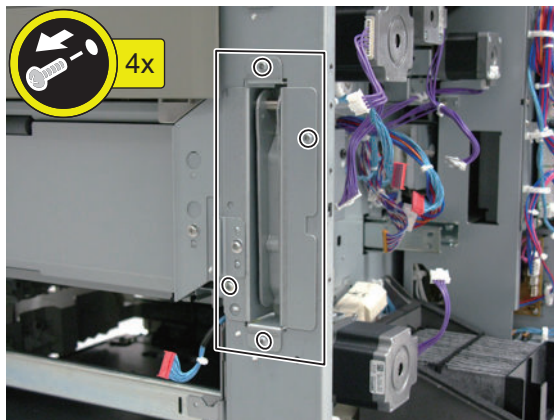
**4. Remove the Feed Driver PCB Unit.**

- 4 Screws
- 13 Connectors
- 9 Wire Saddles
- 1 Reuse Band
- Harness



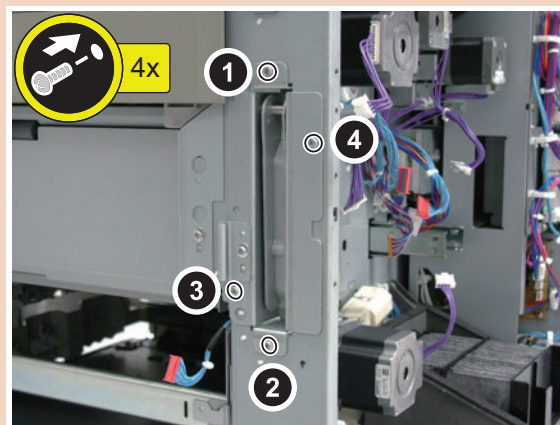
**5. Remove the Right Rear Handle.**

- 4 Screws



**CAUTION:**

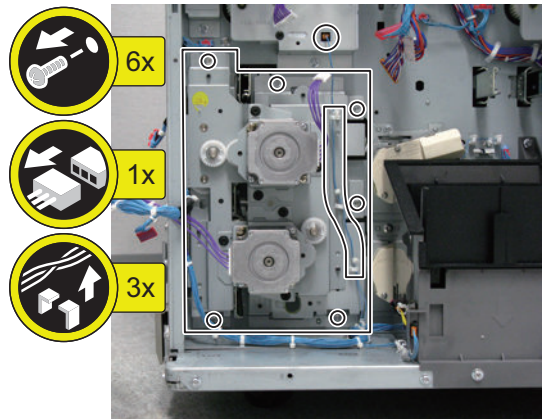
When installing the handle, be sure to follow the order as shown in the figure to tighten screws.





**6. Free the harness and remove the Vertical Path Cassette Drive Unit.**

- 1 Connector
- 3 Wire Saddles
- 6 Screws

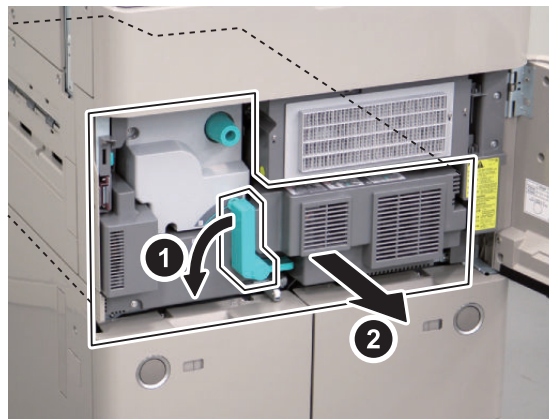


## Removing the Registration Unit

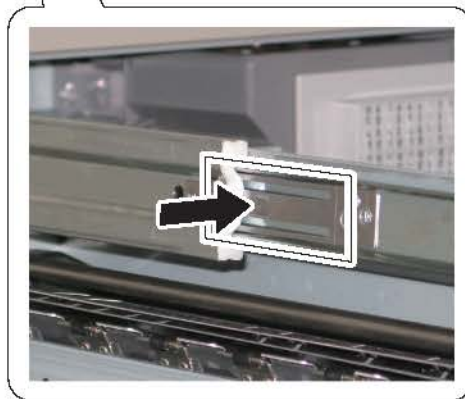
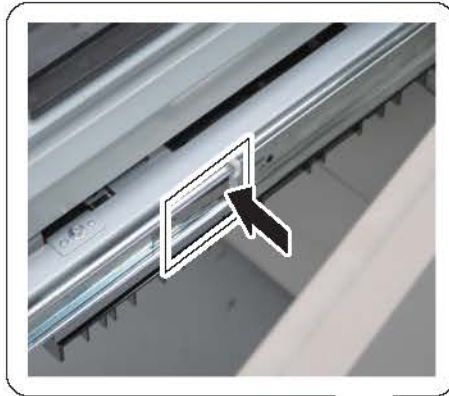
### ■ <Preparation>

#### 1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit.

1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Turn the Fixing Feed Unit Pressure Release Lever in the direction of the arrow to pull out the Fixing Feed Unit.



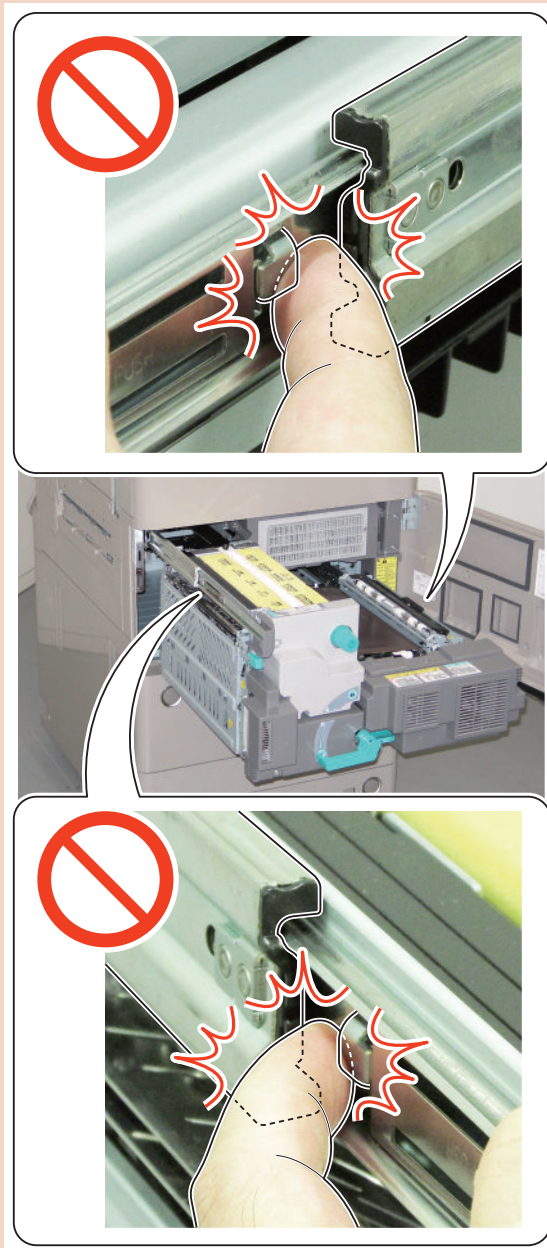
3. Push to release the Release Springs at both sides of the Rail, and then further pull out the Fixing Feed Unit until it stops.



**CAUTION:**

Caution when pushing the Fixing Feed Unit in

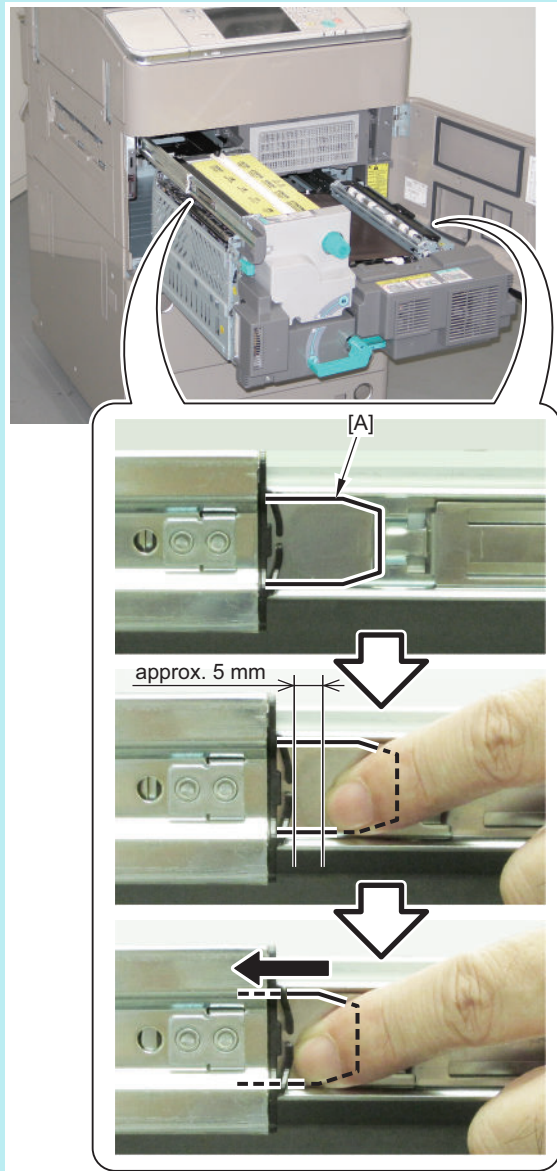
While pressing the Release Springs, slowly push the Fixing Feed Unit in so that the fingers do not get caught.



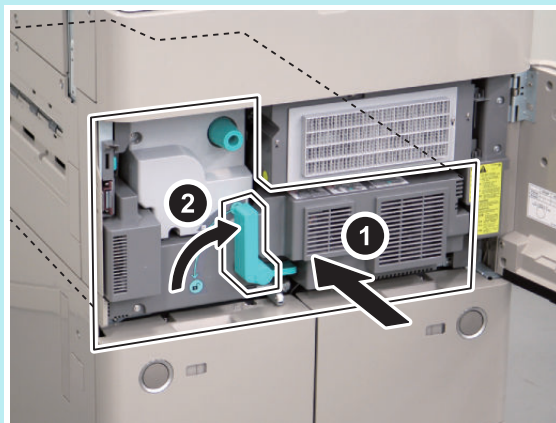
**NOTE:**

How to push the Fixing Feed Unit in

1. Release the Release Springs [A] on the side of either rail.  
Slowly push the Fixing Feed Unit in by approximately 5 mm while keeping it level.



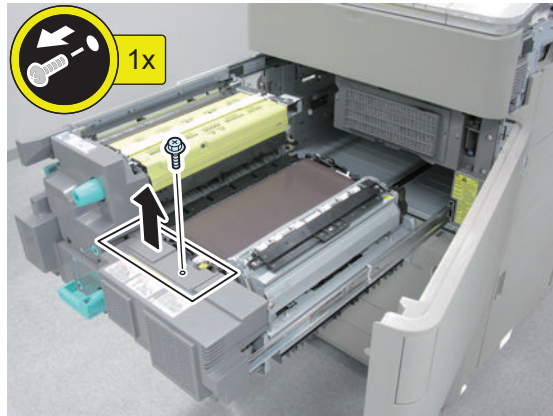
2. Take the fingers off the Release Springs and slowly push the Fixing Feed Unit in to the end.



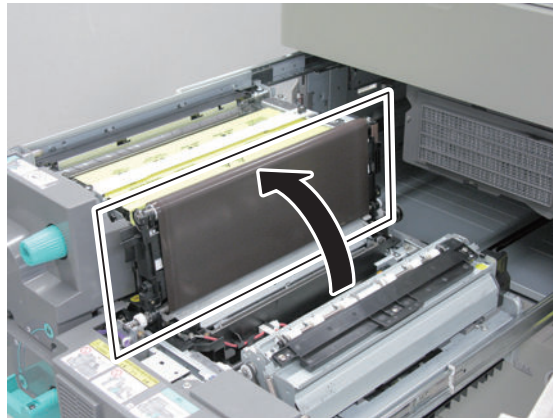
## ■ Procedure

### 1. Remove the Fixing Feed Right Front Upper Cover

- 1 Screw

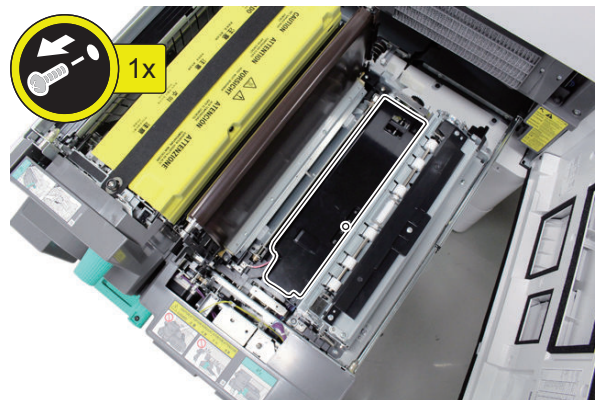


### 2. Lift the ETB Unit in the direction of the arrow.



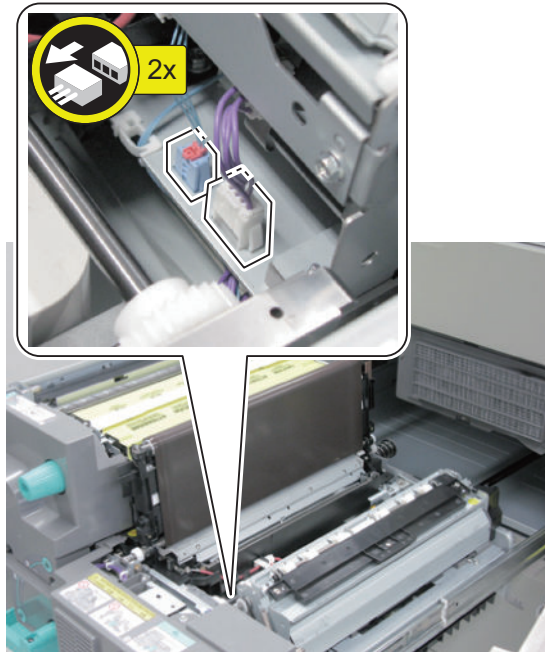
### 3. Remove the Cover.

- 1 Screw

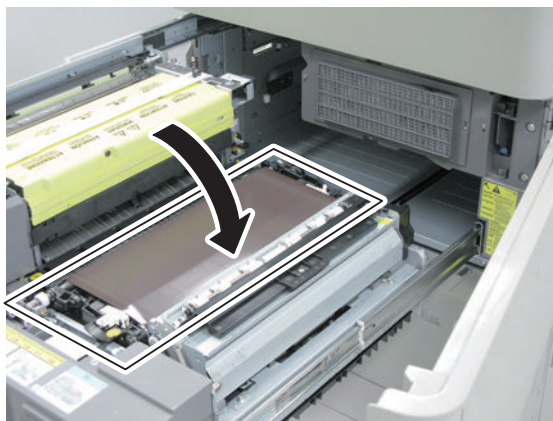




4. Disconnect the 2 Connecters.

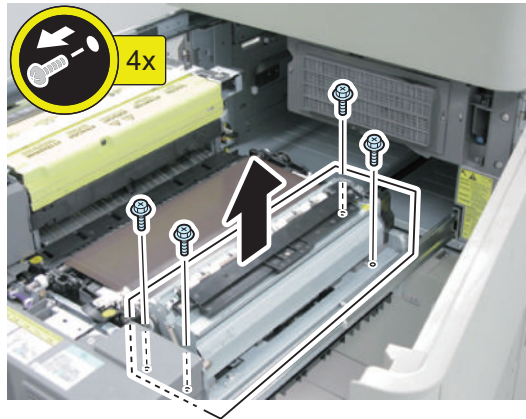


5. Set the ETB Unit back.



## 6. Remove the Registration Unit.

- 4 Screws



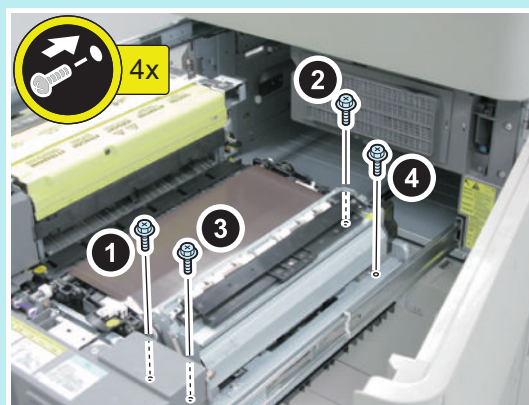
### CAUTION:

When installing, be sure to check that the 2 Positioning Pins are secured.



### NOTE:

When installing the Registration Unit, be sure to follow the order as shown in the figure to tighten screws.



## ● Removing the Left Deck Pickup Drive Unit

### ■ Preparation

1. Remove the Box Cover (Left). (“Removing the Vertical Path Cassette Pickup Drive Unit” on page 515)
2. Open the Controller Box. (“Removing the Vertical Path Cassette Pickup Drive Unit” on page 515)

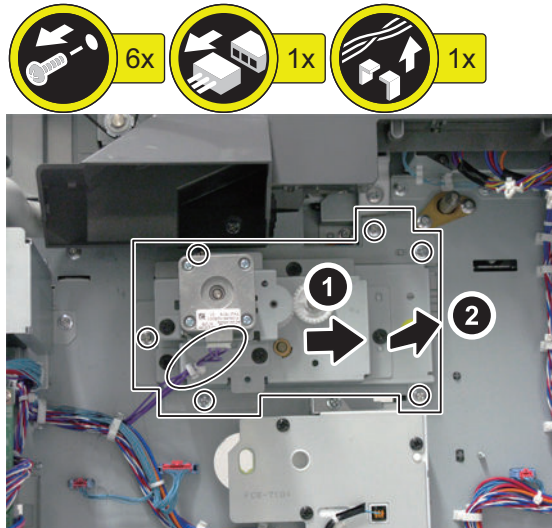


3. Remove the Rear Lower Cover. (“Removing the Vertical Path Cassette Pickup Drive Unit” on page 515)
4. Remove the Power Supply Assembly. (“Removing the Power Supply Assembly” on page 542)
5. Remove the Left Deck Pickup Unit. (“Removing the Left Deck Pickup Unit” on page 509)

## ■ <Procedure>

1. Remove the Left Deck Pickup Drive Unit in the direction of the arrow.

- 6 Screws
- 1 Connector
- 1 Wire Saddle



## ● Removing the Main Drive Unit

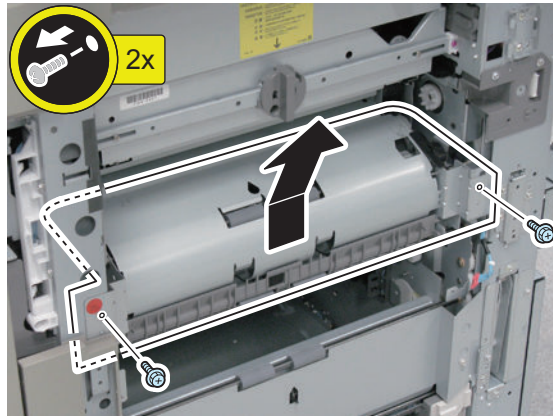
### ■ Preparation

1. Remove the Box Cover (Left). (“Removing the Vertical Path Cassette Pickup Drive Unit” on page 515)
2. Open the Controller Box. (“Removing the Vertical Path Cassette Pickup Drive Unit” on page 515)
3. Remove the Rear Lower Cover. (“Removing the Vertical Path Cassette Pickup Drive Unit” on page 515)
4. Remove the Waste Toner Container. (“Removing the Waste Toner Container” on page 401)
5. Remove the Right Lower Cover. (“Removing the Cassettes 3 and 4 Pickup Unit” on page 512)
6. Remove the Right Deck Pickup Unit. (“Removing the Right Deck Pickup Unit” on page 510)

## ■ Procedure

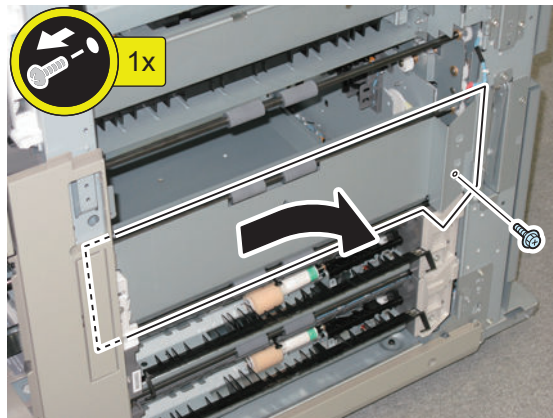
### 1. Remove the Pre-registration Guide Unit.

- 2 Screws

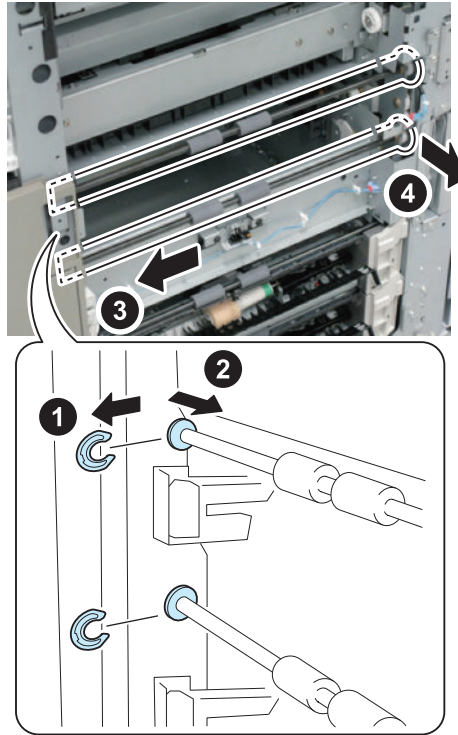


### 2. Remove the Middle Vertical Path Guide.

- 1 Screw



3. Remove the 2 E-rings and move the bushings to remove the Vertical Path Rollers 1 and 2 in the direction of the arrow.

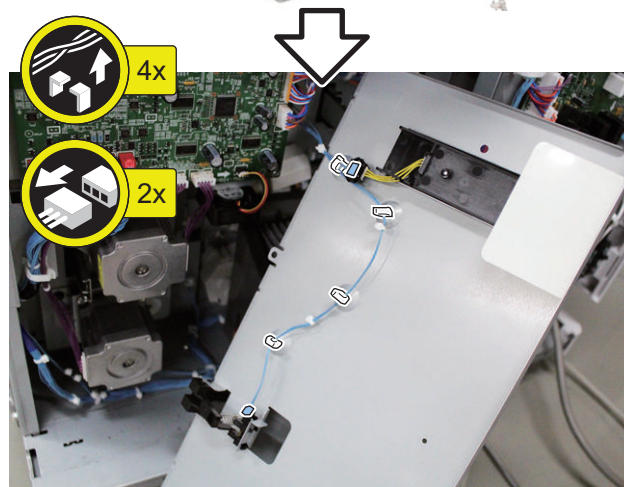
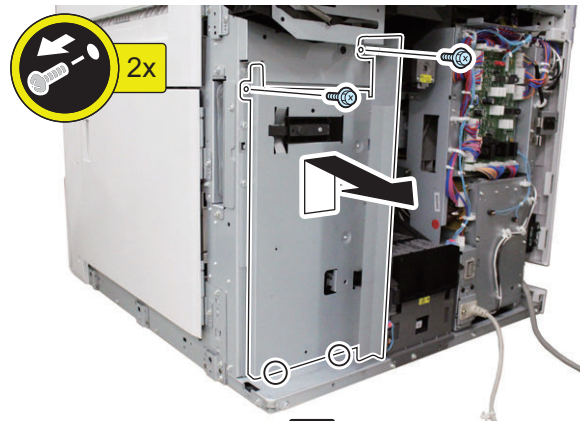


**CAUTION:**

Do not lose the bushings when removing the Vertical Path Rollers 1 and 2.

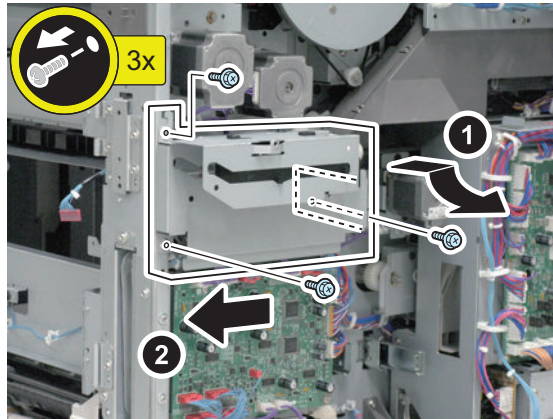
**4. Remove the Shield Plate.**

- 2 Screws
- 2 Protrusions
- 4 Wire Saddles
- 2 Connectors



**5. Remove the Waste Toner Container Shutter Unit.**

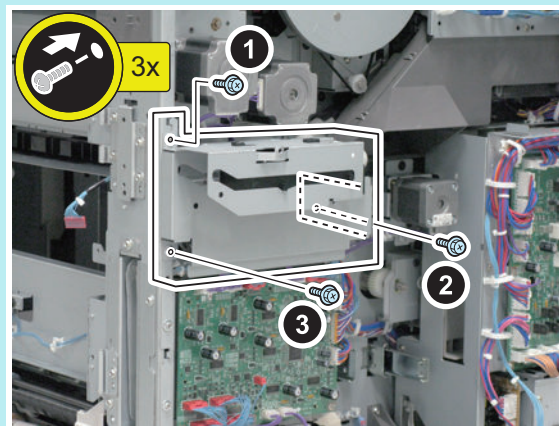
- 3 Screws

**CAUTION:**

When removing the Waste Toner Container Shutter Unit, be careful of toner scattering.

**NOTE:**

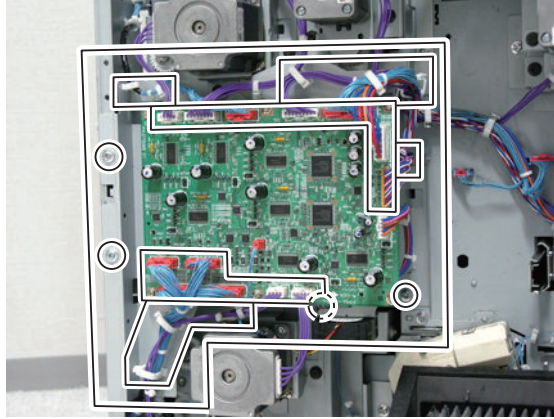
When installing the Waste Toner Container Shutter Unit, be sure to follow the order as shown in the figure to tighten screws.



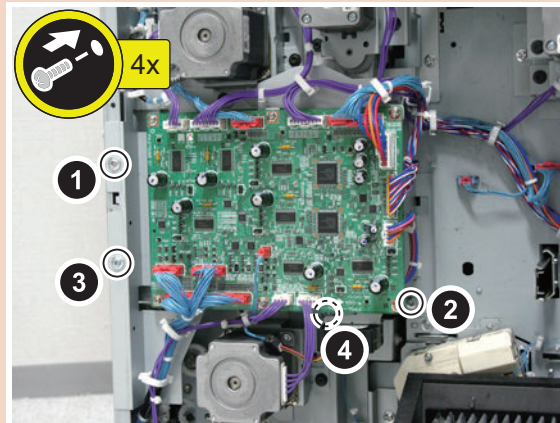


**6. Remove the Feed Driver PCB Unit.**

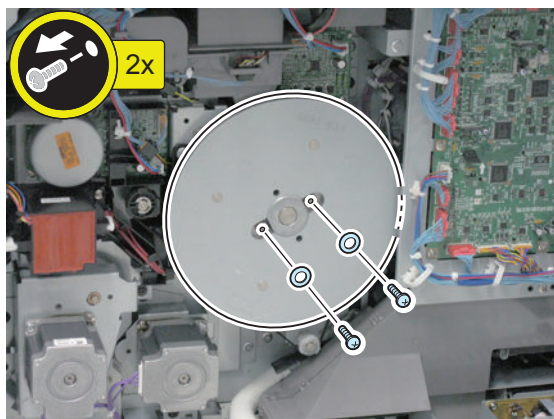
- 4 Screws
- 13 Connectors
- 9 Wire Saddles
- 1 Reuse Band
- Harness

**CAUTION:**

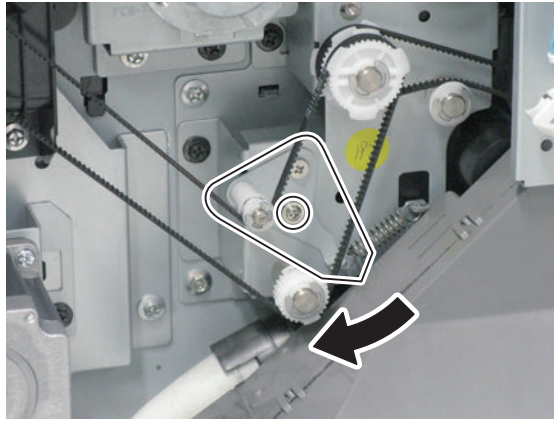
When installing the Feed Driver PCB Unit, be sure to follow the order as shown in the figure to tighten screws.

**7. Remove the Flywheel.**

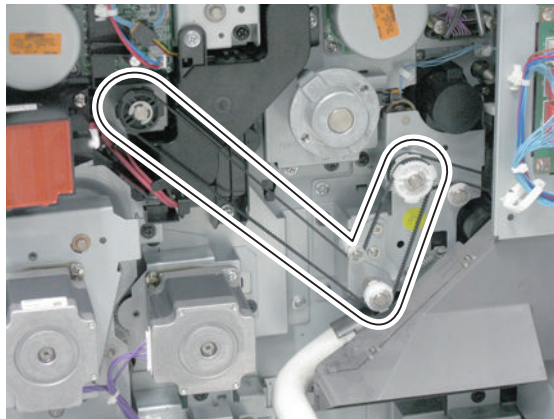
- 2 Screws
- 2 Washers



8. Loosen the screw and move the Belt Tensioner in the direction of the arrow, and then again tighten the screw.

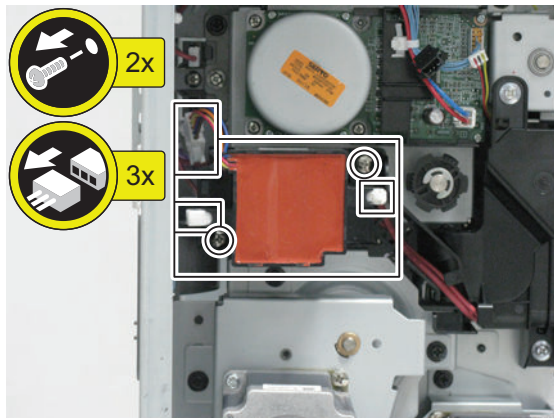


9. Remove the belt from the pulley.



10. Remove the transformer.

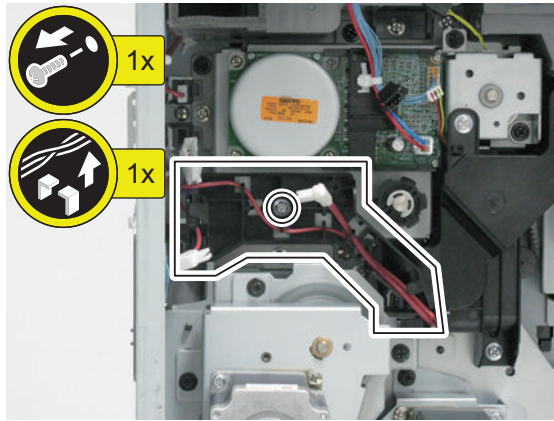
- 2 Screws
- 3 Connectors





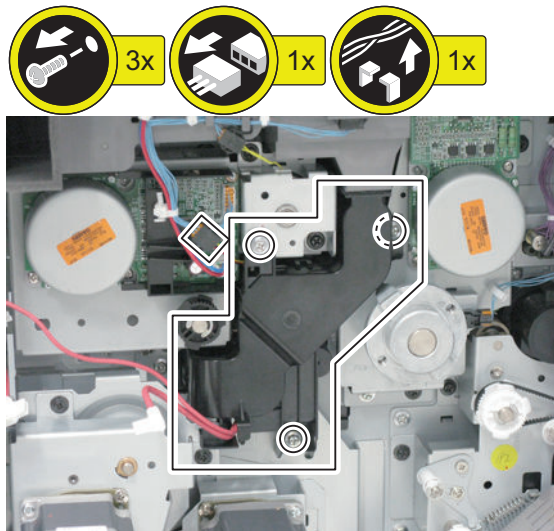
**11. Free the harness and remove the Transformer Support Base.**

- 1 Screw
- Harness



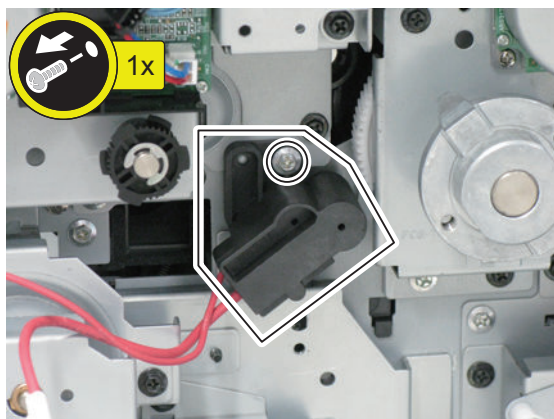
**12. Remove the Duct Unit.**

- 3 Screws
- 1 Connector
- Harness



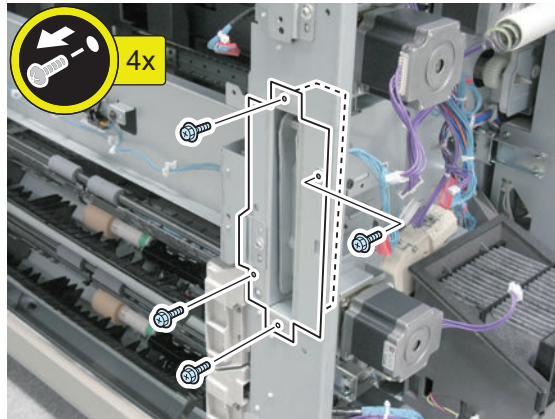
**13. Disconnect the Pre-transfer Charging High Voltage Connector.**

- 1 Screw

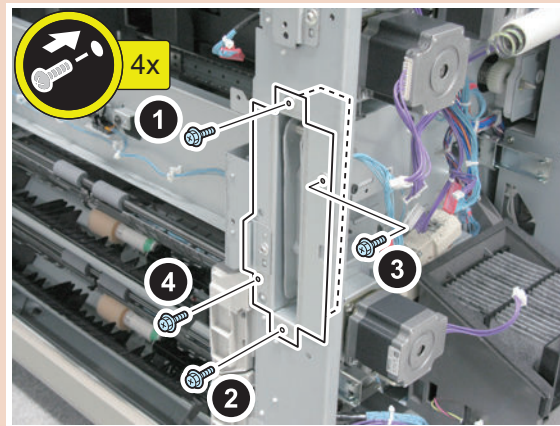


**14. Remove the Right Rear Handle.**

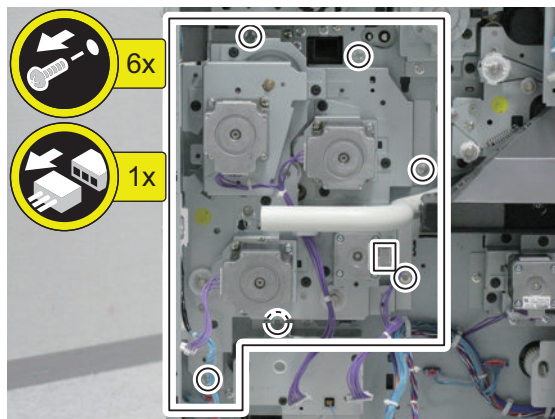
- 4 Screws

**CAUTION:**

When installing the Right Rear Handle, be sure to follow the order as shown in the figure to tighten screws.

**15. Remove the Main Drive Unit.**

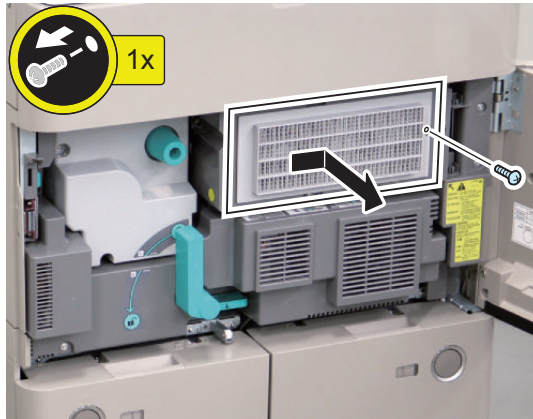
- 6 Screws
- 1 Connector



## External Auxiliary System

### ● Removing the Filter (for primary charging)

1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Remove the Filter (for primary charging).
  - 1 Screw

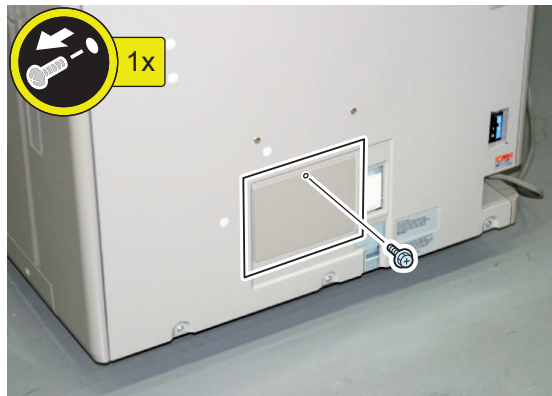


### ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. Clear the parts counter.(COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1 > AR-FIL1)

### ● Removing the Ozone Filter

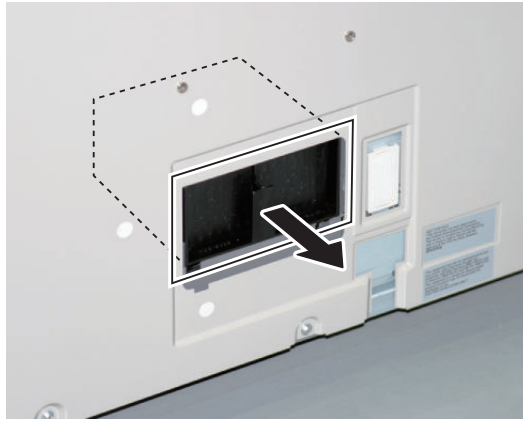
1. Remove the Filter Cover.
  - 1 Screw



#### NOTE:

To prevent falling of the Filter Cover, be sure to hold the Filter Cover to remove the screw.

## 2. Remove the Ozone Filter.



## ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. Clear the parts counter.(COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1 > OZ-FIL1)

## ● Removing the DC Controller PCB

### ■ Before Parts Replacement

#### CAUTION:

When replacing the DC Controller PCB, be sure to use a new one. Do not use the DC Controller PCB which was used with another machine.

1. **Execute the following service mode to output setting values for just in case of restoration failure of backup data.**  
COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT
2. **Execute the following service mode to back up the service mode setting values.**  
(Lv.2) COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DSRAMBUP  
During execution, "ACTIVE" flashes in the status column of the service mode.  
It takes approx. 2 minutes. Upon success, [OK!] is displayed in the status column.
3. **After confirming that [OK!] is displayed in the status column of the service mode, turn OFF the power of the machine.**

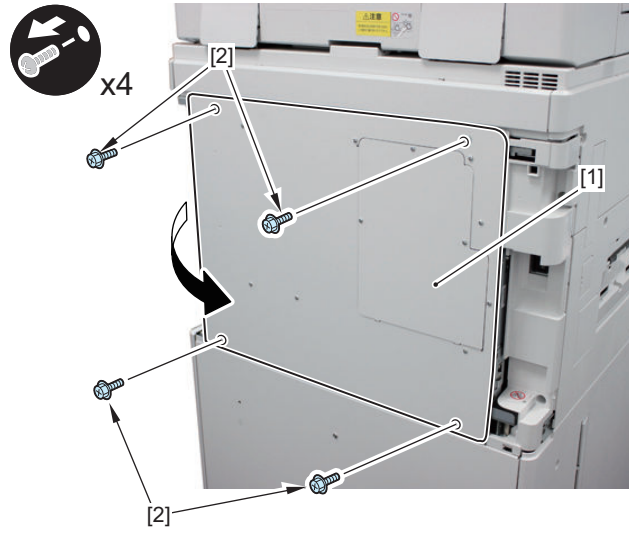
### ■ Preparation

1. Remove the Box Cover (Left).



**2. Open the Controller Box [1] in the direction of the arrow.**

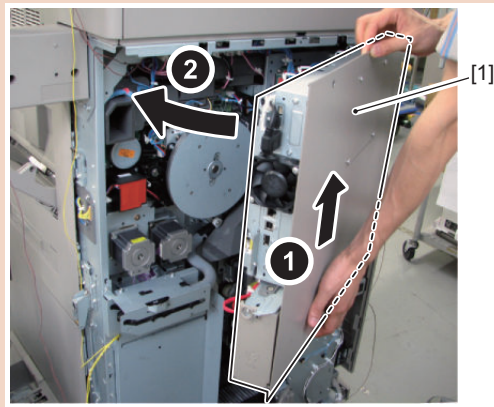
- 4 Screws [2]



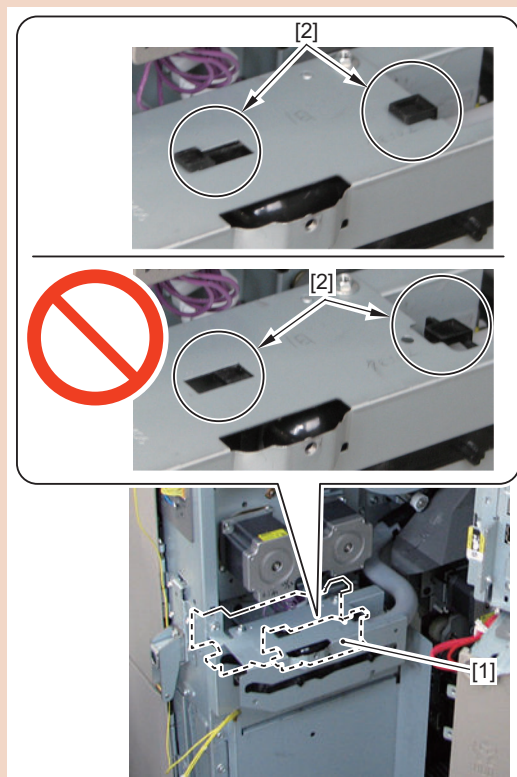
**CAUTION:**

Points to Note when Installing the Controller Box

While installing the Controller Box, be sure to lift it to avoid hitting the hook of the Waste Toner Container Shutter Unit.



If the Inner Cover of the Controller Box hits the hook of the Waste Toner Container Shutter Unit, the hook may be removed.

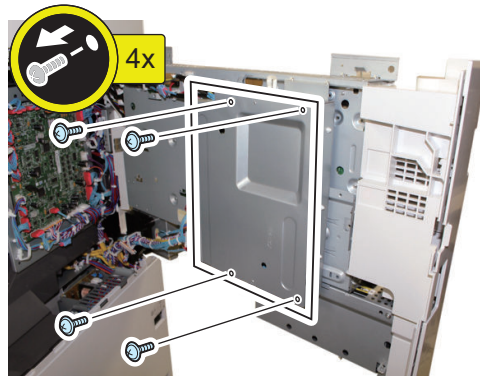




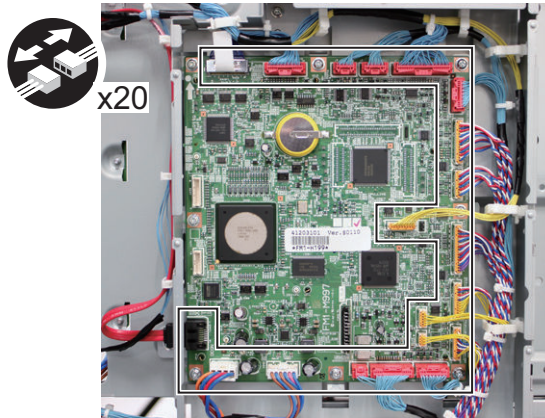
## ■ Procedure

### 1. Remove the Controller Box Inner Cover.

- 4 Screws (TP)

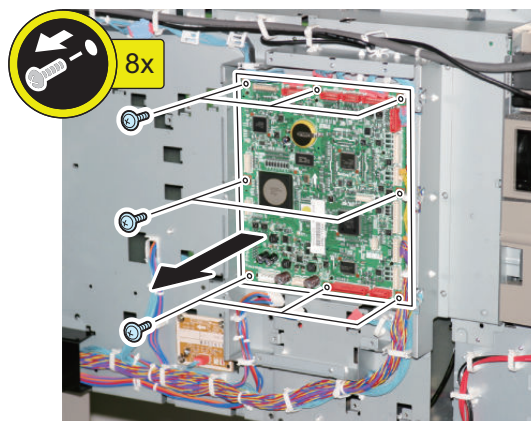


### 2. Disconnect the 20 Connectors.



### 3. Remove the DC Controller PCB in the direction of the arrow.

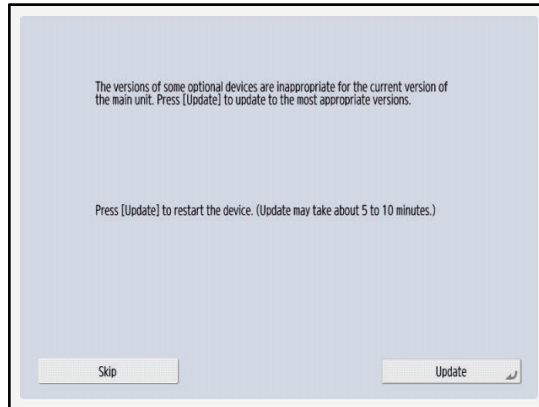
- 8 Screws





## ■ Works During Parts Replacement

1. If the firmware combination is incorrect, execute an update with the Automatic Update function.



Screen example

### CAUTION:

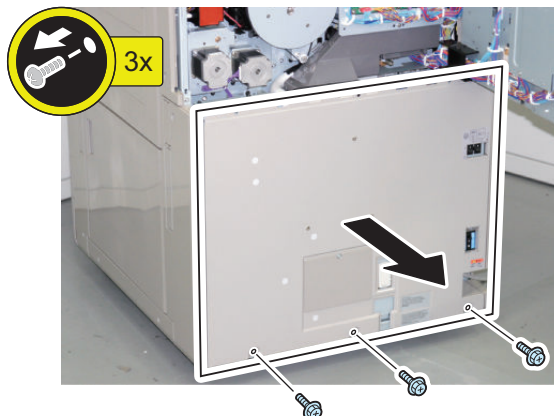
Automatic Update is available only when the following Service Mode settings are at 1 or 2.  
(Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

2. When the setting value data is backed up before parts replacement, execute the following service mode to restore the backed-up setting value data.  
(Lv.2) COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DSRAMRES  
During execution, "ACTIVE" flashes in the status column of the service mode.  
It takes approx. 2 minutes. Upon success, [OK!] is displayed in the status column.
3. When setting values cannot be backed up before replacement or when the backed-up data cannot be restored in this step due to reasons such as damage of the DC Controller PCB, enter the values of each service mode item written on the service label or P-PRINT before parts replacement.

## ● Removing the Power Supply Assembly

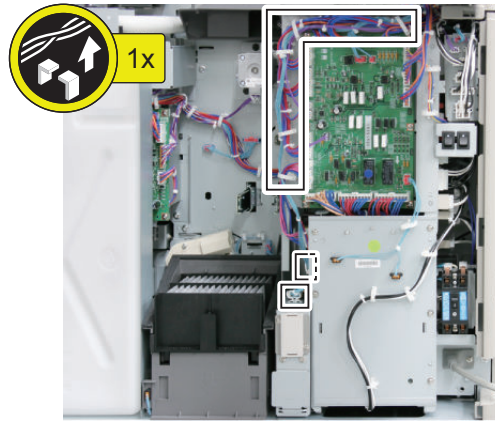
### ■ <Preparation>

1. Remove the Box Cover (Left). (Refer to "Removing the DC Controller PCB" on page 538)
2. Open the Controller Box. (Refer to "Removing the DC Controller PCB" on page 538)
3. Remove the Rear Lower Cover.
  1. Remove the Rear Lower Cover in the direction of the arrow.
    - 3 Screws

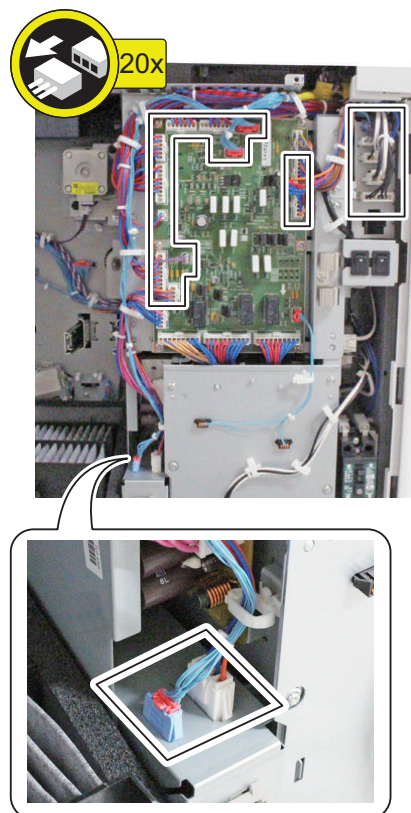


## ■ Procedure

1. Free the Harness from the Wire Saddle.

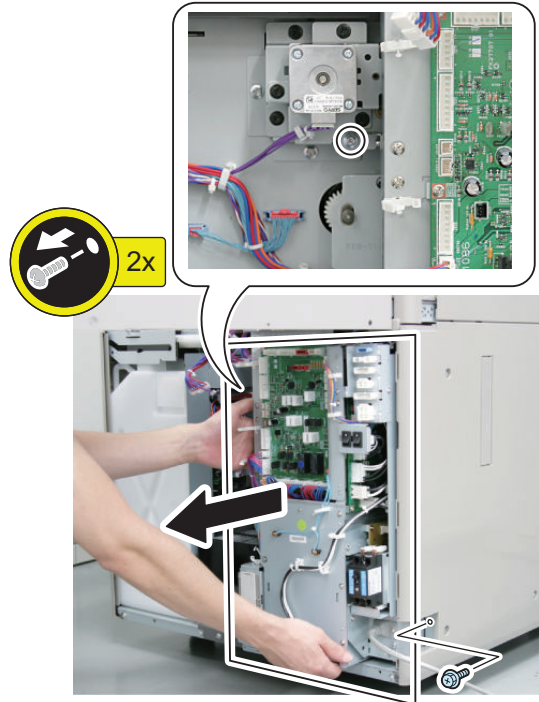


2. Disconnect the 20 Connectors and free the Harness to the top of the Power Supply Assembly.



### 3. Remove the Power Supply Assembly in the direction of the arrow.

- 2 Screws

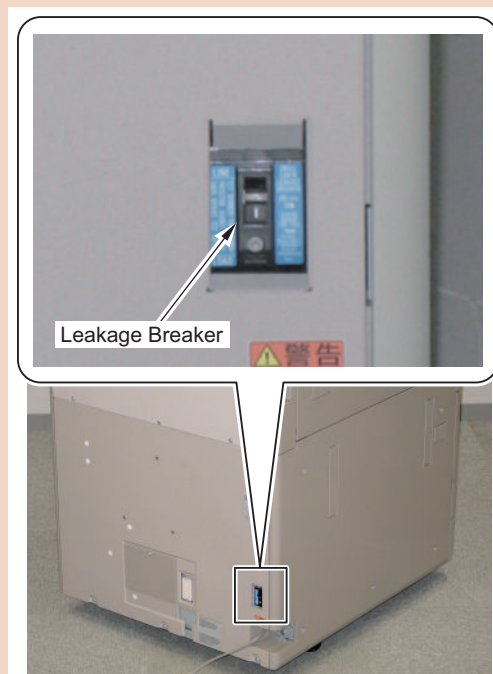


## ● Removing the Fixing Power Unit

### CAUTION:

Points to Caution before Operation

When executing this procedure, be sure to turn OFF the breaker beforehand.



## ■ <Preparation>

1. Remove the Box Cover (Left). (Refer to “Removing the DC Controller PCB” on page 538)

## ■ <Procedure>

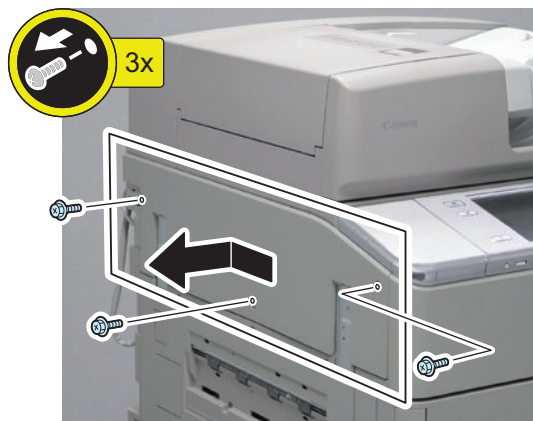
### 1. Open the 2 Finisher Connector Covers.

- 2 Claws



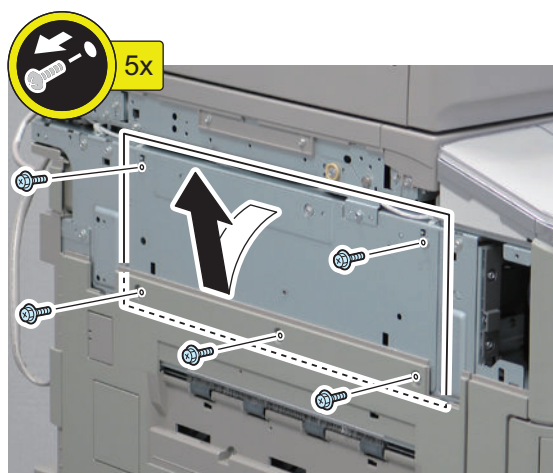
### 2. Remove the Left Upper Cover.

- 3 Screws



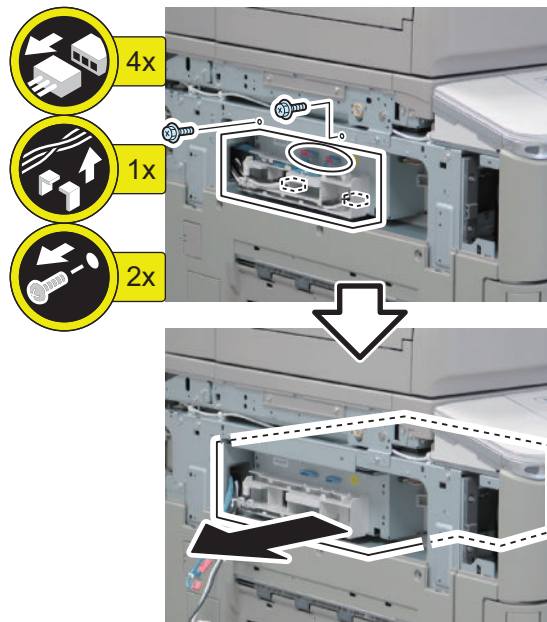
### 3. Remove the Left Upper Frame.

- 5 Screws

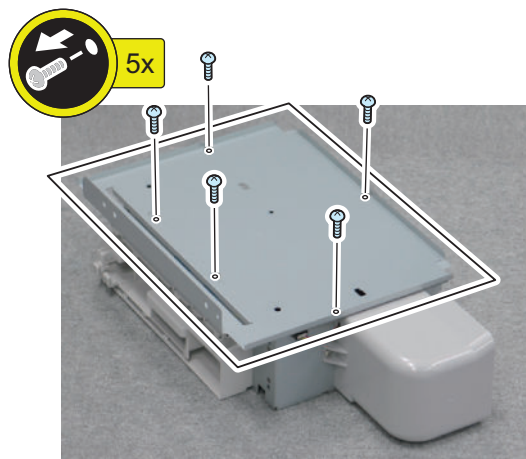


**4. Free the harness and remove the Fixing Power Unit.**

- 4 Connectors
- 2 Screws

**5. Remove the Fixing Power Unit Plate.**

- 5 Screws



## Removing the Feed Driver PCB

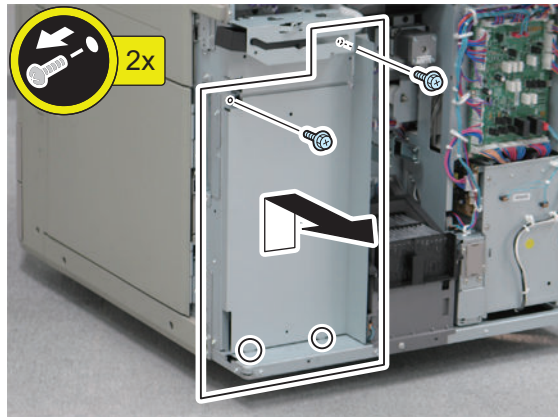
### ■ Preparation

1. Remove the Waste Toner Container. (“Removing the Waste Toner Container” on page 401)
2. Remove the Box Cover (Left). (“Removing the DC Controller PCB” on page 538)
3. Open the Controller Box. (“Removing the DC Controller PCB” on page 538)
4. Remove the Rear Lower Cover. (“Removing the Power Supply Assembly” on page 542)

## ■ <Procedure>

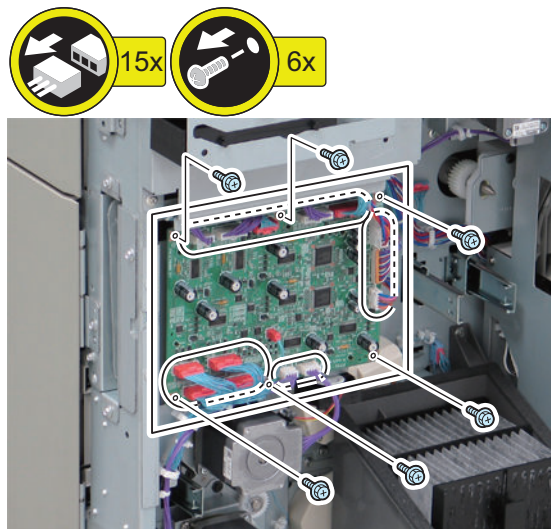
### 1. Remove the frame of Waste Toner Container.

- 2 Screws
- 2 Protrusions



### 2. Remove the Feed Driver PCB.

- 6 Screws
- 15 Connectors



## ● Removing the Upper High Voltage Unit

### ■ <Preparation>

1. Remove the Box Cover (Left). (Refer to “Removing the DC Controller PCB” on page 538)
2. Open the Controller Box. (Refer to “Removing the DC Controller PCB” on page 538)



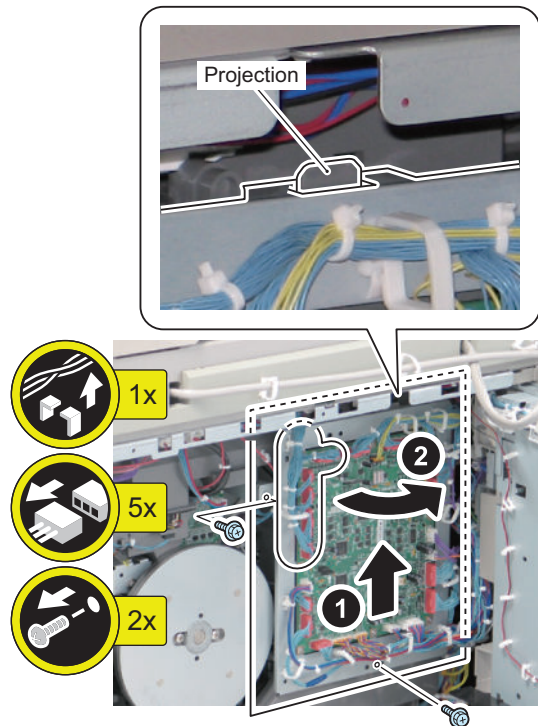
## ■ Procedure

### 1. Open the Motor Driver PCB Unit.

**NOTE:**

When opening the Motor Driver PCB Unit, free the top side from the protrusion.

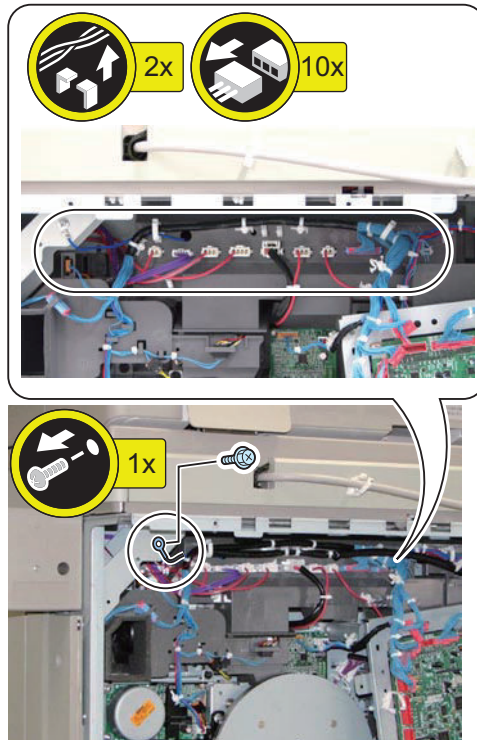
- 5 Connectors
- 2 Screws
- Wire Saddle
- Reuse Band





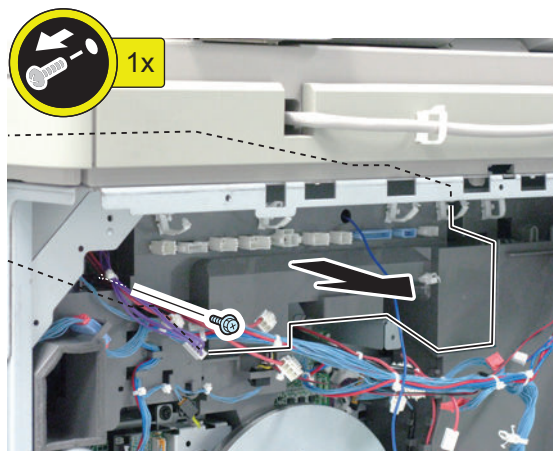
**2. Disconnect the connector and Grounding Wire.**

- 1 Screw



**3. While avoiding the harness and Motor Driver PCB Unit, remove the Upper High Voltage Unit.**

- 1 Screw





# 6

## Adjustment

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Pickup Feed System.....   | 551 |
| Skew Adjustment (at Stream Scanning<br>of Originals).....   | 561 |
| Adjusting the Height.....   | 567 |
| Right Angle Adjustment (Slant<br>Adjustment).....   | 571 |
| Light intensity adjustment .....  | 577 |
| Automatic Adjustment of the Stream<br>Reading Position (Automatic<br>Adjustment of the Reading Position<br>at ADF Reading)..... | 578 |
| White Level Adjustment .....  | 579 |
| Front/Back Side Difference Correction<br>Adjustment.....  | 580 |
| Parallelogram Correction.....   | 583 |
| Angle Correction (Front / Back).....  | 584 |
| Image Position Adjustment (at Stream<br>Scanning of Originals).....   | 585 |
| Other Adjustments.....  | 594 |
| Original Feed System.....   | 602 |
| Original Exposure System.....   | 603 |
| Main Controller.....  | 605 |
| Laser Exposure System.....  | 610 |
| Image Formation System.....   | 611 |
| Fixing System.....  | 618 |
| External Auxiliary System.....  | 619 |

## Pickup Feed System

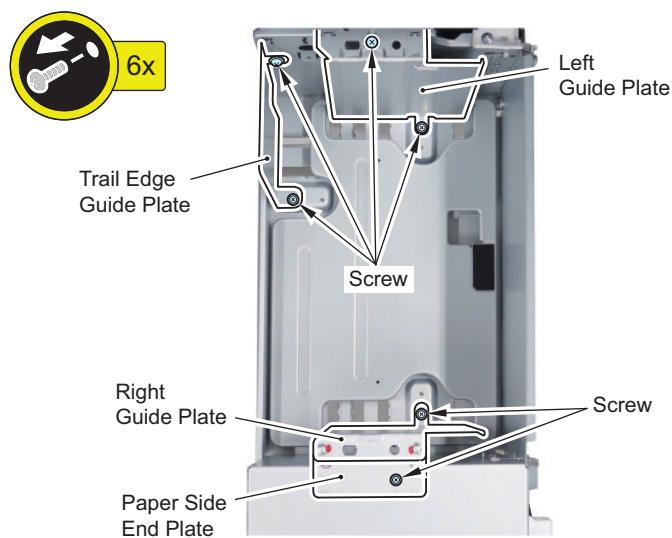
### Setting the Deck

- 
1. Pull out the Left and the Right Decks to the front.
- 
2. Remove the 4 screws fixing the Trailing Edge Guide Plate, Left Guide Plate, Right Guide Plate, and Paper Side End Plate in place, and fix each of the Guide Plates at user's desired size.

#### NOTE:

Setting the Paper Side End Plate

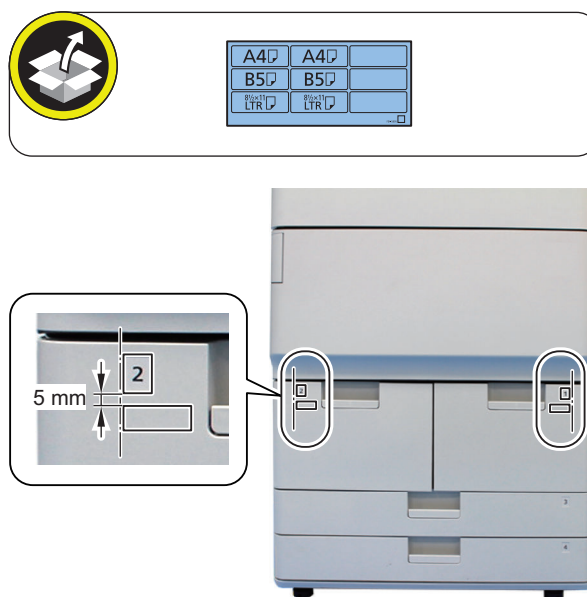
- Be sure to align the Paper Side End Plate with the position according to the size requested by the user, and secure the screw.
- When B5 size is set, the Paper Size End Plate cannot be fixed to the deck with the screw. In order to prevent the screw from being lost, be sure to secure the screw to the deck as shown below.



- 
3. Put the specified size of papers in the Left/Right Deck, and push the Left/Right Deck in.



4. Affix Paper Size Labels (for Deck) according to the paper size, with the edge of each label aligned with the edge of the cassette number label. Approx. 5 mm away from the number label.

**NOTE:**

If Setup Guide is running, skip this procedure.

5. Register the type of paper loaded in the paper source.

1. Select the [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Paper Settings] > [Paper Settings].
2. Select the paper source where paper is loaded, and press [Set].
3. Select the paper type same as that of the loaded paper, and press [OK] > [OK].

**NOTE:**

If the corresponding paper type is not displayed on the simple settings screen, press [Detailed Settings] and make a selection on the detailed settings screen.

If the type of loaded paper is not displayed on the detailed settings screen, you can register it.

**NOTE:**

If Setup Guide is running, perform the following works after Setup Guide ends.



6. When the size has been changed, register the paper size for the Left and Right Deck in the service mode.

Right Deck :

COPIER > OPTION > CST > P-SZ-C1

Left Deck :

COPIER > OPTION > CST > P-SZ-C2



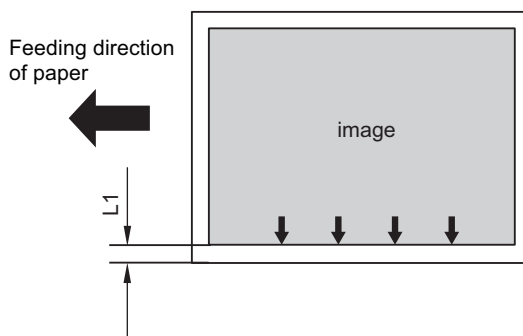
7. Exit from the service mode.

## Image Position Adjustment

### ■ Left Edge Margin Adjustment (1st side)

- 
1. After setting the service mode as follow, press the Start key and output a test print from each cassette and Deck.  
COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5  
COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = 1/2/3/4

- 
2. Check that the left edge margin of the image (L1) is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm. When the result is out of the specified range, perform adjustment by following the following procedure.



- 
3. Adjust the image position in service mode.

#### NOTE:

<Setting Range>

-20 to 20 (0.1 mm per unit)

As the value is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is increased by 0.1mm.

Right Deck:

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C1

Left Deck:

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C2

Cassette3:

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C3

Cassette4:

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C4

- 
4. When the setting value was changed in step 3, write down the new numerical value in the service label.

- 
5. Exit from the service mode.

- 
6. Perform printing again from the cassette/deck, and check that the left edge margin (L1) of the image is within 2.5 +/- 1.5 mm.

#### NOTE:

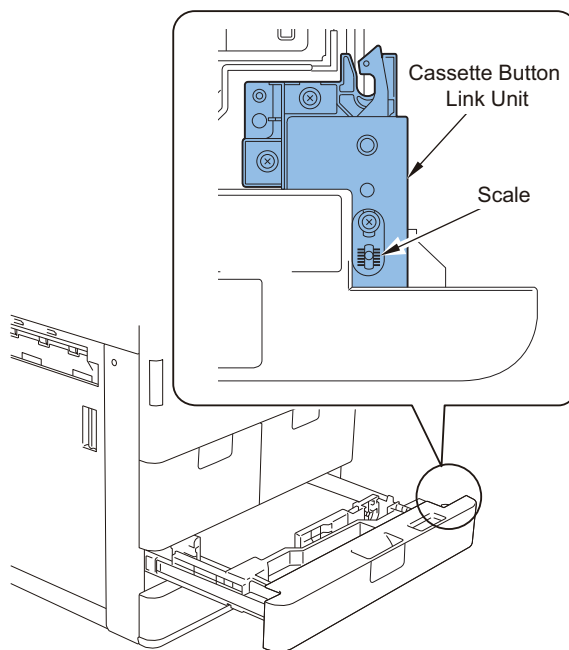
If the adjustment cannot be made with the setting value of -20 to 20 (adjustment amount: -2.0 to 2.0mm), execute step 7 and later steps.

□

7. Pull out the Cassette.

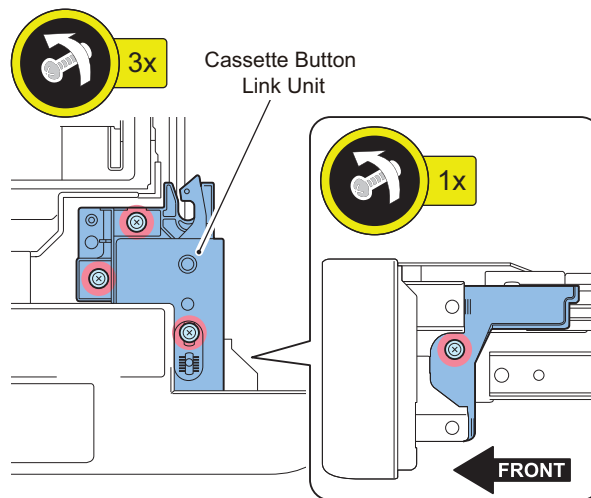
□

8. Check the Cassette position by the scale of the Cassette Button Link Unit.



□

9. Loosen the 4 screws of the Cassette Button Link Unit.

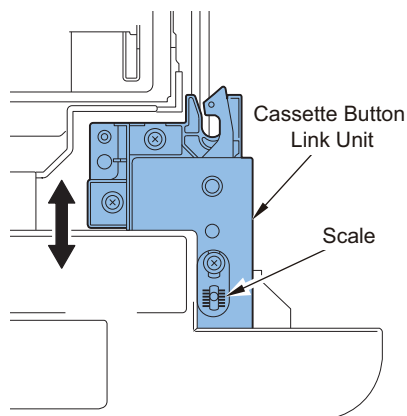




10. According to the scale in which the position was checked in step 8, adjust the position of the **Cassette Button Link Button**.

**NOTE:**

- In the case of larger margin at the rear side, move the Cassette Button Link Unit to the rear side.
- In the case of larger margin at the front side, move the Cassette Button Link Unit to the front side.



11. Tighten the 4 screws (which have been loosened in step 9).

**NOTE:**

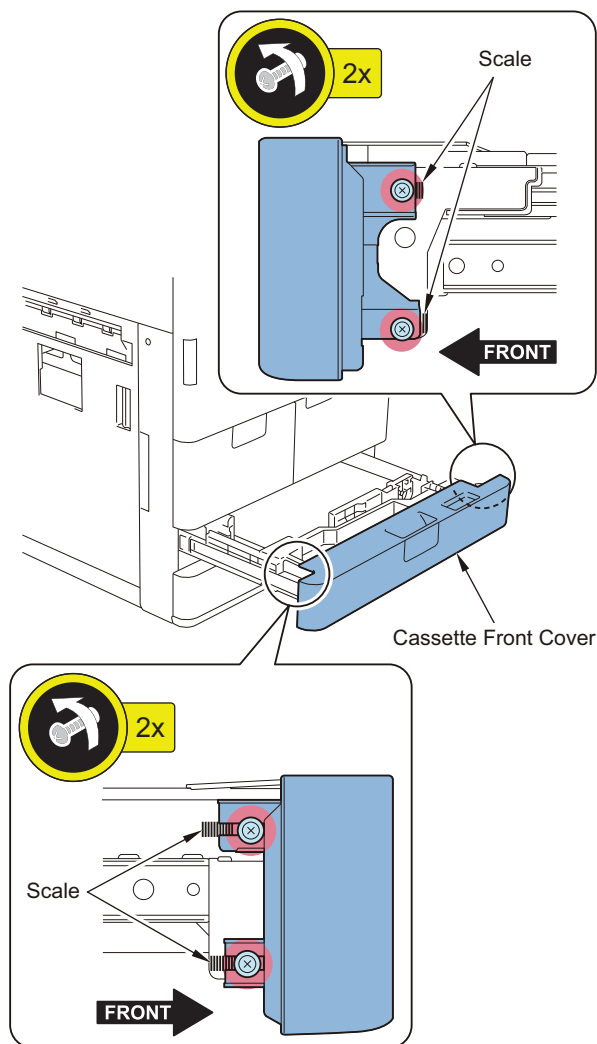
If you are concerned with alignment of the Cassette Front Cover, perform steps 12 to 14 to make an adjustment as necessary.



12. Loosen the 4 screws and adjust the position of the Cassette Front Cover by referring to the scale.



13. When moving the Cassette Button Link Unit, adjust the left side of the Cassette Front Cover by shifting it with the same shifting amount of the unit.



- 
14. Once the position of the Cassette Front Cover is confirmed, tighten the 4 screws (which have been loosened in step 12).
- 
15. Perform printing again from the cassette/deck, and check that the left edge margin (L1) of the image is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm.

**NOTE:**

When a mechanical adjustment was made, be sure to execute the service mode again.

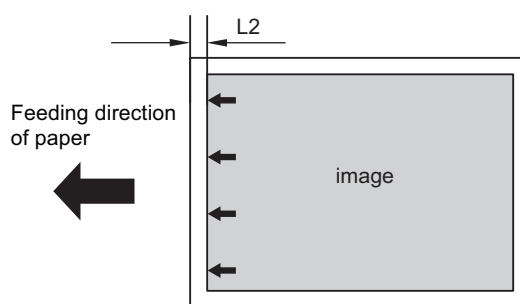
## ■ Leading Edge Margin Adjustment (1st side)

**NOTE:**

By executing the margin adjustment for the Cassette 3, the adjustment is applied to all source of paper.

- 
1. After setting the service mode as follow, press the Start key and output a test print from Cassette 3.  
 COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5  
 COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = 3

- 
2. Check that the leading edge margin of the image (L2) is within 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm. When the result is out of the specified range, perform adjustment by following the following procedure.



- 
3. Adjust the image position in service mode.

**NOTE:**

<Setting Range>

-50 to 50 (0.1 mm per unit)

As the value is incremented by 1, the leading edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REGIST

- 
4. Perform printing again from the cassette 3, and check that the leading edge margin (L2) of the image is within 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm.
- 
5. When the setting value was changed in step 3, write down the new numerical value in the service label.
- 
6. Exit from the service mode.

## ■ Left Edge/Leading Edge Margin Adjustment (2nd side)

**NOTE:**

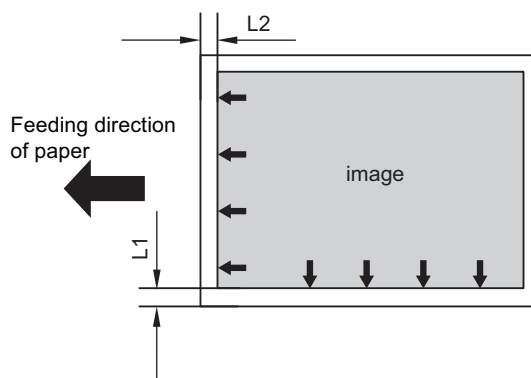
By executing the margin adjustment for the Cassette 3, the adjustment is applied to all source of paper.

- 
1. After setting the service mode as follow, press the Start key and output a test print from Cassette 3.
- COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5  
 COPIER > TEST > PG > 2-SIDE = 1  
 COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = 3



2. Check that the left edge margin (L1) and leading edge margin (L2) are within the range indicated below. When the result is out of the specified range, perform adjustment by following the following procedure.

- left edge margin L1: 2.5 +/-1.5 mm
- leading edge margin L2 : 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm



3. Adjust the image position in service mode.

<left edge margin>

**NOTE:**

<Setting Range>

-50 to 50 (0.1 mm per unit)

As the value is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is increased by 0.1mm.

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-REFE

<leading edge margin>

**NOTE:**

<Setting Range>

-50 to 50 (0.1 mm per unit)

As the value is incremented by 1, the leading edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REG-DUP1



4. Perform printing again from the cassette 3, and check that the left edge margin (L1) and leading edge margin (L2) of the image are within the range indicated below.

- left edge margin L1: 2.5 +/-1.5 mm
- leading edge margin L2 : 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm



5. When the setting value was changed in step 3, write down the new numerical value in the service label.



6. Exit from the service mode.

## ■ Left Edge/Leading Edge Margin Adjustment of Multi-purpose Pickup Tray

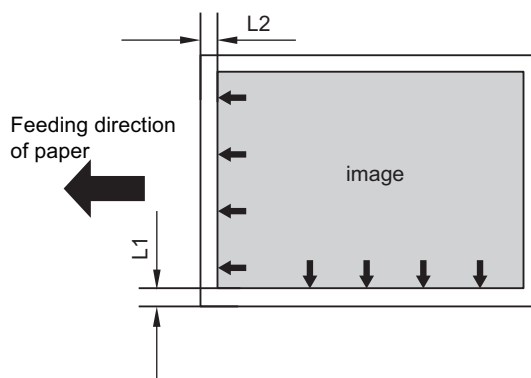


1. After setting the service mode as follow, press the Start key and output a test print from Multi-purpose Pickup Tray.

COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5

COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = 5

- 
2. Check that the left edge margin (L1) and leading edge margin (L2) are within the range indicated below. When the result is out of the specified range, perform adjustment by following the following procedure.
- left edge margin L1: 2.5 +/-1.5 mm
  - leading edge margin L2: 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm



- 
3. Adjust the image position in service mode.  
<left edge margin>

**NOTE:**

&lt;Setting Range&gt;

-20 to 20 (0.1 mm per unit)

As the value is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is increased by 0.1mm.

COPIER &gt; ADJUST &gt; FEED-ADJ &gt; ADJ-MF

&lt;leading edge margin&gt;

**NOTE:**

&lt;Setting Range&gt;

-50 to 50 (0.1 mm per unit)

As the value is incremented by 1, the leading edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.

COPIER &gt; ADJUST &gt; FEED-ADJ &gt; RG-MF

- 
4. When the setting value was changed in step 3, write down the new numerical value in the service label.

- 
5. Exit from the service mode.

- 
6. Perform printing again from the Multi-purpose Pickup Tray, and check that the left edge margin (L1) and leading edge margin (L2) of the image are within the range indicated below.
- left edge margin L1: 2.5 +/-1.5 mm
  - leading edge margin L2: 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm

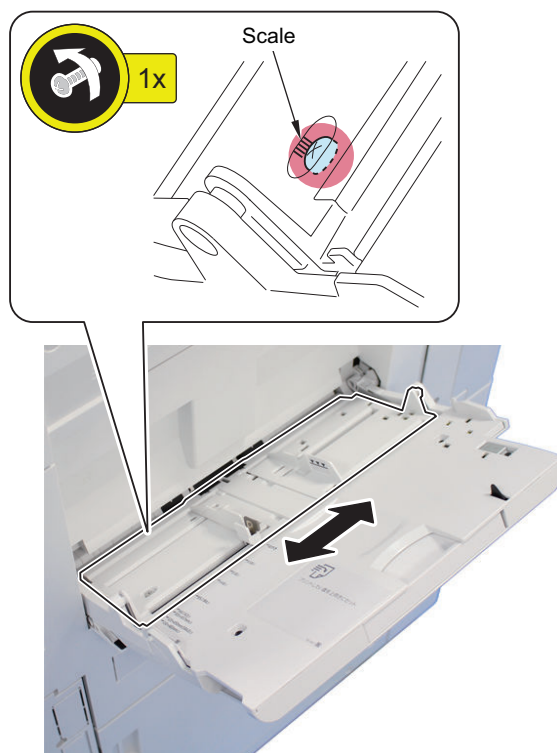
**NOTE:**

In the case of left edge margin: If the adjustment cannot be made with the setting value of -20 to 20 (adjustment amount: -2.0 to 2.0mm), execute step 7 and later steps.

- 
7. Open the Multi-purpose Pickup Tray.

**8. Loosen the screw and adjust the position of the Slide Guide by referring to the scale.**

- In the case of larger margin at the rear side, move the Slide Guide to the front side.
- In the case of larger margin at the front side, move the Slide Guide to the rear side.

**9. Tighten the screw loosened in step 8.****10. Perform printing again from the Multi-purpose Pickup Tray, and check that the left edge margin (L1) and leading edge margin (L2) of the image are within the range indicated below.**

- left edge margin L1: 2.5 +/-1.5 mm
- leading edge margin L2: 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm

**NOTE:**

When a mechanical adjustment was made, be sure to execute the service mode again.

## Skew Adjustment (at Stream Scanning of Originals)

If the images from stream scanned originals are skewed after the adjustments of the printer side is complete, perform skew adjustment according to the workflow.

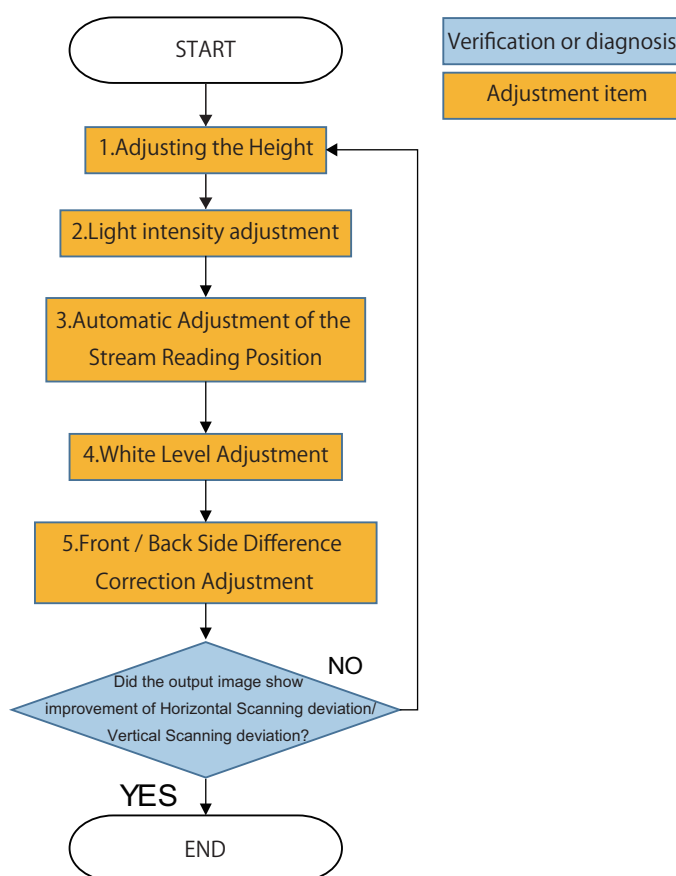
### CAUTION:

The correction may not be performed under the following usage conditions because the skew cannot be detected.

- The Reading Glass or Feed Guide is soiled.
- The edge of original is bent / torn / missing.
- Translucent or thin originals are used.
- E202-0010 or E202-0002 is in the error log and not remedied, which occurs system degraded.

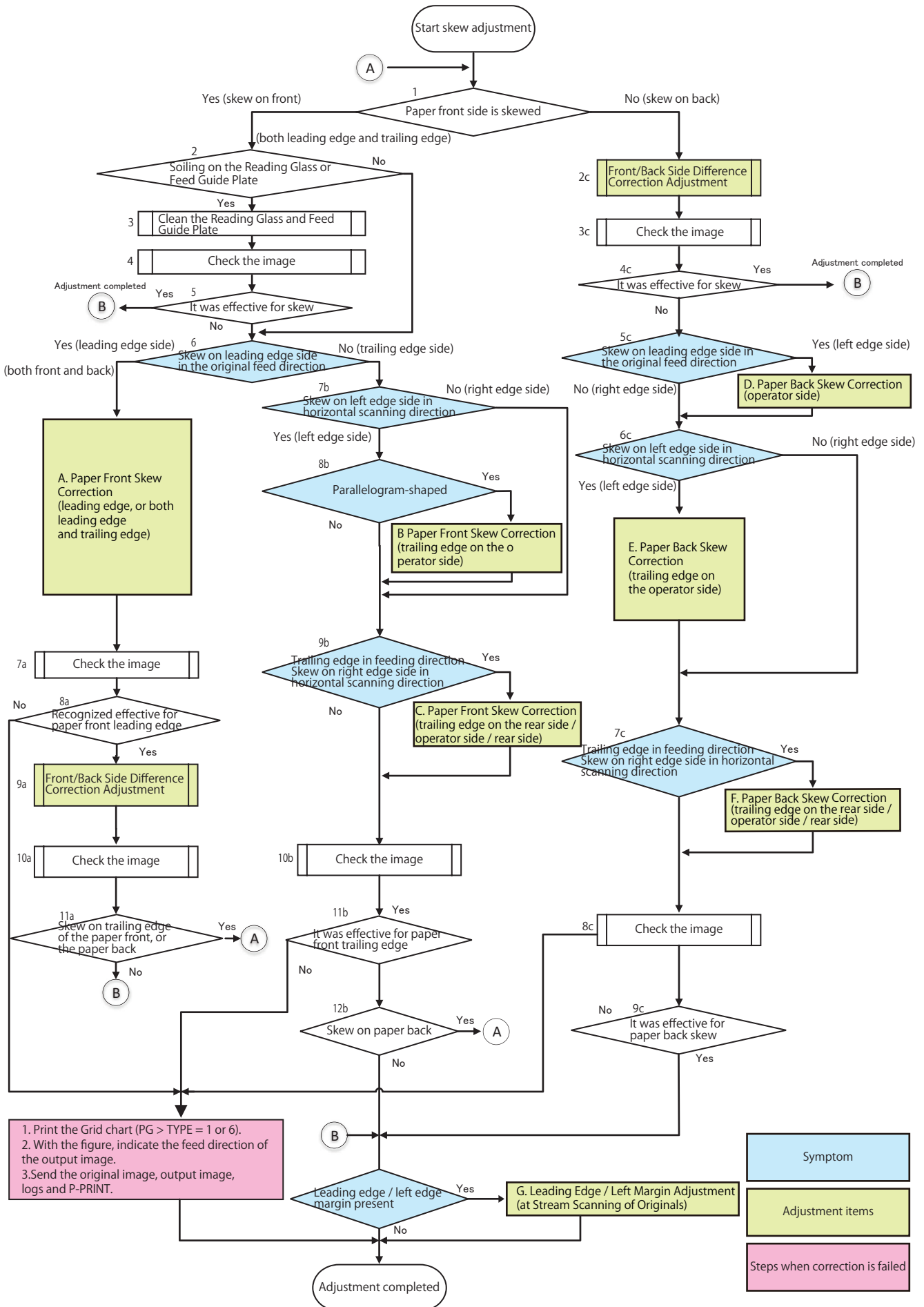
## Workflow1

When skew or image deviation is not improved after execution of the work flow 1, the work flow 2 is executed.



### Adjustment Items

1. "Adjusting the Height" on page 567
2. "Light intensity adjustment" on page 577
3. "Automatic Adjustment of the Stream Reading Position (Automatic Adjustment of the Reading Position at ADF Reading)" on page 578
4. "White Level Adjustment" on page 579
5. "Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment" on page 580



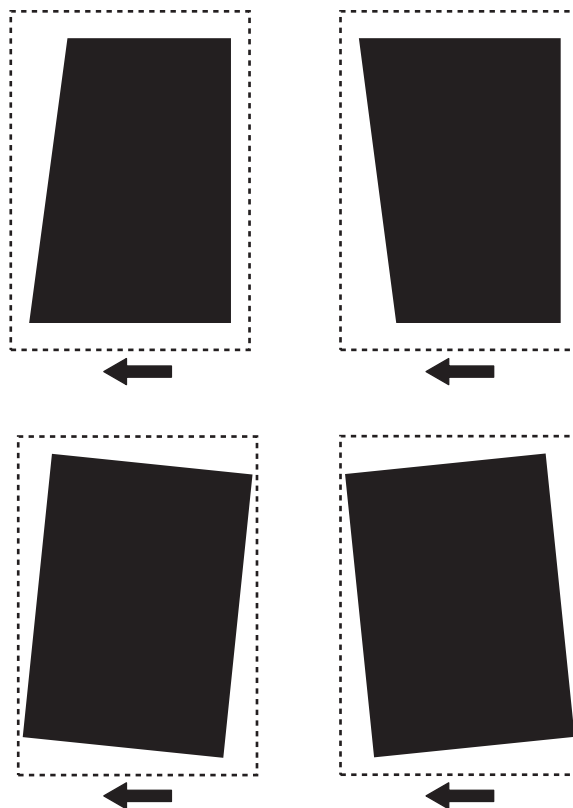
1. Print the Grid chart (PG > TYPE = 1 or 6).  
 2. With the figure, indicate the feed direction of the output image.  
 3. Send the original image, output image, logs and P-PRINT.

|                                 |
|---------------------------------|
| Symptom                         |
| Adjustment items                |
| Steps when correction is failed |



## **A. Paper Front Skew Correction (Leading Edge, or Both Leading Edge and Trailing Edge)**

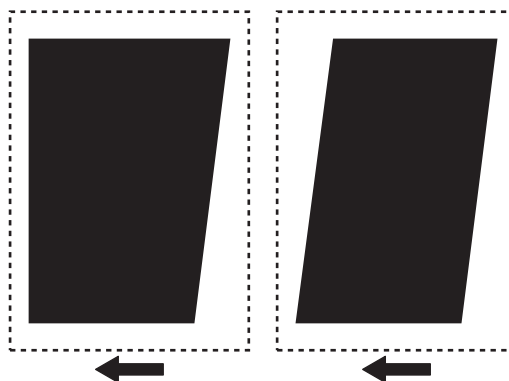
Correct skew with the following procedure if a skew occurs on leading edge, or both leading edge and trailing edge (on the front side of paper).



1. ["Adjusting the Height" on page 567](#)
2. ["Right Angle Adjustment \(Slant Adjustment\)" on page 571](#)
3. ["Light intensity adjustment" on page 577](#)
4. ["Automatic Adjustment of the Stream Reading Position \(Automatic Adjustment of the Reading Position at ADF Reading\)" on page 578](#)
5. ["White Level Adjustment" on page 579](#)
6. Check the image again. If the leading edge on the front side of the paper is corrected, perform "Difference correction adjustment of front and back sides". If a skew is occurring on the trailing edge of the front side of the paper, or back side of the paper, perform the appropriate skew correction item. If the skew on the front side is not corrected, contact the support department of the sales company.  
["Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment" on page 580](#)

## **B. Paper Front Skew Correction (Trailing Edge on the Operator Side)**

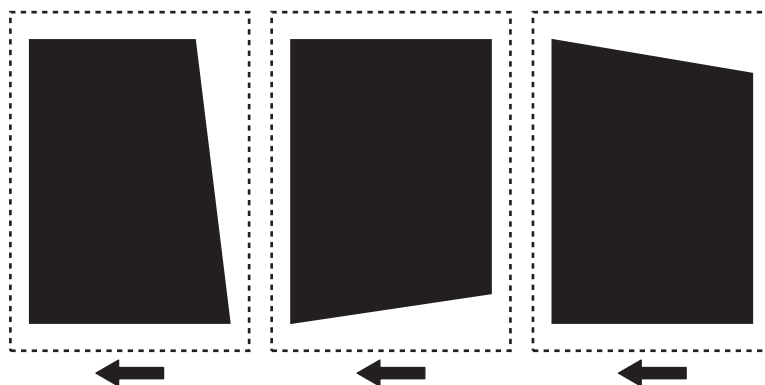
Correct skew with the following procedure if a skew occurs on trailing edge on the operator side (on the front side of paper).



1. "[Parallelogram Correction](#)" on page 583
2. Check the image again. If a skew is occurring on the back side of the paper, perform the appropriate skew correction item. If the skew on the front side is not corrected, contact the support department of the sales company.

## **C. Paper Front Skew Correction (Trailing Edge on the Rear Side / Operator Side / Rear Side)**

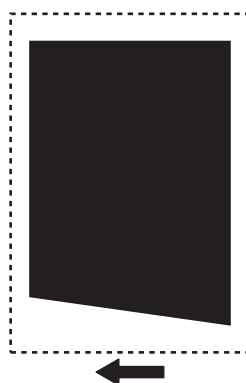
Correct skew with the following procedure if a skew occurs on trailing edge on the rear side / operator side / rear side (on the front side of paper).



1. "[Angle Correction \(Front / Back\)](#)" on page 584
2. Check the image again. If a skew is occurring on the back side of the paper, perform the appropriate skew correction item. Check the image again. If a skew has not been corrected on the front side of the paper, contact the support department of the sales company.

## **D. Paper Pack Skew Correction (Operator Side)**

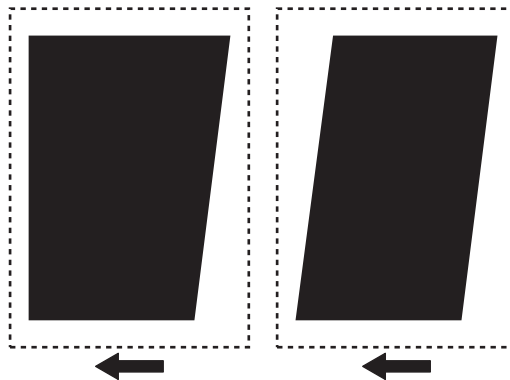
Correct skew with the following procedure if a skew occurs on the operator side (on the back side of paper).



1. "[Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment](#)" on page 580
2. Check the image again. If a skew is occurring on the back side of the paper, contact the support department of the sales company.

## **E. Paper Back Skew Correction (Trailing Edge on the Operator Side)**

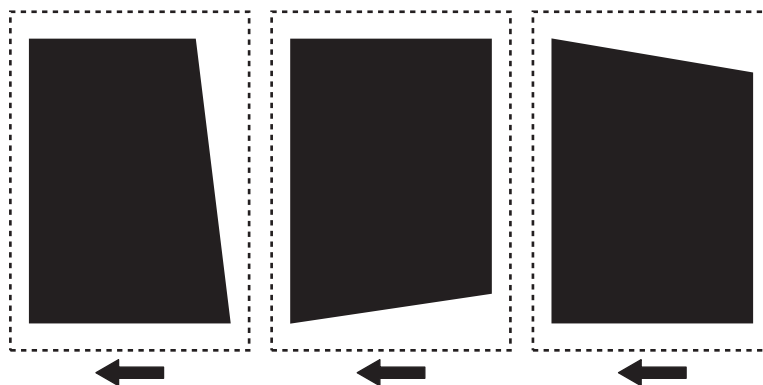
Correct skew with the following procedure if a skew occurs on trailing edge on the operator side (on the back side of paper).



1. [“Right Angle Adjustment \(Slant Adjustment\)” on page 571](#)
2. [“Light intensity adjustment ” on page 577](#)
3. [“White Level Adjustment ” on page 579](#)
4. Check the image again. If a skew is occurring on the back side of the paper, contact the support department of the sales company.

## **F. Paper Back Skew Correction (Trailing Edge on the Rear Side / Operator Side / Rear Side)**

Correct skew with the following procedure if a skew occurs on trailing edge on the rear side / operator side / rear side (on the back side of paper).



1. [“Angle Correction \(Front / Back\)” on page 584](#)
2. Check the image again. If a skew is occurring on the back side of the paper, contact the support department of the sales company.

## **G. Edge Margin Adjustment after the Skew Adjustment (at Stream Scanning of the Originals)**

When the leading edge / left edge margin of the image is out of the standard range after skew correction, adjust the leading edge / left edge margin using a test chart.

### **Reference: Standard value**

- Leading edge: 4.0+1.5/-1.0 mm (front side, back side)
- Left edge: 2.5+/-1.5 mm (front side) / 2.5 + / -2.0 mm (back side)

1. [“Creating the Test Charts for Image Position Adjustment” on page 585](#)
2. **Adjust the leading edge margin of the image after skew correction in the following service modes.**
  - FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-T1 (Front)
  - FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-T2 (Back)

**NOTE:**

- Amount of change per 1 setting value 0.1 mm
- Adjustment range -15 to 15

**3. Adjust the left edge margin of the image after skew correction in the following service modes.**

- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-L1 (Front)
- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-L2 (Back)


**NOTE:**

- Amount of change per 1 setting value 0.1 mm
- Adjustment range -30 to 30

## Adjusting the Height

### Height Check Sheet Preparation or Creation

1. Prepare the check sheet used for height adjustment.

 Height check sheet

#### NOTE:

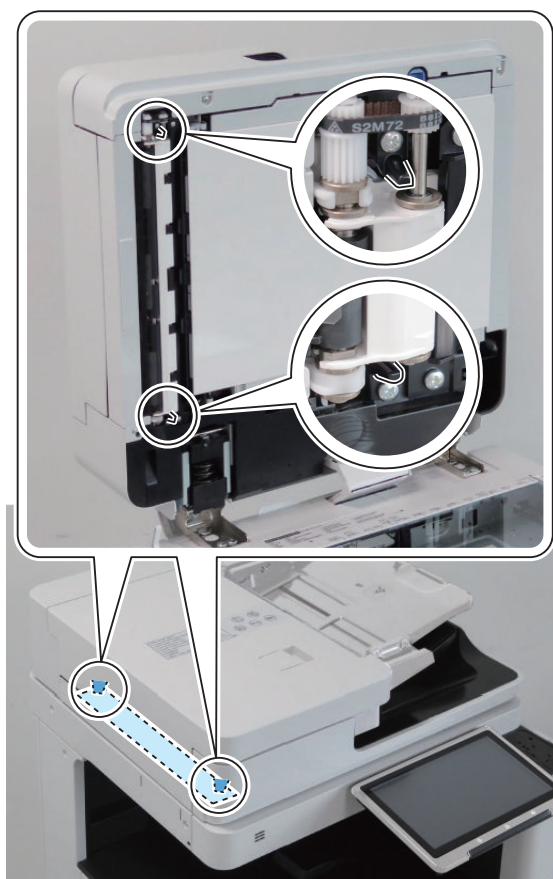
Points to Note when Creating the Check Sheet

- Output with A4 (paper size) or LTR (paper size).
- Use plain paper 1 to 3 (64 to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (Paper Type).

### Height Adjustment

#### Checking the Height

- 
1. Check that the 2 Height Adjustment Bosses at the left front side and the left rear side are in contact with the Stream Reading Glass.

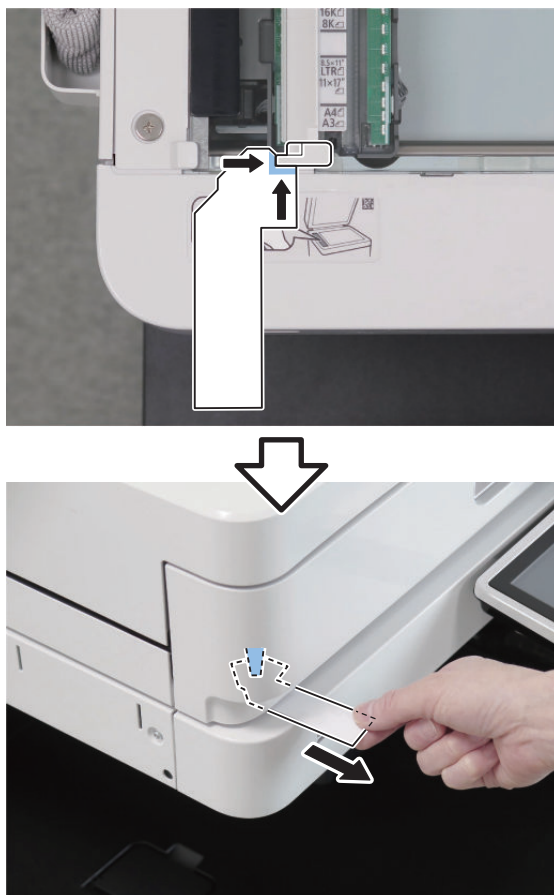


2. If they are not in contact, perform the height adjustment.  
If it cannot be visually checked, perform "Checking the Height of the Height Adjustment Boss".

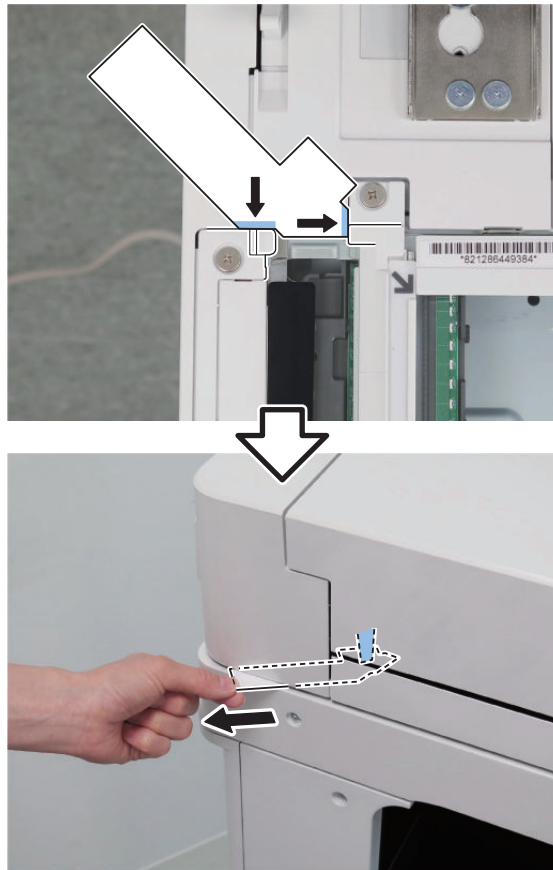
### Checking the Height of the Height Adjustment Boss

- 
1. Put a sheet of paper on the place where the protrusions touch the Stream Reading Glass, and check whether there is any resistance of the paper when closing the ADF.

<The Left Front Side>



<The Left Rear Side>



2. If there is no resistance, perform the height adjustment.



## Height Adjustment Procedure

- 
1. Adjust by turning the Fixation Screw on the upper side of Hinge.
    - If both front and rear side (or only front side) are not installed properly: Turn the Right Hinge Fixation Screw clockwise (black arrow) to correctly locate it at the front.



- If the rear side is not installed properly: Turn the Left Hinge Fixation Screw counterclockwise (white arrow).



2. Open th ADF fully and close the ADF and then, Check the height again and see if it is at an appropriate height.

## Right Angle Adjustment (Slant Adjustment)

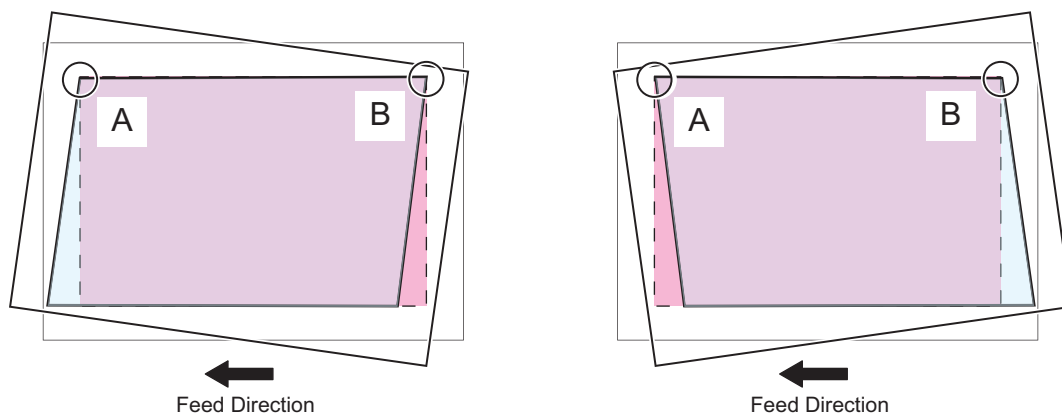
**NOTE:**

There are two adjustment methods: One for reading the front side (Scanner Unit on the Reader side) and another for reading the back side (Scanner Unit on the DADF side).

## Adjustment of the Paper Front Reading



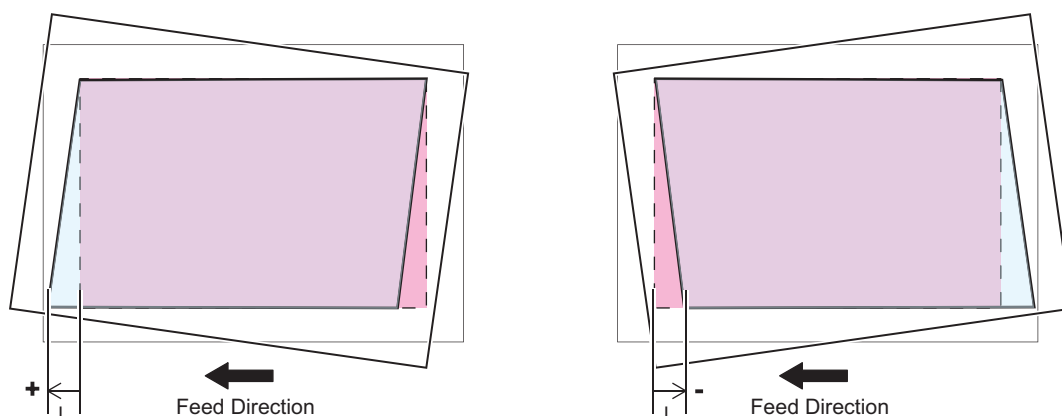
1. Prepare the test chart prepared below.  
[“Creating the Test Charts for Image Position Adjustment” on page 585](#)
2. Set the value of following service mode to "1".  
 FEEDER > OPTION > SKW-SW
3. Place a test chart on the ADF and perform 1-sided copy.
4. Overlap the test chart and the A and B sections of the copied paper.



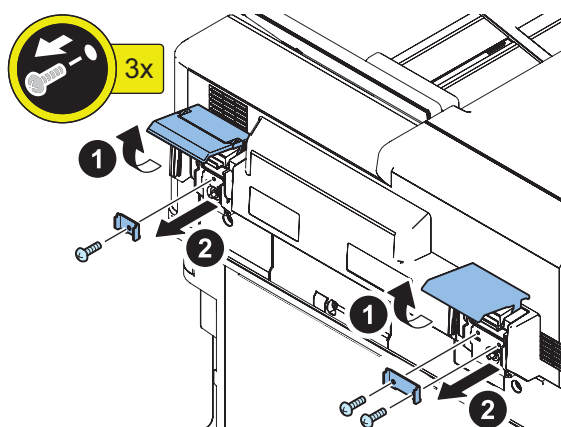
5. Measure the distance L between the test chart and the copied paper.

### NOTE:

When the interval L is shifted to the left "+", and when the interval L is shifted to the right "-".



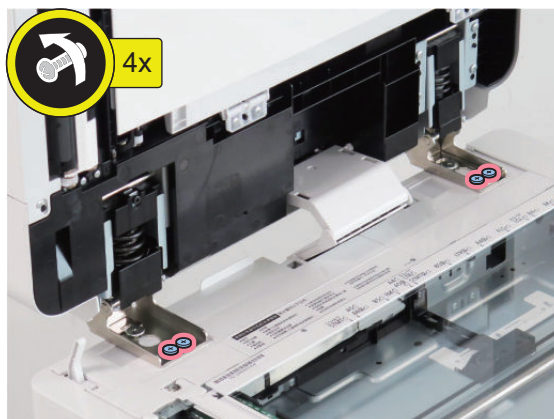
6. Open the Hinge cover, and remove the Hinge stopper.



**CAUTION:**

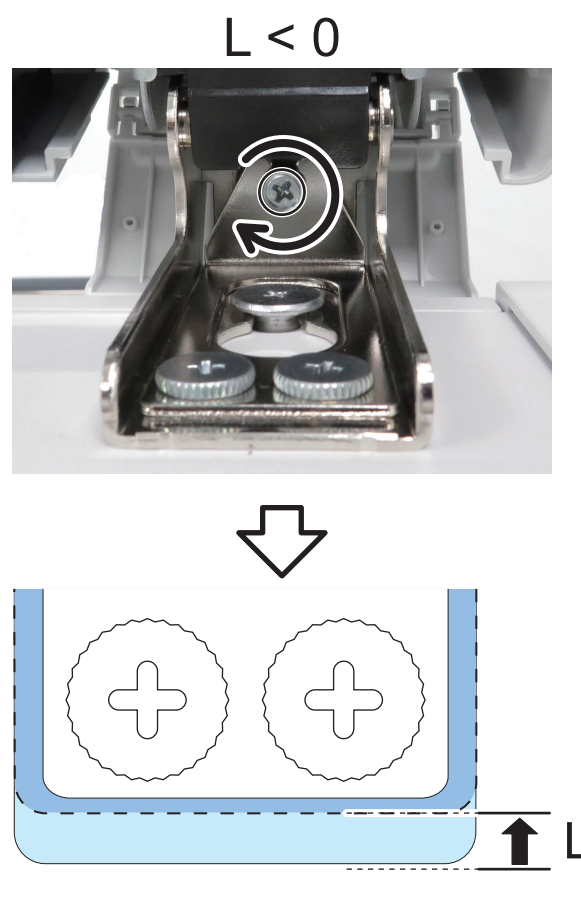
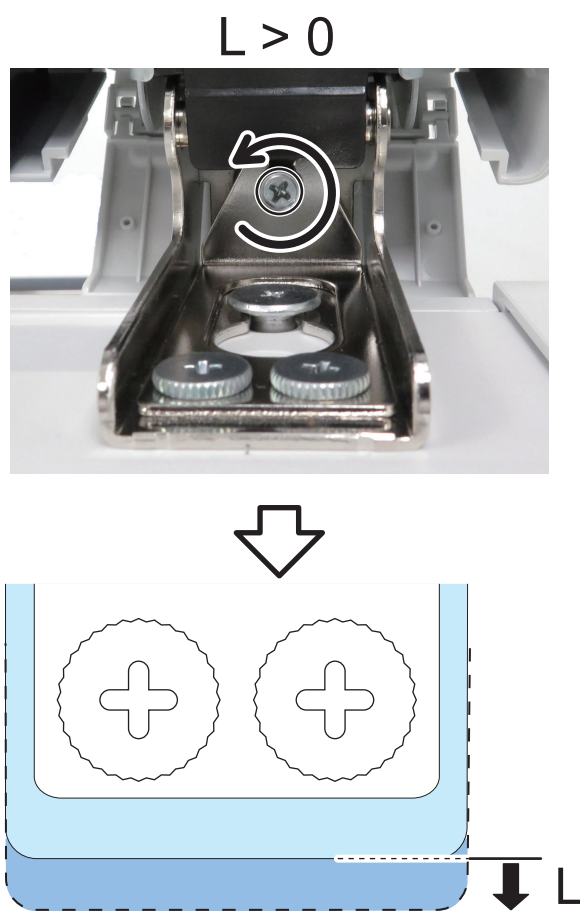
After adjustment, be sure to install the Hinge Stoppers.

7. Loosen the 4 Knurled Screws at the front part of the Right and Left Hinge Unit.



8. The fixing member is moved forward and backward by turning the screw by the value of the interval  $L$  between the test chart and the copied paper.

- $L > 0$  : Turn the screw counterclockwise.
- $L < 0$  : Turn the screw clockwise.

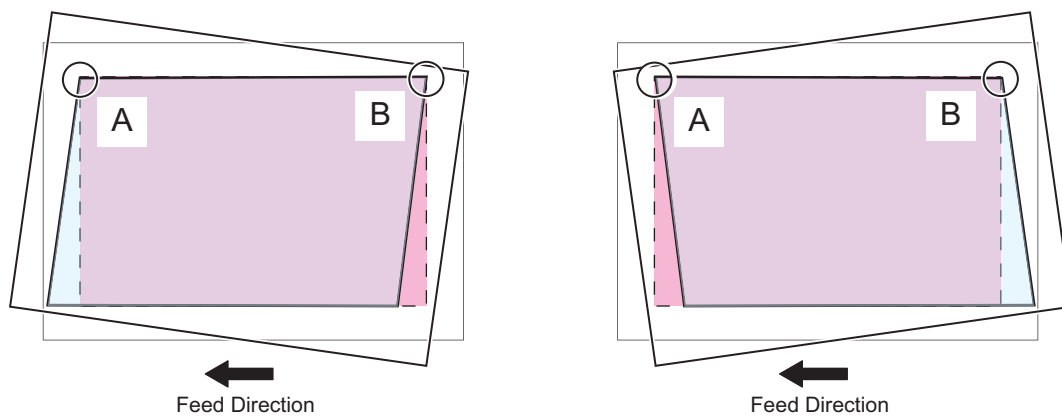


9. Tighten the 4 Knurled Screws.

## Adjustment of the Paper Back Reading



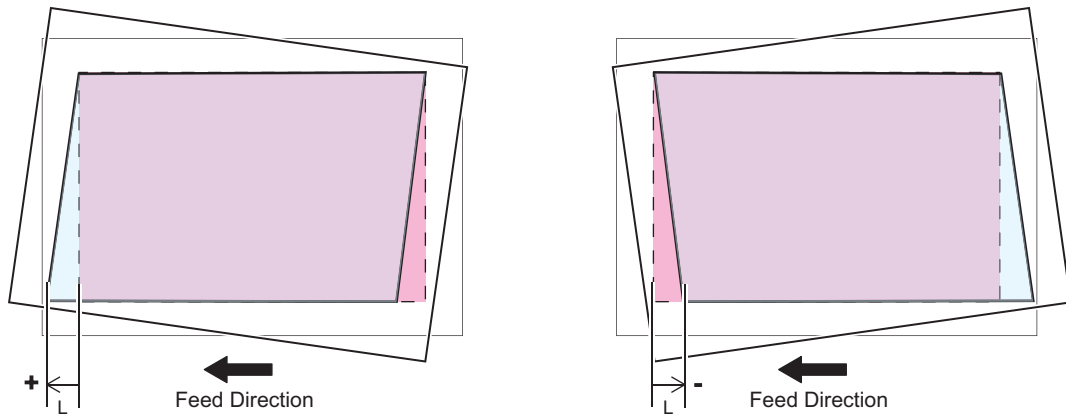
1. Place a test chart facing down on the ADF and perform 2-sided copy.
2. Overlap the test chart and the A and B sections of the copied paper.



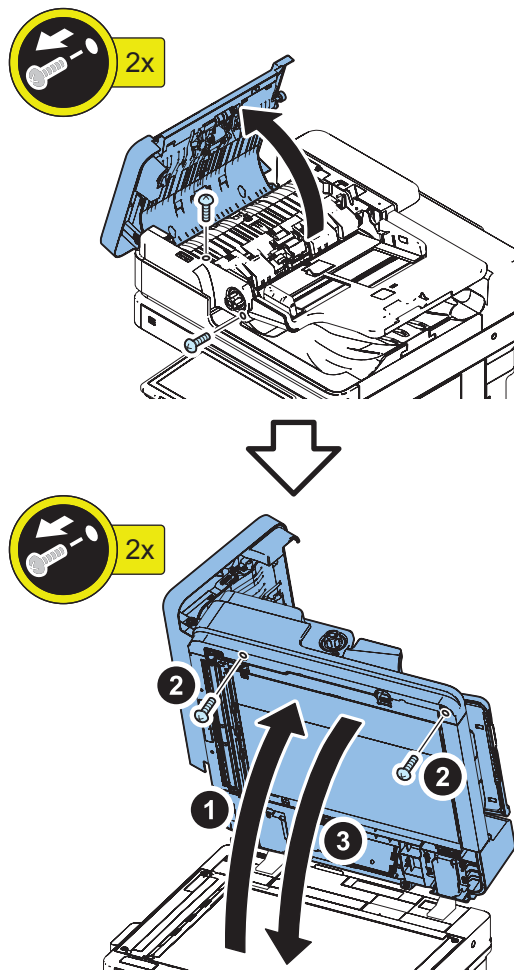
3. Measure the distance L between the test chart and the copied paper.

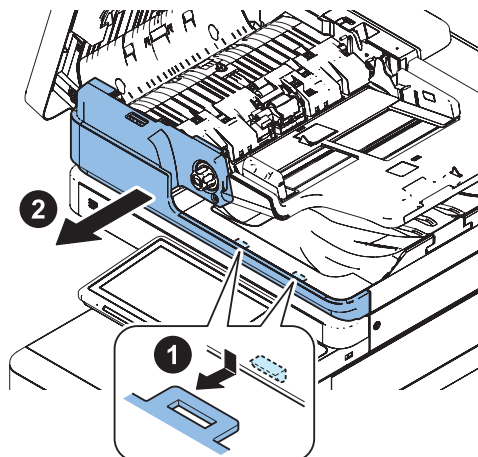
**NOTE:**

When the interval L is shifted to the left "+", and when the interval L is shifted to the right "-".



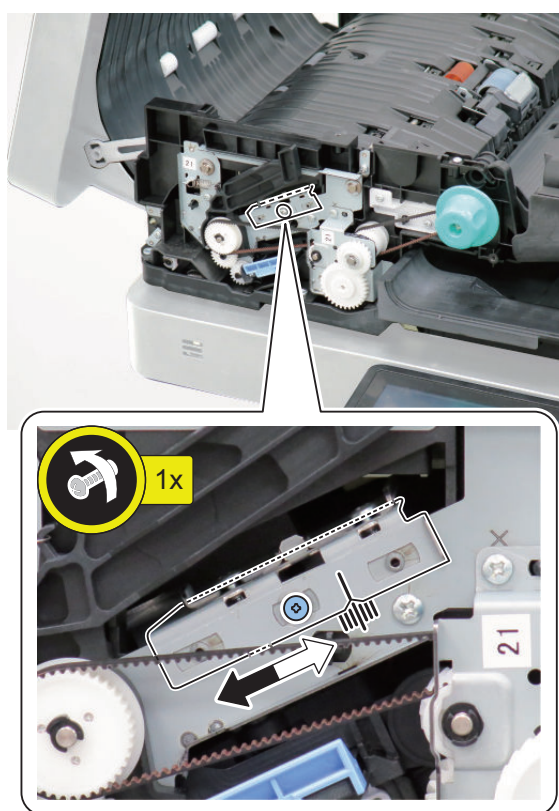
4. Open the Feeder Cover, and remove the Front Cover of the DADF.  
• 4 screws





5. Loosen the adjustment screw. Adjust the position of the guide supporting the Scanner Unit.

- L>0 : Move the Guide to the right side (white arrow).
- L<0 : Move the Guide to the left side (black arrow).



6. Tighten the adjustment screw.
7. Return the DADF Front Cover and the Feeder Cover to their original positions.
8. Set the value of following service mode to "0".  
FEEDER > OPTION > SKW-SW



## Light intensity adjustment

**NOTE:**

- This mode automatically performs adjustment.
- If "NG" is displayed after executing this mode, check that PCB and each connector are properly connected.

**1. Execute the following service mode with the ADF closed.**

COPIER >FUNCTION >CCD > LMPADJ

## Automatic Adjustment of the Stream Reading Position (Automatic Adjustment of the Reading Position at ADF Reading)

**NOTE:**

- If the DADF is opened during adjustment, restart the adjustment.
- Enter the value after adjustment on the Service Label (on the back of the Reader Front Cover or Printer Front Cover). The adjustment result is reflected to COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS.

**1. Execute the following service mode.**

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS

**NOTE:**

If "NG" is displayed after executing this mode, execute "Right Angle Adjustment (Slant Adjustment)" on the service manual.

## White Level Adjustment



1. Place a sheet of blank A4 or LTR size paper on the Copyboard Glass and close the ADF.

**CAUTION:**

When executing the white level adjustment using paper with smaller width, adjustment may not be executed properly.

2. Execute the service mode item.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1
3. Remove the blank paper from the Copyboard Glass, and place it on the Document Pickup Tray of ADF.
4. Execute the service mode item.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2
5. Place the blank paper on the Copyboard Glass again and close the ADF.
6. Execute the service mode item.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL3
7. Remove the blank paper from the Copy Board Glass, and place it on the Document Pickup Tray of ADF.
8. Execute the service mode item.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL4

## Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment

### NOTE:

When the following items are adjusted or replaced, the difference correction adjustment of the Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment is performed.

- Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment
- Automatic Adjustment of the Stream Reading Position (Automatic Adjustment of the Reading Position at ADF Reading)
- Scanner Unit (Front/Back side)
- ADF

Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment is performed by any of the following methods.

1. Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment  
To automatically correct a front/back side differences by making a chart by hand.
2. Manual Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment (Manual Back Side Position Adjustment)  
Print a single-sided grid chart and manually adjust the image position on the back side.

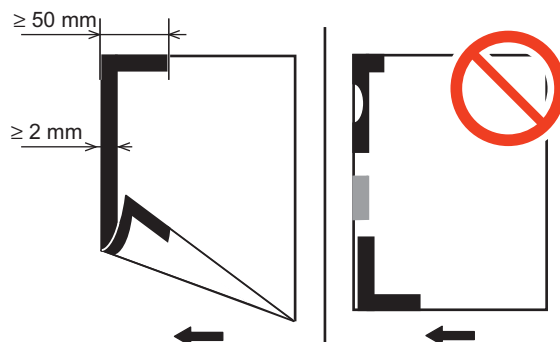
## Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment

### NOTE:

If the chart in the following state is used, skew detection may not be possible and correction may not be possible.

- The painted part is not long enough.
- The painted part is chipped.
- The color is light.
- The edges are not painted.
- Broken/torn/chipped.
- Translucent, thin paper manuscript is used.
- The area painted black is not dry enough.

1. Use a chart of a service parts of a Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment, or using A4 or LTR paper, the leading edge and the side edge of the front/back side in the feeding direction are painted black with magic, and a chart for Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment is prepared.



2. Set the value of the service mode to "0" below.

- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-T2/L2/ROT2 = 0

### NOTE:

- The ADJ-T2/L2/ROT2 is an item for manually fine-adjusting the skew in the case that a deviation remains in the position of the back image to which the skew is automatically corrected after the Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment.
- "0" is the value at the time of shipment from the factory. By resetting to the initial state, there is no unintended deviation due to manual correction with respect to the back surface image in which skew correction is automatically performed, so that a constant accuracy is guaranteed.

3. Set the document tray so that the black-painted portion becomes the leading edge in the feeding direction.

**4. Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment is performed in the following service mode.**

- FEEDER > FUNCTION > ADJ-SKW

**NOTE:**

If "NG" is displayed after executing this mode, execute "Right Angle Adjustment (Slant Adjustment)" on the service manual.

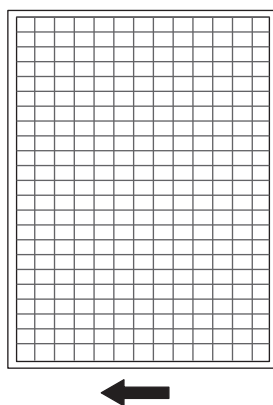
**5. Write the adjusted values below on the service label.**

- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DT
- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DL
- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DROT

## Manual Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment (Manual Back Side Position Adjustment)

**1. Use A4 or LTR paper and set the service modes as follows. Print the test chart of the Manual Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment (Manual Back Side Position Adjustment).**

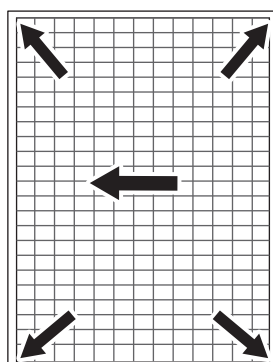
- COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 1 or 6
- COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = To set the Pickup Cassette for test print output.



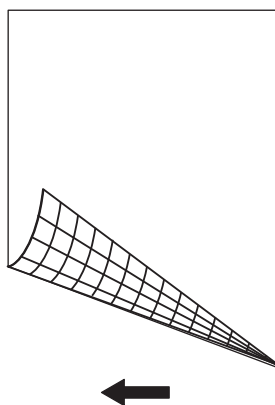
**NOTE:**

Pressing "i" (Information Button) displays the TYPE number.

**2. Write the angle of the document and the arrow indicating the ADF feeding direction .**



3. **Manual Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment (Manual Back Side Position Adjustment) chart is set and printed on the document tray so that the print surface thereof becomes the back side.**



4. **Manually adjust an image according to the state of a printed image.**

Refer to the following Service Manual

- Adjustment > Original Feed System (Single Pass ADF) > Skew Adjustment (at Stream Scanning of Originals) > F. Paper Back Skew Correction (Trailing Edge on the Rear Side / Operator Side / Rear Side)
- Adjustment > Original Feed System (Single Pass ADF) > Skew Adjustment (at Stream Scanning of Originals) > G. Edge Margin Adjustment after the Skew Adjustment (at Stream Scanning of the Originals)

## Parallelogram Correction

Perform parallelogram correction if a scanned image is parallelogram-shaped.

### 1. Correct the parallelogram in the following service modes.

- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-PAR1 (Front)
- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-PAR2 (Back)

#### NOTE:

- As the value is increased by 1, the image is corrected clockwise by 0.01 degree.
- As the value is decreased by 1, the image is corrected counterclockwise by 0.01 degree.



## Angle Correction (Front / Back)

If the trailing edge of the scanned image is missing, perform angle correction.

**1. Correct the amount of rotation in the following service modes.**

- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-ROT1 (Front)
- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-ROT2 (Back)

**NOTE:**

- As the value is increased by 1, the image is corrected clockwise by 0.01 degree.
- As the value is decreased by 1, the image is corrected counterclockwise by 0.01 degree.

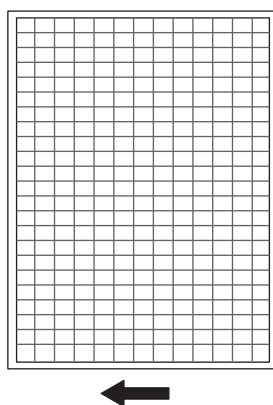
## Image Position Adjustment (at Stream Scanning of Originals)

Adjust the image position of the side / leading edge using a test chart.

### Creating the Test Charts for Image Position Adjustment

**CAUTION:**

Create the test charts for image position adjustment after completing adjustments on the printer side.

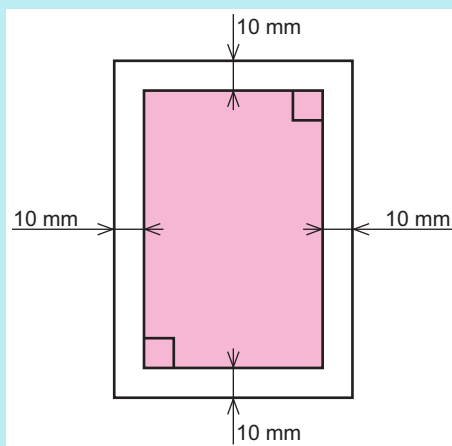


1. After setting the service modes as follows, press the Start key to output the test chart.

- COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 6
- COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = To set the Pickup Cassette for test print output.

**NOTE:**

- If the specified test chart cannot be output, draw a test chart on A3 or LDR paper with a rectangle whose four corners are 10 mm smaller than the paper.
- To draw characters and marks so that you can see the direction of the copied image.



## Side Registration Adjustment

### NOTE:

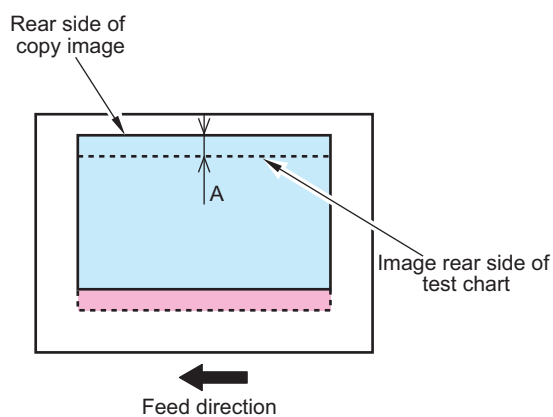
There are two adjustment methods: One for reading the front side (Scanner Unit on the Reader side) and another for reading the back side (Scanner Unit on the ADF side).

### Adjustment of the Paper Front Reading

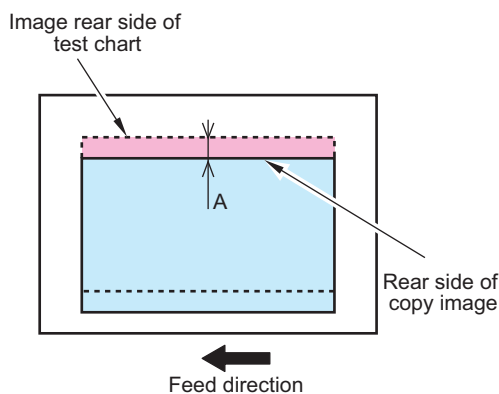


1. Prepare a test chart created below.  
[“Creating the Test Charts for Image Position Adjustment” on page 585](#)
2. Set the following service mode to "1".  
 FEEDER > OPTION > SKW-SW
3. Place a test chart on the ADF and perform 1-sided copy.
4. Overlay the copied paper onto the test chart.
5. Check whether the rear side of the copied image is within the standard.
  - Standard:  $A \leq 1 \text{ mm}$

< If the image is displaced toward rear >



< If the image is displaced toward front >



6. If it is not within the standard range, adjust the image position in the following service mode.  
 COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-Y-DF

**NOTE:**

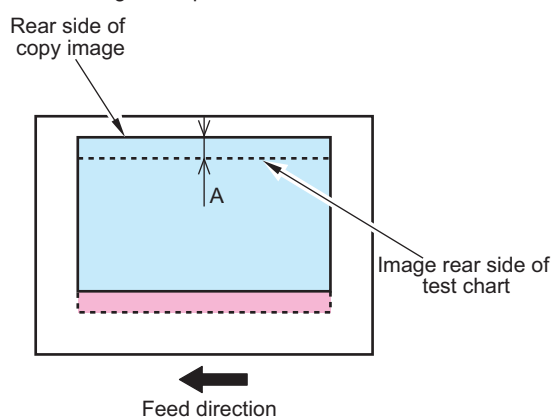
- If the copied image is displaced toward the rear side: Decrease the value (the image moves toward the front side)
- If the copied image is displaced toward the front side: Increase the value (the image moves toward the rear side)
- Amount of change per 1 setting value 0.1 mm
- Adjustment range -35 to 35

7. Copy the test chart again, and check that the image is within the ranges of the standard.
8. Write down the adjusted value in the service label (on the back of the Reader front cover back or Printer front cover).

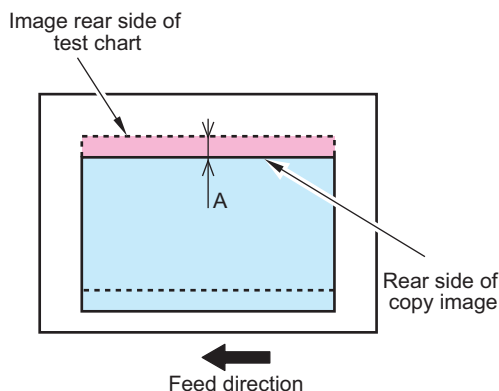
**Adjustment of the Paper Back Reading**

1. Place a test chart facing down on the ADF and perform 2-sided copy.
2. Overlay the copied paper onto the test chart.
3. Check whether the rear side of the copied image is within the standard.
  - Standard:  $A \leq 2.0\text{mm}$

< If the image is displaced toward rear >



< If the image is displaced toward front >



4. If it is not within the standard range, adjust the image position in the following service mode.  
COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJY-DF2

**NOTE:**

- If the copied image is displaced toward the rear side: Decrease the value (the image moves toward the front side)
- If the copied image is displaced toward the front side: Increase the value (the image moves toward the rear side)
- Amount of change per 1 setting value 0.1 mm
- Adjustment range -35 to 35

5. Copy the test chart again, and check that the image is within the ranges of the standard.
6. Write down the adjusted value in the service label (on the back of the Reader front cover back or Printer front cover).
7. Set the following service mode to "0".  
FEEDER > OPTION > SKW-SW

## Leading Edge Margin Adjustment

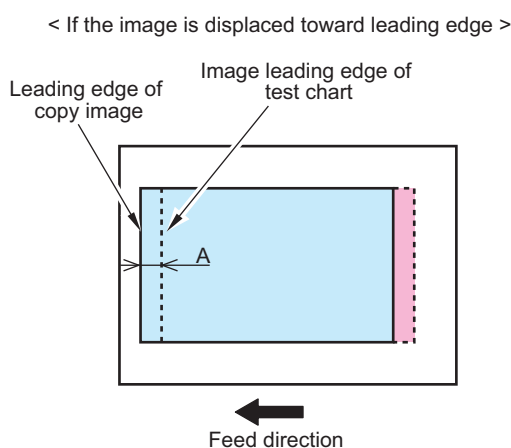
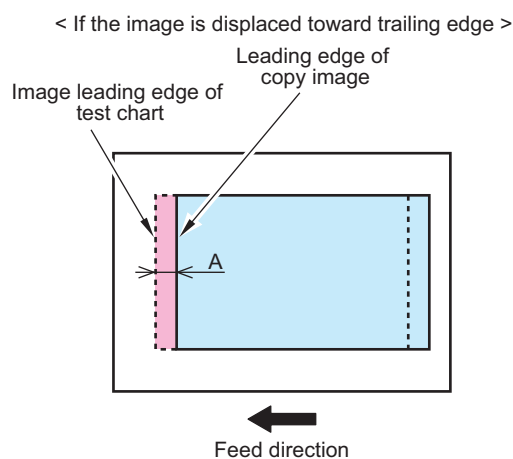
### NOTE:

There are two adjustment methods: One for reading the front side (Scanner Unit on the Reader side) and another for reading the back side (Scanner Unit on the ADF side).

### Adjustment of the Paper Front Reading



1. Prepare a test chart created below.  
[“Creating the Test Charts for Image Position Adjustment” on page 585](#)
2. Set the following service mode to "1".  
 FEEDER > OPTION > SKW-SW
3. Place a test chart on the ADF and perform 1-sided copy.
4. Overlay the copied paper onto the test chart.
5. Check that the leading edge of the copied image is within the standard range.
  - Standard:  $A \leq 1 \text{ mm}$



6. If it is not within the standard range, adjust the image position in the following service mode.  
 FEEDER > ADJUST > DOCST
  - If the copied image is displaced toward the trailing edge: Increase the value (move the image toward the leading edge)
  - If the copied image is displaced toward the leading edge: Decrease the value (move the image toward the trailing edge)
 Amount of change per 1 setting value 0.1 mm

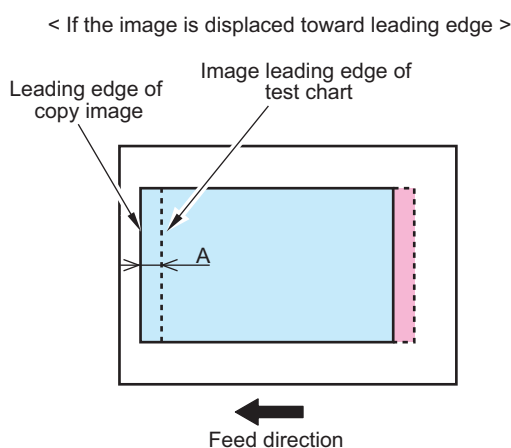
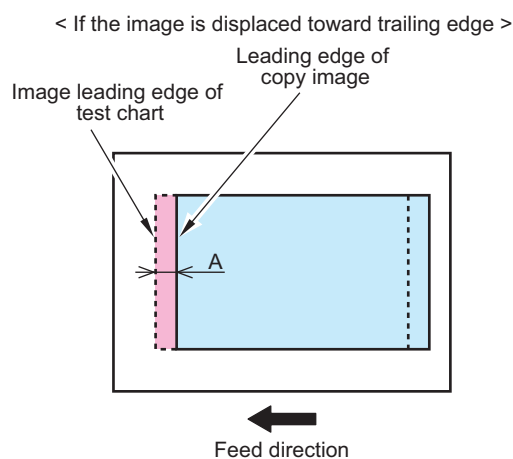
Adjustment range -50 to 50

7. Copy the test chart again, and check that the image is within the ranges of the standard.
8. Write down the adjusted value in the service label (on the back of the Reader front cover back or Printer front cover).

### Adjustment of the Paper Back Reading



1. Place a test chart facing down on the ADF and perform 2-sided copy.
2. Overlay the copied paper onto the test chart.
3. Check that the leading edge of the copied image is within the standard range.
  - Standard:  $A \leq 1.5\text{mm}$



4. If it is not within the standard range, adjust the image position in the following service mode.
    - FEEDER > ADJUST > DOCST2
      - If the copied image is displaced toward the trailing edge: Increase the value (move the image toward the leading edge)
      - If the copied image is displaced toward the leading edge: Decrease the value (move the image toward the trailing edge)
- Amount of change per 1 setting value 0.1 mm  
Adjustment range -50 to 50
5. Copy the test chart again, and check that the image is within the ranges of the standard.
  6. Write down the adjusted value in the service label (on the back of the Reader front cover back or Printer front cover).
  7. Set the following service mode to "0".
    - FEEDER > OPTION > SKW-SW

## Magnification Ratio Adjustment

### NOTE:

- There are two adjustment methods: One for Paper Front Reading (Scanner Unit on the Reader side), and the other for Paper Back Reading (Scanner Unit on the DADF side).
- This adjustment is performed by comparing the images printed with the stream reading and the copyboard reading.

**Magnification ratio adjustment flow**

If it is not within the standard range, perform the adjustments "For plain/thin paper" and "For heavy paper".

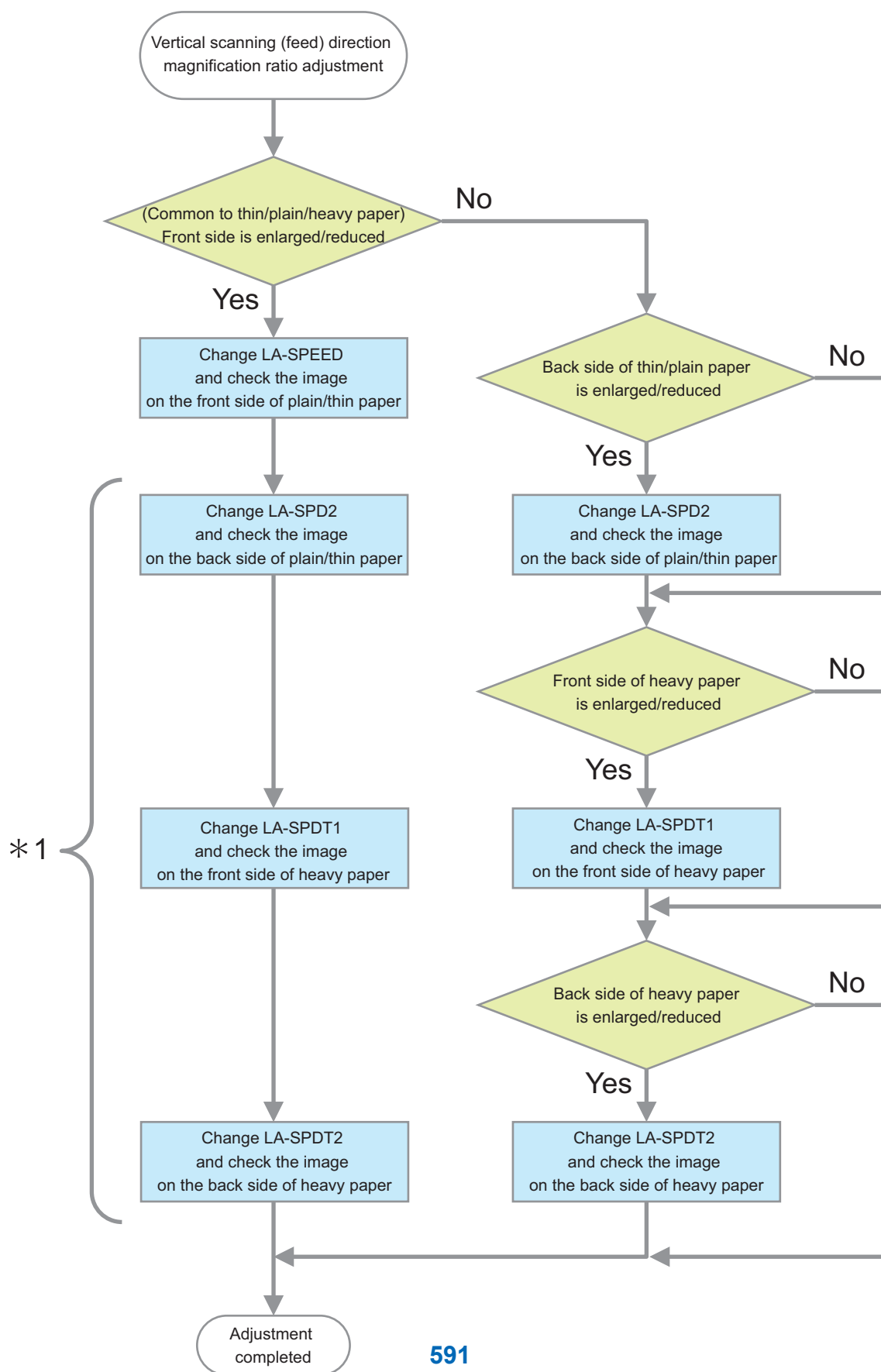


**NOTE:**

- When checking with a copied image, adjust the magnification ratio of the printer in advance in PG.

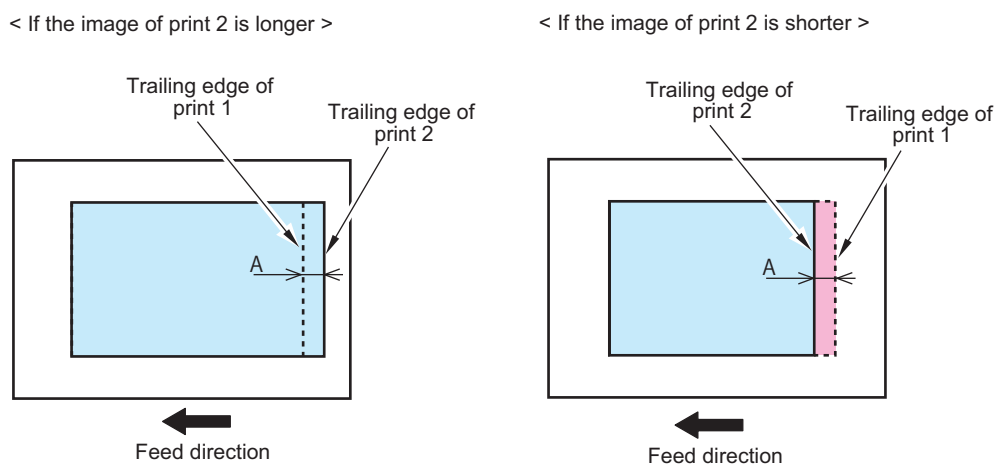
\*1: Since LA-SPEED adjusts the speed of the Feed Motor, the magnification ratio of both front and back sides will be changed. After changing LA-SPEED, perform the following adjustments.

- FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPD2
- FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPDT1
- FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPDT2



## ■ Adjustment of the Paper Front Reading (For plain/thin or heavy paper)

1. Place a test chart on the Copyboard Glass of the connected device, and make a print. This is called Print 1.
2. Place a test chart on the Document Pickup Tray, and make a 1-sided print. This is called Print 2.
3. Overlay the Print 2 onto the Print 1.
4. Check if the trailing edge of the image on the Print 2 is within the standard range.  
Standard:  $A \leq 1 \text{ mm}$



5. If it is not within the standard range, make adjustments with the following service modes.

### For plain/thin paper

FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPEED

- If the image on the Print 2 is longer: Increase the numeric value (i.e., make the stream reading speed "faster")
- If the image on the Print 2 is shorter: Decrease the numeric value (i.e., make the stream reading speed "slower")
- Amount of change per unit: 0.1%
- Adjustment range: -30 to +30

### For heavy paper

#### CAUTION:

When feeding heavy paper, make sure to enter a correct adjustment value as it affects the image (expansion/contraction).

- Enter the LA-SPDT1 value recorded on the service label (on the back of the Reader Front Cover or the Printer Front Cover).
- In case an adjustment is made, check the LA-SPDT1 value with the following service mode and record it on the service label (on the back of the Reader Front Cover or the Printer Front Cover).  
FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPDT1
- If the image on the Print 2 is longer: Increase the numeric value
- If the image on the Print 2 is shorter: Decrease the numeric value
- Amount of change per unit: 0.01%

#### NOTE:

Example: For A3 original [420 mm], the image is shortened by 0.042 mm as the numeric value is increased by 1.

- Adjustment range: -200 to +200

6. Make a print with the test chart again, and check that the image is within the standard range.

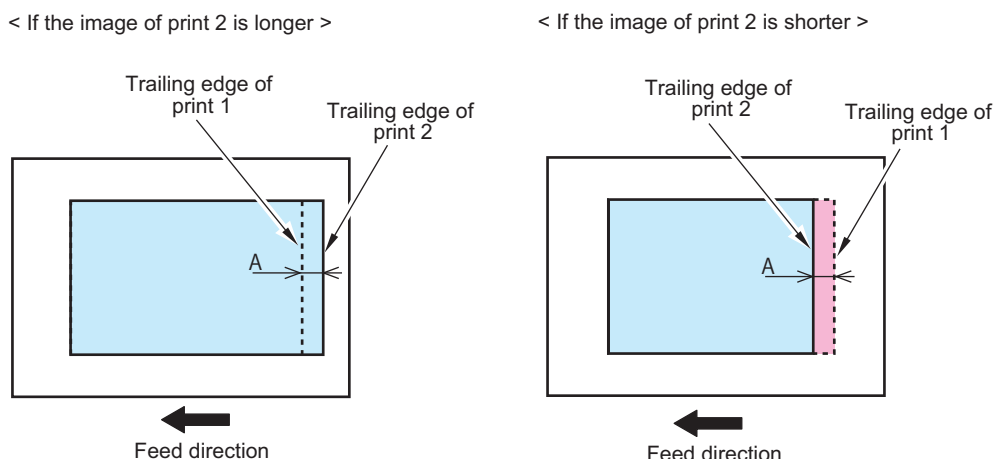
## ■ Adjustment of the Paper Back Reading (For plain/thin or heavy paper)

1. Place a test chart on the Copyboard Glass of the connected device, and make a print. This is called Print 1.
2. Place a test chart facing down on the Document Pickup Tray, and make a 2-sided print. This is called Print 2.

### 3. Overlay the Print 2 onto the Print 1.

### 4. Check if the trailing edge of the image on the Print 2 is within the standard range.

Standard:  $A \leq 1 \text{ mm}$



### 5. If it is not within the standard range, make adjustments with the following service modes.

#### For plain/thin paper

- If the image on the Print 2 is longer: Increase the numeric value (i.e., make the length of the image in the vertical scanning direction shorter)
- If the image on the Print 2 is shorter: Decrease the numeric value (i.e., make the length of the image in the vertical scanning direction longer)
- Amount of change per unit: 0.01%
- Adjustment range: -200 to +200

FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPD2

#### For heavy paper

#### CAUTION:

When feeding heavy paper, make sure to enter a correct adjustment value as it affects the image (expansion/contraction).

- Enter the LA-SPD2 value recorded on the service label (on the back of the Reader Front Cover or the Printer Front Cover).
- In case an adjustment is made, check the LA-SPD2 value with the following service mode and record it on the service label (on the back of the Reader Front Cover or the Printer Front Cover).  
FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPD2
- If the image on the Print 2 is longer: Increase the numeric value
- If the image on the Print 2 is shorter: Decrease the numeric value
- Amount of change per unit: 0.01%

#### NOTE:

Example: For A3 original [420 mm], the image is shortened by 0.042 mm as the numeric value is increased by 1.

- Adjustment range: -200 to +200

### 6. Make a print with the test chart again, and check that the image is within the standard range.

## Other Adjustments

### Eased Angle Guide (Opening Angle of 90 Degrees)

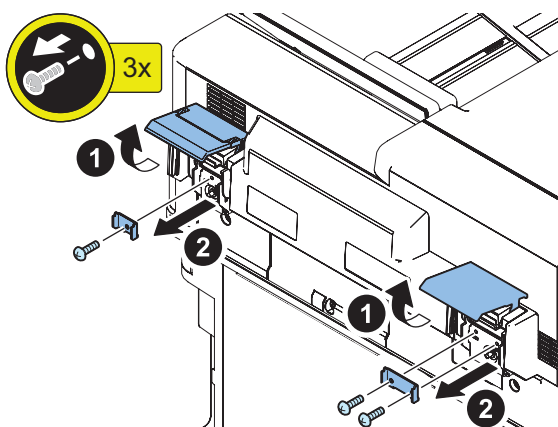
Change the opening angle of the ADF from 70 degrees to 90 degrees.

**NOTE:**

Some operation become easier by making the DADF opening angle wider.



1. Open the Hinge cover, and remove the Hinge stopper.
  - 3 Screws



**CAUTION:**

After adjustment, be sure to install the Hinge Stoppers.

### Paper Tray Width Adjustment

When the following symptom occurs, adjust the paper tray width.

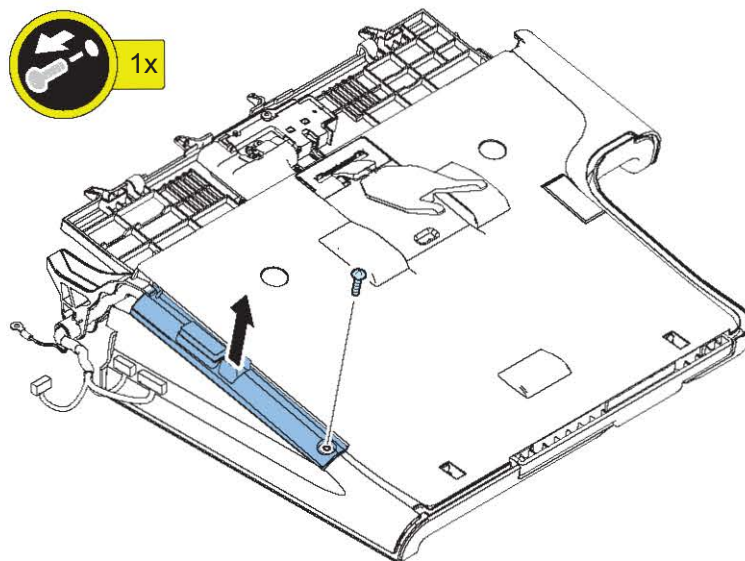
- The originals do not fit in the default paper tray width.
- The originals are placed at an angle.

#### ■ Preparation

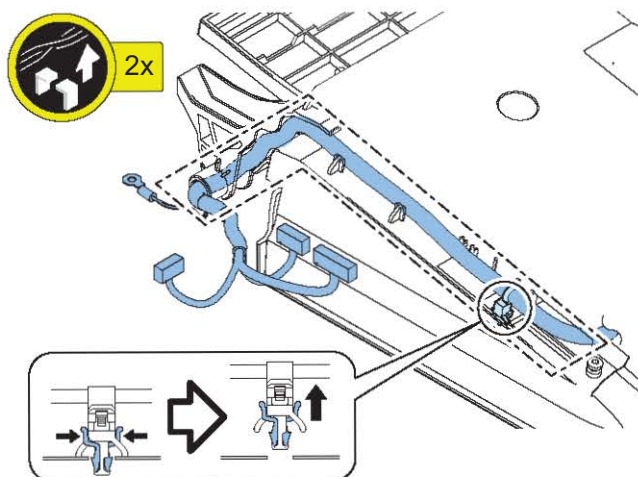
1. [“Removing the Document Tray” on page 254](#)

■ Procedure

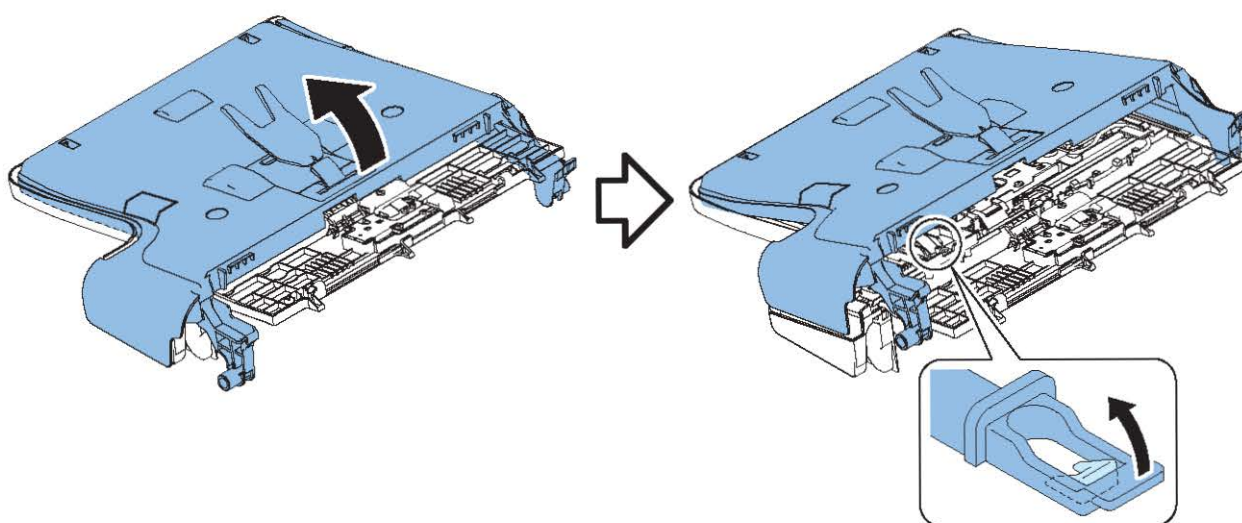
1.



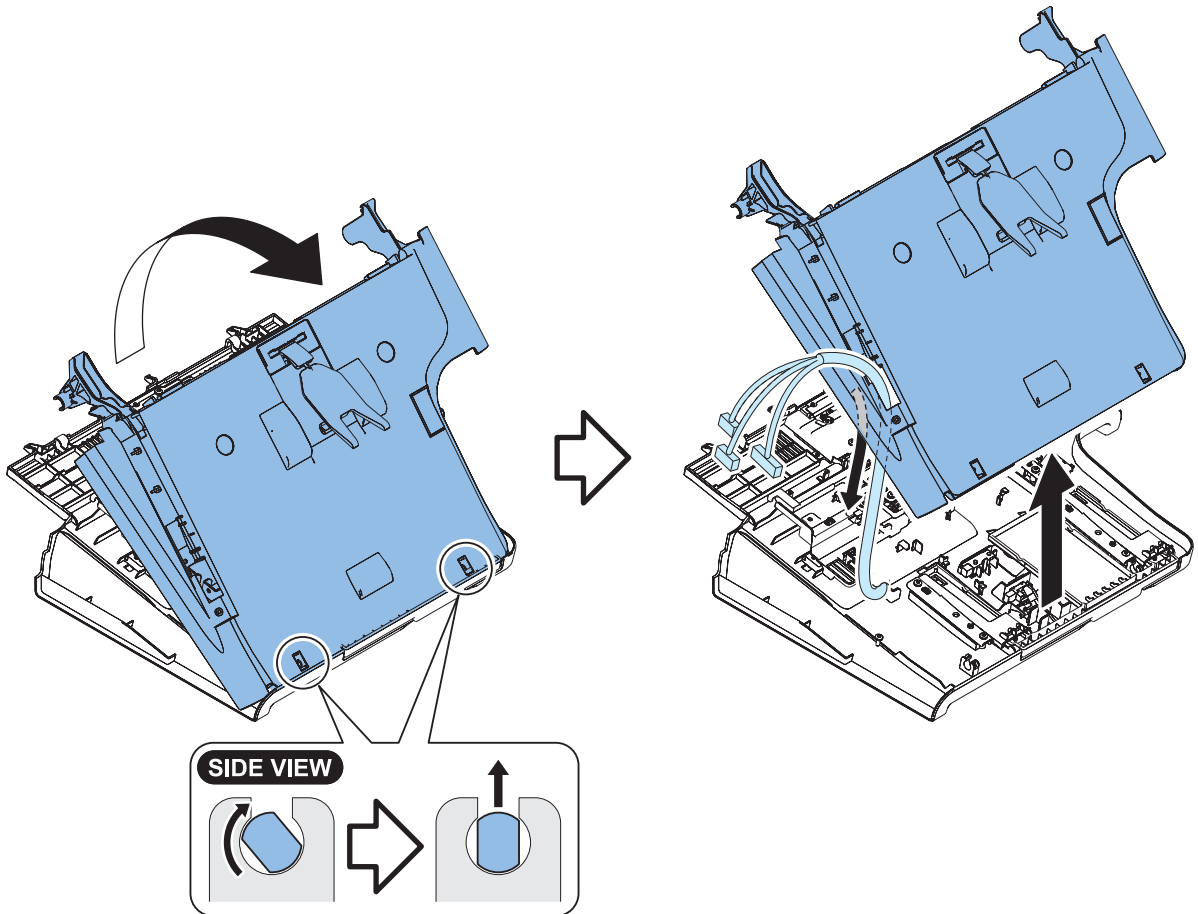
2.



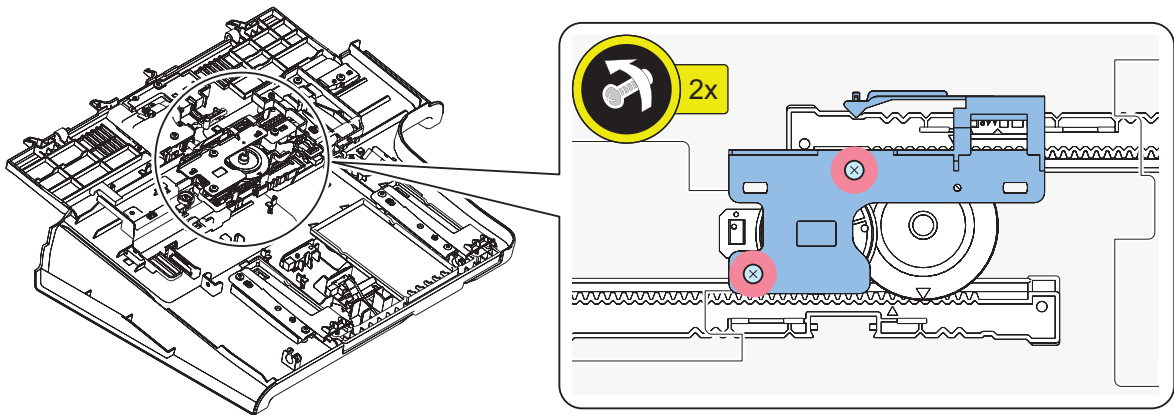
3.



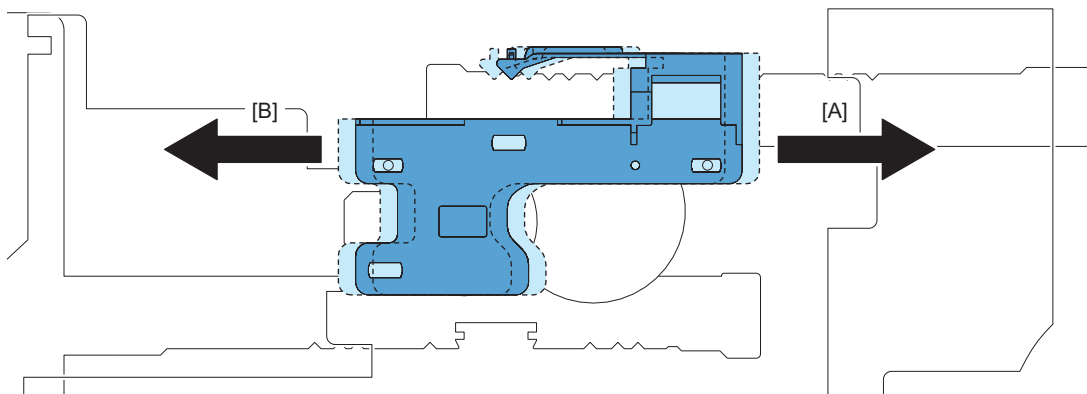
4.



5.



6.



- [A] Broadens paper width.
- [B] Narrows paper width.

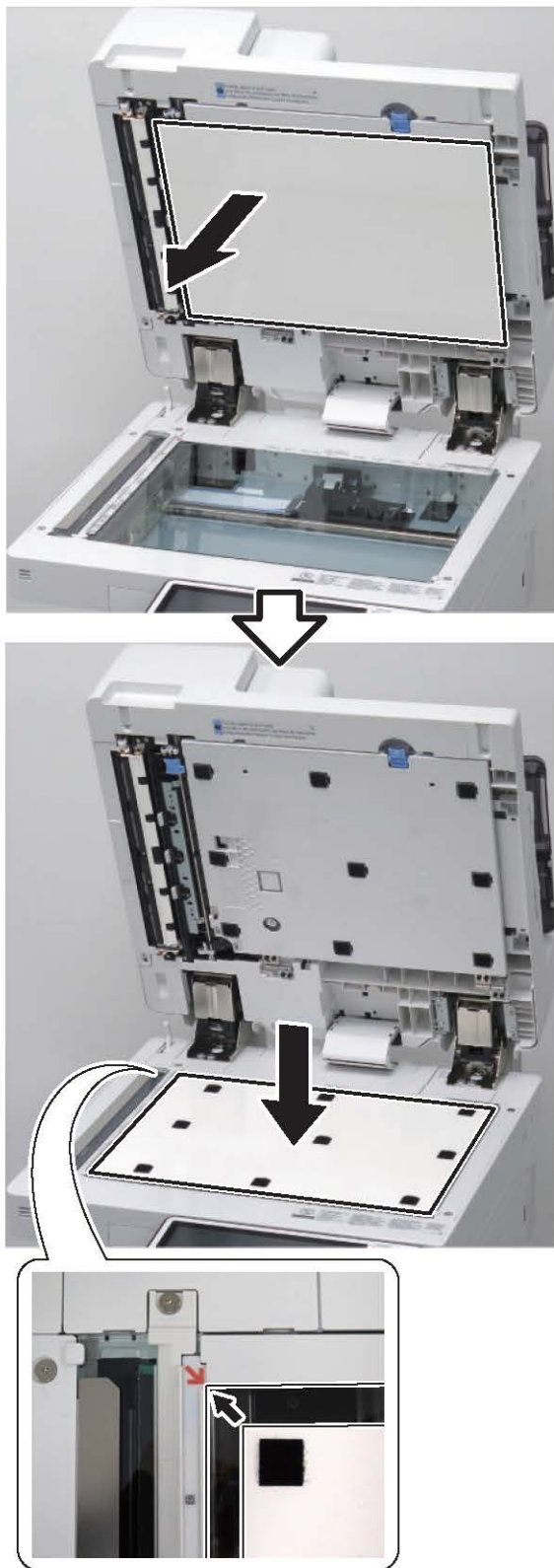
**CAUTION:**

Paper width is changed for all paper sizes. Adjustable maximum paper width is 297mm (A3).

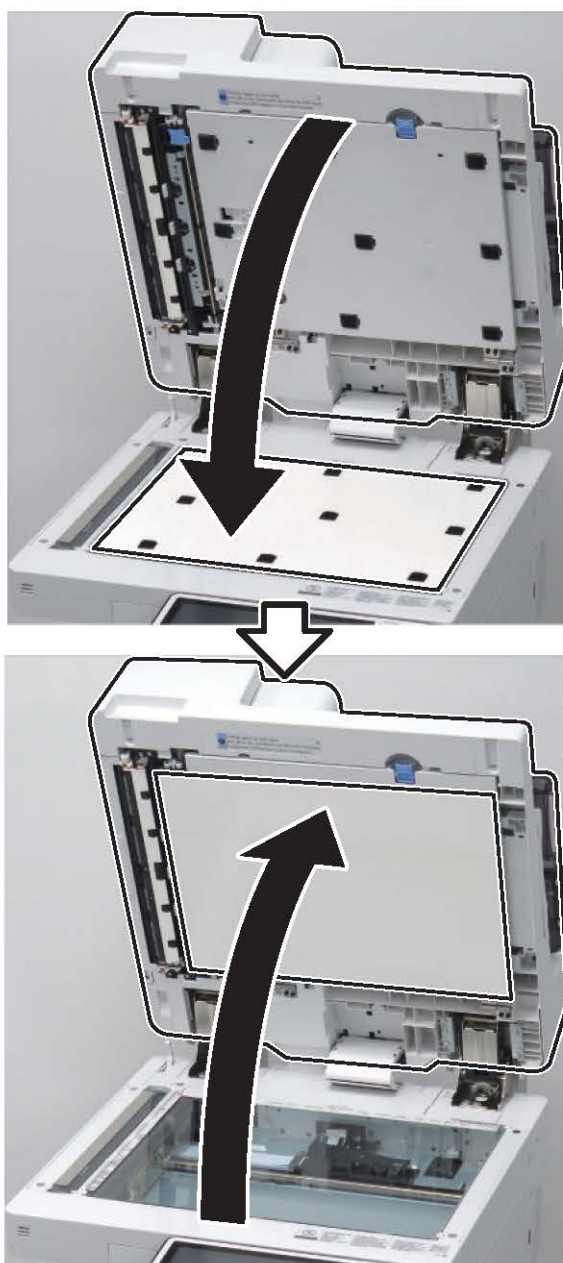


## ● Adjustment of the White Plate

□  
1.

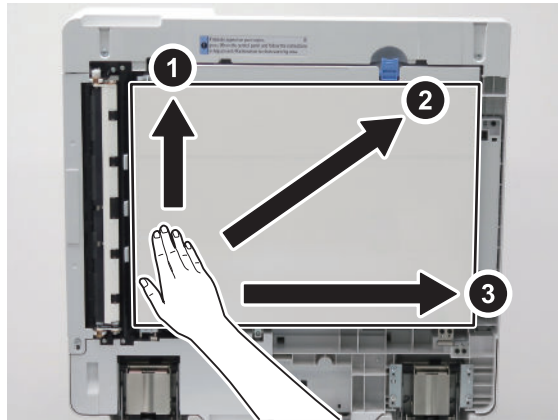


□  
**2.**



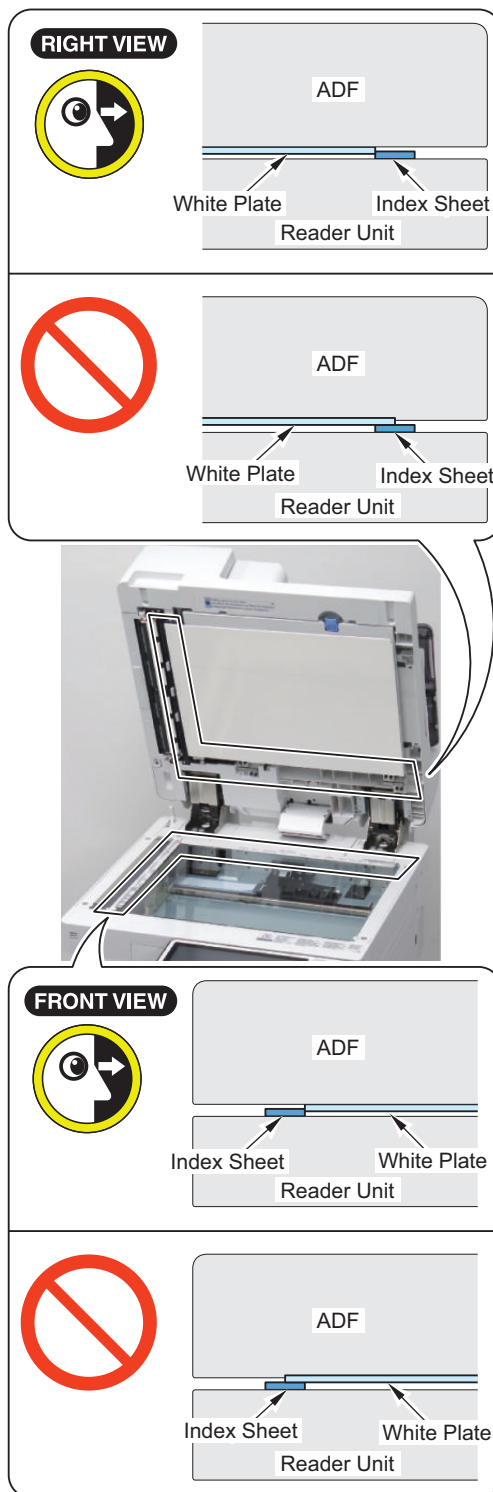
□  
**3.****CAUTION:**

If the White Plate is pressed downward, it is placed on the Index Sheet, so be sure to press it upward.



□  
4.**NOTE:**

- Be sure that there is no gap (for reference, 0.3 mm or less) between the White Plate and the Index Sheet.
- Check that the White Plate is not placed on the Index Sheet.



## Original Feed System

### ADF Scanner Unit

1. **To adjust the shading position automatically.**  
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RDSHDPOS
2. **To adjust the light intensity.**  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > LMPADJ
3. **To adjust the ADF scanning position automatically.**  
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS
4. **Execute white level adjustment. Prepare a sheet of A4 or LTR size paper.**
  1. Place the paper on the Copy Board Glass.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1
  2. Place the paper on the ADF Document Pickup Tray.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2
  3. Place the paper on the Copy Board Glass.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL3
  4. Place the paper on the ADF Document Pickup Tray.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL4
5. **Place the adjustment chart, included in the package of the unit, on the ADF Document Pickup Tray.**
6. **Execute skew adjustment (front and back difference correction adjustment).**  
FEEDER > FUNCTION > ADJ-SKW
7. **Write the values on the service label on the back of the Maintenance Cover.**  
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-G  
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-B  
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-R  
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-BW  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DT  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DL  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DROT

### Pickup Roller Unit

#### ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. **Clear the parts counter.**  
COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2 > DF-PU-RL

### Separation Roller

#### ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. **Clear the parts counter.**  
COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2 > DF-SP-RL

### Stamp

#### ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. **Clear the parts counter.**  
COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2 > STAMP

## Original Exposure System

### Reader Controller PCB

#### ■ Actions before Parts Replacement

1. **Back up the necessary data.**
  - COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > RSRAMBUP

**NOTE:**

If necessary, output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT before execution. COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT

#### ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. Turn **OFF** the power of the host machine and replace by the new Reader Controller PCB.
2. Turn **ON** the power of the host machine and use **SST** to download the latest system software (**R-CON**).
3. Perform the restoration of **SRAM** data of Reader Controller PCB.
  - COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > RSRAMRES
4. Turn **OFF** and then **ON** the power of the host machine.

### Reader Scanner Unit

1. **To adjust the shading position automatically.**  
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RDSHDPOS
2. **To adjust the light intensity.**  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > LMPADJ
3. **To adjust the ADF scanning position automatically.**  
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS
4. **Execute white level adjustment. Prepare a sheet of A4 or LTR size paper.**
  1. Place the paper on the Copy Board Glass.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1
  2. Place the paper on the ADF Document Pickup Tray.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2
  3. Place the paper on the Copy Board Glass.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL3
  4. Place the paper on the ADF Document Pickup Tray.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL4
5. **Place the adjustment chart, included in the package of the unit, on the ADF Document Pickup Tray.**
6. **Execute skew adjustment (front and back difference correction adjustment).**  
FEEDER > FUNCTION > ADJ-SKW
7. **Write the values on the service label on the back of the Maintenance Cover.**  
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > SH-TRGT  
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-R  
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-G  
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-B  
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-BW  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DT  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DL  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DROT

## Copyboard Glass

### ■ Actions after Parts Replacement

1. Enter the value (XXXXXXXXZZZZ) shown on the Barcode Label affixed at the upper Left of the Copy Board Glass.

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-X

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-Y

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-Z



2. Adjust the shading position.

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RDSHDPOS

3. Set the target value of B&W shading.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-TGT

4. Adjust the white level.

Prepare a sheet of A4 or LTR size paper.

1. Set a sheet of paper on the Copyboard Glass.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1
2. Set a sheet of paper on the ADF Document Pickup Tray.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2
3. Set a sheet of paper on the Copyboard Glass.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL3
4. Set a sheet of paper on the ADF Document Pickup Tray.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL4

5. Write the values on the service label on the back of the Maintenance Cover.

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > SH-TRGT

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-R

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-G

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-B

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-BW

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-G

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-B

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-R

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-BW



# Main Controller

## Hard Disk

### Overview

The following describes the tasks when replacing the HDD.

Note that procedures to backup/restore the data in the HDD is required when replacing the HDD.

Perform backup/restoration based on the following.

#### Backup List

| Backup target data  | Backup Method   |         |       |           |
|---|-----------------|---------|-------|-----------|
|   | User            | Service | DCM   | Power OFF |
|   | (excluding DCM) |         |       |           |
| Address List  | Yes*1           | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Forwarding Settings   | Yes*1           | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Settings / Registration   |                 |         |       |           |
| Preferences (Except for Paper Type Management Settings)   | -               | -       | Yes*9 | Yes*10    |
| Adjustment/Maintenance  | -               | -       | Yes*9 | Yes*10    |
| Function Settings (Except for Printer Custom Settings, Forwarding Settings)   | -               | -       | Yes*9 | Yes*10    |
| Set Destination (Except for Address List)   | -               | -       | Yes*9 | Yes*10    |
| Management Settings (Except for Address List)   | -               | -       | Yes*9 | Yes*10    |
| User authentication information used for local device authentication of UA (User Authentication)                          | Yes*2           | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Printer Settings  | Yes*1           | -       | Yes*9 | Yes*10    |
| Set Paper Information   | Yes*1           | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Setting items for each menu in Main Menu (Copy, Scan and Send, Fax, Scan and Store, Access Stored Files, Fax/I-Fax Inbox) |                 |         |       |           |
| Favorite Settings   | Yes*1           | Yes*8   | Yes*9 | -         |
| Default Settings  | -               | Yes*8   | Yes*9 | -         |
| Shortcut settings for "Options"   | -               | Yes*8   | Yes*9 | -         |
| Previous Settings   | -               | Yes*8   | -     | -         |
| Setting items for Quick Menu  |                 |         |       |           |
| Button Size information   | -               | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Wallpaper Setting   | -               | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Button information in Quick Menu  | -               | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Restrict Quick Menu   | -               | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Setting items for Main Menu   |                 |         |       |           |
| Button settings in Main Menu  | -               | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Button settings on the top of the screen  | -               | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Wallpaper Setting for Main Menu   | -               | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Other settings for Main Menu  | -               | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Function Settings > Store/Access Files  |                 |         |       |           |
| Mail Box Settings (Register Box Name, PIN, Time Until File Auto Delete, Printer upon Storing from Printer Driver)         | Yes*4           | -       | Yes*9 | -         |
| Image data in Mail Box, Fax Inbox, and Memory RX Inbox  | Yes*4           | -       | -     | -         |
| Network Place Settings  | -               | -       | Yes*9 | Yes*10    |
| Web browser settings  |                 |         |       |           |
| Web Access setting information  | -               | Yes*8   | Yes*9 | -         |
| MEAP settings   |                 |         |       |           |
| MEAP application  | -               | Yes*8   | -     | -         |
| License files for MEAP applications   | Yes*5           | -       | -     | -         |
| Data saved using MEAP applications  | Yes*5           | △*8     | Yes*9 | -         |
| SMS (Service Management Service) password   | -               | Yes*8   | -     | -         |
| Universal data settings   |                 |         |       |           |

| Backup target data   | Backup Method   |         |        |           |
|--|-----------------|---------|--------|-----------|
|  | User            | Service | DCM    | Power OFF |
|  | (excluding DCM) |         |        |           |
| Unsent documents (documents waiting to be sent with the Delayed Send mode)   | -               | -       | -      | -         |
| Job logs   | -               | -       | -      | -         |
| Audit Log  | Yes*6           | -       | -      | -         |
| Key Pair and Server Certificate in Certificate Settings in TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) | -               | -       | Yes*9  | -         |
| Auto Adjust Gradation setting values   | -               | -       | -      | -         |
| PS font  | -               | -       | -      | -         |
| Key information to be used for encryption when TPM is OFF  | -               | -       | -      | -         |
| Key and settings information to be used for encryption when TPM is ON  | Yes*7           | -       | -      | -         |
| Personal Settings  |                 |         |        |           |
| Display Language   | -               | -       | Yes *9 | -         |
| Accessibility Settings   | -               | -       | Yes *9 | -         |
| Default Screen   | -               | -       | Yes *9 | -         |
| Default Job Settings   | -               | -       | Yes *9 | -         |
| Quick Menu (Personal, layout of the Personal tab, and background of the Personal tab)  | -               | -       | Yes *9 | -         |
| Address Book (Personal/Group)  | Yes *1          | -       | Yes *9 | -         |
| Key ring (for host machine functions)  | -               | -       | Yes *9 | -         |
| Personal settings of MEAP  | Yes *11         | Yes *8  | Yes *9 | -         |
| Service Mode   |                 |         |        |           |
| Service Mode setting values (MN-CON)   | -               | -       | △*9    | Yes*10    |

\*1: Remote UI > Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Import or Export

\*2: Remote UI > Settings/Registration > Management Settings > User Management > Authentication Management > User Management

\*3: Remote UI > Quick Menu > Export

\*4: Remote UI > Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Back Up or Restore

\*5: Remote UI > Service Management Service

\*6: Remote UI > Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Device Management > Save Audit Log

Audit log that was exported cannot be put back to the device from which the log was exported.

\*7: Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > TPM Settings

\*8: Download mode > [5]: Backup/Restore > [3] : MEAP Backup > Meapback.bin

Backup is possible using SST or USB memory

The data saved using a MEAP application can be backed up only when the MEAP application has a backup function.

\*9: Backup Method using DCM When You set it in COPIER> OPTION> USER> SMD-EXPT> ON, a backup/restore is possible in Service Mode Settings from the Remote UI.

There is a backup button on the TOP page of the service mode.

- Remote UI > Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export All
- Remote UI > Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export
- Service mode top screen > BACKUP
- Web Service

\*10: The setting value that was set when the main power was turned OFF the last time is automatically backed up to the Flash PCB. When a HDD is replaced with a new one, the setting value is automatically inherited from the Flash PCB at the time of HDD formatting.

\*11: iWEMC DAM plug-in

## ■ Actions before Parts Replacement

1. Backup the required data based on the “Table: Backup List” on page 605.

2. Execute the following service mode and printout the setting data to be ready in case of failing to restore the data.

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > USER-PRT

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT

## ■ After Replacement

### 1. HDD format

Start the machine in safe mode, and format all partitions using SST or a USB memory.

### 2. Turning OFF and ON the main power switch

### 3. Restoring the backup data

### 4. Resetting/registering the data

While referring to the list which was printed before replacement, reset/register the data.

### 5. When the user generates and adds the encryption key, certificate and/or CA certificate, request the user to generate them again.

## ● Main controller PCB 1

When replacing the Main Controller PCB 1, perform the following works.

1. Replacing method ( Refer to "Procedure" on page 301)
2. After Replacing ( Refer to "After Replacement" on page 302)

### CAUTION:

Prohibited Operation

Do not transfer the following parts to another model (which has a different serial number). If you fail to do so, the Main Body does not activate normally and this might cause to fail the restoration.

- Main controller PCB1
- FLASH PCB
- TPM PCB
- Memory PCB

## ■ After Replacement

### 1. Replace parts from an old PCB to a new PCB.

- Memory PCB
- FLASH PCB
- TPM PCB

## ● Main controller PCB 2

The actions at parts replacement are only for replacement of the Main Controller PCB 2.

## ● TPM PCB

When replacing the TPM PCB, refer to "Security Function (Encryption Key, Certificate and Protection of Password)" . ( Refer to System Service Manual )

## ● FLASH PCB

Before replacing the FLASH PCB, contact the sales company.

### CAUTION:

Points to Note Replace the Parts

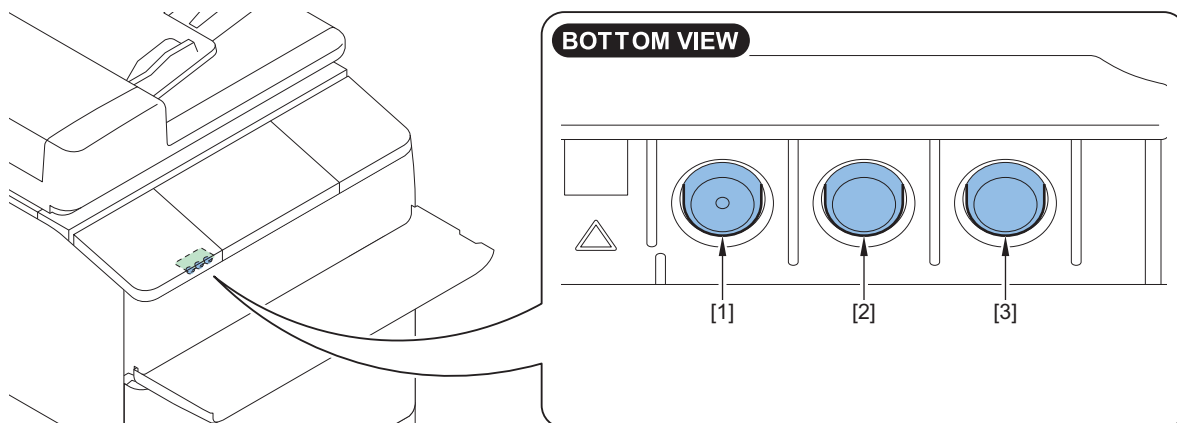
Do not remove it unless a failure is suspected. A FLASH PCB which had been used in another machine cannot be reused.

## Control Panel Unit

When replacing the Touch Panel Unit, LCD Unit or the Control Panel CPU PCB, perform the following work.

### Flat Control Panel Adjustment

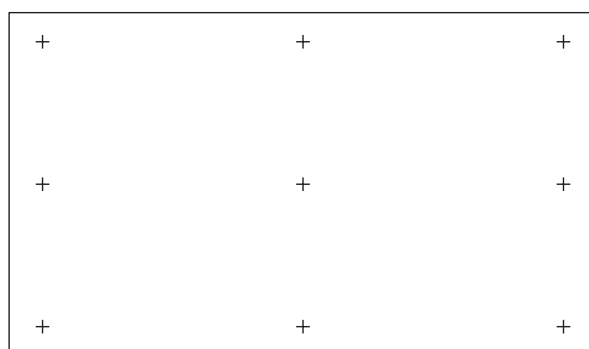
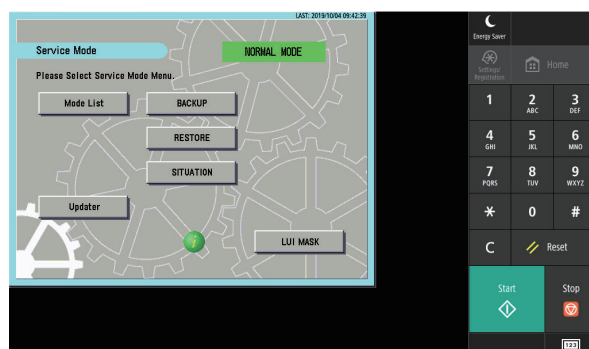
1. Open the Toner Exchange Cover.
2. Enter the Service Mode.
3. Press the Hard Key [1] 3 times to enter the coordinate adjustment mode.



4. Press "+" indicated on the Control Panel in order. The coordinate adjustment mode is automatically closed when all 9 "+" is pressed.

**NOTE:**

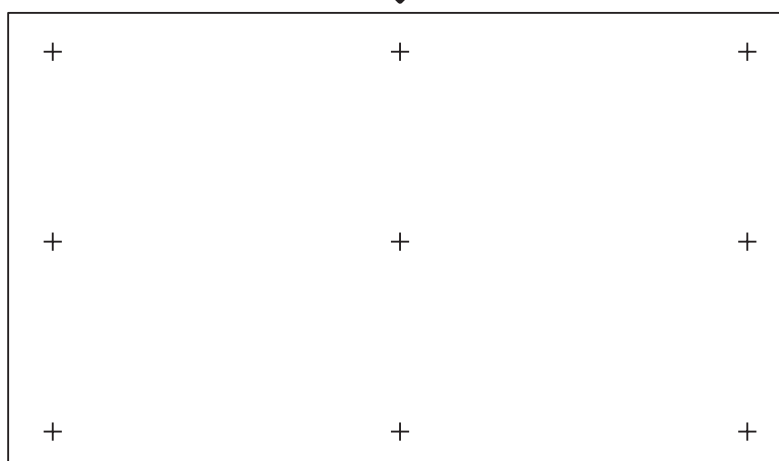
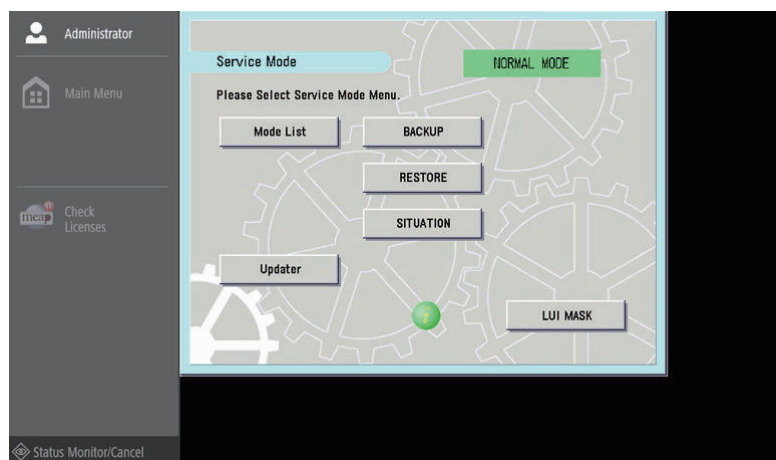
When the adjustment is not operated adequately, Re-adjust from procedure 3 after pressing all 9 "+" is pressed.



## ■ Upright Control Panel Adjustment

1. If the coordinate on the Touch Panel is not correct, adjustment of the Touch Panel may not be performed. In that case, the Touch Panel can be adjusted by performing the following menu operation using hardware keys.

- Press [5] key 3 times on the service mode top screen.



## Laser Exposure System

### Procedure of parts replacement

Refer to “Removing the Laser Scanner Unit” on page 322

### Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

**1. Execute the potential control.**

(Lv.1) COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > DPC2

**2. Write the value in service label.**

(Lv.1) COPIER > ADJUST > LASER > PVE-OFST (Adjust of write start position of laser)

## Image Formation System

### Primary Charging Wire

#### ■ Procedure of parts replacement

Refer to “Replacing the Primary Charging Wire” on page 342.

#### ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

1. **Clear the parts counter.**  
(Lv.1)COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1 > PRM-WIRE
2. **Clean the Charging Wire. (necessary time : about 120 second)**  
(Lv.1)COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-CLN
3. **Init of Primary Charging Wire current VL**  
(Lv.1)COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > GRD-CRNT
4. **Execute the potential control.**  
(Lv.1)COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > DPC2

### Primary Charging Assembly

#### ■ Procedure of parts replacement

Refer to “Removing the Primary Charging Assembly” on page 329.

#### ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

1. **Clear the parts counter.**  
(Lv.1)COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > PRM-UNIT
2. **Output a halftone image using the service mode.**  
(Lv.1)COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE : 5
3. **Execute the following procedure according to the density difference on the front and rear sides of the test print image.**
  - When the front side test print image is dark, execute step 3.
  - When the rear side test print image is dark, execute step 4.
  - When there is no uneven density, execute step 5 and the following.

When the front side test print image is dark

#### NOTE:

- When the front side test print image is dark [1], execute step 3 until the density becomes even. When the density becomes even, execute step 5 and the following.
- When the adjustment screw is turned clockwise, the Charging Wire goes down and up (gap between grid and Charging Wire becomes narrow and wide). As a result, the density of output image becomes light.

#### CAUTION:

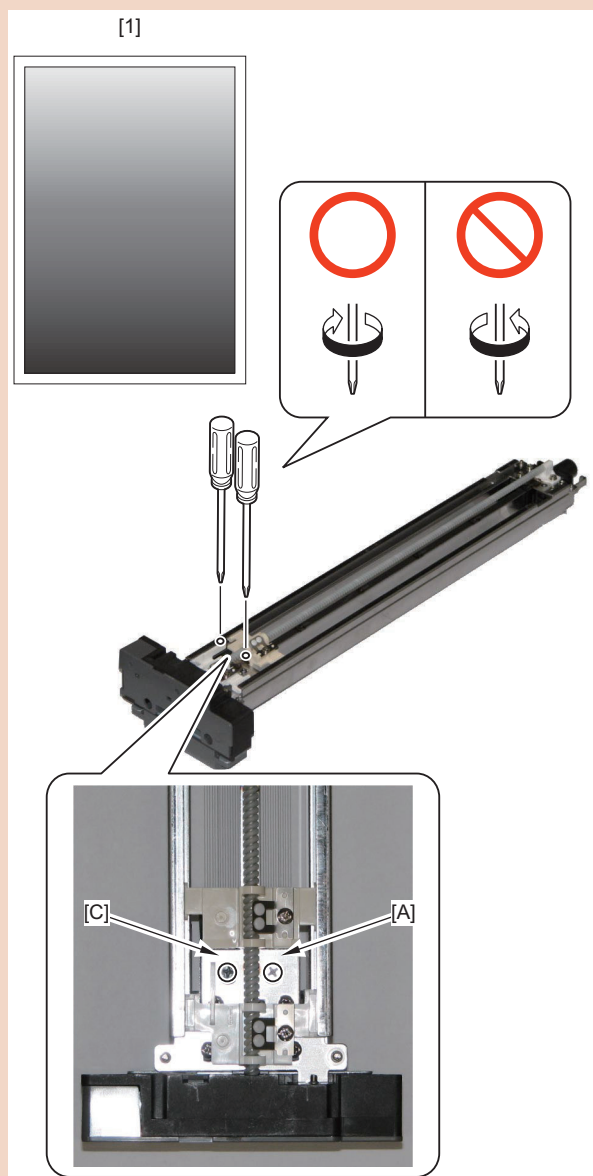
- Be sure to adjust the dark side (density of the test print image) to be the light side.



4. Make the resin screws [A] and [C] a full turn clockwise. While referring to the replacement procedure of the Primary Charging Assembly, install it to the main body, output a test print and check the image.

**CAUTION:**

- Since uneven density might occur, be sure to adjust by turning the 2 adjustment screws with the same amount.



When the rear side test print image is dark

**NOTE:**

- When the rear side test print image is dark [2], execute step 4 until the density becomes even. When the density becomes even, execute step 5 and the following.
- When the adjustment screw is turned clockwise, the Charging Wire goes down and up (gap between grid and Charging Wire becomes narrow and wide). As a result, the density of output image becomes light.

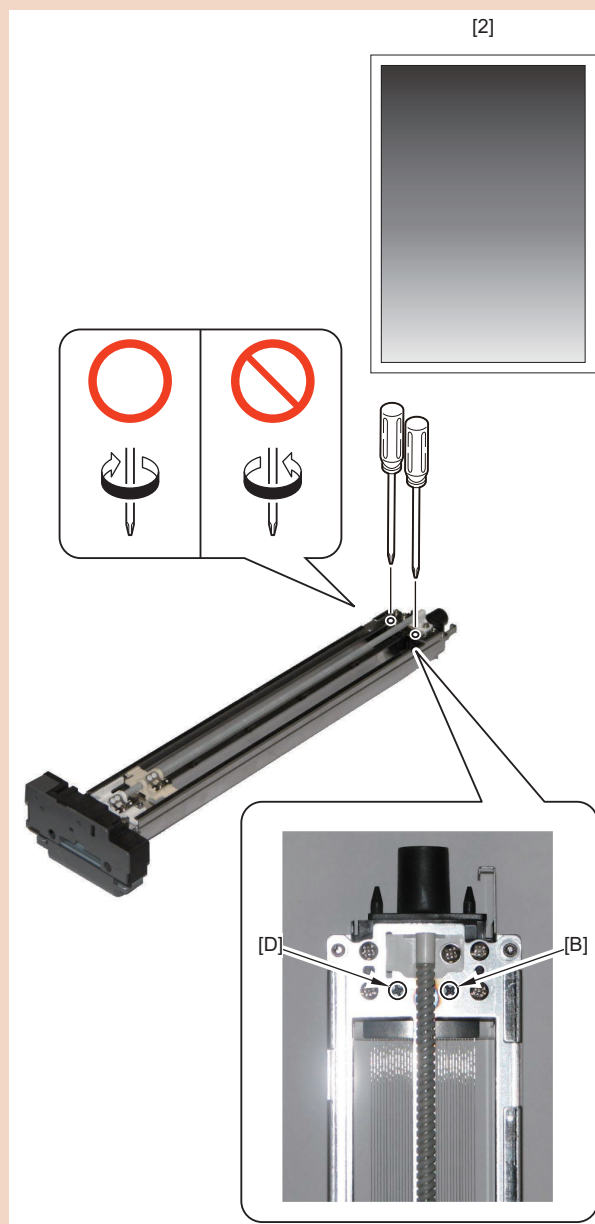
**CAUTION:**

- Be sure to adjust the dark side (density of the test print image) to be the light side.

5. Make the resin screws [B] and [D] a full turn clockwise. While referring to the replacement procedure of the Primary Charging Assembly, install it to the main body, output a test print and check the image.

**CAUTION:**

- Since uneven density might occur, be sure to adjust by turning the 2 adjustment screws with the same amount.



6. Clean the Charging Wire. (necessary time : about 120 second)

(Lv.1)COPIER > FUNCTION > CLAENING > WIRE-CLN

7. Init of Primary Charging Wire current VL.

(Lv.1)COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > GRD-CRNT

8. Execute the potential control.

(Lv.1)COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > DPC2

9. Execute the density correction using the user mode.

Settings/Registration > Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Correct Density

## Pre-transfer Charging Assembly

### ■ Procedure of parts replacement

Refer to “[Removing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly](#)” on page 347.

### ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

1. **Clear the parts counter.**  
(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > PO-UNIT
2. **Clean the Charging Wire. (necessary time : about 120 second)**  
(Lv.1) COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-CLN

## Pre-transfer Charging Wire

### ■ Procedure of parts replacement

Refer to “[Replacing the Pre-transfer Charging Wire](#)” on page 353.

### ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

1. **Clear the parts counter.**  
(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1 > PO-WIRE
2. **Clean the Charging Wire. (necessary time : about 120 second)**  
(Lv.1) COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-CLN

## Photosensitive Drum

### ■ Procedure of parts replacement

Refer to “[Removing the Photosensitive Drum](#)” on page 367.

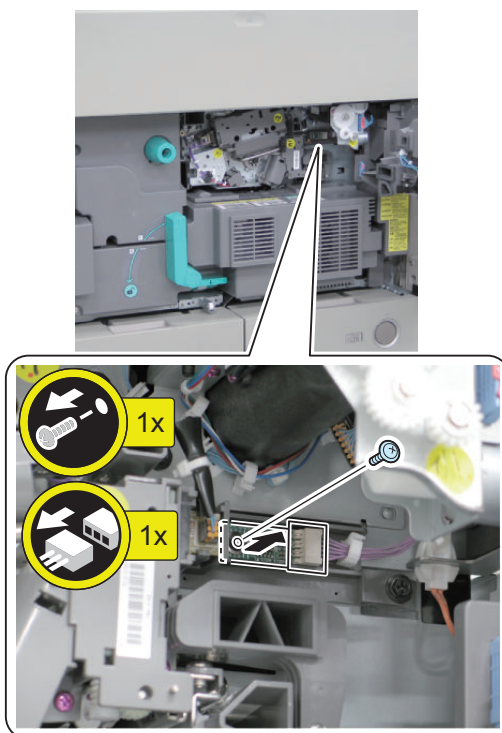
### ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

**NOTE:**

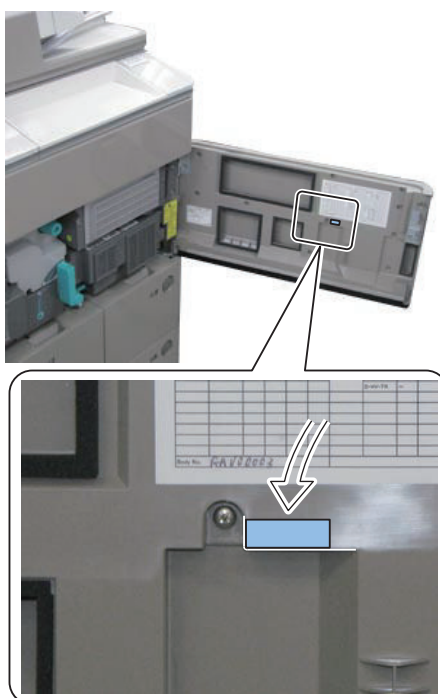
Since the 2D shading function is not supported when the serial number of the host machine is 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx 50000 or later, the following 1, 2, and 5 operations are unnecessary.

**1. Remove the EEROM.**

- 1 Screw
- 1 Connector

**2. Replace the ROM connected to the host machine with the drum ROM included in the drum.****CAUTION:**

If the ROM is not replaced, the replaced drum and the drum-unique data stored in the ROM are not matched. As a result, the 2D shading is not functioned normally.

**3. Affix the ID Label included in the drum to the inside of the Front Cover.****4. Activate the drum replacement mode.**

(Lv.1) COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > DRM-INIT

**5. Check the 2-dimensional shading ROM.**

(Lv.1) COPIER &gt; FUNCTION &gt; 2D-SHADE &gt; 2D-READ

**6. Execute the auto adjust gradation using the user mode.**

Settings/Registration &gt; Adjustment/Maintenance &gt; Image Quality Adjustment &gt; Auto Adjust Gradation

## ● Drum Side Seals (Front and Rear)

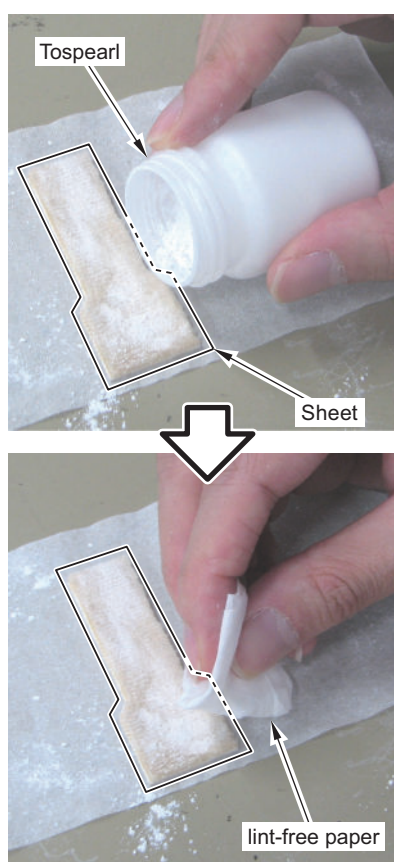
### ■ Procedure of parts replacement

Refer to “Removing the Side Seal” on page 375.

### ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

**1. Applying Tospearl**

Apply Tospearl on the surfaces of the Drum Side Seals (Front and Rear) and adhere it uniformly with lint-free paper. In order to reduce adhesion of toner at both ends of the Photosensitive Drum.

**2. Clear the parts counter.**

(Lv.1) COPIER &gt; COUNTER &gt; DRBL-1 &gt; BS-SL-F

(Lv.1) COPIER &gt; COUNTER &gt; DRBL-1 &gt; BS-SL-R

## ● Developing Cylinder/Developing Roller

### ■ Procedure of parts replacement

Refer to “Removing the Developing Cylinder and the Developing Roller” on page 382.

### ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

**1. Clear the parts counter.**

(Lv.1) COPIER &gt; COUNTER &gt; DRBL-1 &gt; DVG-CYL

## 2. Supplying Developing Assembly toner.

(Lv.1) COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > TONER-S

## Potential Sensor / Potential Control PCB

### ■ Procedure of parts replacement

Refer to “Removing the Potential Control PCB Unit” on page 432.

### ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

#### 1. Adjust the Potential Sensor offset.

(Lv.1) COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > OFST

## ETB Unit / ETB

### ■ Procedure of parts replacement

- Refer to “Removing the ETB Unit” on page 388.
- Refer to “Removing the ETB” on page 392.

### ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

#### 1. Clear the ETB control counter.

(Lv.1) COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > TR-BLT

Parts counter (COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > TR-BLT) is also cleared coincidentally.

## Waste Toner Container

### ■ Procedure of parts replacement

Refer to “Removing the Waste Toner Container” on page 401.

### ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

#### 1. Set the new Waste Toner Container.

#### NOTE:

When replacing the Waste Toner Container with a new one after preparation warning or full warning is displayed, display on the LUI is cleared after a certain period of time has passed. The parts counter ((Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > WST-TNR) is automatically cleared at replacement.

#### NOTE:

Related service modes when a user replaces the Waste Toner Container

The Waste Toner Container preparation warning message can be set to be displayed or hidden by executing the following service mode.

(Lv.1) COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > WT-WARN

Setting value 0: Hide, 1: Display

Procedure for replacing the Waste Toner Container can be set to be displayed or hidden by executing the following service mode.

When a user replaces the Waste Toner Container, set 1.

(Lv.1) COPIER > OPTION > USER > W-TN-DSP

Setting value 0: OFF, 1: ON

## Fixing System

### Fixing Roller

#### ■ Procedure of parts replacement

Refer to “Removing the Fixing Roller, Insulating Bush and Thrust Stopper” on page 466.

#### ■ Adjustment when Replacing the Parts

##### 1. Grease Application

Apply approx. 20mg of grease (MOLYKOTE HP-300; CK-8012) to inner circumference and outer circumference of the Insulating Bush so that all circumferences are covered with white film.

##### 2. Clear the parts counter.

(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > FX-UP-RL

(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > FX-IN-BS

(Lv.1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > FX-RTNR



## External Auxiliary System

### DC Controller PCB

#### Before Parts Replacement

##### CAUTION:

When replacing the DC Controller PCB, be sure to use a new one. Do not use the DC Controller PCB which was used with another machine.

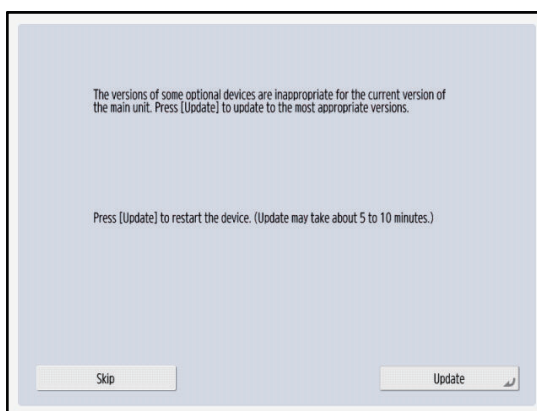
1. **Execute the following service mode to output setting values for just in case of restoration failure of backup data.**  
COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT
2. **Execute the following service mode to back up the service mode setting values.**  
(Lv.2) COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DSRAMBUP  
During execution, "ACTIVE" flashes in the status column of the service mode.  
It takes approx. 2 minutes. Upon success, [OK!] is displayed in the status column.
3. **After confirming that [OK!] is displayed in the status column of the service mode, turn OFF the power of the machine.**

#### Procedure of parts replacement

Refer to "Removing the DC Controller PCB" on page 538 .

#### Works During Parts Replacement

1. **If the firmware combination is incorrect, execute an update with the Automatic Update function.**



Screen example

##### CAUTION:

Automatic Update is available only when the following Service Mode settings are at 1 or 2.  
(Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

2. **When the setting value data is backed up before parts replacement, execute the following service mode to restore the backed-up setting value data.**  
(Lv.2) COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DSRAMRES  
During execution, "ACTIVE" flashes in the status column of the service mode.  
It takes approx. 2 minutes. Upon success, [OK!] is displayed in the status column.
3. **When setting values cannot be backed up before replacement or when the backed-up data cannot be restored in this step due to reasons such as damage of the DC Controller PCB, enter the values of each service mode item written on the service label or P-PRINT before parts replacement.**



# Troubleshooting

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Making Initial Checks.....            | 621 |
| Test Print.....                       | 622 |
| Image Faults.....                     | 627 |
| Feed Faults.....                      | 650 |
| Other.....                            | 651 |
| Debug Log.....                        | 665 |
| Startup System Failure Diagnosis..... | 683 |
| Controller Self Diagnosis.....        | 693 |

## Making Initial Checks

### List of Initial Check Items

| Item                                     | No. | Detail  | Check |
|--|-----|---|-------|
| Site Environment                         | 1   | The voltage of the power supply is as rated ( $\pm 10\%$ ).   |       |
|  | 2   | The site is not a high temperature / humidity environment (near a water faucet, water boiler, humidifier), and it is not in a cold place. The machine is not near a source of fire or dust. |       |
|  | 3   | The site is not subject to ammonium gas.  |       |
|  | 4   | The site is not exposed to direct rays of the sun. (Otherwise, provide curtains.)   |       |
|  | 5   | The site is well ventilated, and the floor keeps the machine level.   |       |
|  | 6   | The machine's power plug remains connected to the power outlet.   |       |
| Checking the Paper                       | 7   | The paper is of a recommended type.   |       |
|  | 8   | The paper is not moist. Try paper fresh out of package.   |       |
| Checking the Placement of Paper          | 9   | Check the cassette and the manual feed tray to see if the paper is not in excess of a specific level.   |       |
|  | 10  | If a transparency is used, check to make sure that it is placed in the correct orientation in the manual feed tray.   |       |
| Checking the Durables                    | 11  | Check the table of durables to see if any has reached the end of its life.  |       |
| Checking the Periodically Replaced Parts | 12  | Check the scheduled servicing table and the periodically replaced parts table, and replace any part that has reached the time of replacement.   |       |

# Test Print

## Overview

| P<br>G<br>T<br>Y<br>P<br>E | Pattern  | Image check item |             |                               |                    |                    |                      |   |  |                                |            |                                  | PCB to generate<br>PG    |   |
|----------------------------|--|------------------|-------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|---|--|--------------------------------|------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------|---|
|                            |  | Grada-<br>tion   | Fog<br>ging | Tran-<br>sfer<br>fail-<br>ure | Bla-<br>ck<br>line | Wh-<br>ite<br>line | Un-<br>even<br>pitch | Un-<br>even<br>den-<br>sity<br>(rear<br>/<br>front<br>) | Right<br>angle<br>accu-<br>racy<br>Straigh-<br>t line<br>accu-<br>racy | Side<br>reg-<br>istra-<br>tion | Shoc-<br>k | Mag-<br>nifica-<br>tion<br>ratio |                          |   |
| 0                          | Normal copy/print  |                  |             |                               |                    |                    |                      |   |  |                                |            |                                  |                          | - |
| 1                          | Grid   |                  |             |                               |                    |                    |                      |   | Yes  | Yes                            |            | Yes                              | Main Controller<br>PCB 2 |   |
| 2                          | 17 gradations Tbic rank 2  | Yes              |             |                               | Yes                | Yes                |                      |   |  |                                |            |                                  | Main Controller<br>PCB 2 |   |
| 3                          | 17 gradations 600dpi (134-<br>line screen or 141-line<br>screen)                             | Yes              |             |                               | Yes                | Yes                |                      |   |  |                                |            |                                  | Main Controller<br>PCB 2 |   |
| 4                          | Solid white  |                  | Yes         |                               |                    |                    |                      |   |  |                                |            |                                  | Main Controller<br>PCB 2 |   |
| 5                          | Halftone (density: 80H, Tbic<br>rank 2, without image correc-<br>tion)                       |                  |             | Yes                           | Yes                | Yes                | Yes                  | Yes   |  |                                | Yes        |                                  | Main Controller<br>PCB 2 |   |
| 6                          | Halftone (density: 80H, 134-<br>line screen or 141-line screen,<br>without image correction) |                  |             | Yes                           | Yes                | Yes                | Yes                  | Yes   |  |                                | Yes        |                                  | Main Controller<br>PCB 2 |   |
| 7                          | Solid black  |                  |             | Yes                           |                    | Yes                | Yes                  | Yes   |  |                                |            |                                  | Main Controller<br>PCB 2 |   |
| 8                          | Horizontal line (4 dots, 27<br>spaces)   |                  |             |                               | Yes                | Yes                | Yes                  | Yes   |  |                                |            |                                  | Main Controller<br>PCB 2 |   |
| 9                          | Horizontal line (6 dots, 50<br>spaces)   |                  |             |                               | Yes                | Yes                | Yes                  | Yes   |  |                                |            |                                  | Main Controller<br>PCB 2 |   |
| 10                         | Horizontal line (2 dots, 3<br>spaces)  |                  |             |                               | Yes                | Yes                | Yes                  | Yes   |  |                                |            |                                  | Main Controller<br>PCB 2 |   |
| 11                         | Halftone (density: 60H, Tbic<br>rank 2, without image correc-<br>tion)                       |                  |             | Yes                           | Yes                | Yes                | Yes                  | Yes   |  | Yes                            | Yes        |                                  | Main Controller<br>PCB 2 |   |
| 12                         | Halftone (density: 60H, 134-<br>line screen or 141-line screen,<br>without image correction) |                  |             | Yes                           | Yes                | Yes                | Yes                  | Yes   |  |                                | Yes        |                                  | Main Controller<br>PCB 2 |   |
| 13                         | Halftone (density: 30H, Tbic<br>rank 2, without image correc-<br>tion)                       |                  |             | Yes                           | Yes                | Yes                | Yes                  | Yes   |  |                                | Yes        |                                  | Main Controller<br>PCB 2 |   |
| 14                         | Halftone (density: 30H, 134-<br>line screen or 141-line screen,<br>without image correction) |                  |             | Yes                           | Yes                | Yes                | Yes                  | Yes   |  |                                | Yes        |                                  | Main Controller<br>PCB 2 |   |
| 15                         | 15 to 50: For development  |                  |             |                               |                    |                    |                      |   |  |                                |            |                                  | -                        |   |

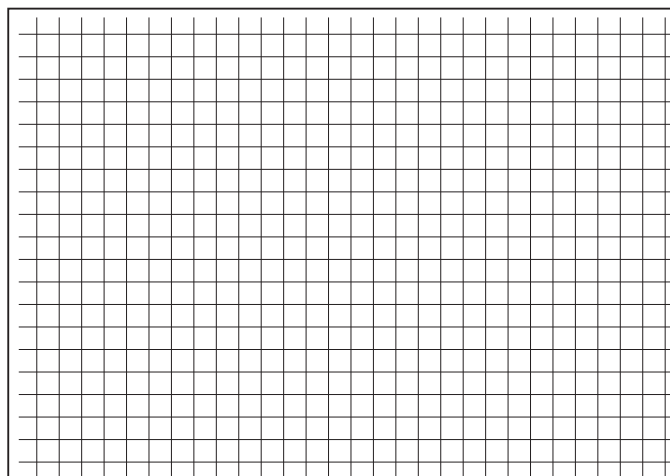
### NOTE:

When outputting a halftone test print, be sure to use PG TYPE:6 except in the following cases.

1. When checking the image of side registration adjustment, use PG TYPE:11.
2. When the setting value of the following service mode(Lv.2) is "2" (TBIC is used for both the photo part and the text part), use PG TYPE:5.  
COPIER > OPTION > USER > PH-D-SL2

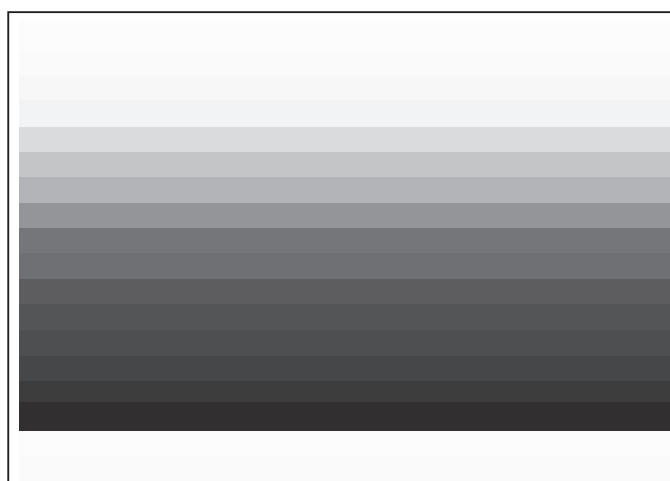
## How to View the Test Print

### ■ Grid (TYPE=1)



| Check item                                      | Check method  | Assumed cause  |
|---|---|--|
| Right angle accuracy/<br>Straight line accuracy | Check whether lines in the horizontal/ vertical scanning directions are paralleled to the paper and these lines are at right angles to one another. | Feed system failure or Laser Scanner Unit failure is considered.   |
| Side registration                               | Check the left margin.  | Floor at the installation site is extremely distorted, or the feed system failure is considered.           |
| Magnification ratio                             | Check whether the grid is printed at 9.99mm intervals. (Check the image on the second side at duplex printing.)                                     | ETB and rollers' feed system failure or laser exposure system failure (drum, Laser Scanner) is considered. |

### ■ 17 gradations (TYPE=2/3)



| Check item | Check method  | Assumed cause  |
|------------|---|--|
| Gradation  | Check whether gradation in density is made appropriately. | Drum failure, laser exposure system failure or developing system failure is considered.  |
| Black line | Check whether black lines appear on the image.            | Laser light path failure, grid failure, developing system failure, cleaning (drum, ETB) failure or Pre-transfer Charging Assembly failure is considered. |
| White line | Check whether white lines appear on the image.            | Primary Charging Wire failure or developing system failure is considered.  |

## Solid white (TYPE=4)



| Check item | Check method   | Assumed cause   |
|------------|--|---|
| Fogging    | Check whether foggy image appears in the blank area. | Drum failure, laser exposure system failure or developing system failure is considered. |

## Halftone (TYPE=5/6/11/12/13/14)



### NOTE:

- When outputting a halftone test print, be sure to use PG TYPE:6 except in the following cases.
  - When checking the image of side registration adjustment, use PG TYPE:11.
  - When the setting value of the following service mode(Lv.2) is "2" (TBIC is used for both the photo part and the text part), use PG TYPE:5.  
COPIER > OPTION > USER > PH-D-SL2
- When changing the density of the test print (TYPE=5), use the following service mode to change the density:  
COPIER > TEST > PG > DENS-K

| Check item       | Check method   | Assumed cause  |
|------------------|--|--|
| Transfer failure | Check the evenness of halftone density. Check whether uneven image or foggy image appears. | Transfer system failure or Pre-transfer Charging Assembly failure is considered.   |
| Black line       | Check whether black lines appear on the image.   | Laser light path failure, grid failure, developing system failure, cleaning (drum, ETB) failure or Pre-transfer Charging Assembly failure is considered. |
| White line       | Check whether white lines appear on the image.   | Primary Charging Wire failure or developing system failure is considered.  |

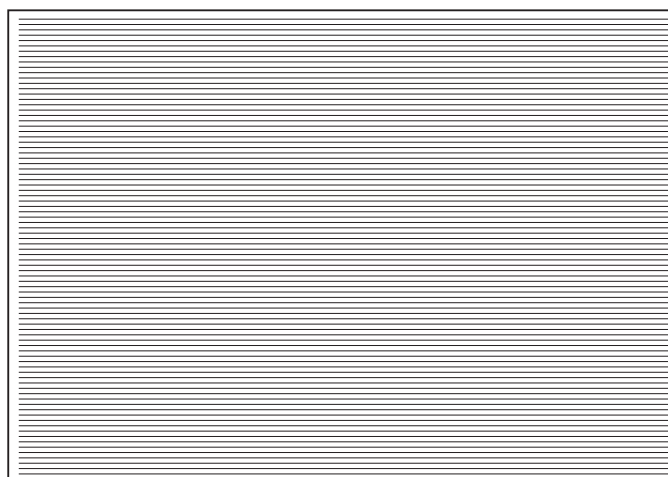
| Check item                  | Check method  | Assumed cause   |
|-----------------------------|---|---|
| Uneven pitch                | Check whether lines appear on the image in the horizontal scanning direction. | Drum failure, developing system failure, laser exposure system failure or driverelated failure is considered. |
| Uneven density (rear/front) | Check the density difference between the front and rear sides.                | Primary Charging Assembly failure, drum failure or developing system failure is considered.                   |
| Side registration           | Check the left margin.  | Floor at the installation site is extremely distorted, or the feed system failure is considered.              |
| Shock                       | Check whether horizontal lines appear on the image.                           | ETB and rollers' feed system failure or laser exposure system failure (drum, Laser Scanner) is considered.    |

## ● Solid black (TYPE=7)



| Check item                  | Check method   | Assumed cause  |
|-----------------------------|--|--|
| Transfer failure            | Check the evenness of halftone density. Check whether uneven image or foggy image appears. | Transfer system failure or Pre-transfer Charging Assembly failure is considered.                               |
| Uneven pitch                | Check whether lines appear on the image in the horizontal scanning direction.              | Drum failure, developing system failure, laser exposure system failure or drive-related failure is considered. |
| Uneven density (rear/front) | Check the density difference between the front and rear sides.                             | Primary Charging Assembly failure, drum failure or developing system failure is considered.                    |

## ● Horizontal line (TYPE=8/9/10)





| Check item                  | Check method  | Assumed cause  |
|-----------------------------|---|--|
| Black line                  | Check whether black lines appear on the image.                                | Laser light path failure, grid failure, developing system failure, cleaning (drum, ETB) failure or Pre-transfer Charging Assembly failure is considered. |
| White line                  | Check whether white lines appear on the image.                                | Primary Charging Wire failure or developing system failure is considered.  |
| Uneven pitch                | Check whether lines appear on the image in the horizontal scanning direction. | Drum failure, developing system failure, laser exposure system failure or drive-related failure is considered.   |
| Uneven density (rear/front) | Check the density difference between the front and rear sides.                | Primary Charging Assembly failure, drum failure or developing system failure is considered.  |

## Image Faults

### Parts Pitch Related to Periodical Image Failure

| Name                | Outer Circumference (mm) |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| Photosensitive Drum | Approx. 264              |
| Developing Cylinder | Approx. 53               |
| Developing Roller   | Approx. 79               |
| Transfer Roller     | Approx. 50               |
| ETB                 | Approx. 298              |
| Fixing Roller       | Approx. 127              |
| Pressure Roller     | Approx. 120              |

#### CAUTION:

The outer circumference may be different from the width of the image failure depending on the factors including processing speed and/or amount of image shrink/expansion.

### Image with a line on the trailing edge

[Location]

ETB

[Cause]

Lines occur on the image due to shock when distortion on the belt is released while rotation speed between the ETB and drum differs

[Condition]

When replacing the ETB

[Field Remedy]

- Output a halftone image with the following conditions and check the output image  
 COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE 6  
 COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK A3 (LDR)  
 Select the cassette which the following paper is set: or larger.  
 Image with a line on the trailing edge: Go to step 2.  
 Image without a line on the trailing edge: End
- Measure the distance from the trailing edge of the image with a line.
- Use the following service mode to make an adjustment.
  - Adjust the Transfer Belt speed  
 COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > TBLT-SPD  
 A line on the image is located approx. 55mm from the trailing edge: Adjust the value by +10 gradually.  
 A line on the image is located approx. 63mm from the trailing edge: Adjust the value by -10 gradually.
- Output a halftone image with the condition described in step 1 again and check the image.  
 Image with a line on the trailing edge: Go to step 3.  
 Image without a line on the trailing edge: End

[Image Sample]



## Uneven density correction by 2D shading \*1

To correct uneven image density caused by uneven potential on the surface of the Drum.

\*1: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported.

### NOTE:

This machine performs two dimensional shading which replaces uneven potential of the Photosensitive Drum to the exposure amount to correct. (Default: two dimensional shading is disabled.) As the data of Drum's uneven potential, the data measured at the shipment of the Drum is used. Therefore, as the life of the Photosensitive Drum advances, it gets deteriorated, so the uneven potential becomes different from the one at the shipment of the Drum. Although the uneven potential of the Drum is changed due to the deterioration, the data can be corrected per horizontal/vertical scanning direction line by outputting a test pattern image with the following procedure.

### CAUTION:

This adjustment is executed when the preferred image is not output even if the Primary Charging Wire height adjustment and secure watermark adjustment \*2 are performed.

\*2: Secure watermark adjustment: Function Settings>Common>Print Settings>Secure Watermark Settings>Adjust Background/Character Contrast

### 1. Check that the two dimensional shading is enabled.

1: When uneven image occurs

2: When low edge density occurs

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-LSR > 2D-SHADE

1: Enabled(VD)

2: Enabled(VL)

**2. Read the two dimensional shading ROM data.**

COPIER &gt; FUNCTION &gt; 2D-SHADE &gt; 2D-READ

**3. Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.****CAUTION:**

Be sure to turn OFF and then ON the main power switch after step 2. Uneven density may be reduced by the two dimensional shading correction at the startup.

**4. Output a halftone image with the following conditions and check if uneven density occurs.**

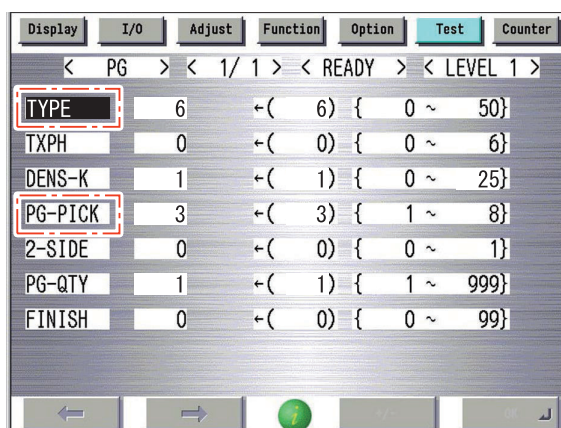
COPIER &gt; TEST &gt; PG &gt; TYPE 6

COPIER &gt; TEST &gt; PG &gt; PG-PICK

Select the cassette which the following paper is set or larger.

When uneven density is seen: Go to step 5.

When uneven density is not seen: Procedure is ended.

**5. Output a test pattern for two dimensional shading.**

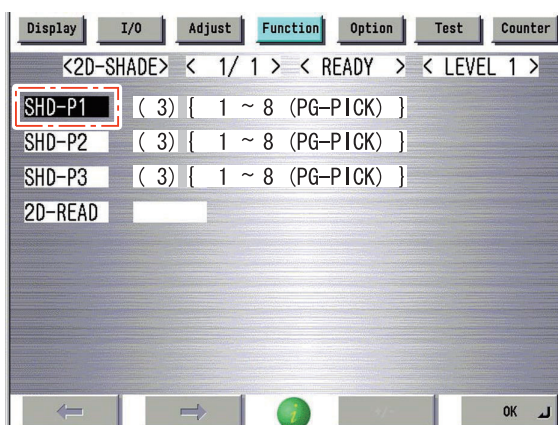
COPIER &gt; FUNCTION &gt; 2D-SHADE &gt; SHD-P1

1. Set the cassette. Select the cassette which A3 (LDR) or larger paper is set.

Select "SHD-P1" and cassette using "numeric keypad".

2. Output 3 sheets of the test pattern.

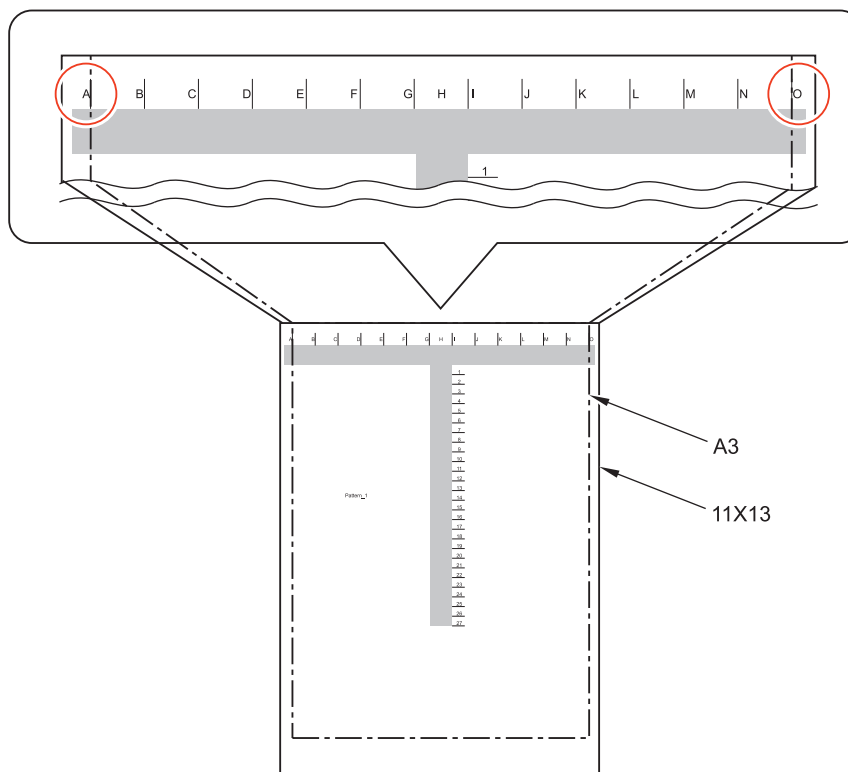
Press OK, output 1 sheet of the test pattern.



**CAUTION:**

It is difficult to judge whether uneven potential of the Photosensitive Drum causes uneven density of the output image, so output 3 sheets of the test print and adjust the area where all. (If the same symptom is seen on the same spot of all 3 sheets, it is possibly caused from the Drum.)

<Test pattern>

**NOTE:**

For the test print, the following 3 types can be output, but basically set SHD-P1 to output. The following shows the use case of each test print.

- When the image which uneven density occurs is the halftone image with light density  
COPIER > FUNCTION > 2D-SHADE > SHD-P1
- When the image which uneven density occurs is the halftone image with dark density  
COPIER > FUNCTION > 2D-SHADE > SHD-P2
- When the image which uneven density occurs is the halftone image with dark density  
COPIER > FUNCTION > 2D-SHADE > SHD-P3

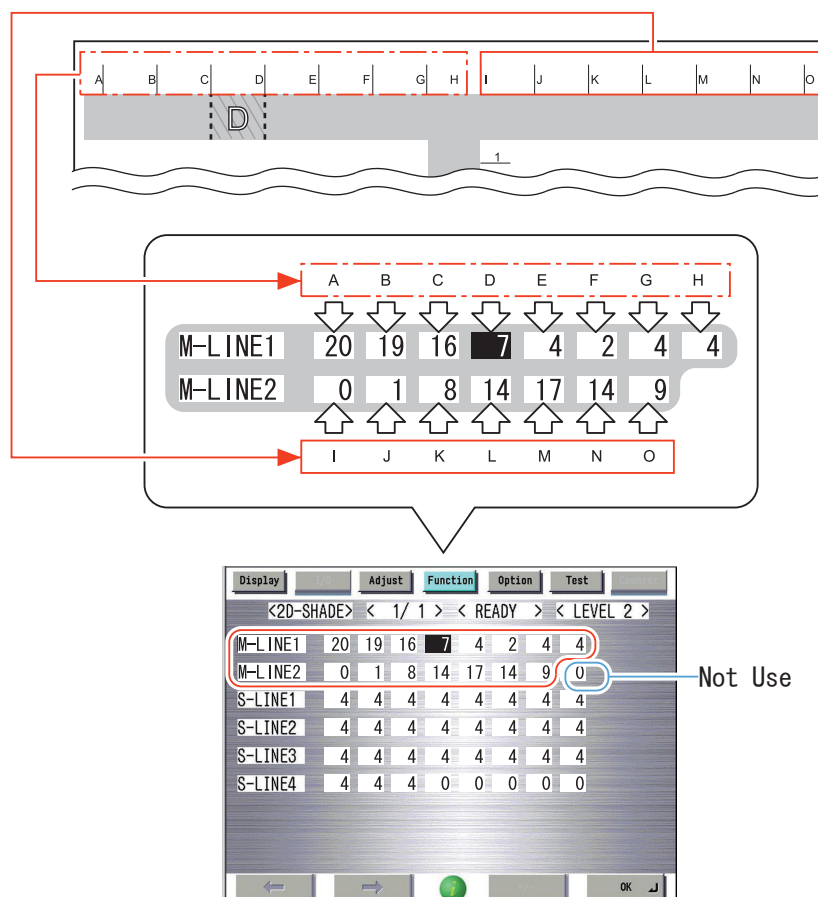
## 6. Check (T-shaped) halftone area of the output test print visually and adjust the area of uneven density.

1. Take a note to write down the values of the following service mode(Lv.2).  
When the adjustment cannot be performed appropriately, these values are required to return to the initial values.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > 2D-SHADE > M-LINE1  
COPIER > FUNCTION > 2D-SHADE > M-LINE2
2. Adjust the target horizontal scanning direction (A to O) which uneven density is seen.  
After selecting "M-LINE1/M-LINE2", select the target horizontal scanning window (A to O), and enter the numerical value using "numerical keypad".(Lv.2)
  - Horizontal scanning direction A to H  
COPIER > FUNCTION > 2D-SHADE > M-LINE1
  - Horizontal scanning direction I to O  
COPIER > FUNCTION > 2D-SHADE > M-LINE2

3. Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to reflect the setting value.

**CAUTION:**

- Be sure to switch the screen after entering the value. Unless the screen is switched, the numerical value is not reflected. (Actually, the value is not reflected on the screen, but it is retained internally.)
- When the horizontal scanning direction (H line) is adjusted, the adjustment value of the vertical scanning direction (1 to 27) is also changed.
- As the value is larger, the density becomes lighter. As the value is smaller, the density becomes darker.
- Enter the adjustment value in a unit of +/- 30 gradually, output the test pattern and make adjustment while checking the test pattern. If the value is changed dramatically, the image error (white line) may occur.
- Entering 96 or larger value can generate an error in potential control (E061).  
In the case of an error, adjust the setting value between 0 and 95.



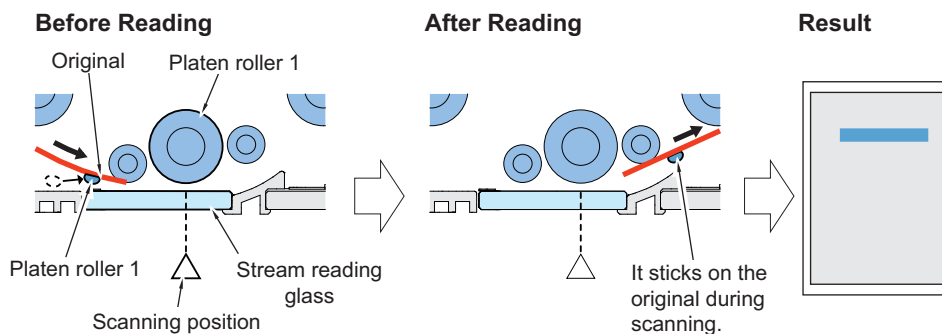
4. After the adjustment, output a test print and check the image to complete the procedure.

**CAUTION:**

If the image cannot be adjusted correctly even with this adjustment procedure, reenter the values written in step 6-1.

## ADF black line

Image processing has been improved with this equipment, which applies optimal image processing to the text part and the photo part respectively. Improvement in image processing, however, highlights imperceptible dusts at the original scanning position, which may appear as a line on the image.



[Location]

ADF

[Cause]

At stream reading with the ADF, imperceptible dusts (paper dust, toner, dust, etc.) adhere and remain at the original scanning position, which causes a black line on the original image. (Occurrence frequency is roughly 3/10,000 of scanning documents)  
The dusts causing a black line are delivered outside the ADF together with the scanning original; therefore, there will be no black line with the next original.

[Remedy]

Changing the setting value in the following service mode improves the problem of a black line.

- Text density adjustment when adjusting image density  
COPIER > ADJUST > AE > AE-TBL  
Setting value: Change the default (5) to 3
- Setting of the sharpness level on the image (Lv.2)  
COPIER > OPTION > IMG-MCON > SHARP  
Setting value: Change the default (3) to 1
- Setting of the halftone processing in text/photo mode (Lv.2)  
COPIER > OPTION > USER > PH-D-SL2  
Setting value: Change the default (0) to 2

#### CAUTION:

When performing a field remedy, remind that the scan result changes as follows:

- Scanning of light halftone base is skipped (to be scanned as white color)
- Blur text outline due to reduced edge emphasis level with the text
- Photo part appears coarsely

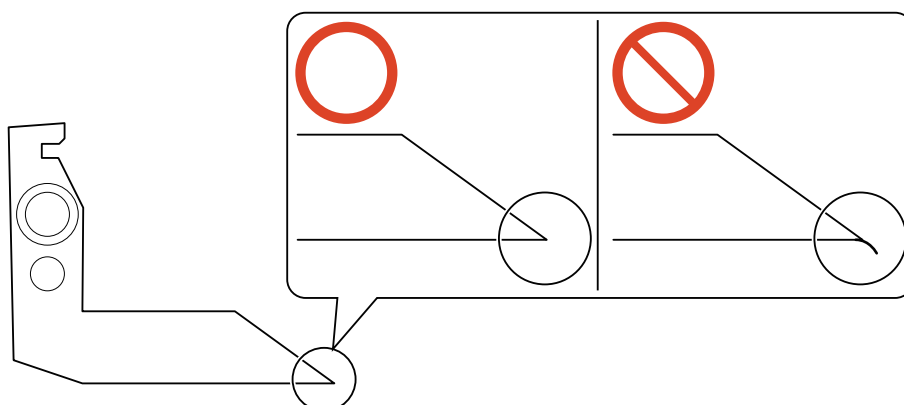
## ● Separation Failure Jam due to Deformation of Separation Claw

[Location]

Drum Separation Claw

[Cause]

When the paper enters to the drum at separation failure, the Separation Claw may be deformed. When the Separation Claw is deformed, the paper is easily caught by the leading edge of the Separation Claw when the paper (especially curled paper) is fed, and a jam (Jam Code: 0205) is likely to occur.



[Condition]



Job after a jam which occurs when the paper enters to the drum When using curled paper (when using backside of printed paper, etc.)

[Field Remedy]

Replace the Separation Claw.

**NOTE:**

replace the Separation Claw when a separation failure jam occurs even once.

## Image error due to soil attached to the Cleaning Brushes for the Duplex Right Roller and the Duplex Outlet Roller

[Location]

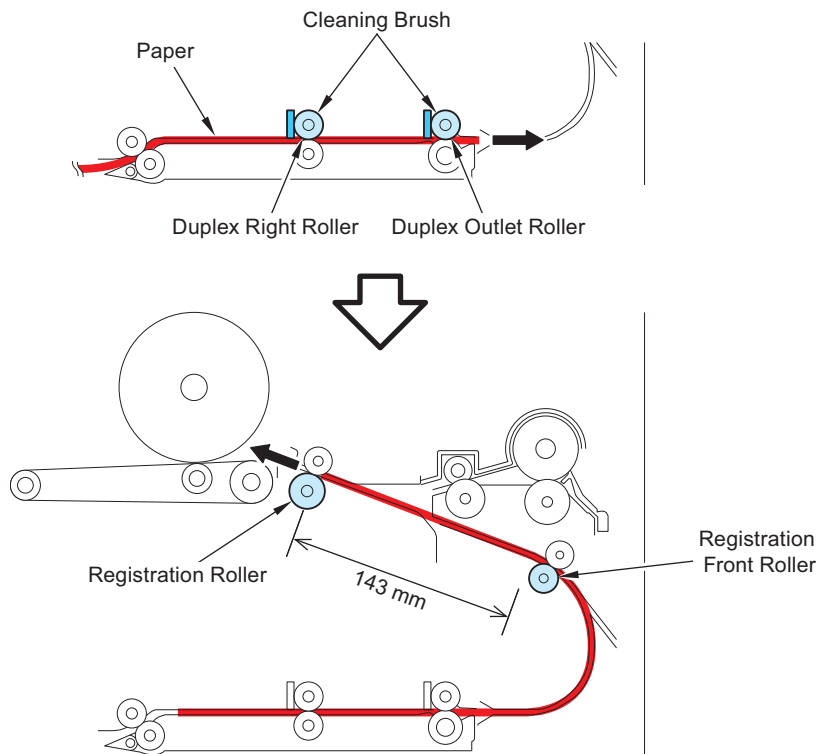
Fixing Feed Unit

[Cause]

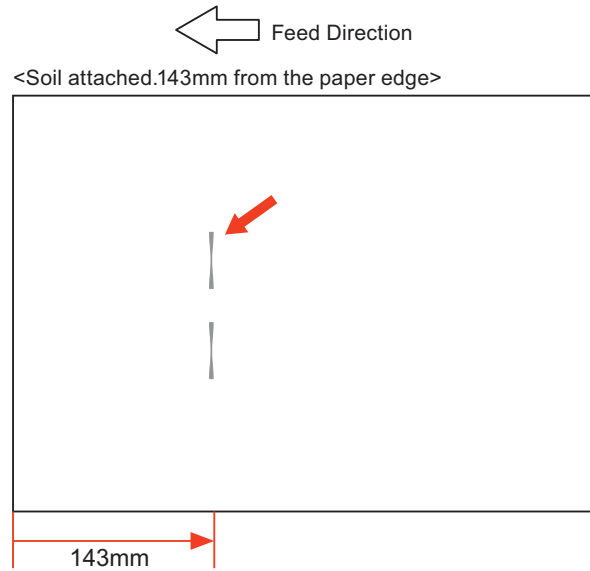
Soil attached to the 4 Cleaning Brushes contacting the Duplex Right Roller and the Duplex Outlet Roller

[Condition]

When soil is attached to the 4 Cleaning Brushes contacting the Duplex Right Roller and the Duplex Outlet Roller, paper is fed with minor soil (paper dust and toner) attached to it, and the soil is gradually attached to the Registration Front Roller. When the paper stops at the time of registration, the rotating Registration Front Roller contacts the paper, which causes two trails of soil of the roller width at 143mm from the paper edge.



[Image Sample]



**[Field Remedy]**

Follow the following procedure to replace the Cleaning Brushes contacting the Duplex Right Roller and the Duplex Outlet Roller and clean the relevant parts.

<Preparation>

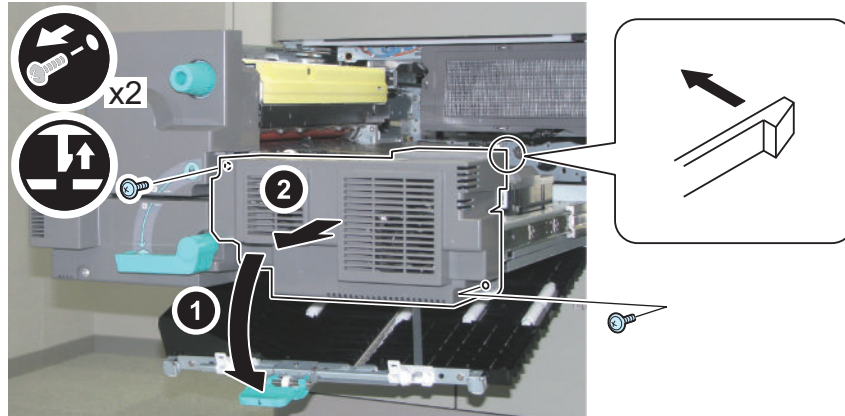
Remove the Registration Unit. (See [“Removing the Registration Unit” on page 521](#))

<Procedure>

**1. Open the Duplex Path.**

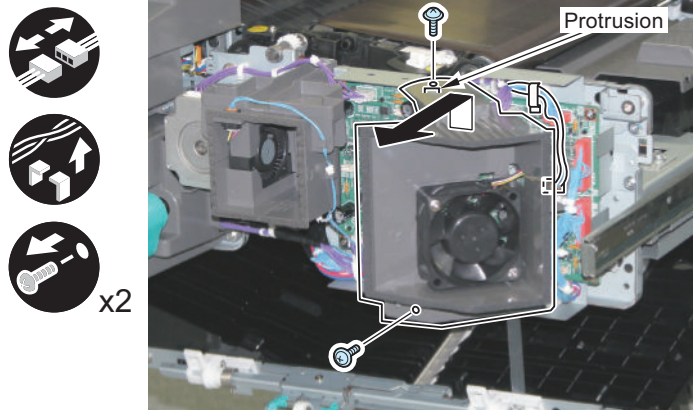
**2. Remove the Fixed Feed Cover 1.**

- 2 Screws
- 1 Claw

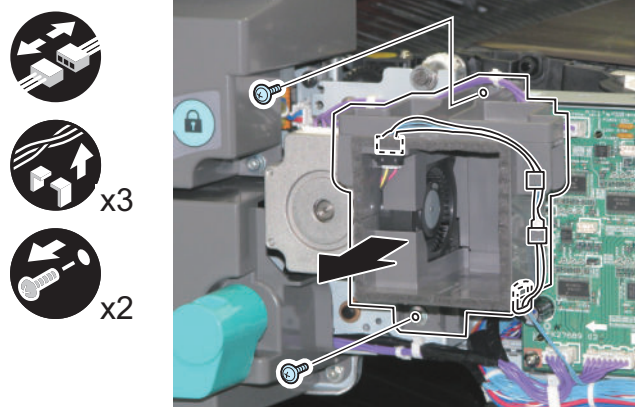


**3. Remove the right side Duct.**

- 1 Connector
- 1 Wire Saddle
- 2 Screws
- 1 Protrusion

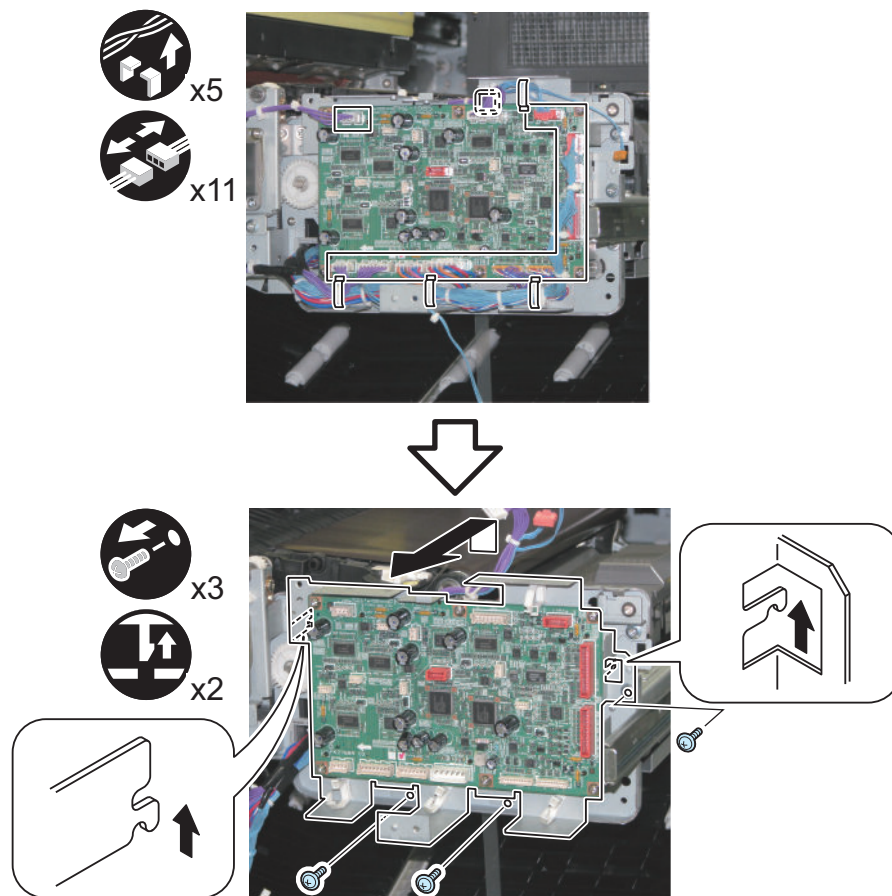
**4. Remove the left side Duct.**

- 1 Connector
- 2 Harness Guide
- 1 Wire Saddle
- 2 Screws



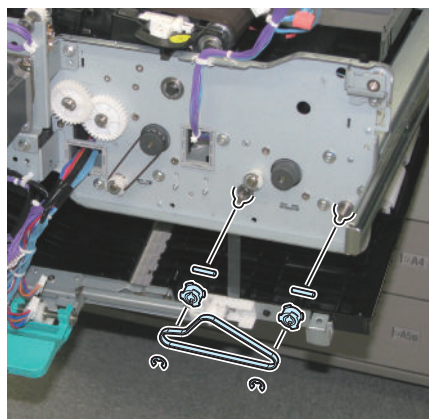
### 5. Remove the Duplex Driver PCB and the Mounting Base.

- 4 Wire Saddles
- 1 Edge Saddle
- 11 Connectors
- 3 Screws
- 2 Claws



### 6. Remove the following parts.

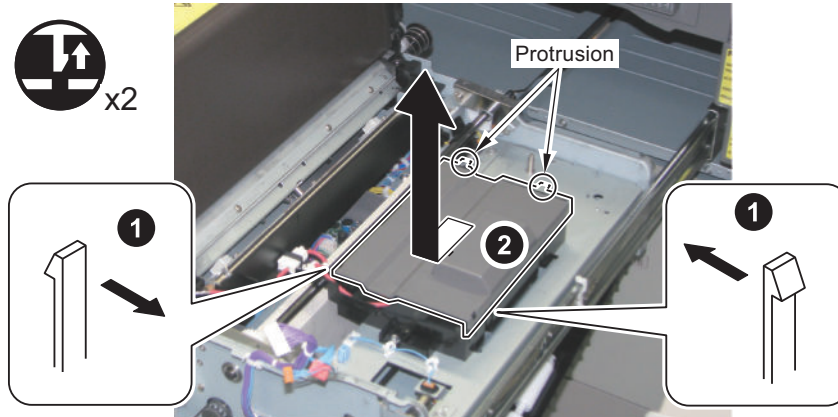
- 2 E-rings
- 1 Timing Belt
- 2 Pulleys
- 2 Parallel Pin



### 7. Lift the ETB Unit in the direction of the arrow.

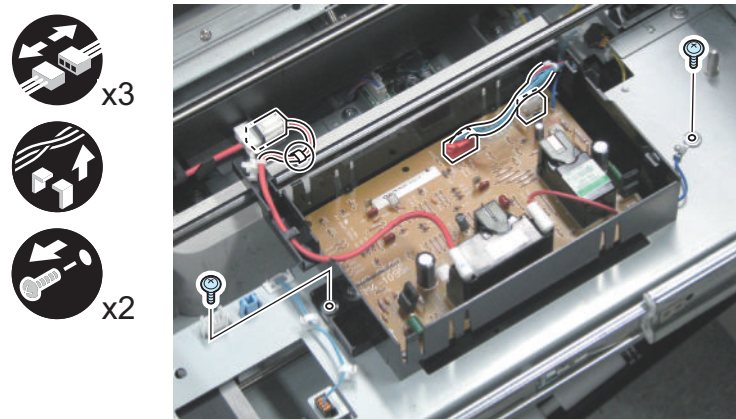
**8. Free the 2 claws, and remove the Transfer High Voltage PCB Unit Upper Cover in the direction of the arrow.**

- 2 Protrusions



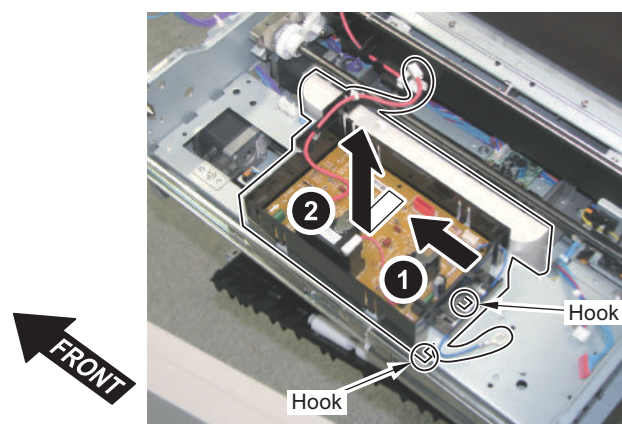
**9. Remove the following parts.**

- 3 Connectors
- 1 Wire Saddle
- 2 Screws



**10. Remove the Transfer High Voltage PCB Unit in the direction of the arrow.**

- 2 Hooks

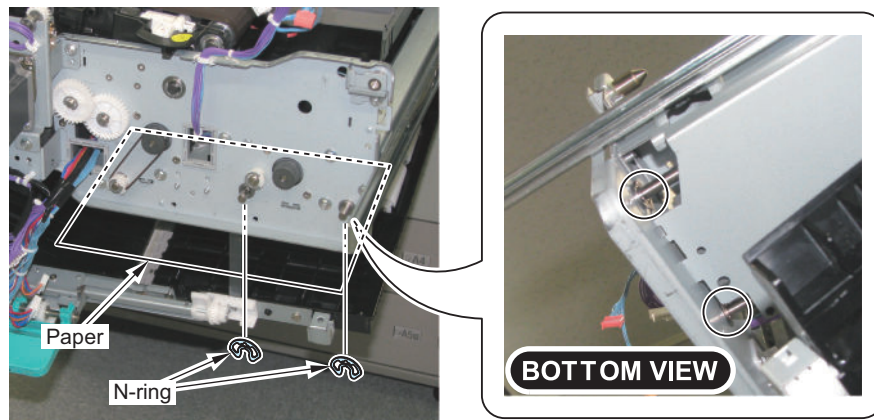




11. Place a sheet of paper on the Duplex Path, and remove a N-ring each from the Duplex Right Roller and the Duplex Outlet Roller.

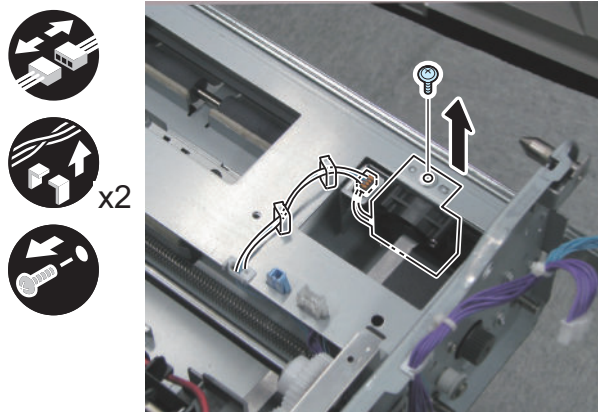
**CAUTION:**

Be sure to place a sheet of paper on the Duplex Path because paper dust drops during the following work.



12. Remove the Fan Unit.

- 2 Wire Saddles
- 1 Connector
- 1 Screws



### 13. Pull out the Duplex Right Roller and remove the shaft at the rear.

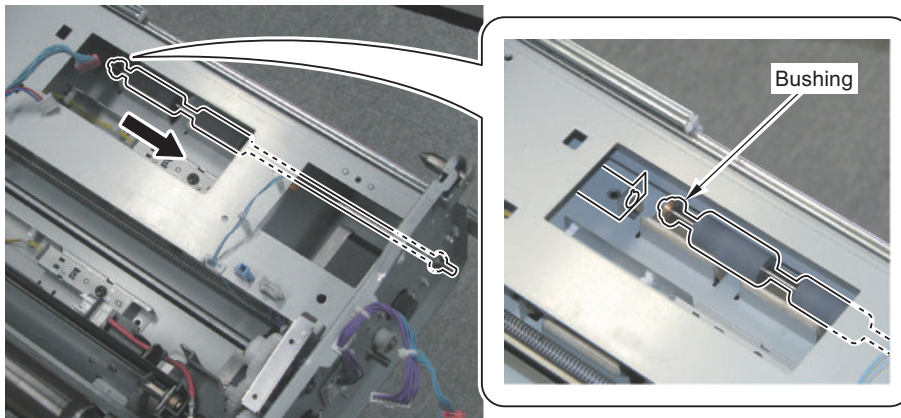
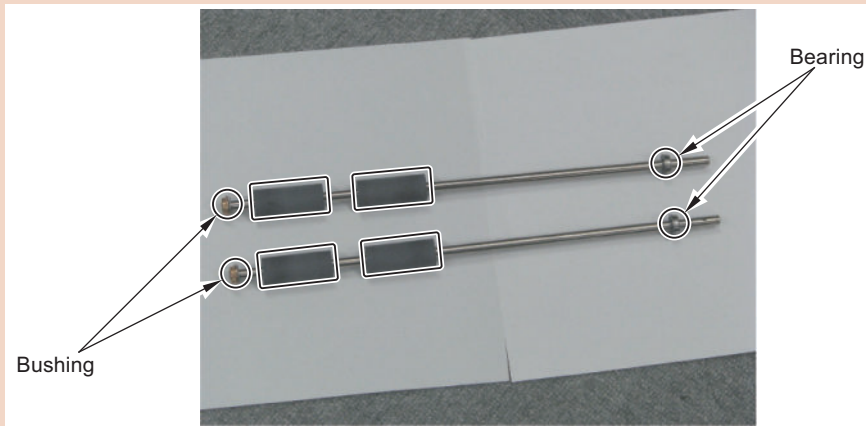
#### NOTE:

In this procedure, the procedure for removing the Duplex Right Roller is shown in steps 13 and 14. When removing the Duplex Outlet Roller, check the installation position in step 15 and remove the Duplex Outlet Roller by a similar procedure.

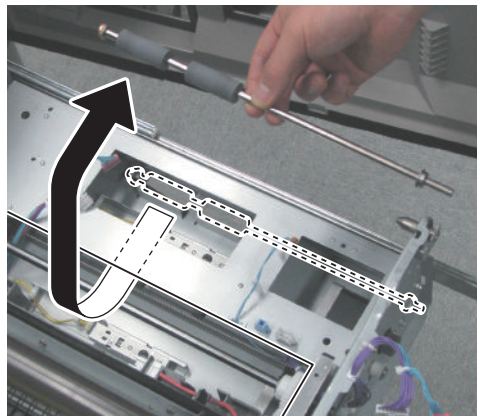
#### CAUTION:

oints to Caution at Work

- Be careful not to damage the surfaces of the Duplex Right Roller and the Duplex Outlet Roller.
- The bearing at the front and the bushing at the rear of the Duplex Right/Duplex Outlet Roller are not fixed, so be careful not to drop them.



### 14. Move the Duplex Right Roller toward the rear and remove the shaft from the Fixing Feed Unit Side Plate. Then, move the Duplex Right Roller in the direction of the arrow and take it out from the opening on the top of the Fixing Feed Unit.

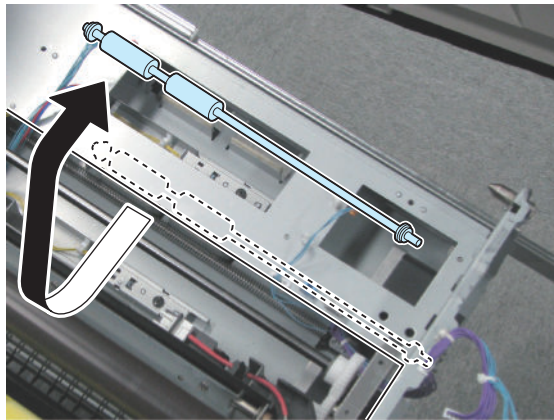




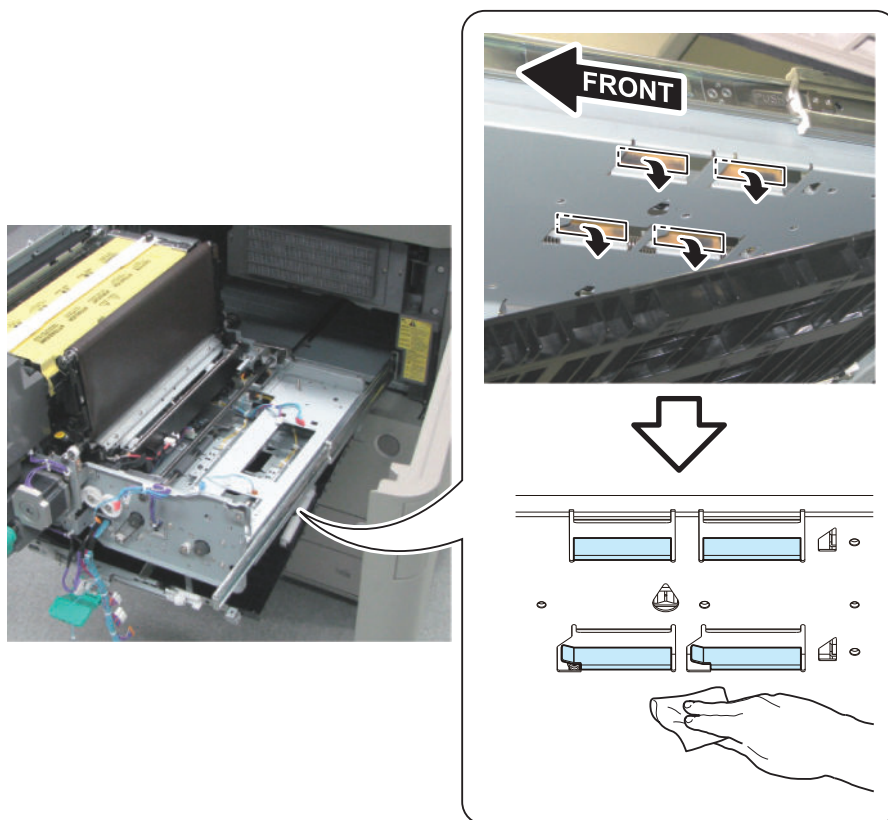
15. Remove the Duplex Outlet Roller in a similar procedure referring to the procedure for removing the Duplex Right Roller in steps 13 and 14.

**NOTE:**

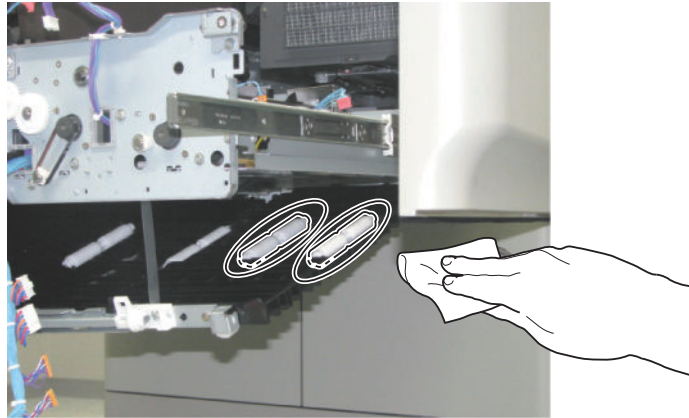
The installation position of the Duplex Outlet Roller is shown in the following figure.



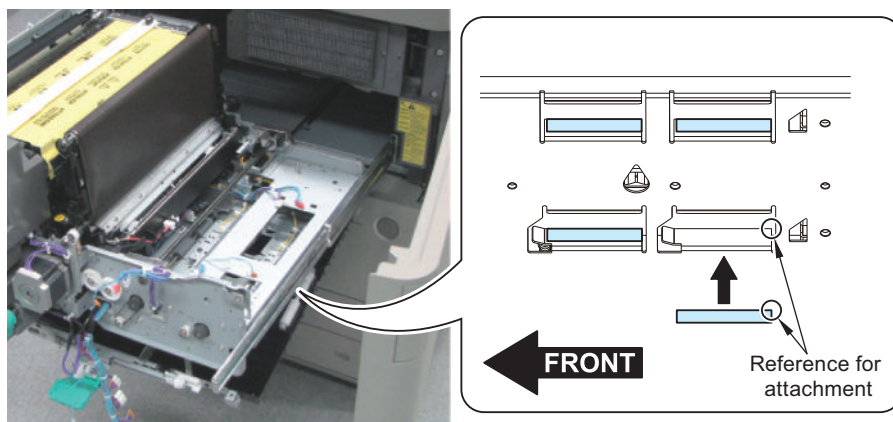
16. Remove the 4 Cleaning Brushes contacting the Duplex Right Roller and the Duplex Outlet Roller.
17. Clean the four areas where the Cleaning Brushes are attached with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



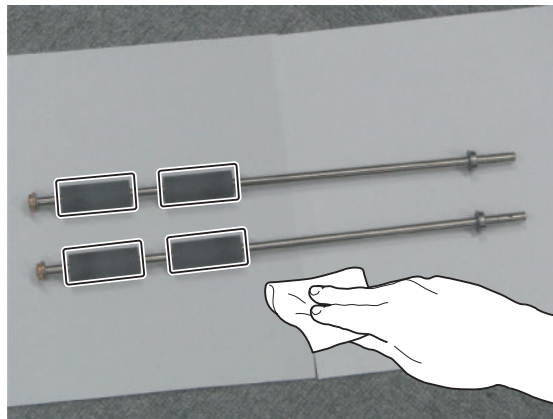
18. Remove the paper on the Duplex Path, and clean the entire perimeter of each of the 4 rollers with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol while rotating the roller by hand.



19. Attach new 4 Cleaning Brushes with reference to the upper right of the plate where they are going to be attached.



20. Clean the four areas on the removed Duplex Right Roller and the Duplex Outlet Roller with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

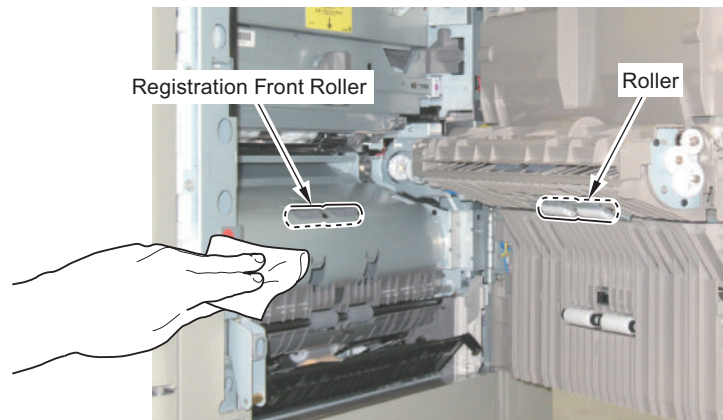


21. Install the removed parts in reverse order.  
 22. Open the Right Door.  
 23. Open the Right Lower Cover.

24. Clean the entire perimeter of each of the 2 rollers and Registration Front Roller with lint free moistened with alcohol while rotating the roller by hand.

**CAUTION:**

When rotating the roller by hand, be sure not to touch the surface of the roller but to hold a side face.



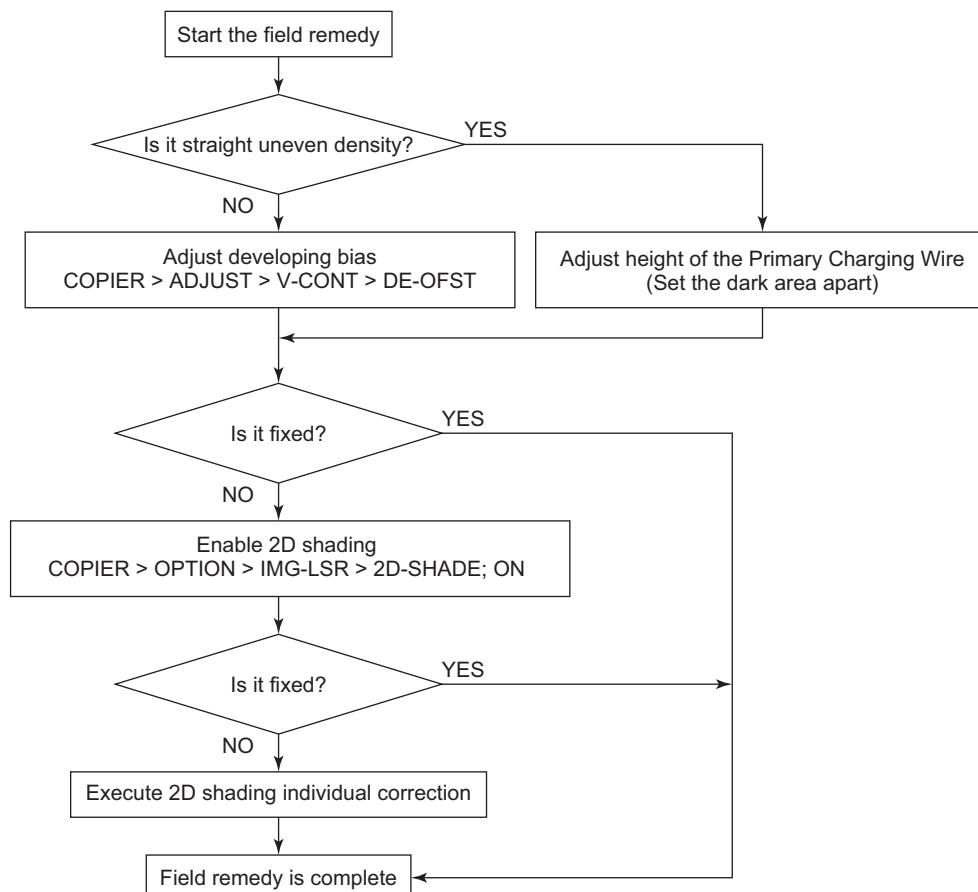
## Uneven density

**NOTE:**

Description of 2D shading are not applicable to products with a serial number of 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later.

**[Cause]**

Uneven density occurs on the image because of uneven developing performance or change in drum characteristics due to wear.

**[Field Remedy]**



In the case of dark/light image at either the left or right side on the image in horizontal direction, adjust height of the Primary Charging Wire and check the output result. When making adjustment, execute the work while keeping the wire at dark area apart.



If it is not a straight uneven density, change the value of the following service mode in decrement of -10 and check the output result.

COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT > DE-OFST

(Setting value: default 0, -10, -20, ...-50)

#### CAUTION:

Executing the above setting can generate smeared image or foggy image.

If the service mode has been changed, write the new adjustment value on the service label.

After switching the mode to enable 2D shading in the following service mode, turn OFF/ON the main power and check the output result.

(For detailed procedure, see Troubleshooting > Uneven density correction by 2D shading > Step 1) to 3) (“[Uneven density correction by 2D shading \\*1](#)” on page 628))

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-LSR > 2D-SHADE

1: Enabled(VD), 2: Enabled(VL)

Output the test pattern for 2D shading and adjust the uneven density area individually.

(For detailed procedure, see “Troubleshooting > Uneven density correction by 2D shading > Step 4) to 6) (“[Uneven density correction by 2D shading \\*1](#)” on page 628))

## Smeared image

### [Cause]

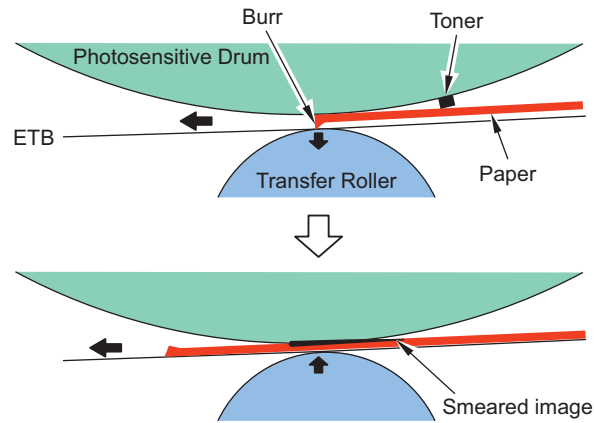
Excess toner is transferred on the paper that causes toner collapse at the time of fixing, which can generate smeared image on the image. The following are assumed causes of smeared image:

- When the paper type is changed
- Toner deterioration
- Rapid change in environment (High temperature <- -> Low temperature)

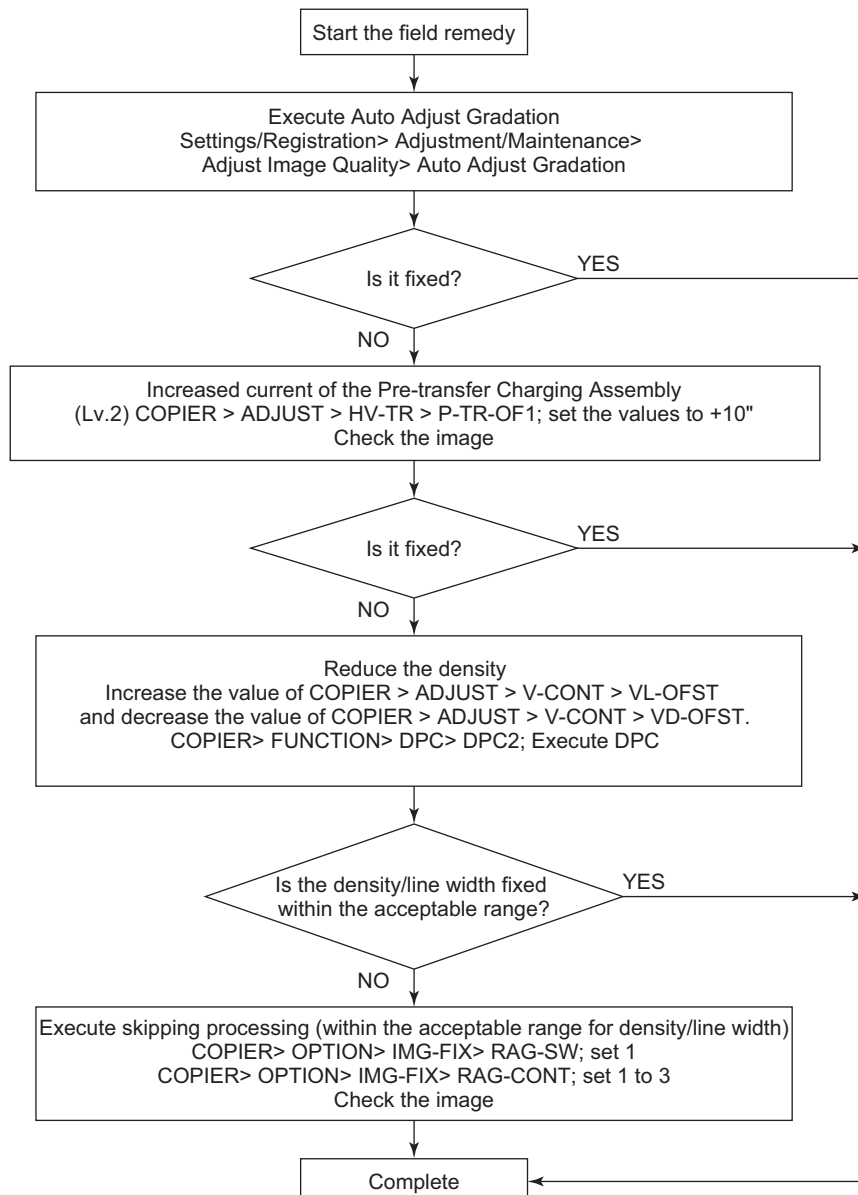


Smeared image may also occur exclusively in the area 5 to 10 mm from the leading edge of the paper when there is burr on the leading edge of the paper (jagged edge formed when the paper was cut by a cutter).

It is caused by toner being pushed backward by the power of the ETB, which is pushed down by the burr when it passes through the transfer nips, to go back to the original position.



## [Field Remedy]



Select the following to execute Full Adjust: "Settings/Registration > Adjustment Maintenance > Adjust Image > Auto Adjust Gradation < Full Adjust"; and check the output result.  
COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > P-TR-OF1

1. In the following service mode (Lv. 2), set "+10" in the rightmost field, and check the output result.

**CAUTION:**

Executing the above setting may cause the Pre-transfer Charging Wire to be easily soiled. Be sure to check for soiling of the Charging Wire at the time of inspection since heavy soiling may cause vertical lines to occur on the rear side of the image.

2. Decrease the value of the following service mode (LV. 1) from the default value 895 by +10.  
COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT > VL-OFST
3. Execute the following service mode, and then check the output result.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > DPC2  
If the symptom is not improved, increase the value in step 2) by +20,+30 and then execute step 3).  
If the symptoms still persist, reduce the following service mode values to -10, -20, -30, and then perform step 3).  
COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT > VD-OFST

**CAUTION:**

Changing the above setting can cause reduced density or thinner line.

**NOTE:**

Simultaneous setting of smeared image suppression

Lv.2) COPIER> ADJUST> V-CONT> SMR-IPRV

When SMR-IPRV is set to 1, the offset values of the following service modes can be changed collectively.

- Lv.2) COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > P-TR-OF1 to 6 : +10
- Lv.1) COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT > VL-OFST : +30
- Lv.1) COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT > VD-OFST : -30

After changing the setting, turn the main power OFF/ON and execute auto adjust gradation.

If the smeared image is not improved within the acceptable range for density and line width, execute skipping process in the following procedure:

4. COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > RAG-SW: change the value to 1
5. COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > RAG-CONT: change to 1 and check the output result.
6. If the symptom is not improved, change the value in step 5) to 2, 3...and check the output result.

**CAUTION:**

Changing the above setting can cause minor skipping in the text part.

## Adjusting the Edge Emphasis Level

The edge emphasis level of image can be adjusted in both user mode and service mode, but the use conditions differ.

|   | User mode   | Service mode  |
|---|---|---|
| Item code                                 | Other Functions > Sharpness                       | Lv.2) COPIER> OPTION> IMG-MCON> SHARP   |
| Operator                                  | User  | Service technician  |
| Purpose                                   | To make adjustment for each original to be copied | To set the central value of edge emphasis to control individual variability or environmental change during transportation/after installation. |
| Text/photo area                           | Individual  | Batch   |
| Setting range                             | -3 to +3 level                                    | 1 to 5  |
| Default value                             | 0 level   | 3   |
| Setting value at power OFF/ON or at reset | Canceled (Default value can be retained.)         | Retained  |

The following table shows the edge emphasis level by the combination of "SHARP" and "Sharpness" settings, using the relative value when the default is 100.

|                         |   | User mode "Sharpness" |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-------------------------|---|-----------------------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
|                         |   | -3                    | -2 | -1  | 0   | +1  | +2  | +3  |
| Service mode<br>"SHARP" | 1 | 25                    | 40 | 50  | 60  | 100 | 140 | 175 |
|                         | 2 |                       | 45 | 65  | 85  | 115 | 145 |     |
|                         | 3 |                       | 50 | 75  | 100 | 125 | 150 |     |
|                         | 4 |                       | 55 | 85  | 115 | 135 | 155 |     |
|                         | 5 |                       | 65 | 100 | 140 | 150 | 160 |     |

Images become smoother as values in the table become smaller, while they become sharper as values become larger.

Note that, when "Sharpness" is the upper limit or lower limit, the relative value stays constant regardless of the "SHARP" setting, therefore the edge emphasis effect does not change even if the settings are changed.

Normally, adjustment is made for each copy on the Touch Panel based on the service mode setting, but depending on the environment or paper type (coarse surface, etc.), edge emphasis may not turn out the way the user expected.

In this case, edge emphasis level customized for the user can be set by setting the current value of "Sharpness" as the default value.

Example: In the case of the environment where the relative value "135" is suitable as the default value.

1. Set "SHARP" to "4".
2. Set "Sharpness", which is set to "+1" level, as the default in the user mode (Function Settings > Copy > Change Default Settings).

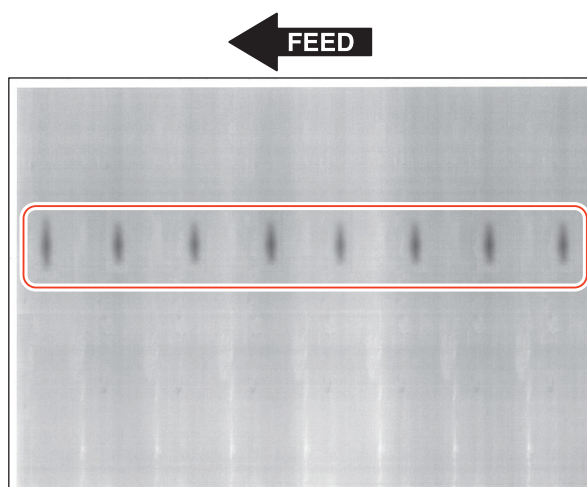
## Soil at interval equal to Developing Sleeve circumference

[Location]

Developing Sleeve

[Cause]

If the surface of the sleeve is soiled, uneven toner coating occurs, causing the soiling of the same shape to appear at intervals equal to the circumference of the sleeve (approx. 53 mm) in the vertical scanning direction.



[Field Remedy]

1. Rotate the sleeve in the normal direction and identify the location where the soiling occurs.

**CAUTION:**

Do not turn the sleeve in the reverse direction.

2. Remove the toner found at that location using a blower, etc.

**CAUTION:**

If toner is dry wiped instead of removed, it may be fixed on the surface of the sleeve.



### 3. Wipe the surface of the sleeve with dry lint-free paper.

**CAUTION:**

Do not use water or alcohol.

### 4. Execute the following service mode to output a halftone image (TYPE 12), and check the image.

If white spots occur, go to step 5.

COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE

### 5. Execute the following service mode.

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > DV-RT

### 6. Check the image.

If the white spots persist, execute step 5 again.

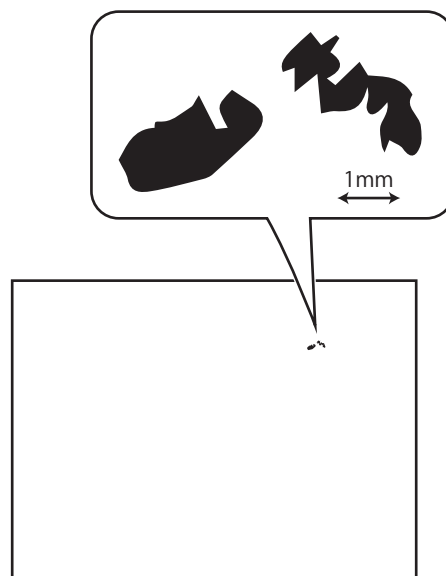
**CAUTION:**

Heavy use of DEV-RT can result in deterioration of developer or toner scattering.

## Ink Dripping

### Phenomenon

When the developing device is driven, the toner drops from the developing device due to the vibration of the developing clutch. This occurs mainly on page 1 ~ 2 of the image output. The incidence after the third page is low.



### Cause

This occurs when the vibration at the time of connection of the driving force from the developing motor to the developing cylinder is too large.

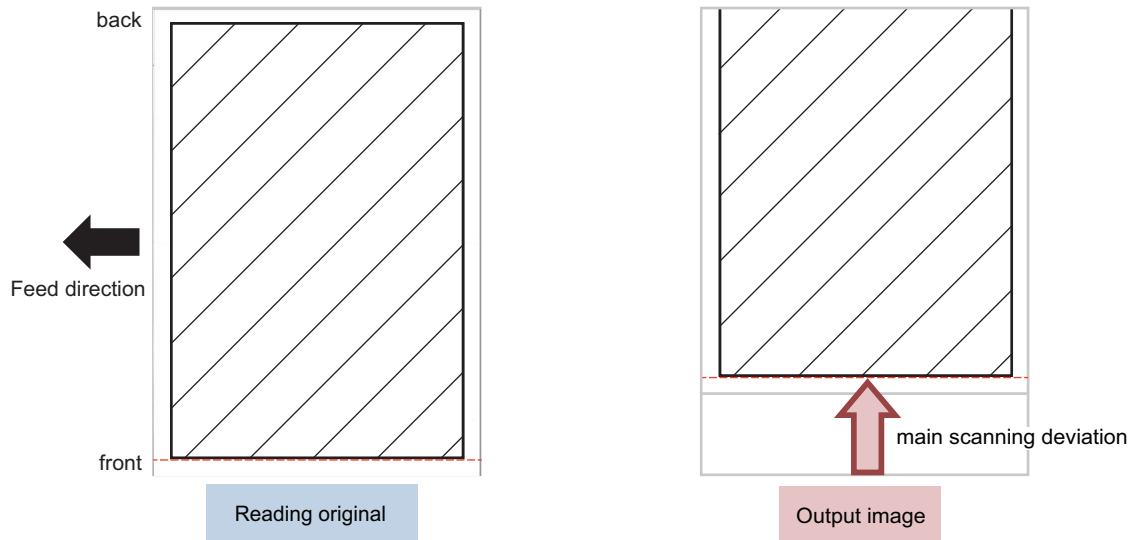
### Service Action

1. Dcon V11.02 or later, in the following service modes, change the rightmost digit of the 8-digit number from "0" to "1" and turn the power off/on. Since the clutch connection is eliminated at the time of image formation, falling of the toner accumulated on the developing blade can be prevented.
  - COPIER > OPTION > BODY > DEV-SP3

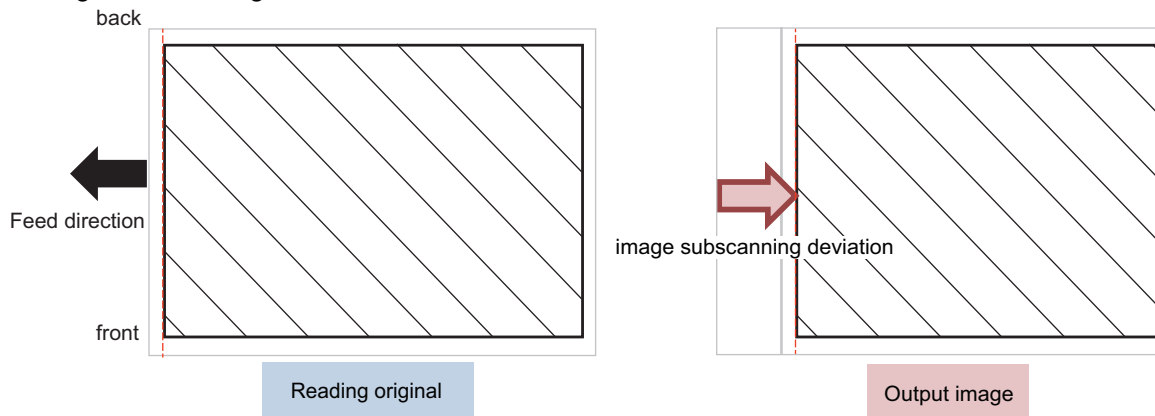
## The output of the image is skewed or misaligned when scanned by ADF

This Machine does not Detection skew in Sensor, and corrects skew by Detection the shadow of Original from the scanned image. However, the height of ADF is uneven, the shadow of the Original and the Original appearing on the counter plate cannot be Detection as the edge of the Original, Reading images cannot be properly corrected.

### ■ Image main scanning deviation



### ■ Image subscanning deviation



[Location]

Single Pass ADF

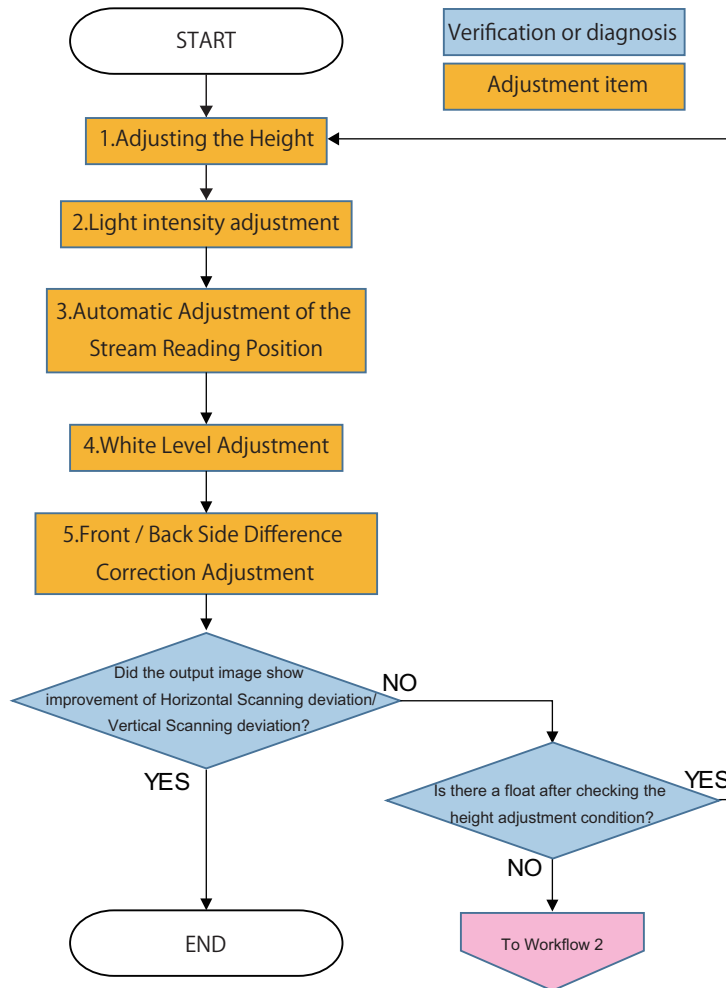
[Cause]

Due to the following reasons, the shadow of Original cannot be used as the Detection edge of Original, and the image of Reading suddenly becomes obliquely skewed or shifted toward Horizontal Scanning and Vertical Scanning.

- ADF Height Adjustment Not Appropriate
- Front side Scanner Unit feed Reading Location Not Appropriate

[Field Remedy]

Follow the flowchart below to make adjustments.



#### Adjustment items

1. "Adjusting the Height" on page 567
2. "Light intensity adjustment" on page 577
3. "Automatic Adjustment of the Stream Reading Position (Automatic Adjustment of the Reading Position at ADF Reading)" on page 578
4. "White Level Adjustment" on page 579
5. "Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment" on page 580

#### See workflow 2 below

"Workflow2" on page 562

## Feed Faults

### Paper wrinkle

<Location>

Fixing Roller, Pressure Roller

<Cause>

Right after the startup, temperature is different between the center and the edge of the Fixing Roller (temperature: center > edge). Because a slippery solid black image does not match to the nip shape when it is fed, the center of paper is pulled toward the feeding direction, causing paper wrinkle.

<Condition>

Timing: Approx. 20 sheets immediately after the startup first time for the day

Paper size: Paper size larger than B4

<Field Remedy>

Normally, when printing to paper larger than A3 or LDR size paper at the start of printing in a high humidity environment, control temperature is increased by performing idle rotation.

Paper wrinkle which occurs at this time can be decreased, but first copy time becomes longer. In other cases, idle rotation is not performed.

If paper wrinkle occurs on paper larger than B4, increase the setting value from 2 in increments of 1 until paper wrinkle is alleviated.

If paper wrinkle occurs on B4 size paper, increase the setting value from 4 in increments of 1 until paper wrinkle is alleviated.

Change the value of the following service mode (LV. 2).

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > FX-WNKL

[Setting values]

0 to 6

0: OFF, 1: Normal, 2: Level 1, 3: Level 2, 4: Level 3, 5: Level 4, 6: Level 5

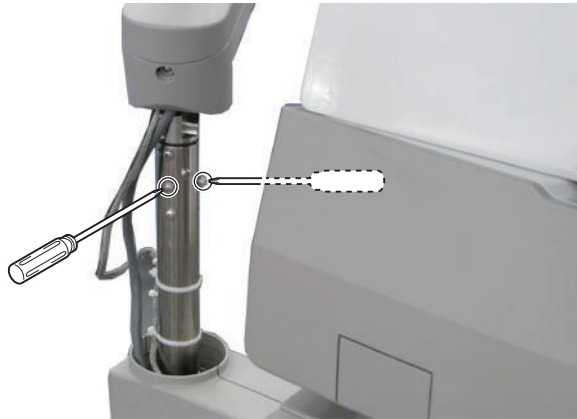
## Other

### Adjusting rotation of the Upright Control Panel Arm

If rotation of the Upright Control Panel Arm has become loose, retighten the Fixation Screws securing the Arm Rotation Adjustment Ring according to the following procedure.

<Procedure>

1. Remove the Shaft Support Cover (Left) and the Shaft Support Cover (Right).
2. Open the DADF and retighten the 2 Fixation Screws securing the Arm Rotation Adjustment Ring.



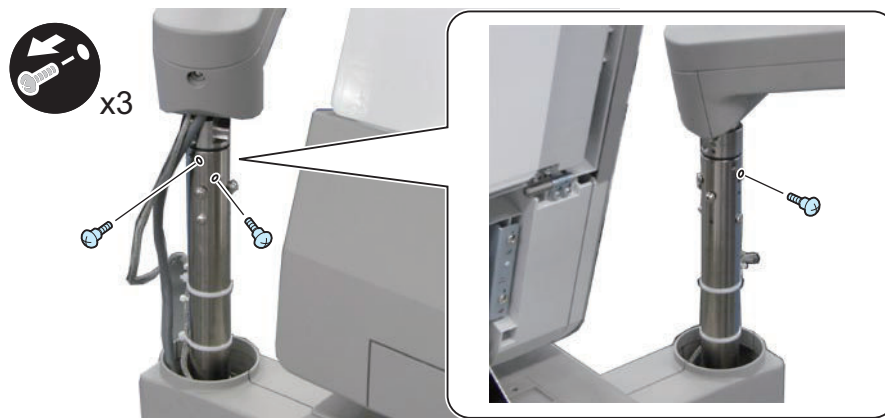
#### NOTE:

If rotation of the arm is still loose after retightening the Fixation Screws according to “Adjusting rotation of the Upright Control Panel Arm”, change the phase difference between the Arm Rotation Adjustment Ring and the Fixation Screws according to the following procedure.

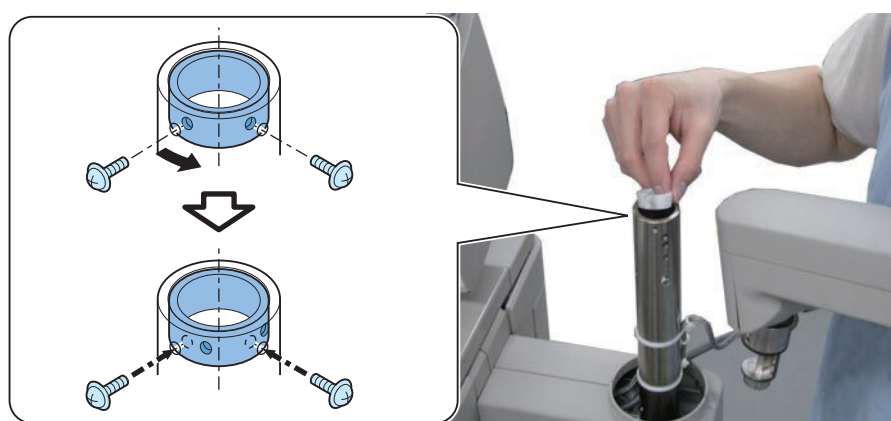
3. Open the DADF and loosen the 2 Fixation Screws securing the Arm Rotation Adjustment Ring.



#### 4. Remove the 3 Stepped Screws securing the Arm Shaft.



#### 5. Pull out the Upright Control Panel and the Arm Shaft, and rotate the Arm Rotation Adjustment Ring to change the phase so that the Fixation Screws do not contact with the dents formed by tightening the screws.



#### 6. Insert the Upright Control Panel and the Arm Shaft, and retighten the 2 screws loosened in step 3.

#### 7. Install the removed parts.

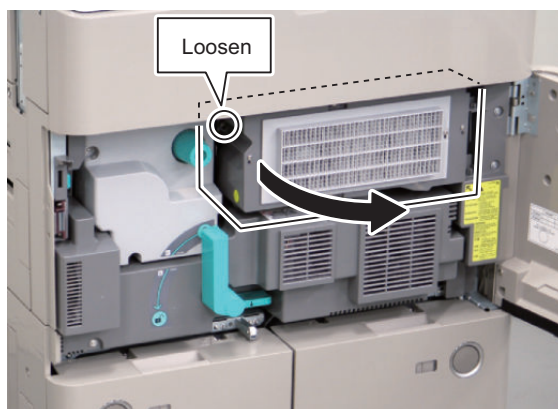
## ● Remedy to be implemented when the ETB Disengage Member (Transfer Frame Stopper) is left unremoved

When the power is turned ON after installation, E017-0003 may occur due to the ETB Disengage Member (Transfer Frame Stopper) left unremoved.

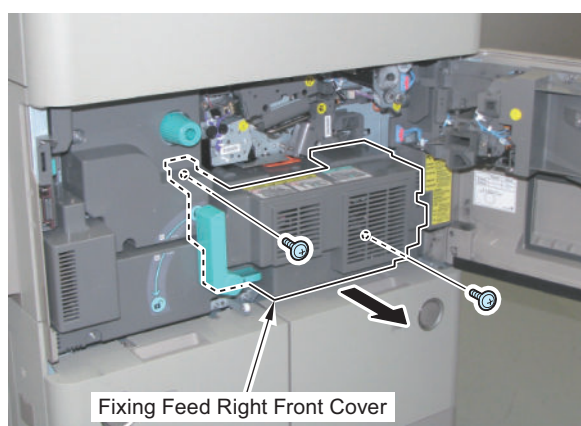
When this error occurs, the ETB Disengage Member (Transfer Frame Stopper) is caught between the ETB Unit and the plate of the machine and cannot be removed. Moreover, one side of the Photosensitive Drum is in contact with the ETB Unit, so pulling out the Fixing Feed Unit by sheer force may result in damage to the ETB Unit.

When the ETB Disengage Member (Transfer Frame Stopper) is left unremoved, follow the following steps to implement remedy.  
<Field Remedy>

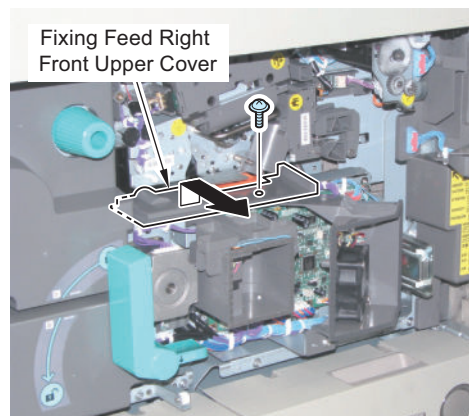
#### 1. Turn OFF the power.

**2. Open the Inner Cover.****3. Remove the Fixing Feed Right Front Cover.**

- 2 Screws

**4. Remove the Fixing Feed Right Front Upper Cover.**

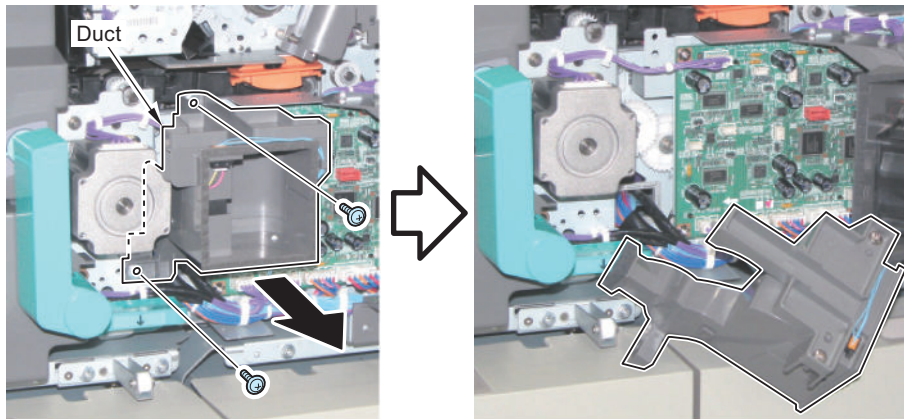
- 1 Screw



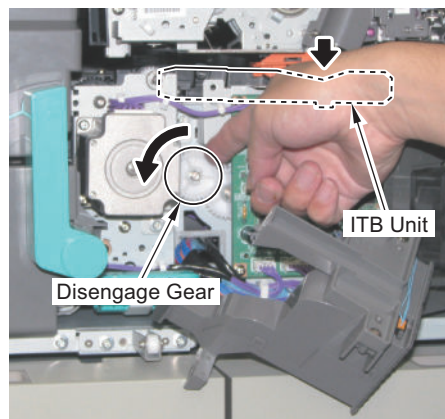
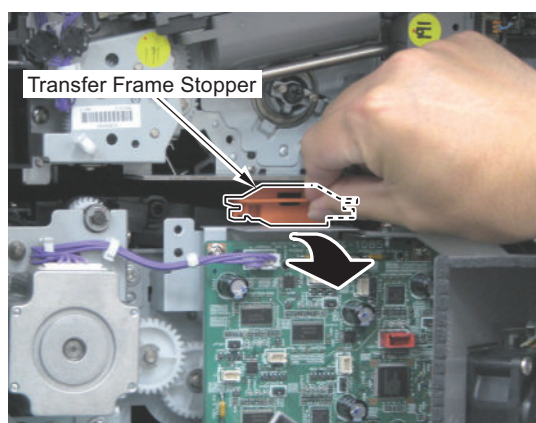


**5. Remove the Fan Duct.**

- 2 Screws

**6. Rotate the Disengage Gear about 90 degrees counterclockwise by hand and lower the ITB Unit.****CAUTION:**

The load of rotating the gear is heavy, so be careful not to get injured.

**7. Remove the Transfer Frame Stopper.**

## Checking nip width

In the case of paper wrinkle or fixing failure, check that the fixing nip width is within the specified range. Note that the fixing nip width of this equipment cannot be adjusted in the field.

1. Print approx. 20 sheets of A4 size paper.
2. Set A4 size plain paper/recycled paper on the Multi-purpose Tray.

**3. Lv.1) COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING > NIP-CHK**

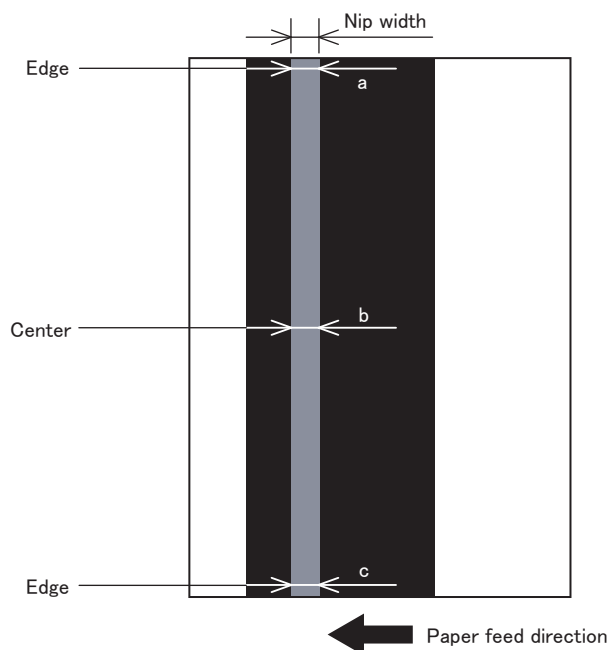
A sheet is stopped once in a state held by the Fixing Nip area, and is delivered approx. 20 seconds later.

**4. Measure the nip width of delivered sheet.**

If the nip widths are as follow it is judged as normal: 4.0 to 5.0 mm at the center (b), and difference between front (c) and rear (a) is within 0.5 mm.

In the case of failure, check if there are any damaged parts (\*), and replace the damaged parts (if any).

\* Gear, Bearing, Fixing Roller, Pressure Roller and Fixing Assembly



## ETB Displacement

The ETB is configured to keep the center position in the unit. Therefore, position adjustment is not necessary at installation or after ETB replacement.

Even in the case of ETB displacement in the front or rear direction while the machine is running, there is no problem with the operation if it is within the appropriate range.

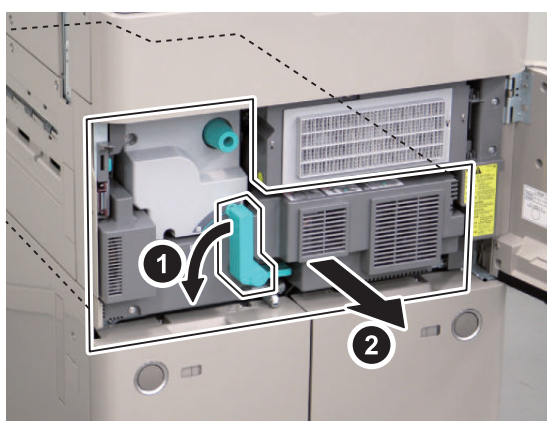
However, when the positional relationship between the Transfer Drum and the ETB Unit becomes displaced, the ETB may get damaged due to its full displacement.

The following shows a method to check the appropriate range of the ETB position, and an adjustment method in case it is out of the range.

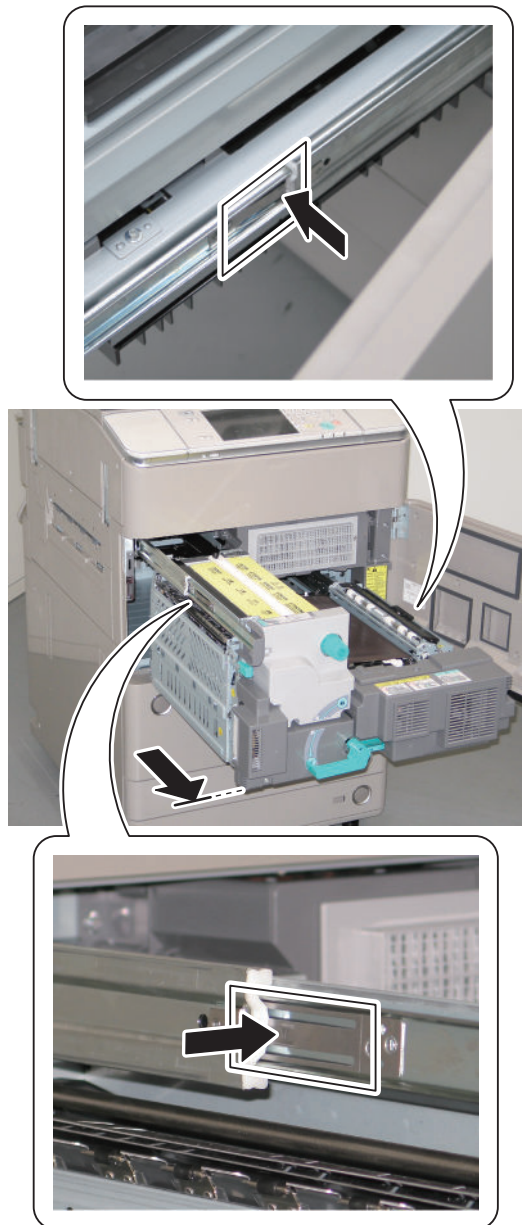
### ■ <Procedure for checking ETB full displacement>

#### 1. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit.

1. Open the Front Cover.
2. Turn the Fixing Feed Unit Pressure Release Lever in the direction of the arrow to pull out the Fixing Feed Unit.



3. Push to release the Release Springs at both sides of the rail, and then further pull out the Fixing Feed Unit until it stops.

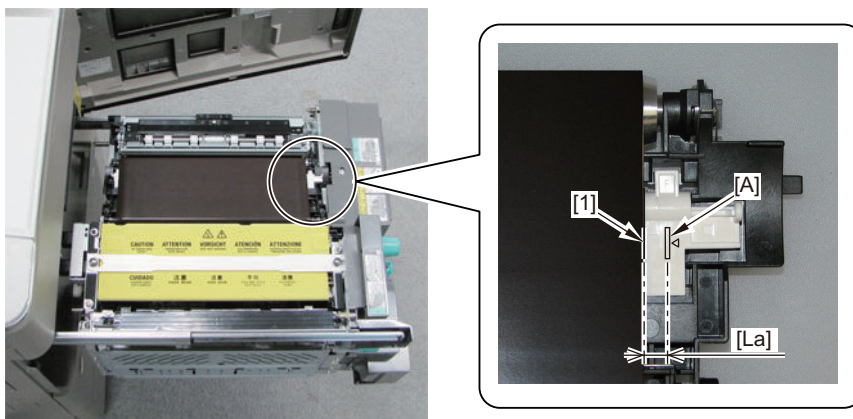


**CAUTION:**  
Do not touch the surface of the ETB when handling the ETB Unit.

2. Check whether the ETB is displaced toward the rear side or the front side of the host machine as follows.

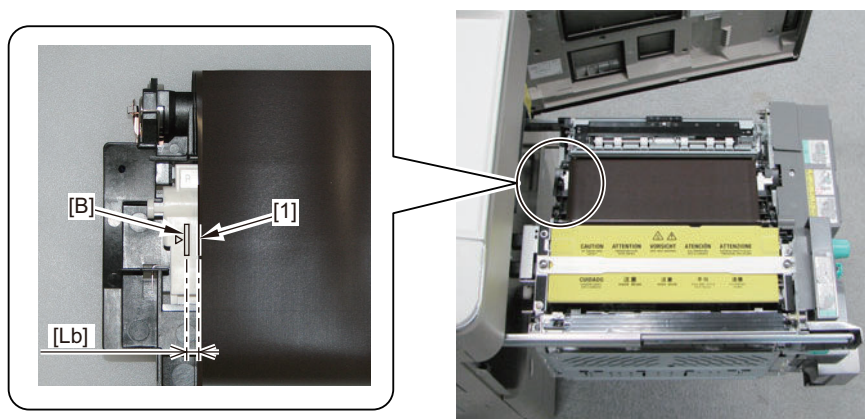
### 3. Checking the displacement toward the rear side of the machine

- Be sure to perform the following <Adjustment procedure> when there is a distance [La] of 8 mm or more between the mark [A] (the line) on the Transfer Roller Holder (Front) at the front side and the ETB edge [1]



### 4. Checking the displacement toward the front side of the machine

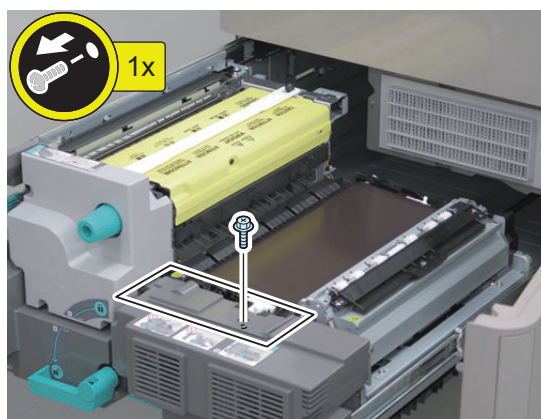
- Be sure to perform the following <Adjustment procedure> when there is a distance [Lb] of 8 mm or more between the mark [B] (the line) on the Transfer Roller Holder (Rear) at the rear side and the ETB edge [1]



## ■ <Adjustment procedure>

### 1. Remove the Fixing Feed Right Front Upper Cover.

- 1 Screw

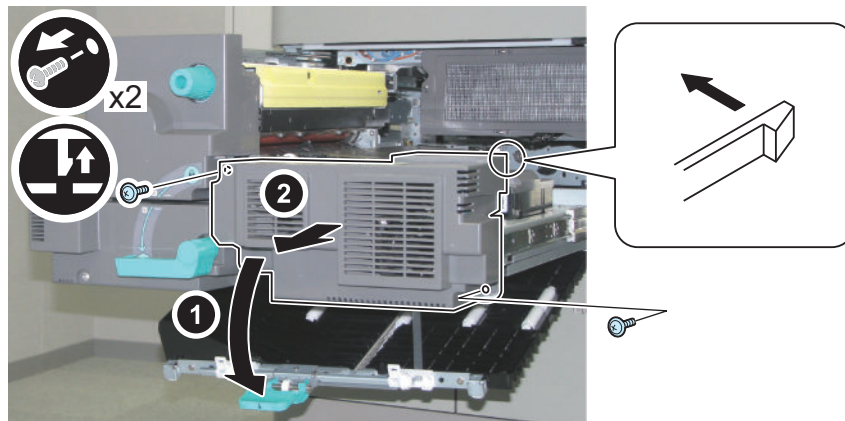


### 2. Open the Duplex Path.

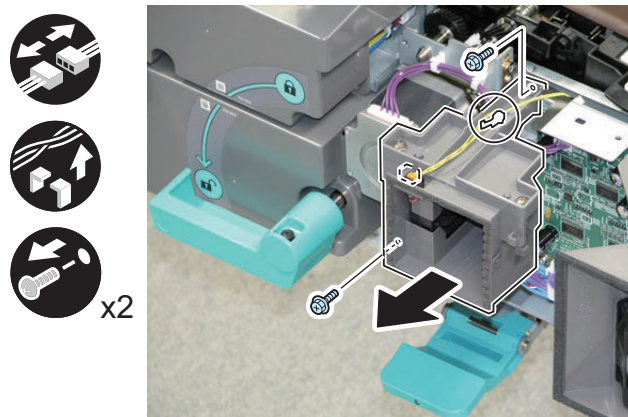
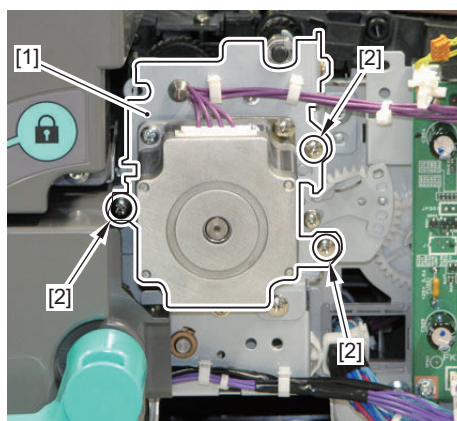


**3. Remove the Fixing Feed Cover 1.**

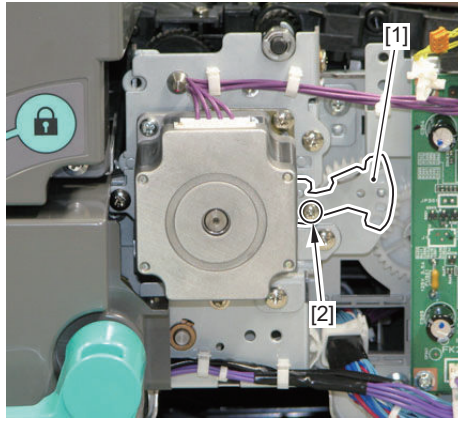
- 2 Screws
- 1 Claw

**4. Remove the duct.**

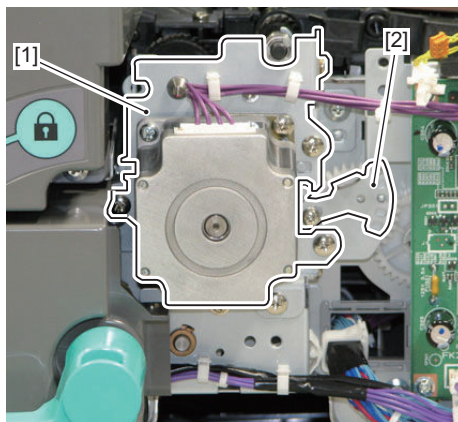
- 1 Connector
- 1 Reuse Band
- 2 Screws

**5. Loosen the 3 screws [2] of the ETB Drive Unit [1].**

6. Loosen the screw [2] of the Adjustment Cam [1].



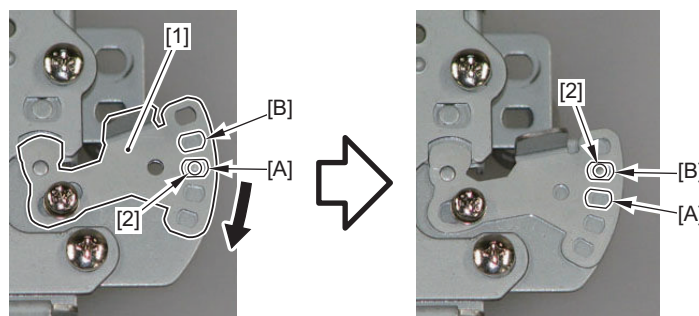
7. Adjust the ETB Drive Unit [1] and the Adjustment Cam [2] as follows according to the displacement direction of the ETB.



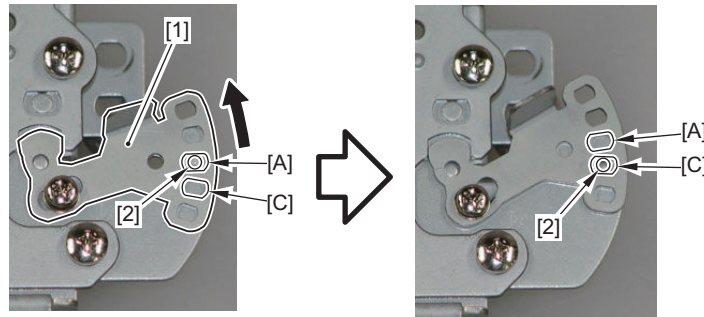
**NOTE:**

- Be sure to perform adjustment by referring to step 8 of <Procedure for checking ETB full displacement> when the ETB is displaced toward the front side, and to step 9 of the same procedure when the ETB is displaced toward the rear side.
- The holes at the top and the bottom of the Adjustment Cam are not used.

8. When the ETB is displaced toward the front side, release the hole [A] of the Adjustment Cam [1] from the boss [2] of the ETB Drive Support Plate B, and fit the hole [B] to the boss [2] of the ETB Drive Support Plate B.

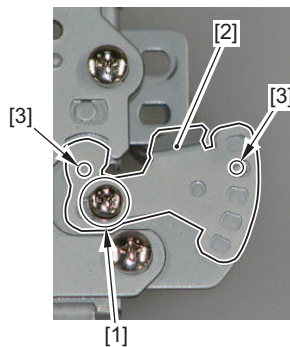


9. When the ETB is displaced toward the front side, release the hole [A] of the Adjustment Cam [1] from the boss [2] of the ETB Drive Support Plate B, and fit the hole [B] to the boss [2] of the ETB Drive Support Plate B.



10. Fully tighten the loosened screw [1] to secure the Adjustment Cam [2] (The figure shows the case when the ETB is displaced toward the front side).

- 2 Bosses [3]

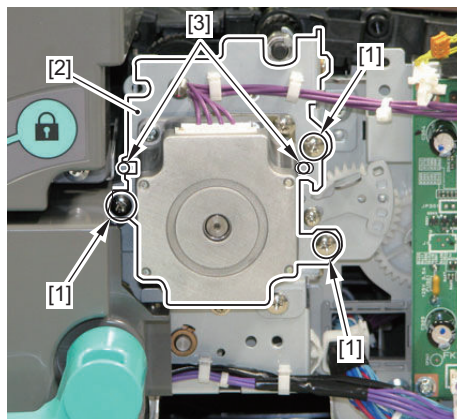


**CAUTION:**

Be sure to secure the Adjustment Cam [2] such that it will not be placed on top of the 2 bosses [3].

11. Fully tighten the 3 loosened screws [1] to secure the ETB Drive Support Plate A [2].

- 2 Bosses [3]



**CAUTION:**

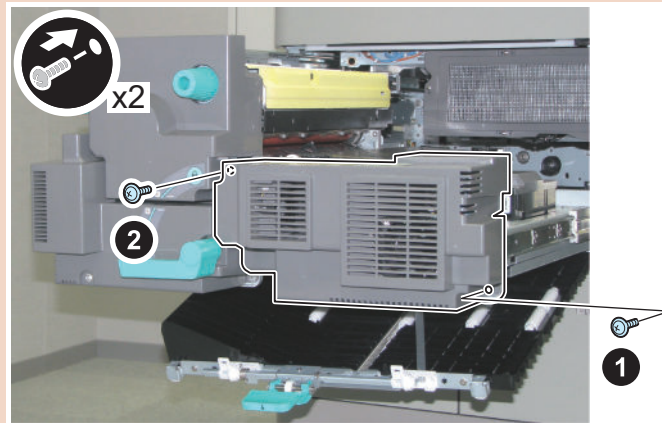
Be sure to secure the ETB Drive Support Plate A [2] such that it will not be placed on top of the 2 bosses [3].



12. Reassemble the host machine back together in reverse order of the removal procedure.

**CAUTION:**

When installing the Fixing Feed Cover 1, be sure to follow the order as shown in the figure to tighten screws.

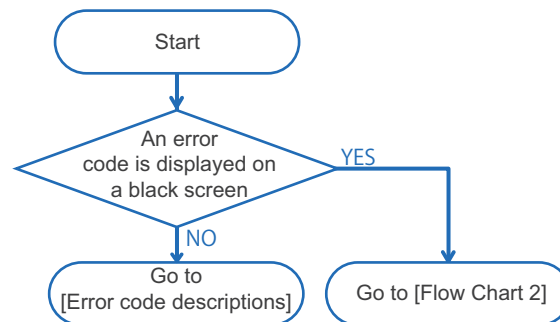


■ <Checking the improvement of ETB full displacement>

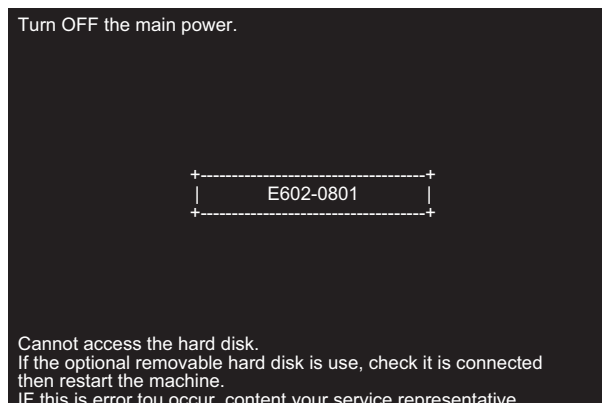
1. Perform double-sided feeding of the total of 200 sheets of A4 or letter size paper.
2. After feeding, perform <Procedure for checking ETB full displacement> to check that the ETB is no longer fully displaced

**Remedies to be performed when E602-xxxx or E614-xxxx error is displayed**

Remedy procedure for E602 or E614 differs according to the status of the screen where error is displayed. Check the remedy procedure by referring to the following flow chart.



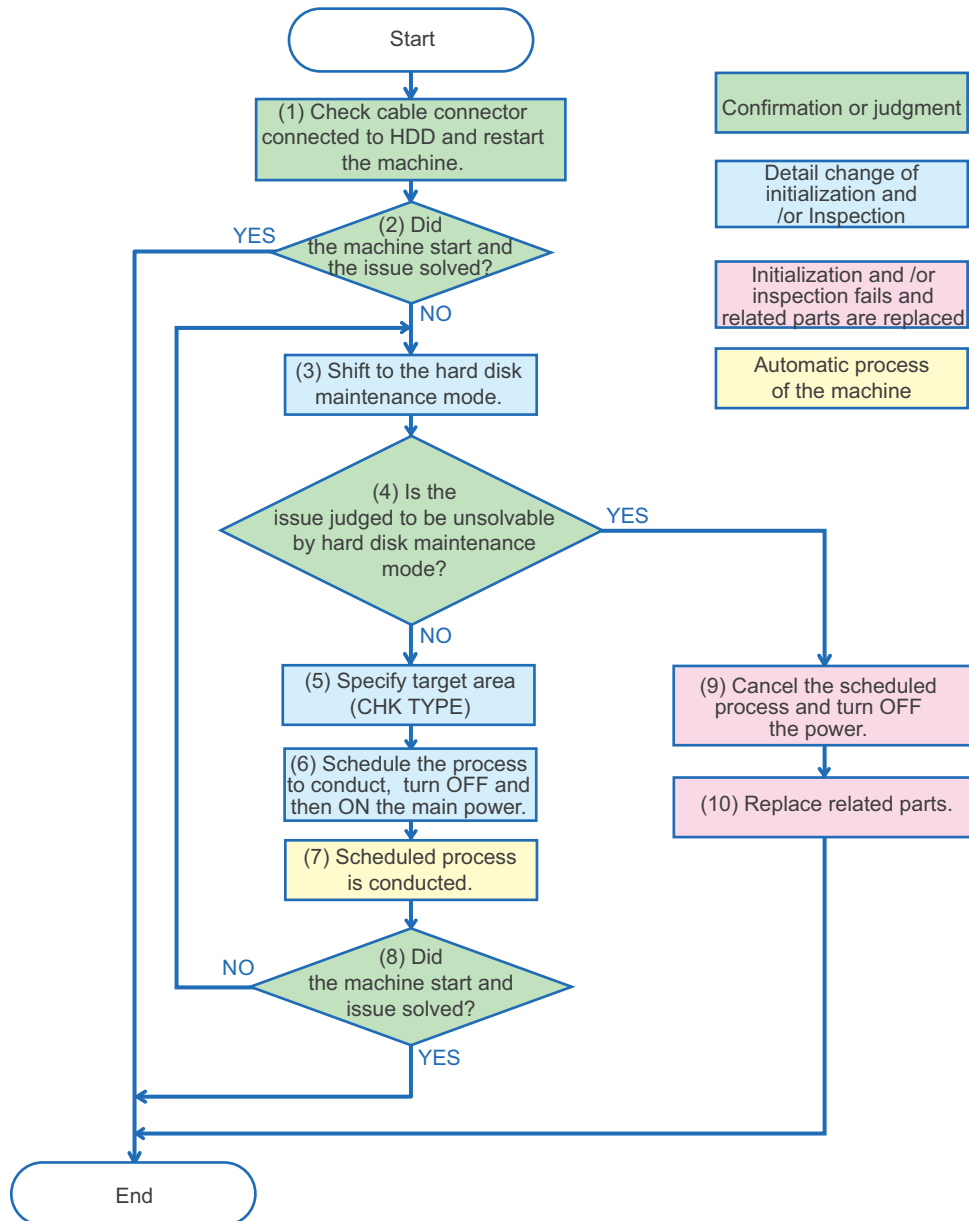
Flow Chart 1



Display Sample : If an error code is displayed on a black screen

Execute a remedy described in service mode by referring to [Error / Jam / Alarm](#) in the Service Manual.

If an error code and a message is displayed on a black screen (as above), shift to the hard disk maintenance mode referring to the Flow Chart 2 and execute the remedy described in **Error / Jam / Alarm** in the Service Manual.



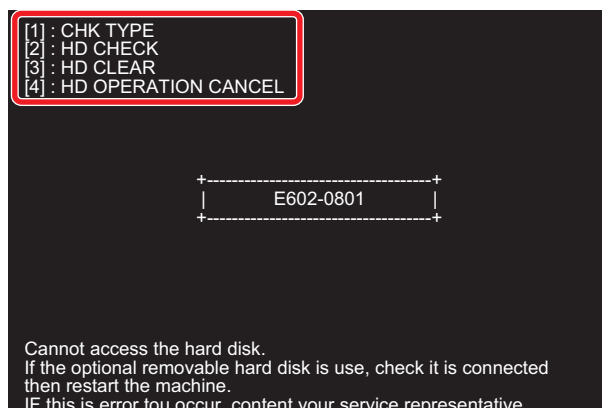
Flow Chart 2

**CAUTION:**

Numbers in the Flow Chart 2 are corresponding to the procedure numbers. Check the remedy procedure by referring to the flow chart.

1. Check cable connector connected to the hard disk and restart the machine.
2. Check if the machine is started normally. If the machine is started normally, the analysis is complete.

3. If the machine is not started normally, execute key operation to shift to the service mode for shifting to hard disk maintenance mode.

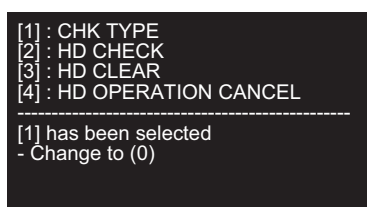


Example of hard disk maintenance mode screen

4. Determine if the issue is solved in the hard disk maintenance mode.

- Proceed to 5 for diagnosis for the first time or trying to restore with the hard disk maintenance mode.
- If the issue cannot be solved by hard disk maintenance (HD-CHECK/HD-CLEAR is not executed or issue unsolved even executed), proceed to 9.

5. Press "1" of Numeric Keypad, then two digits number to specify the target area (CHK TYPE).



**CAUTION:**

The CHK - TYPE to be specified needs to be entered in two digits even the number to be specified is one digit. Enter "01" to specify "1" and enter "04" to specify "4".

For example, in the case of the display (E602-0801), specify No. 8 because Partition No. 8 is in error. (Enter the number as "08")

If you made a mistake, press "1" again then enter two digits number.

6. Specify and schedule the process stated as a remedy for error code by referring to the Flow chart No.6, "Error / Jam / Alarm" in the Service Manual. Then turn OFF and then ON the main power of the machine.

- To schedule disk check (COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM >HD-CHECK), select [2]:HD-CHECK.
- To schedule formatting (COPIER / FUNCTION / SYSTEM /HD-CLEAR), select [3]:HD CLEAR.

**NOTE:**

When the menu [2] to [4] is selected, key cannot be re-entered. If you made a wrong selection, Turn OFF and then ON the main power of the machine, shift to hard disk maintenance mode and specify again.

7. Scheduled process is automatically executed.

8. If the process is complete and the machine is restarted normally, analysis is complete.

The same black screen and the error code is displayed, shift back to the hard disk maintenance mode and conduct other maintenance.

9. Consider the HDD cannot be restored, select [4] and cancel the schedule. Switch OFF the main power of the machine.

```
[1] : CHK TYPE
[2] : HD CHECK
[3] : HD CLEAR
[4] : HD OPERATION CANCEL
```

```
-----
[4] has been selected
Turn OFF the main power.
```

**CAUTION:**

Replacing HDD without canceling the schedule causes the scheduled process is executed to replaced HDD at the next normal startup.

When replacing parts, specify [4] to cancel the schedule.

10. Refer to the Service Manual to replace the related parts.

**NOTE:**

Related parts for E602

- Harness between main controller PCB and the HDD
- HDD
- Main Controller PCB

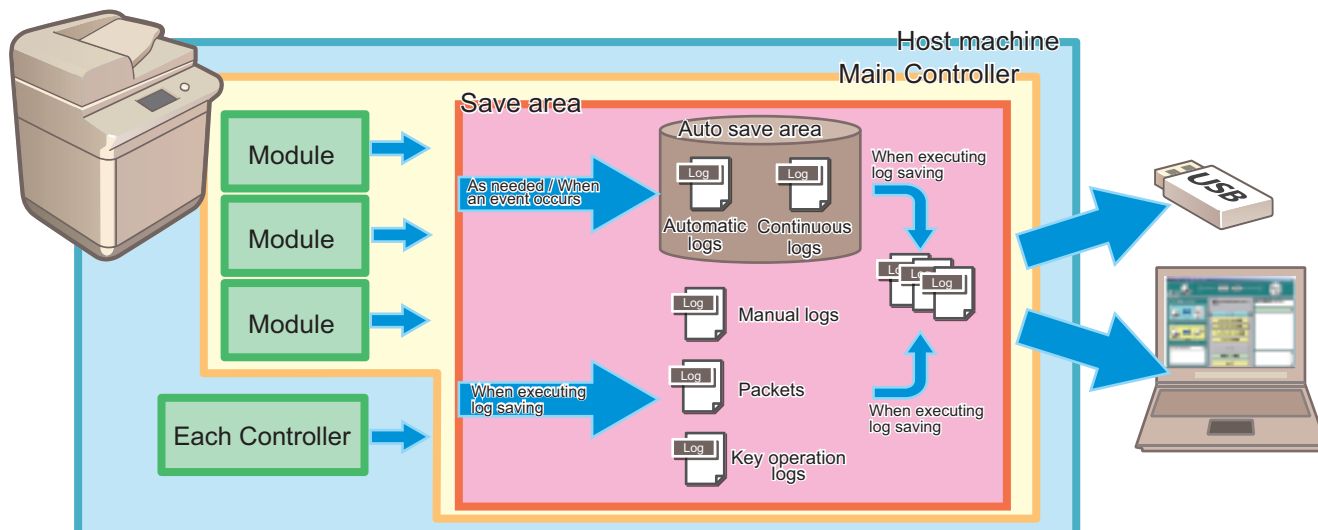
Related parts for E614

- Flash PCB
- Main Controller PCB

## Debug Log

### Function Overview

As for debug log, following logs are available: continuous log that saves the operation log, automatic log that is saved when an event occurs, manual log which is collected and saved each time at log saving, packet log, and key operation log.



#### NOTE:

Debug logs are used for analysis of program operations of the machine and identification of the problem by the developer. This machine has a function for compiling operation history of each software module as debug logs and outputting them as unified logs for analyzing problems. Since the frequency of outputting debug logs and the type of logs can be changed by the settings, the settings need to be changed according to the trouble that occurs and the situation.

### Types of Debug Logs

| Types of Debug Logs | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| Sublogs             | <p><b>Manual logs</b><br/>Logs collected in each module and controller are archived and can be collected when log saving is executed. Logs of the Main Controller, RCON, and DCON are saved together with automatic logs as up to 10 logs in total.</p> <p><b>Automatic logs</b><br/>Logs that are automatically saved to the machine when an event (exceptional behavior, error code, or reboot) occurs. Logs of the Main Controller, RCON, and DCON are saved together with manual logs as up to 10 logs in total.</p> <p><b>Continuous logs</b><br/>Logs that are continuously saved while the machine is running. Up to 100 logs of only the Main Controller can be stored.</p> |
| Key operation logs  | History of key operations.<br>Log collection starts by enabling the setting and starting the function.<br>Logs that are archived and can be collected when log saving is executed.  |
| Network packet logs | Logs of network packet data sent from or received by the host machine.<br>Log collection starts by enabling the setting and starting the function.<br>Logs that are archived and can be collected when log saving is executed.  |

### Storage location and types of Sublogs

The locations where Sublogs are stored and the types of logs are shown below. Logs may be stored in controllers and parts other than those shown below.

| Type            | Automatic logs                           | Manual logs                              | Continuous logs |
|-----------------|--|--|-----------------|
| Main Controller | Yes (more detailed than continuous logs) | Yes (more detailed than continuous logs) | Yes             |
| DCON            | Yes                                      | Yes                                      | No              |
| RCON            | Yes                                      | Yes                                      | No              |

### Cases Where Debug Logs Need to Be Collected

- When the result of identification of the cause shows that the trouble was caused by host machine (firmware, hardware-related controller)
- When the failure occurs only at the customer's site and cannot be reproduced by the department in charge of quality management or Canon Inc.

### ■ Sublogs

Sublog is the general term for the unified logs for analyzing problem in which operation histories of software modules are compiled as debug logs.

When a problem relating to the host machine occurs in the field and it is difficult to identify the cause of it at the user site, collecting Sublogs and sending them to Design Dept./R&D can improve the efficiency of analyzing the problem and reduce the time it takes to deal with the problem.

#### CAUTION:

- Sublogs are basically stored in volatile memory. Therefore, almost all information will be erased by turning OFF and ON the power before saving the log data. When obtaining the log data, make sure to implement the operation to save the log data (manually saving log) before turning OFF and ON the power.
- In order to prevent failure of collecting necessary information because the log is overwritten with the succeeding process, be sure to collect the Sublog while the symptom has occurred or immediately after the occurrence.
- Once the Sublog files are collected, they are deleted from the machine. In the case of collecting Sublogs consecutively, the number of continuous log files may be fewer than usual.

### ■ Key operation logs

This function collects the history of key operations in order to distinguish between a failure of the Main machine and an operation error of the user in the case of trouble of erroneous fax transmission.

If it cannot be denied the possibility that the user operation caused the error, collect the key operation logs.

The key operation log are stored/recovered in a form included in the Sublog files.

The following confidential information in the stored key operation log is masked.

- Personal identification number, PIN code, password, etc., to be entered
- Information that is hidden by turned letters on the UI screen

#### CAUTION:

To obtain permission from a user in advance for recording key operations for failure analysis.

### ■ Network packet logs

This function collects the transmitted and received network packet data as a debug log in the storage (capture).

When it is expected that the trouble was caused by network, collect network packet logs.

#### NOTE:

To use this function, you need to register a license, so you need to ask the Support Dept. of the sales company to issue a license.

#### CAUTION:

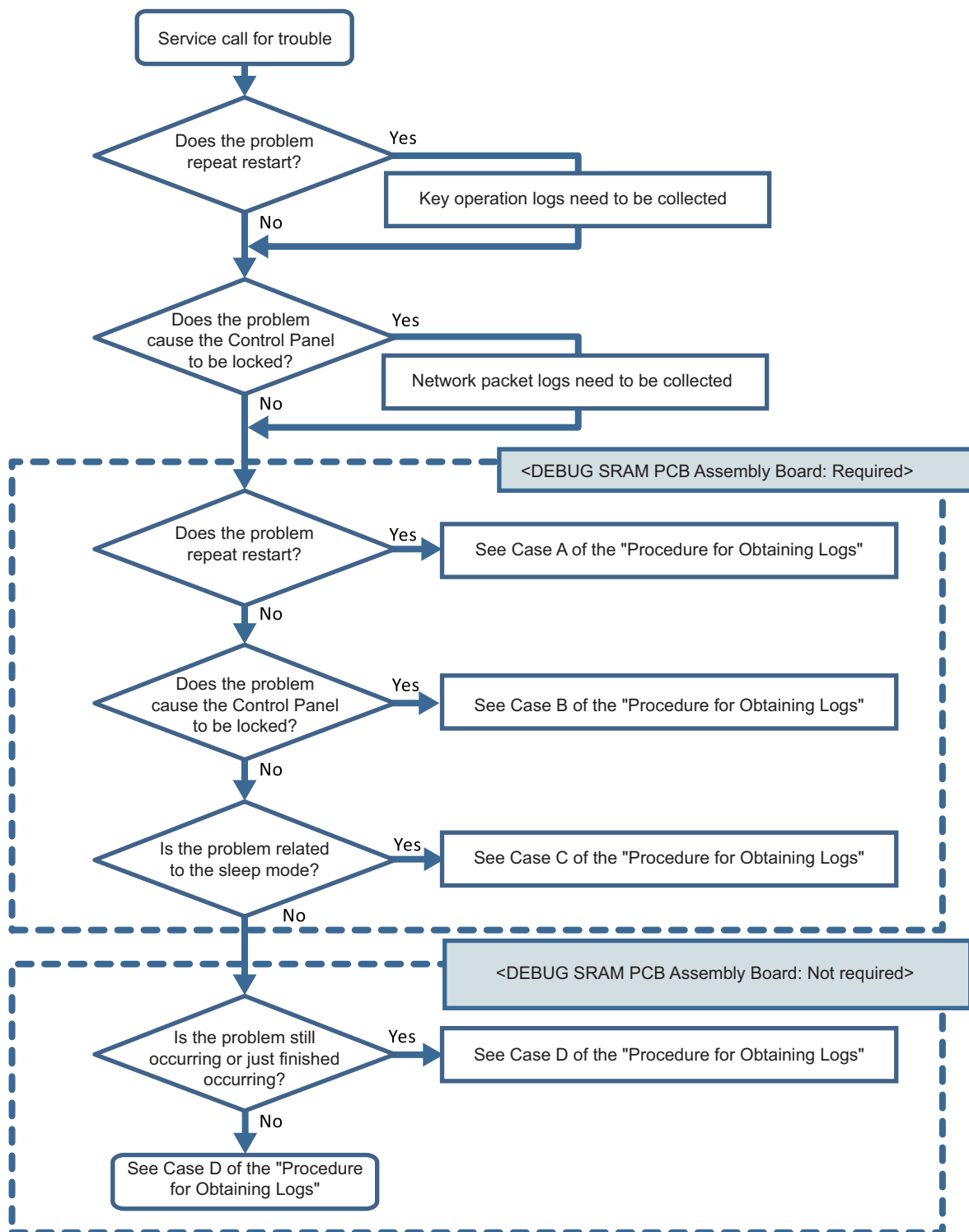
When obtaining the network packet log, explain to the user and obtain permission before proceeding.

#### CAUTION:

Under heavy network load environment, packets can be dropped.

## ■ Flow of Determining the Procedure for Collecting Logs

Check the following flow to determine the procedure for collecting logs according to the type of problem.



When the user's operation such as wrong fax transmission may be the cause of the problem, enable [Store Key Operation Log].



## Procedure for Collecting Logs

### Log Collection Procedure List

| Problem Case | Details of Problem  | DEBUG SRAM PCB Assembly Board | Procedure for Obtaining Logs  |
|--------------|---|-------------------------------|---|
| Case A       | Problem that repeats re-start   | Necessary                     | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Refer to <a href="#">“Preparation” on page 670</a> and make the preparations such as installing the DEBUG SRAM PCB Assembly Board or change the settings.</li> <li>2. Execute log saving by referring to <a href="#">“Saving of Manual Logs, Network Packet Logs and Key Operation Logs” on page 673</a> immediately after restart.</li> <li>3. Save and collect reports by referring to <a href="#">“Saving and Collecting Report Files” on page 675</a>.</li> <li>4. Collect debug logs by referring to <a href="#">“Collection of Log” on page 675</a>.</li> </ol>   |
| Case B       | Problem causing the Control Panel to be locked                          | Necessary                     | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Refer to <a href="#">“Preparation” on page 670</a> and make the preparations such as installing the DEBUG SRAM PCB Assembly Board or change the settings.</li> <li>2. Turn OFF and then ON the power immediately after the Control Panel is locked.</li> <li>3. Execute log saving by referring to <a href="#">“Saving of Manual Logs, Network Packet Logs and Key Operation Logs” on page 673</a> after startup.</li> <li>4. Save and collect reports by referring to <a href="#">“Saving and Collecting Report Files” on page 675</a>.</li> <li>5. Collect debug logs by referring to <a href="#">“Collection of Log” on page 675</a>.</li> </ol> |
| Case C       | Problem related to the sleep mode                                       | Necessary                     | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Refer to <a href="#">“Preparation” on page 670</a> and make the preparations such as installing the DEBUG SRAM PCB Assembly Board or change the settings.</li> <li>2. After the problem occurs, turn OFF and then ON the power if necessary, and execute log saving by referring to <a href="#">“Saving of Manual Logs, Network Packet Logs and Key Operation Logs” on page 673</a>.</li> <li>3. Save and collect reports by referring to <a href="#">“Saving and Collecting Report Files” on page 675</a>.</li> <li>4. Collect debug logs by referring to <a href="#">“Collection of Log” on page 675</a>.</li> </ol>                              |
| Case D       | Problem when executing a job (Example: Printing is not performed, etc.) | Not necessary                 | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Execute log saving while the problem is occurring by referring to <a href="#">“Saving of Manual Logs, Network Packet Logs and Key Operation Logs” on page 673</a>.</li> <li>2. Execute log saving by referring to <a href="#">“Saving of Manual Logs, Network Packet Logs and Key Operation Logs” on page 673</a>.</li> <li>3. [xref to:GUID-4F090A35-9880-4821-8CFC-9561684129B1] Collect debug logs by referring to <a href="#">“Collection of Log” on page 675</a>.</li> </ol>   |
|              | When an E code error has occurred                                       | Not necessary                 | Execute log saving by referring to <a href="#">“Saving of Manual Logs, Network Packet Logs and Key Operation Logs” on page 673</a> .<br>However, if the background of the Control Panel is blank and an error code is displayed in text, logs cannot be obtained.   |
| Case E       | Problems other than above   | Not necessary                 | Execute log saving by referring to <a href="#">“Saving of Manual Logs, Network Packet Logs and Key Operation Logs” on page 673</a> .<br>Check with the user on the date and time when the problem occurred and the procedure.   |

## Saving and Collecting Debug Logs

### ■ Tools Required

The following tools are necessary to save/collect debug logs of the machine.

## Exporting to a USB Device

- USB device

When exporting debug logs to a USB device, use a USB device in which the system software for the machine is registered using SST.

Since the size and number of log files to collect varies according to the device status and the logs that have been saved, the size of the collected files may be several hundred MB. Therefore, it is recommended to use a USB device with 1 GB or more of free space.

The USB device must be formatted with the FAT file system.

### CAUTION:

Be sure to check that the USB device has 1 GB or more of free space before collecting a log.

If capacity of the USB device is insufficient, logs that failed to be saved will be deleted so that analysis of the symptom cannot be performed.

## Exporting to a PC

- PC with SST installed
- Network connection cable

When exporting debug logs to a PC, a PC with SST installed and a network connection cable are required.

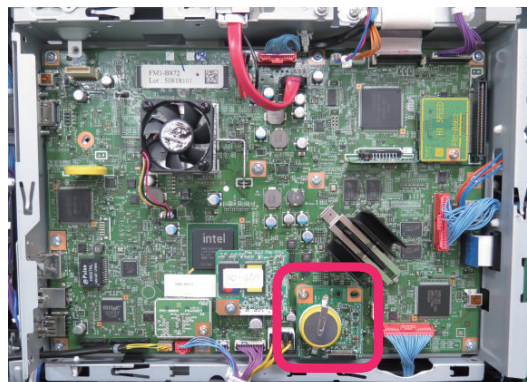
## Common (When Exporting to a USB Device, or When Exporting to a PC)

- DEBUG SRAM PCB Assembly Board

In the following conditions, debug logs cannot be saved, therefore the DEBUG SRAM PCB Assembly Board is required.

- When restart is repeated
- When all the operations of the device are frozen and manual logs cannot be collected.
- When the machine would not recover from sleep mode

Refer to the following regarding installation on to the Controller PCB.



Reference example of installation

## ■ Work Flow

The flow of saving/collecting Sublogs is shown below.

### 1. Preparation

Refer to “[Flow of Determining the Procedure for Collecting Logs](#)” on page 667, and make the preparation as needed according to a situation where an event has occurred.

### 2. Reproduction of the symptom

Reproduce the symptom.

### 3. Saving Manual Logs

Save manual logs that require manual operation.

### 4. Output of reports

Output reports necessary for escalation.

## 5. Collecting log files

Start the machine in download mode, and save (collect) the log files to a USB device or a PC.

### CAUTION:

In the case of analysis using Sublog, the following information needs to be obtained together with the Sublog.

- Symptom that has occurred (from service technician's viewpoint as far as possible)
- Date and time of the event (from an hour before the event to an hour after the event)
- Reports (P-Print, HIST-PRT, job logs, communication management report, etc.)
- Printed data and original at the time of reproduction (depends on the trouble that has occurred)

Besides Sublog, the above-mentioned information is required due to the following reasons:

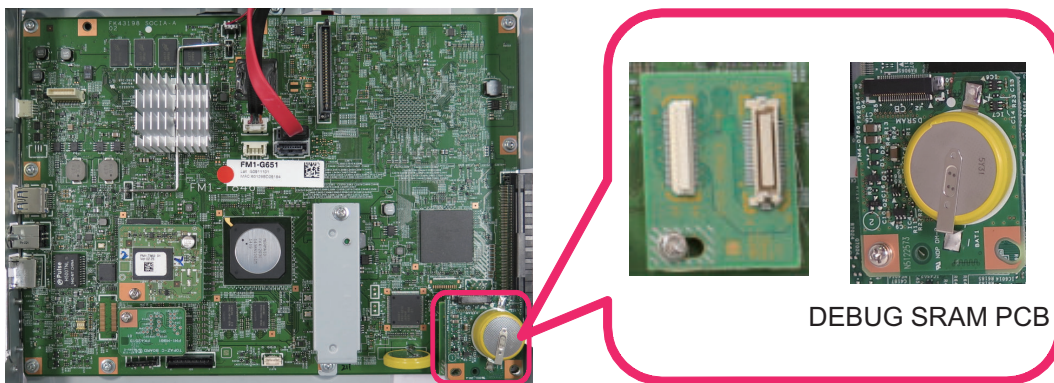
- Failures such as a process being stopped due to an error or an unintended behavior are easy to find, but failures such as "the behavior is slow" are difficult to analyze based on operation logs only.
- Since the number and size of the files are huge, the information helps to find the operation log where the problem occurred.
- When R&D reproduces the failure, it is necessary to use information such as the procedure used by the customer, frequency of use, and job data at the time of occurrence of the failure.

## 6. Remove the board installed in step 1 and return the settings back to the original values.

### ■ Preparation

Follow the procedure shown below to make preparations for collecting debug logs.

1. Refer to **"Flow of Determining the Procedure for Collecting Logs"** on page 667 and when it is judged that **DEBUG SRAM PCB Assembly Board** is required, install the board.



2. Refer to **"Flow of Determining the Procedure for Collecting Logs"** on page 667 and when it is judged that collection of the key operation logs is required, enable **[Store Key Operation Log]** by following the procedure shown below.
  1. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [Device Management] > [Store Key Operation Log].
  2. Select [ON] and press [OK] to start saving key operation logs.

### CAUTION:

When collecting the key operation logs, be sure to obtain user's permission in advance.

3. Refer to **“Flow of Determining the Procedure for Collecting Logs”** on page 667 and when it is judged that collection of the network packet logs is required, enable the network packet log collection function by following the procedure shown below and start the function.

1. Enter a license in the following menu to enable network packet capture.  
[Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [License/Other] > [Register License]

**NOTE:**

Use the license issued by the Support Dept. of the sales company to activate it.

2. Enable the setting (ON) in the following menu.  
[Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [Store Network Packet Log]
3. Set "1" in the following service mode (Lv.2).  
Service mode > COPIER > TEST > NET-CAP > CAPOFFON
4. Refer to **“Initial setting of the network packet log collection function”** on page 672, and configure the required option settings.
5. Set "0" or "1" in the following service mode (Lv.2) to start capture of network packets.  
Service mode > COPIER > TEST > NET-CAP > STT-STP
  - 0: Not automatically collect at startup (factory default setting)
  - 1: Automatically collects at startup
6. Execute the following service mode (Lv.2) to check the status of the capture.  
Service mode > COPIER > TEST > NET-CAP > CAPSTATE  
The following types of status are displayed.
  - RUNNING: Packets are being captured.
  - STOP: Packet capturing is stopped.
  - HDDFULL: The maximum amount of 1 GB of packets has been captured.

4. When an instruction to change the automatic log settings is given by the Support Dept. of the sales company, change the settings by referring to **“Automatic Log Settings”** on page 671.

## • Automatic Log Settings

Automatic log is collected triggered by "occurrence of an unexpected error", "occurrence of an error code" or "restart of the machine".

If you want to change the triggers, change the setting in the following service mode.

COPIER > Function > DBG-LOG > LOG-TRIG

However, there is no need to change the setting unless otherwise instructed by the Support Dept. of the sales company. The events that trigger collection of automatic logs and their setting values are shown below.

### List of conditions for automatic saving of logs and setting values

| Setting value         | Event condition for saving automatic log  |
|-----------------------|---|
| 101 (Default setting) | When an unexpected error occurs, an error code occurs, or the machine is restarted                  |
| 111                   | Only when an unexpected error occurs  |
| 121                   | Only when an error code occurs  |
| 131                   | Only when the machine is restarted  |
| 201                   | When an unexpected error occurs, an error code occurs, the machine is restarted, or an alarm occurs |
| 211                   | When an unexpected error occurs or an alarm occurs  |
| 221                   | When an error code occurs or an alarm occurs  |
| 231                   | When the machine is restarted or an alarm occurs  |
| 291                   | Only when an alarm occurs   |
| 301                   | When an unexpected error occurs, an error code occurs, the machine is restarted, or a jam occurs    |
| 311                   | When an unexpected error occurs or a jam occurs   |
| 321                   | When an error code occurs or a jam occurs   |
| 331                   | When the machine is restarted or a jam occurs   |
| 391                   | Only when a jam occurs  |

The procedure for changing the log auto save conditions with LOG-TRIG is indicated below.

1. Press [LOG-TRIG], enter the value for the conditions you want to set, and press [OK].  
"ACTIVE!" flashes in the display column, and the log settings in the machine are changed.
2. When [OK!] is displayed in the display column, the work is complete.  
If the processing fails, "NG" is displayed. It is not necessary to restart the device.

**NOTE:**

- A value between 0 and 99999 can be set, but make sure to set the value instructed by the Support Dept. of your sales company. Operations are not guaranteed when value other than the above is set.
- The displayed setting is not changed simply by changing the setting or pressing [DEFAULT]. It is necessary to exit the DBG-LOG screen once by pressing the [Reset] key, etc. and then display it again, after performing these operations.

**Executing Auto Saving (Reference Example)**

An example of executing auto saving using LOG-TRIG is shown below so that you can experience the log collection work. It is an example of log collection in the event of jam in the Delivery Assembly during copy operation.

1. Connect a USB device to the machine while the machine is ready for operation.
2. Set "301" in the following service mode (Lv.2).
  - COPIER > Function > DBG-LOG > LOG-TRIG
3. Make a copy. Open the Delivery Feed Assembly before paper is delivered from the Delivery Assembly to generate a jam.
4. When a jam occurs, confirm "Storing System Information..." is displayed at the bottom of the Control Panel.

**• Initial setting of the network packet log collection function**

When collecting the network packet logs, configure the initial settings as needed.

**Setting the overwrite function**

1. To enable this function, set "1" in the following service mode (Lv.2).

Service mode > COPIER > TEST > NET-CAP > OVERWRIT

**NOTE:**

When this setting is enabled, old logs will be overwritten. If the symptom cannot be reproduced, disable this setting (setting value: 0) and secure logs (save them using SST or USB). After securing the logs, enable the setting (setting value: 1) again.

**Behavior when HDD reaches the limit**

When this setting is enabled (setting value: 1), the following behaviors will occur when the HDD reaches the limit.

- When overwrite setting is ON
  - The oldest packet file is deleted. This "oldest file" is judged not by the date and time allocated to the file but by the last update time of the file.
  - If the HDD reaches the maximum size while retrieving packets, the oldest file will be deleted, and CAPSTATE of the capture, which continues the retrieval process for the file which is being saved, remains "RUNNING".
- When overwrite setting is OFF
  - The capture is stopped.
  - The CAPSTATE of the capture will be "HDDFULL". However, STT-STP will remain as Start (1) status. By changing STT-STP (0) to STTSTP (1), the capture resumes.
  - When the capture resumes, the capture starts if HDDFULL has been solved.
  - The CAPSTATE of the capture will be "RUNNING".
  - If HDDFULL has not been solved, an error is generated as the result of resuming the capture.
  - The CAPSTATE of the capture remains "HDDFULL".
  - If the capture is stopped while the CAPSTATE is "HDDFULL", the CAPSTATE of the capture remains "STOP".

**Setting the encryption function**

1. To enable this function, set "2" in the following service mode (Lv.2).

COPIER > TEST > NET-CAP > ENCDATA

- 0: Encrypted when data is extracted (factory default setting).
- 1: Not encrypted when data is extracted.
- 2: When data is extracted, a ciphertext file and a plaintext file are extracted.

The extension of extracted packet data will be "XXX.can" when encryption settings are enabled.

The extension of extracted packet data will be "XXX.cap" when encryption settings are disabled.

This setting only applies when extracting data by the USB flash drive.

**NOTE:**

When SST is used to collect data, both plaintext data and ciphertext data are extracted, and this setting is ignored.

## Setting the payload drop function

- To enable this setting, set "1" in the following service mode (Lv.2).

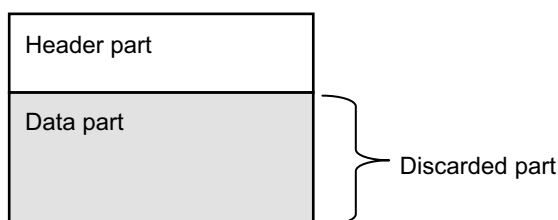
COPIER > TEST > NET-CAP > PAYLOAD

- 0: Not drop the payload (factory default settings)
- 1: Drop the payload

The obtained packet data includes a header part and data part. The header part includes data such as the TCP header and IP header. The data part includes the actual data.

Enabling this function discards the actual payload data and extracts only the data from the header part, which has the following effects.

- Can be used when customer data is not allowed to be extracted
- Can be used in an environment where traffic is highly overloaded



Packet data structure image

## Setting the filter function

- To enable this function, set "1" in the following service mode (Lv.2).

COPIER > TEST > NET-CAP > SIMPFILT

- 0: All data is collected without being filtered (factory default setting).
- 1: Data is filtered.

If this function is enabled, only packet data that includes the machine's MAC address in the packet header is captured.

## Setting the startup collection function

- To enable this function, set "1" in the following service mode (Lv.2).

COPIER > TEST > NET-CAP > PONSTART

- 0: Not automatically collect at startup (factory default setting)
- 1: Data is filtered.

If this function is enabled, only packet data that includes the machine's MAC address in the packet header is captured.

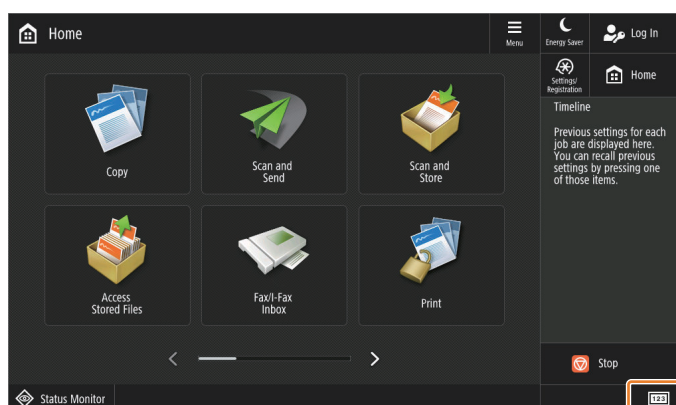
## ■ Saving of Manual Logs, Network Packet Logs and Key Operation Logs

Follow the procedure shown below to save debug logs (manual logs, network packet logs, and key operation logs) that require manual operation to the save area of the host machine.

- After the symptom has reproduced, hold down the Counter key on the Control Panel for 10 seconds.

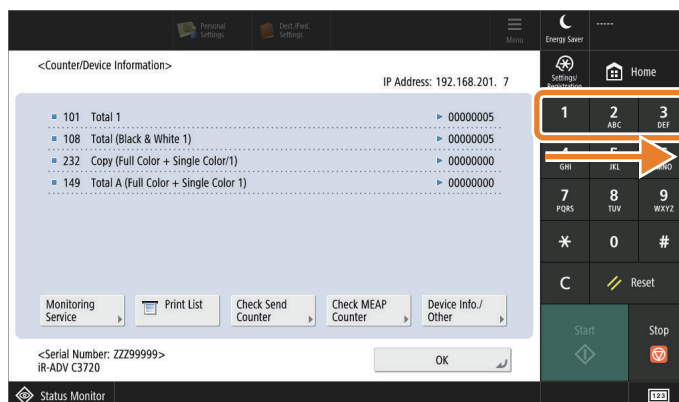
### CAUTION:

If power is turned OFF during the period from when the symptom occurs to when this procedure is completed, necessary log data will be deleted so that analysis cannot be performed.

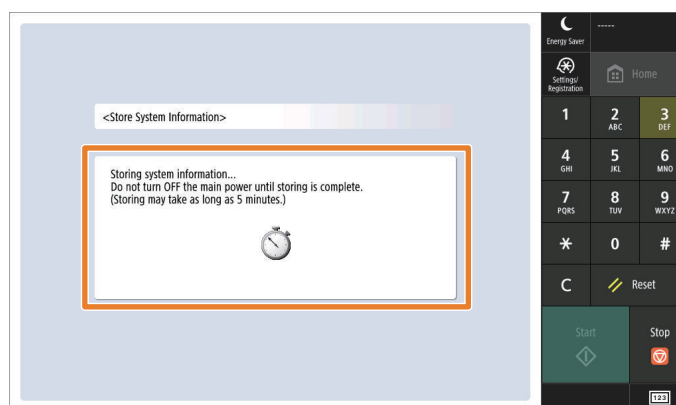




2. When the software numeric keypad is displayed, press the numeric keys 1, 2, and 3, in that order.



3. Check that "Storing System Information..." is displayed on the Control Panel.



**CAUTION:**

- While logs are being saved, other operations cannot be performed.
- If the above screen or message is not displayed, press the Reset button and then try again from step 2.

**NOTE:**

When network packet logs have been collected and necessary network packets have been captured, stop the capture from the following menu.

[Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [Store Network Packet Log]

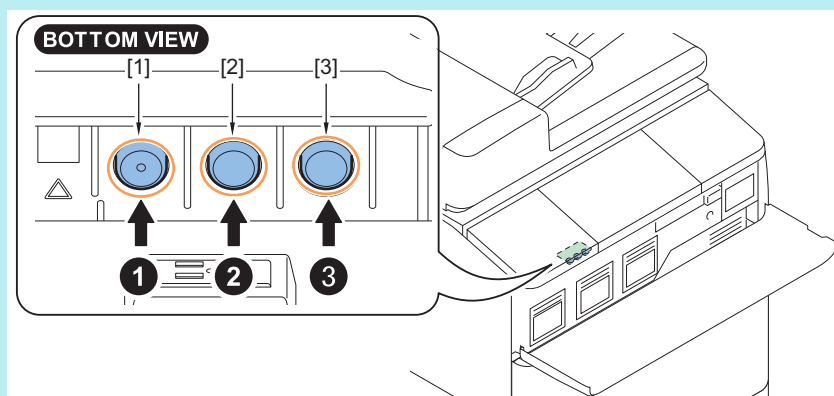
When this setting is disabled, all the service mode settings configured in step 3 are initialized.

Note that after completion of analysis of the network trouble, be sure to disable the network capture function. It is therefore necessary to disable and then transfer the license, but it is not necessary to transfer the LMS license after that.

**NOTE:**

When the Control Panel cannot be operated, store the log by the following button operation.

Service Button 1 > Service Button 2 > Service Button 3 ( hold down only this button)



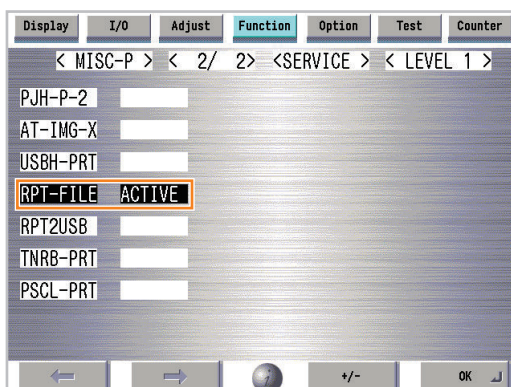


## ■ Saving and Collecting Report Files

Follow the procedure shown below to save report files to the Main Unit internal storage and collect them using a USB device.

### 1. Execute the following service mode to save report files.

COPIER > Function > MISC-P > RPT-FILE



### 2. Connect the USB and verify that Main machine recognizes the USB.

### 3. Execute the following service mode and retrieve the report file to USB.

COPIER > Function > MISC-P > RPT2USB



## ■ Collection of Log

Save the Sublogs stored in the host machine to a USB device or a PC with SST installed.

The procedure for storing Sublogs to a USB device differs from that for storing Sublogs to a PC

### ● Collecting into a USB Device

To save (collect) Sublogs to a USB device, perform the procedure shown below to collect the logs.

If SST is used to save (collect) Sublogs to a PC, this work is not necessary.

#### CAUTION:

If the log is stored multiple times to the USB flash drive on the host machine with the platform version 3.6 or earlier, make sure to move the stored log file to a different location each time.

Log files are stored in the root directory of USB flash drive. If multiple files are stored, the file, "LOGLIST.txt" is overwritten.

Note that on the host machine with the platform version 3.7 later, specifications are changed and this file is not overwritten.

### 1. Connect the USB flash drive to the machine.

## 2. Execute the following service mode.

COPIER > Function > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD



## 3. The host machine will enter download mode. Press [8] on the Numeric Keypad.

```

[[[[[[[[ Root Menu (USB <v25.12> ]]]]]]]] (v25.12)
-----
[ 1 ] : Select Version
[ 4 ] : Clear/Format
[ 5 ] : Backup/Restore
[ 8 ] : Download File
[ 9 ] : Version Information
[ Reset ] : Start shutdown sequence
  
```

## 4. [Download File Menu] will appear. Press a numeric key for the file to download.

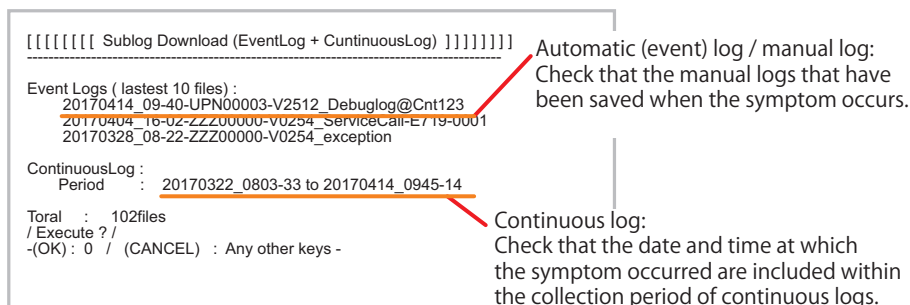
```

[[[[[[[[ Download File Menu (USB <v25.12> ]]]]]]]] (v25.12)
-----
[ 1 ] : SUBLOG Download
[ 4 ] : ServicePrint Download
[ 5 ] : NetCap Download
[ C ] : Return to Menu
  
```

- Press [1] key to download Sublog.
- Press [5] to download network packet log.

## 5. The files to be downloaded and the number of files are displayed. Check the following items and press [0] on the Numeric Keypad.

- Whether the manual log that was saved at the time of reproduction of the symptom is displayed under Event Logs
- Whether the date and time at which the symptom was reproduced is within the period of Continuous Log  
Example: When the symptom was reproduced at 9:40 on April 14, 2017 and a manual log was saved  
Check that the manual log that was generated at 9:40 on April 14, 2017 is displayed under Event Logs.  
Check whether 9:40 on April 14, 2017 is included in the logged period(from 8:03:33 on March 22, 2017 to 9:45:14 April 14, 2017) of the ContinuousLog.



## 6. When downloading the log files is complete, the following message will appear. Press any key.

--- Please press any keys ---

```
[68/102]20170405_0949-57-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin
[69/102]20170405_0908-19-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin
[70/102]20170404_1822-52-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin
[71/102]20170404_1702-57-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin

[97/102]20170322_1324-37-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin
[98/102]20170322_1204-56-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin
[99/102]20170322_1102-52-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin
[100/102]20170322_0954-48-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin
[101/102]20170322_0848-16-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin
[102/102]20170322_0803-33-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin
Sub log full Download OK.
---Please press any keys---
```

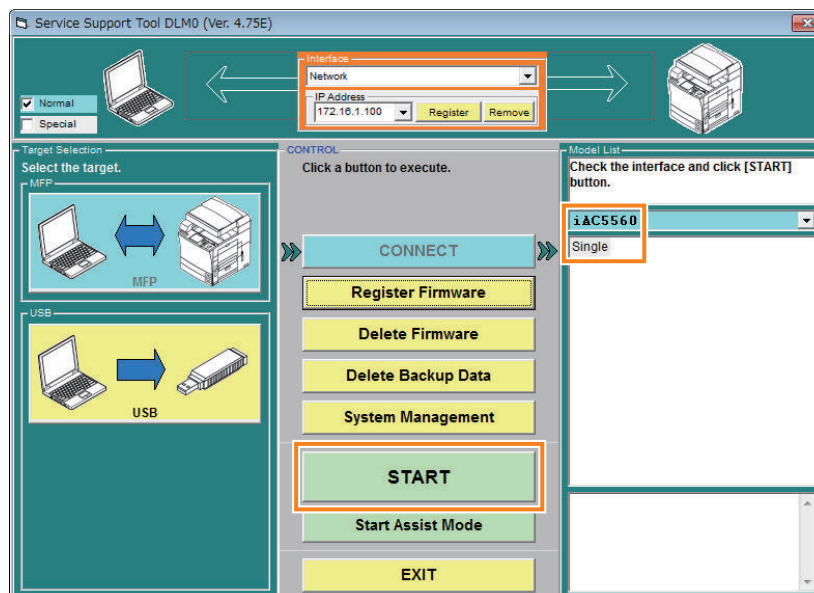
Do not turn OFF the power without.....

## • Saving to a PC with SST installed

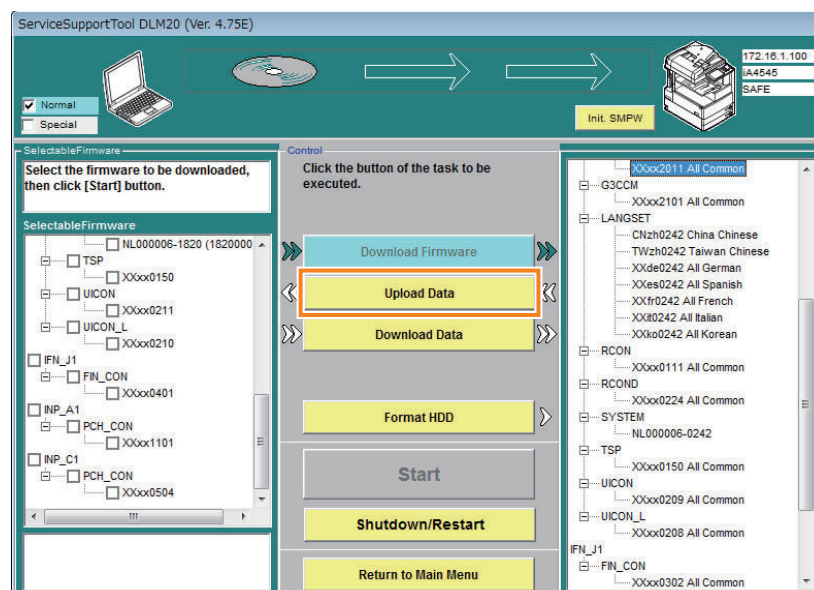
Follow the procedure shown below to save (collect) Sublogs to a PC using SST.

If a USB device is used to save (collect) Sublogs, this work is not necessary.

1. Connect a PC with SST installed to the network where the host machine is connected.
2. Start SST, and select the model name of the machine from Model List. Press the Start button.



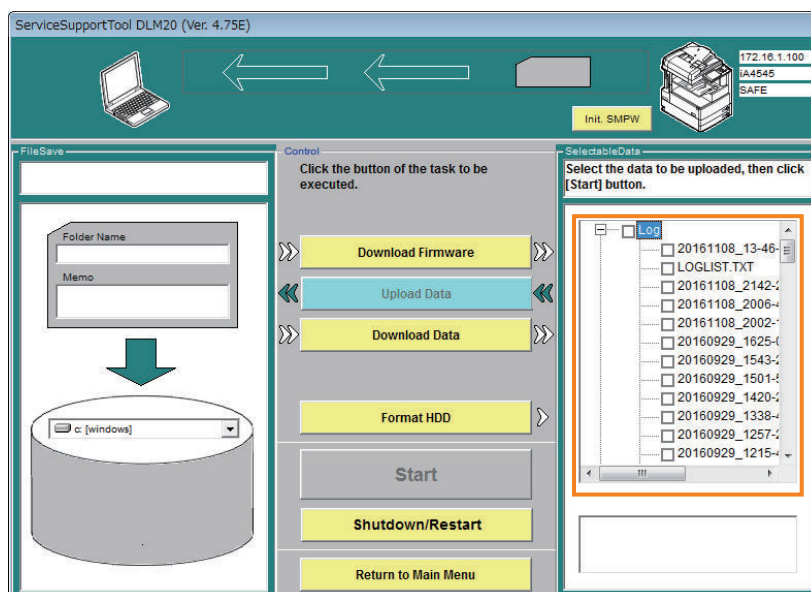
3. Click [Upload Data].



#### 4. Check that continuous logs are stored in the device.

When connection with the device is completed, the screen shown below will appear. Select [Upload Data].

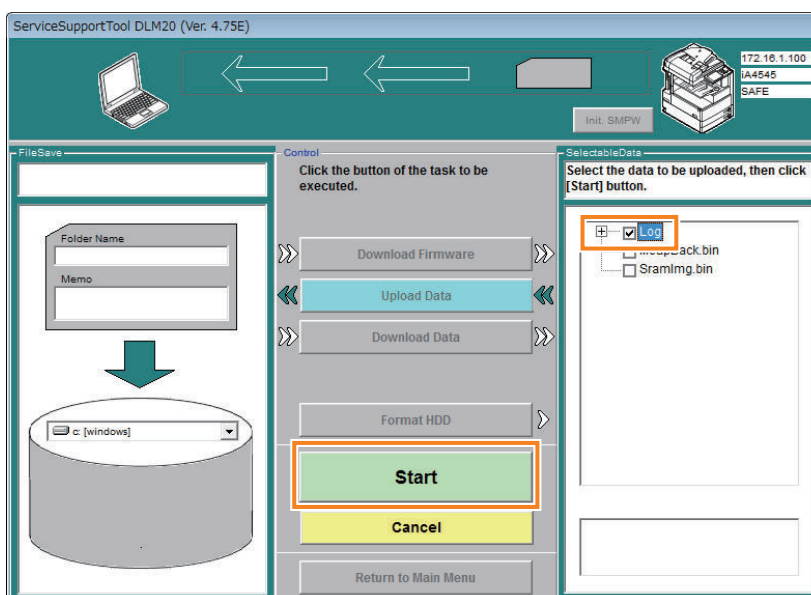
The set of data stored in the device is shown on the right. Click "+" at "Log" to expand the tree, and check that there are continuous logs (date\_model number\_clog.bin).



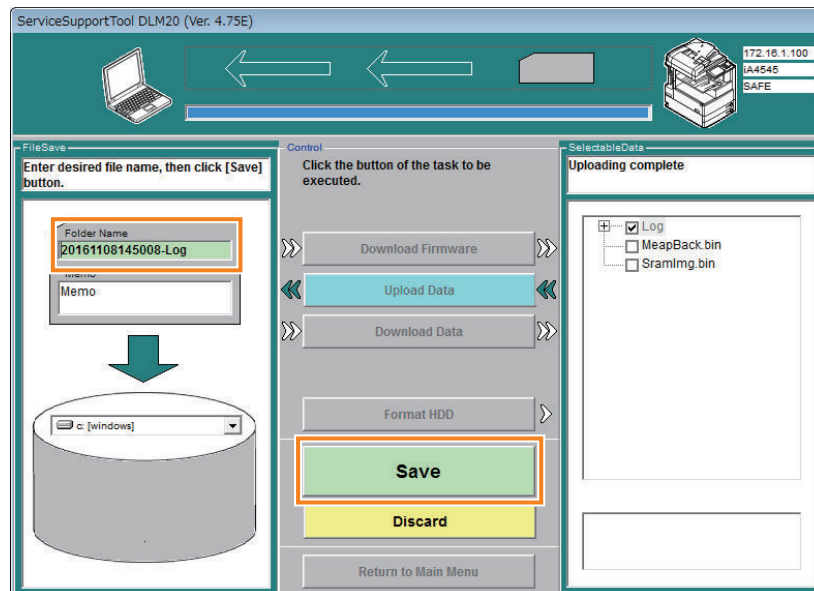
#### 5. Select the data to upload, and click [Start].

Select the check box on the left of "Log", and click the "Start" button.

It is not necessary to select MeapBack.bin and SramImg.bin because they are not necessary for analysis.



#### 6. Enter a file name (arbitrary), and click the SAVE button to save the file to the PC.



## • Checking the Saved Files

### NOTE:

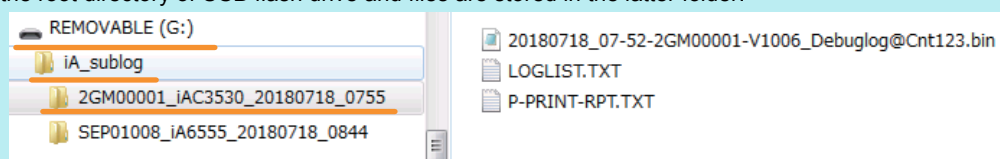
If log files are stored in the USB flash drive, the path to the storage destination is different by the platform version.

#### Platform version prior to 3.7

They are stored in the root directory of USB flash drive.

#### Platform version 3.7 or later

Folders of "iA\_sublog" and "model name + serial number + date (year, month, day + hour, minute, second)" are automatically created in the root directory of USB flash drive and files are stored in the latter folder.



## Sublog files

Check the saved log files whether the necessary log has been collected.

- Whether it is a log file of the target model (It contains the serial number of the target machine.)
- Whether the time and date the symptom occurred is included in the logged period. (Date and time in the log file name represent those of when the log collection is started. There are files with dates before the symptom occurs.)

## Storage locations of log files

Storage locations of log files are shown below.

When using USB device: Root folder of the USB device

When using SST: PC's C:\ServData\

## How to check the continuous log files

The continuous log files are stored in the log file storage location.

Check the names (date and time) of the files that end with "clog.bin" to see whether the date and time the symptom was reproduced is included.

In the case of the following figure, the oldest continuous log is 08:03:33 on March 22, 2017 and the latest file is 08:43:44 on April 14, 2017. The date and time the symptom was reproduced should be included within the period.

- 20170322\_0803-33-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin
- 20170322\_0848-16-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin
- 20170322\_0954-48-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin
- 20170322\_1108-58-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin
- 20170413\_1408-46-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin
- 20170413\_1409-12-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin
- 20170413\_1455-57-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin
- 20170414\_00-26-ZZZ00000-V2512\_SAFE.bin
- 20170414\_0843-44-ZZZ00000-2512-clog.bin
- LOGLIST.TXT
- sxldlog\_2017-04-14\_00-28-22.bin

**20161013\_1733-36\_ZZZ99999\_1406\_clog.bin**

Data and time when a file was archived (year, month, day, hour, minute, second).      Serial Number      Firmware Version      Identification indicating that it is a continuous log

**File name of continuous log**

**How to check the manual log files and automatic (event) log files**

The manual log files and automatic (event) log files are stored in the log file storage location. At the time of collection, these logs will be archived as a one binary file (the name of the file ends with "\_SAFE.bin").

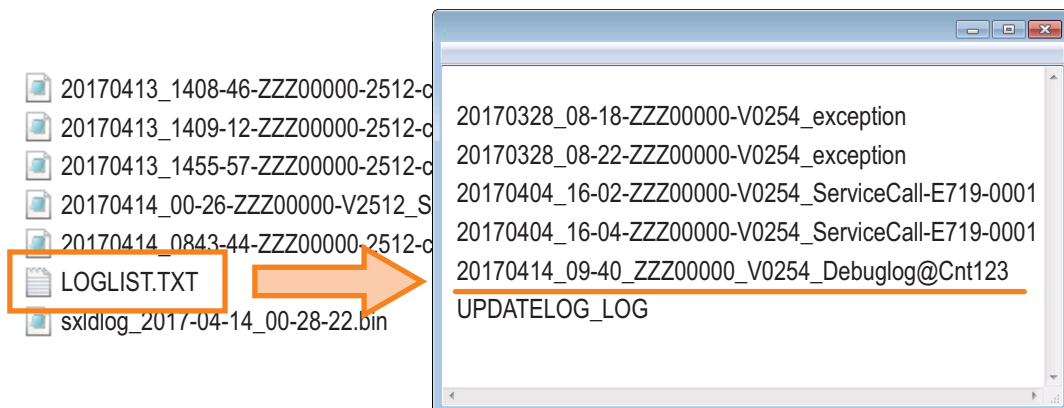
**20161013\_19-34-ZZZ99999-V1406\_SAFE.bin**

YYYYMMDD\_HH-MM      Serial Number      Firmware Version

Which logs have been stored in this binary file is described in LOGLIST.TXT stored in the log file storage location. Open this file to check the manual logs and automatic (event) logs.

**CAUTION:**

If a manual log was saved when the symptom was reproduced, check that a log with the date and time immediately after the reproduction is included. If there is no log file collected immediately after the symptom was reproduced, the file may have been overwritten and lost.



**20161013\_10-10\_ZZZ99999\_V 1308\_Debuglog@Cnt123**

Data and time when key operation was performed (year, month, day, hour, minute, second).      Serial Number      Firmware Version      Identification indicating that a key operation was performed

**File name of manual log**



### 20161012\_14-48\_ZZZ99999\_V1406\_Fatal00-exception

Data and time when an even occurred (year, month, day, hour, minute, second)      Serial Number      Firmware Version      Cause of occurrence

### 20161012\_14-48\_ZZZ99999\_V1406\_ServiceCall-E719-0031

Data and time when an even occurred (year, month, day, hour, minute, second)      Serial Number      Firmware Version      Cause of occurrence

#### File name of automatic log

#### How to check the network packet log files

The network packet log file is stored in the "NC + date" folder created in the log file storage location.

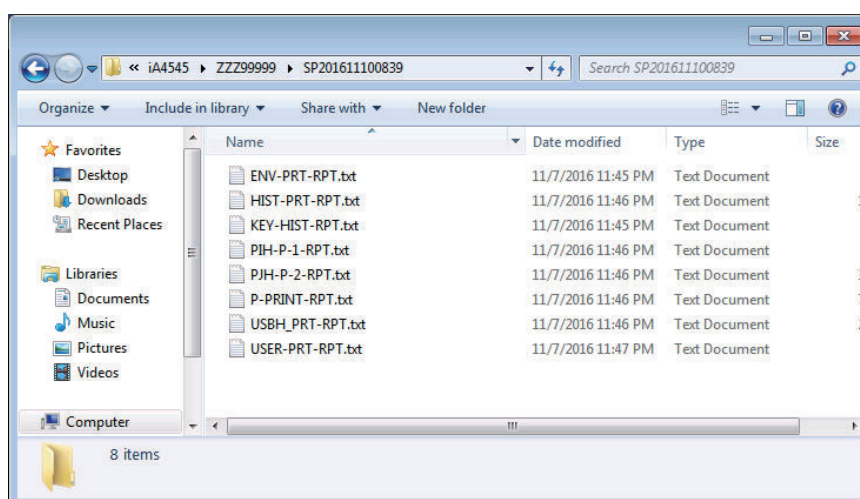
Open the folder and check that two types of files have been saved: a plaintext file which file name starts with "NC" and ends with ".cap", and a ciphertext file which file name starts with "NC" and ends with ".can".

| Name             | Date modified      | Type     |
|------------------|--------------------|----------|
| NC0110041155.can | 1/22/2015 11:34 AM | CAN File |
| NC0110041155.cap | 1/22/2015 11:34 AM | CAP File |
| NC0110044539.can | 1/22/2015 11:34 AM | CAN File |
| NC0110044539.cap | 1/22/2015 11:34 AM | CAP File |
| NC0110051028.can | 1/22/2015 11:34 AM | CAN File |
| NC0110051028.cap | 1/22/2015 11:34 AM | CAP File |
| NC0110051243.can | 1/22/2015 11:34 AM | CAN File |
| NC0110051243.cap | 1/22/2015 11:34 AM | CAP File |
| NC0110053134.can | 1/22/2015 11:34 AM | CAN File |
| NC0110053134.cap | 1/22/2015 11:34 AM | CAP File |
| NC1222190910.can | 1/22/2015 11:34 AM | CAN File |
| NC1222190910.cap | 1/22/2015 11:34 AM | CAP File |
| NC1226153347.can | 1/22/2015 11:34 AM | CAN File |
| NC1226153347.cap | 1/22/2015 11:34 AM | CAP File |

#### Report files

Report files saved to the USB device are stored in the folder under the name shown below where the firmware is stored.

- [Serial No.] > SP [Date (year, month, day, hour, minute (12 digits))] L



## Service Mode Relating to Debug Logs

Although the procedure for collecting debug logs of this equipment is as indicated above, there are other service modes related to debug logs.

Use the following service modes (Lv.2) as needed.

- COPIER > Function > DBG-LOG > HIT-STS
- COPIER > Function > DBG-LOG > DEFAULT
- COPIER > Function > DBG-LOG > LOG-DEL



**NOTE:**

If log collection is continued or setting change is repeated when an abnormality is found in operation of the function related to debug logs, temporary files or log files may be remained in the machine. In that case, execute "DEFAULT" in service mode to clear the settings related to debug logs and repeat the operation again.

**Confirming the Existence of Debug Logs (HIT-STTS)**

This service mode confirms whether debug logs exist in the auto save area.

"OK!" is displayed if logs exist in the auto save area.

**NOTE:**

"OK!" is displayed even after pressing the Counter key + numeric keys 1, 2, and 3.

**Initializing the Debug Log Settings (DEFAULT)**

This service mode changes all the settings related to debug logs back to the default (settings at the time of shipment).

- Be sure to perform when returning the device to the customer after completion of trouble investigation. (Operations required)
- Execute this service mode when resetting the settings related to debug logs during investigation of log collection and perform the operation again.

However, note that the log files automatically saved to the debug log save area in the controller are kept within the range not exceeding the upper limit.

If you want to delete the saved logs (want to use HIT-STTS), use "LOG-DEL" indicated later.

**Deleting the Automatically Saved Log Files (LOG-DEL)**

This service mode deletes the automatically saved and stored log files. The settings of log operation such as trigger for saving log are not cleared.

Although it is not used normally (the upper limit of the number of saved logs is automatically controlled by firmware), it is necessary to delete logs with LOG-DEL once when judging whether logs are collected using HIT-STTS after changing the trigger for saving log.

(It is because OK is displayed in HIT-STTS as long as the saved logs exist.)

## Startup System Failure Diagnosis

### How to See the Startup System Failure Diagnosis

The goal of the startup system failure diagnosis is to be able to solve troubles associated with a Control Panel display failure by performing the following steps.

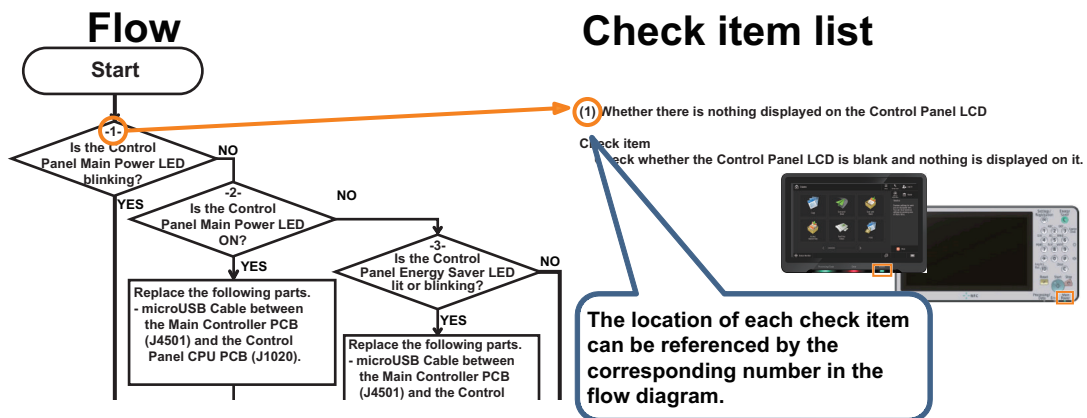
It is assumed that the users have already learned the following items:

- How to use a tester
- Roles of the All-night Power Supply (5 V) and Non-all-night Power Supply (12 V)
- How to back up data (HDD and Main Controller)

It is recommended to execute the diagnosis again after executing the diagnosis and troubleshooting to check that the machine starts normally.

### Useful Operations

The items of detailed procedure explanation start with a description of the flow diagram. The items and procedures checked in the flow diagram are described separately in a check item table. The flow diagram contains numbers (e.g. (1)) corresponding to the check items so that the readers can grasp the relevant parts of the check item table.

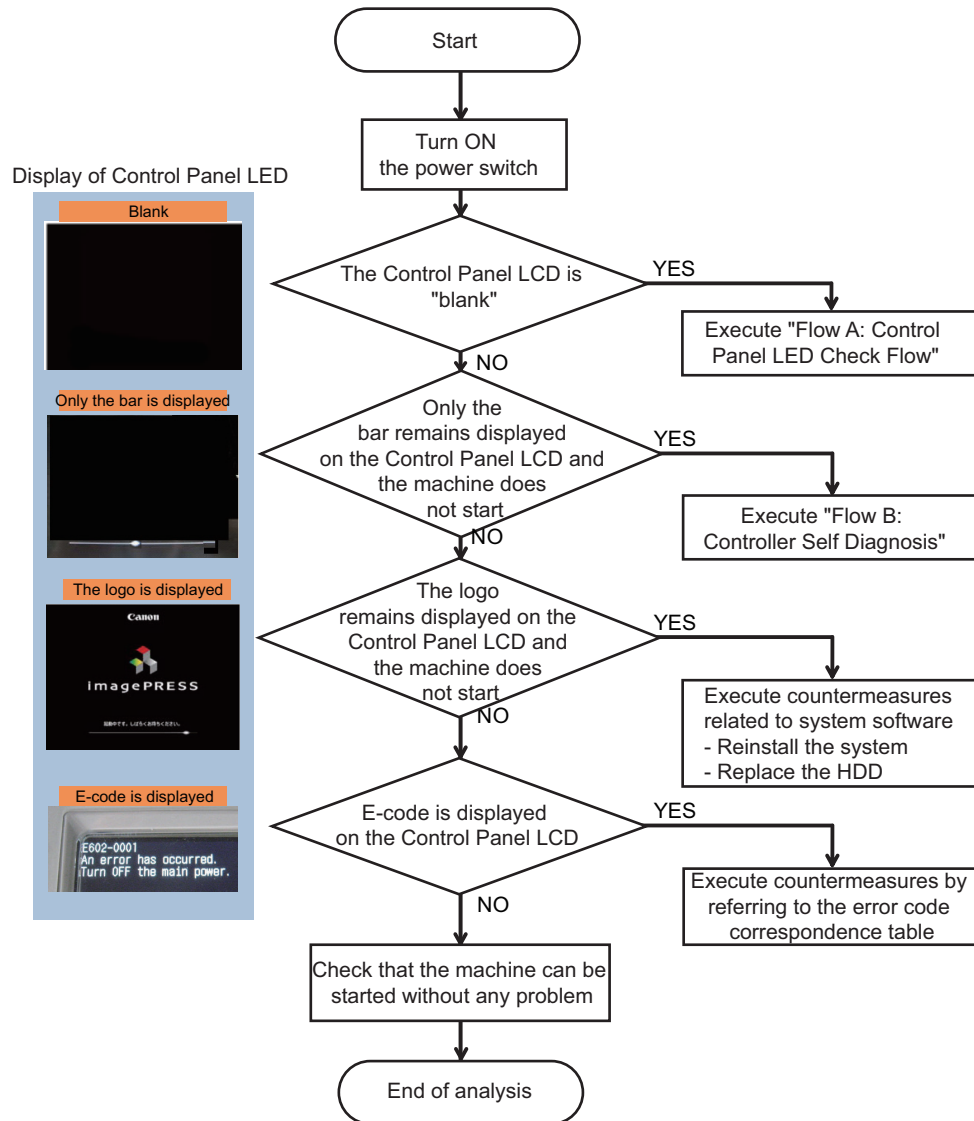


### Startup Failure Analysis Policy

If the host machine does not start successfully even when its Power Switch is turned ON, one of the following displays will appear on the Control Panel LCD.

- Blank
- Only the bar is displayed
- The logo is displayed
- E-code is displayed

Execute troubleshooting by performing the procedure described in the reference according to the following flow.

**NOTE:**

It may take about 5 minutes or more to display E 602-0001.

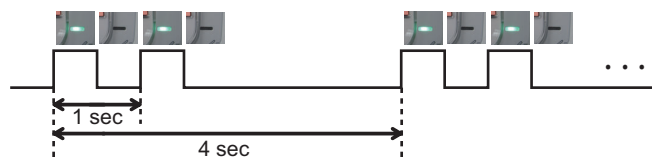
## Flow A: Control Panel LED Check Flow

When the Control Panel LCD screen is "black", the location of the failure can be identified by checking whether initial rotation has been performed and the Control Panel LED status.

There are three types of LED status: On, Off, and blinking. As for blinking, there are the following two types of blinking.

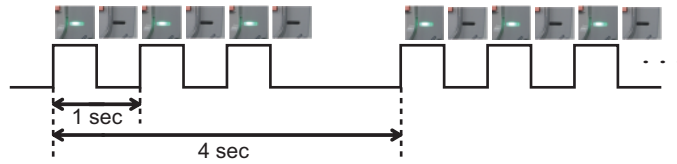
### Pattern 1 (Controller error)

An LED blinks twice in 4 seconds.

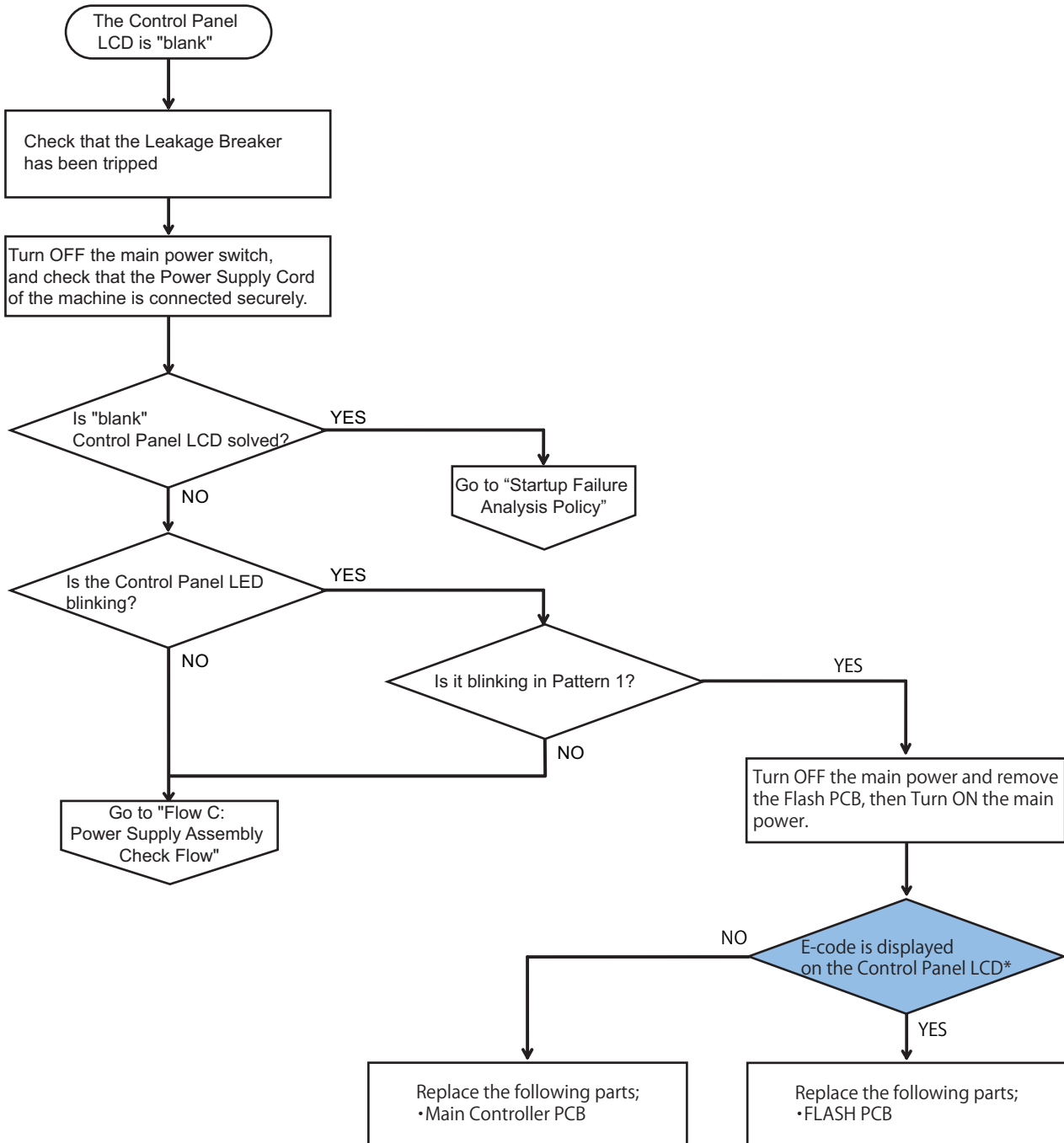


### Pattern 2 (Power supply error)

- An LED blinks three times in 4 seconds.

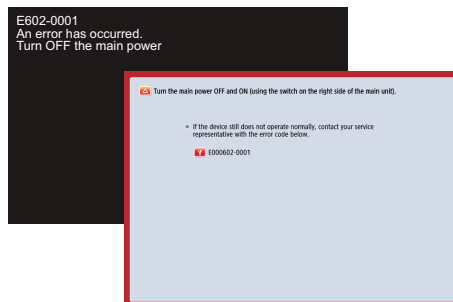


Identify the location of the failure according to the following flow.



**\*Check item**

E-code is displayed on the Control Panel LCD.



Display sample of an E-code

If an displayed error code starts with E602 or E614, see [“Remedies to be performed when E602-xxxx or E614-xxxx error is displayed” on page 661](#) to perform the remedy.

If the error codes other than above is displayed, see [“Error Code” on page 706](#) to perform the remedy.

## Flow B: Controller Self Diagnosis

Reference : [“Controller Self Diagnosis” on page 693](#)

## Flow C: Power Supply Assembly Check Flow

### ■ Status Check

If nothing is displayed on the Control Panel when the power of the host machine is turned ON, identify the location of the failure according to the flow.

### ■ Flow for narrowing down troubles

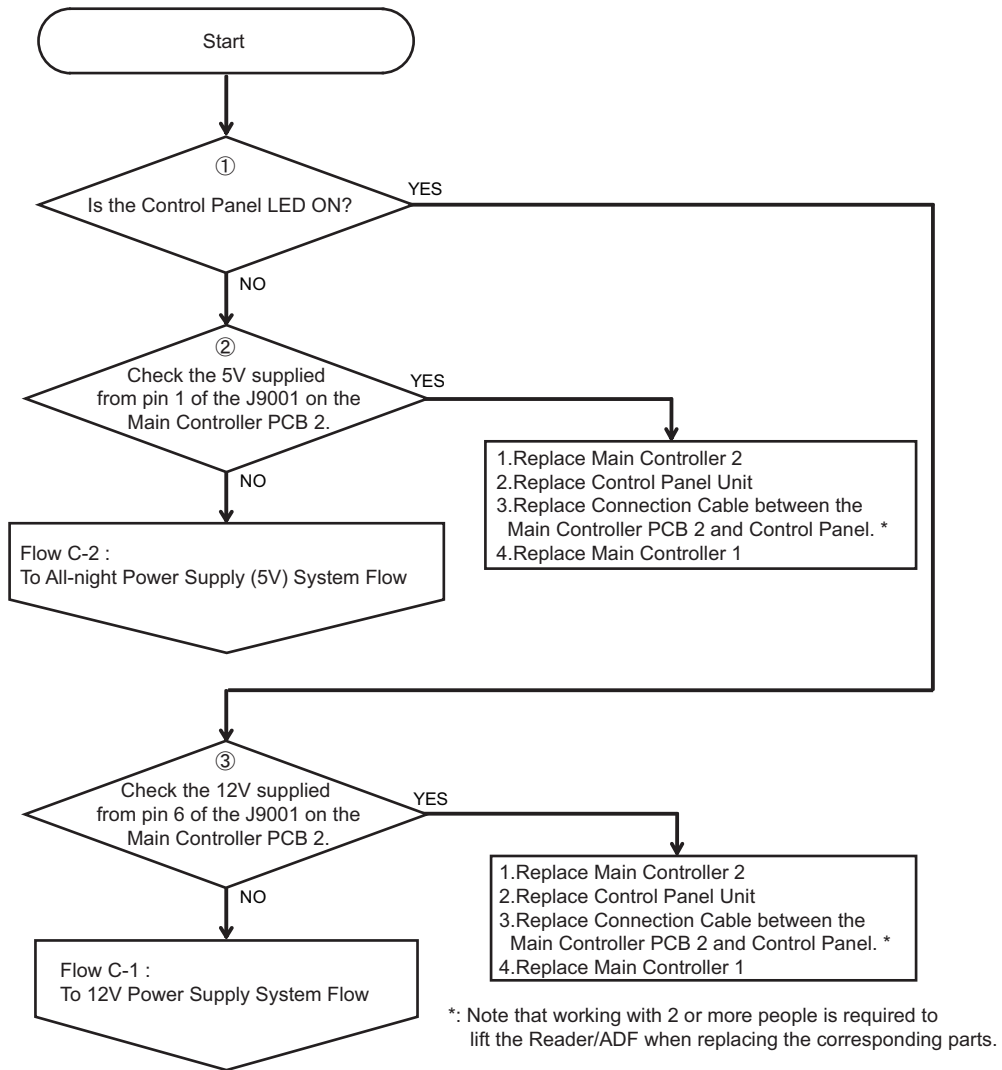
If the Main Power LED is ON, the All-night Power Supply (5 V) is being supplied.

If the 12 V Power Supply is activated, the Control Panel Backlight can be activated.

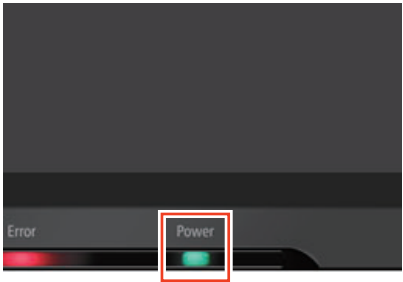
If the power-on signal is supplied to the 12 V power supply, the 12 V can still activate the Control Panel Backlight.

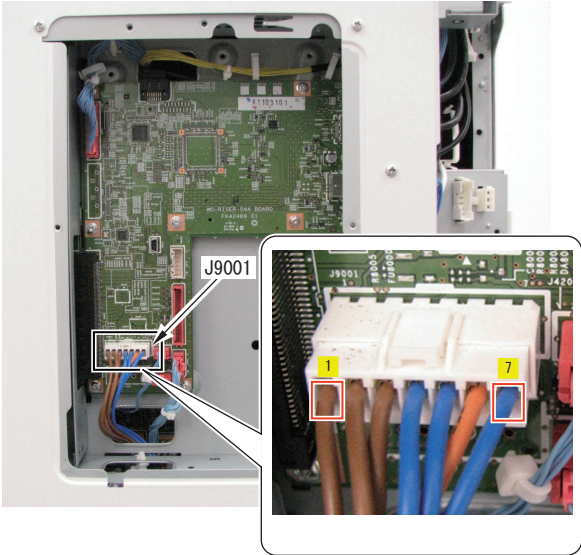
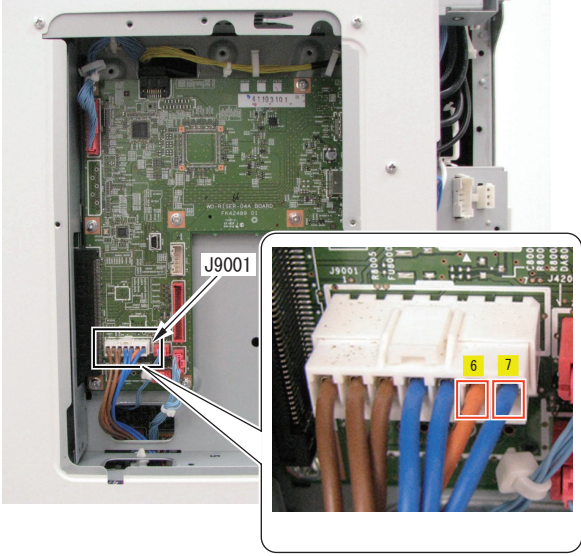
If the power-on signal is blocked, the 12 V power supply stops supplying power.

Consult this flow when checking the 5 V and 12 V power supplies and identifying the location of the failure in "Execution Flow for Control Panel Startup Failure" described below.



■ Check item

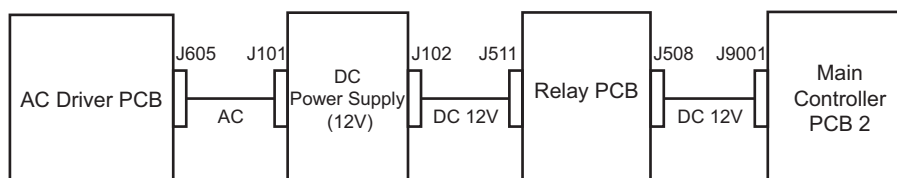
| Item | Check item        | Location   |
|------|-------------------|--|
| 1    | Control Panel LED |  |

| Item | Check item   | Location  |
|------|--|---|
| 2    | Main Controller PCB 2<br>Check the pin 1 (5 V) of J9001.<br>Example:<br>Pin 1 (5 V) and pin 7 (GND)<br>Normal value: 5 V   |   |
| 3    | Main Controller PCB 2<br>Check the pin 6 (12 V) of J9001.<br>Example:<br>Pin 6 (12V) and pin 7 (GND)<br>Normal value: 12 V |  |

## Flow C-1: DC Power (12 V) Check Flow

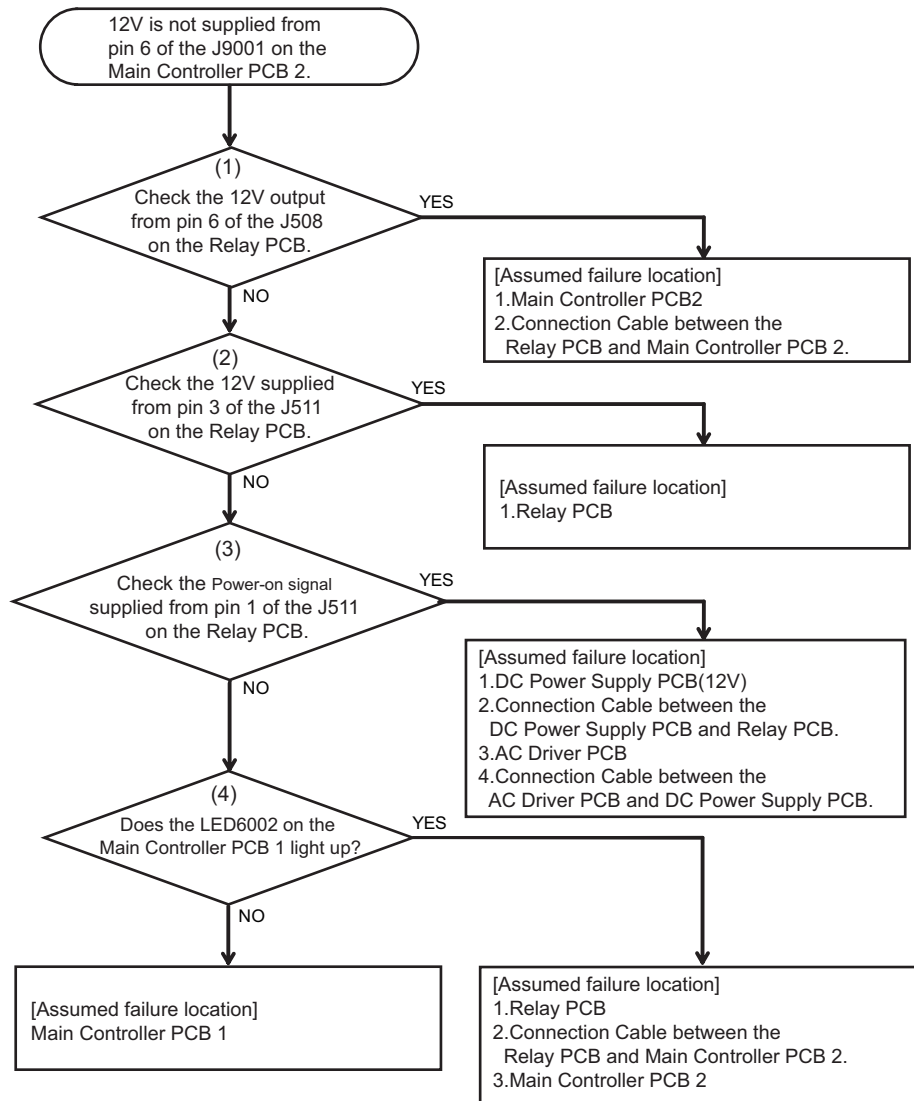
### DC Power (12 V) Check Flow

The following diagram shows the 12 V power supply route.



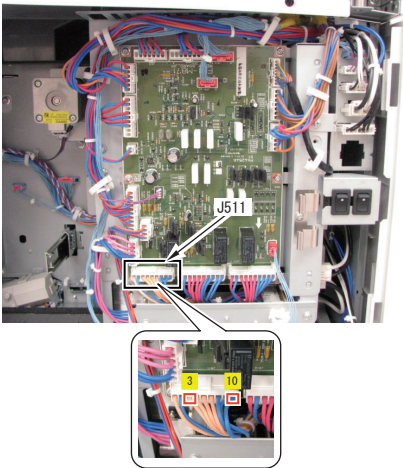
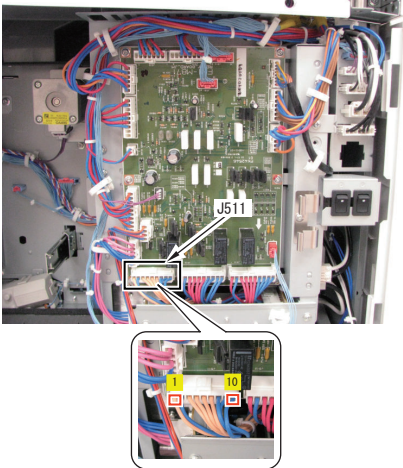
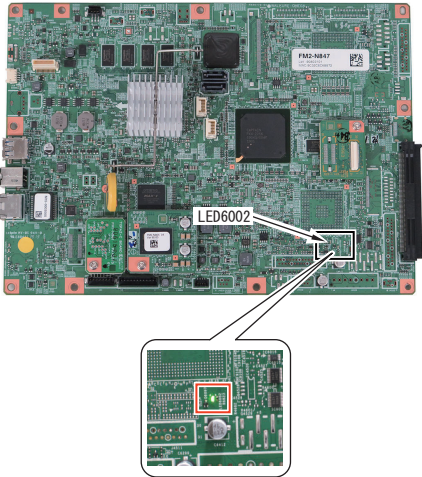
Identify the location of the assumed failure according to the following flow.





■ Check item

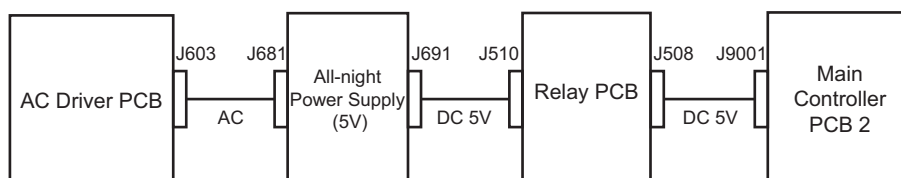
| Item | Check item  | Location |
|------|---|----------|
| 1    | Relay PCB<br>Connector side of J508<br>Example:<br>Pin 6 (12 V) and pin 7 (GND)<br>Normal value: 12 V |          |

| Item | Check item   | Location   |
|------|--|--|
| 2    | Relay PCB<br>Connector side of J511<br>Example:<br>Pin 3 (12 V) and pin 10 (GND)<br>Normal value: 12 V                             |    |
| 3    | Relay PCB<br>Connector side of J511<br>Example:<br>Pin 1 (power-on signal) and pin 10 (GND)<br>Normal value: Within 1.79 to 2.37 V |   |
| 4    | Main Controller PCB 1<br>Check the LED6002 activation  |  |

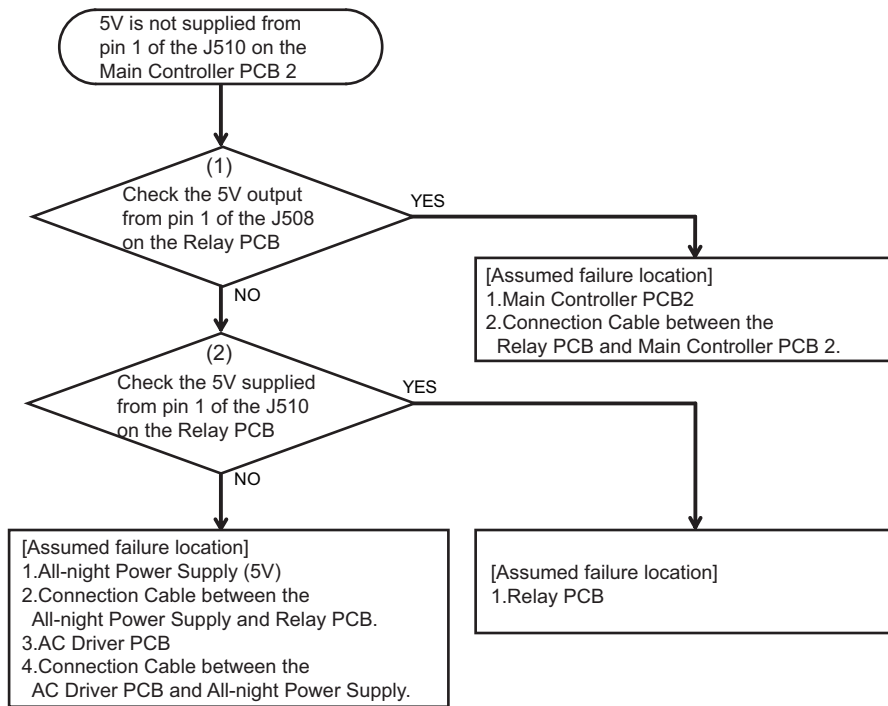
## Flow C-2: All-night Power Supply (5 V) Check Flow

### ■ All-night Power Supply (5 V) Check Flow

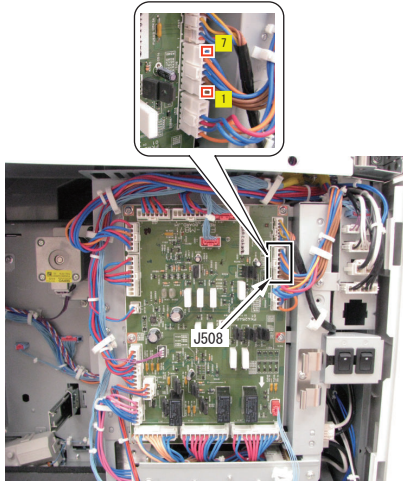
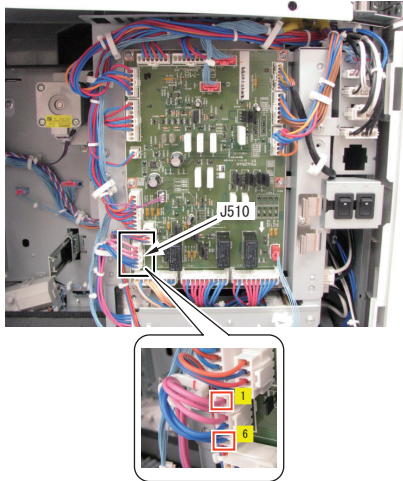
The following diagram shows the 5 V power supply route.



Identify the location of the assumed failure according to the following flow.



### ■ Check item

| Item | Check item  | Location   |
|------|---|--|
| 1    | Relay PCB<br>Connector side of J508<br>Example:<br>Pin 1 (5 V) and pin 7 (GND)<br>Normal value: 5 V |  |
| 2    | Relay PCB<br>Connector side of J510<br>Example:<br>Pin 1 (5 V) and pin 6 (GND)<br>Normal value: 5 V |  |

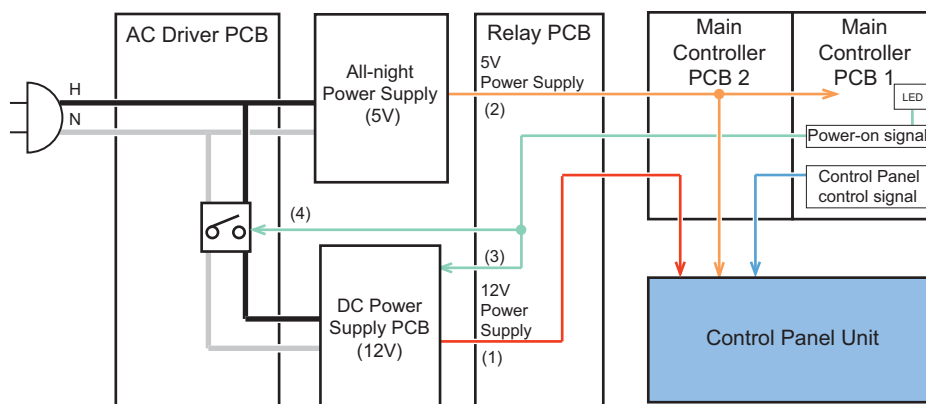
## Reference: Activation Conditions of the Control Panel Backlight

### ■ Overview : 12 V Ppower Supply control

The Control Panel Backlight is turned ON when 12 V power is supplied from the Man Controller PCB 2.

The details of 12 V power supply route and route of power-on signal that controls power are shown below.

- The Control Panel Backlight is turned ON when 12 V power is supplied. The 12 V power is supplied through the following route:  
AC Driver PCB > DC Power Supply PCB (12 V) > Relay PCB > Main Controller PCB 2 > Control Panel
- Supply of 12 V power is controlled by the power-on signal output from the Main Controller PCB 1. The 5 V power used for the Main Controller PCB 1 is supplied through the following route.  
AC Driver PCB > All-night Power Supply PCB (5 V) > Relay PCB > Main Controller PCB 2 > Main Controller PCB 1
- The Main Controller PCB 2 receives its power supply from the DC Power Supply PCB (12 V) and the power-on signal that controls the DC Power Supply PCB (12 V) is sent through the following route.  
Main Controller PCB 1 > Main Controller PCB 2 > Relay PCB > DC Power Supply PCB (12 V)
- The DC Power Supply PCB (12 V) receives its power supply from the AC Driver PCB and the power-on signal that controls the AC Driver PCB is sent through the following route.  
Main Controller PCB 1 > Main Controller PCB 2 > Relay PCB > AC Driver PCB



#### NOTE:

- When the power-on signal output from the Main Controller PCB 1 is blocked, the power supply stops even if the Power Supply Unit is operating properly.
- The power-on signal is output at 3.3 V.

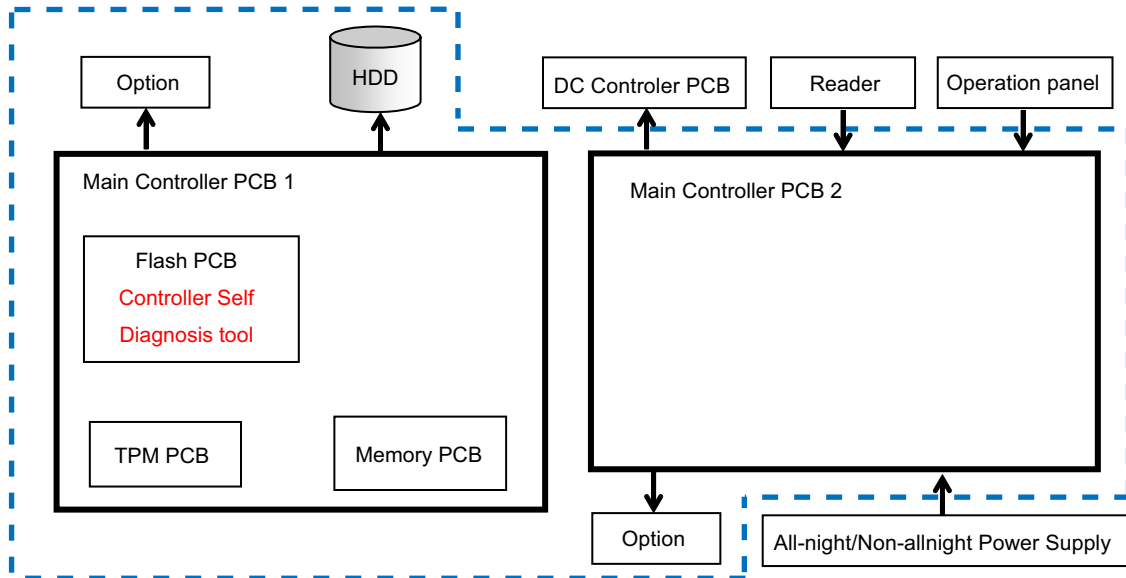
## Controller Self Diagnosis

In order to reduce the time for identifying the cause of error occurred in the field and improve the accuracy of identifying the error locations, operation of the controller system error diagnosis tool added to the host machine and the remedies for errors are described.

This manual can be used when the host machine is in the following conditions.

- When a failure of the Main Controller PCB and the related PCBs (child PCBs such as TPM installed on the Main Controller PCB) is suspected

PCBs and units diagnosed by the tool are as follow:



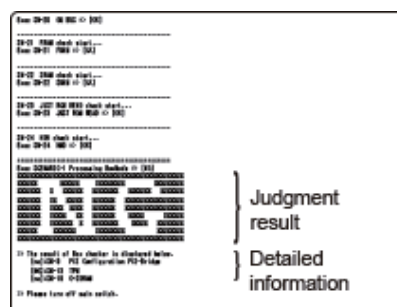
The area framed in blue (dotted line) in the figure shows the components to be checked by the controller system error diagnosis tool.

The Main Controller PCB, child PCBs installed on the Main Controller PCB and HDD are automatically checked, and the result is displayed on the Control Panel.



## When an error is detected by diagnosis

Detailed information is displayed under the judgment result. In detailed information, the name of the test where the error was detected is displayed.



## How to view the error result

The following screen is an enlarged view of the detailed information indicated above.

Explanation of the detailed error information is described.

```
>> The result of Box checker is displayed below.
[no] : SN-9 PCI Configuration PCI-Bridge
[NG] : SN-13 TPM
[no] : SN-19 O-SDRAM

>> Please Turn off main switch.
```

[NO] means that optional PCBs are not mounted.

A fault has occurred when [NO] is displayed irrespective of whether the Option PCB is attached.

[NG] means that an error occurred to PCBs mounted as standard.

## ■ Controller System Error Diagnosis Table

The error locations are identified according to the following table.

| Test name                     | Detailed test name   | Presumed failure location                        | Remedy  | Relevant Error Code |
|-------------------------------|--|--|---|---------------------|
| SN-1 MN-DDR3 SDRAM            | Check the SDRAM of the Main Controller PCB1  | • Main Controller PCB1                           | Replacement of the Main Controller PCB1                                     | -                   |
| SN-2 SM BUS MN DDR3 On Board  | Check the circuit in the Main Controller PCB1  | • Main Controller PCB1                           | Replacement of the Main Controller PCB1                                     | -                   |
| SN-5 PCI Configuration Caiman | Check the circuit in the Main Controller PCB1  | • Main Controller PCB1                           | Replacement of the Main Controller PCB1                                     | -                   |
| SN-8 CPLD                     | Check the circuit in the Main Controller PCB1  | • Main Controller PCB1                           | Replacement of the Main Controller PCB1                                     | -                   |
| SN-9 LANC FLASH               | Check the circuit in the Main Controller PCB1  | • Main Controller PCB1                           | Replacement of the Main Controller PCB1                                     | -                   |
| SN-10 RTC CHECK               | Check RTC setting time   | • Main Controller PCB1                           | Replacement of the Main Controller PCB1                                     | -                   |
| SN-11 TPM                     | Check TPM PCB device<br>Remarks: It is always [NG] in machines for China because the TPM PCB is not installed. | • Main Controller PCB1<br>• TPM PCB              | 1. Replacement of the TPM PCB<br>2. Replacement of the Main Controller PCB1 | E746                |
| SN-12 SOC DDR3 SDRAM          | Check the circuit in the Main Controller PCB1  | • Main Controller PCB1<br>• Main Controller PCB2 | Replacement of the Main Controller PCB1                                     | -                   |
| SN-13 FRAM                    | Check the Memory PCB lead  | • Memory PCB                                     | 1. Check the Memory PCB installation<br>2. Replace the Memory PCB           | E355                |





## • HDD S.M.A.R.T Information

### S.M.A.R.T Check

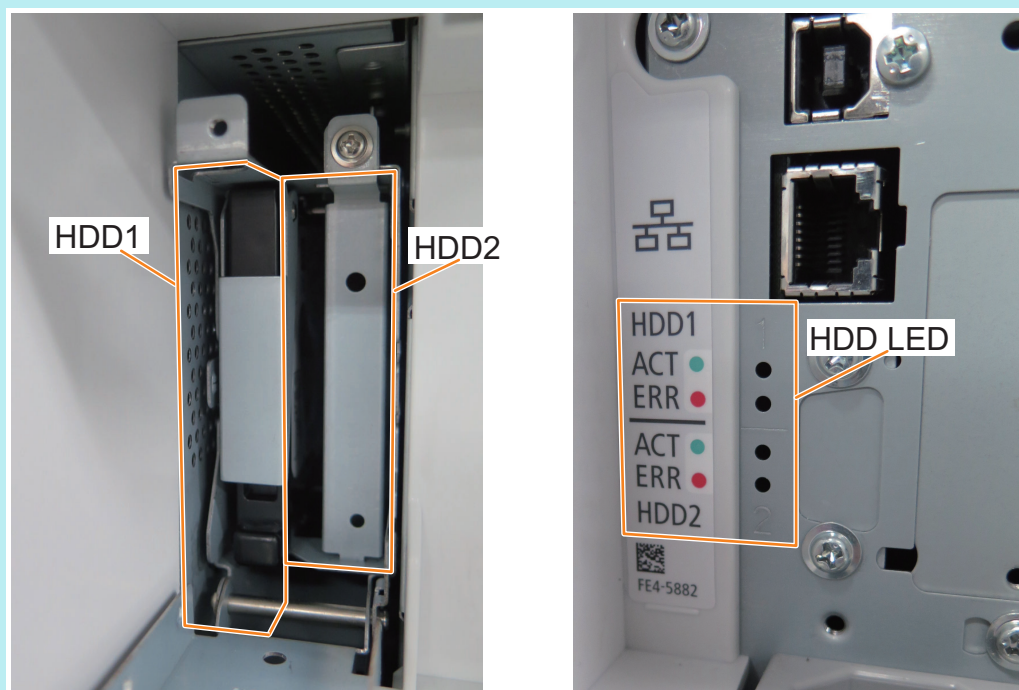
| S.M.A.R.T Check                                  | Description   | Remedy  |
|--|---|---|
| 05: Reallocated Sectors Count: [000000000000]    | Number of alternative processed defective sectors   | If a numeric value besides [000000000000] is displayed, backup is recommended to avoid losing customer data.  |
| c5: Current Pending Sector Count: [000000000000] | Number of pending sectors (sectors that may have defective sectors)                           | If a numeric value apart from [000000000000] is displayed, backup is recommended to avoid losing customer data.   |
| c6: Uncorrectable Sector Count: [000000000000]   | Number of defective sectors (uncorrectable sectors) which do not allow alternative processing | If a numeric value apart from [000000000000] is displayed, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• backup is recommended to avoid losing customer data.</li> <li>• Replace the HDD</li> </ul> * Alarm 31-0008 may have occurred in the Host Machine. |

#### NOTE:

When replacing one of the mirrored HDDs, replace the HDD indicated in the controller self-diagnosis result or indicated by the error display of the HDD LED.

Of the two HDDs installed, the HDD installed on the front side is the HDD 1 (on the left in the picture), and the HDD installed on the rear side is the HDD 2 (on the right in the picture).

The location of the LED and the location of the HDD differ depending on the model. A reference example is shown below.



Reference example

## ● Limitations

- If there is a problem with the test name (SN-1, 2, 8, 12), this diagnosis tool itself will not startup.
- When no PCBs are installed on the Main Controller PCB, the following judgment results are displayed.

Standard PCB: [NG]

Optional PCB: [OK]

However, [NO] is displayed in detailed error information for optional PCBs.



# Error/Jam/Alarm

|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Outline.....                | 699 |
| Error Code.....             | 706 |
| Error Code (FAX).....       | 840 |
| Limited Functions Mode..... | 843 |
| Alarm Code.....             | 844 |
| Jam Code.....               | 896 |

## Outline

This chapter describes various codes which are displayed when a failure occurs on the product. These are classified into 3 codes as follows.

| Code type  | Explanation   |
|------------|---|
| Error code | This code is displayed when an error occurs on the machine.             |
| Jam code   | This code is displayed when a jam occurs inside the machine.            |
| Alarm code | This code is displayed when a function of the machine is malfunctioned. |

### Error code notation

An error code is shown in 7-digit [E000XXX] on the display on the operation panel. However, [000] in 2 to 4 digit is not used. Thus, an error code is described as [EXXX] using 5 to 7 digit in the service manual. (e.g.: E012 = E000012)

### Location Code

Error code, jam code, and alarm code include the location information.

Location information is displayed as 2-digit numbers as follows. In the jam display screen, the "L" row corresponds to the location code.

| No. | DATE | TIME1 | TIME2 | L  | CODE | P  | CNTR   | SIZE  |
|-----|------|-------|-------|----|------|----|--------|-------|
| 01  | 0401 | 1618  | 1620  | 02 | 1400 | 00 | 473634 | ----- |
| 02  | 0401 | 1422  | 1423  | 00 | 0205 | F0 | 503838 | A4    |
| 03  | 0325 | 1056  | 1057  | 00 | 0205 | F0 | 251303 | A4    |
| 04  | 0324 | 1057  | 1059  | 00 | 0093 | F0 | 502120 | ----- |
| 05  | 0316 | 1721  | 1721  | 00 | 0205 | F0 | 500558 | A4    |
| 06  | 0313 | 1557  | 1558  | 00 | 0113 | 01 | 469400 | A4    |
| 07  | 0311 | 0939  | 0941  | 00 | 0205 | 01 | 499686 | A4    |
| 08  | 0311 | 0930  | 0930  | 00 | 0113 | 02 | 499603 | A4    |

Location code display example

| Device                                       | Location code |   |                        |
|--|---------------|---|------------------------|
|  | JAM           | ERR   | ALARM                  |
| imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6780/6765/6755 series | 00            | Main Controller = 00<br>Printer engine = 05 | Others of listed below |
| Duplex Color Image Reader Unit               | 01            | 04  | 02,33,50               |
| Paper Deck Unit-E1                           | 00            | 05  | 04                     |
| POD Deck Lite-C1                             | 00            | 05  | 04                     |
| Staple Finisher-AC1, Booklet Finisher-AC1    | 02            | 02  | 61,62,65               |
| Paper Folding Inserter Unit-J1               | 02            | 02  | -                      |
| FAX Board                                    | -             | 07  | -                      |

## Pickup Position Code

When a jam occurs, the pickup location is indicated with the following pickup position code. (On the jam display screen, the pickup position code is shown in the "P" column.)

| Display                                | I/O  | Adjust | Function | Option | Test | Counter |        |       |
|--|------|--------|----------|--------|------|---------|--------|-------|
| < JAM > < 1/ 7 > < READY > < LEVEL 1 > |      |        |          |        |      |         |        |       |
| No.                                    | DATE | TIME1  | TIME2    | L      | CODE | P       | CNTR   | SIZE  |
| 01                                     | 0401 | 1618   | 1620     | 02     | 1400 | 00      | 473634 | ----- |
| 02                                     | 0401 | 1422   | 1423     | 00     | 0205 | F0      | 503838 | A4    |
| 03                                     | 0325 | 1056   | 1057     | 00     | 0205 | F0      | 251303 | A4    |
| 04                                     | 0324 | 1057   | 1059     | 00     | 0D93 | F0      | 502120 | ----- |
| 05                                     | 0316 | 1721   | 1721     | 00     | 0205 | F0      | 500558 | A4    |
| 06                                     | 0313 | 1557   | 1558     | 00     | 0113 | 01      | 469400 | A4    |
| 07                                     | 0311 | 0939   | 0941     | 00     | 0205 | 01      | 499686 | A4    |
| 08                                     | 0311 | 0930   | 0930     | 00     | 0113 | 02      | 499603 | A4    |

Display example of pickup position code

| Pickup position code | Pickup position   |
|----------------------|---|
| 00                   | At Finisher jam/At error avoidance jam/At ADF jam without pickup operation (at SEND, Inbox, etc.) |
| 01                   | Cassette 1  |
| 02                   | Cassette 2  |
| 03                   | Cassette 3  |
| 04                   | Cassette 4  |
| 05                   | Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Assembly  |
| F0                   | 2-sided   |

## Pickup size

When a jam occurs, a paper size is displayed. (The row displaying "SIZE" on the jam screen refers to the paper size.)

| Display                                | I/O  | Adjust | Function | Option | Test | Counter |        |       |
|--|------|--------|----------|--------|------|---------|--------|-------|
| < JAM > < 1/ 7 > < READY > < LFWFI 1 > |      |        |          |        |      |         |        |       |
| No.                                    | DATE | TIME1  | TIME2    | L      | CODE | P       | CNTR   | SIZE  |
| 01                                     | 0401 | 1618   | 1620     | 02     | 1400 | 00      | 473634 | ----- |
| 02                                     | 0401 | 1422   | 1423     | 00     | 0205 | F0      | 503838 | A4    |
| 03                                     | 0325 | 1056   | 1057     | 00     | 0205 | F0      | 251303 | A4    |
| 04                                     | 0324 | 1057   | 1059     | 00     | 0D93 | F0      | 502120 | ----- |
| 05                                     | 0316 | 1721   | 1721     | 00     | 0205 | F0      | 500558 | A4    |
| 06                                     | 0313 | 1557   | 1558     | 00     | 0113 | 01      | 469400 | A4    |
| 07                                     | 0311 | 0939   | 0941     | 00     | 0205 | 01      | 499686 | A4    |
| 08                                     | 0311 | 0930   | 0930     | 00     | 0113 | 02      | 499603 | A4    |

Due to the limitation of displayable number of characters, some paper size names are omitted. The following is the list of displayed row of texts and corresponding paper sizes.

\* The following is based on the display specification and not all paper sizes can actually be used.



| Display | Paper Size      | Display  | Paper Size            |
|---------|-----------------|----------|-----------------------|
| A0      | A0              | LDR      | LEDGER                |
| A1      | A1              | LDRFB    | LEDGERFULLBLEED       |
| A2      | A2              | LGL      | LEGAL                 |
| A3      | A3              | LTR      | LETTER                |
| A3FB    | A3FULLBLEED     | EXE      | EXECUTIVE             |
| A4      | A4              | STMT     | STATEMENT             |
| A5      | A5              | 10x8     | 10x8                  |
| A6      | A6              | 12x18    | 12x18                 |
| A7      | A7              | 13x19    | 13x19                 |
| I-B0    | ISOB0           | 15x11    | 15x11                 |
| I-B1    | ISOB1           | 17x22    | 17x22                 |
| I-B2    | ISOB2           | 18x24    | 18x24                 |
| I-B3    | ISOB3           | A-FLS    | Australian-FOOLSCAP   |
| I-B4    | ISOB4           | ALGL     | Argentina-LEGAL       |
| I-B5    | ISOB5           | ALTR     | Argentina-LETTER      |
| I-B6    | ISOB6           | OFI      | OFICIO                |
| I-B7    | ISOB7           | A-OFI    | Argentina-OFICIO      |
| I-C0    | ISOC0           | B-OFI    | Bolivia-OFICIO        |
| I-C1    | ISOC1           | E-OFI    | Ecuador-OFICIO        |
| I-C2    | ISOC2           | M-OFI    | Mexico-OFICIO         |
| I-C3    | ISOC3           | KLGL     | Korea-LEGAL           |
| I-C4    | ISOC4           | GLGL     | Government-LEGAL      |
| I-C5    | ISOC5           | GLTR     | Government-LETTER     |
| I-C6    | ISOC6           | IND-LGL  | India-LEGAL           |
| I-C7    | ISOC7           | COM10    | COM10                 |
| I-SRA3  | SRA3            | DL       | DL                    |
| J-B0    | JISB0           | E_C2     | Nagagata 2            |
| J-B1    | JISB1           | E_C3     | Nagagata 3            |
| J-B2    | JISB2           | E_C4     | Nagagata 4            |
| J-B3    | JISB3           | E_C5     | Nagagata 5            |
| J-B4    | JISB4           | E-K2     | Kakugata 2            |
| J-B5    | JISB5           | E_K3     | Kakugata 3            |
| J-B6    | JISB6           | E_K4     | Kakugata 4            |
| J-B7    | JISB7           | E_K5     | Kakugata 5            |
| K16     | K16             | E_K6     | Kakugata 6            |
| K8      | K8              | E_K7     | Kakugata 7            |
| ND-PCD  | Newdry Postcard | E_K8     | Kakugata 8            |
| OTHER   | OTHER           | E_Y1     | Yougata 1             |
| PCARD   | Postcard        | E-Y2     | Yougata 2             |
| PCARD4  | 4 on 1 Postcard | E_Y3     | Yougata 3             |
| F4A     | F4A             | E-Y4     | Yougata 4             |
| F4B     | F4B             | E_Y5     | Yougata 5             |
| FLSC    | FOOLCAP         | E_Y6     | Yougata 6             |
| FOLIO   | FLIO            | E_Y7     | Yougata 7             |
| FREE    | FREE SIZE       | EVLP_YN3 | Yougatanaga 3         |
| ICARD   | INDEXCARD       | E-B5     | B5 Envelope           |
| USER    | Custom          | E-C5     | C5 Envelope           |
|         |                 | MONA     | MONARCH               |
|         |                 | EVLP     | Unknown size envelope |

## Points to Note When Clearing MN-CON

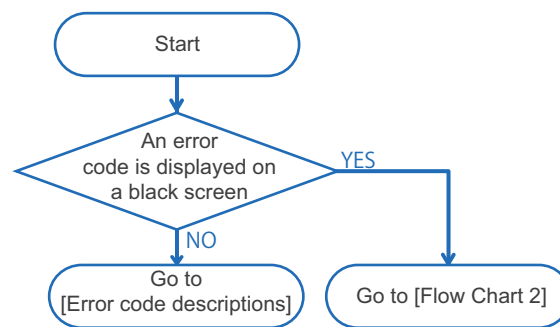
- Execution of clearing MN-COM deletes all data in Address Book, Forwarding Settings, Settings/Registration (Adjustment/Maintenance, Function Settings, Set Destination, Management Settings, TPM Settings), etc. Before execution of this operation, ask user to back up the data and get approval for this operation.
- Clearing MN-CON will clear the service mode setting values. Be sure to enter the service mode setting values again in accordance with the configuration of the options of the host machine and requests from the user.
- When clearing MN-CON while any login application other than User Authentication is, error such as not displayed login screen occurred. In this case, access SMS once and switch login application to User Authentication to recover to the normal status.

## Points to Note When Clearing HDD

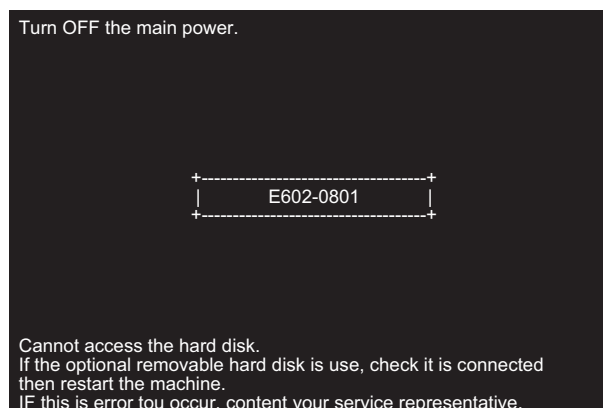
As a remedy for error codes (E602-XXXX), HDD partition is selected and the target partition may be cleared. When clearing partition, be sure to check which data will be deleted by referring Detail of HDD partition and explain to the user before starting work.

## Remedies to be performed when E602-xxxx or E614-xxxx error is displayed

Remedy procedure for E602 or E614 differs according to the status of the screen where error is displayed. Check the remedy procedure by referring to the following flow chart.



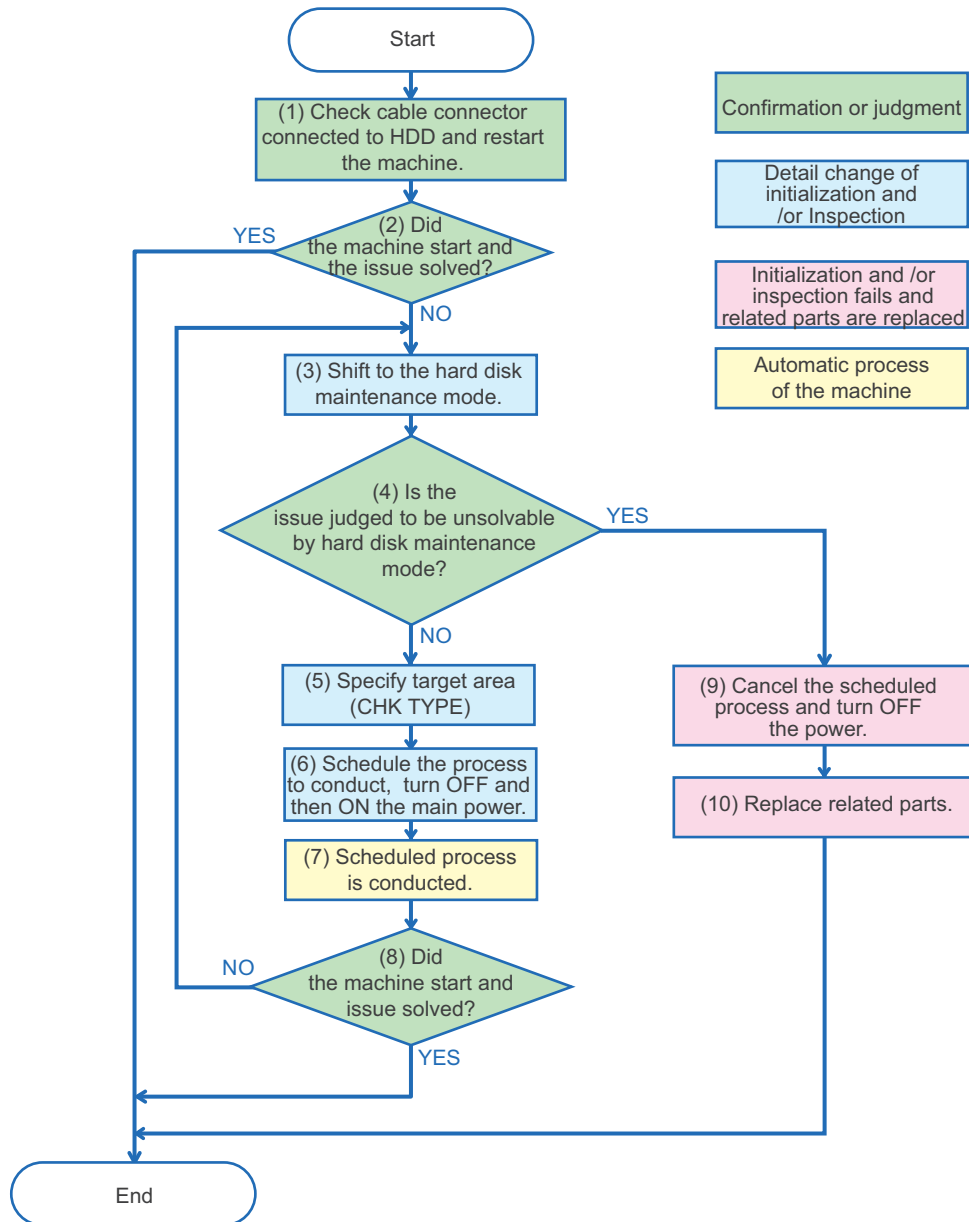
Flow Chart 1



Display Sample : If an error code is displayed on a black screen

Execute a remedy described in service mode by referring to [Error / Jam / Alarm](#) in the Service Manual. If an error code and a message is displayed on a black screen (as above), shift to the hard disk maintenance mode referring to the Flow Chart 2 and execute the remedy described in [Error / Jam / Alarm](#) in the Service Manual.





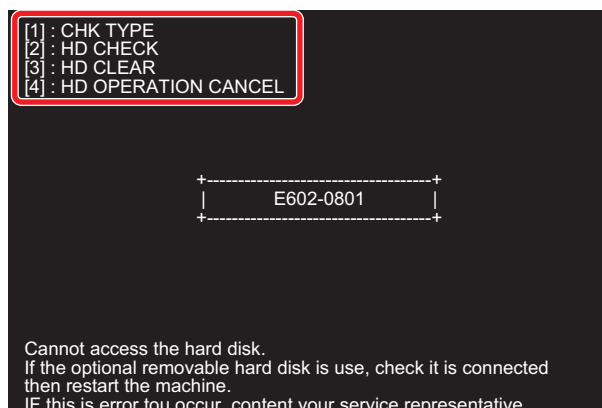
Flow Chart 2

**CAUTION:**

Numbers in the Flow Chart 2 are corresponding to the procedure numbers. Check the remedy procedure by referring to the flow chart.

1. Check cable connector connected to the hard disk and restart the machine.
2. Check if the machine is started normally. If the machine is started normally, the analysis is complete.

3. If the machine is not started normally, execute key operation to shift to the service mode for shifting to hard disk maintenance mode.

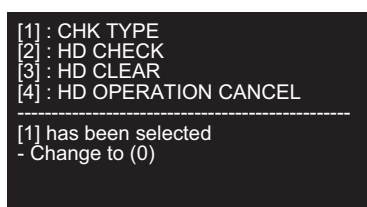


Example of hard disk maintenance mode screen

4. Determine if the issue is solved in the hard disk maintenance mode.

- Proceed to 5 for diagnosis for the first time or trying to restore with the hard disk maintenance mode.
- If the issue cannot be solved by hard disk maintenance (HD-CHECK/HD-CLEAR is not executed or issue unsolved even executed), proceed to 9.

5. Press "1" of Numeric Keypad, then two digits number to specify the target area (CHK TYPE).



**CAUTION:**

The CHK - TYPE to be specified needs to be entered in two digits even the number to be specified is one digit. Enter "01" to specify "1" and enter "04" to specify "4".

For example, in the case of the display (E602-0801), specify No. 8 because Partition No. 8 is in error. (Enter the number as "08")

If you made a mistake, press "1" again then enter two digits number.

6. Specify and schedule the process stated as a remedy for error code by referring to the Flow chart No.6, "Error / Jam / Alarm" in the Service Manual. Then turn OFF and then ON the main power of the machine.

- To schedule disk check (COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM >HD-CHECK), select [2]:HD-CHECK.
- To schedule formatting (COPIER / FUNCTION / SYSTEM /HD-CLEAR), select [3]:HD CLEAR.

**NOTE:**

When the menu [2] to [4] is selected, key cannot be re-entered. If you made a wrong selection, Turn OFF and then ON the main power of the machine, shift to hard disk maintenance mode and specify again.

7. Scheduled process is automatically executed.

8. If the process is complete and the machine is restarted normally, analysis is complete.

The same black screen and the error code is displayed, shift back to the hard disk maintenance mode and conduct other maintenance.

9. Consider the HDD cannot be restored, select [4] and cancel the schedule. Switch OFF the main power of the machine.

```
[1] : CHK TYPE
[2] : HD CHECK
[3] : HD CLEAR
[4] : HD OPERATION CANCEL
-----
[4] has been selected
Turn OFF the main power.
```

**CAUTION:**

Replacing HDD without canceling the schedule causes the scheduled process is executed to replaced HDD at the next normal startup.

When replacing parts, specify [4] to cancel the schedule.

10. Refer to the Service Manual to replace the related parts.

**NOTE:**

Related parts for E602

- Harness between main controller PCB and the HDD
- HDD
- Main Controller PCB

Related parts for E614

- Flash PCB
- Main Controller PCB

## Error Code

### Error Code Details

| E000-0001-05                 | Fixing Thermistor low temperature detection error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | After temperature control of the Fixing Roller, the Fixing Main Thermistor detected 70 deg C or lower.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J129, J104 and J105) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Fixing Main Thermistor (THM01/J3271) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DC DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Fixing Power Supply PCB</li> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J118 and J119) to Relay Connector (19P and 13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER IH)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (19P and 13P) to Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J312 and J314) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J9004) and the Fixing Heater (CB1005) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J108 and J101) and the Relay PCB (UN86/J522 and J515) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J414, J411, J412 and J413) and the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J128, J126, J125 and J124) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Fixing Heater Unit (CB1005)</li> <li>- Fixing Main Thermistor (THM01) (Unit of replacement: THERMISTOR UNIT, MAIN)</li> <li>- Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3) (Unit of replacement: IH POWER SUPPLY PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/>After performing the remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; CLEAR&gt; ERR.</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

| E000-0002-05                 | Fixing Thermistor low temperature detection error  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | After temperature control of the Fixing Roller, the Fixing Main Thermistor detected 10 deg C or lower.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J129, J104 and J105) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Fixing Main Thermistor (THM01/J3271) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DC DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Fixing Power Supply PCB               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J118 and J119) to Relay Connector (19P and 13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER IH)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (19P and 13P) to Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J312 and J314) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH SIGNAL)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harness between the Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J9004) and the Fixing Heater (CB1005) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J108 and J101) and the Relay PCB (UN86/J522 and J515) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J414, J411, J412 and J413) and the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J128, J126, J125 and J124) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Fixing Heater Unit (CB1005)</li> <li>- Fixing Main Thermistor (THM01) (Unit of replacement: THERMISTOR UNIT, MAIN)</li> <li>- Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3) (Unit of replacement: IH POWER SUPPLY PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/>           After performing the remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; CLEAR&gt; ERR.</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| E000-0010-05                 | Fixing Thermistor low temperature detection error  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Turning OFF and then ON the power without clearing the error.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Go through the following to clear the error: COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> ERR.   |

| E001-0002-05                 | Fixing Thermistor high temperature detection error   |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Fixing Main Thermistor in the Fixing Assembly detected 230 deg C or higher.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J129, J104 and J105) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Fixing Thermistor (THM01/J3271, THM02/J3206 and THM04/J3204) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DC DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Fixing Power Supply PCB               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J118 and J119) to Relay Connector (19P and 13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER IH)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (19P and 13P) to Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J312 and J314) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH SIGNAL)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J108 and J101) and the Relay PCB (UN86/J522 and J515) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J414, J411, J412 and J413) and the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J128, J126, J125 and J124) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Fixing Main Thermistor (THM01) (Unit of replacement: THERMISTOR UNIT, MAIN)</li> <li>- Fixing Sub Thermistor 1 and 2 (THM02 and THM04) (Unit of replacement: THERMISTOR UNIT, SUB)</li> <li>- Fixing Upper Unit (Unit of replacement: FIXING ASS'Y, UPPER)</li> <li>- Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3) (Unit of replacement: IH POWER SUPPLY PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/>           After performing the remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; CLEAR&gt; ERR.</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

| E001-0003-05                 | Fixing Assembly high temperature error (hardware detection)  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The Fixing Main Thermistor (THM1) detects hardware overheating.</li> <li>- The Fixing Sub Thermistor 1 (THM2)/Fixing Sub Thermistor 2 (THM3) detects hardware overheating.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J129, J104 and J105) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Fixing Thermistor (THM01/J3271, THM02/J3206 and THM04/J3204) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DC DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Fixing Power Supply PCB</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J118 and J119) to Relay Connector (19P and 13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER IH)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (19P and 13P) to Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J312 and J314) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH SIGNAL)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J108 and J101) and the Relay PCB (UN86/J522 and J515) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J414, J411, J412 and J413) and the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J128, J126, J125 and J124) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Fixing Main Thermistor (THM01) (Unit of replacement: THERMISTOR UNIT, MAIN)</li> <li>- Fixing Sub Thermistor 1 and 2 (THM02 and THM04) (Unit of replacement: THERMISTOR UNIT, SUB)</li> <li>- Fixing Upper Unit (Unit of replacement: FIXING ASS'Y, UPPER)</li> <li>- Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3) (Unit of replacement: IH POWER SUPPLY PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> After performing the remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; CLEAR&gt; ERR.</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |



| E001-0004-05                 | Fixing Thermistor high temperature detection error   |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Abnormal temperature difference among the Thermistors was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J129, J104 and J105) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Fixing Thermistor (THM01/J3271, THM02/J3206 and THM04/J3204) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DC DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Fixing Power Supply PCB               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J118 and J119) to Relay Connector (19P and 13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER IH)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (19P and 13P) to Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J312 and J314) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH SIGNAL)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J108 and J101) and the Relay PCB (UN86/J522 and J515) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J414, J411, J412 and J413) and the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J128, J126, J125 and J124) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Fixing Main Thermistor (THM01) (Unit of replacement: THERMISTOR UNIT, MAIN)</li> <li>- Fixing Sub Thermistor 1 and 2 (THM02 and THM04) (Unit of replacement: THERMISTOR UNIT, SUB)</li> <li>- Fixing Upper Unit (Unit of replacement: FIXING ASS'Y, UPPER)</li> <li>- Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3) (Unit of replacement: IH POWER SUPPLY PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/>           After performing the remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; CLEAR&gt; ERR.</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| E001-0010-05                 | Fixing Thermistor high temperature detection error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Turning OFF and then ON the power without clearing the error.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Go through the following to clear the error: COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> ERR.   |

| E002-0001-05                 | Fixing Thermistor temperature increase detection error  |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | After the start of temperature control of the Fixing Roller, the Fixing Main Thermistor detected abnormal temperature rise.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J129, J104 and J105) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Fixing Main Thermistor (THM01/J3271) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3200) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DC DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Fixing Power Supply PCB               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J118 and J119) to Relay Connector (19P and 13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER IH)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (19P and 13P) to Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J312 and J314) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH SIGNAL)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J108 and J101) and the Relay PCB (UN86/J522 and J515) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J414, J411, J412 and J413) and the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J128, J126, J125 and J124) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Fixing Main Thermistor (THM01) (Unit of replacement: THERMISTOR UNIT, MAIN)</li> <li>- Fixing Upper Unit (Unit of replacement: FIXING ASS'Y, UPPER)</li> <li>- Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3) (Unit of replacement: IH POWER SUPPLY PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/>           After performing the remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; CLEAR&gt; ERR.</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| E002-0010-05                 | Fixing Thermistor low temperature detection error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Turning OFF and then ON the power without clearing the error.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Go through the following to clear the error: COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> ERR.  |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E003-0000-05</b>          | <b>Fixing Thermistor temperature decrease error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Fixing Main Thermistor detects 70 degC or lower for 2 seconds or longer although the temperature reached above 100 degC after starting the Fixing Roller temperature control.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J129, J104 and J105) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Fixing Main Thermistor (THM01/J3271) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DC DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Fixing Power Supply PCB               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J118 and J119) to Relay Connector (19P and 13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER IH)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (19P and 13P) to Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J312 and J314) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH SIGNAL)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J108 and J101) and the Relay PCB (UN86/J522 and J515) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J414, J411, J412 and J413) and the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J128, J126, J125 and J124) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Fixing Main Thermistor (THM01) (Unit of replacement: THERMISTOR UNIT, MAIN)</li> <li>- Fixing Upper Unit (Unit of replacement: FIXING ASS'Y, UPPER)</li> <li>- Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3) (Unit of replacement: IH POWER SUPPLY PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/>After performing the remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; CLEAR&gt; ERR.</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E003-0010-05</b>          | <b>Fixing Thermistor low temperature detection error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Turning OFF and then ON the power without clearing the error.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Go through the following to clear the error: COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> ERR.   |
| <b>E004-0001-05</b>          | <b>Fixing Power Supply error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error in the fixing current was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Fixing Power Supply PCB               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J118 and J119) to Relay Connector (19P and 13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER IH)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (19P and 13P) to Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J312 and J314) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH SIGNAL)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3) (Unit of replacement: IH POWER SUPPLY PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/>After performing the remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; CLEAR&gt; ERR.</p>  |
| <b>E004-0010-05</b>          | <b>Fixing Thermistor low temperature detection error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Turning OFF and then ON the power without clearing the error.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Go through the following to clear the error: COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> ERR.   |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E004-0205-05</b>          | <b>Fixing Power Supply error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Detect that the Fixing Main Thermistor is not connected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J104 and J105) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) and the Fixing Main Thermistor (THM01/J3271) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DC DRAWER)</li> <li>- Fixing Main Thermistor (Unit of replacement: THERMISTOR UNIT, MAIN)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/>After performing the remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; CLEAR&gt; ERR.</p>   |
| <b>E005-0000-05</b>          | <b>Fixing Cleaning Web absent error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | After noticing the Fixing Cleaning Web absent, the web was pulled out 65250 times.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace the Fixing Cleaning Web. (Unit of replacement: CLEANER SUPPLY ROLL)</li> <li>2. Replace the Fixing Cleaning Web Level Sensor (PS45).</li> <li>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN1). (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ol> <p>After performing the remedy work, perform the following.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Clear the counter value of the Fixing Cleaning Web (COPIER&gt; COUNTER&gt; MISC&gt; FIXWEB). Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>- Go through the following to clear the error: COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; CLEAR&gt; ERR.</li> </ul> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> </ul>   |
| <b>E005-0001-05</b>          | <b>Error in Fixing Cleaning Web Drive Solenoid connection</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Disconnection of the Fixing Cleaning Web Drive Solenoid was detected at power-on.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Fixing Cleaning Web Drive Solenoid to the Fixing Drawer Unit</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fixing Cleaning Web Drive Solenoid (SL09/J2162) to Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING MOTOR, 1, CABLE, FIXING MOTOR)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DC DRAWER)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J129, J104 and J105) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J108 and J101) and the Relay PCB (UN86/J522 and J515) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the Relay PCB (UN86/J512) and the DC Power Supply PCB (24V) (J202A) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, DC 24V, A)</li> <li>- Harness between the Relay PCB (UN86/J513) and the DC Power Supply PCB (24V) (J202B) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, DC 24V, B)</li> <li>- Harness between the AC Driver PCB (UN20/J606) and the DC Power Supply PCB (24V) (J102A/J102B) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, AC MAIN)</li> <li>- Harness between the AC Driver PCB (UN20/J611) and the Relay PCB (UN86/J507F) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, AC DRIVER RELAY)</li> <li>- Fixing Cleaning Web Drive Solenoid (SL09)</li> <li>- DC Power Supply PCB (24V) (Unit of replacement: 24V POWER SUPPLY ASS'Y, LEFT)</li> <li>- DC Power Supply PCB (24V) (Unit of replacement: 24V POWER SUPPLY ASS'Y, RIGHT)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- AC Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: AC DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/>After performing the remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; CLEAR&gt; ERR.</p> |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E012-0001-05</b>          | <b>Drum Motor error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Lock error of the Drum Motor was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J109) and the Drum Motor (M01/J2138) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Relay PCB to the Drum Motor               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Relay PCB (UN86/J520) to Relay Connector (5P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (5P) to Drum Motor (M01/J2151) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Drum Motor (M01)</li> <li>- Drum Drive Unit (Unit of replacement: DRUM DRIVE ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- If the gear group of the Drum Drive Unit is not rotated, replace the unit.</li> <li>- Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ul> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E013-0001-05</b>          | <b>Waste Toner Lock detection error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Waste Toner Lock Detection Switch detects locked at power-on.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J103) and the Waste Toner Lock Detection Switch (SW05/J3050) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER RELAY)</li> <li>- Waste Toner Lock Detection Switch (SW05) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LOCK DETECT SWITCH)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>   |
| <b>E013-0002-05</b>          | <b>Waste Toner Lock detection error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Waste Toner Lock Detection Switch detects locked while the Developing Assembly is driven.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J103) and the Waste Toner Lock Detection Switch (SW05/J3050) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER RELAY)</li> <li>- Waste Toner Lock Detection Switch (SW05) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LOCK DETECT SWITCH)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the Waste Toner Container and the Waste Toner Pipe, and remove clogged toner if there is any.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul>  |

| E013-0003-05                 | Waste toner full detection error   |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Output was detected while the Waste Toner Full Sensor was OFF.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Toner Sensor</li> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J151) to Relay Connector (7P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, DECK, LEFT)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (7P) to Relay Connector (4P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, WASTE TONER RELAY, 2)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (4P) to Toner Sensor (TS04/J5003) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, WASTE TONER RELAY, 3)</li> <li>- Toner Sensor (TS04) (Unit of replacement: SENSOR, TONER)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| E014-0001-05                 | Fixing Motor error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Lock error of the Fixing Motor was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J104 and J105) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Relay PCB (UN86/J520) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3218M) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) and the Fixing Motor (M03/J2163P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING MOTOR, 1)</li> <li>- Fixing Drive Unit (Unit of replacement: FIXING DRIVE ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Fixing Drive Gear (Unit of replacement: GEAR,71T/26T, GEAR, 20T, GEAR, 33T/20T, GEAR, 16T/38T)</li> <li>- Fixing Motor (M03)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy]<br/>Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>   |



| E017-0001-05                 | ETB disengagement error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Disengagement of the ETB is not completed within the specified period of time.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Duplex Driver PCB to the ETB Disengage Sensor               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J343) to Relay Connector (8P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (8P) to ETB Disengage Sensor (PS56/J2101) (Unit of replacement: SOLENOID ASSEMBLY)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harnesses from the Duplex Driver PCB to the ETB Engage Sensor               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J343) to Relay Connector (8P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (8P) to ETB Engage Sensor (PS55/J2100) (Unit of replacement: SOLENOID ASSEMBLY)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harness between the Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J331) and the Duplex Feed Left Motor (M19/J2111) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MOTOR)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J431, J9, J432 and J8) and the Fixing Feed Drawer Unit (J5005) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J300 and J301) and the Fixing Feed Drawer Unit (J5005) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>- ETB Disengage Sensor (PS56)</li> <li>- ETB Engage Sensor (PS55)</li> <li>- Duplex Feed Left Motor (M19)</li> <li>- Duplex Driver PCB (UN80) (Unit of replacement: DUPLEXING DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/>           [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/>           - Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/>           - Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</p> |
| E017-0002-05                 | ETB engagement error  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Engagement of the ETB is not completed within the specified period of time.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Duplex Driver PCB to the ETB Engage Sensor               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J343) to Relay Connector (8P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (8P) to ETB Engage Sensor (PS55/J2100) (Unit of replacement: SOLENOID ASSEMBLY)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harnesses from the Duplex Driver PCB to the ETB Disengage Sensor               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J343) to Relay Connector (8P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (8P) to ETB Disengage Sensor (PS56/J2101) (Unit of replacement: SOLENOID ASSEMBLY)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harness between the Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J331) and the Duplex Feed Left Motor (M19/J2111) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MOTOR)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J431, J9, J432 and J8) and the Fixing Feed Drawer Unit (J5005) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J300 and J301) and the Fixing Feed Drawer Unit (J5005) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>- ETB Engage Sensor (PS55)</li> <li>- ETB Disengage Sensor (PS56)</li> <li>- Duplex Feed Left Motor (M19)</li> <li>- Duplex Driver PCB (UN80) (Unit of replacement: DUPLEXING DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/>           [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/>           - Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/>           - Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</p> |



| E017-0003-05                 | ETB HP error   |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Engagement of the ETB was not completed at initialization.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Duplex Driver PCB to the ETB Disengage Sensor               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J343) to Relay Connector (8P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (8P) to ETB Disengage Sensor (PS56/J2101) (Unit of replacement: SOLENOID ASSEMBLY)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harnesses from the Duplex Driver PCB to the ETB Engage Sensor               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J343) to Relay Connector (8P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (8P) to ETB Engage Sensor (PS55/J2100) (Unit of replacement: SOLENOID ASSEMBLY)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harness between the Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J331) and the Duplex Feed Left Motor (M19/J2111) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MOTOR)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J431, J9, J432 and J8) and the Fixing Feed Drawer Unit (J5005) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J300 and J301) and the Fixing Feed Drawer Unit (J5005) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>- ETB Disengage Sensor (PS56)</li> <li>- ETB Engage Sensor (PS55)</li> <li>- Duplex Feed Left Motor (M19)</li> <li>- Duplex Driver PCB (UN80) (Unit of replacement: DUPLEXING DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check the ETB Disengagement Member (Transfer Frame Stopper). If it is left unremoved, remove it.</li> <li>- Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ul> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- To remove the ETB Disengagement Member, refer to the troubleshooting "Remedy to be implemented when the ETB Disengagement Member (Transfer Frame Stopper) is left unremoved" in the Service Manual.</li> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</li> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

| E020-0000-05                 | Developing Assembly toner absent error   |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The state without toner in the Developing Assembly was detected consecutively.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Developing Toner Sensor               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J114) to Relay Connector (31P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (31P) to Relay Connector (25P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, RELAY, FRONT)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (25P) to Developing Toner Sensor (TS01/J2133) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Buffer Unit               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J115) to Relay Connector (21P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Harness (21P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, RELAY, FRONT)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (21P) to Buffer Unit (J3124) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harness connecting from the Buffer Unit (J3124) to the Magnet Roller Clutch (CL05/J2036), Toner Feed Motor (M28/J2035) and Buffer Toner Sensor 2 (TS03/J2039) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, BUFFER)</li> <li>- Developing Toner Sensor (TS01)</li> <li>- Magnet Roller Clutch (CL05)</li> <li>- Toner Feed Motor (M28)</li> <li>- Buffer Toner Sensor 2 (TS03)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/>           [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/>           - Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/>           - Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</p> |
| E020-0001-05                 | Error in Developing Toner Sensor connection detection  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The connection detection port was OFF at power-on.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the main Driver PCB to the Developing Toner Sensor               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J114) to Relay Connector (31P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (31P) to Relay Connector (25P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, RELAY, FRONT)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (25P) to Developing Toner Sensor (TS01/J2133) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Developing Toner Sensor (TS01)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/>           [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/>           - Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/>           - Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</p>   |

| E020-0002-05                 | Error in Buffer Toner Sensor connection detection  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The connection detection port was OFF at power-on.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Buffer Unit</li> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J115) to Relay Connector (21P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Harness (21P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, RELAY, FRONT)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (21P) to Buffer Unit (J3124) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> <li>- Harness between the Buffer Unit (J3124) to the Buffer Toner Sensor 2 (TS03/J2039) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, BUFFER)</li> <li>- Buffer Toner Sensor 2 (TS03)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/> - Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/> - Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</p>                   |
| E020-0003-05                 | Error in the Toner Excess Supply Sensor connection detection   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The connection detection port was OFF at power-on.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Buffer Unit</li> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J115) to Relay Connector (21P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Harness (21P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, RELAY, FRONT)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (21P) to Buffer Unit (J3124) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> <li>- Harness between the Buffer Unit (J3124) and the Toner Excess Supply Sensor (TS02/J2038) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, BUFFER)</li> <li>- Toner Excess Supply Sensor (TS02)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/> - Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/> - Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</p>        |
| E020-0004-05                 | Error in Developing Buffer Clutch connection detection   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The connection detection port was OFF 2 consecutive times at power-on and 100 ms polling of normal status.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Buffer Unit</li> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J115) to Relay Connector (21P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Harness (21P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, RELAY, FRONT)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (21P) to Buffer Unit (J3124) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> <li>- Harness between the Buffer Unit (J3124) and the Developing Buffer Clutch (CL05/J2036) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, BUFFER)</li> <li>- Developing Buffer Clutch (CL05)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)[7100-0001]</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/> - Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/> - Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</p> |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E020-0020-05</b>          | <b>Developing Toner Sensor Cleaning Scraper error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Disengagement of the Developing Toner Sensor Cleaning Scraper was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Replace the Developing Assembly.   |
| <b>E020-0021-05</b>          | <b>Developing Toner Sensor Cleaning Scraper error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | It was detected that the Developing Toner Sensor Cleaning Scraper was being bent.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Replace the Developing Assembly.   |
| <b>E023-0001-05</b>          | <b>Developing Motor error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Lock error of the Developing Motor was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness connecting from the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J109) to the Developing Motor (M02/J2139) and Developing Clutch (CL01/J2006) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Relay PCB to the Developing Motor <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Relay PCB (UN86/J520) to Relay Connector (5P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (5P) to Developing Motor (M02/J2152) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> </ul> </li> <li>- Developing Motor (M02)</li> <li>- Developing Clutch (CL01)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E023-0002-05</b>          | <b>Error in Developing Clutch connection detection</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Connection of the Developing Clutch cannot be detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J109) and the Developing Clutch (CL01/J2006) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J101) and the Relay PCB (UN86/J515) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the Relay PCB (UN86/J513) and the DC Power Supply PCB (24V) (J202B) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, DC 24V, B)</li> <li>- Developing Clutch (CL01)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Power Supply PCB (24V) (Unit of replacement: 24V POWER SUPPLY ASS'Y, RIGHT)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul>                                     |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E025-0001-05</b>          | <b>Toner Feed Motor error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Overcurrent of the Toner Feed Motor was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Buffer Unit</li> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J115) to Relay Connector (21P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Harness (21P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, RELAY, FRONT)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (21P) to Buffer Unit (J3124) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> <li>- Harness between the Buffer Unit (J3124) and the Toner Feed Motor (M28/J2035) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, BUFFER)</li> <li>- Toner Feed Motor (M28)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/> - Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/> - Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</p>                  |
| <b>E027-0001-05</b>          | <b>Toner Supply Motor error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Lock error of the Toner Supply Motor was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Toner Supply Motor</li> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J117) to Relay Connector (6P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Harness (6P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, RELAY, FRONT)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (6P) to Toner Supply Motor (M10/J2037) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> <li>- Toner Supply Motor (M10)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy]<br/> - Remove and then reinstall the Toner Container, and check if the error is cleared.<br/> - If the error is not cleared, check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/> - Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/> - Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</p> |
| <b>E032-0001-00</b>          | <b>Failure of NE Controller Counter</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Detection of open circuit of count pulse signal.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Disconnection of cable.  |
| <b>E041-0001-05</b>          | <b>Right Deck Lifter Motor error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Overcurrent of the Right Deck Lifter Motor was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check for displacement of the wire of the Right Deck Lifter, and correct it if necessary.</li> <li>2. Check for smoothness of the movement of the Base Plate of the Right Deck, and correct it if necessary.</li> <li>3. Replace the Right Deck Lifter Motor (M04).</li> </ol>  |
| <b>E041-0002-05</b>          | <b>Left Deck Lifter Motor error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Overcurrent of the Left Deck Lifter Motor was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check for displacement of the wire of the Left Deck Lifter, and correct it if necessary.</li> <li>2. Check for smoothness of the movement of the Base Plate of the Left Deck, and correct it if necessary.</li> <li>3. Replace the Left Deck Lifter Motor (M05).</li> </ol>   |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E041-0003-05</b>          | <b>Cassette 3 Lifter Motor error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Overcurrent of the Cassette 3 Lifter Motor was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check for error around the Cassette 3 Lifter, and correct it if necessary.</li> <li>2. Check for smoothness of the movement of the Base Plate of the Cassette 3, and correct it if necessary.</li> <li>3. Replace the Cassette 3 Lifter Motor (M20).</li> </ol>  |
| <b>E041-0004-05</b>          | <b>Cassette 4 Lifter Motor error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Overcurrent of the Cassette 4 Lifter Motor was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check for error around the Cassette 4 Lifter, and correct it if necessary.</li> <li>2. Check for smoothness of the movement of the Base Plate of the Cassette 4, and correct it if necessary.</li> <li>3. Replace the Cassette 4 Lifter Motor (M21).</li> </ol>  |
| <b>E053-0001-05</b>          | <b>Error in Reverse Upper Flapper Solenoid connection detection</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Connection of the Reverse Upper Flapper Solenoid cannot be detected 5 times with 20 msec time interval.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Duplex (UN80/J340) and the Reverse Upper Flapper Solenoid (SL05/J2115) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J300, J301 and J310) and the Fixing Feed Drawer Unit (J5005) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J431, J9, J432 and J8) and the Fixing Feed Drawer Unit (J5005) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J108) and the Relay PCB (UN86/J522) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the Relay PCB (UN86/J517) and the Fixing Feed Drawer Unit (J5005) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>- Reverse Upper Flapper Solenoid (Unit of replacement: REVERSE SOLENOID ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Duplex Driver PCB (UN80) (Unit of replacement: DUPLEXING DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

| E060-0001-05                 | Primary Charging Shutter HP open error  |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Primary Charging Shutter Sensor detected the open status although the shutter of the Primary Charging Assembly was moved to the close position.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Motor               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J107) to Relay Connector (12P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (12P) to Relay Connector (20P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, AP. KIT DRAWER)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (20P) to Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Motor (M06/J3107) (Unit of replacement: DRAWER ASSEMBLY)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Primary Charging Shutter Sensor               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J114) to Relay Connector (31P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (31P) to Relay Connector (25P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (25P) to Primary Charging Shutter Sensor (PS94/J2029) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Motor (M06)</li> <li>- Primary Charging Shutter Sensor (PS94)</li> <li>- Slide Pin</li> <li>- Primary Charging Assembly</li> <li>- Primary Charging Shutter (Unit of replacement: SHUTTER UNIT)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the Primary Charging Shutter.           <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. If the Primary Charging Shutter and the Cleaning Pad do not work (stop at HP at front side),               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check/replace the Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Motor.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. If the Primary Charging Shutter and the Cleaning Pad stop at rear side (close position),               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check/replace the Primary Charging Shutter Sensor.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. If the Primary Charging Shutter and the Cleaning Pad stop halfway,               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check/replace the Slide Pin.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. If the Primary Charging Shutter stops at front side but the Cleaning Pad moves to rear until it stops,               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check/replace the shutter and the Slide Pin.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Replace the Primary Charging Assembly.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |



| E060-0002-05                 | Primary Charging Shutter HP close error  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Primary Charging Shutter Sensor detected the close status although the shutter of the Primary Charging Assembly was moved to the open position.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Motor               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J107) to Relay Connector (12P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (12P) to Relay Connector (20P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, AP. KIT DRAWER)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (20P) to Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Motor (M06/J3107) (Unit of replacement: DRAWER ASSEMBLY)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Primary Charging Shutter Sensor               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J114) to Relay Connector (31P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (31P) to Relay Connector (25P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (25P) to Primary Charging Shutter Sensor (PS94/J2029) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Motor (M06)</li> <li>- Primary Charging Shutter Sensor (PS94)</li> <li>- Slide Pin</li> <li>- Primary Charging Assembly</li> <li>- Primary Charging Shutter (Unit of replacement: SHUTTER UNIT)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the Primary Charging Shutter.           <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. If the Primary Charging Shutter and the Cleaning Pad do not work (stop at HP at front side),               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check/replace the Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Motor.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. If the Primary Charging Shutter and the Cleaning Pad stop at rear side (close position),               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check/replace the Primary Charging Shutter Sensor.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. If the Primary Charging Shutter and the Cleaning Pad stop halfway,               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check/replace the Slide Pin.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Replace the Primary Charging Assembly.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

| E061-0001-05                 | Potential control error (VL)  |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The dark area potential (VL) failed to be 200 V or less at potential control.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Pre-exposure LED</li> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J107) to Relay Connector (12P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (12P) to Relay Connector (20P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, AP. KIT DRAWER)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (20P) to Pre-exposure LED (LE01/J2141) (Unit of replacement: DRAWER ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB</li> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J111) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (J3501) (Unit of replacement: HIGH VOLTAGE PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Potential Sensor</li> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J114) to Relay Connector (31P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (31P) to Relay Connector (25P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, RELAY, FRONT)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (25P) to Relay Connector (7P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> <li>4. Relay Connector (7P) to Potential Sensor (EPC01/J5014) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, POTENTIAL SENSOR)</li> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J109) and the Drum Motor (M01/J2138) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>- Primary Charging Assembly</li> <li>- Laser Scanner Unit</li> <li>- Potential Sensor (EPC01) (Unit of replacement: POTENTIAL MEASURING PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (Unit of replacement: HIGH VOLTAGE PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Drum Motor (M01)</li> <li>- Pre-exposure LED (LE01)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

| E061-0101-05                 | Potential control error (VD)  |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Potential in the dark area did not fall within the range (target value +/-5 V) although retry was executed 8 times at VD potential control.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Pre-exposure LED               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J107) to Relay Connector (12P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (12P) to Relay Connector (20P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, AP. KIT DRAWER)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (20P) to Pre-exposure LED (LE01/J2141) (Unit of replacement: DRAWER ASSEMBLY)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J111) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (J3501) (Unit of replacement: HIGH VOLTAGE PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J109) and the Drum Motor (M01/J2138) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>- Primary Charging Assembly</li> <li>- Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (Unit of replacement: HIGH VOLTAGE PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Drum Motor (M01)</li> <li>- Pre-exposure LED (LE01)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If the current value of the Primary Charging Roller (COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; DISPLAY&gt; DPOT&gt; PRIM-C) is 1550 micro A or higher, perform the following.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set 100 V for the grid voltage of the Primary Charging Assembly (COPIER&gt; ADJUST&gt; HV-PRI&gt; PRI-GRID).</li> <li>b. Execute potential control (COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; DPC&gt; DPC).</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| E064-00FF-05                 | High voltage setting error  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | With the state in which the developing AC is output, 600 V or higher developing DC output was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Turn OFF and then ON the power of the host machine.</li> <li>2. Replace the DC Controller PCB. (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul>  |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E065-0001-05</b>          | <b>Primary charging/grid high voltage output leak error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The leak detection signal was detected 5 times in a row for every 20 msec.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J111) and the High Voltage Unit (J3097) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Relay PCB (UN86/J519) and the High Voltage Unit (J3099) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harnesses in the High Voltage Unit (J3098L, J3511, J3544, J3097L, J3501, J3500, J3545, J3510 and J3099M) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HIGH VOLTAGE SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Primary Grid High Voltage Connector (Unit of replacement: DRUM DRIVE ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (Unit of replacement: HIGH VOLTAGE PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>  |
| <b>E066-0001-05</b>          | <b>Pre-transfer Charging Shutter HP open error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Pre-transfer Charging Shutter Sensor detects that the shutter is opened although it is moved to the close position.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Motor <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J114) to Relay Connector (31P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (31P) to Relay Connector (25P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (25P) to Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Motor (M7/J3108) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Pre-transfer Charging Shutter Sensor <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J130) to Relay Connector (17P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Harness (17P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, RELAY, FRONT, CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (17P) to Pre-transfer Charging Shutter Sensor (PS95/J2114) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FAN)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Motor (M7)</li> <li>- Pre-transfer Charging Shutter Sensor (PS95)</li> <li>- Pre-transfer Charging Shutter (Unit of replacement: SHUTTER UNIT)</li> <li>- Slide Pin</li> <li>- Pre-transfer Charging Assembly</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the Pre-transfer Charging Shutter. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. If the Pre-transfer Charging Shutter does not work (stops at HP at front side), <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check/replace the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Motor.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. If the Pre-transfer Charging Shutter stops at rear side (close position), <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Check and close the Primary Fan Duct if it is open.</li> <li>b. Check/replace the Pre-transfer Charging Shutter Sensor.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. If the Pre-transfer Charging Shutter stops halfway, <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Check/replace the Slide Pin.</li> <li>b. Replace the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

| E066-0002-05                 | Pre-transfer Charging Shutter HP close error  |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Pre-transfer Charging Shutter Sensor detects that the shutter is closed although it is moved to the open position.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Motor               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J114) to Relay Connector (31P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (31P) to Relay Connector (25P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (25P) to Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Motor (M7/J3108) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Pre-transfer Charging Shutter Sensor               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J130) to Relay Connector (17P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Harness (17P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, RELAY, FRONT, CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (17P) to Pre-transfer Charging Shutter Sensor (PS95/J2114) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FAN)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Motor (M7)</li> <li>- Pre-transfer Charging Shutter Sensor (PS95)</li> <li>- Pre-transfer Charging Shutter (Unit of replacement: SHUTTER UNIT)</li> <li>- Slide Pin</li> <li>- Pre-transfer Charging Assembly</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the Pre-transfer Charging Shutter.           <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. If the Pre-transfer Charging Shutter does not work (stops at HP at front side),               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check/replace the Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Motor.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. If the Pre-transfer Charging Shutter stops at rear side (close position),               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Check and close the Primary Fan Duct if it is open.</li> <li>b. Check/replace the Pre-transfer Charging Shutter Sensor.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. If the Pre-transfer Charging Shutter stops halfway,               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Check/replace the Slide Pin.</li> <li>b. Replace the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

| E067-0001-05                 | Developing high voltage output leak error  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The leak detection signal was detected 5 times in a row for every 20 msec.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J112) and the High Voltage Unit (J3098) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Relay PCB (UN86/J519) and the High Voltage Unit (J3099) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harnesses in the High Voltage Unit (J3098L, J3511, J3544, J3097L, J3501, J3500, J3545, J3510 and J3099M) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HIGH VOLTAGE SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Developing Assembly</li> <li>- Develop High Voltage PCB (Unit of replacement: HIGH VOLTAGE PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the contact point of the Developing Assembly, and remove soiling.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E068-0001-05</b>          | <b>Pre-transfer charging high voltage output leak error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The leak detection signal was detected 5 times in a row for every 20 msec.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J112) and the High Voltage Unit (J3098) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Relay PCB (UN86/J519) and the High Voltage Unit (J3099) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harnesses in the High Voltage Unit (J3098L, J3511, J3544, J3097L, J3501, J3500, J3545, J3510 and J3099M) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HIGH VOLTAGE SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Pre-transfer Charging Assembly</li> <li>- Pre-transfer High Voltage Connector (Unit of replacement: CABLE, PRE-TRANS. CORONA H.V.)</li> <li>- Pre-transfer Charging PCB (Unit of replacement: PRE-TRANSFER CHARGE PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>  |
| <b>E069-0001-05</b>          | <b>Transfer high voltage output leak error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The leak detection signal was detected 5 times in a row for every 20 msec.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J311 and J343) and the Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN76/J3061 and J3062) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness connecting the Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN76/FT20), the Relay Connector (J3306) and the Transfer High Voltage Resistance PCB (Unit of replacement: CABLE, TRANSFER HIGH VOLTAGE)</li> <li>- Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN76) (Unit of replacement: HIGH VOLTAGE PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- ETB Unit (Unit of replacement: E.T.BELT ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- Duplex Driver PCB (UN80) (Unit of replacement: DUPLEXING DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>   |
| <b>E100-1130-05</b>          | <b>Scanner Motor BD unlock error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Locked state was not detected within the specified period of time at start-up.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Laser Scanner Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Laser Scanner Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> <li>3. If replaced with a new laser scanner unit, confirm that the DC controller board and software are also new.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- A new version of the software is installed on a new type of DC controller board (Service Parts).</li> <li>- Condensation inside the host machine or the Scanner Unit may trigger this error. In that case, leave the machine or the unit as it is until condensation disappears.</li> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</li> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

| E100-1140-05                 | Scanner Motor BD unlock error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Locked state was not detected within the specified period of time at start-up.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Laser Scanner Motor               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Laser Scanner Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> <li>3. If replaced with a new laser scanner unit, confirm that the DC controller board and software are also new.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- A new version of the software is installed on a new type of DC controller board (Service Parts).</li> <li>- Condensation inside the host machine or the Scanner Unit may trigger this error. In that case, leave the machine or the unit as it is until condensation disappears.</li> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</li> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| E100-1150-05                 | Scanner Motor BD unlock error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Locked state was not detected within the specified period of time at start-up.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Condensation inside the host machine or the Scanner Unit may trigger this error. In that case, leave the machine or the unit as it is until condensation disappears.</li> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</li> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul>  |



| E100-1230-05                 | Scanner Motor BD unlock error  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The BD lock was unlocked although it had been locked once.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Condensation inside the host machine or the Scanner Unit may trigger this error. In that case, leave the machine or the unit as it is until condensation disappears.</li> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</li> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| E100-1250-05                 | Scanner Motor BD unlock error  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The BD lock was unlocked although it had been locked once.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Condensation inside the host machine or the Scanner Unit may trigger this error. In that case, leave the machine or the unit as it is until condensation disappears.</li> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</li> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

| E100-1330-05                 | Scanner Motor BD unlock error  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | During the Polygon speed change, lock was unlocked for 1 second or longer.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Condensation inside the host machine or the Scanner Unit may trigger this error. In that case, leave the machine or the unit as it is until condensation disappears.</li> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</li> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| E100-1350-05                 | Scanner Motor BD unlock error  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | During the Polygon speed change, lock was unlocked for 1 second or longer.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Condensation inside the host machine or the Scanner Unit may trigger this error. In that case, leave the machine or the unit as it is until condensation disappears.</li> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</li> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

| E100-FFFF-05                 |  | Scanner Motor BD unlock error            |
|------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Failed to get the Detailed Code.   |  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Condensation inside the host machine or the Scanner Unit may trigger this error. In that case, leave the machine or the unit as it is until condensation disappears.</li> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</li> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |  |
| E102-0001-05                 |  | EEPROM error                             |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Failed to write to EEPROM.   |  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Condensation inside the host machine or the Scanner Unit may trigger this error. In that case, leave the machine or the unit as it is until condensation disappears.</li> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</li> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |  |
| E103-0001-05                 |  | Different Laser Scanner Unit model error |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The scanner for iR-ADV 6555 series has been installed to iR-ADV 8505 series machine, and vice versa.   |  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Replace the Laser Scanner Unit with the one for the correct model.   |  |

| E110-1110-05                 | Scanner Motor FG unlock error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Locked state was not detected within the specified period of time at start-up.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| E110-1114-05                 | Scanner Motor FG unlock error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Locked state was not detected within the specified period of time at start-up.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

| E110-11F0-05                 | Scanner Motor FG unlock error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Locked state was not detected within the specified period of time at start-up.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| E110-11F4-05                 | Scanner Motor FG unlock error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Locked state was not detected within the specified period of time at start-up.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

| E110-1210-05                 | Scanner Motor FG unlock error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Locked state was not detected within the specified period of time at start-up.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| E110-1214-05                 | Scanner Motor FG unlock error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Locked state was not detected within the specified period of time at start-up.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

| E110-12F0-05                 | Scanner Motor FG unlock error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Locked state was not detected within the specified period of time at start-up.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| E110-12F4-05                 | Scanner Motor FG unlock error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Locked state was not detected within the specified period of time at start-up.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |



| E110-1310-05                 | Scanner Motor FG unlock error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Locked state was not detected within the specified period of time at start-up.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| E110-1314-05                 | Scanner Motor FG unlock error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Locked state was not detected within the specified period of time at start-up.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

| E110-13F0-05                 | Scanner Motor FG unlock error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Locked state was not detected within the specified period of time at start-up.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| E110-13F4-05                 | Scanner Motor FG unlock error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Locked state was not detected within the specified period of time at start-up.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E110-FFFF-05</b>          | <b>Scanner Motor FG unlock error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Failed to get the Detailed Code.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J472) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J9912) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J471) and the Laser Driver PCB (UN31/J2169)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the BD PCB and the Polygon Motor</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (J472) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, LASER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Relay Connector (9P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P) to BD PCB (J2160) and Polygon Motor (J2159)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: LASER SCANNER UNIT)</li> <li>- Laser Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that all covers (Front Cover, etc.) that can be opened and closed are closed.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E121-0001-05</b>          | <b>Laser Scanner Cooling Fan error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The fan stop signal was detected consecutively although the Laser Scanner Cooling Fan was turned ON.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J109) and the Laser Scanner Cooling Fan (FM16/J2007)</li> <li>- Laser Scanner Cooling Fan (FM16)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>  |
| <b>E197-0001-05</b>          | <b>Serial communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error between the DC Controller PCB and the Main Driver PCB was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J411, J412, J413 and J414) and the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J126, J125, J124 and J128) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J101) and the Relay PCB (UN86/J515) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J451) and the Relay PCB (UN86/J514) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul>  |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E197-0002-05</b>          | <b>Serial communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error between the DC Controller PCB and the Feed Driver PCB was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the Feed Driver PCB</li> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (UN1/J421) to Relay Connector (17P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (17P) to Feed Driver PCB (UN79/J204) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SERIAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the Feed Driver PCB (UN79/J218) and the DC-DC Converter PCB (UN24/J9033) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, DC)</li> <li>- Harness between the Feed Driver PCB (UN79/J201) and the Relay PCB (UN86/J516) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, DECK, LEFT)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J451) and the Relay PCB (UN86/J514) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Feed Driver PCB (UN79) (Unit of replacement: FEED DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC-DC Converter PCB (UN24) (Unit of replacement: DC-DC CONVERT PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul>   |
| <b>E197-0003-05</b>          | <b>Serial communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error between the DC Controller PCB and the Duplex Driver PCB was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J431, J9, J432 and J8) and the Fixing Feed Drawer Unit (J5005) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the Duplex Driver (UN80/J300, J301 and J310) and the Fixing Feed Drawer Unit (J5005) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J311) and the DC-DC Converter PCB (UN24/J9034) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness between the Relay PCB (UN86/J517) and the Fixing Feed Drawer Unit (J5005) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J451) and the Relay PCB (UN86/J514) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- DC-DC Converter PCB (UN24) (Unit of replacement: DC-DC CONVERT PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Duplex Driver PCB (UN80) (Unit of replacement: DUPLEXING DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E197-0004-05</b>          | <b>Serial communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Disconnection of the harness between the DC Controller PCB and the Relay PCB was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J451) and the Relay PCB (UN86/J514) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul>   |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E197-0005-05</b>          | <b>Serial communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Disconnection of the harness between the DC Controller PCB and the Main Driver PCB was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J413) and the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J124) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul>   |
| <b>E197-0006-05</b>          | <b>Serial communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Disconnection of the harness between the DC Controller PCB and the Duplex Driver PCB was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J431, J9, J432 and J8) and the Fixing Feed Drawer Unit (J5005) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J300 and J301) and the Fixing Feed Drawer Unit (J5005) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>- Duplex Driver PCB (UN80) (Unit of replacement: DUPLEXING DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E197-0008-05</b>          | <b>Serial communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Disconnection of the harness between the Main Driver PCB and the Fixing Drawer Unit was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J104 and J105) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DRAWER)</li> <li>- Fixing Drawer Unit (J3200) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DC DRAWER)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>  |
| <b>E197-0009-05</b>          | <b>Serial communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Disconnection of the harness between the Main Driver PCB and the Process Assembly was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the AP Drawer Unit</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J107) to Relay Connector (12P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (12P) to AP Drawer Unit (J3060) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, AP. KIT DRAWER)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- AP Drawer Unit (Unit of replacement: DRAWER ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>  |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E197-0010-05</b>          | <b>Serial communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Disconnection of the harness between the Main Driver PCB and the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB<br>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J111) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)<br>2. Relay Connector (9P) to Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN15/J3501) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HIGH VOLTAGE SIGNAL)<br>- Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN15) (Unit of replacement: HIGH VOLTAGE PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.   |
| <b>E197-0011-05</b>          | <b>Serial communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Disconnection of the harness between the Main Driver PCB and the Develop High Voltage PCB was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Develop High Voltage PCB<br>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J112) to Relay Connector (25P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN, REAR UPPER)<br>2. Relay Connector (25P) to Develop High Voltage PCB (UN17/J3511) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HIGH VOLTAGE SIGNAL)<br>- Develop High Voltage PCB (UN17) (Unit of replacement: HIGH VOLTAGE PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.  |
| <b>E197-0012-05</b>          | <b>Serial communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Disconnection of the harness between the Duplex Driver PCB and the Transfer High Voltage PCB was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harness between the Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J311 and J343) and the Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN76/J3061 and J3062) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/FEEDER DRAWER)<br>- Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN76) (Unit of replacement: HIGH VOLTAGE PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Duplex Driver PCB (UN80) (Unit of replacement: DUPLEXING DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.  |
| <b>E199-0000-05</b>          | <b>Error in high voltage sequence</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Error for collecting log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Remedy] Collect debug log and contact to the sales company.<br>[Reference] By setting "COPIER (LEVEL2)> OPTION> FNC-SW> SELF-CHK" to "1", it is handled as an error.   |
| <b>E202-0001-04</b>          | <b>Reader Scanner Unit HP error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Reader Scanner Unit could not detect the home position when starting scanning operation.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harness between the Scanner Unit HP Sensor (PS103/J1082) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J108) (Unit of replacement: DF MOUNT ASSEMBLY, L)<br>- Harness between the Scanner Motor (M101/J1091) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MOTOR)<br>- Scanner Unit HP Sensor (PS103)<br>- Scanner Motor (M101)<br>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> RSRAMBUP<br>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> RSRAMRES |



|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E202-0002-04</b>          | <b>Reader Scanner Unit HP error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Reader Scanner Unit could not detect the home position when completing scanning operation.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Scanner Unit HP Sensor (PS103/J1082) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J108) (Unit of replacement: DF MOUNT ASSEMBLY, L)</li> <li>- Harness between the Scanner Motor (M101/J1091) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MOTOR)</li> <li>- Scanner Unit HP Sensor (PS103)</li> <li>- Scanner Motor (M101)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E202-0003-04</b>          | <b>Reader Scanner Unit HP error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error in the Reader Scanner Unit position was detected when reading of a job was started.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Scanner Unit HP Sensor (PS103/J1082) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J108) (Unit of replacement: DF MOUNT ASSEMBLY, L)</li> <li>- Harness between the Scanner Motor (M101/J1091) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MOTOR)</li> <li>- Scanner Unit HP Sensor (PS103)</li> <li>- Scanner Motor (M101)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E202-0010-04</b>          | <b>Reader Scanner Unit HP error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Reader Scanner Unit could not detect the home position when starting scanning operation.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J108) and the Scanner Unit HP Sensor (PS103/J1082)</li> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and the Scanner Motor (M101/J1091)</li> <li>- Scanner Unit HP Sensor (PS103)</li> <li>- Scanner Motor (M101)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul>   |



| E202-0101-04                 | DADF Scanner Unit HP error   |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The DADF Scanner Unit could not detect the home position when starting scanning operation.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Glass HP Sensor(PS414/J4071) to the DADF Driver PCB(UN401/J407)</li> <li>1. Glass HP Sensor (PS414/J4071) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, READ 2 SENSOR)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to DADF Driver PCB (UN401/J407) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN SENSOR)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Glass Shift Motor to the DADF Driver PCB</li> <li>1. Glass Shift Motor (M403/J4041) to DADF Driver PCB (UN401/J404) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MOTOR)</li> <li>- Glass HP Sensor (PS414)</li> <li>- Glass Shift Motor (M403)</li> <li>- DADF Driver PCB (UN401) (Unit of replacement: DF DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> |
| E202-0102-04                 | DADF Scanner Unit HP error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The DADF Scanner Unit could not detect the home position when completing scanning operation.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Glass HP Sensor(PS414/J4071) to the DADF Driver PCB(UN401/J407)</li> <li>1. Glass HP Sensor (PS414/J4071) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, READ 2 SENSOR)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (9P) to DADF Driver PCB (UN401/J407) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN SENSOR)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Glass Shift Motor to the DADF Driver PCB</li> <li>1. Glass Shift Motor (M403/J4041) to DADF Driver PCB (UN401/J404) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MOTOR)</li> <li>- Glass HP Sensor (PS414)</li> <li>- Glass Shift Motor (M403)</li> <li>- DADF Driver PCB (UN401) (Unit of replacement: DF DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E227-0101-04</b>          | <b>Power supply error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The DADF Driver PCB did not detect 24 V when the main power was turned ON.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J104) and the DADF Driver PCB (UN401/J402) (Unit of replacement: ADF POWER CABLE)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Reader Controller PCB to the Relay PCB</li> <li>1. Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J101) to Relay Connector (6P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, READER POWER SUPPLY)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (6P) to Relay PCB (UN86/J505) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL )</li> <li>- Harness between the Relay PCB (UN86/J512) and the DC Power Supply PCB (24V) (J202A) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, DC 24V, A)</li> <li>- Harness between the Relay PCB (UN86/J513) and the DC Power Supply PCB (24V) (J202B) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, DC 24V, B)</li> <li>- Harness between the DC Power Supply PCB (24V) (J102A/J102B) and the AC Driver PCB (UN20/J606) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, AC MAIN)</li> <li>- Harness between the Relay PCB (UN86/J518 and J514) and the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J401 and J451) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DADF Driver PCB (UN401) (Unit of replacement: DF DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Power Supply PCB (24V) (Unit of replacement: 24V POWER SUPPLY ASS'Y, LEFT)</li> <li>- DC Power Supply PCB (24V) (Unit of replacement: 24V POWER SUPPLY ASS'Y, RIGHT)</li> <li>- AC Driver PCB (UN20) (Unit of replacement: AC DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When an error is detected, conduction of 24 V is stopped. At power check, check if 24 V is conducted or rated voltage is output by repeating power cycling of the machine.</li> <li>- Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/>Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP<br/>Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/>Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/>Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E240-0001-05</b>          | <b>Controller communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Pickup request waiting status was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J5201) and the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J443) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, COMMUNICATION)</li> <li>- Harness between the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J5202) and the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J442) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul>   |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E240-0002-05</b>          | <b>Controller communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Image output request waiting status was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J5201) and the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J443) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, COMMUNICATION)</li> <li>- Harness between the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J5202) and the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J442) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E246-0001-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E246-0002-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E246-0003-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E246-0004-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact the service company office  |
| <b>E246-0005-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E247-0001-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E247-0002-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E247-0003-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E247-0004-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E248-0001-04</b>          | <b>EEPROM error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Reading error was detected when the Main Controller PCB 1 read the Reader backup value in the Reader Controller PCB.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the Reader Controller PCB (UN101). (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E248-0002-04</b>          | <b>EEPROM error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Main Controller PCB 1 failed writing of the Reader backup value in the Reader Controller PCB.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the Reader Controller PCB (UN101). (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E248-0005-04</b>          | <b>Scanner Unit EEPROM error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | EEPROM reading error(At power-on)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts] Scanner Unit (Front side)</p> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace the Scanner Unit (Front side).</li> </ol>  |
| <b>E248-0006-04</b>          | <b>Scanner Unit EEPROM error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | EEPROM writing error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts] Scanner Unit (Front side)</p> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace the Scanner Unit (Front side).</li> </ol>  |
| <b>E248-0105-04</b>          | <b>Scanner Unit EEPROM error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Scanner unit reading error(At power-on)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts] Scanner Unit (Back side)</p> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace the Scanner Unit (Back side).</li> </ol>  |
| <b>E248-0106-04</b>          | <b>Scanner Unit EEPROM error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | EEPROM writing error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts] Scanner Unit (Back side)</p> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace the Scanner Unit (Back side).</li> </ol>  |
| <b>E263-0000-05</b>          | <b>Current Sensor error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error in voltage of the Current Sensor was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the AC Driver PCB to the Main Driver PCB</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. AC Driver PCB (UN20/J615) to Relay Connector (13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (13P) to Main Driver PCB (UN78/J103) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER RELAY)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- AC Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: AC DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>            |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E263-0001-05</b>          | <b>Current Sensor error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | It was detected that the value of the Current Sensor was higher than the upper limit.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the AC Driver PCB to the Main Driver PCB</li> <li>1. AC Driver PCB (UN20/J615) to Relay Connector (13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (13P) to Main Driver PCB (UN78/J103) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER RELAY)</li> <li>- AC Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: AC DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>   |
| <b>E263-0002-05</b>          | <b>Current Sensor error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | It was detected that the value of the Current Sensor was lower than the lower limit.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the AC Driver PCB to the Main Driver PCB</li> <li>1. AC Driver PCB (UN20/J615) to Relay Connector (13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (13P) to Main Driver PCB (UN78/J103) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER RELAY)</li> <li>- AC Driver PCB (Unit of replacement: AC DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>   |
| <b>E270-0001-04</b>          | <b>Scanner Unit (Reader) communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The vertical scanning synchronous signal (VSYNC) was not transmitted appropriately at the Scanner Unit (Reader) side communicating with the Reader Controller PCB.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Flat Cable between the Reader Controller PCB and Scanner Unit (Reader) (Unit of replacement: Flat Cable)</li> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: Scanner Unit)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: Reader Controller PCB)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>  |
| <b>E270-0101-04</b>          | <b>Scanner Unit (DADF) communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The vertical scanning synchronous signal (VSYNC) was not transmitted appropriately at the Scanner Unit (DADF) side communicating with the Reader Controller PCB.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Flat Cable between the Reader Controller PCB and Scanner Unit (DADF) (Unit of replacement: Flat Cable)</li> <li>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: Scanner Unit)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: Reader Controller PCB)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>  |
| <b>E280-0001-04</b>          | <b>Communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication between the Reader Controller PCB and the Reader Scanner Unit was not completed within the specified period of time.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Reader Scanner Unit (UN102/J021) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J102) (Unit of replacement: FLEXIBLE FLAT CABLE UNIT)</li> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)</li> <li>- Reader Scanner Unit (UN102) (Unit of replacement: SCANNER UNIT, READER)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E280-0002-04</b>          | <b>Communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Disconnection of FFC between the Reader Controller PCB and the Reader Scanner Unit was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harness between the Reader Scanner Unit (UN102/J021) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J102) (Unit of replacement: FLEXIBLE FLAT CABLE UNIT)<br>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.  |
| <b>E280-0003-04</b>          | <b>Scanner Unit (Reader) communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Reading or writing error was detected between the Reader Controller PCB and the Scanner Unit (Reader).  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Flat Cable between the Reader Controller PCB and Scanner Unit (Reader) (Unit of replacement: Flat Cable)<br>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: Scanner Unit)<br>- Reader Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: Reader Controller PCB)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.   |
| <b>E280-0004-04</b>          | <b>Scanner Unit (Reader) communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Image data check error was detected between the Reader Controller PCB and the Scanner Unit (Reader).  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Flat Cable between the Reader Controller PCB and Scanner Unit (Reader) (Unit of replacement: Flat Cable)<br>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: Scanner Unit)<br>- Reader Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: Reader Controller PCB)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.   |
| <b>E280-0101-04</b>          | <b>Communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication between the Reader Controller PCB and the DADF Scanner Unit was not completed within the specified period of time.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harness between the DADF Scanner Unit (UN102/J1021) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J102) (Unit of replacement: FLEXIBLE FLAT CABLE UNIT)<br>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)<br>- DADF Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: SCANNER UNIT, ADF)<br>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> RSRAMBUP<br>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> RSRAMRES |
| <b>E280-0102-04</b>          | <b>Communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Disconnection of FFC between the Reader Controller PCB and the DADF Scanner Unit was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harness between the DADF Scanner Unit (UN102/J1021) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J102) (Unit of replacement: FLEXIBLE FLAT CABLE UNIT)<br>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.   |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E280-0103-04</b>          | <b>Scanner Unit (DADF) communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Reading or writing error was detected between the Reader Controller PCB and the Scanner Unit (DADF).   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Flat Cable between the Reader Controller PCB and Scanner Unit (DADF) (Unit of replacement: Flat Cable)<br>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: Scanner Unit)<br>- Reader Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: Reader Controller PCB)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.  |
| <b>E280-0104-04</b>          | <b>Scanner Unit (DADF) communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Image data check error was detected between the Reader Controller PCB and the Scanner Unit (DADF).   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Flat Cable between the Reader Controller PCB and Scanner Unit (DADF) (Unit of replacement: Flat Cable)<br>- Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: Scanner Unit)<br>- Reader Controller PCB (Unit of replacement: Reader Controller PCB)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.  |
| <b>E302-0001-04</b>          | <b>Error in paper front white shading</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An access error to the paper front white shading RAM or a paper front white shading value that was higher than the specified value was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harness between the Reader Scanner Unit (UN102/J021) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J102) (Unit of replacement: FLEXIBLE FLAT CABLE UNIT)<br>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)<br>- Reader Scanner Unit (UN102) (Unit of replacement: SCANNER UNIT, READER)<br>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)<br>[Remedy]<br>1. Clean the LED, mirror, and Stream Reading Glass of Scanner Unit.<br>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> RSRAMBUP<br>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> RSRAMRES |
| <b>E302-0002-04</b>          | <b>Error in paper front black shading</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An access error to the paper front black shading RAM or a paper front black shading value that was higher than the specified value was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harness between the Reader Scanner Unit (UN102/J021) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J102) (Unit of replacement: FLEXIBLE FLAT CABLE UNIT)<br>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)<br>- Reader Scanner Unit (UN102) (Unit of replacement: SCANNER UNIT, READER)<br>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> RSRAMBUP<br>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> RSRAMRES  |



|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E302-0101-04</b>          | <b>Error in paper back white shading</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An access error to the paper back white shading RAM or a paper back white shading value that was higher than the specified value was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DADF Scanner Unit (UN102/J1021) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J102) (Unit of replacement: FLEXIBLE FLAT CABLE UNIT)</li> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)</li> <li>- DADF Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: SCANNER UNIT, ADF)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy]</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clean the LED, mirror, and Stream Reading Glass of Scanner Unit.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul>  |
| <b>E302-0102-04</b>          | <b>Error in paper back black shading</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An access error to the paper back black shading RAM or a paper back black shading value that was higher than the specified value was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DADF Scanner Unit (UN102/J1021) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J102) (Unit of replacement: FLEXIBLE FLAT CABLE UNIT)</li> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)</li> <li>- DADF Scanner Unit (Unit of replacement: SCANNER UNIT, ADF)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul>  |
| <b>E315-0007-00</b>          | <b>Image process device timeout error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Image compression process was not completed within the specified period of time (120 sec) at scanning.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Points to note at work] After performing the remedy, check that the copy image is output normally.</p> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinstall the latest system software using SST or a USB memory.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E315-000D-00</b>          | <b>Image process device timeout error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Processing of a JBIG-compressed data was not completed within the specified period of time (120 sec) at printing or SEND.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy]Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Reinstall the latest system software using SST or a USB memory.<br>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB. (PWB01) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1) |
| <b>E315-000F-00</b>          | <b>Image process device timeout error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Duplication of image data in the memory was not completed within the specified period of time (120 sec).  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy]Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Reinstall the latest system software using SST or a USB memory.<br>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB. (PWB01) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1) |
| <b>E315-0027-00</b>          | <b>Image process device timeout error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Image processing (change in magnification ratio, rotating, and shifting) was not completed normally within the specified period of time (120 sec).  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy]Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Reinstall the latest system software using SST or a USB memory.<br>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB. (PWB01) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1) |
| <b>E315-0033-00</b>          | <b>Image process device timeout error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Processing to clear image data in the memory was not completed normally within the specified period of time (120 sec).  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy]Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Reinstall the latest system software using SST or a USB memory.<br>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB. (PWB01) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1) |
| <b>E315-0035-00</b>          | <b>Image process device timeout error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Processing to clear image data in the memory was not completed normally within the specified period of time (120 sec).  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy]Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Reinstall the latest system software using SST or a USB memory.<br>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB. (PWB01) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1) |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E315-0100-00</b>          | <b>Image process device timeout error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Image transfer could not be started because the signal that is a trigger to start printing was not detected within the specified period of time (60 sec) at printing.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Points to note at work] After performing the remedy, check that the copy image is output normally.<br/> [Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinstall the latest system software using SST or a USB memory.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E315-0500-00</b>          | <b>Image process device timeout error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Image transfer could not be started because the signal that is a trigger to start printing was not detected within the specified period of time (60 sec) at printing.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Points to note at work] After performing the remedy, check that the copy image is output normally.<br/> [Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinstall the latest system software using SST or a USB memory.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E315-0510-00</b>          | <b>Image process device timeout error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Image processing was not completed within the specified period of time (30 sec) at scanning.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Points to note at work] After performing the remedy, check that the copy image is output normally.<br/> [Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinstall the latest system software using SST or a USB memory.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E315-0520-00</b>          | <b>Image process device timeout error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Image processing was not completed within the specified period of time (120 sec) at scanning.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Points to note at work] After performing the remedy, check that the copy image is output normally.</p> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinstall the latest system software using SST or a USB memory.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB. (PWB01) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ol>  |
| <b>E315-0530-00</b>          | <b>Image process device error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Compression processing of the scanned image into JPEG was terminated abnormally.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Points to note at work] After performing the remedy, check that the copy image is output normally.</p> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinstall the latest system software using SST or a USB memory.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB. (PWB01) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ol>  |
| <b>E315-0531-00</b>          | <b>Image process device timeout error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Compression processing of the scanned image into JPEG was not completed within the specified period of time (120 sec).  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Points to note at work] After performing the remedy, check that the copy image is output normally.</p> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinstall the latest system software using SST or a USB memory.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E315-0540-00</b>          | <b>Image process device error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error occurred during decompression of JPEG.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinstall the latest system software using SST or a USB memory.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB. (PWB01) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ol>   |
| <b>E315-0541-00</b>          | <b>Image process device timeout error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Decompression of JPEG was not completed within the specified period of time (120 sec).  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinstall the latest system software using SST or a USB memory.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB. (PWB01) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ol>   |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E315-0561-00</b>          | <b>Image process device timeout error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Image transfer was not completed within the specified period of time (120 sec) after the start of printing.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Points to note at work] After performing the remedy, check that the copy image is output normally.<br/> [Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinstall the latest system software using SST or a USB memory.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E330-0001-05</b>          | <b>Image signal communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An image signal communication error between the DC Controller PCB and the Main Controller PCB was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J443) and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J711) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul>  |
| <b>E350-0001-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E350-0002-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E350-0003-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E350-3000-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E351-0000-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E354-0001-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E354-0002-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E355-0001-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E355-0002-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E355-0003-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E355-0004-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E400-0002-04</b>          | <b>Communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and the DADF Driver PCB was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DADF Driver PCB (UN401/J401) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J104) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FLAT)</li> <li>- Harness between the DADF Driver PCB (UN401/J402) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J104) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, ADF POWER SUPPLY)</li> <li>- DADF Driver PCB (UN401) (Unit of replacement: DF DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E400-0003-04</b>          | <b>Communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Disconnection of the harness between the Reader Controller PCB and the DADF Driver PCB was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the DADF Driver PCB (UN401/J401) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J104) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FLAT)</li> <li>- Harness between the DADF Driver PCB (UN401/J402) and the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J104) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, ADF POWER SUPPLY)</li> <li>- DADF Driver PCB (UN401) (Unit of replacement: DF DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul> |



|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E401-0001-04</b>          | <b>Pickup Roller Unit Lifting HP Sensor error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Pickup Roller Unit Lifting HP Sensor in the DADF did not detect the ON status.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Pickup Roller Unit Lifting HP Sensor(PS408/J4064) to the DADF Driver PCB(UN401/J406)</li> <li>- Harness between the Pickup Roller Unit Lifting Motor (M405/J4052) and the DADF Driver PCB (UN401/J405) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, REAR MOTOR, 2)</li> <li>- Pickup Roller Unit Lifting HP Sensor (PS408)</li> <li>- Pickup Roller Unit Lifting Motor (M405)</li> <li>- DADF Driver PCB (UN401) (Unit of replacement: DF DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>   |
| <b>E401-0002-04</b>          | <b>Pickup Roller Unit Lifting HP Sensor error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Pickup Roller Unit Lifting HP Sensor in the DADF did not detect the OFF status.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Pickup Roller Unit Lifting HP Sensor(PS408/J4064) to the DADF Driver PCB(UN401/J406)</li> <li>- Harness between the Pickup Roller Unit Lifting Motor (M405/J4052) and the DADF Driver PCB (UN401/J405) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, REAR MOTOR, 2)</li> <li>- Pickup Roller Unit Lifting HP Sensor (PS408)</li> <li>- Pickup Roller Unit Lifting Motor (M405)</li> <li>- DADF Driver PCB (UN401) (Unit of replacement: DF DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>   |
| <b>E407-0001-04</b>          | <b>Tray Lifter Motor error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Tray Home Position Sensor in the DADF did not detect the ON status within the specified period of time.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Tray Home Position Sensor(PS410/J4131) to the DADF Driver PCB(UN401/J413)</li> <li>- Tray Home Position Sensor (PS410)</li> <li>- Tray Lifter Motor (M406)</li> <li>- DADF Driver PCB (UN401) (Unit of replacement: DF DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>  |
| <b>E407-0002-04</b>          | <b>Tray Lifter Motor error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The Paper Surface Sensor in the DADF did not turned ON within the specified period of time when lifting up the lifter.</li> <li>- The Tray Home Position Sensor in the DADF did not detect the OFF status within the specified period of time.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Paper Surface Sensor to the DADF Driver PCB</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Paper Surface Sensor (SR406/J4104) to Relay Connector (5P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, PAPER PICK-UP REAR, UP.)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (5P) to Relay Connector (10P)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (10P) to DADF Driver PCB (UN401/J409) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN SENSOR)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Tray Home Position Sensor(PS410/J4131) to the DADF Driver PCB(UN401/J413)</li> <li>- Paper Surface Sensor (SR406)</li> <li>- Tray Home Position Sensor (PS410)</li> <li>- Tray Lifter Motor (M406)</li> <li>- DADF Driver PCB (UN401) (Unit of replacement: DF DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> |



|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E423-0001-04</b>          | <b>SDRAM error in the Reader Controller PCB</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Either an access error to SDRAM in the Reader Controller PCB or an error at data inspection was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Remedy] Replace the Reader Controller PCB (UN101). (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul>   |
| <b>E500-0001-05</b>          | <b>Communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error between the DC Controller PCB and the POD Deck was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the Deck Driver PCB</li> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (UN1/J461) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay PCB (UN86/J502) to Relay Connector (4P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, DECK, DC)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P and 4P) to Deck Lattice Connector (Unit of replacement: CABLE, DECK CONNECTOR)</li> <li>4. Deck Lattice Connector to Deck Driver PCB</li> <li>- Deck Driver PCB</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that the Power Supply Cable is connected to the deck/there is electrical current in the outlet/breaker of the deck is ON.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- After replacement of the Deck Driver PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</li> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</li> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E500-0002-05</b>          | <b>Communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error between the DC Controller PCB and the Side Paper Deck was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB to the Deck Driver PCB</li> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (UN1/J461) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay PCB (UN86/J502) to Relay Connector (4P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, DECK, DC)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P and 4P) to Deck Lattice Connector (Unit of replacement: CABLE, DECK CONNECTOR)</li> <li>4. Deck Lattice Connector to Deck Driver PCB</li> <li>- Deck Driver PCB</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- After replacement of the Deck Driver PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</li> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</li> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul>  |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E503-0021-02</b>          | <b>Error in communication between the Finisher and Saddle Unit (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error between the Finisher Controller PCB and the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB was detected. (Command transmission error)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses and connectors from the Finisher Controller PCB to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Finisher Controller PCB and the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB.</li> <li>2. Replace the Finisher Controller PCB.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Replace the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB.</li> </ol>   |
| <b>E503-0022-02</b>          | <b>Error in communication between the Finisher and Saddle Unit (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error between the Finisher Controller PCB and the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB was detected. (Command reception error)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses and connectors from the Finisher Controller PCB to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Finisher Controller PCB and the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB.</li> <li>2. Replace the Finisher Controller PCB.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Replace the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB.</li> </ol>   |
| <b>E503-0031-02</b>          | <b>Error in communication between the Finisher and Puncher Unit (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error between the Finisher Controller PCB and the Puncher Controller PCB was detected. (Command transmission error)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses and connectors from the Finisher Controller PCB to the Puncher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> <li>- Puncher Controller PCB (PCB301)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Finisher Controller PCB and the Puncher Controller PCB.</li> <li>2. Replace the Finisher Controller PCB.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Replace the Puncher Controller PCB.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Puncher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E503-0032-02</b>          | <b>Error in communication between the Finisher and Puncher Unit (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error between the Finisher Controller PCB and the Puncher Controller PCB was detected. (Command reception error)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses and connectors from the Finisher Controller PCB to the Puncher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> <li>- Puncher Controller PCB (PCB301)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Finisher Controller PCB and the Puncher Controller PCB.</li> <li>2. Replace the Finisher Controller PCB.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Replace the Puncher Controller PCB.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Puncher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>  |
| <b>E503-0051-02</b>          | <b>Error in communication between the Finisher and Document Insertion/Folding Unit (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error between the Finisher and the Document Insertion/Folding Unit was detected. (Hand-shake error)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Finisher Controller PCB to the Inserter/folder Controller PCB</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> <li>- Inserter/folder Controller PCB</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that the breaker of the Document Insertion/Folding Unit is ON.</li> <li>2. Check that the Power Supply Cable is connected to the Document Insertion/Folding Unit/there is electrical current in the outlet.</li> <li>3. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</li> <li>- When replacing the Inserter/folder Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; Adjustment at Time of Parts Replacement" in the Service Manual.</li> </ul> |
| <b>E503-0052-02</b>          | <b>Error in communication between the Finisher and Document Insertion/Folding Unit (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error between the Finisher and the Document Insertion/Folding Unit was detected. (Command transmission error)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Finisher Controller PCB to the Inserter/folder Controller PCB</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> <li>- Inserter/folder Controller PCB</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that the breaker of the Document Insertion/Folding Unit is ON.</li> <li>2. Check that the Power Supply Cable is connected to the Document Insertion/Folding Unit/there is electrical current in the outlet.</li> <li>3. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</li> <li>- When replacing the Inserter/folder Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; Adjustment at Time of Parts Replacement" in the Service Manual.</li> </ul> |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E503-0053-02</b>          | <b>Error in communication between the Finisher and Document Insertion/Folding Unit (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error between the Finisher and the Document Insertion/Folding Unit was detected. (Time out error)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Finisher Controller PCB to the Inserter/folder Controller PCB</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> <li>- Inserter/folder Controller PCB</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that the breaker of the Document Insertion/Folding Unit is ON.</li> <li>2. Check that the Power Supply Cable is connected to the Document Insertion/Folding Unit/there is electrical current in the outlet.</li> <li>3. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</li> <li>- When replacing the Inserter/folder Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; Adjustment at Time of Parts Replacement" in the Service Manual.</li> </ul> |
| <b>E503-0061-02</b>          | <b>Error in communication between the IC of Finisher Controller PCB (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error between the IC of Finisher Controller PCB was detected. (Command transmission error)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Replace the Finisher Controller PCB.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>  |
| <b>E503-0062-02</b>          | <b>Error in communication between the IC of Finisher Controller PCB (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error between the IC of Finisher Controller PCB was detected. (Command reception error)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Replace the Finisher Controller PCB.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>  |
| <b>E503-0071-02</b>          | <b>Communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1, Finisher Jogger Kit</p> <p>A communication error between the Finisher and the Finisher Jogger Kit was detected. (Command transmission error)</p>  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1, Finisher Jogger Kit</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Finisher Controller PCB to the Neat Controller PCB</li> <li>- Neat Controller PCB</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Neat Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher Jogger Kit.</p>   |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E503-0072-02</b>          | <b>Communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1, Finisher Jogger Kit<br>A communication error between the Finisher and the Finisher Jogger Kit was detected. (Command reception error)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1, Finisher Jogger Kit<br>[Related parts]<br>- Harnesses from the Finisher Controller PCB to the Neat Controller PCB<br>- Neat Controller PCB<br>- Finisher Controller PCB<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments> Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher.<br>[Reference] When replacing the Neat Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments> Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher Jogger Kit. |
| <b>E505-0001-02</b>          | <b>Finisher data error (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The data read from Finisher Controller PCB has an error. (The read data doesn't match with the written data.)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1<br>[Related parts]<br>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)<br>[Remedy] Replace the Finisher Controller PCB.<br>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment> When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.   |
| <b>E505-0003-02</b>          | <b>Back-up RAM error (Document Insertion/Folding Unit-J1, Document Insertion Unit-P1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The value written in EEPROM and the value extracted from EEPROM doesn't conform.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Inserter/folder Controller PCB<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br>[Reference]<br>- When replacing the Inserter/folder Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment> Adjustment at Time of Parts Replacement" in the Service Manual.   |
| <b>E505-0004-02</b>          | <b>Puncher unit data error (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The data read from Puncher Controller PCB has an error. (The read data doesn't match with the written data.)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1<br>[Related parts]<br>- Puncher Controller PCB (PCB301)<br>[Remedy] Replace the Puncher Controller PCB.<br>[Reference] When replacing the Puncher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment> When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.  |
| <b>E505-0006-02</b>          | <b>Jogger Kit data error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Finisher Jogger Kit<br>The data read from Neat Controller PCB has an error. (The read data doesn't match with the written data.)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Finisher Jogger Kit<br>[Related parts]<br>- Neat Controller PCB<br>[Remedy] Replace the Neat Controller PCB.<br>[Reference] When replacing the Neat Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments> Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher Jogger Kit.   |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E514-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Paper End Assist Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The assist belt does not come off the Paper End Assist HP Sensor when the Paper End Assist Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Paper End Assist HP Sensor (PS123) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Paper End Assist Motor (M113) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Paper End Assist HP Sensor (PS123)</li> <li>- Paper End Assist Motor (M113)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E514-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Paper End Assist Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Paper End Assist HP Sensor does not detect the assist belt when the Paper End Assist Motor has been driven for 2 seconds.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Paper End Assist HP Sensor (PS123) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Paper End Assist Motor (M113) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Paper End Assist HP Sensor (PS123)</li> <li>- Paper End Assist Motor (M113)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E518-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in Fold Transport Motor (Insertion Folding Unit-P1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Fold Transport Motor lock signal has been detected for more than the specified period of time.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the Fold Transport Motor(M5)</li> <li>- Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2)</li> <li>- Fold Transport Motor(M5)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference]<br/> - When replacing the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>  |
| <b>E530-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Front Alignment Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The front alignment plate does not come off the Front Alignment HP Sensor when the Front Alignment Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Front Alignment HP Sensor (PS115) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Front Alignment Motor (M107) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Front Alignment HP Sensor (PS115)</li> <li>- Front Alignment Motor (M107)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>     |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E530-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Front Alignment Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Front Alignment HP Sensor does not detect the Front Alignment plate when the Front Alignment Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Front Alignment HP Sensor (PS115) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Front Alignment Motor (M107) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Front Alignment HP Sensor (PS115)</li> <li>- Front Alignment Motor (M107)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E531-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Staple Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The staple unit does not come off the Staple HP Sensor when the Staple Motor has been driven for 0.4 seconds.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Stapler Unit to the Stapler Relay PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Stapler Unit Relay PCB to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Stapler Unit</li> <li>- Stapler Unit Relay PCB (PCB102)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>  |
| <b>E531-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Staple Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Staple HP Sensor does not detect the staple unit when the Staple Motor has been driven for 0.4 seconds.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Stapler Unit to the Stapler Relay PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Stapler Unit Relay PCB to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Stapler Unit</li> <li>- Stapler Unit Relay PCB (PCB102)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>  |
| <b>E532-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Stapler Shift Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The stapler unit does not come off the Stapler Shift HP Sensor when the Stapler Shift Motor has been driven for 1 second.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Stapler Shift HP Sensor (PS124) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Stapler Shift Motor (M114) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Stapler Shift HP Sensor (PS124)</li> <li>- Stapler Shift Motor (M114)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>         |



|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E532-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Stapler Shift Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Stapler Shift HP Sensor does not detect the stapler unit when the Stapler Shift Motor has been driven for 15 seconds.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Stapler Shift HP Sensor (PS124) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Stapler Shift Motor (M114) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Stapler Shift HP Sensor (PS124)</li> <li>- Stapler Shift Motor (M114)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E533-8001-02</b>          | <b>Staple-free Binding Motor Clock error (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The clock signal from the Staple-free Binding Motor Clock Sensor does not detect during from 0.24 seconds to 0.25 seconds after operating the Staple-free Binding Motor.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Staple-free Binding Unit to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Staple-free Binding Unit</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>   |
| <b>E533-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Staple-free Binding Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The staple-free binding unit does not come off the Staple-free Binding HP Sensor when the Staple-free Binding Motor has been driven for 0.25 seconds.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Staple-free Binding Unit to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Staple-free Binding Unit</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>   |
| <b>E533-8003-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Staple-free Binding Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The clock signal from the Staple-free Binding Motor Clock Sensor does not detect during from 0.24 seconds to 0.25 seconds after operating the Staple-free Binding Motor, and the staple-free binding unit does not come off the Staple-free Binding HP Sensor when the Staple-free Binding Motor has been driven for 0.25 seconds.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Staple-free Binding Unit to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Staple-free Binding Unit</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>   |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E533-8004-02</b>          | <b>Staple-free binding time out error (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The staple-free binding does not be executed within 2 seconds after starting the operation. (The rotation speed of the motor that detected by the Staple-free Binding Motor Clock Sensor don't decrease.)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Staple-free Binding Unit to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Staple-free Binding Unit</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>   |
| <b>E533-8005-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Staple-free Binding Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Staple-free Binding HP Sensor does not detect the staple-free binding part when the Staple-free Binding Motor has been driven. (The return operation of the binding parts isn't completed.)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Staple-free Binding Unit to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Staple-free Binding Unit</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>   |
| <b>E535-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Swing Guide Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The swing guide does not come off the Swing Guide HP Sensor when the Swing Guide Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Swing Guide HP Sensor (PS119) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Swing Guide Motor (M110) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Swing Guide HP Sensor (PS119)</li> <li>- Swing Guide Motor (M110)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E535-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Swing Guide Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Swing Guide HP Sensor does not detect the swing guide when the Swing Guide Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Swing Guide HP Sensor (PS119) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Swing Guide Motor (M110) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Swing Guide HP Sensor (PS119)</li> <li>- Swing Guide Motor (M110)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E537-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Rear Alignment Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The rear alignment plate does not come off the Rear Alignment HP Sensor when the Rear Alignment Motor has been driven for 1 second.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Rear Alignment HP Sensor (PS116) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Rear Alignment Motor (M108) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Rear Alignment HP Sensor (PS116)</li> <li>- Rear Alignment Motor (M108)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>   |
| <b>E537-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Rear Alignment Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Rear Alignment HP Sensor does not detect the rear alignment plate when the Rear Alignment Motor has been driven for 1 second.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Rear Alignment HP Sensor (PS116) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Rear Alignment Motor (M108) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Rear Alignment HP Sensor (PS116)</li> <li>- Rear Alignment Motor (M108)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>   |
| <b>E540-8001-02</b>          | <b>Stack tray time out error (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>The operation of the stack tray don't finish when the Stack Tray Shift Motor has been driven for 28 seconds.</p> <p>The stack tray does not come off the same area when the Stack Tray Shift Motor has been driven for 15 seconds.</p>  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Stack Tray HP Sensor (PS106) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Stack Tray Full Sensor 1/2/3 (PS107/PS108/PS109) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Stack Tray Upper Limit Sensor (PS110) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Stack Tray Shift Motor (M105) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Stack Tray HP Sensor (PS106)</li> <li>- Stack Tray Full Sensor 1/2/3 (PS107/PS108/PS109)</li> <li>- Stack Tray Upper Limit Sensor (PS110)</li> <li>- Stack Tray Shift Motor (M105)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E540-8002-02</b>          | <b>Stack tray area error (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The stack tray detects the discontinuous area during the operation.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Stack Tray HP Sensor (PS106) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Stack Tray Full Sensor 1/2/3 (PS107/PS108/PS109) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Stack Tray Upper Limit Sensor (PS110) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Stack Tray Shift Motor (M105) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Stack Tray HP Sensor (PS106)</li> <li>- Stack Tray Full Sensor 1/2/3 (PS107/PS108/PS109)</li> <li>- Stack Tray Upper Limit Sensor (PS110)</li> <li>- Stack Tray Shift Motor (M105)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E540-8004-02</b>          | <b>Stack tray paper surface detection error (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Stack Tray Paper Surface Sensor does not turn off when the stack tray has been lowered for 10 seconds.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Stack Tray Paper Surface Sensor (light-emitting) (PBA101) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Stack Tray Paper Surface Sensor (light-receiving) (PBA102/PBA103) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Stack Tray Shift Motor (M105) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Stack Tray Paper Surface Sensor (light-emitting) (PBA101)</li> <li>- Stack Tray Paper Surface Sensor (light-receiving) (PBA102/PBA103)</li> <li>- Stack Tray Shift Motor (M105)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>   |
| <b>E544-0001-02</b>          | <b>Neat Paddle Lift HP error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>Finisher Jogger Kit</p> <p>The Paddle did not move from the home position although the Neat Paddle Lift Motor was driven for 72 msec.</p>   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Finisher Jogger Kit</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Neat Controller PCB to the Neat Paddle Lift HP Sensor</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Neat Controller PCB to the Neat Paddle Lift Motor</li> <li>- Neat Paddle Lift HP Sensor</li> <li>- Neat Paddle Lift Motor</li> <li>- Neat Controller PCB</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Neat Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher Jogger Kit.</p>   |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E544-0002-02</b>          | <b>Neat Paddle Lift HP error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Finisher Jogger Kit<br>The Paddle did not return to the home position although the Neat Paddle Lift Motor was driven for 337 msec.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Finisher Jogger Kit<br>[Related parts]<br>- Harnesses from the Neat Controller PCB to the Neat Paddle Lift HP Sensor<br>- Harnesses from the Neat Controller PCB to the Neat Paddle Lift Motor<br>- Neat Paddle Lift HP Sensor<br>- Neat Paddle Lift Motor<br>- Neat Controller PCB<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br>[Reference] When replacing the Neat Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments> Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher Jogger Kit.                 |
| <b>E545-0001-02</b>          | <b>Neat Front Alignment Plate HP error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Front Alignment Plate did not move from the home position although the Neat Front Alignment Motor was driven for 102 msec.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Finisher Jogger Kit<br>[Related parts]<br>- Harnesses from the Neat Controller PCB to the Neat Front Alignment HP Sensor<br>- Harnesses from the Neat Controller PCB to the Neat Front Alignment Motor<br>- Neat Front Alignment HP Sensor<br>- Neat Front Alignment Motor<br>- Neat Controller PCB<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br>[Reference] When replacing the Neat Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments> Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher Jogger Kit. |
| <b>E545-0002-02</b>          | <b>Neat Front Alignment Plate HP error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Front Alignment Plate did not return to the home position although the Neat Front Alignment Motor was driven for 1433 msec.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Finisher Jogger Kit<br>[Related parts]<br>- Harnesses from the Neat Controller PCB to the Neat Front Alignment HP Sensor<br>- Harnesses from the Neat Controller PCB to the Neat Front Alignment Motor<br>- Neat Front Alignment HP Sensor<br>- Neat Front Alignment Motor<br>- Neat Controller PCB<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br>[Reference] When replacing the Neat Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments> Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher Jogger Kit. |
| <b>E546-0001-02</b>          | <b>Neat Rear Alignment Plate HP error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Rear Alignment Plate did not move from the home position although the Neat Rear Alignment Motor was driven for 95 msec.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Finisher Jogger Kit<br>[Related parts]<br>- Harnesses from the Neat Controller PCB to the Neat Rear Alignment HP Sensor<br>- Harnesses from the Neat Controller PCB to the Neat Rear Alignment Motor<br>- Neat Rear Alignment HP Sensor<br>- Neat Rear Alignment Motor<br>- Neat Controller PCB<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br>[Reference] When replacing the Neat Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments> Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher Jogger Kit.     |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E546-0002-02</b>          | <b>Neat Rear Alignment Plate HP error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Rear Alignment Plate did not return to the home position although the Neat Rear Alignment Motor was driven for 1680 msec.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Finisher Jogger Kit</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Neat Controller PCB to the Neat Rear Alignment HP Sensor</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Neat Controller PCB to the Neat Rear Alignment Motor</li> <li>- Neat Rear Alignment HP Sensor</li> <li>- Neat Rear Alignment Motor</li> <li>- Neat Controller PCB</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Neat Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher Jogger Kit.</p>   |
| <b>E547-0001-02</b>          | <b>Neat Alignment Plate Lift HP error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Alignment Plate did not move from the home position although the Neat Alignment Plate Lift Motor was driven for 72 msec.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Finisher Jogger Kit</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Neat Controller PCB to the Neat Alignment Plate Lift HP Sensor</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Neat Controller PCB to the Neat Alignment Plate Lift Motor</li> <li>- Neat Alignment Plate Lift HP Sensor</li> <li>- Neat Alignment Plate Lift Motor</li> <li>- Neat Controller PCB</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Neat Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher Jogger Kit.</p>                                     |
| <b>E547-0002-02</b>          | <b>Neat Alignment Plate Lift HP error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Alignment Plate did not return to the home position although the Neat Alignment Plate Lift Motor was driven for 346 msec.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Finisher Jogger Kit</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Neat Controller PCB to the Neat Rear Alignment HP Sensor</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Neat Controller PCB to the Neat Rear Alignment Motor</li> <li>- Neat Rear Alignment HP Sensor</li> <li>- Neat Rear Alignment Motor</li> <li>- Neat Controller PCB</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Neat Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher Jogger Kit.</p>   |
| <b>E553-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Lower Escape Delivery Shift Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The lower escape delivery roller does not come off the Lower Escape Delivery Roller HP Sensor when the Lower Escape Delivery Shift Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Lower Escape Delivery Roller HP Sensor (PS112) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Lower Escape Delivery Shift Motor (M106) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Lower Escape Delivery Roller HP Sensor (PS112)</li> <li>- Lower Escape Delivery Shift Motor (M106)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E553-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Lower Escape Delivery Shift Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Lower Escape Delivery Roller HP Sensor does not detect the lower escape delivery roller when the Lower Escape Delivery Shift Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Lower Escape Delivery Roller HP Sensor (PS112) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Lower Escape Delivery Shift Motor (M106) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Lower Escape Delivery Roller HP Sensor (PS112)</li> <li>- Lower Escape Delivery Shift Motor (M106)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E553-8003-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Upper Escape Delivery Shift Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The upper escape delivery roller does not come off the Upper Escape Delivery Roller HP Sensor when the Upper Escape Delivery Shift Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Upper Escape Delivery Roller HP Sensor (PS134) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Upper Escape Delivery Shift Motor (M119) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Upper Escape Delivery Roller HP Sensor (PS134)</li> <li>- Upper Escape Delivery Shift Motor (M119)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E553-8004-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Upper Escape Delivery Shift Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Upper Escape Delivery Roller HP Sensor does not detect the upper escape delivery roller when the Upper Escape Delivery Shift Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Upper Escape Delivery Roller HP Sensor (PS134) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Upper Escape Delivery Shift Motor (M119) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Upper Escape Delivery Roller HP Sensor (PS134)</li> <li>- Upper Escape Delivery Shift Motor (M119)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E553-8011-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Flapper Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The flapper does not come off the Flapper HP Sensor when the Flapper Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Flapper HP Sensor (PS105) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Flapper Motor (M104) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Flapper HP Sensor (PS105)</li> <li>- Flapper Motor (M104)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>   |



|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E553-8012-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Flapper Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Flapper HP Sensor does not detect the flapper when the Flapper Motor has been driven for 1 second.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Flapper HP Sensor (PS105) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Flapper Motor (M104) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Flapper HP Sensor (PS105)</li> <li>- Flapper Motor (M104)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>  |
| <b>E553-8013-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Escape Flapper Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The escape flapper does not come off the Escape Flapper HP Sensor when the Escape Flapper Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Escape Flapper HP Sensor (PS132) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Escape Flapper Motor (M118) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Escape Flapper HP Sensor (PS132)</li> <li>- Escape Flapper Motor (M118)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>  |
| <b>E553-8014-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Escape Flapper Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Escape Flapper HP Sensor does not detect the escape flapper when the Escape Flapper Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Escape Flapper HP Sensor (PS132) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Escape Flapper Motor (M118) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Escape Flapper HP Sensor (PS132)</li> <li>- Escape Flapper Motor (M118)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>  |
| <b>E553-80F1-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Saddle Feed/Paddle Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The paddle does not come off the Saddle Paddle HP Sensor when the Saddle Feed/Paddle Motor has been driven for 1 second.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Paddle HP Sensor (PS206) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Feed/Paddle Motor (M201) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Saddle Paddle HP Sensor (PS206)</li> <li>- Saddle Feed/Paddle Motor (M201)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E553-80F2-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Saddle Feed/Paddle Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Saddle Paddle HP Sensor does not detect the paddle when the Saddle Feed/Paddle Motor has been driven for 1 second.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Paddle HP Sensor (PS206) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Feed/Paddle Motor (M201) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Saddle Paddle HP Sensor (PS206)</li> <li>- Saddle Feed/Paddle Motor (M201)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E554-8002-02</b>          | <b>Safety switch ON error (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Front Cover Switch is turned OFF for 0.3 seconds when the Front Cover Sensor is ON.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Front Cover Switch (SW101) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Front Cover Switch (SW101)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>  |
| <b>E562-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in Slowdown Timing Sensor (Insertion Folding Unit-P1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The light-receiving amount of the Slowdown Timing Sensor was not within the threshold level although the light-emitting amount of the sensor was adjusted to be within the threshold level.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the Slowdown Timing Sensor (S24)</li> <li>- Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2)</li> <li>- Slowdown Timing Sensor (S24)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>E562-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in Release Timing Sensor (Insertion Folding Unit-P1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The light-receiving amount of the Release Timing Sensor was not within the threshold level although the light-emitting amount of the sensor was adjusted to be within the threshold level.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the Release Timing Sensor (S21)</li> <li>- Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2)</li> <li>- Release Timing Sensor (S21)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>E562-8003-02</b>          | <b>Error in Fold Position Sensor (Insertion Folding Unit-P1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The light-receiving amount of the Fold Position Sensor was not within the threshold level although the light-emitting amount of the sensor was adjusted to be within the threshold level.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the Fold Position Sensor (S23)</li> <li>- Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2)</li> <li>- Fold Position Sensor (S23)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</li> </ul>  |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E562-8004-02</b>          | <b>Error in Upper Stopper Sensor (Insertion Folding Unit-P1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The light-receiving amount of the Upper Stopper Sensor was not within the threshold level although the light-emitting amount of the sensor was adjusted to be within the threshold level.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the Upper Stopper Sensor (S16)</li> <li>- Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2)</li> <li>- Upper Stopper Sensor (S16)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>E569-8001-02</b>          | <b>Upper Stopper Motor failed to go through HP (Insertion Folding Unit-P1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Upper Stopper Sensor failed to be OFF despite the drive of specified pulse in the case that the Upper Stopper Motor started to be driven while the Upper Stopper Sensor was ON.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the Upper Stopper Sensor (S16)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the Upper Stopper Motor (M7)</li> <li>- Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2)</li> <li>- Upper Stopper Sensor (S16)</li> <li>- Upper Stopper Motor (M7)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</li> </ul>     |
| <b>E569-8002-02</b>          | <b>Upper Stopper Motor failed to return to HP (Insertion Folding Unit-P1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Upper Stopper Sensor failed to be ON despite the drive of specified pulse in the case that the Upper Stopper Motor started to be driven while the Upper Stopper Sensor was OFF.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the Upper Stopper Sensor (S16)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the Upper Stopper Motor (M7)</li> <li>- Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2)</li> <li>- Upper Stopper Sensor (S16)</li> <li>- Upper Stopper Motor (M7)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</li> </ul>     |
| <b>E56A-8001-02</b>          | <b>C Fold Stopper Motor failed to go through HP (Insertion Folding Unit-P1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The C Fold Stopper Sensor failed to be OFF despite the drive of specified pulse in the case that the C Fold Stopper Motor started to be driven while the C Fold Stopper Sensor was ON.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the C Fold Stopper Sensor (S17)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the C Fold Stopper Motor (M8)</li> <li>- Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2)</li> <li>- C Fold Stopper Sensor (S17)</li> <li>- C Fold Stopper Motor (M8)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</li> </ul> |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E56A-8002-02</b>          | <b>C Fold Stopper Motor failed to go through HP (Insertion Folding Unit-P1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The C Fold Stopper Sensor failed to be ON despite the drive of specified pulse in the case that the C Fold Stopper Motor started to be driven while the C Fold Stopper Sensor was OFF.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the C Fold Stopper Sensor (S17)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the C Fold Stopper Motor (M8)</li> <li>- Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2)</li> <li>- C Fold Stopper Sensor (S17)</li> <li>- C Fold Stopper Motor (M8)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</li> </ul> |
| <b>E56B-8001-02</b>          | <b>C Fold Tray Motor failed to go through HP (Insertion Folding Unit-P1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The C Fold Tray Motor Sensor failed to be OFF despite the drive of specified pulse in the case that the C Fold Tray Motor started to be driven while the C Fold Tray Motor Sensor was ON.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the C Fold Tray Motor Sensor (S19)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the C Fold Tray Motor (M6)</li> <li>- Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2)</li> <li>- C Fold Tray Motor Sensor (S19)</li> <li>- C Fold Tray Motor (M6)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</li> </ul> |
| <b>E56B-8002-02</b>          | <b>C Fold Tray Motor failed to go through HP (Insertion Folding Unit-P1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The C Fold Tray Motor Sensor failed to be ON despite the drive of specified pulse in the case that the C Fold Tray Motor started to be driven while the C Fold Tray Motor Sensor was OFF.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the C Fold Tray Motor Sensor (S19)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the C Fold Tray Motor (M6)</li> <li>- Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2)</li> <li>- C Fold Tray Motor Sensor (S19)</li> <li>- C Fold Tray Motor (M6)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</li> </ul> |
| <b>E56D-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Paper Retainer Lever Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Paper Retainer Lever does not come off the Paper Retainer Lever Motor Lever HP Sensor when the Paper Retainer Lever Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Paper Retainer Lever HP Sensor (PS217) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Paper Retainer Lever Motor (M209) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Paper Retainer Lever HP Sensor (PS217)</li> <li>- Paper Retainer Lever Motor (M209)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>                             |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E56D-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Paper Retainer Lever Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Paper Retainer Lever HP Sensor does not detect the Paper Retainer Lever when the Paper Retainer Lever Motor has been driven for 1 second.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Paper Retainer Lever HP Sensor (PS217) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Paper Retainer Lever Motor (M209) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Paper Retainer Lever HP Sensor (PS217)</li> <li>- Paper Retainer Lever Motor (M209)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E577-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Stack Delivery/Paddle Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The paddle does not come off the Paddle HP Sensor when the Stack Delivery/Paddle Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Paddle HP Sensor (PS120) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Stack Delivery/Paddle Motor (M103) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Paddle HP Sensor (PS120)</li> <li>- Stack Delivery/Paddle Motor (M103)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>                           |
| <b>E577-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Stack Delivery/Paddle Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Paddle HP Sensor does not detect the paddle when the Stack Delivery/Paddle Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Paddle HP Sensor (PS120) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Stack Delivery/Paddle Motor (M103) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Paddle HP Sensor (PS120)</li> <li>- Stack Delivery/Paddle Motor (M103)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>                           |
| <b>E578-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Return Roller Lift Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The return roller does not come off the Return Roller HP Sensor when the Return Roller Lift Motor has been driven for 1 second.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Return Roller HP Sensor (PS121) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Return Roller Lift Motor (M111) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Return Roller HP Sensor (PS121)</li> <li>- Return Roller Lift Motor (M111)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>                   |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E578-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Return Roller Lift Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Return Roller HP Sensor does not detect the return roller when the Return Roller Lift Motor has been driven for 1 second.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Return Roller HP Sensor (PS121) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Return Roller Lift Motor (M111) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Return Roller HP Sensor (PS121)</li> <li>- Return Roller Lift Motor (M111)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>   |
| <b>E57B-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Paper End Pushing Guide Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The paper end pushing guide does not come off the Paper End Pushing Guide HP Sensor when the Paper End Pushing Guide Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Paper End Pushing Guide HP Sensor (PS122) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Paper End Pushing Guide Motor (M112) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Paper End Pushing Guide HP Sensor (PS122)</li> <li>- Paper End Pushing Guide Motor (M112)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>   |
| <b>E57B-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Paper End Pushing Guide Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Paper End Pushing Guide HP Sensor does not detect the paper end pushing guide when the Paper End Pushing Guide Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Paper End Pushing Guide HP Sensor (PS122) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Paper End Pushing Guide Motor (M112) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Paper End Pushing Guide HP Sensor (PS122)</li> <li>- Paper End Pushing Guide Motor (M112)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>   |
| <b>E583-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Tray Auxiliary Guide Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The tray auxiliary guides don't come off the Front/Rear Tray Auxiliary Guide HP Sensors when the Tray Auxiliary Guide Motor has been driven for 1 second.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Front Tray Auxiliary Guide HP Sensor (PS117) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Rear Tray Auxiliary Guide HP Sensor (PS118) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Tray Auxiliary Guide Motor (M109) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Front Tray Auxiliary Guide HP Sensor (PS117)</li> <li>- Rear Tray Auxiliary Guide HP Sensor (PS118)</li> <li>- Tray Auxiliary Guide Motor (M109)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |



|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E583-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Tray Auxiliary Guide Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Front/Rear Tray Auxiliary Guide HP Sensors don't detect the tray auxiliary guides when the Tray Auxiliary Guide Motor has been driven for 1 second.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Front Tray Auxiliary Guide HP Sensor (PS117) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Rear Tray Auxiliary Guide HP Sensor (PS118) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Tray Auxiliary Guide Motor (M109) to the Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Front Tray Auxiliary Guide HP Sensor (PS117)</li> <li>- Rear Tray Auxiliary Guide HP Sensor (PS118)</li> <li>- Tray Auxiliary Guide Motor (M109)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>   |
| <b>E590-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Punch Motor (Puncher Unit-A1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The punch does not come off the Punch HP Sensor when the Punch Motor has been driven for 0.2 seconds.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Puncher Unit-A1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Punch HP Sensor 1 (PS303) to the Puncher Relay PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Punch HP Sensor 2 (PS304) to the Puncher Relay PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Punch Motor Clock Sensor (PS305) to the Puncher Relay PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Punch Motor (M301) to the Puncher Relay PCB</li> <li>- Punch HP Sensor 1 (PS303)</li> <li>- Punch HP Sensor 2 (PS304)</li> <li>- Punch Motor Clock Sensor (PS305)</li> <li>- Punch Motor (M301)</li> <li>- Puncher Relay PCB (PCB302)</li> <li>- Puncher Controller PCB (PCB301)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Puncher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E590-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Punch Motor (Puncher Unit-A1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>The Punch HP Sensor does not detect the punch during initialization.</p> <p>The Punch HP Sensor does not detect the punch when the Punch Motor has been driven for 0.4 seconds for returning the punch after the punch jam.</p>   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Puncher Unit-A1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Punch HP Sensor 1 (PS303) to the Puncher Relay PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Punch HP Sensor 2 (PS304) to the Puncher Relay PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Punch Motor Clock Sensor (PS305) to the Puncher Relay PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Punch Motor (M301) to the Puncher Relay PCB</li> <li>- Punch HP Sensor 1 (PS303)</li> <li>- Punch HP Sensor 2 (PS304)</li> <li>- Punch Motor Clock Sensor (PS305)</li> <li>- Punch Motor (M301)</li> <li>- Puncher Relay PCB (PCB302)</li> <li>- Puncher Controller PCB (PCB301)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Puncher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |



|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E593-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Punch Shift Motor (Puncher Unit-A1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The punch unit does not come off the Punch Slide HP Sensor when shifting the punch unit by 9mm toward rear.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Puncher Unit-A1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Punch Slide HP Sensor (PS302) to the Puncher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Punch Shift Motor (M302) to the Puncher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Punch Slide HP Sensor (PS302)</li> <li>- Punch Shift Motor (M302)</li> <li>- Puncher Controller PCB (PCB301)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Puncher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E593-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Punch Shift Motor (Puncher Unit-A1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Punch Slide HP Sensor does not detect the punch unit when shifting the punch unit by 37mm toward front.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Puncher Unit-A1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Punch Slide HP Sensor (PS302) to the Puncher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Punch Shift Motor (M302) to the Puncher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Punch Slide HP Sensor (PS302)</li> <li>- Punch Shift Motor (M302)</li> <li>- Puncher Controller PCB (PCB301)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Puncher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> <p>[Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E5E1-8001-02</b>          | <b>Tray Lift Motor failed to go through HP (Insertion Folding Unit-P1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Paper Feed Sensor was not turned ON.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the Paper Feed Sensor (S3)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the Tray Lift Motor (M2)</li> <li>- Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2)</li> <li>- Paper Feed Sensor (S3)</li> <li>- Tray Lift Motor (M2)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>E5E1-8002-02</b>          | <b>Tray Lift Motor failed to go through HP (Insertion Folding Unit-P1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | While the tray is moving down or initialization, the Folding belt HP sensor has not turned ON within the specified pulse.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the Tray Lower Limit Sensor (S5)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2) to the Tray Lift Motor (M2)</li> <li>- Inserter/Folder Controller PCB (PCB2)</li> <li>- Tray Lower Limit Sensor (S5)</li> <li>- Tray Lift Motor (M2)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Inserter/Folder Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</li> </ul>   |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E5F0-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Saddle Paper End Stopper Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The saddle paper end stopper does not come off the Saddle Paper End Stopper HP Sensor when the Saddle Paper End Stopper Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Paper End Stopper HP Sensor (PS210) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Paper End Stopper Motor (M206) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Saddle Paper End Stopper HP Sensor (PS210)</li> <li>- Saddle Paper End Stopper Motor (M206)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E5F0-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Saddle Paper End Stopper Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Saddle Paper End Stopper HP Sensor does not detect the saddle paper end stopper when the Saddle Paper End Stopper Motor has been driven for 4 seconds.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Paper End Stopper HP Sensor (PS210) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Paper End Stopper Motor (M206) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Saddle Paper End Stopper HP Sensor (PS210)</li> <li>- Saddle Paper End Stopper Motor (M206)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E5F1-8003-02</b>          | <b>Saddle Delivery Motor clock error (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The lock state of Saddle Delivery Motor is detected 0.2 seconds or more while the motor operates.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Delivery Motor Clock Sensor (PS211) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Delivery Motor (M207) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Saddle Delivery Motor Clock Sensor (PS211)</li> <li>- Saddle Delivery Motor (M207)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>                   |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E5F3-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Saddle Alignment Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The saddle alignment plate does not come off the Saddle Alignment HP Sensor when the Saddle Alignment Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Alignment HP Sensor (PS207) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Alignment Motor (M203) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Saddle Alignment HP Sensor (PS207)</li> <li>- Saddle Alignment Motor (M203)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E5F3-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Saddle Alignment Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Saddle Alignment HP Sensor does not detect the saddle alignment plate when the Saddle Alignment Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Alignment HP Sensor (PS207) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Alignment Motor (M203) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Saddle Alignment HP Sensor (PS207)</li> <li>- Saddle Alignment Motor (M203)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E5F4-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Saddle Stitcher Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The saddle stitcher does not come off the Saddle Stitcher HP Sensor when the Saddle Stitcher Motor has been driven for 1.2 seconds.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Stitcher HP Sensor (PS215) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Stitcher Motor (M208) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher HP Sensor (PS215)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Motor (M208)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>     |
| <b>E5F4-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Saddle Stitcher Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Saddle Stitcher HP Sensor does not detect the saddle stitcher when the Saddle Stitcher Motor has been driven for 1.2 seconds.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Stitcher HP Sensor (PS215) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Stitcher Motor (M208) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher HP Sensor (PS215)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Motor (M208)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>     |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E5F6-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Saddle Paper Pushing Plate/Folding Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The saddle paper pushing plate does not come off the Saddle Paper Pushing Plate HP Sensor when the Saddle Paper Pushing Plate/Folding Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Paper Pushing Plate HP Sensor (PS208) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Paper Pushing Plate/Folding Motor (M204) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Saddle Paper Pushing Plate HP Sensor (PS208)</li> <li>- Saddle Paper Pushing Plate/Folding Motor (M204)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>                                   |
| <b>E5F6-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Saddle Paper Pushing Plate/Folding Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Saddle Paper Pushing Plate HP Sensor does not detect the saddle paper pushing plate when the Saddle Paper Pushing Plate/Folding Motor has been driven for 3 seconds.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Paper Pushing Plate HP Sensor (PS208) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Paper Pushing Plate/Folding Motor (M204) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Saddle Paper Pushing Plate HP Sensor (PS208)</li> <li>- Saddle Paper Pushing Plate/Folding Motor (M204)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>                                   |
| <b>E5F6-8003-02</b>          | <b>Saddle Paper Pushing Plate/Folding Motor clock error (Finisher-AC1)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The lock state of Saddle Paper Pushing Plate/Folding Motor is detected 0.2 seconds or more while the motor operates.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Paper Pushing Plate/Folding Motor Clock Sensor (PS212) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Paper Pushing Plate/Folding Motor (M204) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Saddle Paper Pushing Plate/Folding Motor Clock Sensor (PS212)</li> <li>- Saddle Paper Pushing Plate/Folding Motor (M204)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E5F8-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Saddle Switching Lever Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The saddle switching lever does not come off the Saddle Switching Lever HP Sensor when the Saddle Switching Lever Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Switching Lever HP Sensor (PS205) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Switching Lever Motor (M202) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Saddle Switching Lever HP Sensor (PS205)</li> <li>- Saddle Switching Lever Motor (M202)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E5F8-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Saddle Switching Lever Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Saddle Switching Lever HP Sensor does not detect the saddle switching lever when the Saddle Switching Lever Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Switching Lever HP Sensor (PS205) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Switching Lever Motor (M202) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Saddle Switching Lever HP Sensor (PS205)</li> <li>- Saddle Switching Lever Motor (M202)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E5FA-8001-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Saddle Gripper Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The saddle gripper does not come off the Saddle Gripper HP Sensor when the Saddle Gripper Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Gripper HP Sensor (PS209) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Gripper Motor (M205) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Saddle Gripper HP Sensor (PS209)</li> <li>- Saddle Gripper Motor (M205)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>                                 |
| <b>E5FA-8002-02</b>          | <b>Error in the Saddle Gripper Motor (Finisher-AC1)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Saddle Gripper HP Sensor does not detect the saddle gripper when the Saddle Gripper Motor has been driven for 1 second.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1</p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Gripper HP Sensor (PS209) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Saddle Gripper Motor (M205) to the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Saddle Gripper HP Sensor (PS209)</li> <li>- Saddle Gripper Motor (M205)</li> <li>- Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB (PCB201)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB (PCB101)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustment&gt; When Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual.</p>                                 |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E602-0001-00</b>          | <b>HDD error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | HDD failed to be Ready, or HDD was not formatted.<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>3. Reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>4. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol>  |
| <b>E602-0020-00</b>          | <b>HDD error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Corruption of database managing user mode/service mode data was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- HDD</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] While this error occurs, backup of the setting values is disabled. In addition, it may not be recorded in the error log. Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>2. enter safe mode, and format the HDD using a USB flash drive.</li> <li>3. Replace the HDD.</li> </ol>  |
| <b>E602-0101-00</b>          | <b>HDD error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the PDL-related file storage area. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3. Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "1", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "1", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |

| E602-0111-00                 | HDD error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the PDL-related file storage area. (File could not be written in the HDD after startup or I/O error after startup)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "1", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "1", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| E602-0201-00                 | HDD error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>An error was detected in the storage area of image data after startup. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)</p> <p>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.</p>   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "2", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "2", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |



| E602-0211-00                 | HDD error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the storage area of image data after startup. (File could not be written in the HDD after startup or I/O error after startup)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "2", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "2", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| E602-0301-00                 | HDD error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>An error was detected in the MEAP-related area. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)</p> <p>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.</p>  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "3", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "3", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |

| E602-0311-00                 | HDD error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the MEAP-related area. (File could not be written in the HDD after startup or I/O error after startup)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "3", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "3", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| E602-0401-00                 | HDD error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Logical partition error was detected. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "4", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "4", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to the error, enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p>      |

| E602-0411-00                 | HDD error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Logical partition error was detected. (File could not be written in the HDD after startup or I/O error after startup)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "4", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "4", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to the error, enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p>      |
| E602-0501-00                 | HDD error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>An error was detected in the storage area of image data after startup. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)</p> <p>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.</p>   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "5", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "5", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |

| E602-0511-00                 | HDD error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the storage area of image data after startup. (File could not be written in the HDD after startup or I/O error after startup)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "5", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "5", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| E602-0601-00                 | HDD error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>An error was detected in the storage area of image data after startup. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)</p> <p>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.</p>   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "6", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "6", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |

| E602-0611-00   | HDD error  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>Detection Description</b></p> <p>An error was detected in the storage area of image data after startup. (File could not be written in the HDD after startup or I/O error after startup)</p>  | <p><b>Remedy</b></p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "6", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "6", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| E602-0701-00   | HDD error  |
| <p><b>Detection Description</b></p> <p>An error was detected in general application temporary area (temporary file). (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)</p> <p>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.</p> | <p><b>Remedy</b></p> <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "7", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "7", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |

| E602-0711-00                 | HDD error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in general application temporary area (temporary file). (File could not be written in the HDD after startup or I/O error after startup)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "7", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "7", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| E602-0801-00                 | HDD error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>An error was detected in the general application-related area. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)</p> <p>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.</p>   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "8", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "8", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |

| E602-0811-00                 | HDD error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the general application-related area. (File could not be written in the HDD after startup or I/O error after startup)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "8", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "8", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| E602-0901-00                 | HDD error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>An error was detected in PDL spool data (temporary file). (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)</p> <p>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.</p>  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "9", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "9", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |



| E602-0911-00                 | HDD error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in PDL spool data (temporary file). (File could not be written in the HDD after startup or I/O error after startup)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "9", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "9", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p>   |
| E602-1001-00                 | HDD error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>An error was detected in the SEND-related area. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)</p> <p>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.</p>  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "10", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "10", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |

| E602-1011-00                 | HDD error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the SEND-related area. (File could not be written in the HDD after startup or I/O error after startup)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "10", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "10", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| E602-1101-00                 | HDD error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>An error was detected in the update-related area. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)</p> <p>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.</p>  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "11", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "11", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |

| E602-1111-00                 | HDD error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the update-related area. (File could not be written in the HDD after startup or I/O error after startup)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "11", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "11", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| E602-1201-00                 | HDD error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>An error was detected in the license-related area. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)</p> <p>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.</p>   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 5.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power, and check whether the error is cleared.</li> <li>3. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "12", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>4. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>5. enter safe mode, and format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p>  |

| E602-1211-00                 | HDD error  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the license-related area. (File could not be written in the HDD after startup or I/O error after startup)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 5.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power, and check whether the error is cleared.</li> <li>3. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "12", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>4. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>5. enter safe mode, and format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| E602-1301-00                 | HDD error  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the system area. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 5.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power, and check whether the error is cleared.</li> <li>3. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "13", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>4. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>5. enter safe mode, and format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E602-1311-00</b>          | <b>HDD error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the system area. (File could not be written in the HDD after startup or I/O error after startup)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 5.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power, and check whether the error is cleared.</li> <li>3. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "13", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>4. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>5. enter safe mode, and format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E602-1371-00</b>          | <b>System verification error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | At startup, a verification error occurred due to invalid data of a MEAP login application.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Remedy]</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Set the following service mode setting value to 1:<br/>COPIER &gt; OPTION &gt; USER &gt; MEAPSAFE</li> <li>2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Reinstall the corresponding MEAP application from RUI.</li> </ol> <p>[Caution]</p> <p>After performing the remedy work, return the MEAPSAFE value to 0 and turn OFF and then ON the main power.</p>   |
| <b>E602-1372-00</b>          | <b>Verification error by "Falsification detection at startup" function</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | At startup, a verification error occurred due to invalid data in the MEAP area.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power, and check whether the error is cleared.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "13", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain necessary backup data referring to "Appendix &gt; Backup Data List" in System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "13", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. Re-install MEAP application(s) via RUI and restore the backup data.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference]</p> <p>Restore the backup data if the data has been deleted.</p>   |

| E602-1401-00                 | HDD error   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>An error was detected in SWAP (temporary file/alternative memory area). (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)</p> <p>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.</p>  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "14", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "14", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| E602-1411-00                 | HDD error   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>An error was detected in SWAP (temporary file/alternative memory area). (File could not be written in the HDD after startup or I/O error after startup)</p>  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "14", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "14", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |

| E602-1701-00                 | HDD error  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the debug log area. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.<br/>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "17", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "17", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. enter safe mode, and format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p>  |
| E602-1711-00                 | HDD error  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the debug log area. (File could not be written in the HDD after startup or I/O error after startup)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.<br/>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "17", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "17", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |



| E602-1801-00                 | HDD error  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>An error was detected in the image data storage area in Advanced Box. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)</p> <p>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.</p>   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "18", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "18", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. enter safe mode, and format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| E602-1811-00                 | HDD error  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>An error was detected in the image data storage area in Advanced Box. (File could not be written in the HDD after startup or I/O error after startup)</p>   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "18", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "18", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. enter safe mode, and format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E602-1901-00</b>          | <b>HDD error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>An error was detected in the storage area of data for printing. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)</p> <p>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.</p>  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "19", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "19", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. enter safe mode, and format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p>  |
| <b>E602-1911-00</b>          | <b>HDD error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>An error was detected in the storage area of data for printing. (File could not be written in the HDD after startup or I/O error after startup)</p>  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB (UN34/J6003, J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)</li> <li>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "19", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "19", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. If the above-mentioned service mode cannot be executed due to an error, etc., enter safe mode. Then format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment&gt; Actions when Replacing the Parts&gt; HDD" in the Service Manual.</p> |
| <b>E602-2000-00</b>          | <b>HDD error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>I/O error was detected in the file system after startup.</p>   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that the HDD optional board is properly installed.</li> <li>2. Turn ON the main power, and check whether the error is cleared.</li> <li>3. Execute the key clear using SST (to make an unformatted disk).</li> </ol> <p>[CAUTION] E602-0001 will be indicated if activating the machine with the unformatted disk. Therefore, be sure to format the HDD.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. enter safe mode, and format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> </ol>  |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E602-5001-00</b>          | <b>Encryption Chip error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Error of the encryption chip on the Main Controller   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts] Main Controller PCB<br>[Remedy] Replace the Main Controller PCB   |
| <b>E602-5002-00</b>          | <b>HDD error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A non-genuine HDD was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts] HDD<br>[Remedy]<br>1. Replace the HDD with a genuine one.<br>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment> Actions when Replacing the Parts> HDD" in the Service Manual.<br>2. Format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.  |
| <b>E602-FF01-00</b>          | <b>HDD error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An unidentified HDD error was detected at startup.<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)<br>[Reference] For backup and restoration, refer to "Appendix> Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.<br>2. Format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.<br>3. Check/replace the related parts.<br>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment> Actions when Replacing the Parts> HDD" in the Service Manual. |
| <b>E602-FF11-00</b>          | <b>HDD error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An unidentified HDD error was detected after startup.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)<br>[Reference] For backup and restoration, refer to "Appendix> Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.<br>2. Format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.<br>3. Check/replace the related parts.<br>[Reference] When replacing the HDD, back up the setting values by referring to "Chapter 5. Adjustment> Actions when Replacing the Parts> HDD" in the Service Manual. |
| <b>E612-0007-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Initial license has not yet been registered.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Register the initial license (speed license).   |
| <b>E614-0001-00</b>          | <b>Flash PCB error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Flash PCB could not be recognized, or the Flash PCB was not formatted.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>- Reinstall the necessary application software once the error is cleared.<br>1. After turning OFF the main power, remove and then install the Flash PCB again to check that it is installed properly.<br>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.<br>3. Replace the Main Controller PCB.  |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E614-0002-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The file system could not be initialized normally at startup.<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Reference] For backup and restoration, refer to "Appendix> Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>- Reinstall the necessary application software once the error is cleared.<br>1. After turning OFF the main power, remove and then install the Flash PCB to check that it is installed properly.<br>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.<br>3. Replace the Main Controller PCB. |
| <b>E614-0006-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Bootable was not found on the Flash PCB.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>- Reinstall the necessary application software once the error is cleared.<br>1. After turning OFF the main power, remove and then install the Flash PCB again to check that it is installed properly.<br>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.<br>3. Replace the Main Controller PCB.  |
| <b>E614-0071-00</b>          | <b>System verification error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | At normal startup, an error may occur due to invalid data of the firmware for startup.<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it is not recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Flash PCB<br>[Remedy]<br>Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Start the machine in safe mode, and reinstall the system using SST or a USB flash drive.<br>* [2]: Select Update (Overwrite all) to update the system.<br>2. Replace the FLASH PCB, and reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.   |
| <b>E614-0072-00</b>          | <b>System verification error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | At normal startup, an error may occur due to invalid data of the firmware for safe mode startup.<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it is not recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Flash PCB<br>[Remedy]<br>1. Replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or a USB flash drive.   |
| <b>E614-0073-00</b>          | <b>System verification error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | At startup in safe mode, an error may occur due to invalid data of the startup firmware.<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it is not recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Flash PCB<br>[Remedy]<br>1. Replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or a USB flash drive.   |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E614-0074-00</b>          | <b>Start system verification function error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | At startup in safe mode, an error may occur due to invalid data of the firmware for safe mode startup.<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it is not recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Flash PCB<br>[Remedy]<br>1. Replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or a USB flash drive.   |
| <b>E614-0101-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the system area. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.<br>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.<br>2. Select COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> CHK-TYPE> "0", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.<br>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix> Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.<br>4. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.<br>5. Replace the Main Controller PCB. |
| <b>E614-0111-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the system area. (File could not be written in the Flash PCB after startup or I/O error after startup)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.<br>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.<br>2. Select COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> CHK-TYPE> "0", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.<br>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix> Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.<br>4. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.<br>5. Replace the Main Controller PCB. |
| <b>E614-0201-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the system area. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.<br>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.<br>2. Select COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> CHK-TYPE> "0", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.<br>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix> Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.<br>4. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.<br>5. Replace the Main Controller PCB. |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E614-0211-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the system area. (File could not be written in the Flash PCB after startup or I/O error after startup)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "0", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>5. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol> |
| <b>E614-0301-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the system area. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "0", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>5. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol> |
| <b>E614-0311-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the system area. (File could not be written in the Flash PCB after startup or I/O error after startup)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "0", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>5. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol> |
| <b>E614-0401-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Logical partition error was detected. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>3. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol>   |



|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E614-0411-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Logical partition error was detected. (File could not be written in the Flash PCB after startup or I/O error after startup)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>3. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol>   |
| <b>E614-0501-00</b>          | <b>Error in file system on the Flash PCB</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>An error was detected in the general application-related area. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)</p> <p>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.</p>   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "8", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "8", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. Enter safe mode, and reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> |
| <b>E614-0511-00</b>          | <b>Error in file system on the Flash PCB</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the general application-related area. (File could not be written in the Flash PCB after startup or I/O error after startup)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "8", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "8", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. Enter safe mode, and reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>6. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> |



|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E614-0601-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the license-related area. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix> Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.<br>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.<br>3. Replace the Main Controller PCB.  |
| <b>E614-0611-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in the license-related area. (File could not be written in the Flash PCB after startup or I/O error after startup)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix> Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.<br>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.<br>3. Replace the Main Controller PCB.  |
| <b>E614-0701-00</b>          | <b>Error in file system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in system setting value (service mode, etc.) storage area. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.<br>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.<br>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.<br>2. Select COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> CHK-TYPE> "8", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.<br>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix> Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.<br>4. Select COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> CHK-TYPE> "8", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.<br>5. Check/replace the related parts. |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E614-0711-00</b>          | <b>Error in file system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in system setting value (service mode, etc.) storage area. (File could not be written in the Flash PCB after startup or I/O error after startup)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. When prioritizing clearing of the error, skip Remedies 2 and 3.</p> <p>Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.</li> <li>2. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "8", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix&gt; Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.</li> <li>4. Select COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; CHK-TYPE&gt; "8", and execute "HD-CLEAR". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power to delete the data in the corresponding partition.</li> <li>5. Check/replace the related parts.</li> </ol> |
| <b>E614-4000-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>The OS could not be recognized.</p> <p>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.</p>  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. After turning OFF the main power, remove and then install the Flash PCB again to check that it is installed properly.</li> <li>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>3. Check that the HDD and the cables are properly installed.</li> <li>4. Enter safe mode, and format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>5. If another error occurs, clear the error by performing the remedy for it.</li> <li>6. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol>   |
| <b>E614-4001-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>The OS boot file was not found.</p> <p>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.</p>  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. After turning OFF the main power, remove and then install the Flash PCB again to check that it is installed properly.</li> <li>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>3. Check that the HDD and the cables are properly installed.</li> <li>4. Enter safe mode, and format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>5. If another error occurs, clear the error by performing the remedy for it.</li> <li>6. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol>   |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E614-4002-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The OS kernel was not found.<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. After turning OFF the main power, remove and then install the Flash PCB again to check that it is installed properly.<br>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.<br>3. Check that the HDD and the cables are properly installed.<br>4. Enter safe mode, and format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.<br>5. If another error occurs, clear the error by performing the remedy for it.<br>6. Replace the Main Controller PCB. |
| <b>E614-4003-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The OS boot loader was not found.<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. After turning OFF the main power, remove and then install the Flash PCB again to check that it is installed properly.<br>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.<br>3. Check that the HDD and the cables are properly installed.<br>4. Enter safe mode, and format the HDD using SST or a USB flash drive.<br>5. If another error occurs, clear the error by performing the remedy for it.<br>6. Replace the Main Controller PCB. |
| <b>E614-4010-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The OS in safe mode could not be recognized.<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. After turning OFF the main power, remove and then install the Flash PCB again to check that it is installed properly.<br>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.  |
| <b>E614-4011-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The file for booting the OS in safe mode was not found.<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. After turning OFF the main power, remove and then install the Flash PCB again to check that it is installed properly.<br>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.  |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E614-4012-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The kernel in safe mode was not found.<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>[Remedy]Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. After turning OFF the main power, remove and then install the Flash PCB again to check that it is installed properly.<br>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive. |
| <b>E614-9000-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | SRAM device access-related error (at startup)<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>[Remedy]Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. After turning OFF the main power, remove and then install the Flash PCB again to check that it is installed properly.<br>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive. |
| <b>E614-9001-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Error in memory allocation/invalid memory (at startup)<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>[Remedy]Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. After turning OFF the main power, remove and then install the Flash PCB again to check that it is installed properly.<br>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive. |
| <b>E614-9002-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Setting file error was detected at startup.<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>[Remedy]Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. After turning OFF the main power, remove and then install the Flash PCB again to check that it is installed properly.<br>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive. |
| <b>E614-9003-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Parameter error was detected at startup.<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>[Remedy]Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. After turning OFF the main power, remove and then install the Flash PCB again to check that it is installed properly.<br>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive. |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E614-9004-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Startup error was detected.<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. After turning OFF the main power, remove and then install the Flash PCB again to check that it is installed properly.<br>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.  |
| <b>E614-FF01-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An unidentified Flash error was detected at startup. (Initialization failed at startup or I/O error at startup)<br>When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it may not be recorded in the error log.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 5.<br>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.<br>2. Select COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> CHK-TYPE> "0", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.<br>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix> Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.<br>4. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.<br>5. Replace the Main Controller PCB. |
| <b>E614-FF11-00</b>          | <b>Error in system on the Flash PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An unidentified Flash error was detected at startup. (File could not be written in the Flash PCB after startup or I/O error after startup)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Sata Flash PCB (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared. Although the error is cleared by "HD-CHECK", it may occur again. Thus, perform Remedies 1 to 5.<br>1. Check the related harness/cable and connector.<br>2. Select COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> CHK-TYPE> "0", and execute "HD-CHECK". Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power.<br>3. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to "Appendix> Backup Data List" in the System Service Manual.<br>4. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.<br>5. Replace the Main Controller PCB. |
| <b>E615-0001-00</b>          | <b>Error in self-diagnosis of the encryption module</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected in self-diagnosis of the encryption library.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>- Reinstall the necessary application software and restore the backup data once the error is cleared.<br>1. After reinstalling the system software using SST or a USB memory, turn OFF and then ON the main power.<br>2. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to the backup data list.<br>3. Enter safe mode, and execute [4] Clear/Format> [2] Flash Format (Flash format) using a USB memory.<br>4. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB memory.<br>[Reference] For backup and restoration, refer to "Adjustment> Main Controller System" and "Appendix> Backup Data List" in the Service Manual.  |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E674-0001-07</b>          | <b>Fax Board communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected for the specified number of times in communication with the Fax Board.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harness between the Fax Board and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J701) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)<br>- Fax Board<br>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY, 2)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts. |
| <b>E674-0002-07</b>          | <b>Fax Board communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected for the specified number of times in communication with the Fax Board.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harness between the Fax Board and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J701) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)<br>- Fax Board<br>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY, 2)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts. |
| <b>E674-0004-07</b>          | <b>Fax Board communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error occurred when accessing the modem IC used for fax.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harness between the Fax Board and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J701) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)<br>- Fax Board<br>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY, 2)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts. |
| <b>E674-0008-07</b>          | <b>Fax Board communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error occurred when accessing the port IC used for fax.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harness between the Fax Board and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J701) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)<br>- Fax Board<br>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY, 2)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts. |
| <b>E674-000C-07</b>          | <b>Fax Board communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error was detected when accessing the modem IC and the port IC used for fax.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harness between the Fax Board and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J701) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)<br>- Fax Board<br>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY, 2)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts. |
| <b>E674-0010-07</b>          | <b>Fax Board communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error occurred when opening the Timer Device used for fax.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY, 2)<br>[Remedy] Replace the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY, 2)  |
| <b>E674-0011-07</b>          | <b>Fax Board communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error occurred when starting the Timer Device used for fax.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY, 2)<br>[Remedy] Replace the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY, 2)  |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E674-0020-07</b>          | <b>Fax Board communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error occurred in the modem IC used for fax.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harness between the Fax Board and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J701) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)<br>- Fax Board<br>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY, 2)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.  |
| <b>E674-0021-07</b>          | <b>Fax Board communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A Fax Board for non-supported modem has been connected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Replace it with a genuine Fax Board (for 1-line, 2-line, or 3/4-line).   |
| <b>E674-0030-07</b>          | <b>Fax Board communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Check sum error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | System software download for 2 line FAX  |
| <b>E674-0100-07</b>          | <b>Fax Board communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | After completion of fax communication, writing of the communication information (log) failed, and the log could not be read.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Turn OFF and then ON the main power.<br>If it occurs when the power is turned OFF and then ON after executing FAX > Clear > ALL, execute FAX > Clear > ALL and turn OFF and then ON the power again.<br>[CAUTION] The previous communication information (log) will be cleared by turning OFF and then ON the main power.  |
| <b>E674-0200-07</b>          | <b>HDD access error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error occurred when accessing the HDD.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- HDD (Unit of replacement: HARD DISK DRIVE)<br>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY, 2)<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. After deleting the system software using a USB memory, reinstall it using SST or a USB memory.<br>2. After replacing the HDD, execute [4] Clear/Format> [1] Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory.<br>3. Replace the Main Controller PCB 1. |
| <b>E674-0300-07</b>          | <b>Fax configuration error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | It was detected that there was a Fax Board for multiple lines installed while the IP Fax license was enabled.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | - Remove the Fax Board for multiple lines to use the machine as an IP Fax model.<br>- Uninstall the IP Fax license to use the machine as a G3 Fax model.   |
| <b>E674-0301-07</b>          | <b>Fax configuration error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | It was detected that there was no 1-line Fax Board installed while the IP Fax license was enabled.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | - Install the Fax Board (1-line) to use the machine as an IP Fax model.<br>- Uninstall the IP Fax license and install the G3 Fax Board to use the machine as a G3 Fax model.   |
| <b>E677-0001-00</b>          | <b>Print server error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Exhaust Fan operation error on the print server is detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Check power supply to the Exhaust Fan.<br>2. Replace the Exhaust Fan.  |
| <b>E677-0003-00</b>          | <b>Print server error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Error was detected at the configuration check performed at startup.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Check the connection cable between the host machine and the print server.<br>2. Reinstall the system of the print server.  |



|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E677-0004-00</b>          | <b>Print server error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | CPU Fan operation error on the print server is detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Check power supply to the CPU Fan.<br>2. Replace the CPU Fan.   |
| <b>E677-0010-00</b>          | <b>Print server error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Not proper print server is connected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Replace the print server with the proper one.<br>2. Reinstall the system of the print server.   |
| <b>E677-0080-00</b>          | <b>Print server error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error between the print server and the host machine was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Check the connection cable between the host machine and the print server.<br>2. Reinstall the system of the print server.   |
| <b>E710-0001-00</b>          | <b>IPC initialization error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The machine did not become ready status within 3 sec after startup of the IPC Chip.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Check the connection cable between the host machine and the Finisher.   |
| <b>E711-0001-05</b>          | <b>IPC communication error (time out error)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Timeout was detected in communication between the host machine and the finisher.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB/Relay PCB to the Finisher Lattice Connector<br>1. DC Controller PCB (UN1/J462) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)<br>2. Relay PCB (UN86/J505) to Relay Connector (4P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)<br>3. Relay Connector (9P and 4P) to Finisher Lattice Connector (J9043) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FINISHER CONNECTOR)<br>- Finisher Controller PCB<br>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)<br>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br>[Reference]<br>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br>Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> DSRAMBUP<br>Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> DSRAMRES<br>- After replacement of the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments> Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher. |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E711-0008-05</b>          | <b>IPC communication error (initialization error)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An initialization error was detected in communication between the host machine and the finisher.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB/Relay PCB to the Finisher Lattice Connector</li> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (UN1/J462) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay PCB (UN86/J505) to Relay Connector (4P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P and 4P) to Finisher Lattice Connector (J9043) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FINISHER CONNECTOR)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</li> </ul> <p>Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/> Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- After replacement of the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher.</li> </ul> |
| <b>E711-0020-05</b>          | <b>IPC communication error (recovery error)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A recovery error was detected in communication between the host machine and the finisher.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB/Relay PCB to the Finisher Lattice Connector</li> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (UN1/J462) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay PCB (UN86/J505) to Relay Connector (4P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P and 4P) to Finisher Lattice Connector (J9043) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FINISHER CONNECTOR)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</li> </ul> <p>Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/> Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- After replacement of the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher.</li> </ul> |
| <b>E713-0001-05</b>          | <b>Finisher communication error (retransmission request reception error)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A retransmission request reception error was detected consecutively in communication between the host machine and the finisher.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB/Relay PCB to the Finisher Lattice Connector</li> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (UN1/J462) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay PCB (UN86/J505) to Relay Connector (4P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P and 4P) to Finisher Lattice Connector (J9043) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FINISHER CONNECTOR)</li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</li> </ul> <p>Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/> Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- After replacement of the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher.</li> </ul> |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E713-0002-05</b>          | <b>Finisher communication error (transmission error of retransmission request)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A transmission error of retransmission request was detected consecutively in communication between the host machine and the finisher.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB/Relay PCB to the Finisher Lattice Connector <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (UN1/J462) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay PCB (UN86/J505) to Relay Connector (4P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P and 4P) to Finisher Lattice Connector (J9043) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FINISHER CONNECTOR)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/>Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/>Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> <li>- After replacement of the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher.</li> </ul> |
| <b>E713-0004-05</b>          | <b>Finisher communication error (reception timeout error)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Reception incomplete was detected for more than the specified period of time in communication between the host machine and the finisher.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB/Relay PCB to the Finisher Lattice Connector <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (UN1/J462) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay PCB (UN86/J505) to Relay Connector (4P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P and 4P) to Finisher Lattice Connector (J9043) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FINISHER CONNECTOR)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/>Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/>Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> <li>- After replacement of the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher.</li> </ul> |
| <b>E713-0008-05</b>          | <b>Finisher communication error (checksum error)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A checksum error was detected in communication between the host machine and the finisher.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB/Relay PCB to the Finisher Lattice Connector <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (UN1/J462) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay PCB (UN86/J505) to Relay Connector (4P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P and 4P) to Finisher Lattice Connector (J9043) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FINISHER CONNECTOR)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/>Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/>Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> <li>- After replacement of the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher.</li> </ul> |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E713-0010-05</b>          | <b>Finisher communication error (time out error)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Timeout was detected in communication between the host machine and the finisher.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB/Relay PCB to the Finisher Lattice Connector <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (UN1/J462) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay PCB (UN86/J505) to Relay Connector (4P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P and 4P) to Finisher Lattice Connector (J9043) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FINISHER CONNECTOR)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/>Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/>Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> <li>- After replacement of the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher.</li> </ul> |
| <b>E713-0011-05</b>          | <b>Finisher communication error (NACK reception error)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Retransmission of NACK was detected consecutively in communication between the host machine and the finisher.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB/Relay PCB to the Finisher Lattice Connector <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (UN1/J462) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay PCB (UN86/J505) to Relay Connector (4P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P and 4P) to Finisher Lattice Connector (J9043) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FINISHER CONNECTOR)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/>Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/>Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> <li>- After replacement of the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher.</li> </ul> |
| <b>E713-0020-05</b>          | <b>Finisher communication error (invalid BCC in received data)</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Invalid BCC in received data was detected in communication between the host machine and the finisher.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB/Relay PCB to the Finisher Lattice Connector <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (UN1/J462) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay PCB (UN86/J505) to Relay Connector (4P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P and 4P) to Finisher Lattice Connector (J9043) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FINISHER CONNECTOR)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/>Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/>Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> <li>- After replacement of the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher.</li> </ul> |

| E713-0021-05                 | Finisher communication error (reception timeout error)  |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Reception incomplete was detected consecutively in communication between the host machine and the finisher.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB/Relay PCB to the Finisher Lattice Connector               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (UN1/J462) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay PCB (UN86/J505) to Relay Connector (4P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P and 4P) to Finisher Lattice Connector (J9043) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FINISHER CONNECTOR)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/>Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/>Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> <li>- After replacement of the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher.</li> </ul> |
| E713-0022-05                 | Finisher communication error (undefined error)  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An undefined error was detected consecutively in communication between the host machine and the finisher.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB/Relay PCB to the Finisher Lattice Connector               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (UN1/J462) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay PCB (UN86/J505) to Relay Connector (4P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P and 4P) to Finisher Lattice Connector (J9043) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FINISHER CONNECTOR)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/>Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/>Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> <li>- After replacement of the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher.</li> </ul> |
| E713-0030-05                 | Finisher communication error (initialization error)   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An initialization error was detected in communication between the host machine and the finisher.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the DC Controller PCB/Relay PCB to the Finisher Lattice Connector               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DC Controller PCB (UN1/J462) to Relay Connector (9P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay PCB (UN86/J505) to Relay Connector (4P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (9P and 4P) to Finisher Lattice Connector (J9043) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FINISHER CONNECTOR)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Finisher Controller PCB</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br/>Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP<br/>Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> <li>- After replacement of the Finisher Controller PCB, refer to "Adjustments&gt; Adjustment when Replacing the Parts" in the Service Manual for the Finisher.</li> </ul> |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E717-0001-00</b>          | <b>Communication error with the NE Controller</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Error when the NE Controller is started.<br>The NE Controller which was connected before turning OFF the power is not connected at power-on.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Check the cable, and then go through the following to clear the error: Service Mode> COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> ERR.   |
| <b>E717-0002-00</b>          | <b>Communication error with the NE Controller</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | IPC error at NE Controller operation.<br>Open circuit of IPC, unable to recover the IPC communication.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Check the cable, and then go through the following to clear the error: Service Mode> COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> ERR.   |
| <b>E719-0001-00</b>          | <b>Coin vendor error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The coin vendor which was connected before turning OFF the main power was not connected at power-on.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Check/replace the cable between the charging management equipment and the host machine.<br>[Reference] When operating the machine without the charging management equipment, execute "COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> ERR". (It is designed to generate an error to prevent the misuse by removing the charging management equipment.)  |
| <b>E719-0002-00</b>          | <b>Coin vendor error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | IPC error when the coin vendor is running<br>- Open circuit of the IPC, or IPC communication could not be recovered.<br>- Open circuit of the pickup/delivery signal cable was detected.<br>- Invalid connection was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Check/replace the cable between the charging management equipment and the host machine.<br>[Reference] When operating the machine without the charging management equipment, execute "COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> ERR". (It is designed to generate an error to prevent the misuse by removing the charging management equipment.)  |
| <b>E719-0003-00</b>          | <b>Coin vendor error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error with the coin vendor was detected during unit price acquisition at startup.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Check/replace the cable between the charging management equipment and the host machine.<br>[Reference] When operating the machine without the charging management equipment, execute "COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> ERR". (It is designed to generate an error to prevent the misuse by removing the charging management equipment.)  |
| <b>E719-0021-00</b>          | <b>Coin vendor error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication with the coin vendor could not be established at startup of the host machine.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | 1. Check/replace the cable between the charging management equipment and the host machine.<br>2. Check the power of the charging.  |
| <b>E719-0022-00</b>          | <b>Coin vendor error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication with the coin vendor could not be established at startup of the host machine.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | 1. Check/replace the cable between the charging management equipment and the host machine.<br>2. Check the power of the charging.  |
| <b>E719-0031-00</b>          | <b>Card Reader communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication with the Card Reader could not be established at startup.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Check/replace the harness between the Card Reader and the Main Controller PCB (PWB1/J4023 (white connector at the upper side)).<br>2. Replace the Card Reader.<br>[Reference] In the case of operating the device without the Card Reader which had been used, execute "COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> CARD" after removing the Card Reader. |



|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E719-0032-00</b>          | <b>Card Reader communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Although communication with the Card Reader was available at startup, it became unavailable in the middle of it.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Check/replace the harness between the Card Reader and the Main Controller PCB (PWB1/J4023 (white connector at the upper side).<br>2. Replace the Card Reader.<br>[Reference] In the case of operating the device without the Card Reader which had been used, execute "COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> CARD" after removing the Card Reader. |
| <b>E719-0041-00</b>          | <b>Coin vendor error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication with the coin vendor could not be established at startup of the host machine. (Charge mode (COIN = 6) has been set.)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | 1. If it operates in charge mode (COIN = 6)<br>- Check that it is the supported charging management equipment.<br>- Check the cable to be connected.<br>- Check the power of the charging management equipment.<br>2. If charge mode is canceled<br>- Select COPIER> OPTION> ACC> COIN> "0", and turn OFF and then ON the main power.   |
| <b>E719-0042-00</b>          | <b>Coin vendor error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication with the coin vendor could not be established at startup of the host machine. (Charge mode (COIN = 6) has been set.)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | 1. If it operates in charge mode (COIN = 6)<br>- Check that it is the supported charging management equipment.<br>- Check the cable to be connected.<br>- Check the power of the charging management equipment.<br>2. If charge mode is canceled<br>- Select COPIER> OPTION> ACC> COIN> "0", and turn OFF and then ON the main power.   |
| <b>E720-0001-05</b>          | <b>Error due to non-compatible Finisher</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A finisher not supported by the host machine has been connected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Connect the finisher (STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1) for this model.   |
| <b>E720-0002-05</b>          | <b>Error due to non-compatible option deck</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An option deck not supported by the host machine has been connected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Connect the option deck (POD DECK LITE-C1/PAPER DECK UNIT-E1) for this model.   |
| <b>E720-0400-05</b>          | <b>Error due to non-compatible Finisher</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A finisher not supported by the host machine has been connected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Connect the finisher (STAPLE FIN-AC1/BOOKLET FIN-AC1) for this model.   |
| <b>E730-9004-00</b>          | <b>Third party PDL communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error with the print server.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy]Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Turn OFF and then ON the power.<br>2. Check the cable connection.<br>3. Replace the Open I/F PCB, F Link PCB (Main/Sub).<br>4. Replace the Main Controller PCB.  |



|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E730-9005-00</b>          | <b>Third party PDL communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Error in video cable connection with the print server.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy]Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Turn OFF and then ON the power.<br>2. Check the cable connection.<br>3. Replace the Open I/F PCB, F Link PCB (Main/Sub).<br>4. Replace the Main Controller PCB.  |
| <b>E730-A006-00</b>          | <b>PDL communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Response from PDL could not be detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy]Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Select "Settings/Registration> Function Settings> Printer> Printer Settings> Utility> Initialize Printer", and execute PDL reset processing.<br>2. Reinstall the system software.<br>3. Replace the Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)   |
| <b>E730-A007-00</b>          | <b>Mismatch of PDL version</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Version of the host machine control software and version of PDL control software were different.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy]Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Reinstall the system software.<br>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)  |
| <b>E730-B013-00</b>          | <b>PDL embedded font error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Font data was corrupted.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy]Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Reinstall the system software.<br>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)  |
| <b>E732-0000-04</b>          | <b>Communication error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Negotiation between the Reader Controller and the Main Controller failed.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)<br>- Harnesses from the Relay PCB to the Reader Controller PCB<br>1. Relay PCB (UN7/J505) to Relay Connector (6P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)<br>2. Relay Connector (6P) to Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J101) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, READER POWER SUPPLY)<br>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)<br>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY, 1)<br>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)<br>- Relay PCB (UN7) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)<br>[Points to note at work] After performing the remedy, check that the copy image is output normally.<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> RSRAMBUP<br>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> RSRAMRES |

| E732-0001-04                 | Communication error  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and the Main Controller PCB 1 was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Relay PCB to the Reader Controller PCB               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Relay PCB (UN7/J505) to Relay Connector (6P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (6P) to Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J101) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, READER POWER SUPPLY)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY, 1)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN7) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Points to note at work] After performing the remedy, check that the copy image is output normally.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| E732-0010-00                 | Scanner communication error  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A signal to start image transfer could not be detected at scanning although the specified period of time (120 sec) has passed.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Points to note at work] After performing the remedy, check that the copy image is output normally.</p> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinstall the latest system software using SST or a USB memory.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul>  |
| E732-0020-00                 | Scanner communication error  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and the Main Controller PCB was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB and the Riser PCB</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB</li> <li>- Riser PCB</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul>  |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E732-0021-00</b>          | <b>Scanner communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and the Main Controller PCB was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB and the Riser PCB</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB</li> <li>- Riser PCB</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul>  |
| <b>E732-0022-00</b>          | <b>Scanner communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and the Main Controller PCB was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB and the Riser PCB</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB</li> <li>- Riser PCB</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul>  |
| <b>E732-0023-04</b>          | <b>Communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error between the Reader Controller PCB and the Main Controller PCB 1 was detected at startup/recovery from sleep.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Relay PCB to the Reader Controller PCB <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Relay PCB (UN7/J505) to Relay Connector (6P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (6P) to Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J101) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, READER POWER SUPPLY)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY, 1)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN7) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Points to note at work] After performing the remedy, check that the copy image is output normally.<br/> [Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E732-0F01-04</b>          | <b>Communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error that can be recovered by reboot<br>If it is detected again immediately after reboot, E732-0001 is generated.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | It is not necessary to perform a remedy because the machine is automatically rebooted after log collection.  |
| <b>E732-0F23-04</b>          | <b>Communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error that can be recovered by reboot<br>If it is detected again immediately after reboot, E732-0023 is generated.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | It is not necessary to perform a remedy because the machine is automatically rebooted after log collection.  |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E732-8888-00</b>          | <b>Error in the reader type</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | When a scanner for the different model is detected during the communication with the reader.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Replace to the proper reader.   |
| <b>E732-9999-00</b>          | <b>Reader detection error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Reader was detected with a printer model for the first time.<br>Only the message "Turn OFF and then ON the power" is displayed on the screen instead of displaying an error code. The error log is recorded in "COPIER> DISPLAY> ERR".  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Remedy] Turn OFF and then ON the main power.   |
| <b>E733-0000-05</b>          | <b>Communication error between the Main Controller PCB 1 and the DC Controller PCB</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Unable to make communication between the Main Controller PCB 1 and the DC Controller PCB. (Communication error was detected at startup.)  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J5201) and the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J443) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, COMMUNICATION)</li> <li>- Harness between the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J5202) and the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J442) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Connector between the Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> [Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E733-0001-05</b>          | <b>Communication error between the Main Controller PCB 1 and the DC Controller PCB</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Unable to make communication between the Main Controller PCB 1 and the DC Controller PCB. (Communication error was detected during power distribution (while the power is ON).)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J5201) and the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J443) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, COMMUNICATION)</li> <li>- Harness between the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J5202) and the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J442) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Connector between the Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> [Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E733-0002-05</b>          | <b>Communication error between the Main Controller PCB 1 and the DC Controller PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Error was detected in the signal from the DC Controller PCB to the Main Controller PCB 1. (Communication between the DC Controller PCB and the Main Controller PCB 1 is normal.)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J5201) and the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J443) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, COMMUNICATION)</li> <li>- Harness between the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J5202) and the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J442) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Connector between the Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul>  |
| <b>E733-0004-05</b>          | <b>Printer communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error between the Main Controller PCB and the DC Controller PCB  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> <li>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</li> </ol>   |
| <b>E733-0005-05</b>          | <b>Communication error between the Main Controller PCB and the DC Controller PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error between the Main Controller PCB and the DC Controller PCB  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> <li>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</li> </ol>   |
| <b>E733-0006-05</b>          | <b>Communication error between the Main Controller PCB and the DC Controller PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error between the Main Controller PCB and the DC Controller PCB  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> <li>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</li> </ol>   |
| <b>E733-0010-00</b>          | <b>Printer communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error between the DC Controller PCB and the Main Controller PCB was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J5201) and the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J443) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, COMMUNICATION)</li> <li>- Harness between the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J5202) and the DC Controller PCB (UN1/J442) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, SIGNAL)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinstall the latest system software using SST or a USB memory.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E733-0F00-05</b>          | <b>Printer communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error that can be recovered by reboot<br>If it is detected again immediately after reboot, E733-0000 is generated.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | It is not necessary to perform a remedy because the machine is automatically rebooted after log collection.  |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E733-0F01-05</b>          | <b>Printer communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error that can be recovered by reboot<br>If it is detected again immediately after reboot, E733-0001 is generated.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | It is not necessary to perform a remedy because the machine is automatically rebooted after log collection.  |
| <b>E733-0F02-05</b>          | <b>Printer communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error that can be recovered by reboot<br>If it is detected again immediately after reboot, E733-0002 is generated.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | It is not necessary to perform a remedy because the machine is automatically rebooted after log collection.  |
| <b>E733-0F04-05</b>          | <b>Printer communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error that can be recovered by reboot<br>If it is detected again immediately after reboot, E733-0004 is generated.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | It is not necessary to perform a remedy because the machine is automatically rebooted.   |
| <b>E733-0F05-05</b>          | <b>Printer communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error that can be recovered by reboot<br>If it is detected again immediately after reboot, E733-0005 is generated.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | It is not necessary to perform a remedy because the machine is automatically rebooted.   |
| <b>E733-0F06-05</b>          | <b>Printer communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error that can be recovered by reboot<br>If it is detected again immediately after reboot, E733-0006 is generated.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | It is not necessary to perform a remedy because the machine is automatically rebooted.   |
| <b>E733-9999-05</b>          | <b>Printer communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Finisher connection information differs between the Main Controller PCB 2 and the DC Controller PCB.<br>The information on the Main Controller PCB 2 side is overwritten by turning OFF and then ON the power. |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | 1. Turn OFF and then ON the power  |
| <b>E733-F000-05</b>          | <b>Printer communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error that can be recovered by reboot<br>If it is detected again immediately after reboot, E733-0000 is generated.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | It is not necessary to perform a remedy because the machine is automatically rebooted after log collection.  |
| <b>E733-F001-05</b>          | <b>Printer communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error that can be recovered by reboot<br>If it is detected again immediately after reboot, E733-0001 is generated.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | It is not necessary to perform a remedy because the machine is automatically rebooted after log collection.  |
| <b>E733-F002-05</b>          | <b>Printer communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication error that can be recovered by reboot<br>If it is detected again immediately after reboot, E733-0002 is generated.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | It is not necessary to perform a remedy because the machine is automatically rebooted after log collection.  |



|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E743-0000-04</b>          | <b>Communication error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Reader Controller PCB detected a communication error between the Main Controller PCB 1 and the Reader Controller PCB.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harness between the Reader Controller PCB (UN101/J112) and the Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8/J4031) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, INTERFACE)</li> <li>- Reader Controller PCB (UN101) (Unit of replacement: READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the Reader Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; RSRAMRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E744-0001-00</b>          | <b>Language file error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The language file in the HDD was not supported by the version of Bootable.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Reinstall the correct language file or system software using SST or a USB memory.  |
| <b>E744-2000-00</b>          | <b>Controller firmware mismatch</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Invalid controller firmware was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- HDD</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] This error normally does not occur.<br/> This error occurs when using the HDD which was used with another model.<br/> Replace the HDD with the one which was originally installed or a new one for the model.</p>   |
| <b>E744-4000-05</b>          | <b>Error due to the DC Controller PCB not compatible with the model</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The DC Controller PCB which was used with another model was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN1). (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY)<br/> [Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul>   |
| <b>E744-5000-07</b>          | <b>Mismatch of software version for fax</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | After the Fax Board (option) has been installed, mismatch of version of software in the Fax Board was detected at transmission and reception.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Upgrade the system software version to the latest one.   |
| <b>E746-0003-00</b>          | <b>Image Analysis Board error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Different Image Analysis PCB model.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that the Image Analysis Board is installed properly by removing and then installing it again.</li> <li>2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power, and check whether the error is cleared.</li> <li>3. After replacing the Image Analysis Board, reinstall the firmware of the Image Analysis Board or the system software which version is supported by this model using SST or a USB memory.</li> </ol>   |



|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E746-0021-00</b>          | <b>Image Analysis Board error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Self-check NG of Image Analysis Board   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that the Image Analysis Board is installed properly by removing and then installing it again.</li> <li>2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power, and check whether the error is cleared.</li> <li>3. After replacing the Image Analysis Board, reinstall the firmware of the Image Analysis Board or the system software which version is supported by this model using SST or a USB memory.</li> </ol>  |
| <b>E746-0022-00</b>          | <b>Image Analysis Board error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Wrong version of the Image Analysis Board was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinstall the firmware of the Image Analysis Board or the system software which version is supported by this model using SST or a USB memory.</li> <li>2. After replacing the Image Analysis Board, perform step 1.</li> </ol>   |
| <b>E746-0023-00</b>          | <b>Image Analysis Board error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Communication from the Image Analysis Board could not be detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that the Image Analysis Board is installed properly by removing and then installing it again.</li> <li>2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power, and check whether the error is cleared.</li> <li>3. After replacing the Image Analysis Board, reinstall the firmware of the Image Analysis Board or the system software which version is supported by this model using SST or a USB memory.</li> </ol>  |
| <b>E746-0024-00</b>          | <b>Image Analysis Board error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error in the operation of the Image Analysis Board was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that the Image Analysis Board is installed properly by removing and then installing it again.</li> <li>2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power, and check whether the error is cleared.</li> <li>3. After replacing the Image Analysis Board, reinstall the firmware of the Image Analysis Board or the system software which version is supported by this model using SST or a USB memory.</li> </ol>  |
| <b>E746-0031-00</b>          | <b>TPM error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | A communication error has occurred between the Main Controller PCB and the TPM PCB at startup.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]<br/>- TPM PCB</p> <p>[Remedy]<br/>Check/replace the TPM PCB.</p> <p>[Reference] After replacing the TPM PCB, if the TPM key was backed up, restore the key.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Connect the USB memory which stores the TPM key.</li> <li>2. Execute "Settings/Registration&gt; Log In&gt; Management Settings&gt; Data Management&gt; TPM Settings&gt; Restore TPM Key".</li> </ol> <p>[CAUTION] Ask the customer to enter "System Manager ID" and "System Manager PIN" when logging in.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Enter the password set at backup operation.</li> <li>4. When the restoration completion screen is displayed, click "OK". Remove the USB memory, and turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> </ol> <p>Since the old and new TPM PCB is incompatible, be sure to check the part number that matches the serial number of the product in the parts catalog.</p> |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E746-0032-00</b>          | <b>TPM error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Mismatch of the TPM key was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]<br/>- TPM PCB</p> <p>[Remedy]<br/>Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Format the HDD and reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>2. Replace the TPM PCB.</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] After replacing the TPM PCB, if the TPM key was backed up, restore the key.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Connect the USB memory which stores the TPM key.</li> <li>2. Execute "Settings/Registration&gt; Log In&gt; Management Settings&gt; Data Management&gt; TPM Settings&gt; Restore TPM Key".</li> </ol> <p>[CAUTION] Ask the customer to enter "System Manager ID" and "System Manager PIN" when logging in.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Enter the password set at backup operation.</li> <li>4. When the restoration completion screen is displayed, click "OK". Remove the USB memory, and turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> </ol> |
| <b>E746-0033-00</b>          | <b>TPM error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | It was detected that data in TPM was inconsistent.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]<br/>- TPM PCB</p> <p>[Remedy]<br/>If the TPM key was backed up,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Restore the TPM key.</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Connect the USB memory which stores the TPM key.</li> <li>2. Execute "Settings/Registration&gt; Log In&gt; Management Settings&gt; Data Management&gt; TPM Settings&gt; Restore TPM Key".</li> </ol> <p>[CAUTION] Ask the customer to enter "System Manager ID" and "System Manager PIN" when logging in.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Enter the password set at backup operation.</li> <li>4. When the restoration completion screen is displayed, click "OK". Remove the USB memory, and turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> </ol> <p>If the TPM key was not backed up,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Format the HDD and reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>E746-0034-00</b>          | <b>TPM auto recovery error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The error occurred when clearing HDD while TPM setting was ON.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]<br/>- HDD</p> <p>[Remedy]<br/>It is recovered by turning OFF and then ON the power.<br/>If the error is not cleared, format the HDD and reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.</p>   |
| <b>E746-0035-00</b>          | <b>TPM version error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | TPM PCB which cannot be used in this machine was installed.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]<br/>- TPM PCB</p> <p>[Remedy]<br/>Install the TPM PCB for this model.<br/>Since the old and new TPM PCB is incompatible, be sure to check the part number that matches the serial number of the product in the parts catalog.</p>   |
| <b>E748-2000-00</b>          | <b>Main Controller PCB access error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Main Controller PCB Chip access error.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]<br/>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</p> <p>[Remedy] Replace the Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</p>   |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E748-2001-00</b>          | <b>Main Controller PCB access error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Main Controller PCB memory access error.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy]Replace the Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)   |
| <b>E748-2010-00</b>          | <b>Flash PCB error / HDD error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | IPL (startup program) was not found, or the HDD could not be recognized.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Cable between the Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34/J6003,J6004) and the HDD (Unit of replacement: CABLE, HARD DISK DRIVE, 1)<br>- SATA-FLASH PCB (PWB03)<br>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Disconnect the cable between the Main Controller PCB and the HDD, and turn ON the main power.<br>a. When the error code has not been changed:<br>1. Obtain the necessary backup data by referring to the backup data list.<br>2. After replacing the Flash PCB, reinstall the system software using SST or a USB memory.<br>3. Restore the backup data.<br>b. When the error code has been changed to another one, see the remedy for the corresponding code.<br>[Reference] For backup and restoration, refer to "Adjustment> Main Controller System" and "Appendix> Backup Data List" in the Service Manual. |
| <b>E748-2011-00</b>          | <b>Flash PCB error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | OS is not found   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- SATA-FLASH PCB (PWB03)<br>[Remedy]After replacing the SATA-FLASH PCB (PWB03) (unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y), reinstall the system software using SST or a USB memory.   |
| <b>E748-2012-00</b>          | <b>Flash PCB error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Cannot mount the OS in safe mode startup or No OS startup script  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- SATA-FLASH PCB (PWB03)<br>[Remedy]After replacing the SATA-FLASH PCB (PWB03) (unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y), reinstall the system software using SST or a USB memory.   |
| <b>E748-2021-00</b>          | <b>Main Controller PCB access error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Main controller board 2 access errors   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy]Replace the Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)   |
| <b>E748-2022-00</b>          | <b>Main controller startup error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An fatal error was detected in the Main Controller at startup   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Replace the Main Controller PCB   |
| <b>E748-2023-00</b>          | <b>Main Controller PCB access error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Main controller board 2 access errors   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy]Replace the Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)   |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E748-2024-00</b>          | <b>Main Controller PCB access error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Main controller board 2 access errors   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy]Replace the Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)   |
| <b>E748-4910-00</b>          | <b>Main Controller PCB access error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Main controller board 2 access errors   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)<br>[Remedy]Replace the Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)   |
| <b>E748-7011-00</b>          | <b>Start system verification function error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | At startup, an error may occur due to invalid data of the OS boot loader on the flash PCB. When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it is not recorded in the error log.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Flash PCB<br>[Remedy]<br>1. Replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or a USB flash drive.   |
| <b>E748-7021-00</b>          | <b>Start system verification function error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | At startup, an error may occur due to invalid data of the OS kernel on the flash PCB. When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it is not recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Flash PCB<br>[Remedy]<br>1. Replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or a USB flash drive.   |
| <b>E748-7022-00</b>          | <b>Start system verification function error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | At startup, an error may occur due to invalid data of the OS kernel on the flash PCB. When this error occurs, the system has not been started normally. Therefore, it is not recorded in the error log.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Flash PCB<br>[Remedy]<br>1. Replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or a USB flash drive.   |
| <b>E748-9000-00</b>          | <b>System error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | System error  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Contact to the sales company.   |
| <b>E753-0001-00</b>          | <b>Download error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Update of the Main Controller PCB ended in failure.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- SATA-FLASH PCB (PWB03)<br>[Remedy]Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.<br>1. Reinstall the system software using SST or a USB memory.<br>2. After replacing the Sata Flash PCB (UN46) (Unit of replacement: SATA-FLASH PCB ASS'Y), reinstall the system software using SST or a USB memory.<br>3. Collect debug log and contact to the sales company. |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E804-0000-05</b>          | <b>Power Supply Cooling Fan error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | It was detected that the Power Supply Cooling Fan was locked.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Relay PCB to the Power Supply Cooling Fan 1               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Relay PCB (UN86/J509) to Relay Connector (3P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, POWER FAN)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (3P) to Power Supply Cooling Fan 1 (FM14/J2134) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, POWER FAN)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harness between the Relay PCB (UN86/J509) to Power Supply Cooling Fan 2 (FM15/J2154) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, POWER FAN)</li> <li>- Power Supply Cooling Fan 1 (FM14)</li> <li>- Power Supply Cooling Fan 2 (FM15)</li> <li>- Relay PCB (UN86) (Unit of replacement: RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>   |
| <b>E804-0001-05</b>          | <b>Fixing Power Supply Cooling Fan error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | It was detected that the Fixing Power Supply Cooling Fan was locked.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Relay PCB to the Fixing Power Supply Cooling Fan               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J119) to Relay Connector (13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER IH)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (13P) to Fixing Power Supply Cooling Fan (FM7/J2130) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH SIGNAL)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Power Supply Cooling Fan (FM7)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>  |
| <b>E806-0000-05</b>          | <b>Making Image Exhaust Fan error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | It was detected that the Making Image Exhaust Fan was locked.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Feed Driver PCB to the Making Image Exhaust Fan               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Feed Driver PCB (UN79/J225) to Relay Connector (3P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, CASSETTE, 3 , 4)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (3P) to Making Image Exhaust Fan (FM01/J2099 or FM03/J2088) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FAN)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Making Image Exhaust Fan (FM01 or FM03) (Unit of replacement: FAN UNIT)</li> <li>- Feed Driver PCB (UN79) (Unit of replacement: FEED DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>  |
| <b>E808-0001-05</b>          | <b>Fixing Power Supply error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | <p>Overvoltage was detected at power-on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 145 V or higher for 100V/120V machine</li> <li>- 290 V or higher for 230V machine</li> </ul>  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Fixing Power Supply PCB               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J118 and J119) to Relay Connector (19P and 13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER IH)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (19P and 13P) to Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J314 and J312) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH SIGNAL)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Harnesses from the AC Driver PCB to the Fixing Power Supply PCB               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. AC Driver PCB (UN20/J601) to Relay Connector (2P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, AC-IH)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (2P) to Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J2401) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, AC MAIN BODY)</li> </ol> </li> <li>- Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3) (Unit of replacement: IH POWER SUPPLY PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check the voltage of the outlet, and connect the machine to the correct outlet if it is wrong.</li> <li>- Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</li> </ul> |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E808-0002-05</b>          | <b>Fixing Power Supply error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Under voltage was detected at power-on.<br>- 75 V or lower for 100V/120V machine<br>- 150 V or lower for 230V machine  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Fixing Power Supply PCB<br>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J118 and J119) to Relay Connector (19P and 13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER IH)<br>2. Relay Connector (19P and 13P) to Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J314 and J312) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH SIGNAL)<br>- Harnesses from the AC Driver PCB to the Fixing Power Supply PCB<br>1. AC Driver PCB (UN20/J601) to Relay Connector (2P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, AC-IH)<br>2. Relay Connector (2P) to Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J2401) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, AC MAIN BODY)<br>- Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3) (Unit of replacement: IH POWER SUPPLY PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)<br>[Remedy]<br>- Check the voltage of the outlet, and connect the machine to the correct outlet if it is wrong.<br>- Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts. |
| <b>E808-0003-05</b>          | <b>Fixing Power Supply error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Inlet current is 1 A or lower for 1 second or longer although the maximum voltage is output.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Fixing Power Supply PCB<br>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J118 and J119) to Relay Connector (19P and 13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER IH)<br>2. Relay Connector (19P and 13P) to Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J314 and J312) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH SIGNAL)<br>- Harness between the Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J9904) and the Fixing Heater (CB1006 and CB1007/J9072 and J9071) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH DRAWER)<br>- Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3) (Unit of replacement: IH POWER SUPPLY PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Fixing Heater (CB1006 and CB1007) (Unit of replacement: FIXING HEATER UNIT)<br>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)<br>[Remedy]<br>- Clean the Fixing Power Supply Cooling Fan and the Louver on right side of the host machine to remove dust.<br>- Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.                   |
| <b>E808-0004-05</b>          | <b>Fixing Power Supply error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Detected OFF with output 12 V of the Main Driver PCB.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | [Related parts]<br>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Fixing Power Supply PCB<br>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J118 and J119) to Relay Connector (19P and 13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER IH)<br>2. Relay Connector (19P and 13P) to Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J314 and J312) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH SIGNAL)<br>- Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3) (Unit of replacement: IH POWER SUPPLY PCB ASS'Y)<br>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)<br>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.  |



|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E808-0005-05</b>          | <b>Fixing Power Supply error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Detected OFF with output 12 V of the Fixing Power Supply after IH relay is turned ON.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Fixing Thermoswitch</li> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J129) to Relay Connector (3P) to Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DRAWER)</li> <li>2. Fixing Drawer Unit (J3200) to Fixing Thermoswitch (TP01 and TP02) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DC DRAWER)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Fixing Power Supply PCB</li> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J118 and J119) to Relay Connector (19P and 13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER IH)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (19P and 13P) to Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J314 and J312) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3) (Unit of replacement: IH POWER SUPPLY PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- Fixing Thermoswitch (TP01 and TP02) (Unit of replacement: THERMOSWITCH)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> |
| <b>E808-0006-05</b>          | <b>Fixing Power Supply error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error in ASIC on the DC Controller was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Turn OFF and then ON the power of the host machine.</li> <li>2. Replace the DC Controller PCB. (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul>   |
| <b>E808-0007-05</b>          | <b>Fixing Power Supply error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | An error in voltage inside the Fixing Power Supply PCB was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Fixing Power Supply PCB</li> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J118 and J119) to Relay Connector (19P and 13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER IH)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (19P and 13P) to Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J316 and J313) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3) (Unit of replacement: IH POWER SUPPLY PCB ASS'Y)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMRES</li> </ul>                                     |
| <b>E808-0008-05</b>          | <b>Fixing Power Supply error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Current fluctuation error of the Fixing Assembly was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Fixing Power Supply PCB</li> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J118 and J119) to Relay Connector (19P and 13P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER IH)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (19P and 13P) to Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J314 and J312) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH SIGNAL)</li> <li>- Harness between the Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3/J9904) and the Fixing Heater (Unit of replacement: CABLE, IH DRAWER)</li> <li>- Fixing Heater Unit</li> <li>- Fixing Roller</li> <li>- Fixing Power Supply PCB (UN3)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>  |



|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>E808-0009-05</b>          | <b>Fixing Power Supply error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Unable to clear the error flag at power-on.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- DC Controller PCB (UN1) (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Turn OFF and then ON the power of the host machine.</li> <li>2. Replace the DC Controller PCB. (Unit of replacement: DC CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ol> <p>[Reference] Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, back up the service mode data (approx. 2 min) and restore the backup data after the replacement so the data may be able to be protected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBUP</li> <li>- Restoration: COPIER (LEVEL2)&gt; FUNCTION&gt; SYSTEM&gt; DSRAMBRES</li> </ul> |
| <b>E820-0000-05</b>          | <b>Developer Lower Cooling Fan error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Fan stop signal is detected for 5 seconds or longer and retry is failed 4 times in a row although the Developer Lower Cooling Fan is turned ON.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Developer Lower Cooling Fan</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J130) to Relay Connector (17P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Harness (17P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, RELAY, FRONT, CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (17P) to Developer Lower Cooling Fan (FM30/J2170) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FAN)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Developer Lower Cooling Fan (FM30)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>  |
| <b>E820-0001-05</b>          | <b>Developer Upper Cooling Fan error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Fan stop signal is detected for 5 seconds or longer and retry is failed 4 times in a row although the Developer Upper Cooling Fan is turned ON.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Developer Upper Cooling Fan</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J130) to Relay Connector (17P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Harness (17P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, RELAY, FRONT, CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (17P) to Developer Upper Cooling Fan (FM31/J2171) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FAN)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Developer Upper Cooling Fan (FM31)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>  |
| <b>E820-0002-05</b>          | <b>Duplex Driver Cooling Fan error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Fan stop signal is detected for 5 seconds or longer and retry is failed 4 times in a row although the Duplex Driver Cooling Fan is turned ON.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Duplex Driver PCB to the Transfer Cleaner Cooling Fan</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Duplex Driver PCB (UN80/J340) to Relay Connector (3P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING/ FEEDER DRAWER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (3P) to Transfer Cleaner Cooling Fan (FM08/J2121) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, DUPLEXING FEED FAN)</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Transfer Cleaner Cooling Fan (FM08)</li> <li>- Duplex Driver PCB (UN80) (Unit of replacement: DUPLEXING DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>  |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E824-0000-05</b>          | <b>Primary Charging Air Supply Fan error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | The Fan stop signal is detected for 5 seconds or longer and retry is failed 4 times in a row although the Primary Charging Air Supply Fan is turned ON.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Main Driver PCB to the Primary Charging Air Supply Fan</li> <li>1. Main Driver PCB (UN78/J130) to Relay Connector (17P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, REAR UPPER)</li> <li>2. Relay Harness (17P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, RELAY, FRONT, CABLE, MAIN DRIVER, FRONT)</li> <li>3. Relay Connector (17P) to Primary Charging Air Supply Fan (FM02/J2131) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FAN)</li> <li>- Primary Charging Air Supply Fan (FM02)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p>   |
| <b>E840-0001-05</b>          | <b>Fixing Shutter Motor error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | HP error of the Fixing Shutter was detected.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Harnesses from the Fixing Drawer Unit to the Fixing Shutter HP Sensor</li> <li>1. Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) to Relay Connector (7P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DRAWER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (7P) to Fixing Shutter HP Sensor (PS53/J2012) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING CLEANER)</li> <li>- Harnesses from the Fixing Drawer Unit to the Fixing Shutter Motor</li> <li>1. Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) to Relay Connector (4P) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DRAWER)</li> <li>2. Relay Connector (4P) to Fixing Shutter Motor (M15/J2014) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, MOTOR)</li> <li>- Harness between the Main Driver PCB (UN78/J104 and J105) and the Fixing Drawer Unit (J3001) (Unit of replacement: CABLE, FIXING DRAWER)</li> <li>- Fixing Shutter HP Sensor (PS53)</li> <li>- Fixing Shutter Motor (M15)</li> <li>- Fixing Upper Unit (Unit of replacement: FIXING ASS'Y, UPPER)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (UN78) (Unit of replacement: MAIN DRIVE DRIVER PCB ASS'Y)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check/replace the related harness/cable, connector and parts.</p> |
| <b>E880-0001-00</b>          | <b>Controller Fan error</b>  |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | It was detected that the Controller Fan was locked.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Controller Cooling Fan (FM04)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the connector of the Controller Cooling Fan.</li> <li>2. Visually check that the Controller Cooling Fan is rotated. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. If it is not rotated, replace the Controller Cooling Fan.</li> <li>b. If it is rotated, replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>   |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>E881-0001-00</b>          | <b>Board over heat error</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Abnormal temperature of the Main Controller CPU was detected.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>[Related parts]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Main Controller PCB 1 (UN34) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 1)</li> <li>- Main Controller PCB 2 (UN8) (Unit of replacement: MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y, 2)</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Perform the following in the order while checking whether the error is cleared.</p> <p>a. If the error occurred during a service visit and then occurred again:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace the Main Controller PCB 1.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.</li> </ol> <p>[CAUTION] When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2, execute "Adjustment after the Main Controller PCB 2 replacement" in situation mode.</p> <p>b. If the error does not occur during a service visit but is found in the log:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clean the inlet on the side where the fan is installed and remove dust.</li> <li>2. Remove dust from the fan in the Controller Box.</li> <li>3. If the space on the side where the fan is installed is less than 10 cm, ask the customer to secure enough space.</li> </ol> |
| <b>E996-007F-04</b>          | <b>Code unspecified error (DADF)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | This is displayed when the error code is unspecified or software sequence error (when the jam code is unspecified) occurs.   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Collect debug log and contact the sales company.</p> <p>[Reference] By setting "COPIER (LEVEL2) &gt; OPTION &gt; FNC-SW &gt; JM-ERR-R" to "1", it is handled as an error instead of a jam from the first occurrence.</p>  |
| <b>E996-0CA1-05</b>          | <b>Error for collecting sequence jam log (Printer)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Error for collecting jam log (Printer)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Collect debug log and contact to the sales company.</p> <p>[Reference] By setting "COPIER (LEVEL2) &gt; OPTION &gt; FNC-SW &gt; JM-ERR-D" to "1", it is handled as an error instead of a jam from the first occurrence.</p>   |
| <b>E996-0CA2-05</b>          | <b>Error for collecting sequence jam log (Printer)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Error for collecting jam log (Printer)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Collect debug log and contact to the sales company.</p> <p>[Reference] By setting "COPIER (LEVEL2) &gt; OPTION &gt; FNC-SW &gt; JM-ERR-D" to "1", it is handled as an error instead of a jam from the first occurrence.</p>   |
| <b>E996-0CA3-05</b>          | <b>Error for collecting sequence jam log (Printer)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Error for collecting jam log (Printer)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Collect debug log and contact to the sales company.</p> <p>[Reference] By setting "COPIER (LEVEL2) &gt; OPTION &gt; FNC-SW &gt; JM-ERR-D" to "1", it is handled as an error instead of a jam from the first occurrence.</p>   |
| <b>E996-0CA4-05</b>          | <b>Error for collecting sequence jam log (Printer)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Error for collecting jam log (Printer)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Collect debug log and contact to the sales company.</p> <p>[Reference] By setting "COPIER (LEVEL2) &gt; OPTION &gt; FNC-SW &gt; JM-ERR-D" to "1", it is handled as an error instead of a jam from the first occurrence.</p>   |
| <b>E996-0CA5-05</b>          | <b>Error for collecting sequence jam log (Printer)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Error for collecting jam log (Printer)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Collect debug log and contact to the sales company.</p> <p>[Reference] By setting "COPIER (LEVEL2) &gt; OPTION &gt; FNC-SW &gt; JM-ERR-D" to "1", it is handled as an error instead of a jam from the first occurrence.</p>   |
| <b>E996-0CAF-05</b>          | <b>Error for collecting sequence jam log (Printer)</b>   |
| <b>Detection Description</b> | Error for collecting jam log (Printer)   |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | <p>Collect debug log and contact to the sales company.</p> <p>[Reference] By setting "COPIER (LEVEL2) &gt; OPTION &gt; FNC-SW &gt; JM-ERR-D" to "1", it is handled as an error instead of a jam from the first occurrence.</p>   |

| E996-0CE0-05                 | Code unspecified error (PRINTER)  |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Detection Description</b> | This is displayed when the error code is unspecified or software sequence error (when the jam code is unspecified) occurs.  |
| <b>Remedy</b>                | Collect debug log and contact the sales company.<br>[Reference] By setting "COPIER (LEVEL2) > OPTION > FNC-SW > JM-ERR-R" to "1", it is handled as an error instead of a jam from the first occurrence. |

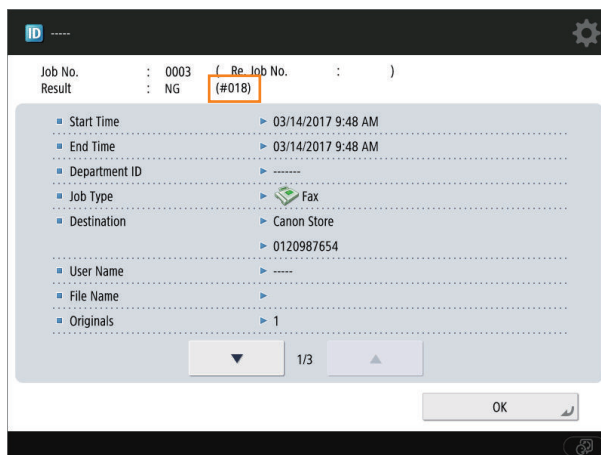
## Error Code (FAX)

### How to View Fax Error Codes

When the service mode #1 SSSW SW01 Bit0 is set to "1" after installing the Fax Board, service error code is output on the communication management report, reception result report, and error transmission report in the event that the communication is resulted in an error.

Moreover, when an error occurs, the error code can be checked by performing the following procedure.

Status Monitor/Cancel > Send > Job Log > Details



The error codes displayed on the screen are shown in a list in "User Error Codes" and "Service Error Codes".

For remedies for user error codes, refer to the User's Guide. For remedies for service error codes, refer to "G3/G4 Facsimile Error Code List (REVISION 2)" (document number: HY8-23A0-020) provided as a separate volume.

### User error codes

Regarding the user error codes, refer to Top > Troubleshooting > A Message or a Number Starting with "#" (an Error Code) Is Displayed > Countermeasures for Each Error Code.

### Service Error Code

| Code   | Cause  | Remedy                         |
|--------|--|--------------------------------|
| ##3016 | [T/R] An instruction of disconnection (BYE) was received from the network at an unexpected time. | Perform a communication again. |

\*1: G3FAX

\*2: IPFAX

| No.*1 | No.*2  | T/R   | Description   |
|-------|--------|-------|---|
| ##100 | ##3100 | [T]   | at time of transmission, the procedural signal has been transmitted more than specified.  |
| ##101 | ##3101 | [T/R] | the modem speed does not match that of the other party.   |
| ##102 | ##3102 | [T]   | at time of transmission, fall-back cannot be used.  |
| ##103 | ##3103 | [R]   | at time of reception, EOL cannot be detected for 5 sec (15 sec if CBT).   |
| ##104 | ##3104 | [T]   | at time of transmission, RTN or PIN is received.  |
| ##106 | ##3106 | [R]   | at time of reception, the procedural signal is received for 6 sec while in wait for the signal.   |
| ##107 | ##3107 | [R]   | at time of reception, the transmitting party cannot use fall-back.  |
| ##109 | ##3109 | [T]   | at time of transmission, a signal other than DIS, DTC, FTT, CFR, or CRP is received, and the procedural signal has been sent more than specified. |
| ##111 | ##3111 | [T/R] | memory error has occurred.  |

| No.*1 | No.*2  | T/R   | Description  |
|-------|--------|-------|--|
| ##114 | ##3114 | [R]   | at time of reception, RTN is transmitted.  |
| ##116 | ##3116 | [T/R] | Disconnection of loop current was detected during communication.   |
| ##200 | ##3200 | [R]   | at time of reception, no image carrier is detected for 5 sec.  |
| ##201 | ##3201 | [T/R] | DCN is received outside the normal parity procedure.   |
| ##204 | ##3204 | [T]   | DTC without transmission data is received.   |
| ##220 | ##3220 | [T/R] | system error (main program out of control) has occurred.   |
| ##223 | ##3223 | [T/R] | while a communication is under way, the line is cut.   |
| ##224 | ##3224 | [T/R] | in communication, an error has occurred in the procedural signal.  |
| ##226 | ##3226 | [T/R] | the stack printer has fallen outside the RAM area.   |
| ##227 | ##3227 | [R]   | An attempt was made to record a file without image.  |
| ##229 | ##3229 | [R]   | the recording unit has remained locked for 1 min.  |
| ##230 | ##3230 | [T/R] | A unit for controlling the display has malfunctioned.  |
| ##231 | ##3231 | [T/R] | A unit for controlling the Control Panel buttons has malfunctioned.  |
| ##232 | ##3232 | [T]   | encoding error has occurred.   |
| ##237 | ##3237 | [R]   | decoding error has occurred.   |
| ##238 | ##3238 | [R]   | the print control unit is out of order.  |
| ##261 | ##3261 | [T/R] | system error has occurred.   |
| ##280 | ##3280 | [T]   | at time of transmission, the procedural signal has been transmitted more than specified.   |
| ##281 | ##3281 | [T]   | at time of transmission, the procedural signal has been transmitted more than specified.   |
| ##282 | ##3282 | [T]   | at time of transmission, the procedural signal has been transmitted more than specified.   |
| ##283 | ##3283 | [T]   | at time of transmission, the procedural signal has been transmitted more than specified.   |
| ##284 | ##3284 | [T]   | at time of transmission, DCN is received after transmission of TCF.  |
| ##285 | ##3285 | [T]   | at time of transmission, DCN is received after transmission of EOP.  |
| ##286 | ##3286 | [T]   | at time of transmission, DCN is received after transmission of EOM.  |
| ##287 | ##3287 | [T]   | at time of transmission DCN is received after transmission of MPS.   |
| ##288 | ##3288 | [T]   | after transmission of EOP, a signal other than PIN, PIP, MCF, RTP, or RTN has been received.   |
| ##289 | ##3289 | [T]   | after transmission of EOM, a signal other than PIN, PIP, MCF, RTP, or RTN has been received.   |
| ##290 | ##3290 | [T]   | after transmission of MPS, a signal other than PIN, PIP, MCF, RTP, or RTN has been received.   |
| ##670 | ##3670 | [T]   | at time of V.8 late start, the V.8 ability of DIS front the receiving party is expected to be detected, and the CI signal is expected to be transmitted in response; however, the procedure fails to advance, and the line is released because of T1 time-out. |
| ##671 | ##3671 | [R]   | at time of V.8 arrival, procedure fails to move to phase 2 after detection of CM signal from caller, causing T1 time-out and releasing line.   |
| ##672 | ##3672 | [T]   | at time of V.34 transmission, a shift in procedure from phase 2 to phase 3 and thereafter stops, causing the machine to release the line and suffer T1 timeout.  |
| ##673 | ##3673 | [R]   | at time of V.34 reception, a shift in procedure from phase 2 to phase 3 and thereafter stops, causing the machine to release the line and suffer T1 timeout.   |
| ##674 | ##3674 | [T]   | at time of V.34 transmission, a shift in procedure from phase 3 and phase 4 to the control channel and thereafter stops, causing the machine to release the line and suffer T1 timeout.  |
| ##675 | ##3675 | [R]   | at time of V.34 reception, a shift in procedure from phase 3 and phase 4 to the control channel and thereafter stops, causing the machine to release the line and suffer T1 timeout.   |
| ##750 | ##3750 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, no meaningful signal is received after transmission of PPS-NULL, causing the procedural signal to be transmitted more than specified.   |
| ##752 | ##3752 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, DCN is received after transmission of PPS-NULL.   |
| ##753 | ##3753 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, the procedural signal has been transmitted more than specified after transmission of PPS-NULL, or T5 time-out (60 sec) has occurred.  |
| ##754 | ##3754 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, the procedural signal has been transmitted more than specified after transmission of PPS-NULL.  |

| No.*1 | No.*2  | T/R   | Description  |
|-------|--------|-------|--|
| ##755 | ##3755 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, no meaningful signal is received after transmission of PPS-MPS, causing the procedural signal to be transmitted more than specified.  |
| ##757 | ##3757 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, DCN is received after retransmission of PPS-MPS.  |
| ##758 | ##3758 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, the procedural signal has been transmitted more than specified after transmission of PPS-MPS, or T5 time-out (60 sec) has occurred.   |
| ##759 | ##3759 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, the procedural signal has been transmitted more than specified after transmission of PPS-MPS.   |
| ##760 | ##3760 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, no meaningful signal is received after transmission of PPS-EOM, causing the procedural signal to be transmitted more than specified.  |
| ##762 | ##3762 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, DCN is received after transmission of PPS-EOM.  |
| ##763 | ##3763 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, the procedural signal has been transmitted more than specified after transmission of PPS-MPS, or T5 time-out (60 sec) has occurred.   |
| ##764 | ##3764 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, the procedural signal has been transmitted more than specified after transmission of PPS-EOM.   |
| ##765 | ##3765 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, no meaningful signal is received after transmission of PPS-EOP, causing the procedural signal to be transmitted more than specified.  |
| ##767 | ##3767 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, DCN is received after transmission of PPS-EOP.  |
| ##768 | ##3768 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, the procedural signal has been transmitted more than specified after transmission of PPS-EOP, or T5 time-out (60 sec) has occurred.   |
| ##769 | ##3769 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, the procedural signal has been transmitted more than specified after transmission of PPS-EOP.   |
| ##770 | ##3770 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, no meaningful signal is received after transmission of EOR-NULL, causing the procedural signal to be transmitted more than specified. |
| ##772 | ##3772 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, DCN is received after transmission of EOR-NULL.   |
| ##773 | ##3773 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, the procedural signal has been transmitted more than specified after transmission of EOR-NULL, or T5 time-out (60 sec) has occurred.  |
| ##774 | ##3774 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, ERR is received after transmission of EOR-NULL.   |
| ##775 | ##3775 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, no meaningful signal is received after transmission of EOR-MPS, causing the procedural signal to be transmitted more than specified.  |
| ##777 | ##3777 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, DCN is received after transmission of EOR-MPS.  |
| ##778 | ##3778 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, the procedural signal has been transmitted more than specified after transmission EOR-MPS, or T5 time-out (60 sec) has occurred.      |
| ##779 | ##3779 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, ERR is received after transmission of EOR-MPS.  |
| ##780 | ##3780 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, no meaningful signal is received after transmission of EOR-EOM, causing the procedural signal to be transmitted more than specified.  |
| ##782 | ##3782 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, DCN is received after transmission of EOR-EOM.  |
| ##783 | ##3783 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, the procedural signal has been transmitted more than specified after transmission of EOR-EOM, or T5 time-out (60 sec) has occurred.   |
| ##784 | ##3784 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, ERR is received after transmission of EOR-EOM.  |
| ##785 | ##3785 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, no meaningful signal is received after transmission of EOR-EOP, causing the procedural signal to be transmitted more than specified.  |
| ##787 | ##3787 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, DCN is received after transmission of EOR-EOP.  |
| ##788 | ##3788 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, the procedural signal has been transmitted more than specified after transmission of EOR-EOP, or T5 time-out (60 sec) has occurred.   |
| ##789 | ##3789 | [T]   | at time of ECM transmission, ERR is received after transmission of EOR-EOP.  |
| ##790 | ##3790 | [R]   | at time of ECM reception, ERR is transmitted after transmission of EOR-Q.  |
| ##791 | ##3791 | [T/R] | while ECM mode procedure is under way, a signal other than a meaningful signal is received.  |
| ##792 | ##3792 | [R]   | at time of ECM reception, PPS-NULL cannot be detected over partial page processing.  |
| ##793 | ##3793 | [R]   | at time of ECM reception, no effective frame is received while high-speed signal reception is under way, thus causing time-out.                                    |
| ##794 | ##3794 | [T]   | at time of ECM reception, PPR with all 0s is received.   |
| ##795 | ##3795 | [T/R] | a fault has occurred in code processing for communication.   |
| ##796 | ##3796 | [T/R] | a fault has occurred in code processing for communication.   |



## Limited Functions Mode

### Original Exposure System

When the error code is detected with the DADF, the Reader Limited Functions Mode is temporarily entered. After this, by turning OFF and then ON the main power switch, the DADF Limited Functions Mode is entered.

Yes: Available, No: Not available

|        | Copyboard reading | Stream scanning |
|--------|-------------------|-----------------|
| Reader | No                | No              |
| DADF   | Yes               | No              |

#### NOTE:

The Printing function of host machine is available even in the Limited Functions Mode.

### ■ Relevant error code

#### Reader Limited Functions

| Code | Detail Code | Details   |
|------|-------------|---|
| E202 | 0001        | Reader Scanner Unit HP error  |
|      | 0002        |   |
|      | 0003        |   |
|      | 0010        |   |
| E227 | 0101        | Power supply (24V) error  |
| E248 | 0001        | EEPROM error  |
|      | 0002        |   |
| E270 | 0001        | Scanner Unit (Paper Front) VSYNC signal error                               |
|      | 0002        | HSYNC error   |
| E280 | 0001        | Communication error between Reader Controller PCB and Scanner Unit (Reader) |
|      | 0002        |   |
|      | 0003        |   |
| E302 | 0001        | Error in paper front shading  |
|      | 0002        |   |
| E423 | 0001        | SDRAM error in the Reader Controller PCB                                    |

#### DADF Limited Functions

| Code | Detail Code | Details   |
|------|-------------|---|
| E202 | 0101        | Scanner Unit (DADF) HP error  |
|      | 0102        |   |
| E270 | 0101        | Scanner Unit (Paper Back) VSYNC signal error                              |
| E280 | 0101        | Communication error between Reader Controller PCB and Scanner Unit (DADF) |
|      | 0102        |   |
|      | 0103        |   |
| E302 | 0101        | Error in paper back shading   |
|      | 0102        |   |
| E400 | 0002        | Communication error between Reader Controller PCB and DADF                |
|      | 0003        |   |
| E401 | 0001        | Pickup Roller Unit lifting error  |
|      | 0002        |   |
| E407 | 0001        | Tray Lifting Motor error  |
|      | 0002        |   |

## Alarm Code

### Alarm Code Details

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>00-0085</b>                             | <b>A notice of state</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -  |
| <b>00-0246</b>                             | <b>Error code display (4-digit)</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Soft counter PCB cannot write normally   |
| <b>00-0247</b>                             | <b>Error code display (4-digit)</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Soft counter PCB cannot restore data   |
| <b>01-0001</b>                             | <b>Notification of disabled to obtain counter values for a certain period of time</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Counter information is not set to UGW<br>* Not displayed on service mode history due to the alarm being generated by UGW   |
| <b>01-0002</b>                             | <b>No change in device status after specified period of time has passed (RDS server creates)</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -  |
| <b>01-0004</b>                             | <b>Notification of IP address change</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | IP address has been changed<br>* Not displayed on service mode history due to the alarm being generated by UGW   |
| <b>01-0005</b>                             | <b>Restricted operation notification</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | The device entered limited function mode for some reason.<br>* Not displayed on service mode history due to the alarm being generated by UGW   |
| <b>02-0020</b>                             | <b>Dust correction (paper front) occurrence</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Movement: Execute correction process to the pixel where dust is detected (image on paper front)<br>Cause: Dust is detected on the Stream Read Glass (paper front).<br>Measures: Clean the Stream Read Glass (paper front), and check if the Platen Roller 1 is soiled. If necessary, clean it. |
| <b>02-0021</b>                             | <b>Dust correction (paper back) occurrence</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Movement: Execute correction process to the pixel where dust is detected (image on paper back with 1-Path DADF).<br>Cause: Dust is detected on the Scanner Glass (paper back).<br>Measures: Clean and check the Scanner Glass (paper back), and check if the Platen Roller 2 is soiled.        |
| <b>02-0025</b>                             | <b>Insufficient Scanner Unit LED light intensity alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | In the case that the light intensity is insufficient at LED lighting. (Some of the LEDs are OFF. Scanning can be continued.)   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>04-0001</b>                             | <b>Right Deck Lifter error</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: The Right Deck Lifter Motor (M4) is stopped. Not using the Right Deck.</p> <p>Cause: The Right Deck Lifter does not rise, failure of the Right Deck Paper Height Sensor (PS6).</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Turn OFF/ON the power.</li> </ol> <p>When it is recovered, the measure is completed. If it is not recovered, execute the following measures.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Check if the Deck Lifter rises.</li> </ol> <p>If not, execute the following measures. If an alarm occurs although it rises, execute step 5 and later steps.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Check the connection between the Right Deck Lifter Motor (M4) and the Feed Driver PCB (PCB3).</li> </ol> <p>Motor side: J2069, PCB side: J225</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Replace the Right Deck.</li> <li>5. Check the connection between the Right Deck Paper Height Sensor (PS6) and the Feed Driver PCB (PCB3).</li> </ol> <p>Sensor side: J2063, J3633 (relay), PCB side: J222</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. Check the operation of the Right Deck Paper Height Sensor (PS6), and replace it.</li> <li>7. Replace the Feed Driver PCB (PCB3).</li> </ol>                          |
| <b>04-0002</b>                             | <b>Left Deck Lifter error</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: The Left Deck Lifter Motor (M5) is stopped. Not using the Left Deck.</p> <p>Cause: The Left Deck Lifter does not rise, failure of the Left Deck Paper Height Sensor (PS10).</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Turn OFF and then ON the power.</li> </ol> <p>When it is recovered, the measure is completed. If it is not recovered, execute the following measures.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Check if the Deck Lifter rises.</li> </ol> <p>If not, execute the following measures. If an alarm occurs although it rises, execute step 5 and later steps.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Check the connection between the Left Deck Lifter Motor (M5) and the Feed Driver PCB (PCB3).</li> </ol> <p>Motor side: J2051, PCB side: J225</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Replace the Left Deck.</li> <li>5. Check the connection between the Left Deck Paper Height Sensor (PS10) and the Feed Driver PCB (PCB3).</li> </ol> <p>Sensor side: J2045, J3634 (relay), PCB side: J221</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. Check the operation of the Left Deck Paper Height Sensor (PS10), and replace it if necessary.</li> <li>7. Replace the Feed Driver PCB (PCB3).</li> </ol>         |
| <b>04-0003</b>                             | <b>Cassette 3 Lifter error</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: The Cassette 3 Lifter Motor (M20) is stopped. Not using the Cassette 3.</p> <p>Cause: The Cassette Lifter does not rise, failure of the Cassette 3 Paper Height Sensor (PS17).</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Turn OFF and then ON the power.</li> </ol> <p>When it is recovered, the measure is completed. If it is not recovered, execute the following measures.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Check if the Deck Lifter rises.</li> </ol> <p>If not, execute the following measures. If an alarm occurs although it rises, execute step 5 and later steps.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Check the connection between the Cassette 3 Lifter Motor (M20) and the Feed Driver PCB (PCB3).</li> </ol> <p>Motor side: J2072, PCB side: J225</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Replace the Cassette 3.</li> <li>5. Check the connection between the Cassette 3 Paper Height Sensor (PS17) and the Feed Driver PCB (PCB3).</li> </ol> <p>Sensor side: J2080, J3635 (relay), PCB side: J223</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. Check the operation of the Cassette 3 Paper Height Sensor (PS17), and replace it if necessary.</li> <li>7. Replace the Feed Driver PCB (PCB3).</li> </ol> |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>04-0004</b>                             | <b>Cassette 4 Lifter error</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: The Cassette 4 Lifter Motor (M21) is stopped. Not using the Cassette 4.</p> <p>Cause: The Cassette 4 Lifter does not rise, failure of the Cassette 4 Paper Height Sensor (PS18).</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Turn OFF and then ON the power.</li> </ol> <p>When it is recovered, the measure is completed. If it is not recovered, execute the following measures.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Check if the Deck Lifter rises.</li> </ol> <p>If not, execute the following measures. If an alarm occurs although it rises, execute step 5 and later steps.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Check the connection between the Cassette 4 Lifter Motor (M21) and the Feed Driver PCB (PCB3).<br/>Motor side: J2074, PCB side: J225</li> <li>4. Replace the Cassette 4.</li> <li>5. Check the connection between the Cassette 4 Paper Height Sensor (PS18) and the Feed Driver PCB (PCB3).<br/>Sensor side: J2091, J3636 (relay), PCB side: J224</li> <li>6. Check the operation of the Cassette 4 Paper Height Sensor (PS18), and replace it if necessary.</li> <li>7. Replace the Feed Driver PCB (PCB3).</li> </ol> |
| <b>04-0010</b>                             | <b>Notification of jam left untouched</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Jam is left untouched</p> <p>* Not displayed on service mode history due to the alarm being generated by UGW</p>  |
| <b>04-0069</b>                             | <b>Error in Right Deck Pickup Solenoid connection</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: Jam occurred when picking up from the Right Deck.</p> <p>Cause: Connection of the Right Deck Pickup Solenoid (SL6) cannot be detected.</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the connection of the Right Deck Pickup Solenoid (SL6).<br/>Solenoid side: J2070, Pickup Unit side: J3633, Feed Driver PCB side: J222</li> <li>2. Replace the Right Deck Pickup Solenoid (SL6).</li> <li>3. Replace the Feed Driver PCB (PCB3).</li> </ol>  |
| <b>04-0070</b>                             | <b>Error in Left Deck Pickup Solenoid connection</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: Jam occurred when picking up from the Left Deck.</p> <p>Cause: Connection of the Left Deck Pickup Solenoid (SL7) cannot be detected.</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the connection of the Left Deck Pickup Solenoid (SL7).<br/>Solenoid side: J2052, Pickup Unit side: J3634, Feed Driver PCB side: J221</li> <li>2. Replace the Left Deck Pickup Solenoid (SL7).</li> <li>3. Replace the Feed Driver PCB (PCB3).</li> </ol>  |
| <b>04-0071</b>                             | <b>Error in Cassette 3 Pickup Solenoid connection</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: Jam occurred when picking up from the Cassette 3.</p> <p>Cause: Connection of the Cassette 3 Pickup Solenoid (SL3) cannot be detected.</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the connection of the Cassette 3 Pickup Solenoid (SL3).<br/>Solenoid side: J2073, Pickup Unit side: J3635, Feed Driver PCB side: J223</li> <li>2. Replace the Cassette 3 Pickup Solenoid (SL3).</li> <li>3. Replace the Feed Driver PCB (PCB3).</li> </ol>  |
| <b>04-0072</b>                             | <b>Error in Cassette 4 Pickup Solenoid connection</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: Jam occurred when picking up from the Cassette 4.</p> <p>Cause: Connection of the Cassette 4 Pickup Solenoid (SL4) cannot be detected.</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the connection of the Cassette 4 Pickup Solenoid (SL4).<br/>Solenoid side: J2075, Pickup Unit side: J3636, Feed Driver PCB side: J224</li> <li>2. Replace the Cassette 4 Pickup Solenoid (SL4).</li> <li>3. Replace the Feed Driver PCB (PCB3).</li> </ol>  |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>04-0073</b>                             | <b>Error in Multi-purpose Pickup Solenoid connection</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: Jam occurred when picking up from the Multi-purpose Tray.</p> <p>Cause: Connection of the Multi-purpose Pickup Solenoid (SL2) cannot be detected.</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the connection of the Multi-purpose Pickup Solenoid (SL2).<br/>Solenoid side: J2001, Relay: J3060, J3121, J3235, Main Driver PCB side: J106</li> <li>2. Replace the Multi-purpose Pickup Solenoid (SL2).</li> <li>3. Replace the Main Driver PCB (PCB2).</li> </ol>  |
| <b>04-0074</b>                             | <b>Error in Left Deck Merging Solenoid connection</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: Jam occurred when picking up from the Left Deck.</p> <p>Cause: Connection of the Left Deck Merging Solenoid (SL11) cannot be detected.</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the connection of the Left Deck Merging Solenoid (SL11).<br/>Solenoid side: J2106, Relay side: J3270, Duplex Driver PCB side: J343</li> <li>2. Replace the Left Deck Merging Solenoid (SL11).</li> <li>3. Replace the Duplex Driver PCB (PCB4).</li> </ol>  |
| <b>04-0075</b>                             | <b>Error in Reverse Detachment Solenoid connection</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: Jam occurred at the time of large size paper reverse delivery.</p> <p>Cause: Connection of the Reverse Detachment Solenoid (SL12) cannot be detected.</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the connection of the Reverse Detachment Solenoid (SL12).<br/>Solenoid side: J2176, Duplex Driver PCB side: J340</li> <li>2. Replace the Reverse Detachment Solenoid (SL12).</li> <li>3. Replace the Duplex Driver PCB (PCB4).</li> </ol>  |
| <b>04-1537</b>                             | <b>Deck Lifter descent alarm (POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit)</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Cause:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Error in the Lifter Plate or error in the Lifter Wire</li> <li>- Error in the Deck Lifter Motor or error in the harness</li> <li>- Error in the Deck Lifter Lower Position Sensor or error in the harness</li> <li>- Error in the Relay Paper Sensor or error in the harness</li> </ul> <p>Detection condition/timing: The Deck Lifter Lower Position Sensor was not turned ON within the specified period of time when lowering the lifter.</p> <p>Movement/symptom: The machine automatically enters limited functions mode. (The Deck cannot be used.)</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Open the compartment and check for any foreign matter in it. If there is any foreign matter, remove it.</li> <li>2. Check that the Lifter Plate is not caught by the Side Guide. If there is a catch, repair it.</li> <li>3. Remove the deck front cover, and check that the lifter wire is properly installed (no coming off, disconnection, slack, or winding in the reverse direction). If there is an error, repair it.</li> </ol> <p>When the lifter wire is wound in the reverse direction at the deck lifter alarm (04-1537) occurrence, execute the following service mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Drive of Deck Lifter Motor: COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; CST&gt; DK1-LIFT</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Execute service mode: COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; CLEAR&gt; DK-RCV and clear the Deck Lifter descent alarm.</li> <li>5. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</li> <li>6. Push the Relay Paper Sensor Flag and check that the Lifter Plate being lowered stops at the lowest position. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. If it is not lowered: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check/replace the harness and connector between the Deck Driver PCB and the Relay Paper Sensor.</li> <li>- Check/replace the harness and connector between the Box Driver PCB and the Deck Lifter Motor.</li> <li>- Replace the Relay Paper Sensor.</li> <li>- Replace the Box Driver PCB.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Although it is lowered, it does not stop at the lowest position. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check/replace the harness and connector between the Box Driver PCB and the Deck Lifter Lower Position Sensor.</li> <li>- Replace the Box Driver PCB.</li> <li>- Replace the Deck Lifter Lower Position Sensor.</li> </ul> </li> </ol> </li> </ol> |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>04-1539</b>                             | <b>Deck Paper Level Sensor alarm (POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit)</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p><b>Cause:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Error in the Lifter Plate or error in the Lifter Wire</li> <li>- Error in the Paper Level Sensor or error in the harness</li> <li>- Error in the Relay Paper Sensor or error in the harness</li> <li>- Error in the Deck Lifter Motor or error in the harness</li> </ul> <p>Detection condition/timing: The Deck Paper Level Sensor was not turned ON within the specified period of time when raising the lifter.</p> <p>Movement/symptom: The machine automatically enters limited functions mode. (The Deck cannot be used.)</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Open the compartment and check that the Lifter Plate is not caught by the Side Guide. If there is a catch, repair it.</li> <li>2. Remove the deck front cover, and check that the lifter wire is properly installed (no coming off, disconnection, or slack). If there is an error, repair it.</li> <li>3. Remove the deck right cover, close the compartment.</li> <li>4. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch, and check if the Lifter Plate is raised from the right side.</li> <li>5. If it is not raised, execute the following operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check/replace the harness and connector between the Deck Driver PCB and the Paper Level Sensor.</li> <li>- Check/replace the harness and connector between the Deck Driver PCB and the Relay Paper Sensor.</li> <li>- Check/replace the harness and connector between the Box Driver PCB and the Deck Lifter Motor.</li> <li>- Check/replace the harness and connector between the Box Driver PCB and the Deck Driver PCB.</li> <li>- Replace the Paper Level Sensor.</li> <li>- Replace the Relay Paper Sensor.</li> <li>- Replace the Deck Lifter Motor.</li> <li>- Replace the Box Driver PCB.</li> <li>- Replace the Deck Driver PCB.</li> </ul> </li> </ol> |
| <b>04-1542</b>                             | <b>Deck Lifter upper limit alarm (POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit)</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p><b>Cause:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Error in the Deck Lifter Upper Limit Sensor 1/2 or error in the harness</li> <li>- Error in the Paper Level Sensor or error in the harness</li> </ul> <p>Detection condition/timing: The Deck Lifter Upper Limit Sensor 1/2 were turned ON while raising the lifter.</p> <p>Movement/symptom: The machine automatically enters limited functions mode. (The Deck cannot be used.)</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check for any damaged parts around the flag of the Deck Lifter Upper Limit Sensor 1/2.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Box Driver PCB and the Deck Lifter Upper Limit Sensor 1/2.</li> <li>3. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Box Driver PCB and the Paper Level Sensor.</li> <li>4. Replace the Deck Lifter Upper Limit Sensor 1/2.</li> <li>5. Replace the Paper Level Sensor.</li> <li>6. Replace the Box Driver PCB.</li> </ol>   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>04-1543</b>                             | <b>Deck lifter lower limit alarm (POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit)</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Cause:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Error in the Deck Lifter Lower Position Sensor or error in the harness</li> <li>- Error in the Deck Lifter Lower Limit Switch or error in the harness</li> </ul> <p>Detection condition/timing:<br/>The Deck Lifter Lower Limit Switch was turned ON while lowering the lifter.</p> <p>Movement/symptom:<br/>The machine automatically enters limited functions mode. (The Deck cannot be used.)</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check for any damaged parts around the flag of the Deck Lifter Lower Position Sensor. If there are damaged parts, replace it.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Box Driver PCB and the Deck Lifter Lower Position Sensor.</li> <li>3. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Box Driver PCB and the Deck Lifter Lower Limit Switch.</li> <li>4. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Box Driver PCB and the Deck Lifter Lower Limit Switch.</li> <li>5. Replace the Deck Lifter Lower Position Sensor.</li> <li>6. Replace the Deck Lifter Lower Limit Switch.</li> <li>7. Replace the Box Driver PCB.</li> </ol> |
| <b>04-1553</b>                             | <b>Deck Warming Fan alarm (POD Deck Lite)</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Cause: Error in the Warming Fan (FM2) or error in the harness</p> <p>Detection condition/timing: Rotation speed error of the Warming Fan was detected.</p> <p>Movement/symptom: The machine automatically enters limited functions mode. (The Deck cannot be used.)</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Swing Driver PCB and the Warming Fan.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Swing Driver PCB and the Box Driver PCB.</li> <li>3. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Box Driver PCB and the Deck Driver PCB.</li> <li>4. Replace the Warming Fan.</li> <li>5. Replace the Swing Driver PCB.</li> <li>6. Replace the Box Driver PCB.</li> <li>7. Replace the Deck Driver PCB.</li> </ol>  |
| <b>04-1555</b>                             | <b>Deck Cooling Fan alarm (POD Deck Lite)</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Cause: Error in the Cooling Fan (FM3) or error in the harness</p> <p>Detection condition/timing: Rotation speed error of the Cooling Fan was detected.</p> <p>Movement/symptom: The machine automatically enters limited functions mode. (The Deck cannot be used.)</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Swing Driver PCB and the Cooling Fan.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Swing Driver PCB and the Box Driver PCB.</li> <li>3. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Box Driver PCB and the Deck Driver PCB.</li> <li>4. Replace the Cooling Fan.</li> <li>5. Replace the Swing Driver PCB.</li> <li>6. Replace the Box Driver PCB.</li> <li>7. Replace the Deck Driver PCB.</li> </ol>  |



|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>04-1581</b>                             | <b>Deck Swing HP Sensor alarm (POD Deck Lite)</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Cause:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Error in the Swing HP Sensor (SR16) or error in the harness</li> <li>- Error in the Swing Motor (M4) or error in the harness</li> </ul> <p>Detection condition/timing: There was no change in the Swing HP Sensor although a specified period of time has passed.</p> <p>Movement/symptom: The machine automatically enters limited functions mode. (The Deck cannot be used.)</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Swing Driver PCB and the Swing HP Sensor.</li> <li>2. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Swing Driver PCB and the Swing Motor.</li> <li>3. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Swing Driver PCB and the Box Driver PCB.</li> <li>4. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Box Driver PCB and the Deck Driver PCB.</li> <li>5. Replace the Swing HP Sensor.</li> <li>6. Replace the Swing Motor.</li> <li>7. Replace the Swing Driver PCB.</li> <li>8. Replace the Box Driver PCB.</li> <li>9. Replace the Deck Driver PCB.</li> </ol> |
| <b>04-1582</b>                             | <b>Deck Power Supply Cooling Fan alarm (POD Deck Lite)</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Cause: Error in the Power Supply Cooling Fan (FM1) or error in the harness</p> <p>Detection condition/timing: The lock signal of the Power Supply Cooling Fan could not be detected for 1 sec.</p> <p>Movement/symptom: The machine automatically enters limited functions mode. (The Deck cannot be used.)</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Deck Driver PCB and the Power Supply Cooling Fan.</li> <li>2. Replace the Power Supply Cooling Fan.</li> <li>3. Replace the Deck Driver PCB.</li> </ol>   |
| <b>04-1583</b>                             | <b>Deck Air Heater low temperature alarm (POD Deck Lite)</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Cause: Error in the Air Heater (H2) or error in the harness</p> <p>Detection condition/timing: After the Air Heater was turned on, the heater Ready signal is not turned on within 6 minutes.</p> <p>Movement/symptom: The machine automatically enters limited functions mode. (The Deck cannot be used.)</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Air Heater Driver PCB and the Air Heater.</li> <li>2. Replace the Air Heater.</li> <li>3. Replace the Air Heater Driver PCB.</li> <li>4. Replace the Deck Driver PCB.</li> </ol>   |
| <b>04-1584</b>                             | <b>Deck Air Heater overheating alarm (POD Deck Lite)</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Cause: Error in the Air Heater (H2) or error in the harness</p> <p>Detection condition/timing: After the Air Heater was turned on, the heater error signal was turned on 2 minutes or later.</p> <p>Movement/symptom: The machine automatically enters limited functions mode. (The Deck cannot be used.)</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check/replace the harness and connector between the Air Heater Driver PCB and the Air Heater.</li> <li>2. Replace the Air Heater.</li> <li>3. Replace the Air Heater Driver PCB.</li> <li>4. Replace the Deck Driver PCB.</li> </ol>  |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>04-1585</b>                             | <b>Deck Pickup Release Solenoid Cooling Fan alarm (POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit)</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Cause: Error in the Pickup Release Solenoid Cooling Fan (FM4) or error in the harness</p> <p>Detection condition/timing: The fan lock detection signal is not detected ON while the Pickup Release Solenoid Cooling Fan is driven.</p> <p>Movement/symptom: The machine automatically enters limited functions mode. (The Deck cannot be used.)</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.Check/replace the harness and connector between the Deck Driver PCB and the Pickup Release Solenoid Cooling Fan.</li> <li>2.Replace the Pickup Release Solenoid Cooling Fan.</li> <li>3.Replace the Deck Driver PCB.</li> </ol>   |
| <b>04-1586</b>                             | <b>Deck interlock alarm (POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit)</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Cause:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Error in the Compartment Open/Close Sensor or error in the harness</li> <li>- Error in the Compartment Open/Close Switch or error in the harness</li> </ul> <p>Detection condition/timing: The interlock was not detected with the Compartment Open/Close Sensor ON.</p> <p>Movement/symptom: The machine automatically enters limited functions mode. (The Deck cannot be used.)</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.Check if the compartment is halfway closed. If it is halfway closed, close it properly.</li> <li>2.Close the compartment and check whether the Compartment Open/Close Sensor and the Compartment Open/Close Switch respond normally by I/O of the service mode.</li> <li>3.Check/replace the harness (integrated with a switch) and connector between the Deck Driver PCB and the Compartment Open/Close Switch.</li> <li>4.Check/replace the harness and connector between the Deck Driver PCB and the Compartment Open/Close Sensor.</li> <li>5.Replace the Compartment Open/Close Sensor.</li> <li>6.Replace the Deck Driver PCB.</li> </ol> |
| <b>04-1587</b>                             | <b>Deck Pickup Motor disengagement alarm (POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit)</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Cause:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Error in the Deck Pickup Motor or error in the harness</li> <li>- Error in the Separation Roller Sensor or error in the harness</li> <li>- Error in the Pickup Assembly</li> </ul> <p>Detection condition/timing: The Separation Roller Sensor did not respond when disengaging the Feed/Separation Roller.</p> <p>Movement/symptom: The machine automatically enters limited functions mode. (The Deck cannot be used.)</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.Check/replace the harness and connector between the Deck Driver PCB and the Deck Pickup Motor.</li> <li>2.Check/replace the harness and connector between the Deck Driver PCB and the Separation Roller Sensor.</li> <li>3.Replace the Deck Pickup Motor and Separation Roller Sensor.</li> <li>4.Replace the Deck Driver PCB.</li> <li>5.Check the rear coupling of the Deck Pickup Assembly. If there is an error, replace it.</li> </ol>  |
| <b>06-0003</b>                             | <b>Fixing Web prior notification alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | The life value of a target part reached the number of days left as set in COPIER > OPTION > PM-DLV-D > FX-WEB1.  |
| <b>09-0006</b>                             | <b>2D Shading ROM error 1</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported.</p> <p>Movement: Turn OFF the 2D Shading.</p> <p>Cause: After clearing the drum, not reading the EEPROM.</p> <p>Measures: Execute COPIER&gt;FUNCTION&gt;2D-SHADE&gt;2D-READ.</p>   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>09-0007</b>                             | <b>2D Shading ROM error 2</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported.<br>Movement: Turn OFF the 2D Shading.<br>Cause: After reading ROM data, calculated checksum value and checksum of ROM does not match.<br>Measures: Install the correct ROM.  |
| <b>09-0008</b>                             | <b>Drum HP signal noise alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported.<br>Movement: Only when the 2D shading is ON, the accuracy of shading is degraded and an image error occurs.<br>Uneven density may occur.<br>Cause: The Drum HP cycle is shorter than the specified cycle.<br>Measures:<br>1. Install the Drum HP Sensor (PS61) and check the connector.<br>2. Check the Drum HP Flag.<br>3. Check the harness between the Drum HP Sensor (PS61) and the Main Driver PCB (PCB2). (Between J2137 and J107)<br>4. Replace the Drum HP Sensor (PS61).<br>5. Replace the Main Driver PCB (PCB2).<br>6. Check the harness between the Main Driver PCB (PCB2) and the DCON PCB (PCB1). (Between J125 and J411 and between J126 and J412)<br>7. Replace the DCON PCB (PCB1). |
| <b>09-0009</b>                             | <b>Drum HP signal absence alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported.<br>Movement: Only when the 2D shading is ON, the accuracy of shading is degraded and an image error occurs.<br>Uneven density may occur.<br>Cause: The Drum HP cycle is longer than the specified cycle.<br>Measures:<br>1. Install the Drum HP Sensor (PS61) and check the connector.<br>2. Check the Drum HP Flag.<br>3. Check the harness between the Drum HP Sensor (PS61) and the Main Driver PCB (PCB2). (Between J2137 and J107)<br>4. Replace the Drum HP Sensor (PS61).<br>5. Replace the Main Driver PCB (PCB2).<br>6. Check the harness between the Main Driver PCB (PCB2) and the DCON PCB (PCB1). (Between J125 and J411 and between J126 and J412)<br>7. Replace the DCON PCB (PCB1).  |
| <b>10-0001</b>                             | <b>Toner Low (Black) alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Low toner was detected and UGW generated an alarm.<br>* Not displayed on service mode history due to the alarm being generated by UGW   |
| <b>10-0002</b>                             | <b>Toner Low (Cyan) alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Low toner was detected and UGW generated an alarm.<br>* Not displayed on service mode history due to the alarm being generated by UGW   |
| <b>10-0003</b>                             | <b>Toner Low (Magenta) alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Low toner was detected and UGW generated an alarm.<br>* Not displayed on service mode history due to the alarm being generated by UGW   |
| <b>10-0004</b>                             | <b>Toner Low (Yellow) alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Low toner was detected and UGW generated an alarm.<br>* Not displayed on service mode history due to the alarm being generated by UGW   |
| <b>10-0020</b>                             | <b>Toner (Bk) prior delivery alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> |   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>10-0100</b>                         | <b>Toner bottle change notification alarm</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy |  |
| <b>10-0404</b>                         | <b>Toner Bottle empty alarm (Bk)</b>   |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | It was detected that Toner (Bk) was emptied.   |
| <b>10-F020</b>                         | <b>Toner (Bk) high consumption alarm</b>   |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | It was detected that the target part was at a high level of daily consumption.   |
| <b>11-0001</b>                         | <b>Waste Toner Container full</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Movement: A message "The waste toner container is full." is displayed on the Control Panel, and the machine is stopped.<br>Cause: Detected waste toner bottle full.<br>Measures: Clean the Waste Toner Container. Reset the Waste Toner Counter. |
| <b>11-0010</b>                         | <b>Near-full state of the Waste Toner Container</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Detection of near-full state of the Waste Toner Container  |
| <b>11-0100</b>                         | <b>Waste Toner Container replacement completion alarm</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Completion of Waste Toner Container replacement was detected.  |
| <b>11-F010</b>                         | <b>Waste Toner Container high consumption alarm</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | It was detected that the target part was at a high level of daily consumption.   |
| <b>13-002F</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>   |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy |  |
| <b>13-0FFC</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>   |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy |  |
| <b>13-0FFD</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>   |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy |  |
| <b>13-0FFF</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>   |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy |  |
| <b>14-0000</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>   |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy |  |
| <b>14-0001</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>   |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy |  |
| <b>14-1000</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>   |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy |  |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>30-0004</b>                             | <b>Pre-transfer Charging PCB Harness disconnection (connection error)</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: Pre-transfer charging high voltage is not output. An image error like discharge trace occurs.</p> <p>Cause: Connection error of the Pre-transfer Charging PCB (PCB26).</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the connection between the Main Driver PCB (PCB2) and the High Voltage Unit.<br/>Main Driver PCB side: J112, High Voltage Unit side: J3098</li> <li>2. Check the connection inside of the High Voltage Unit.<br/>High Voltage Unit inlet side: J3098, Pre-transfer Charging PCB side: J3544</li> <li>3. Replace the Pre-transfer Charging PCB (PCB26).</li> <li>4. Replace the Main Driver PCB (PCB2).</li> </ol>             |
| <b>31-0005</b>                             | <b>Environment Sensor reading alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: It becomes as follow: environment temperature= 0 degC, environment humidity= 0%.</p> <p>Cause: Connection of the Environment Sensor cannot be detected.</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Check the connection of the Environment Sensor (THU1).</li> <li>2) Replace the Environment Sensor (THU1).</li> </ol>   |
| <b>31-0006</b>                             | <b>HDD failure when equipped with the mirroring function</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | HDD failure when equipped with the mirroring function  |
| <b>31-0008</b>                             | <b>HDD failure prediction alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: HDD failure is expected to occur in a short time due to occurrence of physical error in HDD. It does not occur in the HDD of mirroring configuration.</p> <p>Cause: Error in the S.M.A.R.T. value of HDD</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Back up the data stored in HDD.</li> <li>2. Replace the HDD.</li> <li>3. Restore the data.</li> </ol> <p>S.M.A.R.T. (Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology): Self-diagnosis function built in the HDD. The occurrence rate of reading error, reading and writing speed, the total number of Motor start-up and stop times, the total length of power-on time, etc. are monitored.</p> |
| <b>31-0009</b>                             | <b>FLASH failure prediction alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Cause: Error in the S.M.A.R.T. value of FLASH memory It indicates a physical error of the FLASH memory, which is expected to soon lead to a failure.</p> <p>*: S.M.A.R.T. (Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology) = It is a self-diagnosis function built in the FLASH memory, and monitors the occurrence rate of reading errors, reading/writing speed, total number of times of motor start-up/stop, total length of power-on time, etc.</p> <p>Continuously using the machine without taking any measures may lead to E614.</p> <p>Measures: Back up the data stored in the FLASH memory, and restore the data after replacing the FLASH memory.</p>                |
| <b>31-0010</b>                             | <b>The configuration of an option controlled by the Main Controller has been changed</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>A change in configuration of an option such as a change in the configuration of the Fax Board, a change in the configuration of the Voice Board, or a change in the configuration of the option HDD, which requires turning OFF and then ON the power, was detected.</p> <p>Detection condition/timing:At the time of startup only</p> <p>Remedy:Turn OFF and then ON the main power.</p>   |
| <b>31-0020</b>                             | <b>The configuration of an option controlled by the RCON has been changed</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Due to a change in the configuration related to the scanner, a change in the hardware configuration which requires turning OFF and then ON the power was detected.</p> <p>Detection condition/timing:At the time of startup only</p> <p>Remedy:Turn OFF and then ON the main power.</p>   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>31-0030</b>                             | <b>The configuration of an option controlled by the DCON has been changed</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Due to a change in the configuration related to the printer, a change in the hardware configuration which requires turning OFF and then ON the power was detected.<br>Detection condition/timing:At the time of startup only<br>Remedy:Turn OFF and then ON the main power. |
| <b>31-0106</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>31-0116</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>31-0126</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>31-0136</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>31-01F1</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>31-01F2</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>31-01F3</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>31-01F4</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>31-01F5</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>31-01F6</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>32-0002</b>                             | <b>Potential control (VL control) error</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Cause: The measured value in the dark area (VL) differs over +/-10V but less than +/-30V than the target potential at potential control.</p> <p>Movement: Not reflecting the result of VL control. To the laser power determined with VL control, the power with which the previous potential control was succeeded (within target potential +/-10V) is applied.</p> <p>Measures: If there is no influence on image, measures are not needed. If not, execute the following measures.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the installation of the Pre-exposure LED (connector connection, open circuit, the caught cable).</li> <li>2. Check the installation of the Primary Charging Assembly (connector connection, open circuit, the caught cable).</li> <li>3. Check the fixation state of the Drum and the Drum Shaft (check if the drum fixation cylinder is properly installed).</li> <li>4. Check if the Dustproof Glass is soiled. If necessary, clean it.</li> <li>5. Check the installation of the Laser Scanner Unit (connector connection, open circuit, the caught cable).</li> <li>6. Check the installation and connection of the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (PCB11) (connector connection, open circuit, the caught cable).</li> <li>7. Check the installation of the Potential Sensor (connector connection, open circuit, the caught cable).</li> <li>8. Check the installation and connection of the Drum Motor (M1) (connector connection, open circuit, the caught cable).</li> <li>9. Replace the parts. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Primary Charging Assembly</li> <li>- Laser Scanner Unit</li> <li>- Potential Sensor</li> <li>- Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (PCB11)</li> <li>- Drum Motor (M1)</li> <li>- Main Driver PCB (PCB2)</li> <li>- DC Controller PCB (PCB1)</li> </ul> </li> </ol> |
| <b>33-0001</b>                             | <b>Delivery Assembly Decurler Fan alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: No change.</p> <p>Cause: Connector disconnection of the Paper Cooling Fan (FM5).<br/>Failure of the Paper Cooling Fan (FM5).</p> <p>Measures: Check the connector -&gt; Replace the Paper Cooling Fan (FM5).</p>   |
| <b>33-0002</b>                             | <b>Feed Fan alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: No change.</p> <p>Cause: Connector disconnection of the Registration Motor/Duplex Motor Cooling Fan (FM42).<br/>Failure of the Registration Motor/Duplex Motor Cooling Fan (FM42).</p> <p>Measures: Check the connector -&gt; Replace the Registration Motor/Duplex Motor Cooling Fan (FM42).</p>  |
| <b>33-0010</b>                             | <b>Stream Reading Fan alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: Nothing in particular (Fan stops).</p> <p>Cause: The Fan rotation signal cannot be detected after 3 seconds have passed since the Scanner Unit Heat Exhaust Fan (FM1) is turned ON.</p> <p>Measures: Check the connector connection -&gt; Replace the Scanner Unit Heat Exhaust Fan (FM1).</p>   |
| <b>33-0013</b>                             | <b>Power Unit Fan 1 alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: No change.</p> <p>Cause: Connector disconnection of the Feed Driver Cooling Fan (FM40).<br/>Failure of the Feed Driver Cooling Fan (FM40).</p> <p>Measures: Check the connector -&gt; Replace the Feed Driver Cooling Fan (FM40).</p>  |



|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>33-0022</b>                             | <b>Read Motor Cooling Fan alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Movement: Nothing in particular (Fan stops).<br>Cause: The Fan rotation signal cannot be detected after 3 seconds have passed since the Motor Driver Cooling Fan (FM1) or the Read Motor Cooling Fan (FM2) is turned ON.<br>Measures: Check the connector connection -> Replace the Motor Driver Cooling Fan (FM1) or the Read Motor Cooling Fan (FM2).   |
| <b>33-0023</b>                             | <b>Scanner Unit (DADF) Cooling Fan alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Movement: Nothing in particular (Fan stops).<br>Cause: The Fan rotation signal cannot be detected after 3 seconds have passed since the (DADF) Scanner Unit Cooling Fan (FM3) is turned ON.<br>Measures: Check the connector connection -> Replace the DADF Scanner Unit Cooling Fan (FM3).   |
| <b>33-0025</b>                             | <b>Scanner Unit (Reader) Cooling Fan alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Movement: Nothing in particular (Fan stops).<br>Cause: The Fan rotation signal cannot be detected after 3 seconds have passed since the (Reader) Scanner Unit Cooling Fan (FM2) is turned ON.<br>Measures: Check the connector connection -> Replace the (Reader) Scanner Unit Cooling Fan (FM2).   |
| <b>33-0026</b>                             | <b>Charging Assembly Fan 1 alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Movement: No change.<br>Cause: Connector disconnection of the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Air Supply Fan (FM32) or the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Exhaust Fan (FM33).<br>Failure of the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Air Supply Fan (FM32) or the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Exhaust Fan (FM33).<br>Measures: Check the connector connection -> Replace the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Air Supply Fan (FM32) or the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Exhaust Fan (FM33). |
| <b>33-0027</b>                             | <b>Charging Assembly Fan 2 alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Movement: No change.<br>Cause: Connector disconnection of the Primary Charging Assembly Exhaust Fan (FM17).<br>Failure of the Primary Charging Assembly Exhaust Fan (FM17).<br>Measures: Check the connector -> Replace the Primary Charging Assembly Exhaust Fan (FM17).   |
| <b>33-0028</b>                             | <b>Power Unit Fan 2 alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Movement: No change.<br>Cause: Connector disconnection of the Duplex Driver Cooling Fan (FM41).<br>Failure of the Duplex Driver Cooling Fan (FM41).<br>Measures: Check the connector -> Replace the Duplex Driver Cooling Fan (FM41).   |
| <b>37-0001</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>37-0002</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>37-0003</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>37-0004</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>37-0005</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>37-0006</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>37-0007</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>37-1000</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>37-2000</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>38-0001</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>38-0002</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>38-0101</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (Error by the rock-out of the Device Configuration Management function),<br>Error message (E-code: EBD0001)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.    |
| <b>38-0102</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (Error when Device Configuration Management data export),<br>Error message (E-code: EBD0002)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                   |
| <b>38-0103</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (Error for MDAS4BR not to be available),<br>Error message (E-code: EBD0003)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                                    |
| <b>38-0104</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (Error when Address book (ADB) folder setting export),<br>Error message (E-code: EBA0001)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                      |
| <b>38-0105</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (Error with the expiration of the start time for scheduled backup),<br>Error message (E-code: EBS9997)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.         |
| <b>38-0106</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (Error with the power supply of the device having been shut down forcibly),<br>Error message (E-code: EBS9998)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>38-0107</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (System error of the export),<br>Error message (E-code: EBS9999)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>38-0108</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (Communication error with CBIO backup service (DCFS)),<br>Error message (E-code: EBC0001)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.  |
| <b>38-0109</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (Error on the CBIO backup service (DCFS) side),<br>Error message (E-code: EBC0002)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>38-0110</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (Error with the backup refusal on the CBIO backup service (DCFS) side),<br>Error message (E-code: EBC0003)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                                   |
| <b>38-0111</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (System error by the communication with CBIO backup service (DCFS)),<br>Error message (E-code: EBC9999)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                                      |
| <b>38-0112</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (Error for Access Token Provider to be unconnected, or not to be installed),<br>Error message (E-code: EAC0001)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                              |
| <b>38-0113</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (Error by the certification failure of the Access Token Provider),<br>Error message (E-code: EAC0002)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.  |
| <b>38-0114</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (Error of the communication time-out of the Access Token Provider),<br>Error message (E-code: EAC0003)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                                       |
| <b>38-0115</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (Communication error of the Access Token Provider by the network origin at proxy effective time),<br>Error message (E-code: EAC0004)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.         |
| <b>38-0116</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (The error that proxy connection of the Access Token Provider failed in at proxy effective time),<br>Error message (E-code: EAC0005)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.         |
| <b>38-0117</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (Communication error of the Access Token Provider by the network origin at the time of proxy invalidity),<br>Error message (E-code: EAC0006)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>38-0118</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (Communication error of the Access Token Provider that name solution was not possible),<br>Error message (E-code: EAC0007)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>38-0119</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Data Backup Service Application Error (System error of the Access Token Provider in other factors),<br>Error message (E-code: EAC9999)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                           |
| <b>39-0111</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Error message (E-code)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-0210</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Inside the machine_Not specified<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-0211</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Inside the machine_Frequently<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.  |
| <b>39-0212</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Inside the machine_Occasionally<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.  |
| <b>39-0213</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Inside the machine_First time in the day<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-0220</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Document Feeder_Not specified<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.  |
| <b>39-0221</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Document Feeder_Frequently<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-0222</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Document Feeder_Occasionally<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-0223</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Document Feeder_First time in the day<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.  |
| <b>39-0230</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Cassette_Not specified<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>39-0231</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Cassette_Right Deck<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-0232</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Cassette_Left Deck<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-0233</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Cassette_Cassette 3<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-0234</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Cassette_Cassette 4<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-0235</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Spare (Not selectable)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                     |
| <b>39-0240</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Not specified<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-0241</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Envelope<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.      |
| <b>39-0242</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Postcard<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.      |
| <b>39-0243</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Plain paper<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-0244</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Label paper<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-0245</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Heavy paper<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-0250</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Outlet_Not specified<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.             |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>39-0251</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Outlet_Frequently<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                         |
| <b>39-0252</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Outlet_Occasionally<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                       |
| <b>39-0253</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Outlet_First time in the day<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-0260</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_At 2-sided printing_Not specified<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.         |
| <b>39-0261</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_At 2-sided printing_Frequently<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.            |
| <b>39-0262</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_At 2-sided printing_Occasionally<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.          |
| <b>39-0263</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_At 2-sided printing_First time in the day<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-0290</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Others<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                                    |
| <b>39-0310</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Displacement_Color not specified<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.      |
| <b>39-0311</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Displacement_Black<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                    |
| <b>39-0312</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Displacement_Yellow<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                   |
| <b>39-0313</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Displacement_Magenta<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                  |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>39-0314</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Displacement_Cyan<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-0320</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Blank image_Color not specified<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-0321</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Blank image_Black<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-0322</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Blank image_Yellow<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-0323</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Blank image_Magenta<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.             |
| <b>39-0324</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Blank image_Cyan<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                |
| <b>39-0330</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Soiling_Color not specified<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.     |
| <b>39-0331</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Soiling_Black<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                   |
| <b>39-0332</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Soiling_Yellow<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                  |
| <b>39-0333</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Soiling_Magenta<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                 |
| <b>39-0334</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Soiling_Cyan<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                    |
| <b>39-0340</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Lines_Color not specified<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.       |



|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>39-0341</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Lines_Black<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-0342</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Lines_Yellow<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-0343</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Lines_Magenta<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.             |
| <b>39-0344</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Lines_Cyan<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                |
| <b>39-0350</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Light_Color not specified<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-0351</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Light_Black<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-0352</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Light_Yellow<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-0353</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Light_Magenta<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.             |
| <b>39-0354</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Light_Cyan<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                |
| <b>39-0360</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Hue_Color not specified<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-0361</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Hue_Black<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                 |
| <b>39-0362</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Hue_Yellow<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>39-0363</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Hue_Magenta<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                            |
| <b>39-0364</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Hue_Cyan<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                               |
| <b>39-0370</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Dark_Color not specified<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-0371</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Dark_Black<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                             |
| <b>39-0372</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Dark_Yellow<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                            |
| <b>39-0373</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Dark_Magenta<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                           |
| <b>39-0374</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Dark_Cyan<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                              |
| <b>39-0380</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Color displacement_Color not specified<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-0381</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Color displacement_Black<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-0382</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Color displacement_Yellow<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-0383</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Color displacement_Magenta<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.             |
| <b>39-0384</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Color displacement_Cyan<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>39-0390</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Others<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.  |
| <b>39-0511</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Print<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-0520</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Fax_Not specified<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                             |
| <b>39-0521</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Fax_Transmission and reception<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                |
| <b>39-0522</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Fax_Reception<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                                 |
| <b>39-0523</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Fax_Transmission<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                              |
| <b>39-0524</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Fax_Forwarding<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                                |
| <b>39-0530</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Control Panel_Not specified<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                   |
| <b>39-0531</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Control Panel_Slow response<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                   |
| <b>39-0532</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Control Panel_Occasional freeze-up (Not work)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-0541</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Scan (SEND)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                                   |
| <b>39-0551</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Abnormal noise_Main<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                           |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>39-0552</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Abnormal noise_Options<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-0590</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Others<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                 |
| <b>39-0611</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Training<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                        |
| <b>39-0612</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Addition<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                        |
| <b>39-0621</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Forwarding_Fax<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                  |
| <b>39-0622</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Forwarding_SEND<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                 |
| <b>39-0631</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Printer driver installation<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.     |
| <b>39-0641</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Address book<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                    |
| <b>39-0651</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Network<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                         |
| <b>39-0690</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Others<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                          |
| <b>39-0811</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Order_Toner_Black<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                        |
| <b>39-0812</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Order_Toner_Yellow<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                       |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>39-0813</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Order_Toner_Magenta<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-0814</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Order_Toner_Cyan<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.  |
| <b>39-0821</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Order_Waste Toner Container<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                                 |
| <b>39-1111</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Error message (E-code)_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                             |
| <b>39-1210</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Inside the machine_Not specified_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.         |
| <b>39-1211</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Inside the machine_Frequently_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.            |
| <b>39-1212</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Inside the machine_Occasionally_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.          |
| <b>39-1213</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Inside the machine_First time in the day_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-1220</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Document Feeder_Not specified_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.            |
| <b>39-1221</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Document Feeder_Frequently_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-1222</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Document Feeder_Occasionally_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.             |
| <b>39-1223</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Document Feeder_First time in the day_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.    |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>39-1230</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Cassette_Not specified_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.           |
| <b>39-1231</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Cassette_Right Deck_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-1232</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Cassette_Left Deck_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-1233</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Cassette_Cassette 3_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-1234</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Cassette_Cassette 4_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-1235</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Spare (Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                                      |
| <b>39-1240</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Not specified_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-1241</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Envelope_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.      |
| <b>39-1242</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Postcard_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.      |
| <b>39-1243</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Plain paper_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-1244</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Label paper_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-1245</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Heavy paper_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>39-1250</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Outlet_Not specified_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                      |
| <b>39-1251</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Outlet_Frequently_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                         |
| <b>39-1252</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Outlet_Occasionally_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                       |
| <b>39-1253</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Outlet_First time in the day_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-1260</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_At 2-sided printing_Not specified_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.         |
| <b>39-1261</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_At 2-sided printing_Frequently_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.            |
| <b>39-1262</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_At 2-sided printing_Occasionally_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.          |
| <b>39-1263</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_At 2-sided printing_First time in the day_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-1290</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Others_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                                    |
| <b>39-1310</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Displacement_Color not specified_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.      |
| <b>39-1311</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Displacement_Black_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                    |
| <b>39-1312</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Displacement_Yellow_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                   |



|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>39-1313</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Displacement_Magenta_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.            |
| <b>39-1314</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Displacement_Cyan_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-1320</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Blank image_Color not specified_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-1321</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Blank image_Black_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-1322</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Blank image_Yellow_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-1323</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Blank image_Magenta_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.             |
| <b>39-1324</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Blank image_Cyan_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                |
| <b>39-1330</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Soiling_Color not specified_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.     |
| <b>39-1331</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Soiling_Black_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                   |
| <b>39-1332</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Soiling_Yellow_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                  |
| <b>39-1333</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Soiling_Magenta_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                 |
| <b>39-1334</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Soiling_Cyan_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                    |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>39-1340</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Lines_Color not specified_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-1341</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Lines_Black_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-1342</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Lines_Yellow_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-1343</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Lines_Magenta_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.             |
| <b>39-1344</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Lines_Cyan_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                |
| <b>39-1350</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Light_Color not specified_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-1351</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Light_Black_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-1352</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Light_Yellow_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-1353</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Light_Magenta_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.             |
| <b>39-1354</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Light_Cyan_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                |
| <b>39-1360</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Hue_Color not specified_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-1361</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Hue_Black_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                 |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>39-1362</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Hue_Yellow_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                             |
| <b>39-1363</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Hue_Magenta_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                            |
| <b>39-1364</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Hue_Cyan_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                               |
| <b>39-1370</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Dark_Color not specified_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-1371</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Dark_Black_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                             |
| <b>39-1372</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Dark_Yellow_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                            |
| <b>39-1373</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Dark_Magenta_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                           |
| <b>39-1374</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Dark_Cyan_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                              |
| <b>39-1380</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Color displacement_Color not specified_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-1381</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Color displacement_Black_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-1382</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Color displacement_Yellow_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-1383</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Color displacement_Magenta_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.             |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>39-1384</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Color displacement_Cyan_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                           |
| <b>39-1390</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Others_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.  |
| <b>39-1511</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Print_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-1520</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Fax_Not specified_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                             |
| <b>39-1521</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Fax_Transmission and reception_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                |
| <b>39-1522</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Fax_Reception_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                                 |
| <b>39-1523</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Fax_Transmission_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                              |
| <b>39-1524</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Fax_Forwarding_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                                |
| <b>39-1530</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Control Panel_Not specified_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                   |
| <b>39-1531</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Control Panel_Slow response_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                   |
| <b>39-1532</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Control Panel_Occasional freeze-up (Not work)_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-1541</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Scan (SEND)_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                                   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>39-1551</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Abnormal noise_Main_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.    |
| <b>39-1552</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Abnormal noise_Options_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-1590</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Others_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                 |
| <b>39-1611</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Training_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                        |
| <b>39-1612</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Addition_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                        |
| <b>39-1621</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Forwarding_Fax_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                  |
| <b>39-1622</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Forwarding_SEND_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                 |
| <b>39-1631</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Printer driver installation_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.     |
| <b>39-1641</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Address book_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                    |
| <b>39-1651</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Network_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                         |
| <b>39-1690</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Others_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                          |
| <b>39-1811</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Order_Toner_Black_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                        |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>39-1812</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Order_Toner_Yellow_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.  |
| <b>39-1813</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Order_Toner_Magenta_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-1814</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Order_Toner_Cyan_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.  |
| <b>39-1821</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Order_Waste Toner Container_(Cancel)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-19EE</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Test signal<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.  |
| <b>39-19FF</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Remedy completed<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-2111</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Error message (E-code)_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                             |
| <b>39-2210</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Inside the machine_Not specified_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.         |
| <b>39-2211</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Inside the machine_Frequently_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.            |
| <b>39-2212</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Inside the machine_Occasionally_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.          |
| <b>39-2213</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Inside the machine_First time in the day_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-2220</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Document Feeder_Not specified_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.            |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>39-2221</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Document Feeder_Frequently_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.            |
| <b>39-2222</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Document Feeder_Occasionally_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.          |
| <b>39-2223</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Document Feeder_First time in the day_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-2230</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Cassette_Not specified_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                |
| <b>39-2231</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Cassette_Right Deck_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                   |
| <b>39-2232</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Cassette_Left Deck_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                    |
| <b>39-2233</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Cassette_Cassette 3_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                   |
| <b>39-2234</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Cassette_Cassette 4_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                   |
| <b>39-2240</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Not specified_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.      |
| <b>39-2241</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Envelope_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.           |
| <b>39-2242</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Postcard_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.           |
| <b>39-2243</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Plain paper_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.        |



|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>39-2244</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Label paper_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.            |
| <b>39-2245</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Multi-purpose Tray_Heavy paper_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.            |
| <b>39-2250</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Outlet_Not specified_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                      |
| <b>39-2251</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Outlet_Frequently_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                         |
| <b>39-2252</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Outlet_Occasionally_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                       |
| <b>39-2253</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Outlet_First time in the day_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-2260</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_At 2-sided printing_Not specified_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.         |
| <b>39-2261</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_At 2-sided printing_Frequently_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.            |
| <b>39-2262</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_At 2-sided printing_Occasionally_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.          |
| <b>39-2263</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_At 2-sided printing_First time in the day_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-2290</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Paper jam_Others_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                                    |
| <b>39-2310</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Displacement_Color not specified_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.      |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>39-2311</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Displacement_Black_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-2312</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Displacement_Yellow_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.             |
| <b>39-2313</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Displacement_Magenta_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.            |
| <b>39-2314</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Displacement_Cyan_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-2320</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Blank image_Color not specified_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-2321</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Blank image_Black_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-2322</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Blank image_Yellow_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-2323</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Blank image_Magenta_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.             |
| <b>39-2324</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Blank image_Cyan_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                |
| <b>39-2330</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Soiling_Color not specified_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.     |
| <b>39-2331</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Soiling_Black_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                   |
| <b>39-2332</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Soiling_Yellow_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                  |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>39-2333</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Soiling_Magenta_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.           |
| <b>39-2334</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Soiling_Cyan_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-2340</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Lines_Color not specified_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-2341</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Lines_Black_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-2342</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Lines_Yellow_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-2343</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Lines_Magenta_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.             |
| <b>39-2344</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Lines_Cyan_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                |
| <b>39-2350</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Light_Color not specified_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-2351</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Light_Black_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-2352</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Light_Yellow_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-2353</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Light_Magenta_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.             |
| <b>39-2354</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Light_Cyan_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>39-2360</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Hue_Color not specified_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                |
| <b>39-2361</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Hue_Black_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                              |
| <b>39-2362</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Hue_Yellow_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                             |
| <b>39-2363</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Hue_Magenta_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                            |
| <b>39-2364</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Hue_Cyan_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                               |
| <b>39-2370</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Dark_Color not specified_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-2371</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Dark_Black_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                             |
| <b>39-2372</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Dark_Yellow_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                            |
| <b>39-2373</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Dark_Magenta_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                           |
| <b>39-2374</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Dark_Cyan_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                              |
| <b>39-2380</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Color displacement_Color not specified_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-2381</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Color displacement_Black_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>39-2382</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Color displacement_Yellow_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.          |
| <b>39-2383</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Color displacement_Magenta_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.         |
| <b>39-2384</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Color displacement_Cyan_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.            |
| <b>39-2390</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Image failure_Others_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                             |
| <b>39-2511</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Print_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                          |
| <b>39-2520</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Fax_Not specified_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.              |
| <b>39-2521</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Fax_Transmission and reception_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-2522</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Fax_Reception_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                  |
| <b>39-2523</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Fax_Transmission_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.               |
| <b>39-2524</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Fax_Forwarding_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                 |
| <b>39-2530</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Control Panel_Not specified_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.    |
| <b>39-2531</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Control Panel_Slow response_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.    |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>39-2532</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Control Panel_Occasional freeze-up (Not work)_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>39-2541</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Scan (SEND)_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                                   |
| <b>39-2551</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Abnormal noise_Main_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                           |
| <b>39-2552</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Abnormal noise_Options_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                        |
| <b>39-2590</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Operation failure_Others_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.  |
| <b>39-2611</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Training_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-2612</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Addition_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-2621</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Forwarding_Fax_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-2622</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Forwarding_SEND_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.  |
| <b>39-2631</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Printer driver installation_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.                            |
| <b>39-2641</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Address book_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.   |
| <b>39-2651</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Network_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.  |



|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>39-2690</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Settings_Others_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.             |
| <b>39-2811</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Order_Toner_Black_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.           |
| <b>39-2812</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Order_Toner_Yellow_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.          |
| <b>39-2813</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Order_Toner_Magenta_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.         |
| <b>39-2814</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Order_Toner_Cyan_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application.            |
| <b>39-2821</b>                             | <b>Application-generated alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Service call application<br>Order_Waste Toner Container_(Customer information change)<br>* This alarm is not displayed on LUI due to the alarm being generated by the application. |
| <b>40-0006</b>                             | <b>ETB prior notification alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | The life value of a target part reached the number of days left as set in COPIER > OPTION > PM-DLV-D > TR-BLT.   |
| <b>40-0013</b>                             | <b>Transfer Roller prior notification alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | The life value of a target part reached the number of days left as set in COPIER > OPTION > PM-DLV-D > TR-ROLL.  |
| <b>40-0073</b>                             | <b>Drum Unit (K) prior notification alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | The life value of a target part reached the number of days left as set in COPIER > OPTION > PM-DLV-D > PT-DRM.   |
| <b>40-0123</b>                             | <b>Developing Cylinder prior notification alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | The life value of a target part reached the number of days left as set in COPIER > OPTION > PM-DLV-D > DV-UNT-K.   |
| <b>40-0193</b>                             | <b>Drum Cleaning Blade prior notification alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | The life value of a target part reached the number of days left as set in COPIER > OPTION > PM-DLV-D > CLN-BLD.  |
| <b>40-0370</b>                             | <b>ETB Cleaning Blade prior notification alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | The life value of a target part reached the number of days left as set in COPIER > OPTION > PM-DLV-D > T-CLN-BD.   |
| <b>40-0372</b>                             | <b>Brush Roller prior notification alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | The life value of a target part reached the number of days left as set in COPIER > OPTION > PM-DLV-D > T-CN-BRU.   |
| <b>40-0389</b>                             | <b>Fixing Roller prior notification alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | The life value of a target part reached the number of days left as set in COPIER > OPTION > PM-DLV-D > FX-UP-RL.   |



|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>40-0398</b>                             | <b>Pressure Roller prior notification alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | The life value of a target part reached the number of days left as set in COPIER > OPTION > PM-DLV-D > FX-LW-RL. |
| <b>43-0006</b>                             | <b>ETB replacement completion alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | ETB counter was cleared.   |
| <b>43-0013</b>                             | <b>Transfer Roller replacement completion alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Transfer Roller counter was cleared.   |
| <b>43-0073</b>                             | <b>Drum Unit (K) replacement completion alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Drum Unit (K) counter was cleared.   |
| <b>43-0077</b>                             | <b>Multi-purpose Tray Feed Roller replacement completion alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Multi-purpose Tray Feed Roller counter was cleared.  |
| <b>43-0078</b>                             | <b>Multi-purpose Tray Separation Roller replacement completion alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Multi-purpose Tray Separation Roller counter was cleared.  |
| <b>43-0079</b>                             | <b>Right Deck Pickup Roller replacement completion alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Right Deck Pickup Roller counter was cleared.  |
| <b>43-0080</b>                             | <b>Right Deck Feed Roller replacement completion alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Right Deck Feed Roller counter was cleared.  |
| <b>43-0081</b>                             | <b>Right Deck Separation Roller replacement completion alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Right Deck Separation Roller counter was cleared.  |
| <b>43-0082</b>                             | <b>Left Deck Pickup Roller replacement completion alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Left Deck Pickup Roller counter was cleared.   |
| <b>43-0083</b>                             | <b>Left Deck Feed Roller replacement completion alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Left Deck Feed Roller counter was cleared.   |
| <b>43-0084</b>                             | <b>Left Deck Separation Roller replacement completion alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Left Deck Separation Roller counter was cleared.   |
| <b>43-0085</b>                             | <b>Cassette 3 Pickup Roller replacement completion alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Cassette 3 Pickup Roller counter was cleared.  |
| <b>43-0086</b>                             | <b>Cassette 3 Feed Roller replacement completion alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Cassette 3 Feed Roller counter was cleared.  |
| <b>43-0087</b>                             | <b>Cassette 3 Separation Roller replacement completion alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Cassette 3 Separation Roller counter was cleared.  |
| <b>43-0088</b>                             | <b>Cassette 4 Pickup Roller replacement completion alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Cassette 4 Pickup Roller counter was cleared.  |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>43-0089</b>                         | <b>Cassette 4 Feed Roller replacement completion alarm</b>             |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Cassette 4 Feed Roller counter was cleared.                            |
| <b>43-0090</b>                         | <b>Cassette 4 Separation Roller replacement completion alarm</b>       |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Cassette 4 Separation Roller counter was cleared.                      |
| <b>43-0092</b>                         | <b>Separation Roller (DADF) replacement completion alarm</b>           |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Separation Roller (DADF) counter was cleared.                          |
| <b>43-0123</b>                         | <b>Developing Cylinder replacement completion alarm</b>                |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Developing Cylinder counter was cleared.                               |
| <b>43-0125</b>                         | <b>Pickup Roller (DADF) replacement completion alarm</b>               |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Pickup Roller (DADF) counter was cleared.                              |
| <b>43-0133</b>                         | <b>Primary Charging Wire replacement completion alarm</b>              |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Primary Charging Wire counter was cleared.                             |
| <b>43-0173</b>                         | <b>Primary Charging Assembly replacement completion alarm</b>          |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Primary Charging Assembly counter was cleared.                         |
| <b>43-0193</b>                         | <b>Drum Cleaning Blade replacement completion alarm</b>                |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Drum Cleaning Blade counter was cleared.                               |
| <b>43-0350</b>                         | <b>Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Pad replacement completion alarm</b> |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Pad counter was cleared.                |
| <b>43-0352</b>                         | <b>Drum Cleaner Side Seal (Front) replacement completion alarm</b>     |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Drum Cleaner Side Seal (Front) counter was cleared.                    |
| <b>43-0353</b>                         | <b>Drum Cleaner Side Seal (Rear) replacement completion alarm</b>      |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Drum Cleaner Side Seal (Rear) counter was cleared.                     |
| <b>43-0354</b>                         | <b>Drum Separation Claw replacement completion alarm</b>               |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Drum Separation Claw counter was cleared.                              |
| <b>43-0355</b>                         | <b>Pre-exposure Scraper replacement completion alarm</b>               |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Pre-exposure Scraper counter was cleared.                              |
| <b>43-0370</b>                         | <b>ETB Cleaning Blade replacement completion alarm</b>                 |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | ETB Cleaning Blade counter was cleared.                                |
| <b>43-0372</b>                         | <b>Brush Roller replacement completion alarm</b>                       |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Brush Roller counter was cleared.                                      |
| <b>43-0376</b>                         | <b>Primary Pre-transfer Charging Wire replacement completion alarm</b> |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Primary Pre-transfer Charging Wire counter was cleared.                |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>43-0377</b>                             | <b>Primary Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Pad replacement completion alarm</b> |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Primary Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Pad counter was cleared.                |
| <b>43-0378</b>                             | <b>Primary Pre-transfer Charging Assembly replacement completion alarm</b>          |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Primary Pre-transfer Charging Assembly counter was cleared.                         |
| <b>43-0389</b>                             | <b>Fixing Roller replacement completion alarm</b>                                   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Fixing Roller counter was cleared.  |
| <b>43-0390</b>                             | <b>Fixing Main Thermistor replacement completion alarm</b>                          |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Fixing Main Thermistor counter was cleared.   |
| <b>43-0391</b>                             | <b>Fixing Sub Thermistor replacement completion alarm</b>                           |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Fixing Sub Thermistor counter was cleared.  |
| <b>43-0392</b>                             | <b>Fixing Roller Insulating Bushing replacement completion alarm</b>                |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Fixing Roller Insulating Bushing counter was cleared.                               |
| <b>43-0394</b>                             | <b>Fixing Roller Thrust Retainer replacement completion alarm</b>                   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Fixing Roller Thrust Retainer counter was cleared.                                  |
| <b>43-0398</b>                             | <b>Pressure Roller replacement completion alarm</b>                                 |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Pressure Roller counter was cleared.  |
| <b>43-0402</b>                             | <b>Pressure Roller Static Eliminator replacement completion alarm</b>               |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Pressure Roller Static Eliminator counter was cleared.                              |
| <b>43-0419</b>                             | <b>Fixing Web replacement completion alarm</b>                                      |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Fixing Web counter was cleared.   |
| <b>43-0470</b>                             | <b>Upper Separation Claw replacement completion alarm</b>                           |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Upper Separation Claw counter was cleared.  |
| <b>43-0483</b>                             | <b>Ozone Filter replacement completion alarm</b>                                    |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Ozone Filter counter was cleared.   |
| <b>43-0488</b>                             | <b>Dustproof Filter replacement completion alarm</b>                                |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Dustproof Filter counter was cleared.   |
| <b>43-0568</b>                             | <b>Pickup Roller (Deck) replacement completion alarm</b>                            |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Pickup Roller (Deck) counter was cleared.   |
| <b>43-0572</b>                             | <b>Separation Roller Parts (Deck) replacement completion alarm</b>                  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Separation Roller Parts (Deck) counter was cleared.                                 |
| <b>43-0576</b>                             | <b>Feed Roller (Deck) replacement completion alarm</b>                              |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Feed Roller (Deck) counter was cleared.   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>43-0611</b>                             | <b>Stapler (Fin) replacement completion alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | The Stapler (Fin) counter was cleared.   |
| <b>43-0612</b>                             | <b>Saddle Stitcher (Fin) replacement completion alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Saddle Stitcher (Fin) counter was cleared.   |
| <b>43-0631</b>                             | <b>Staple-free Binding Unit (Fin) replacement completion alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Staple-free Binding Unit (Fin) counter was cleared.  |
| <b>43-0655</b>                             | <b>Tray Torque Limiter (Fin) replacement completion alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Tray Torque Limiter (Fin) counter was cleared.   |
| <b>43-0681</b>                             | <b>Paddle Unit (Fin) replacement completion alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Paddle Unit (Fin) counter was cleared.   |
| <b>43-0876</b>                             | <b>Punch Unit (Fin) replacement completion alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Punch Unit (Fin) counter was cleared.  |
| <b>43-0878</b>                             | <b>Paper Retainer Lever (Fin-AC1) replacement completion alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Paper Retainer Lever (Fin-AC1) counter was cleared.  |
| <b>43-1611</b>                             | <b>Torque Limiter (Fin) replacement completion alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Torque Limiter (Fin) counter was cleared.  |
| <b>43-1633</b>                             | <b>Pickup Roller (INS) replacement completion alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Pickup Roller (INS) counter was cleared.   |
| <b>50-0007</b>                             | <b>Insufficient light intensity in Post-separation Sensor 3</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Movement: Nothing in particular.<br>Cause: Light intensity is insufficient when adjusting output of the Post-separation Sensor 3 (SR20).<br>Measures: Clean the Post-separation Sensor 3 (SR20) (periodical maintenance).  |
| <b>50-0008</b>                             | <b>Insufficient light intensity in Lead Sensor 1</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Movement: Nothing in particular.<br>Cause: Light intensity is insufficient when adjusting output of the Lead Sensor 1 (SR22).<br>Measures: Clean the Lead Sensor 1 (SR22) (periodical maintenance).  |
| <b>50-0009</b>                             | <b>Insufficient light intensity in Delivery Sensor</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Movement: Nothing in particular.<br>Cause: Light intensity is insufficient when adjusting output of the Delivery Sensor (SR21).<br>Measures: Clean the Delivery Sensor (SR21) (periodical maintenance).  |
| <b>50-0010</b>                             | <b>Alarm due to original separation failure</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Movement: Nothing in particular.<br>Cause: Condition unable to separate 1st sheet of original from the ADF occurs 3 times.<br>Measures: Check rotation of the Pickup Motor (M1) -> Check the life of the Pickup Roller -> Check if paper lint is at the Pickup Slot. |
| <b>50-0013</b>                             | <b>Insufficient light intensity in Registration Sensor</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Movement: Nothing in particular.<br>Cause: Light intensity is insufficient when adjusting output of the Registration Sensor (SR23).<br>Measures: Clean the Registration Sensor (SR23) (periodical maintenance).  |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>50-0014</b>                             | <b>Insufficient Scanner Unit (Paper Back) LED light intensity alarm (Some of the LEDs are OFF. Scanning can be continued.)</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | In the case that the light intensity is insufficient at LED lighting.   |
| <b>50-0015</b>                             | <b>ADF Double Feed Detection Sensor trouble</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Cause:<br/> Failure of the Double Feed Sensor installed in the ADF</p> <p>Detection condition/timing:<br/> - When a paper feed error of the Double Feed Sensor was detected at power-on<br/> - When an error of the output value of the Double Feed Sensor was detected during ADF job (While an ADF job is being executed, it is handled as a jam once and retry is performed.)</p> <p>Clearing condition:<br/> When communication and the sensor output value are normal at power-on</p> <p>Movement/symptom:<br/> "Check area where multi. sheet feed was detected. (Call serv. rep.)" is displayed in the status line. Although reading from the ADF is possible, double feed cannot be detected when it occurs.</p> <p>Message displayed on the Control Panel:<br/> Check area where multi. sheet feed was detected. (Call serv. rep.)</p> <p>Measures:<br/> Check for any foreign matter, clean paper lint, disconnect and then connect the connectors, replace the Double Feed Detection PCB, replace the RCON/DF Driver PCB, replace the harnesses</p> |
| <b>60-0001</b>                             | <b>Shift Tray alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Movement: Shift Tray operation is stopped.</p> <p>Cause: Home position at startup of the host machine cannot be detected.</p> <p>Measure: Check connector disconnection of the HP Sensor (Front) (PS101) and the HP Sensor (Rear) (PS102) -&gt; Replace the HP Sensor (Front) (PS101) and the HP Sensor (Rear) (PS102).</p>  |
| <b>61-0002</b>                             | <b>Finisher Staple Free Stapling alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Cause: The staple free staple unit is broken.</p> <p>Operation : Operation stops as jam. After jam processing, the paper is delivered without stapling until a job is finished.</p> <p>Recovery method : Replace the Staple free staple unit. After performing the remedy work, go through the following to clear the alarm: SORTER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; EMSG-CLR.</p>   |
| <b>64-0003</b>                             | <b>Neat Alignment Lift Alarm</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Contents:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.The Alignment Plate Lift HP Sensor (PS1) is not turned ON although 346 msec has passed since the start of operation.</li> <li>2.The Alignment Plate Lift HP Sensor (PS1) is not turned OFF although 72msec has passed since the start of operation.</li> </ol> <p>Operation: The alignment plate and the paddle unit of the neat alignment unit move away. While failure has occurred (an alarm has occurred), the neat alignment operation is not performed.</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.Check/replace the harness and connector between the Neat Controller PCB and the Neat Alignment Plate Lift HP Sensor.</li> <li>2.Check/replace the harness and connector between the Neat Controller PCB and the Neat Alignment Plate Lift Motor.</li> <li>3.Replace the Neat Alignment Plate Lift HP Sensor.</li> <li>4.Replace the Neat Alignment Plate Lift Motor.</li> <li>5.Replace the Neat Controller PCB.</li> </ol>   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>64-0009</b>                             | <b>Neat Paddle Lift Alarm</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Contents:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.The Paddle Lift HP Sensor (PS4) is not turned ON although 337 msec has passed since the start of operation.</li> <li>2.The Paddle Lift HP Sensor (PS4) is not turned OFF although 72msec has passed since the start of operation.</li> </ol> <p>Operation: The alignment plate and the paddle unit of the neat alignment unit move away. While failure has occurred (an alarm has occurred), the neat alignment operation is not performed.</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.Check/replace the harness and connector between the Neat Controller PCB and the Neat Paddle Lift HP Sensor.</li> <li>2.Check/replace the harness and connector between the Neat Controller PCB and the Neat Paddle Lift Motor.</li> <li>3.Replace the Neat Paddle Lift HP Sensor.</li> <li>4.Replace the Neat Paddle Lift Motor.</li> <li>5.Replace the Neat Controller PCB.</li> </ol> |
| <b>70-0071</b>                             | <b>Verification error by Falsification detection at startup function</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Cause:</p> <p>At normal startup, verification error occurred due to invalid data of the firmware (for startup in safe mode).</p> <p>Measures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace the Flash PCB, and reinstall the system software using SST or a USB flash drive.</li> <li>2. Settings/Registration &gt; Management Settings &gt; Security Settings &gt; System verification at startup &gt; OFF</li> </ol>   |
| <b>70-0086</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> |   |
| <b>70-0087</b>                             | <b>Firmware combination mismatch</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | <p>Cause: An option with the firmware which version is newer than that of the firmware installed in the host machine was detected. It is an alarm when the automatic update cancellation message is displayed on the Control Panel.</p> <p>Detection condition:</p> <p>When the following two conditions are satisfied:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. "1" is set in COPIER&gt;Option&gt;FNC-SW&gt;VER-CHNG.</li> <li>2. The version of the firmware installed in the option that has been installed to the host machine is newer than that of the firmware in the host machine.</li> </ol> <p>Timing: At startup</p> <p>Movement/symptom: Cancel the automatic update.</p> <p>Measures: Update the firmware of the host machine.</p>  |
| <b>73-0004</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>73-0006</b>                             | <b>LIPS</b>   |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | Error in configuration acquisition/management   |
| <b>73-0007</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>73-0008</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |
| <b>73-0009</b>                             | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b> | -   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>73-0011</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>73-0014</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>73-0015</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>73-0017</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>73-0021</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>73-0024</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>73-0026</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>75-0001</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>75-0002</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>76-0001</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>76-0002</b>                         | <b>Font</b>   |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Failed to secure the work area to analyze the font that is downloaded at "Resource Download". |
| <b>76-0003</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>76-0004</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>76-0005</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>76-0006</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>76-0007</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |



|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>76-0008</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                     |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                      |
| <b>77-0001</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                     |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                      |
| <b>77-0002</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                     |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                      |
| <b>77-0003</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                     |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                      |
| <b>77-0005</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                     |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                      |
| <b>77-0006</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                     |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                      |
| <b>78-0001</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                     |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                      |
| <b>78-0002</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                     |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                      |
| <b>78-0003</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                     |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                      |
| <b>78-0004</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                     |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                      |
| <b>78-0005</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                     |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                      |
| <b>79-0001</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                     |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                      |
| <b>79-0002</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                     |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                      |
| <b>79-0003</b>                         | <b>Canon-made PCL</b>                  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Overflow of work memory for translator |
| <b>79-0004</b>                         | <b>Canon-made PCL</b>                  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Download overflow                      |
| <b>80-0001</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                     |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                      |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>80-0003</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                      |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                       |
| <b>80-0004</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                      |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                       |
| <b>80-0007</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                      |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                       |
| <b>80-0008</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                      |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                       |
| <b>80-0009</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                      |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                       |
| <b>80-0010</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                      |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                       |
| <b>80-0011</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                      |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                       |
| <b>80-0012</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                      |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                       |
| <b>80-0013</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                      |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                       |
| <b>80-0015</b>                         | <b>BDL</b>                              |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Print data cannot process this version. |
| <b>80-0016</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                      |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                       |
| <b>80-0019</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                      |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                       |
| <b>81-0001</b>                         | <b>Imaging</b>                          |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Fails to allocate the memory.           |
| <b>81-0002</b>                         | <b>Imaging</b>                          |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Rendering error                         |
| <b>81-0003</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                      |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                       |
| <b>81-0004</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                      |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -                                       |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>81-0005</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>81-0006</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>81-0007</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>83-0005</b>                         | <b>PDF</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | PDF memory full   |
| <b>83-0015</b>                         | <b>PDF</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | PDF data decoding error   |
| <b>83-0016</b>                         | <b>PDF</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Page range error  |
| <b>83-0017</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>83-0020</b>                         | <b>Reception of ESCP unanalyzable data</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Since PDL automatic judgment may be wrong, select the appropriate PDL in Settings/Registration > Function Settings > Printer > Printer Settings > Settings > Printer Operation Mode, and send the data. |
| <b>83-0021</b>                         | <b>Reception of I5577 unanalyzable data</b>   |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Since PDL automatic judgment may be wrong, select the appropriate PDL in Settings/Registration > Function Settings > Printer > Printer Settings > Settings > Printer Operation Mode, and send the data. |
| <b>83-0022</b>                         | <b>Reception of HPGL unanalyzable data</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Since PDL automatic judgment may be wrong, select the appropriate PDL in Settings/Registration > Function Settings > Printer > Printer Settings > Settings > Printer Operation Mode, and send the data. |
| <b>83-0023</b>                         | <b>Reception of N201 unanalyzable data</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | Since PDL automatic judgment may be wrong, select the appropriate PDL in Settings/Registration > Function Settings > Printer > Printer Settings > Settings > Printer Operation Mode, and send the data. |
| <b>84-0001</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>84-0002</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>84-0003</b>                         | <b>XPS print range error</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |
| <b>84-0004</b>                         | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| A. Operation / B. Cause /<br>C. Remedy | -   |

|                                  |                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>84-0005</b>                   | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                 |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause /</b> | <b>-</b>                           |
| <b>C. Remedy</b>                 |                                    |
| <b>84-0006</b>                   | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                 |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause /</b> | <b>-</b>                           |
| <b>C. Remedy</b>                 |                                    |
| <b>84-0007</b>                   | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                 |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause /</b> | <b>-</b>                           |
| <b>C. Remedy</b>                 |                                    |
| <b>84-0008</b>                   | <b>XPS non-support image error</b> |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause /</b> | <b>-</b>                           |
| <b>C. Remedy</b>                 |                                    |
| <b>84-0009</b>                   | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                 |
| <b>A. Operation / B. Cause /</b> | <b>-</b>                           |
| <b>C. Remedy</b>                 |                                    |

## Jam Code

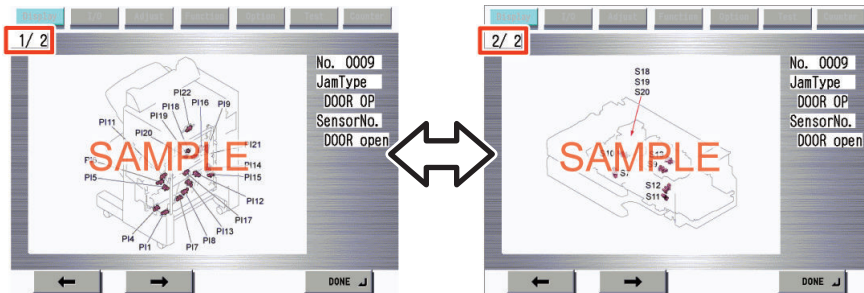
### Jam Type

| Type     | Overview of detection  | Check items (in arbitrary order)  |
|----------|--|---|
| DELAY    | A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor</li> <li>• Soiling on the target sensor</li> <li>• Displacement of the target sensor position</li> <li>• Failure of the target sensor</li> <li>• Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor</li> <li>• Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor</li> </ul> |
| STNRY    | A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remaining paper near the target sensor</li> <li>• Soiling on the target sensor</li> <li>• Displacement of the target sensor position</li> <li>• Failure of the target sensor</li> <li>• Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor</li> <li>• Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor</li> </ul>               |
| DOOR OP  | A door open jam occurs when a sensor detected door open during printing operation.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Door open during printing</li> </ul>   |
| COVER OP | A door open jam occurs when a sensor detected cover open during printing operation.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cover open during printing</li> </ul>  |
| ADF OPEN | A door open jam occurs when a sensor detected ADF open during printing operation.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ADF open during printing</li> </ul>  |
| SEQUENCE | A sequence jam occurs when there was an error in sensor detection signal at printing operation sequence.<br>Since the jam may occur due to sporadic noise with software of each equipment or communication line (interruption of communication), failure of the part is not the cause of the jam. After the jam is removed, the machine works.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Opening/closing of the door</li> <li>• Turning OFF and then ON the power</li> <li>• Error near the target sensor (soiling/displacement/failure of the sensor, error in harness/open circuit of harness, soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor, or soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller)</li> </ul>   |
| POWER ON | A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remaining paper in the machine</li> <li>• Soiling on the target sensor</li> <li>• Failure of the target sensor</li> <li>• Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)</li> </ul>  |
| ERROR    | An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected. Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.<br>After the jam is removed, the machine works.<br>If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended. In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Opening/closing of the door after jam removal</li> <li>• Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal</li> </ul>  |
| SIZE ERR | A size error jam occurs when the difference between the paper length detected by the Cassette Guide Plate/specified on the Control Panel and the length measured by the Registration Sensor is out of the specified range.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Difference in paper size</li> <li>• Wrong paper size setting</li> <li>• Error in the Document Size Sensor (soiling/displacement/failure of the sensor)</li> <li>• Error in the Paper Size Detection Unit (failure of mechanical structure for size detection, failure of the Guide Plate, or failure of the Cassette Size Switch)</li> </ul>   |
| P-STOP   | Forcible stop of paper feed<br>It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Using at problem analysis.</li> </ul>  |

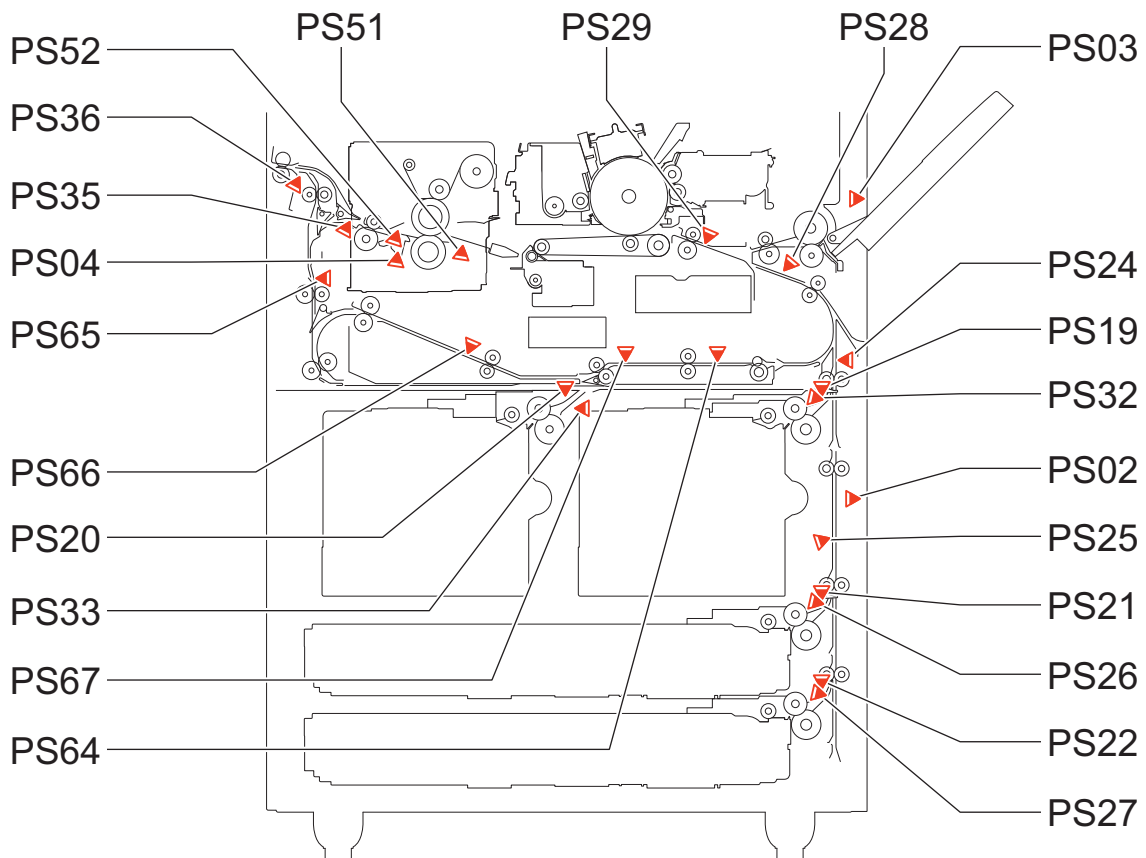
| Type         | Overview of detection  | Check items (in arbitrary order)   |
|--------------|--|--|
| Wrapping jam | When the first sensor after the fixing roller is turned ON is turned OFF immediately detection after the detection.<br>Alternatively, when the second sensor after fixing roller is turned ON and immediately after detection, the first sensor is detection turned OFF. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fixing Assembly remaining in Paper</li> <li>Failure of the target sensor</li> <li>Fixing Assembly failure</li> <li>Paper Type Confirmation (Check if paper type cannot be used.)</li> </ul> |

## Jam screen display specification

Due to one jam code being used for multiple options, the illustration for the different option may be displayed on the jam screen. In this case, "1/2" or similar information is displayed on top left side of the screen and this area can be pushed. This operation can be used to switch information on the screen.



## Main Unit

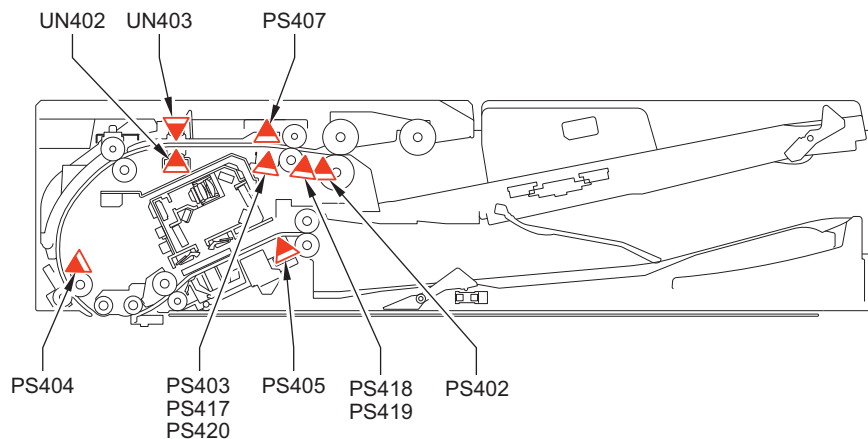


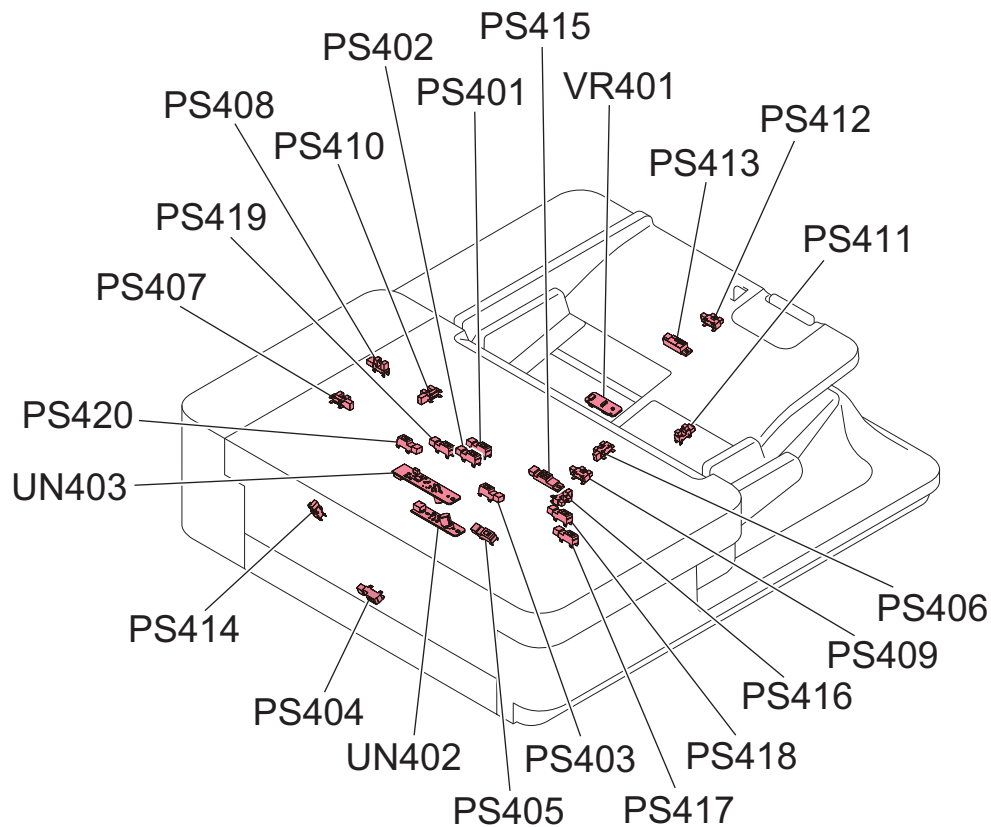
| ACC ID | Jam Code | Type  | Sensor Name/Description    | Sensor ID |
|--------|----------|-------|----------------------------|-----------|
| 00     | 0101     | DELAY | Right Deck Pickup Sensor 1 | PS19      |
| 00     | 0102     | DELAY | Right Deck Pull Out Sensor | PS32      |
| 00     | 0103     | DELAY | Vertical Path Sensor 1     | PS24      |

| ACC ID | Jam Code | Type      | Sensor Name/Description               | Sensor ID |
|--------|----------|-----------|---------------------------------------|-----------|
| 00     | 0104     | DELAY     | Writing Judging Sensor                | PS28      |
| 00     | 0105     | DELAY     | Registration Sensor                   | PS29      |
| 00     | 0106     | DELAY     | Left Deck Pickup Sensor 1             | PS20      |
| 00     | 0107     | DELAY     | Left Deck Pull Out Sensor             | PS33      |
| 00     | 0108     | DELAY     | Duplex Merging Sensor                 | PS67      |
| 00     | 0109     | DELAY     | Duplex Outlet Sensor                  | PS64      |
| 00     | 010A     | DELAY     | Cassette 3 Pickup Sensor 1            | PS21      |
| 00     | 010B     | DELAY     | Vertical Path Sensor 3                | PS26      |
| 00     | 010C     | DELAY     | Vertical Path Sensor 2                | PS25      |
| 00     | 010D     | DELAY     | Cassette 4 Pickup Sensor 1            | PS22      |
| 00     | 010E     | DELAY     | Vertical Path Sensor 4                | PS27      |
| 00     | 0111     | DELAY     | Fixing Outlet Sensor                  | PS52      |
| 00     | 0112     | DELAY     | Inner Delivery Sensor                 | PS35      |
| 00     | 0113     | DELAY     | Outer Delivery Sensor                 | PS36      |
| 00     | 0114     | DELAY     | Reverse Vertical Path Sensor          | PS65      |
| 00     | 0115     | DELAY     | Duplex Left Sensor                    | PS66      |
| 00     | 0202     | STNRY     | Right Deck Pull Out Sensor            | PS32      |
| 00     | 0203     | STNRY     | Vertical Path Sensor 1                | PS24      |
| 00     | 0204     | STNRY     | Writing Judging Sensor                | PS28      |
| 00     | 0205     | STNRY     | Registration Sensor                   | PS29      |
| 00     | 0207     | STNRY     | Left Deck Pull Out Sensor             | PS33      |
| 00     | 0208     | STNRY     | Duplex Merging Sensor                 | PS67      |
| 00     | 0209     | STNRY     | Duplex Outlet Sensor                  | PS64      |
| 00     | 020B     | STNRY     | Vertical Path Sensor 3                | PS26      |
| 00     | 020C     | STNRY     | Vertical Path Sensor 2                | PS25      |
| 00     | 020E     | STNRY     | Vertical Path Sensor 4                | PS27      |
| 00     | 0212     | STNRY     | Inner Delivery Sensor                 | PS35      |
| 00     | 0213     | STNRY     | Outer Delivery Sensor                 | PS36      |
| 00     | 0214     | STNRY     | Reverse Vertical Path Sensor          | PS65      |
| 00     | 0215     | STNRY     | Duplex Left Sensor                    | PS66      |
| 00     | 0305     | TIMING NG | Registration Sensor                   | PS29      |
| 00     | 0A02     | POWER ON  | Right Deck Pull Out Sensor            | PS32      |
| 00     | 0A03     | POWER ON  | Vertical Path Sensor 1                | PS24      |
| 00     | 0A04     | POWER ON  | Writing Judging Sensor                | PS28      |
| 00     | 0A05     | POWER ON  | Registration Sensor                   | PS29      |
| 00     | 0A07     | POWER ON  | Left Deck Pull Out Sensor             | PS33      |
| 00     | 0A08     | POWER ON  | Duplex Merging Sensor                 | PS67      |
| 00     | 0A09     | POWER ON  | Duplex Outlet Sensor                  | PS64      |
| 00     | 0A0B     | POWER ON  | Vertical Path Sensor 3                | PS26      |
| 00     | 0A0C     | POWER ON  | Vertical Path Sensor 2                | PS25      |
| 00     | 0A0E     | POWER ON  | Vertical Path Sensor 4                | PS27      |
| 00     | 0A0F     | POWER ON  | Fixing Entrance Sensor                | PS51      |
| 00     | 0A10     | POWER ON  | Fixing Toenail                        | PS4       |
| 00     | 0A11     | POWER ON  | Fixing Outlet Sensor                  | PS52      |
| 00     | 0A12     | POWER ON  | Inner Delivery Sensor                 | PS35      |
| 00     | 0A13     | POWER ON  | Outer Delivery Sensor                 | PS36      |
| 00     | 0A14     | POWER ON  | Reverse Vertical Path Sensor          | PS65      |
| 00     | 0A15     | POWER ON  | Duplex Left Sensor                    | PS66      |
| 00     | 0B00     | DOOR OP   | Door Open                             | -         |
| 00     | 0B01     | DOOR OP   | Front cover open/close sensor         | DOOR OP   |
| 00     | 0B02     | DOOR OP   | Manua cover open/close sensor         | DOOR OP   |
| 00     | 0B03     | DOOR OP   | Vertical Path Cover Open/Close Sensor | DOOR OP   |
| 00     | 0C10     | OTHER     | Fixing Toenail jam                    | OTHER     |
| 00     | 0CA1     | OTHER     | FeedSts time out jam                  | OTHER     |



| ACC ID | Jam Code | Type   | Sensor Name/Description                 | Sensor ID |
|--------|----------|--------|---|-----------|
| 00     | 0CA2     | OTHER  | RefeedStart time out jam                | OTHER     |
| 00     | 0CA3     | OTHER  | ImageSet time out jam                   | OTHER     |
| 00     | 0CA4     | OTHER  | PageComplete time out jam               | OTHER     |
| 00     | 0CA5     | OTHER  | Fixing temperature control time out jam | OTHER     |
| 00     | 0CAF     | OTHER  | FeedSts time out jam                    | OTHER     |
| 00     | 0CF1     | OTHER  | Retry jam                               | OTHER     |
| 00     | 0D91     | OTHER  | Different Size jam(short paper length)  | OTHER     |
| 00     | AA01     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA02     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA03     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA04     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA05     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA06     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA07     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA08     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA20     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA21     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA22     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA23     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA30     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA31     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA40     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA41     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA70     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA71     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA72     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA73     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA74     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA75     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA76     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |
| 00     | AA99     | P-STOP | Jam upon executing paper feed stop mode | -         |

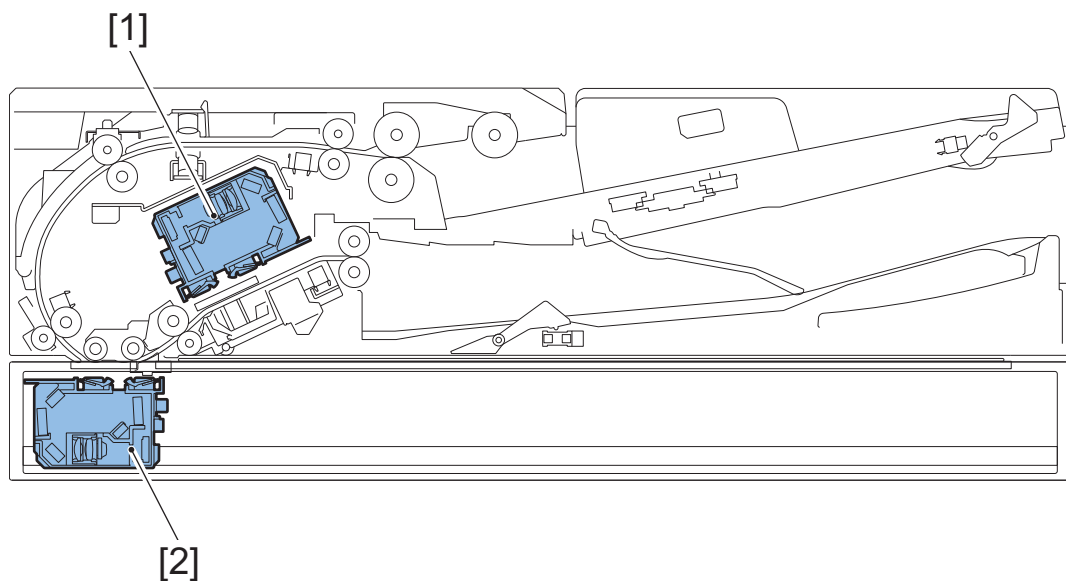




| ACC ID | Jam Code | TYPE   | Sensor Name/Description  | Sensor ID               |
|--------|----------|--------|--|-------------------------|
| 01     | 0003     | DELAY  | Post-separation Sensor   | PS402                   |
| 01     | 0004     | STNRY  | Post-separation Sensor   | PS402                   |
| 01     | 0005     | DELAY  | Post-pullout Sensor  | PS403                   |
| 01     | 0006     | STNRY  | Post-pullout Sensor  | PS403                   |
| 01     | 0007     | DELAY  | Lead Sensor  | PS404                   |
| 01     | 0008     | STNRY  | Lead Sensor  | PS404                   |
| 01     | 0009     | DELAY  | Delivery Sensor  | PS405                   |
| 01     | 0010     | STNRY  | Delivery Sensor  | PS405                   |
| 01     | 0015     | OTHER  | Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Front)<br>Skew Detection Sensor (Small, Front)<br>Skew Detection Sensor (Small, Rear)<br>Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Rear) | PS417,PS418,PS419,PS420 |
| 01     | 0020     | DOUBLE | Double Feed Sensor PCB (transmission/reception)  | UN402,UN403             |
| 01     | 0021     | OTHER  | Double Feed Sensor PCB (transmission/reception)  | UN402,UN403             |
| 01     | 0043     | DELAY  | Post-separation Sensor   | PS402                   |
| 01     | 0044     | STNRY  | Post-separation Sensor   | PS402                   |
| 01     | 0045     | DELAY  | Post-pullout Sensor  | PS403                   |
| 01     | 0046     | STNRY  | Post-pullout Sensor  | PS403                   |
| 01     | 0047     | DELAY  | Lead Sensor  | PS404                   |
| 01     | 0048     | STNRY  | Lead Sensor  | PS404                   |
| 01     | 0049     | DELAY  | Delivery Sensor  | PS405                   |
| 01     | 0050     | STNRY  | Delivery Sensor  | PS405                   |
| 01     | 0055     | OTHER  | Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Front)<br>Skew Detection Sensor (Small, Front)<br>Skew Detection Sensor (Small, Rear)<br>Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Rear) | PS417,PS418,PS419,PS420 |
| 01     | 0060     | DOUBLE | Double Feed Sensor PCB (transmission/reception)  | UN402,UN403             |
| 01     | 0061     | OTHER  | Double Feed Sensor PCB (transmission/reception)  | UN402,UN403             |

| ACC ID | Jam Code | TYPE     | Sensor Name/Description   | Sensor ID               |
|--------|----------|----------|---|-------------------------|
| 01     | 0062     | ERROR    | Double Feed Sensor PCB (transmission/reception)                                     | UN402,UN403             |
| 01     | 0063     | OTHER    | Double Feed Sensor PCB (transmission/reception)                                     | UN402,UN403             |
| 01     | 007F     | SEQUENCE | -   | -                       |
| 01     | 0090     | ADF OPEN | Copyboard Cover Open/Closed Sensor (Front/Rear)                                     | PS101,PS102             |
| 01     | 0091     | ADF OPEN | Copyboard Cover Open/Closed Sensor (Front/Rear)                                     | PS101,PS102             |
| 01     | 0092     | COVER OP | Cover Open/Closed Sensor  | PS407                   |
| 01     | 0093     | COVER OP | Cover Open/Closed Sensor  | PS407                   |
| 01     | 0094     | POWER ON | Post-separation Sensor<br>Post-pullout Sensor<br>Lead Sensor<br>Pre-delivery Sensor | PS402,PS403,PS404,PS405 |
| 01     | 0095     | OTHER    | Original Sensor   | PS415                   |
| 01     | 0096     | OTHER    | -   | -                       |
| 01     | 00A2     | POWER ON | Post-separation Sensor  | PS402                   |
| 01     | 00A3     | POWER ON | Post-pullout Sensor   | PS403                   |
| 01     | 00A4     | POWER ON | Lead Sensor   | PS404                   |
| 01     | 00A6     | POWER ON | Delivery Sensor   | PS405                   |
| 01     | 0071     | SEQUENCE | -   | -                       |

## UniFlow (Advanced Scanning)



| ACC ID | Jam Code | TYPE  | Sensor Name/Description                                   | Sensor ID |
|--------|----------|-------|---|-----------|
| 01     | 0025     | OTHER | Detected skew greater than the maximum correctable amount | [1],[2]   |
| 01     | 0026     | OTHER | Unable to detect skew due to unexpected originals         | [1],[2]   |

### ■ 010025: Jam Code (UniFlow) 0025

#### Detection Description

Jam Type: Other Jams

Detected skew greater than the maximum correctable skew amount when performing Advanced Scan.

## Remedy

1. Set the original again by following the displayed instruction.
  - When setting originals with mixed Free sizes, set each sheet of original to align with the center.

### CAUTION:

Be aware that an image loss or a paper jam may be caused if the center of the original is off by 10 mm or more from the center of the Tray.

- When setting originals with mixed standard size paper, set by aligning the edge of originals to the rear of feeder.

### NOTE:

Adjust by aligning the Side Guide Plate (Paper Guide) to the large paper.

2. Perform skew adjustment referring to chapter 6 "Adjustment".

## ■ 010026: Jam Code (UniFlow) 0026

### Detection Description

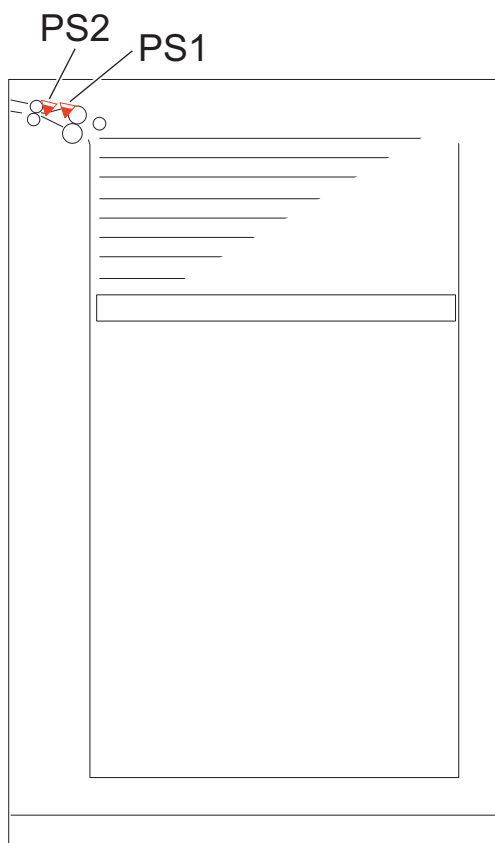
Jam Type: Other Jams

Detected skew greater than the maximum correctable skew amount when performing Advanced Scan.

### Remedy

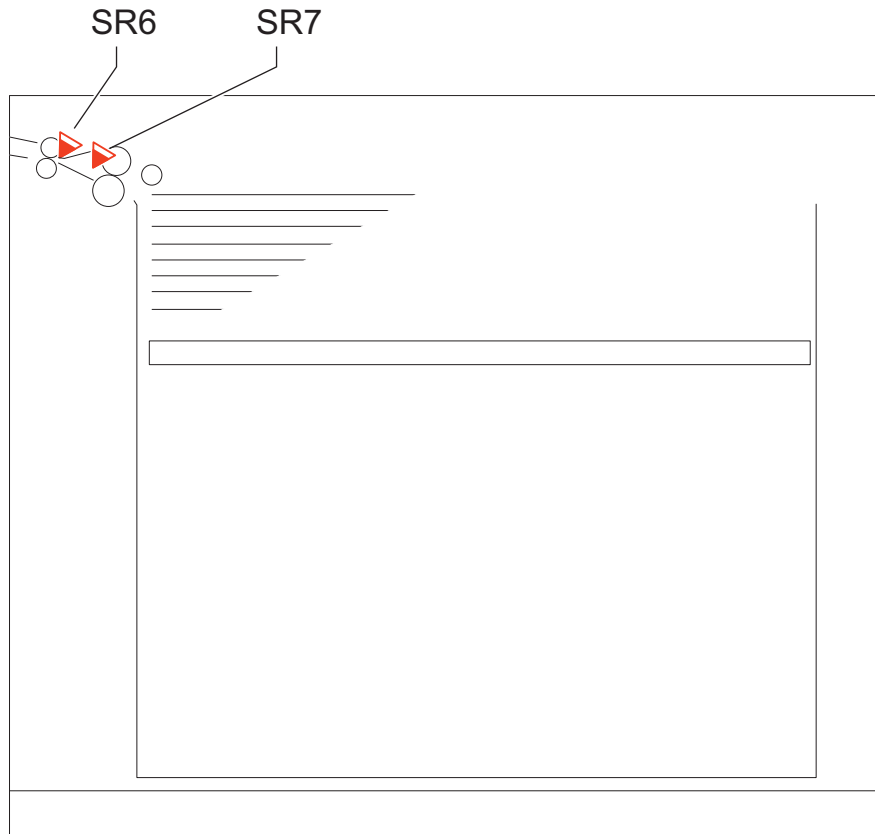
1. Check if the original size is out of specification.
2. If the original is bent, modify it.
3. Change the original stacking direction (with the less damaged end of the original as its leading edge).
4. Change the document reading method.
  - Settings/Registration > Function Settings > Common > Scan Settings > Original Thickness Defaults for Scan from Feeder

## ● Paper Deck Unit-E1



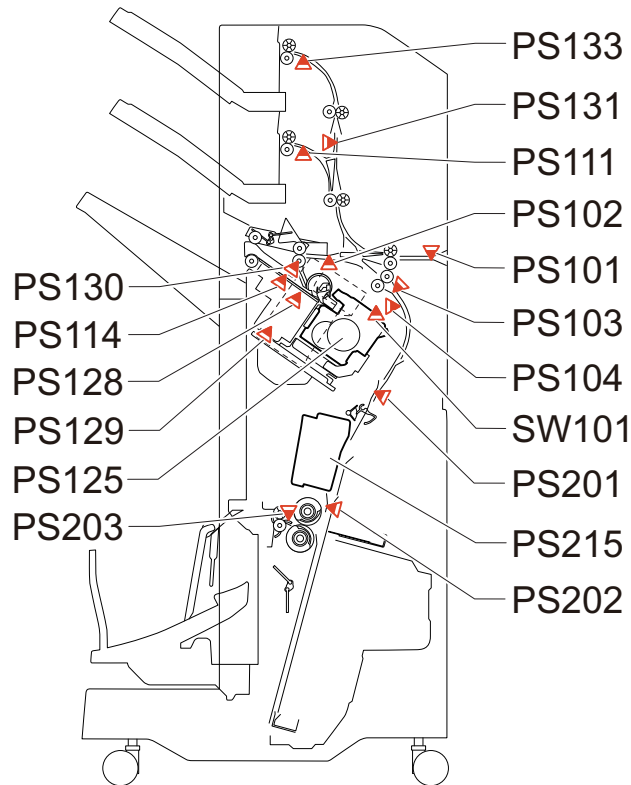
| ACC ID | Jam Code | Type     | Sensor Name/Description | Sensor ID |
|--------|----------|----------|-------------------------|-----------|
| 00     | 0117     | DELAY    | Deck pickup sensor      | PS1       |
| 00     | 0118     | DELAY    | Deck pull-out sensor    | PS2       |
| 00     | 0218     | STNRY    | Deck pull-out sensor    | PS2       |
| 00     | 0A18     | POWER ON | Deck pull-out sensor    | PS2       |

## POD Deck Lite-C1



| ACC ID | Jam Code | Type     | Sensor Name/Description | Sensor ID |
|--------|----------|----------|-------------------------|-----------|
| 00     | 0117     | DELAY    | Deck pickup sensor      | SR7       |
| 00     | 0118     | DELAY    | Deck pull-out sensor    | SR6       |
| 00     | 0218     | STNRY    | Deck pull-out sensor    | SR6       |
| 00     | 0A18     | POWER ON | Deck pull-out sensor    | SR6       |

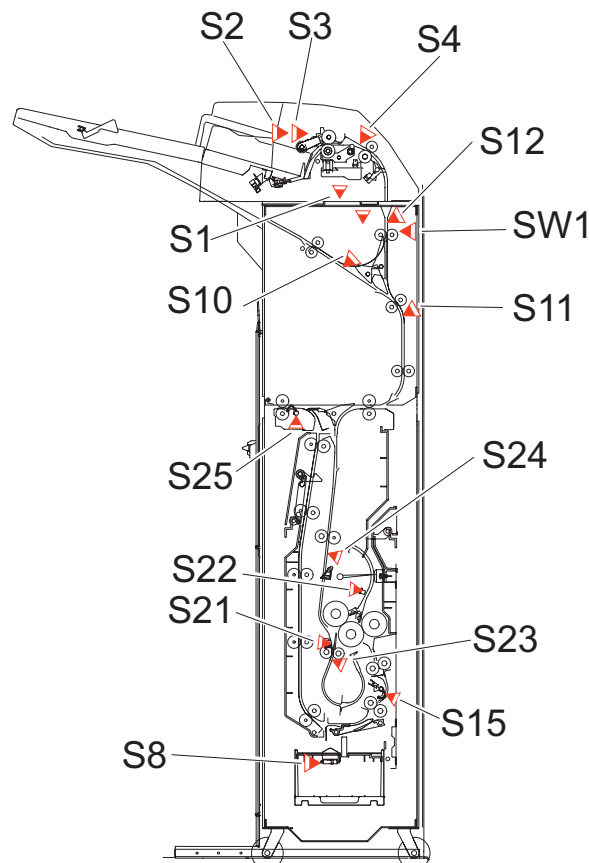
## Staple Finisher-AC1, Booklet Finisher-AC1



| ACC ID | Jam Code | Type     | Sensor Name/Description               | Sensor ID   |
|--------|----------|----------|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| 02     | 1001     | DELAY    | Inlet Sensor                          | PS101       |
| 02     | 1002     | DELAY    | Delivery Sensor                       | PS102       |
| 02     | 1003     | DELAY    | Buffer Sensor                         | PS103       |
| 02     | 1004     | DELAY    | Lower Escape Delivery Sensor          | PS111       |
| 02     | 1005     | DELAY    | Upper Escape Delivery Sensor          | PS133       |
| 02     | 1006     | DELAY    | Escape Feed Sensor                    | PS131       |
| 02     | 1008     | DELAY    | Saddle Delivery Sensor                | PS203       |
| 02     | 1009     | DELAY    | Saddle Inlet Sensor                   | PS201       |
| 02     | 1101     | STNRY    | Inlet Sensor                          | PS101       |
| 02     | 1102     | STNRY    | Delivery Sensor                       | PS102       |
| 02     | 1103     | STNRY    | Buffer Sensor                         | PS103       |
| 02     | 1104     | STNRY    | Lower Escape Delivery Sensor          | PS111       |
| 02     | 1105     | STNRY    | Upper Escape Delivery Sensor          | PS133       |
| 02     | 1106     | STNRY    | Escape Feed Sensor                    | PS131       |
| 02     | 1108     | STNRY    | Saddle Delivery Sensor                | PS203       |
| 02     | 1109     | STNRY    | Saddle Inlet Sensor                   | PS201       |
| 02     | 1200     | TIMING   | -                                     | -           |
| 02     | 1301     | POWER ON | Inlet Sensor                          | PS101       |
| 02     | 1302     | POWER ON | Delivery Sensor                       | PS102       |
| 02     | 1303     | POWER ON | Buffer Sensor                         | PS103       |
| 02     | 1304     | POWER ON | Lower Escape Delivery Sensor          | PS111       |
| 02     | 1305     | POWER ON | Upper Escape Delivery Sensor          | PS133       |
| 02     | 1306     | POWER ON | Escape Feed Sensor                    | PS131       |
| 02     | 1307     | POWER ON | Saddle Processing Tray Paper Sensor   | PS202       |
| 02     | 1308     | POWER ON | Saddle Delivery Sensor                | PS203       |
| 02     | 1309     | POWER ON | Saddle Inlet Sensor                   | PS201       |
| 02     | 1400     | COVER OP | Front Cover Sensor/Front Cover Switch | PS104,SW101 |
| 02     | 1500     | STAPLE   | Staple HP Sensor                      | PS125       |
| 02     | 1501     | SDL STP  | Saddle Stitcher HP Sensor             | PS215       |

| ACC ID | Jam Code | Type     | Sensor Name/Description                | Sensor ID |
|--------|----------|----------|--|-----------|
| 02     | 1801     | ERROR    | Staple-free Binding Motor Clock Sensor | PS130     |
| 02     | 1802     | ERROR    | Staple-free Binding HP Sensor          | PS129     |
| 02     | 1803     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1804     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1805     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1C14     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1C30     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1C32     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1C33     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1C35     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1C37     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1C40     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1C53     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1C77     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1C78     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1C7B     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1C83     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1CF0     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1CF1     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1CF3     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1CF6     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1CF8     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1CFA     | ERROR    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1F01     | OTHER    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1F32     | OTHER    | -                                      | -         |
| 02     | 1F90     | SEQUENCE | -                                      | -         |

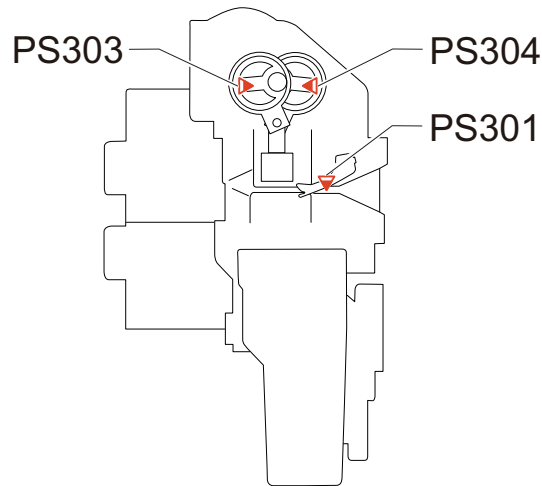
## Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1





| ACC ID | Jam Code | Type     | Sensor Name/Description  | Sensor ID   |
|--------|----------|----------|--|-------------|
| 02     | 1010     | DELAY    | Paper Registration Sensor  | S4          |
| 02     | 1011     | DELAY    | Paper Registration Sensor<br>Reverse Entrance Sensor   | S4,S12      |
| 02     | 1012     | DELAY    | Reverse Sensor<br>Reverse Entrance Sensor  | S10,S12     |
| 02     | 1013     | DELAY    | Reverse Sensor<br>Reverse Timing Sensor<br>Reverse Entrance Sensor                                     | S10,S11,S12 |
| 02     | 1014     | DELAY    | Slowdown Timing Sensor   | S24         |
| 02     | 1015     | DELAY    | Release Timing Sensor<br>Slowdown Timing Sensor  | S21,S24     |
| 02     | 1016     | DELAY    | Fold Position Sensor   | S23         |
| 02     | 1017     | DELAY    | Upper Stopper Path Sensor  | S22         |
| 02     | 1018     | DELAY    | Delivery Sensor 1<br>Upper Stopper Path Sensor   | S15,S22     |
| 02     | 1019     | DELAY    | Delivery Sensor 1<br>Delivery Sensor 2   | S15,S25     |
| 02     | 101A     | DELAY    | Delivery Sensor 1<br>C Fold Tray Empty Sensor  | S15,S18     |
| 02     | 1110     | STNRY    | Paper Registration Sensor  | S4          |
| 02     | 1111     | STNRY    | Paper Registration Sensor<br>Reverse Entrance Sensor   | S4,S12      |
| 02     | 1112     | STNRY    | Reverse Sensor<br>Reverse Entrance Sensor  | S10,S12     |
| 02     | 1113     | STNRY    | Reverse Sensor<br>Reverse Timing Sensor<br>Reverse Entrance Sensor                                     | S10,S11,S12 |
| 02     | 1114     | STNRY    | Slowdown Timing Sensor   | S24         |
| 02     | 1115     | STNRY    | Release Timing Sensor<br>Fold Position Sensor  | S21,S23     |
| 02     | 1116     | STNRY    | Fold Position Sensor   | S23         |
| 02     | 1117     | STNRY    | Upper Stopper Path Sensor  | S22         |
| 02     | 1118     | STNRY    | Delivery Sensor 1<br>Upper Stopper Path Sensor   | S15,S22     |
| 02     | 1119     | STNRY    | Delivery Sensor 1<br>Delivery Sensor 2   | S15,S25     |
| 02     | 111A     | STNRY    | Delivery Sensor 1<br>C Fold Tray Empty Sensor  | S15,S18     |
| 02     | 1310     | POWER ON | -  | -           |
| 02     | 1404     | POWER ON | Front Upper Cover Open / Close Sensor<br>Inserter Open / Close Sensor<br>Top Cover Open / Close Sensor | SW1,S1,S2   |
| 02     | 1FD1     | OTHER    | Tray Paper Sensor 1<br>Tray Paper Sensor 2   | S7,S8       |

## PUNCHER UNIT-A1



| ACC ID | Jam Code | Type  | Sensor Name/Description             | Sensor ID   |
|--------|----------|-------|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| 02     | 1600     | PUNCH | Punch HP Sensor 1/Punch HP Sensor 2 | PS303,PS304 |
| 02     | 1C90     | ERROR | -                                   | -           |
| 02     | 1C93     | ERROR | -                                   | -           |

## Jam Code Details

### ■ 000101: JamCode (Main Unit) 0101

#### [Symptom/Question]

000101: JamCode (Main Unit) 0101

#### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Right Deck Pickup Sensor 1

Sensor No. : PS19

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

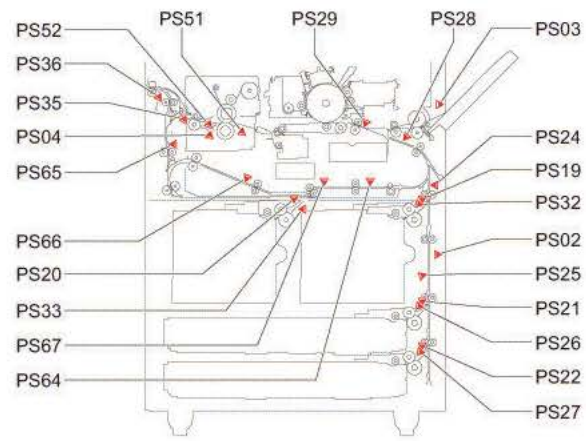
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000102: JamCode (Main Unit) 0102

### [Symptom/Question]

000102: JamCode (Main Unit) 0102

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Right Deck Pull Out Sensor

Sensor No. : PS32

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

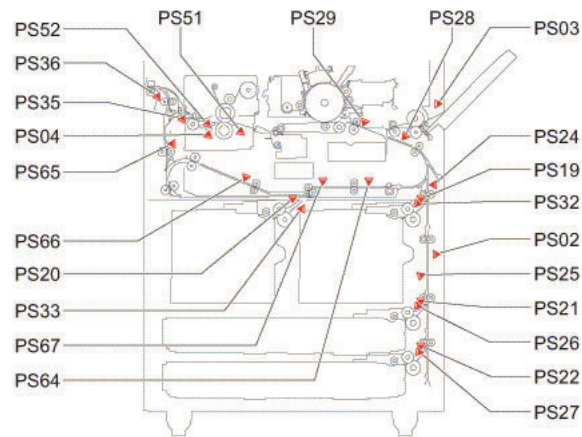
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000103: JamCode (Main Unit) 0103

### [Symptom/Question]

000103: JamCode (Main Unit) 0103

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Vertical Path Sensor 1

Sensor No. : PS24

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

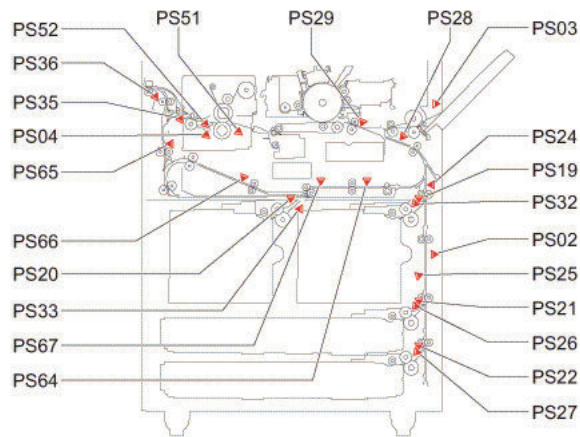
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000104: JamCode (Main Unit) 0104

### [Symptom/Question]

000104: JamCode (Main Unit) 0104

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Writing Judging Sensor

Sensor No. : PS28

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

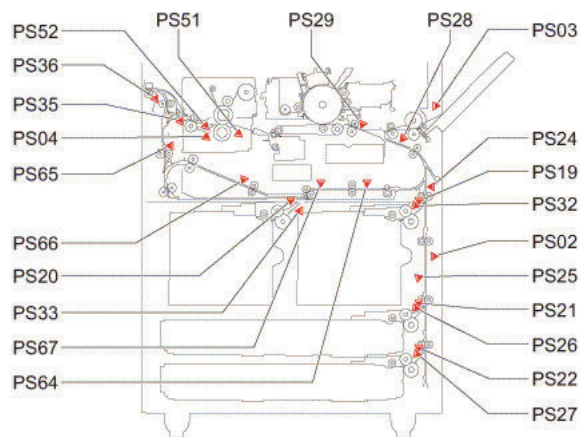
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000105: JamCode (Main Unit) 0105

### [Symptom/Question]

000105: JamCode (Main Unit) 0105

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Registration Sensor

Sensor No. : PS29

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

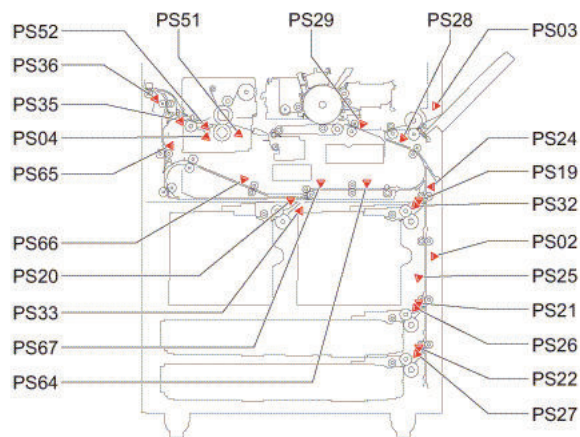
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor





## ■ 000106: JamCode (Main Unit) 0106

### [Symptom/Question]

000106: JamCode (Main Unit) 0106

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Left Deck Pickup Sensor 1

Sensor No. : PS20

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

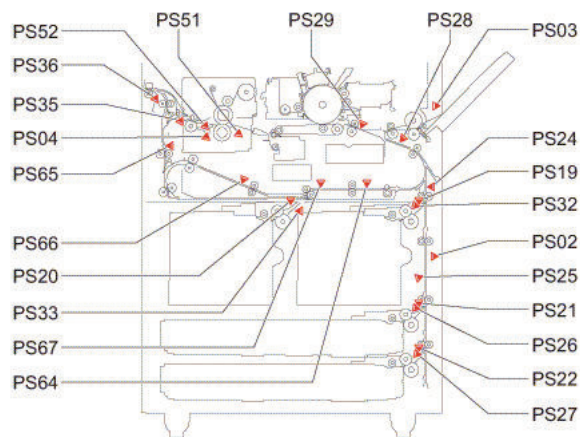
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000107: JamCode (Main Unit) 0107

### [Symptom/Question]

000107: JamCode (Main Unit) 0107

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Left Deck Pull Out Sensor

Sensor No. : PS33

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

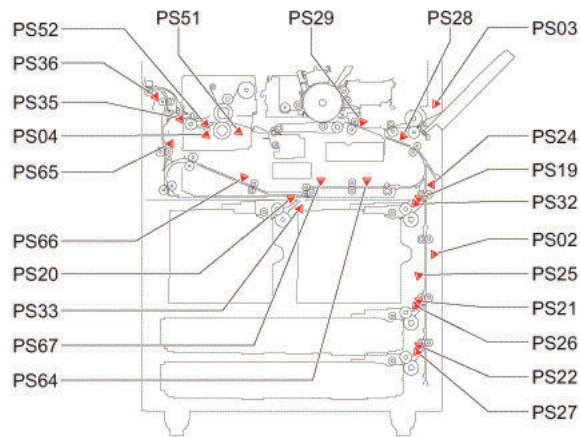
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000108: JamCode (Main Unit) 0108

### [Symptom/Question]

000108: JamCode (Main Unit) 0108

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Duplex Merging Sensor

Sensor No. : PS67

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

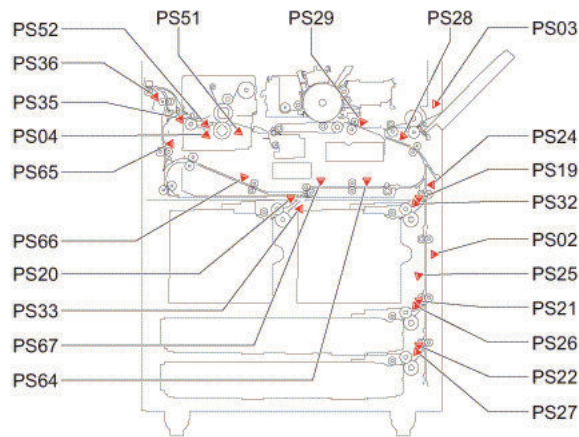
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000109: JamCode (Main Unit) 0109

### [Symptom/Question]

000109: JamCode (Main Unit) 0109

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Duplex Outlet Sensor

Sensor No. : PS64

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

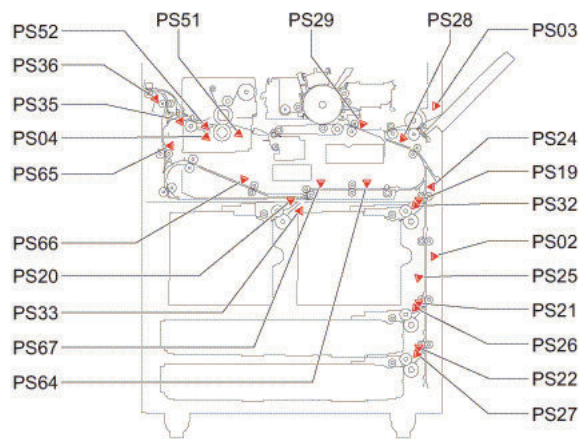
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 00010A: JamCode (Main Unit) 010A

### [Symptom/Question]

00010A: JamCode (Main Unit) 010A

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Cassette 3 Pickup Sensor 1

Sensor No. : PS21

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

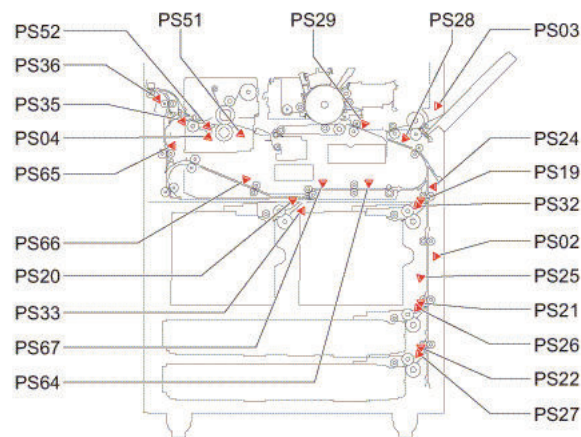
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 00010B: JamCode (Main Unit) 010B

### [Symptom/Question]

00010B: JamCode (Main Unit) 010B

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Vertical Path Sensor 3

Sensor No. : PS26

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

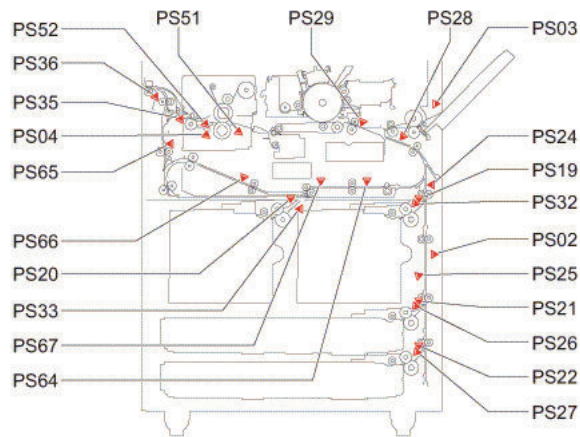
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 00010C: JamCode (Main Unit) 010C

### [Symptom/Question]

00010C: JamCode (Main Unit) 010C

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Vertical Path Sensor 2

Sensor No. : PS25

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

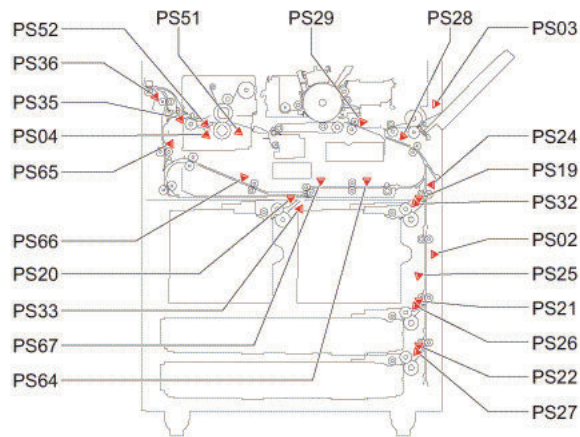
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor





## ■ 00010D: JamCode (Main Unit) 010D

### [Symptom/Question]

00010D: JamCode (Main Unit) 010D

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Cassette 4 Pickup Sensor 1

Sensor No. : PS22

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

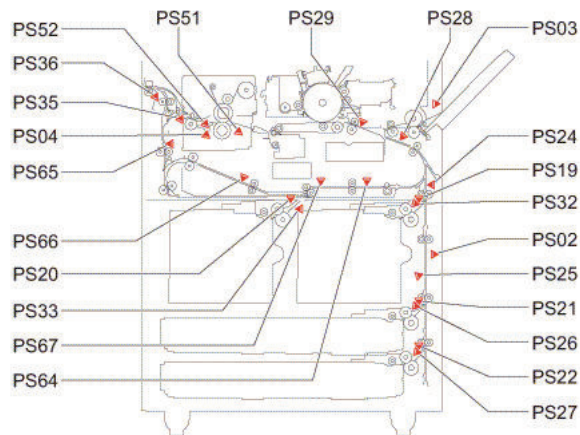
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 00010E: JamCode (Main Unit) 010E

### [Symptom/Question]

00010E: JamCode (Main Unit) 010E

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Vertical Path Sensor 4

Sensor No. : PS27

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

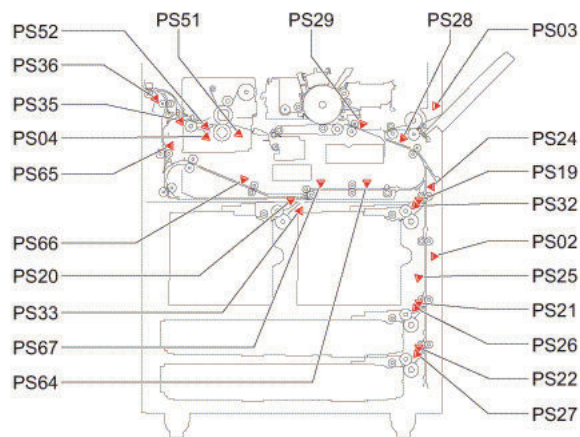
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000111: JamCode (Main Unit) 0111

### [Symptom/Question]

000111: JamCode (Main Unit) 0111

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Fixing Outlet Sensor

Sensor No. : PS52

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

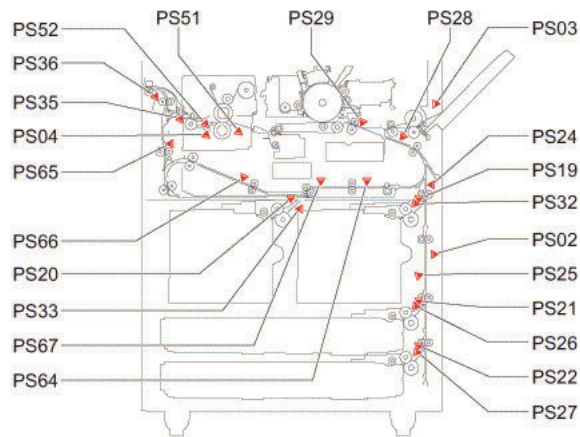
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000112: JamCode (Main Unit) 0112

### [Symptom/Question]

000112: JamCode (Main Unit) 0112

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Inner Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS35

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

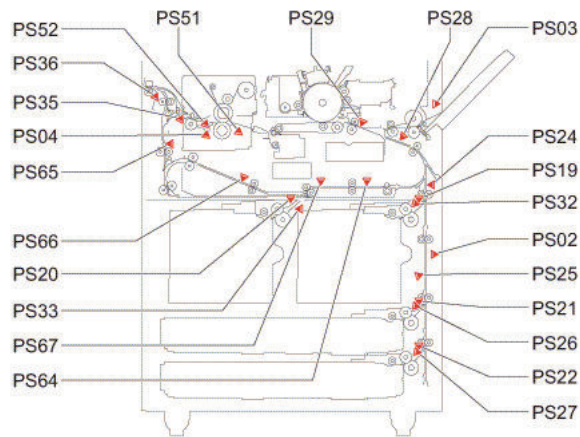
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000113: JamCode (Main Unit) 0113

### [Symptom/Question]

000113: JamCode (Main Unit) 0113

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Outer Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS36

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

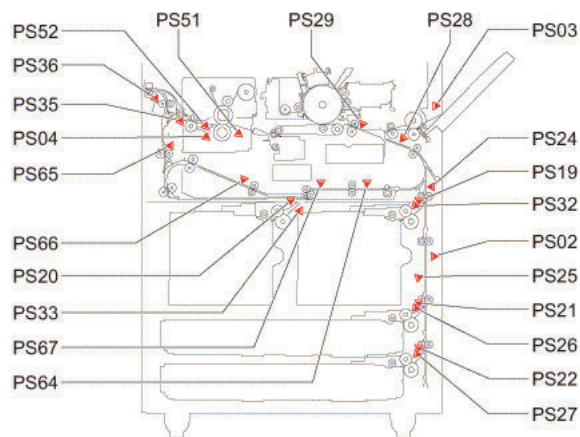
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000114: JamCode (Main Unit) 0114

### [Symptom/Question]

000114: JamCode (Main Unit) 0114

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Reverse Vertical Path Sensor

Sensor No. : PS65

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

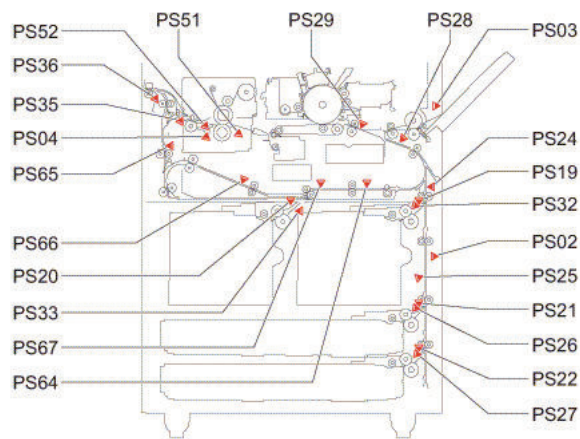
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000115: JamCode (Main Unit) 0115

### [Symptom/Question]

000115: JamCode (Main Unit) 0115

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Duplex Left Sensor

Sensor No. : PS66

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

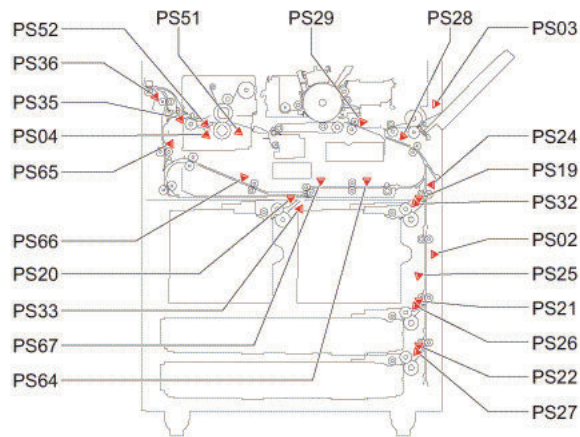
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor





## ■ 000117: JamCode (POD Deck Lite-C1) 0117

### [Symptom/Question]

000117: JamCode (POD Deck Lite-C1) 0117

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Deck pickup sensor

Sensor No. : SR7

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000117: JamCode (Paper Deck Unit-E1) 0117

### [Symptom/Question]

000117: JamCode (Paper Deck Unit-E1) 0117

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Deck pickup sensor

Sensor No. : PS1

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000118: JamCode (POD Deck Lite-C1) 0118

### [Symptom/Question]

000118: JamCode (POD Deck Lite-C1) 0118

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Deck pull-out sensor

Sensor No. : SR6

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000118: JamCode (Paper Deck Unit-E1) 0118

### [Symptom/Question]

000118: JamCode (Paper Deck Unit-E1) 0118

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Deck pull-out sensor

Sensor No. : PS2

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000202: JamCode (Main Unit) 0202

### [Symptom/Question]

000202: JamCode (Main Unit) 0202

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Right Deck Pull Out Sensor

Sensor No. : PS32

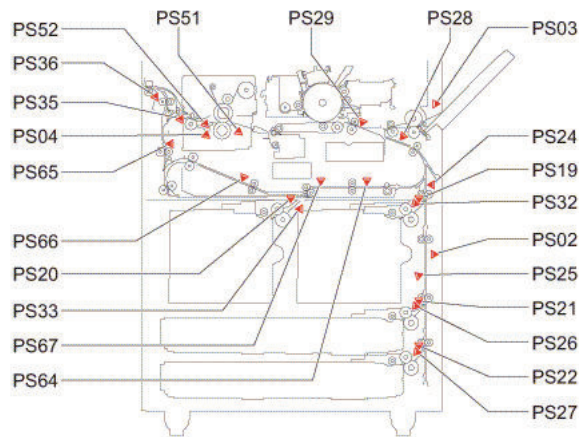
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000203: JamCode (Main Unit) 0203

### [Symptom/Question]

000203: JamCode (Main Unit) 0203

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Vertical Path Sensor 1

Sensor No. : PS24

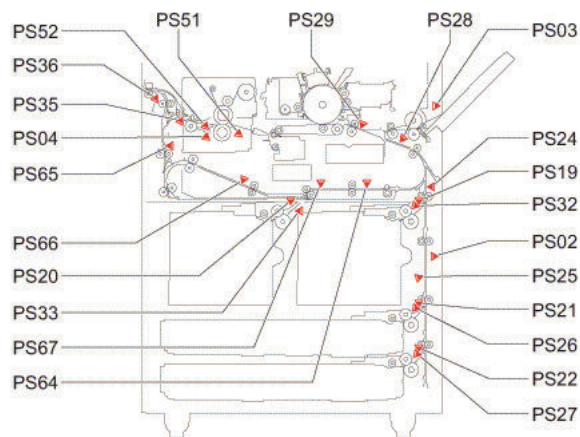
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000204: JamCode (Main Unit) 0204

### [Symptom/Question]

000204: JamCode (Main Unit) 0204

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Writing Judging Sensor

Sensor No. : PS28

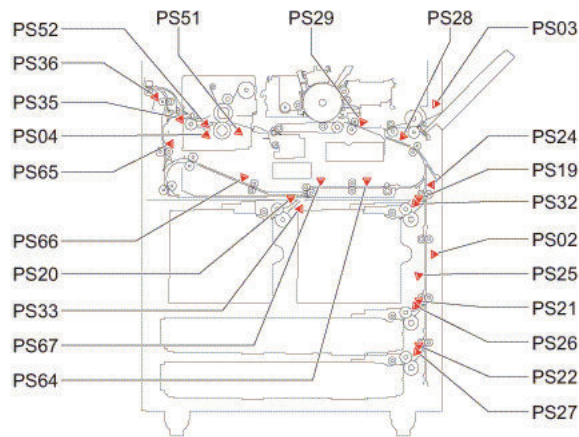
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor





## ■ 000205: JamCode (Main Unit) 0205

### [Symptom/Question]

000205: JamCode (Main Unit) 0205

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Registration Sensor

Sensor No. : PS29

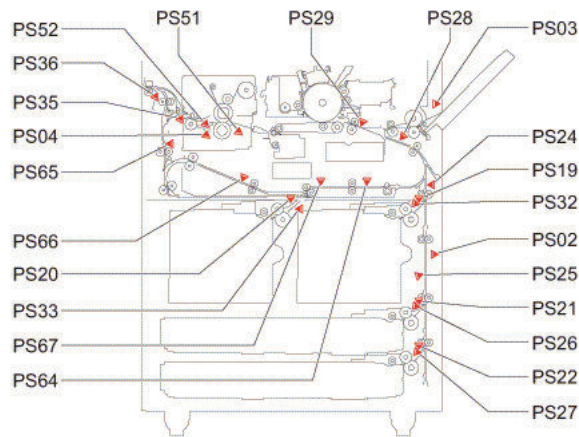
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000207: JamCode (Main Unit) 0207

### [Symptom/Question]

000207: JamCode (Main Unit) 0207

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Left Deck Pull Out Sensor

Sensor No. : PS33

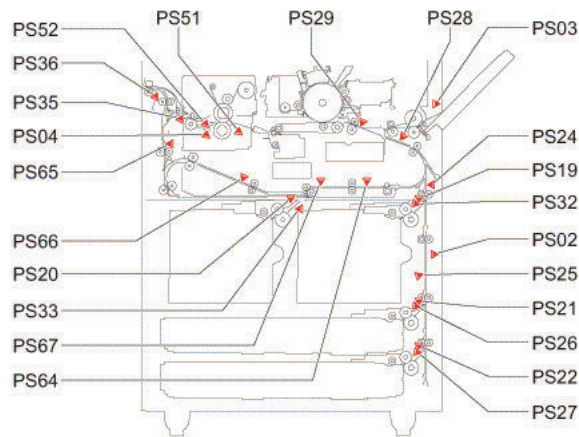
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000208: JamCode (Main Unit) 0208

### [Symptom/Question]

000208: JamCode (Main Unit) 0208

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Duplex Merging Sensor

Sensor No. : PS67

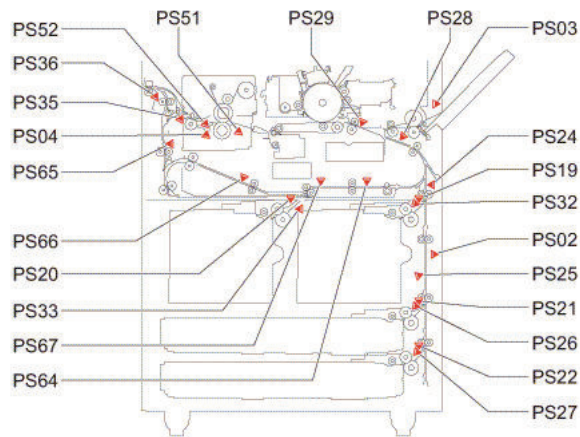
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000209: JamCode (Main Unit) 0209

### [Symptom/Question]

000209: JamCode (Main Unit) 0209

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Duplex Outlet Sensor

Sensor No. : PS64

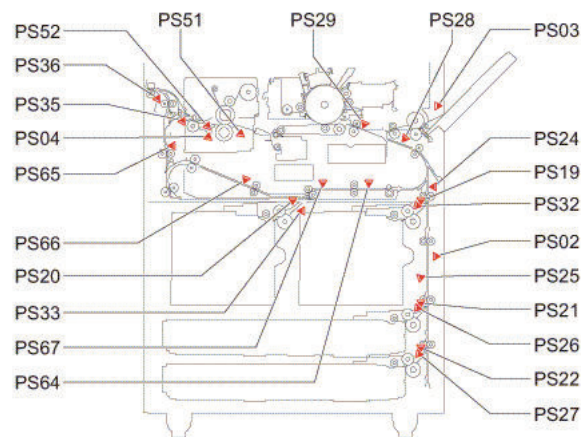
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 00020B: JamCode (Main Unit) 020B

### [Symptom/Question]

00020B: JamCode (Main Unit) 020B

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Vertical Path Sensor 3

Sensor No. : PS26

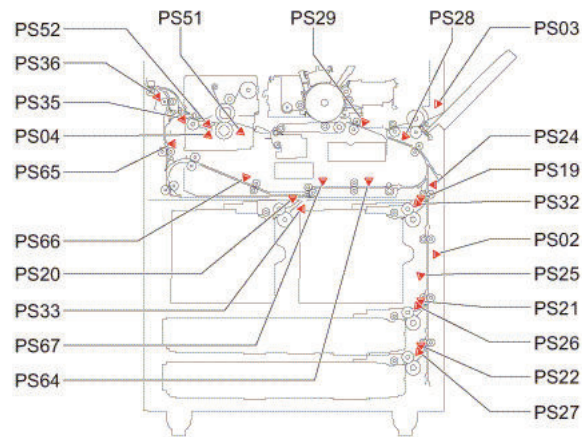
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 00020C: JamCode (Main Unit) 020C

### [Symptom/Question]

00020C: JamCode (Main Unit) 020C

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Vertical Path Sensor 2

Sensor No. : PS25

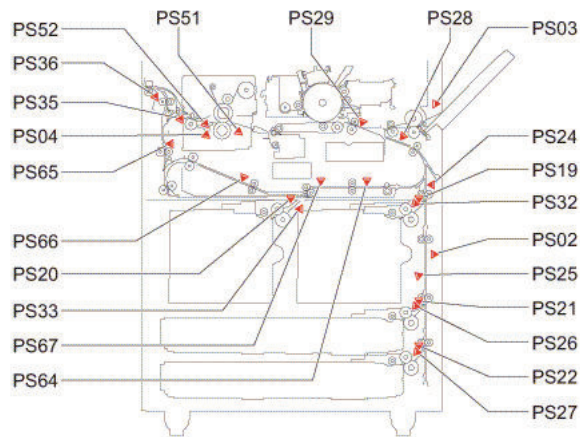
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 00020E: JamCode (Main Unit) 020E

### [Symptom/Question]

00020E: JamCode (Main Unit) 020E

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Vertical Path Sensor 4

Sensor No. : PS27

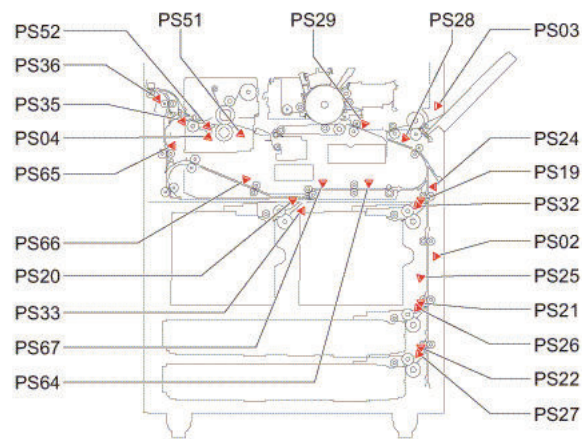
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor





## ■ 000212: JamCode (Main Unit) 0212

### [Symptom/Question]

000212: JamCode (Main Unit) 0212

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Inner Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS35

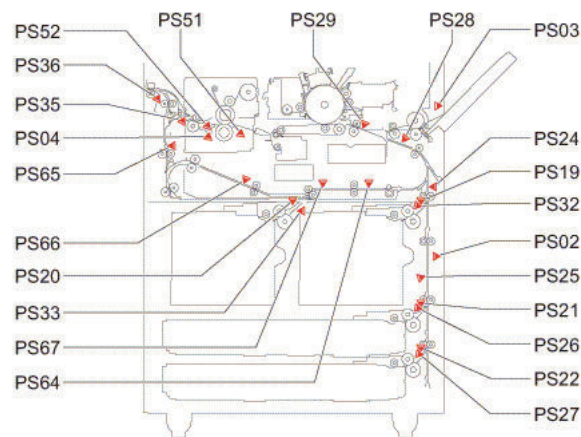
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000213: JamCode (Main Unit) 0213

### [Symptom/Question]

000213: JamCode (Main Unit) 0213

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Outer Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS36

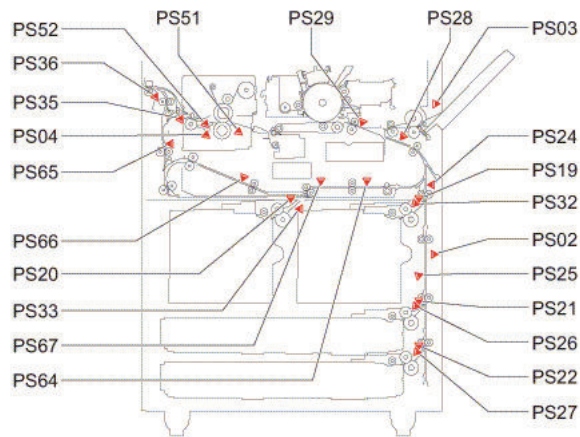
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000214: JamCode (Main Unit) 0214

### [Symptom/Question]

000214: JamCode (Main Unit) 0214

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Reverse Vertical Path Sensor

Sensor No. : PS65

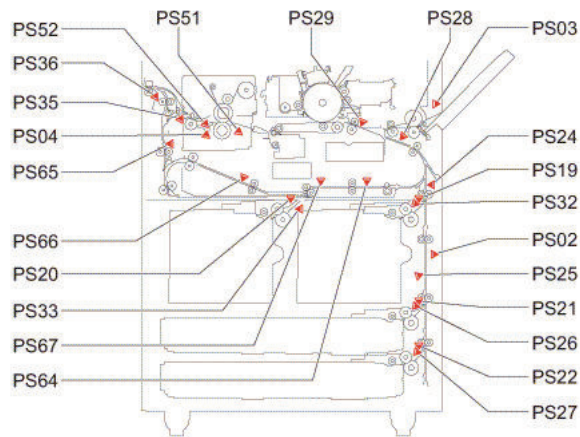
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000215: JamCode (Main Unit) 0215

### [Symptom/Question]

000215: JamCode (Main Unit) 0215

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Duplex Left Sensor

Sensor No. : PS66

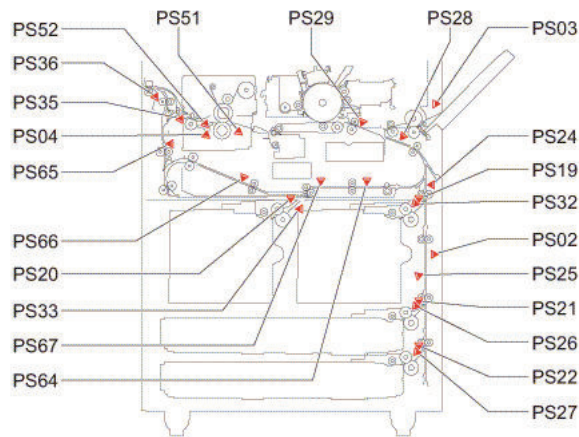
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000218: JamCode (POD Deck Lite-C1) 0218

### [Symptom/Question]

000218: JamCode (POD Deck Lite-C1) 0218

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Deck pull-out sensor

Sensor No. : SR6

Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000218: JamCode (Paper Deck Unit-E1) 0218

### [Symptom/Question]

000218: JamCode (Paper Deck Unit-E1) 0218

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Deck pull-out sensor

Sensor No. : PS2

Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 000305: JamCode (Main Unit) 0305

### [Symptom/Question]

000305: JamCode (Main Unit) 0305

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : Registration Sensor

Sensor No. : PS29

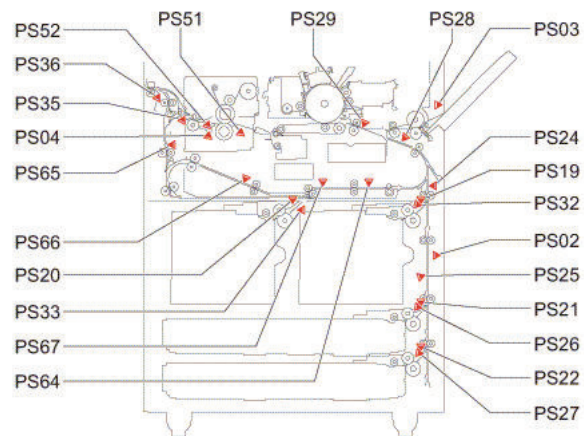
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-





## ■ 000A02: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A02

### [Symptom/Question]

000A02: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A02

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Right Deck Pull Out Sensor

Sensor No. : PS32

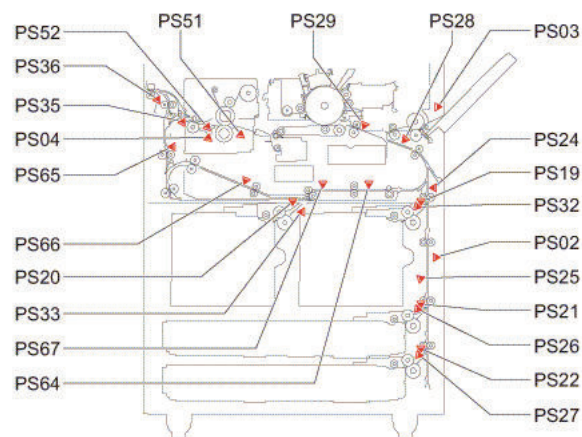
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 000A03: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A03

### [Symptom/Question]

000A03: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A03

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Vertical Path Sensor 1

Sensor No. : PS24

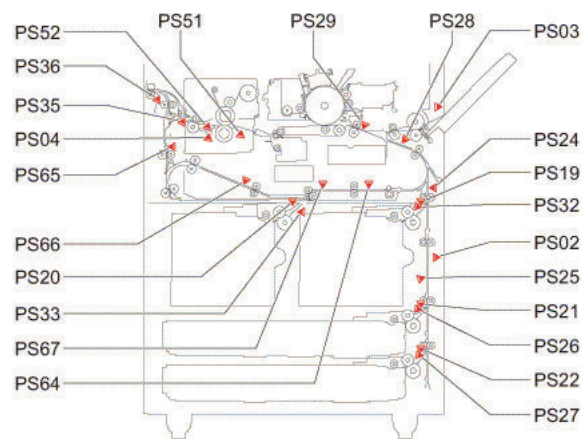
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 000A04: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A04

### [Symptom/Question]

000A04: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A04

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Writing Judging Sensor

Sensor No. : PS28

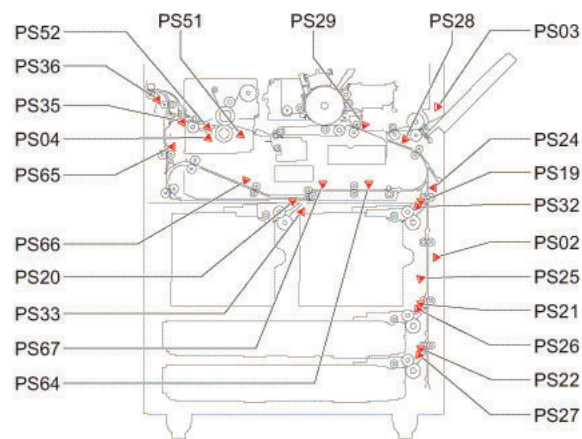
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 000A05: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A05

### [Symptom/Question]

000A05: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A05

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Registration Sensor

Sensor No. : PS29

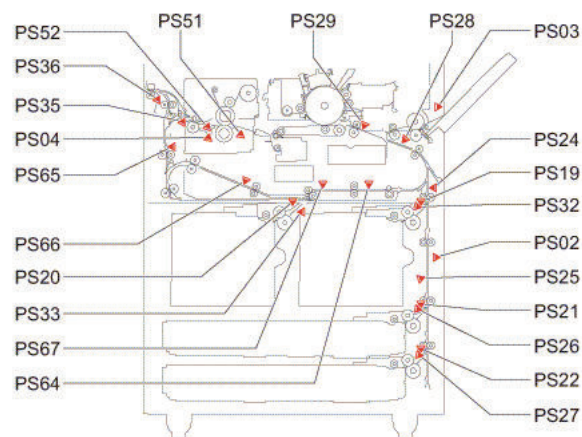
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 000A07: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A07

### [Symptom/Question]

000A07: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A07

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Left Deck Pull Out Sensor

Sensor No. : PS33

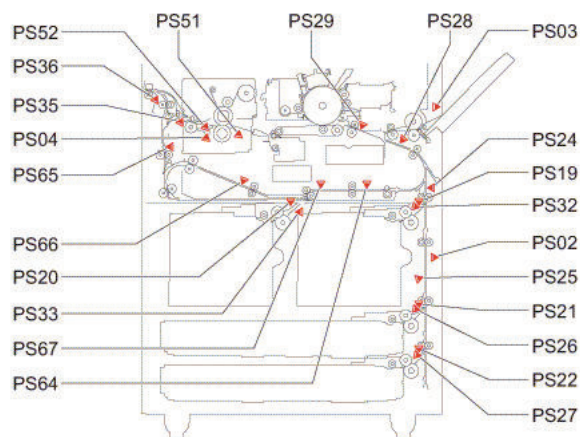
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 000A08: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A08

### [Symptom/Question]

000A08: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A08

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Duplex Merging Sensor

Sensor No. : PS67

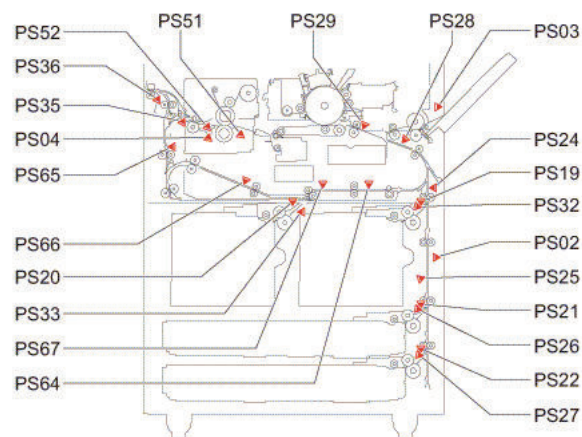
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 000A09: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A09

### [Symptom/Question]

000A09: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A09

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Duplex Outlet Sensor

Sensor No. : PS64

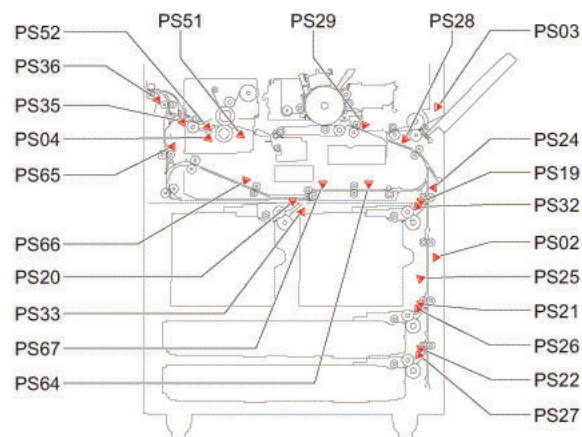
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)





## ■ 000A0B: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A0B

### [Symptom/Question]

000A0B: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A0B

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Vertical Path Sensor 3

Sensor No. : PS26

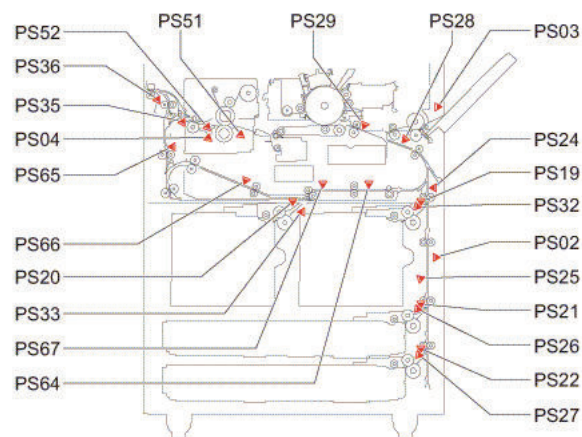
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 000A0C: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A0C

### [Symptom/Question]

000A0C: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A0C

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Vertical Path Sensor 2

Sensor No. : PS25

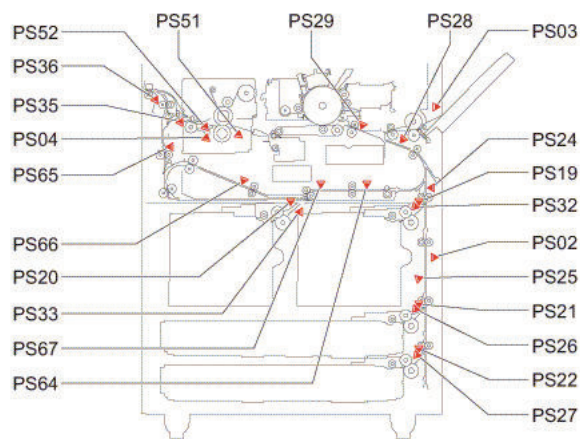
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 000A0E: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A0E

### [Symptom/Question]

000A0E: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A0E

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Vertical Path Sensor 4

Sensor No. : PS27

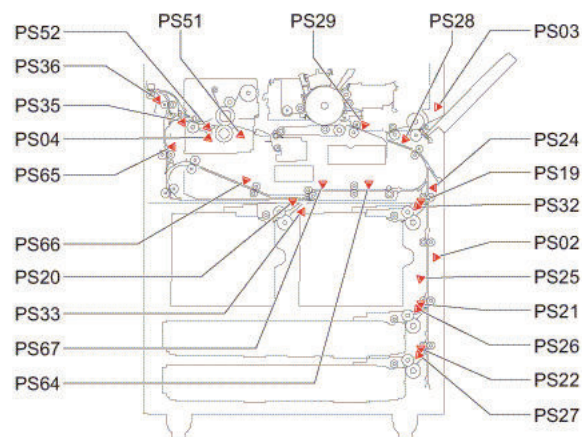
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 000A0F: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A0F

### [Symptom/Question]

000A0F: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A0F

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Fixing Entrance Sensor

Sensor No. : PS51

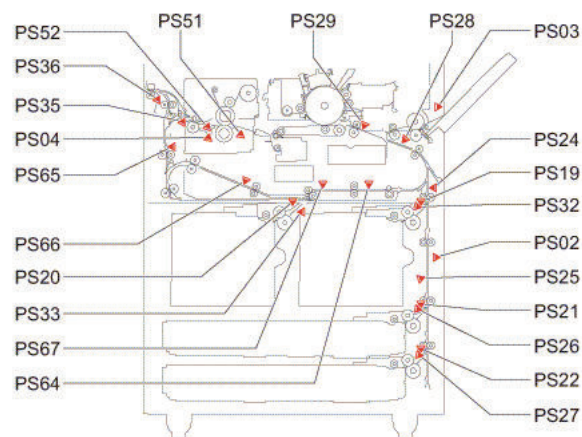
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 000A10: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A10

### [Symptom/Question]

000A10: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A10

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Fixing Toenail

Sensor No. : PS4

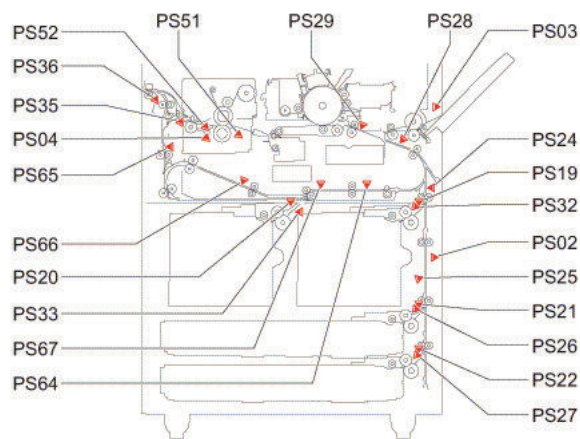
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 000A11: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A11

### [Symptom/Question]

000A11: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A11

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Fixing Outlet Sensor

Sensor No. : PS52

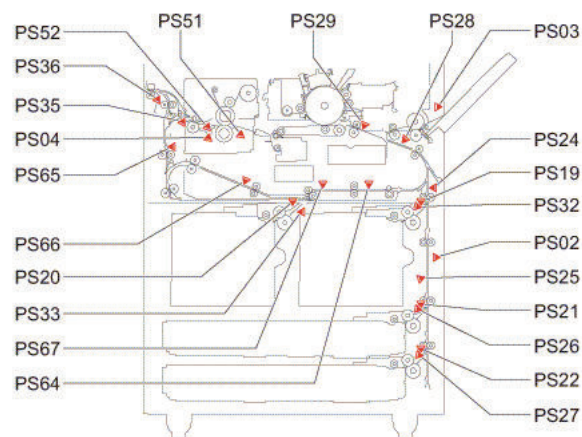
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 000A12: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A12

### [Symptom/Question]

000A12: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A12

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Inner Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS35

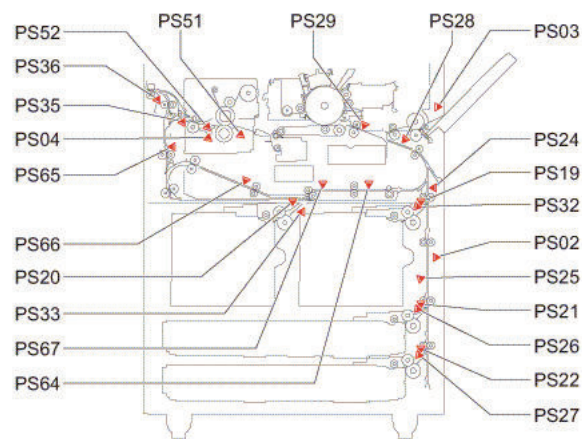
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)





## ■ 000A13: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A13

### [Symptom/Question]

000A13: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A13

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Outer Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS36

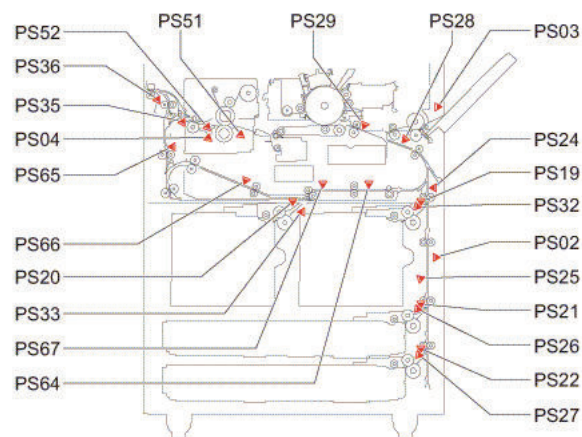
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 000A14: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A14

### [Symptom/Question]

000A14: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A14

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Reverse Vertical Path Sensor

Sensor No. : PS65

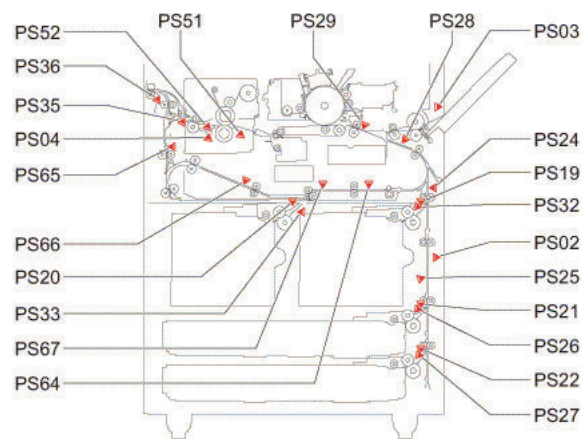
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 000A15: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A15

### [Symptom/Question]

000A15: JamCode (Main Unit) 0A15

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Duplex Left Sensor

Sensor No. : PS66

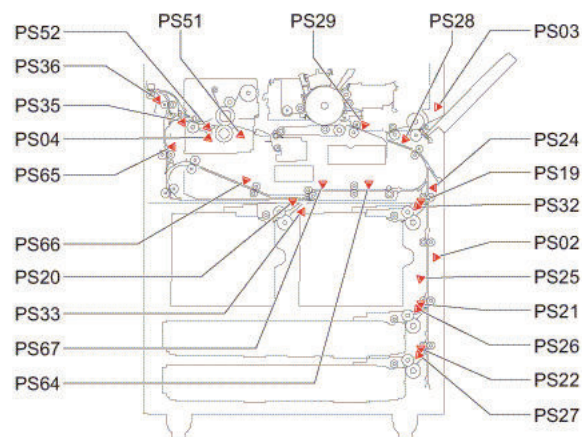
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 000A18: JamCode (POD Deck Lite-C1) 0A18

### [Symptom/Question]

000A18: JamCode (POD Deck Lite-C1) 0A18

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Deck pull-out sensor

Sensor No. : SR6

Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 000A18: JamCode (Paper Deck Unit-E1) 0A18

### [Symptom/Question]

000A18: JamCode (Paper Deck Unit-E1) 0A18

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Deck pull-out sensor

Sensor No. : PS2

Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 000B01: JamCode (Main Unit) 0B01

### [Symptom/Question]

000B01: JamCode (Main Unit) 0B01

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Door open jam

Sensor Name : Front cover open/close sensor

Sensor No. : DOOR OP

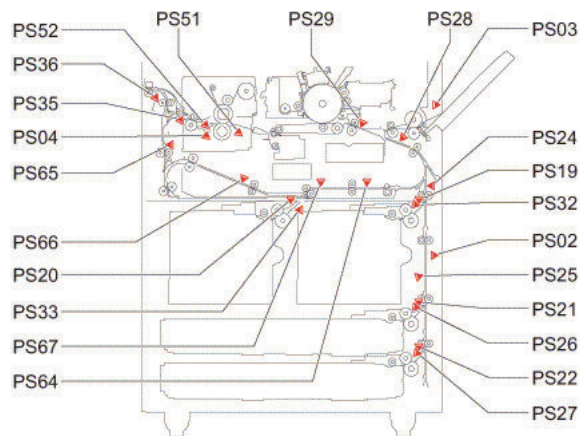
Overview of detection

A door open jam occurs when a sensor detected door open during printing operation.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Door open during printing



## ■ 000B02: JamCode (Main Unit) 0B02

### [Symptom/Question]

000B02: JamCode (Main Unit) 0B02

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Door open jam

Sensor Name : Manua cover open/close sensor

Sensor No. : DOOR OP

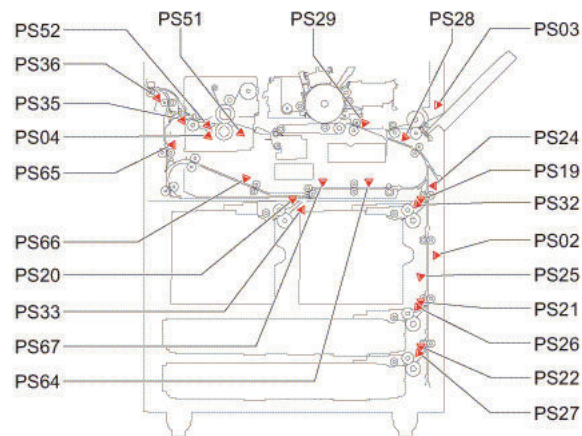
Overview of detection

A door open jam occurs when a sensor detected door open during printing operation.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Door open during printing





## ■ 000B03: JamCode (Main Unit) 0B03

### [Symptom/Question]

000B03: JamCode (Main Unit) 0B03

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Door open jam

Sensor Name : Vertical Path Cover Open/Close Sensor

Sensor No. : DOOR OP

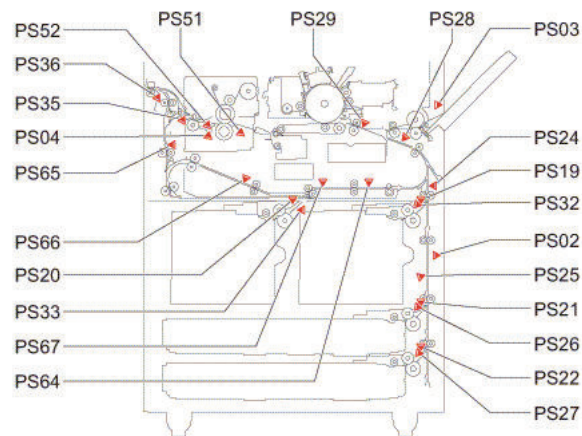
Overview of detection

A door open jam occurs when a sensor detected door open during printing operation.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Door open during printing



## ■ 000C10: JamCode (Main Unit) 0C10

### [Symptom/Question]

000C10: JamCode (Main Unit) 0C10

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : Fixing Toenail jam

Sensor No. : OTHER

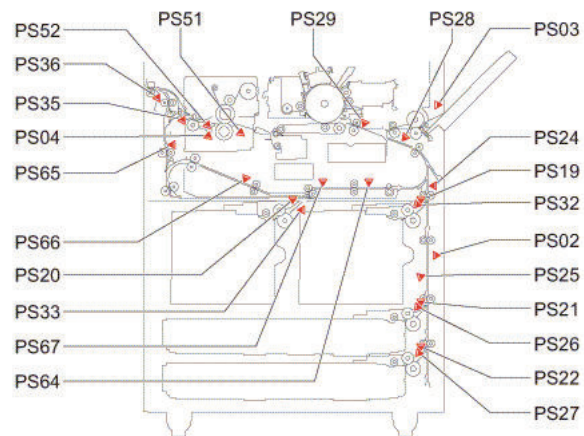
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 000CA1: JamCode (Main Unit) 0CA1

### [Symptom/Question]

000CA1: JamCode (Main Unit) 0CA1

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : FeedSts time out jam

Sensor No. : OTHER

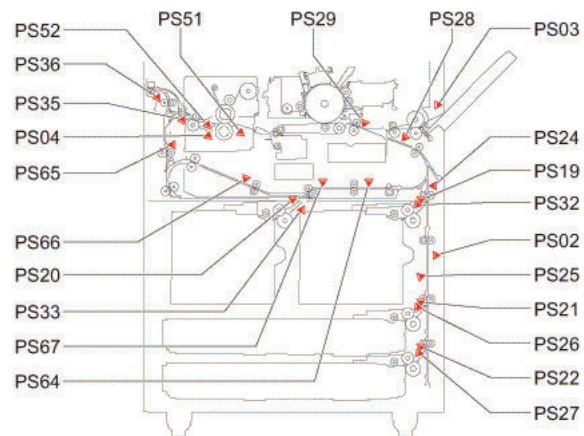
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 000CA2: JamCode (Main Unit) 0CA2

### [Symptom/Question]

000CA2: JamCode (Main Unit) 0CA2

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : RefeedStart time out jam

Sensor No. : OTHER

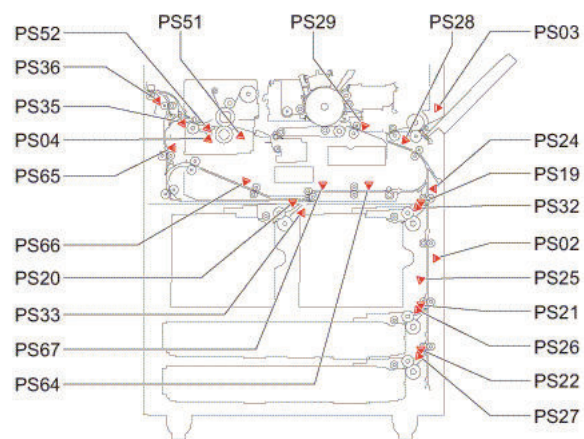
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 000CA3: JamCode (Main Unit) 0CA3

### [Symptom/Question]

000CA3: JamCode (Main Unit) 0CA3

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : ImageSet time out jam

Sensor No. : OTHER

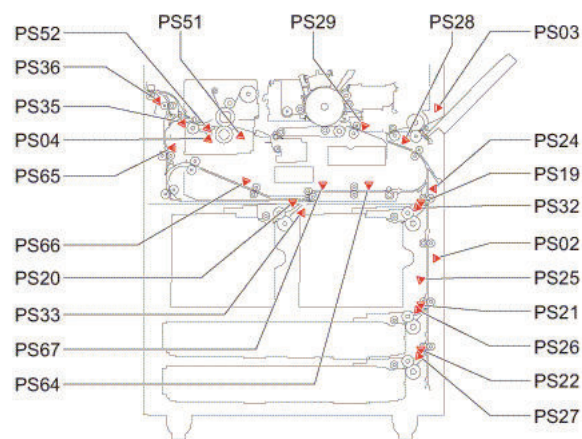
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 000CA4: JamCode (Main Unit) 0CA4

### [Symptom/Question]

000CA4: JamCode (Main Unit) 0CA4

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : PageComplete time out jam

Sensor No. : OTHER

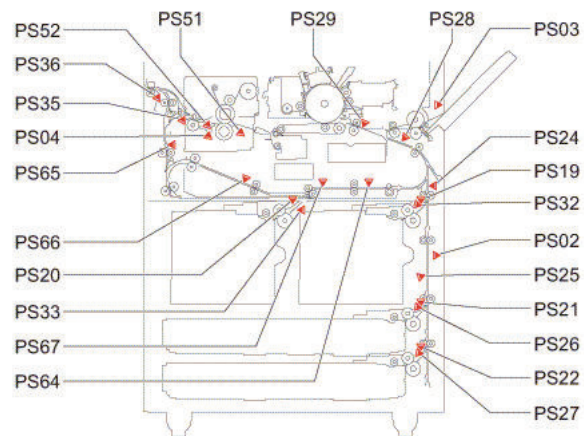
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 000CA5: JamCode (Main Unit) 0CA5

### [Symptom/Question]

000CA5: JamCode (Main Unit) 0CA5

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : Fixing temperature control time out jam

Sensor No. : OTHER

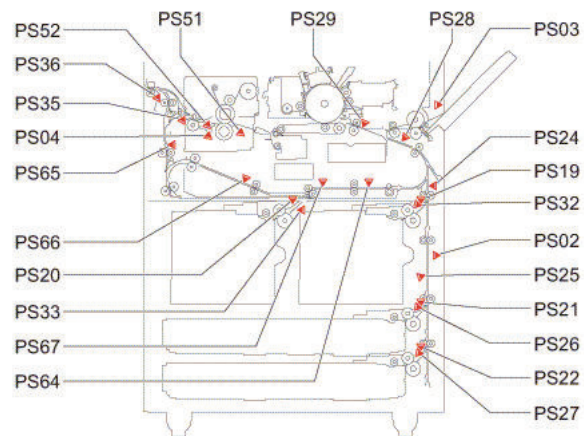
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-





## ■ 000CAF: JamCode (Main Unit) 0CAF

### [Symptom/Question]

000CAF: JamCode (Main Unit) 0CAF

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : Finisher time out jam

Sensor No. : OTHER

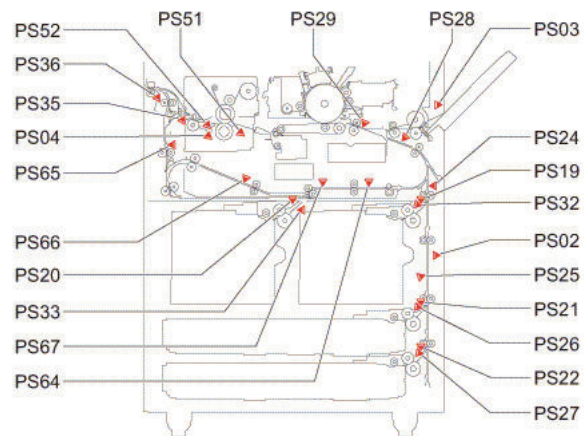
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 000CE0: JamCode (Main Unit) 0CE0

### [Symptom/Question]

000CE0: JamCode (Main Unit) 0CE0

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Sequence jam

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

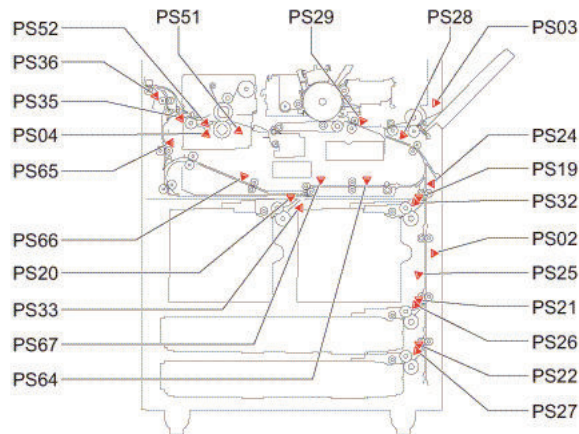
A sequence jam occurs when there was an error in sensor detection signal at printing operation sequence.

Since the jam may occur due to sporadic noise with software of each equipment or communication line (interruption of communication), failure of the part is not the cause of the jam. After the jam is removed, the machine works.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door
- Turning OFF and then ON the power
- Error near the target sensor (soiling/displacement/failure of the sensor, error in harness/open circuit of harness, soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor, or soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller)



## ■ 000CF1: JamCode (Main Unit) 0CF1

### [Symptom/Question]

000CF1: JamCode (Main Unit) 0CF1

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : Retry jam

Sensor No. : OTHER

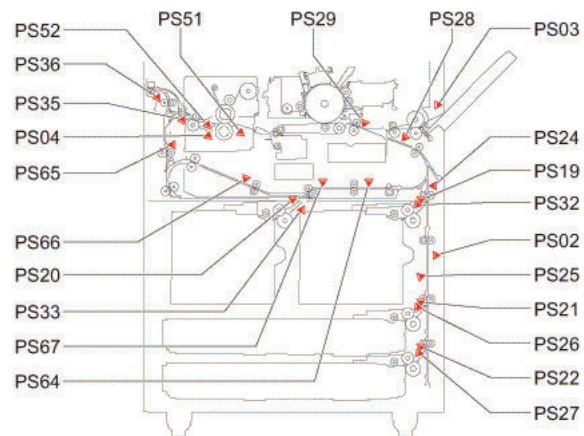
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 000D91: JamCode (Main Unit) 0D91

### [Symptom/Question]

000D91: JamCode (Main Unit) 0D91

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : Different Size jam(short paper length)

Sensor No. : OTHER

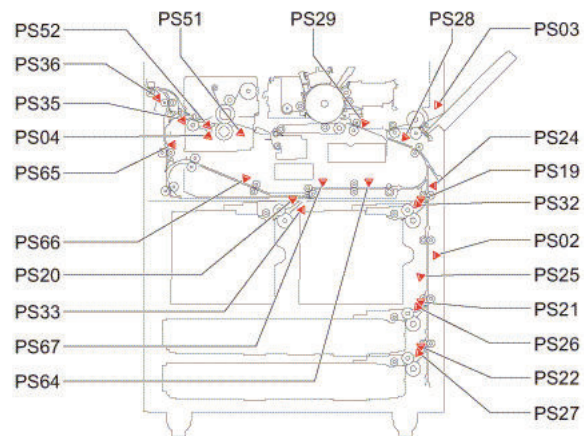
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 00AA01: JamCode (Main Unit) AA01

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA01: JamCode (Main Unit) AA01

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

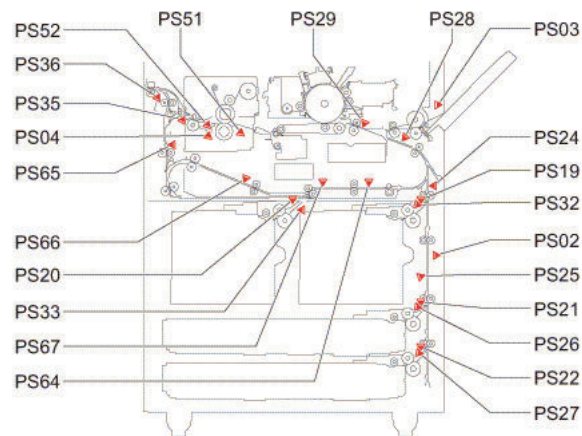
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA02: JamCode (Main Unit) AA02

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA02: JamCode (Main Unit) AA02

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

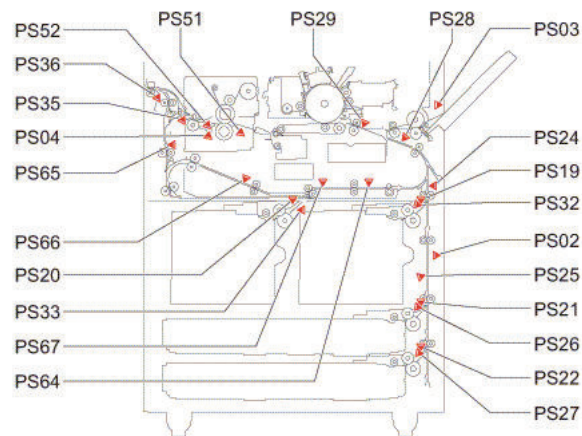
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA03: JamCode (Main Unit) AA03

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA03: JamCode (Main Unit) AA03

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

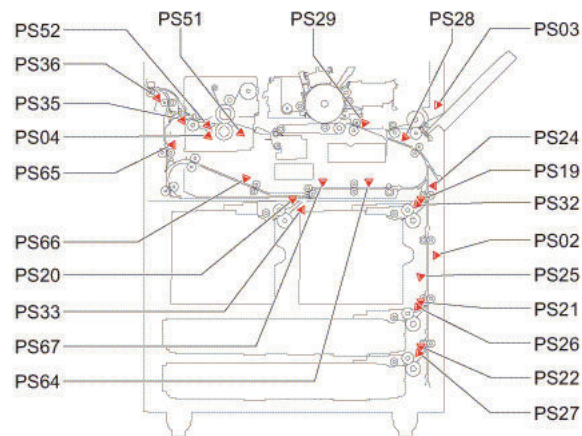
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.





## ■ 00AA04: JamCode (Main Unit) AA04

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA04: JamCode (Main Unit) AA04

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

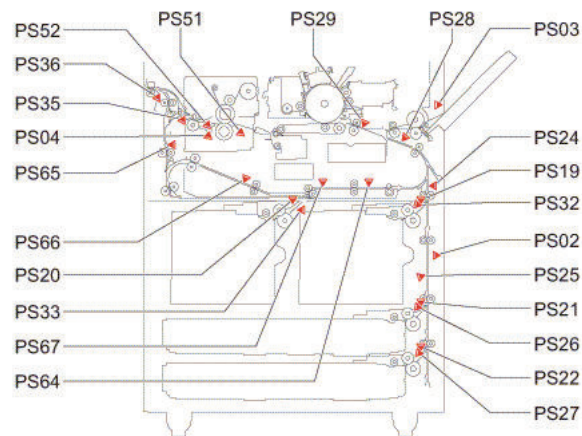
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA05: JamCode (Main Unit) AA05

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA05: JamCode (Main Unit) AA05

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

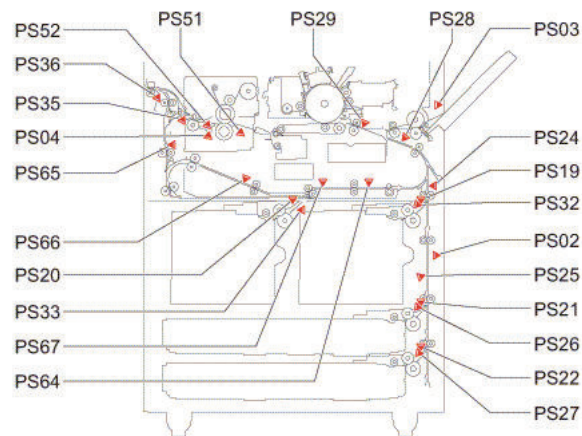
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA06: JamCode (Main Unit) AA06

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA06: JamCode (Main Unit) AA06

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

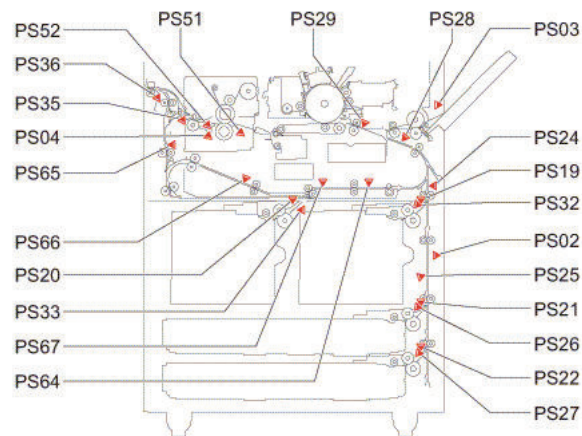
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA07: JamCode (Main Unit) AA07

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA07: JamCode (Main Unit) AA07

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

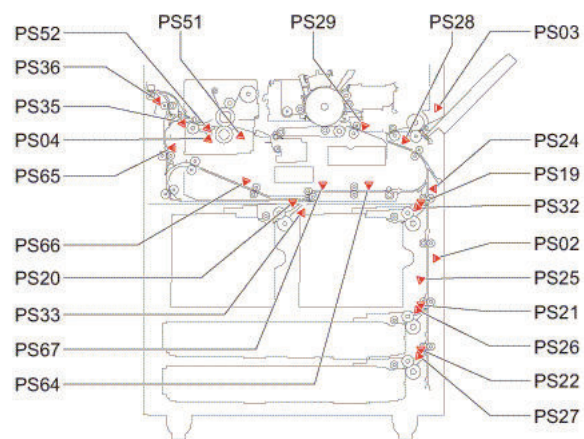
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA08: JamCode (Main Unit) AA08

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA08: JamCode (Main Unit) AA08

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

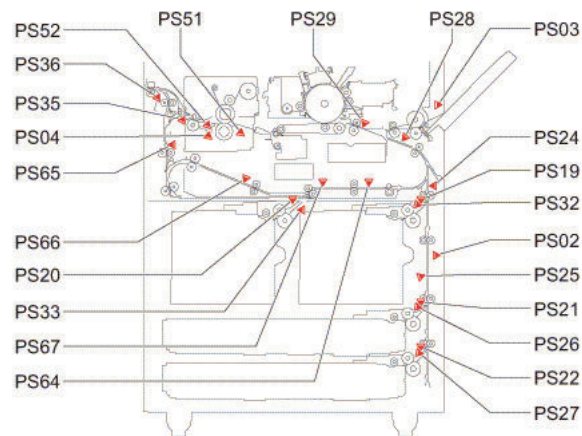
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA20: JamCode (Main Unit) AA20

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA20: JamCode (Main Unit) AA20

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

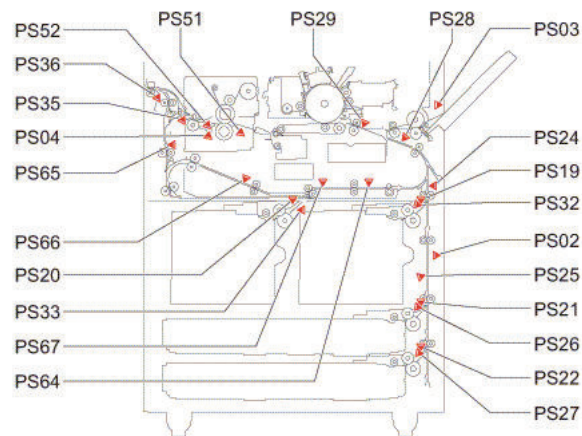
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA21: JamCode (Main Unit) AA21

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA21: JamCode (Main Unit) AA21

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

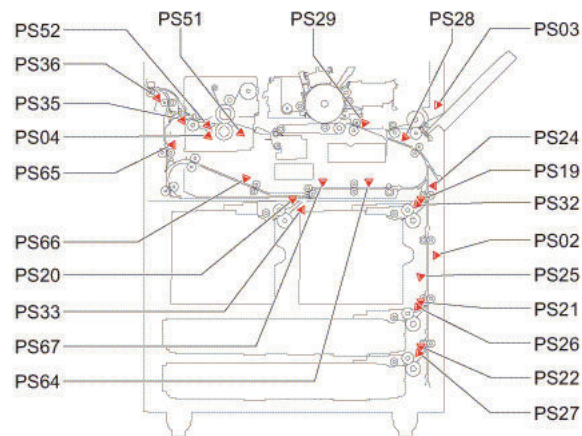
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.





## ■ 00AA22: JamCode (Main Unit) AA22

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA22: JamCode (Main Unit) AA22

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

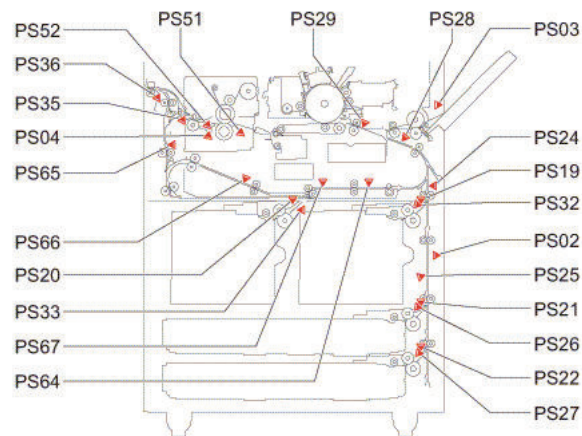
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA23: JamCode (Main Unit) AA23

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA23: JamCode (Main Unit) AA23

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

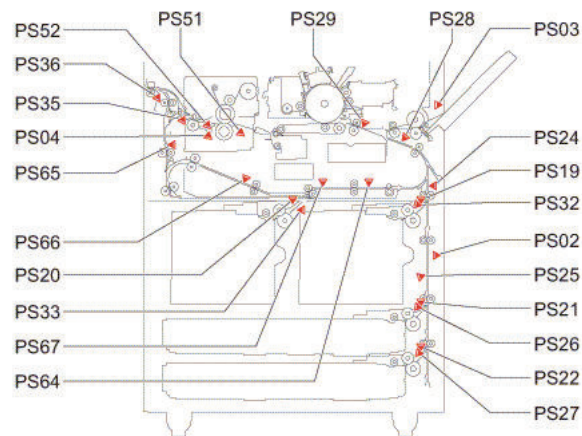
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA30: JamCode (Main Unit) AA30

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA30: JamCode (Main Unit) AA30

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

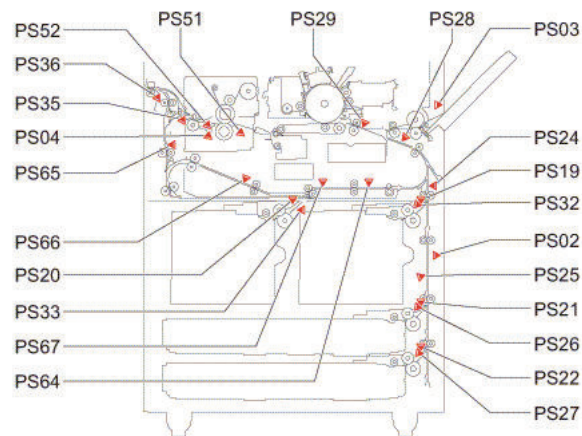
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA31: JamCode (Main Unit) AA31

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA31: JamCode (Main Unit) AA31

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

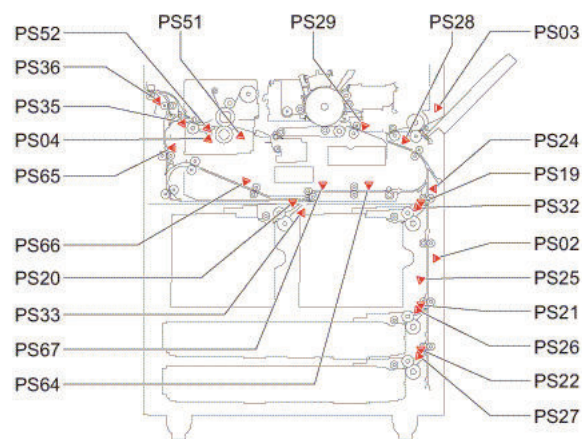
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA40: JamCode (Main Unit) AA40

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA40: JamCode (Main Unit) AA40

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

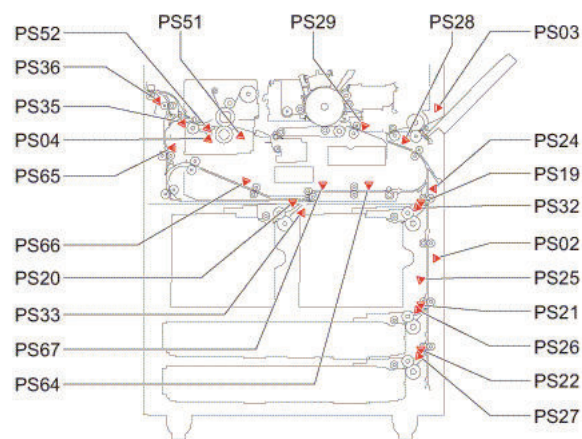
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA41: JamCode (Main Unit) AA41

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA41: JamCode (Main Unit) AA41

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

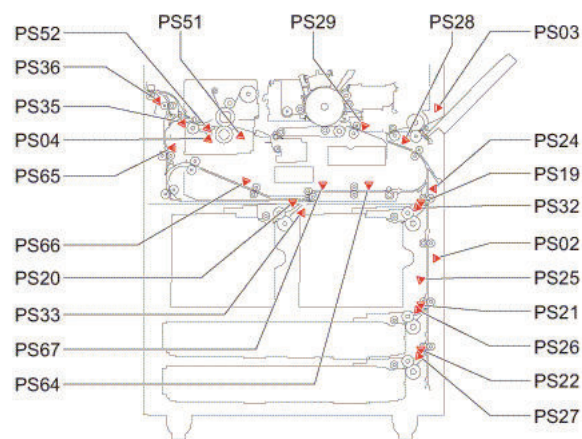
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA70: JamCode (Main Unit) AA70

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA70: JamCode (Main Unit) AA70

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

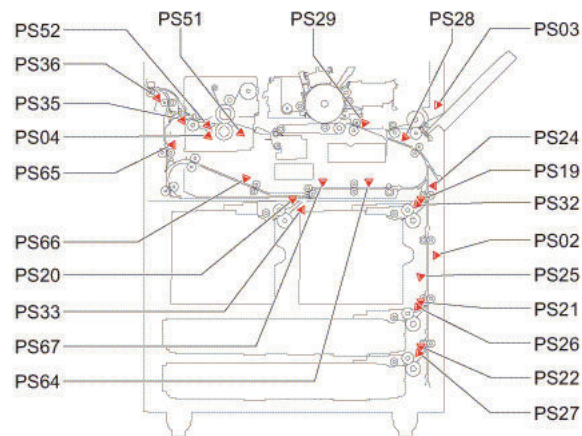
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.





## ■ 00AA71: JamCode (Main Unit) AA71

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA71: JamCode (Main Unit) AA71

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

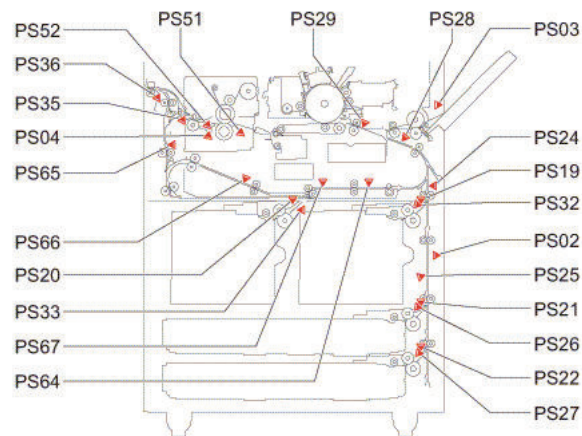
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA72: JamCode (Main Unit) AA72

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA72: JamCode (Main Unit) AA72

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

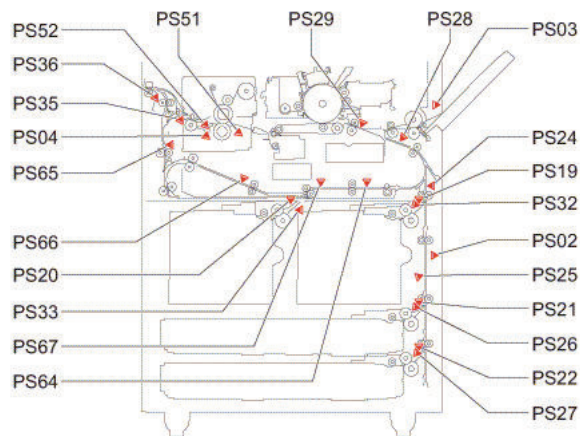
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA73: JamCode (Main Unit) AA73

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA73: JamCode (Main Unit) AA73

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

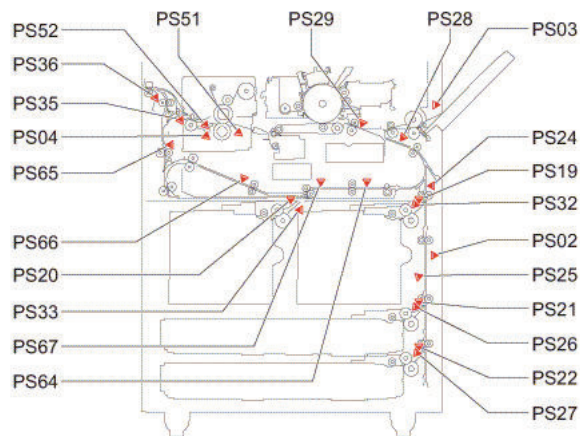
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA74: JamCode (Main Unit) AA74

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA74: JamCode (Main Unit) AA74

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

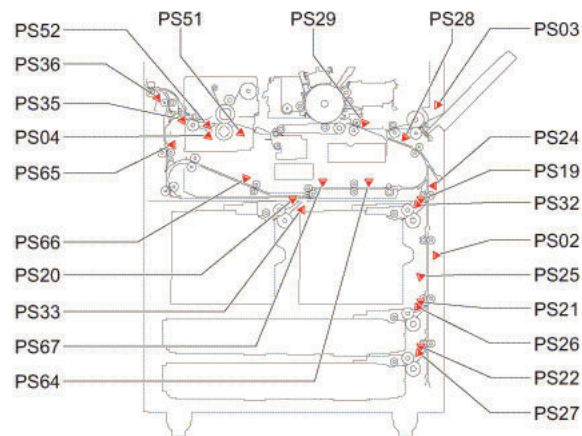
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA75: JamCode (Main Unit) AA75

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA75: JamCode (Main Unit) AA75

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

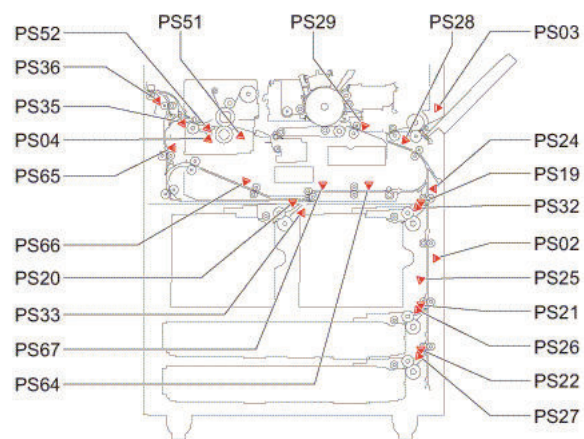
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA76: JamCode (Main Unit) AA76

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA76: JamCode (Main Unit) AA76

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

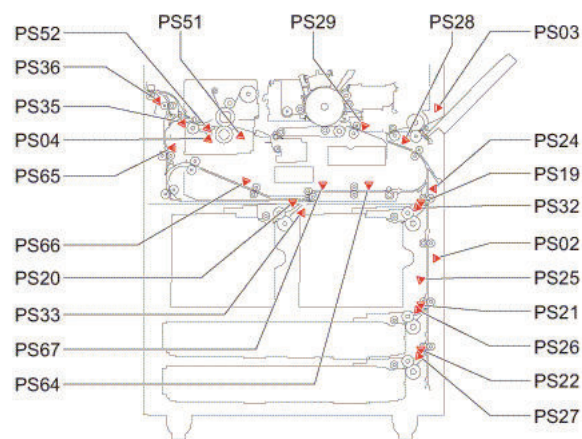
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.



## ■ 00AA99: JamCode (Main Unit) AA99

### [Symptom/Question]

00AA99: JamCode (Main Unit) AA99

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Forcible stop of paper feed

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

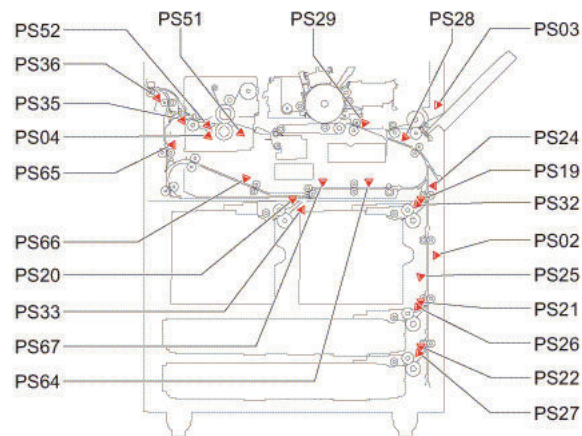
Overview of detection

It occurs when a sheet of paper stops at the position specified in service mode.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Using at problem analysis.





## ■ 010003: JamCode (ADF) 0003

### [Symptom/Question]

010003: JamCode (ADF) 0003

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Post-separation Sensor

Sensor No. : PS402

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

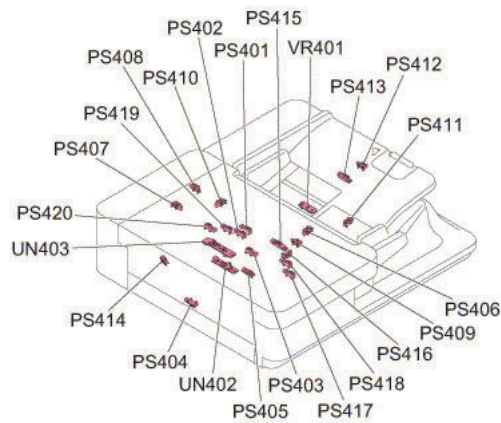
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 010004: JamCode (ADF) 0004

### [Symptom/Question]

010004: JamCode (ADF) 0004

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Post-separation Sensor

Sensor No. : PS402

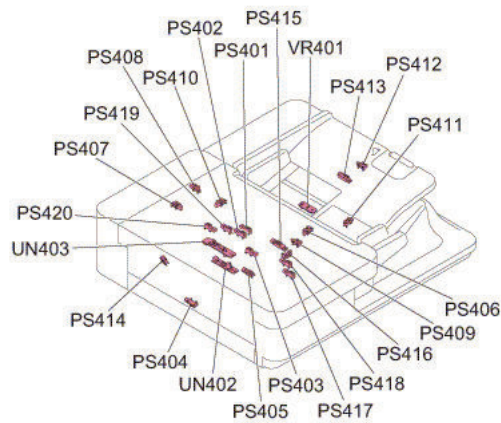
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 010005: JamCode (ADF) 0005

### [Symptom/Question]

010005: JamCode (ADF) 0005

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Post-pullout Sensor

Sensor No. : PS403

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

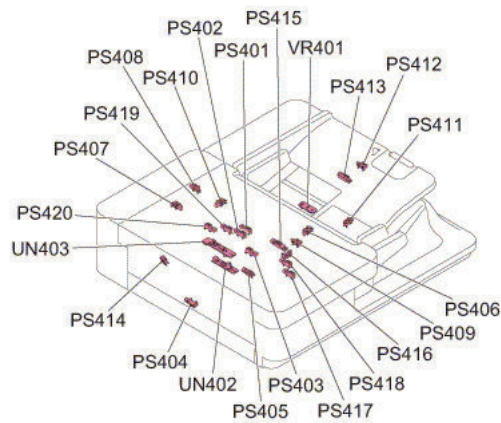
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 010006: JamCode (ADF) 0006

### [Symptom/Question]

010006: JamCode (ADF) 0006

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Post-pullout Sensor

Sensor No. : PS403

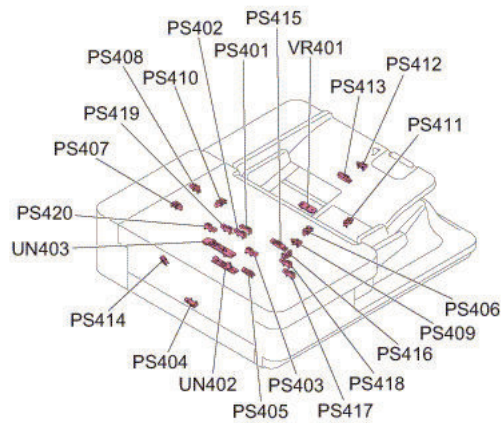
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 010007: JamCode (ADF) 0007

### [Symptom/Question]

010007: JamCode (ADF) 0007

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Lead Sensor

Sensor No. : PS404

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

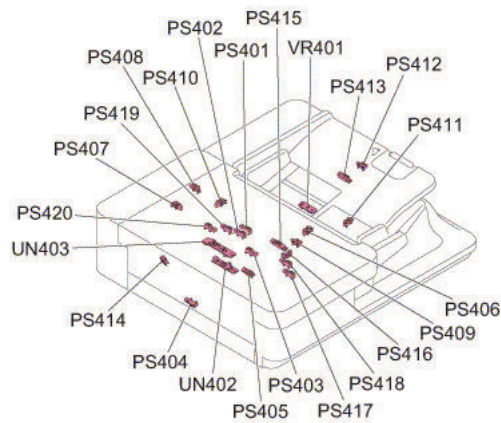
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 010008: JamCode (ADF) 0008

### [Symptom/Question]

010008: JamCode (ADF) 0008

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Lead Sensor

Sensor No. : PS404

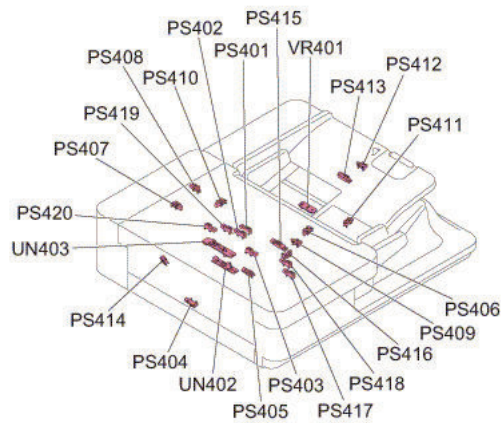
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 010009: JamCode (ADF) 0009

### [Symptom/Question]

010009: JamCode (ADF) 0009

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS405

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

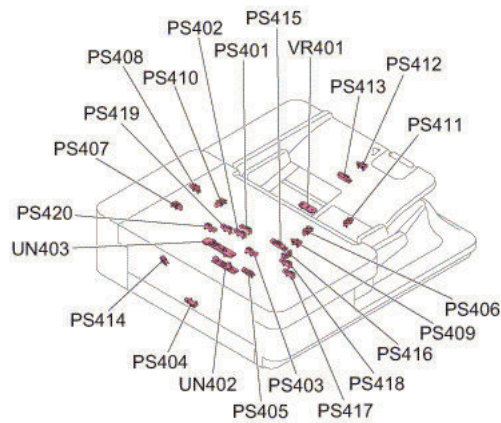
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor





## ■ 010010: JamCode (ADF) 0010

### [Symptom/Question]

010010: JamCode (ADF) 0010

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS405

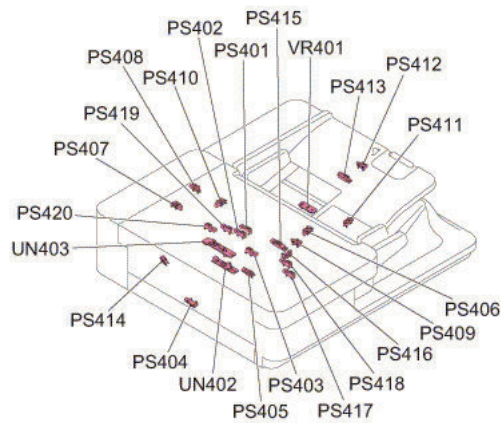
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 010015: JamCode (ADF) 0015

### [Symptom/Question]

010015: JamCode (ADF) 0015

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Front)

Skew Detection Sensor (Small, Front)

Skew Detection Sensor (Small, Rear)

Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Rear)

Sensor No. : PS417,PS418,PS419,PS420

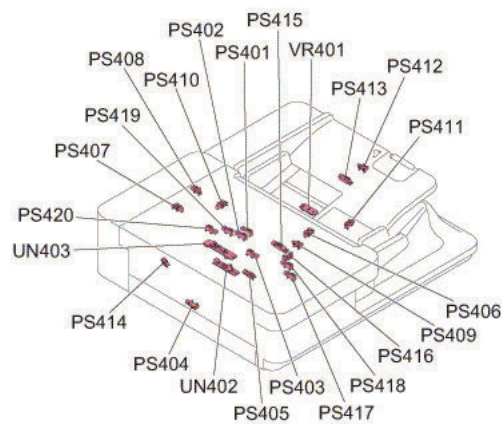
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 010020: JamCode (ADF) 0020

### [Symptom/Question]

010020: JamCode (ADF) 0020

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Double Feed

Sensor Name : Double Feed Sensor PCB (transmission/reception)

Sensor No. : UN402,UN403

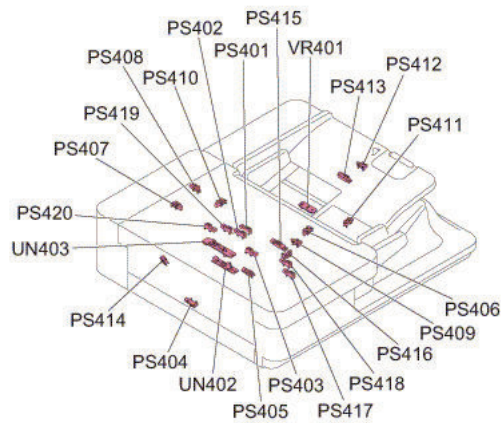
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 010021: JamCode (ADF) 0021

### [Symptom/Question]

010021: JamCode (ADF) 0021

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : Double Feed Sensor PCB (transmission/reception)

Sensor No. : UN402,UN403

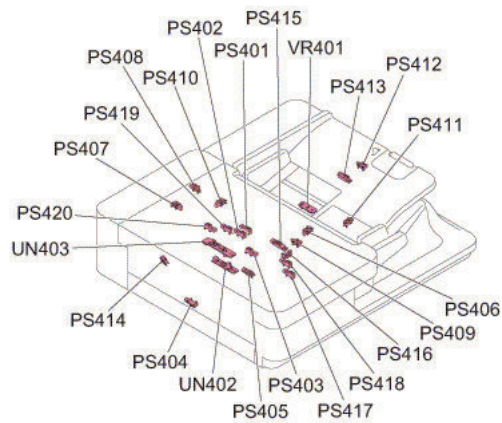
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 010025: JamCode (ADF) 0025

### [Symptom/Question]

010025: JamCode (ADF) 0025

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : Scanner Unit

Sensor No. : [1],[2]

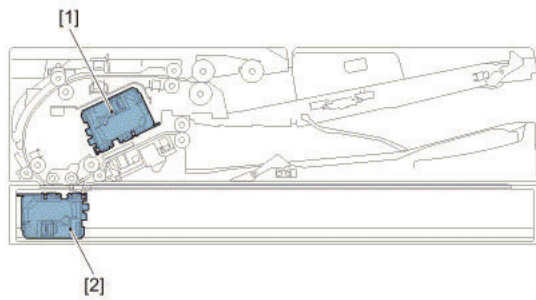
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 010026: JamCode (ADF) 0026

### [Symptom/Question]

010026: JamCode (ADF) 0026

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : Scanner Unit

Sensor No. : [1],[2]

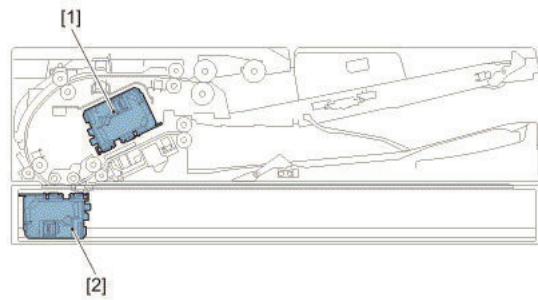
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 010043: JamCode (ADF) 0043

### [Symptom/Question]

010043: JamCode (ADF) 0043

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Post-separation Sensor

Sensor No. : PS402

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

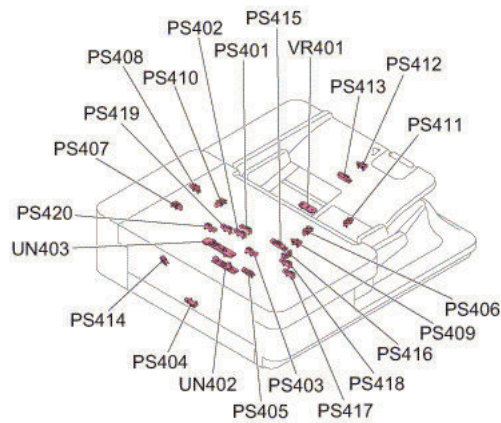
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor





## ■ 010044: JamCode (ADF) 0044

### [Symptom/Question]

010044: JamCode (ADF) 0044

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Post-separation Sensor

Sensor No. : PS402

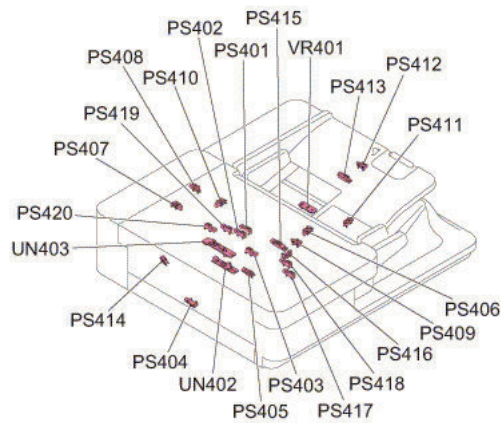
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 010045: JamCode (ADF) 0045

### [Symptom/Question]

010045: JamCode (ADF) 0045

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Post-pullout Sensor

Sensor No. : PS403

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

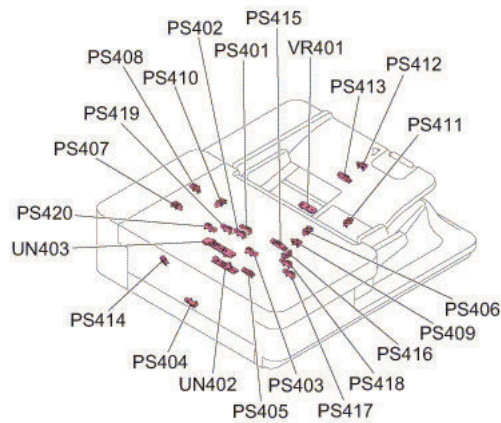
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 010046: JamCode (ADF) 0046

### [Symptom/Question]

010046: JamCode (ADF) 0046

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Post-pullout Sensor

Sensor No. : PS403

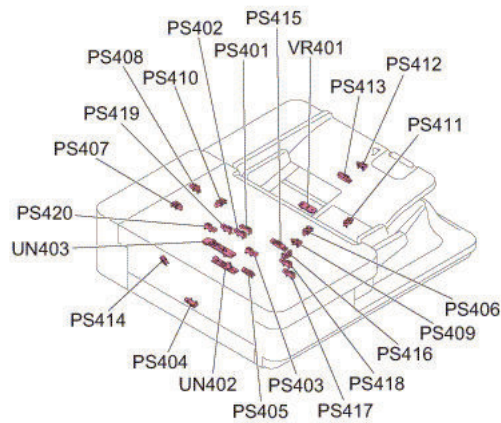
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 010047: JamCode (ADF) 0047

### [Symptom/Question]

010047: JamCode (ADF) 0047

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Lead Sensor

Sensor No. : PS404

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

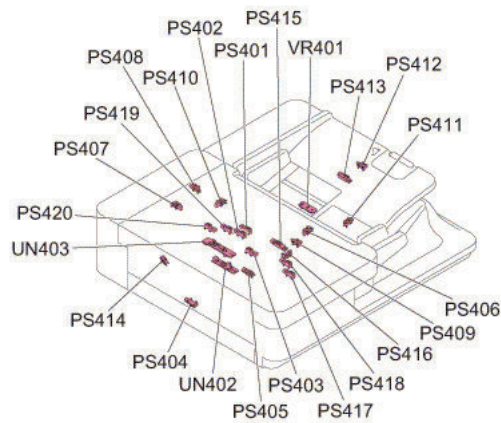
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 010048: JamCode (ADF) 0048

### [Symptom/Question]

010048: JamCode (ADF) 0048

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Lead Sensor

Sensor No. : PS404

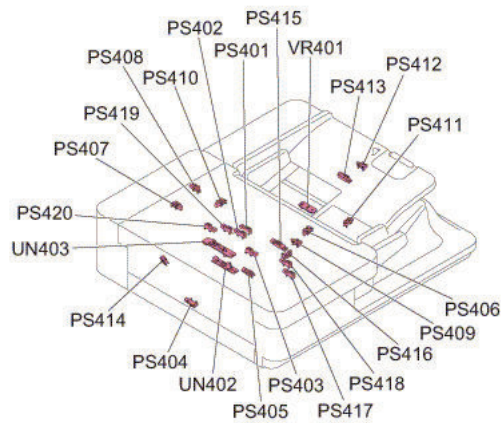
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 010049: JamCode (ADF) 0049

### [Symptom/Question]

010049: JamCode (ADF) 0049

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS405

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

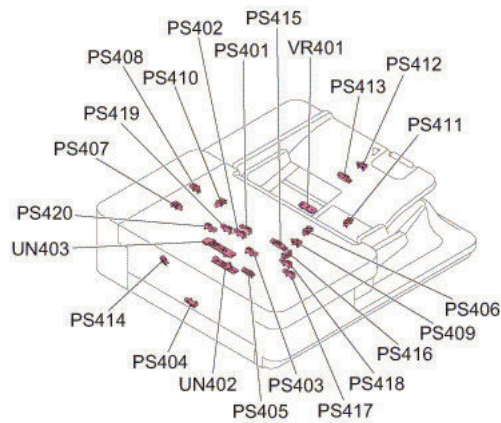
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 010050: JamCode (ADF) 0050

### [Symptom/Question]

010050: JamCode (ADF) 0050

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS405

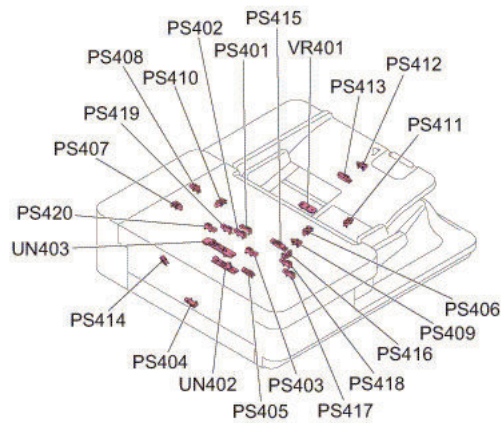
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor





## ■ 010055: JamCode (ADF) 0055

### [Symptom/Question]

010055: JamCode (ADF) 0055

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Front)

Skew Detection Sensor (Small, Front)

Skew Detection Sensor (Small, Rear)

Skew Detection Sensor (Large, Rear)

Sensor No. : PS417,PS418,PS419,PS420

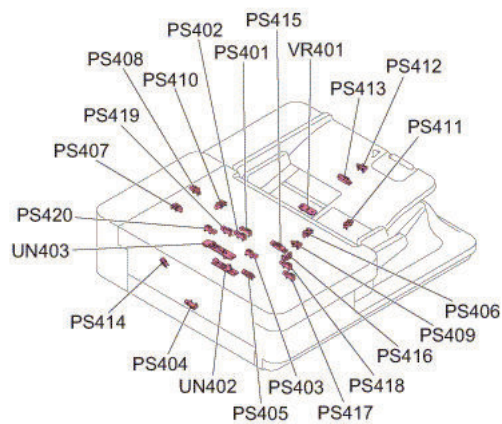
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 010060: JamCode (ADF) 0060

### [Symptom/Question]

010060: JamCode (ADF) 0060

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Double Feed

Sensor Name : Double Feed Sensor PCB (transmission/reception)

Sensor No. : UN402,UN403

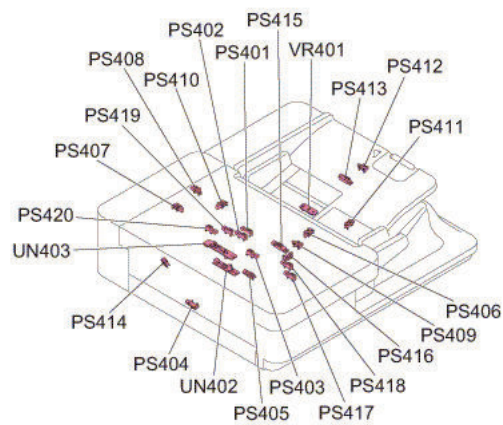
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 010061: JamCode (ADF) 0061

### [Symptom/Question]

010061: JamCode (ADF) 0061

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : Double Feed Sensor PCB (transmission/reception)

Sensor No. : UN402,UN403

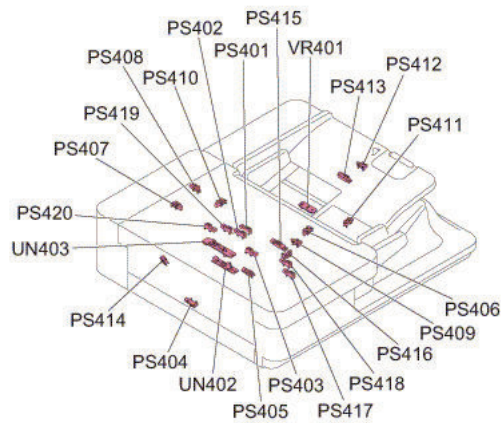
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 010062: JamCode (ADF) 0062

### [Symptom/Question]

010062: JamCode (ADF) 0062

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : Double Feed Sensor PCB (transmission/reception)

Sensor No. : UN402,UN403

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

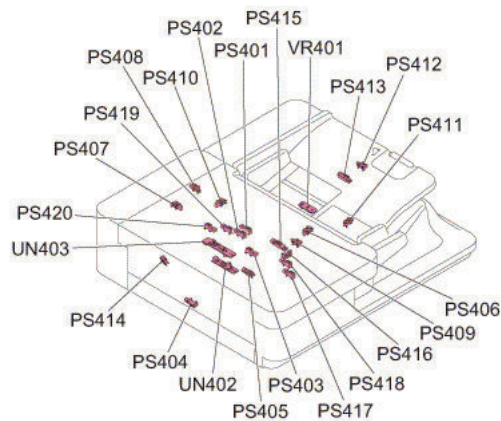
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 010063: JamCode (ADF) 0063

### [Symptom/Question]

010063: JamCode (ADF) 0063

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : Double Feed Sensor PCB (transmission/reception)

Sensor No. : UN402,UN403

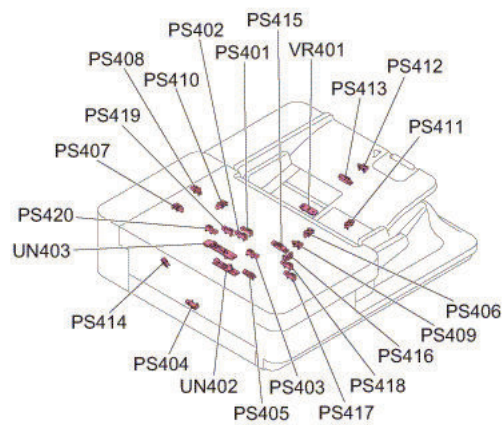
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 010071: JamCode (ADF) 0071

### [Symptom/Question]

010071: JamCode (ADF) 0071

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Sequence jam

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

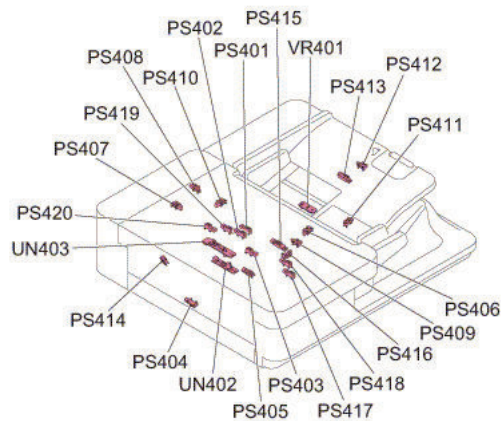
A sequence jam occurs when there was an error in sensor detection signal at printing operation sequence.

Since the jam may occur due to sporadic noise with software of each equipment or communication line (interruption of communication), failure of the part is not the cause of the jam. After the jam is removed, the machine works.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door
- Turning OFF and then ON the power
- Error near the target sensor (soiling/displacement/failure of the sensor, error in harness/open circuit of harness, soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor, or soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller)



## ■ 01007F: JamCode (ADF) 007F

### [Symptom/Question]

01007F: JamCode (ADF) 007F

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Sequence jam

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

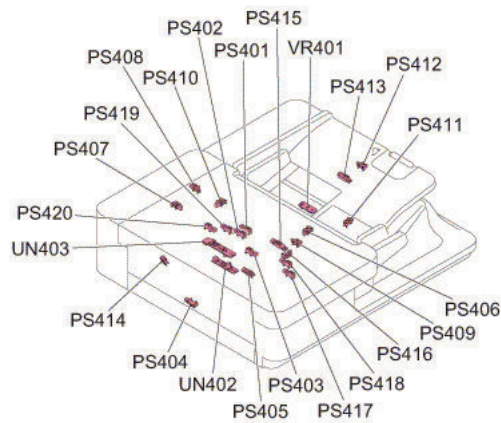
A sequence jam occurs when there was an error in sensor detection signal at printing operation sequence.

Since the jam may occur due to sporadic noise with software of each equipment or communication line (interruption of communication), failure of the part is not the cause of the jam. After the jam is removed, the machine works.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door
- Turning OFF and then ON the power
- Error near the target sensor (soiling/displacement/failure of the sensor, error in harness/open circuit of harness, soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor, or soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller)





## ■ 010090: JamCode (Reader) 0090

### [Symptom/Question]

010090: JamCode (Reader) 0090

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : ADF OPEN

Sensor Name : Copyboard Cover Open/Closed Sensor (Front/Rear)

Sensor No. : PS101,PS102

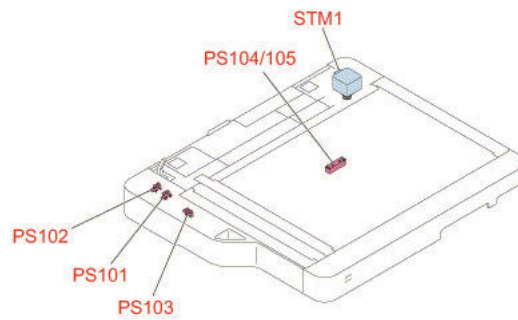
Overview of detection

A door open jam occurs when a sensor detected ADF open during printing operation.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- ADF open during printing



## ■ 010091: JamCode (Reader) 0091

### [Symptom/Question]

010091: JamCode (Reader) 0091

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : ADF OPEN

Sensor Name : Copyboard Cover Open/Closed Sensor (Front/Rear)

Sensor No. : PS101,PS102

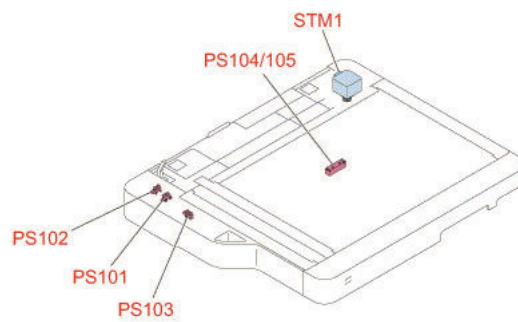
Overview of detection

A door open jam occurs when a sensor detected ADF open during printing operation.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- ADF open during printing



## ■ 010092: JamCode (ADF) 0092

### [Symptom/Question]

010092: JamCode (ADF) 0092

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : COVER Open jam

Sensor Name : Cover Open/Closed Sensor

Sensor No. : PS407

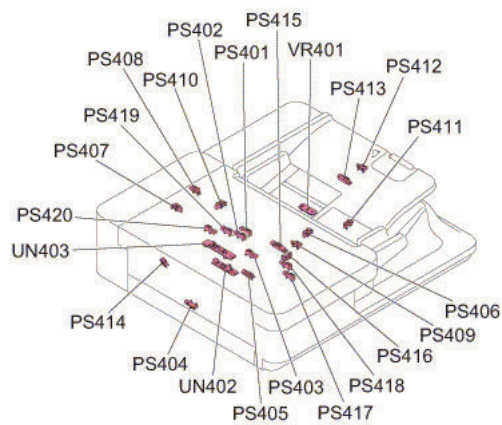
Overview of detection

A door open jam occurs when a sensor detected cover open during printing operation.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Cover open during printing



## ■ 010093: JamCode (ADF) 0093

### [Symptom/Question]

010093: JamCode (ADF) 0093

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : COVER Open jam

Sensor Name : Cover Open/Closed Sensor

Sensor No. : PS407

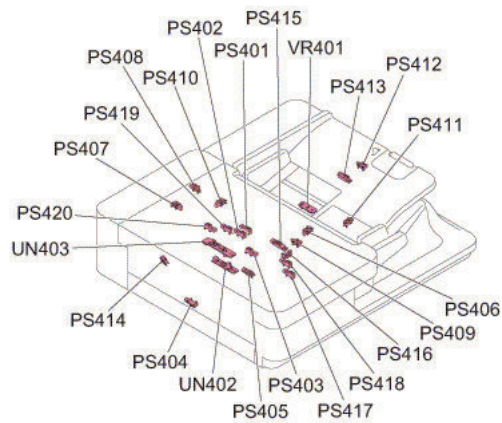
Overview of detection

A door open jam occurs when a sensor detected cover open during printing operation.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Cover open during printing



## ■ 010094: JamCode (ADF) 0094

### [Symptom/Question]

010094: JamCode (ADF) 0094

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Post-separation Sensor

Post-pullout Sensor

Lead Sensor

Pre-delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS402,PS403,PS404,PS405

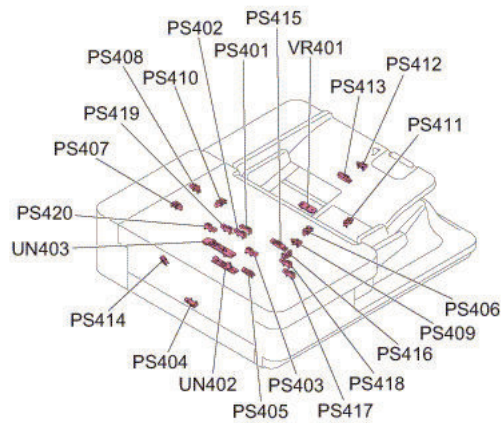
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 010095: JamCode (ADF) 0095

### [Symptom/Question]

010095: JamCode (ADF) 0095

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : Original Sensor

Sensor No. : PS415

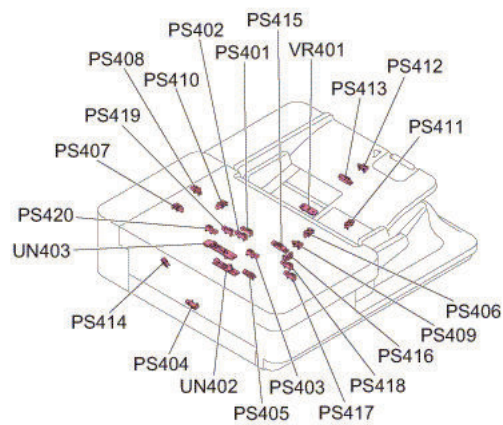
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 010096: JamCode (ADF) 0096

### [Symptom/Question]

010096: JamCode (ADF) 0096

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

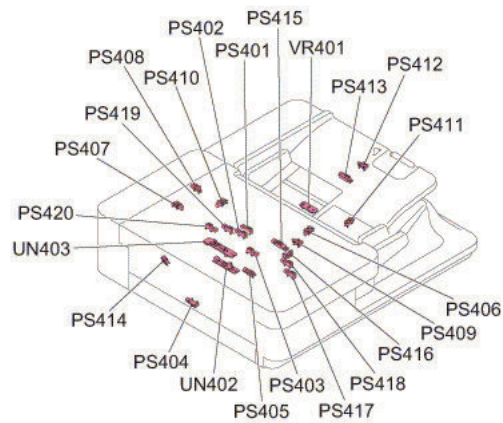
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-





## ■ 0100A2: JamCode (ADF) 00A2

### [Symptom/Question]

0100A2: JamCode (ADF) 00A2

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Post-separation Sensor

Sensor No. : PS402

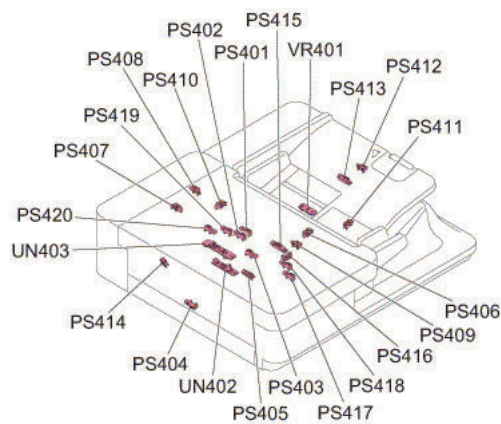
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 0100A3: JamCode (ADF) 00A3

### [Symptom/Question]

0100A3: JamCode (ADF) 00A3

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Post-pullout Sensor

Sensor No. : PS403

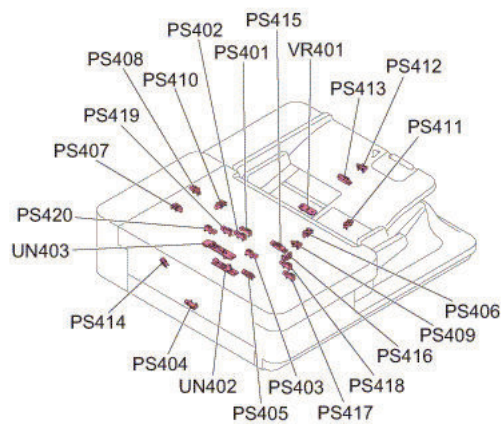
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 0100A4: JamCode (ADF) 00A4

### [Symptom/Question]

0100A4: JamCode (ADF) 00A4

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Lead Sensor

Sensor No. : PS404

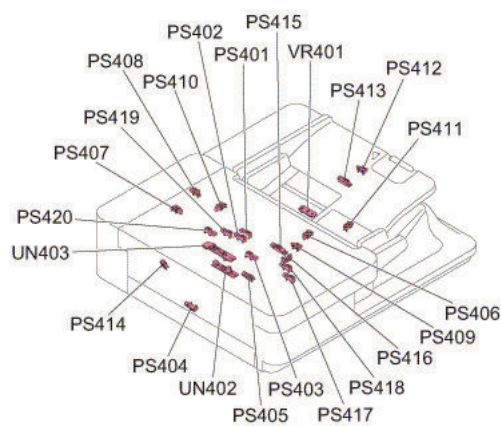
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 0100A6: JamCode (ADF) 00A6

### [Symptom/Question]

0100A6: JamCode (ADF) 00A6

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS405

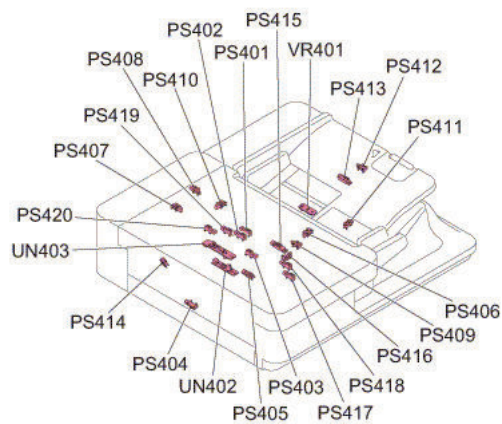
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 021001: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1001

### [Symptom/Question]

021001: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1001

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Inlet Sensor

Sensor No. : PS101

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

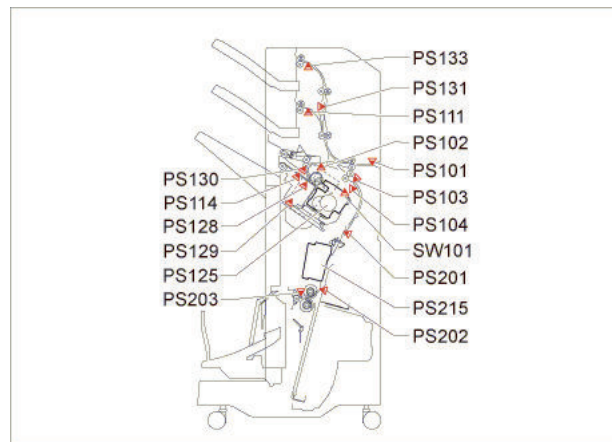
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021002: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1002

### [Symptom/Question]

021002: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1002

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS102

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

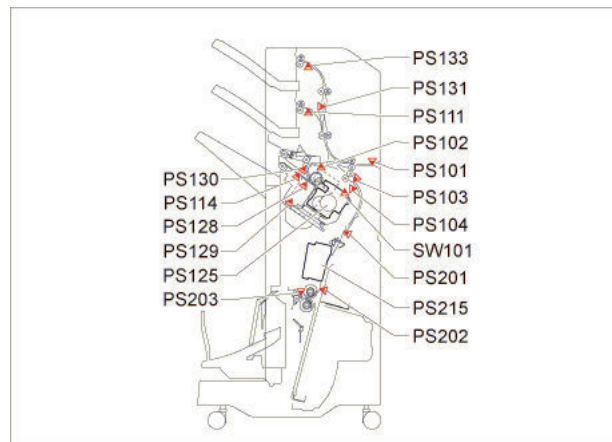
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021003: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1003

### [Symptom/Question]

021003: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1003

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Buffer Sensor

Sensor No. : PS103

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

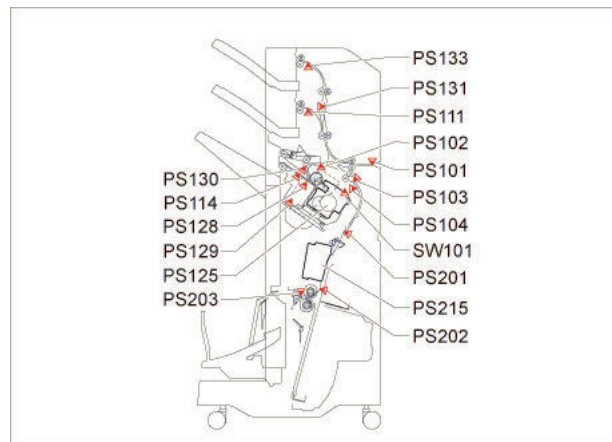
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor





## ■ 021004: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1004

### [Symptom/Question]

021004: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1004

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Lower Escape Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS111

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

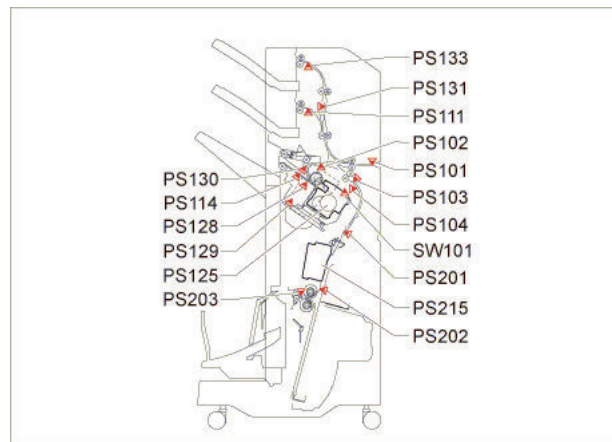
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021005: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1005

### [Symptom/Question]

021005: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1005

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Upper Escape Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS133

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

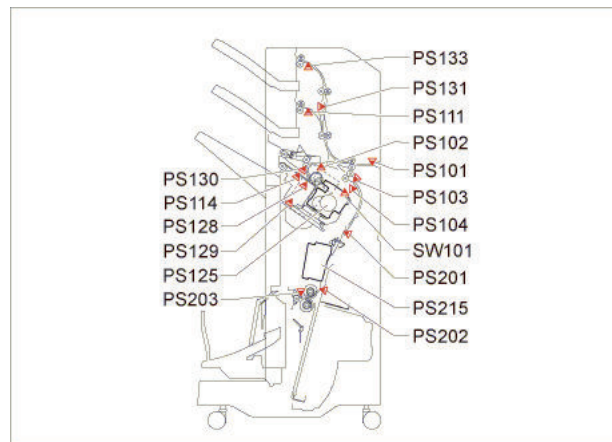
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021006: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1006

### [Symptom/Question]

021006: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1006

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Escape Feed Sensor

Sensor No. : PS131

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

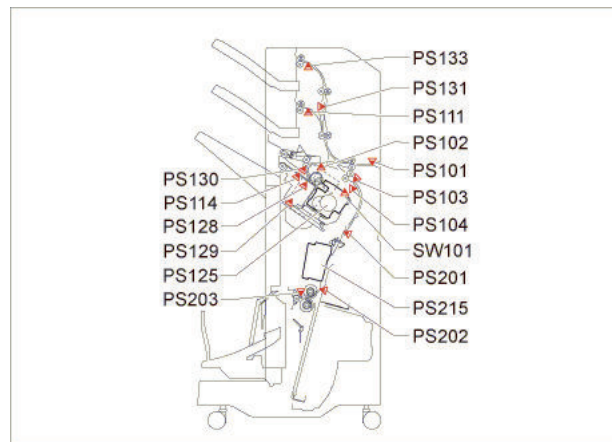
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021008: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1008

### [Symptom/Question]

021008: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1008

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Saddle Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS203

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

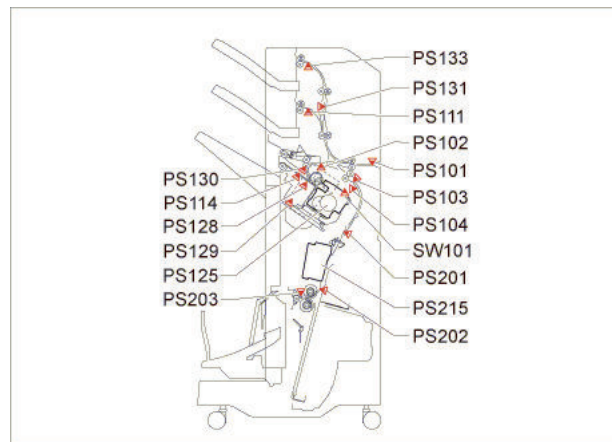
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021009: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1009

### [Symptom/Question]

021009: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1009

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Saddle Inlet Sensor

Sensor No. : PS201

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

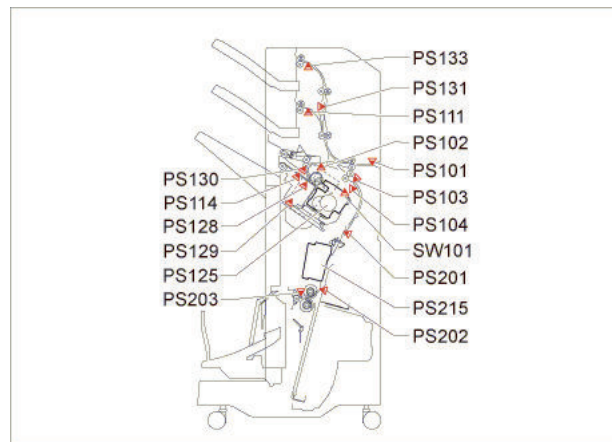
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021010: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1010

### [Symptom/Question]

021010: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1010

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Paper Registration Sensor

Sensor No. : S4

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

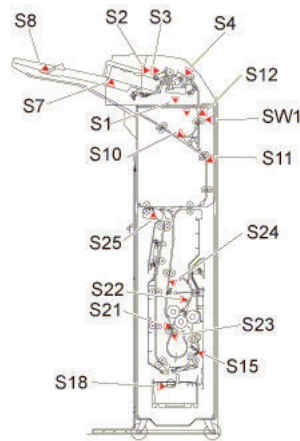
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021011: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1011

### [Symptom/Question]

021011: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1011

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Paper Registration Sensor

Reverse Entrance Sensor

Sensor No. : S4,S12

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

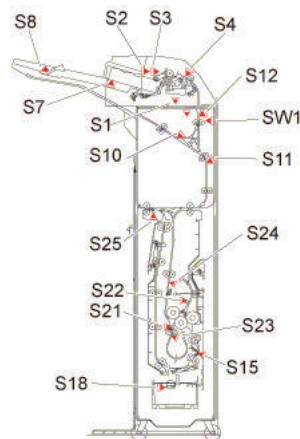
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor





## ■ 021012: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1012

### [Symptom/Question]

021012: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1012

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Reverse Sensor

Reverse Entrance Sensor

Sensor No. : S10,S12

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

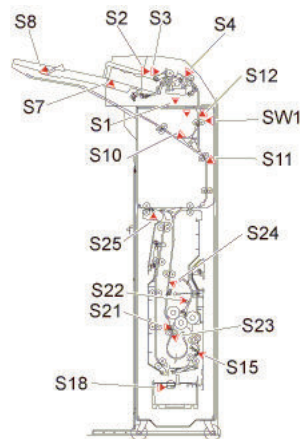
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021013: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1013

### [Symptom/Question]

021013: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1013

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Reverse Sensor

Reverse Timing Sensor

Reverse Entrance Sensor

Sensor No. : S10,S11,S12

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

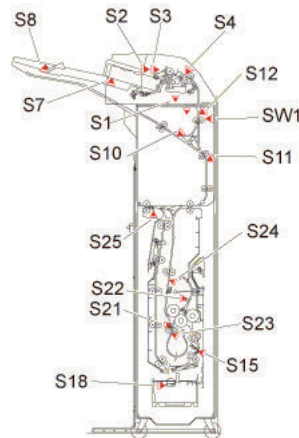
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021014: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1014

### [Symptom/Question]

021014: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1014

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Slowdown Timing Sensor

Sensor No. : S24

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

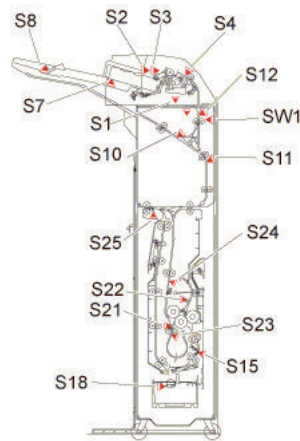
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021015: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1015

### [Symptom/Question]

021015: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1015

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Release Timing Sensor

Slowdown Timing Sensor

Sensor No. : S21,S24

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

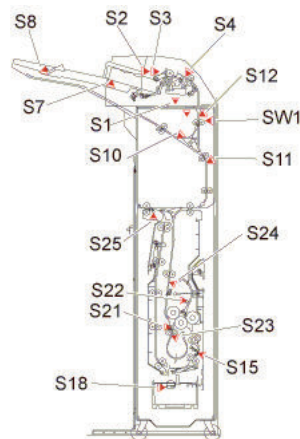
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021016: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1016

### [Symptom/Question]

021016: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1016

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Fold Position Sensor

Sensor No. : S23

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

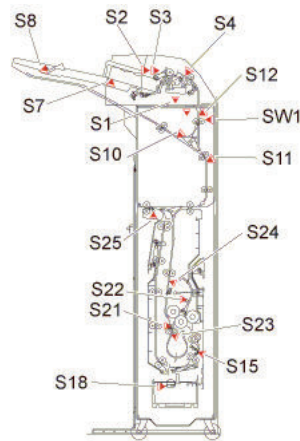
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021017: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1017

### [Symptom/Question]

021017: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1017

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Upper Stopper Path Sensor

Sensor No. : S22

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

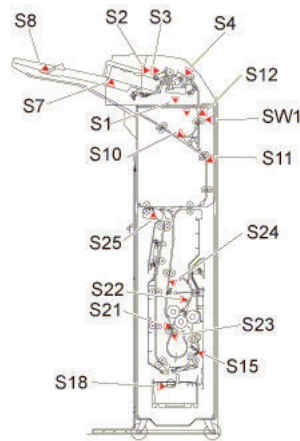
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021018: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1018

### [Symptom/Question]

021018: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1018

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Delivery Sensor 1

Upper Stopper Path Sensor

Sensor No. : S15,S22

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

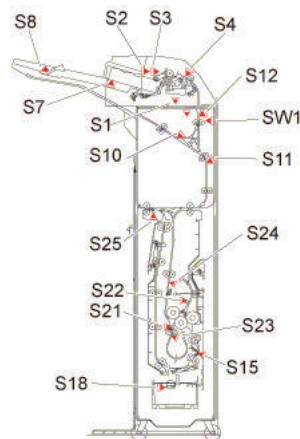
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor





## ■ 021019: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1019

### [Symptom/Question]

021019: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1019

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Delivery Sensor 1

Delivery Sensor 2

Sensor No. : S15,S25

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

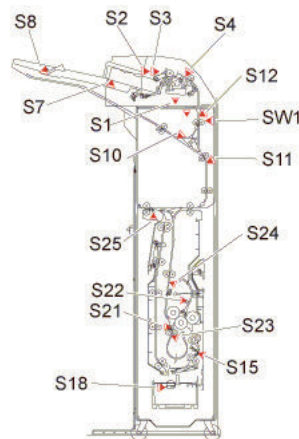
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 02101A: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 101A

### [Symptom/Question]

02101A: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 101A

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Delay jam

Sensor Name : Delivery Sensor 1

C Fold Tray Empty Sensor

Sensor No. : S15,S18

Overview of detection

A delay jam occurs when a sensor was not turned ON although a specified period of time had passed after the start of detection by the sensor.

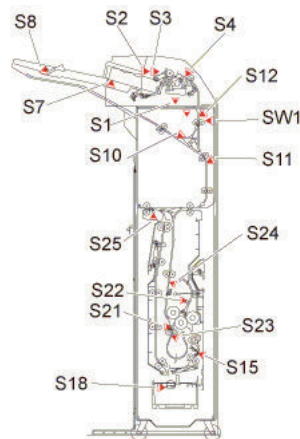
I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper at the upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor

Displacement of the target sensor position

- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/Failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/Failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021101: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1101

### [Symptom/Question]

021101: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1101

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Inlet Sensor

Sensor No. : PS101

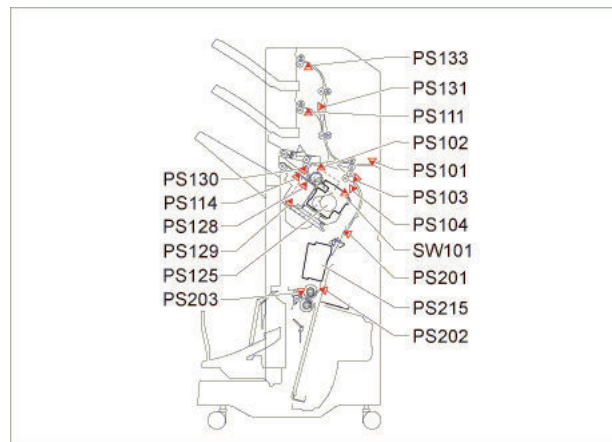
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021102: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1102

### [Symptom/Question]

021102: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1102

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS102

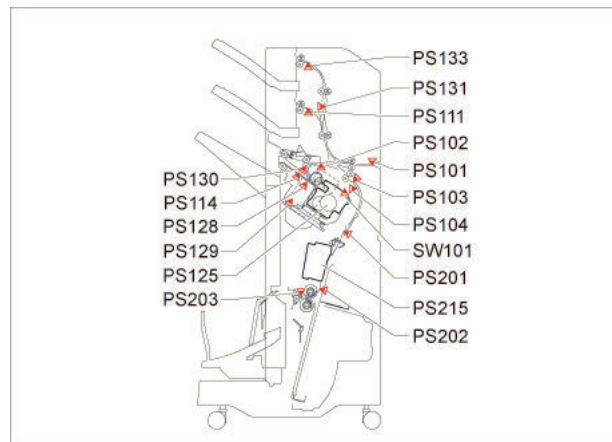
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021103: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1103

### [Symptom/Question]

021103: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1103

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Buffer Sensor

Sensor No. : PS103

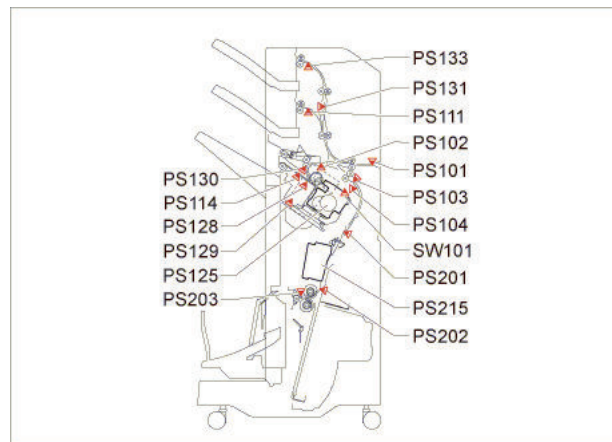
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021104: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1104

### [Symptom/Question]

021104: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1104

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Lower Escape Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS111

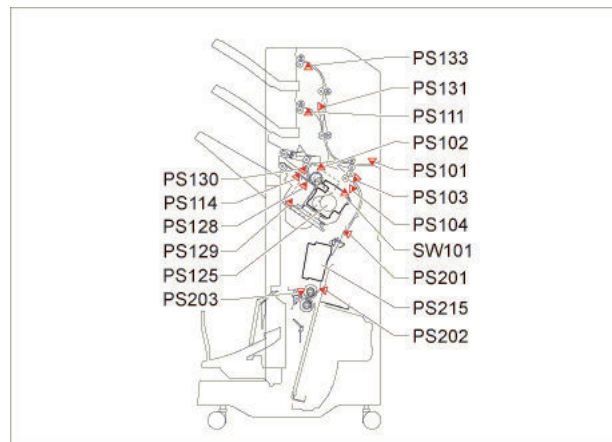
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021105: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1105

### [Symptom/Question]

021105: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1105

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Upper Escape Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS133

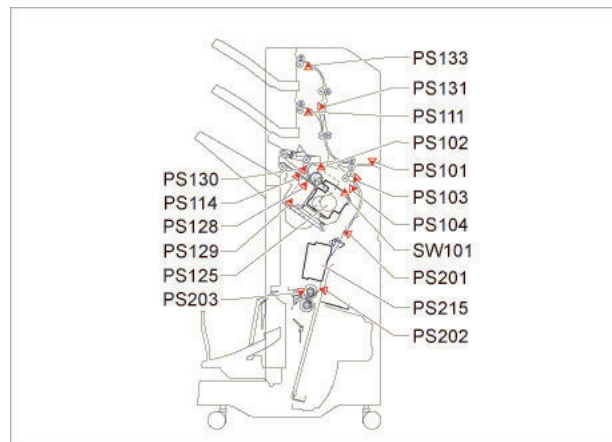
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021106: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1106

### [Symptom/Question]

021106: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1106

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Escape Feed Sensor

Sensor No. : PS131

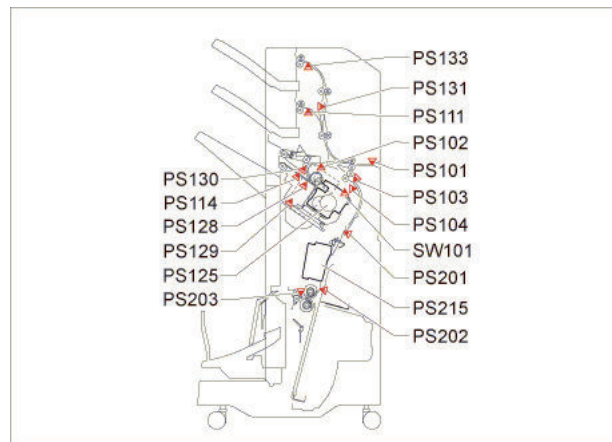
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor





## ■ 021108: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1108

### [Symptom/Question]

021108: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1108

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Saddle Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS203

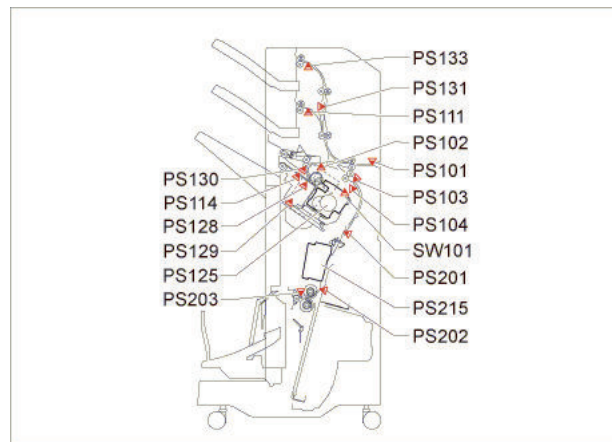
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021109: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1109

### [Symptom/Question]

021109: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1109

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Saddle Inlet Sensor

Sensor No. : PS201

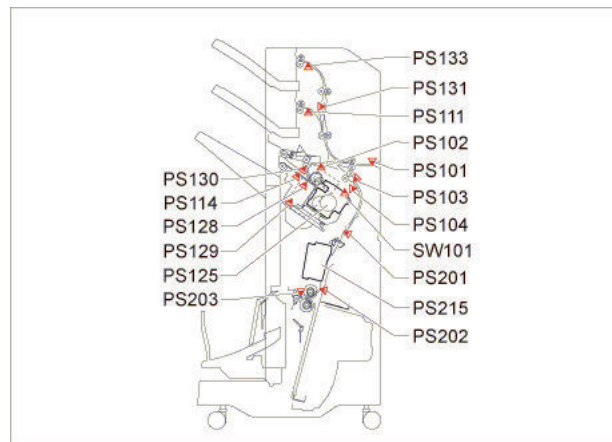
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021110: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1110

### [Symptom/Question]

021110: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1110

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Paper Registration Sensor

Sensor No. : S4

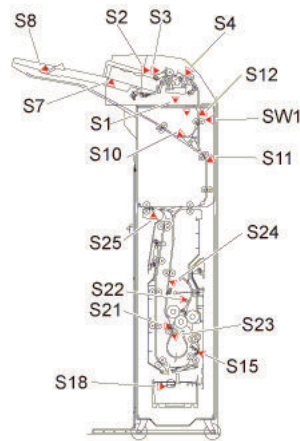
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021111: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1111

### [Symptom/Question]

021111: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1111

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Paper Registration Sensor

Reverse Entrance Sensor

Sensor No. : S4,S12

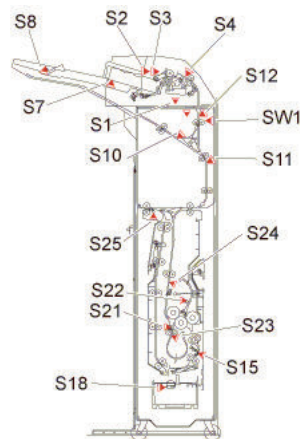
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021112: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1112

### [Symptom/Question]

021112: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1112

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Reverse Sensor

Reverse Entrance Sensor

Sensor No. : S10,S12

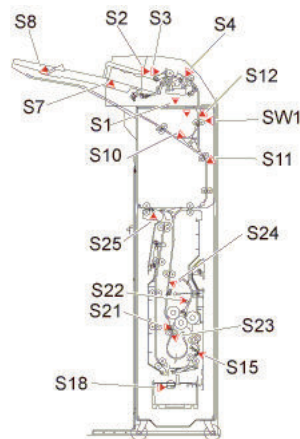
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021113: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1113

### [Symptom/Question]

021113: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1113

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Reverse Sensor

Reverse Timing Sensor

Reverse Entrance Sensor

Sensor No. : S10,S11,S12

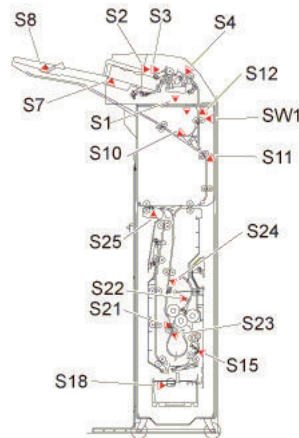
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021114: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1114

### [Symptom/Question]

021114: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1114

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Slowdown Timing Sensor

Sensor No. : S24

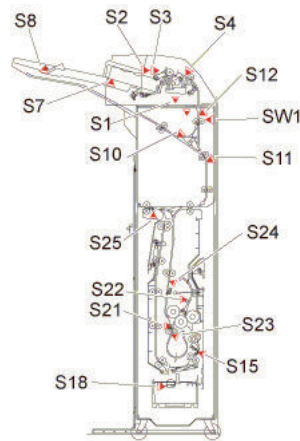
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021115: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1115

### [Symptom/Question]

021115: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1115

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Release Timing Sensor

Fold Position Sensor

Sensor No. : S21,S23

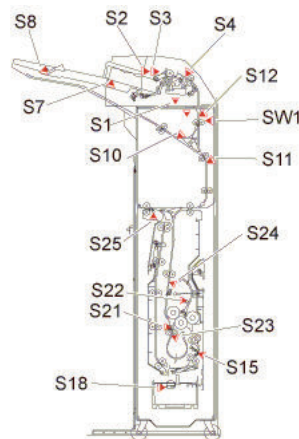
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor





## ■ 021116: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1116

### [Symptom/Question]

021116: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1116

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Fold Position Sensor

Sensor No. : S23

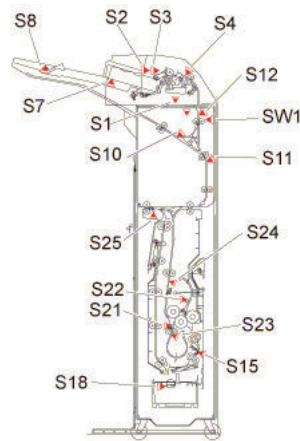
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021117: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1117

### [Symptom/Question]

021117: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1117

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Upper Stopper Path Sensor

Sensor No. : S22

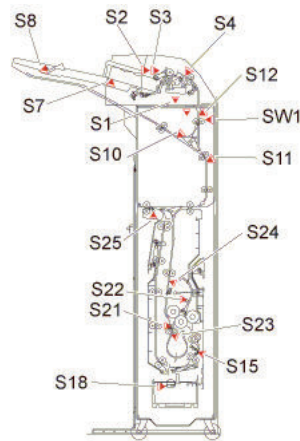
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021118: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1118

### [Symptom/Question]

021118: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1118

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Delivery Sensor 1

Upper Stopper Path Sensor

Sensor No. : S15,S22

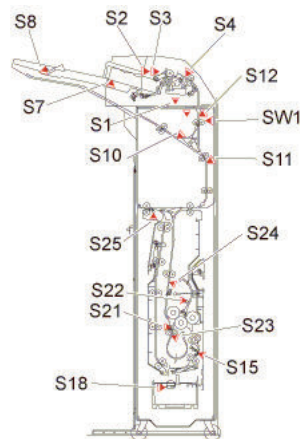
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021119: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1119

### [Symptom/Question]

021119: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1119

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Delivery Sensor 1

Delivery Sensor 2

Sensor No. : S15,S25

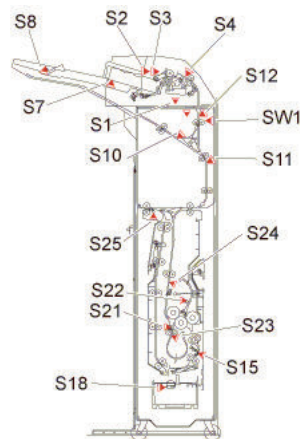
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 02111A: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 111A

### [Symptom/Question]

02111A: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 111A

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Stationary jam

Sensor Name : Delivery Sensor 1

C Fold Tray Empty Sensor

Sensor No. : S15,S18

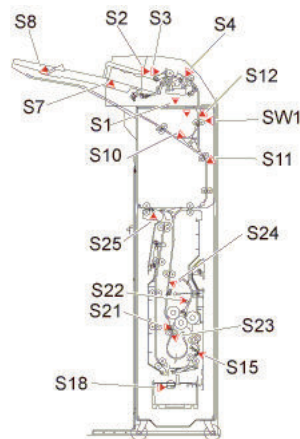
Overview of detection

A stationary jam occurs when a sensor was not turned OFF although a specified period of time had passed after the sensor was turned ON.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper near the target sensor
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Displacement of the target sensor position
- Failure of the target sensor
- Soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor located upstream of the target sensor
- Soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller located upstream of the target sensor



## ■ 021200: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1200

### [Symptom/Question]

021200: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1200

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

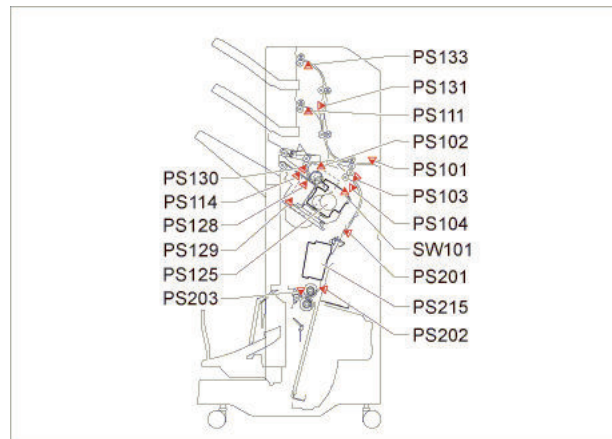
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 021301: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1301

### [Symptom/Question]

021301: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1301

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Inlet Sensor

Sensor No. : PS101

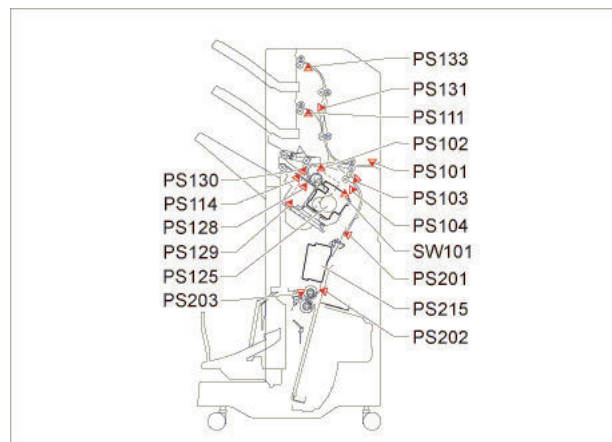
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 021302: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1302

### [Symptom/Question]

021302: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1302

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS102

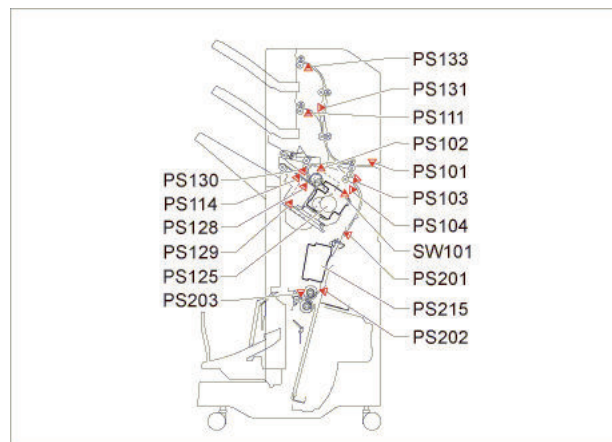
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)





## ■ 021303: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1303

### [Symptom/Question]

021303: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1303

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Buffer Sensor

Sensor No. : PS103

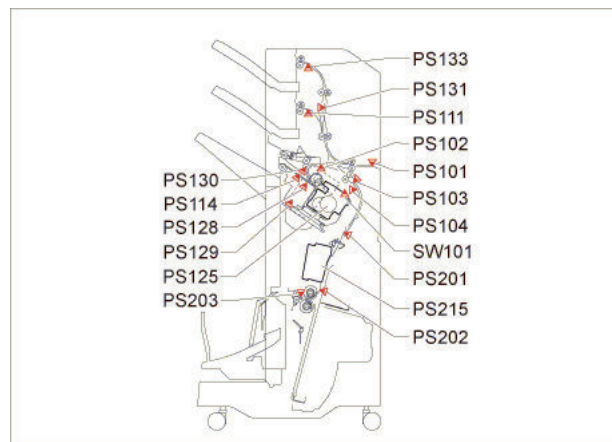
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 021304: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1304

### [Symptom/Question]

021304: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1304

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Lower Escape Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS111

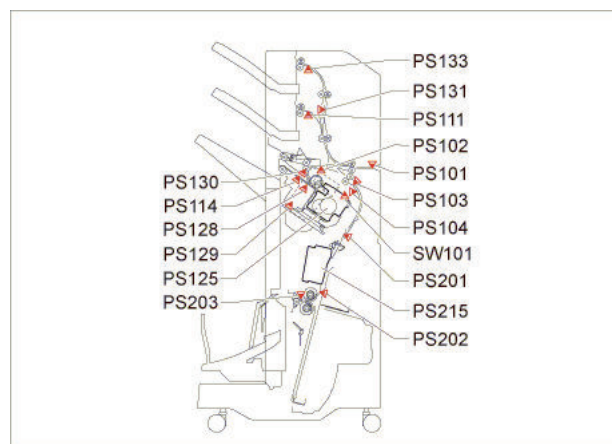
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 021305: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1305

### [Symptom/Question]

021305: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1305

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Upper Escape Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS133

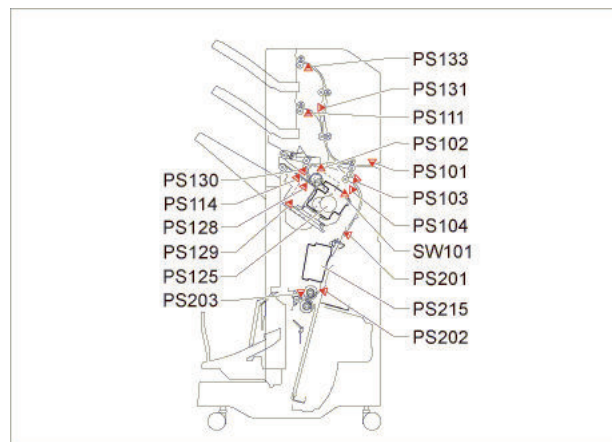
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 021306: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1306

### [Symptom/Question]

021306: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1306

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Escape Feed Sensor

Sensor No. : PS131

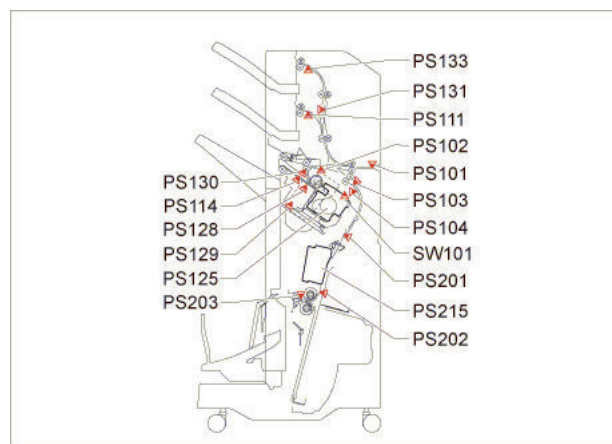
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 021307: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1307

### [Symptom/Question]

021307: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1307

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Saddle Processing Tray Paper Sensor

Sensor No. : PS202

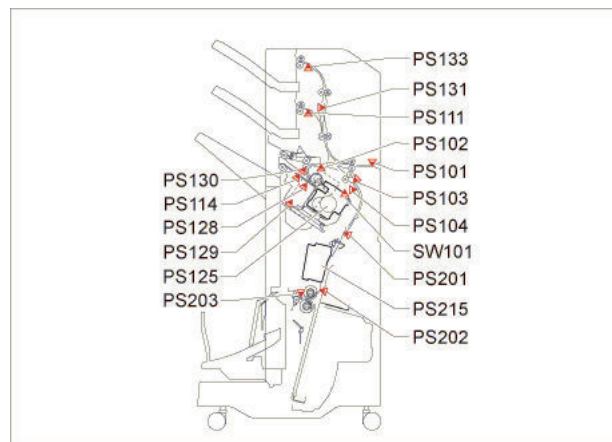
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 021308: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1308

### [Symptom/Question]

021308: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1308

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Saddle Delivery Sensor

Sensor No. : PS203

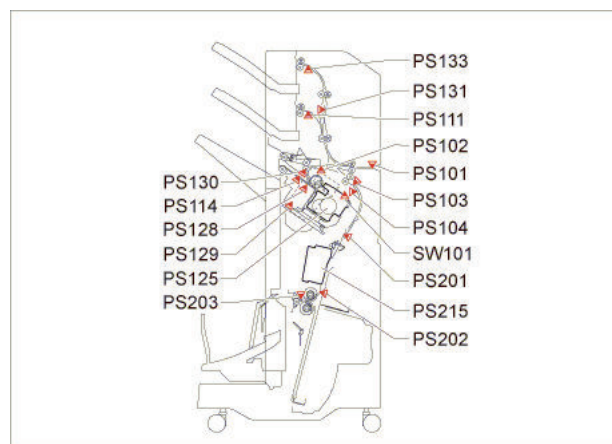
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 021309: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1309

### [Symptom/Question]

021309: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1309

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Saddle Inlet Sensor

Sensor No. : PS201

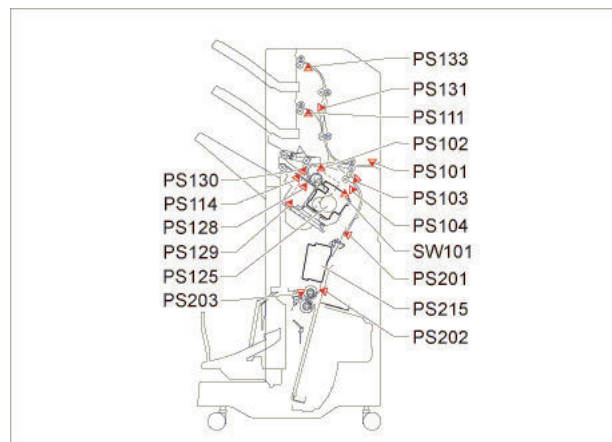
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 021310: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1310

### [Symptom/Question]

021310: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1310

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

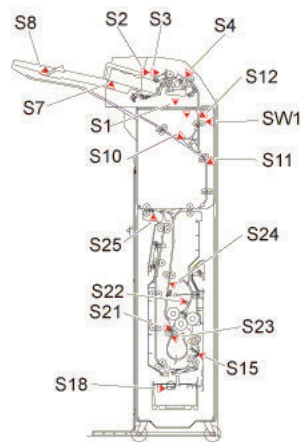
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)





## ■ 021400: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1400

### [Symptom/Question]

021400: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1400

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : COVER Open jam

Sensor Name : Front Cover Sensor/Front Cover Switch

Sensor No. : PS104,SW101

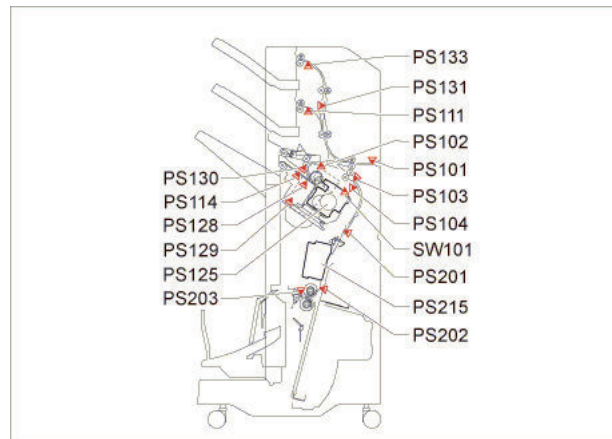
Overview of detection

A door open jam occurs when a sensor detected cover open during printing operation.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Cover open during printing



## ■ 021404: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1404

### [Symptom/Question]

021404: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1404

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Power-on jam

Sensor Name : Front Upper Cover Open/Close Sensor

Inserter Open/Close Sensor

Top Cover Open/Close Sensor

Sensor No. : SW1,S1,S2

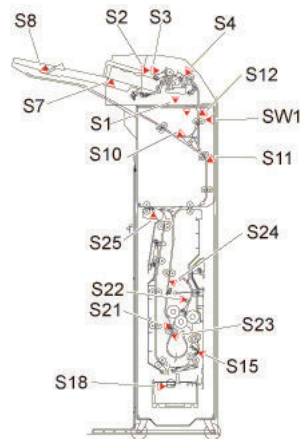
Overview of detection

A power-on jam occurs when a sensor detected ON state at power-on.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Remaining paper in the machine
- Soiling on the target sensor
- Failure of the target sensor
- Foreign matter on the target sensor (paper dust, paper lint)



## ■ 021500: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1500

### [Symptom/Question]

021500: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1500

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : STAPLE

Sensor Name : Staple HP Sensor

Sensor No. : PS125

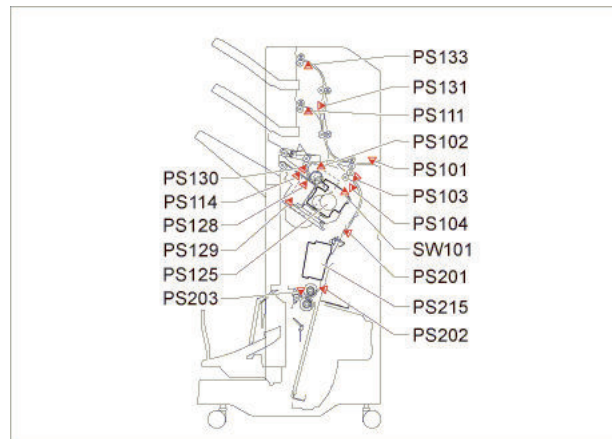
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 021501: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1501

### [Symptom/Question]

021501: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1501

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : SDL STP

Sensor Name : Saddle Sticher HP Sensor

Sensor No. : PS215

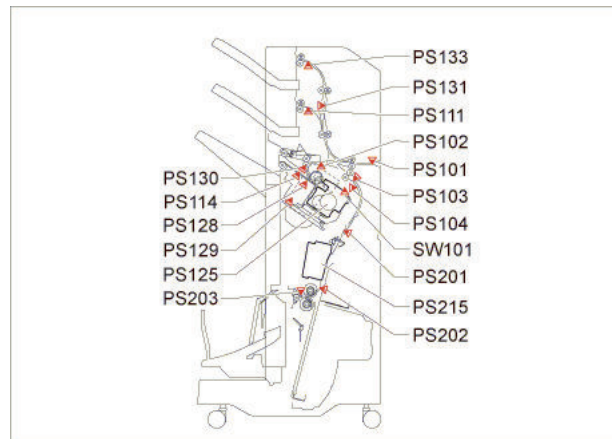
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 021600: JamCode (PUNCHER UNIT-A1) 1600

### [Symptom/Question]

021600: JamCode (PUNCHER UNIT-A1) 1600

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : PUNCH

Sensor Name : Punch HP Sensor 1/Punch HP Sensor 2

Sensor No. : PS303,PS304

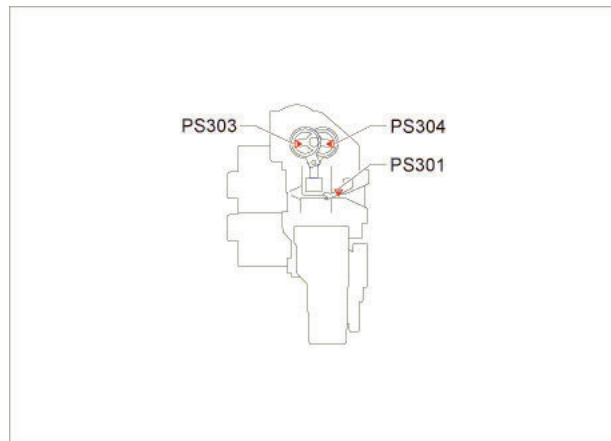
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 021801: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1801

### [Symptom/Question]

021801: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1801

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : Staple-free Binding Motor Clock Sensor

Sensor No. : PS130

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

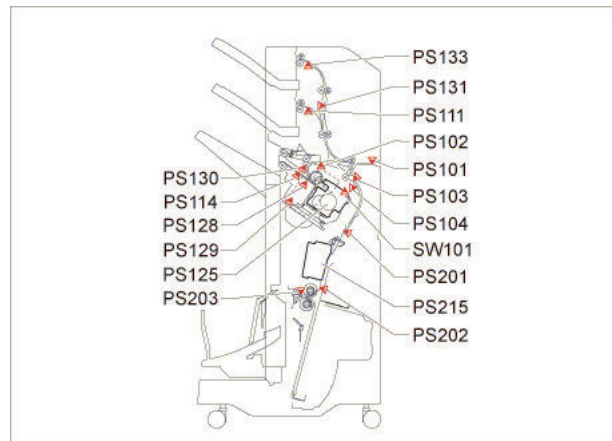
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021802: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1802

### [Symptom/Question]

021802: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1802

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : Staple-free Binding HP Sensor

Sensor No. : PS129

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

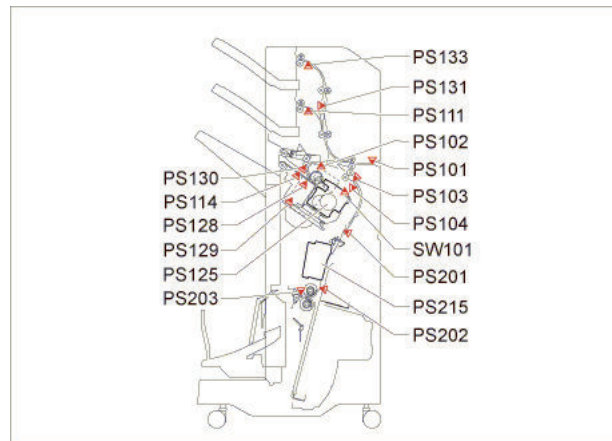
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021803: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1803

### [Symptom/Question]

021803: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1803

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

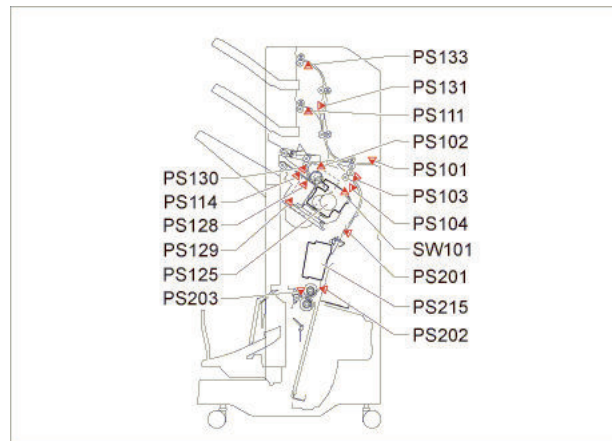
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal





## ■ 021804: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1804

### [Symptom/Question]

021804: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1804

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

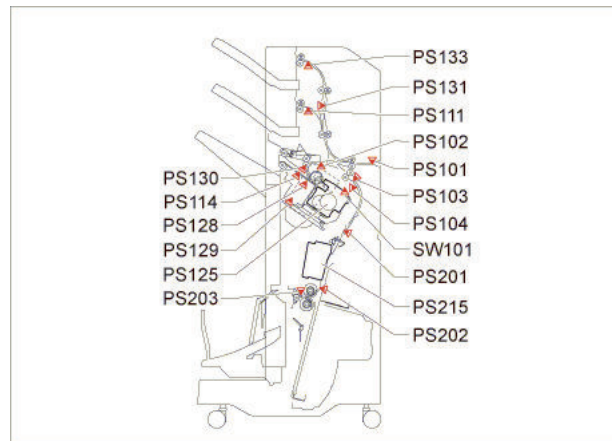
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021805: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1805

### [Symptom/Question]

021805: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1805

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

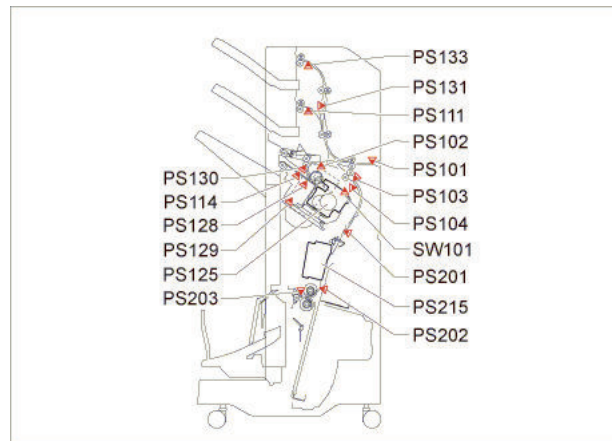
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021C14: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C14

### [Symptom/Question]

021C14: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C14

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

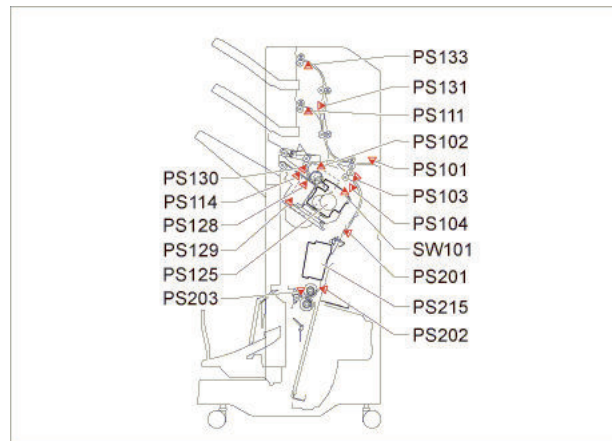
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021C30: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C30

### [Symptom/Question]

021C30: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C30

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

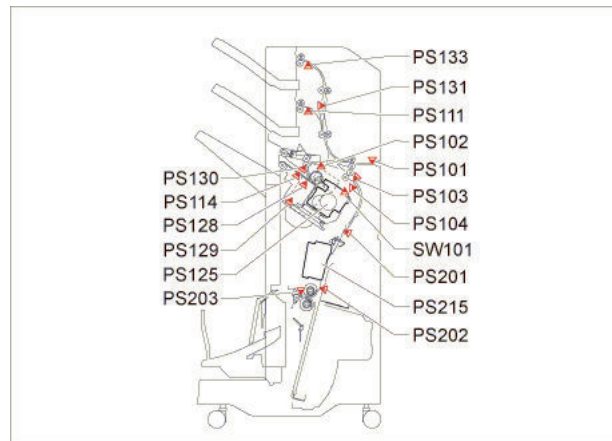
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021C32: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C32

### [Symptom/Question]

021C32: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C32

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

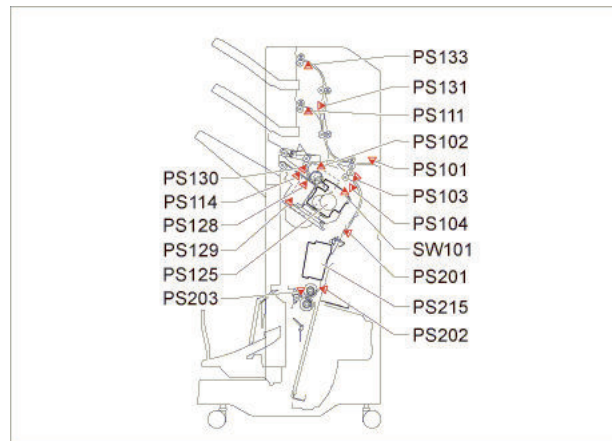
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021C35: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C35

### [Symptom/Question]

021C35: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C35

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

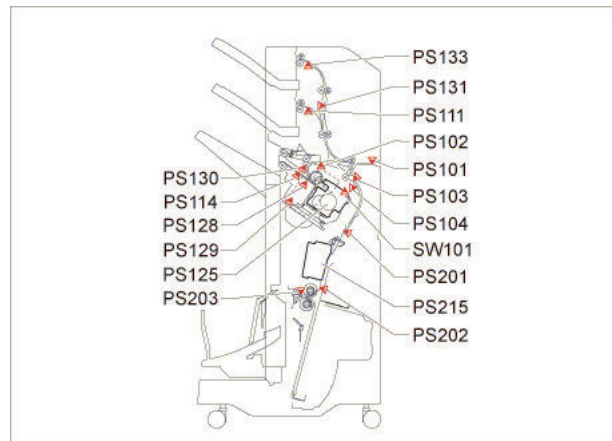
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021C37: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C37

### [Symptom/Question]

021C37: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C37

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

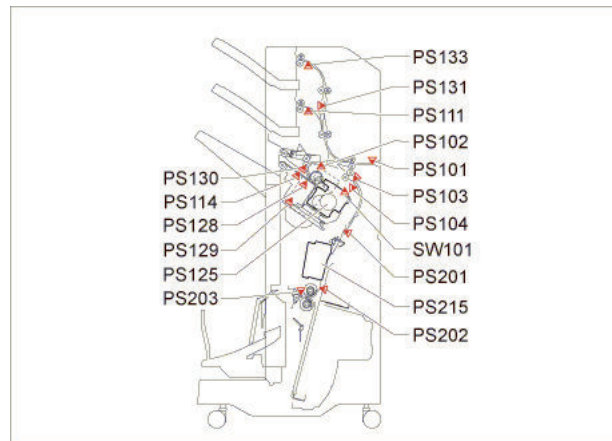
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021C40: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C40

### [Symptom/Question]

021C40: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C40

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

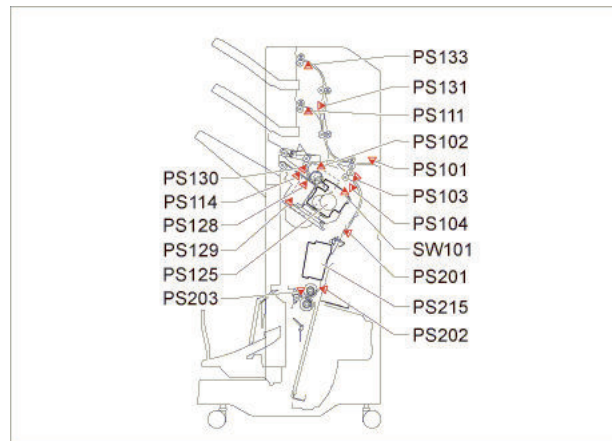
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal





## ■ 021C53: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C53

### [Symptom/Question]

021C53: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C53

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

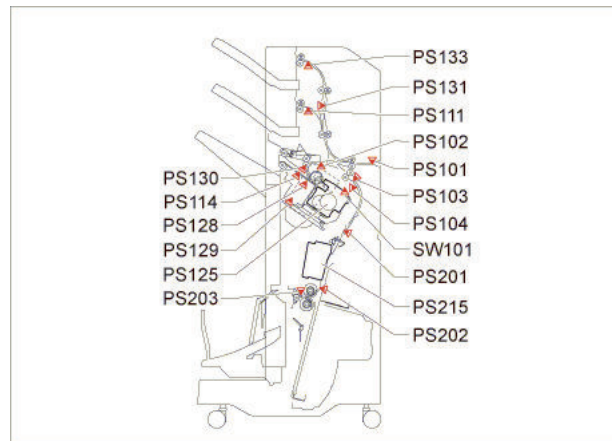
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021C54: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C54

### [Symptom/Question]

021C54: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C54

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

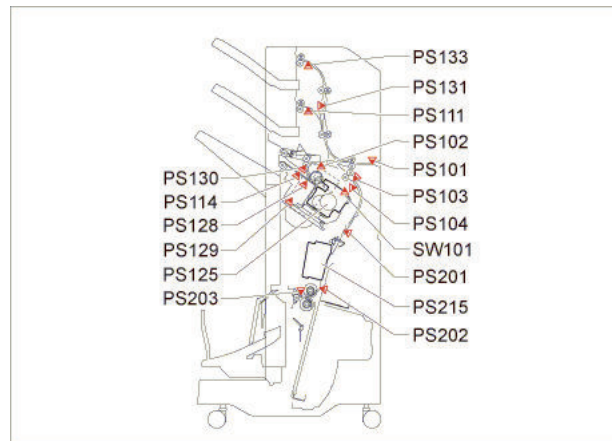
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021C6D: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C6D

### [Symptom/Question]

021C6D: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C6D

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

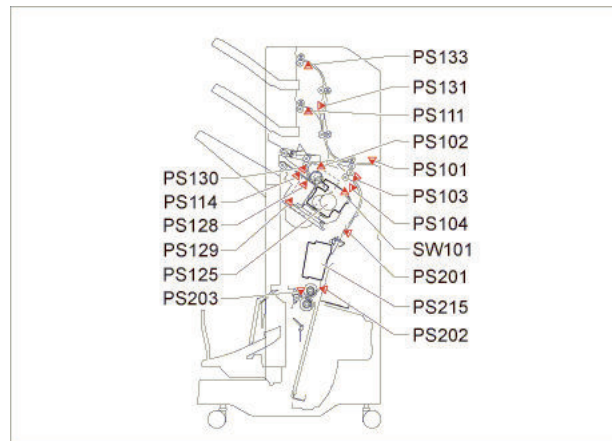
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021C77: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C77

### [Symptom/Question]

021C77: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C77

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

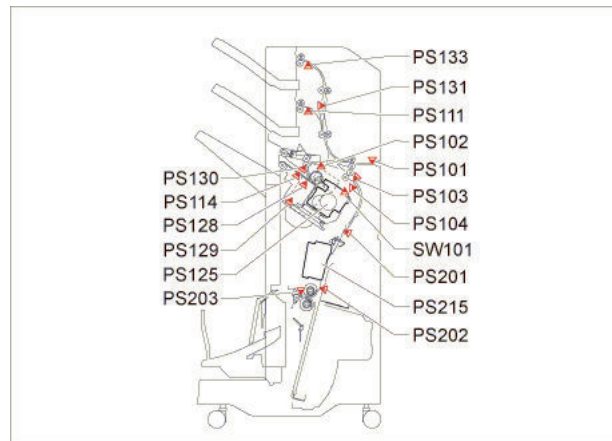
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021C78: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C78

### [Symptom/Question]

021C78: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C78

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

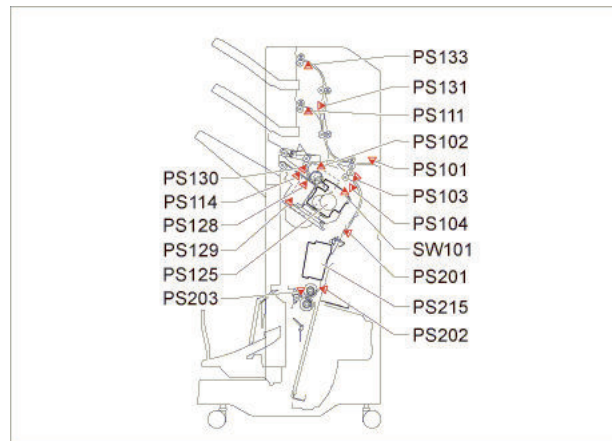
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021C7B: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C7B

### [Symptom/Question]

021C7B: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C7B

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

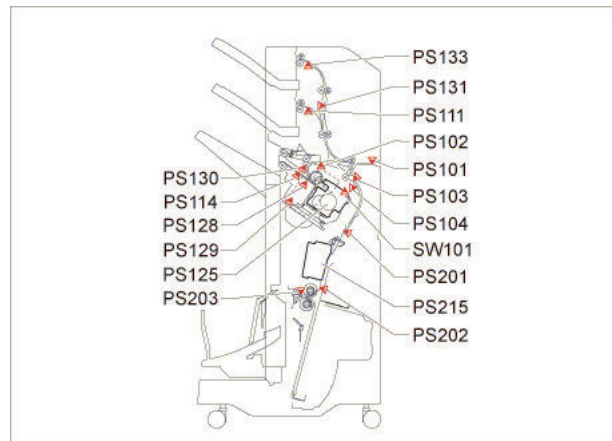
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021C83: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C83

### [Symptom/Question]

021C83: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1C83

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

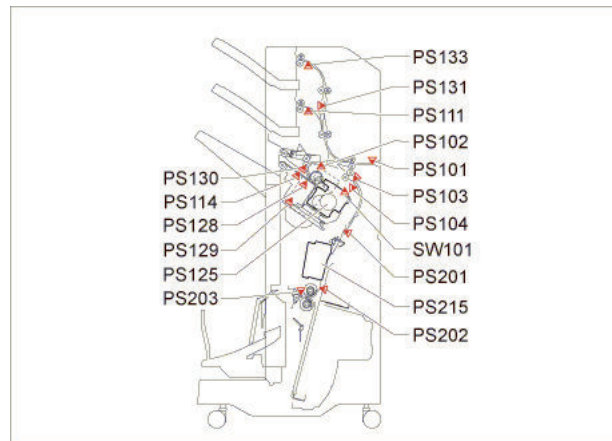
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021C90: JamCode (PUNCHER UNIT-A1) 1C90

### [Symptom/Question]

021C90: JamCode (PUNCHER UNIT-A1) 1C90

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

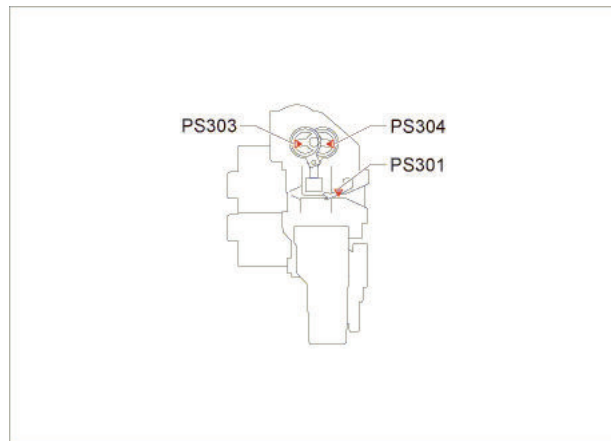
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal





## ■ 021C93: JamCode (PUNCHER UNIT-A1) 1C93

### [Symptom/Question]

021C93: JamCode (PUNCHER UNIT-A1) 1C93

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

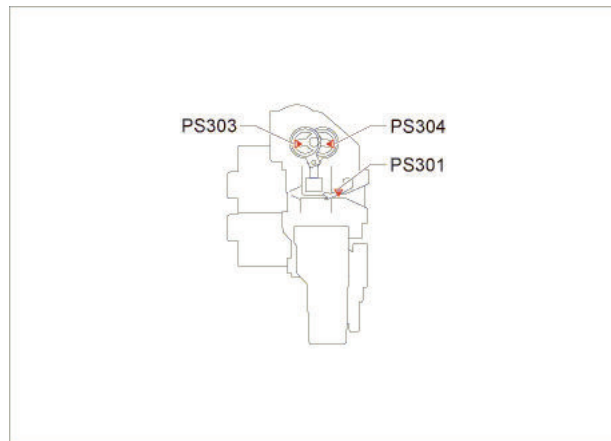
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021CF0: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1CF0

### [Symptom/Question]

021CF0: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1CF0

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

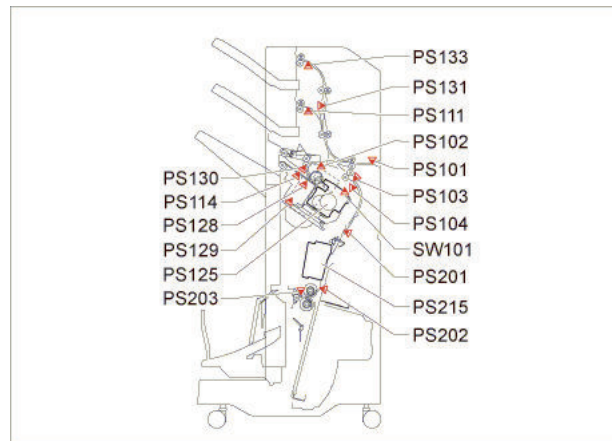
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021CF1: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1CF1

### [Symptom/Question]

021CF1: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1CF1

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

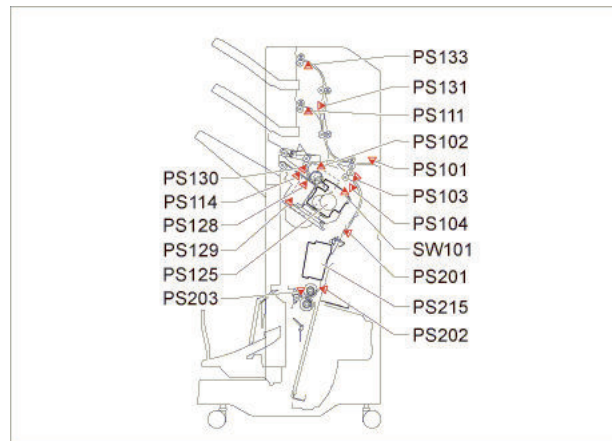
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021CF3: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1CF3

### [Symptom/Question]

021CF3: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1CF3

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

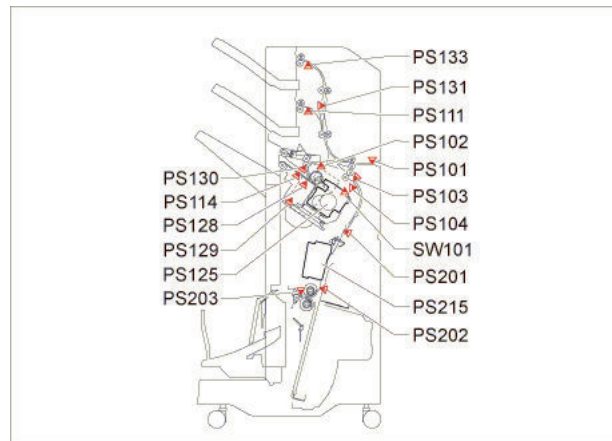
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021CF6: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1CF6

### [Symptom/Question]

021CF6: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1CF6

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

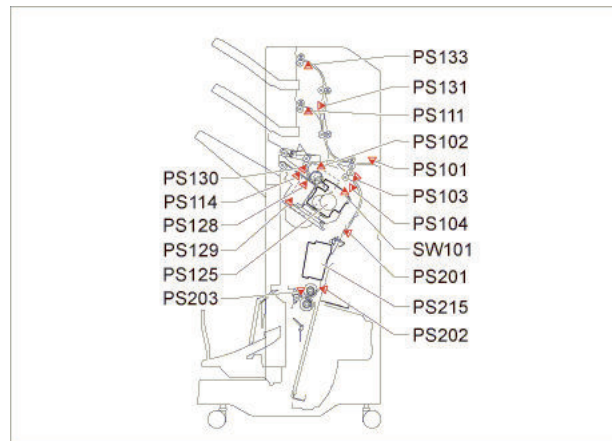
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021CF8: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1CF8

### [Symptom/Question]

021CF8: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1CF8

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

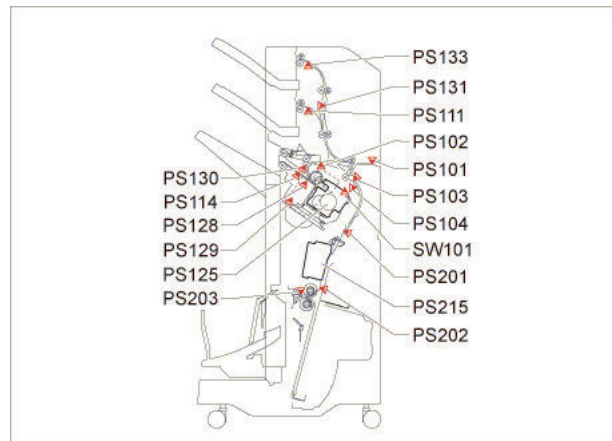
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021CFA: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1CFA

### [Symptom/Question]

021CFA: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1CFA

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Error avoidance

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

An error avoidance jam occurs when an error in the machine (excluding parts failure) was detected.

Printing operation is suspended to avoid error occurrence by error code; therefore, parts failure is not the cause of the jam.

After the jam is removed, the machine works.

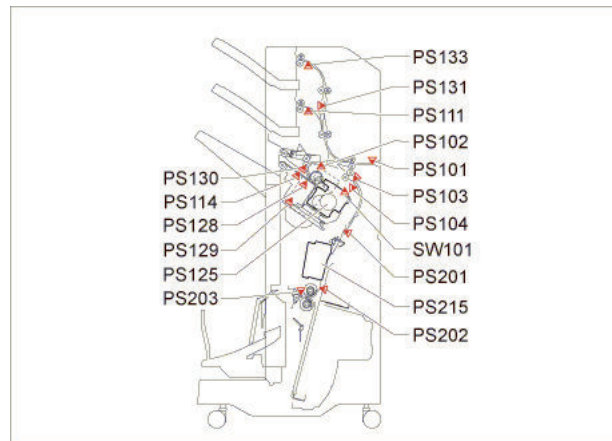
If it is due to parts failure, an error code instead of the error avoidance jam is displayed on UI and printing operation is suspended.

In such case, service technician should perform remedial work for the error code.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door after jam removal
- Turning OFF and then ON the power after jam removal



## ■ 021F01: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1F01

### [Symptom/Question]

021F01: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1F01

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

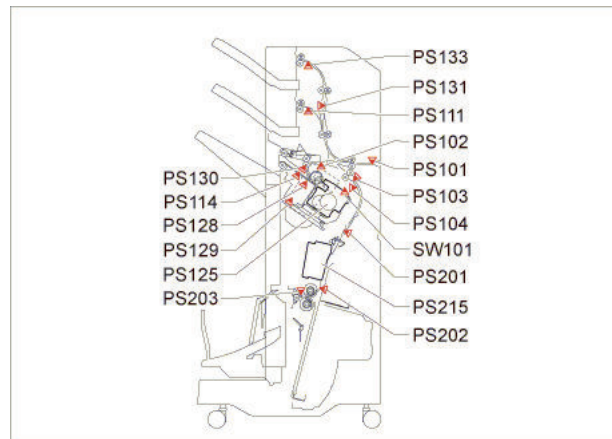
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-





## ■ 021F32: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1F32

### [Symptom/Question]

021F32: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1F32

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

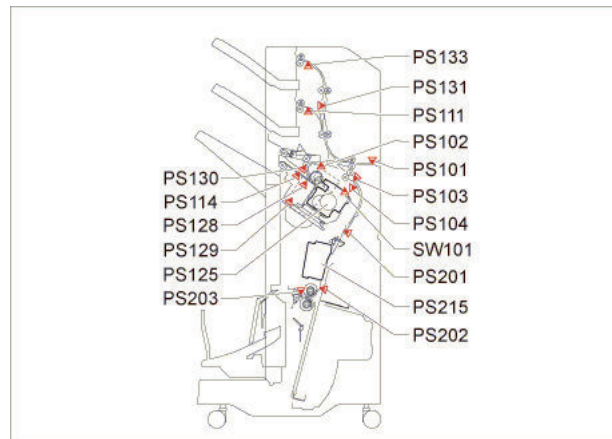
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-



## ■ 021F90: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1F90

### [Symptom/Question]

021F90: JamCode (Staple/Booklet Finisher-AC1) 1F90

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : Sequence jam

Sensor Name : -

Sensor No. : -

Overview of detection

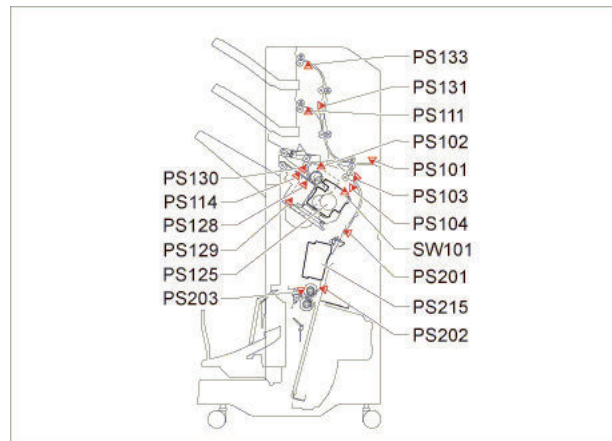
A sequence jam occurs when there was an error in sensor detection signal at printing operation sequence.

Since the jam may occur due to sporadic noise with software of each equipment or communication line (interruption of communication), failure of the part is not the cause of the jam. After the jam is removed, the machine works.

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

- Opening/closing of the door
- Turning OFF and then ON the power
- Error near the target sensor (soiling/displacement/failure of the sensor, error in harness/open circuit of harness, soiling (grease)/deterioration/failure of a drive motor, or soiling (paper dust)/deterioration/failure of a drive roller)



## ■ 021FD1: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1FD1

### [Symptom/Question]

021FD1: JamCode (Document Insertion / Folding Unit-J1) 1FD1

### [Remedy/Answer]

Jam Type : OTHER

Sensor Name : Tray Paper Sensor 1

Tray Paper Sensor 2

Sensor No. : S7,S8

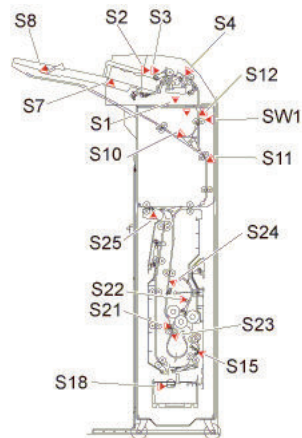
Overview of detection

-

I/O: Service Mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check

Check items (in arbitrary order)

-





# Service Mode

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Overview.....                                      | 1128 |
| COPIER (Service mode for printer)<br>.....         | 1145 |
| FEEDER (ADF service mode).....                     | 1404 |
| SORTER (Service mode for delivery<br>options)..... | 1413 |
| BOARD (Option board setting mode)<br>.....         | 1432 |
| FAX (Service Mode for FAX).....                    | 1433 |

## Overview

It is possible to see each item of service mode so that those who access to service mode can understand how to use them. The main types of this machine's service mode are shown below.

### Basic Operations

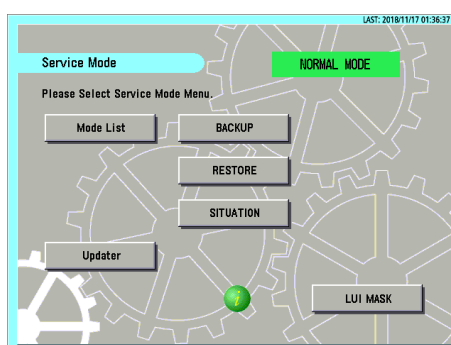
This section describes the basic operation of service mode.

#### ■ Entering Service Mode

For information on how to enter service mode, contact the Support Dept. of the sales company.

#### ■ Service Mode Menu

Press the button in the service mode menu to display the initial screen of each mode. The differences between these modes are described below.



Top Screen

#### MODELIST

In this mode, functions for referring to each item in service mode, etc. are available.

#### Updater

This button is used to access the CDS and UGW servers and update system software.

#### BACKUP

This button is used to back up the service mode setting values.

#### RESTORE

This button is used to restore the service mode setting values backed up by [BACKUP].

#### SITUATION

This function displays service mode items according to the situation.

#### LUI MASK

This button is used to display a mask screen to prevent operations from being performed from the Control Panel while the service mode is being accessed from a remote PC.

#### NOTE:

For the detailed information on how to use Updater, BACKUP, and RESTORE, refer to the imageRUNNER ADVANCE System Service Manual.

#### ■ Description of Service Mode Items

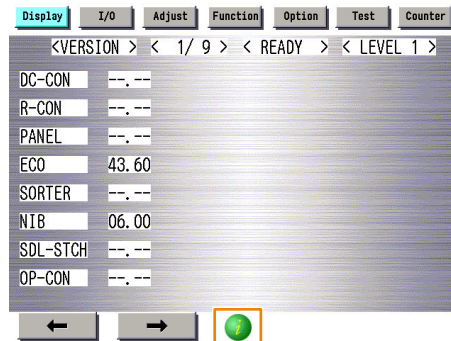
The description of the initial screen, the main items, the intermediate items and the sub items can be displayed. After selecting any item of the initial screen, main item, the intermediate item or the sub item, pressing "i" (Information Button) displays the description of the selected item (hereinafter referred to as the service mode contents).

**CAUTION:**

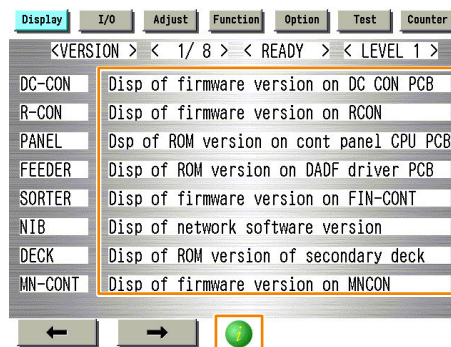
- Displayed language of the service mode contents can be selected from J/E/F/I/G/S/C/K/T.
- The service mode contents can be upgraded using SST or a USB flash drive just like other system software.

Example: COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION screen

**1. Press the [i] button.**

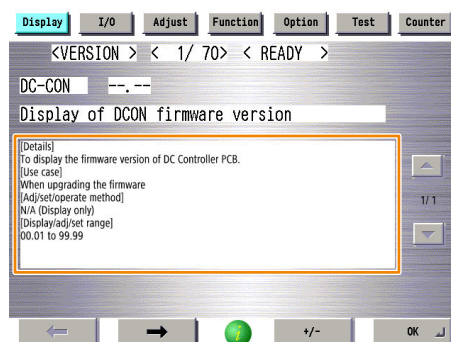


**2. The title of each sub item is displayed.**



To check the details of each item, select the relevant item and press the [i] button.

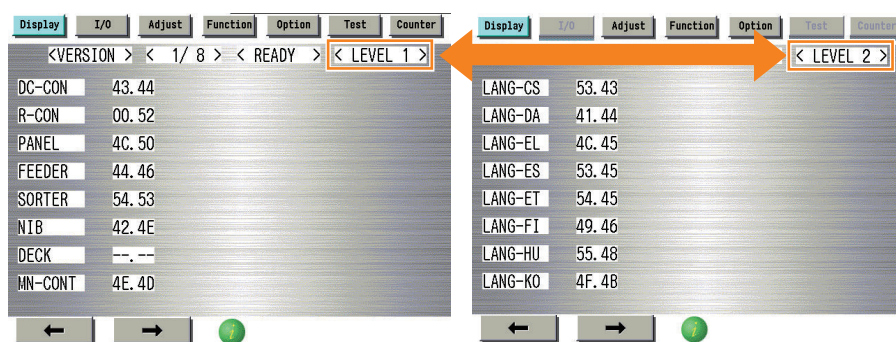
**3. A detailed description of the sub item (specifications and use methods, setting screen, etc.) is displayed.**



## ■ Switching the Screen Display (Level 1 <->2)

Switching of screens between Level 1 and Level 2 becomes easier.

By pressing <LEVEL 1> at the upper right of the screen while Level 1 screen is displayed, the screen is switched to Level 2 screen.



Examples of Screen Display

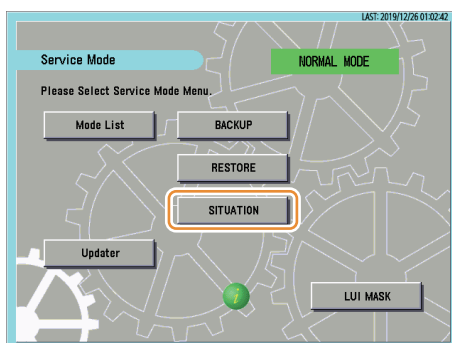
**NOTE:**

This key combination can be used to enter the Level 2 screen.

- Mode List screen > [Settings/Registration] > [2]

## SITUATION Mode

Situation mode has been implemented in this machine to improve workability and searchability at the site. This mode makes it possible to easily use the service mode appropriate for the scene at the site.

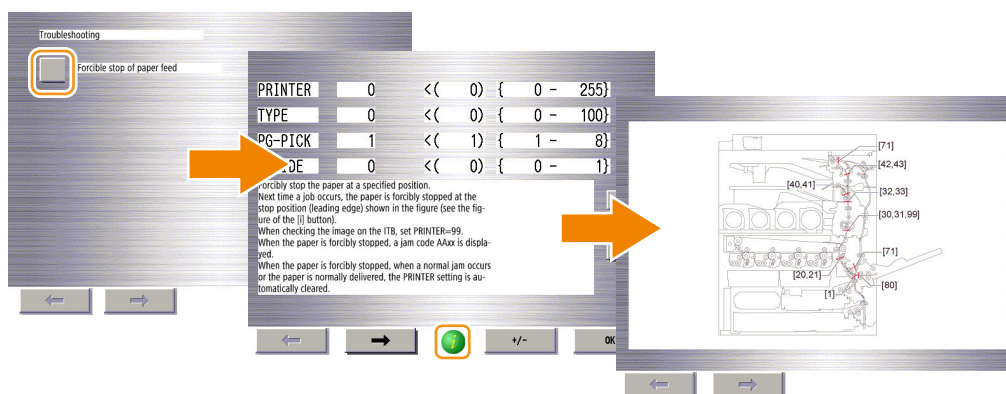


The following items are available in situation mode.

- Install:  
To be referred at installation of the machine.
- Troubleshooting:  
To be referred at problem solving.
- Parts Replacement:  
To be referred at parts replacement.
- Major Adjustment:  
To be referred at installation of the machine.
- Sensor Check:  
To be referred at checking of the sensor.
- Part Check:  
To be referred at operation check of the part.

The following three points are made available depending on each situation:

- Display of related service mode that requires adjustment
- Display of causes and remedies
- Display of related images



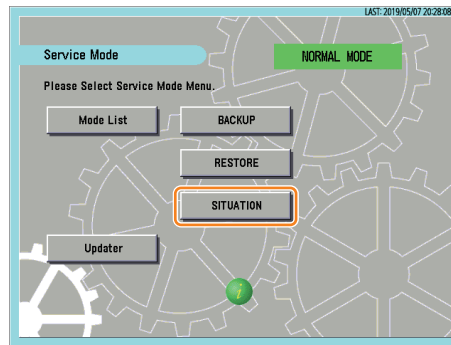
### ■ How to Use Sensor Check

You can find a desired electrical component in Sensor Check of situation mode to review its I/O info. To do this, follow the procedure below.

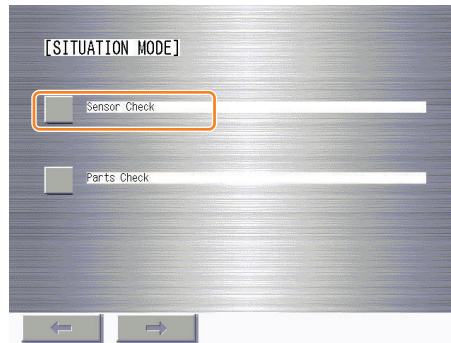
1. Start service mode.



2. Select "SITUATION".

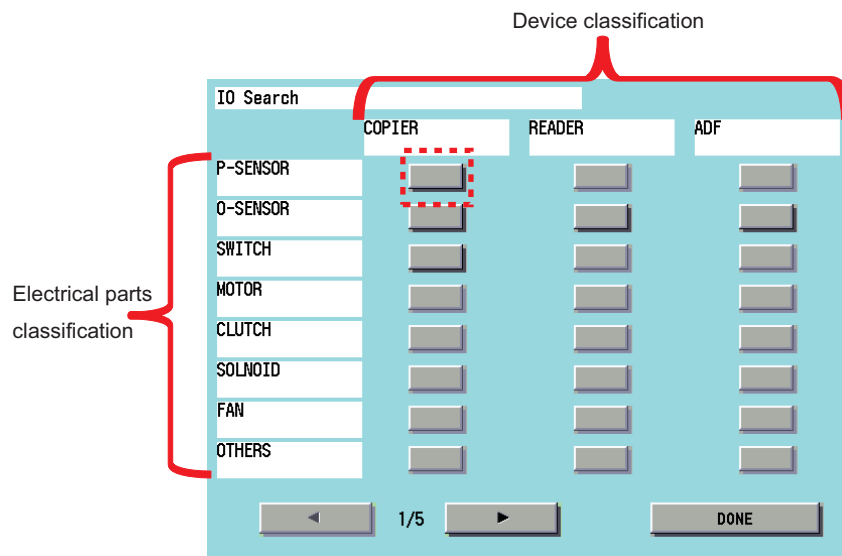


3. On the "SITUATION MODE" screen, select "Sensor Check".

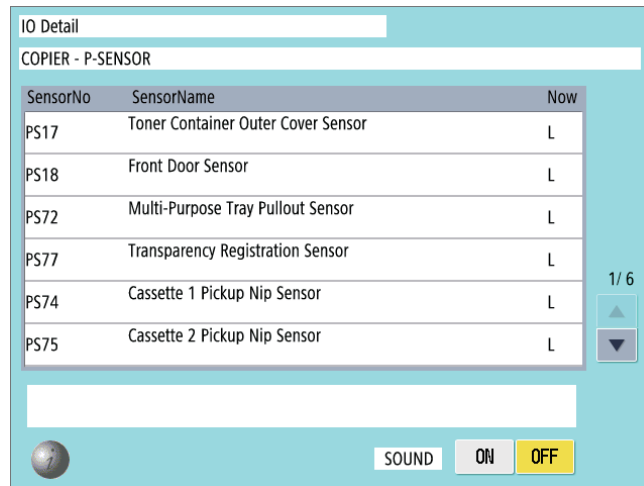


4. Press a button according to the type of electrical component and the corresponding device type.

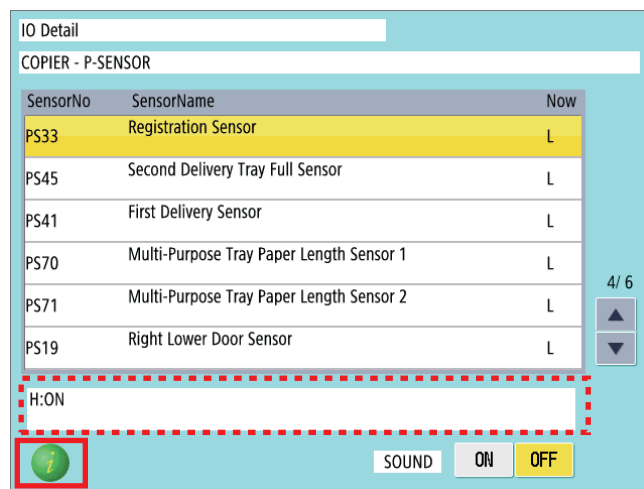
Example: In the case of the Registration Sensor of the host machine, press the button (red dotted frame) at "COPIER"/"P-SENSOR".



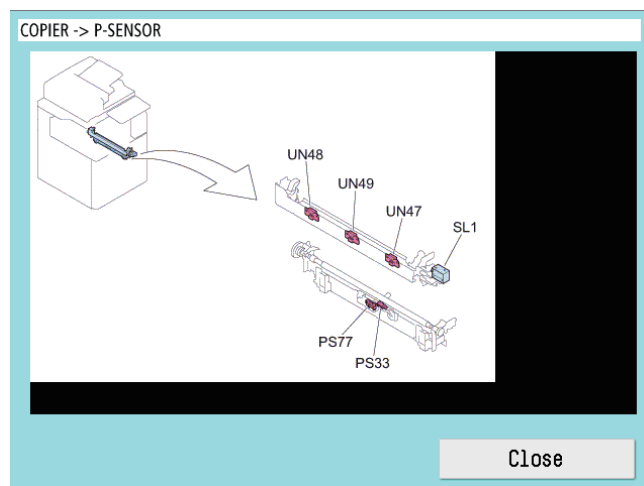
5. A list of electrical component types for the selected device is displayed.



6. Select an electrical component to display the details in the frame (red dotted frame) at the bottom of the screen.



7. Press the [i] button to display the screen showing the locations of electrical components.



## ■ How to Use Parts Check

In the Parts Check of situation mode, among electrical components used (motors, fans, solenoids, and clutches), those that can operate alone can be operated from the screen and the operations can be checked. The operation procedure is shown below.

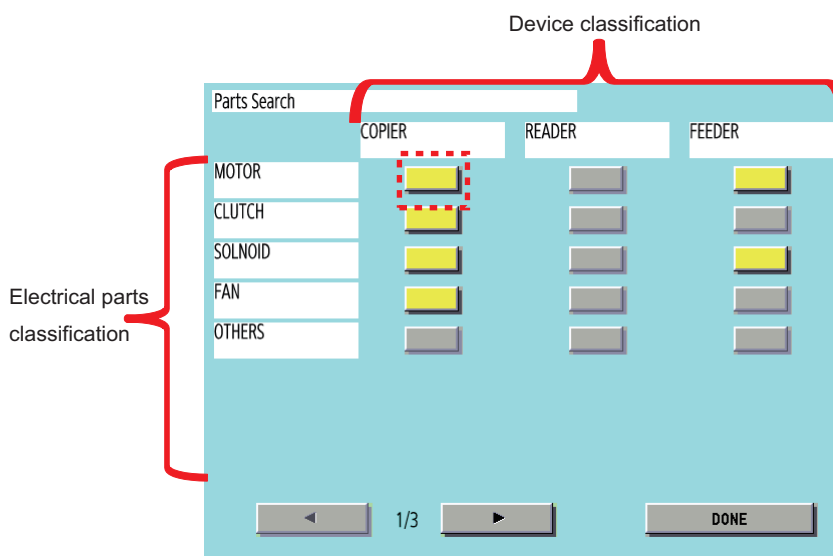
**NOTE:**

The service mode used below utilizes the system where electrical components used are operated by control signals sent from the DC Controller. If a control signal is sent but the electrical component does not operate, a failure of the electrical component, open circuit of the cable for transmitting control signals, or poor contact of the connector is suspected.

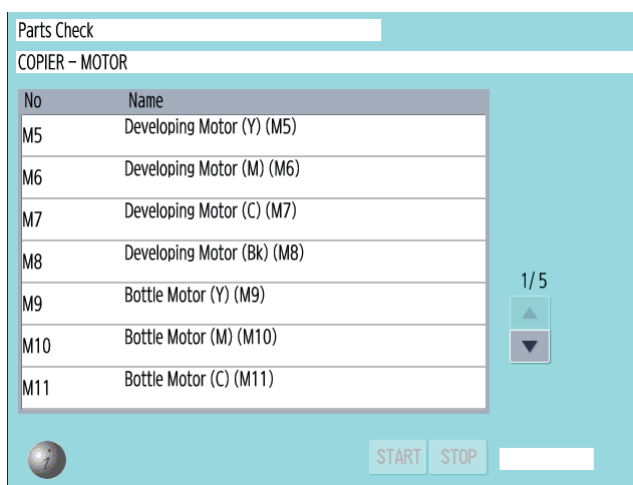
1. Select **SERVICE MODE > SITUATION > Parts Check**.

2. Press a button according to the type of electrical component and the corresponding device type.

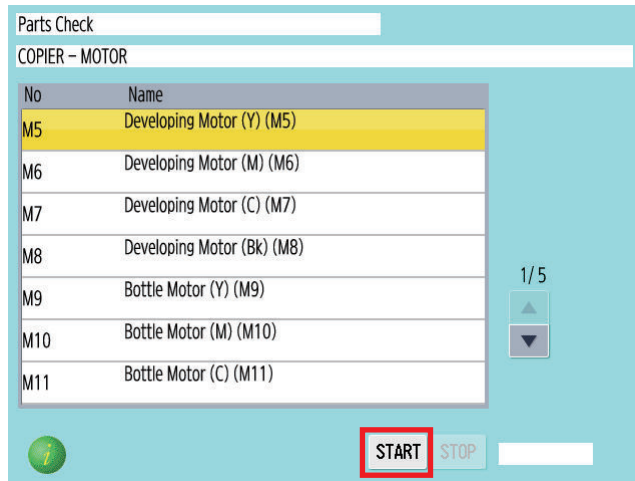
Example: In the case of a motor of the host machine, press the button (red dotted frame) at "COPIER"/"MOTOR".



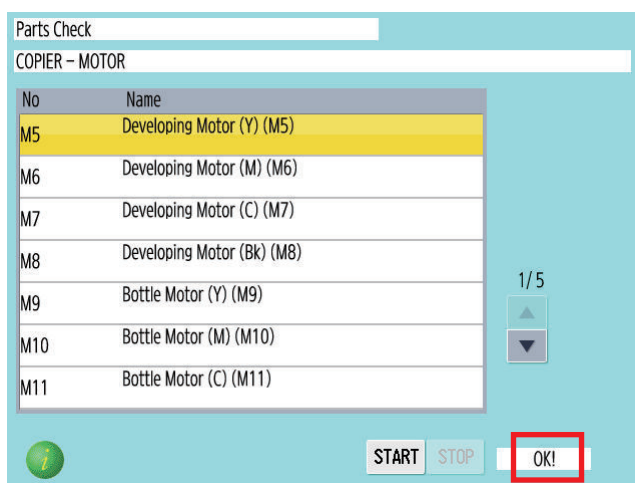
3. A list of electrical component types for the selected device whose operation can be checked is displayed.



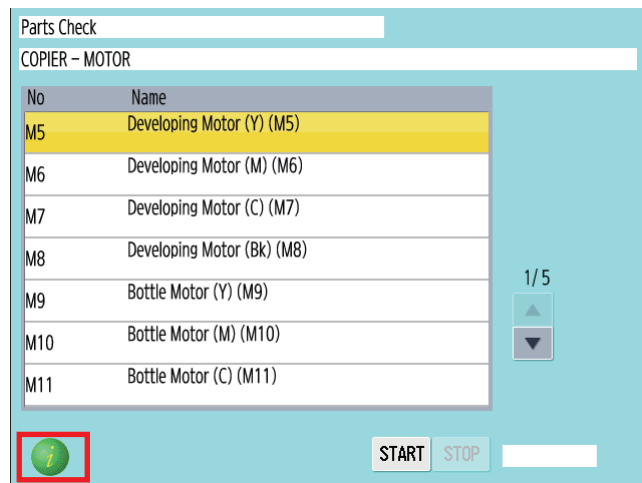
4. Select the electrical component you want to operate and then press the Start button to send a signal for driving the selected electrical component for a specified period of time from the DC Controller.



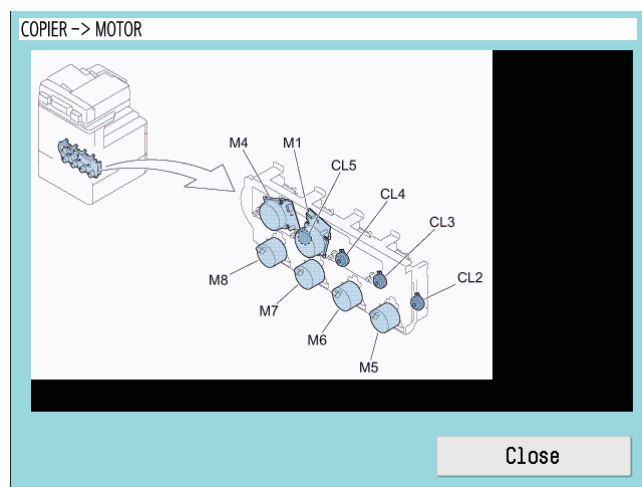
5. "ACTIVE" is displayed while the electrical component is driven. After the electrical component has been driven for a specified period of time, "OK!" is displayed if transmission of the drive signal succeeded, or "NG !" is displayed if failed.



Press the [i] button to display the screen showing the locations of electrical components.



6. The screen showing the locations of electrical components is displayed.



## Security Support

A password can be specified to prevent unauthorized access to the service mode.

### Related Service Mode:

#### Setting password type when the screen is switched to the service mode

- COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > PSWD-SW (Level 1)

#### The password for service engineer when the screen is switched to the service mode

- (Level 2) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > SM-PSWD

## ■ Procedure for Setting Password

### 1. Set "1" or "2" in the following service mode.

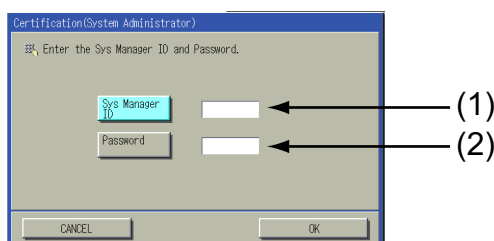
- COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > PSWD-SW  
<Setting range>
- 0: No password [Default]
- 1: Service technician
- 2: System administrator + Service technician

#### CAUTION:

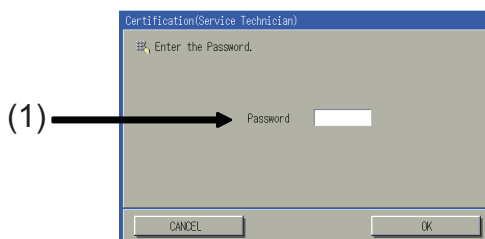
- This setting is enabled without restarting the host machine.
- After setting the password, the following screen will be displayed by accessing service mode.
- Therefore, when the PSWD-SW is set to "2" (system administrator + service technician), enter the system administrator password ([System Manager ID] and [System Manager PIN] in [Settings/Registrations] > [Management Settings] > [User Management] > [System Manager Information Settings]), and then press the [OK] button.

### 2. Follow the following procedure to check that you can login to service mode.

1. When setting PSWD-SW to "1" (system administrator) or "2" (ServiceMode\_070Backup) in step 1, the system administrator password entry screen will be displayed, so enter the system administrator ID in [Sys Manager ID ] (1) and system administrator password in [Password] (2), and then press the [OK] button.



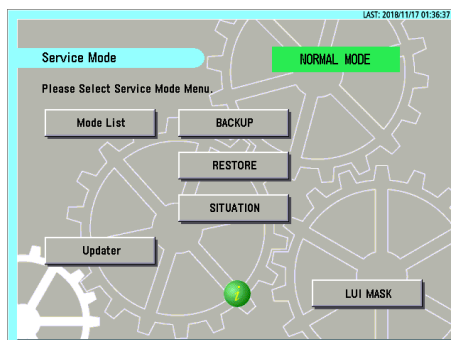
2. When setting PSWD-SW to "2" (system administrator + service technician) in step 1, the service technician password entry screen will be displayed after step 2. Enter the service technician password in [Password] (1), and then press the [OK] button.



#### CAUTION:

- The service technician password is the password set in COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > SM-PSWD.
- If you forget the password for service technician, disable the password function using the Service Support Tool (SST).

Check that you can access service mode and finish the work.



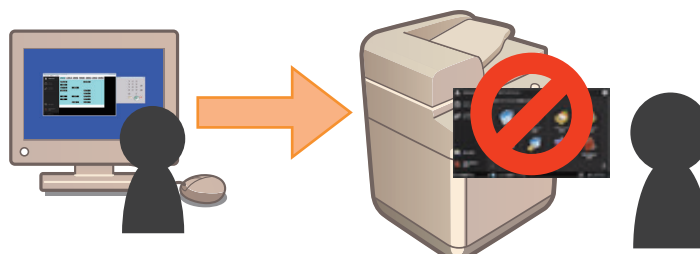
## ■ Function to Mask the Screen during Remote Access

This function ensures security during servicing work using remote connection.

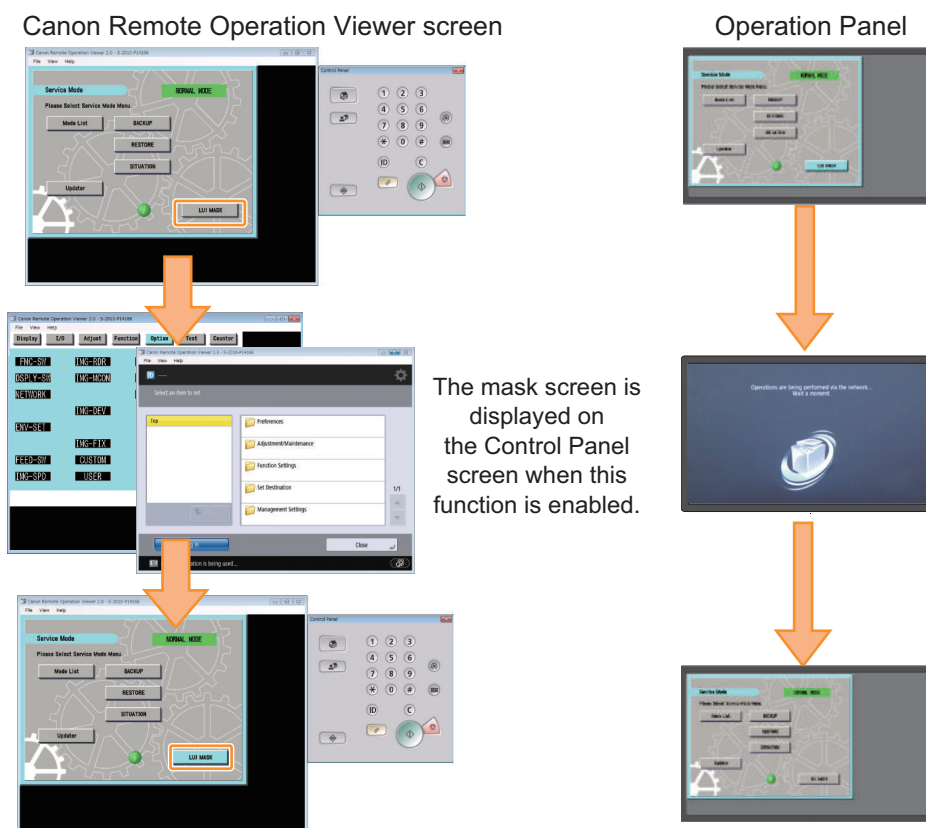
The machine has an option called Remote Operation Viewer for remote control via a network. This option enables a service technician to perform maintenance on the machine from a remote location.

However, the same screen is displayed on the Remote Operation Viewer screen and the Control Panel during the work, which carries the following risks.

- The screen being operated can be seen by the user.
- During remote operation, the user may perform an operation on the Control Panel and an unexpected processing may be executed.



To solve these security problems, a function has been added to display a message on the Control Panel screen when the machine is being operated remotely using Remote Operation Viewer in order to prevent the user from performing unexpected operations. As shown in the figure below, the mask screen is displayed when this function is enabled.

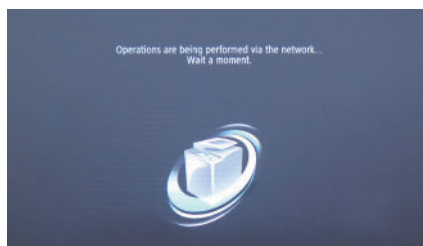


Examples of Screen Display

## Functional Specification

The specifications of this function are shown below.

- When this function is enabled, a mask screen is displayed on the Control Panel. When the function is disabled, the original screen is displayed again.



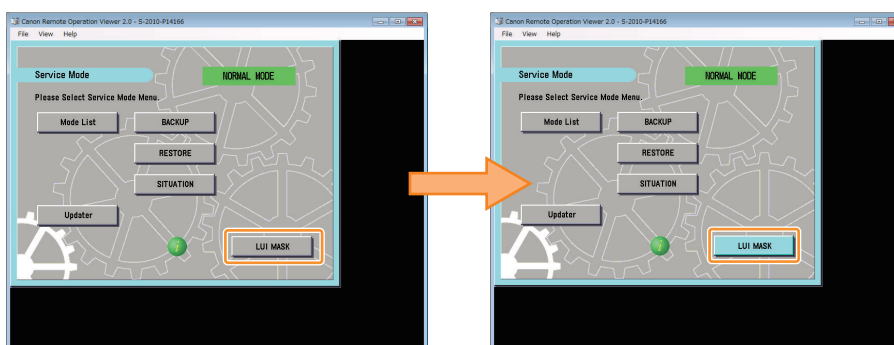
Example of the displayed mask screen

- This function is disabled when the following operations are performed.
  - Press [LUI MASK] on the service mode top screen.
  - Exit Remote Operation Viewer.
  - The remote access is disconnected due to a network failure, etc.
  - The machine is shut down (power down) or restarted.
- If this function is disabled while the service mode is being operated, the service mode is forcibly exited, and the previous screen is displayed. (However, the service mode is not forcibly terminated if the Updater screen has been accessed from service mode.)
- When this function is enabled, all operations (operations from the Touch Panel or hardware keys) other than screen brightness adjustment and operation on the Energy Saver key are disabled.

### • Procedure for Enabling This Function

The procedure for enabling this function is shown below.

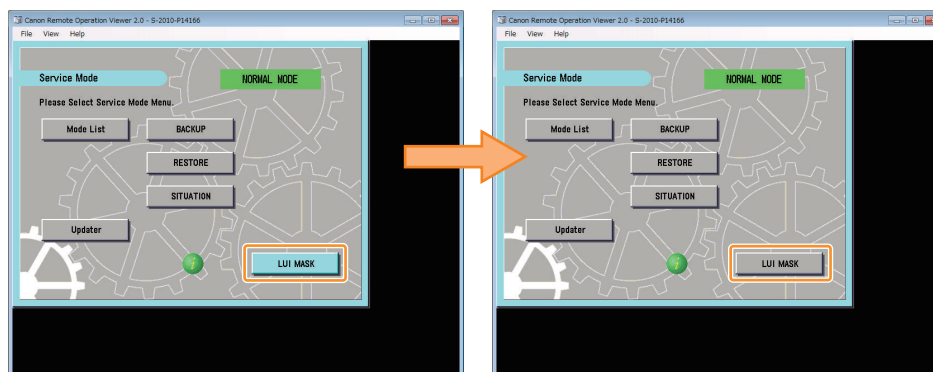
1. Use the Remote Operation Viewer to access the machine, and start service mode.
2. Press [LUI MASK], and check that the button is enabled (has turned light blue).



### • Procedure for Disabling This Function

The procedure for disabling this function is shown below.

1. Perform one of the following operations.
  - Access the service mode, press [LUI MASK], and check that the button is disabled (has turned gray).

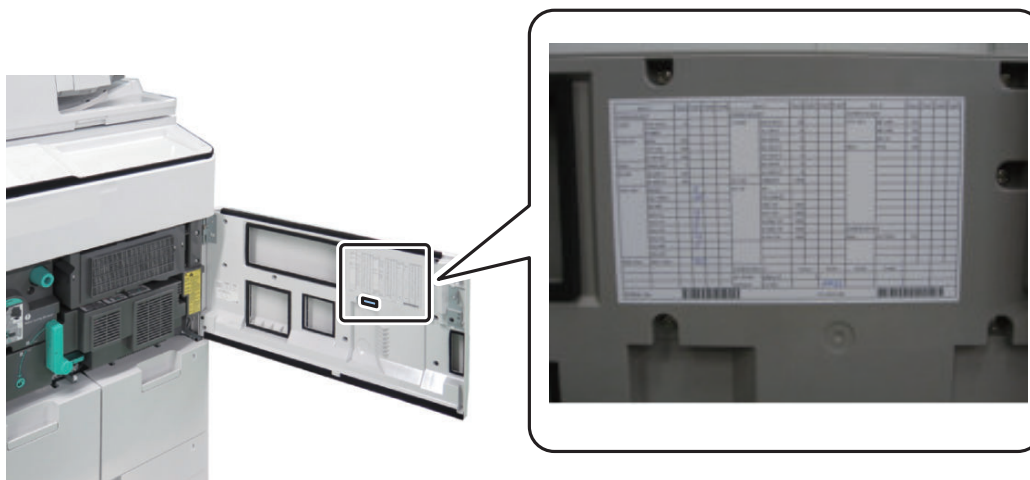


- Exit the Remote Operation Viewer.
- Disconnect the network (disconnect the network cable, disable the network function, etc.).
- Shut down or restart the machine.



## Service Mode Backup

Adjustment is made to every machine at the time of shipment to write the adjustment value in the service label. When replacing the DC Controller PCB or clearing RAM, the adjusted values of ADJUST and OPTION return to the default; therefore, be sure to adjust the value in the field, and in the case of changing the service mode value, be sure to write down the changed value in the service label. When the corresponding item is not found on the service label, write the value in blank field.



Place of service label

## Output of Service Print Data

- The service print data such as P-PRINT can be output as a file.
- By executing the following service mode, data at the time can be saved in the Storage  
Service Mode Level 1 > Copier > Function > MISC-P > RPT-FILE
- The saved data will be deleted from the Storage when it is exported to SST or a USB flash drive.
- When multiple service data such as P-PRINT and HIST-PRINT is saved in the host machine, it is collectively exported to SST or a USB flash drive.

### NOTE:

- Service print data cannot be output when an error has occurred.
- When connecting a USB flash drive that runs on external power, start the machine with the power is turned ON in advance. A USB flash drive connected after the machine has been started cannot be recognized.

| How to obtain the report data                                     | Location        |
|---|-----------------|
| "Moving the file in service mode" on page 1141                    | USB flash drive |
| "Moving the file in download mode" on page 1142                   | USB flash drive |
| "How to Export Service Print File to a PC Using SST" on page 1143 | PC              |

## Service Print and Data File Name Supported for File Output

| Service Mode                          | Content   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| COPIER > Function > MISC-P > P-PRINT  | Output of service mode setting values   |
| COPIER > Function > MISC-P > HIST-PRT | Output of jam and error history   |
| COPIER > Function > MISC-P > USER-PRT | Output of Settings/Registration menu setting values list  |
| COPIER > Function > MISC-P > D-PRINT  | Output of service mode (DISPLAY)  |
| COPIER > Function > MISC-P > ENV-PRT  | Output of the temperature and humidity inside the machine/surface temperature of the Fixing Roller as a log |
| COPIER > Function > MISC-P > PJH-P-1  | Output of details on print job history (100 jobs)   |
| COPIER > Function > MISC-P > PJH-P-2  | Output of details on print job history (all jobs)   |
| COPIER > Function > MISC-P > USBH-PRT | Output of USB device information report   |
| COPIER > Function > MISC-P > TNRB-RPT | Output of the Toner Container ID report   |

**NOTE:**

When each service mode is individually executed, the report corresponding to the service mode as of the time of execution is output.

## ■ Moving the file in service mode

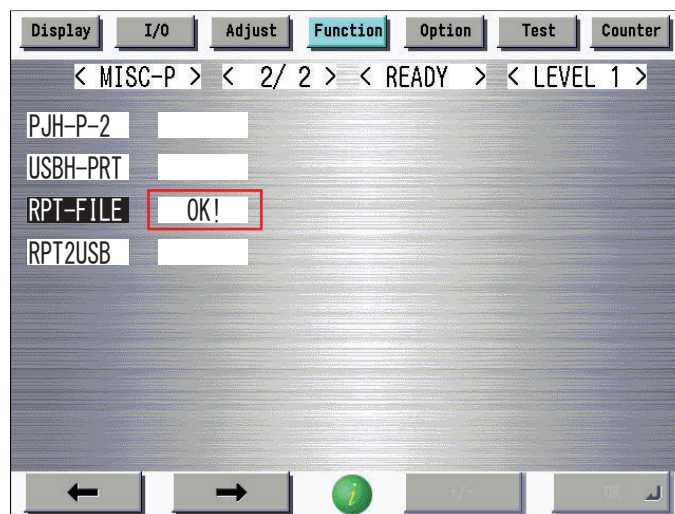
### Preparation

The following item needs to be prepared to export the service print file to a USB flash drive.

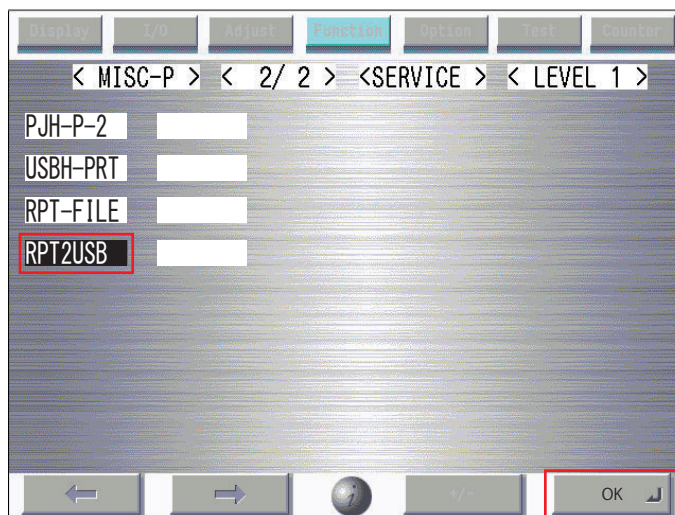
- USB flash drive (FAT32 format file system that is not locked with a password. To display the USB menu, the said model's firmware must already be registered.)

### Overall flow

1. Selecting RPT-FILE  
Select service mode > Copier > Function > MISC-P > RPT-FILE; and then press OK.
2. Generating report file  
After the "ACTIVE" blinks for 3 to 4 minutes, generation of a report file is complete as "OK!" is displayed.



3. Connect the USB flash drive storage device to the USB port.
4. Select service mode > Copier > Function > MISC-P > RPT2USB; and then press OK.

**NOTE:**

- If the downloaded file is opened as plain text, the paragraphs are misaligned, which makes it difficult to read the data.
- When the file is dragged to WordPad, an image similar to the image output on paper may be displayed in some cases.

## ■ Moving the file in download mode

### Preparation

The following item needs to be prepared to export the service print file to a USB flash drive.

- USB flash drive (FAT32 format file system that is not locked with a password. To display the USB menu, the said model's firmware must already be registered.)

### Overall flow

1. Selecting RPT-FILE  
Select service mode > Copier > Function > MISC-P > RPT-FILE; and then press OK.
2. Generating report file  
After the "ACTIVE" blinks for 3 to 4 minutes, generation of a report file is complete as "OK!" is displayed.



3. Execute Download mode > [5]: Download File > [4]: ServicePrint Download.

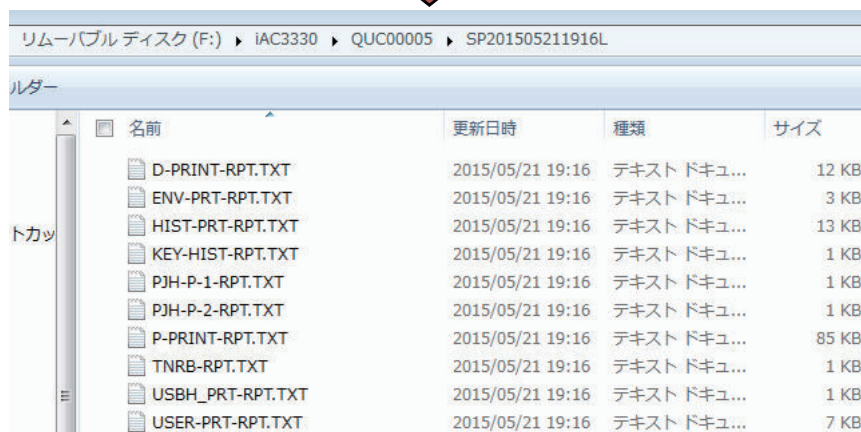
```

[[[[[[[ Download File Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]
-----
[1]: SUBLOG Download
[4]: ServicePrint Download
[C]: Return to Main Menu

[Reset]: Start shutdown sequence

/[4] has been selected. Execute?/
- (OK) : 0 / (CANCEL) : Any other keys -

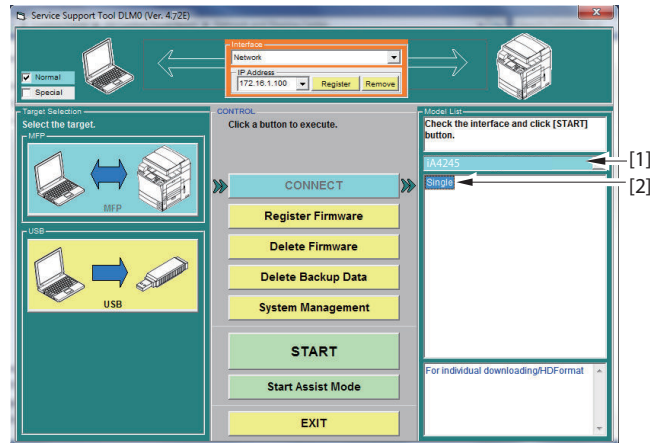
```



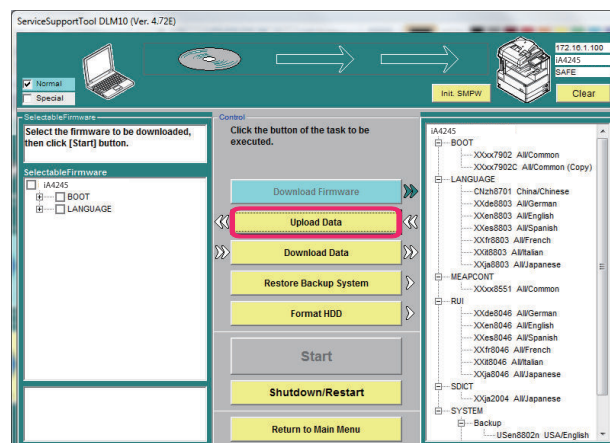
## ■ How to Export Service Print File to a PC Using SST

The procedure for exporting the service print file to a PC using SST will now be described. (SST described in the procedure is Ver 4.72.)

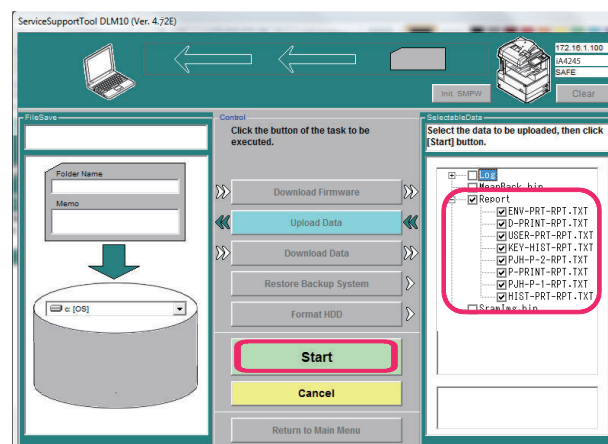
1. Start the SST.
2. Select the model [1] to be connected and the information file for separate download [2] ([Single]). Then, check the network settings and click the "Start" button.



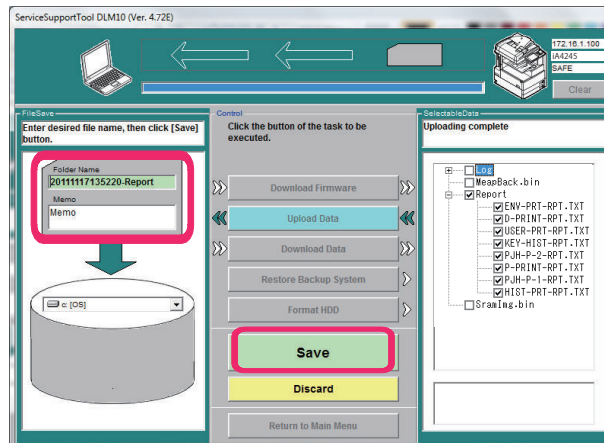
3. Click the [Upload Data] button.



4. Select [Report] and click the [Start] button.



5. Specify the folder name to be saved and enter comments if necessary. Then click the [Store] button.



6. Click the [OK] button.



## COPIER (Service mode for printer)

### DISPLAY (State display mode)

#### VERSION

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > DISPLAY (State display mode) > VERSION

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>DC-CON</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of DCON firmware version</b>                            |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the firmware version of DC Controller PCB.              |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>R-CON</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of RCON firmware version</b>                            |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the firmware version of Reader Controller PCB.          |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>PANEL</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of Control Panel CPU PCB ROM ver</b>                       |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the ROM version of Control Panel CPU PCB.               |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>SORTER</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of FIN-CONT (Main) firmware version</b>                    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the firmware version of Finisher Controller PCB (Main). |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>PS/PCL</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of PS/PCL function version</b>                          |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of PS/PCL function.                         |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>SDL-STCH</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of Saddle Sttch Ctrllr PCB ROM ver</b>                     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the ROM version of the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MN-CONT</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of MNCON firmware version</b>                           |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the firmware version of Main Controller PCB.            |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; VERSION

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>RIP1</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of RIP1 software version</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the software version to be downloaded to RIP1 (PS/PCL Expansion Accelerator Board). |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>DIAG-DVC</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of self diagnosis device ROM ver</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the ROM version of self diagnosis device.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>PUNCH</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of Finisher Inner Punch Unit</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Finisher Inner Puncher Unit.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>LANG-FR</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of French language file version</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of French language file.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>LANG-DE</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of German language file version</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of German language file.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>LANG-IT</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of Italian language file version</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Italian language file.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>LANG-CS</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Display of Czech language file version</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Czech language file.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>LANG-DA</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Display of Danish language file version</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Danish language file.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>LANG-EL</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Display of Greek language file version</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Greek language file.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; VERSION

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>LANG-ES</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of Spanish language file version</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Spanish language file.    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                         |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99                                      |
| <b>LANG-ET</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Display of Estonian language file ver</b>        |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Estonian language file.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                         |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99                                      |
| <b>LANG-FI</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Display of Finnish language file version</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Finnish language file.    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                         |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99                                      |
| <b>LANG-HU</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Display of Hungarian language file ver</b>       |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Hungarian language file.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                         |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99                                      |
| <b>LANG-KO</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Display of Korean language file version</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Korean language file.     |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                         |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99                                      |
| <b>LANG-NL</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Display of Dutch language file version</b>       |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Dutch language file.      |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                         |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99                                      |
| <b>LANG-NO</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Display of Norwegian language file ver</b>       |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Norwegian language file.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                         |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99                                      |
| <b>LANG-PL</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Display of Polish language file version</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Polish language file.     |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                         |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99                                      |
| <b>LANG-PT</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Display of Portuguese language file ver</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Portuguese language file. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                         |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99                                      |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; VERSION

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>LANG-RU</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Display of Russian language file version</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of Russian language file.               |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                    |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99   |   |
| <b>LANG-SL</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Display of Slovenian language file ver</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of Slovenian language file.             |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                    |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99   |   |
| <b>LANG-SV</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Display of Swedish language file version</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of Swedish language file.               |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                    |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99   |   |
| <b>LANG-TW</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Dspl of Chinese language file ver: trad</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of Chinese language file (traditional). |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                    |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99   |   |
| <b>LANG-ZH</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Dspl of Chinese language file ver: simpl</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of Chinese language file (simplified).  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                    |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99   |   |
| <b>LANG-BU</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Display of Bulgarian language file ver</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of Bulgarian language file.             |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                    |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99   |   |
| <b>LANG-CR</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Display of Croatian language file ver</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of Croatian language file.              |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                    |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99   |   |
| <b>LANG-RM</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Display of Romanian language file ver</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of Romanian language file.              |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                    |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99   |   |
| <b>LANG-SK</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Display of Slovak language file version</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of Slovak language file.                |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                    |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; VERSION

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>LANG-TK</b>                | <b>2</b>  | <b>Display of Turkish language file version</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of Turkish language file.                  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                       |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99  |   |
| <b>LANG-CA</b>                | <b>2</b>  | <b>Display of Catalan language file version</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of Catalan language file.                  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                       |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99  |   |
| <b>MEDIA-JA</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Dspl of Japanese media information ver</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of Japanese media information.             |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                       |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99  |   |
| <b>MEDIA-EN</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Dspl of English media information ver</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of English media information.              |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                       |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99  |   |
| <b>MEDIA-DE</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Dspl of German media information version</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of German media information.               |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                       |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99  |   |
| <b>MEDIA-IT</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Dspl of Italian media information ver</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of Italian media information.              |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                       |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99  |   |
| <b>MEDIA-FR</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Dspl of French media information version</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of French media information.               |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                       |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99  |   |
| <b>MEDIA-ZH</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Dspl of Chinese media info ver: simpl</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of Chinese media information (simplified). |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                       |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99  |   |
| <b>MEDIA-SK</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Dspl of Slovak media information version</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of Slovak media information.               |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware                                       |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; VERSION

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>MEDIA-TK</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Turkish media information ver</b>           |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Turkish media information.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                            |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                     |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MEDIA-CS</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Czech media information version</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Czech media information.     |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                            |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                     |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MEDIA-EL</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Greek media information version</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Greek media information.     |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                            |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                     |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MEDIA-ES</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Spanish media information ver</b>           |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Spanish media information.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                            |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                     |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MEDIA-ET</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Estonian media information ver</b>          |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Estonian media information.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                            |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                     |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MEDIA-FI</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Finnish media information ver</b>           |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Finnish media information.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                            |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                     |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MEDIA-HU</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Hungarian media information ver</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Hungarian media information. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                            |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                     |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MEDIA-KO</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Korean media information version</b>        |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Korean media information.    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                            |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                     |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MEDIA-NL</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Dutch media information version</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Dutch media information.     |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                            |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)                                     |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; VERSION

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>MEDIA-NO</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Norwegian media information ver</b>                     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Norwegian media information.             |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MEDIA-PL</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Polish media information version</b>                    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Polish media information.                |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MEDIA-PT</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Portuguese media information ver</b>                    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Portuguese media information.            |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MEDIA-RU</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Russian media information ver</b>                       |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Russian media information.               |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MEDIA-SL</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Slovenian media information ver</b>                     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Slovenian media information.             |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MEDIA-SV</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Swedish media information ver</b>                       |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Swedish media information.               |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MEDIA-TW</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Chinese media info version:trad</b>                     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Chinese media information (traditional). |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MEDIA-BU</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Bulgarian media information ver</b>                     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Bulgarian media information.             |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MEDIA-CR</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Croatian media information ver</b>                      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Croatian media information.              |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; VERSION

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>MEDIA-RM</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Romanian media information ver</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Romanian media information.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>MEDIA-CA</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Catalan media information ver</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Catalan media information.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>FAX1</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of 1-line FAX PCB ROM version</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the ROM version of 1-line FAX PCB.<br>Nothing is displayed if the PCB is not connected.     |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | ASCII character string (21 digits)   |
| <b>FAX2/3/4</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of 2/3/4-line FAX PCB ROM version</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the ROM version of 2/3/4-line FAX PCB.<br>Nothing is displayed if the PCB is not connected. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the version  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | ASCII character string (21 digits)   |
| <b>IOCS</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of IOCS version</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the IOCS version.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>INS</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of Inserter ROM version</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the ROM version of Inserter.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>S-LNG-JP</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of service mode Japanese file ver</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Japanese language file in service mode.                                      |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>S-LNG-EN</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of service mode English file ver</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of English language file in service mode.                                       |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; VERSION

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>S-LNG-FR</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of service mode French file version</b>                  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of French language file in service mode.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>S-LNG-IT</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of service mode Italian file ver</b>                     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Italian language file in service mode. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>S-LNG-GR</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of service mode German file version</b>                  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of German language file in service mode.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>S-LNG-SP</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of service mode Spanish file ver</b>                     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Spanish language file in service mode. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>LS-ROM-V</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Laser Scanner Unit EEPROM ver</b>                     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the EEPROM version of Laser Scanner Unit.             |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | At trouble analysis  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 001 to 999   |
| <b>LS-UNT-V</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Laser Scanner Unit version</b>                        |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Laser Scanner Unit.                    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | At trouble analysis  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 001 to 999   |
| <b>LS-SRL</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of serial No. of Laser Scanner Unit</b>                  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the serial number of Laser Scanner Unit.              |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | At trouble analysis  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00000001 to 99999999   |
| <b>BCT</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of self diagnosis tool version</b>                    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of self diagnosis tool.                   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |
| <b>LANG-TH</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Display of Thai language file version</b>                     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Thai language file.                    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; VERSION

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>LANG-VN</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Display of Vietnamese language file ver</b>                    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Vietnamese language file.               |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                                       |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99  |
| <b>LANG-AR</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Arabic language file ver</b>                           |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Arabic language file.                   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                                       |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99  |
| <b>LANG-MS</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Malay language file ver</b>                            |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Malay language file.                    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                                       |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99  |
| <b>LANG-HI</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Hindi language file ver</b>                            |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Hindi language file.                    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                                       |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99  |
| <b>LANG-EU</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Euskera language file ver</b>                          |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Euskera language file.                  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                                       |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99  |
| <b>SORT-SLV</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of FIN-CONT (Sub) firmware version</b>                    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the firmware version of Finisher Controller PCB (Sub). |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                                       |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99  |
| <b>CONT-PF</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of Controller firmware version</b>                     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the platform version of the controller.                |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the platform version at upgrade/problem occurrence  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99  |
| <b>LANG-HE</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Display of Hebrew language file version</b>                    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Hebrew language file.                   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                                       |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99  |
| <b>LANG-LT</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl of Lithuanian language file version</b>                   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the version of Lithuanian language file.               |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When upgrading the firmware                                       |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00.01 to 99.99  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; VERSION

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>LANG-LV</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Display of Latvian language file version</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of Latvian language file.                   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99   |   |
| <b>JOGGER</b>                 | <b>1</b>   | <b>Display of Finisher Jogger Kit</b>           |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the version of Finisher Jogger Kit.                     |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99   |   |
| <b>LANG-UK</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Dspl of Ukrainian language file ver</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the Ukrainian language file version                     |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When the firmware is upgraded                                      |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | None (display only)  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.00 to 99.99   |   |
| <b>LANG-MI</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Dspl of Maori language file ver</b>          |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the Maori language file version                         |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When the firmware is upgraded                                      |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | None (display only)  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.00 to 99.99   |   |
| <b>SORTER2</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Dspl of FIN-CONT (Main) firmware version</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the firmware version of Finisher Controller PCB (Main). |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99   |   |
| <b>SORT-SL2</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Display of FIN-CONT firmware version</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the firmware version of Finisher Controller PCB.        |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99   |   |
| <b>SDL-STC2</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Dspl of Saddle Sttch Ctrollr PCB ROM ver</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the ROM version of the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99   |   |

## ■ USER

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; USER

|                               |   |                                     |
|-------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| <b>SPDTYPE</b>                | <b>1</b>  | <b>Display of engine speed type</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the engine speed type of this machine. |                                     |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the engine speed type               |                                     |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)                                |                                     |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; USER

| <b>ADFTYPE</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of DADF type</b>   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the type of the DADF currently installed.                          |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the DADF   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 2<br>0: Reverse type, 1: 1-path type, 2: Not installed (Copyboard model) |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> OPTION> CUSTOM> SCANTYPE  |
| <b>SER-NAME</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl firmware registration series name</b>                                 |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Display firmware registration series name                                     |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | To check the folder name for firmware registration in USB flash drive         |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |

## ■ ACC-ST5

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; ACC-ST5

| <b>FEEDER</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of DADF connection state</b>   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the connecting state of DADF.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the connection between the machine and DADF   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Not connected, 1: Connected  |
| <b>SORTER</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Connect state of Finisher-related option</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the connection state of Finisher-related options.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the connection of Finisher-related options  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | Left column (connection state of Finisher-related options): 1 to 5<br>1: Without Saddle<br>2: With Saddle, without Folding Unit<br>3: With Saddle and Inserter, without Folding Unit<br>4: With Saddle and Folding Unit, without Inserter<br>5: With Saddle, Inserter and Folding Unit<br>Right column (connection state of Finisher-belonged Puncher): 0 to 4<br>0: No hole, 1: 2-hole, 2/4-hole switching, 2: 3-hole, 2/3-hole, 2/3-hole switching, 3: 4-hole, 4: 4-hole (SW) |
| <b>DECK</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of Paper Deck connection state</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the connecting state of the Paper Deck.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the connection between the machine and the Paper Decks  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 8<br>0: Not connected<br>1: Connected (small)<br>2: Connected (large) (Display is hidden on this machine.)<br>3: POD Deck Lite (with Multi-purpose Tray)<br>4: POD Deck Lite (without Multi-purpose Tray )<br>5: Multi-purpose Tray only<br>6: POD deck<br>7: 2-POD deck connected (Display is hidden on this machine.)<br>8: 3-POD deck connected (Display is hidden on this machine.)  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; ACC-ST5

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>CARD</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Dspl of connection state of Card Reader</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the connecting state of Card Reader.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the connection between the machine and the Card Reader   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: No card is inserted while the Card Reader is connected. (Copy is not available.)<br>1: Card Reader is not connected, or card is inserted while the Card Reader is connected. (Copy is available.) |  |
| <b>DATA-CON</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Dspl of NE Controller connection state</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the connecting state of NE Controller.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the connection between the machine and the NE Controller   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Not connected, 1: Connected   |  |
| <b>RAM</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Dspl MNCON PCB 1 img proc memory cpcty</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the memory capacity for image processing (DDR2-SDRAM) on the Main Controller PCB 1.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the memory capacity of the machine   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                   | MB   |  |
| <b>COINROBO</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Dspl of Coin Manager connection state</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the connecting state of the Coin Manager.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the connection between the machine and the Coin Manager  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Not connected, 1: Connected   |  |
| <b>PS/PCL</b>                 | <b>1</b>   | <b>Install state dspl of PS/PCL firmware</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the installation state of PS/PCL firmware.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking whether PS/PCL firmware is installed to the machine  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 2<br>0: Not installed, 1: PS/PCL, 2: PS Kanji   |  |
| <b>RIP1</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Display of RIP1 software version</b>        |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the software version to be downloaded to RIP1 (PS/PCL Expansion Accelerator Board).   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When upgrading the firmware  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00.01 to 99.99   |  |
| <b>NETWARE</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Install state dspl of NetWare firmware</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the installation state of the NetWare firmware.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking whether NetWare firmware is installed to the machine   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Not installed, 1: Installed   |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; ACC-ST5

|                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>TRIM-CN</b>                | <b>1</b>  | <b>Display of Trimmer connection state</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the connecting state of Trimmer.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the connection between the machine and Trimmer  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Not connected, 1: Connected  |  |
| <b>HDD</b>                    | <b>1</b>  | <b>Display of HDD model name</b>             |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the model name of HDD.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the model name of HDD used on the machine   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)  |  |
| <b>PCI1</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Display of PCI1-connected PCB name</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the name of the PCB that is connected to PCI1.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the name of the PCB that is connected to PCI1   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | -: No PCB connected<br>Voice Board: Voice PCB<br>3DES Board: Encryption PCB<br>1Gbit-Board: Giga Ethernet PCB |  |
| <b>IA-RAM</b>                 | <b>1</b>  | <b>Display of MNC ON PCB memory capacity</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the memory capacity of the Main Controller PCB.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the memory capacity of the Main Controller PCB  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                   | MB  |  |

## ■ ANALOG

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; ANALOG

|                                  |   |                                      |
|----------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| <b>TEMP</b>                      | <b>1</b>  | <b>Display of inside temperature</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To display the temperature inside the machine detected by Environment Sensor. |                                      |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When checking the temperature inside the machine                              |                                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | N/A (Display only)  |                                      |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 60   |                                      |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | deg C   |                                      |
| <b>Appropriate Target Value</b>  | 20 - 27   |                                      |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |                                      |
| <b>HUM</b>                       | <b>1</b>  | <b>Display of inside humidity</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To display the humidity inside the machine detected by Environment Sensor.    |                                      |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When checking the humidity inside the machine                                 |                                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | N/A (Display only)  |                                      |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 100  |                                      |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | %   |                                      |
| <b>Appropriate Target Value</b>  | 30 - 70   |                                      |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |                                      |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; ANALOG

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>ABS-HUM</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of inside moisture content</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the absolute moisture content inside the machine detected by Environment Sensor.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the moisture content inside the machine   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 100  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | g/m3  |
| <b>Appropriate Target Value</b>  |          | 0 - 22  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>FIX-U</b>                     | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of Fixing Roller center temperature</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the center temperature of the Fixing Roller detected by the Fixing Main Thermistor.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the temperature at the center of Fixing Roller  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | deg C   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>FIX-UE</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of Fixing Roller edge temperature</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the edge temperature of the Fixing Roller detected by the Fixing Sub Thermistor 1. Fixing Sub Thermistor 1 is located in the rear nip inlet side of Fixing Roller. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the edge temperature of the Fixing Roller   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | deg C   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>FIX-SHTR</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of Fixing Shutter temperature</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the temperature of the Fixing Shutter detected by the Fixing Shutter Thermistor.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the temperature of Fixing Shutter   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | deg C   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>PDK-TEMP</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of POD Deck compartment temp</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the compartment temperature of POD Deck Lite.<br>It may be out of order if the indicated temperature is greatly different from the machine right after power-on.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 60   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | deg C   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> DISPLAY> ANALOG> TEMP, PDK-HUM  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; ANALOG

|                                  |   |  |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>PKD-HUM</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Dspl of POD Deck compartment humidity</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To display the compartment humidity of POD Deck Lite.<br>It may be out of order if the indicated humidity is greatly different from the machine right after power-on. |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | N/A (Display only)  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 100  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | %   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> DISPLAY> ANALOG> HUM, PDK-TEMP  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |  |

## ■ CST-STS

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; CST-STS

|                                  |          |                    |
|----------------------------------|----------|--------------------|
| <b>DK1-FGD</b>                   | <b>2</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b> |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1        |                    |
| <b>DK1-FGU</b>                   | <b>2</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b> |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1        |                    |
| <b>DK1-HADV</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b> |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1        |                    |

## ■ HV-STS

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; HV-STS

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>PRIMARY</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Display of primary charging current</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To display the current that is applied to the Primacy Charging Assembly at the latest.<br>The result set in COPIER> ADJUST> HV-PRI> PRIMARY is reflected.            |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When checking ON/OFF of potential control  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1600  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-PRI> PRIMARY  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1  |   |
| <b>PRI-GRID</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Dspl of Primary Charging Ass'y grid bias</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To display the grid bias voltage that is applied to the Primacy Charging Assembly at the latest.<br>The result set in COPIER> ADJUST> HV-PRI> PRI-GRID is reflected. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When checking ON/OFF of potential control  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 500 to 900   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | V  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-PRI> PRI-GRID   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; HV-ST5

|                                  |   |  |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>PRE-TR</b>                    | <b>1</b>  | <b>Dspl of pre-transfer charge DC current</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To display the DC component of current that is applied to the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly at the latest. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | For checking  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | N/A (Display only)  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -650 to 0   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |  |
| <b>TR</b>                        | <b>1</b>  | <b>Dspl of trns current: Plain, 1st side</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To display the current flow to the Transfer Roller for the 1st side of the latest plain paper.              |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | For checking  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | N/A (Display only)  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |  |
| <b>BIAS</b>                      | <b>1</b>  | <b>Dspl of developing DC bias setting VL</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To display the setting value of developing DC bias.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | For checking  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | N/A (Display only)  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | V   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |  |
| <b>TR-V</b>                      | <b>1</b>  | <b>Dspl of ATVC detection voltage value</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To display the ATVC detection voltage value.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | For checking  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | N/A (Display only)  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | V   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |  |
| <b>TR-LV-I</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Dspl ppr lead edge trns bias outpt crnt</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To display the current value in the paper leading edge position at transfer bias output.                    |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | For checking  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | N/A (Display only)  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 100  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |  |
| <b>TR-LV-T</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Dspl ppr lead edge trns bias output tmg</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To display the transfer bias output timing in the paper leading edge position.                              |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | For checking  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | N/A (Display only)  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1   |  |

## ■ CCD

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > DISPLAY (State display mode) > CCD

|                                 |  |   |
|---------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>TARGET-B</b>                 | <b>2</b>   | <b>Shading target value (B)</b>                     |
| <b>Detail</b>                   | To display the shading target value of Blue.<br>Continuous display of 0 (minimum) or FFFF (maximum) is considered a failure of the Reader Controller PCB.      |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                 | - When replacing the Reader Controller PCB<br>- At scanned image failure   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>   | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>    | 0 to FFFF  |   |
| <b>Appropriate Target Value</b> | 512 - 2047   |   |
| <b>TARGET-G</b>                 | <b>2</b>   | <b>Shading target value (G)</b>                     |
| <b>Detail</b>                   | To display the shading target value of Green.<br>Continuous display of 0 (minimum) or 65535 (maximum) is considered as a failure of the Reader Controller PCB. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                 | - When replacing the Reader Controller PCB<br>- At scanned image failure   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>   | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>    | 0 to FFFF  |   |
| <b>Appropriate Target Value</b> | 512 - 2047   |   |
| <b>TARGET-R</b>                 | <b>2</b>   | <b>Shading target value (R)</b>                     |
| <b>Detail</b>                   | To display the shading target value of Red.<br>Continuous display of 0 (minimum) or 65535 (maximum) is considered as a failure of the Reader Controller PCB.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                 | - When replacing the Reader Controller PCB<br>- At scanned image failure   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>   | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>    | 0 to FFFF  |   |
| <b>Appropriate Target Value</b> | 512 - 2047   |   |
| <b>LAMP-BW</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Dspl LED light intnsty adj VL:B&amp;W, front</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                   | To display the LED light intensity adjustment value of Scanner Unit (for front side) in B&W scanning mode.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                 | When an image failure occurs at front side reading in black mode   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>   | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>    | 0 to FFFF  |   |
| <b>Appropriate Target Value</b> | 100 - 275  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>          | LED cannot be replaced individually. Replace the Scanner Unit.   |   |
| <b>LAMP-CL</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Dspl LED light intnsty adj VL:clr, front</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                   | To display the LED light intensity adjustment value of Scanner Unit (for front side) in color scanning mode.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                 | When an image failure occurs at front side reading in color mode   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>   | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>    | 0 to FFFF  |   |
| <b>Appropriate Target Value</b> | 100 - 275  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>          | LED cannot be replaced individually. Replace the Scanner Unit.   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; CCD

| <b>LAMP2-BW</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl LED light intnsty adj VL: B&amp;W, back</b>   |
|---------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                   |          | To display the LED light intensity adjustment value of Scanner Unit (for back side) in B&W scanning mode.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                 |          | When an image failure occurs at back side reading in black mode   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>   |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>    |          | 0 to FFFF   |
| <b>Appropriate Target Value</b> |          | 100 - 275   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>          |          | LED cannot be replaced individually. Replace the Scanner Unit.  |
| <b>LAMP2-CL</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl LED light intnsty adj VL: clr, back</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                   |          | To display the LED light intensity adjustment value of Scanner Unit (for back side) in color scanning mode. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                 |          | When an image failure occurs at back side reading in color mode   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>   |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>    |          | 0 to FFFF   |
| <b>Appropriate Target Value</b> |          | 100 - 275   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>          |          | LED cannot be replaced individually. Replace the Scanner Unit.  |

## ■ DPOT

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; DPOT

| <b>DPOT-K</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of Bk Drum surface potential</b>  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the current surface potential Vd on the Bk Photosensitive Drum that is specified as a result of the potential control.<br>The value after the calculation of potential offset is displayed.<br>If the offset value is not adjusted, negative value may be detected during printing. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking whether the surface potential of the drum is the cause of density failure or fogging   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | -30 to 600   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | V  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>VL1T</b>                      | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of bright area target potential VL</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the bright area target potential value.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | V  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>VL1M</b>                      | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl bright area measured potential VL</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the bright area measured potential value.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | V  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>VDT</b>                       | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of dark area target potential VL</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the dark area target potential value.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | V  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; DPOT

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>VDM</b>                       | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl of dark area measured potential VL</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the dark area measured potential value.  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | V   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>BIAS-C</b>                    | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl dev bias potential control result</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the developing bias potential control result.                                  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | V   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>LPOWER-C</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Output laser intnsty potntnl ctrl result</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the output laser intensity potential control result.                           |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 255  |
| <b>PRIM-C</b>                    | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspl pry chg current potntnl ctrl result</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the potential control result of primary charging current.                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | uA  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-PRI> PRI-GRID  |
| <b>VLT-L</b>                     | <b>1</b> | <b>Bright area target potential VL: thin</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the bright area target potential VL with thin paper.                           |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | At occurrence of an image density failure   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 50 to 500   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | V   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>VLT-H1</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Bright area tgt potential VL:pln3/hvy1-4</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the bright area target potential VL with plain paper 3 and heavy paper 1 to 4. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | At occurrence of an image density failure   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 50 to 500   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | V   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>VLT-H2</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Bright area target potential VL: hvy 5,6</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the bright area target potential VL with heavy paper 5 and 6.                  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | At occurrence of an image density failure   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 50 to 500   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | V   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |

## ■ MISC

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > DISPLAY (State display mode) > MISC

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>LPOWER</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Display of laser light intensity</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the laser power setting value during image formation in real time.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | At occurrence of an image failure  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 255   |
| <b>SD-INFO</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b>   |
| <b>STC-REC</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Check High Consumption Alarm Send Status</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To express whether High Consumption Alarm is sent or not with 0 and 1.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking whether High Consumption Alarm is sent or not  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Display only   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | The value returns to 0 only in the following cases:<br>- When performing COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > CNT-DCON<br>- When performing "Initialize All Data/Settings"<br>- When the DC Controller is replaced  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Transmission disabled, 1: Transmission enabled<br>1st column: Toner (Y)<br>2nd column: Toner (M)<br>3rd column: Toner (C)<br>4th column: Toner (K)<br>5th column: Waste Toner Container<br>6th column: Fixing Web<br>7th to 8th column: Spare |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |

## ■ 2D-SHADE

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > DISPLAY (State display mode) > 2D-SHADE

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>2D-ST5</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of 2D shading ON/OFF</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported.<br>To display ON/OFF of 2D shading.<br>When 0 is displayed although 1 or 2 is set with COPIER> OPTION> IMG-LSR> 2D-SHADE, check the Drum Lot number with DRM-LOT. If no number has been registered, execute COPIER> FUNCTION> 2D-SHADE> 2D-READ. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When uneven image occurs  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> DISPLAY> 2D-SHADE> DRM-LOT<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> 2D-SHADE> 2D-READ<br>COPIER> OPTION> IMG-LSR> 2D-SHADE  |
| <b>DRM-LOT</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Display of Drum Lot number</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported.<br>To display the Photosensitive Drum Lot number (10 digits) read at power-on.<br>Lot number is stored in ROM for 2D shading.<br>Check that the displayed value is matched with the Lot number in the seal affixed on the Photosensitive Drum.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When uneven image occurs  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 10-digit alphanumerics  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> DISPLAY> 2D-SHADE> 2D-ST5   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY (State display mode) &gt; 2D-SHADE

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>CHK-SUM</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of checksum calculation result</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported.<br>To display the checksum calculation result at power-on.<br>Calculation result is stored in ROM for 2D shading.<br>When the calculation result is NG, ROM for 2D shading has a failure, so replace this ROM. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When uneven image occurs  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: at normal state, 1: at failure occurrence  |

## I/O

This item is not used because it is intended for R&D.

The I/O information can be found in service mode > SITUATION > Sensor Check.

## ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

### ■ AE

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; AE

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>AE-TBL</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj of text density at image density adj</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To adjust text density according to the adjusted image density.<br>As the greater value is set, text gets darker. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Controller PCB   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.                       |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Controller PCB, enter the value of service label.                        |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1 to 9  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 5   |

### ■ ADJ-XY

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; ADJ-XY

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>ADJ-X</b>                     | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj start pstn in book mode: vert scan</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To adjust the image reading start position (image leading edge position) in the vertical scanning direction at copyboard reading.<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.<br>Decrease the value when the non-image width is larger than the standard value.<br>Increase the value when out of original area is copied.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the image position is moved to the trailing edge side by 0.1 mm. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | -50 to 50   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 0.1   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; ADJ-XY

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>ADJ-Y</b>                     | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj start pstn in book mode: horz scan</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the image reading start position in the horizontal scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. Decrease the value when the non-image width is larger than the standard value. Increase the value when out of original area is copied. As the value is incremented by 1, the image position is moved to the rear side by 0.1 mm. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -35 to 35  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |
| <b>ADJ-S</b>                     | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adjustment of Reader shading position</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the Scanner Unit (for front side) position in feed direction when reading the White Plate on the left edge of the Copyboard Glass. When replacing the Scanner Unit, execute RDSHDPOS and write the value of this item in the service label. When clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of service label. As the value is incremented by 1, the reading position moves to the trailing edge side by 0.1 mm. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | - When black lines/white lines appear<br>- When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)<br>- When clearing the Reader-related RAM data   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -100 to 100  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> RDSHDPOS  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |
| <b>ADJ-Y-DF</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj start pstn:DADF mode, horz scan, frt</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the front side image reading start position in horizontal scanning direction at DADF reading. When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. As the value is incremented by 1, the image position is moved to the rear side by 0.1 mm.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -35 to 35  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; ADJ-XY

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>STRD-POS</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj read pstn in DADF mode: front side</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the reading position at DADF reading (front side).<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -100 to 35   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> STRD-POS  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |
| <b>ADJ-X-MG</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Fine adj img ratio: book mode, vert scan</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To make a fine adjustment of image magnification ratio in vertical scanning direction at copyboard reading.<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the image magnification ratio is changed by 0.01 %.<br>+: Enlarge<br>-: Reduce |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | %  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.01   |   |
| <b>ADJY-DF2</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj start pstn:DADF mode, horz scan, bck</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the back side image reading start position in horizontal scanning direction at DADF reading.<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the image position is moved to the rear side by 0.1 mm.                         |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -35 to 35  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |

## ■ CCD

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > ADJUST (Adjustment mode) > CCD

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>W-PLT-X</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Stdrd White Plt white lvl data (X) entry</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To enter the white level data (X) for the Standard White Plate.<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data/replacing the Copyboard Glass, enter the value of barcode label which is affixed on the glass.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Copyboard Glass   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1 to 9999  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 8271   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> W-PLT-Y/Z   |   |
| <b>W-PLT-Y</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Stdrd White Plt white lvl data (Y) entry</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To enter the white level data (Y) for the Standard White Plate.<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data/replacing the Copyboard Glass, enter the value of barcode label which is affixed on the glass.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Copyboard Glass   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1 to 9999  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 8735   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> W-PLT-X/Z   |   |
| <b>W-PLT-Z</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Stdrd White Plt white lvl data (Z) entry</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To enter the white level data (Z) for the Standard White Plate.<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data/replacing the Copyboard Glass, enter the value of barcode label which is affixed on the glass.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Copyboard Glass   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1 to 9999  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 9418   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> W-PLT-X/Y   |   |
| <b>SH-TRGT</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Shading target VL (B&amp;W) entry: Copyboard</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To enter the B&W shading target value in copyboard reading mode.<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB, enter the value of service label.<br>When replacing the Scanner Unit, execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLV3, and write the value which is automatically set in the service label. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Scanner Unit  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1 to 2047  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1126   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>100-RG</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Img Sensr RG color displace crrect: front</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To correct the color displacement between R and G lines in vertical scanning direction due to the Scanner Unit (for front side).<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -256 to 256  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | line   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.001  |  |
| <b>100-GB</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Img Sensr GB color displace crrect: front</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To correct the color displacement between G and B lines in vertical scanning direction due to the Scanner Unit (for front side).<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -256 to 256  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | line   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.001  |  |
| <b>DFTAR-R</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Shading target VL (R) entry: front side</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To enter the shading target value of Red on the front side at DADF reading.<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB, enter the value of service label.<br>When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit (for front side), execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2 and write the value which is automatically set in the service label. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | - When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit (for front side)   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 1 to 2047  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1159   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>DFTAR-G</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Shading target VL (G) entry: front side</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To enter the shading target value of Green on the front side at DADF reading.<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB, enter the value of service label.<br>When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit (for front side), execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2 and write the value which is automatically set in the service label. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | - When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit (for front side)   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 1 to 2047  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1189   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2  |  |
| <b>DFTAR-B</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Shading target VL (B) entry: front side</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To enter the shading target value of Blue on the front side at DADF reading.<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB, enter the value of service label.<br>When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit (for front side), execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2 and write the value which is automatically set in the service label.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | - When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit (for front side)   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 1 to 2047  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1209   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2  |  |
| <b>100DF2GB</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Img Sensr GB color displace crct: back</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To correct the color displacement between G and B lines in vertical scanning direction due to the Scanner Unit (for back side).<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -256 to 256  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | line   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.001  |  |
| <b>100DF2RG</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Img Sensr RG color displace crct: back</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To correct the color displacement between R and G lines in vertical scanning direction due to the Scanner Unit (for back side).<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -256 to 256  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | line   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.001  |  |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>DFCH2R2</b>                | <b>1</b>  | <b>Complex chart No.2 data (R) entry: front</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To derive the front/back side linearity, enter the Red data on the front side of No.2 image in DADF complex chart.<br>Enter the value of service label on the Reader.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1 to 2550   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 2000  |   |
| <b>DFCH2R10</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Complex chart No.10 data (R) entry:front</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To derive the front/back side linearity, enter the Red data on the front side of No.10 image in DADF complex chart.<br>Enter the value of service label on the Reader.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 2550   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>DFCH2B2</b>                | <b>1</b>  | <b>Complex chart No.2 data (B) entry: front</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To derive the front/back side linearity, enter the Blue data on the front side of No.2 image in DADF complex chart.<br>Enter the value of service label on the Reader.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1 to 2550   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 2000  |   |
| <b>DFCH2B10</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Complex chart No.10 data (B) entry:front</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To derive the front/back side linearity, enter the Blue data on the front side of No.10 image in DADF complex chart.<br>Enter the value of service label on the Reader. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 2550   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>DFCH2G2</b>                | <b>1</b>  | <b>Complex chart No.2 data (G) entry: front</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To derive the front/back side linearity, enter the Green data on the front side of No.2 image in DADF complex chart.<br>Enter the value of service label on the Reader. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1 to 2550   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 2000  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>DFCH2G10</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Complex chart No.10 data (G) entry: front</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To derive the front/back side linearity, enter the Green data on the front side of No.10 image in DADF complex chart.<br>Enter the value of service label on the Reader. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 2550  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>DFCH-R2</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Complex chart No.2 data (R) entry: back</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To derive the front/back side linearity, enter the Red data on the back side of No.2 image in DADF complex chart.<br>Enter the value of service label on the Reader.     |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1 to 2550  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 2000   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> DFCH-R10, DFCH-B2, DFCH-B10, DFCH-G2, DFCH-G10<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-LNR   |
| <b>DFCH-R10</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Complex chart No.10 data (R) entry: back</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To derive the front/back side linearity, enter the Red data on the back side of No.10 image in DADF complex chart.<br>Enter the value of service label on the Reader.    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 2550  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> DFCH-R2, DFCH-B2, DFCH-B10, DFCH-G2, DFCH-G10<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-LNR  |
| <b>DFCH-B2</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Complex chart No.2 data (B) entry: back</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To derive the front/back side linearity, enter the Blue data on the back side of No.2 image in DADF complex chart.<br>Enter the value of service label on the Reader.    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1 to 2550  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 2000   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> DFCH-R10, DFCH-B2, DFCH-B10, DFCH-G2, DFCH-G10<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-LNR   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

|                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>DFCH-B10</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Complex chart No.10 data (B) entry: back</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To derive the front/back side linearity, enter the Blue data on the back side of No.10 image in DADF complex chart.<br>Enter the value of service label on the Reader.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 2550   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> DFCH-R2, DFCH-B2, DFCH-B10, DFCH-G2, DFCH-G10<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-LNR   |  |
| <b>DFCH-G2</b>                | <b>1</b>  | <b>Complex chart No.2 data (G) entry: back</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To derive the front/back side linearity, enter the Green data on the back side of No.2 image in DADF complex chart.<br>Enter the value of service label on the Reader.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1 to 2550   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 2000  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> DFCH-R10, DFCH-B2, DFCH-B10, DFCH-G2, DFCH-G10<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-LNR  |  |
| <b>DFCH-G10</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Complex chart No.10 data (G) entry: back</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To derive the front/back side linearity, enter the Green data on the back side of No.10 image in DADF complex chart.<br>Enter the value of service label on the Reader. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 2550   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> DFCH-R2, DFCH-B2, DFCH-B10, DFCH-G2, DFCH-G10<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-LNR   |  |
| <b>DFCH2K2</b>                | <b>1</b>  | <b>Complex chart No.2 data (B&amp;W) entr: frt</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To derive the front/back side linearity, enter the B&W data on the front side of No.2 image in DADF complex chart.<br>Enter the value of service label on the Reader.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1 to 2550   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 2000  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>DFCH2K10</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Complex chart No.10 data (B&amp;W) entr: frt</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To derive the front/back side linearity, enter the B&W data on the front side of No.10 image in DADF complex chart.<br>Enter the value of service label on the Reader.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 2550   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>DFCH-K2</b>                | <b>1</b>  | <b>Complex chart No.2 data (B&amp;W) entr: bck</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To derive the front/back side linearity, enter the B&W data on the back side of No.2 image in DADF complex chart.<br>Enter the value of service label on the Reader.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1 to 2550   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 2000  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> DFCH-R2, DFCH-R10, DFCH-B2, DFCH-B10, DFCH-G2, DFCH-G10, DFCH-K10<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-LNR   |   |
| <b>DFCH-K10</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Complex chart No.10 data (B&amp;W) entr: bck</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To derive the front/back side linearity, enter the B&W data on the back side of No.10 image in DADF complex chart.<br>Enter the value of service label on the Reader.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 2550   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> DFCH-R2, DFCH-R10, DFCH-B2, DFCH-B10, DFCH-G2, DFCH-G10, DFCH-K2<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-LNR  |   |
| <b>DFTAR-BW</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Shading target VL (B&amp;W) entry: front</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To enter the B&W shading target value on the front side at DADF reading.<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB, enter the value of service label.<br>When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit (for front side), execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL3, DF-WLVL4 and write the value which is automatically set in the service label. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit (for front side)  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1 to 2047   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1209  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL3, DF-WLVL4   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>DFTBK-G</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Shading target VL (G) entry: back side</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To enter the shading target value of Green on the back side at DADF reading.<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB, enter the value of service label.<br>When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit (for back side), execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2 and write the value which is automatically set in the service label. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 700 to 1400  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1136   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2  |  |
| <b>DFTBK-B</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Shading target VL (B) entry: back side</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To enter the shading target value of Blue on the back side at DADF reading.<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB, enter the value of service label.<br>When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit (for back side), execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2 and write the value which is automatically set in the service label.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 700 to 1400  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1126   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2  |  |
| <b>DFTBK-R</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Shading target VL (R) entry: back side</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To enter the shading target value of Red on the back side at DADF reading.<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB, enter the value of service label.<br>When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit (for back side), execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2 and write the value which is automatically set in the service label.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 700 to 1400  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1156   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2  |  |
| <b>DFTBK-BW</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Shading target VL (B&amp;W) entry: back</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To enter the B&W shading target value on the back side at DADF reading.<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB, enter the value of service label.<br>When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit (for back side), execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL3, DF-WLVL4 and write the value which is automatically set in the service label.      |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit (for back side)  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 700 to 1400  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1126   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL3, DF-WLVL4  |  |

## ■ LASER

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > ADJUST (Adjustment mode) > LASER

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>PVE-OFST</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj of write start position of laser</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the image position by changing the laser emitting position.<br>When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the image moves by 0.1mm.<br>+: Toward rear<br>-: Toward front |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When adjusting image position  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Use this only when replacing the DC Controller PCB/Laser Scanner Unit. When adjusting the image write start position, use COPIER> ADJUST> FEED-ADJ> ADJ-C1/C2/C3/C4/MF/DK. If it is not sufficient enough, execute mechanical adjustment.                              |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -300 to 300  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> FEED-ADJ> ADJ-C1, ADJ-C2, ADJ-C3, ADJ-C4, ADJ-MF, ADJ-DK   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |
| <b>POWER</b>                     | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj laser power at no potential control</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the laser power when the potential control is not performed.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 255   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> PO-CNT<br>COPIER> OPTION> TEMPO> F-POT-SW  |  |

## ■ IMG-REG

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > ADJUST (Adjustment mode) > IMG-REG

|                                  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>MAG-H-K</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Fine adj of magnification: horz scan</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To make a fine adjustment of image magnification in horizontal scanning direction by adjusting the rotation speed of the Polygon Mirror/modulating clock.<br>Convert the magnification measurement line length of PG for image position adjustment into a percentage, and enter the amount of change in percentage.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the image magnification changes by 0.01%.<br>+: Enlarge<br>-: Reduce |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | - When checking image at initial installation<br>- At check operation when replacing the Laser Scanner Unit<br>- When adjustment is requested by a user   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Do not use this at the normal service.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -100 to 100   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | %   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.01  |   |
| <b>MAG-V</b>                     | <b>1</b>  | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                          |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.01  |   |

## ■ DEVELOP

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > ADJUST (Adjustment mode) > DEVELOP

| <b>BIAS</b>                      | <b>1</b> | <b>Adjustment of developing bias</b>  |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To adjust the developing bias when the potential control is not performed.                  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When potential control is not performed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 600  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | V   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 180   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>FRQ-DEV</b>                   | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of developing bias frequency</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the frequency of developing bias.<br>Increase the value when fogging occurs.         |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When fogging occurs   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value and press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | -2 to 3<br>-2 to -1: Not used, 0: 2.7kHz, 1: 3.0kHz, 2: 3.2kHz, 3: 3.5kHz                   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |

## ■ DENS

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > ADJUST (Adjustment mode) > DENS

| <b>DENS-ADJ</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Density correction of copy image</b>  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To correct the density of copy image by changing the F-value table.<br>When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.<br>Blurring is alleviated when the value is increased, and fogging is alleviated when the value is decreased. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When fogging or blurring at high density area occurs with a copy image   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Density of printer output image cannot be corrected.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1 to 9   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 5  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | F-value table: shows the relationship between original density and image density.  |

## ■ BLANK

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > ADJUST (Adjustment mode) > BLANK

| <b>BLANK-T</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Adjustment of leading edge margin</b>   |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To adjust the margin on the leading edge of paper.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin is increased toward the center of the paper by 1 pixel (0.0212 mm). |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | - When reducing the margin upon user's request<br>- When enlarging the margin for transfer separation/fixing separation  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1000  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | pixel  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 118  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; BLANK

|                                  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>BLANK-L</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Adjustment of left edge margin</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the margin on the left edge of paper.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin is increased toward the center of the paper by 1 pixel (0.0212 mm).     |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | - When reducing the margin upon user's request<br>- When enlarging the margin for transfer separation/fixing separation   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1000   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | pixel   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 118   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |   |
| <b>BLANK-R</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Adjustment of right edge margin</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the margin on the right edge of paper.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin is increased toward the center of the paper by 1 pixel (0.0212 mm).    |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | - When reducing the margin upon user's request<br>- When enlarging the margin for transfer separation/fixing separation   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1000   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | pixel   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 118   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |   |
| <b>BLANK-B</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Adjustment of trailing edge margin</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the margin on the trailing edge of paper.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin is increased toward the center of the paper by 1 pixel (0.0212 mm). |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | - When reducing the margin upon user's request<br>- When enlarging the margin for transfer separation/fixing separation   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1000   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | pixel   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 118   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |   |



## ■ V-CONT

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > ADJUST (Adjustment mode) > V-CONT

|                                  |   |  |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>EPOTOFST</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Manual entry of Potential Sensor offset</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the offset auto adjustment value of Potential Sensor manually.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the offset value changes by 0.8 V.<br>+: Identified as the lower potential than the detected one<br>-: Identified as the higher potential than the detected one  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When an error is displayed by executing OFST (auto offset adjustment) at the replacement of Potential Sensor (When the value out of specified range is set due to Potential Sensor disconnection/connection failure/installation failure), restore to the factory setting values.<br>1) To stop the error, set 933 (V) in EPOTOFST.<br>2) Check around the Potential Sensor.<br>If there is an error, address it and if not, go to the step 3).<br>3) Enter the value of service label.<br>4) If image fogging or the like occurs, increase the value by 10V increment. |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 765 to 1000   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | V   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> FUNCTION> DPC> OFST   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.8   |  |
| <b>VL-OFST</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Bright area tgt potential ofst VL entry</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the offset auto adjustment value of bright area target potential VL manually.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the offset value changes by 1V.<br>+: Increase<br>-: Decrease   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -30 to 30   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | V   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |  |
| <b>VD-OFST</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Dark area tgt potential ofst VL entry</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the offset auto adjustment value of dark area target potential VL manually.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the offset value changes by 1V.<br>+: Increase<br>-: Decrease   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -30 to 30   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | V   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; V-CONT

|                                  |   |  |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>DE-OFST</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Copy image Vdc offset value entry</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the Vdc offset auto adjustment value for potential control of copy image manually.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the offset value changes by 1V.<br>+: Increase<br>-: Decrease  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | V   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |  |
| <b>VCONT-1</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Dev contrast crrect potntl:first time/day</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To make a fine adjustment of correction potential of developing contrast target potential Vcont for the first time of the day.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When image density for the first time of the day is low   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 10   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | V   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |  |
| <b>VL-OF-L</b>                   | <b>2</b>  | <b>Bright area target potential:thin</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To make a fine adjustment of bright area target potential VL with thin paper.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When an image density failure occurs with thin paper  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -200 to 200   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | V   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 20  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |  |
| <b>SMR-IPRV</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>Smeared image control batch settings</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the service modes necessary for smeared image control (toner scattering) collectively.<br>When 1 is set, offset value of each service mode is set.<br>- COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> P-TR-OF1 to 6 (Environment: 4, feed mode: 7, offset value of pre-transfer charging current: +10)<br>- COPIER> ADJUST> V-CONT> VL-OFST (Offset value of bright area target potential: 30)<br>- COPIER> ADJUST> V-CONT> VD-OFST (Offset value of dark area target potential: -30)<br>When 0 is set, each offset value returns to 0 (default). |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When a smeared image occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.<br>3) Execute auto gradation adjustment (full adjustment).  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | When the numerical value of the item (P-TR-OF1 to 6, VL-OFST, VD-OFDT) in which the offset value is collectively set is changed, SMR-IPRV becomes from 1 to 0.<br>This will only appear as 0, and the settings will be retained.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> P-TR-OF1 - 6<br>COPIER> ADJUST> V-CONT> VL-OFST, VD-OFST   |  |

## ■ PASCAL

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > ADJUST (Adjustment mode) > PASCAL

|                                  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>OFST-P-Y</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Y density adj at test print reading</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the offset of Y-color test print reading signal at auto gradation adjustment (full adjustment).<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. As the value is larger, the image after adjustment gets darker.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -128 to 128   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | According to the adjustment value of the Reader at factory shipment   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |   |
| <b>OFST-P-M</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>M density adj at test print reading</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the offset of M-color test print reading signal at auto gradation adjustment (full adjustment).<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. As the value is larger, the image after adjustment gets darker.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -128 to 128   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | According to the adjustment value of the Reader at factory shipment   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |   |
| <b>OFST-P-C</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>C density adj at test print reading</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the offset of C-color test print reading signal at auto gradation adjustment (full adjustment).<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. As the value is larger, the image after adjustment gets darker.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -128 to 128   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | According to the adjustment value of the Reader at factory shipment   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |   |
| <b>OFST-P-K</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Bk density adj at test print reading</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the offset of Bk-color test print reading signal at auto gradation adjustment (full adjustment).<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. As the value is larger, the image after adjustment gets darker. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -128 to 128   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | According to the adjustment value of the Reader at factory shipment   |   |

## ■ HV-PRI

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > ADJUST (Adjustment mode) > HV-PRI

| PRIMARY                          | 1   | Adjustment of primary charging current |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the primary charging current flows to the Primary Charging Assembly when potential control is OFF.<br>When potential control is turned OFF, the specified primary charging current is output. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | - When outputting image while potential control is OFF<br>- When changing the primary charging current and then checking the high voltage output  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1600   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1000  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> PO-CNT  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |  |

| PRI-GRID                         | 1   | Adjustment of Pry Chg Ass'y grid bias |
|----------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the grid voltage of the Primary Charging Assembly at potential control.<br>Adjust the offset value for the voltage table that changes according to the durability.<br>When an image failure occurs due to the soiled Primary Charging Wire, set a negative value.<br>If the value in COPIER> DISPLAY> DPOT> PRIM-C is 1550 (micro A) or higher when E061-0101 (potential control error) occurs, set a positive value. |                                       |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | - When an image failure occurs due to the soiled Primary Charging Wire<br>- When E061-0101 occurs   |                                       |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.   |                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 220  |                                       |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | V   |                                       |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |                                       |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> DISPLAY> DPOT> PRIM-C   |                                       |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |                                       |

## ■ HV-TR

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > ADJUST (Adjustment mode) > HV-TR

| TR-OFS1                          | 2   | Adj trns tgt crrent offset:plain1,2/color |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the offset value of the target current of the Transfer Roller for plain paper 1, 2/colored paper.<br>Enter the offset value in the right column. The left 2 columns are not used. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When transfer failure occurs  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-OFS2 - 6  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 5   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; HV-TR

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>TR-OFS2</b>                   | <b>2</b>   | <b>Adj trns tgt crnt offset: pln3/hvy1-4</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the offset value of the target current of the Transfer Roller for plain paper 3 and heavy paper 1 to 4.<br>Enter the offset value in the right column. The left 2 columns are not used.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When transfer failure occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-OFS1, 3 - 8  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 5  |  |
| <b>TR-OFS3</b>                   | <b>2</b>   | <b>Adj trns tgt crnt offset: heavy 5, 6</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the offset value of the target current of the Transfer Roller for heavy paper 5 and 6.<br>Enter the offset value in the right column. The left 2 columns are not used.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When transfer failure occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-OFS1, 2, 4 - 6   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 5  |  |
| <b>TR-OFS4</b>                   | <b>2</b>   | <b>Adj transfer tgt current offset: Thin</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the offset value of the target current of the Transfer Roller for thin paper.<br>Enter the offset value in the right column. The left 2 columns are not used.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When transfer failure occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-OFS1 - 3, 5 - 6  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 5  |  |
| <b>TR-OFS5</b>                   | <b>2</b>   | <b>Adj trns tgt crnt offset: Spec ppr, 1st</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the offset value of the target current of the Transfer Roller when feeding 1st side of the specified paper.<br>Enter the offset value in the right column. The left 2 columns are not used.<br>Set the paper type with TR-SP1. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When transfer failure occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-OFS1 - 4, 6, TR-SP1  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 5  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; HV-TR

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>TR-OFS6</b>                   | <b>2</b>   | <b>Adj trns tgt crrent offset: Spec ppr, 2nd</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the offset value of the target current of the Transfer Roller when feeding 2nd side of the specified paper.<br>Enter the offset value in the right column. The left 2 columns are not used.<br>Set the paper type with TR-SP2. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When transfer failure occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-OFS1 - 5, TR-SP2   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 5  |  |
| <b>TR-L-OF1</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Adj lead edge trns tgt crrent ofst:Plain</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the leading edge transfer target current and the offset value of leading edge transfer bias output timing for plain paper.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When a drum separation failure occurs  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | Leading edge transfer target current offset value: -2 to 10<br>Offset value of leading edge transfer bias output timing: 0 to 20   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-L-OF2 - 6  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 5  |  |
| <b>TR-L-OF2</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Adj lead edge trns tgt crrent:pln3/hvy1-4</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the leading edge transfer target current and the offset value of leading edge transfer bias output timing for plain paper 3 and heavy paper 1 to 4.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When a drum separation failure occurs  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | Leading edge transfer target current offset value: -2 to 10<br>Offset value of leading edge transfer bias output timing: 0 to 20   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-L-OF1, 3 - 6   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 5  |  |
| <b>TR-L-OF3</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Adj lead edge trns tgt crrent ofst:hvy5,6</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the leading edge transfer target current and the offset value of leading edge transfer bias output timing for heavy paper 5 and 6.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When a drum separation failure occurs  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | Leading edge transfer target current offset value: -2 to 10<br>Offset value of leading edge transfer bias output timing: 0 to 20   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-L-OF1, 2, 4 - 6  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 5  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; HV-TR

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>TR-L-OF4</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Adj lead edge trns tgt crmnt ofst: Thin</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the leading edge transfer target current and the offset value of leading edge transfer bias output timing for thin paper.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When a drum separation failure occurs  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | Leading edge transfer target current offset value: -2 to 10<br>Offset value of leading edge transfer bias output timing: 0 to 20   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-L-OF1 - 3, 5 - 6   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 5  |   |
| <b>TR-L-OF5</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Adj lead edg trn tgt crmnt ofst:Spec,1st</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the leading edge transfer target current and the offset value of leading edge transfer bias output timing when feeding 1st side of the specified paper.<br>Set the paper type with TR-L-SP1. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When a drum separation failure occurs  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | Leading edge transfer target current offset value: -2 to 10<br>Offset value of leading edge transfer bias output timing: 0 to 20   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-L-OF1 - 4, 6, TR-L-SP1   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 5  |   |
| <b>TR-L-OF6</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Adj lead edg trn tgt crmnt ofst:Spec,2nd</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the leading edge transfer target current and the offset value of leading edge transfer bias output timing when feeding 2nd side of the specified paper.<br>Set the paper type with TR-L-SP2. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When a drum separation failure occurs  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | Leading edge transfer target current offset value: -2 to 10<br>Offset value of leading edge transfer bias output timing: 0 to 20   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-L-OF1 - 5, TR-L-SP2  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 5  |   |
| <b>P-TR-OF1</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Adj pre-trn chg crmnt ofst: pln1,2/color</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the offset value of the pre-transfer charging current for plain paper 1, 2/colored paper.<br>Enter the offset value in the right column. The left 2 columns are not used.                    |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When transfer failure occurs   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> P-TR-OF2 - 6  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 10   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; HV-TR

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>P-TR-OF2</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Adj pre-trn chg crnt ofst: pln3/hvy1-4</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the offset value of the pre-transfer charging current for plain paper 3 and heavy paper 1 to 4.<br>Enter the offset value in the right column. The left 2 columns are not used.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When transfer failure occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> P-TR-OF1, 3 - 6   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 10   |  |
| <b>P-TR-OF3</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Adj pre-trn charge crnt ofst: heavy 5,6</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the offset value of the pre-transfer charging current for heavy paper 5 and 6.<br>Enter the offset value in the right column. The left 2 columns are not used.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When transfer failure occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> P-TR-OF1, 2, 4 - 6  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 10   |  |
| <b>P-TR-OF4</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Adj of pre-trn charge crnt ofst: Thin</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the offset value of the pre-transfer charging current for thin paper.<br>Enter the offset value in the right column. The left 2 columns are not used.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When transfer failure occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> P-TR-OF1 - 3, 5 - 6   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 10   |  |
| <b>P-TR-OF5</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Adj pre-trn chg crnt ofst: Spec ppr,1st</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the offset value of the pre-transfer charging current when feeding 1st side of the specified paper.<br>Enter the offset value in the right column. The left 2 columns are not used.<br>Set the paper type with P-TR-SP1. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When transfer failure occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> P-TR-OF1 - 4, 6, P-TR-SP1   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 10   |  |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; HV-TR

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>P-TR-OF6</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Adj pre-trn chg crnt ofst: Spec ppr,2nd</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the offset value of the pre-transfer charging current when feeding 2nd side of the specified paper.<br>Enter the offset value in the right column. The left 2 columns are not used.<br>Set the paper type with P-TR-SP2. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When transfer failure occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> P-TR-OF1 - 5, P-TR-SP2  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 10   |  |
| <b>TR-SP1</b>                    | <b>2</b>   | <b>Set ppr type(1st) for trns tgt crnt adj</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the paper type (1st side) which the target current of the Transfer Roller is adjusted.<br>Set the offset value of the current with TR-OFS5.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When transfer failure occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 10<br>0: No specification, 1: Transparency, 2: Postcard, 3: Tracing paper, 4: Bond paper, 5: Labels, 6: Recycled paper, 7: Not used, 8: Punched paper, 9: Tab paper, 10: Letterhead   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-OFS5   |  |
| <b>TR-SP2</b>                    | <b>2</b>   | <b>Set ppr type(2nd) for trns tgt crnt adj</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the paper type (2nd side) which the target current of the Transfer Roller is adjusted.<br>Set the offset value of the current with TR-OFS6.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When transfer failure occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 10<br>0: No specification, 1: Transparency, 2: Postcard, 3: Tracing paper, 4: Bond paper, 5: Labels, 6: Recycled paper, 7: Not used, 8: Punched paper, 9: Tab paper, 10: Letterhead   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-OFS6   |  |
| <b>TR-L-SP1</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Set ppr(1st): lead edg trn tgt crnt adj</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the paper type (1st side) which the leading edge transfer target current and the leading edge transfer bias output timing are adjusted.<br>Set the offset values with TR-L-OF5.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When a drum separation failure occurs  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 10<br>0: No specification, 1: Transparency, 2: Postcard, 3: Tracing paper, 4: Bond paper, 5: Labels, 6: Recycled paper, 7: Plain paper/Colored paper, 8: Punched paper, 9: Tab paper, 10: Letterhead                          |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-L-OF5  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; HV-TR

|                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>TR-L-SP2</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Set ppr(2nd): lead edg trn tgt crnt adj</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the paper type (2nd side) which the leading edge transfer target current and the leading edge transfer bias output timing are adjusted.<br>Set the offset values with TR-L-OF6.                    |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When a drum separation failure occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 10<br>0: No specification, 1: Transparency, 2: Postcard, 3: Tracing paper, 4: Bond paper, 5: Labels, 6: Recycled paper, 7: Plain paper/Colored paper, 8: Punched paper, 9: Tab paper, 10: Letterhead |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-L-OF6   |  |
| <b>P-TR-SP1</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Set ppr type(1st) for pre-trns chg crnt</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the paper type (1st side) which the pre-transfer charging current is adjusted.<br>Set the offset value of the current with P-TR-OF5.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When transfer failure occurs  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 10<br>0: No specification, 1: Transparency, 2: Postcard, 3: Tracing paper, 4: Bond paper, 5: Labels, 6: Recycled paper, 7: Not used, 8: Punched paper, 9: Tab paper, 10: Letterhead                  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> P-TR-OF5   |  |
| <b>P-TR-SP2</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Set ppr type(2nd) for pre-trns chg crnt</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the paper type (2nd side) which the pre-transfer charging current is adjusted.<br>Set the offset value of the current with P-TR-OF6.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When transfer failure occurs  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 10<br>0: No specification, 1: Transparency, 2: Postcard, 3: Tracing paper, 4: Bond paper, 5: Labels, 6: Recycled paper, 7: Not used, 8: Punched paper, 9: Tab paper, 10: Letterhead                  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> P-TR-OF6   |  |

## ■ FEED-ADJ

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; FEED-ADJ

|                                  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>REGIST</b>                    | <b>1</b>  | <b>Adj register start timing: &lt;/=90g/m2, 1st</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the leading edge margin by changing the timing to turn ON the Registration Motor when feeding the 1st side of paper which paper weight is 90 g/m2 or less (excluding transparency and clear film).<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the leading edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Top margin becomes smaller. (An image moves upward.)<br>-: Top margin becomes larger. (An image moves downward.)<br>When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; FEED-ADJ

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>ADJ-C1</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Right Deck write start pstn in horz scan</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the image write start position in the horizontal scanning direction when feeding paper from the Right Deck.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.)<br>-: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.)<br>When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | If write start position cannot be adjusted in service mode, execute mechanical adjustment.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -20 to 20  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |
| <b>ADJ-C2</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Left Deck write start pstn in horz scan</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the image write start position in the horizontal scanning direction when feeding paper from the Left Deck.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.)<br>-: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.)<br>When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | If write start position cannot be adjusted in service mode, execute mechanical adjustment.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -20 to 20  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |
| <b>ADJ-C3</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Cassette 3 write start pstn in horz scan</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the image write start position in the horizontal scanning direction when feeding paper from the Cassette 3.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.)<br>-: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.)<br>When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | If write start position cannot be adjusted in service mode, execute mechanical adjustment.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -20 to 20  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; FEED-ADJ

|                                  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>ADJ-C4</b>                    | <b>1</b>  | <b>Cassette 4 write start pstn in horz scan</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the image write start position in the horizontal scanning direction when feeding paper from the Cassette 4.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.)<br>-: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.)<br>When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.                |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | If write start position cannot be adjusted in service mode, execute mechanical adjustment.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -20 to 20   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1   |   |
| <b>ADJ-MF</b>                    | <b>1</b>  | <b>Write start pstn in horz scan: MP Tray</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the image write start position in the horizontal scanning direction when feeding paper from the Multi-purpose Tray.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.)<br>-: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.)<br>When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.        |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | If write start position cannot be adjusted in service mode, execute mechanical adjustment.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -20 to 20   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1   |   |
| <b>ADJ-DK</b>                    | <b>1</b>  | <b>Write start pstn in horz scan:Deck/POD D</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the image write start position in the horizontal scanning direction when feeding paper from the Paper Deck/ POD Deck Lite.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.)<br>-: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.)<br>When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | If write start position cannot be adjusted in service mode, execute mechanical adjustment.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -20 to 20   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; FEED-ADJ

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>ADJ-REFE</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Write start pstn in horz scan: 2nd side</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>To adjust the image write start position on the second side in the horizontal scanning direction. The image write start position is set in the relative amount against the first side regardless of the paper pickup cassette/tray/deck.</p> <p>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.<br/>           +: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.)<br/>           -: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.)</p> <p>When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.</p> |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |
| <b>RG-MF</b>                     | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj register start tmng:&lt;/=90g/m2,MP Tray</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>To adjust the leading edge margin by changing the timing to turn ON the Registration Motor when feeding paper which paper weight is 90 g/m2 or less (excluding transparency and clear film) from the Multi-purpose Tray.</p> <p>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the leading edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.<br/>           +: Top margin becomes smaller. (An image moves upward.)<br/>           -: Top margin becomes larger. (An image moves downward.)</p>  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |
| <b>REG-THCK</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj register start timing: &gt;/= 91g/m2</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>To adjust the leading edge margin by changing the timing to turn ON the Registration Motor when feeding paper which paper weight is 91 g/m2 or more (excluding transparency and clear film).</p> <p>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the leading edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.<br/>           +: Top margin becomes smaller. (An image moves upward.)<br/>           -: Top margin becomes larger. (An image moves downward.)</p>  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |
| <b>REG-OHT</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj register start tmng:trnsp, clear film</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>To adjust the leading edge margin by changing the timing to turn ON the Registration Motor when feeding transparency/clear film.</p> <p>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the leading edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.<br/>           +: Top margin becomes smaller. (An image moves upward.)<br/>           -: Top margin becomes larger. (An image moves downward.)</p>  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; FEED-ADJ

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>REG-DUP1</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj register start timing:&lt;/=90g/m2, 2nd</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the leading edge margin by changing the timing to turn ON the Registration Motor when feeding the 2nd side of paper which paper weight is 90 g/m2 or less.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the leading edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Top margin becomes smaller. (An image moves upward.)<br>-: Top margin becomes larger. (An image moves downward.) |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When adjusting the leading edge margin   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |
| <b>REG-DUP2</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj register start timing:&gt;/=91g/m2, 2nd</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the leading edge margin by changing the timing to turn ON the Registration Motor when feeding the 2nd side of paper which paper weight is 91 g/m2 or more.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the leading edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Top margin becomes smaller. (An image moves upward.)<br>-: Top margin becomes larger. (An image moves downward.) |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When adjusting the leading edge margin   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |
| <b>LP-FEED1</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj pre-rgst arch amnt: casstt,&lt;/=90g/m2</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the arch amount before registration when feeding paper which paper weight is 90 g/m2 or less from a cassette.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the pre-registration arch amount changes by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Increase<br>-: Decrease   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |
| <b>LP-FEED2</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj pre-rgst arch amnt: casstt,&gt;/=91g/m2</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the arch amount before registration when feeding paper which paper weight is 91 g/m2 or more from a cassette.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the pre-registration arch amount changes by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Increase<br>-: Decrease   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; FEED-ADJ

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>LP-MULT1</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj pre-rgst arch amnt:MP Tray,&lt;/=90g/m2</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the arch amount before registration when feeding paper which paper weight is 90 g/m2 or less from the Multi-purpose Tray.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the pre-registration arch amount changes by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Increase<br>-: Decrease |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |
| <b>LP-MULT2</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj pre-rgst arch amnt:MP Tray,&gt;/=91g/m2</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the arch amount before registration when feeding paper which paper weight is 91 g/m2 or more from the Multi-purpose Tray.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the pre-registration arch amount changes by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Increase<br>-: Decrease |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |
| <b>LP-DUP1</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj pre-rgst arch amnt: 2-side,&lt;/=90g/m2</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the arch amount before registration when feeding paper which paper weight is 90 g/m2 or less in duplex mode.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the pre-registration arch amount changes by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Increase<br>-: Decrease              |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |
| <b>LP-DUP2</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj pre-rgst arch amnt: 2-side,&gt;/=91g/m2</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the arch amount before registration when feeding paper which paper weight is 91 g/m2 or more in duplex mode.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the pre-registration arch amount changes by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Increase<br>-: Decrease              |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; FEED-ADJ

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>REG-SPD</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Speed adj Registration Motor:1/1 speed</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To adjust 1/1 speed of the Registration Motor.<br>+: The speed is increased.<br>-: The speed is decreased.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | - At occurrence of an image failure<br>- When the leading edge margin becomes larger due to wear of the Registration Roller   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | -50 to 50   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>TBLT-SPD</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Fine adjustment of ETB speed</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To make a fine adjustment of the ETB speed.<br>+: The speed is increased.<br>-: The speed is decreased.<br>When the speed is changed, image magnification in the vertical scanning direction is changed.                            |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When image magnification is changed due to replacement of ETB, etc.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | -200 to 200   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | mm  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 0.1   |
| <b>LP-DK</b>                     | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj pre-rgst arch amount: 1st side, Deck</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To adjust the arch amount before registration for the 1st side of paper when feeding paper from POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the arch amount is changed by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Increase<br>-: Decrease |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When skew occurs on the 1st side at the time of picking up paper from POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | If the value is too large, paper wrinkles or paper bending may occur.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | -50 to 50   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | mm  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 0.1   |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; FEED-ADJ

| <b>DK1-PKLV</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Adjustment of paper surface height: Deck</b>  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To adjust the pickup position of the POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the pickup position is moved by 1 mm.<br>+: Move up<br>-: Move down<br>Increase the value when a pickup failure occurs, and decrease the value when double feed occurs. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | - When a pickup failure occurs<br>- When double feed occurs  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | If the value is too large, double feed may occur. If the value is too small, a pickup failure may occur.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | -10 to 10<br>-10 to -1: Move down by 1 mm, 0: 0 mm, 1: Move up by 1 mm, 2 to 10: Move up by 2 mm   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | mm   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |

## ■ CST-ADJ

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CST-ADJ

| <b>MF-A4R</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj of MP Tray A4R paper width</b>   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To adjust the width of A4R paper in the Multi-purpose Tray.<br>When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.<br>When replacing the Multi-purpose Tray Paper Width Detection PCB or registering a new value, execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CST> A4R. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Multi-purpose Tray Paper Width Detection PCB or registering a new value  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 255  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> CST> A4R  |
| <b>MF-A6R</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj of MP Tray A6R paper width</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To adjust the width of A6R paper in the Multi-purpose Tray.<br>When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.<br>When replacing the Multi-purpose Tray Paper Width Detection PCB or registering a new value, execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CST> A6R. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Multi-purpose Tray Paper Width Detection PCB or registering a new value  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 255  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> CST> A6R  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CST-ADJ

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>MF-A4</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Adj of MP Tray A4 paper width</b>        |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To adjust the width of A4 paper in the Multi-purpose Tray.<br>When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.<br>When replacing the Multi-purpose Tray Paper Width Detection PCB or registering a new value, execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CST> A4. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Multi-purpose Tray Paper Width Detection PCB or registering a new value  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 255  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> CST> A4   |   |
| <b>PDK-A4</b>                 | <b>1</b>  | <b>Adj of POD Deck Lite A4 paper width</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To adjust the width of A4 paper in the POD Deck Lite.<br>When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.<br>When replacing the Paper Width Sensor PCB or registering a new value, execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CST> PDK-A4.                        |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Paper Width Sensor PCB or registering a new value  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1023   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> CST> PDK-A4   |   |
| <b>PDK-A5R</b>                | <b>1</b>  | <b>Adj of POD Deck Lite A5R paper width</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To adjust the width of A5R paper in the POD Deck Lite.<br>When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.<br>When replacing the Paper Width Sensor PCB or registering a new value, execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CST> PDK-A5R.                      |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Paper Width Sensor PCB or registering a new value  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1023   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> CST> PDK-A5R  |   |

## ■ MISC

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; MISC

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>SEG-ADJ</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set criteria for text/photo: front side</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the judgment level of text/photo original in Text/Photo/Map mode.<br>As the value is increased, the original tends to be detected as a photo document, and as the value is decreased, the original tends to be detected as a text document. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When adjusting the classification level of text and photo in Text/Photo/Map mode   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | -4 to 4  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; MISC

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>K-ADJ</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Set criteria for black text: front side</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the judgment level of black characters at text processing.<br>As the value is increased, the text tends to be detected as black.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When preferring the text to be judged as black  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -3 to 3   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>ACS-ADJ</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Set criteria for B&amp;W/color in ACS:front</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the judgment level of B&W/color original in ACS mode.<br>As the value is increased, the original tends to be detected as a B&W document, and as the value is decreased, the original tends to be detected as a color document. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When adjusting the color detection level in ACS mode  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -3 to 3   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>ACS-EN</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Set judgment area in ACS mode:front side</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the judgment area in ACS mode.<br>As the greater value is set, the judgment area is widened.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When adjusting the judgment area in ACS mode  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -2 to 2   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 1   |
| <b>ACS-CNT</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Set jdgmt pixel count area in ACS:front</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the area which counts the pixel to judge the color presence in ACS mode.<br>As the greater value is set, the judgment area is widened.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When adjusting the area which counts the pixel to judge the color presence in ACS mode  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -2 to 2   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>ACS-EN2</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Set ACS mode jdgmt area in DADF mode</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the judgment area in ACS mode at DADF reading.<br>As the greater value is set, the judgment area is widened.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When adjusting the judgment area in ACS mode at DADF reading  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -2 to 2   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 1   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; MISC

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>ACS-CNT2</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Set ACS jdgmt pixel count area in DADF</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the area which counts the pixel to judge the color presence in ACS mode at DADF reading. As the greater value is set, the judgment area is widened.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When adjusting the area which counts the pixel to judge the color presence in ACS mode at DADF reading   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | -2 to 2  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>SEG-ADJ3</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set criteria for text/photo: back side</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the judgment level of text/photo original in Text/Photo/Map mode (back side at duplex reading with 1 path).<br>As the value is increased, the original tends to be detected as a photo document, and as the value is decreased, the original tends to be detected as a text document. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When adjusting the classification level of text and photo in Text/Photo/Map mode (back side at duplex reading with 1 path)   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | -4 to 4  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>K-ADJ3</b>                 | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set criteria for black text: back side</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the judgment level of black characters at text processing (back side at duplex reading with 1 path).<br>As the value is increased, the text tends to be detected as black.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When preferring the text to be judged as black (back side at duplex reading with 1 path)   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | -3 to 3  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>ACS-ADJ3</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set ACS B&amp;W/color jdgmt stdrd:back side</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the judgment level of B&W/color original in ACS mode (back side at duplex reading with 1 path).<br>As the value is increased, the original tends to be detected as a B&W document, and as the value is decreased, the original tends to be detected as a color document.              |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When adjusting the color detection level in ACS mode (back side at duplex reading with 1 path)   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | -3 to 3  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>ACS-EN3</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Set of ACS mode jdgmt area: back side</b>       |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the judgment area in ACS mode (back side at duplex reading with 1 path).<br>As the greater value is set, the judgment area is widened.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When adjusting the judgment area in ACS mode (back side at duplex reading with 1 path)   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | -2 to 2  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; MISC

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>ACS-CNT3</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>ACS mode jdgmt pixel count area: back</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the area which counts the pixel to judge the color presence in ACS mode (back side at duplex reading with 1 path).<br>As the greater value is set, the judgment area is widen.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When adjusting the area which counts the pixel to judge the color presence in ACS mode (back side at duplex reading with 1 path)   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -2 to 2  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>TBSIS-WB</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Setting of blank band ejection time</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the blank band ejection time.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the ejection time changes by 0.1 second.<br>+: Increase<br>-: Decrease   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When an image failure (streaks of uneven density) occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | When a positive value is set, the ejection time increases.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 100   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | sec  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |
| <b>HP-OFST</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Setting of 2D shading drum HP offset</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported.<br>To set the home position of Photosensitive Drum in the vertical scanning direction at 2D shading.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the home position moves by 10 mm. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When adjusting the home position of the Photosensitive Drum at the replacement of the drum   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -5 to 5  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 10   |  |

## ■ EXP-LED

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; EXP-LED

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>PR-EXP</b>                    | <b>2</b>   | <b>Setting of Pre-exposure LED current</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the current of the Cleaning Pre-exposure LED.<br>Increase the value when taking a measure for drum ghost.<br>Decrease the value when potential is not applied well. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | - When drum ghost is significant (drum pitch is not correct)<br>- When potential is not applied well   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 110 to 233   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mA   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 181  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.4  |  |

## FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode)

### ■ INSTALL

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) > INSTALL

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>TONER-S</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Toner supply to Developing Assembly</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To execute a series of operation necessary for supplying toner to the Developing Assembly/Toner Supply area (drive the Developing Cylinder, Toner Stirring/Feed Member, Photosensitive Drum and ETB, and output developing bias) as a whole.<br>After counting down from 600 seconds, it is automatically stopped. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- At installation</li> <li>- When replacing the Developing Assembly</li> <li>- When replacing toner in the Developing Assembly</li> </ul>   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Select the items.<br>"Check the Developer" is displayed.<br>2) Check connection, and then press OK key.<br>It automatically stops after 10 minutes.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Although "Check the Developer" is displayed when selecting the item, be sure to check the connection between the Developing Assembly and connector in advance.</li> <li>- The operation can be stopped manually with OK key when a failure occurs.</li> </ul>             |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | During operation: xxx second (remaining time), When operation finished normally: END   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 600  |   |
| <b>Required Time</b>          | 13 min   |   |
| <b>STRD-POS</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Auto adj frt side read pstn: stream read</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To automatically adjust the Scanner Unit (for front side) position in feed direction when stream reading original with DADF.<br>The adjustment result is reflected to COPIER> ADJUST> ADJ-XY> STRD-POS.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | At DADF installation/uninstallation  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Set a paper for stream reading position adjustment, and then close the DADF.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>The operation automatically stops after the adjustment.<br>3) Write the value displayed by COPIER> ADJUST> ADJ-XY> STRD-POS in the service label.                                 |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Write the adjusted value in the service label.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | At normal termination: OK!, At abnormal termination: NG!   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> ADJUST> ADJ-XY> STRD-POS   |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | For the details of paper for stream reading position adjustment, refer to the Service Manual.  |   |
| <b>CARD</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Card number setting</b>                      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the card number to be used for Card Reader.<br>A series of numbers from the entered number to the number of cards specified by CARD-RNG can be used.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- At installation of the Card Reader</li> <li>- After replacement of the HDD</li> </ul>   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the number, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | The card management information (department ID and password) is initialized.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1 to 2001  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> CARD-RNG   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; INSTALL

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>E-RDS</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>ON/OFF of Embedded-RDS</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set whether to use the E-RDS.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When using Embedded-RDS  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to use E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG and RGW-ADR as a set.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Not used, 1: Used (All the counter information is sent.)  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | It differs according to the location.  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> ERDS-DAT   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Embedded-RDS: Function to send device information such as the device counter, failure, and consumables to the sales company's server via SOAP protocol |
| <b>RGW-PORT</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Set port number of Sales Co's server</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the port number of the sales company's server to be used for Embedded-RDS.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When using Embedded-RDS  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to use E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG and RGW-ADR as a set.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1 to 65535   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 443  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> E-RDS, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Embedded-RDS: Function to send device information such as the device counter, failure, and consumables to the sales company's server via SOAP protocol |
| <b>COM-TEST</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl connect result w/ Sales Co's server</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the result of the connection test with the sales company's server.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When using Embedded-RDS  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to use E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG and RGW-ADR as a set.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When connection is completed: OK, When connection is failed: NG  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Embedded-RDS: Function to send device information such as the device counter, failure, and consumables to the sales company's server via SOAP protocol |
| <b>COM-LOG</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl connect error w/ Sales Co's server</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display error information when the connection with the sales company's server failed.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When using Embedded-RDS  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to use E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG and RGW-ADR as a set.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | Year, date, time, error code, error detail information (maximum 128 characters)  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, RGW-ADR  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Embedded-RDS: Function to send device information such as the device counter, failure, and consumables to the sales company's server via SOAP protocol |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; INSTALL

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>RGW-ADR</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>URL setting of Sales Company's server</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the URL of the sales company's server to be used for Embedded-RDS.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When using Embedded-RDS  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Select the URL.<br>2) Enter the URL, and then press OK key.<br>3) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | - Do not use Shift-JIS character strings.<br>- Be sure to use E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG and RGW-ADR as a set.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | URL  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | https://b01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | Embedded-RDS: Function to send device information such as the device counter, failure, and consumables to the sales company's server via SOAP protocol   |
| <b>CNT-DATE</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Set counter send start date to SC server</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the year, month, date, hour and minute to send counter information to the sales company's server.<br>This is displayed only when the Embedded-RDS third-party extended function is available. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When the non-Canon-made extension function of the Embedded-RDS is available  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | YYYYMMDDHHMM (12 digits)<br>YYYY: Year, MM: Month, DD: Date, HH: Hour, MM: Minute  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 000000000000   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | Embedded-RDS: Function to send device information such as the device counter, failure, and consumables to the sales company's server via SOAP protocol   |
| <b>CNT-INTV</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Set counter send interval to SC server</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the interval of sending counter information to the sales company's server in a unit of one hour.<br>This is displayed only when the Embedded-RDS third-party extended function is available.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When using the Embedded-RDS third-party extended function  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 1 to 168 (=1 week)   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | hour   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 24   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | Embedded-RDS: Function to send device information such as the device counter, failure, and consumables to the sales company's server via SOAP protocol   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; INSTALL

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>CDS-CTL</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set country/area when using CDS</b>       |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set country/region to enable CDS.<br>In principle, the default value is the same as that of CONFIG. If the value differs from the country/region of the vice-company of sales, change the setting.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When enabling CDS  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | If the setting value is not configured to be the same as the country/region of the vice-company of sales, the necessary firmware may not be able to be downloaded.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | JP: Japan, US: USA, GB: Great Britain, FR: France, DE: Germany, IT: Italy, AU: Australia, SG: Singapore, NL: Netherlands, KR: Korea, CN: China, TW: Taiwan, ES: Spain, SE: Sweden, PT: Portugal, NO: Norway, DK: Denmark, FI: Finland, PL: Poland, HU: Hungary, CZ: Czech Republic, SI: Slovenia, GR: Greece, EE: Estonia, RU: Russia, SK: Slovakia, RO: Romania, HR: Croatia, BG: Bulgaria, TR: Turkey, TH: Thailand, VN: Vietnam, AR: Argentina, IN: India, CA: Canada, LA: Latin America, HK: Hong Kong |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | It differs according to the location.  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> CONFIG   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | CDS: Contents Delivery System  |  |
| <b>DRM-INIT</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Initialization of Photosensitive Drum</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To initialize Photosensitive Drum.<br>Clear drum counter (PT-DRM), Drum Lot number, and checksum stored in the DC Controller.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | After replacement of the Photosensitive Drum   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> COUNTER> LF> K-DRM-LF<br>COPIER> DISPLAY> 2D-SHADE> CHK-SUM, DRM-LOT   |  |
| <b>RDSHDPOS</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Auto adj of Reader shading position</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To automatically adjust the Scanner Unit (for front side) position in feed direction when reading the White Plate on the left edge of the Copyboard Glass.<br>The adjustment result is reflected to ADJ-S.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | At start of operation: START, During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |  |
| <b>Required Time</b>          | 10 sec   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> ADJUST> ADJ-XY> ADJ-S  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Shading: It determines the white color reference by reading the White Plate.   |  |
| <b>BIT-SVC</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>OFF/ON of Web service of E-RDS</b>        |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set ON/OFF of Web service function of E-RDS.<br>When OFF is selected, authentication information cannot be obtained from E-RDS.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; INSTALL

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>DEV-G-R</b>                   | <b>2</b>   | <b>Exe ghost alleviate mode:Dev Ass'y rplce</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To execute the processing to remove unnecessary toner from the Photosensitive Drum when ghost occurs at replacement of the Developing Assembly.<br>Although the effect increases as this item is repeated, there will be no effect from 4th repetition.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When ghost occurs at replacement of the Developing Assembly with a new one   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Set A4/LTR size paper on the Multi-purpose Tray.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When executing this item, toner for 1200 sheets at 5% image ratio is consumed. Be sure to get approval from the user in advance by explaining that toner consumption is increased and it takes approx. 29 minutes.</li> <li>- Be sure to disconnect the network cable and telephone cord. Otherwise, this item will not be executed.</li> <li>- Although this item cannot be executed without placing paper, no paper will be consumed.</li> <li>- When Front Cover open/no toner/waste toner full is detected while this item is in process, the process is canceled. Once the process is canceled, cancel "local print" of "job" on the Status Monitor/Cancel screen. If it is not canceled, the process that is resumed after recovery will be printed/delivered as an actual job (wasting of paper).</li> <li>- After execution, make a copy to check the effect. If no effect is obtained, replace the Developing Assembly.</li> </ul> |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG   |   |
| <b>Required Time</b>             | 29 min   |   |
| <b>NFC-USE</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>ON/OFF of NFC option</b>                     |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to enable the installed NFC option.<br>Set 1 when using the NFC option. [Use NFC Card Emulation] is displayed in [Settings/Registration].   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When installing the NFC option   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Management Settings> Device Management> Use NFC Card Emulation   |   |
| <b>BLE-USE</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>ON/OFF of BLE module option</b>              |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to enable the installed BLE module option.<br>Set 1 when using the BLE module option. The BLE setting screen is displayed in [Settings/Registration].   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When installing the BLE module option  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Do not set 1 when the BLE module option is not installed.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>INSTDTST</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Batch set installation date info: YMDHN</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | Information on the current date and time is entered collectively in YMDHN of INSTDT by pressing INSTDTST.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | At installation  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER>OPTION>USER>INSTDT-Y<br>COPIER>OPTION>USER>INSTDT-M<br>COPIER>OPTION>USER>INSTDT-D<br>COPIER>OPTION>USER>INSTDT-H<br>COPIER>OPTION>USER>INSTDT-N  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; INSTALL

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>FAX-USE</b>                | <b>1</b>  | <b>Enable/disable FAX function</b>              |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To switch enable/disable of the FAX function of a device mounted with a FAX Board.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When disabling the FAX function of a device mounted with a FAX Board  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn ON/OFF the Main Power.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1   |   |
| <b>SUB-IF</b>                 | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set for line connecting to cloud service</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To select the network line connecting to the Canon cloud service  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When the Canon cloud service is used with a sub line  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Select either [Wired LAN+Wireless LAN] or [Wired LAN+Wired LAN] when selecting interface<br>2) Configure the network setting for the sub line<br>3) Select 1 for this setting<br>4) Turn the main power OFF, and then ON |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Main line, 1: Sub line   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |

## ■ CCD

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; CCD

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>DF-WLVL1</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>White level adj in book mode: color</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To adjust the white level for copyboard scanning automatically by setting the paper which is usually used by the user on the Copyboard Glass. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing the Copyboard Glass<br>- When replacing the Scanner Unit<br>- When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data     |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Set a paper on the Copyboard Glass.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Be sure to execute DF-WLVL2 in a row.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL2   |   |
| <b>DF-WLVL2</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>White level adj: stream reading, color</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To automatically adjust the white level for stream reading by placing the paper which is usually used by the user on the DADF.                |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing the Copyboard Glass<br>- When replacing the Scanner Unit<br>- When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data     |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Set paper on the DADF.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Be sure to execute this item after DF-WLVL1.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; CCD

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>DF-LNR</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Deriving of DADF front/back linearity</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To derive the front/back side linearity in DADF mode based on the scanning data which has been backed up at factory.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the value of the reader's service label.<br>COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> DFCH-R2, DFCH-G2, DFCH-B2, DFCH-K2, DFCH-R10, DFCH-G10, DFCH-B10, DFCH-K10, DFCH2R2, DFCH2G2, DFCH2B2, DFCH2K2, DFCH2R10, DFCH2G10, DFCH2B10, DFCH2K10<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> DFCH-R2/R10/G2/G10/B2/B10/K2/K10, DFCH2R2/10, DFCH2G2/10, DFCH2B2/10, DFCH2K2/10  |
| <b>DF-WLVL3</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>White level adj in book mode: B&amp;W</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To adjust the white level for copyboard scanning automatically by setting a paper which is usually used by the user on the Copyboard Glass.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing the Copyboard Glass<br>- When replacing the Scanner Unit<br>- When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Set a paper on the Copyboard Glass.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to execute DF-WLVL4 in a row.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL4  |
| <b>DF-WLVL4</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>White level adj: stream reading, B&amp;W</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To automatically adjust the white level for stream reading by placing the paper which is usually used by the user on the DADF.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing the Copyboard Glass<br>- When replacing the Scanner Unit<br>- When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Set paper on the DADF.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to execute this item after DF-WLVL3.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL3  |
| <b>BW-TGT</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Set of B&amp;W shading target value</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | After the white level data (X/Y/Z) for the Standard White Plate is set, read the Standard White Plate and set the black and white shading target value.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to execute this item after execution of COPIER> ADJUST> CCD>W-PLT-X, W-PLT-Y, W-PLT-Z.   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> W-PLT-X/Y/Z, SH-TRGT  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; CCD

| <b>LMPADJ</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj light intensity of Scanner Unit LED</b>   |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To adjust the light intensity of Scanner Unit's LED lamp and store adjustment result. Using the stored value helps cut startup time.           |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing the Scanner Unit<br>- When replacing the Main Controller PCB  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Close the ADF or Copyboard.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Execute this mode with the ADF or Copyboard closed. Adjustment fails if executed with them open.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | - Operation in process: ACTIVE<br>- Proper completion: OK!<br>- Abnormal termination: NG!  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD > LAMP-BW<br>COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD > LAMP-CL<br>COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD > LAMP2-BW<br>COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD > LAMP2-CL |

## ■ DPC

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; DPC

| <b>DPC</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Execution of potential control</b>   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute potential control for the Photosensitive Drum manually. (It is usually executed automatically.)  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking potential control operation   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Required Time</b>          |          | 10 sec  |
| <b>OFST</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Potential adjustment of Potential Sensor</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To adjust the detection potential offset value of the Potential Sensor automatically.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing the Potential Sensor<br>- At diagnosis for a failure of the Potential Sensor   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | An error is displayed when open circuit/connection failure/installation failure occurs to the Potential Sensor at the time of replacement. In this case, manually set the value to 0 V in EPOTOFST and then make an adjustment. |
| <b>Required Time</b>          |          | 4 sec   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> ADJUST> V-CONT> EPOTOFST  |
| <b>DPC2</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Execution of potential control</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute potential control for the Photosensitive Drum manually (without restarting the host machine).  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking potential control operation   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>After 10 seconds, potential control is completed.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | The result of potential control is reflected after turning OFF/ON the power.  |
| <b>Required Time</b>          |          | 10 sec  |

## ■ CST

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) > CST

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>MF-A4R</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Reg Multi-purpose Tray A4R stdrd width</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To register the standard value of A4R paper width (210mm) on the Multi-purpose Tray. Make a fine adjustment by COPIER> ADJUST> CST-ADJ> MF-A4R.  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Set A4R paper on the Multi-purpose Tray, and set the guide so that it fits the paper width.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>The value is registered after automatic adjustment.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | After execution, check the registered value by COPIER> ADJUST> CST-ADJ> MF-A4R, and write it down on the service label.  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> ADJUST> CST-ADJ> MF-A4R  |
| <b>MF-A6R</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Reg Multi-purpose Tray A6R stdrd width</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To register the standard value of A6R paper width (105 mm) on the Multi-purpose Tray. Make a fine adjustment by COPIER> ADJUST> CST-ADJ> MF-A6R.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Set A6R paper on the Multi-purpose Tray, and set the guide so that it fits the paper width.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>The value is registered after automatic adjustment.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | After execution, check the registered value by COPIER> ADJUST> CST-ADJ> MF-A6R, and write it down on the service label.  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> ADJUST> CST-ADJ> MF-A6R  |
| <b>MF-A4</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Reg Multi-purpose Tray A4 standard width</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To register the standard value of A4 paper width (297 mm) on the Multi-purpose Tray. Make a fine adjustment by COPIER> ADJUST> CST-ADJ> MF-A4.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Set A4 paper on the Multi-purpose Tray, and set the guide so that it fits the paper width.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>The value is registered after automatic adjustment.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | After execution, check the registered value by COPIER> ADJUST> CST-ADJ> MF-A4, and write it down on the service label.   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> ADJUST> CST-ADJ> MF-A4   |
| <b>DK1-FCK</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Checking of Deck individual delivery</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To check whether individual delivery of POD Deck Lite that is isolated from the host machine can be performed.<br>If it operates normally, only a sheet of paper is delivered.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When identifying the cause (pickup failure, skew feed, etc.)   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Isolate the POD Deck Lite from the host machine.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Isolate the POD Deck Lite before execution.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>DK1-INT1</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Initialization at Deck parts replacement</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute initialization of POD Deck Lite at parts replacement.<br>By executing this item, the lifter moves up from the lower limit position and stops when the Paper Surface Sensor detects paper top face. The travel distance is reflected to the paper level detection control. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Pickup Unit/PCB/compartament  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Execute this item while there is no paper in a deck and the lifter is in stopped state.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Required Time</b>          |          | 30 sec   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; CST

|                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>DK1-SPAD</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Setting of Deck Lifter stop position</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set stop position of the lifter when opening the compartment of the POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit.<br>When 0 is set, the lifter moves down to the lower limit position when the compartment is opened. When 1 is set, the lifer moves up to the pickup position and then the compartment opens. The height of the Pre-separation Plate can be adjusted.<br>Even 1 is set, the value is returned to 0 when the compartment is opened. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When adjusting pre-separation position after replacing the Pickup Unit/compartment  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Set 0 for DK1-PKLV before execution.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Stop at lower limit position (normal), 1: Stop at pickup position  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> ADJUST> FEED-ADJ> DK1-PKLV  |  |
| <b>PDK-A4</b>                 | <b>1</b>  | <b>Rgst POD Deck Lite A4 standard width</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To register the standard value of A4 paper width (297 mm) on the POD Deck Lite.<br>Make a fine adjustment by COPIER> ADJUST> CST-ADJ> PDK-A4.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Paper Width Sensor PCB or registering a new value  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Set A4 paper on the POD Deck Lite, and set the guide so that it fits the paper width.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>The value is registered after automatic adjustment.   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | After execution, check the registered value by COPIER> ADJUST> CST-ADJ> PDK-A4, and write it down on the service label.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1023   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> ADJUST> CST-ADJ> PDK-A4   |  |
| <b>PDK-A5R</b>                | <b>1</b>  | <b>Rgst POD Deck Lite A5R standard width</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To register the standard value of A5R paper width (148.5 mm) on the POD Deck Lite.<br>Make a fine adjustment by COPIER> ADJUST> CST-ADJ> PDK-A5R.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data<br>- When replacing the Paper Width Sensor PCB or registering a new value  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Set A5R paper on the POD Deck Lite, and set the guide so that it fits the paper width.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>The value is registered after automatic adjustment.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | After execution, check the registered value by COPIER> ADJUST> CST-ADJ> PDK-A5R, and write it down on the service label.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1023   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> ADJUST> CST-ADJ> PDK-A5R  |  |
| <b>DK1-LIFT</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Drive of Deck Lifter Motor</b>            |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To drive the Lifter Motor of the POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit.<br>When descent timeout alarm (04-1537) occurs, the lifter wire may be wound in the opposite direction. The Lifter Motor is driven for approximately 5 seconds to wind the wire correctly.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | At recovery from descent timeout alarm  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Close the compartment.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!   |  |
| <b>Required Time</b>          | 5 sec   |  |



## ■ CLEANING

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) > CLEANING

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>TBLT-CLN</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>ETB cleaning</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute three idle rotations of the ETB and clean the ETB.<br>Disengage the Photosensitive Drum and Transfer Roller from the ETB.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When ETB cleaning failure/stain on the back of paper occurs  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>WIRE-CLN</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Cleaning of all Charging Wires</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To clean the Charging Wires of Primary Charging Assembly and Pre-transfer Charging Assembly simultaneously (5-reciprocation).<br>Polish new Charging Wires to remove foreign matters or protrusions. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing the Primary Charging Assembly/Pre-transfer Charging Assembly<br>- When replacing the Charging Wire<br>- When vertical lines occur on an image                                       |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>WIRE-EX</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Check cleaning operation of all Chg Wir</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To clean the Charging Wires of Primary Charging Assembly and Pre-transfer Charging Assembly simultaneously (1-reciprocation).<br>Check the reciprocation operation of the Wire Cleaner.              |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking operation of the Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Motor after removing and then installing the Primary Charging Assembly at working around the Process area                              |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Required Time</b>          |          | 30 sec   |

## ■ FIXING

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) > FIXING

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>NIP-CHK</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Check of fixing nip width</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To check whether the fixing nip width is appropriate by printing.<br>If it is not appropriate, a fixing failure may occur.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing the fixing-related parts (Fixing Roller, Pressure Roller)<br>- When a fixing failure occurs   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Print approx. 20 sheets of A4 size paper.<br>2) Set A4 size plain paper/recycled paper on the Multi-purpose Tray.<br>3) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>A sheet is stopped once in a state held by the Fixing Nip area, and is delivered approx. 20 seconds later.<br>4) Measure the nip width of delivered sheet.<br>If the nip widths are as follow it is judged as normal: 4.0 to 5.0 mm at the center, and difference between front and rear is within 0.5mm. If there is an error, execute step 5.<br>5) Check the Fixing Roller, Pressure Roller, and Fixing Lower Unit, and replace damaged part. |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> TEST> PG> TYPE   |



## ■ PANEL

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) > PANEL

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>LCD-CHK</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Check of LCD Panel dot missing</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To check whether there is a missing dot on the LCD Panel of the Control Panel.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the LCD Panel   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Check that the LCD Panel lights up in the order of white, black, red, green and blue.<br>3) Press STOP key or touch the screen to terminate checking. |
| <b>LED-CHK</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Check of Control Panel LED</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To check whether the LED on the Control Panel lights up.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the LCD Panel   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Check that the LED lights up in the order.<br>3) Use LED-OFF to terminate checking.   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> PANEL> LED-OFF   |
| <b>LED-OFF</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>End check of Control Panel LED</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To terminate the check of LED on the Control Panel.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | During execution of LED-CHK  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> PANEL> LED-CHK   |
| <b>KEY-CHK</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Check of key entry</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To check the key input on the Control Panel.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the LCD Panel   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item and press the key on the Control Panel.<br>2) Check that the input value is displayed.<br>3) Cancel the selection to terminate checking.  |
| <b>TOUCHCHK</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj of coordinate pstn of Touch Panel</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To adjust the coordinate position on the Touch Panel of the Control Panel.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the LCD Panel   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Press the nine "+" keys in sequence.  |

## ■ PART-CHK

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) > PART-CHK

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>CL</b>                     | <b>1</b> | <b>Specification of operation Clutch</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To specify the Clutch to operate.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Clutch/checking the operation  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1 to 6<br>1: Developing Clutch (CL1)<br>2: Magnet Roller Clutch (CL5)<br>3 to 6: Not used |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> PART-CHK> CL-ON   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; PART-CHK

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>CL-ON</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Operation check of Clutch</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To start operation check of the Clutch specified by CL.<br>The operation stops after "ON for 0.5 sec" => "OFF for 10 sec" => "ON for 0.5 sec" => "OFF for 10 sec" => "ON for 0.5 sec".   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Clutch/checking the operation   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Required Time</b>          |          | 22 sec   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> PART-CHK> CL   |
| <b>MTR</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Specification of operation Motor</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To specify the Motor to operate.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Motor/checking the operation  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1 to 17<br>1: Not used<br>2: Toner Feed Motor (M28)<br>3: Delivery Motor (M13)<br>4: Reverse Motor (M14)<br>5: Side Registration Motor (M16)<br>6: Duplex Feed Right Motor (M18)<br>7: Duplex Feed Left Motor (M19)<br>8: Vertical Path Upper Motor (M26)<br>9: Vertical Path Lower Motor (M27)<br>10: Vertical Path Middle Motor (M31)<br>11: Duplex Feed Merging Motor (M32)<br>12: Multi-purpose Tray Registration Front Motor (M33)<br>13: Registration Motor (M34)<br>14: ETB Motor (M43)<br>15: (POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit) Deck Pickup Motor (M1)<br>16: (POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit) Deck Pull-out Motor (M2)<br>17: Fixing Motor (M03) |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 1  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> PART-CHK> MTR-ON   |
| <b>MTR-ON</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Operation check of Motor</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To start operation check of the Motor specified by MTR.<br>The operation automatically stops after operation of 30 seconds.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Motor/checking the operation  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Required Time</b>          |          | 30 sec   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> PART-CHK> MTR  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; PART-CHK

|                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>SL</b>                     | <b>1</b>  | <b>Specification of operation Solenoid</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To specify the Solenoid to operate.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Solenoid/checking the operation  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1 to 11<br>1: Multi Middle Plate Release Solenoid (SL2)<br>2: Cassette 3 Pickup Solenoid (SL3)<br>3: Cassette 4 Pickup Solenoid (SL4)<br>4: Reverse Upper Flapper Solenoid (SL5)<br>5: Right Deck Pickup Solenoid (SL6)<br>6: Left Deck Pickup Solenoid (SL7)<br>7: Left Deck Merging Solenoid (SL11)<br>8: Fixing Cleaning Web Drive Solenoid (SL9)<br>9: Patch Sensor Shutter Solenoid (SL10)<br>10: Reverse Detachment Solenoid (SL12)<br>11: (POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit) Deck Pickup Release Solenoid |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> PART-CHK> SL-ON   |  |
| <b>SL-ON</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Operation check of Solenoid</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To start operation check for the Solenoid specified by SL.<br>The operation stops after "ON for 0.5 sec" => "OFF for 10 sec" => "ON for 0.5 sec" => "OFF for 10 sec" => "ON for 0.5 sec".   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Solenoid/checking the operation  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!   |  |
| <b>Required Time</b>          | 1 min   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> PART-CHK> SL  |  |
| <b>FN3-CL</b>                 | <b>1</b>  | <b>Specify of operation Clutch: Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To specify the Clutch to operate.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Clutch/checking the operation  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1 to 3<br>1: Lower Stack Delivery Roller Clutch (CL102)<br>2: Escape Feed Clutch (CL101)<br>3: Paddle Clutch (CL103)  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> PART-CHK> FN3CL-ON  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Product name of Fin-AC: Staple Finisher-AC1, Booklet Finisher-AC1   |  |
| <b>FN3CL-ON</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Operation check of Clutch: Fin-AC</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To start operation check of the clutch specified by FN3-CL.<br>The operation automatically stops after the specified period of time (10 to 30 seconds).   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Clutch/checking the operation  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - When the job starts during the operation of the clutch, the finisher sequence error jam occurs.<br>- When the error avoidance jam occurs during the operation of the clutch, the jam becomes the error immediately.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> PART-CHK> FN3-CL  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Product name of Fin-AC: Staple Finisher-AC1, Booklet Finisher-AC1   |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; PART-CHK

| <b>FN3-MTR</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Specification of oprtn Motor: Fin-AC</b>   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To specify the Motor to operate.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Motor/checking the operation   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | When setting the staple motor or the saddle stitcher motor, remove each staple cartridge. When the staple cartridge is installed, the motor is not driven.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1 to 39<br>1: Inlet Feed Motor(M101)<br>2: Pre-processing/Buffer Motor(M102)<br>3: Stack Delivery/Paddle Motor(M103)<br>4: Escape Feed Motor(M117)<br>5: Paper End Pushing Guide Motor(M112)<br>6: Stapler Shift Motor(M114)<br>7: Stack Tray Shift Motor(M105)<br>8: Swing Guide Motor(M110)<br>9: Front Alignment Motor(M107)<br>10: Rear Alignment Motor(M108)<br>11: Return Roller Lift Motor(M111)<br>12: Flapper Motor(M104)<br>13: Upper Escape Delivery Shift Motor(M119)<br>14: Paper End Assist Motor(M113)<br>15: Escape Flapper Motor(M118)<br>16: Lower Escape Delivery Shift Motor(M106)<br>17: Tray Auxiliary Guide Motor(M109)<br>18: Not Used<br>19: Staple Motor(M115)<br>20: Staple-free Binding Motor(M116)<br>21: Saddle Feed/Paddle Motor(M201)<br>22: Saddle Delivery Motor(M207)<br>23: Saddle Switching Lever Motor(M202)<br>24: Saddle Stitcher Motor(M208)<br>25: Saddle Paper End Stopper Motor(M206)<br>26: Saddle Gripper Motor(M205)<br>27: Saddle Alignment Motor(M203)<br>28: Saddle Paper Pushing Plate/Folding Motor(M204)<br>29: Punch Motor(M301)<br>30: Punch Shift Motor(M302)<br>31 to 33: Not Used<br>34: Paper Retainer Lever Motor(M209)<br>35: Neat Front Alignment Motor(M1)<br>36: Neat Rear Alignment Motor(M2)<br>37: Neat Alignment Plate Lift Motor(M5)<br>38: Neat Paddle Rotation Motor(M4)<br>39: Neat Paddle Lift Motor(M3) |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> PART-CHK> FN3MTRON  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Product name of Fin-AC: Staple Finisher-AC1, Booklet Finisher-AC1   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; PART-CHK

| <b>FN3MTRON</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Operation check of motor: Fin-AC</b>   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To start operation check of the motor specified by FN3-MTR.<br>After the motor operates for the specified period of time (10 to 30 seconds), it automatically stops.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Motor/checking the operation   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - When the job starts during the operation of the motor, the finisher sequence error jam occurs.<br>- When the error avoidance jam occurs during the operation of the motor, the jam becomes the error immediately. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> PART-CHK> FN3-MTR   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Product name of Fin-AC: Staple Finisher-AC1, Booklet Finisher-AC1   |

## ■ CLEAR

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; CLEAR

| <b>ERR</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Clear of error code</b>  |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To clear the specific error code.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | At error occurrence   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>DC-CON</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>RAM clear of DC Controller PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To clear the RAM data of the DC Controller PCB.<br>Not clear the counter.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When clearing RAM data of the DC Controller PCB   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT before execution. After execution, enter necessary setting values.<br>- The RAM data is cleared After the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT   |
| <b>R-CON</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>RAM clear of Reader Controller PCB</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To clear the RAM data of the Reader Controller PCB.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When clearing RAM data of the Reader Controller PCB   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT before execution. After execution, enter necessary setting values.<br>- The RAM data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT   |
| <b>JAM-HIST</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Clear of jam history</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To clear the jam history.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When clearing the jam history   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> DISPLAY> JAM  |
| <b>ERR-HIST</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Clear of error code history</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To clear the error code history.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When clearing the error code history  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> DISPLAY> ERR  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; CLEAR

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>PWD-CLR</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Clear of system administrator password</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | * Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To clear the password of the system administrator set in [Settings/Registration].  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When clearing the password of the system administrator  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>ADRS-BK</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Clear of address book</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To clear the address book data.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When clearing the address book data   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | The address book data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.  |
| <b>CNT-MCON</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Clear of Main Controller service counter</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To clear the service counter counted by the Main Controller PCB.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When clearing the service counter counted by the Main Controller PCB  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> COUNTER   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | See COUNTER for the target counter.   |
| <b>CNT-DCON</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>MMI</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Clear Settings/Registration setting VL</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To clear the Settings/Registration setting values.<br>- Preferences (excluding values for Paper Type Management Settings)<br>- Adjustment/Maintenance<br>- Function Settings<br>- Set Destination (excluding Address Lists)<br>- Management Settings (excluding Department ID Management) |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When clearing various setting values of [Settings/Registration]   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - The setting value is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.<br>- If this item is executed while a login application other than User Authentication is running, it switched to User Authentication after reboot. Set the login application using SMS as needed.   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | SMS (Service Management Service): An application for management which can be used on remote UI.   |
| <b>MN-CON</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Deletion of setting values</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To delete the setting values of address lists, forwarding settings, Settings/Registration and service mode.<br>For details, refer to "Backup Data List" in the Service Manual.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When initializing the setting values  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>The machine is automatically rebooted.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT before execution. After execution, enter necessary setting value.<br>- RAM data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; CLEAR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>CARD</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Clear of card ID-related data</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To clear the data related to the card ID (department).   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When clearing the data related to the card ID  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | The value is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.   |
| <b>ALARM</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Clear of alarm log</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To clear alarm log.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When clearing alarm log  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | The alarm log is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> DISPLAY> ALARM-2   |
| <b>CA-KEY</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Deletion of CA certificate and key pair</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To simultaneously delete the CA certificate and key pair which are additionally registered by the user.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When a service person replaces/discards the device   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Check that OK is displayed.<br>3) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Unless this item is executed at the time of replacement/discard of the device, the CA certificate and key pair which are additionally registered by the user remain in the HDD, which is a problem in terms of security.<br>- Do not execute this item carelessly because the CA certificate and key pair which are additionally registered are deleted when it is executed. If they are deleted mistakenly, they need to be again registered by the user. If no CA certificate and key pair are additionally registered, the machine condition becomes the same as the one at the time of factory shipment.<br>- When NG is displayed in 2), there is a possibility that deletion was not executed. In this case, surely execute the deletion by initializing the HDD, etc. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | At normal termination: OK!, At abnormal termination: NG!   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | - The CA certificate is used in the MEAP application with E-RDS and SSL client connection, and the key pair is used in the SSL function of IPP, RUI and MEAP.<br>- When the main power switch is turned OFF/ON, the CA certificate and key pair which were registered at the time of factory shipment are decompressed from the archive, and become available in the E-RDS/SSL function.   |
| <b>ERDS-DAT</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Initialization of E-RDS SRAM data</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To initialize the "internal setting values" of the Embedded-RDS stored in the SRAM. "Internal setting values" are ON/OFF of E-RDS, server's port number, server's SOAP URL, and communication schedule with the server (how often the data is acquired), etc. The value set by COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> E-RDS, RGW-PORT, RGW-ADR, COM-LOG is cleared.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When clear the SRAM of the "internal setting values".  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | At normal termination: OK!, At abnormal termination: NG!   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> E-RDS, RGW-PORT, RGW-ADR, COM-LOG   |
| <b>USBM-CLR</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Initialize USB MEAP priority rgst info</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To initialize the registered ID data retained in the OS field by calling the API provided by the OS.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When a failure occurs in USB MEAP priority registration  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) > FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) > CLEAR

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>JV-CACHE</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Cache clear of JAVA application</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To clear the cache information used by JAVA application.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When initializing the JAVA application  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>TR-BLT</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Clearing Transfer Belt parts counter</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To clear ETB parts counter when replacing to a new Transfer Belt (ETB).   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When replacing to a new ETB   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> COUNTER> DRBL-1> TR-BLT   |
| <b>GRD-CRNT</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Init of Primary Charging Wire current VL</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To initialize the current value of the Primary Charging Wire by initializing the voltage value of the grid wire.<br>The current value of the Primary Charging Wire is linked with the usage status; thus, execute initialization at the time of replacement.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When replacing the Primary Charging Wire  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>LANG-CLR</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Uninstallation of language files</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To uninstall the language files other than Japanese and English files installed in HDD.<br>When installing a new language file while the maximum number of language files (11 files) have been already installed, an existing language file needs to be uninstalled.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When deleting/switching language files  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Download the firmware in which the necessary language files are included using SST or a USB flash drive.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | A language file is not uninstalled unless the downloaded language files are installed by SST or a USB flash drive after the execution of this item. If installation is not executed, uninstallation will be canceled. (Status of the machine remains the same as it was before execution.)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | - After the execution, language displayed on the screen becomes English. Switch the language as needed.<br>- There are 9 language files (JEFIGSCKT) installed at the time of shipment.  |
| <b>FIN-MCON</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Clearing Finisher delvry destination set</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To clear the setting of Delivery Tray of the Finisher specified in [Settings/Registration] (Function Settings> Common> Paper Output Settings> Output Tray Settings).<br>Since the delivery destination settings are stored in the DC Controller PCB in the machine, malfunction occurs when replacing the Finisher with another type of it without clearing the settings. If the type of Finishers is the same, there is no need to clear the settings. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When the Finisher is replaced with a different model in the field   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Function Settings> Common> Paper Output Settings> Output Tray Settings  |
| <b>PLPW-CLR</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Clear security policy setting password</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To clear the password of the security administrator set in the security policy settings.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When clearing the password of the security administrator  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; CLEAR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>JV-TYPE</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Specification of MEAP cache clear target</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To specify the MEAP cache area to be cleared.<br>The target area is divided into the 4 parts:<br>- A jar file of MEAP application bundled as standard<br>- Data of the application mentioned above<br>- A jar file of MEAP application installed additionally<br>- Data of the application mentioned above<br>When JV-CACHE is executed, the area specified with this item is cleared.<br>For details, refer to the Service Manual. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When analyzing the cause of a problem due to MEAP application  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 4<br>0: Entire MEAP cache area<br>1: A jar file of MEAP application bundled as standard<br>2: A jar file and data of MEAP application bundled as standard<br>3: Data of MEAP application which has been installed additionally<br>4: A jar file and data of MEAP application which has been installed additionally  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> JV-CACHE  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | MEAP applications bundled as standard: system application, built-in login application<br>MEAP applications installed additionally: non-Canon-made login application, general application, etc.   |
| <b>DK-RCV</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Clearing of deck alarm</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To clear the descent timeout alarm (04-1537) occurred in the POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | At recovery from descent timeout alarm   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>CUSTOM2</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>[For customization]</b>   |
| <b>CNT-RCON</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b>   |
| <b>KEY-HCD</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b>   |
| <b>TPM-DA</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b>   |

## ■ MISC-R

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; MISC-R

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>SCANLAMP</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Lighting check of Scanner Unit (frt) LED</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To light up the Scanning Lamp for 3 seconds under the White Plate and the Copyboard Glass respectively.                             |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the LED of the Scanner Unit  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!   |
| <b>SCANLMP2</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Lighting check of Scanner Unit (bck) LED</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To light up the LED of the Scanner Unit (for back side) for 3 sec.<br>Check whether there is a missing block or no lighting in LED. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the LED of the Scanner Unit  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; MISC-R

| <b>RD-SHPOS</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Moving to Reader Scanner Unit fix pstn</b>  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To move the Reader Scanner Unit to the position where it is secured in when moving.<br>When moving the Reader after installation, the Reader Scanner Unit may move and get damage.<br>By moving the Scanner Unit to the specified position and securing it in place with a screw before moving, damage can be prevented. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When moving the Reader after installation  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to move the Scanner Unit to the fixing position and secure it in place with a screw when moving the Reader after installation. Otherwise, the Scanner Unit may get damage.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |

## ■ MISC-P

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; MISC-P

| <b>P-PRINT</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Output of service mode setting values</b>   |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To output the service mode setting values.<br>Text data is saved in HDD as a file (P-PRINT-RPT.TXT).   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | Before executing the CLEAR service mode, etc.  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Be sure to use A4/LTR size plain paper/recycled paper.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> RPT-FILE   |
| <b>HIST-PRT</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Output of jam and error logs</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To output the jam log and error log.<br>Text data is saved in HDD as a file (HIST-PRT-RPT.TXT).  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When outputting the jam/error log  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Be sure to use A4/LTR size plain paper/recycled paper.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> RPT-FILE   |
| <b>TRS-DATA</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Moving memory reception data to Inbox</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To move the data received in memory to Inbox. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When moving the data received in memory to Inbox   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Fax/I-Fax Inbox> Memory RX Inbox   |
| <b>USER-PRT</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Settings/Registration menu list output</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To output Settings/Registration menu list.<br>Text data is saved in HDD as a file (USER-PRT-RPT.TXT).  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When outputting Settings/Registration menu list.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> RPT-FILE   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | It takes approximately 3 seconds before output starts.   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; MISC-P

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>LBL-PRNT</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Output of service label</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To print the service label.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When printing the service label  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Place A4/LTR paper in Right Deck.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to use A4/LTR size plain paper/recycled paper.   |
| <b>Required Time</b>          |          | 55 sec   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | It takes approximately 15 seconds before printing starts.  |
| <b>PRE-EXP</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Light-up of Pre-exposure LED</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To light up the Cleaning Pre-exposure LED.<br>Open the Front Cover, and check that the LEDs light up visually.<br>It automatically stops after all light up.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking that the Pre-exposure LEDs light up  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Drum memory may occur, so be sure not to execute this item frequently.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Required Time</b>          |          | 30 sec   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | The required time is a rough standard, and it may take a shorter time.   |
| <b>ENV-PRT</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Outpt inside temp&amp;hmdy/Fix Rol temp log</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To output data of the temperature and humidity inside the machine/surface temperature of the Fixing Roller as a log.<br>Text data is saved in HDD as a file (ENV-PRT-RPT.TXT).   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When figuring out the past temperature inside the machine/fixing temperature information at problem analysis   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> RPT-FILE   |
| <b>PJH-P-1</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Outpt print job log detail info:100 jobs</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To output the print job logs of the latest 100 jobs with detailed information.<br>In the case of less than 100 jobs, the logs of all print jobs are output.<br>Text data is saved in HDD as a file (PJH-P-1-RPT.TXT). |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When outputting the print job logs with detailed information   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to use A4/LTR size plain paper/recycled paper.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> RPT-FILE   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Output the print job logs with detailed information which are not displayed/output in the job log screen under "System Monitor>Print>Log>Printer" and in the report of the print job log.  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; MISC-P

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>PJH-P-2</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Output print job log detail info:all jobs</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To output all print job logs stored in the machine with detailed information (for maximum 5000 jobs). The difference between PJH-P-1 and this item is only the number of jobs output. Text data is saved in HDD as a file (PJH-P-2-RPT.TXT). |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When printing the print job history with detailed information  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to use A4/LTR size plain paper/recycled paper.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> RPT-FILE   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Output the print job logs with detailed information which are not displayed/output in the job log screen under "System Monitor>Print>Log>Printer" and in the report of the print job log.  |
| <b>WB</b>                     | <b>2</b> | <b>Reverse toner forcible eject: blank band</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To eject the reverse toner forcibly.<br>After execution, it automatically stops.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When operating in a high duty and low humidity environment for a long time (executed by administrator)   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG   |
| <b>Required Time</b>          |          | 9 sec  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | The required time is a rough standard, and it may take a shorter time.   |
| <b>BB</b>                     | <b>1</b> | <b>Toner forcible eject (black band)</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Forcibly discharge low-charge toner, and send it to the drum cleaner unit.<br>The operation automatically stops after execution.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When operating the machine in low-duty and high-humidity environment for a long period of time (implemented by the administrator)  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG   |
| <b>Required Time</b>          |          | 60 sec   |
| <b>USBH-PRT</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Output of USB device information report</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To output information of the connected USB device in the form of a report.<br>Text data is saved in HDD as a file (USBH-PRT-RPT.TXT).  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When outputting information of the USB device in the form of a report  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to use A4/LTR size plain paper/recycled paper.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> RPT-FILE   |
| <b>DV-RT</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Idle rotation of Developing Assembly</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute idle rotation of the Developing Assembly.<br>Duration can be set by COPIER> OPTION> IMG-DEV>DV-RT-LG.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When small vertical lines occurs on an image   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | If using frequently, deterioration of developer or toner scattering might occur.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-DEV> DV-RT-LG  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; MISC-P

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>RPT-FILE</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Output of report print file</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To save various service reports in HDD as a file.<br>The files can be obtained using PC to which SST has been installed or USB flash drive after starting the machine in download mode. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When obtaining the service report as a file instead of printing the report out  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | File size: Approx. 1 MB at a maximum  |
| <b>RPT2USB</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Write serv rpt file to USB flash drive</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To store the report file of service mode saved in HDD by RPT-FILE to a USB flash drive.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When storing the report file of service mode to a USB flash drive   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> RPT-FILE  |

## ■ SENS-ADJ

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; SENS-ADJ

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>STCK-LMT</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Adj of Shift Tray Full Sensor position</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To adjust position of the Shift Tray Full Sensor (front)/(rear).<br>"ON" is displayed at detection of full, and "OFF" is displayed at other times. |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | At detection of full: ON, At other times: OFF  |

## ■ SYSTEM

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; SYSTEM

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>DOWNLOAD</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Shift to download mode</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To make the machine enter the download mode and wait for a command.<br>Perform downloading by SST or a USB flash drive. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | At upgrade  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Perform downloading by SST or a USB flash drive.                       |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Do not turn OFF/ON the power during downloading.  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | SST: Service Support Tool   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; SYSTEM

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>CHK-TYPE</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Spec HD-CLEAR/HD-CHECK exe partition No.</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To specify the partition number of the HDD to execute HD-CLEAR/HD-CHECK.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When executing HD-CLEAR/HD-CHECK   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 65535<br>0: All partitions (only the areas where the operation can be executed)<br>1: PDL-related file storage area<br>2: Image data storage area<br>3: MEAP-related area<br>4: Not used<br>5 and 6: Image data storage area<br>7: General application temporary area (temporary file)<br>8: General application-related area<br>9: PDL spool data (temporary file)<br>10: SEND-related area<br>11: Update-related area<br>12: License-related area<br>13: System area<br>14: SWAP (temporary file/memory alternative area)<br>15 to 16: Not used<br>17: Debug log area<br>18: Advanced Box image data storage area<br>19: Print data storage area<br>20 to 65535: Not used<br>* When 4, 12, 13, 15 or 16 is set, nothing is cleared even if HD-CLEAR is executed.<br>* For 2, 5 and 6, HD-CLEAR/HD-CHECK is executed to all of the areas by selecting one of them.<br>* By selecting 8, HD-CLEAR/HD-CHECK is also executed to 7, 9, 11 and 17. |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> HD-CLEAR, HD-CHECK   |
| <b>HD-CHECK</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>File system check of specified partition</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute system check of the partition specified by CHK-TYPE at the next startup.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When E602/E614 error (file corruption, etc.) occurs  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter 1, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to execute this item after CHK-TYPE.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Not executed, 1: Executed at next startup   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> CHK-TYPE   |
| <b>HD-CLEAR</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Initialization of specified partition</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To initialize the partition specified by CHK-TYPE at next startup.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When E602/E614 error (file corruption, etc.) occurs  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter 1, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to execute this item after CHK-TYPE.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Not executed, 1: Executed at next startup   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> CHK-TYPE   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; SYSTEM

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>DSRAMBUP</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Backup of DC Controller PCB SRAM</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To back up the setting data in SRAM of the DC Controller PCB.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the DC Controller PCB for troubleshooting at the time of trouble occurrence   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | During operation, the setting data changes by manual or automatic adjustment. When backup data which has been left for a long period of time is restored, it is overwritten with new setting data and the old data is deleted.                         |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> DSRAMRES   |  |
| <b>DSRAMRES</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Restore of DC Controller PCB SRAM</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To restore the setting data which has been backed up in SRAM of the DC Controller PCB.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the DC Controller PCB for troubleshooting at the time of trouble occurrence   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | During operation, the setting data changes by manual or automatic adjustment. When backup data which has been left for a long period of time is restored, it is overwritten with new setting data and the old data is deleted.                         |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> DSRAMBUP   |  |
| <b>RSRAMBUP</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Backup of Reader Controller PCB SRAM</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To back up the setting data in SRAM of the Reader Controller PCB.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB for troubleshooting at the time of trouble occurrence   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | During operation, the setting data changes by manual or automatic adjustment. When backup data which has been left for a long period of time is restored, it is overwritten with new setting data and the old data is deleted.                         |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> RSRAMRES   |  |
| <b>RSRAMRES</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Restore of Reader Controller PCB SRAM</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To restore the setting data which has been backed up in SRAM of the Reader Controller PCB.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB for troubleshooting at the time of trouble occurrence   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | During operation, the setting data changes by manual or automatic adjustment. When backup data which has been left for a long period of time is restored, it is overwritten with new setting data and the old data is deleted.                         |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> RSRAMBUP   |  |
| <b>R-REBOOT</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Reboot of host machine (Remote)</b>       |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To reboot the host machine.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When the reboot is carried out with the remote control by VNC  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>FIXIP</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Start of fixed IP mode</b>                |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | IP address is set to "172.16.1.100".<br>In an environment where wired LAN (main) and wireless LAN (sub) are used, the IP address of wired LAN becomes the fixed IP.<br>During the fixed IP mode, "FIXIP" is displayed on the upper left of the screen. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When preferring to use the network settings with the fixed IP address "172.16.1.100"   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - It is necessary to turn OFF/ON the power to recover from the fixed IP mode.<br>- Whether to use RUI or not when the fixed IP mode is enabled follows the setting of "Management Settings> License/Other> Remote UI.                                  |  |



## ■ 2D-SHADE

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) > 2D-SHADE

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>M-LINE1</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>2D shading horizontal scan 1 correction</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported. To set the correction value of the horizontal scanning direction 1 at 2D shading.   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 255   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-LSR> 2D-SHADE<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> 2D-SHADE> M-LINE2   |  |
| <b>M-LINE2</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>2D shading horizontal scan 2 correction</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported. To set the correction value of the horizontal scanning direction 2 at 2D shading.   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 255   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-LSR> 2D-SHADE<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> 2D-SHADE> M-LINE1   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | The right column is not used.  |  |
| <b>S-LINE1</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>2D shading vertical scan 1 correction</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported. To display the correction value of the vertical scanning direction 1 at 2D shading. |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 255   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-LSR> 2D-SHADE<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> 2D-SHADE> S-LINE2 - LINE4   |  |
| <b>S-LINE2</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>2D shading vertical scan 2 correction</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported. To display the correction value of the vertical scanning direction 2 at 2D shading. |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 255   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-LSR> 2D-SHADE<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> 2D-SHADE> S-LINE1/LINE3/LINE4   |  |
| <b>S-LINE3</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>2D shading vertical scan 3 correction</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported. To display the correction value of the vertical scanning direction 3 at 2D shading. |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 255   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-LSR> 2D-SHADE<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> 2D-SHADE> S-LINE1/LINE2/LINE4   |  |
| <b>S-LINE4</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>2D shading vertical scan 4 correction</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported. To display the correction value of the vertical scanning direction 4 at 2D shading. |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 255   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-LSR> 2D-SHADE<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> 2D-SHADE> S-LINE1/LINE2/LINE3   |  |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) > FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) > 2D-SHADE

|                               |  |                                    |
|-------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|
| <b>SHD-P1</b>                 | <b>1</b>   | <b>2D shading pattern 1 output</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported. To output pattern 1 for 2D shading.   |                                    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking 2D shading profile visually and entering manually  |                                    |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |                                    |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-LSR> 2D-SHADE<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> 2D-SHADE> SHD-P2/P3   |                                    |
| <b>SHD-P2</b>                 | <b>1</b>   | <b>2D shading pattern 2 output</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported. To output pattern 2 for 2D shading.   |                                    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking 2D shading profile visually and entering manually  |                                    |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |                                    |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-LSR> 2D-SHADE<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> 2D-SHADE> SHD-P1/P3   |                                    |
| <b>SHD-P3</b>                 | <b>1</b>   | <b>2D shading pattern 3 output</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported. To output pattern 3 for 2D shading.   |                                    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking 2D shading profile visually and entering manually  |                                    |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |                                    |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-LSR> 2D-SHADE<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> 2D-SHADE> SHD-P1/P2   |                                    |
| <b>2D-READ</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Read 2D shading ROM</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported. To read 2D shading ROM data.<br>To check ROM for 2D shading, compare the calculated checksum and checksum of ROM. When they are matched, the checksum and Drum Lot number are stored in the DC Controller. When they are not matched, it is judged as an alarm. |                                    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | After executing initialization of Drum at Drum replacement   |                                    |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |                                    |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG   |                                    |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> DISPLAY> 2D-SHADE> 2D-STS<br>COPIER> OPTION> IMG-LSR> 2D-SHADE   |                                    |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; 2D-SHADE

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>2D-SET</b>                 | <b>2</b>   | <b>Btch set of low dens prev: frt/rear side</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported.</p> <p>To execute a series of settings/operations to improve low density at the front/rear side. Conventionally, measures against low density at the front/rear side due to individual difference of the Photosensitive Drum have been taken by combining the following service modes.</p> <p>COPIER&gt; OPTION&gt; IMG-LSR&gt; 2D-SHADE<br/> COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; DPC&gt; DPC<br/> COPIER&gt; FUNCTION&gt; 2D-SHADE&gt; M-LINE1/2</p> <p>With this item, these service modes are set/executed collectively so the results equivalent to those obtained by executing them manually can be obtained easily.</p> <p>Set 1 for low density at the front side, 2 for low density at the rear side, and 3 for low density at both sides. In each case, density is increased for a certain level. If further adjustment is required, it is necessary to make adjustment with conventional procedure.</p> <p>When 0 is set, all the settings of service modes are returned to the default.</p> |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When low density at the front/rear side occurs at an early stage   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - The setting is reflected after turning OFF/ON the power.<br>- If adjustment is made with M-LINE1/2 after setting this item to 1, 2 or 3, the value 0 is displayed to indicate the setting of this item is changed. However, it does not mean that the setting is returned to the default. When returning the setting to the default, enter 0.<br>- Make the setting again after replacing the Photosensitive Drum because the sensitivity is different between the old and new drums.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 3<br>0: Set 2D shading to OFF, and return all of the setting values to the default values<br>1: Increase the density at the front side only<br>2: Increase the density at the rear side only<br>3: Increase the density on both sides   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-LSR> 2D-SHADE<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> DPC> DPC<br>COPIER> FUNCTION> 2D-SHADE> M-LINE1/LINE2   |   |

## ■ DBG-LOG

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; DBG-LOG

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>LOG2USB</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Storage of debug log to USB memory</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To store a set of debug logs to the USB flash drive at the error occurrence.</p> <p>A type of log to be collected is set in LOG-TRIG.</p> <p>If there is a debug log which has been automatically saved, it is archived at this time.</p> <p>Required time differs according to the device conditions and volume of log data.</p> |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When analyzing the cause of a problem  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Install the USB flash drive.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - Wait until the machine recognizes the USB memory (approx. 10 sec.).<br>- During the data transfer ("ACTIVE" display), do not turn OFF the power/remove the USB memory/ use the screen for operations.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> DBG-LOG> LOG-TRIG  |   |
| <b>LOG2SRVR</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                        |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; DBG-LOG

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>LOG-TRIG</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Set of debug log storage condition</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the conditions (timing, types, etc.) to automatically store the debug logs (stored as an archive file).<br>By reading the operation setting file of the setting value from the Main Controller, the conditions written in the file are set.<br>When setting a new condition is necessary, read the operation setting file provided by R&D from the USB memory. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When changing the conditions of debug log to automatically store<br>- When setting a new condition  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 99999  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> DBG-LOG> LOG2USB, LOG2SRVR  |
| <b>HIT-STS</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Display of debug log state</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display whether archive file of the debug log which is matched with the conditions set in LOG-TRIG exists or not.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the debug log automatically saved   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: No log is available, 1: Log is available   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> DBG-LOG> LOG-TRIG   |
| <b>SYSLOG</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>DEFAULT</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Reset of debug log setting</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To clear all debug log settings and return to the state before debug log collection operation.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When returning the device in which analyzing the cause of a problem was completed<br>- When resetting the debug log settings  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>LOG-DEL</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Clearing of debug logs</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To delete the debug log file.<br>The debug log setting is not reset.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When clearing the debug log   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>HIT-STS2</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |

## OPTION (Specification setting mode)

### ■ FNC-SW

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FNC-SW

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>PO-CNT</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>ON/OFF of potential control function</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set ON/OFF of potential control function.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Potential Sensor   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to set the value back to 1 (ON) after servicing.                                    |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 1   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FNC-SW

|                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>PO-CNTMD</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Set potential control execution timing</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the combination of timing to execute the potential control.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When productivity is decreased at execution of potential control  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 2<br>0:<br>- At warm-up rotation performed first time for the day in an HH environment<br>- At last rotation in the case that a job right after startup first time for the day takes 10 minutes or longer<br>- At last rotation after 1500 sheets since the last potential control<br>- At last rotation of the first job after 90 minutes since the last potential control<br>- At warm-up rotation of the first job after 10 minutes since the startup first time for the day (30 seconds)<br>1:<br>- At warm-up rotation performed first time for the day in an HH environment<br>- At last rotation in the case that a job right after startup first time for the day takes 10 minutes or longer<br>- At last rotation after 1500 sheets since the last potential control<br>- At warm-up rotation of the first job after 10 minutes since the startup first time for the day (30 seconds)<br>2:<br>- At warm-up rotation performed first time for the day in an HH environment<br>- At last rotation after 1500 sheets since the last potential control |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>MODEL-SZ</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Fixed magnifictn &amp; DADF orgnl dtct size</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the fixed magnification ratio display and the original detection size with DADF. It is set automatically at the time of installation of the Reader according to the location.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 3<br>0: AB configuration (6R5E) for Japan, 1: Inch configuration (5R4E) for North/Middle/South America, 2: A configuration (3R3E) for Europe, 3: AB/Inch configuration (6R5E) for Asia, Oceania, South America   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | It differs according to the location.   |  |
| <b>SCANSLCT</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of scan area calculate function</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set ON/OFF of the function to calculate scanning area from the specified paper size. When the paper size is larger than the original size, selecting ON reduces productivity because the scanning area gets larger.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When matching the scanning area with the paper size   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF (calculated from the detected original size)<br>1: ON (calculated from the specified paper size)   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FNC-SW

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>SENS-CNF</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Setting of original detection size</b>       |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set original detection size according to AB configuration/Inch configuration.<br>Set 0 for AB configuration machine, and set 1 for Inch configuration machine.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: AB configuration, 1: Inch configuration  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>CONFIG</b>                 | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set country/area/lang/location/ppr size</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the country/region, language, location, paper size configuration for multiple system software in HDD.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Select the setting item.<br>2) Switch with +/- key, and then press OK key.<br>3) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | XX YY.ZZ.AA<br>XX: Country/region<br>JP: Japan, US: USA, GB: Great Britain, FR: France, DE: Germany, IT: Italy, AU: Australia, SG: Singapore, NL: Netherlands, KR: Korea, CN: China, TW: Taiwan, ES: Spain, SE: Sweden, PT: Portugal, NO: Norway, DK: Denmark, FI: Finland, PL: Poland, HU: Hungary, CZ: Czech Republic, SI: Slovenia, GR: Greece, EE: Estonia, RU: Russia, SK: Slovakia, RO: Romania, HR: Croatia, BG: Bulgaria, TR: Turkey, TH: Thailand, VN: Vietnam, AR: Argentina, IN: India<br>YY: Language (Fixed; e.g. ja: Japanese)<br>ZZ: Location (Fixed; e.g. 00: CANON)<br>AA: Paper size configuration (00: AB configuration, 01: Inch configuration, 02: A configuration, 03: Inch/AB configuration) |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | It differs according to the location.   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> MODEL-SZ  |   |
| <b>W/SCNR</b>                 | <b>1</b>  | <b>Setting of Reader Unit installation</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set installation of the Reader Unit.<br>When the Reader Unit is detected at startup of the machine, "1: Installed" is set automatically.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When installing/removing the Reader Unit  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Not installed, 1: Installed  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0 (Printer model)/1 (Copier model)  |   |
| <b>ORG-LGL</b>                | <b>2</b>  | <b>Special ppr size set at stream read: LGL</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the size of special paper (LGL configuration) that cannot be recognized at stream reading.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - Upon user's request<br>- When picking up special paper size original from DADF  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 12<br>0: LEGAL-R, 1: FOOLSCAP-R/FOLIO-R, 2: OFICIO-R, 3: Not used, 4: Australian FOOLSCAP-R, 5: Ecuador OFICIO-R, 6: Bolivia OFICIO-R, 7: Argentine OFICIO-R, 8: Not used, 9: Government LEGAL-R, 10: Mexico OFICIO-R, 11: F4A, 12: India LEGAL-R  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FNC-SW

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>ORG-LTR</b>                | <b>2</b>  | <b>Special ppr size set at stream read: LTR</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the size of special paper (LTR configuration) that cannot be recognized at stream reading.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - Upon user's request<br>- When picking up special paper size original from DADF  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 3<br>0: LETTER, 1: EXECUTIVE, 2: Argentine LETTER, 3: Government LETTER  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>ORG-LTRR</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Special ppr size set at stream read:LTRR</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the size of special paper (LTRR configuration) that cannot be recognized in stream reading mode.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - Upon user's request<br>- When picking up special paper size original from DADF  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 5<br>0: LTR-R, 1: G-LTR-R, 2: A-LTR-R, 3: EXECUTIVE-R, 4: OFICIO-R, 5: Ecuador OFICIO-R  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>ORG-LDR</b>                | <b>2</b>  | <b>Special ppr size set at stream read: LDR</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the size of special paper (LDR configuration) that cannot be recognized at stream reading.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - Upon user's request<br>- When picking up special paper size original from DADF  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: LEDGER-R, 1: Argentine LETTER  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>ORG-B5</b>                 | <b>2</b>  | <b>Special ppr size set at stream read: B5</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the size of special paper (B5) that cannot be recognized at stream reading.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - Upon user's request<br>- When picking up special paper size original from DADF  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: B5, 1: Korean government office paper  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>MODELSZ2</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Ppr size dtct global support in bookmode</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to enable global support of original size detection at Copyboard reading.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request (original consists of mixed media (AB/Inch configuration))  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | The Document Size Sensor (Photo Sensor) is additionally required to correctly detect the document size when the original consists of mixed media (AB/Inch configuration). |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Detected with detection size according to location, 1: Detected with AB/Inch mixed media.  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FNC-SW

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>SVMD-ENT</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of entry method to service mode</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the way to get in service mode to prevent information leak.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | As needed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Factory default<br>1: [Settings/Registration] - Pressing [4] and [9] at the same time - [Settings/Registration]   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>KSIZE-SW</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of K-size paper support</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set detection/display of K-size paper (for China).<br>When MODEL-SZ is 0, this setting is enabled.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When using K size paper  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Not supported, 1: Supported   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | It differs according to the location.  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> MODEL-SZ   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | 8K paper: 270 x 390 mm, 16K paper: 270 x 195 mm  |
| <b>ORG-A4R</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Special ppr size set at stream read: A4R</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the size of special paper (A4R) that cannot be recognized at stream reading.<br>When picking up A4R size original from the DADF of the Inch/AB configuration models, the size is converted into the specified size so that an image can be formed properly. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - Upon user's request<br>- When picking up special paper size original from DADF   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: A4R, 1: FOLIO-R   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>PDF-RDCT</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>PDF reduction set at forwarding</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set whether to reduce the image for transmission when converting the image received by I-Fax into PDF for e-mail/file transmission.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Following the current setting, 1: Image reduction   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>SJB-UNW</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Reserve upper limit of secured print job</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set the upper limit for the number of reserved jobs in secured print job.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 2<br>0: 50 jobs, 1: 90 jobs, 2: No limit  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 1  |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FNC-SW

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>CARD-RNG</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Card number setting (department number)</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the number of cards (departments) that can be used with the Card Reader.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When setting the number of cards (departments)   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1 to 1000  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 1000   |
| <b>SJOB-CL</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Set of scan job canceling by logout</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether to cancel the scan job in operation by logout of the user.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | The job with scanning completed cannot be canceled.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 2<br>0: Cancel only scan job in waiting state, 1: Cancel all scan jobs, 2: Not canceled   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Scan job: A job after the scanning operation is completed.   |
| <b>MIBCOUNT</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Scope range set of Charge Counter MIB</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the range of counter information that can be obtained as MIB (Management Information Base).   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 2<br>0: All charge counters are obtained, 1: Only displayed counter* is obtained, 2: All charge counters are not obtained<br>*: Counter specified by the following: COPIER> OPTION> USER> COUNTER 1 to 6                                |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> OPTION> USER> COUNTER1 - COUNTER6  |
| <b>CNTR-SW</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Init of parts counter replacement timing</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To return the estimated life of parts counter to the initial value.<br>If either "00000000" or a value before the specification change is displayed in the estimated life value of the parts counter, set 0 after upgrading of the firmware. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When either "00000000" or a value before the specification change is displayed in the estimated life value of the parts counter<br>- When changing the state back to the initial state after entering the estimated life value manually    |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0: Returned to the initial value   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>W/RAID</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Set of HDD Mirroring Kit installation</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set installation condition of HDD Mirroring Kit.<br>Select "1: Installed" when installing the HDD Mirroring Kit. Select "0: Not installed" when removing the HDD Mirroring Kit.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When installing/removing HDD Mirroring Kit   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Not installed, 1: Installed   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FNC-SW

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>PSWD-SW</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Password type set to enter service mode</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the type of password that is required to enter when getting into service mode.<br>2 types are available: one for "service technician" and the other for "system administrator + service technician".<br>When selecting the type for "system administrator + service technician", enter the password for service technician after the password entry by the user's system administrator. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon request from the user who concerns security   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 2<br>0: No password, 1: Service technician, 2: System administrator + service technician  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>SM-PSWD</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Password setting for service technician</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set password for service technician that is used when getting into service mode.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When password is required to get into service mode   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Be sure to select 1 or 2 with PSWD-SW in advance.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1 to 99999999  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 11111111   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> PSWD-SW  |  |
| <b>RPT2SIDE</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set of report 1-sided/2-sided output</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to use 1-sided or 2-sided for report output of service mode.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When making 1-sided report output  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: 1-sided, 1: 2-sided   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT  |  |
| <b>STND-PNL</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Set Upright Control Panel installation</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether the Upright Control Panel is installed.<br>When the Upright Control Panel is installed, set 1.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | At installation of the Upright Control Panel   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Not installed, 1: Installed   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>INVALPDL</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Disable of PDL license</b>                  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To disable the registered PDL license.<br>When "1: Disabled" is set, PDL is disabled even if a PDL license is registered. This is set to the machines installed at convenience stores, which do not allow PDL to be used.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When prohibiting the use of PDL  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Registered PDL license is enabled, 1: Disabled  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FNC-SW

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>CDS-FIRM</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set to allow firmware update by admin</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>* Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set whether to allow the user (administrator) to perform firmware update linked with CDS and collection of log files.</p> <p>When 1 is set, [Distribution Update] is added to remote UI, and [Firmware Update] is added to [Register/Update Software] of local UI. Log files can be collected from remote UI.</p> |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When allowing the administrator to update the firmware   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p>   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Do not use it for purposes other than collecting log files. Be sure to return the value to 0 after use.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | It differs according to the location.  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> LCDSFLG  |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Management Settings> License/Other> Register/Update Software   |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | CDS: Contents Delivery System  |   |
| <b>CDS-MEAP</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set to allow MEAP installation by admin</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>* Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set whether to allow the user (administrator) to install MEAP applications from CDS and enable iR options.</p> <p>When 1 is set, Updater can be activated from [Settings/Registration].</p>   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When allowing the administrator to install MEAP applications and enable iR options from CDS  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p>   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | CDS: Contents Delivery System  |   |
| <b>CDS-UGW</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set to allow firmware update from Server</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>*Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set whether to permit update of the firmware from the Remote Monitoring Server.</p> <p>When "1: Enabled" is set, Updater accepts the operation from the Remote Monitoring Server in cooperation with CDS.</p>  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When allowing update of the firmware from the Remote Monitoring Server   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p>   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | It differs according to the location.  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | CDS: Contents Delivery System  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FNC-SW

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>LOCLFIRM</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Set to allow firmware update by file</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether to permit the user (administrator) to update the firmware from the remote UI using a local file.<br>This update is executed as a measure for vulnerability in emergency situations. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When allowing the administrator to update the firmware using a file   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 1   |
| <b>T-RUN-LV</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>No.of keep print at Toner Cntner rplce</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the number of prints to be kept from the indication of Toner Container replacement until job is interrupted.<br>The time to keep printing varies depending on image ratio and productivity.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When preferring to shorten the time from replacement of the Toner Container to the recovery   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Approx. 900 sheets, 1: Approx. 140 sheets (A4, 5% image ratio)   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>BXNUPLOG</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>[Not used]</b>   |
| <b>SDLMTWRN</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Cpcty warn dspl ON/OFF: E-mail/I-Fax TX</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to display the warning message when sending data that exceeds the upper limit value for the transmission data size via E-mail/I-Fax.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | For customization   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Function Settings> Send> E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> Maximum Data Size for Sending   |
| <b>FAX-INT</b>                   | <b>2</b> | <b>Set FAX RX print interruption oprtn mode</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the mode performing interruption operation of FAX reception print automatically.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | Upon user's request   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | - Do not set this item while charge management (charging by Coin Manager, a device alone, etc.) is used.<br>- During an ongoing job for which delivery setting (offset, stapling, etc.) is made, interruption operation is performed between sets.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Normal, 1: Interruption operation mode   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FNC-SW

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>CDS-LVUP</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set to allow CDS periodical update</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>*Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set whether to allow the user (administrator) to perform periodical update linked with CDS. When 1 is set, setting of periodical update can be made in Settings/Registration menu/via remote UI.</p> <p>When 2 is set, setting of periodical update can be made on the Updater screen in service mode.</p>                                       |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When allowing the user/service technician to perform periodical update   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p>   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | <p>0 to 2</p> <p>0: Prohibited periodical update</p> <p>1: Display the periodical update setting screen in Settings/Registration menu/on remote UI</p> <p>2: Display the periodical update setting screen on the Updater in service mode</p>   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | It differs according to the location.  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | Updater  |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Management Settings> License/Other> Register/Update Software> Periodical Update  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | CDS: Contents Delivery System  |   |
| <b>AMSOFFSW</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Enabling of AMS mode</b>               |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>*Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To enable the AMS mode.</p> <p>When 0 is set, the AMS mode is enabled. The AMS mode is automatically enabled when the following 2 conditions are satisfied.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- AMS license for an iR option is installed.</li> <li>- AMS-supported Login application (User Authentication, etc.) is activated.</li> </ul> |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When enabling AMS mode   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | <p>1) Check that AMS-supported Login application is activated.</p> <p>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.</p> <p>3) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>4) Check that [Role Management] is displayed on remote UI.</p>  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | <p>0 to 1</p> <p>0: AMS mode enabled, 1: AMS mode disabled</p>   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> LCNS-TR> ST-AMS  |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | (Remote UI) User Management> Authentication Management> Role Management  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | <p>AMS: Access Management System</p> <p>In AMS mode, [Role Management] is displayed on remote UI.</p>  |   |
| <b>UA-OFFSW</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>ON/OFF of unified auth function</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>*Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set ON/OFF of the Unified Authentication function.</p> <p>Set 0 when not preferring to use the Unified Authentication function because of security concern.</p>  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request (not to use the Unified Authentication function)   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p>   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | <p>0 to 1</p> <p>0: ON, 1: OFF</p>   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | Unified Authentication: A function with which it is considered that login authentication under it is performed by logging in it using SSO-H.   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FNC-SW

|                                  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>MIB-NVTA</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>RFC-compatible character stringMIB write</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | As default, MIB object which NVT-ASCII can be written exists in order to link with local UI entry value. This violates RFC order, so a problem like garbled 2-byte characters may occur in the SNMP monitoring system, such as other vendor's MPS.<br>Whether to allow writing of non-RFC-compatible character strings in MIB can be set using this item.<br>When 1 is set, only the character strings which are strictly compatible with RFC are written. (Writing operation is executed from the SNMP manager.) It is not linked with local UI. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request (to operate with RFC-compatible system)   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 3<br>0: Compatible in a conventional manner, 1: RFC-compatible, 2 to 3: Not used   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | RFC: Document of internet-related technical standards<br>NVT-ASCII: Network Virtual Terminal-ASCII  |   |
| <b>MIB-EXT</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                              |
| <b>SVC-RUI</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Enabling of remote UI func for servicing</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to enable the remote UI function for servicing (not provided to end users).<br>When 0 is set, the remote UI function is disabled.<br>When setting a value other than 0, the remote UI function is enabled and its value will be used as the password to use the function.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When preferring to use the import function of background image file of main menu/custom menu  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (other than 0), and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 65535  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>LCDSFLG</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Enabling of local CDS server</b>             |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to use the local CDS server.<br>When CDS-FIRM is 1, this setting is enabled.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When using the local CDS server   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> CDS-FIRM  |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Management Settings> License/Other> Register/Update Software> Software Management Settings> Connection Server Settings  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | When local CDS is used, iW EMC/MC device firmware update plug-in is required.   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FNC-SW

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>BXSHIFT</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Setting of binding at 0mm binding margin</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to judge the job as a job "without binding" when storing a PDL job in Inbox while the binding margin is set to "0".<br>By setting the binding margin to 0 mm while "0" is set, the job is processed as "without binding". "Booklet" in "Options" on the Inbox screen can be also used.<br>When "1" is set, it is judged as "with binding" even the binding margin is 0 mm so "Booklet", which has an exclusive relationship with "binding", cannot be used. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | When storing a PDL job in Mail Box while 1 is set, "Booklet" in "Options" on the Mail Box screen cannot be used.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Without binding, 1: With binding  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>SELF-CHK</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                              |
| <b>HOME-SW</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set screen displayed with Main Menu key</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to display the main menu screen or the screen registered as the startup screen when pressing Main Menu key.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request (to change the startup screen)   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Main Menu screen, 1: Screen registered as the startup screen  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>NO-LGOUT</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Display/hide of logout button</b>            |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether to display or hide [Logout] button.<br>When 0 is set, [Logout] button is displayed on the screen, and logout with the ID key is enabled. (Normal)<br>When 1 is set, [Logout] button is not displayed, and logout with the ID key is disabled.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request (for customization, etc.)  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Display, 1: Hide  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>JM-ERR-D</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Set of error display of 0CAx jam (DCON)</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to display "0CAx" jam as the error "E996-0CAx".<br>In the case of a jam, log cannot be obtained depending on the timing.<br>By selecting 1 when the jam "0CAx" occurs, it is displayed as the error "E996-0CAx" so that the log can be obtained.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When obtaining a log at the occurrence of 0CAx jam   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Display as a jam, 1: Display as an error  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> JM-ERR-R   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FNC-SW

|                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>JM-ERR-R</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Enable to obtain the log for 0071 jam</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to display 0071 jam as the error "E996-0071".<br>In the case of a jam, a log may not be able to be obtained depending on the timing.<br>By selecting 1 when the 0071 jam occurs, it is displayed as an error so that a log can be obtained.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When obtaining a log at the occurrence of 0071 jam  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Display as a jam, 1: Display as an error   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> JM-ERR-D  |  |
| <b>ASLPMAX</b>                | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set auto sleep shift time maximum value</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Set auto sleep shift time maximum value.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: 240minutes, 1: 120 minutes   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | It differs according to the location.   |  |
| <b>SEND-SPD</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of SEND operation speed-up</b>       |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to speed up the SEND operation.<br>Usually, speed of SEND/XBOX is increased by performing image conversion during SEND and Scan.<br>Reading speed may decrease when scanning large size color original at high resolution or when competing operation occurs with another job during scanning. Set 1 to keep the speed.<br>When failure with MEAP application occurs, set 1. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When reading speed is decreased during SEND and Scan<br>- When failure with MEAP application occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: ON, 1: OFF   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FNC-SW

|                                  |   |  |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>VER-CHNG</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>Setting of firmware update operation</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set how to update firmware of PCB/option which has been installed/replaced by comparing the version of it with the version stored in the Flash PCB of the Main Controller.<br>If combination of firmware versions of PCB/option stored in the Main Controller and the version in PCB/option after installation/replacement is not appropriate (operation with the combination of firmware versions has not yet been checked), failure where analysis is difficult may occur.<br>It is possible to check the firmware versions at the start of the machine, and automatically write the firmware stored in the Main Controller in PCB/option collectively as needed.<br>When 0 is set, versions are not checked and firmware update is not performed. Therefore, it is necessary to manually update the versions using a USB memory/SST.<br>When 1 is set, firmware is updated if the version in PCB/option is old. However, it is not updated if the version is new or old and new versions are mixed.<br>When 2 is set, a compatible firmware (the version where operation has been checked) is written from the Main Controller regardless of whether the version in PCB/option is old or new. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When installing/replacing PCB/option having firmware  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 2<br>0: Keep the current firmware version.<br>1: Update the firmware if the version in PCB/option is older than that stored in the Main controller. If the version is new or old and new versions are mixed, firmware is not updated.<br>2: Update the firmware regardless of whether the version is old or new if the version in PCB/option differs from that stored in the Main Controller.  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | When updating the firmware, the main menu is displayed on the Control Panel at startup and then a message prompting to update firmware is displayed.<br>By pressing [Update], the machine reboots immediately and firmware is updated.<br>By pressing [Skip], it returns to the main menu. The message is displayed again at next startup.  |  |
| <b>CE-SW</b>                     | <b>1</b>  | <b>[Reserve]</b>                               |
| <b>PICLOGIN</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of Picture Login display</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display [Picture Login] in [Settings/Registration].   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When switching the Picture Login function   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1   |  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Management Settings> User Management> Authentication Management> Use User Authentication> Picture Login   |  |
| <b>FL-START</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>[For customization]</b>                     |
| <b>RCNTRY</b>                    | <b>2</b>  | <b>Set process at RCON communication error</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the processing to be executed at occurrence of RCON communication error.<br>Normally, recovery is performed without displaying an error. A log is not collected.<br>Set 1 when recovery processing is performed frequently. An error is displayed and a log for analysis can be collected.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When recovery processing due to RCON communication error is performed frequently  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Perform recovery without collecting a log, 1: Collect a log and display an error   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |  |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FNC-SW

|                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>3RDP-MSG</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF pop-up screen dspl after upgrade</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to display the screen to prompt the user to "Third-Party Software" at the first startup after upgrading due to change in the platform version. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | There will be no occasion to use this item intentionally.   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Even if 0 is set, the screen is displayed if CDS-LVUP is set to 0.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> CDS-LVUP  |  |
| <b>MOJ-SW</b>                 | <b>2</b>  | <b>[For customization]</b>                     |
| <b>SZ-MODE</b>                | <b>1</b>  | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                             |

## ■ DSPLY-SW

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; DSPLY-SW

|                                  |   |                                       |
|----------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| <b>UI-COPY</b>                   | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of copy screen display</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display or hide the copy function.  |                                       |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request   |                                       |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |                                       |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1   |                                       |
| <b>UI-BOX</b>                    | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of Inbox screen display</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether to display the Inbox function.<br>The setting values "1" and "2" of this item are linked with the values "ON" and "OFF" of [Mail Box] in [Settings/Registration] respectively. The setting is reflected after turning OFF/ON the power. |                                       |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request   |                                       |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 1 to 2<br>1: Inbox function is active<br>2: Inbox function is active (with limitation; Storing is available with PDL to Inbox despite no display on the Control Panel/remote UI)  |                                       |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1   |                                       |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Preferences> Display Settings> Store Location Display Settings> Mail Box  |                                       |
| <b>UI-SEND</b>                   | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of Send screen display</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display or hide the SEND function.  |                                       |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request   |                                       |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |                                       |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1   |                                       |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; DSPLY-SW

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>UI-FAX</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>ON/OFF of fax screen display</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set whether to display or hide the FAX function.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 1   |
| <b>NWERR-SW</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>OFF/ON of network-related error display</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set OFF/ON of network-related error message display.<br>When setting "0: OFF" while the machine is not connected to network, the error message "Check the network connection." is not displayed.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When using the machine as a copy machine  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0 (Copier model)/1 (Printer model)  |
| <b>ANIM-SW</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Screen switch set from MEAP to warning</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set to enable/disable switching from MEAP screen to the error/jam screen.<br>If disabling this mode, the screen will not be switched to the warning screen in the case of an error/jam/alarm, and a message is appeared on the MEAP screen indicating to contact the service person. |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Enabled, 1: Disabled (No display of warning screen)  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> OPTION> DSPLY-SW> MEAP-DSP  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | If just disabling the switch with MEAP-DSP, the screen is switched to the standard screen in the case of an error/jam/alarm. If disabling the switch with ANIM-SW, the screen will not be switched to the standard screen and a warning is appeared on MEAP screen.                     |
| <b>UI-PRINT</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Set of secured print-related UI display</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set whether to display UI related to secured print.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 2<br>0: Hide all UIs related to secured print<br>1: Display all UIs related to secured print<br>2: Hide Secured Print button in the main menu and the simple authentication settings in [Settings/Registration]  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; DSPLY-SW

|                                  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>IMGC-ADJ</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of img adj item dspl in [Set/Reg]</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display the item relating to image adjustment in [Settings/Registration].<br>When 1 is set, detailed image adjustment procedure will be displayed only for the paper duplicated in Preferences> Paper Settings> Paper Type Management Settings. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | As needed   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Preferences> Paper Settings> Set Paper Type Management  |   |
| <b>UI-RSCAN</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of remote scan screen display</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display the remote scan screen on the Control Panel.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1   |   |
| <b>UI-EPRNT</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of extended print screen display</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display or hide the extended print screen (print screen for print server).  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1   |   |
| <b>UI-WEB</b>                    | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of Web browser screen display</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display or hide the Web browser screen.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1   |   |
| <b>UI-HOLD</b>                   | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of hold job screen display</b>        |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display the hold job screen on the Control Panel.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 3<br>0: Hide (when POD function is OFF and JAL is OFF)<br>1: Display (when POD function is ON and JAL is OFF)<br>2: Hide (when POD function is OFF and JAL is ON)<br>3: Hide (when POD function is ON and JAL is ON)   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1   |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | POD function: JDF + HOLD functions<br>JAL function: A function to save the print result as a thumbnail.   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; DSPLY-SW

|                                  |   |  |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>RMT-CNSL</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Allow console application connection</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to allow connection from a console application (RemoteConsole).<br>When 1 is set, logs of MEAP application can be collected via the console application activated on a PC.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When collecting logs of MEAP application  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |  |
| <b>UI-SBOX</b>                   | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of Advanced Box screen display</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set ON/OFF of the Advanced Box screen on the Control Panel.<br>The setting values 0 (OFF) and 1 (ON) are linked with OFF and ON of [Advanced Box/Network] in [Settings/Registration] respectively. The setting is reflected after turning OFF/ON the power. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When not displaying the Advanced Box screen on the Control Panel  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | It differs according to the location.   |  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Preferences> Display Settings> Store Location Display Settings> Advanced Box/Network  |  |
| <b>UI-MEM</b>                    | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of memory media screen display</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set ON/OFF of the memory media screen display on the Control Panel.<br>The setting values 0 (OFF) and 1 (ON) are linked with OFF and ON of [Memory Media] in [Settings/Registration] respectively. The setting is reflected after turning OFF/ON the power. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When not displaying the memory media screen on the Control Panel  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1   |  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Preferences> Display Settings> Store Location Display Settings> Memory Media  |  |
| <b>UI-NAVI</b>                   | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of Tutorial display</b>            |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display or hide "Introduction to Useful Features" in the main menu.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1   |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; DSPLY-SW

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>SCT-BTN</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Set No. of shortcut buttons upper limit</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set an upper limit on the number of shortcut buttons that appear at the top of the Control Panel screen.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | Upon user's request   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | When 1 is set, the number of shortcut buttons that can be set increases from 2 to 4. However, the buttons become smaller in width, and the number of characters that can be displayed decreases. Depending on the MEAP application allocated to the shortcut button, the character strings may not be fully displayed. Since the character strings displayed on the shortcut button are specified by the MEAP application, they cannot be changed. Therefore, if the number of characters are too many, foregoing symptom occurs. To prevent the symptom, a measure such as decreasing the number of characters on the MEAP application side needs to be taken. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: 2 buttons, 1: 4 buttons  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | The settings for shortcut buttons are made in [Top Buttons Settings] which is displayed by pressing Advanced Menu button in upper right of the screen.  |
| <b>SDTM-DSP</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>ON/OFF of auto shutdown shift time dspl</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to display [Auto Shutdown Time] in [Settings/Registration].  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | Upon user's request   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | When 0 is set, automatic shutdown is not executed.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | It differs according to the location.   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Preferences> Timer/Energy Settings> Auto Shutdown Time  |
| <b>UI-PPA</b>                    | <b>2</b> | <b>ON/OFF of PPA screen display</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to display PPA-related information on the Control Panel or remote UI. The setting is linked with LGCY-SCP. When LGCY-SCP is set to 0, the setting of this item becomes 1. When LGCY-SCP is set to 1, the setting of this item becomes 0.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When not displaying PPA-related information on the screen   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0 (non PPA-installed machine)/1 (PPA-installed machine)   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> OPTION> USER> LGCY-SCP  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | PPA (Personal Print Application): A function to hold print job. It contains the secured print function.   |
| <b>CE-DSP</b>                    | <b>2</b> | <b>[Reserve]</b>  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; DSPLY-SW

|                                  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>LOCAL-SZ</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>ON/OFF area-spec stdrd size ppr set scrn</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display the area-specific standard size paper on the paper settings screen in [Settings/Registration].<br>When 1 is set, paper type (FOOLSCAP, OFICIO, etc.) can be set on the paper settings screen for each paper source.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | It differs according to the location.   |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Preferences> Paper Settings> Paper Settings   |   |
| <b>SND-NAME</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Setting of [Scan and Send] button name</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the name of [Scan and Send] button displayed in the main menu.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 2<br>0: [Scan and Send], 1: [Scan], 2: [Scan]  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>PCMP-DSP</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set copy cmpl scrn dspl:chg w/devc alone</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display the screen indicating completion of copying at the time of charging with a device alone.<br>When 0 is set, a message "Copying is complete. Do you want to start the job again with the same settings?" is not displayed in a pop-up screen.<br>When COIN is 4, this setting is enabled. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> ACC> COIN   |   |
| <b>ERR-DISP</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>[For customization]</b>                      |
| <b>SVC-ACA</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Display of ACA installation button</b>       |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display the [Install Auto Configuration Agent] button on the CDS Updater screen (user mode/service mode).   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When switching to install/not to install the ACA via network  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 2<br>0: Hide (Hide user mode/service mode)<br>1: Display only service mode (Hide user mode)<br>2: Display all (Display user mode/service mode)   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | It differs according to the location.   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | Service Mode > Updater  |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Management Settings> License/Other> Register/Update Software  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | ACA : Auto Configuration Agent  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; DSPLY-SW

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>SVC-SRA</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Display/hide of DBS installation button</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to display the [Install Data Backup Service] button on the CDS Updater screen (user mode/service mode).   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When switching to install/not to install the Data Backup Service via network   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Depending on the setting value, display when entering from Settings/Registration and that from service mode differ.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 2<br>0: Hide (Hide user mode/service mode)<br>1: Display only service mode (Hide user mode)<br>2: Display all (Display user mode/service mode)  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | It differs according to the location.  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | Service Mode> Updater> Install Data Backup Service   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Management Settings> License/Other> Register/Update Software> Install Data Backup Service  |
| <b>LF-DSP-S</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Set Display/Hide Life VL in Service Mode</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to display Life Value and Replacement Life Value on the service mode counter screen.<br>If this option is set to 1, Life Value is displayed in the third column and Replacement Life Value in the fourth column of all items under COPIER > COUNTER > LIFE. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When displaying Live Value and Replacement Life Value  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Change the setting in accordance with the instruction of the sales company HQ.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | The value differs according to the location.   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER > COUNTER > LIFE  |
| <b>LF-DSP-U</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Dspy/hide Chk Consumable State/Days Left</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to display the "Status" and "Number of Days Left" in Status Monitor/Cancel > Consmbls./Others > Check Consumables.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When switching display/hide the Status and Number of Days Left.  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Change the setting in accordance with the instruction of the sales company HQ.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | The value differs according to the location.   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Status Monitor/Cancel > Consmbls./Others > Consumables   |
| <b>ERRL-DSP</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b>   |
| <b>JLG-UD-D</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>[For customization]</b>   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; DSPLY-SW

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>UFOS-DSP</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Display/hide of uniFLOW Setup</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Service mode to switch to display or hide [uniFLOW Setup].                                  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When to switch to display or hide [uniFLOW Setup]   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | It differs according to the location.   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Main Menu > uniFLOW Setup   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | uniFLOW : The name of the product destined for China is "mdsFLOW".                          |
| <b>SVC-DAT</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |

## ■ NETWORK

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; NETWORK

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>IFAX-LIM</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>No. of max print lines at IFAX reception</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the maximum number of lines for e-mail text to be printed when receiving IFAX. Setting of this item can prevent endless printing of the attached file data in the case of receiving an error e-mail or failure in interpretation of the context. Selecting 0 prints the header/footer in 1 sheet when receiving e-mail text without attached file. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When preventing endless print in the case of failure in reception   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 999<br>0: E-mail text not printed, 999: Unlimited  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 500   |
| <b>SMTPTXPN</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of SMTP TX port number</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set SMTP transmission port number.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 65535  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 25  |
| <b>SMTPRXPN</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of SMTP reception port number</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set SMTP reception port number.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 65535  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 25  |
| <b>POP3PN</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of POP3 reception port number</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set POP3 reception port number.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 65535  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 110   |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; NETWORK

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>FTPTXPN</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Specification of SEND port (FTP) number</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To specify address port (FTP) number for SEND.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 65535   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 21   |
| <b>NW-SPEED</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of network data transfer speed</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the data transfer speed when the service network is connected.<br>When downloading the firmware through network, use 0 in the normal operation. When fixed to 100Base-TX/10Base-T for any reason, change the setting.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When fixing the communication speed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 2<br>0: Auto, 1: 100Base-TX, 2: 10Base-T  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>STS-PORT</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>[Not used]</b>  |
| <b>CMD-PORT</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>ON/OFF TOTAsync command comctn port</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set ON/OFF for asynchronous command communication port with T.O.T.<br>Select "1: ON" in the case of connecting the PC and the machine with the cross cable while Service NAVI is used.  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> STS-PORT  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | T.O.T (TUIF over TCP): Communication protocol to be used for communication with the built-in application (UI) and the internal application such as COPY/ SEND/ BOX, etc. (Canon's own protocol).   |
| <b>NS-CMD5</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Limit CRAM-MD5 auth method at SMTP auth</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To restrict use of CRAM-MD5 authentication method at the time of SMTP authentication.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: SMTP server-dependent, 1: Not used  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | SMTP authentication: Protocol in which user authentication function is added to SMTP, which is the protocol to be used for e-mail transmission. At the time of e-mail transmission, this protocol executes authentication of the user account and the password between the SMTP server and the user to approve e-mail transmission only when it's authenticated. |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; NETWORK

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>NS-GSAPI</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Limit GSSAPI auth method at SMTP auth</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To restrict use of GSSAPI authentication method at the time of SMTP authentication.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: SMTP server-dependent, 1: Not used  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | SMTP authentication: Protocol in which user authentication function is added to SMTP, which is the protocol to be used for e-mail transmission. At the time of e-mail transmission, this protocol executes authentication of the user account and the password between the SMTP server and the user to approve e-mail transmission only when it's authenticated. |  |
| <b>NS-NTLM</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Limit NTLM auth method at SMTP auth</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To restrict use of NTLM authentication method at the time of SMTP authentication.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: SMTP server-dependent, 1: Not used  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | SMTP authentication: Protocol in which user authentication function is added to SMTP, which is the protocol to be used for e-mail transmission. At the time of e-mail transmission, this protocol executes authentication of the user account and the password between the SMTP server and the user to approve e-mail transmission only when it's authenticated. |  |
| <b>NS-PLNWS</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Limit plaintext auth at SMTP auth encry</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To restrict use of PLAIN/LOGIN authentication, which is plaintext, at the time of SMTP authentication under the environment where the communication packet is encrypted.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: SMTP server-dependent, 1: Not used  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | SMTP authentication: Protocol in which user authentication function is added to SMTP, which is the protocol to be used for e-mail transmission. At the time of e-mail transmission, this protocol executes authentication of the user account and the password between the SMTP server and the user to approve e-mail transmission only when it's authenticated. |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; NETWORK

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>NS-PLN</b>                 | <b>2</b>   | <b>Limit plaintext auth at SMTPauth noency</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To restrict use of PLAIN/LOGIN authentication, which is plaintext, at the time of SMTP authentication under the environment where the communication packet is not encrypted.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: SMTP server-dependent, 1: Not used  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | SMTP authentication: Protocol in which user authentication function is added to SMTP, which is the protocol to be used for e-mail transmission. At the time of e-mail transmission, this protocol executes authentication of the user account and the password between the SMTP server and the user to approve e-mail transmission only when it's authenticated. |   |
| <b>NS-LGN</b>                 | <b>2</b>   | <b>Limit LOGIN authentication at SMTP auth</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To restrict use of LOGIN authentication at the time of SMTP authentication.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: SMTP server-dependent, 1: Not used  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | SMTP authentication: Protocol in which user authentication function is added to SMTP, which is the protocol to be used for e-mail transmission. At the time of e-mail transmission, this protocol executes authentication of the user account and the password between the SMTP server and the user to approve e-mail transmission only when it's authenticated. |   |
| <b>MEAP-PN</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>HTTP port No.setting of MEAP application</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set HTTP port number of MEAP application.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Do not specify port 8080 when the Print Server is connected. Otherwise, you cannot browse the device RUI in which MEAP authentication application is running (Port 8080 is reserved for redirection of EFI Controller to the iR side.)   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1 to 65535   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 8000   |   |
| <b>RMT-LGIN</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Set to allow remote login to SSH server</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to allow remote login from the remote host (SSH client: DA) to debug console of the SSH server.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | As needed (This mode is used for the Japanese models only and not used with overseas models (outside Japan)).  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | DA: Digital Accessory  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; NETWORK

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>CHNG-STTS</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Set of TOT status connection port number</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the port number for status connection with T.O.T.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When the Service NAVI is used  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 1 to 65535   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 20010  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> STS-PORT  |
| <b>CHNG-CMD</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Set of TOT command connection port No.</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the port number for command connection with T.O.T.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When the Service NAVI is used  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 1 to 65535   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 20000  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> CMD-PORT  |
| <b>MEAP-SSL</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>HTTPS port setting of MEAP</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set the port of HTTPS server in the case of using SSL with HTTP of MEAP. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When specifying the setting of HTTPS port for MEAP   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 65535   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 8443   |
| <b>LPD-PORT</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of LPD port number</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set the LPD port number.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 1 to 65535   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 515  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | LPD port: Network port for TCP/IP communication when making prints through network.  |
| <b>WUEN-LIV</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Recovery time setting after sleep notice</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the time from the sleep start from network without job assignment until the mode is shifted to the sleep mode.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When setting the startup time after sleep notification   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 10 to 600  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sec  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 15   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; NETWORK

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>IFX-CHIG</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Set operation by IFAX recv mail content</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the number of characters for the IFAX received mail content, so that the mail is not printed/forwarded when the characters in the text is less than the number of specified characters.<br>This machine can output blank paper because some senders send e-mail text consists of linefeed codes only. In such case, specify 2 (number of characters) so that there will be no output of blank paper.<br>In the case of specifying any number other than 0, header/footer is printed/forwarded in 1 sheet only if the e-mail (body) text is less than the specified value while no TIFF file is attached.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the number of target characters in e-mail body text is increased by 1 character. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When reducing print of blank paper due to e-mail received by IFAX   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Be sure to get approval from the user by telling that there will be no print of e-mail (body) text if the number of characters is less than the specified value.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 999<br>0: E-mail (body) text is not ignored.   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | char  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | 1 Japanese Kanji character is calculated as 2 bytes, and the control codes (such as linefeed code, etc) are included in the number of characters.   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>DNSTRANS</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Setting of DNS query priority protocol</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set priority of the protocol (IPv4/IPv6) for DNS query.<br>In the case of using both IPv6 and IPv4 while the DNS server supports IPv4, it takes time because of timeout when executing DNS query with priority on IPv6. Giving priority on query by IPv4 can shorten the time.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When it takes time to execute DNS query with priority on IPv6 because the DNS server supports IPv4  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: IPv4, 1: IPv6  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 1   |
| <b>PROXYRES</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of proxy response to Windows</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether to provide proxy response or return the device status when an inquiry is received via Windows while the device is in sleep mode.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When executing status response for query from Windows correctly   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: No proxy response, 1: Proxy response   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 1   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; NETWORK

|                                  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>WOLTRANS</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>ON/OFF sleep recover by packet reception</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set whether to recover from deep sleep when receiving unicast packets to the machine (excluding proxy response).   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 1 to 2<br>1: ON, 2: OFF   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1   |   |
| <b>802XTOUT</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set of IEEE802.1X authentication timeout</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set timeout value for IEEE802.1X authentication. If the device executes 802.1X authentication, change the wait time for response from the authentication server. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When response from the authentication server is slow/fast   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 10 to 120   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | sec   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 30  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |   |
| <b>SPDALDEL</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>Initialization of SPD value</b>              |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To initialize all the SPD values that are under management. SPD values can be initialized without clearing SRAM.  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | SPD: Database that manages SA (Security Association).<br>SPD value is managed when IPSec Board is used. Normally, SRAM needs to be cleared in the case of mismatch in SPD value.  |   |
| <b>NCONF-SW</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of Network Configurator function</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set ON/OFF of Network Configurator function. If the user does not use the function, select OFF to prevent remote attack through network.                         |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1   |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | Network Configurator function is a function to be used for communication with NetSpot Device Installer, etc., and the network setting can be changed from the remote.   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; NETWORK

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>AFS-JOB</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Set of FAX server job reception port</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set the reception port of the fax server to which a fax client sends jobs.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When changing the job reception port of the fax server   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 65535   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 20317  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> AFC-EVNT  |
| <b>AFC-EVNT</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Set of FAX client event reception port</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set the event notification reception port of a fax client.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When changing the event notification reception port of a fax client  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 65535   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 29400  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> AFS-JOB   |
| <b>ILOGMODE</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Setting of filter log target packet</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set the target packet to be recorded in the filter log.<br>Usually, only the unicast packets to the machine are recorded in the filter log by PFW (personal firewall).<br>When 1 is set, address filter is enabled for all protocols so all packets are recorded in the filter log. However, logs of multicast/broadcast packets sent from a harmless device or an address that are subject to rejection and have no direct relation to the machine are also recorded, and consequently the number of logs is increased. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request (to collect all filter logs)   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | When 1 is set, the number of logs is increased because logs of packets which have no direct relation to the machine are recorded.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Unicast packets to the machine only, 1: All packets   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>ILOGKEEP</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Set of IP address block log hold time</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set the retention time from the log time of IP block.<br>When access is made again from a same IP address which was blocked before, if it is within the retention time of the previous log, its log is not recorded.<br>If access is frequently made from a same IP address, the log record of the UI might be filled with its logs. If the user considers that a single log for a same IP address is enough, set the longer retention time.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 48<br>0: 1 minute (special mode)<br>1 to 48: 1 hour to 48 hours   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 1  |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; NETWORK

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>IPTBROAD</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set to allow broad/multicast TX</b>        |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set whether to permit transmission of broadcast packets and multicast packets. Transmission of broadcast packets and multicast packets is permitted without specifying an exception address. It is permitted within the device even if it is rejected in the default setting of the IPv4/v6 transmission filter.<br>Set "1: Disabled" when the user does not want to send them.     |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 5<br>0: Enabled, 1: Disabled, 2 to 5: Not used  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>PFWFTPRT</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set of RST reply at IP filter FTP SEND</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. When FTP SEND is executed using an IP filter by which packets from a specific remote PC are rejected, SYN is returned to the port 113 if the PC supports authentication of the FTP port 113. However, since the IP filter blocks the packets, the block logs are increased and the performance is lowered.<br>When 1 is set, RST is returned to the port 113 without blocking packets. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When executing FTP SEND against the OS which supports authentication of the FTP port 113 while the IP filter is enabled  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>DDNSINTV</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set of DDNS periodical update interval</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | DNS registration is executed only once at start-up with the current iR, so the registered contents are deleted in an environment where the DNS server settings are deleted at intervals. To set the interval of DDNS periodical update for not deleting the registered contents.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the DNS server settings are deleted at intervals  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 48<br>0: No periodical update, 1: 1-hour interval, 2: 2-hour interval, ..., 47: 47-hour interval, 48: 48-hour interval  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | hour   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 24   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1  |   |
| <b>SIPAUDIO</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Set of SIP session establishment order</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to establish audio session or T.38 session first with SIP. Usually, audio session followed by T.38 session is established when using IPFAX in an intranet environment. However, this order is not specified by the standard.<br>Set 1 when connecting the SIP server or terminal where the session starts with T.38 session.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When connecting the SIP server or terminal where the session starts with T.38 session  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | When 1 is set, IPFAX fails with the destination where the session starts with audio session.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: audio, 1: T.38  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | SIP: Session Initiation Protocol   |   |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; NETWORK

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>SIPINOUT</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Set of internal/external number to URI</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to store the external number or the internal number in From URI when using NGN.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When a call cannot be made with external number while using NGN   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: External number, 1: Internal number  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | NGN: Next Generation Network<br>URI: Uniform Resource Identifier  |
| <b>SIPREGPR</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of registrar server use protocol</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the protocol used for communication with registrar server.<br>Although the protocol that is the same as the one for proxy server is usually used, another protocol can be used in accordance with user and environment.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | Upon user's request (to use a protocol different from the one for proxy server)   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 3<br>0: Protocol set in Settings/Registration menu, 1: UDP, 2: TCP, 3: SSL   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Preferences> Network> TCP/IP Settings> SIP Settings> Intranet Settings  |
| <b>VLAN-SW</b>                   | <b>2</b> | <b>ON/OFF VLAN participation packets send</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to send packets for participating in dynamic VLAN at link-up.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When participating in dynamic VLAN  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | - VLAN (Virtual LAN): A method for realizing grouping of terminals depending on the hub, switch connection port, MAC address, protocol, etc.<br>- At link-up: At startup, when LAN cable is connected, when recovering from deep sleep, when pressing the button to reflect the setting (dynamic update)<br>- If IP address of the machine has not been set, an IP address is assigned after participating in VLAN. |
| <b>FTPMODE</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Set of FTP print default operation mode</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the default operation mode of FTP print.<br>Switch the default operation mode between ASCII mode and BIN mode in accordance with user's environment.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | At installation   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: ASCII mode, 1: BIN mode  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; NETWORK

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>SSLMODE</b>                   | <b>2</b>   | <b>Setting of HTTP/HTTPS port open/close</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>*Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br/>To set whether to open or close HTTP/HTTPS port.<br/>When 1 is set while [Use HTTP] is ON and [Use TLS] is OFF in Settings/Registration menu, HTTP port is opened whereas HTTPS port is closed.<br/>When 2 is set while both [Use HTTP] and [Use TLS] are ON in Settings/Registration menu, HTTP port is closed whereas HTTPS port is opened.</p> |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When limiting the port to open because of security concern   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br/>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | <p>0 to 2<br/>0: Normal, 1: Open HTTP port (80/8000) only, 2: Open HTTPS port (443/8443) only</p>  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | <p>Preferences&gt; Network&gt; TCP/IP Settings&gt; Use HTTP<br/>Management Settings&gt; License/Other&gt; MEAP Settings&gt; Use TLS</p>  |  |
| <b>SSLSTRNG</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Allow weak encryption algorithm for SSL</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>To set whether to allow using weak encryption algorithm for SSL.<br/>When 1 is set, weak encryption algorithm cannot be used.</p>   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When prohibiting weak encryption algorithm because of security concern   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br/>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | <p>0 to 1<br/>0: Normal mode, 1: Secure mode ( Not used TLS_RSA_WITH_RC4_128_SHA, TLS_RSA_WITH_RC4_128_MD5)</p>  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1  |  |
| <b>NW-WAIT</b>                   | <b>2</b>   | <b>Set connect wait at deep sleep recovery</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>To set whether to send wakeup notice after the time set in Settings/Registration menu has elapsed when recovering from deep sleep.<br/>When 0 is set, wakeup notice is sent after "Waiting Time for Connection at Startup" has elapsed.<br/>When 1 is set, wakeup notice is sent when the machine becomes ready for communication.</p>  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When a failure of the device management tool occurs  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br/>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | <p>0 to 1<br/>0: Wait, 1: Not wait</p>   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Preferences> Network> Waiting Time for Connection at Startup   |  |
| <b>WLAN-USE</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Setting of wireless LAN invalidation</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>To set whether to disable the wireless LAN.<br/>Bringing in and installation of the wireless LAN equipment may be prohibited depending on user.<br/>In such case, set 0 to prevent the wireless LAN to be used. When 0 is set, [Wireless Connection Settings] is not displayed in [Settings/Registration].</p>  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When bringing in and installation of the wireless LAN equipment is prohibited  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br/>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | <p>0 to 1<br/>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled</p>  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1  |  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Preferences> Network> Wireless Connection Settings   |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; NETWORK

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>WLANPORT</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Set of port filter at wireless LAN side</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether to open all ports at the wireless LAN side.<br>When 0 is set, only the specific port is opened (filter is enabled).<br>Set 1 when using an application which uses a port other than the specific port. All ports are opened (filter is disabled). |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | Upon user's request   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Open the specific port, 1: Open all ports  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>RAW-PORT</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>[For customization]</b>  |
| <b>LINKWAKE</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Set of deep sleep recovery at link-up</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to recover from deep sleep when link-up (disconnection and then connection of LAN cable) is detected.<br>Set 0 if the closest hub or switch chatters at link-up. It can prevent recovery from deep sleep triggered by chattering.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When the machine recovers from deep sleep due to chattering of the closest hub or switch  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Not recovered, 1: Recovered  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 1   |
| <b>WIFIRFCH</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>BLEPOWER</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Set of Bluetooth radio field strength</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the radio field strength for transmission over BLE (Bluetooth Low Energy).<br>As the value is changed by 1, the radio field strength is changed by 1 dBm.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When radio field strength of BLE is not appropriate   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Do not change the setting in Singapore. It is prohibited by law.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | -10 to -1 (-10 to -1 dBm)   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | -5  |
| <b>WSMC-USE</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>[Not used]</b>   |
| <b>WSMC-RST</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>[Not used]</b>   |
| <b>INTENT</b>                    | <b>2</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |

## ■ ENV-SET

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > OPTION (Specification setting mode) > ENV-SET

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>ENVP-INT</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Temp, humid/Fix Roll temp log get cycle</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the cycle to obtain log of the temperature and humidity inside the machine or the surface temperature of the Fixing Roller.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the cycle is increased by 1 minute.<br>Obtained log can be displayed by selecting the following: COPIER > DISPLAY > ENVRNT |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | At trouble analysis  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Be sure to set "High" for [Sleep Mode Energy Use] in [Settings/Registration] before collecting logs, and change the value back to its original setting after log collection.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 480   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | min  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 60   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> DISPLAY> ENVRNT  |  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Preferences> Timer/Energy Settings> Sleep Mode Energy Use  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1  |  |
| <b>DRY-CISU</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>ON/OFF of condensation prevention mode</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set ON/OFF of condensation prevention mode.<br>Set 1 when an image failure or E225 occurs due to condensation in the Scanner Unit. From the next startup, the Scanner Unit (for front side) stops the fan for 15 sec and the Scanner Unit (for back side) lights LED for 30 sec.                |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When droplets appear on the Scanner Unit due to condensation and image failure or E225 occurs  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF (Normal mode), 1: ON (Condensation prevention mode)   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |

## ■ CLEANING

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > OPTION (Specification setting mode) > CLEANING

|                                  |   |  |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>W-CLN-P</b>                   | <b>2</b>  | <b>Set last rotn Pmry Charge Wir cln intvl</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the offset value of the paper interval for automatic cleaning of the Primary Charging Wire. Default is 2000 sheets, and the paper interval can be changed within the range between 1000 and 5000 sheets. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -1000 to 3000   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | sheet   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0 (2000 sheets)   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; CLEANING

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>CLN-SW</b>                 | <b>1</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of cleaning black band sequence</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To set ON/OFF of black band sequence for cleaning.</p> <p>When printing a low duty image while toner ejection operation at low duty image is set to OFF, amount of toner supply to the Cleaning Blade is decreased extremely. Toner is supplied to the edge of Cleaning Blade if the sequence is executed.</p> <p>The execution of sequence is synchronized with the Primary Charging Wire cleaning timing.</p> <p>When setting CLN-SW to 2 and setting CLN-ADJ to 0, the setting value "7" of environment control for each process speed is executed.</p> <p>When setting CLN-SW to 2 and setting CLN-ADJ to other than 0, operation is accorded with the setting value of CLN-ADJ.</p> <p>When setting CLN-SW to 0, operation is not executed regardless of the CLN-ADJ setting.</p> |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When amount of toner supply to the Cleaning Blade is decreased extremely  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 2<br>0: OFF, 1: Based on environment control, 2: ON  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> CLEANING> CLN-ADJ   |   |
| <b>CLN-ADJ</b>                | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set black band length for cleaning</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To set black band length for cleaning.</p> <p>When setting CLN-SW to 2 and setting CLN-ADJ to other than 0, operation is accorded with the setting value of CLN-ADJ.</p> <p>When setting CLN-SW to 0, operation is not executed regardless of the CLN-ADJ setting.</p>   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When amount of toner supply to the Cleaning Blade is decreased extremely  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 4<br>0: Based on environment control, 1: 1000 mm, 2: 2098 mm, 3: 3548 mm, 4: 5000 mm   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> CLEANING> CLN-SW  |   |

## ■ FEED-SW

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FEED-SW

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>TRY-CHG</b>                | <b>2</b>  | <b>Set Delivery Tray destn for next job:Fin</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To set which tray of the finisher the next job is delivered to.</p> <p>When 0 is set, paper is delivered to the Priority Tray unless the Priority Tray is full.</p> <p>When 1 is set, paper is delivered to the tray to which the previous job is delivered. When the tray is full, paper is delivered to an empty tray.</p> |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Deliver to the Priority Tray, 1: Deliver followed by the previous job  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>INSRT-SW</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>[Not used]</b>                               |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FEED-SW

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>DK2-TURN</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>ON/OFF of L-Deck Pckup Rol little rotn</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To set whether to rotate the Left Deck Pickup Roller a little after completion of job or at the time of warm-up rotation.</p> <p>If the Pickup Deck has not been used for a long time, a part of the Separation Roller engaged with the Pickup Roller becomes worn and the roller stops rotation. As a result of that, jam may occur. When 1 is set, the Pickup Roller rotates 75mm after completion of job so that wear of the Separation Roller can be reduced.</p> <p>As the usage is extended or at the operation performed first time for the day in a low temperature environment, the Separation Roller is not rotated in response to rotation of the Pickup Roller. As a result of that, jam may occur. When 2 is set, the Pickup Roller rotates 75mm at warm-up rotation.</p>      |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>When pickup jam occurs with the following conditions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Pickup Deck has not been used for a long time</li> <li>- The usage is extended</li> <li>- At the operation performed first time for the day in a low temperature environment</li> </ul>   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | When ON is set, papers sticking out of the Receptacle may get stuck at the time of opening and closing the deck.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 3<br>0: OFF, 1: ON after a job, 2: ON at warm-up rotation, 3: ON after a job and at warm-up rotation  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> FEED-SW> DK1-TURN, DK3-TURN, DK4-TURN, DK5-TURN  |  |
| <b>DK3-TURN</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>ON/OFF of Casstt3 Pckup Rol little rotn</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To set whether to rotate the Cassette 3 Pickup Roller a little after completion of job or at the time of warm-up rotation.</p> <p>If the Pickup Cassette has not been used for a long time, a part of the Separation Roller engaged with the Pickup Roller becomes worn and the roller stops rotation. As a result of that, jam may occur. When 1 is set, the Pickup Roller rotates 75mm after completion of job so that wear of the Separation Roller can be reduced.</p> <p>As the usage is extended or at the operation performed first time for the day in a low temperature environment, the Separation Roller is not rotated in response to rotation of the Pickup Roller. As a result of that, jam may occur. When 2 is set, the Pickup Roller rotates 75mm at warm-up rotation.</p> |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>When pickup jam occurs with the following conditions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Pickup Cassette has not been used for a long time</li> <li>- The usage is extended</li> <li>- At the operation performed first time for the day in a low temperature environment</li> </ul>   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | When ON is set, papers sticking out of the Receptacle may get stuck at the time of opening and closing the Cassette.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 3<br>0: OFF, 1: ON after a job, 2: ON at warm-up rotation, 3: ON after a job and at warm-up rotation  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> FEED-SW> DK1-TURN, DK2-TURN, DK4-TURN, DK5-TURN  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FEED-SW

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>DK4-TURN</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>ON/OFF of Casstt4 Pckup Rol little rotn</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To set whether to rotate the Cassette 4 Pickup Roller a little after completion of job or at the time of warm-up rotation.</p> <p>If the Pickup Cassette has not been used for a long time, a part of the Separation Roller engaged with the Pickup Roller becomes worn and the roller stops rotation. As a result of that, jam may occur. When 1 is set, the Pickup Roller rotates 75mm after completion of job so that wear of the Separation Roller can be reduced.</p> <p>As the usage is extended or at the operation performed first time for the day in a low temperature environment, the Separation Roller is not rotated in response to rotation of the Pickup Roller. As a result of that, jam may occur. When 2 is set, the Pickup Roller rotates 75mm at warm-up rotation.</p> |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>When pickup jam occurs with the following conditions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Pickup Cassette has not been used for a long time</li> <li>- The usage is extended</li> <li>- At the operation performed first time for the day in a low temperature environment</li> </ul>   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | When ON is set, papers sticking out of the Receptacle may get stuck at the time of opening and closing the Cassette.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 3<br>0: OFF, 1: ON after a job, 2: ON at warm-up rotation, 3: ON after a job and at warm-up rotation  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> FEED-SW> DK1-TURN, DK2-TURN, DK3-TURN, DK5-TURN  |  |
| <b>DK1-TURN</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>ON/OFF of R-Deck Pckup Rol little rotn</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To set whether to rotate the Right Deck Pickup Roller a little after completion of job or at the time of warm-up rotation.</p> <p>If the Pickup Deck has not been used for a long time, a part of the Separation Roller engaged with the Pickup Roller becomes worn and the roller stops rotation. As a result of that, jam may occur. When 1 is set, the Pickup Roller rotates 75mm after completion of job so that wear of the Separation Roller can be reduced.</p> <p>As the usage is extended or at the operation performed first time for the day in a low temperature environment, the Separation Roller is not rotated in response to rotation of the Pickup Roller. As a result of that, jam may occur. When 2 is set, the Pickup Roller rotates 75mm at warm-up rotation.</p>     |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>When pickup jam occurs with the following conditions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Pickup Deck has not been used for a long time</li> <li>- The usage is extended</li> <li>- At the operation performed first time for the day in a low temperature environment</li> </ul>   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | When ON is set, papers sticking out of the Receptacle may get stuck at the time of opening and closing the deck.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 3<br>0: OFF, 1: ON after a job, 2: ON at warm-up rotation, 3: ON after a job and at warm-up rotation  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> FEED-SW> DK2-TURN, DK3-TURN, DK4-TURN, DK5-TURN  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FEED-SW

| DK5-TURN                      | 1   | ON/OFF of OP-Deck Pckup Rol little rotn |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To set whether to rotate the Option Deck Pickup Roller a little after completion of job or at the time of warm-up rotation.</p> <p>If the Pickup Deck has not been used for a long time, a part of the Separation Roller engaged with the Pickup Roller becomes worn and the roller stops rotation. As a result of that, jam may occur. When 1 is set, the Pickup Roller rotates 75mm after completion of job so that wear of the Separation Roller can be reduced.</p> <p>As the usage is extended or at the operation performed first time for the day in a low temperature environment, the Separation Roller is not rotated in response to rotation of the Pickup Roller. As a result of that, jam may occur. When 2 is set, the Pickup Roller rotates 75mm at warm-up rotation.</p> |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>When pickup jam occurs with the following conditions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Pickup Deck has not been used for a long time</li> <li>- The usage is extended</li> <li>- At the operation performed first time for the day in a low temperature environment</li> </ul>  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | When ON is set, papers sticking out of the Receptacle may get stuck at the time of opening and closing the deck.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>0 to 3</p> <p>0: OFF, 1: ON after a job, 2: ON at warm-up rotation, 3: ON after a job and at warm-up rotation</p>  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> FEED-SW> DK1-TURN, DK2-TURN, DK3-TURN, DK4-TURN   |   |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FEED-SW

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>DK1-AIR</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>ON/OFF of POD Deck Lite air assist</b>       |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>To set ON/OFF of the POD Deck Lite air assist.</p> <p>In the initial settings, the air assist is OFF for plain paper, and ON for coated paper and heavy paper.</p> <p>When do ON with constant air capacity in all paper, set the value to 1. When the transfer failure occurs with coated paper, heavy paper, etc., set the value to 2. When a jam or double feed error frequently occurs with paper of the air assist off, set the value to 3 and usually set air capacity of each paper class in an user mode.</p> |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | <p>- When a jam or double feed error frequently occurs with plain paper</p> <p>- When transfer failure occurs with coated paper and heavy paper</p>  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>-When do set air capacity in an user mode</p> <p>1)Perform service mode item.<br/>COPIER &gt; OPTION &gt; DSPLY-SW &gt; IMGC-ADJ</p> <p>2)Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>3)Reproduce object media using the user mode.</p> <p>4)Select the reproduce media setup.</p> <p>5)Select the adjustment for paper flotation fan level, and set the value.</p> <p>6)Set the reproduce media of the object deck.</p>   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | <p>When set the value 3, an air capacity control is necessary in an user mode.</p>   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | <p>0 to 3</p> <p>0 : Initial setting</p> <p>1 : Air assist ON (Constant air capacity in all paper)</p> <p>2 : Air assist OFF (All paper)</p> <p>3 : Air assist ON (Paper classification setting)</p>   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> DSPLY-SW> IMGC-ADJ   |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Preference> Paper Settings> Set Paper Type Management  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | <p>When set the value 3, The media which were air assist OFF get possible to set the following air capacity in the adjustment for paper flotation fan level.</p> <p>-5 to 0 : 0%</p> <p>+1 : 20%</p> <p>+2 : 24%</p> <p>+3 : 28%</p> <p>+4 : 32%</p> <p>+5 : 36%</p>   |   |
| <b>TFL-RTC</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set delvry dest at rcvry after tray full</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>To select the delivery destination for a job with multiple pages after recovering the Delivery Tray that reaches the full level.</p> <p>When 0 is set, a job is output from the delivery destination again from which the last job was delivered.</p> <p>When 1 is set, a job is output from the delivery destination which priority is set as high at "Output Tray Settings" in [Settings/Registration].</p>   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | <p>When changing the delivery tray</p>   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p>   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | <p>0 to 1</p> <p>0: Output from the tray from which the last job was output, 1: Output from the delivery destination which priority is high among the delivery trays</p>   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Function Settings> Common> Paper Output Settings> Output Tray Settings   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FEED-SW

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>DK1-ALVD</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Deck Air Float Fan airflow amnt: dwstm</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To adjust the airflow amount of the Air Floation Fan (Downstream) of the POD Deck Lite. When making an adjustment, be sure to adjust the setting of DK1-ALVU.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When double-feed occurs.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | If the value is large, uneven transfer may occur. If the value is small, double feed may occur.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -10 to 10  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> OPTION> FEED-SW> DK1-ALVU  |
| <b>DK1-ALVU</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Deck Air Float Fan airflow amnt:upstream</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To adjust the airflow amount of the Air Floation Fan (Upstream) of the POD Deck Lite. When making an adjustment, be sure to adjust the setting of DK1-ALVD.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When double-feed occurs.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | If the value is large, uneven transfer may occur. If the value is small, double feed may occur.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -10 to 10  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> OPTION> FEED-SW> DK1-ALVD  |
| <b>DK1-LDWN</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Set ppr surface level down: Deck standby</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set whether to lower the paper surface level in the POD Deck Lite or Paper Deck Unit below pickup position during standby.<br>When a trace which looks like that the Pickup Roller had contact with a paper occurs, set 1. It returns to pickup position at the time of starting a job.       |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When trace of the Pickup Roller appears on transparency or the 1st sheet of coated paper in an LL environment  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | When 1 is set, FCOT becomes longer.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Normal (Pickup Roller is in contact), 1: Paper surface level moves down   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>DK1-PSP</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of Deck Pickup Roller eng/diseng</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set whether to disengage the Pickup Roller of the POD Deck Lite or Paper Deck Unit every time paper is picked up.<br>When 0 is set, it is disengaged only for heavy paper (151 g/m2 or more), coated paper and transparency.<br>When 1 is set, it is disengaged regardless of the paper type. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When trace of the Pickup Roller appears on the 2nd sheet and later   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | If the machine is continued to be used while the setting value is 1, the life of the solenoid becomes shorter.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Disengaged only for heavy paper (151 g/m2 or more), coated paper and transparency<br>1: Disengaged regardless of the paper type   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FEED-SW

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>PKD-REST</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Set Deck ppr lvl thrshld: prdctvty prrty</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the threshold value for paper level to be determined as "no paper" in the Deck. As the value is increased, papers remaining in the Deck at the time of switching paper source by auto cassette change decrease. However, in some cases, the machine keeps pickup operation until paper runs out. As a result of that, adjustment needs to be made so productivity may decrease. Therefore, thickness of paper needs to be taken into consideration when making the setting. In case of heavy paper, keep the setting value as 0. In case of thin paper, set a relatively large value. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request (to use up paper in the Deck)  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | As the value is increased, the machine keeps pickup operation until paper runs out so productivity may be decreased.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 5<br>0: Maximum paper level, ... 5: Minimum paper level   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |

## ■ IMG-RDR

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; IMG-RDR

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>DF-BLINE</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>ON/OFF of dust dtct in DADF stream read</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set ON/OFF of dust detection in DADF stream reading mode (measures for black line).  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When black line occurs due to dust on the Platen Roller   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | When 1 is set, black line is resolved, but sharpness of image edge is decreased.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>DFDST-L1</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj img crct level: stream read, front</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set whether to perform image correction between originals in the Scanner Unit (for front side) at stream reading based on the result of dust detection. Set one of 1 to 255 when black lines appear. Dust detection is performed and image is corrected as needed. Set 0 if a fine image portion is unclear as a result of dust detection correction control. In that case, dust detection is not performed. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When black line occurs due to dust<br>- Upon user's request   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - If the value is too large, a fine image portion may be unclear. If the value is too small, black lines may appear on the image.<br>- When setting DFDST-L2 to "0", DFDST-L1 will also be "0" automatically (image correction is not performed).<br>- When setting DFDST-L1 to "0", DFDST-L2 will also be "0" automatically (dust detection is not performed).   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 255<br>0: OFF, 1 to 255: ON  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 170   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-RDR> DFDST-L2   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Black lines may appear on the image if there is dust. With dust detection correction control, the image is corrected to prevent black lines once dust is detected.  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; IMG-RDR

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>DFDST-L2</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj dust dtct level: stream read, front</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To adjust dust detection level for dust avoidance control that is executed in the Scanner Unit (for front side) at start of the first stream reading after power-on.<br>Decrease the value in the case of frequent display of cleaning instruction at the time of dust detection. As the value is smaller, dust is less likely to be detected. When 0 is set, the cleaning instruction is not displayed.<br>Increase the value when black lines appear. As the value is larger, the small dust is more likely to be detected. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When black line occurs due to dust<br>- Upon user's request   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - If the value is too large, the cleaning instruction screen may appear frequently because even fine dust that will not appear on the image may be detected.<br>- When setting DFDST-L2 to "0", DFDST-L1 will also be "0" automatically (image correction is not performed).<br>- When setting DFDST-L1 to "0", DFDST-L2 will also be "0" automatically (dust detection is not performed).  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 255<br>0: OFF, 1 to 255: ON  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 170   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-RDR> DFDST-L1   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Black lines may appear on the image if there is dust. With dust detection correction control, the image is corrected to prevent black lines once dust is detected.  |
| <b>ABC-MODE</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj sface digital ABC bckgd dens reduct</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To adjust the background density reduction setting level of front side digital ABC (Auto Background Control) at B&W mode.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -1 to 4<br>-1: Setting of the direction which the background reduction is less (For photo original and complex form original)<br>0: Default<br>1 to 3: Setting of the direction which the background reduction is more<br>4: Background density reduction according to the density in the 5 mm portion of the image leading edge  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Auto Background Control: A control to make the background color of the original close to white with the image processing when reading the image on front side with the Scanner Unit (paper front).  |
| <b>ABC-MD2</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj back digital ABC bckgd dens reduct</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To adjust the background density reduction setting level of back side digital ABC (Auto Background Control) at B&W mode.  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -1 to 4<br>-1: Setting of the direction which the background reduction is less (For photo original and complex form original)<br>0: Default<br>1 to 3: Setting of the direction which the background reduction is more<br>4: Background density reduction according to the density in the 5 mm portion of the image leading edge  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Auto Background Control: A control to make the background color of the original close to white with the image processing when reading the image on back side with the Scanner Unit (paper back).  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; IMG-RDR

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>DF2DSTL1</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>ON/OFF img crct: stream, back, 1-path</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to perform image correction between originals in the Scanner Unit (for back side) at stream reading with DADF (1-path model) based on the result of dust detection.<br>Set one of 1 to 255 when black lines appear. Dust detection is performed and image is corrected as needed.<br>Set 0 if a fine image portion is unclear as a result of dust detection correction control. In that case, dust detection is not performed.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When black line occurs due to dust<br>- Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - If the value is too large, a fine image portion may be unclear. On the contrary, if the value is too small, black lines may appear on the image.<br>- When setting DF2DSTL2 to "0", DF2DSTL1 will also be "0" automatically (image correction is not performed).<br>- When setting DF2DSTL1 to "0", DF2DSTL2 will also be "0" automatically (dust detection is not performed).   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 255<br>0: OFF, 1 to 255: ON   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 170  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Black lines may appear on the image if there is dust. With dust detection correction control, the image is corrected to prevent black lines once dust is detected.   |   |
| <b>DF2DSTL2</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj dust dtct level:stream, back, 1-path</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To adjust dust detection level for dust avoidance control that is executed in the Scanner Unit (for back side) at the first stream reading with DADF (1-path model) after power-on.<br>Decrease the value in the case of frequent display of cleaning instruction at the time of dust detection. As the value is smaller, dust is less likely to be detected. When 0 is set, the cleaning instruction is not displayed.<br>Increase the value when black lines appear. As the value is larger, the small dust is more likely to be detected. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When black line occurs due to dust<br>- Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | If the value is too large, the cleaning instruction screen may appear frequently because even fine dust that will not appear on the image may be detected.<br>- When setting DF2DSTL2 to "0", DF2DSTL1 will also be "0" automatically (image correction is not performed).<br>- When setting DF2DSTL1 to "0", DF2DSTL2 will also be "0" automatically (dust detection is not performed).   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 255<br>0: OFF, 1 to 255: ON   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 170  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Black lines may appear on the image if there is dust. With dust detection correction control, the image is corrected to prevent black lines once dust is detected.   |   |

## ■ IMG-MCON

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > OPTION (Specification setting mode) > IMG-MCON

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>PASCAL</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set of auto gradation adjustment data</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the gradation adjustment data that is used at image formation.<br>When 0 is set, the initial LUT is used.<br>When 1 is set, the gradation adjustment data gamma LUT that is generated by auto gradation adjustment (full/quick adjustment) control is used. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When PASCAL-related failure occurs/when identifying the cause of PASCAL-related failure  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 3<br>0: Initial LUT, 1: Auto gradation adjustment data, 2 to 3: Not used  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1  |  |
| <b>SHARP</b>                     | <b>2</b>   | <b>Setting of sharpness level of image</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the setting level (center value) of sharpness of image.<br>As the value is increased, the image tends to be sharp, and as the value is decreased, image tends to be soft.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 1 to 5   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 3  |  |
| <b>DRM-H-SW</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>ON/OFF of Drum Heater</b>                   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set ON/OFF control of the Drum Heater at power-off/at sleep.  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 2<br>0: ON/OFF depending on the environment condition, 1: ON, 2: OFF  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>SCR-SLCT</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Halftone process in Photo Printout mode</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set halftone process (error diffusion, 2 screen types) in Photo Printout mode when making a copy.<br>When moire occurs on a copy image, set 0 (suitable for character reproduction). When halftone dots are rough, set 2.                                       |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When moire image or rough dots occurs on copy image  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 2<br>0: Error diffusion, 1: Low screen ruling, 2: High screen ruling  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1  |  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Function Settings> Copy> Photo Printout Mode   |  |
| <b>TMC-SLCT</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Setting of error diffusion coefficient</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set coefficient to be used for error diffusion process.<br>Specify according to the level of granularity and dot stability.   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 2<br>0: Small granularity/low dot stability<br>1: Small granularity/low dot stability (color mode), Large granularity/high dot stability (B&W mode)<br>2: Large granularity/high dot stability  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 2  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; IMG-MCON

|                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>VP-ART</b>                 | <b>2</b>  | <b>Setting of line art processing</b>            |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To set outline processing for line art on scalable PDF.</p> <p>In the outline processing, a binary image outline is extracted in the field which is recognized as line art, and is converted into vector data.</p> <p>Specify whether to convert the binary image outline into vector data or to recognize it as one line (as a thin line). For the thin line, the line width can be specified.</p> <p>Change this value when you want to obtain an output of a wide-width line as one line rather than as an outline (when you want to prioritize edit operation as a line rather than image quality).</p>      |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1   |  |
| <b>VP-TXT</b>                 | <b>2</b>  | <b>Setting of character vectorization</b>        |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To set vector conversion processing for text on scalable PDF.</p> <p>In the vector conversion processing, a binary image outline is extracted in the field which is recognized as text, and is converted into vector data.</p> <p>In regular vector conversion, function approximation is not used for small text because the image quality is not changed.</p> <p>When the value is changed, function approximation processing is executed for small text, which realizes smooth text although the image quality is changed.</p> <p>Change this value when you want to prioritize smoothness in small text.</p> |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1   |  |
| <b>C-PDL-T</b>                | <b>2</b>  | <b>Setting of PDL gradation reference</b>        |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To set whether gradation or density to be prioritized as the gradation reference for PDL.</p> <p>With priority on gradation (% of halftone dots), gradation is matched with original on the shadow area although the maximum density decreases. With priority on density, density is always matched with original.</p>   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>0 to 1</p> <p>0: Priority on gradation (% of halftone dots), 1: Priority on density</p>  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Abbreviation of CAL_PDL_Target  |  |
| <b>C-S-C-D</b>                | <b>2</b>  | <b>High density end edge crrect ON/OFF: copy</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To set ON/OFF of high density trailing edge correction function at copy.</p> <p>With CAL of COPY, high density trailing edge correction function is ON in normal operation; however, set OFF as needed.</p>  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>ON: When reducing jagged line and jagged outline of text</p> <p>OFF: When matching density with original on high density area, or when prioritizing density and gradation</p>  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>0 to 1</p> <p>0: OFF, 1: ON</p>  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Abbreviation of CAL_Shadow_COPY_Density. When adjusting the input signal 255 to low in the case that the density of solid area is too high, jaggy (jagged effect of halftone) may occur to text, etc. By entering the input signal 255 as solid, occurrence of jaggy can be prevented.  |  |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; IMG-MCON

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>WDREDUCT</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Setting of white dots reduction mode</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the white dots reduction mode.<br>When 1 is set, white dots become less significant by enlarging black dots by thin line correction.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When white dots are significant  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-MCON> VDADDCNT, HDADDCNT, LIN-OFST   |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Function Settings> Printer> Printer Settings> Custom Settings> Print Quality> Line Refinement, Horizontal Line Refinement, Vertical Line Refinement  |   |
| <b>VDADDCNT</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Horz added dot amnt at white dots reduct</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the amount of dots added to side at white dots reduction mode.<br>As the greater value is set, the size of white dot gets smaller.<br>When WDREDUCT is 1, this setting is enabled.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When adjusting the level of white dots reduction mode  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 4   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-MCON> WDREDUCT   |   |
| <b>HDADDCNT</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Vert added dot amnt at white dots reduct</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the amount of dots added to upside at white dots reduction mode.<br>As the greater value is set, the size of white dot gets smaller.<br>When WDREDUCT is 1, this setting is enabled.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When adjusting the level of white dots reduction mode  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 4   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-MCON> WDREDUCT   |   |
| <b>LIN-OFST</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set special paper added dot amnt offset</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the offset amount of dots added to vertical/horizontal direction when lines on special paper are thinner than those on plain paper.<br>When printing special paper, compared to plain paper, the amount of dots specified with this item is added.<br>As the value is larger, lines become thicker.<br>When WDREDUCT is 0, this setting is enabled. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the line width of special paper is thinner than the one of plain paper  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 4   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-MCON> WDREDUCT   |   |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; IMG-MCON

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>DOTSCT</b>                 | <b>2</b>  | <b>Set high dens area white dot reduct mode</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the mode to reduce white dots occur in the high density area with 600 dpi.<br>Set 2 when white dots occur at regular intervals in the high density area.<br>Set 0 when degree of gradation in the high density area is decreased due to parts life or environment. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When white dots occur at regular intervals in the high density area<br>- When the degree of gradation is decreased because colors in the high density area become darker  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - It is enabled only for PDL job.<br>- When 0 is set, white dots may be significant.<br>- When 2 is set, gradation in the high density area may become not noticeable.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 2<br>0: OFF, 1: ON (Weak), 2: ON (Strong)  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1   |   |

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>SP-GRAD</b>                | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of special gradation processing</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to make the density gradation characteristics of halftone the same as that of conventional machines. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When making the density gradation characteristic the same as that of conventional machines                          |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: ON, 1: OFF   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1   |   |

|                |          |                    |
|----------------|----------|--------------------|
| <b>BIN-SEL</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b> |
|----------------|----------|--------------------|

## ■ IMG-LSR

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; IMG-LSR

|                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>LAPC-SW</b>                | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of ini rotn/last rotn APC crct</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set ON/OFF of laser APC correction executed at initial rotation and last rotation.       |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1   |  |

|                               |  |                             |
|-------------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| <b>2D-SHADE</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>ON/OFF of 2D shading</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Note: Serial numbers 27Q01503, 27P04390 or later, and xxx50000 or later are not supported.<br>To set ON/OFF of 2D shading. |                             |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When uneven image occurs<br>- When low edge density occurs   |                             |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.                                |                             |
| <b>Caution</b>                | When ON is set, the Drum Heater is turned ON at power-off and during sleep so power consumption is increased.              |                             |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 2<br>0: OFF, 1: ON (VD), 2: ON (VL)   |                             |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |                             |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> DISPLAY> 2D-SHADE> 2D-STS  |                             |

## ■ IMG-DEV

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > OPTION (Specification setting mode) > IMG-DEV

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>DRM-IDL</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Set first idle rotn time in NL Ev</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the duration of idle rotation to be performed first time for the day in an NL (normal temperature/low humidity) environment.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When image density for the first time of the day is low  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 20<br>0: OFF, 1: 15 sec, 2: 45 sec, ..., 19: 555 sec, 20: 585 sec   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sec  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 1  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-DEV> DRM-IDL2, DRM-IDL3  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 30   |
| <b>DV-RT-LG</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Set Developing Assembly idle rotn time</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the duration of idle rotation of the Developing Assembly by COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> DV-RT.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the duration is increased by 1 minute.<br>+: Increase<br>-: Decrease  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When an image failure is not alleviated by executing idle rotation   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | If the duration is long, deterioration of developer or toner scattering might occur.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 1 to 20  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | min  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 5  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> DV-RT  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>ADJ-VPPN</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Adjustment of developing bias Vpp</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To adjust Vpp of the developing AC bias.<br>The initial value is 1.5 kV, and as the value is decreased by 1, Vpp is decreased by 0.1 kV (density and fogging increase).<br>Decrease the value when fogging or bias leak occurs, and increase the value when the density is low or white spots occur. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When fogging, bias leak, low density, or white spots occur   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | -2 to 4  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | V  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 100  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; IMG-DEV

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>DRM-IDL2</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set first idle rotn time in NN Ev</b>       |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the duration of idle rotation to be performed first time for the day in an NN (normal temperature/normal humidity) environment.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When image density for the first time of the day is low  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 20<br>0: OFF, 1: 15 sec, 2: 45 sec, ..., 19: 555 sec, 20: 585 sec   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | sec  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-DEV> DRM-IDL, DRM-IDL3   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 30   |  |
| <b>ATM</b>                       | <b>2</b>   | <b>Set of highland ev voltg reduction mode</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the highland environment voltage reduction mode in the case that leak occurs at a high latitude.<br>When 1 is set, high voltage settings for the Primary Charging Assembly, Pre-transfer Charging Assembly and developing bias are decreased so that leak can be prevented.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When leak occurs at high latitude  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Normal, 1: Voltage reduction mode   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>LWDTY-SW</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>ON/OFF of low duty ejection</b>             |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set ON/OFF of low duty ejection control.<br>When 1 is set, developer is ejected at the time of last rotation/during a job.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request (Reduction of toner consumption)   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Be sure to get approval from the user by telling possibility that the image density may be lowered due to deterioration of developer when setting 0.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-DEV> LWDTYADJ  |  |
| <b>LWDTYADJ</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set low duty ejection threshold value</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set offset of image density which becomes the threshold value for the low duty ejection control. The threshold value which becomes a reference differs depending on the environment (temperature and humidity).<br>When a positive value is entered, the interval of low duty ejection control becomes shorter. Lowering of image density can be prevented, but replacement timing of the Waste Toner Container becomes early due to the increase of toner consumption. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When density is lowered at the time of continuous output of low duty image   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | %  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-DEV> LWDTY-SW  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; IMG-DEV

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>BB-CNT</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set Bk band output intvl: Cleaning Blade</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the paper interval to output black band for preventing flip of the Cleaning Blade.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the interval (the number of sheets) is changed by 100 sheets.<br>When a negative value is entered, the interval to output black band becomes shorter. The possibility that the Cleaning Blade may be flipped is decreased, but replacement timing of the Waste Toner Container becomes early due to the increase of toner consumption.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When flip of the Cleaning Blade occurs   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -15 to 15  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | sheet  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 100  |   |
| <b>PRI-SHUT</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set Pry/Pre-trn Chg Shutter close timing</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the time from when the Photosensitive Drum stops to when the Primary/Pre-transfer Charging Shutter is closed.<br>With the Primary/Pre-transfer Charging Shutter control, the Primary/Pre-transfer Charging Shutter is closed after 255 to 300 minutes* from the stop of the Photosensitive Drum to prevent image smear due to nitrogen oxide.<br>* It differs according to the environment (moisture content).<br>Decrease the value to close the shutter earlier when image smear occurs first time for the day.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the time is changed by 30 minutes.<br>Depending on the value, the shutter is closed before the machine shifts to sleep mode, so that the first copy time becomes longer for the time to open the shutter again (approx. 13 seconds).<br>As the value is reduced, the life of the Primary/Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Pad is shortened because cleaning of the Charging Wire is performed every time the shutter is closed. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When image smear occurs  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | - If the shutter is closed before the machine shifts to sleep mode, the first copy time becomes longer for the time to open it again.<br>- As the value is reduced, the life of the Primary/Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Pad is shortened.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -7 to 0  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | min  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 30   |   |
| <b>TBLTCLSW</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Setting of ETB cleaning timing</b>           |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the timing to execute ETB cleaning control.<br>When 1 or 2 is set, it is also executed at the time of the Charging Wire cleaning.<br>As the value is increased, the soiling of the back side of paper is decreased, but the life of the ETB is shortened and productivity is decreased.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the back side of paper is soiled  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | As the number of times of ETB cleaning is increased, the life of the ETB is shortened and productivity is decreased.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 2<br>0: OFF<br>1: At last rotation + At Charging Wire cleaning<br>2: At last rotation + At initial rotation + At Charging Wire cleaning   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-DEV> TBLTBIS+, TBLTBIS-, TBLTTMS   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; IMG-DEV

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>TBLTBIS+</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Setting of ETB cleaning bias (+)</b>        |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the transfer current value to apply cleaning bias(+) at the time of ETB cleaning.<br>As the value is increased, the soiling of the back side of paper is decreased, but the life of the ETB is shortened.<br>Compared with TBLTCLSW, productivity can be sustained, but the life of the ETB is shortened further. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the back side of paper is soiled  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | As the greater value is set, the life of the ETB is shortened.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-DEV> TBLTCLSW, TBLTBIS-, TBLTTMS   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 10   |  |
| <b>TBLTBIS-</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Setting of ETB cleaning bias (-)</b>        |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the transfer current value to apply cleaning bias (-) at the time of ETB cleaning.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the back side of paper is soiled  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 5   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | uA   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-DEV> TBLTCLSW, TBLTBISP, TBLTTMS   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 10   |  |
| <b>TBLTTMS</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set ETB cleaning bias application times</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the number of times to apply cleaning bias at the time of ETB cleaning.<br>Apply positive (+) and negative (-) cleaning bias alternately.<br>As the value is increased, the soiling of the back side of paper is decreased, but the life of the ETB is shortened and productivity is decreased.                   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the back side of paper is soiled  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | As the greater value is set, the life of the ETB is shortened and productivity is decreased.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 1 to 10  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | time   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 2  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-DEV> TBLTCLSW, TBLTBISP, TBLTBIS-  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; IMG-DEV

| <b>DRM-IDL3</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Set first idle rotn time in HH Ev</b>  |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the idle rotation time to be performed first time for the day in an HH (high temperature and high humidity) environment. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When image density for the first time of the day is low   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 20<br>0: OFF, 1: 45 sec, 2: 75 sec, ..., 19: 585 sec, 20: 615 sec  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sec   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 1   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-DEV> DRM-IDL, DRM-IDL2  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 30  |

## ■ IMG-FIX

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; IMG-FIX

| <b>FIX-CLN</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Set fixing cleaning execution interval</b>  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the number of sheets as the intervals to execute fixing cleaning.<br>By performing idle rotation of the Fixing Assembly for 5 seconds every time a specified number of sheets are fed, remove soil adhered on the Pressure Roller.<br>Set 1 when an image failure occurs. If it is not alleviated, set 2 or 3.<br>Because idle rotation is executed by interrupting an ongoing job, as the short execution interval is set, productivity decreases. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When an image failure due to the Pressure Roller occurs  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | As the short execution interval is set, productivity decreases.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 3<br>0: OFF, 1: 500 sheets, 2: 300 sheets, 3: 150 sheets  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>FIX-TEMP</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Set fixing/productivity: Heavy paper</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set priority between productivity and fixing by changing temperature at which down sequence is applied to Heavy paper.<br>When 2 is set, fixing has priority over productivity because the machine is likely to go into the down sequence.<br>When 0 is set, productivity has priority over fixing.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When changing priority between fixing and productivity for Heavy paper   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 2<br>0: Priority on productivity (-5 degC), 1: Normal, 2: Priority on fixing (+5 degC)  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | deg C  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 1  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 5  |
| <b>FSPD-S1</b>                   | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of fixing improvement mode</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to start the machine in fixing improvement mode.<br>When 1 to 4 is set, duration of warm-up is increased for the specified time to increase the temperature of the Fixing Assembly.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 4<br>0: 0 second, 1: 30 seconds, 2: 60 seconds, 3: 90 seconds, 4: 120 seconds   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; IMG-FIX

|                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>CBLTINVL</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Setting of Fixing Web Solenoid ON times</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set frequency to turn ON the Fixing Cleaning Web Drive Solenoid.<br>If an image failure occurs due to the soiled Pressure Roller, set 1.<br>If an image failure occurs due to the soiled Separation Claw, set 2.<br>If the life of Fixing Cleaning Web is shorter than the target (500,000 sheets) (in case of much take-up amount of web), set 3. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When an image failure due to the soiled Pressure Roller/Separation Claw occurs<br>- When the life of Fixing Cleaning Web is too short   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 3<br>0: Normal, 1: 1.5 times of normal *, 2: 0.5 times of normal, 3: 0.75 times of normal<br>*: Only for paper which length in feed direction is 236.0 mm or less or 364.0 mm or longer  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>TMP-TBL2</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set fixing control temp table: Thin</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the control temperature table of the Fixing Roller for 52 to 63g/m2 size paper.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When alleviating the curl   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | -5 to 2<br>-5 to -1: -5 deg C, 0: 0 deg C, 1 to 2: +5 deg C   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                   | deg C   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>TMP-TBL3</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set fixing control temp table</b>           |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the control temperature table of the Fixing Roller for 91 to 256g/m2 size paper.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When alleviating the curl   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | -5 to 2<br>-5 to -2: -10 deg C, -1: -5 deg C, 0: 0 deg C, 1 to 2: +5 deg C  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                   | deg C   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>TMP-TBL4</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set fixing control temp table: Bond</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the control temperature table of the Fixing Roller for bond paper.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When alleviating the curl   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | -5 to 2<br>-5 to -1: -5 deg C, 0 to 2: 0 deg C  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                   | deg C   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>RAG-CONT</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set fix smeared image ctrl mode level</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set level of the mode (skipping) to control smeared image caused by fixing area.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When a smeared image occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Set RAG-SW to 1 to 3 to enable skipping.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 3<br>0: No skipping, 1: Small skipping, 2: Medium skipping, 3: Large skipping  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-FIX> RAG-SW   |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; IMG-FIX

|                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>RAG-SW</b>                 | <b>1</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of fixing burst prevention mode</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set ON/OFF of fixing burst prevention mode (skipping) to prevent line burst.<br>Select "1: ON" in the case all horizontal lines are burst.<br>Set ON according to paper type in the case the degree of line burst differs depending on media.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When horizontal lines burst   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Set RAG-CONT to 1 to 3 to enable skipping.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-FIX> RAG-CONT   |  |
| <b>FIX-DWN</b>                | <b>2</b>  | <b>Set prdctvty reduct mode: small size</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the speed ratio in the case of reducing productivity when feeding small size paper.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When an image failure (crepe mark) occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | -3 to 0<br>-3: 40%, -2: 60%, -1: 80%, 0: 100%   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Small size paper: Paper width is 257 mm or less.  |  |
| <b>FIX-RT</b>                 | <b>2</b>  | <b>Set idle rotation time at last rotation</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the idle rotation time at last rotation executed after completion of job using paper which width is B4 (257 mm) or less.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When an image failure (crepe mark) occurs   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 3<br>0: No idle rotation, 1: 10 seconds, 2: 20 seconds, 3: 30 seconds  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>P-BETWN</b>                | <b>1</b>  | <b>Setting of paper interval: 2-sided mode</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the paper interval at 2-sided mode.<br>Use this item when uneven gloss occurs at intervals of the Fixing Roller circumference (126 mm) on 1st side of 2-sided print.<br>When 1 is set, 150 mm or less paper interval at 2-sided mode becomes 150 mm or more. Uneven gloss can be alleviated, but productivity decreases. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When uneven gloss occurs on 1st side of 2-sided print   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | When 1 is set, productivity decreases.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Normal, 1: Widening paper interval   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; IMG-FIX

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>FX-IMGLV</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Set img qity/prdctvty lvl:Qlty Prtty</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>To set image quality/productivity level when "Quality Priority" is set.</p> <p>When "Quality Priority" is selected in [Productivity/Image Quality Priority for Thin/Plain Paper], productivity may be extremely decreased to prevent occurrence of image with crepe mark.</p> <p>When 0 is set, image quality is slightly decreased compared with its of normal Quality Priority mode, but productivity improves (suitable for text document).</p> <p>When 1 is set, image quality is prioritized so image with crepe mark does not occur but productivity decreases (suitable for photo document).</p> <p>This setting is enabled when "Quality Priority" is set in [Settings/Registration].</p>   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request (Alleviation of image with crepe mark)   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Be sure to get approval from the user by telling that the productivity decreases to improve image quality.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Text document mode, 1: Photo document mode  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Function Settings> Common> Print Settings> Thin/Plain Paper Printing Priority Settings   |   |
| <b>FX-WNKL</b>                   | <b>2</b>   | <b>Setting of paper wrinkle prevention mode</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>To set paper wrinkle prevention mode.</p> <p>If the edge temperature of the Fixing Roller is lower than the center temperature, feeding speed at the center of a paper becomes faster than the speed at the edge so paper wrinkle occurs. Normally, when printing to paper larger than A3 or LDR size paper at the start of printing in a high humidity environment, control temperature is increased by performing idle rotation. Paper wrinkle which occurs at this time can be decreased, but first copy time becomes longer. In other cases, idle rotation is not performed.</p> <p>When paper wrinkle occurs with A3/LDR or larger size paper in a normal humidity/high humidity environment, set 2. If paper wrinkle is not alleviated with 2, set 3. (First copy time becomes longer.)</p> <p>When paper wrinkle occurs with B4 or larger size paper in all environments, set 4. If it is not alleviated with 4, set 5 or 6. (As the value is larger, first copy time becomes longer.)</p> |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When paper wrinkles occur</li> <li>- Upon user's request (shorten the first copy time)</li> </ul>   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | When 2 to 6 is set, the first copy time becomes longer.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 6<br>0: OFF, 1: Normal, 2: Level 1, 3: Level 2, 4: Level 3, 5: Level 4, 6: Level 5  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1  |   |
| <b>FIX-TMP4</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set fixing/productivity: Plain paper</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>To set priority between productivity and fixing by changing temperature at which down sequence is applied to plain paper (64 to 90g/m<sup>2</sup>).</p> <p>When a positive value is set, fixing has priority over productivity because the machine is likely to go into the down sequence.</p> <p>When a negative value is set, productivity has priority over fixing.</p>  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When fixing failure occurs on plain paper</li> <li>- When productivity is decreased due to down sequence</li> </ul>   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -2 to 2<br>-2: -6 deg C, -1: -3 deg C, 0: 0 deg C, 1: +3 deg C, 2: +6 deg C  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | deg C  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; IMG-FIX

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>WEB-LIFE</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set Fixing Web level alarm notice timing</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the timing to notify the Web absence alarm according to the time required for replacement of the Fixing Cleaning Web.<br>The maximum output number until the error message appears after the Fixing Cleaning Web absence alarm is 97875 sheets (on a A4 size conversion basis). If a large volume of papers is output after the appearance of the alarm message, the machine may stop due to an error before replacing the Web.<br>If 0 is set, an alarm is notified when the Fixing Cleaning Web Level Sensor detects "Web absence" as usual.<br>If the value is between 1 and 7, an alarm is notified when the Fixing Cleaning Web Drive Solenoid counter reaches the specified value.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the threshold of the counter is increased by 50,000 sheets (on a A4 size conversion basis). |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When changing the timing to notify the Web absence alarm according to the output status  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Depending on the setting value of COPIER> OPTION> IMG-FIX> CBLTINVL, the number of estimated prints to display an alarm differs.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 7<br>0: Detection by the sensor, 1: Count of 500,000 sheets (on a A4 size conversion basis), 2: 550,000 sheets, 3: 600,000 sheets, 4: 650,000 sheets, 5: 700,000 sheets, 6: 750,000 sheets, 7: 800,000 sheets   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> IMG-FIX> CBLTINVL  |   |

## ■ CUSTOM

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; CUSTOM

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>TEMP-TBL</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set fixing control temp table: Plain</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the control temperature table of the Fixing Roller for 64 to 90 g/m2 size paper.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When alleviating the curl   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | -5 to 2<br>-5 to -1: -5 deg C, 0: 0 deg C, 1 to 2: +5 deg C   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                   | deg C   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>CCD-TYPE</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Setting of CCD Unit type</b>             |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the CCD Unit type installed in the Reader to the backup area in the controller. Controller switches the image processing table according to the setting value. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When changing the CCD Unit type   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Initial type, 1: Improved type   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | If the CCD Unit is changed after factory shipment, the Reader cannot identify the type.   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; CUSTOM

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>SC-L-CNT</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set large paper judgment reference at scan</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the judgment reference of the scan counter as to which to use B4 or LTR to determine large size.<br>The threshold is determined by the combination with the setting of B4-L-CNT.<br>SC-L-CNT=0, B4-L-CNT=0: paper exceeding B4 is determined as large size, paper with B4 or smaller is determined as small size.<br>SC-L-CNT=0, B4-L-CNT=1: paper with B4 or larger is determined as large size, paper smaller than B4 is determined as small size. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | As needed   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: B4 size, 1: LTR size   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> USER> B4-L-CNT  |   |
| <b>FACT-DEF</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Set batch chng of factory setting values</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the batch change of factory setting values for customization.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>MAILYEAR</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Set auto add to e-mail Subject/File name</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to add date, time and split number automatically to the end of a character string of e-mail Subject/File name.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Following the current setting, 1: Adding   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>SCANTYPE</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Switching of DADF + Reader type</b>            |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To switch the type of DADF + Reader to a different type.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | At installation   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: DADF (reverse model) + Reader, 1: DADF (1-path model) + Reader   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1   |   |
| <b>PDLEVCT1</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Set event skipping at continuous PDL job</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set event skipping at continuous PDL job.<br>During continuous operation, processing performance may be decreased due to other events generated by the event in operation. In this case, decrease of processing performance can be prevented by skipping the amount of event.<br>Processing performance: No event skipping < Subject of skipping 1   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: No event skipping, 1: Subject of skipping 1  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; CUSTOM

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>ABK-TOOL</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Allow access from address book mntc tool</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set whether to accept import from the address book maintenance tool. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When executing import from the address book maintenance tool  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Address book maintenance tool: Tool provided from CMJ.  |
| <b>DEV-SP1</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Device special settings 1</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute the device special settings 1.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Change the setting value in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00000000 to 11111111  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 00000000  |
| <b>DEV-SP2</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Device special settings 2</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute the device special settings 2.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Change the setting value in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00000000 to 11111111  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 00000000  |
| <b>DEV-SP3</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Device special settings 3</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute the device special settings 3.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Change the setting value in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00000000 to 11111111  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 00000000  |
| <b>DEV-SP4</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Device special settings 4</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute the device special settings 4.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Change the setting value in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00000000 to 11111111  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 00000000  |
| <b>DEV-SP5</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Device special settings 5</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute the device special settings 5.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Change the setting value in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00000000 to 11111111  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 00000000  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; CUSTOM

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>DEV-SP6</b>                | <b>2</b>  | <b>Device special settings 6</b>                |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To execute the device special settings 6.   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Change the setting value in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00000000 to 11111111  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 00000000  |   |
| <b>DEV-SP7</b>                | <b>2</b>  | <b>Device special settings 7</b>                |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To execute the device special settings 7.   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Change the setting value in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00000000 to 11111111  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 00000000  |   |
| <b>DEV-SP8</b>                | <b>2</b>  | <b>Device special settings 8</b>                |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To execute the device special settings 8.   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Change the setting value in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 00000000 to 11111111  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 00000000  |   |
| <b>AC-FREQ</b>                | <b>2</b>  | <b>Setting of frequency of AC power</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Although power frequency is judged for power control with the machine, it might be judged incorrectly depending on power circumstance at the installation location.<br>At left side column, the power frequency (50 Hz/60 Hz) which the DC Controller judged at power-on is displayed.<br>In the case that the power frequency is not matched with the one at the installation location, set the AC power frequency at right side column. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When the breaker is frequently tripped during operation   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Select the right side column.<br>2) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | Left side: 1 to 2<br>1: 50 Hz, 2: 60 Hz<br>Right side: 0 to 2<br>0: Judged frequency is used, 1: 50 Hz, 2: 60 Hz  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>DFEJCLED</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of DADF Original Output Indicator</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to light up the Original Output Indicator of the DADF.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request (The Original Output Indicator is too bright.)  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: ON, 1: OFF   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; CUSTOM

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>RDEV-SP1</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>RCON device special settings 1</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute the device special setting.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | For customization   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Use this mode only when specific instructions are given.                                    |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00000000 to 11111111  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>RDEV-SP2</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>RCON device special settings 2</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute the device special setting.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | For customization   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Use this mode only when specific instructions are given.                                    |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00000000 to 11111111  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>RDEV-SP3</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>RCON device special settings 3</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute the device special setting.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | For customization   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Use this mode only when specific instructions are given.                                    |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00000000 to 11111111  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>RDEV-SP4</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>RCON device special settings 4</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute the device special setting.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | For customization   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Use this mode only when specific instructions are given.                                    |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00000000 to 11111111  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>RDEV-SP5</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>RCON device special settings 5</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute the device special setting.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | For customization   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Use this mode only when specific instructions are given.                                    |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00000000 to 11111111  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; CUSTOM

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>RDEV-SP6</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>RCON device special settings 6</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute the device special setting.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | For customization   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Use this mode only when specific instructions are given.                                    |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00000000 to 11111111  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>RDEV-SP7</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>RCON device special settings 7</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute the device special setting.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | For customization   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Use this mode only when specific instructions are given.                                    |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00000000 to 11111111  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>RDEV-SP8</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>RCON device special settings 8</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute the device special setting.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | For customization   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Use this mode only when specific instructions are given.                                    |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 00000000 to 11111111  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>PAP-TYPE</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>[For customization]</b>  |
| <b>DCM-EXCL</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>[For customization]</b>  |
| <b>FPOT-MD</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>[For customization]</b>  |
| <b>MEDIA-EX</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>[For customization]</b>  |

## ■ USER

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>COPY-LIM</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Setting of upper limit for copy</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the upper limit value for copy.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1 to 9999   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 9999  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>SLEEP</b>                     | <b>1</b> | <b>Setting of auto sleep function</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set ON/OFF of auto sleep function.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | Upon user's request   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.                                   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 1   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Preferences> Timer/Energy Settings> Auto Sleep Time   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | The time to shift to the sleep mode can be set in Settings/Registration> Preferences> Timer/Energy Settings> Auto Sleep Time. |
| <b>SIZE-DET</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>ON/OFF of original size detect function</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set ON/OFF of original size detection function.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | Upon user's request (The LED is too bright, etc.)   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.                                   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 1   |
| <b>COUNTER1</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Display of software counter 1</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display counter type for software counter 1 on the Counter Check screen.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | Upon user/dealer's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Display only. No change is available.   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | It differs according to the location.   |
| <b>COUNTER2</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Setting of software counter 2</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set counter type for software counter 2 on the Counter Check screen.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | Upon user/dealer's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.                                   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 999<br>0: No registration  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | It differs according to the location.   |
| <b>COUNTER3</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Setting of software counter 3</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set counter type for software counter 3 on the Counter Check screen.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | Upon user/dealer's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.                                   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 999<br>0: No registration  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | It differs according to the location.   |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                                  |   |  |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>COUNTER4</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Setting of software counter 4</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set counter type for software counter 4 on the Counter Check screen.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user/dealer's request  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 999<br>0: No registration  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | It differs according to the location.   |  |
| <b>COUNTER5</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Setting of software counter 5</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set counter type for software counter 5 on the Counter Check screen.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user/dealer's request  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 999<br>0: No registration  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |  |
| <b>COUNTER6</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Setting of software counter 6</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set counter type for software counter 6 on the Counter Check screen.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user/dealer's request  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 999<br>0: No registration  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |  |
| <b>DATE-DSP</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>Setting of data/time display format</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set date/time display format according to the country or region.<br>After the display format is set with this mode, the order of date is reflected to the followings:<br>Preferences > Timer/Energy Settings > Date/Time Settings, and report output. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 2<br>0: YYMM/DD, 1: DD/MYY, 2: MM/DD/YY  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | It differs according to the location.   |  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Preferences> Timer/Energy Settings> Date/Time Settings  |  |
| <b>MB-CCV</b>                    | <b>2</b>  | <b>Control card usage limit for Mail Box</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To restrict use of control card for Mail Box.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Unlimited, 1: Limited  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1   |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>CONTROL</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Charge setting of PDL job</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set charge count transmission of PDL job to the connecting charging management device (Coin Manager or non-Canon-made control card). |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: No charge, 1: Charge  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> OPTION> ACC> COIN  |
| <b>B4-L-CNT</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Count setting of B4 size</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set B4 count with software counter 1 to 8 as to whether B4 is counted as large size or small size.<br>Selecting 1 counts B4 or larger size paper as large size while paper smaller than B4 size as small size.                            |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Small size, 1: Large size   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> OPTION> CUSTOM> SC-L-CNT   |
| <b>MF-LG-ST</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>ON/OFF of long original mode display</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to display or hide the [Long Original] button.<br>When 1 is set, [Long Original] button is displayed in Copy > Options screen and the long strip paper becomes available.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | Upon user's request (use of long strip original or long strip paper)   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Copy> Options  |
| <b>CNT-DISP</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Display/hide of serial No.</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to display or hide the serial No. on the Counter Check screen.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When setting to display/hide serial No. on the Counter Check screen.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>PH-D-SEL</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Set dither matrix at screen processing</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the screen dither matrix to be used for halftoning processing at the time of copy output, B&W Inbox scan output and B&W SEND output.<br>When moire occurs frequently, set to "0: 134 lines".<br>When the setting is changed, the number of PG lines to be output at PASCAL control is also changed. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When moire frequently occurs at the time of copy output, B&W Inbox scan output and B&W SEND output. Especially when moire frequently occurs in the halftone density area of photo and image gradation areas  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: 134 lines, 1: 141 lines   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> USER> PH-D-SL2   |   |
| <b>COPY-JOB</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Setting of copy job reservation</b>          |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set to enable/disable copy job reservation when the Card Reader/Coin Manager is used.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Enabled, 1: Disabled  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>OP-SZ-DT</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Orgnl size dtct ON/OFF at copyboard open</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set ON/OFF of original size detection while the Copyboard is opened.<br>When "0: OFF" is set, enter original size manually from the Control Panel.<br>When "1: ON" is set, original size is detected automatically.   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>NW-SCAN</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Setting of network scan function usage</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set to enable/disable use of network scan function.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - Do not change this mode in Japan.<br>- For PS/PCL machines for overseas (outside Japan), fix the setting value as "1: Enabled". For others, permit the use.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>JOB-INVL</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Job intvl setting at interruption copy</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set output interval between jobs at the time of interruption copy.<br>Sorting is difficult after interruption copy because of the continuous output of the next job. Paper interval becomes longer when starting pickup for the next job after the last sheet of the previous job is delivered. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 2<br>0: Continuous output of the interruption copy and the next job<br>1: Starting pickup for the next job after the interruption copy is delivered all.<br>2: Starting pickup for the next job after the previous job is delivered all. (For all jobs)                                       |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>TAB-ROT</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set of landscape img rotn at PDL:tab ppr</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to rotate landscape image by 180 degrees when PDL print is made on tab paper. When 1 is set, image is rotated.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Not rotated, 1: Rotated   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>PR-PSESW</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>ON/OFF Pause All Print Jobs button dsp</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to display [Pause All Print Jobs] button on the Status Monitor/Cancel screen.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - Upon user's request<br>- When promptly stopping the print job in operation or under reservation  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1  |   |
| <b>IDPRN-SW</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Charge target job set of dept mngm cntr</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set the job type that advances the department management counter.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0:<br>PRINT category: BoxPrint, ReportPrint, PDLPrint<br>COPY category: COPY<br>1:<br>PRINT category: ReportPrint, PDLPrint<br>COPY category: COPY, BoxPrint   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>PCL-COPY</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Set of PCL COPIES command control method</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the binder control method of COPIES command with PCL.<br>Select whether to use the control method of Canon-made PCL or use the same control method of non-Canon-made PCL.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 65535<br>0: Control method of Canon-made PCL (following the value of COPIES command that is specified for each page to control on a page basis)<br>1: Control method of non-Canon-made PCL (handling the value of COPIES command, which is specified for page 1 at the time of Collate mode, as bind figure while the value of COPIES command for the next page or later is invalid. Same control applies as Canon-made PCL at the time of non-sorted mode)<br>2 to 65535: For future use  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>CNT-SW</b>                 | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set default dspl items on charge counter</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set default display items of the charge counter on the Counter Check screen.<br>For details of each type, refer to the Service Manual.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Do not use this mode overseas (outside Japan).  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 2<br>Typical combinations of locations are shown below. For other combinations, refer to the Service Manual.<br>For Japan<br>0: Counter 1 - Total 1: 101<br>1: Counter 1 - Total 2: 102, Counter 2 - Copy (Total 2): 202, Counter 3 - Total A2: 127<br>2: Not used<br>For UL<br>0: Counter 1 - Total 1: 101, Counter 2 - Total (Large): 103, Counter 3 - Copy (Total 1): 201, Counter 4 - Copy (Large): 203<br>1: Counter 1 - Total 2: 102, Counter 2 - Copy (Total 2): 202<br>2: Not used |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>TAB-ACC</b>                | <b>1</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of auto cst change for tab ppr</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set to enable/disable auto cassette change when tab paper runs out.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Be sure to instruct the user to thoroughly comply the following:<br>- Use tab paper with the same number of tabs.<br>- Set tab paper.<br>Be sure to comply the above; otherwise, proper print is not available and it can cause soil inside the machine because of toner.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>BCNT-AST</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Set of box print charge target job</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set the job type that advances the count in box print with NE Controller (ASSIST).  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When switching the job type that is subject to counting of the box print with NE Controller  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: PDL job, 1: Copy job  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>PRJOB-CP</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Set count TX at RX/report print</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set to enable/disable a page-basis count pulse transmission to the charging management device at the time of reception print or report print.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: No transmission, 1: Transmission  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Charging management device: Coin Manager, Non-Canon-made control card  |
| <b>DOC-REM</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Display/hide of original removal message</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set whether to display or hide the message to remove original when scanning with DADF without opening/closing DADF after scanning with the Copyboard.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>DPT-ID-7</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Password entry set at dept ID reg/auth</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set whether to require a password entry at the time of registration/authentication of department ID.<br>With the setting to require entry, entry of 7-digit password is required as well as entry of department ID. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Department ID only, 1: 7-digit (password) entry   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>RUI-RJT</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Connct set at invalid auth from remoteUI</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set to disconnect HTTP port when the machine receives invalid authentication from remote UI 3 times.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Continued connection, 1: Disconnected   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>FREG-SW</b>                   | <b>2</b>   | <b>ON/OFF MEAP counter free reg area dspl</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display or hide the free register area of MEAP counter for SEND  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | At trouble analysis  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Take necessary action in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | Individual count-up (counter advance) of MEAP application is available in the free register area of MEAP counter.  |   |
| <b>IFAX-SZL</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Set of I-Fax transmission size limit</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set for restricting data size at the time of I-Fax transmission that does not go through the server. With the setting to restrict the data size, it is to be #830 error in the case of sending data that exceeds the upper limit value.<br>In the case that the data goes through the server, the size of transmission data is always restricted. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Limited, 1: Not limited (Restriction applies when data goes through the server.)  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1  |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Function Settings> Send> E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> Maximum Data Size for Sending  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | Set the upper limit value for transmission data size in Settings/Registration menu.  |   |
| <b>IFAX-PGD</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>Set page split TX at IFax Simple mode TX</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to perform split-data transmission on a page basis in the case that the transmission size in I-Fax Simple mode exceeds the upper limit value.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | In the case to enable split-data transmission, be sure to get approval from the user by explaining the following:<br>- No guarantee for page order on the reception side<br>- There is a possibility of interruption of other received jobs between pages.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Function Settings> Send> E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> Maximum Data Size for Sending  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | Set the upper limit value for transmission data size in Settings/Registration menu.  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>MEAPSAFE</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Setting of MEAP safe mode</b>             |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set safe mode for MEAP platform. MPSF is displayed on the Control Panel in safe mode. In safe mode, MEAP application is stopped while just the system application, which starts with initial state, is activated. Logs for cause analysis of MEAP failure can be obtained. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Perform system recovery processing when MEAP platform fails to be activated due to resource confliction between MEAP applications, service registration or use order.   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Normal mode, 1: Safe mode  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>AFN-PSWD</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Setting of Set/Reg menu access limit</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set restriction on accessing Settings/Registration menu by entering password. With the setting to enable this mode, password entry of system administrator is required after pressing Settings/Registration key.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Password is not required, 1: Password is required  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>PTJAM-RC</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Auto reprint setting at PDL print jam</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set to automatically restart printing after jam recovery that occurs with PDL print.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Not automatically reprinted, 1: Automatically reprinted  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1   |  |
| <b>PDL-NCSW</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Card mngm setting for PDL print job</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set to make PDL print job to be subject to card management by the Card Reader. With the setting to enable this mode, PDL print is available only when the card ID of the card inserted to the Card Reader matches the department ID.                                       |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: PDL print is available with no card inserted.<br>1: PDL print is available only when the card ID matches the department ID in the case that the card is inserted.  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>PS-MODE</b>                | <b>2</b>  | <b>Setting of PS print line drawing</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the image processing at PS print.<br>Set 8 when line width differs depending on the drawing position although the same line width is set.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Use case When right and left ruled lines are different in width   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 65535<br>0 to 7: Spare<br>8: Strokeadjustment is enabled.<br>9 to 65535: Spare   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>CNCT-RLZ</b>               | <b>2</b>  | <b>Setting of connection serialize function</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Connection serialize is a function to assure job grouping function of imageWARE Output Manager Select Edition V1.0.<br>The setting to enable this mode can avoid job rearrangement because the machine does not receive job data from other connection until it completes job data reception from the current connection. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Connection: Connection to be established through network between multiple hosts (PC, etc).<br>Job grouping function: A function of imageWARE Output Manager Select Edition V1.0. This is to prevent job interruption from other PC by group job (sending multiple jobs in 1 session at job transmission).                 |   |
| <b>JA-FUNC</b>                | <b>2</b>  | <b>Display of job archive function ON/OFF</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display ON/OFF of job archive function.<br>Make the setting with the MEAP program which supports job archiving.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When using the job archive function   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Setting cannot be made with this item.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>JA-JOB</b>                 | <b>2</b>  | <b>Display of job archive target job</b>        |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the job type subject to job archive.<br>When the job archive function is ON, archive operation is executed when executing the target job.<br>Make the setting with the MEAP program which supports job archiving.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When using the job archive function   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Setting cannot be made with this item.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0: N/A, 3: Limited to FAX/IFAX, 0xFFFFFFFF: All jobs  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> USER> JA-FUNC   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>JA-RESTR</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Display of job archive restriction items</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display restriction items for job archive specification.<br>When the job archive function is ON, follow the setting to execute operation to restrict specification.<br>Make the setting with the MEAP program which supports job archiving.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When using the job archive function  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | N/A (Display only)   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Setting cannot be made with this item.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON<br>32 specification restrictions with Bit definition<br>Bit0: Function to obtain image file (0: OFF, 1: ON)<br>Bit1: Function to compose form registration (0: OFF, 1: ON)<br>Bit2: Function to edit document (0: OFF, 1: ON)  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> USER> JA-FUNC  |   |
| <b>LDAP-SW</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Retrieval condition set for LDAP server</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the condition to search e-mail address, etc. from LDAP server.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When specifying condition to search e-mail address, etc. from LDAP server  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 5<br>0: Includes the next, 1: Not include the next, 2: Equivalent to the next, 3: Not equivalent to the next,<br>4: Starts with the next, 5: Finishes with the next   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 4  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol): Registering LDAP server enables to search e-mail address, etc. from LDAP server and the result can be registered in the Address Book, etc.<br>Registration is available by the following: Set Destination > Register LDAP Server   |   |
| <b>FROM-OF</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Deletion of mail sender's address</b>        |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether to delete the sender's address (From) at the time of e-mail transmission.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Retained, 1: Deleted  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>FILE-OF</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set file transmission to entered address</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether to allow file transmission to a newly entered address.<br>When 1 is set, file transmission is not available by entering the address because "File" is not displayed on the transmission screen.<br>The addresses already registered in the Address Book can be used. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | To restrict addresses for transmission, be sure to manually delete them because the addresses registered in the Address Book can be used.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Enabled, 1: Disabled  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>MAIL-OF</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Setting of e-mail TX to entered address</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether to allow e-mail transmission to a newly entered address.<br>When 1 is set, e-mail transmission is not available by entering the address because "E-mail" is not displayed on the transmission screen.<br>The addresses already registered in the Address Book can be used. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | To restrict addresses for transmission, be sure to manually delete them because the addresses registered in the Address Book can be used.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Allowed, 1: Prohibited  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>IFAX-OF</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Setting of I-Fax TX to entered address</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | * Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether to allow I-Fax transmission to a newly entered address.<br>When 1 is set, I-Fax transmission is not available by entering the address because "I-Fax" is not displayed on the transmission screen.<br>The addresses already registered in the Address Book can be used.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | To restrict addresses for transmission, be sure to manually delete them because the addresses registered in the Address Book can be used.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Enabled, 1: Disabled  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>LDAP-DEF</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Initial condtn set of LDAP server search</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set initial condition for search target attribute that is specified at the time of LDAP server Details search.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 6<br>0: Name, 1: E-mail, 2: FAX, 3: Organization, 4: Organization unit, 5: No registration 1 (any setting), 6: No registration 2 (any setting)  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> OPTION> USER> LDAP-SW  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                                  |   |  |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>FREE-DSP</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of charge disable screen</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display or hide the "Use Charge Management" screen for switching between charge and no charge.<br>The hardware switch for switching charge/no charge in the Coin Manager enables the mode in which all the services are available for free (store manager mode) by temporarily canceling the charging system.<br>Even without the hardware switch, the mode can be switched with the software switch when it is set to display the "Use Charge Management" screen in [Settings/Registration].   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When enabling all the services to be provided for free by temporarily canceling the charging system   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Management Settings> Charge Management> Use Charge Management   |  |
| <b>TNRB-SW</b>                   | <b>2</b>  | <b>Display/hide of Toner Container counter</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display the Toner Container counter on the Counter Check screen.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When showing the Toner Container counter to the user  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | It differs according to the location.   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | 60s: The number of premature replacements of the Toner Container<br>70s: The number of installations of a new Toner Container<br>80s: The number of installations of a new Toner Container + the number of premature replacements<br>180s: The number of installations of unidentified Toner Container  |  |
| <b>DK1-ASST</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set of POD Deck Lite Air Heater control</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the condition to turn ON the Air Heater at the POD Deck Lite in accordance with media/environment.<br>When the media is switched from non-coated paper to coated paper, pickup operation does not start until the temperature of the Air Heater reaches the specified temperature; thus, waiting time occurs. When 1 is set, the Air Heater is turned ON for coated paper only.<br>When the use environment is near the threshold for turning ON/OFF the Air Heater, switching occurs frequently, which increases the wait time. When 2 is set, the heater is always ON regardless of media and environment. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request (to shorten the waiting time)   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Be sure to get approval from the user in advance by explaining that there is a possibility that transfer performance may decrease in a low humidity environment when 2 is set.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 2<br>0: ON/OFF depending on the media/environment condition<br>1: ON for coated paper only<br>2: Always ON (No environment/media-dependant)  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>USBH-DSP</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>ON/OFF of USB host use display</b>           |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display "Preferences > External Interface > USB Settings > Use USB Host". By selecting "1: Display", whether to use USB host on USB Settings screen can be selected.                         |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When switching to display or hide "Use USB Host" on USB Settings screen  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Preferences> External Interface> USB Settings> Use USB Host  |   |
| <b>USBM-DSP</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>ON/OFF USB ex-mem device MEAP driver use</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display [Use MEAP Driver for USB Storage Device] in [Settings/Registration]. When 0 is set, the item is not displayed so that the user administrator cannot change the setting.              |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When not allowing the user administrator to select whether to use the MEAP driver  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | When setting 0, be sure to make the setting after the specified setting is completed.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1  |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Preferences> External Interface> USB Settings> Use MEAP Driver for USB External Device   |   |
| <b>USBI-DSP</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>ON/OFF USB input device MEAP driver use</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display [Use MEAP Driver for USB Input Device] in [Settings/Registration]. When 0 is set, the item is not displayed so that the user administrator cannot change the setting.                |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When not allowing the user administrator to select whether to use the MEAP driver  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | When setting 0, be sure to make the setting after the specified setting is completed.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1  |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Preferences> External Interface> USB Settings> Use MEAP Driver for USB Input Device  |   |
| <b>CTCHKDSP</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Display/Hide of counter print</b>            |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display or hide "Print List" on the Counter Check screen. Model name, model number information, counter check date and counter information can be output as a total count management report. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>DFLT-ADJ</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Tgt Auto Adj Gradation initial dspl set</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the initial display of the target full adjustment/quick adjustment items on [Auto Adjust Gradation] in [Settings/Registration].<br>This setting is enabled when EFI Controller is connected or only on the copy model which Adobe PS/PDF is available.<br>When 0 is set, the target adjustment item is not displayed.<br>When 1 to 3 is set, the target adjustment items (Copy/Printer/Both) are displayed and one of them is selected. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When switching the initial display at the time of Auto Adjust Gradation  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 3<br>0: Adjustment item is not displayed.<br>1: "Copy" in the target adjustment items is selected.<br>2: "Printer" in the target adjustment items is selected.<br>3: "Both" in the target adjustment items is selected.   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Auto Adjust Gradation  |   |
| <b>USBR-DSP</b>                  | <b>2</b>   | <b>ON/OFF USB infrared devc MEAP driver use</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to display "Use MEAP Driver for USB Infrared Device" in [Settings/Registration].<br>When 1 is set, whether to use MEAP driver can be selected on USB Settings screen.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When allowing the user administrator to select whether to use the MEAP driver  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Preferences> External Interface> USB Settings> Use MEAP Driver for USB Infrared Device   |   |
| <b>POL-SCAN</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>ON/OFF Rights Management Server set dspl</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | When "1: Display" is set, the Rights Management Server function screen is displayed.<br>While the Rights Management Server function is a standard feature, it is possible to hide if not necessary.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | It differs according to the location.  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>PH-D-SL2</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Set halftone process in text/photo mode</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>When copying or B&amp;W scanning to Inbox in text/photo mode, halftone processing of the image which reproduces gradation of text and photo judgment areas can be specified with this setting. Set to 1 when jaggy occurs or request to use the same halftoning method (text area) as conventional one is raised.</p> <p>Set to 2 when moire occurs frequently or request to use the same halftoning method as conventional B&amp;W MFP method is raised.</p> <p>Even 0 is set, TBIC is used for text judgment area and low screen ruling for photo judgment area at the time of B&amp;W Inbox scan.</p> <p>The setting is disabled when the B&amp;W Inbox scanning density is set to auto.</p>   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When jaggy occurs on the edge of text or thin lines at copy output. Especially when jaggy occurs in the text or thin lines (text in halftone dots) of the area where gradation in the halftone density is expressed like photo, graphics, etc.</p> <p>- When moire occurs frequently at the time of copy or B&amp;W Inbox scan Especially when moire frequently occurs in the area where gradation in the halftone density is expressed like photo, graphics, etc. and this symptom is not alleviated with PH-D-SEL or sharpness adjustment</p> <p>- When receiving a request to use the same halftoning method (text area) as the conventional one (model with image area separation method) at copy output</p> <p>- When receiving a request to use the same halftoning method (both text and photo areas) as the conventional B&amp;W MFP method at the time of copy or B&amp;W Inbox output</p> |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p>   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>0 to 2</p> <p>0: Low screen ruling (134 lines) is used for photo judgment area and high screen ruling (141 lines) for text judgment area.</p> <p>1: Low screen ruling is used for photo judgment area and TBIC for text judgment area.</p> <p>2: TBIC is used for both photo and text judgment areas.</p>   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> USER> PH-D-SEL   |   |
| <b>W-TN-DSP</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>ON/OFF of Wst Toner Cont rplce procedure</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To set whether to display the replacement procedure on the Control Panel when the Waste Toner Container is full.</p> <p>Set 0 when a service technician replaces the Waste Toner Container. In this case, the replacement procedure is not displayed.</p> <p>Set 1 when the user performs the replacement. The animation showing the replacement procedure is displayed.</p>  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When the user replaces the Waste Toner Container   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>0 to 1</p> <p>0: OFF, 1: ON</p>   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>SCAN-RSL</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Setting of scanned image resolution</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the resolution of image which is generated by scan processing.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When the scan processing performance with 1200 dpi is low  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p>   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>0 to 1</p> <p>0: 600 dpi, 1: 1200 dpi</p>   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>JA-SBOX</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of linking with Advanced Box: SAM</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set the link with Advanced Box when iW SAM is enabled. When 1 is set, linking with Advanced Box is enabled.      |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>JA-DFAX</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of direct fax transmission: SAM</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set the direct fax transmission when iW SAM is enabled. When 1 is set, the direct fax transmission is enabled.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>JA-REP</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of TX Report with image: SAM</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set the TX Report with image when iW SAM is enabled. When 1 is set, the TX Report with image is enabled.         |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>JA-FREP</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of Fax TX Report with image: SAM</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set the Fax TX Report with image when iW SAM is enabled. When 1 is set, the Fax TX Report with image is enabled. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>JA-BOX</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of Inbox document operation: SAM</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set the operation for Inbox document at the time of iW SAM. When 1 is set, the Inbox document can be operated.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>JA-FORM</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of image composition: SAM</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set the image composition when iW SAM is enabled.<br>When 1 is set, the image composition is enabled.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>JA-PREV</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of preview page deletion: SAM</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether a page is deleted from the scan preview screen at the time of iW SAM<br>When 1 is set, a page is deleted from the scan preview screen.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>JA-PULL</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of network scan: SAM</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set the network scan when iW SAM is enabled.<br>When 1 is set, the network scan is enabled.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>JA-PDLB</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Set of printer driver multi box save: SAM</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether a document can be simultaneously saved to multiple Inboxes from the printer driver<br>at the time of iW SAM.<br>When 1 is set, a document can be saved to multiple Inboxes from the printer driver. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>JA-JOBK</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of job merge allowance: SAM</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether merging jobs is allowed when iW SAM is enabled.<br>When 1 is set, jobs can be merged.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>JA-JDF</b>                 | <b>2</b>   | <b>Setting of JDF: SAM</b>                       |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set the use of JDF when iW SAM is enabled.<br>When 1 is set, JDF can be used.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>JA-RUI</b>                 | <b>2</b>   | <b>Setting of Inbox document access: SAM</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set the Inbox document access from remote UI at the time of iW SAM<br>When 1 is set, accessing to the Inbox document from remote UI is enabled.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>JA-WEB</b>                 | <b>2</b>   | <b>Setting of Inbox document upload: SAM</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set the Inbox document upload with the Web browser at the time of iW SAM.<br>When 1 is set uploading to the Inbox document with the Web Browser is enabled.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>EXP-CRYP</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Confndtial encrypt ON/OFF:add book expprt</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | * Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether to encrypt the confidential part (password part) in the Address Book when exporting the address book and device settings via remote UI.<br>When 0 is set, the confidential part in the address book is exported without encryption. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When there is a need to export password without encryption because of operation and tool   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Be sure not to allow the user to execute export without encryption because of security concern.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 1  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>SMD-EXPT</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Setting of export target data: remote UI</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to export "service mode data" from remote UI.<br>When 1 is set, "service mode data" is displayed as the target data of export on remote UI. When installing more than 1 machine at the same time, the same service mode data can be registered.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When installing more than 1 machine at the same time   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | If selecting "service mode data" as the target data of export on remote UI after setting SMD-EXPT to 1, service mode data can be exported.   |   |
| <b>SNDSTREN</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set of setting delete aftr scan and send</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to delete the transmission settings except for the address after transmission from the "Scan and Send" screen.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 5<br>0: Deleted<br>1: Retained only the transmission setting<br>2: Retained the transmission setting and address *<br>3: Retained only address *<br>4: Retained the transmission setting and address<br>5: Retained only address<br>* The setting for Options > Job Done Notice > Attach TX Image is not retained.  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | It differs according to the location.  |   |
| <b>FAXSTREN</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set of setting delete aftr fax transmit</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to delete the transmission settings except for the address after transmission from the "Fax" screen.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 2<br>0: Delete<br>1: Retain *<br>2: Retain<br>* The setting for Options > Job Done Notice > Attach TX Image is not retained.  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | It differs according to the location.  |   |
| <b>SJ-UNMSK</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>ON/OFF secured job masking cancellation</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether to mask other people's secured jobs.<br>When 0 is set, operation of other people's secured jobs is not possible because they are masked.<br>When COIN is set to 6 or 7 (charge mode: Type-C), set 1. Masking is canceled and other people's secured jobs can be operated.<br>It is enabled at MEAP authentication. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When operating secured jobs in charge mode Type-C  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF (Masking enabled), 1: ON (Masking canceled)   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> ACC> COIN  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                                  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>SJ-CLMSK</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF secured job stop button display</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>*Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br/>To set whether to display the button to stop a secured job.<br/>When 0 is set, the stop button is displayed.<br/>When COIN is set to 6 or 7 (charge mode: Type-C), set 1. Since the stop button is not displayed, the secured job cannot be stopped.</p>   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When prohibiting to stop the secured job in charge mode Type-C  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br/>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p>   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | <p>0 to 1<br/>0: OFF (Display), 1: ON (Hide)</p>  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> ACC> COIN   |   |
| <b>PRTDP-SW</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set delivery side for 1-page job:2-sided</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>To set whether to deliver paper face-up or face-down when printing only 1 page although 2-sided print is set.<br/>When 0 is set, paper is delivered face-down like 1-sided job. (Paper does not pass through the Duplex Path.)<br/>When 1 is set, paper is delivered face-up via the Duplex Path. Paper feed distance becomes longer so productivity is decreased.</p>   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When changing the delivery side of 1-page print although 2-sided print is set   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br/>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p>   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | <p>0 to 1<br/>0: Face-down delivery, 1: Face-up delivery</p>  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>PDFD-MSW</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>Set output paper size: direct print PDF</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>To set output paper size at direct print PDF.<br/>Usually, the region defined by MediaBox is output. However, in some cases, the region defined (trimmed) by CropBox is judged as output paper size depending on PDF file.<br/>Set 1 when output result differs from what is defined at direct print PDF.</p>  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When preferring to output a PDF file with paper which size is defined by CropBox while the sizes of MediaBox and CropBox are different  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | <p>0 to 1<br/>0: MediaBox (Normal), 1: CropBox</p>  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>SFT-OUT</b>                   | <b>2</b>  | <b>Setting of offset priority delivery</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | <p>To set whether to deliver a job where offset and collate/offset group is set to the delivery destination with offset function.<br/>When 0 is set, a job is delivered to the delivery destination set in [Settings/Registration] even though the offset function is not available.<br/>When 1 is set, a job is delivered to the delivery destination with offset function even though a delivery destination without offset function is set in [Settings/Registration].</p> |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When preferring to deliver a job to the delivery destination with offset function   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br/>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p>   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | <p>0 to 1<br/>0: Based on Output Tray Settings, 1: Priority on job settings (deliver to a delivery destination where offset is possible)</p>  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Function Settings> Common> Paper Output Settings> Output Tray Settings  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

| <b>LGCY-SCP</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of PPA/secured print switch</b>   |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether to use the PPA function or the conventional secured print function.<br>Set 0 when using the PPA function. The conventional secured print function is disabled.<br>Set 1 when using the conventional secured print function (when the EFI Controller is connected, etc.). The PPA function is disabled.<br>When IMG-CONT is set to 3 or 4 for connecting the EFI Controller, the setting of this item becomes 1.<br>When this item is set to 0, the setting of UI-PPA becomes 1. When this item is set to 1, the setting of UI-PPA becomes 0. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When using the conventional secured print function (when the EFI Controller is connected, etc.)  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | The PPA function cannot be used when the EFI Controller is connected.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Use the PPA function, 1: Use the conventional secured print function  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> OPTION> DSPLY-SW> UI-PPA<br>COPIER> OPTION> INT-FACE> IMG-CONT   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | PPA (Personal Print Application): A function to hold print job. It contains the function of secured print.   |
| <b>FLM-DSPL</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>ON/OFF of Clear Film usage</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to use the Clear Film.<br>When 1 is set, "Clear Film" is displayed on the paper type screen so it can be registered as the paper to be used.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When using large size transparency or special film   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | - Since the clear film is not defined in the specifications, image quality is not guaranteed even though it can be fed.<br>- After the setting is made, check image quality and get approval from the user. If there is an error, set the value back to 0.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Preferences> Paper Settings> Paper Settings> Set > Detailed Settings > Clear Film  |
| <b>CNT-PRT</b>                   | <b>2</b> | <b>ON/OFF of parts counter report output</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to print parts counter values on the counter report.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When grasping the estimated life of parts while the monitoring service function is not used  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF (Not print), 1: ON (Print)  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | It differs according to the location.  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Check Counter> Print List  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                                  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>JA-WIFI</b>                   | <b>2</b>  | <b>Setting of SAM Wi-Fi direct print</b>        |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether to allow Wi-Fi direct print when iW SAM is enabled.<br>Wi-Fi direct print cannot be used when iW SAM is enabled. However, when 1 is set, it can be used.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>C-P-SIZE</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>[For customization]</b>                      |
| <b>MF-FEED</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Manual restart w/OK key: no ppr on MP Tr</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | If the following three conditions are satisfied, pickup is not restarted automatically when placing paper on the Multi-purpose Tray.<br>1. The setting of "Preferences> Paper Settings> Multi-Purpose Tray Defaults" is "Fixed".<br>2. The job type is PDL.<br>3. The setting value of this service mode is 1.<br>4. Paper is placed at occurrence of no paper on the Multi-Purpose Tray. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request. Use this item for customization for Aeon during application of service mode.   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Preferences> Paper Settings> Multi-Purpose Tray Defaults  |   |
| <b>INSTDT-Y</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Register installation date info: year</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the information on the installation date (year).   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | - At installation<br>- When replacing the HDD   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 2038   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER>FUNCTION>INSTALL>INSTDTST  |   |
| <b>INSTDT-M</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Register installation date info: month</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the information on the installation date (month).  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | - At installation<br>- When replacing the HDD   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 12   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER>FUNCTION>INSTALL>INSTDTST  |   |
| <b>INSTDT-D</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Register installation date info: day</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the information on the installation date (day).  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | - At installation<br>- When replacing the HDD   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 31   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER>FUNCTION>INSTALL>INSTDTST  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>INSTDT-H</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Register installation date info: hour</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the information on the installation date (hour).   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | - At installation<br>- When replacing the HDD   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 23   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER>FUNCTION>INSTALL>INSTDTST  |
| <b>INSTDT-N</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Register installation date info: minute</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the information on the installation date (minute).   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | - At installation<br>- When replacing the HDD   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 59   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER>FUNCTION>INSTALL>INSTDTST  |
| <b>STOP-USE</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>ON/OFF of Stop key function</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To switch ON and OFF of the Stop key function.<br>When Stop key is pressed, all print jobs are paused.                              |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When switching to use/not use Stop key according to the customer  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Be sure to explain to the customer in advance that all print jobs are paused when Stop key is pressed.                              |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 1   |
| <b>LASTREST</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Set remaining consumables display specs</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To switch the percentage of increments in which the remaining level of consumables is shown at their near end.                      |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When the remaining level of toner or waste toner is suddenly displayed as 0%  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn ON/OFF the Main Power.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | The default value is properly set according to the country and the model, and thus should not be normally changed unless requested. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: 5%, 1: 1%  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | The value differs according to the location.  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Status Monitor/Cancel > Consmbles./Others > Consumables   |
| <b>SZCHKSW</b>                   | <b>2</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

| <b>PP-DFTSW</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Chg the default settings for a pln ppr</b>  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Set the default settings for a plain paper when setting changes to the plain paper either 1 or 2 or 3.         |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | In case the default for a plain paper is needed to be changed to a value other than the machine setting value. |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.                    |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Inputting for all destination is possible on display, however, it activates for China only.                    |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 - 3<br>0:Default<br>1:Plain Paper 1<br>2:Plain Paper 2<br>3:Plain Paper 3                                    |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |

## ■ CST

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; CST

| <b>P-SZ-C1</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Setting of Right Deck paper size</b>          |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the paper size used in the Right Deck.    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request                              |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to match with the hardware setting size. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 2<br>0: A4, 1: B5, 2: LTR                   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>P-SZ-C2</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Setting of Left Deck paper size</b>           |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the paper size used in the Left Deck.     |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request                              |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to match with the hardware setting size. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 2<br>0: A4, 1: B5, 2: LTR                   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |



## ■ ACC

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > OPTION (Specification setting mode) > ACC

| COIN                             | 1 | Setting of charge management   |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                    |   | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access]. To set charging management method.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |   | At installation of Coin Manager  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |   | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |   | Following items are automatically specified when changing the value to 3 (from 0 to 2). The change will not be returned even if changing back the value to 0 to 2 (from 3) once the mode has been changed.<br>- COPIER> OPTION> USER> CONTROL=1<br>- COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> DA-CNCT=1<br>- COPIER> OPTION> DSPLY-SW> UI-BOX, UI-SEND, UI-FAX=0<br>- Function Settings > Send > E-Mail/I-Fax Settings > Communication Settings > SMTP Receive, POP=OFF<br>- Preferences> Network > TCP/IP Settings > DNS Settings > FTP Print Settings > Use FTP Printing=OFF<br>- Preferences> Network > TCP/IP Settings > DNS Settings > IPP Print Settings > Use IPP Printing=ON |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |   | 0 to 7<br>0: No charge<br>1: Charge with Coin Manager<br>2: Charge with remote counter<br>3: Charge with DA (only in Japan)<br>4: Charge with this machine itself<br>5: Not used<br>6: External charge mode 6<br>7: External charge mode 7   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |   | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |   | COPIER> OPTION> USER> CONTROL<br>COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> DA-CNCT<br>COPIER> OPTION> DSPLY-SW> UI-BOX, UI-SEND, UI-FAX<br>COPIER> OPTION> ACC> PDL-THR  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |   | Function Settings> Send> E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> Communication Settings<br>Preferences> Network> TCP/IP Settings> DNS Settings> FTP Print Settings, IPP Print Settings  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |   | Control card can be used with "No charge".<br>DA: Digital Accessory  |
| DK-P                             | 1 | Setting of Paper Deck paper size   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |   | To set the paper size used in the Paper Deck.  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |   | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |   | 0 to 2<br>0: A4, 1: B5, 2: LTR   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |   | It differs according to the location.  |
| CARD-SW                          | 1 | Screen set when Coin Manager connected   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |   | To set coin or card that the user is urged to insert on the Control Panel when the Coin Manager is connected.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |   | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |   | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |   | 0 to 3<br>0: Card, 1: certification by external device, 2: Coin and card, 3: Card  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; ACC

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>CC-SPSW</b>                | <b>2</b>   | <b>Support setting of control card I/F</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set support level for control card (CCIV/CCV) interface.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request (when connecting to the external counter management system using the control card interface)   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: No support, 1: Support  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>UNIT-PRC</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Setting of Coin Manager currency unit</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set currency unit to be handled with Coin Manager   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | At installation of Coin Manager  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 6<br>0: Japanese yen, 1: Euro, 2: Pound, 3: Swiss Franc, 4: Dollar, 5: No currency unit (no fractional unit), 6: No currency unit (with fractional unit)  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>MIN-PRC</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set of Coin Manager minimum price</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the minimum amount to be handled with Coin Manager.<br>Enter 10 when specifying 10 Japanese yen as the minimum amount to be handled with the Coin Manager that supports Japanese yen.<br>In the case to specify 1 to 4 (Euro/Pound/Swiss Franc/Dollar) by going through the following: COPIER> OPTION> ACC > UNIT-PRC, entry is in fractional unit. Entry of 50 indicates 50 cents (\$ 0.50). |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | At installation of Coin Manager  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | This mode is enabled when selecting 4 for the following: COPIER> OPTION> ACC> COIN.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 9999  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 10   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> ACC> COIN, UNIT-PRC  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | When a value smaller than the minimum amount is entered in Settings/Registration menu as the charging amount, it causes an error.  |  |
| <b>MAX-PRC</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set of Coin Manager maximum price</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set the maximum amount to be handled with Coin Manager.<br>Enter 8800 when specifying 8800 Japanese yen as the maximum amount to be handled with the Coin Manager that supports Japanese yen.   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | At installation of Coin Manager  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | This mode is enabled when selecting 4 for the following: COPIER> OPTION> ACC> COIN.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 9999  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 8800   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> OPTION> ACC> COIN, UNIT-PRC  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | When a value larger than the maximum amount is entered in Settings/Registration menu as the charging amount, it causes an error.   |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; ACC

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>MIC-TUN</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Manual adj of voice recognize microphone</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To manually adjust the voice receiving level (sensitivity) of the connected voice recognition microphone.<br>Microphone sensitivity is automatically tuned in [Settings/Registration]; however, adjust it manually as needed.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the sensitivity of microphone is not improved by auto tuning  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 255   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 128  |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Preferences> Accessibility> Voice Navigation Settings> Tune Microphone   |   |
| <b>SRL-SPSW</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Setting of Serial I/F Kit support</b>        |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the support level of the Serial Interface Kit.<br>To keep processing performance of printer engine, select "1: Priority on speed".<br>To correctly stop the output by the upper limit number of sheets, select "2: Priority on upper limit number of sheets". |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | At installation of Serial Interface Kit  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | With priority on speed, output cannot be correctly stopped by the upper limit number of sheets.<br>With priority on the upper limit number of sheets, processing performance of the printer engine is decreased depending on pickup location.                        |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 2<br>0: No support, 1: Priority on speed, 2: Priority on upper limit number of sheets   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>PDL-THR</b>                   | <b>2</b>   | <b>ON/OFF PDL print: external charge mode</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether to execute normal PDL print when COIN is set to external charge mode 6/7.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When executing normal PDL print in external charge mode  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> ACC> COIN  |   |
| <b>CR-TYPE</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Setting of Card Reader</b>                   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the model of the Card Reader.<br>Set 1 in the case of connecting the Card Reader-C1. It operates even 0 is set, but recognition rate decreases.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When connecting the Card Reader-C1   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Card Reader-F1, 1: Card Reader-C1   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; ACC

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>MEAP-SRL</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set to allow serial comctn from MEAP app</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether to allow serial communication of MEAP application.<br>When 1 is set, serial communication of the machine is stopped and only the serial communication with MEAP application is available.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When performing serial communication from MEAP application   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Prohibited, 1: Allowed  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>CV-CSZ</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Set outpt info notice:chg w/device alone</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to notify the Coin Manager of color mode and paper size at the time of charging with a device alone.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When Coin Manager (CV3) is connected   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Set 0 when a coin manager other than CV3 is connected. When 1 is set, an error occurs.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>COIN-AUT</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>ON/OFF of charge/no charge mixed setting</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | * Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set whether to switch charge/no charge according to the authentication setting in an environment where both charged and no charged users exist.<br>When this item is set to 1 while the setting value of COIN is 4, the initial screen where the user can select charge/no charge can be set. Selecting "Charge" on the initial screen displays the copy screen, and selecting "No Charge" displays the main menu after authentication. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | At installation of Coin Manager  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | When setting 1, be sure to set COIN to 4 in advance. If COIN-AUT is set first, it is necessary to make the settings in the following order again: COIN and then COIN-AUT.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> ACC> COIN<br>COPIER> OPTION> DSPLY-SW> UI-BOX/SEND/FAX   |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Preferences > Display Settings > Default Screen after Startup/Restoration  |   |

## ■ INT-FACE

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > OPTION (Specification setting mode) > INT-FACE

|                                  |   |  |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>IMG-CONT</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Connection setting of print server</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set connection with print server.<br>When Secure print is set to 3 or 4, Conventional secured print function becomes effective(LGCY-SCP becomes 1).<br>When Conventional secured print function becomes effective, Forced Hold Printing becomes invalid(UI-PPA become 0).<br>If IMG-CONT is changed back from 3 or 4 to 0, LGCY-SCP do not link with each other. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | At installation/Removal   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 4<br>0: Print server not yet connected (normal), 1, 2: Not used, 3: Print server (color machine) connected, 4: Print server (B&W machine) connected  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> OPTION> USER> LGCY-SCP<br>COPIER> OPTION> DSPLY-SW> UI-PPA  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | PPA (Personal Print Application): A function to Forced Hold Printing. It contains the function of secured print.  |  |
| <b>AP-OPT</b>                    | <b>2</b>  | <b>[Not used]</b>                            |
| <b>AP-ACCNT</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>[Not used]</b>                            |
| <b>AP-CODE</b>                   | <b>2</b>  | <b>[Not used]</b>                            |
| <b>NWCT-TM</b>                   | <b>2</b>  | <b>Timeout setting of network connection</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | *Operation on this item is restricted by the setting of [Restrict Service Representation Access].<br>To set the time to keep network connection between this machine and the PC application (keep-alive setting).<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the time is increased by 1 minute.   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 1 to 5  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | min   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 5   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | Expected PC application: Network print application, E-mail function, cascade copy, MEAP network application, etc.   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |  |
| <b>CNT-TYPE</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Display of print server ID</b>            |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To display the ID of the print server being recognized by the machine.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | At installation of print server   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | N/A (Display only)  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 1 to 999<br>1: Not yet connected, 400 to 499: EFI print server, 600 to 699: Creo print server, 700 to 799: Oce print server   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1   |  |
| <b>VTRNS-TO</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>For R&amp;D</b>                           |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; INT-FACE

| <b>ERRHNDL</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Set PS Cont-related error recover proc</b>  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the recovery process of the host machine and the PS Controller when a PS Controller-related error occurs.<br>When 0 is set, print server error (E677-0080) is displayed on the Control Panel of the host machine. When 1 is set, the host machine automatically executes recovery process. Print server error is not displayed and received jobs are canceled. The PS Controller is automatically rebooted. This setting is enabled only when the PS Controller is connected. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | Upon user's request (automatic recovery at occurrence of E677-0080)  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to get approval from the user in advance by telling that jobs received by the host machine are canceled when a PS Controller-related error occurs so missing of jobs or pages may occur.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 9<br>0: Display the error only<br>1: Cancel the received jobs and the PS Controller is rebooted<br>2 to 9: Not used   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Even if 1 is set, E677-0080 is displayed if automatic recovery fails.  |

## ■ TEMPO

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; TEMPO

| <b>F-POT-SW</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting at Potential Sensor failure</b>  |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the control at the Potential Sensor failure.<br>If the potential control, D-max control, etc. are executed at the Potential Sensor failure, an image failure or error occurs.<br>When 0 is set, the potential control and D-max become OFF, so the device can be run temporarily although the Potential Sensor failure occurs.<br>Use the item as a temporary measure when it takes time until replacing the Potential Sensor. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Potential Sensor   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to set the value back to 1 (ON) after replacing.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> PO-CNT  |
| <b>F-HUM-SW</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>ON/OFF of humidity manual entry</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set whether to enable F-HUM-D setting when an error (failure) in the Environment Sensor occurs.<br>When 1 is set, the F-HUM-D setting is enabled. Use the item as a temporary measure until replacing the Environment Sensor.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When an error (failure) in the Environment Sensor occurs  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> OPTION> TEMPO> F-HUM-D  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; TEMPO

| <b>F-HUM-D</b>                   | <b>2</b> | <b>Manual entry of humidity</b>  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Enter the humidity at the installation location manually when an error in the Environment Sensor occurs.<br>When F-HUM-SW is 1, this setting is enabled. |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 30 to 99   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | %  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 35   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> OPTION> TEMPO> F-HUM-SW  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |

## ■ LCNS-TR

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

| <b>ST-SEND</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Installation state dspl of SEND function</b>  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of SEND function when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether SEND function is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-SEND.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-SEND.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-SEND</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns license key dspl of SEND function</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use SEND function when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-SEND.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-SEND.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-ENPDF</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl of Encryption PDF</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of encrypted PDF transmission function when disabling and then transferring the license.                                   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Encryption PDF is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-ENPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-ENPDF. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-ENPDF</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns license key dspl of Encryption PDF</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Encryption PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-ENPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-ENPDF.                                       |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | This mode is enabled when SEND function is installed.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>ST-SPDF</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl of Searchable PDF</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of Searchable PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Searchable PDF is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-SPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-SPDF.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-SPDF</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns license key dspl of Searchable PDF</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Searchable PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-SPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-SPDF.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | This mode is enabled when SEND function is installed.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-EXPDF</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Instal state of Encry PDF + Searchbl PDF</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of encrypted PDF + searchable PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Encryption PDF + Searchable PDF is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-EXPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-EXPDF. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-EXPDF</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key of Encry PDF+Searchbl PDF</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Encryption PDF + Searchable PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.                                 |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-EXPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-EXPDF.                                       |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | This mode is enabled when SEND function is installed for Japan.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-PDFDR</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl of Direct Print PDF</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of Direct Print PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Direct Print PDF is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-PDFDR.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-PDFDR. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>TR-PDFDR</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key dspl of Direct Print PDF</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Direct Print PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-PDFDR.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-PDFDR.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-SCR</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl of Encry Secure Print</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of Encrypted Secure Print when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Encrypted Secure Print is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-SCR.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-SCR.     |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-SCR</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns license key dspl: Encry Secure Pnt</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Encrypted Secure Print when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-SCR.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-SCR.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | This mode is enabled when there is "3DES+USH-H" Board.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-HDCLR</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Installation state display of Data Erase</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of Data Erase (for old model) when transfer is disabled.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Data Erase (for old model) is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-HDCLR.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-HDCLR. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>TR-HDCLR</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Transfer license key dspl of Data Erase</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Data Erase (for old model) when transfer is disabled.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-HDCLR.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-HDCLR.                                       |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | This mode is enabled when there is "3DES+USH-H" Board.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>ST-BRDIM</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl: PCL Barcode Printing</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of BarDIMM when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Barcode Printing for PCL is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-BRDIM.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-BRDIM. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-BRDIM</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key dspl: PCL Barcode Printing</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Barcode Printing for PCL when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-BRDIM.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-BRDIM.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-VNC</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl of Remote Oprtr Soft</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of Remote Operators Software when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Remote Operators Software is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-VNC.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-VNC.     |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-VNC</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns dspl of Remote Operators Soft</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Remote Operators Software when disabling and then transferring the license.                                       |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-VNC.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-VNC.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-WEB</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl: Web Access Software</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of Web Access Software when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Web Access Software is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-WEB.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-WEB.     |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>TR-WEB</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns license key dspl of Web Access Soft</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Web Access Software when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-WEB.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-WEB.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-HRPDF</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl of High Compress PDF</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of High Compression PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether High Compression PDF is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-HRPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-HRPDF. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-HRPDF</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key dspl of High Compress PDF</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use High Compression PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-HRPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-HRPDF.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-TRSND</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl: Trial SEND function</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of Trial SEND function when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Trial SEND function is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-TRSND.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-TRSND. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-TRSND</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key dspl: Trial SEND function</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Trial SEND function when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-TRSND.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-TRSND.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>ST-WTMRK</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl of Secure Watermark</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of Secure Watermark when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Secure Watermark is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-WTMRK.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-WTMRK. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-WTMRK</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns license key dspl: Secure Watermark</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Secure Watermark when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-WTMRK.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-WTMRK.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-TSPDF</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl of Time Stamp PDF: JP</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of Time Stamp PDF (JP only) when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Time Stamp PDF (JP only) is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-TSPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-TSPDF. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-TSPDF</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key dspl of Time Stamp PDF: JP</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Time Stamp PDF (JP only) when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-TSPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-TSPDF.                                       |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | This mode is enabled when SEND function is installed.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-USPDF</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl of Dgtl User Sign PDF</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of Digital User Signature PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Digital User Signature PDF is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-USPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-USPDF. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>TR-USPDF</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Trns lcns key dspl of Dgtl User Sign PDF</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display transfer license key to use Digital User Signature PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.                                      |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Select ST-USPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-USPDF.                                       |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | This mode is enabled when SEND function is installed.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 24 digits  |   |
| <b>ST-DVPDF</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Install state dspl of Device Sign PDF</b>        |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display installation state of device signature PDF transmission function when disabling and then transferring the license.                            |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking whether Device Signature PDF is installed  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Select ST-DVPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-DVPDF. |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | When operation finished normally: OK!  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | According to the setting at shipment   |   |
| <b>TR-DVPDF</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Trns lcns key dspl of Device Sign PDF</b>        |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display transfer license key to use Device Signature PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Select ST-DVPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-DVPDF.                                       |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | This mode is enabled when SEND function is installed.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 24 digits  |   |
| <b>ST-SCPDF</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Install state dspl of Trace &amp; Smooth PDF</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display installation state of Trace & Smooth PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking whether Trace & Smooth PDF is installed  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Select ST-SCPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-SCPDF. |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | When operation finished normally: OK!  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | According to the setting at shipment   |   |
| <b>TR-SCPDF</b>               | <b>2</b>   | <b>Trns lcns key dspl of Trace &amp; Smooth PDF</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display transfer license key to use Trace & Smooth PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Select ST-SCPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-SCPDF.                                       |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | This mode is enabled when SEND function is installed.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 24 digits  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>ST-AMS</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl of Access Mngm System</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of Access Management System when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Access Management System is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-AMS.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-AMS.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-AMS</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key dspl of Access Mngm System</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Access Management System when disabling and then transferring the license.                                      |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-AMS.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-AMS.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-ERDS</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl: E-RDS 3rd Pty Expnsn</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of monitoring service function when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether E-RDS non-Canon-made extension function is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-ERDS.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-ERDS. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Monitoring service function: A function to send charge counter to the non-Canon-made charge server.  |
| <b>TR-ERDS</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key dspl: E-RDS 3rd Pty Expnsn</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use E-RDS non-Canon-made extension function when disabling and then transferring the license.                       |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-ERDS.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-ERDS.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Monitoring service function: A function to send charge counter to the non-Canon-made charge server.  |
| <b>ST-PS</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state display of PS function</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of PS function when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether PS function is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-PS.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-PS.     |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>TR-PS</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Transfer license key dspl of PS function</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use PS function when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-PS.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-PS.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-PCL</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state display of PCL function</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of PCL function when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether PCL function is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-PCL.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-PCL.     |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-PCL</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Transfer license key dspl: PCL function</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use PCL function when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-PCL.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-PCL.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-PSLI5</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl: PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX: JP</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX function (JP only) when disabling and then transferring the license.                                   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX function (JP only) is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-PSLI5.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-PSLI5. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>TR-PSLI5</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key dspl: PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX: JP</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX function (JP only) when disabling and then transferring the license.                             |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-PSLI5.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-PSLI5.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>ST-LIPS5</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl:LIPS LX/LIPS4 func:JP</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of LIPS LX/LIPS4 function (JP only) when disabling and then transferring the license.                                      |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether LIPS LX/LIPS4 function (JP only) is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-LIPS5.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-LIPS5. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-LIPS5</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key dspl:LIPS LX/LIPS4 func:JP</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use LIPS LX/LIPS4 function (JP only) when disabling and then transferring the license.                                |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-LIPS5.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-LIPS5.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-LIPS4</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state display of LIPS4 func: JP</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of LIPS4 function (JP only) when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether LIPS4 function (JP only) is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-LIPS4.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-LIPS4. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-LIPS4</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns license key dspl of LIPS4 func: JP</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use LIPS4 function (JP only) when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-LIPS4.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-LIPS4.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-PSPCL</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl of PS/PCL function</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of PS/PCL function when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether PS/PCL function is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-PSPCL.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-PSPCL. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>TR-PSPCL</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Transfer license key dspl of PS/PCL func</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use PS/PCL function when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-PSPCL.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-PSPCL.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-PCLUF</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl: PCL/UFR II function</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of PCL/UFR II function when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether PCL/UFR II function is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-PCLUF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-PCLUF. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-PCLUF</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns license key dspl of PCL/UFR II func</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use PCL/UFR II function when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-PCLUF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-PCLUF.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-PSLIP</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl of PS/LIPS4 func: JP</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of PS/LIPS4 function (JP only) when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether PS/LIPS4 function (JP only) is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-PSLIP.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-PSLIP. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-PSLIP</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns license key dspl: PS/LIPS4 func:JP</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use PS/LIPS4 function (JP only) when disabling and then transferring the license.                                     |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-PSLIP.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-PSLIP.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>ST-PSPCU</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl of PS/PCL/UFR II func</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of PS/PCL/UFR II function when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether PS/PCL/UFR II function is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-PSPCU.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-PSPCU. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-PSPCU</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key dspl of PS/PCL/UFR II func</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use PS/PCL/UFR II function when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-PSPCU.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-PSPCU.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-LXUFR</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state display of UFR II function</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of UFR II function when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether UFR II function is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-LXUFR.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-LXUFR. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-LXUFR</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns license key dspl of UFR II function</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use UFR II function when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-LXUFR.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-LXUFR.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-HDCR2</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl:HDD Init All Data/Set</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of HDD Initialize All Data/Settings when disabling and then transferring the license.                                      |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether HDD Initialize All Data/Settings is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-HDCR2.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-HDCR2. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>TR-HDCR2</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key dspl:HDD Init All Data/Set</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use HDD Initialize All Data/Settings when disabling and then transferring the license.                              |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-HDCR2.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-HDCR2.                                     |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-JBLK</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl of Document Scan Lock</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of Document Scan Lock when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Document Scan Lock is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-JBLK.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-JBLK. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>TR-JBLK</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key dspl of Document Scan Lock</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Document Scan Lock when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-JBLK.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-JBLK.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-AFAX</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Installation state display of Remote Fax</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of remote fax client function when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Remote Fax is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-AFAX.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-AFAX. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-AFAX</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Transfer license key dspl of Remote Fax</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Remote Fax when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-AFAX.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-AFAX.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>ST-POPDF</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state display of PDF w/ Policy</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of PDF function with Policy when transfer is disabled.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether PDF function with Policy is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-POPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-POPDF. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>TR-POPDF</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key display of PDF w/ Policy</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use PDF function with Policy when transfer is disabled.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-POPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-POPDF.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-REPDF</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl:Reader Extensions PDF</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of Reader Extensions PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Reader Extensions PDF is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-REPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-REPDF. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-REPDF</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key dspl:Reader Extensions PDF</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Reader Extensions PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-REPDF.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-REPDF.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-OOXML</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state display of Office Open XML</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of Office Open XML when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Office Open XML is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-OOXML.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-OOXML. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>TR-OOXML</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key display of Office Open XML</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Office Open XML when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-OOXML.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-OOXML.                                     |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-XPS</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl of Direct Print XPS</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of Direct Print XPS when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Direct Print XPS is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-XPS.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-XPS.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-XPS</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key dspl of Direct Print XPS</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Direct Print XPS when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-XPS.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-XPS.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-2600</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Instal state dspl: IEEEE2600.1 scrty func</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of security function of IEEEE2600.1 when disabling and then transferring the license.                                    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether the IEEEE2600.1 security function is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-2600.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-2600. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-2600</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Trn lcns key dspl: IEEEE2600.1 scrty func</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use IEEEE2600.1 security function when disabling and then transferring the license.                                 |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-2600.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-2600.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>ST-OPFNT</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state display of PCL Font Set</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of PCL Font Set when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether PCL Font Set is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-OPFNT.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-OPFNT. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-OPFNT</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns license key display of PCL Font Set</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use the PCL Font Set when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-OPFNT.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-OPFNT.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-NCAPT</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state display of NetCap function</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of network packet capture function when disabling and then transferring the license.                                       |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether network packet capture function is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-NCAPT.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-NCAPT. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>TR-NCAPT</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Transfer license key dsply of NetCap func</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use the network packet capture function when disabling and then transferring the license.                             |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-NCAPT.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-NCAPT.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-IPFAX</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Installation state display of IPFAX</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of IPFAX when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether IPFAX is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-IPFAX.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-IPFAX. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>TR-IPFAX</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Transfer license key dspl of IPFAX</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use IPFAX when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-IPFAX.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-IPFAX.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-U-RDS</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state display of E-RDS function</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of Embedded-RDS function when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether Embedded-RDS function is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-U-RDS.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-U-RDS. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> E-RDS   |
| <b>TR-U-RDS</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns license key dspl of E-RDS function</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use Embedded-RDS function when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing the HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-U-RDS.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-U-RDS.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>ST-SMLG</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Install state dspl of picture login func</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of picture login function when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether picture login function is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-SMLG.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-SMLG.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | According to the setting at shipment   |
| <b>TR-SMLG</b>                | <b>2</b> | <b>Trns lcns key dspl: picture login func</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use picture login function when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-SMLG.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-SMLG.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>ST-TCFNT</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Inst state dspl:PCL Asian Font, trad CHI</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display installation state of PCL Asian Font (traditional Chinese) when disabling and then transfer the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking whether PCL Asian Font (traditional Chinese) is installed   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Select ST-TCFNT.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-TCFNT.                  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | When replacing the HDD, check that "PCL Traditional Chinese Fonts" and "PCL Traditional Chinese Fonts (HKSCS)" are installed with [Font List] in [Settings/Registration]. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | When operation finished normally: OK!   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | According to the setting at shipment  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Function Settings> Printer> Output Report> PCL> Font List   |
| <b>TR-TCFNT</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Trn lic key dspl:PCL Asian Font,trad CHI</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display transfer license key to use PCL Asian Font (traditional Chinese) when disabling and then transferring the license.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Select ST-TCFNT.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-TCFNT.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 24 digits   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Function Settings> Printer> Output Report> PCL> Font List   |
| <b>TR-FRWEB</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Trn lcns key dspl:Web Access SW,free ver</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display transfer license key to use the free version of Web Access Software when disabling and then transferring the license of it.                                    |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Select ST-FRWEB.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-FRWEB.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 24 digits   |
| <b>ST-FRWEB</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Instl state dspl:Web Access SW, free ver</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display installation state of the free version of Web Access Software when disabling and then transferring the license of it.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking whether the free version of Web Access Software is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Select ST-FRWEB.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-FRWEB.                  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | When operation finished normally: OK!   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | According to the setting at shipment  |
| <b>ST-HCD</b>                    | <b>2</b> | <b>Inst state dspl: IEEE2600 Security Kit</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display installation state of Security Kit for IEEE2600 when disabling and then transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking whether the Security Kit for IEEE2600 is installed  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Select ST-HCD.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-HCD.                      |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | When operation finished normally: OK!   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | According to the setting at shipment  |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>TR-HCD</b>                 | <b>2</b> | <b>Trn lcns key dspl: IEEE2600 Security Kit</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use the Security Kit for IEEE2600 when disabling and then transferring the license of it.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-HCD.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-HCD.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>ST-MECWL</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Inst state dspl: McAfee whitelist func</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display installation state of McAfee whitelisting function when disabling the function and transferring the license.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking whether McAfee whitelisting function is installed.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-MECWL.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-MECWL.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | When operation finished normally: OK!  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | McAfee and the McAfee logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of McAfee, LLC or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries. All other trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective manufacturers. Copyright(c)2018 McAfee LLC |
| <b>TR-MECWL</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Trn lcns key dspl: McAfee whitelist func</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display transfer license key to use McAfee whitelisting function when disabling and then transferring the license of it.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing the HDD<br>- When replacing the device  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select ST-MECWL.<br>2) Enter 0, and then press OK key.<br>The transfer license key is displayed under TR-MECWL.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 24 digits  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | McAfee and the McAfee logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of McAfee, LLC or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries. All other trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective manufacturers. Copyright(c)2018 McAfee LLC |

## ■ CUSTOM2

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; CUSTOM2

|               |          |                            |
|---------------|----------|----------------------------|
| <b>SP-B01</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>[For customization]</b> |
| <b>SP-B02</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>[For customization]</b> |
| <b>SP-B03</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>[For customization]</b> |
| <b>SP-B04</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>[For customization]</b> |
| <b>SP-B05</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>[For customization]</b> |
| <b>SP-B06</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>[For customization]</b> |
| <b>SP-B07</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>[For customization]</b> |
| <b>SP-B08</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>[For customization]</b> |
| <b>SP-B09</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>[For customization]</b> |
| <b>SP-B10</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>[For customization]</b> |
| <b>SP-B11</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>[For customization]</b> |
| <b>SP-B12</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>[For customization]</b> |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; CUSTOM2

|        |   |                     |
|--------|---|---------------------|
| SP-B13 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B14 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B15 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B16 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B17 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B18 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B19 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B20 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B21 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B22 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B23 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B24 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B25 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B26 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B27 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B28 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B29 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B30 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B31 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B32 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B33 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B34 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B35 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B36 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B37 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B38 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B39 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B40 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B41 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B42 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B43 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B44 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B45 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B46 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B47 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B48 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B49 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B50 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B51 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B52 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B53 | 2 | [For customization] |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; CUSTOM2

|        |   |                     |
|--------|---|---------------------|
| SP-B54 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B55 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B56 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B57 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B58 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B59 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B60 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B61 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B62 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B63 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B64 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B65 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B66 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B67 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B68 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B69 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B70 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B71 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B72 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B73 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B74 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B75 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B76 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B77 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B78 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B79 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-B80 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V01 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V02 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V03 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V04 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V05 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V06 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V07 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V08 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V09 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V10 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V11 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V12 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V13 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V14 | 2 | [For customization] |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; CUSTOM2

|        |   |                     |
|--------|---|---------------------|
| SP-V15 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V16 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V17 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V18 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V19 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V20 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V21 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V22 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V23 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V24 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V25 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V26 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V27 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V28 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V29 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V30 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V31 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V32 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V33 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V34 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V35 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V36 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V37 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V38 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V39 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V40 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V41 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V42 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V43 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V44 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V45 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V46 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V47 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V48 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V49 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V50 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V51 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V52 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V53 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V54 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V55 | 2 | [For customization] |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; CUSTOM2

|        |   |                     |
|--------|---|---------------------|
| SP-V56 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V57 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V58 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V59 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V60 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V61 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V62 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V63 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V64 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V65 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V66 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V67 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V68 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V69 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V70 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V71 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V72 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V73 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V74 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V75 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V76 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V77 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V78 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V79 | 2 | [For customization] |
| SP-V80 | 2 | [For customization] |

## ■ PM-PRE-M

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; PM-PRE-M

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>TONER-K</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl/hide Toner (Bk) preparation warning</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To switch between display/hide the preparation warning on the Control Panel Status Bar.                 |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | In the case of displaying the warning when consumables/consumable parts are not automatically delivered |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | The value differs according to the location.  |
| <b>WST-TNR</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Display/hide Wst Tonr Cont prep warning</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To switch between display/hide the preparation warning on the Control Panel Status Bar.                 |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | In the case of displaying the warning when consumables/consumable parts are not automatically delivered |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | The value differs according to the location.  |

## ■ PM-U-DSP

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > OPTION (Specification setting mode) > PM-U-DSP

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>PT-DRM</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Display/hide Drum-U (Bk) consumable scrn</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To switch between display/hide the status and the number of days left on the consumables screen. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When switching the display on the consumables screen   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | The value differs according to the location.   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Status Monitor > Consmbls/Others > Consumables   |
| <b>FX-REP</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl/hide Fixing Ass'y Consumables scrn</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To switch between display/hide the status and the number of days left on the consumables screen. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When switching the display on the consumables screen   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | The value differs according to the location.   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Status Monitor > Consmbls/Others > Consumables   |

## ■ PM-MSG-D

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > OPTION (Specification setting mode) > PM-MSG-D

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>TONER-K</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Set days left before Toner(Bk) prep warn</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the timing (number of days left) at which the preparation warning will be displayed.       |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When changing the timing (number of days left) at which the preparation warning will be displayed |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Change the setting in accordance with the instruction of the sales company HQ.                    |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 365  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | The value differs according to the location.  |
| <b>WST-TNR</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Set days left bef Wst Tnr Cont prep warn</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the timing (number of days left) at which the preparation warning will be displayed.       |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When changing the timing (number of days left) at which the preparation warning will be displayed |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Change the setting in accordance with the instruction of the sales company HQ.                    |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 365  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | The value differs according to the location.  |

## ■ PM-DLV-D

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > OPTION (Specification setting mode) > PM-DLV-D

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>TONER-K</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Set Toner (Bk) prior alarm notice timing</b>                                      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the number of days left before the prior notification alarm will be notified. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When changing the timing to notify the prior notification alarm                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.                                      |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -1 to 365<br>-1: The alarm not issued  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | It differs according to the location.  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; PM-DLV-D

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>WST-TNR</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Set Wst Tonr Cont prior alarm notice tmng</b>                                     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the number of days left before the prior notification alarm will be notified. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When changing the timing to notify the prior notification alarm                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.                                      |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -1 to 365<br>-1: The alarm not issued  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | It differs according to the location.  |
| <b>PT-DRM</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Set Drum-U(Bk) prior alarm notice timing</b>                                      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the number of days left before the prior notification alarm will be notified. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When changing the timing to notify the prior notification alarm                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.                                      |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -1 to 365<br>-1: The alarm not issued  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | It differs according to the location.  |
| <b>CLN-BLD</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Set D-CIn Blade Prior alarm notice tmng</b>                                       |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the number of days left before the prior notification alarm will be notified. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When changing the timing to notify the prior notification alarm                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.                                      |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -1 to 365<br>-1: The alarm not issued  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | It differs according to the location.  |
| <b>DV-UNT-K</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Set Dev Cylinder prior alarm notice tmng</b>                                      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the number of days left before the prior notification alarm will be notified. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When changing the timing to notify the prior notification alarm                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.                                      |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -1 to 365<br>-1: The alarm not issued  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | It differs according to the location.  |
| <b>TR-BLT</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Set ETB prior notice alarm notice timing</b>                                      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the number of days left before the prior notification alarm will be notified. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When changing the timing to notify the prior notification alarm                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.                                      |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -1 to 365<br>-1: The alarm not issued  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | It differs according to the location.  |
| <b>TR-ROLL</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Set Transfer Roller prior alm notice tmng</b>                                     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the number of days left before the prior notification alarm will be notified. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When changing the timing to notify the prior notification alarm                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.                                      |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -1 to 365<br>-1: The alarm not issued  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | It differs according to the location.  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; PM-DLV-D

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>T-CLN-BD</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Set ETB Cleaning Blade prior alm ntc tmg</b>                                      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the number of days left before the prior notification alarm will be notified. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When changing the timing to notify the prior notification alarm                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.                                      |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -1 to 365<br>-1: The alarm not issued  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | It differs according to the location.  |
| <b>T-CN-BRU</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Set Brush Roller prior alm notice timing</b>                                      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the number of days left before the prior notification alarm will be notified. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When changing the timing to notify the prior notification alarm                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.                                      |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -1 to 365<br>-1: The alarm not issued  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | It differs according to the location.  |
| <b>FX-UP-RL</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Set Fixing Roller prior alarm notice tmg</b>                                      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the number of days left before the prior notification alarm will be notified. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When changing the timing to notify the prior notification alarm                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.                                      |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -1 to 365<br>-1: The alarm not issued  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | It differs according to the location.  |
| <b>FX-LW-RL</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Set Pressure Roller prior alarm ntc tmg</b>                                       |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the number of days left before the prior notification alarm will be notified. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When changing the timing to notify the prior notification alarm                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.                                      |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -1 to 365<br>-1: The alarm not issued  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | It differs according to the location.  |
| <b>FX-WEB1</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Set Fixing Web prior alarm notice timing</b>                                      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the number of days left before the prior notification alarm will be notified. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When changing the timing to notify the prior notification alarm                      |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.                                      |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -1 to 365<br>-1: The alarm not issued  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | It differs according to the location.  |



## TEST (Print test mode)

### ■ PG

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > TEST (Print test mode) > PG

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>TYPE</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Test print</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute the test print.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | At trouble analysis  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Press Start key.<br>Test print is executed.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to return the value to 0 after the test print output.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 50<br>0: Normal print<br>1: Grid<br>2: 17 gradations Tbic rank 2<br>3: 17 gradations 600 dpi (134-line screen or 141-line screen)<br>4: Solid white<br>5: Halftone (density: 80H, Tbic rank 2, without image correction)<br>6: Halftone (density: 80H, 134-line screen or 141-line screen, without image correction)<br>7: Solid black<br>8: Horizontal line (4 dots, 27 spaces)<br>9: Horizontal line (6 dots, 50 spaces)<br>10: Horizontal line (2 dots, 3 spaces)<br>11: Halftone (density: 60H, Tbic rank 2, without image correction)<br>12: Halftone (density: 80H, 134-line screen or 141-line screen, without image correction)<br>13: Halftone (density: 30H, Tbic rank 2, without image correction)<br>14: Halftone (density: 30H, 134-line screen or 141-line screen, without image correction)<br>15 to 50: For development |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>DENS-K</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj of Bk color density at test print</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To adjust Bk color density when performing test print (TYPE=5).<br>As the greater value is set, the image gets darker.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | At test print (TYPE=5)   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 255   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 128  |
| <b>PG-PICK</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Setting of test print Pickup Cassette</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the Pickup Cassette for test print output.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - At trouble analysis<br>- At test print output  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1 to 8<br>1: Cassette 1 (Right Deck), 2: Cassette 2 (Left Deck), 3: Cassette 3 (Option Cassette 2), 4: Cassette 4 (Option Cassette 2), 5: Multi-purpose Tray, 6: Paper Deck, 7 to 8: Not used  |
| <b>2-SIDE</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Setting of PG 2-sided mode</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set 1-sided/2-sided print for PG output.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | At trouble analysis  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: 1-sided, 1: 2-sided   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; TEST (Print test mode) &gt; PG

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>PG-QTY</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Setting of PG output quantity</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the number of sheets for PG output.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | At trouble analysis   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 1 to 999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 1   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>FINISH</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Accessory processing function test print</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To execute the test print relating to accessory processing function.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking operation of accessory processing function  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the number of sheets for PG-QTY, and then press OK key.<br>2) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>3) Press Start button.<br>The machine outputs a test print.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99<br>0: N/A<br>1: Staple (front) *1<br>2: Staple (2 points) *1<br>3: Staple (rear) *1<br>4: Booklet (saddle stitch) *1<br>5: Z-fold (single sleeve) *1<br>6: 2-fold *2<br>7: C-fold *2<br>8: V-fold *1<br>9: 4-fold *2<br>10: Z-fold (out-3-fold) *2<br>11: Punch (Inner Puncher) *3<br>12: Multiple-hole punch *4<br>13 to 15: Not used<br>16: Staple free stapling*1<br>17 to 99: Spare (for future use)<br>*1 Finisher, *2 Multi-folding machine, *3 Inner Puncher, *4 Multiple-hole Puncher |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> TEST> PG> PG-QTY  |

## ■ NETWORK

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > TEST (Print test mode) > NETWORK

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>PING</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Network connection check</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To check connection between this machine and TCP/IP network.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking network connection at the time of installation<br>- At network connection failure  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Turn OFF the main power switch.<br>2) Connect the network cable to this machine, and then turn ON the main power switch.<br>3) Inform the system administrator at user's site that installation of this machine is complete, and ask for network setting.<br>4) Ask the system administrator to check the network connection, and check the remote host address of PING transmission target.<br>5) Select the item and enter the remote host address, and then press OK key and Start key.<br>OK: Connection is normal. Checking procedure is complete.<br>NG: Connection failed. Go to step 6) if the cable connection is OK. In case of cable connection failure, connect again and then go to step 5).<br>6) Select the item and enter loopback address, and then press OK key and Start key.<br>OK: TCP/IP setting of this machine is normal. Go to step 7) to check NIC.<br>NG: TCP/IP setting of this machine has failure. Go to step 3) to check the setting again.<br>7) Select the item and enter the local host address, and then press OK key.<br>OK: Network setting of this machine and NIC are normal. Inform the system administrator that the trouble is due to network environment and ask for countermeasure.<br>NG: Connection failure/fault with NIC. Check connection of NIC/ replace NIC. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0.0.0.0 to 255.255.255.255<br>At normal state: OK<br>At failure occurrence: NG   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | - Remote host address: IP address of PC terminal in network.<br>- Loopback address: 127.0.0.1. Checking TCP/IP of this machine is available because the signal is returned before NIC.<br>- NIC: Network interface<br>- Local host address: IP address of this machine   |
| <b>IPV6-ADR</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Setting of PING send address (IPv6)</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the IPv6 address to send PING.<br>When PING is sent to this address by COPIER> TEST> NETWORK> PING-IP6, the network connection condition in the IPv6 environment can be checked.  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Enter a consistent character string as an address of IPv6.<br>- Enter an address within 39 characters including hexadecimal numbers (0-9, a-f) and a separator (:).  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> TEST> NETWORK> PING-IP6  |
| <b>PING-IP6</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>PING transmission to IPv6 address</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To send PING to the address specified by IPV6-ADR.<br>The network connection condition in the IPv6 environment can be checked.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> TEST> NETWORK> IPV6-ADR  |

## ■ NET-CAP

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > TEST (Print test mode) > NET-CAP

|                                  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>CAPOFFON</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of NetCap function</b>                |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set ON/OFF of network packet capture function.   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> TEST> NET-CAP   |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Store Network Packet Log  |   |
| <b>STT-STP</b>                   | <b>2</b>  | <b>Start and stop of network packet capture</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To start and stop network packet capture.   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: Stop, 1: Start   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> TEST> NET-CAP   |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Store Network Packet Log  |   |
| <b>CAPSTATE</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>State display of network packet capture</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To display the state of network packet capture.   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | N/A (Display only)  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> TEST> NET-CAP   |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Store Network Packet Log  |   |
| <b>PONSTART</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>Set network packet capture start timing</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to perform network packet capture from power-on.                             |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> TEST> NET-CAP   |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Store Network Packet Log  |   |
| <b>OVERWRIT</b>                  | <b>2</b>  | <b>Setting of NetCap data overwriting</b>       |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set whether to finish network capturing or overwrite when HDD becomes full.              |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: No overwriting (finish network packet capture), 1: Overwriting                 |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 1   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | COPIER> TEST> NET-CAP   |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Store Network Packet Log  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; TEST (Print test mode) &gt; NET-CAP

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>PAYLOAD</b>                   | <b>2</b> | <b>Set network packet capture data save</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to discard payload when saving the captured packet data.  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Save captured packet data as is, 1: Discard payload and save the packet data  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> TEST> NET-CAP  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Store Network Packet Log   |
| <b>FILE-CLR</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Deletion of network packet capture data</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To delete the captured packet data.  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>SIMPFILT</b>                  | <b>2</b> | <b>Settings of packet data filtering</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to perform filtering when capturing packet data.<br>When 0 is set, filtering is not performed (All the data are captured.)<br>When 1 is set, packet data is captured only when the receiver's or sender's address coincides with the Mac address of this machine. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | At problem analysis (at packet data analysis)  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Not filtered, 1: Filtered   |
| <b>ENCDATA</b>                   | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of packet data encryption</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to encrypt the packet data when writing the captured packet data to the USB memory.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | - At problem analysis (at packet data analysis)<br>- When improving security of written packet data  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | This setting is enabled only when writing data to the USB memory. Even when the packet data is loaded using SST, the file is specified, therefore the setting is disabled.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 2<br>0: Encrypted (encrypted file)<br>1: Not encrypted (plain text file)<br>2: Encrypted (encrypted file + plain text file)   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>CAPIF</b>                     | <b>2</b> | <b>Setting of network packet capture target</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the network interface to capture the packet data.<br>Make this setting before starting network packet capture.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When changing the target of network packet capture   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 1 to 6<br>1: Local loopback, 2: Wired LAN, 3: Wireless LAN, 4: Wireless Soft AP mode, 5: Wi-Fi direct 6: Wired LAN (Sub-Line)  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 2  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | COPIER> TEST> NET-CAP  |

## ■ P-STOP

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > TEST (Print test mode) > P-STOP

| PRINTER                       | 1 | Forcible stop of paper feed  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |   | To forcibly stop paper for the next job at the specified position (only once).<br>Leading edge of paper stops at the specified position so that the cause of a problem can be identified.<br>When the operation is stopped forcibly, jam code "AAxx" is displayed.<br>When a normal jam occurs at a position other than the specified position or paper is delivered without being forcibly stopped, this setting is automatically cleared.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |   | - When bent paper/skew/wrinkles occur<br>- When jam occurs frequently  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |   | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Execute a job (copy/test print).<br>Paper stops at the specified position.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |   | - Remove the paper being stopped with the normal jam removal procedure. After jam removal, the job is automatically recovered.<br>- Display of standard jam code indicates that a jam occurs somewhere other than the specified position. Setting of forcible stop is enabled until paper stops at the specified position.<br>- The setting is disabled for job where paper does not pass through the specified position.<br>- Unfixed toner may be adhered on paper depending on the stop position. Thus, handle it with care.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |   | 0 to 255<br>0: OFF<br>1: Outlet of the Right Deck Pickup Assembly<br>2: Outlet of the Left Deck Pickup Assembly<br>3: Outlet of the Cassette 3 Pickup Assembly<br>4: Outlet of the Cassette 4 Pickup Assembly<br>5: Outlet of the Pickup Option Deck<br>6: Vertical Path Assembly (Lower)<br>7: Vertical Path Assembly (Middle)<br>8: Vertical Path Assembly (Upper)<br>20: Outlet of the Vertical Path Assembly, 21: Outlet of the Vertical Path Assembly (2nd side)<br>22: Inlet of the Registration Assembly, 23: Inlet of the Registration Assembly (2nd side)<br>30: Inlet of the Fixing Assembly, 31: Inlet of the Fixing Assembly (2nd side)<br>40: Delivery outlet, 41: Delivery outlet (2nd side)<br>70: Inlet of the Reverse Assembly<br>71: Duplex reverse point (before reverse), 72: Duplex reverse point (at reverse)<br>73: Inlet of the Duplex Feed Unit<br>74: Duplex Feed Unit (before merging)<br>75: Duplex Feed Unit (after merging)<br>76: Outlet of the Duplex Feed Unit<br>99: Inlet of the Fixing Assembly (1st side, when checking image) *<br>Any value other than those mentioned above: Not used<br>* If image and paper is A3/LDR size, not only paper but also image on the Photosensitive Drum can be checked. |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |   | 0  |

## COUNTER (Counter mode)

### ■ TOTAL

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > COUNTER (Counter mode) > TOTAL

| SERVICE1                     | 1 | Service-purposed total counter 1   |
|------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                |   | To count up when the printout is delivered outside the machine.<br>Large size: 1, Small size: 1<br>A blank sheet is not counted. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b> |   | 0 to 99999999  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; TOTAL

|                              |          |   |
|------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>SERVICE2</b>              | <b>1</b> | <b>Service-purposed total counter 2</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                |          | To count up when the printout is delivered outside the machine.<br>Large size: 2, Small size: 1<br>A blank sheet is not counted.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b> |          | 0 to 99999999   |
| <b>COPY</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Total copy counter</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                |          | To count up when the printout is delivered outside the machine.<br>Large size: 1, Small size: 1<br>A blank sheet is not counted.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b> |          | 0 to 99999999   |
| <b>PDL-PRT</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>PDL print counter</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                |          | To count up when the printout is delivered outside the machine according to the charge counter at PDL print.<br>Large size: 1, Small size: 1<br>A blank sheet is not counted.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b> |          | 0 to 99999999   |
| <b>FAX-PRT</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>FAX reception print counter</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                |          | To count up when the printout is delivered outside the machine according to the charge counter at FAX reception.<br>Large size: 1, Small size: 1<br>A blank sheet is not counted.                                     |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b> |          | 0 to 99999999   |
| <b>RMT-PRT</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Remote print counter</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                |          | To count up when the printout is delivered outside the machine/when the 2-sided printout is stacked according to the charge counter at remote print.<br>Large size: 1, Small size: 1<br>A blank sheet is not counted. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b> |          | 0 to 99999999   |
| <b>BOX-PRT</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Inbox print counter</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                |          | To count up when the printout is delivered outside the machine according to the charge counter at Inbox print.<br>Large size: 1, Small size: 1<br>A blank sheet is not counted.                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b> |          | 0 to 99999999   |
| <b>RPT-PRT</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Report print counter</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                |          | To count up when the printout is delivered outside the machine according to the charge counter at report print.<br>Large size: 1, Small size: 1<br>A blank sheet is not counted.                                      |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b> |          | 0 to 99999999   |
| <b>2-SIDE</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>2-sided copy/print counter</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                |          | To count up the number of 2-sided copies/prints when the copy/printout is delivered outside the machine according to the charge counter.<br>Large size: 1, Small size: 1<br>A blank sheet is not counted.             |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b> |          | 0 to 99999999   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; TOTAL

|                              |          |   |
|------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>SCAN</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Scan counter</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                |          | To count the number of scan operations according to the charge counter when the scanning operation is complete.<br>Large size: 1, small size: 1 |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b> |          | 0 to 99999999   |

## ■ PICK-UP

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; PICK-UP

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>C1</b>                        | <b>1</b> | <b>Cassette 1 pickup total counter</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Small size: 1                                  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>C2</b>                        | <b>1</b> | <b>Cassette 2 pickup total counter</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Small size: 1                                  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>C3</b>                        | <b>1</b> | <b>Cassette 3 pickup total counter</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Large size: 1, Small size: 1                   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>C4</b>                        | <b>1</b> | <b>Cassette 4 pickup total counter</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Large size: 1, Small size: 1                   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>MF</b>                        | <b>1</b> | <b>Multi-purpose Tray pickup total counter</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Large size: 1, Small size: 1                   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>DK</b>                        | <b>1</b> | <b>Deck pickup total counter</b>               |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Large size: 1, Small size: 1                   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>2-SIDE</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>2-sided pickup total counter</b>            |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Large size: 1, Small size: 1                   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |



## ■ FEEDER

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > COUNTER (Counter mode) > FEEDER

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>FEED</b>                      | <b>1</b> | <b>DADF original pickup total counter</b>                    |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | DADF original pickup total counter                           |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the total counter of original pickup by DADF   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>L-FEED</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>DADF large size pickup total counter</b>                  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | DADF large size pickup total counter                         |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the total counter of large size pickup by DADF |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>S-FEED</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>DADF small size pickup total counter</b>                  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | DADF small size pickup total counter                         |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the total counter of small size pickup by DADF |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>DFOP-CNT</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>DADF hinge open/close counter</b>                         |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | DADF hinge open/close counter                                |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the DADF hinge open/close counter              |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |

## ■ JAM

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > COUNTER (Counter mode) > JAM

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>TOTAL</b>                     | <b>1</b> | <b>Host machine total jam counter</b>                   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Host machine total jam counter                          |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the total jam counter of the host machine |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | time  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; JAM

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>FEEDER</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Feeder total jam counter</b>                       |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Feeder total jam counter                              |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the total jam counter of feeder         |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | time  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>SORTER</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Finisher total jam counter</b>                     |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Finisher total jam counter                            |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the total jam counter of finisher       |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | time  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>2-SIDE</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Duplex Unit jam counter</b>                        |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Duplex Unit jam counter                               |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the jam counter of Duplex Unit          |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | time  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>MF</b>                        | <b>1</b> | <b>Multi-purpose Tray jam counter</b>                 |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Multi-purpose Tray jam counter                        |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the jam counter of Multi-purpose Tray   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | time  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>C1</b>                        | <b>1</b> | <b>Right Deck jam counter</b>                         |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Right Deck jam counter                                |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the jam counter of machine's Right Deck |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | time  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>C2</b>                        | <b>1</b> | <b>Left Deck jam counter</b>                          |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Left Deck jam counter                                 |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the jam counter of machine's Left Deck  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | time  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>C3</b>                        | <b>1</b> | <b>Cassette 3 pickup jam counter</b>                  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Cassette 3 pickup jam counter                         |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the jam counter of machine's Cassette 3 |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | time  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; JAM

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>C4</b>                        | <b>1</b> | <b>Cassette 4 pickup jam counter</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Cassette 4 pickup jam counter   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the jam counter of machine's Cassette 4   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | time  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>DK</b>                        | <b>1</b> | <b>Pickup decks jam counter</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Pickup decks jam counter  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the jam counter of all pickup decks   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | time  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>INS1</b>                      | <b>1</b> | <b>Inserter Tray pickup jam counter</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Pickup jam counter value of the Inserter Tray<br>In the case of the Inserter, the Upper Tray is the target for advancing the counter. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the pickup jam counter  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | time  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |

## ■ MISC

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; MISC

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>FIX-WEB</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Fixing Cleaning Web counter</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | The number of Fixing Cleaning Web Drive Solenoid (SL9) operations executed after the Fixing Cleaning Web Level Sensor (PS45) is ON.<br>When the counter reaches 65250, E005-0001 occurs. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | At the time of Fixing Cleaning Web level detection/replacement   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | time   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>T-SPLY-K</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Toner supply counter</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Number of toner supply blocks.<br>Counted for every one rotation of Toner Feed Screw.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the usage status of toner  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | block  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>ALLPW-ON</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Number of DCON PCB power-on times</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Number of power-on times (Non-all-night Power Unit).<br>To count up when power is turned ON (Non-all-night Power Unit).  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the usage status of the product  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | time   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; MISC

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>HDD-ON</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>Number of HDD start-up times</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To count up at HDD start-up.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the usage status of the product  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | time   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>SWG-RL</b>                    | <b>1</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b>   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>FIN-RBLT</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b>   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>NEAT-PDL</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Neat Paddle prts cntr: Fin-AC1</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Neat Paddle<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | Neat Paddle<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 3600000   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |

## ■ JOB

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; JOB

|                 |          |                    |
|-----------------|----------|--------------------|
| <b>DVPAPLEN</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b> |
| <b>DVRUNLEN</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b> |

## ■ PRDC-1

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; PRDC-1

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>PRM-WIRE</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Primary Charging Wire parts counter</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Primary Charging Wire<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | This is commonly used as operator maintenance parts counter.   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; PRDC-1

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>PO-WIRE</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Pre-transfer Charging Wire parts cntr</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Pre-transfer Charging Wire<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value                                      |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>PRM-CLN</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Primary Charge Wire Clean Pad prts cntr</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Pad 1, 2<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life                               |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>PO-CLN</b>                 | <b>1</b>   | <b>Pre-trn Charge Wire Clean Pad prts cntr</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Pre-transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Pad 1, 2<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life                          |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>FIX-TH1</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Fixing Main Thermistor parts counter</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Fixing Main Thermistor<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>FIX-TH2</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Fixing Sub Thermistor parts counter</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Fixing Sub Thermistor 1, 2<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; PRDC-1

| <b>OZ-FIL1</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Ozone Filter parts counter</b>  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Ozone Filter<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>AR-FIL1</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Primary Suction Air Filter prts cntr</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Dustproof Filter<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | This is commonly used as operator maintenance parts counter.   |

## ■ DRBL-1

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; DRBL-1

| <b>PRM-UNIT</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Primary Charging Assembly parts counter</b>   |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Primary Charging Assembly<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value                                       |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>PO-UNIT</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Pre-transfer Charging Ass'y parts cntr</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Pre-transfer Charging Assembly<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value                                  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; DRBL-1

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>T-CLN-BD</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>ETB Cleaning Blade parts counter</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | ETB Cleaning Blade<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>T-CN-BRU</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Brush Roller parts counter</b>       |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Brush Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>TR-BLT</b>                 | <b>1</b>   | <b>ETB parts counter</b>                |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | ETB<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                   | sheet  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> TR-BLT  |   |
| <b>TR-ROLL</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Transfer Roller parts counter</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Transfer Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | This is commonly used as operator maintenance parts counter.   |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; DRBL-1

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>PT-DRM</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Photosensitive Drum parts counter</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Photosensitive Drum<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>CLN-BLD</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Drum Cleaning Blade parts counter</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Drum Cleaning Blade<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>SP-CLAW</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Drum Separation Claw parts counter</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Drum Separation Claw<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>BS-SL-F</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Drum Front Side Seal parts counter</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Drum Front Side Seal<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>BS-SL-R</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Drum Rear Side Seal parts counter</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Drum Rear Side Seal<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; DRBL-1

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>DV-UNT-K</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Developing Cylinder parts counter</b>       |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Developing Cylinder<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                   | sheet  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>C1-PU-RL</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Right Deck Pickup Roller parts counter</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Right Deck Pickup Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.       |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                   | sheet  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>C1-SP-RL</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Right Deck Separation Roller parts cntr</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Right Deck Separation Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.       |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                   | sheet  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>C1-FD-RL</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Right Deck Feed Roller parts counter</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Right Deck Feed Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.       |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                   | sheet  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; DRBL-1

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>C2-PU-RL</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Left Deck Pickup Roller parts counter</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Left Deck Pickup Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                   | sheet  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>C2-SP-RL</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Left Deck Separation Roller prts counter</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Left Deck Separation Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value                                     |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                   | sheet  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>C2-FD-RL</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Left Deck Feed Roller parts counter</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Left Deck Feed Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                   | sheet  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |
| <b>C3-PU-RL</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Cassette 3 Pickup Roller parts counter</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Cassette 3 Pickup Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; DRBL-1

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>C3-SP-RL</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Cassette 3 Separation Roller parts cntr</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Cassette 3 Separation Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value                                    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>C3-FD-RL</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Cassette 3 Feed Roller parts counter</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Cassette 3 Feed Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>C4-PU-RL</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Cassette 4 Pickup Roller parts counter</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Cassette 4 Pickup Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>C4-SP-RL</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Cassette 4 Separation Roller parts cntr</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Cassette 4 Separation Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value                                    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>C4-FD-RL</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Cassette 4 Feed Roller parts counter</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | Cassette 4 Feed Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; DRBL-1

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>M-SP-RL</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Multi-purpose Tray Sprtn Roll prts cntr</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Multi-purpose Tray Separation Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value                            |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                   | sheet  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>M-FD-RL</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Multi-purpose Tray Feed Roll prts cntr</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Multi-purpose Tray Feed Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value                                  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                   | sheet  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>FX-UP-RL</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Fixing Roller parts counter</b>             |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Fixing Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |
| <b>FX-LW-RL</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Pressure Roller Unit parts counter</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | Pressure Roller Unit<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; DRBL-1

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>FX-IN-BS</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Fixing Roller Insulating Bush parts cntr</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | Fixing Roller Insulating Bush<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value                                   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 99999999  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>FX-L-STC</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Press Roller Static Eliminator prts cntr</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | Pressure Roller Static Eliminator (Front/Rear)<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value                  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 99999999  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>DLV-UCLW</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Upper Separation Claw parts counter</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | Upper Separation Claw<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 99999999  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>WST-TNR</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Waste Toner Container parts counter</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | 1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 99999999  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | image  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; DRBL-1

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>FX-RTNR</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Fixing Roller Thrust Stopper parts cntr</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Fixing Roller Thrust Retainer<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>EXP-SCRP</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Pre-exposure Scraper parts counter</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Pre-exposure Scraper<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>FX-WEB1</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Fixing Web fed sheet cntr: accumulated</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the accumulated number of fed sheets (converted on the basis of small size, including at the time of cleaning) as the number of take-ups of the Fixing Web.<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value<br>By pressing Clear key when replacing the Fixing Web/Fixing Assembly, the numbers of fed sheets are reset. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |

## ■ DRBL-2

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > COUNTER (Counter mode) > DRBL-2

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>DF-PU-RL</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Pickup Roller parts counter: All Reader</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | 1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.                    |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | Regardless of the read mode (1-sided/2-sided), the counter is advanced every time a sheet is fed.   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>DF-SP-RL</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Separation Roller parts counter: DADF</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | 1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.                    |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | Regardless of the read mode (1-sided/2-sided), the counter is advanced every time a sheet is fed.   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |
| <b>STAMP</b>                     | <b>1</b> | <b>Stamp parts counter: DADF</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the estimated life and parts counter of DADF stamp.<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life to be entered by operator |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | At replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.                    |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; DRBL-2

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>PD-PU-RL</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Pickup Roller parts counter: Deck</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Pickup Roller (Front/Rear) of Paper Deck/POD Deck Lite<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life                |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>PD-SP-RL</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Separation Roller parts counter: Deck</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Separation Roller of Paper Deck/POD Deck Lite<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life                         |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>PD-FD-RL</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Feed Roller parts counter: Deck</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Feed Roller of Paper Deck/POD Deck Lite<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life                               |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; DRBL-2

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>FIN-STPR</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Stapler parts counter: Fin-AC</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Stapler Unit<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | time   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>PUNCH</b>                     | <b>1</b> | <b>Punch Unit parts counter: Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Punch Unit<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | time   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>IS-P-RL1</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Pickup Roller parts counter: INS</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Pickup/Separation/Feed Roller<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; DRBL-2

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>IS-TQLM1</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Drv Torq Limt parts counter: INS</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Drive Torque Limiter<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>TRY-TQLM</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Tray Torque Limiter parts cntr: Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Stack Tray Torque Limiter<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value                                       |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | sheet  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |
| <b>FIN-MPDL</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Paddle parts counter: Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | Paddle<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 99999999  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | time   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 1  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; DRBL-2

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>FR-STPL</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Stpl-free Binding Unit prts cntr: Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | Staple-free Binding Unit<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 99999999  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | time   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1  |   |

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>SDL-STP</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Saddle Stitcher parts counter: Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | Saddle Stitcher Unit<br>1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life value  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 99999999  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | time   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1  |  |

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>HOLD-LVR</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Paper Retainer Lever cntr: Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | 1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement<br>2nd line: Estimated life  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.<br>To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | Clear the counter value after replacement.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 99999999  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0  |  |

## ■ MISC2

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; MISC2

|                 |          |                    |
|-----------------|----------|--------------------|
| <b>APW-TIME</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b> |
| <b>CPW-TIME</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b> |
| <b>BAT-TIME</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b> |
| <b>FUSE-CNT</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b> |
| <b>SPW-TIME</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b> |

## ■ LIFE

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > COUNTER (Counter mode) > LIFE

| TONER-K                       | 1 | Toner (Bk): Life VL and No. of days left  |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |   | To display the life value and the number of days left of Toner (Bk).<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value                        |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |   | When checking Life VL/No. of days left  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |   | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |   | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value       |
| WST-TNR                       | 1 | Waste Toner Container: Life VL/days left  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |   | To display the life value and the number of days left of Waste Toner Container.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value             |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |   | When checking Life VL/No. of days left  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |   | To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |   | - Clear the counters if the waste toner container is replaced when the Preparing Waste Toner Container warning or Waste Toner Full message is not displayed.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can be reset also by clearing the counters in COPIER> COUNTER> DRBL-1> WST-TNR. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |   | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |   | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value       |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>PT-DRM</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Drum Unit (Bk): Life VL/No. of days</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of Drum Unit (Bk).<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value              |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value |
| <b>PRM-WIRE</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Primary Charging Wire: Life VL/days left</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Primary Charging Wire.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| PRM-CLN                       | 1 | Pry Chg Wire Cln Pad: Life VL/days left   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |   | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Primary Charging Wire Cleaning Pad. The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |   | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |   | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |   | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |   | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |   | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value         |
| PRM-UNIT                      | 1 | P-Chg Ass'y: Life VL/days left  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |   | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Primary Charging Assembly. The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value          |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |   | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |   | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |   | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |   | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |   | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value         |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| <b>CLN-BLD</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>D-CIn Blade:Life VL and No. of days left</b>   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Drum Cleaning Blade.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value                   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value               |
| <b>BS-SL-F</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>D-CIn Ass'y Side Seal F:Life VL/days left</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Drum Cleaner Assembly Side Seal Front.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value               |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| <b>BS-SL-R</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>D-Cln Ass'y Side Seal R:Life VL/days left</b>   |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Drum Cleaner Assembly Side Seal Rear.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value              |
| <b>SP-CLAW</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Drum Sepn Claw:Life VL/No. of days left</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Drum Separation Claw.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value                 |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value              |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| <b>EXP-SCRP</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Pre-exp Scraper:Life VL/No. of days left</b>   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Pre-exposure Scraper.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value |
| <b>DV-UNT-K</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Dev Cylinder:Life VL/No. of days left</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Developing Cylinder.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value     |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Display only   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Operation Life Value, Number of Days Left and Life Value are reset automatically execute operation for initial installation of the Developing Cylinder.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| TR-BLT                        | 1   | ETB:Life VL and No. of days left   |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the life value and the number of days left of the ETB.   | The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value |  |
| TR-ROLL                       | 1   | Transfer Roller:Life VL/No. of days left   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Transfer Roller.   | The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| T-CLN-BD                      | 1   | ETB CIn Blade:Life VL/No. of days left |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the ETB Cleaning Blade.<br/>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>3rd column: Life Value<br/>4th column: Replacement Life Value</p> |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>- At parts replacement</p>  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br/>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br/>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p> |  |
| T-CN-BRU                      | 1   | Brush Roller:Life VL/No. of days left  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Brush Roller.<br/>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>3rd column: Life Value<br/>4th column: Replacement Life Value</p>       |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>- At parts replacement</p>  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br/>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br/>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p> |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| <b>PO-WIRE</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>P-trs Chg Ass'y:Life VL/No. of days left</b>   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value              |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value                     |
| <b>PO-CLN</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>P-trs Chg Wire Cln Pad:Life VL/days left</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Cleaning Pad.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value                     |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| PO-UNIT                       | 1  | P-trs Chg Ass'y:Life VL/No. of days left |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value        |  |
| FX-UP-RL                      | 1  | Fixing Roller: Life VL/No. of days left  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Fixing Roller.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value                  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value        |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| <b>FIX-TH1</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Fixing Main Thermistor:Life VL/days left</b>   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Fixing Main Thermistor.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value |
| <b>FIX-TH2</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Fixing Sub Thermistor:Life VL/days left</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Fixing Sub Assembly.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value     |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| FX-IN-BS                      | 1  | Fix RI Insulating Bush:Life VL/days left |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Fixing Roller Insulating Bush.<br/>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>3rd column: Life Value<br/>4th column: Replacement Life Value</p> |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>- At parts replacement</p>   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br/>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br/>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p>            |  |
| FX-RTNR                       | 1  | Fix Rol Thrust Rtnr: Life VL/days left   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Fixing Roller Thrust Retainer.<br/>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>3rd column: Life Value<br/>4th column: Replacement Life Value</p> |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>- At parts replacement</p>   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br/>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br/>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p>            |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| FX-LW-RL                      | 1  | Pressure Roller:Life VL/No. of days left |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Pressure Roller.<br/>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>3rd column: Life Value<br/>4th column: Replacement Life Value</p>                   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>- At parts replacement</p>   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br/>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br/>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p>                |  |
| FX-L-STC                      | 1  | Pres Roller Sttc Elim: Life VL/days left |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Pressure Roller Static Eliminator.<br/>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>3rd column: Life Value<br/>4th column: Replacement Life Value</p> |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>- At parts replacement</p>   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br/>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br/>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p>                |  |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>FX-WEB1</b>                | <b>1</b>   | <b>Fixing Web: Life VL and No. of days left</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Fixing Web.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value               |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)   |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value  |   |
| <b>C1-PU-RL</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>R-Deck Pickup Rol: Life VL/No. days left</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Right Deck Pickup Roller.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)   |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

|                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>C1-FD-RL</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>R-Deck Feed Roll: Life VL/No. days left</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Right Deck Feed Roller. The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value       |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value   |  |
| <b>C1-SP-RL</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>R-Deck Sepn Roll: Life VL/No. days left</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Right Deck Separation Roller. The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value   |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| C2-PU-RL                      | 1  | L-Deck Pickup Rol: Life VL/No. days left |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Left Deck Pickup Roller.<br/>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>3rd column: Life Value<br/>4th column: Replacement Life Value</p> |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>- At parts replacement</p>   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br/>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br/>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p>      |  |
| C2-FD-RL                      | 1  | L-Deck Feed Roll: Life VL/No. days left  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Left Deck Feed Roller.<br/>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>3rd column: Life Value<br/>4th column: Replacement Life Value</p>   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>- At parts replacement</p>   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br/>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br/>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p>      |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

|                               |  |   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>C2-SP-RL</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>L-Deck Sepn Roll: Life VL/No. days left</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Left Deck Separation Roller. The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)   |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value  |   |
| <b>C3-PU-RL</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Cst3 Pckup Rol: Life VL/No. of days left</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Cassette 3 Pickup Roller. The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value    |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)   |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value  |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| C3-SP-RL                      | 1  | Cst3 Sepn Roll: Life VL/No. of days left |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Cassette 3 Separation Roller. The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>           2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>           3rd column: Life Value<br/>           4th column: Replacement Life Value</p>   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>           - At parts replacement</p>  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>           - Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>           2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>           3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>           4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/> <math display="block">\text{Operation Life Value} = \frac{\text{Life Value}}{\text{Replacement Life Value}} \times 100</math>           Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>           Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p> |  |
| C3-FD-RL                      | 1  | Cst3 Feed Roll: Life VL/No. of days left |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Cassette 3 Feed Roller. The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>           2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>           3rd column: Life Value<br/>           4th column: Replacement Life Value</p>   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>           - At parts replacement</p>  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>           - Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>           2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>           3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>           4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/> <math display="block">\text{Operation Life Value} = \frac{\text{Life Value}}{\text{Replacement Life Value}} \times 100</math>           Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>           Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p> |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| C4-PU-RL                      | 1  | Cst4 Pckup Rol: Life VL/No. of days left |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Cassette 4 Pickup Roller. The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>           2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>           3rd column: Life Value<br/>           4th column: Replacement Life Value</p>   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>           - At parts replacement</p>  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>           - Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>           2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>           3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>           4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/> <math display="block">\text{Operation Life Value} = \frac{\text{Life Value}}{\text{Replacement Life Value}} \times 100</math>           Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>           Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p> |  |
| C4-FD-RL                      | 1  | Cst4 Feed Roll: Life VL/No. of days left |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Cassette 4 Feed Roller. The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>           2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>           3rd column: Life Value<br/>           4th column: Replacement Life Value</p>   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>           - At parts replacement</p>  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>   |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>           - Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>           2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>           3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>           4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/> <math display="block">\text{Operation Life Value} = \frac{\text{Life Value}}{\text{Replacement Life Value}} \times 100</math>           Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>           Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p> |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| C4-SP-RL                      | 1   | Cst4 Sepn Roll: Life VL/No. of days left |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Cassette 4 Separation Roller. The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>           2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>           3rd column: Life Value<br/>           4th column: Replacement Life Value</p>                                |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>           - At parts replacement</p>   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>           - Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>           2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>           3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>           4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/> <math>\text{Operation Life Value} = \frac{\text{Life Value}}{\text{Replacement Life Value}} \times 100</math><br/>           Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>           Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p> |  |
| M-FD-RL                       | 1   | MP Tray Fd Rol: Life VL/No of days left  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Multi-purpose Tray Feed Roller. The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>           2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>           3rd column: Life Value<br/>           4th column: Replacement Life Value</p>                              |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>           - At parts replacement</p>   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>           - Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>           2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>           3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>           4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/> <math>\text{Operation Life Value} = \frac{\text{Life Value}}{\text{Replacement Life Value}} \times 100</math><br/>           Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>           Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p> |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| M-SP-RL                       | 1 | MP Tray Sepn Rol:Life VL/No of days left  |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |   | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Roller. The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |   | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |   | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |   | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |   | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |   | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value           |
| DLV-UCLW                      | 1 | Upper Sepn Claw:Life VL/No. of days left  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |   | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Upper Separation Claw. The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value                |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |   | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |   | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key. To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |   | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |   | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |   | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value           |



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| <b>OZ-FIL1</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Ozone Filter: Life VL/No. of days left</b>   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Ozone Filter.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>$\text{Operation Life Value} = \text{Life Value} / \text{Replacement Life Value} \times 100$<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value |
| <b>AR-FIL1</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Dustproof Fit: Life VL/No. of days left</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Dustproof Filter.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value                                      |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>$\text{Operation Life Value} = \text{Life Value} / \text{Replacement Life Value} \times 100$<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| DF-PU-RL                      | 1   | Pickup Roller (DADF): Life VL/days left  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Pickup Roller (DADF).<br/>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>3rd column: Life Value<br/>4th column: Replacement Life Value</p>     |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>- At parts replacement</p>  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br/>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 106<br/>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>Replacement Life Value: Target re</p>                           |  |
| DF-SP-RL                      | 1   | Separation Rol (DADF): Life VL/days left |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Separation Roller (DADF).<br/>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>3rd column: Life Value<br/>4th column: Replacement Life Value</p> |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>- At parts replacement</p>  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br/>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 118<br/>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>Replacement Life Value: Target re</p>                           |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

|                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>PD-PU-RL</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Pickup Roller (Deck): Life VL/days left</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Pickup Roller (Deck).<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value          |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 135<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target re                           |   |
| <b>PD-SP-RL</b>               | <b>1</b>  | <b>Sprtn Roll Part (Deck):Life VL/days left</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Separation Roller Part (Deck).<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 143<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target re                           |   |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| PD-FD-RL                      | 1   | Feed Roller (Deck): Life VL/days left |
|-------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Feed Roller.<br/>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br/>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>3rd column: Life Value<br/>4th column: Replacement Life Value</p>           |                                       |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>- At parts replacement</p>  |                                       |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br/>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>  |                                       |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>  |                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>  |                                       |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 150<br/>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>Replacement Life Value: Target re</p>                     |                                       |
| FIN-STPR                      | 1   | Stapler: Life VL/No. of days left     |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Feed Roller.<br/>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br/>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>3rd column: Life Value<br/>4th column: Replacement Life Value</p>           |                                       |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>- At parts replacement</p>  |                                       |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br/>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>  |                                       |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>  |                                       |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>  |                                       |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br/>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p> |                                       |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| <b>SDL-STP</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Saddle Stitcher : Life VL/No. of days</b>  |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Feed Roller.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value             |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value |
| <b>FR-STPL</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Stpl-free Binding: Life VL/No. of days</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Feed Roller.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value             |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| TRY-TQLM                      | 1   | Tray Torque Limiter: Life VL/No. of days |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Feed Roller.<br/>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>3rd column: Life Value<br/>4th column: Replacement Life Value</p>        |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>- At parts replacement</p>  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br/>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br/>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p> |  |
| FIN-MPDL                      | 1   | Paddle: Life VL/No. of days left         |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Feed Roller.<br/>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.</p> <p>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>3rd column: Life Value<br/>4th column: Replacement Life Value</p>        |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>- At parts replacement</p>  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br/>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br/>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p> |  |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| <b>PUNCH</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Punch Unit: Life VL/No. of days left</b>   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Feed Roller.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value             |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value |
| <b>HOLD-LVR</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Paper Retainer Lever: Life VL/days left</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To display the life value and the number of days left of the Paper Retainer Lever.<br>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br>1st column: Operation Life Value<br>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br>3rd column: Life Value<br>4th column: Replacement Life Value    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br>- At parts replacement  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value |

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; LIFE

| IS-TQLM1                      | 1   | Torque Limiter: Life VL/No. of days left |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Feed Roller.<br/>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br/>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>3rd column: Life Value<br/>4th column: Replacement Life Value</p>   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>- At parts replacement</p>  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br/>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br/>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p>   |  |
| IS-P-RL1                      | 1   | Pick RI (INS, PF/INS): Life VL/days left |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | <p>To display the life value and the number of days left of the Upper Tray Pickup/Separation/Feed Roller (Document Insertion Unit-N1).<br/>The 3rd and 4th columns may be hidden depending on the country.<br/>1st column: Operation Life Value<br/>2nd column: Number of Days Left<br/>3rd column: Life Value<br/>4th column: Replacement Life Value</p> |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | <p>- When checking Life VL/No. of days left of the part<br/>- At parts replacement</p>  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | <p>To change the Replacement Life Value: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.<br/>To reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value: Select the item, and then press Clear key.</p>  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | <p>- Be sure to reset Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value after replacing the part.<br/>- Operation Life Value/Number of Days Left/Life Value can also be reset by clearing the parts counter.</p>  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | <p>1st column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>2nd column: 0 to 999 (days)<br/>3rd column: 0 to 999 (%)<br/>4th column: 50 to 999 (%)</p>  |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        | <p>Operation Life Value: Wear level value relative to Replacement Life Value (%)<br/>Operation Life Value = Life Value/Replacement Life Value x 100<br/>Number of Days Left: Expected number of days until the part reaches its end of life<br/>Replacement Life Value: Target replacement life value</p>   |  |



## FEEDER (ADF service mode)

### ● DISPLAY (State display mode)

FEEDER (ADF service mode) > DISPLAY (State display mode)

|                                  |          |   |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>FEEDSIZE</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Dspl orgnl size detected by DADF</b>                               |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the original size detected by the DADF.                    |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When checking the paper size recognized by the device after scanning  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>TRY-WIDE</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Distance of Original Width Detect Slider</b>                       |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To display the distance between the Original Width Detection Sliders. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | At incorrect detection of original size                               |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | N/A (Display only)  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 2970   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | mm  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 0.1   |

### ● ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

FEEDER (ADF service mode) > ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>DOCST</b>                     | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj of DADF img lead edge margin: front</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To adjust the leading edge margin on the front side at DADF reading.<br>Execute this item when the output image after DADF installation is displaced.<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin is reduced by 0.1 mm. (The image moves upward.) |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | - When installing DADF<br>- When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | -50 to 50  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | mm   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 0.1  |
| <b>LA-SPEED</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Fine adj img ratio: DADF,vert scan,front</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To make a fine adjustment of the front side image magnification ratio in vertical scanning direction at DADF reading.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the image is reduced by 0.1% in vertical scanning direction. (The feeding speed increases, and the image is reduced.)   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | - When installing DADF<br>- When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | -30 to 30  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | %  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 0.1  |

FEEDER (ADF service mode) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

|                                  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>DOCST2</b>                    | <b>1</b>  | <b>Adj of DADF img lead edge margin: back</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the leading edge margin on the back side at DADF reading.<br>Execute this item when the output image after DADF installation is displaced.<br>When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the margin is reduced by 0.1 mm. (The image moves upward.) |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | - When installing DADF<br>- When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1   |   |
| <b>LA-SPD2</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Fine adj img ratio: DADF,vert scan,back</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To make a fine adjustment of the back side image magnification ratio in vertical scanning direction at DADF reading.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the image is reduced by 0.01% in vertical scanning direction. (The feeding speed increases, and the image is reduced.)  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | - When installing DADF<br>- When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -200 to 200 (-2.00 to 2.00%)  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | %   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.01  |   |
| <b>ADJMCSN1</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Fine adj img ratio:2-sided,horz scan,frt</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To make a fine adjustment of the front side image magnification ratio in horizontal scanning direction at DADF 2-sided reading.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the image is enlarged by 0.1% in horizontal scanning direction.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When image magnification ratio on the front side and back side are different at 2-sided reading   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | %   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1   |   |
| <b>ADJMCSN2</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Fine adj img ratio:2-sided,horz scan,bck</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To make a fine adjustment of the back side image magnification ratio in horizontal scanning direction at DADF 2-sided reading.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the image is enlarged by 0.1% in horizontal scanning direction.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When image magnification ratio on the front side and back side are different at 2-sided reading   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | %   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1   |   |

FEEDER (ADF service mode) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>ADJ-T1</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj of DADF img lead edge margin: front</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the leading edge margin of image after skew correction (front side).<br>When the value is increased by 1, leading edge margin is increased by 0.1 mm.<br>When the value is decreased by 1, leading edge margin is decreased by 0.1 mm. |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When adjusting the leading edge margin   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Setting the value too high or too low may cause cropped image.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -15 to 15  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |
| <b>ADJ-T2</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj of DADF img lead edge margin: back</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the leading edge margin of image after skew correction (back side).<br>When the value is increased by 1, leading edge margin is increased by 0.1 mm.<br>When the value is decreased by 1, leading edge margin is decreased by 0.1 mm.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When adjusting the leading edge margin   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Setting the value too high or too low may cause cropped image.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -15 to 15  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |
| <b>ADJ-L1</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj of DADF img left edge margin: front</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the left edge margin of image after skew correction (on front side).<br>When the value is increased by 1, left edge margin is increased by 0.1 mm.<br>When the value is decreased by 1, left edge margin is decreased by 0.1 mm.       |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When adjusting the position of scanned image's left edge   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Setting the value too high or too low may cause cropped image.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -30 to 30  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |
| <b>ADJ-L2</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj of DADF img left edge margin: back</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the left edge margin of image after skew correction (on back side).<br>When the value is increased by 1, left edge margin is increased by 0.1 mm.<br>When the value is decreased by 1, left edge margin is decreased by 0.1 mm.        |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When adjusting the position of scanned image's left edge   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Setting the value too high or too low may cause cropped image.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -30 to 30  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |

FEEDER (ADF service mode) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>ADJ-PAR1</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Parallelogram crrect for DADF read: front</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To perform parallelogram correction on image after skew correction (front side).<br>When the value is increased by 1, image is corrected clockwise by 0.1 degree.<br>When the value is decreased by 1, image is corrected counterclockwise by 0.1 degree. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When scanned image is parallelogram-shaped  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Setting the value too high or too low may cause cropped image.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -30 to 30   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>ADJ-PAR2</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Parallelogram crrect for DADF read: back</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To perform parallelogram correction on image after skew correction (back side).<br>When the value is increased by 1, image is corrected clockwise by 0.1 degree.<br>When the value is decreased by 1, image is corrected counterclockwise by 0.1 degree.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When scanned image is parallelogram-shaped  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Setting the value too high or too low may cause cropped image.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -30 to 30   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>ADJ-ROT1</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Angle correction for DADF reading: front</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To correct rotation angle on image after skew correction (front side).<br>When the value is increased by 1, image is corrected clockwise by 0.01 degree.<br>When the value is decreased by 1, image is corrected counterclockwise by 0.01 degree.         |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When scanned image is missing part of its trailing edge   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Setting the value too high or too low may cause cropped image.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -300 to 300   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>ADJ-ROT2</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Angle correction for DADF reading: back</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To correct rotation angle on image after skew correction (back side).<br>When the value is increased by 1, image is corrected clockwise by 0.01 degree.<br>When the value is decreased by 1, image is corrected counterclockwise by 0.01 degree.          |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When scanned image is missing part of its trailing edge   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Setting the value too high or too low may cause cropped image.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -300 to 300   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>ADJ-DT</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Skew adj val: bck lead edge register dif</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To correct the skew difference of the front and back by correcting the difference of leading edge registration.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When writing the values on the service label after executing ADJ-SKW.<br>- When clearing RAM data of the Reader / replacing the Reader Controller PCB   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Do not change the adjustment values of this mode for image position adjustment.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -255 to 255   |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | FEEDER->FUNCTION->ADJ-SKW   |

FEEDER (ADF service mode) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>ADJ-DL</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Skew adj val: bck left edge register dif</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To correct the skew difference of the front and back by correcting the difference of left edge registration.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When writing the values on the service label after executing ADJ-SKW.<br>- When clearing RAM data of the Reader / replacing the Reader Controller PCB  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Do not change the adjustment values of this mode for image position adjustment.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -255 to 255  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | FEEDER->FUNCTION->ADJ-SKW  |
| <b>ADJ-DROT</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Skew adj value: back, angle difference</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To correct the skew difference of the front and back by correcting the difference of angles.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When writing the values on the service label after executing ADJ-SKW.<br>- When clearing RAM data of the Reader / replacing the Reader Controller PCB  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Do not change the adjustment values of this mode for image position adjustment.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -255 to 255  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | FEEDER->FUNCTION->ADJ-SKW  |
| <b>LA-SPDT1</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Fine adj img ro: DADF,vert scan,frt,hvy</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To make a fine adjustment of the front side image magnification ratio in vertical scanning direction at DADF reading (when feeding heavy paper).<br>As value is incremented by 1, image shrinks by 0.01%.<br>As value is decreased by 1, image expands by 0.01%. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When installing the DADF<br>- When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value (switch positive/negative by +/- key) and press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -200 to 200  |
| <b>Unit</b>                   |          | %  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>LA-SPDT2</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Fine adj img ro: DADF,vert scan,back,hvy</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To make a fine adjustment of the back side image magnification ratio in vertical scanning direction at DADF reading (when feeding heavy paper).<br>As value is incremented by 1, image shrinks by 0.01%.<br>As value is decreased by 1, image expands by 0.01%.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When installing the DADF<br>- When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value (switch positive/negative by +/- key) and press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -200 to 200  |
| <b>Unit</b>                   |          | %  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |

## FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode)

FEEDER (ADF service mode) > FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode)

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>MTR-CHK</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Specification of DADF operation motor</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To specify the motor of DADF to operate.<br>The motor is activated by MTR-ON.                                   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | At operation check  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 3<br>0: Pickup Motor (M401)<br>1: Pullout Motor (M402)<br>2: Read Motor (M403)<br>3: Delivery Motor (M404) |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | FEEDER> FUNCTION> MTR-ON  |
| <b>TRY-A4</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj of DADF Tray width detect ref 1: A4</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To automatically adjust the paper width detection reference point 1 for the DADF Original Pickup Tray. (A4)     |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing the Original Width Volume (VR)<br>- When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>TRY-A5R</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj of DADF Tray width detect ref 2: A5R</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To automatically adjust the paper width detection reference point 2 for the DADF Original Pickup Tray. (A5R)    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing the Original Width Volume (VR)<br>- When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>TRY-LTR</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj of DADF Tray width detect ref 1: LTR</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To automatically adjust the paper width detection reference point 1 for the DADF Original Pickup Tray. (LTR)    |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing the Original Width Volume (VR)<br>- When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>TRY-LTRR</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj of DADF Tray width detect ref2: LTRR</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To automatically adjust the paper width detection reference point 2 for the DADF Original Pickup Tray. (LTRR)   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing the Original Width Volume (VR)<br>- When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>FEED-CHK</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Specify DADF individual feed operation</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To specify the feed mode for DADF.<br>Feed operation is activated by FEED-ON.                                   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | At operation check  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 2<br>0: 1-sided pickup/delivery operation, 1: Not used, 2: 1-sided pickup/delivery operation (with stamp)  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | FEEDER> FUNCTION> FEED-ON   |

FEEDER (ADF service mode) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode)

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>SL-CHK</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Specification of DADF operation solenoid</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To specify the solenoid of DADF to operate.<br>The solenoid is activated by SL-ON.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | At operation check   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0: Stamp Solenoid  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | FEEDER> FUNCTION> SL-ON  |
| <b>SL-ON</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Operation check of DADF solenoid</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To start operation check of the solenoid specified by SL-CHK.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | At operation check   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>It is driven for approximately 5 seconds and is automatically stopped.<br>2) Press OK key.<br>The operation check is completed.                  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to press the OK key again after execution. The operation automatically stops after approximately 5 seconds, but is not completed unless the OK key is pressed (STOP is not displayed). |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | FEEDER> FUNCTION> SL-CHK   |
| <b>MTR-ON</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Operation check of DADF motor</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To start operation check of the motor specified by MTR-CHK.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | At operation check   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>It is driven for approximately 5 seconds and is automatically stopped.<br>2) Press OK key.<br>The operation check is completed.                  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to press the OK key again after execution. The operation automatically stops after approximately 5 seconds, but is not completed unless the OK key is pressed (STOP is not displayed). |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | FEEDER> FUNCTION> MTR-CHK  |
| <b>ROLL-CLN</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Rotation of DADF rollers</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To rotate the rollers of DADF for cleaning.<br>Check the rollers with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol while they are rotating.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When cleaning the rollers  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Clean the rotating rollers with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.<br>3) Press OK key.<br>The rollers stop.                              |
| <b>FEED-ON</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Operation check of DADF individual feed</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To start operation check of the feed mode specified by FEED-CHK.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | At operation check   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | FEEDER> FUNCTION> FEED-CHK   |

FEEDER (ADF service mode) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode)

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>TRY-A4R</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Auto-adj DADF Tr ppr wid dtct ref (A4R)</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To automatically adjust the paper width detection reference for the DADF Original Pickup Tray (A4R).   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing the ADF Original Pickup Tray<br>- When replacing the Main Controller PCB  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Place an A4R-size original on the ADF tray and adjust the tray to the original's width.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | If configured with an original that is not either A4R- or A5-size placed, the size detection on the ADF tray does not detect paper size properly.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 9999  |
| <b>TRY-STMR</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Auto-adj DADF Tr ppr wid dtct ref STMR</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To automatically adjust the paper width detection reference for the DADF Original Pickup Tray (STMR).  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing the ADF Original Pickup Tray<br>- When replacing the Main Controller PCB  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Place an STMR-size original on the ADF tray and adjust the tray to the original's width.<br>2) Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | If configured with a non-STMR-size original placed, the size detection on the ADF tray does not detect paper size properly.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 9999  |
| <b>ADJ-SKW</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Skew adj: frt / bck diff correct adjust</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To correct the skew difference of the front and back by extracting the difference and calculate the correction value.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | - When replacing the Scanner Unit (Paper Front)<br>- When replacing the Scanner Unit (Paper Back)<br>- When replacing the Scanner Glass (Paper Back)<br>- When installing the 1-path DADF  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Place the red paper (A4) included with the Original Tray and execute the following service modes.<br>2) Write the following adjusted values on the service label after executing the modes.<br>FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DT<br>FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DL<br>FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DROT |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Do not open/close the ADF during the setup operation.<br>- "NG" occurs if the red paper (A4) included with the unit is not used.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | Operating: ACTIVE, Terminated normally: OK, Terminated abnormally: NG  |

## OPTION (Specification setting mode)

FEEDER (ADF service mode) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode)

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>SIZE-SW</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>ON/OFF of mixed paper detection: AB/Inch</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set whether to detect mixed media detection: AB configuration and Inch configuration. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When mixing AB and Inch configuration sizes original                                     |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |



FEEDER (ADF service mode) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode)

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>R-ATM</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Set DADF double feed dtct highland mode</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the Double Feed Sensor of the DADF to the highland mode.<br>Set 1 if the installation site is above the altitude of 2000 meters.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When the installation site is above the altitude of 2000 meters at installation  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Normal, 1: Highland mode  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>R-OVLPLV</b>               | <b>2</b> | <b>Set DADF double feed dtct threshold VL</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the threshold value at which the Double Feed Sensor of the DADF judges whether papers are double fed.<br>Decrease the value if single feed of paper is incorrectly detected as double feed.<br>Increase the value if double feed of paper is incorrectly detected as single feed. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When double feed is incorrectly detected with special paper not defined in the specifications  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | In the case of highlands, be sure to set R-ATM in advance.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | -3 to 3  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | FEEDER> OPTION> R-ATM  |
| <b>DF-STPL</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b>   |
| <b>SKW-SW</b>                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Sw skew correct func for ADF stream read</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To enable/disable the ADF skew correction function for ADF stream reading.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When one wishes to examine an image printed with the ADF skew correction function disabled   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Perform image adjustment.<br>3) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Tuning the main power switch OFF/ON automatically sets the value to 0.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Enable, 1: Disable  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |

## SORTER (Service mode for delivery options)

### ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) > ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>PNCH-Y</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj Punch hole horz reg: Fin-AC</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the punch hole position of the Puncher Unit in horizontal registration direction.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the punch hole shifts by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Toward rear<br>-: Toward front |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the punch hole is misaligned in the horizontal registration direction   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | When the setting of "PUN-Y-SW" is 0, the adjustable range is from -3 to 15.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -25 to 25  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | SORTER> OPTION> PUN-Y-SW   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |
| <b>STP-F1</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj Front 1-staple position: Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the front 1-staple position on Finisher.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the staple position shifts by 0.1mm.<br>+: Toward rear<br>-: Toward front                                      |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the front staple position is displaced  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -30 to 30  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |
| <b>STP-R1</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj Rear 1-staple position: Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the rear 1-staple position on Finisher.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the staple position shifts by 0.1mm.<br>+: Toward rear<br>-: Toward front                                       |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the rear staple position is displaced   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -30 to 30  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>STP-2P</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj Front/Rear 2-staple pstn: Fin-AC</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the front/rear 2-staple position on Finisher.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the staple position shifts by 0.1mm.<br>+: Toward rear<br>-: Toward front   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the front/rear 2-staple position is displaced   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -30 to 30  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |
| <b>BFF-SFT</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj Buffer ppr displc: 1-2 sht, Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the paper displacement amount on Finisher Buffer Assembly.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the paper position shifts by 0.1mm.<br>+: The 1st sheet of buffered paper shifts toward the delivery side for the 2nd sheet of paper<br>-: The 1st sheet of buffered paper shifts toward the inlet side for the 2nd sheet of paper |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the paper displacement occurs on the 1st to 2nd sheets of buffered paper  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -60 to 60  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |
| <b>PNCH-X</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj Punch hole pstn in fd way: Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the punch hole position on puncher unit in feed direction.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the punch hole shifts by 0.1mm.<br>+: Toward delivery direction<br>-: Toward inlet direction   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the punch hole is displaced in feed direction   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | When setting the punch mode to the precision priority, this adjustment cannot be executed.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -20 to 20  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | SORTER> OPTION> PUCH-SW  |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Action> Switch Finisher Puncher Mode  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |
| <b>BFF-SFT2</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj Buffer ppr displc: 2-3 sht, Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the paper displacement amount on Finisher Buffer Assembly.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the paper position shifts by 0.1mm.<br>+: The 2nd sheet of buffered paper shifts toward the delivery side for the 3rd sheet of paper<br>-: The 2nd sheet of buffered paper shifts toward the inlet side for the 3rd sheet of paper |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the paper displacement occurs on the 2nd to 3rd sheets of buffered paper  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -60 to 60  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>SDL-STP</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj Saddle Sttch stpl pstn: Fin-AC</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the staple position of Saddle Stitcher.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the staple position shifts by 0.1mm.<br>+: The staple position shifts toward the left at open page of the book<br>-: The staple position shifts toward the right at open page of the book |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the staple position of the Saddle Stitcher is displaced   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -20 to 20  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | SORTER> ADJUST> SDL-STP2   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | Because the staple position of the thin paper is changed by this adjustment at the same time, perform the adjustment of SDL-STP2 as needed after performing this adjustment if the staple position of the thin paper has been adjusted by SDL-STP2.                          |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |
| <b>SDL-FLD</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj Saddle Sttch fold pstn: Fin-AC</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the fold position of Saddle Stitcher.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the fold position shifts by 0.1 mm.<br>+: The fold position shifts toward the left at open page of the book<br>-: The fold position shifts toward the right at open page of the book        |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the fold position of the Saddle Stitcher is displaced   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -20 to 20  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | SORTER> ADJUST> SDL-FLD2   |  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | Because the fold position of the thin paper is changed by this adjustment at the same time, perform the adjustment of SDL-FLD2 as needed after performing this adjustment if the fold position of the thin paper has been adjusted by SDL-FLD2.                              |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |
| <b>SDL-ALG</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj of Saddle Sttch align wid: Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the alignment width of Saddle Stitcher.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the alignment width changes by 0.1 mm.<br>+: The width of the alignment plate becomes narrow.<br>-: The width of the alignment plate becomes wide.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the misalignment occurs within a paper stack on the Saddle Stitcher   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -20 to 20  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |  |

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>ST-ALG1</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj Stacker A4 align pstn: Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the A4 size paper alignment position of the Processing Tray.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the position of the alignment plate moves by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Inward (The width of the alignment plates becomes narrow.)<br>-: Outward (The width of the alignment plates becomes wide.)  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When misalignment occurs in A4 size paper  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) The alignment plate moves to position of the A4 width.<br>3) Set the A4 paper on the processing tray.<br>4) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>5) Check the adjustment movement of the alignment plate.<br>6) Repeat steps 4) and 5) and adjust alignment width.<br>7) After completion of the adjustment, remove paper on the processing tray.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |
| <b>ST-ALG2</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj Stacker LTR align pstn: Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the LTR size paper alignment position of the Processing Tray.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the position of the alignment plate moves by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Inward (The width of the alignment plates becomes narrow.)<br>-: Outward (The width of the alignment plates becomes wide.)   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When misalignment occurs in LTR size paper   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) The alignment plate moves to position of the LTR width.<br>3) Set the LTR paper on the processing tray.<br>4) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>5) Check the adjustment movement of the alignment plate.<br>6) Repeat steps 4) and 5) and adjust alignment width.<br>7) After completion of the adjustment, remove paper on the processing tray. |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 50  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |
| <b>SW-UP-RL</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj of Swing Unit height: Fin-AC</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the height of the Swing Unit.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the height of the swing unit changes by angle of 0.1 degree.<br>+: Downward<br>-: Upward  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When misalignment occurs by failure of the paper feeding to processing tray  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -30 to 30  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

|                                  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>NST-SPD</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Adj dvry speed at non-collate: Fin-AC</b>    |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the delivery speed to the stack tray at non-collated mode.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the delivery speed changes by 10 mm/sec.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the paper stacking at non-collated mode is misalignment  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm/s  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 10  |   |
| <b>FR-ST-PS</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Adj Staple-free Binding pressure: Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the binding pressure at the staple-free binding mode.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the binding pressure changes by 1 mNm.<br>+: Increased<br>-: Decreased                               |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request (When changing the binding pressure)  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | The life of staple-free binding unit becomes shorter when increasing the setting value.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -15 to 15   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mNm   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |   |
| <b>FR-STP-Y</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Adj Stpl-free Bind pstn (F/R way):Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the binding position for front/rear direction at the staple-free binding mode.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the binding position shifts by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Toward rear<br>-: Toward front |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the binding position in front/rear direction is displaced at the staple-free binding mode  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -20 to 15   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1   |   |

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>RBLT-PRS</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj Return Belt height 1:Fin-AC</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To adjust the height of the Return Belt when stacking the 65 sheets on the processing tray. As the value is changed by 1, the height of the return belt changes by angle of 0.1 degree.<br>+: Downward<br>-: Upward<br>When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB/clearing the RAM data of the Finisher Controller PCB, enter the value of service label.      |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When the paper alignment position is displaced.<br>When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB/clearing the RAM data of the Finisher Controller PCB.  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | The height of Return Belt of the stacking 1 sheet adjust in the RBLT-PS3. The height of Return Belt at the stacking 2 to 64 sheets alignment on the processing tray is the total of setting values of RBLT-PRS and PBLT-PS3,<br>After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | -50 to 100   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | °  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | SORTER> ADJUST> RBLT-PS2,RBLT-PS3  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | The height of Return Belt when stacking the first sheet of paper or buffering the paper: The height of Return Belt is double of the setting value. (Escape position of Return Belt)<br>The height of Return Belt when stacking the sheet of paper except for first sheet: The height of Return Belt is the setting value. (Paper feed position of Return Belt) |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 0.1  |
| <b>MSTP-2P</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj manual staple position: Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To adjust the staple position for front/rear direction at the manual staple mode. As the value is changed by 1, the staple position shifts by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Toward rear<br>-: Toward front   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When the staple position for front/rear direction is displaced at the manual staple mode   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | -20 to 30  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | mm   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 0.1  |

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

| <b>CENT-ALG</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj align plates ctr stdrd pstn: Fin-AC</b>   |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To adjust the center standard position of the alignment plates.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the center standard position of the alignment plates shifts by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Toward rear<br>-: Toward front   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | - When the center standard position of the alignment plates is misaligned<br>- When the paper alignment position is displaced  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Do not use this at the normal service work to influence the alignment operation greatly.<br>Adjust the alignment width with ST-ALG1/ST-ALG2 normally.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | -50 to 50  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | mm   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | SORTER> ADJUST> ST-ALG1/ST-ALG2  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 0.1  |
| <b>SDL-STP2</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Adj Saddle Sttch stpl pstn: Thin, Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To adjust the staple position of Saddle Stitcher (when using the thin paper; the paper that the paper weight is less than 64 g/m <sup>2</sup> ).<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the staple position moves by 0.1mm.<br>+: The staple position moves toward the left at open page of the book<br>-: The staple position moves toward the right at open page of the book                   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When the staple position of the Saddle Stitcher is displaced with the thin paper   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | -20 to 20  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      |          | mm   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | SORTER> ADJUST> SDL-STP  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | Perform this adjustment after performing the adjustment of SDL-STP.<br>Because the staple position of the thin paper is adjusted by the total setting values of SDL-STP and SDL-STP2, the actual adjustment of the staple position is performed in the staple position adjustable range (-20 to 20) even if entering the setting value beyond the mechanical staple position adjustable range. |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> |          | 0.1  |



SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>SDL-FLD2</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj Saddle Sttch fold pstn: Thin, Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the fold position of Saddle Stitcher (when using the thin paper; the paper that the paper weight is less than 64 g/m <sup>2</sup> ).<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the fold position moves by 0.1 mm.<br>+: The fold position moves toward the left at open page of the book<br>-: The fold position moves toward the right at open page of the book                  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the fold position of the Saddle Stitcher is displaced with the thin paper   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -20 to 20  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | SORTER> ADJUST> SDL-FLD  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | Perform this adjustment after performing the adjustment of SDL-FLD.<br>Because the fold position of the thin paper is adjusted by the total setting values of SDL-FLD and SDL-FLD2, the actual adjustment of the fold position is performed in the fold position adjustable range (-20 to 20) even if entering the setting value beyond the mechanical fold position adjustable range. |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |
| <b>ESC1-SPD</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj Low Escape Tr delivery speed: Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the delivery speed to the lower escape tray.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the delivery speed to the lower escape tray changes by 10 mm/sec.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the paper stacking to the lower escape tray is misalignment   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 0   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm/s   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 10   |   |
| <b>ESC2-SPD</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj Upr Escape Tr delivery speed: Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the delivery speed to the upper escape tray.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the delivery speed to the upper escape tray changes by 10 mm/sec.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the paper stacking to the upper escape tray is misalignment   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm/s   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 10   |   |

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

|                                  |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>SFT-SPD</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj dvry speed at collate mode: Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the delivery speed to the stack tray at collate mode.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the delivery speed changes by 10 mm/sec.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the paper stacking of stack tray at collate mode is misalignment  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | - When the value is decreased, the productivity is decreased.<br>- When the buffer operation is performed, delivery speed does not change. (The buffer operation is the operation to deliver the stacking paper on the processing tray.)<br>The ON/OFF of buffer operation is set by BUFF-SW.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -5 to 5  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm/s   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | SORTER> OPTION> BUFF-SW  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 10   |   |
| <b>STP-SPD</b>                   | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj dvry speed at staple mode: Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the delivery speed to the stack tray at staple mode or staple-free binding mode.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the delivery speed changes by 10 mm/sec.   |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the paper stacking at staple mode or staple-free binding mode is misalignment   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | - When the value is decreased, the productivity is decreased.<br>- When the buffer operation is performed, delivery speed does not change. (The buffer operation is the operation to deliver the stacking paper on the processing tray.)<br>The ON/OFF of buffer operation is set by BUFF-SW.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -5 to 5  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm/s   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | SORTER> OPTION> BUFF-SW  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 10   |   |
| <b>RBLT-PS2</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj of Return Belt height 2:Fin-AC</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the height of the Return Belt when aligning the paper on the processing tray.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the height of the return belt changes by angle of 0.1 degree.<br>+: Downward<br>-: Upward<br>When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB/clearing the RAM data of the Finisher Controller PCB, enter the value of service label. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the misalignment of paper stack occurs during alignment operation on the processing tray.<br>When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB/clearing the RAM data of the Finisher Controller PCB.   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | The height of Return Belt during the paper alignment on the processing tray is the total of setting values of RBLT-PRS2 and PBLT-PS3, so adjust again the setting value of RBLT-PS2 if necessary when changing the setting value of RBLT-PRS3.<br>After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.                      |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -30 to 30  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | °  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | SORTER> ADJUST> RBLT-PRS,RBLT-PS3  |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | Perform this adjustment after executing adjustment of RBLT-PRS.  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1  |   |

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

|                                  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>RBLT-PS3</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Adj of Return Belt height 3:Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the height of the Return Belt when stacking the 1 sheet on the processing tray.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the height of the return belt changes by angle of 0.1 degree.<br>+: Downward<br>-: Upward<br>When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB/clearing the RAM data of the Finisher Controller PCB, enter the value of service label.  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the paper alignment position is displaced.<br>When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB/clearing the RAM data of the Finisher Controller PCB.   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | The height of Return Belt of the stacking 65 sheets adjust in the RBLT-PRS. The height of Return Belt at the stacking 2 to 64 sheets alignment on the processing tray is the total of setting values of RBLT-PRS and RBLT-PS3. So adjust again the setting value of RBLT-PS2 if necessary when changing the setting value of RBLT-PS3.<br>After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label. |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -50 to 100  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | °   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      | SORTER> ADJUST> RBLT-PRS,RBLT-PS2   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1   |   |
| <b>NT-BF-HT</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Neat align plate acpt pstn: Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the paper acceptance position of the neat alignment plate.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the acceptance position height of the neat alignment plate is changed by 0.674 degree.<br>+: Move down<br>-: Move up  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the leading edge of the buffer paper is trapped on the alignment plate   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -16 to 16   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.674   |   |
| <b>NEAT-R</b>                    | <b>1</b>  | <b>Neat rear align plate pstn: Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the rear alignment plate position of the neat alignment unit.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the rear alignment plate position moves by 0.208mm.<br>+: Inward (The width of the alignment plate becomes narrower.)<br>-: Outward (The width of the alignment plate becomes wider.)  |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the Neat controller PCB  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | - Do not use this at the normal service work to influence the alignment operation greatly.<br>- Adjust the alignment width with "Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Action> Finisher Tray C Alignment Adjustment" normally.<br>- After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10   |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Action> Finisher Tray C Alignment Adjustment   |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.208   |   |

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

|                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>NEAT-F</b>                    | <b>1</b>   | <b>Neat front align plate pstn: Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the front alignment plate position of the neat alignment unit.<br>As the value is incremented by 1, the front alignment plate position moves by 0.208mm.<br>+: Inward (The width of the alignment plate becomes narrower.)<br>-: Outward (The width of the alignment plate becomes wider.)           |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When replacing the Neat controller PCB   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | - Do not use this at the normal service work to influence the alignment operation greatly.<br>- Adjust the alignment width with "Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Action> Finisher Tray C Alignment Adjustment" normally.<br>- After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label. |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -10 to 10  |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Action> Finisher Tray C Alignment Adjustment  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.208  |  |
| <b>NEAT-HGT</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Neat align plate height: Fin-AC</b>     |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the height of the alignment plate at the neat alignment position.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the height of the alignment plate is changed by 0.674 degree.<br>+: Move down<br>-: Move up   |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the alignment plate does not hit the paper stack on the stack tray at the neat alignment  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Be careful not to interfere with the stack tray of the home position position.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -4 to 4  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.674  |  |
| <b>NEAT-PDL</b>                  | <b>1</b>   | <b>Neat paddle height: Fin-AC</b>          |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the height of the neat paddle.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the height of the Neat Paddle is changed by 0.690 degree.<br>+: Move down<br>-: Move up  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When improving the paper alignment of the feed direction at stacking the paper on the stack tray   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -25 to 25  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0  |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.69   |  |

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

|                                  |   |  |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>NEAT-Y</b>                    | <b>1</b>  | <b>Neat align plate ctr stdrd pstn: Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To adjust the center reference position of the neat alignment plate.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the center reference position of the alignment plate is moved by 0.1 mm.<br>+: Toward rear<br>-: Toward front |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | - When the center standard position of the alignment plates is misaligned<br>- When the paper alignment position is displaced   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | -20 to 20   |  |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | mm  |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Action> Finisher Tray C Alignment Adjustment   |  |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 0.1   |  |

## FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode)

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode)

|                               |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>FN-SENS1</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj Punch Horz Rgst Sensor: Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To automatically adjust the output of the Horizontal Registration Sensor 1 to 5 of the Puncher Unit in sequence.<br>Horizontal Registration Sensor 1: A3/A4, 2: LDR/LTR, 3: B4/B5, 4: A4R/LTRR/LGL, 5: B5R |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When installing/replacing the Puncher Unit<br>- When replacing the Horizontal Registration Sensor of the Puncher Unit  |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | If paper blocks light to the sensor, the adjustment result ends in NG.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG   |  |
| <b>FN-SENS2</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Adj Punch Waste Full Sensor: Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To automatically adjust the output of Punch Waste Full Sensor (Punch Waste Full Detection PCB) of the Puncher Unit.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | - When installing/replacing the Puncher Unit<br>- When replacing the Punch Waste Full Sensor   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |  |
| <b>Caution</b>                | If paper blocks light to the sensor, the adjustment result ends in NG.   |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG   |  |
| <b>FIN-BK-R</b>               | <b>1</b>   | <b>Finisher backup data saving: Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To read the backup data from Finisher Controller PCB and save in HDD.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG   |  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   | SORTER> FUNCTION> FIN-BK-W   |  |

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode)

|                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>FIN-BK-W</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Finisher backup data writing: Fin-AC</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To write the backup data saved in HDD to the Finisher Controller PCB.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Finisher Controller PCB  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | SORTER> FUNCTION> FIN-BK-R  |
| <b>FIN-CON</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Controller PCB RAM clear: Fin-AC</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute the RAM clear of the Finisher Controller PCB to delete all the adjustment contents (excluding counter information).  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When clearing RAM data of the Finisher Controller PCB   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT before execution. After execution, enter necessary setting value.<br>- RAM data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | The adjustment values stored to the puncher controller PCB does not cleared.  |
| <b>CNT-FCON</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>For R&amp;D</b>  |
| <b>FR-ST-RP</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Ppr dust remov at stpl-free bind: Fin-AC</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To remove the paper dust from the staple-free binding unit, the staple-free binding operation repeatedly is executed 30 times without paper.<br>When this mode is executed, the performance of the staple-free binding unit recovers.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When the performance of the staple-free binding unit deteriorates   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | - The part counter value of the staple-free binding operation increases.<br>- When the job starts during the operation of this mode, the finisher sequence error jam occurs.<br>- When the error avoidance jam occurs during the operation of this mode, the jam becomes the error immediately. |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>        |          | The removed paper dust accumulates on the lower frame under the paper path, so it does not influence to the performance of the machine.   |
| <b>PUN-BK-R</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Puncher backup data saving: Fin-AC</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To read the backup data from Puncher Controller PCB and save in HDD.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Puncher Controller PCB   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to read the data before writing.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | SORTER> FUNCTION> PUN-BK-W  |
| <b>PUN-BK-W</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Puncher backup data writing: Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To write the backup data saved in HDD to Puncher Controller PCB.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Puncher Controller PCB   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Be sure to read the data before writing.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | SORTER> FUNCTION> PUN-BK-R  |

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode)

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>EMSG-CLR</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Fin limited function mssg clear: Fin-AC</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To clear the message that displayed on the control panel when the function of the staple-free binding is limited.<br>The staple-free binding alarm is cleared. |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When clearing the message related to limited functions mode that is displayed after troubleshooting of finisher is performed                                   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | Only the messages related to staple free stapling can be cleared.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | At normal termination: OK!, At abnormal termination: NG!   |
| <b>NT-BK-W</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Jogger kit backup data writing: Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To write the backup data saved in HDD to Neat Controller PCB.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Neat Controller PCB   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | SORTER> FUNCTION> NT-BK-R  |
| <b>NT-BK-R</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Jogger kit backup data saving: Fin-AC</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To read the backup data from Neat Controller PCB and save in HDD.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the Neat Controller PCB   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>   |          | SORTER> FUNCTION> NT-BK-W  |
| <b>PNCH-INT</b>               | <b>1</b> | <b>Init punch mtr stop pstn; Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To execute initialization Initialization of punch motor stop reference value.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When replacing the punch motor/gear/belt/sensor flag   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | 1) Select the item, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG   |

## OPTION (Specification setting mode)

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode)

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>MD-SPRTN</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Restricted operation at Finisher error</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether to stop the machine when an error occurs at Finisher.<br>The result set in [Limited Functions Mode] in [Settings/Registration] is displayed.<br>Set 0 when canceling restriction on operations.<br>When switching whether to restrict operations for each function, make the setting in [Limited Functions Mode]. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When canceling restriction on operations of the finisher   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Do not set any value other than 0.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 255<br>0: Normal<br>1: Function restriction<br>2 to 255: Not use  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Management Settings> Device Management> Limited Functions Mode   |



SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode)

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>BUFF-SW</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Set of fin buffer opertn: Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set ON/OFF of buffer operation in the Finisher.<br>When 1 is set, the buffer operation is not performed for all modes. The alignment performance is improved, but the productivity decreases.<br>When 2 is set, the buffer operation is performed only for collated mode. |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When the misalignment of the buffered paper stack occurs on the processing tray  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value and press OK.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | When the buffer operation is set to OFF, productivity is decreased.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 2<br>0: ON, 1: OFF, 2: ON for collated mode only  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>PUCH-SW</b>                   | <b>1</b> | <b>Hi-prdctvty/accruy punch mod: Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To switch the high-productivity punch mode or high-accuracy punch mode of Finisher.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When switching the high-productivity punch mode or high-accuracy punch mode  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Select the item, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: high-accuracy, 1: high-productivity   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Action> Switch Finisher Puncher Mode  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | The settings of this service mode and the "Switch Finisher Puncher Mode" of the "Settings/Registration" change at the same time.   |
| <b>1SHT-SRT</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Set collate dvry of 1-sheet: Fin-AC</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set ON/OFF of collated delivery operation for a sheet of paper.<br>When 1 is set, the collated delivery operation for a sheet of paper is not performed.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | Upon user's request  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | The stacking condition decreases when the collated delivery operation for a sheet of paper enables.<br>A sheet of paper is delivered by non-sort decreases when the collated delivery operation for a sheet of paper disables.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: ON, 1: OFF  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Setting/Registration> Function Settings> Common> Paper Output Settings> Offset Jobs  |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           |          | The collated delivery operation for a sheet of paper works in the following condition.<br>The setting of a sheet of paper and a copy<br>This service mode is ON.<br>The job from a printer driver<br>Oddset jobs is ON.  |
| <b>FIN-SP1</b>                   | <b>2</b> | <b>Finisher special settings 1: Fin-AC</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To execute the Finisher special settings 1.  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | Take necessary action in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 00000000 to 11111111   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 00000000   |



SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode)

|                                  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>FIN-SP2</b>                   | <b>2</b>  | <b>Finisher special settings 2: Fin-AC</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To execute the Finisher special settings 2.   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | Take necessary action in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.  |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 00000000 to 11111111  |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 00000000  |   |
| <b>NSRT-STC</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set stack improve mode: non-sort, Fin-AC</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set stack improvement mode when non-collate is set to the Stack Tray (Tray C).<br>When 1 is set, paper stack is delivered at the center reference via the Process Tray even if it is non-collate mode so the stacking condition can be improved. |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When the stacking condition is low while non-collate is set to the Stack Tray (Tray C)  |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   | When 1 is set:<br>- Productivity is decreased.<br>- In the case of the paper type or the paper size that cannot feed via a processing tray, paper is delivered by non-sort.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>NEAT-SW</b>                   | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set condition not to align paper</b>         |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the conditions not to align paper.<br>Usually, paper alignment is not performed in the following cases:<br>- When paper widths are different<br>- When offsetting 6 or more sheets of Z-fold paper<br>- When offsetting certain custom paper |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | When aligning paper only under the specific conditions (neat alignment)   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 0 to 2<br>0: When paper widths are different, when offsetting 6 or more sheets of Z-fold paper, when offsetting certain custom paper<br>1: When paper widths are different<br>2: Always   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 0   |   |
| <b>MSTP-TMG</b>                  | <b>1</b>  | <b>Set of manual staple timing: Fin-AC</b>      |
| <b>Detail</b>                    | To set the duration of time before executing automatic stapling at manual staple mode.<br>As the value is changed by 1, the time is changed by 1 second.<br>+: Timing is delayed<br>-: Timing becomes earlier                                       |   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  | Upon user's request   |   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     | 1 to 5  |   |
| <b>Unit</b>                      | sec   |   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             | 3   |   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> | Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Action> Time Until Stapling Starts in Stapler Mode   |   |
| <b>Supplement/Memo</b>           | The settings of this service mode and the "Time Until Stapling Starts in Stapler Mode" of the "Settings/Registration" change at the same time.  |   |
| <b>Amount of Change per Unit</b> | 1   |   |

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode)

|                                  |          |  |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>PUN-Y-SW</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Setting of punch horz reg oprtn: Fin-AC</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set whether or not to perform the horizontal registration operation of puncher unit for matching with the center of the paper.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When the adjustable range of the punch hole horizontal registration adjustment (PNCH-Y) is enlarged.   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | When a punch hole position precision improvement mode was set, this mode is given priority to.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: The horizontal registration operation is performed.<br>1: The horizontal registration operation is not performed. (fixed in the center position)  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | SORTER> ADJUST> PNCH-Y<br>SORTER> OPTION> PNCH-SW3   |
| <b>PNCH-SW2</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Setting of punch hole spec: Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the punch hole specification of puncher unit.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When replacing the Puncher Unit  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0: 2/4 holes puncher unit<br>1: 2/3 holes puncher unit<br>2: SWE 4 holes puncher unit  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>PNCH-SW3</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Set punch hole hi precision mode: Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set ON/OFF of the mode to improve the precision of the punch hole position.<br>When 1 is set, the punch hole position is decided by the paper trailing edge standard.   |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When the position of the punch hole is misaligned  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | - When ON is set, productivity is decreased.<br>- This mode is enabled only when precision priority is set for punch mode.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0  |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | SORTER> OPTION> PUCH-SW, PUN-Y-SW  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Action> Switch Finisher Puncher Mode  |
| <b>SFT-CHNG</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Set dvry number of stck ppr: Fin-AC</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To change the number of small size papers to be delivered as a stack in offset and collate mode.<br>When 1 is set, the number of sheets to be delivered as a stack in offset and collate mode is changed from 5 sheets to 2 sheets.(However, it is not changed when delivering paper with a weight of 91 g/m <sup>2</sup> or more or tab paper.) |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When improving stacking performance at the time of offsetting and collating paper other than paper with a weight of 91 g/m <sup>2</sup> or more and tab paper  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 1  |

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode)

|                               |          |  |
|-------------------------------|----------|--|
| <b>STP-ALG</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Set align plate oprtn at stpl mod:Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the operation of alignment plates at staple mode and staple-free binding mode.<br>Set to 1 when the alignment operation by the alignment plates is changed from one time to two times at the staple mode and staple-free binding mode.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When improving the alignment (front/rear) of the paper at staple mode  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | When setting to ON, productivity is decreased.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>SDL-ALG</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Set paddle oprtn in sddl unit: Fin-AC</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set the paddle operation when stacking the paper in the saddle stitcher unit.<br>Set to 1 when the paddle operation of the last stack paper in the saddle stitcher unit is changed from one rotation to two rotations.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When improving the paper alignment of the feed direction at stacking the paper in the saddle stitcher unit   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | When setting to ON, productivity is decreased.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>TRY-STP</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Stpl/fold stck limit clear: Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set whether to limit the stack capacity of the stapled copies/folded sheets.<br>When clearing the limit, the tray height limit is applied instead.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When stacking papers beyond the maximum number of stapled copies/folded sheets   |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Caution</b>                |          | When the stacking limit is cleared, stacking capacity increases, but stacking performance decreases.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 3<br>0: Normal specification<br>1: Clear the limit of stack capacity of the stapled copies, and apply the tray height limit<br>2: Clear the limit of stack capacity of the folded sheets, and apply the tray height limit<br>3: Clear the limit of stack capacity of both the stapled copies and folded sheets, and apply the tray height limit |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |
| <b>TRY-LMT</b>                | <b>1</b> | <b>Set stack limit of stack tray: Fin-AC</b>   |
| <b>Detail</b>                 |          | To set whether to limit the stack capacity of the stack tray.<br>Set to 1 when the stack capacity of the stack tray for the small size paper except the thin paper and coated paper is changed from about 3,000 sheets to about 2,000 sheets.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               |          | When the stacking performance decreases by the curled paper during stacking a large amount of the small size paper except the thin paper and coated paper  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  |          | 0 to 1<br>0: OFF, 1: ON  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          |          | 0  |

SORTER (Service mode for delivery options) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode)

| <b>NEAT-CRL</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Set curl at the neat stck prrry: Fin-AC</b>  |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set the paper curl type while NEAT-ALN is 1.<br>When 1 or 2 is set, the operation is changed as shown below.<br>- The timing of the paddle descent and alignment start become late.<br>- The neat alignment movement is changed from one time to two times |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When the delivered paper is excessive curl and the paper alignment is poor  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | When 1 or 2 is set, productivity is decreased   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 2<br>0: No curl<br>1: Upward curl<br>2: Downward curl  |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>Related Service Mode</b>      |          | SORTER > OPTION > NEAT-ALN  |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Action> Finisher Output Priority Settings  |
| <b>NEAT-ALN</b>                  | <b>1</b> | <b>Set of neat stack priority mode: Fin-AC</b>  |
| <b>Detail</b>                    |          | To set ON/OFF of neat stack accuracy priority mode<br>As the value is changed by 1, the stack accuracy improves to reduce the number of sheets in the paper stack at the stack delivery.  |
| <b>Use Case</b>                  |          | When the stack accuracy is prioritized  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>    |          | Enter the setting value and press OK key.   |
| <b>Caution</b>                   |          | When 1 is set, productivity is decreased.   |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>     |          | 0 to 1<br>0: Productivity priority<br>1: Alignment priority   |
| <b>Default Value</b>             |          | 0   |
| <b>Additional Functions Mode</b> |          | Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Action> Finisher Output Priority Settings  |

## BOARD (Option board setting mode)

### OPTION (Specification setting mode)

BOARD (Option board setting mode) > OPTION (Specification setting mode)

|                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>MENU-1</b>                 | <b>2</b>  | <b>Hide/dspl of printer set menu level 1</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to display or hide the level 1 of printer setting menu.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.                             |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>MENU-2</b>                 | <b>2</b>  | <b>Hide/dspl of printer set menu level 2</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to display or hide the level 2 of printer setting menu.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.                             |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>MENU-3</b>                 | <b>2</b>  | <b>Hide/dspl of printer set menu level 3</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to display or hide the level 3 of printer setting menu.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.                             |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>MENU-4</b>                 | <b>2</b>  | <b>Hide/dspl of printer set menu level 4</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to display or hide the level 4 of printer setting menu.  |  |
| <b>Use Case</b>               | Upon user's request   |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.                             |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |
| <b>FONTDL</b>                 | <b>1</b>  | <b>ON/OFF of font setting screen display</b> |
| <b>Detail</b>                 | To set whether to display the service-purposed setting screen of fonts which are listed using PS Kanji Font Downloader. |  |
| <b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b> | 1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.<br>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.                             |  |
| <b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>  | 0 to 1<br>0: Hide, 1: Display   |  |
| <b>Default Value</b>          | 0   |  |

## FAX (Service Mode for FAX)

### Overview

#### ■ Configuration of the Service Mode

Service mode is divided into the following 10 items (#1 to #10).

| Item              | Name  | Description   |
|-------------------|---|---|
| #1 SSSW           | Service software switch                               | This can be used to conduct the registration/settings relating to basic functions of the fax, such as error management, echo prevention and prevention of communication problems. |
| #2 MENU           | Menu switch setting                                   | This can be used to conduct the registration/settings relating to the required functions at installation, such as NL equalizer, transmission level.                               |
| #3 NUMERIC Param. | Setting of numeric parameters                         | This can be used to enter numeric parameters.   |
| #4 NCU            | (Adjustment by a service technician is not possible.) | The values of this item are collectively set based on the setting of #5 TYPE.   |
| #5 TYPE           | Country/region setting                                | If the item "STANDARD" displayed on the display is set, #4 NCU data is collectively set to comply with the communication standards in Japan.                                      |
| #6 IPFAX          | Communication settings of IPFAX                       | If the license option for IPFAX has been enabled, IPFAX is displayed.   |
| #7 PRINT          | Printer function setting                              | This can be used to conduct the registration/settings relating to the printer basic service functions, such as size reduction conditions for received images.                     |
| #8 CLEAR          | Data initialization mode setting                      | This item is to initialize each data.   |
| #9 TEST           | Test Mode   | To execute various tests.   |
| #10 REPORT        | Service Report  | To execute report print.  |

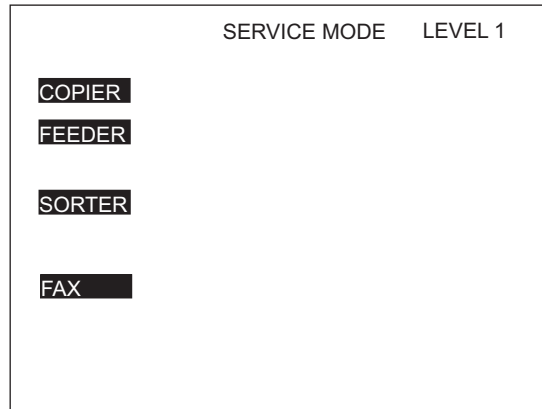
#### CAUTION:

If a 2nd line fax option is installed, IPFAX cannot be used.

#### ■ Operation method

1. Enter service mode.

2. When the connected options (FEEDER, SORTER, FAX, BOARD) are displayed, select FAX and enter service mode of this board.



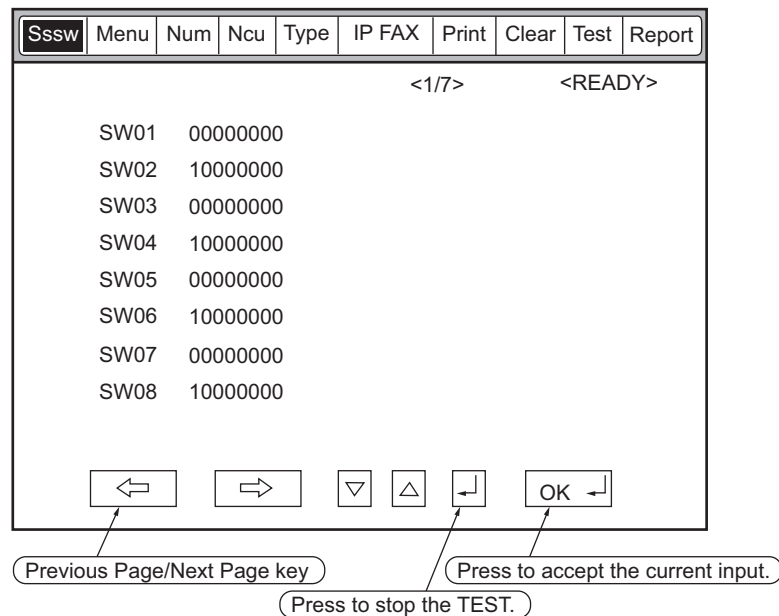
COPIER: Service mode of the connected equipment

FEEDER: Service mode of the ADF (\*)

SORTER: Service mode of the Finisher (\*)

FAX: Service mode of the fax (\*)

The following explains the operation method using the #1 SSSW screen as an example. The meaning of the keys and operations are common for all screens.



- When changing the setting of the bit switch, directly press the bit (numeric value) you want to change.
- To enter a numeric value, use the numeric keypad.
- When confirming a change in a numeric value or when executing an item, press the [OK] key.
- To return to the previous layer, use the [Reset] key.

#### CAUTION:

When changing the service mode settings, turn OFF and then ON the power.

The details of settings in service mode are stored in the storage of the host machine. The settings for this board are enabled by loading the settings stored in the storage of the host machine to the G3 Fax Control PCB when the main power is turned ON. Therefore, be sure to turn OFF and then ON the power when the settings have been changed.

## ■ Menu List

|            |              |   |                                   |
|------------|--------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| #1 SSSW    | SW01         | error management  |                                   |
|            | SW02         | Not used  |                                   |
|            | SW03         | set remedy against echo   |                                   |
|            | SW04         | set remedy against communication error  |                                   |
|            | SW05         | set standard function <DIS signal>  |                                   |
|            | SW06 to SW08 | Not used  |                                   |
|            | SW09         | set communication result display  |                                   |
|            | SW10 to SW11 | Not used  |                                   |
|            | SW12         | set page timer  |                                   |
|            | SW13         | Display of the screen Settings  |                                   |
|            | SW14         | Inch/mm resolution settings   |                                   |
|            | SW15         | Not used  |                                   |
|            | SW17         | Transmission level setting of modem   |                                   |
|            | SW18         | The control of IP supported communication setting                                     |                                   |
|            | SW19 to SW21 | Not used  |                                   |
|            | SW22         | Settings of archive send function   |                                   |
|            | SW23 to SW24 | Not used  |                                   |
|            | SW25         | set report display function   |                                   |
|            | SW26         | set transmission function   |                                   |
|            | SW27         | Not used  |                                   |
|            | SW28         | set V. 8/V. 34  |                                   |
|            | SW29         | Not used  |                                   |
|            | SW30         | Dial tone detection method switching  |                                   |
|            | SW31 to SW50 | Not used  |                                   |
|            | #2 MENU      | 001 to 004  | Not used                          |
|            |              | 005   | NL equalizer                      |
|            |              | 006   | line monitor                      |
|            |              | 007   | transmission level (ATT)          |
|            |              | 008   | V.34 modulation speed upper limit |
|            |              | 009   | V.34 data speed upper limit       |
| 010 to 020 |              | Not used  |                                   |
| #3 NUM     |              | 001   | not used                          |
|            |              | 002   | RTN transmission condition (1)    |
|            |              | 003   | RTN transmission condition (2)    |
|            | 004          | RTN transmission condition (3)  |                                   |
|            | 005          | NCC pause time (before ID code)   |                                   |
|            | 006          | NCC pause time (after ID code)  |                                   |
|            | 007          | pre-pulse time at time of call  |                                   |
|            | 008          | not used  |                                   |
|            | 009          | number of characters in telephone numbers between transmitting and receiving parties. |                                   |
|            | 010          | line connection identification time   |                                   |
|            | 011          | T.30 T1 timer (for reception)   |                                   |
|            | 012          | not used  |                                   |
|            | 013          | T.30 EOL timer  |                                   |
|            | 014          | not used  |                                   |
|            | 015          | hooking detection time  |                                   |
|            | 016          | Time until a temporary response is obtained when switching FAX/TEL                    |                                   |
|            | 017          | Pseudo RBT signal pattern ON time   |                                   |
|            | 018          | Pseudo RBT signal pattern ON time (short)   |                                   |
|            | 019          | Pseudo RBT signal pattern OFF time (long)   |                                   |
|            | 020          | Pseudo CI signal pattern ON time  |                                   |
|            | 021          | Pseudo CI signal pattern OFF time (short)   |                                   |
|            | 022          | Pseudo CI signal pattern OFF (long)   |                                   |
|            | 023          | CNG detection level when switching FAX/TEL  |                                   |
|            | 024          | Pseudo RBT transmission level when switching FAX/TEL                                  |                                   |
|            | 025          | CNG monitoring time when the answering phone connection function is set               |                                   |
|            | 026          | Silent detection level when the answering phone connection function is set            |                                   |
|            | 027          | preamble detection time for V.21 low-speed flag                                       |                                   |
|            | 028          | Off-hook PCB duty settings  |                                   |
|            | 029-80       | not used  |                                   |





## • SSSW-SW01

### Functional Construction

| Bit | Function  | 1        | 0               |
|-----|---|----------|-----------------|
| 0   | Error codes for service technician              | Output   | Do not output   |
| 1   | Error dump list                                 | Output   | Do not output   |
| 2   | Not used  | -        | -               |
| 3   | Not used  | -        | -               |
| 4   | Display service error codes in the ##300 series | Display  | Do not display  |
| 5   | Increase the capacity of SUBLOG for USBFAX2     | Increase | Do not increase |
| 6   | Not used  | -        | -               |
| 7   | Cancel prohibition of user setting collectively | Cancel   | Do not cancel   |

#### Details of Bit 0

Select whether to output service error codes.

When "Output" is selected, service error codes will be on the display and on the report.

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 1

Select whether to output error dump list.

When "Output" is selected, the error transmission report and the reception result report at the time of occurrence of an error are output with the error dump list attached.

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 4

Select whether to display service error codes in the ##300 series.

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 5

Select whether to increase the log storage area when firmware automatic update function of USBFAX2 (a modem with Silicone Labs modem mounted version) is used.

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 7

Select whether to collectively cancel the prohibition of user settings.

## • SSSW-SW02

### Functional Construction

| Bit | Function  | 1         | 0               |
|-----|---|-----------|-----------------|
| 0   | Not used  | -         | -               |
| 1   | Not used  | -         | -               |
| 2   | Not used  | -         | -               |
| 3   | Not used  | -         | -               |
| 4   | To prohibit control channel retrain during V.34 | Prohibit  | Do not prohibit |
| 5   | Not used  | -         | -               |
| 6   | Not used  | -         | -               |
| 7   | F-NET service without ring tone                 | Supported | Not supported   |

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 4

Select whether to prohibit the control channel retrain during V.34.

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 7

Select whether to support F-NET (fax communication network) service without a ring tone.

If "Supported" is selected, fax document will be automatically received without a ring tone when FC signal (1300 Hz tonal signal) from F-NET is detected.

## • SSSW-SW03

### Functional Construction

| Bit | Function                                     | 1    | 0           |
|-----|--|------|-------------|
| 0   | Not used                                     | -    | -           |
| 1   | Echo protect tone at high speed transmission | Send | Do not send |

| Bit | Function  | 1                              | 0                              |
|-----|---|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 2   | Not used  | -                              | -                              |
| 3   | Not used  | -                              | -                              |
| 4   | Transmission mode: International transmission (1) | Yes                            | No                             |
| 5   | Transmission mode: International transmission (3) | Yes                            | No                             |
| 6   | Send mode   | International transmission (3) | International transmission (2) |
| 7   | Tonal signal before sending CED signal            | Send                           | Do not send                    |

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 1

Use it to enable/disable sending an echo protect tone for a high-speed transmission V.29 modem signal (transmission speed at 9600 or 7200 bps).

If errors occur frequently at time of sending fax because of the condition of the line, select "Send". Selecting "send" sends non-modulated carrier for about 200 ms as the synchronous signal before sending images.

#### NOTE:

Error codes caused by line condition when sending fax  
##100, ##104, ##281, ##282, ##283, ##750, ##755, ##760, ##765

#### Detailed Discussions of Bits 4, 5 and 6

Transmission mode: Selected to use whether international transmission (1), international transmission (2) or international transmission (3).

Use these switches or the dial registration to select a transmission mode if errors occur frequently at time when sending fax overseas.

#### NOTE:

Error codes caused by echoes at time of sending fax  
#005, ##100, ##101, ##102, ##104, ##201, ##280, ##281, ##283, ##284, ##750, ##760, ##765, ##774, ##779, ##784, ##794

Settings using the Dial Registration (user level):

Select "international transmission (1)" when making an entry in the address book. If errors persist, select "international transmission (2)" and then "international transmission (3)".

Transmission mode selected using One-Touch Dial function or the Speed Dial function will be given priority over the setting made by the service soft switch.

An international transmission mode may be selected using the keypad if a mode has been selected using this switch; for settings, see the following table:

| Transmission mode              | Bit7 | Bit6 | Bit5 | Bit4 | Bit3 | Bit2 | Bit1 | Bit0 |
|--------------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| International transmission (1) | *    | 0    | 0    | 1    | -    | -    | *    | -    |
| International transmission (2) | *    | 0    | 1    | 0    | -    | -    | *    | -    |
| International transmission (3) | *    | 1    | 1    | 0    | -    | -    | *    | -    |

International transmission (1): Selected to ignore the first DIS signal from the other party.

International transmission (2): Selected to transmit a 1850-Hz total signal when transmitting the DIS signal.

International transmission (3): Selected to transmit a 1650-Hz total signal when transmitting the DIS signal.

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 7

Select whether to enable/disable sending of a 1080-Hz tonal signal before sending CED signal.

Select "Send" if errors occur frequently because of an echo when reception is from overseas.

#### NOTE:

Error codes caused by echoes at the time of reception  
#005, ##101, ##106, ##107, ##114, ##200, ##201, ##790

## • SSSW-SW04

### Functional Construction

| Bit | Function  | 1          | 0                    |
|-----|---|------------|----------------------|
| 0   | LC monitoring   | Monitor    | Do not monitor       |
| 1   | Check the CI signal frequency                             | Check      | Do not checked       |
| 2   | Final flag sequences of the procedure signal              | 2 pcs      | 1 piece              |
| 3   | Reception mode after sending CFR signal                   | High speed | High speed/low speed |
| 4   | Time to ignore low-speed signals after sending CFR signal | 1500 msec  | 700 msec             |
| 5   | Check the CS signal frequency (when PBX is set)           | Check      | Do not check         |
| 6   | CNG signal at the time of manual sending                  | Send       | Do not send          |
| 7   | CED signal at the time of manual reception                | Send       | Do not send          |

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 1

Select whether to check the CI signal frequency.

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 2

Select the number of the final flag sequences with the procedure signal (300 bps transmission speed).  
Select "2" when the other party's machine does not properly receive the procedure signal sent by this machine.

#### NOTE:

Error codes occurring at the time of sending fax

##100, ##280, ##281, ##750, ##753, ##754, ##755, ##758, ##759, ##760, ##763, ##764, ##765, ##768, ##769, ##770, ##773, ##775, ##778, ##780, ##783, ##785, ##788

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 3

Select a reception mode after sending CFR signal.

Select "High speed" in the case of frequent errors caused by line condition at the time of reception. Simultaneously, turn "OFF" the "ECM reception" of the user data.

#### NOTE:

Error codes caused by line condition at the time of reception

##107, ##114, ##201

Be sure to change bit 4 before changing this bit; if errors still occur, change this bit.

When 'high speed' is selected, only high-speed signals (images) will be received after sending the CFR signal.

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 4

Select the time length during which low-speed signals are ignored after sending the CFR signal.

Select "1500 msec" when reception of image signal is difficult because the line condition is not good.

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 5

Select whether to check the CI signal frequency when PBX is set.

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 6

Select whether to send CNG signal at the time of manual sending.

If error occurs frequently at manual sending when the destination device that has FAX/TEL switch mode does not change to the fax mode, select "Send".

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 7

Select whether to send CED signal at the time of manual reception.

Select "Send" when the other party's machine does not start sending although manual reception is executed.

## • SSSW-SW05

### Functional Construction

| Bit | Function                                   | 1   | 0  |
|-----|--|-----|----|
| 0   | Not used                                   | -   | -  |
| 1   | To execute mm/inch conversion (text mode). | Yes | No |
| 2   | Not used                                   | -   | -  |

| Bit | Function   | 1          | 0               |
|-----|--|------------|-----------------|
| 3   | To send bit 33 or later of DIS signal.           | Prohibit   | Do not prohibit |
| 4   | Record paper length to be declared by DIS signal | A4/B4 size | Any size        |
| 5   | Not used   | -          | -               |
| 6   | Not used   | -          | -               |
| 7   | Not used   | -          | -               |

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 1

Execute mm/inch conversion for the image scanned in text mode.

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 3

Select whether to send bit 33 or later of DIS signal.

#### CAUTION:

If "Prohibit" is selected, the super-fine reception from other brand printers or memory box function will be disabled.

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 4

Select whether the paper to be declared by DIS signal is a cut paper.

Select "A4/B4 size" if dividing the original at the sending machine side at the time of receiving a long original.

#### NOTE:

Depending on the model of sending machine, long originals may not be divided.

### • SSSW-SW09

#### Functional Construction

| Bit | Function   | 1       | 0              |
|-----|--|---------|----------------|
| 0   | Communication result at normal completion        | Display | Do not display |
| 1   | Communication result at completion with an error | Display | Do not display |
| 2   | Not used   | -       | -              |
| 3   | Not used   | -       | -              |
| 4   | Not used   | -       | -              |
| 5   | Not used   | -       | -              |
| 6   | Not used   | -       | -              |
| 7   | Not used   | -       | -              |

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 0 and 1

Select whether to continue displaying the communication result on the Control Panel at normal completion and/or at completion with an error.

### • SSSW-SW12

#### Functional Construction

| Bit | Function                                       | 1   | 0          |
|-----|--|-----|------------|
| 0   | Timeout period for sending 1 page (sending)    | 1   | 0          |
| 1   | Timeout period for sending 1 page (sending)    | 1   | 0          |
| 2   | Timeout period for sending 1 page (HT sending) | 1   | 0          |
| 3   | Timeout period for sending 1 page (HT sending) | 1   | 0          |
| 4   | Timeout period for sending 1 page (reception)  | 1   | 0          |
| 5   | Timeout period for sending 1 page (reception)  | 1   | 0          |
| 6   | Not used                                       | -   | -          |
| 7   | Page timer settings for sending/receiving      | Set | Do not set |

This machine stops communication when sending/receiving per original page takes 32 minutes or longer. When setting the timer different from the above, see the following to set the most appropriate time length.

When 'Do not set' is selected using bit 7, the timeout length per page for all modes will depend on the setting of bit 0 and bit 1.

### Timeout period at the time of sending/receiving

| Timeout period | Bit7 | Bit6 | Bit5 | Bit4 | Bit3 | Bit2 | Bit1 | Bit0 |
|----------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 8 min.         | 0    | *    | *    | *    | *    | *    | 0    | 0    |
| 16 min.        | 0    | *    | *    | *    | *    | *    | 0    | 1    |
| 32 min.        | 0    | *    | *    | *    | *    | *    | 1    | 0    |
| 64 min.        | 0    | *    | *    | *    | *    | *    | 1    | 1    |

### Timeout period at the time of sending (in text mode)

| Timeout period | Bit7 | Bit6 | Bit5 | Bit4 | Bit3 | Bit2 | Bit1 | Bit0 |
|----------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 8 min.         | 1    | *    | *    | *    | *    | *    | 0    | 0    |
| 16 min.        | 1    | *    | *    | *    | *    | *    | 0    | 1    |
| 32 min.        | 1    | *    | *    | *    | *    | *    | 1    | 0    |
| 64 min.        | 1    | *    | *    | *    | *    | *    | 1    | 1    |

### Timeout period at the time of sending (in text mode)

| Timeout period | Bit7 | Bit6 | Bit5 | Bit4 | Bit3 | Bit2 | Bit1 | Bit0 |
|----------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 8 min.         | 1    | *    | *    | *    | 0    | 0    | *    | *    |
| 16 min.        | 1    | *    | *    | *    | 0    | 1    | *    | *    |
| 32 min.        | 1    | *    | *    | *    | 1    | 0    | *    | *    |
| 64 min.        | 1    | *    | *    | *    | 1    | 1    | *    | *    |

### Timeout period at the time of reception

| Timeout Period | Bit7 | Bit6 | Bit5 | Bit4 | Bit3 | Bit2 | Bit1 | Bit0 |
|----------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 8 min.         | 1    | *    | 0    | 0    | *    | *    | *    | *    |
| 16 min.        | 1    | *    | 0    | 1    | *    | *    | *    | *    |
| 32 min.        | 1    | *    | 1    | 0    | *    | *    | *    | *    |
| 64 min.        | 1    | *    | 1    | 1    | *    | *    | *    | *    |

## • SSSW-SW13

### Functional Construction

| Bit | Function                                       | 1   | 0  |
|-----|--|-----|----|
| 0   | Not used                                       | -   | -  |
| 1   | Not used                                       | -   | -  |
| 2   | Not used                                       | -   | -  |
| 3   | Display Modem Dial-in/My Number Setting screen | Yes | No |
| 4   | Display Number Display Setting screen          | Yes | No |
| 5   | Not used                                       | -   | -  |
| 6   | Not used                                       | -   | -  |
| 7   | Not used                                       | -   | -  |

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 3

To set whether to display Modem Dial-in Setting screen and My Number Setting screen.

#### NOTE:

Turn OFF and then ON the power of the host machine after the setting.

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 4

To set whether to enable the display of Number Display Setting screen.

**NOTE:**

Turn OFF and then ON the power of the host machine after the setting.

## • SSSW-SW14

### Functional Construction

| Bit | Function                                  | 1   | 0  |
|-----|---|-----|----|
| 0   | Not used                                  | -   | -  |
| 1   | Not used                                  | -   | -  |
| 2   | Not used                                  | -   | -  |
| 3   | Not used                                  | -   | -  |
| 4   | inch-configuration resolution declaration | Yes | No |
| 5   | Not used                                  | -   | -  |
| 6   | Not used                                  | -   | -  |
| 7   | Not used                                  | -   | -  |

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 4

At the time of G3 communication, select whether to declare inch-configuration resolution to the other party's machine. if 'declare' is selected, the machine will indicate that it reads and records at an inch-configuration resolution using the DIS, DCS, or DTC signal.

## • SSSW-SW17

### Functional Construction

| Bit | Function                                      | 1       | 0       |
|-----|---|---------|---------|
| 0   | Not used                                      | -       | -       |
| 1   | To select the transmission level of the modem | 0 to 15 | 8 to 15 |
| 2   | Not used                                      | -       | -       |
| 3   | Not used                                      | -       | -       |
| 4   | Not used                                      | -       | -       |
| 5   | Not used                                      | -       | -       |
| 6   | Not used                                      | -       | -       |
| 7   | Not used                                      | -       | -       |

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 1

Select the transmission level of the modem.

## • SSSW-SW18

### Functional Construction

| Bit | Function  | 1       | 0       |
|-----|---|---------|---------|
| 0   | Not used  | -       | -       |
| 1   | Not used  | -       | -       |
| 2   | Prohibition of the control of IP supported communication                | Yes     | No      |
| 3   | Number of command retransmission (V1.7 or earlier)                      | 6 times | 3 times |
| 4   | Request retransmission of all frames after frame loss at JBIG reception | Yes     | No      |
| 5   | Not used  | -       | -       |
| 6   | Not used  | -       | -       |
| 7   | Not used  | -       | -       |

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 2

Set whether to prohibit the control of IP supported communication

1: Yes

0: No

**Detailed Discussions of Bit 3**

Number of command retransmission

1: 6 times

0: 3 times

**Detailed Discussions of Bit 4**

Set whether to request retransmission of all frames after frame loss at JBIG reception

1: Yes

0: No

## • SSSW-SW22

**Functional Construction**

| Bit | Function   | 1       | 0          |
|-----|--|---------|------------|
| 0   | Backup when an archive transmission error occurs | Use     | Do not use |
| 1   | Not used   | -       | -          |
| 2   | Not used   | -       | -          |
| 3   | Prohibit manual polling operation                | -       | -          |
| 4   | Not used   | -       | -          |
| 5   | Not used   | -       | -          |
| 6   | Archive transmission function                    | Enabled | Disabled   |
| 7   | Not used   | -       | -          |

**Detailed Discussions of Bit0**

Select whether to back up data when a communication error occurs during archive transmission.

This function is available on the Platform Version 3.6 or later.

**Detailed Discussions of Bit3**

Set whether to prohibit of manual polling operation

**Detailed Discussions of Bit 6**

Set whether to send the sent images to the destination specified by the forwarding function.

## • SSSW-SW23

**Functional Construction**

| Bit | Function  | 1 | 0 |
|-----|---|---|---|
| 0   | Not used  | - | - |
| 1   | Not used  | - | - |
| 2   | Prohibit to rotate A4 or larger paper in portrait position by 180 degrees | - | - |
| 3   | Not used  | - | - |
| 4   | Not used  | - | - |
| 5   | Not used  | - | - |
| 6   | Not used  | - | - |
| 7   | Not used  | - | - |

**Detailed Discussion of Bit 2**

Set whether to add header with or without rotating the image by 180 degrees when A4 or larger paper is placed in the feeder in portrait position (R position).

1: Yes

0: No

## • SSSW-SW25

**Functional Construction**

| Bit | Function                                      | 1                 | 0               |
|-----|---|-------------------|-----------------|
| 0   | Sender's phone number indicated in the report | Receiver's number | Caller's number |
| 1   | Not used                                      | -                 | -               |



| Bit | Function                            | 1        | 0                 |
|-----|-------------------------------------|----------|-------------------|
| 2   | Not used                            | -        | -                 |
| 3   | Not used                            | -        | -                 |
| 4   | Not used                            | -        | -                 |
| 5   | Firmware automatic update (USB Fax) | Prohibit | Do not prohibited |
| 6   | Not used                            | -        | -                 |
| 7   | Not used                            | -        | -                 |

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 0

Select a phone number to be indicated on the report after transmission is completed.

Caller's number: To display the caller's phone number on the report

Receiver's number: To indicate the phone number (CSI signal data) sent from the other party's machine on the report

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 5

Select whether to prohibit the firmware automatic update for USB Fax.

### • SSSW-SW26

#### Functional Construction

| Bit | Function                                       | 1             | 0            |
|-----|--|---------------|--------------|
| 0   | Not used                                       | -             | -            |
| 1   | Not used                                       | -             | -            |
| 2   | Check the sequential broadcast.                | Check         | Do not check |
| 3   | Not used                                       | -             | -            |
| 4   | Not used                                       | -             | -            |
| 5   | Redial function when transmission error occurs | Use           | Do not use   |
| 6   | Not used                                       | -             | -            |
| 7   | Error report when sending process is canceled  | Do not output | Output       |

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 2

Select whether to display a confirmation message when entering destination for the sequential broadcast in order to prevent the user from broadcasting by mistake.

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 5

Select whether to use the redial function when outgoing transmission error occurs.

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 7

Select whether to output an error report when the [Stop] key is pressed to cancel sending.

### • SSSW-SW28

#### Functional Configuration

| Bit | Function                             | 1        | 0               |
|-----|--------------------------------------|----------|-----------------|
| 0   | V.8 procedure at the caller side     | No       | Yes             |
| 1   | V.8 procedure at the receiver side   | No       | Yes             |
| 2   | V.8 late start at the caller side    | No       | Yes             |
| 3   | V.8 late start at the receiver side  | No       | Yes             |
| 4   | Fallback from the V.34 receiver side | Prohibit | Do not prohibit |
| 5   | Not used                             | -        | -               |
| 6   | Not used                             | -        | -               |
| 7   | Not used                             | -        | -               |

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 0

Select whether to execute V.8 procedure when making a call.

"No": V.8 procedure is not executed even if V.8 procedure is received from the receiver side, and the procedure starts from V.21.

**Detailed Discussions of Bit 1**

Select whether to execute V.8 procedure when receiving a call.

"No": V.8 procedure is not executed, and the procedure starts from V.21.

**Detailed Discussions of Bit 2**

Select whether to execute V.8 procedure when ANSam signal from the receiver side cannot be recognized at the time of making a call and V.8 procedure is declared by DIS signal from the receiver side.

"Yes": CI signal is sent in response to the DIS signal of the receiver side to execute the V.8 procedure.

"No": CI signal is not sent in response to the DIS signal of the receiver side, and the V.21 procedure is executed.

In the case of manual transmission, there will be no V.8 late start regardless of this setting.

**Detailed Discussions of Bit 3**

Select whether to declare the existence of the V.8 procedure with the DIS signal that is transmitted after the ANSam signal in case that the ANSam signal at the reception is not recognized at the caller side.

"Yes": V.8 procedure is declared by DIS signal and V.8 procedure is executed after CI signal is sent from the caller side.

"No": V.8 procedure is not declared by DIS signal, and V.21 procedure is executed.

In the case of manual transmission, there will be no V.8 late start regardless of this setting.

**Detailed Discussions of Bit 4**

Select whether to prohibit fallback from the V.34 receiver side.

"Prohibit": There will be no fallback from the receiver side.

## • SSSW-SW30

**Functional Construction**

| Bit | Function                                 | 1       | 0                    |
|-----|--|---------|----------------------|
| 0   | Not used                                 | -       | -                    |
| 1   | Not used                                 | -       | -                    |
| 2   | Not used                                 | -       | -                    |
| 3   | Not used                                 | -       | -                    |
| 4   | Not used                                 | -       | -                    |
| 5   | Switching the dial tone detection method | -       | New detection method |
| 6   | Flow control between pages               | Control | Do not control       |
| 7   | Not used                                 | -       | -                    |

**Detailed Discussions of Bit 5**

Switch the detection method when executing the dial tone detection at the time of calling.

0: New detection method (default)

1: Not used

**Detailed Discussions of Bit 6**

Select whether to execute flow control between pages.

## • SSSW-SW50

**Functional Construction**

| Bit | Function   | 1                | 0                   |
|-----|--|------------------|---------------------|
| 0   | Transmission number restriction: Function to prevent no external access code *2        | ON: Enable       | OFF: Disable        |
| 1   | Transmission number restriction: Extension allowance, prohibition *2                   | Prohibited       | Allow               |
| 2   | Transmission number restriction: Add "0" to the first digit of external access code *2 | Yes              | No                  |
| 3   | Operate as the client of a fax server *1 *a  | Yes              | No                  |
| 4   | Display the send job stop confirmation screen when pressing Stop key *2                | No               | Yes                 |
| 5   | Send jobs that are targeted to stop when pressing Stop key *2                          | Ongoing send job | Incomplete send job |
| 6   | not used   | -                | -                   |
| 7   | not used   | -                | -                   |

\*1: Supported by the platform version 306 or later

\*2: Supported by the platform version 307 or later

\*a: Enabled only for USA

#### Details of Bit 0

To prevent incorrectly sending fax due to forgetting to use the external access number, "0", this function displays a pop-up warning window and prevents sending and returns to the status before pressing Start button by pressing [OK] after setting the fax number in [Fax] or [Scan and Send] and pressing Start button if the set telephone number does not start with "00". This function is supported even if the machine is operating in the fax server mode.

- 0: ON: Disable
- 1: OFF: Enable

#### CAUTION:

- If using this function, enter the telephone number from the area code.
- This function applies to the fax destination telephone number of "Address List", "One-touch" and "Numeric Keypad input".  
However, the warning is not displayed with "sending from Mail Box" and "manual sending".
- A warning is displayed when sending IP fax but it is not displayed when sending PC fax.
- A warning is not displayed when forwarding transmission.
- If any registered number matches to the condition for displaying a warning, the warning is displayed with "sequential broadcast" and "group sending".
- "\*" and "#" are also processed as a number.

#### NOTE:

Example of sending fax to 03-1234-5678

- The machine accepts sending fax with "0 (external access code) + 03 1234 5678 (telephone number)".
- The machine displays a warning and stops sending with "(no external access code) + 03 1234 5678 (telephone number)".
- If the external access code is other than "0", it can be changed from the following service mode.  
Service Mode > FAX > NUM > 080

Change the default setting of 080 from "0" to the external access code used in the installation environment.

#### Details of Bit 1

This is set to allow or prohibit transmission to the extension line.

This is enabled only if Bit 0 (function to prevent no external access code) is "1" (ON: Enable).

If transmission to the extension line is allowed, all telephone numbers not starting with the external access code are allowed. For example, if the external access code is "0", any number starting with "00" as starting 2 digits and number of the extension line are allowed. This means numbers starting with "01" to "09" are prohibited and other numbers are allowed.

If transmission to the extension line is prohibited, only allow the telephone number starting with the external access code + area code "0". For example, if the external access code is "0", allow only numbers starting with "00" as starting 2 digits.

Prohibit all extension numbers. This means only numbers starting with "00" are allowed and other numbers are prohibited.

- 0: Allow
- 1: Prohibit

#### Details of Bit 2

This is the switch to add "0" to the beginning of external access code (default "0") set by the NUM switch 080.

The NUM switch can be used to set "0" and "1" but not "00" and "01" as the external access code.

This switch is used to solve this issue. In the above example, set this setting to "add" and then set the NUM switch 080 to "0" and "1" to set the external access code of "00" and "01".

- 0: No
- 1: Yes

#### CAUTION:

- This automatically adds the external access number to the destination telephone number for sending fax registered by Address List, One-touch and entering by the Numeric Keypad excluding Direct Send and Send from Mail Box.
- This should be set only in the network environment that sends fax by adding the external access code.
- Do not add the external access code to the telephone number for fax send destination as the external access code is automatically added.

#### Details of Bit 3

This switch operates the machine as the client of fax server.

- 0: No
- 1: Yes



- 1:  
To make monitoring tone of the phone line from the speaker from the start of communication until the completion.
- 2:  
Not used
- 3 (OFF):  
There will be no monitoring tone of the phone line from the speaker.

**007: ATT transmission level**

Set the transmission level (ATT).  
Increase the transmission level (make it closer to 8) in the case of frequent errors caused by line status at the time of communication.

**NOTE:**

Error codes caused by line status at the time of transmission

##100, ##101, ##102, ##104, ##201, ##280, ##281, ##282, ##283, ##284, ##750, ##752, ##754, ##755, ##757, ##759, ##760, ##762, ##764, ##765, ##767, ##769, ##770, ##772, ##774, ##775, ##777, ##779, ##780, ##782, ##784, ##785, ##787, ##789

Error codes caused by line status at the time of reception

##103, ##106, ##107, ##201, ##793

**008: Upper limit for V.34 modulation speed**

Select the upper limit of the modulation speed (baud rate) in the V.34 primary channel.  
When 4 (2743 baud) is selected, the communication is actually performed at 2400 baud.

**009: Upper limit of V.34 data speed**

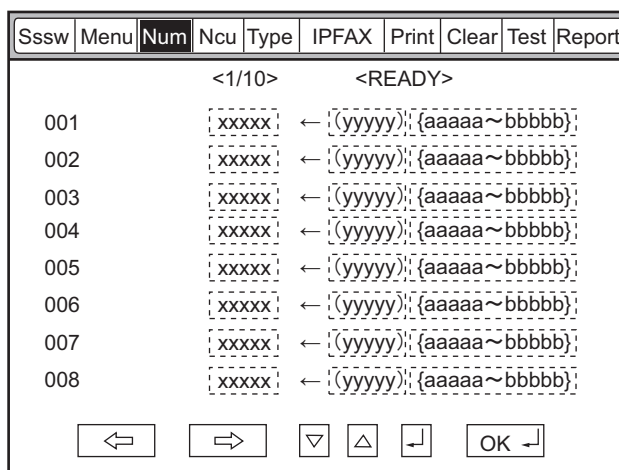
Select an upper limit of data transmission speed in the V.34 primary channel in the range between 2.4k and 33.6kbps at 2400bps intervals (0: 2.4 kbps to 13: 33.6 kbps).

**010: Pseudo CI signal frequency**

Set pseudo CI signal frequency.  
Depending on the type of external phones, there is no ring tone when the FAX/TEL switching function is working. Change the pseudo CI signal frequency when there is no ring tone.

**Setting of Numeric Parameter (NUMERIC Param.)**

**Configuration of Numeric Parameters**



| No. | Function                                  | Setting range       | Default value |
|-----|---|---------------------|---------------|
| 002 | RTN transmission condition (1)            | 1 to 99%            | 10            |
| 003 | RTN transmission condition (2)            | 2 to 99 times       | 15            |
| 004 | RTN transmission condition (3)            | 1 to 99 lines       | 12            |
| 005 | NCC pause time (before ID code)           | 1 to 60 sec         | 4             |
| 006 | NCC pause time (after ID code)            | 1 to 60 sec         | 4             |
| 007 | Prepose time at the time of making a call | 0 to 9999 (x 10 ms) | 0             |

| No. | Function   | Setting range              | Default value |
|-----|--|----------------------------|---------------|
| 009 | Comparing the number of digits between the sender's telephone number and the receiver's telephone number | 0 to 20 digits             | 0             |
| 010 | Line connection identification time  | 0 to 9999 (x 10 ms)        | 5500          |
| 011 | T.30 T1 timer (for reception)  | 0 to 9999 (x 10 ms)        | 3500          |
| 013 | T.30 EOL timer   | 500 to 3000 (x 10 ms)      | 1300          |
| 015 | Hooking detection time   | 0 to 999                   | 120           |
| 016 | Time until a temporary response is obtained when switching FAX/TEL                                       | 0 to 9                     | 4             |
| 017 | Pseudo RBT signal pattern ON time  | 0 to 999                   | 100           |
| 018 | Pseudo RBT signal pattern OFF time (short)   | 0 to 999                   | 0             |
| 019 | Pseudo RBT signal pattern OFF time (long)  | 0 to 999                   | 200           |
| 020 | Pseudo CI signal pattern ON time   | 0 to 999                   | 100           |
| 021 | Pseudo CI signal pattern OFF time (short)  | 0 to 999                   | 0             |
| 022 | Pseudo CI signal pattern OFF time (long)   | 0 to 999                   | 200           |
| 023 | CNG detection level when switching FAX/TEL   | 0 to 7                     | 4             |
| 024 | Pseudo RBT transmission level when switching FAX/TEL   | 10 to 20 (TYPE = STANDARD) | 20            |
| 025 | CNG monitoring time when the answering phone connection function is set                                  |                            |               |
| 026 | Silent detection level when the answering phone connection function is set                               |                            |               |
| 027 | V.21 low-speed flag preamble detection time  | 20 (-10 ms)                | 0             |
| 028 | Off-hook PCB duty settings   | 1 to 99%                   | 0 (50%)       |
| 080 | Transmission number restriction: Outside line transmission number *1                                     | 0 to 9999                  | 0             |

\*1 : Supported on the platform version 307 or later

### 002: RTN transmission condition (1)/003: RTN transmission condition (2)/004: RTN transmission condition (3)

Set the RTN signal transmission condition.

In the case of frequent errors caused by RTN signal transmission at the time of reception, increase the parameters to loosen the RTN signal transmission condition.

#### NOTE:

Error codes caused by RTN signal transmission at the time of reception

##104, ##107, ##114, ##201

RTN signal transmission condition (1) is the ratio of error lines for the total number of lines per page of the received image.

RTN signal transmission condition (2) is the reference value (\*2) of burst error (\*1).

RTN signal transmission condition (3) is the number of errors that fail to meet the reference value of burst error.

\*1: Burst error (transmission errors with several continued lines)

\*2: Reference value (When "15" is set, transmission error with 15 consecutive lines is recognized as a burst error.)

When any of the above conditions is detected during reception of image signals, RTN signal is sent after reception of the procedure signal from the sending machine. Increasing such parameter sends less RTN signal.

### 005: NCC pause time (before ID code)

Set the pause time to be automatically entered between the access code and ID code when dialing on NCC (New Common Carrier) line.

### 006: NCC pause time (after ID code)

Set the pause time to be automatically entered between the ID code and the other party's telephone number when dialing on NCC (New Common Carrier) line.

### 007: Prepose time at the time of making a call

When automatically making a call, set the time from closing a line to making a call.

### 009: Comparing the number of digits between the sender's telephone number and the receiver's telephone number

Set the TSI comparing the number of digits (last XX digits) when matching telephone numbers.

**010: Line connection identification time**

Set the line connection identification time.

Increase this parameter in the case of frequent errors caused by line connection status at the time of communication.

**NOTE:**

Error codes caused by line connection status

##005, ##018

The line connection identification time is the duration from when the dial signal is transmitted until the line is disconnected at the sending side, or from when DIS signal is transmitted until the line is disconnected at the reception side.

**011: T.30 T1 timer (for reception)**

Set T1 timer at the time of reception (wait time until receiving the meaningful signal after DIS transmission).

**013: T.30 EOL timer**

Set the receivable 1 line transmission time.

In the case of a long line data length (e.g.: computer FAX), extend the transmission time to prevent reception errors.

**015: Hooking detection time**

Set the hooking detection time.

**016: Time until the primary response is obtained when switching FAX/TEL**

Set the time from when capturing the line until transmission of pseudo RBT at FAX/TEL switching function operation.

**017: Pseudo RBT signal pattern ON time/ 018: Pseudo RBT signal pattern OFF time (short)/ 019: Pseudo RBT signal pattern OFF time (long)**

Set the pattern of pseudo RBT signal to be sent at Fax/Tel switching function operation.

**020: Pseudo CI signal pattern ON time/ 021: Pseudo CI signal pattern OFF time (short)/ 022: Pseudo CI signal pattern OFF time (long)**

Set the pattern of pseudo CI signal to be sent at Fax/Tel switching function operation.

**023: CNG detection level when switching FAX/TEL**

Set the CNG detection level at Fax/Tel switching function operation.

**024: Pseudo RBT transmission level when switching FAX/TEL**

Set the transmission level of pseudo RBT at Fax/Tel switching function operation.

**025: CNG monitoring time when the answering phone connection function is set****027: V21 low-speed flag preamble detection time**

Set the period of time for judge detection of V.21 low-speed command preamble.

Continuous detection for the fixed period of time leads to command analysis.

**028: Off-hook PCB duty settings**

Set the Off-hook PCB duty setting.

When 0 or a value that is 100 or more is entered, the duty becomes 50%.

**080: Transmission number restriction: Outside line transmission number**

This sets the number permitted to dial to the outside line.

Only the outside line transmission by the set number is permitted and other numbers are prohibited from transmission.

## Setting of Destination (TYPE)

### ■ Overview

When the type shown on the display is set, all the service data is set to match each country/region domestic telecommunication standards.

## Setting of Printer Functions (PRINTER)

### ■ Setting of Bit Switch (SSSW)

#### ● SSSW-SW01

#### Functional Construction

| Bit | Function                                      | 1      | 0             |
|-----|---|--------|---------------|
| 0   | Not used                                      | -      | -             |
| 1   | Not used                                      | -      | -             |
| 2   | Not used                                      | -      | -             |
| 3   | Not used                                      | -      | -             |
| 4   | Not used                                      | -      | -             |
| 5   | Not used                                      | -      | -             |
| 6   | Hold the line (when error code occurs)        | Hold   | Do not hold   |
| 7   | Output a print log when DUMP report is output | Output | Do not output |

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 6

Select whether to hold the line when an error code occurs.

However, in the case of vertical scanning prioritized recording, even when 0 is set for Bit 1 and Bit 0, the priority order will be Letter -> A4 -> Legal.

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 7

Select whether to output a print log at the time of the DUMP report output.

#### ● SSSW-SW05

#### Functional Construction

| Bit | Function                                | 1          | 0              |
|-----|---|------------|----------------|
| 0   | Letter priority                         | Set        | Do not set     |
| 1   | Legal priority                          | Set        | Do not set     |
| 2   | Not used                                | -          | -              |
| 3   | Not used                                | -          | -              |
| 4   | Not used                                | -          | -              |
| 5   | To prohibit reduced size printing (A4)  | Prohibited | Not prohibited |
| 6   | To prohibit reduced size printing (A4)  | Prohibited | Not prohibited |
| 7   | Vertical scanning prioritized recording | Set        | Do not set     |

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 0 and 1

When an image which can be printed in 100% magnification and with the same number of divided pages on any of A4, letter and legal is received, set which paper is prioritized for printing.

With the settings of Bit 0 and Bit 1, the priority order of the recording paper is shown in the following table.

| Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Priority order of the recording paper |
|-------|-------|---------------------------------------|
| 0     | 0     | A4 -> Letter -> Legal                 |
| 0     | 1     | Letter -> A4 -> Legal                 |
| 1     | 0     | Legal -> Letter -> A4                 |
| 1     | 1     | Letter -> Legal -> A4                 |

However, in the case of vertical scanning prioritized recording, the priority order will be Letter -> A4 -> Legal even when 0 is set for Bit 1 and Bit 0.

#### Detailed Discussions of Bit 5 and 6

Select whether to enable reduced size printing for A4 or LTR.



### Detailed Discussions of Bit 7

Set whether to set vertical scanning prioritized recording.

#### Set:

If B4 recording paper and A4 recording paper are set and an A4 extra-long image (\*) is received, printing will be on the B4 recording paper.

#### Do not set:

If B5 horizontal recording paper and A4 recording paper are set and a B4 image is received, printing will be by division and on B5 horizontal recording paper.

\*: Image B4 or shorter and that cannot be printed on A4 recording paper.

## • SSSW-SW06

### Functional Construction

| Bit | Function                       | 1      | 0       |
|-----|--------------------------------|--------|---------|
| 0   | Not used                       | -      | -       |
| 1   | Not used                       | -      | -       |
| 2   | Not used                       | -      | -       |
| 3   | Not used                       | -      | -       |
| 4   | Not used                       | -      | -       |
| 5   | Reduced printing from A4 to B5 | Enable | Disable |
| 6   | Not used                       | -      | -       |
| 7   | Not used                       | -      | -       |

### Detailed Discussions of Bit 5

Set whether to execute the reduction print that forcibly reduces the received A4 size document into the B5 size. This function is invalid when outputting the report.

## ■ Setting of Numeric Parameter (NUMERIC Param.)

### • Numerical Parameter Composition

| No. | Function  | Setting range | Initial setting | Unit |
|-----|---|---------------|-----------------|------|
| 01  | Missing areas of printing image when receiving image with longer length than standard | 0 to 9999     | 12              | 1 mm |
| 04  | Leading edge blank area   | 0 to 9999     | 3               | 1 mm |
| 05  | Trailing edge blank area  | 0 to 9999     | 3               | 1 mm |

#### <001: printing upon reception of extra-length image>

Use it to set the range of the image to be removed from when printing an extra-length received image.

Lower the parameter to decrease the range if the trailing edge of the received image must be retained (as when it is longer than the effective recording length).

#### <004: leading edge margin>

Use it to set the leading-edge margin for the effective recording length.

#### <005: trailing edge margin>

Use it to set the trailing-edge margin for the effective recording length.

## IPFAX Setting

### ■ IPFAX

#### ● BASIC N

| Bit | Function   | Setting range  |
|-----|--|----------------|
| 2   | Session control reception timeout (sec.)             | 0 to 9999 (0*) |
| 20  | Reception start delay time (sec.)                    | 0 to 9999 (0*) |
| 21  | BYE sending delay time at transmission (x10 msec.)   | 0 to 9999 (0*) |
| 22  | BYE receiving delay time at transmission (x10 msec.) | 0 to 9999 (0*) |

#### ● NETA NUM

| Bit | Function                          | Setting range   |
|-----|-----------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1   | T0 timer(Timer C) for IPFAX(sec.) | 0 to 9999 (55*) |

#### ● NETC NUM

| Bit | Function  | Setting range   |
|-----|---|---|
| 1   | SW for adjusting the speed at VoIPGW transmission [%]   | 0 to 9999*<br>However, the value is fixed in the case of ECM, and is corrected by adding 5 %. |
| 2   | VoIPGW buffer size [byte]   | 0 to 9999*<br>However, when the value is 0, it is internally interpreted as 200.              |
| 3   | Packet division size [byte]   | 0 to 9999*<br>However, when the value is 0, it is internally interpreted as 66.               |
| 4   | Number of VoIPGW buffer reset frames at ECM<br>* At ECM transmission, when frames of the number of this NUM value have been transmitted, the next frames will be transmitted after the VoIPGW buffer becomes empty. | 0 to 9999*<br>However, when the value is 0, it is internally interpreted as 16.               |

#### ● T.38 Bit Setting

##### SW01

| Bit | Function   | Setting range |            |
|-----|--|---------------|------------|
|     |  | 1             | 0          |
| 1   | German mode is effective during T.38 communication.  | Effective     | Invalid *  |
| 2   | T.38 significant bit of DIS (bit123) is ignored.<br>(When this SW is effective, the other party's machine is regarded as IPFAX even if DIS bit123 is 0.) | Ignore        | Not ignore |
| 3   | Transmission ECM = OFF setting   | Effective     | Invalid *  |
| 4   | Reception ECM = OFF setting  | Effective     | Invalid *  |

#### ● T.38 NUM Setting

| Bit | Function  | Setting range  |
|-----|---|----------------|
| 1   | High-speed flag sending time of ECM mode for IPFAX (x10 msec.).   | 0 to 9999 (0*) |
| 2   | WAIT time from the close of T.38 to the close of SIP: Unit; second<br>(However, the setting becomes 2 seconds even if the setting is changed to 2 or more. ). | 0 to 9999 (1*) |



## Using Test Mode

## 1. Press the desired item to highlight; then, press the OK key to bring up its screen.

The following table shows text mode items that are valid and invalid when a fax board is installed:

Yes: may be used

-: not used

| Level 1  | Level 2   | Fax Board present |
|----------|-----------|-------------------|
| MODEM    | RELAY-1   | Yes               |
|          | RELAY-2   | -                 |
|          | FREQ      | Yes               |
|          | G3TX      | Yes               |
|          | DTMFTX    | Yes               |
|          | TONERX    | -                 |
|          | V34G3TX   | Yes               |
| FACULTY  | G3 4800TX | Yes               |
|          | SPEAKER   | -                 |
|          | DETECT1   | -                 |
|          | DETECT2   | -                 |
|          | DETECT3   | -                 |
|          | VOICETX   | -                 |
| DATA SET |           | -                 |
| ISDNMOD  |           | -                 |
| ISDNMOD2 |           | -                 |

**CAUTION:**

Do not use items in the table identified as "-."

## ■ MODEM Test

### ● Relay Test (RELAY-1)


Use it to see if the individual relays on the NCU board go on and off as expected.







| Sssw    | Menu      | Num   | Ncu     | Type | IP FAX | Print | Clear | Test | Report |
|---------|-----------|-------|---------|------|--------|-------|-------|------|--------|
| <MODEM> | <RELAY-1> | <1/1> | <READY> |      |        |       |       |      |        |
| CML     | OFF       |       |         |      |        |       |       |      |        |
| P       | OFF       |       |         |      |        |       |       |      |        |
| S       | OFF       |       |         |      |        |       |       |      |        |
| H       | OFF       |       |         |      |        |       |       |      |        |
| D       | OFF       |       |         |      |        |       |       |      |        |
| R       | OFF       |       |         |      |        |       |       |      |        |

## Using Text Mode

- From the relays indicated on the screen, select the one you want to test; then, turn it off or on using the Up/Down key. (Some of the relays may not actually exist on the NCU board.)

### • Frequency Test (FREQ)


Of the items indicated below, press one; in response, the DC circuit will be closed and the selected frequency will be transmitted using the tone transmission function of the modem. You can also monitor the transmission signal by listening to the sound generated by the speaker. To stop the operation and end test mode, press the  key.







| Ssw    | Menu | Num | Ncu   | Type  | IP FAX  | Print   | Clear   | Test   | Report |
|--------|------|-----|---|---|---|---|---|--|--------|
|        |      |     |   | <MODEM>   | <FREQ>  | <1/1>   | <READY>   |  |        |
| RBT    |      |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |        |
| 462Hz  |      |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |        |
| 1100Hz |      |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |        |
| 1300Hz |      |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |        |
| 1500Hz |      |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |        |
| 1650Hz |      |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |        |
| 1850Hz |      |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |        |
| 2100Hz |      |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |        |
|        |      |     |  |  |  |  |  |  |        |

**CAUTION:**

'RBT' is not currently supported.

### • G3 Signal Transmission Test (G3 Tx)

Of the items indicated below, press one. In response, the DC circuit will be closed and the selected frequency will be transmitted using the G3 signal transmission function of the modem. You can also monitor the transmission signal by listening to the sound generated by the speaker. To stop the operation and end test mode, press the  key.


| Ssw      | Menu | Num | Ncu   | Type  | IP FAX  | Print   | Clear   | Test   | Report |
|----------|------|-----|---|---|---|---|---|--|--------|
|          |      |     |   | <MODEM>   | <G3TX>  | <1/2>   | <READY>   |  |        |
| 300bps   |      |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |        |
| 2400bps  |      |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |        |
| 4800bps  |      |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |        |
| 7200bps  |      |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |        |
| 9600bps  |      |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |        |
| TC7200   |      |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |        |
| TC9600   |      |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |        |
| 12000bps |      |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |        |
|          |      |     |  |  |  |  |  |  |        |

| Sssw | Menu   | Num | Ncu    | Type | IP FAX | Print | Clear | Test    | Report |
|------|--|-----|--------|------|--------|-------|-------|---------|--------|
|      | <MODEM>  |     | <G3TX> |      | <2/2>  |       |       | <READY> |        |
|      | 14400bps   |     |        |      |        |       |       |         |        |
|      | 300-ALL0   |     |        |      |        |       |       |         |        |
|      | 300-ALL1   |     |        |      |        |       |       |         |        |
|      | 300-1:1  |     |        |      |        |       |       |         |        |
|      | 300-1:4  |     |        |      |        |       |       |         |        |
|      | 300-4:1  |     |        |      |        |       |       |         |        |
|      | <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <span>←</span> <span>→</span> <span>▽</span> <span>△</span> <span>↵</span> <span>OK ↵</span> </div> |     |        |      |        |       |       |         |        |

**CAUTION:**

'300-ALL0' through '300-4:1' are not currently supported.

### • DTMF Transmission Test

Of the items indicated below, press one; in response, the DC circuit will be closed and the selected DTMF signal will be transmitted using the DTMF transmission function of the modem. You can also monitor the transmission signal by listening to the speaker. To stop the operation and to end test mode, press the  key.

| Sssw | Menu   | Num | Ncu                     | Type | IP FAX | Print | Clear | Test    | Report |
|------|--|-----|-------------------------|------|--------|-------|-------|---------|--------|
|      | <MODEM>  |     | <DTMFTX>                |      | <1/1>  |       |       | <READY> |        |
|      | LONG   |     | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 * # |      |        |       |       |         |        |
|      | <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <span>←</span> <span>→</span> <span>▽</span> <span>△</span> <span>↵</span> <span>OK ↵</span> </div> |     |                         |      |        |       |       |         |        |


Using Text Mode

1. From the items indicated on the screen, select the item you want to test; then, press the key on keypad that corresponds to the DTMF signal to test.

**CAUTION:**

'SHORT' is not currently supported.

### • V.34 G3 Signal Transmission Test (V34G3Tx)

Select the transmission speed you want to test, and then select a modulation speed (baud rate); in response, the V.34 G3 transmission signal will be transmitted to the telephone line terminal and the speaker. To stop the operation and to end test mode, press the  key.


| Sssw     | Menu | Num       | Ncu | Type  | IP FAX | Print   | Clear | Test | Report |
|----------|------|-----------|-----|-------|--------|---------|-------|------|--------|
| <MODEM>  |      | <V34G3TX> |     | <1/1> |        | <READY> |       |      |        |
| SPEED    |      | 33600bps  |     |       |        |         |       |      |        |
| 3429baud |      |           |     |       |        |         |       |      |        |
| 3200baud |      |           |     |       |        |         |       |      |        |
| 3000baud |      |           |     |       |        |         |       |      |        |
| 2800baud |      |           |     |       |        |         |       |      |        |
| 2743baud |      |           |     |       |        |         |       |      |        |
| 2400baud |      |           |     |       |        |         |       |      |        |
| ←        |      | →         |     | ▽     |        | △       |       | ↵    |        |
| OK       |      | ↵         |     |       |        |         |       |      |        |

Using Text Mode

1. Select 'SPEED', and then select the speed you want to test using the Up/Down key.
2. Select the baud rate you want to test.

## ■ Function Test

### ● 4800-bps Signal Transmission Test

The DC circuit will be closed, and a 4800-bps signal will be transmitted using the 4800-bps signal transmission function of the modem. You can also monitor the transmission signal by listening to the speaker. To stop the operation and end test mode, press the  key.

| Sssw      | Menu | Num        | Ncu | Type  | IP FAX | Print   | Clear | Test | Report |
|-----------|------|------------|-----|-------|--------|---------|-------|------|--------|
| <FACULTY> |      | <G34800TX> |     | <1/1> |        | <READY> |       |      |        |
| G34800TX  |      |            |     |       |        |         |       |      |        |
| ←         |      | →          |     | ▽     |        | △       |       | ↵    |        |
| OK        |      | ↵          |     |       |        |         |       |      |        |

## ● Service Report (REPORT)

### ■ System Data List

Use it to check the settings associated with the service soft switch and service parameters.

```

2003 09/02 TUE 12:00 FAX
*****
*** SYSTEM DATA LIST ***
*****
SERIAL NO          XXXXXXXX
#1 SSSW
SW01             ..... 00000000
SW02             ..... 10000000
SW03             ..... 00000000
SW04             ..... 10000000
SW05             ..... 00000000
SW06             ..... 10000000
SW07             ..... 00000000
SW08             ..... 00000000
SW09             ..... 00000000
SW10             ..... 00000000
SW11             ..... 00000000
SW12             ..... 00000011
SW13             ..... 00000000
SW14             ..... 00000000
SW15             ..... 00000000
SW16             ..... 00000000
SW17             ..... 00000000
SW18             ..... 00000000
SW19             ..... 00011000
SW20             ..... 00000000
SW21             ..... 00000000
SW22             ..... 00000000
SW23             ..... 00000000
SW24             ..... 00000000
SW25             ..... 00000000
SW26             ..... 00100000
SW27             ..... 00000000
SW28             ..... 00000000
SW29             ..... 00000000
SW30             ..... 00000000
SW31             ..... 00000000
SW32             ..... 00000000
SW33             ..... 00000000
SW34             ..... 00000000
SW35             ..... 00000000
SW36             ..... 00000000
SW37             ..... 00000000
SW38             ..... 00000000
SW39             ..... 00000000
SW40             ..... 00000000
SW41             ..... 00000000
SW42             ..... 00000000
SW43             ..... 00000000
SW44             ..... 00000000
SW45             ..... 00000000
SW46             ..... 00000000
SW47             ..... 00000000
SW48             ..... 00000000
SW49             ..... 00000000
SW50             ..... 00000000

#2 MENU
01:             ..... 0
02:             ..... 0
03:             ..... 0
04:             ..... 0
05:             ..... 0
06:             ..... 0
07:             ..... 10
08:             ..... 0
09:             ..... 0
10:             ..... 2
  
```

### ■ System Dump List

**NOTE:**

A system dump list is generated when you execute the following in service mode: FAX > Report > DUMP.

Use it to check the history of communications, both successful and error.

```

2013 04/05 FRI 12:00 FAX
*****
*** SYSTEM DUMP LIST ***
*****
SERIAL NO          XXXXXXXX
CLEAR DATE         2013 02/03 FRI 13:37
*1 TX = 1298
*2 A4 = 1302 B4 = 49 A3 = 27 LTR = 0 LGL = 0
*1 RX = 1572
*2 A4 = 1581 B4 = 59 A3 = 59 LTR = 0 LGL = 0
*3 NWSPD = 0
*3 33600 = 1 31200 = 0 28800 = 2986 26400 = 0 24000 = 0
21600 = 0 19200 = 0 16800 = 0 14400 = 0 12000 = 0
9600 = 0 7200 = 0 4800 = 0 2400 = 0
14400 = 83 12000 = 1 TC9600 = 0 TC7200 = 0
14400 = 0 14400 = 0
*4 9600 = 2 7200 = 0 4800 = 4 2400 = 0
STD = 60 FINE = 2839 SUPER = 107 ULTRA = 71
*5 MH = 7 MR = 32 MMR = 9 JBIG = 3029 JPEG = 0
*6 G3 = 37 ECM = 3040 G4 = 0 IPECM = 0 IPG3 = 0
*7 #000 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 2 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 22 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
  
```



- \*1: RX, total reception number of times; TX, total transmission number of times.
- \*2: number of pages sent/received according to original size.
- \*3: number of pages sent/received in connection with different modem speeds (NWSPD : For IPFAX communication count).
- \*4: number of communication pages by resolution(Standard, Fine, Super Fine, Ultra Fine).
- \*5: number of pages sent/received in connection with different coding methods.
- \*6: number of transmissions/receptions according to mode.
- \*7: number of occurrences according to error code.

Indication sample



It provides error information on the 3 most recent communications.

```

2003 0902 TUE 12:00 FAX                               0001
*1----- #1 LATEST                                     #000
*2----- START TIME                                0902 10:00
*3----- OTHER PARTY                               12345678
*4----- MAKER CODE                                10001000
*5----- MACHINE CODE                              0100001 00000000
          RCV VS FRAME                               E0 81 85 D4 90 7E 00 00 <-Not displayed when IPFAX is enabled
          SYMBOL RATE                               3429 baud
          DATA RATE                                28800 bps [V.34]
          TX LVL REDUCTION                          0
          ERR ABCODE                                00
          ERR SECTXB                                00
          ERR SECRXB                                00
*6----- Rx : (bit 1)                               00000100 01110111 01011111 00100011 00000001 10101001 00000001 00000001 (bit 64)
          (bit 65)                                00000001 00000001 00000100 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 (bit 128)
*7----- Tx : (bit 1)                               00000000 01000010 00011111 00100001 00000001 00000001 00000001 00000001 (bit 64)
          (bit 65)                                00000001 00000001 00000100 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 (bit 128)

Rx : NSF CSI DIS          CFR          MCF          MCF
Tx :          NSS TSI DCS    PIX-288 PPS-NUL    PIX-288 PPS-NUL    PIX-288 PPS-NUL

#2                                     #000
          START TIME                                0902 09:30
          OTHER PARTY                               12345678
          MAKER CODE                                10001000
          MACHINE CODE                              0100001 00000000
          RCV VS FRAME                               E0 81 85 D4 90 7E 00 00 <-Not displayed when IPFAX is enabled
          SYMBOL RATE                               3429 baud
          DATA RATE                                28800 bps [V.34]
          TX LVL REDUCTION                          0
          ERR ABCODE                                00
          ERR SECTXB                                00
          ERR SECRXB                                00

Rx : (bit 1)                               00000100 01110111 01011111 00100011 00000001 10101001 00000001 00000001 (bit 64)
          (bit 65)                                00000001 00000001 00000100 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 (bit 128)
Tx : (bit 1)                               00000000 01000010 00011111 00100001 00000001 00000001 00000001 00000001 (bit 64)
          (bit 65)                                00000001 00000001 00000100 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 (bit 128)

Rx : NSF CSI DIS          CFR          MCF          MCF
Tx :          NSS TSI DCS    PIX-288 PPS-NUL    PIX-288 PPS-NUL    PIX-288 PPS-NUL

#3 OLDEST                               #000
          START TIME                                0902 09:00
          OTHER PARTY                               12345678
          MAKER CODE                                10001000
          MACHINE CODE                              0100001 00000000
          RCV VS FRAME                               E0 81 85 D4 90 7E 00 00
          SYMBOL RATE                               3429 baud
          DATA RATE                                28800 bps [V.34]
          TX LVL REDUCTION                          0
          ERR ABCODE                                00
          ERR SECTXB                                00
          ERR SECRXB                                00
    
```

- \*1: service error code.
- \*2: START TIME, date and time (in 24-hr notation).
- \*3: OTHER PARTY, telephone number sent by the other party.
- \*4: MAKER CODE, manufacturer code.
- \*5: MACHINE CODE, model code.
- \*6: bit 1 through bit 128 of DIS, DCS, or DTC that has been received.
- \*7: bit 1 through bit 128 of DIS, DCS, or DTC that has been transmitted.
- \*8: RX, procedural signal received; TX, procedural signal transmitted.

## ■ Error Transmission Report

An error transmission report is an error transmission report together to which a service error code and error dump list is attached.

2003 09/02 TUE 12:00 FAX

0001

```

*****
*** FAX ERROR TX REPORT ***
*****
TX FUNCTION WAS NOT COMPLETED

JOB NO.                1269
DESTINATION ADDRESS    12345678
PSWDSUBADDRESS
DESTINATION ID
ST. TIME              09/02 09:00
USAGE T              01'50
PGS.                 1
RESULT               NG
                   1      ##750
    
```

```

START TIME          09/02 09:00
OTHER PARTY         12345678
MAKER CODE          10001000
MACHINE CODE        0100001 00000000
RCV VS FRAME        E0 81 85 D4 90 7E 00 00
SYMBOL RATE         3429 baud
DATA RATE           28800 bps [V.34]
TX LVL REDUCTION    0
ERR ABCODE          92
ERR SECTXB          8A
ERR SECRXB          80
    
```

```

Rx : (bit 1) 00000100 01110111 01011111 00100011 00000001 10101001 00000001 (bit 56)
           (bit 57) 00000001 00000001 00000100 00000000 00000000 (bit 96)
Tx : (bit 1) 00000000 01000010 00011111 00100001 00000001 00000001 00000001 (bit 56)
           (bit 57) 00000001 00000001 00000100 00000000 00000000 (bit 96)
    
```

|                  |                 |                 |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Rx : NSF CSI DIS | CFR             | MCF             | MCF             |
| Tx : NSS TSI DCS | PIX-288 PPS-NUL | PIX-288 PPS-NUL | PIX-288 PPS-NUL |
| Rx : MCF         | MCF             | MCF             |                 |
| Tx :             | PIX-288 PPS-NUL | PIX-288 PPS-EOP | DCN             |

# 10

## Installation

|  |      |
|--|------|
| How to Utilize This Installation       |      |
| Procedure.....                         | 1464 |
| Checking before Installation.....      | 1465 |
| Installation of Host Machine.....      | 1468 |
| When Relocating the Machine.....       | 1510 |
| Printer Cover-H2.....                  | 1518 |
| NFC Kit-E1/E2.....                     | 1529 |
| Connection Kit-A2/A3 for Bluetooth     |      |
| LE.....                                | 1548 |
| Numeric Keypad-A1/A2.....              | 1558 |
| Reader Heater-P1.....                  | 1564 |
| Paper Deck Heater Unit-A1.....         | 1576 |
| Shift Tray-F1.....                     | 1584 |
| Utility Tray-B1.....                   | 1590 |
| Copy Card Reader-F1.....               | 1594 |
| Serial Interface Kit-K3 / Copy Control |      |
| Interface Kit-A1.....                  | 1604 |
| Voice Operation Kit-D1.....            | 1610 |
| Voice Guidance Kit-G1.....             | 1619 |
| HDD-related Option.....                | 1626 |
| Super G3 FAX Board-AS1.....            | 1646 |
| Super G3 FAX Board-AS2.....            | 1652 |
| Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS1        |      |
| .....                                  | 1657 |
| Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS2        |      |
| .....                                  | 1668 |

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS1..... | 1679 |
| Super G3 3rd4th Line Fax Board-AS2.....  | 1686 |

# How to Utilize This Installation Procedure







## Description on the Parts Included in the Package







The parts with a diagonal line in the contents list will not be used.

## Symbols

The frequently-performed operations are described with symbols in this procedure.

Screw

|   |   |  |  |   |  |
|---|---|--|--|---|--|
|  |  |  1x |  1x |  1x |  1x |
| Packaged Item   | Unused Parts  | Install  | Remove   | Tighten   | Loosen   |

|  |  |  |  |  |   |
|--|--|--|--|--|---|
| Harness<br>(Common for Guides<br>and Clamps)   |  | Connector  |  | Power Cord   |   |
|  1x |  1x |  1x |  1x |  |  |
| Install  | Remove   | Connect  | Disconnect   | Connect  | Disconnect  |

Power

|   |   |   |   |  |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|--|---|---|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ON  | OFF   | Check the sound   | Check visually  | Check  | Push  | Cleaning  |

## Checking before Installation

Following shows requirements for the installation site. Therefore, it is desirable to see the installation site in advance before bringing in the machine to the user's site.

### Checking the Power Supply

1. **Be sure to connect the power plug exclusively to an outlet that compiles with the following.**
  - USA : 110-127V +/-10%, 60Hz, 16A
  - EUR/Asia/Oceania/China/Korea : 220-240V +/-10%, 50/60Hz, 10A
  - TW : 110-120V +/-10%, 60Hz, 16A
2. **Install this machine near the power outlet and leave sufficient space around the power plug so that it can be unplugged easily in an emergency.**

### Checking the Installation Environment

1. The environment of the installation site must be in the range as shown below. Avoid installation near the faucet, water boiler, humidifier or refrigerator.  
Guaranteed range for operation/image Temperature: 10.0 to 30.0 deg C, Humidity: 20 to 80%
2. The machine must not be installed near a source of fire or in an area subject to dust or ammonium gas.  
If the area is exposed to direct rays of the sun, provide curtains to the window.
3. Be sure to provide adequate ventilation of the room to keep the work environment comfortable. Room odor can be bothering when running the machine for a long time in a poorly-ventilated room although the ozone amount generated while running this equipment does not harm human health.

### Points to Note at Installation Work

Take note of the following points when installing the host machine.

1. **Moving the host machine from a cool place to a warm place can generate condensation, causing moisture beads on the metal surface. Using the host machine while the machine is condensed can cause image failure. Therefore, when moving the machine from a cool place to a warm place to install, unpack the host machine and leave it for 2 hours or more before the installation work so that the machine becomes used to the room temperature.**
2. **Be sure to work with a group of 4 or more people to install the host machine.**

### Points to Note When Moving This Host Machine

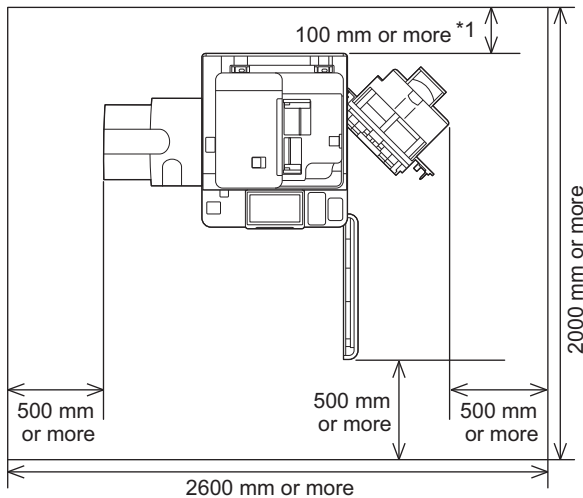
- When moving this host machine after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps. If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.
- Keep the fixation members and screws that were removed during unpacking or installation as they may be used to transport the machine for relocation or repair.

### Checking Installation Space

1. **The foot of this equipment should be in contact with the floor. This equipment should be kept on the level.**

2. The machine must be away from the wall by 100 mm or more to secure a sufficient space to operate the machine.

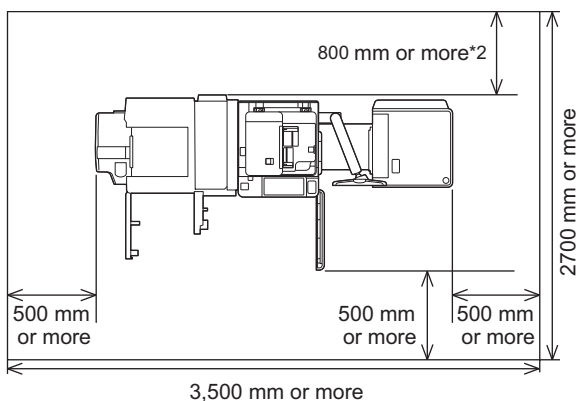
- When the Copy Tray-R2 is attached:



**NOTE:**

\*1 Make sure to provide at least 800 mm of space if you install the Document Insertion/Folding Unit-J1.

- When the Booklet Finisher-AC1, Document Insertion/Folding Unit-J1, POD Deck Lite-C1, Upright Control Panel-J1 are attached:



**NOTE:**

\*2 Make sure to provide at least 100 mm of space if none of the Document Insertion/Folding Unit-J1 is installed.

3. To install the host machine, install it in a well-ventilated place. Especially when there are multiple host machines, be sure to locate the machine where the machine is free from direct exhaust of other machines. Be sure to keep the machine away from the air-inlet duct which is used for ventilation of the room.

## Table of Options Combination

**NOTE:**

Following table shows the combination of options to be installed at the right side of the host machine.

Refer to the table below to install the options described in the table. Be sure to check the combination before the installation work.

|                     | Utility Tray | Voice Operation Kit | Voice Guidance Kit | Copy Card Reader |
|---------------------|--------------|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| Utility Tray        | -            | No                  | No                 | Yes              |
| Voice Operation Kit | No           | -                   | No                 | Yes              |
| Voice Guidance Kit  | No           | No                  | -                  | Yes              |
| Copy Card Reader    | Yes          | Yes                 | Yes                | -                |

Yes: installation is available, No: installation is not available

## Order to Install the Host machine and the Options

**NOTE:**

In the case of installing the host machine and the other options at the same time, follow the order as described below to install the options first so that the installation operability is improved.

1. Checking before Installation
2. Unpacking
3. Checking the Contents
4. Installing the Scanner(Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit)
5. Installation of the Printer Cover (Only for Machines Equipped with the Printer Cover)
6. Installation of the Covers
7. Installation of the Developing Assembly
8. Installation of the Pickup Assembly
9. Installing the Fixing Assembly
10. Installation of Toner Container
11. Installing the Exhaust Filter
12. Setting the Environment Heater Switch
13. Turning ON the Main Power
14. Host Machine Settings (Start Setup Guide)
15. Registration of Installation Date Information

16. Installation of the Host machine
17. Other Installation Work
18. Affixing the Labels on the Reader Assembly (Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit)
19. Storing the Cleaning Cloth (Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit)
20. Checking the K paper settings (Only for CHINA)
21. Setting the Deck
22. Setting the Paper Cassette
23. Image Position Adjustment
24. Image Position Adjustment (Single Pass ADF)
25. Checking the Network Connection
26. Network Troubleshooting
27. Installing the Card Reader

**NOTE:**

When installing the IC Card Reader and the Numeric Keypad at the same time, be sure to install the Numeric Keypad first.

28. Operation when using uniFLOW Online



# Installation of Host Machine

**NOTE:**

The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

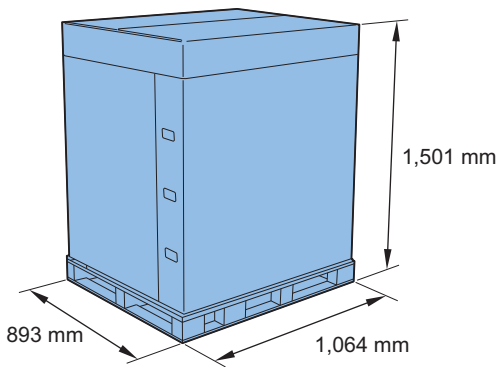
## Unpacking

**CAUTION:**

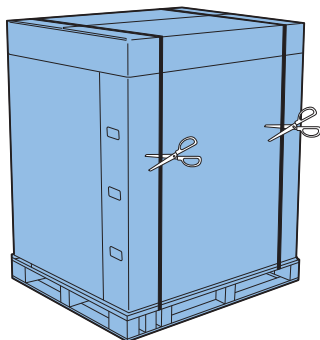
- The host machine weighs about 217 kg (including the DADF). For safety, be sure to work carefully to move and install the machine.
- Be sure to work with a group of 4 or more people to install the host machine.

**NOTE:**

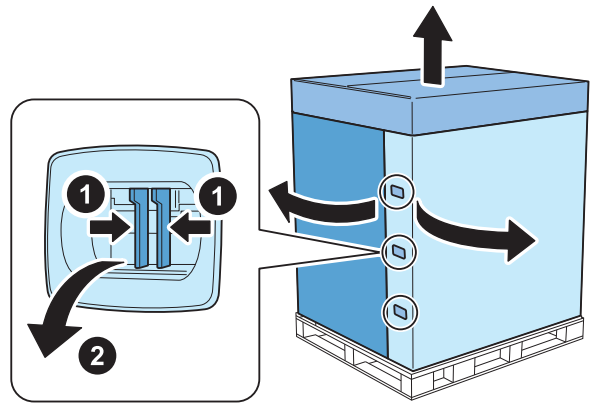
The dimension of the host machine and the transport container is as shown in the figure. Be sure to secure a space to unpack, and then start the installation work.



1. Cut the polyester packing band.



2. Unpack the host machine.



3. Bring down the Package Box from the pallet.

4. Pull the plastic bag all the way down.

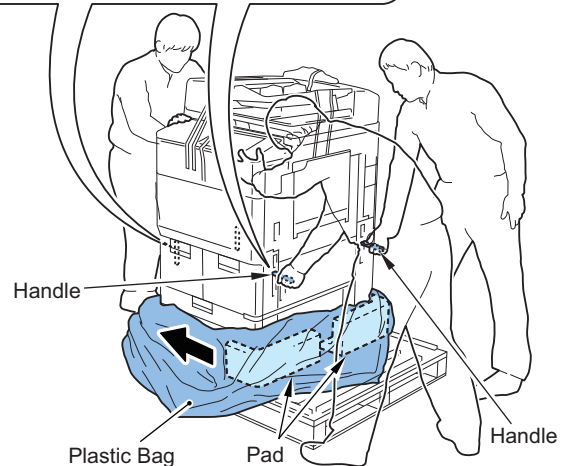
5. Open 4 Handle Covers.

Hold the handles at the right side of the host machine and lift the host machine to remove the pad. Put the plastic bag aside in the direction of the arrow.

- 1 Claw each

**CAUTION:**

Be sure not to lift the host machine too much. Otherwise, it will lose the balance.

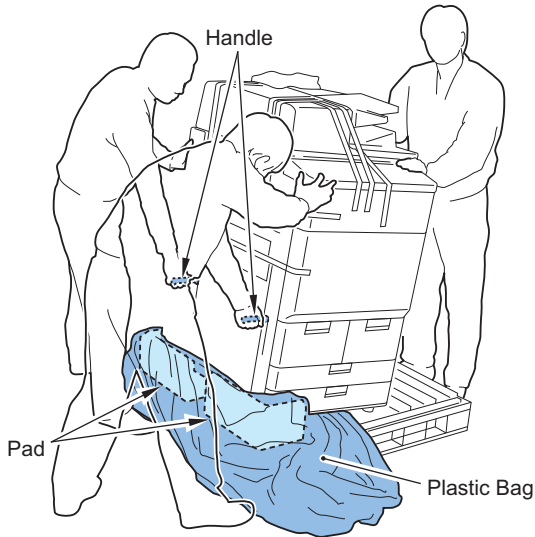




6. Hold the handles at the left side of the host machine and lift the host machine to remove the pad and the plastic bag.

**CAUTION:**

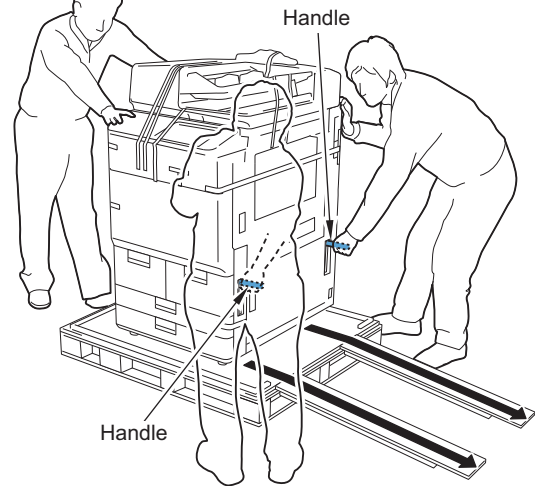
Be sure not to lift the host machine too much. Otherwise, it will lose the balance.



9. Hold the handles at the right side of the host machine, and then, while supporting the corner of the host machine, fit the casters to the center of the Slope Plate to slowly bring the machine down.

**CAUTION:**

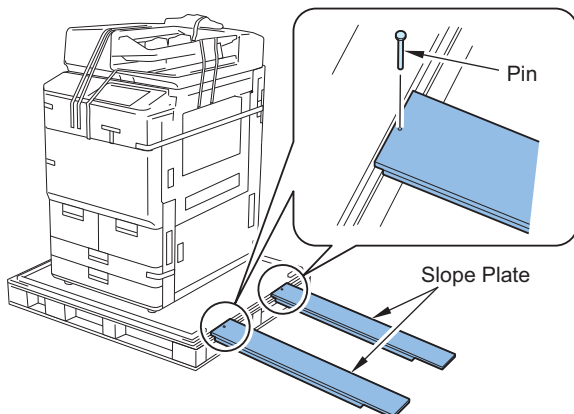
Be careful not to make the casters off from the Slope Plate.



7. Take out the 2 Slope Plates stored at the right side of the Pallet and remove the 2 pins which are secured at the back of the Slope Plate with tape.



8. Turn around the 2 Slope Plates to install as shown in the figure, and then fit the pin-holes of the pallet with the pin-holes of the Slope Plates to put the 2 pins into the holes.



10. Close 4 Handle Covers.

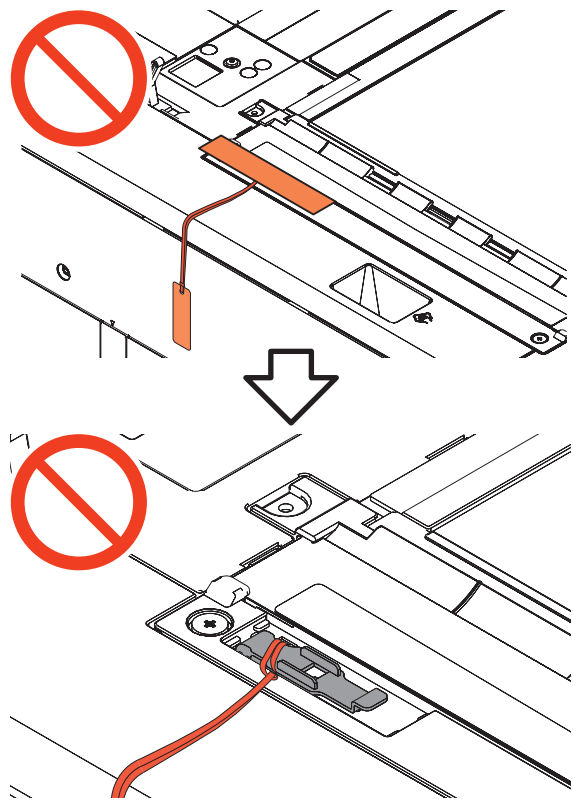


**11. Remove tapes on the exterior surface of the host machine.**

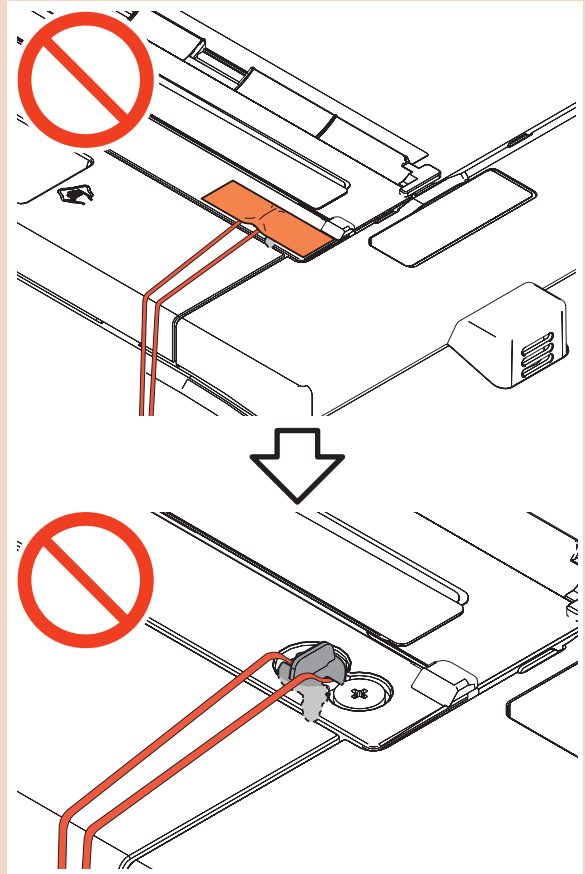
**CAUTION:**

Do not remove the Scanner Fixation Member until you proceed to “Installing the Scanner(Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit)” on page 1473. (Only for machines equipped with the Image Reader Unit.)

**< Rear side >**

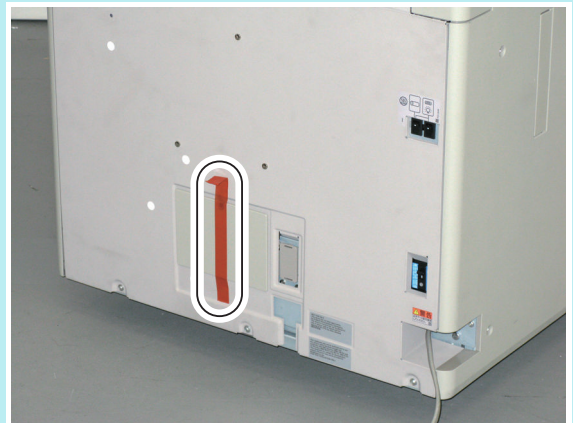


**< Front side >**



**NOTE:**

- When the tape is removed from the Image Reader Unit, the DADF will open. Do not close it in this step.
- Do not remove 5 tapes for tags and a tape for the Filter Cover at this step. These tapes will be removed later on.

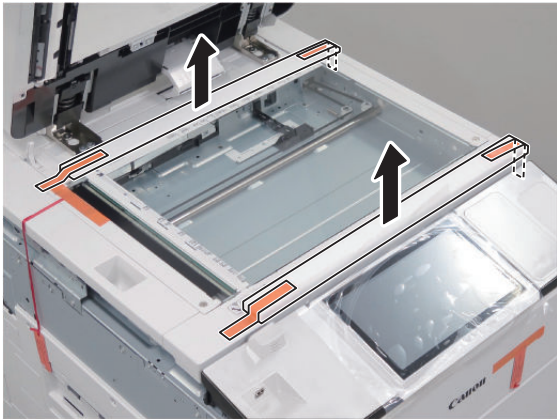




12. Open the DADF and remove tapes on the exterior surface of the host machine. (Only for machines equipped with the Image Reader Unit.)

**NOTE:**

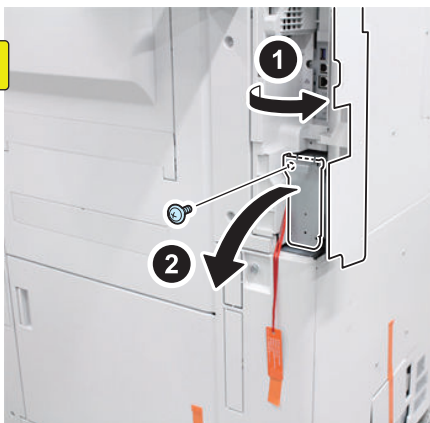
Remove the Scanner Fixation Member and the Scanner Fixation Screw when you proceed to "Installing the Scanner(Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit)" on page 1473.



13. Close the DADF. (Only for machines equipped with the Image Reader Unit.)



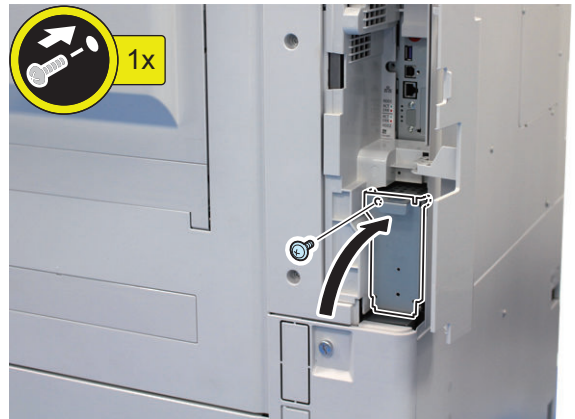
14. Open the Right Rear Cover 1, and Open the HDD Lid.  
• 1 Screw



15. Remove the tape securing the tag and remove the package material.




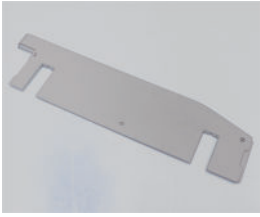
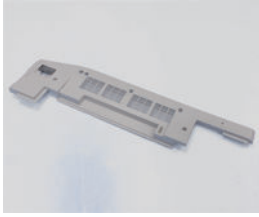

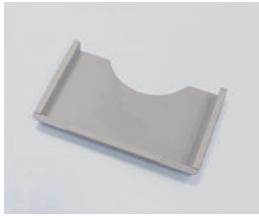
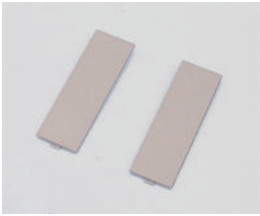

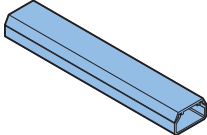
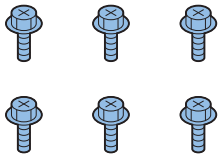

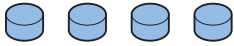


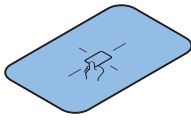
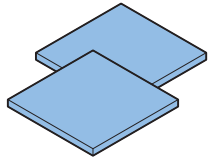
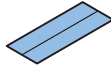

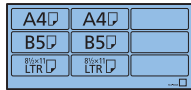
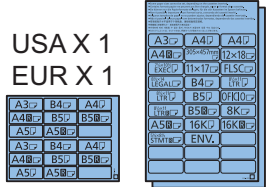
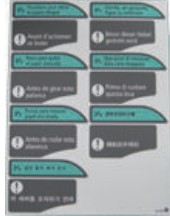

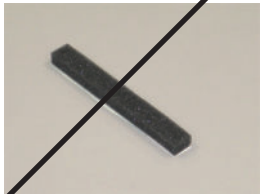
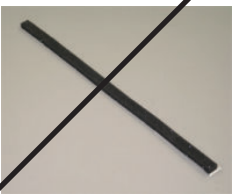
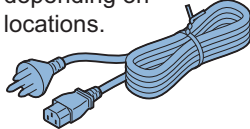
16. Close the HDD Lid.  
• 1 Screw



17. Close the Right Rear Cover 1.

# Checking the Contents

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] Developing Assembly X 1<br>              | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] Toner Container X 1<br>Only for China, Korea and Taiwan<br>   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] Exhaust Filter X 1<br>                   | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] Left Upper Cover X 1<br>  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [5] Right Upper Cover X 1<br>               | <input type="checkbox"/> [6] Upper Rear Cover X 1<br>   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [7] Service Book Holder X 1<br>            | <input type="checkbox"/> [8] Finisher Connector Cover X 2<br>  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [9] Cleaning Tool X 1<br>                  | <input type="checkbox"/> [10] Cord Guide X 1<br>   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [11] Screw (RS Tightening ; M4x10) X 6<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [12] Screw (Binding; M4x6) X 1<br><br><input type="checkbox"/> [13] Rubber Cap X 4<br> |

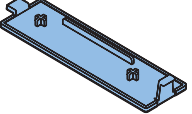

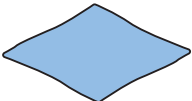

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [14] IC Card Reader Sheet X 1<br>   | <input type="checkbox"/> [15] Cushion X 2<br>   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [16] Double-sided Tape X 1<br>  | <input type="checkbox"/> [17] Wire Saddle X 1<br>   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [18] Paper Size Label (Deck) X 1<br>  | <input type="checkbox"/> [19] Paper Size Label (Cassette) Asia/Oceania X 2<br>USA X 1<br>EUR X 1<br>           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [20] JAM Label X1<br>   | <input type="checkbox"/> [21] Control Panel Language Label X 1<br>Only for Asia/Oceania<br>Used for Korea<br> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [22] Connection Seal (Front) X 1<br>  | <input type="checkbox"/> [23] Connection Seal (Middle) X 1<br>  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [24] Power Code X 1<br>220-240V region only.<br>The connector has a different shape depending on locations.<br> |  |



**NOTE:**

- [16]: Use this if necessary when installing the IC Card Reader.
- [19]: Number of labels attached to the sheet varies according to location/area.
- [21]: Give this to the user as the user may affix it if necessary (See the User's Guide for the procedure).
- [22], [23]: Included in the package of printer models for EUR and USA models (not used for this model).

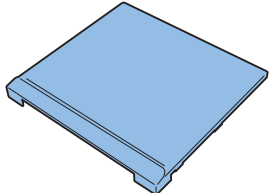



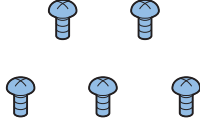
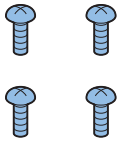

**■ Parts Included in the Package of Models with the Image Reader Unit**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] Reader Left Upper Cover X 1<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] Rubber Cap X 1<br>                                 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] Cleaning Cloth X 1<br>        | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] Copy Prohibition Label<br>USA X 1<br>EUR X 1<br> |

**NOTE:**

[4]: Number of labels attached to the sheet varies according to location/area.

**■ Printer Cover (Only for Machines Equipped with the Printer Cover)**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] Printer Cover X 1<br>           | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] Right Cover Support Plate X 3<br>    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] Reader Fixation Plate L X 1<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] Reader Fixation Plate R X 1<br>      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screw (Binding; M4x6) X 5<br>  | <input type="checkbox"/> [6] Screw (P Tightening; M4x10) X 4<br> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [7] Screw (TP; M4x8) X 1<br>      |  |

**● Installation Procedure**

**■ Installing the Scanner(Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit)**

**NOTE:**

- As the Scanner Fixation Member will be needed when moving the machine, be sure to keep it in a safe place.
- When moving the machine, be sure to execute following service mode (Lv.2), remove the Reader Left Upper, and then install the Scanner Fixation Member. (For details, refer to "When Relocating the Machine".)

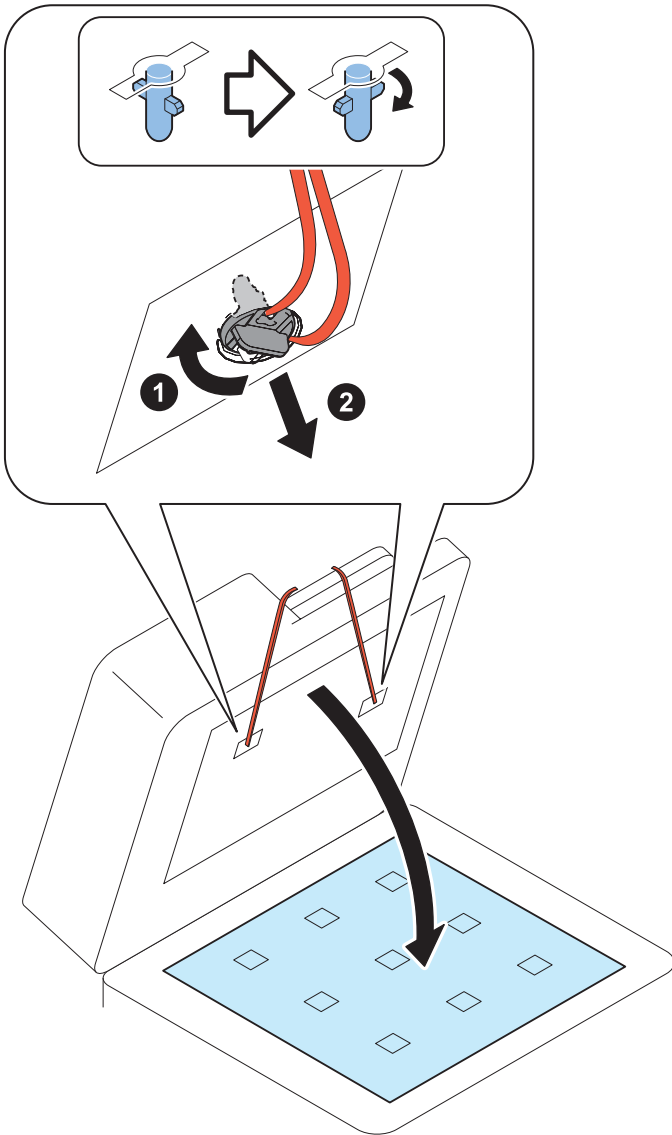
COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-R > RD-SHPOS

□

1. Open the ADF.

□

2.

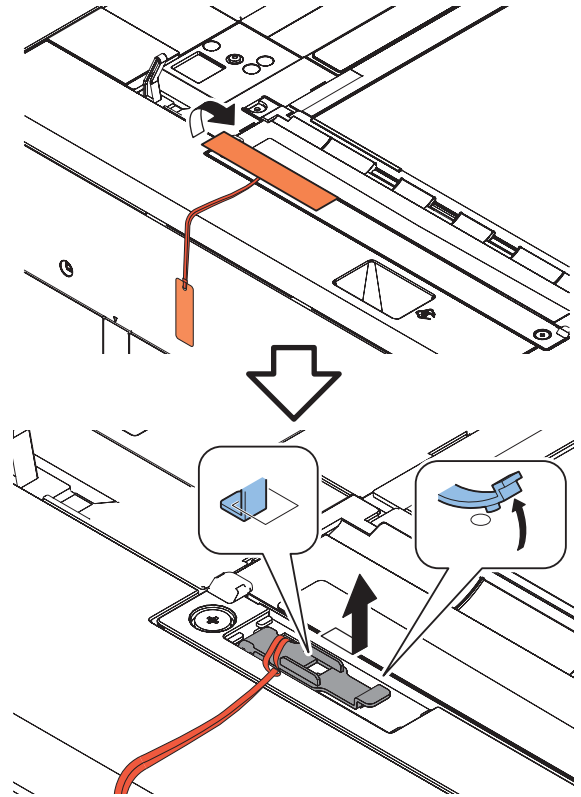


□

3.

**NOTE:**

Be sure to keep the Scanner Fixation Member in a safe place for moving the machine.

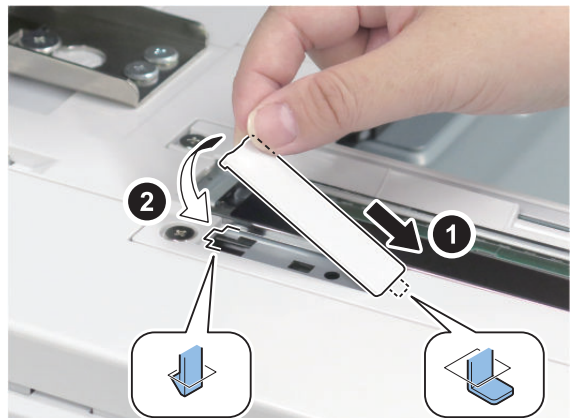
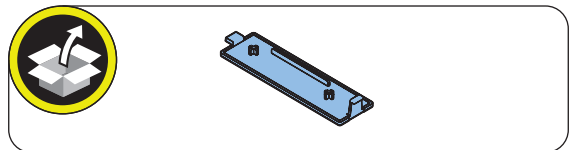


**NOTE:**

The removed Scanner Fixation Member will be stored in step 8.

□

4.

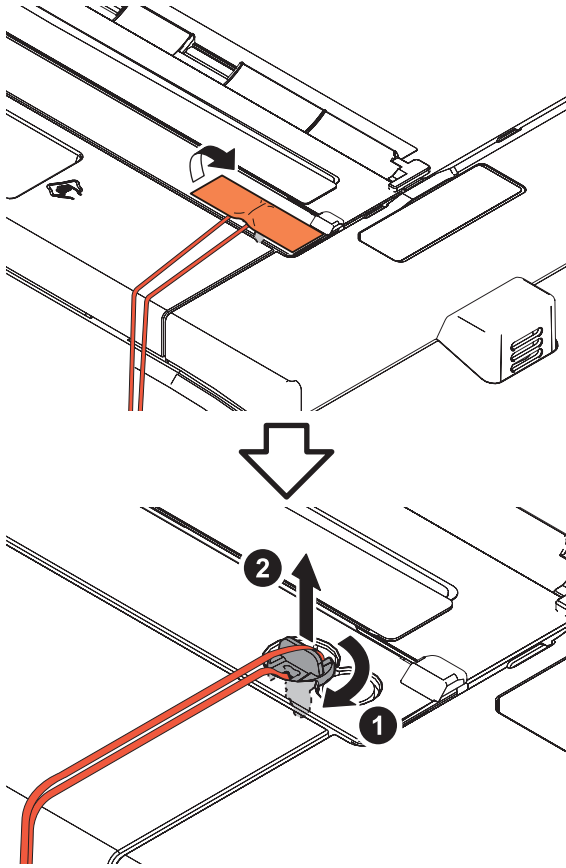




5.

**NOTE:**

Be sure to keep the Scanner Fixation Member in a safe place for moving the machine.

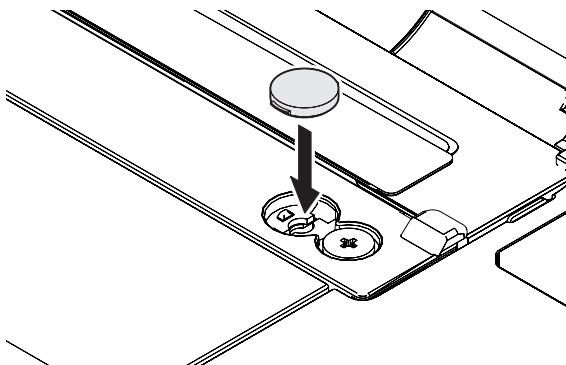
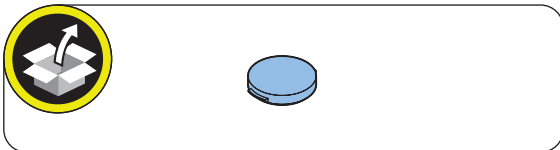


**NOTE:**

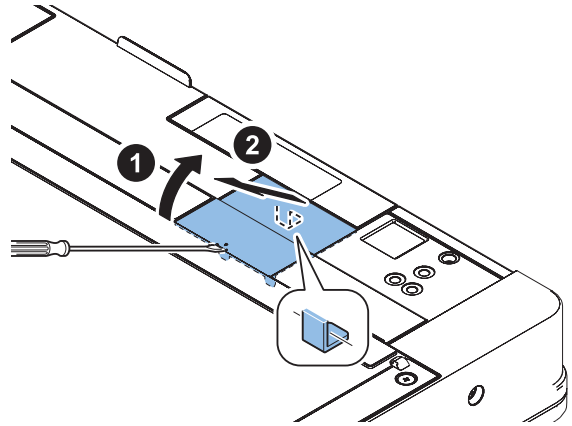
The removed Scanner Fixation Member will be stored in step 10.



6.



7.

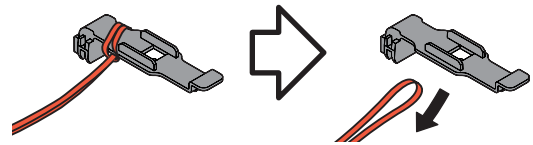


**NOTE:**

The removed Scanner Fixation Member will be stored in step 9.



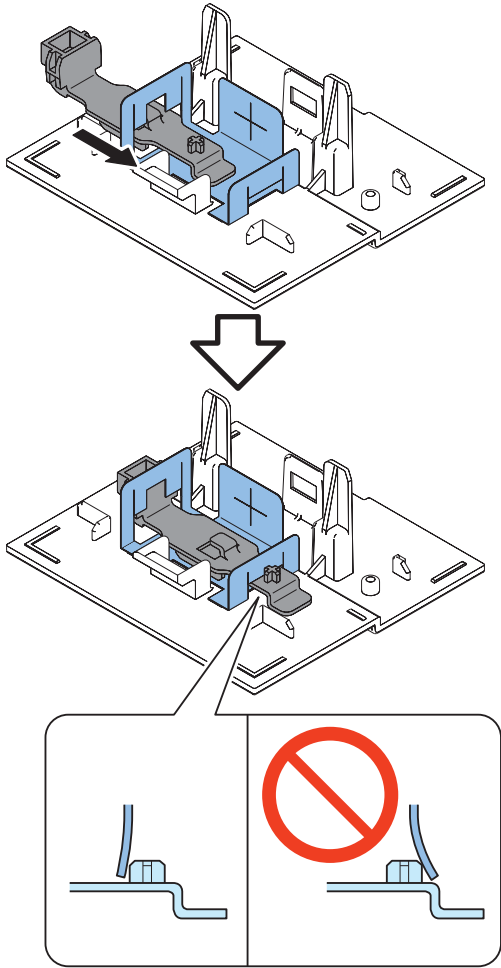
8.





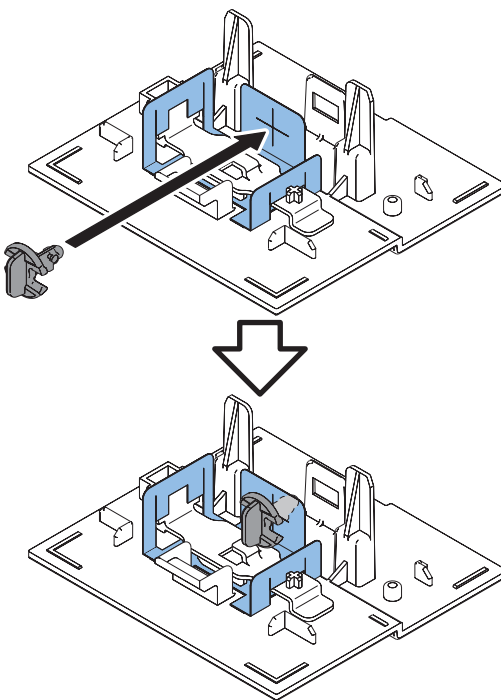
□

9.



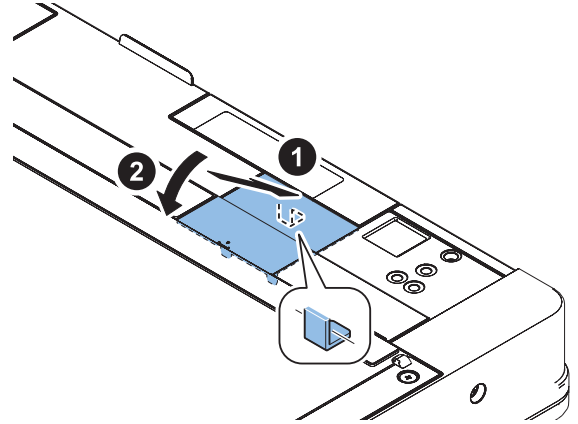
□

10.



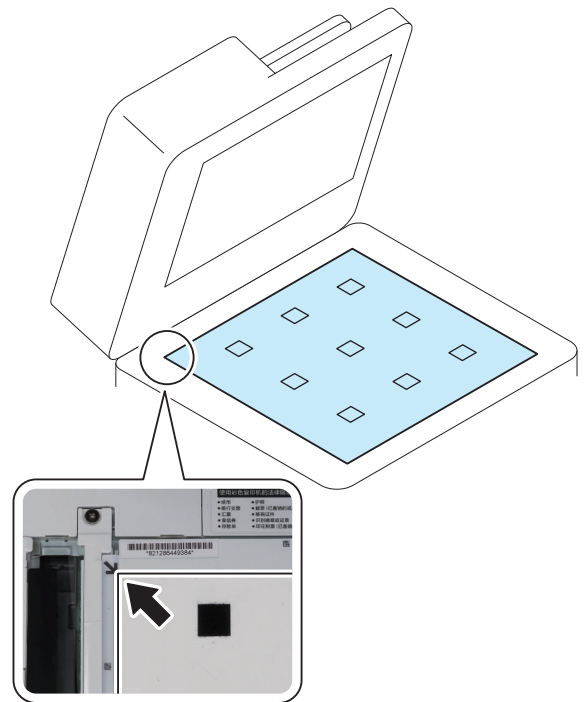
□

11.



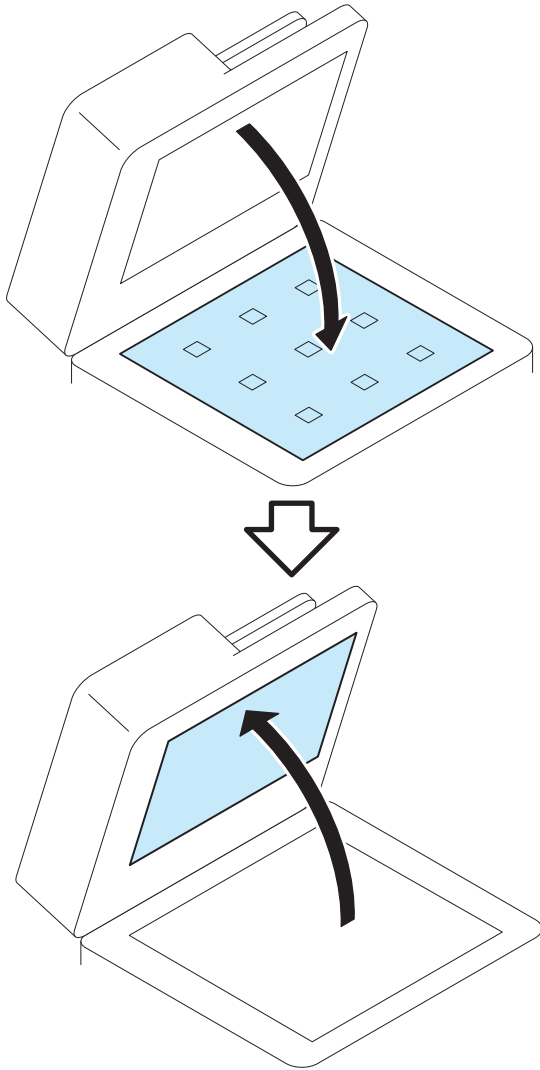
□

12.





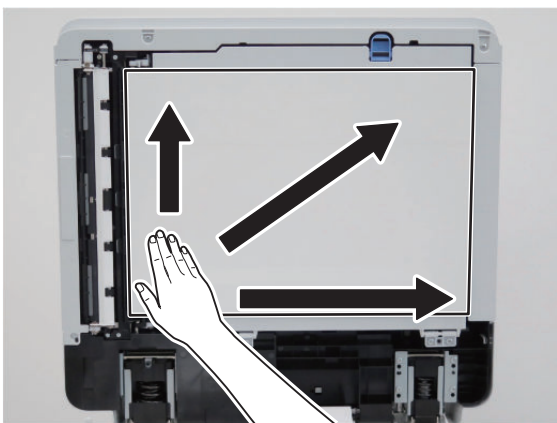
13.



14.

**CAUTION:**

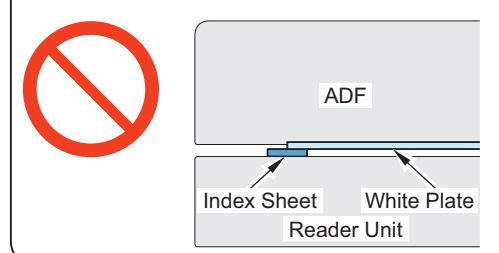
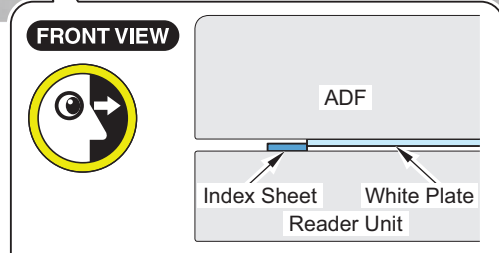
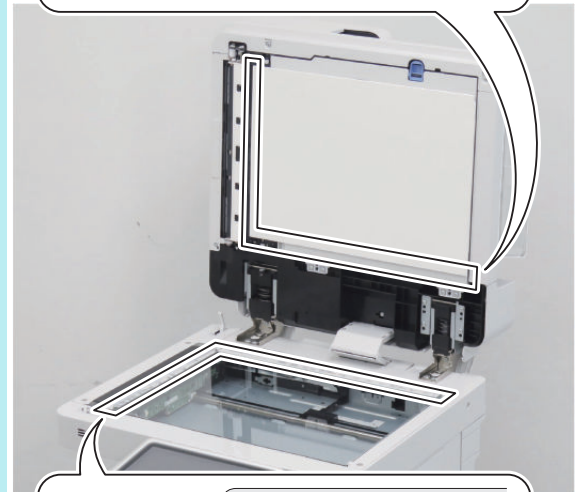
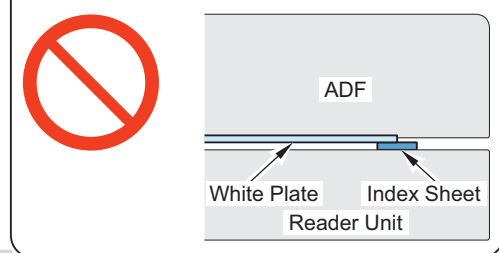
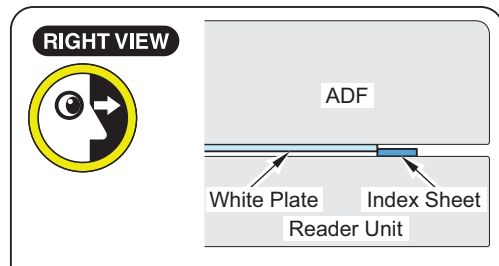
If the White Plate is pressed downward, it is placed on the Index Sheet, so be sure to press it upward.



15. Close the ADF.

**NOTE:**

- Be sure that there is no gap (for reference, 0.3 mm or less) between the White Plate and the Index Sheet.
- Check that the White Plate is not placed on the Index Sheet.

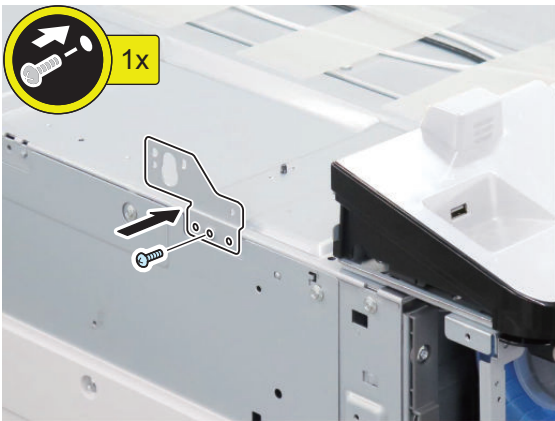
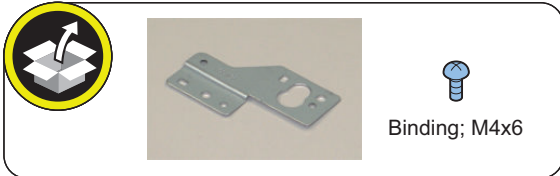


## ■ Installation of the Printer Cover (Only for Machines Equipped with the Printer Cover)



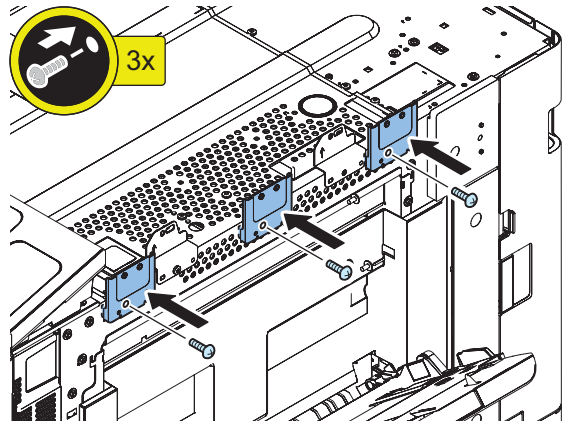
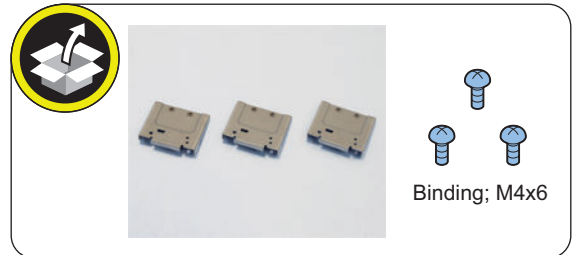
### 1. Install the Reader Fixation Plate L.

- 2 Bosses
- 1 Screw (Binding: M4x6)



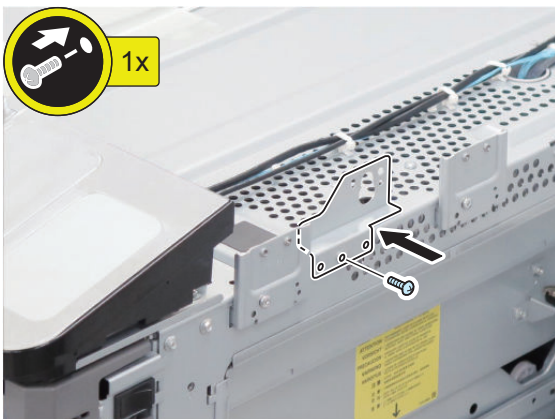
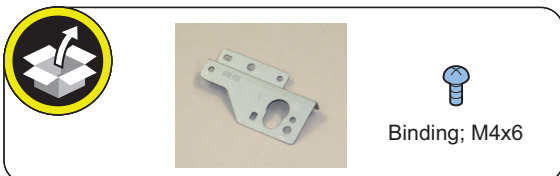
### 3. Install the 3 Right Cover Support Plates.

- 2 Hooks each
- 1 Screw each (Binding: M4x6)



### 2. Open the Multi-purpose Tray, and install the Reader Fixation Plate R.

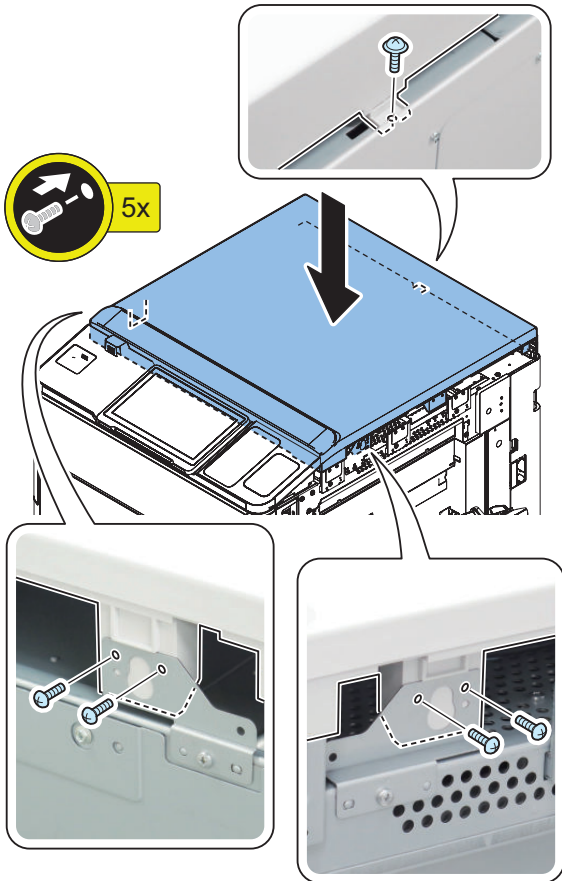
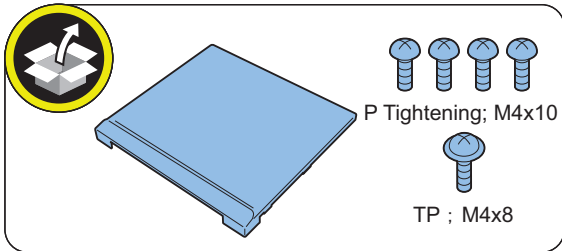
- 2 Bosses
- 1 Screw (Binding: M4x6)





**4. Install the Printer Cover.**

- 4 Screws (P Tightening; M4x10)
- 1 Screw (TP: M4x8)



**5. Close the Multi-purpose Tray.**

**■ Installation of the Covers**

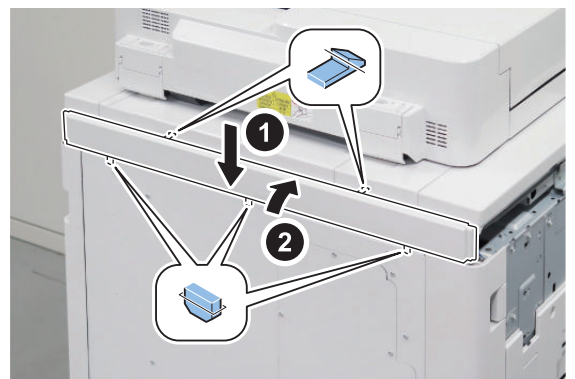
**NOTE:**

The installation procedure is the same between the Flat Control Panel model and the Upright Control Panel model.



**1. Install the Upper Rear Cover.**

- 3 Protrusions
- 2 Claws



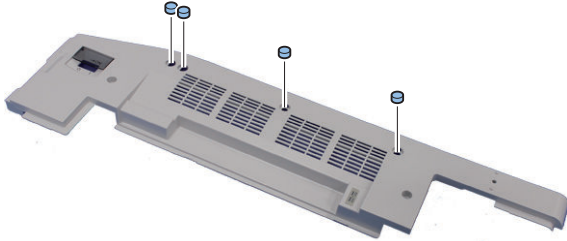
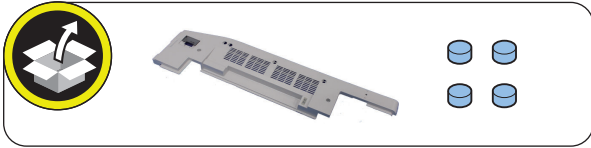
**2. Open the covers.**

- Toner Replacement Cover
- Right Cover
- Right Rear Cover 1



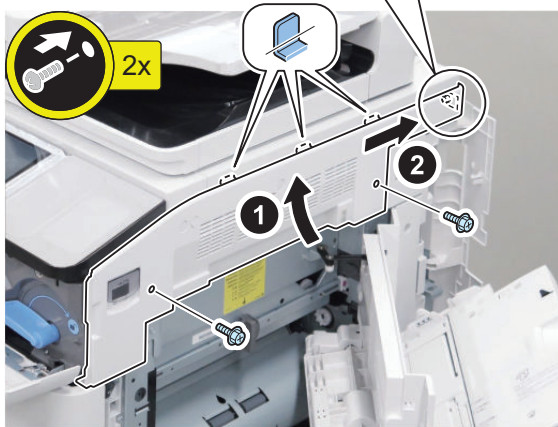
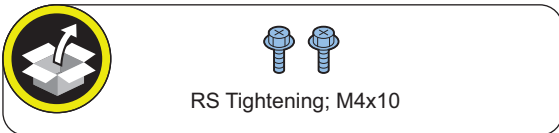


**3. Install the 4 Rubber Caps to the Right Upper Cover.**



**4. Install the Right Upper Cover by fitting its hole onto the boss of the Upper Rear Cover.**

- 3 Protrusions
- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x10)

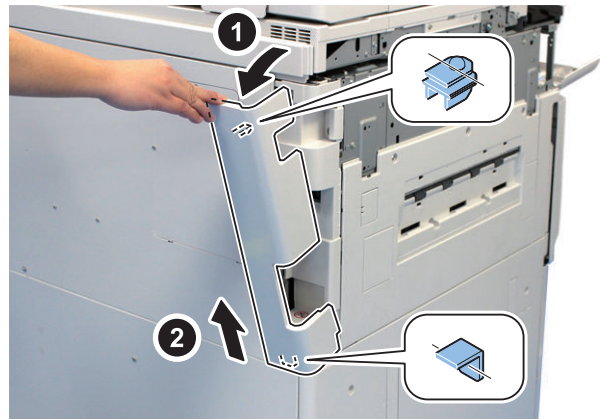


**5. Close the Right Cover and Right Rear Cover 1.**



**6. Remove the Left Rear Cover.**

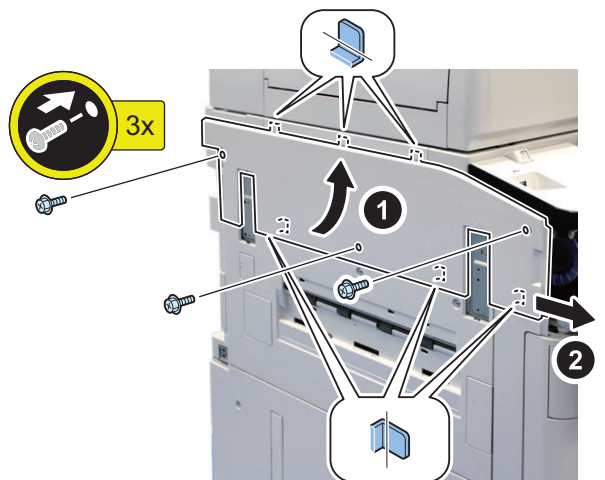
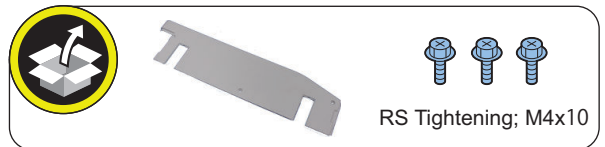
- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook



**7. Install the Left Upper Cover in the direction of the arrow.**

- 3 Protrusions
- 3 Hooks
- 3 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x10)

**CAUTION:**  
When installing the Left Upper Cover, be careful not to secure it while it is being slid fully toward the front. Otherwise, the Left Upper Cover may interfere with the Toner Replacement Cover and the magnet cannot work.

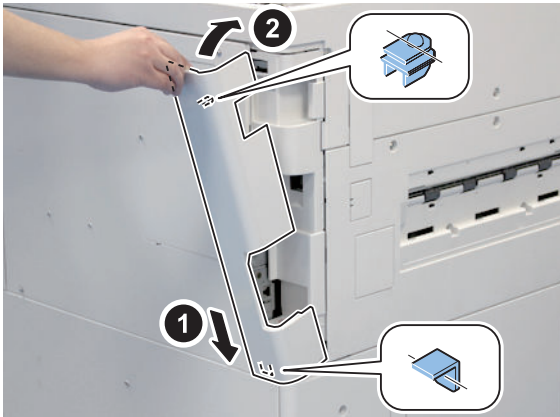






**8. Install the Left Rear Cover.**

- 1 Hook
- 1 Claw



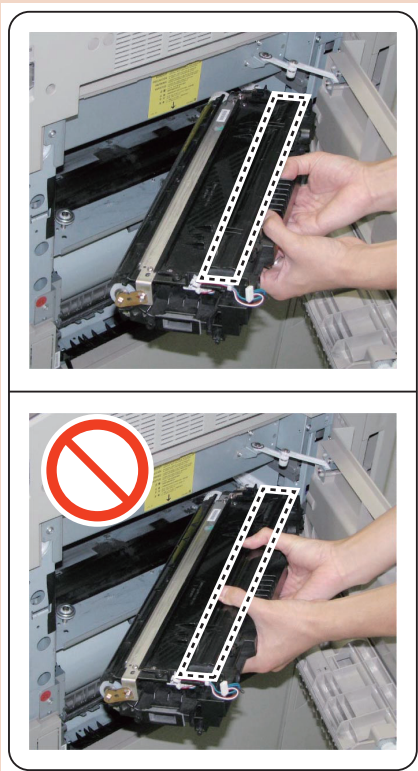
**9. Close the Toner Replacement Cover.**

**■ Installation of the Developing Assembly**

**CAUTION:**

**How to Hold the Developing Assembly**

- When holding the Developing Assembly, be sure to hold the handle of the Developing Assembly as shown in the figure.
- Do not touch the shutter area of the Developing Assembly. The shutter area is slippery, so it may cause a fall of the assembly.



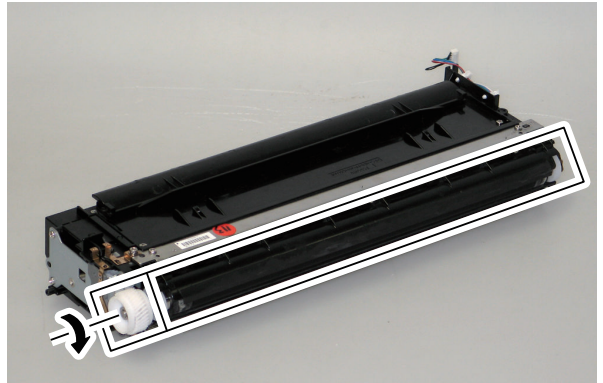
**1. Unpack the Developing Assembly.**



**2. Check if there are any scratches on the cylinder while rotating the gear manually in the direction of the arrow.**

**CAUTION:**

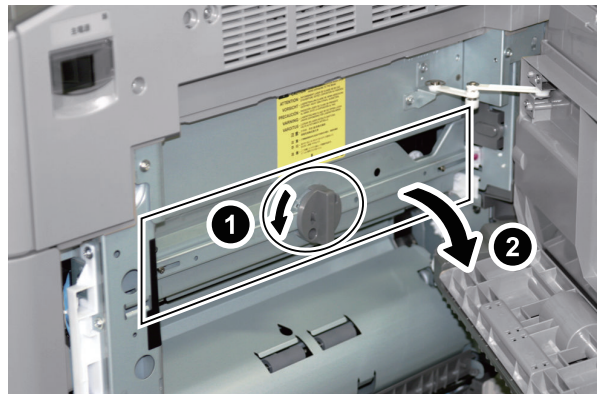
- Do not damage and touch the cylinder.
- Do not turn the gear inversely.



**3. Open the Right Cover.**

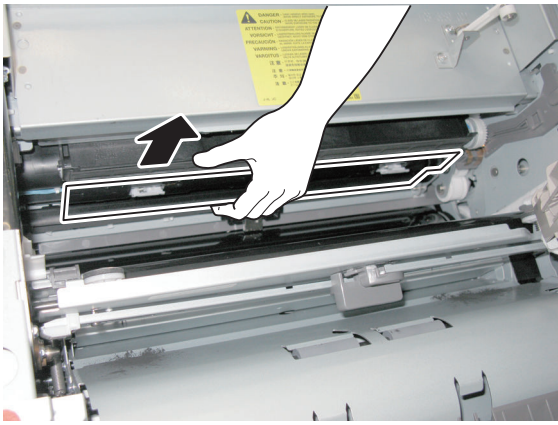


**4. Turn the Lock Lever, and open the Developing Assembly Pressure Cover.**



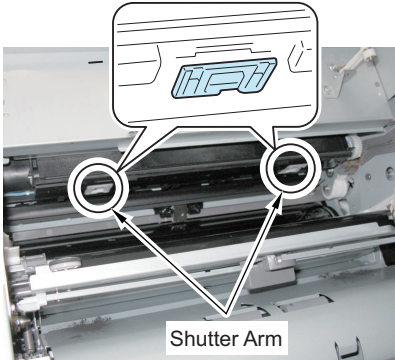
**CAUTION:**

- Before installing the Developing Assembly, be sure to check that the Buffer Shutter is not opened.
- If forcedly inserting the Developing Assembly while the Buffer Shutter is open, the Buffer Shutter may get damage. When the Buffer Shutter is open, be sure to close it by pulling it toward the front.

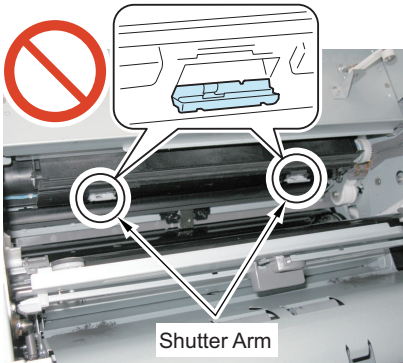


- Whether the Developing Assembly is installed properly can be checked with the Shutter Arm.

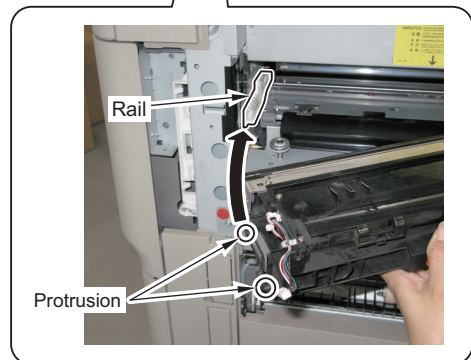
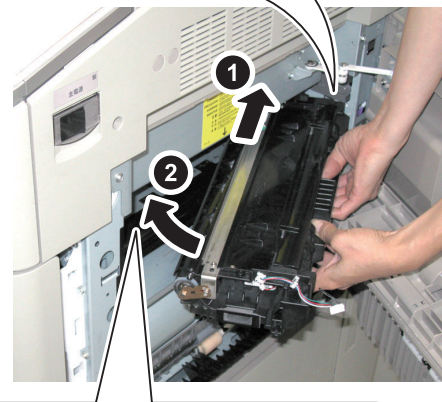
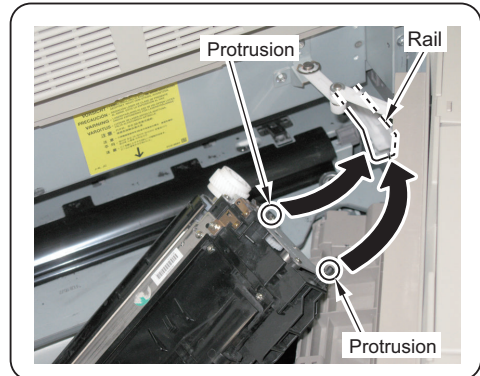
<Buffer Shutter is closed>



<Buffer Shutter is open>



5. Hold the Developing Assembly as shown in the figure, and align the protrusions at both sides of the assembly with the rails on the host machine.
  - 2 Protrusions each

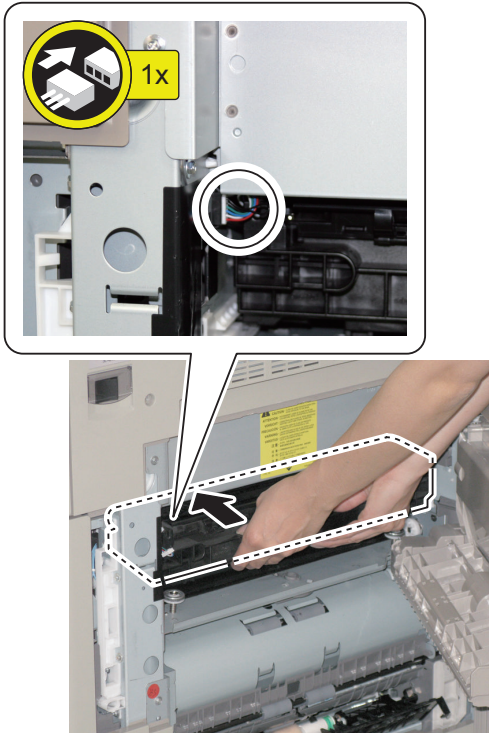




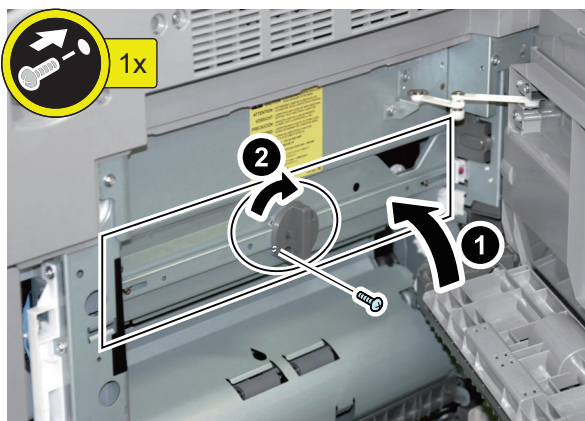
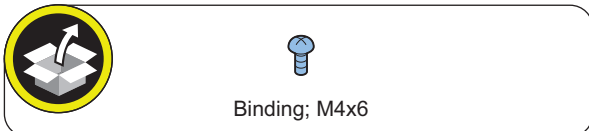


6. Along the rails, insert the Developing Assembly horizontally.

- 1 Connector



7. Close the Developing Assembly Pressure Cover and return the Lock Lever to the original position. Secure with the Screw (Binding; M4x6).



8. Close the Right Cover.

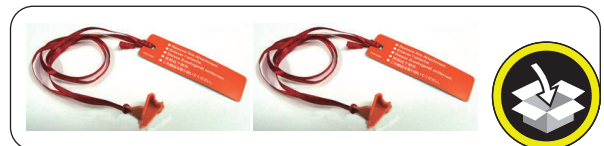
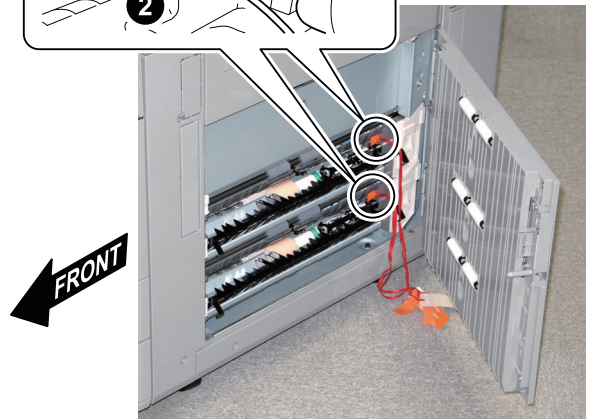
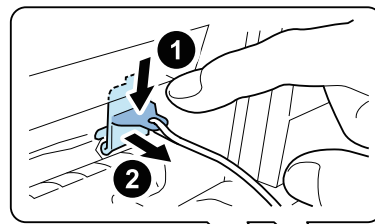
## ■ Installation of the Pickup Assembly



1. Remove tapes securing tags from the Vertical Path Cover.



2. Open the Vertical Path Cover and remove 2 Pressure Release Spacers at pickup slot for each cassette.



3. Close the Vertical Path Cover.



4. Open the Front Cover.

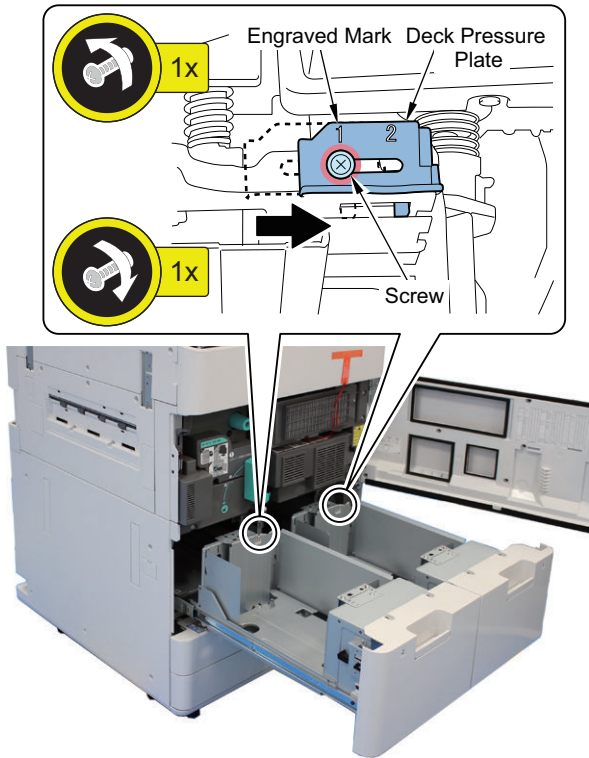


5. Open the Left and Right Decks, and remove the tape.





- Loosen the screw and slide the Deck Pressure Plate in the direction of the arrow. Check that the screw position is at the engraved mark '1', and then tighten the screw.

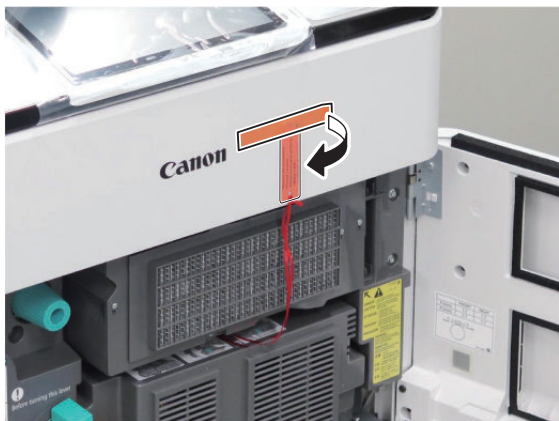


- Close the Left and Right Decks.

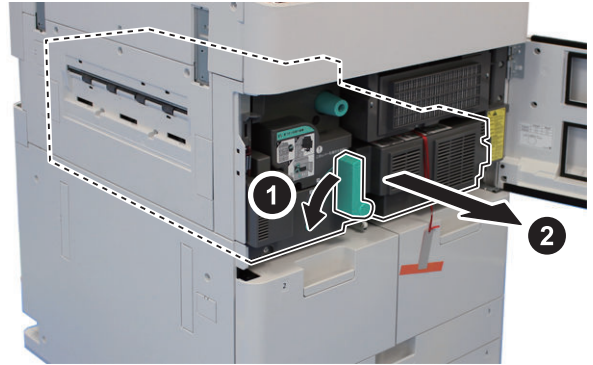
## ■ Installing the Fixing Assembly



- Remove the tapes.

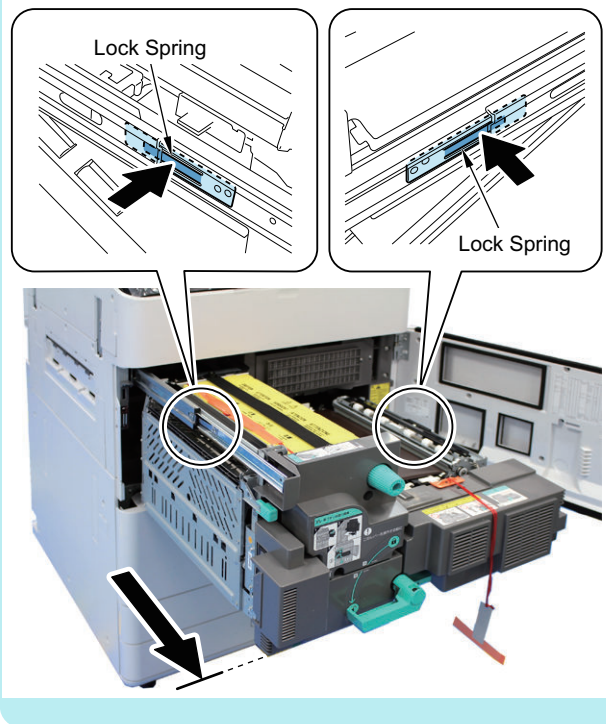


- Turn the Fixing Feed Unit Release Lever in the direction of the arrow and pull the Fixing Feed Unit all the way out.



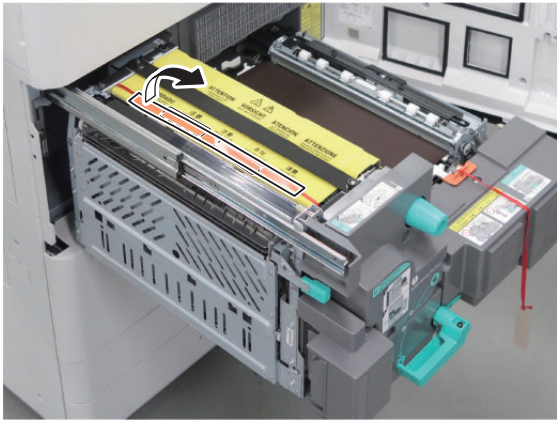
### NOTE:

In the case that the Fixing Nip Pressure Release Screw is hard to be removed, release the lock by pressing the Lock Springs at both rails, and pull out the Fixing Feed Unit further until it stops.

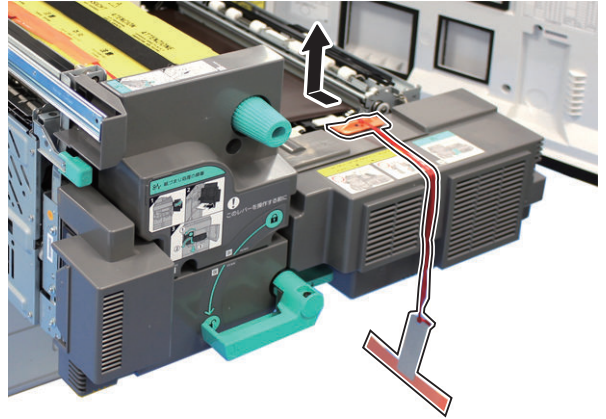




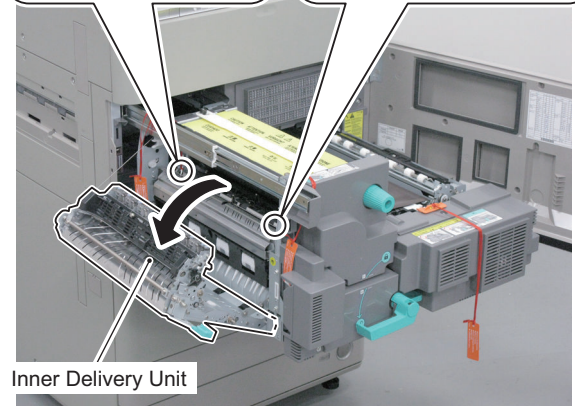
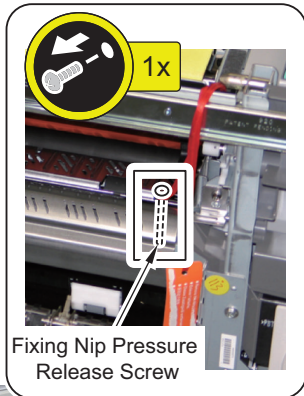
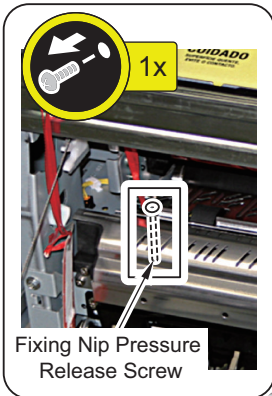
3. Remove the tape securing a tag on the Fixing Upper Cover.



6. Remove the ETB Spacer.



4. Open the Inner Delivery Unit, and remove the 2 Fixing Nip Pressure Release Screws.



5. Close the Inner Delivery Unit.





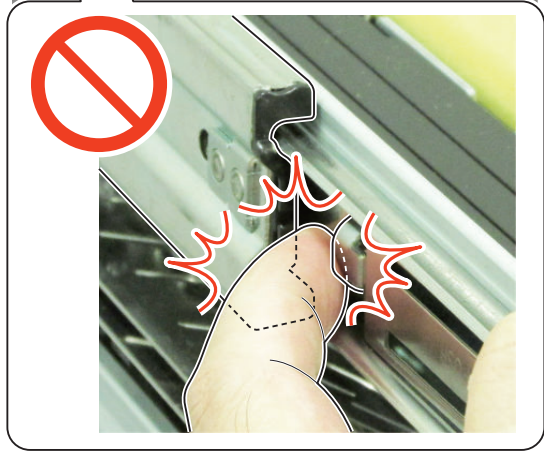
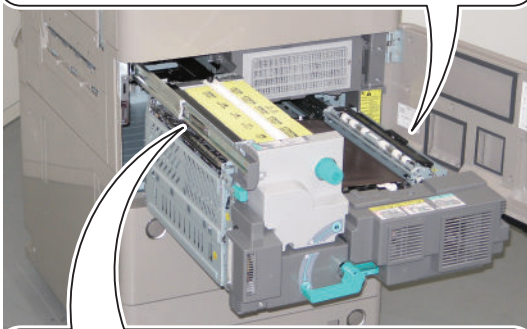
**7. Return the Fixing Feed Unit and lock the Fixing Feed Unit Release Lever.**

**NOTE:**

In the case of pulling out the Fixing Feed Unit further, be sure to return the Fixing Feed Unit while releasing the Lock Spring.

**CAUTION:**

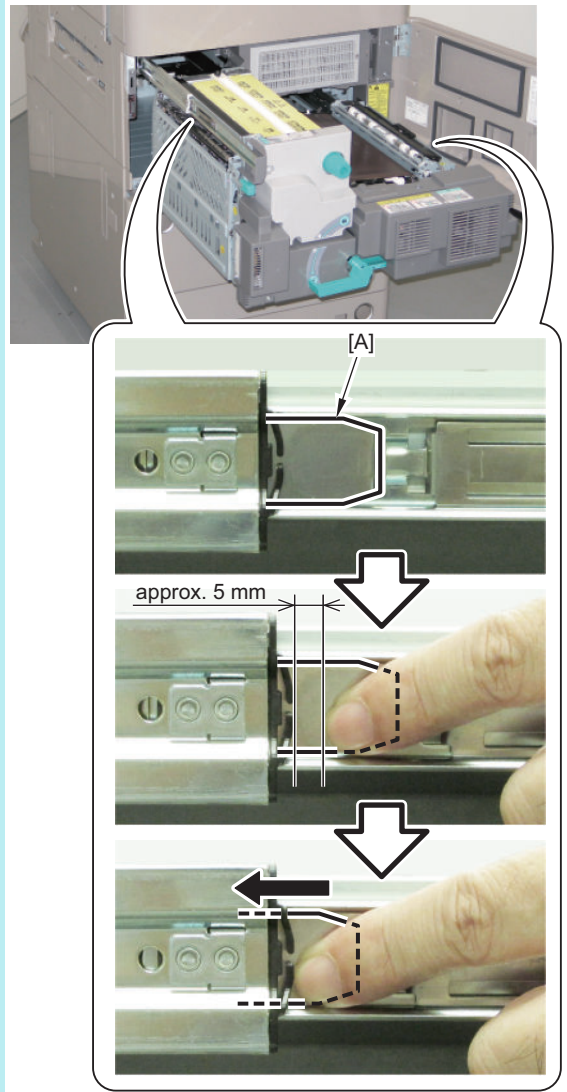
Points to Note when Inserting the Fixing Feed Unit  
While pressing the Release Springs, slowly push the Fixing Feed Unit in so that the fingers do not get caught.



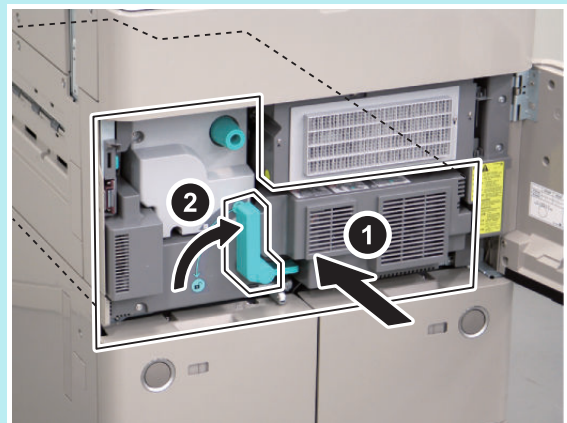
**NOTE:**

How to push the Fixing Feed Unit in

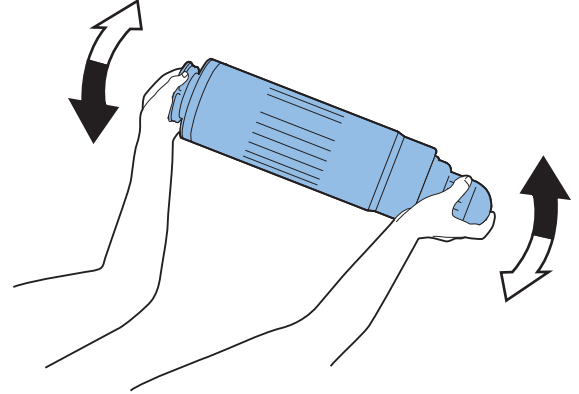
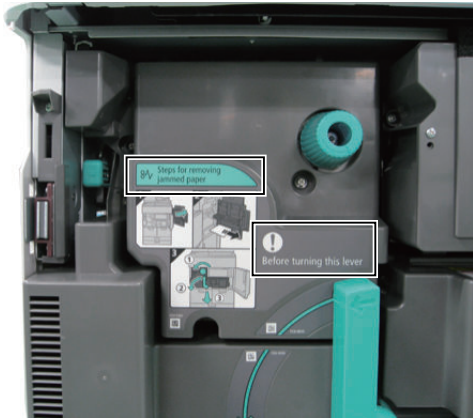
1. Release the Release Springs [A] on the side of either rail.  
Slowly push the Fixing Feed Unit in by approximately 5 mm while keeping it level.



2. Take the fingers off the Release Springs and slowly push the Fixing Feed Unit in to the end.



- 8. Affix the Jam Label of the appropriate language over the existing label on the Fixing Front Cover.
- 2. Unpack the Toner Container and shake it approx. 10 times horizontally.



- 9. Close the Front Cover.
- 3. Remove the cap of the Toner Container.

### ■ Installation of Toner Container

- 1. Open the Toner Replacement Cover, and turn the Lock Lever in the direction of the arrow to release.
- 4. Set the Toner Container to the host machine, and turn the Lock Lever in the direction of the arrow to secure the Toner Container in place.

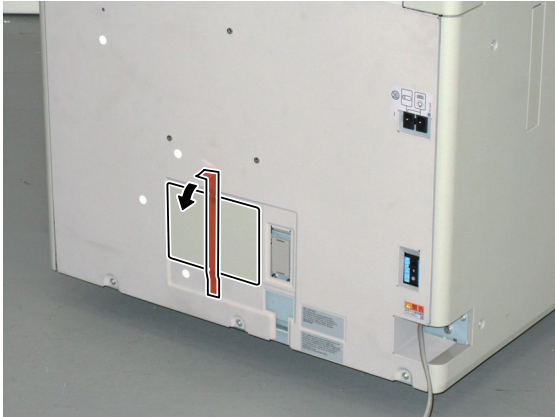


- 5. Close the Toner Replacement Cover.

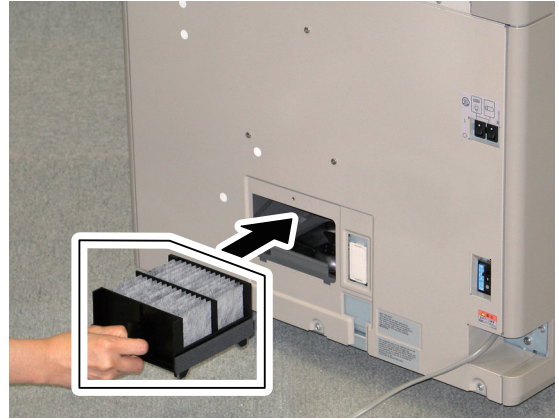
## ■ Installing the Exhaust Filter



1. Remove the tape, and remove the Filter Cover.

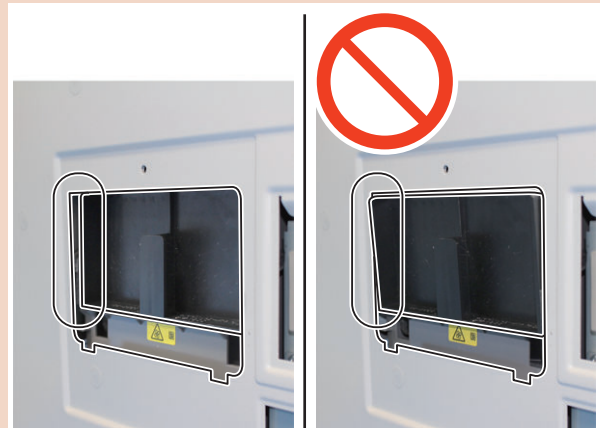


2. Hold the Exhaust Filter as shown in the figure, and install it to the Main Body.



**CAUTION:**

When installing the Exhaust Filter, be sure to install it straight. If it is installed askew, the Filter Cover does not fit properly.





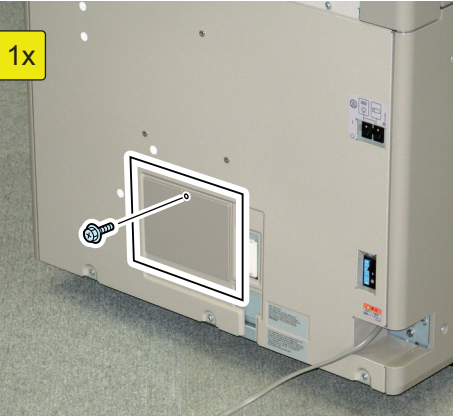


### 3. Install the Filter Cover.

- Screw (RS Tightening; M4x10)



RS Tightening; M4x10



## ■ Setting the Environment Heater Switch

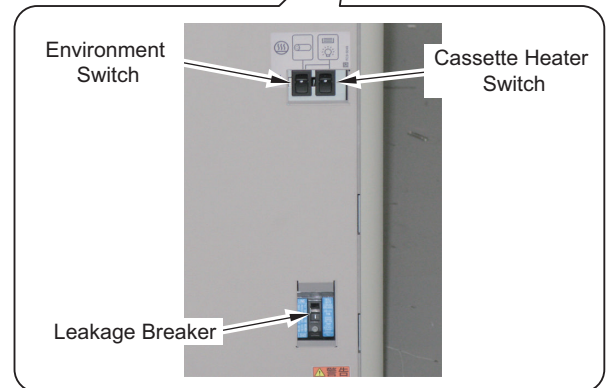
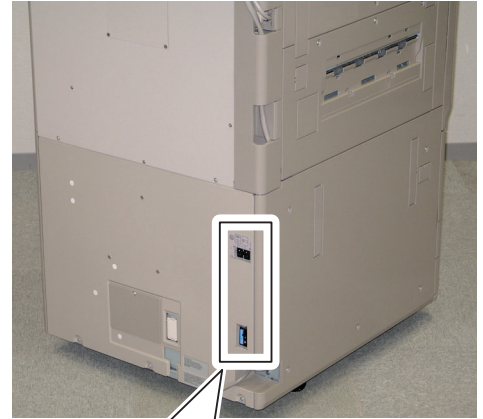


1. Check that the Leakage Breaker is ON.

2. Turn ON the Environment Heater Switch and the Cassette Heater Switch in accordance with the installation environment.

#### NOTE:

In the case of high humidity environment, turn ON the Environment Heater Switch.



## ■ Turning ON the Main Power

#### CAUTION:

Since the automatic adjustment of the ADF reading position will be executed when the main power is turned ON for the first time, remove all objects on the copyboard glass and close the ADF.

1. Remove the protection sheet on the control panel.
2. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the power outlet.
3. Turn ON the main power switch.

<In the Case of Printer Model>

4. A message is displayed prompting to check that the Reader Unit Cable is connected properly.
5. Select the following service mode and enter "0" to the setting value.  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/SCNR
6. Exit the Service Mode.

## ■ Host Machine Settings (Start Setup Guide)

The Setup Guide starts when the host machine is turned ON for the first startup. Follow the instructions displayed on the Touch Panel Display to configure the settings of the host machine.

### CAUTION:

- Some of the settings can be skipped without entering the command. To configure skipped settings, configure the settings one by one after exiting Setup Guide.
- Setup Guide can be started again from [Settings/Registration]. ([Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [License/Other] > [Start Setup Guide])
- If the host machine is turned OFF during the registration using the Setup Guide, the Setup Guide is automatically started by turning ON the host machine.
- Once registration using the Setup Guide is completed, the Setup Guide is not automatically started by turning ON the host machine.

### CAUTION:

Register the information of paper loaded during installation of the host machine.

Be sure to register the correct paper type. Especially in the case of special paper types such as heavy paper, registering a wrong paper type may result in image failure, and when the Fixing Assembly becomes soiled or paper wraparound occurs, repair by a service technician becomes necessary.

### NOTE:

Following works can be performed while toner mixing is executed.

- "Securing the Host Machine" on page 1490
- "Other Installation Work" on page 1491
- "Affixing the Labels on the Reader Assembly (Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit)" on page 1492
- "Setting the Deck" on page 551
- "Setting the Paper Cassette" on page 1494

## ● Informing the System Administrator That Installation Is Complete

When the installation is completed, ask the system administrator to change the password.

Also ask the system administrator to keep the changed password in a safeplace to prevent leakage.

## ■ Registration of Installation Date Information

### CAUTION:

Be sure that [Date/Time Settings] is completed. (There are items in Setup Guide.)



1. Enter the following service mode, and execute "Batch Set Installation Date Info".

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INSTDTST

### NOTE:

- Year, month, day, hour, and minute can be edited individually in the following service modes.  
COPIER > OPTION > USER > INSTDT-Y  
COPIER > OPTION > USER > INSTDT-M  
COPIER > OPTION > USER > INSTDT-D  
COPIER > OPTION > USER > INSTDT-H  
COPIER > OPTION > USER > INSTDT-N
- The default value of each service mode is "0".
- When "0" is set for each service mode, "Device Installation Date" on the counter report will be blank.

2. Exit service mode.

3. Output the counter report, and check that the installation date information is registered.

- [Counter/Device Information] key > [Print List] > [Yes]

| 2017 08/30 WED 09:40                     |                  | 001 |
|--|------------------|-----|
| *****<br>*** Counter Report ***<br>***** |                  |     |
| Device Installation Date                 | 2017/08/09 07:56 |     |
| Counter Check Date                       | 2017/08/30 09:40 |     |
| Model                                    | IR-ADV           |     |
| Serial Number                            | UN000338         |     |

## ■ Securing the Host Machine



1. Confirm the position to install the Host Machine and turn the 2 adjusters with your hand until they closely contact the floor.

### NOTE:

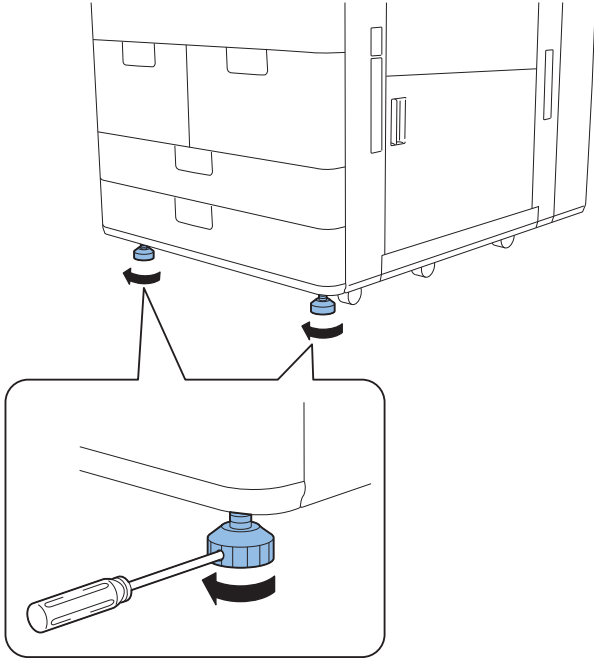
If you failed to turn the adjusters with your hand, use a screwdriver so that they can be turned by your hand.



2. Use a screwdriver to turn the adjusters in the direction of the arrow to make them secured.

**NOTE:**

Securing of the adjuster is not earthquake resistant.

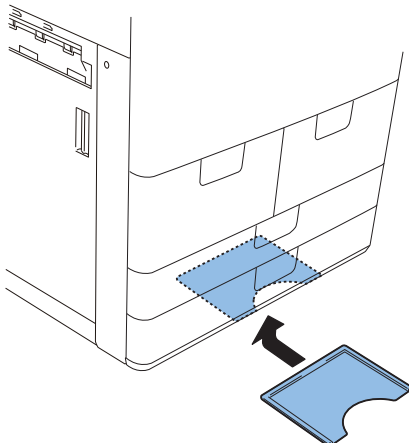
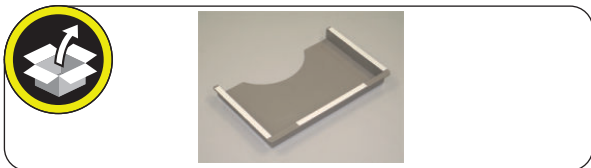


■ **Other Installation Work**

● **Service Book Holder**



1. Remove the double-sided tape on back side of the Service Book Holder, and affix the holder on the Base Plate of the host machine.



● **Finisher Connector Cover**



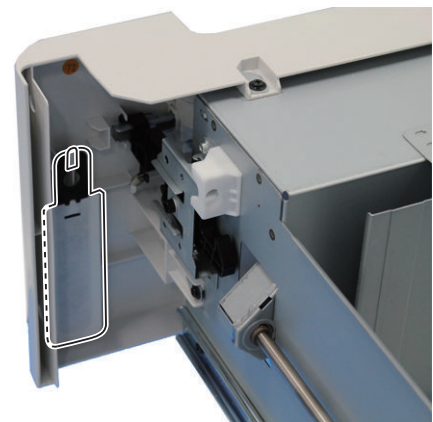
1. Install the 2 Finisher Connector Covers to the left side of the host machine.
  - 1 Protrusion each
  - 1 Claw each



● **Cleaning Tool**



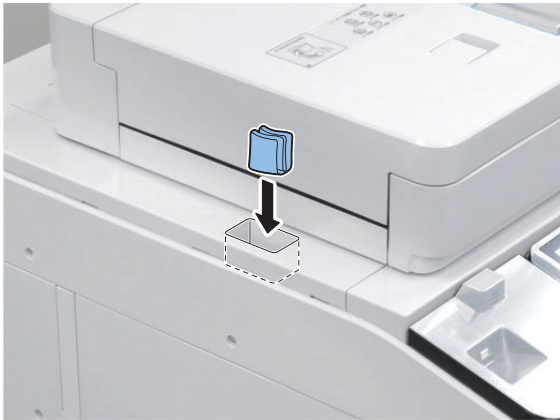
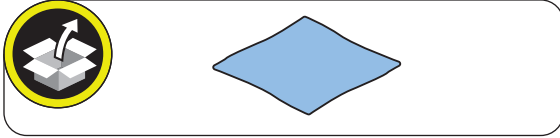
1. Store the cleaning tool on the inside of the Right Deck to use for maintenance. (Hook it on the back side of the Deck Cover.)





● **Storing the Cleaning Cloth (Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit)**

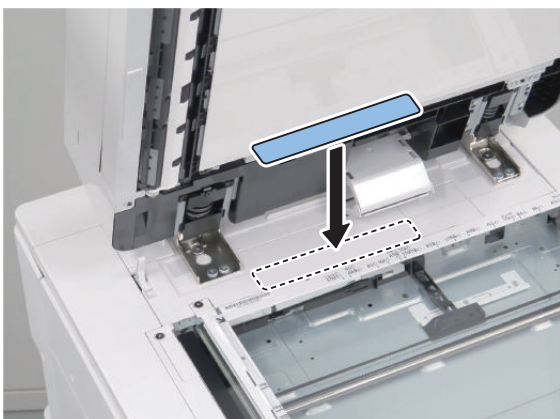
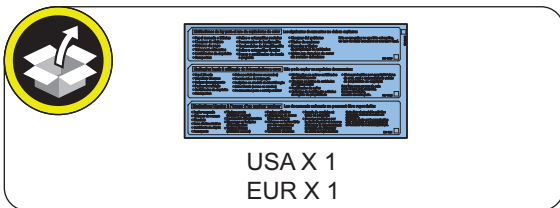
1. Place the Cleaning Cloth in the space shown in the figure.



■ **Affixing the Labels on the Reader Assembly (Only for Machines Equipped with the Image Reader Unit)**

1. Open the DADF.

2. Affix the Copy Prohibition Label of the appropriate language at the places shown in the figure below.



3. Close the DADF.

■ **Checking the K paper settings (Only for CHINA)**

Check the following service mode, and change the setting value if different.

1. Enter service mode.
2. Check that the setting value of COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > MODEL-SZ is "0".
3. Enter service mode (Lv.2).
4. Check that the setting value of COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > SENS-CNF is "0".
5. Check that the setting value of COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > MODELSZ2 is "0".
6. Check that the setting value of COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > KSIZE-SW is "1".
7. When having changed the setting, turn OFF and then ON the main power to enable the setting value.

■ **Setting the Deck**

1. Pull out the Left and the Right Decks to the front.

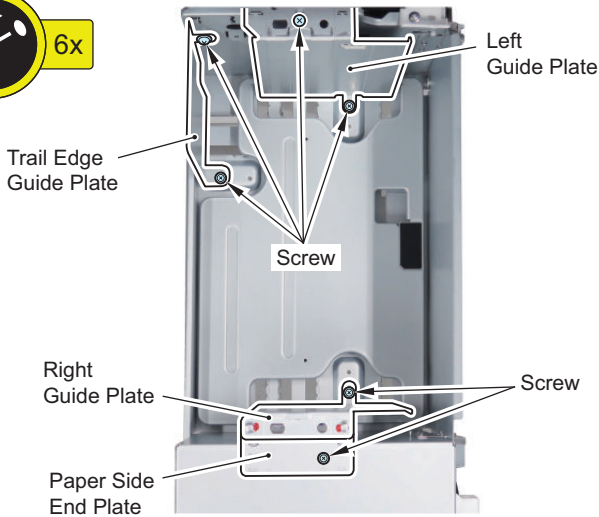
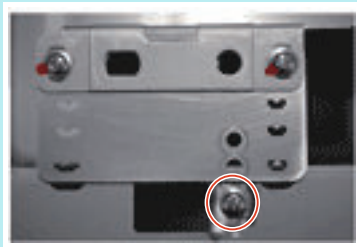
2. Remove the 4 screws fixing the Trailing Edge Guide Plate, Left Guide Plate, Right Guide Plate, and Paper

Side End Plate in place, and fix each of the Guide Plates at user's desired size.

**NOTE:**

Setting the Paper Side End Plate

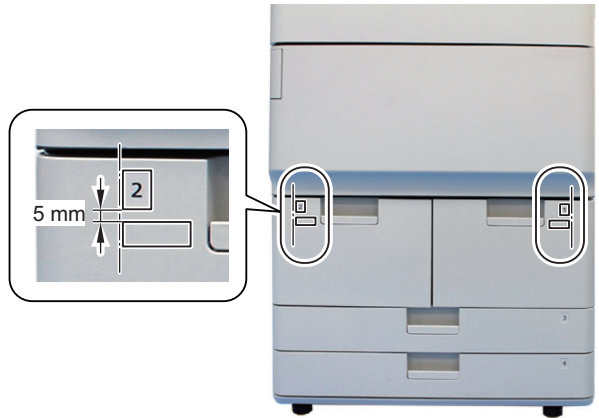
- Be sure to align the Paper Side End Plate with the position according to the size requested by the user, and secure the screw.
- When B5 size is set, the Paper Size End Plate cannot be fixed to the deck with the screw. In order to prevent the screw from being lost, be sure to secure the screw to the deck as shown below.



- 
3. Put the specified size of papers in the Left/Right Deck, and push the Left/Right Deck in.



4. Affix Paper Size Labels (for Deck) according to the paper size, with the edge of each label aligned with the edge of the cassette number label. Approx. 5 mm away from the number label.



**NOTE:**

If Setup Guide is running, skip this procedure.

5. Register the type of paper loaded in the paper source.

1. Select the [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Paper Settings] > [Paper Settings].
2. Select the paper source where paper is loaded, and press [Set].
3. Select the paper type same as that of the loaded paper, and press [OK] > [OK].

**NOTE:**

If the corresponding paper type is not displayed on the simple settings screen, press [Detailed Settings] and make a selection on the detailed settings screen. If the type of loaded paper is not displayed on the detailed settings screen, you can register it.

**NOTE:**

If Setup Guide is running, perform the following works after Setup Guide ends.



6. When the size has been changed, register the paper size for the Left and Right Deck in the service mode.

Right Deck :

COPIER > OPTION > CST > P-SZ-C1

Left Deck :

COPIER > OPTION > CST > P-SZ-C2



7. Exit from the service mode.

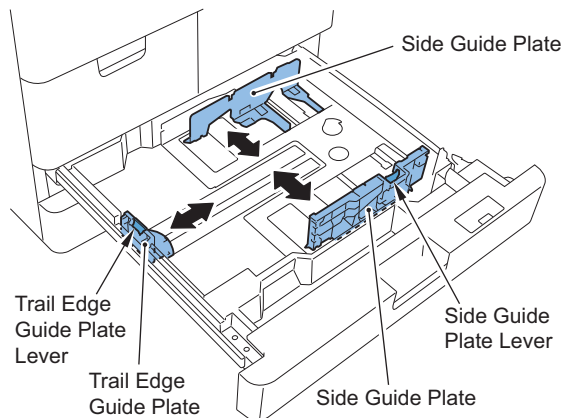
## ■ Setting the Paper Cassette



1. Pull out the Cassette to the front.



2. Hold the lever of the Side Guide Plate, and adjust the plate to the specified size. Adjust the Trailing Edge Guide Plate in the same way.



3. Set paper, and push the Cassette.



4. Set another cassette as well.

### NOTE:

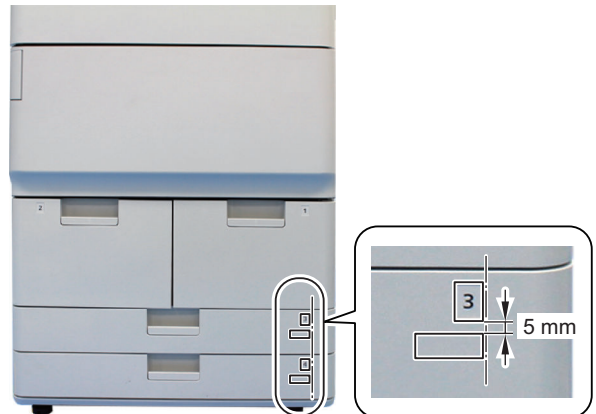
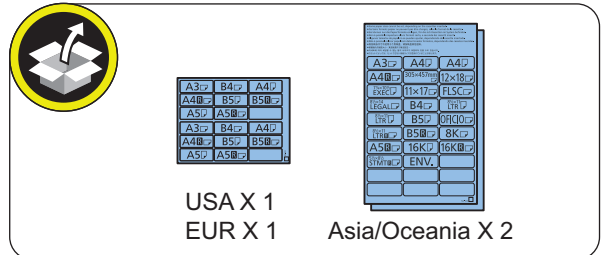
Paper size is set to be automatically recognized.



5. Affix Paper Size Labels (for Cassette) according to the paper size, with the right edge aligned with the right edge of the number label, approx. 5 mm away from the number label.

### NOTE:

- Be sure to check with the user whether or not to affix the Paper Size Label, and then affix it at the recommended position.
- Keep the Paper Size Labels as they will be used when changing the paper size.



### NOTE:

If Setup Guide is running, skip this procedure.

6. Register the type of paper loaded in the paper source.

1. Select the [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Paper Settings] > [Paper Settings].
2. Select the paper source where paper is loaded, and press [Set].
3. Select the paper type same as that of the loaded paper, and press [OK] > [OK].

### NOTE:

If the corresponding paper type is not displayed on the simple settings screen, press [Detailed Settings] and make a selection on the detailed settings screen. If the type of loaded paper is not displayed on the detailed settings screen, you can register it.

## ■ Image Position Adjustment

### ● Left Edge Margin Adjustment (1st side)



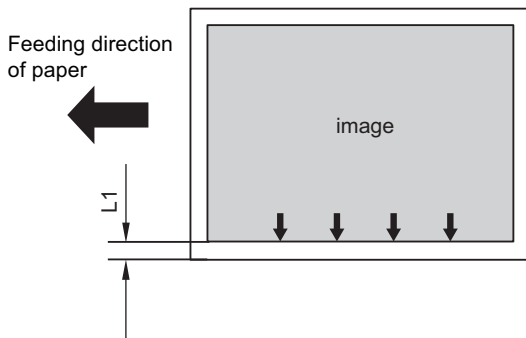
1. After setting the service mode as follow, press the **Start key** and output a test print from each cassette and Deck.

COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5

COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = 1/2/3/4



2. Check that the left edge margin of the image (L1) is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm. When the result is out of the specified range, perform adjustment by following the following procedure.



3. Adjust the image position in service mode.

**NOTE:**

<Setting Range>  
-20 to 20 (0.1 mm per unit)

As the value is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is increased by 0.1mm.

Right Deck:

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C1

Left Deck:

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C2

Cassette3:

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C3

Cassette4:

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C4



4. When the setting value was changed in step 3, write down the new numerical value in the service label.



5. Exit from the service mode.



6. Perform printing again from the cassette/deck, and check that the left edge margin (L1) of the image is within 2.5 +/- 1.5 mm.

**NOTE:**

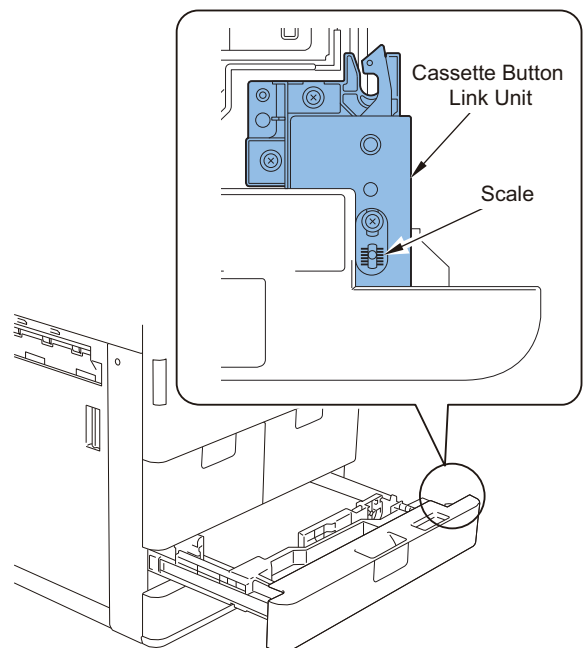
If the adjustment cannot be made with the setting value of -20 to 20 (adjustment amount: -2.0 to 2.0mm), execute step 7 and later steps.



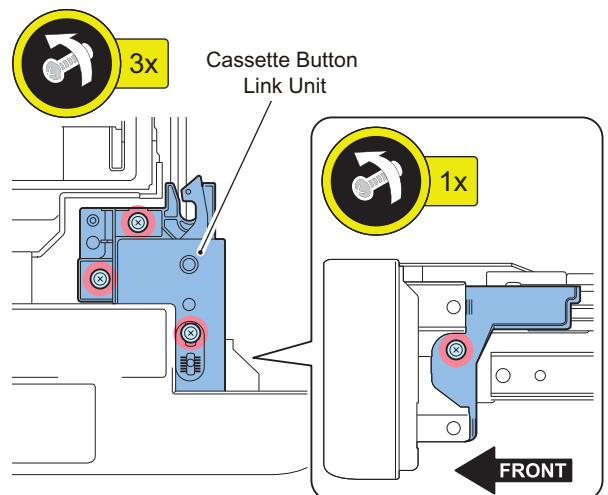
7. Pull out the Cassette.



8. Check the Cassette position by the scale of the Cassette Button Link Unit.



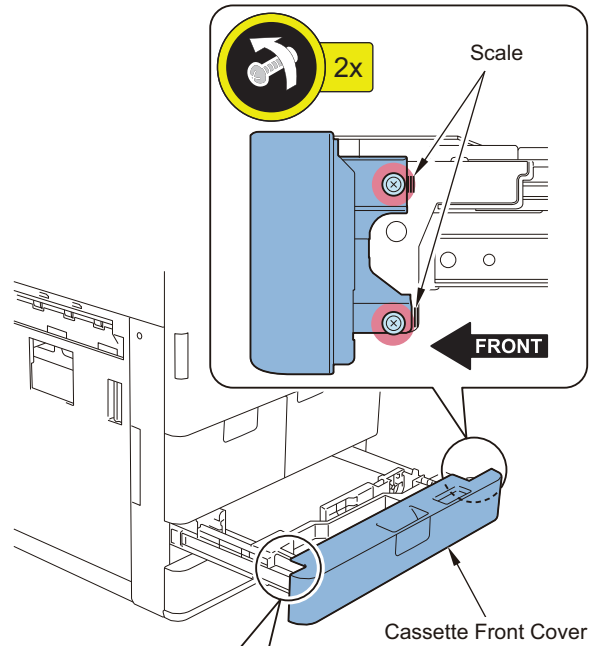
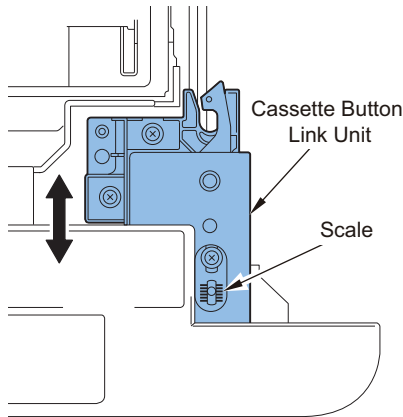
9. Loosen the 4 screws of the Cassette Button Link Unit.



10. According to the scale in which the position was checked in step 8, adjust the position of the Cassette Button Link Button.
13. When moving the Cassette Button Link Unit, adjust the left side of the Cassette Front Cover by shifting it with the same shifting amount of the unit.

**NOTE:**

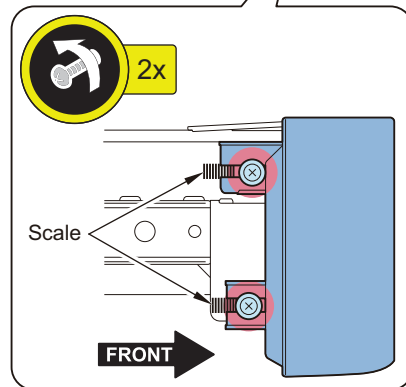
- In the case of larger margin at the rear side, move the Cassette Button Link Unit to the rear side.
- In the case of larger margin at the front side, move the Cassette Button Link Unit to the front side.



11. Tighten the 4 screws (which have been loosened in step 9).

**NOTE:**

If you are concerned with alignment of the Cassette Front Cover, perform steps 12 to 14 to make an adjustment as necessary.



12. Loosen the 4 screws and adjust the position of the Cassette Front Cover by referring to the scale.

14. Once the position of the Cassette Front Cover is confirmed, tighten the 4 screws (which have been loosened in step 12).
15. Perform printing again from the cassette/deck, and check that the left edge margin (L1) of the image is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm.

**NOTE:**

When a mechanical adjustment was made, be sure to execute the service mode again.

• **Leading Edge Margin Adjustment (1st side)**

**NOTE:**

By executing the margin adjustment for the Cassette 3, the adjustment is applied to all source of paper.

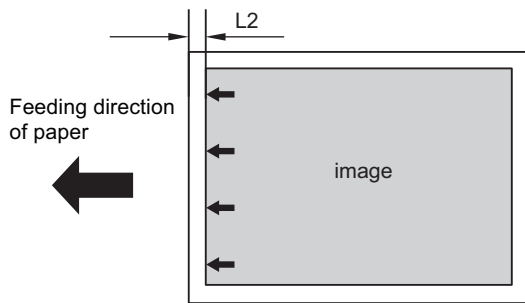


1. After setting the service mode as follow, press the Start key and output a test print from Cassette 3.

COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5  
COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = 3



2. Check that the leading edge margin of the image (L2) is within 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm. When the result is out of the specified range, perform adjustment by following the following procedure.



3. Adjust the image position in service mode.

**NOTE:**

<Setting Range>  
-50 to 50 (0.1 mm per unit)  
As the value is incremented by 1, the leading edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REGIST



4. Perform printing again from the cassette 3, and check that the leading edge margin (L2) of the image is within 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm.



5. When the setting value was changed in step 3, write down the new numerical value in the service label.



6. Exit from the service mode.

### • Left Edge/Leading Edge Margin Adjustment (2nd side)

**NOTE:**

By executing the margin adjustment for the Cassette 3, the adjustment is applied to all source of paper.



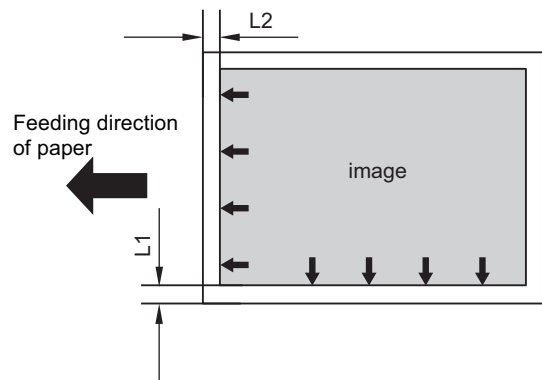
1. After setting the service mode as follow, press the Start key and output a test print from Cassette 3.

COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5  
COPIER > TEST > PG > 2-SIDE = 1  
COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = 3



2. Check that the left edge margin (L1) and leading edge margin (L2) are within the range indicated below. When the result is out of the specified range, perform adjustment by following the following procedure.

- left edge margin L1: 2.5 +/-1.5 mm
- leading edge margin L2 : 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm



3. Adjust the image position in service mode.

<left edge margin>

**NOTE:**

<Setting Range>  
-50 to 50 (0.1 mm per unit)  
As the value is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is increased by 0.1mm.

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-REFE  
<leading edge margin>

**NOTE:**

<Setting Range>  
-50 to 50 (0.1 mm per unit)  
As the value is incremented by 1, the leading edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REG-DUP1



4. Perform printing again from the cassette 3, and check that the left edge margin (L1) and leading edge margin (L2) of the image are within the range indicated below.

- left edge margin L1: 2.5 +/-1.5 mm
- leading edge margin L2 : 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm



5. When the setting value was changed in step 3, write down the new numerical value in the service label.



6. Exit from the service mode.

### • Left Edge/Leading Edge Margin Adjustment of Multi-purpose Pickup Tray



1. After setting the service mode as follow, press the Start key and output a test print from Multi-purpose Pickup Tray.

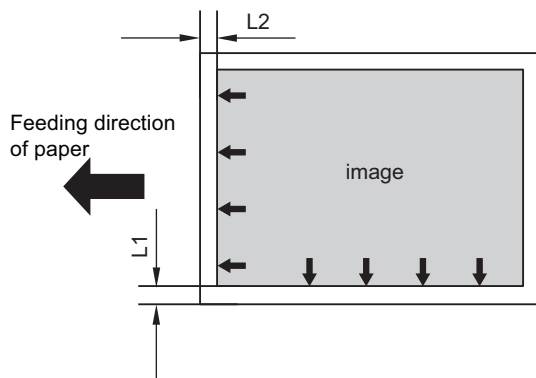
COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5

COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = 5



2. Check that the left edge margin (L1) and leading edge margin (L2) are within the range indicated below. When the result is out of the specified range, perform adjustment by following the following procedure.

- left edge margin L1: 2.5 +/-1.5 mm
- leading edge margin L2: 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm



3. Adjust the image position in service mode.

<left edge margin>

#### NOTE:

<Setting Range>

-20 to 20 (0.1 mm per unit)

As the value is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is increased by 0.1mm.

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-MF

<leading edge margin>

#### NOTE:

<Setting Range>

-50 to 50 (0.1 mm per unit)

As the value is incremented by 1, the leading edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > RG-MF



4. When the setting value was changed in step 3, write down the new numerical value in the service label.



5. Exit from the service mode.



6. Perform printing again from the Multi-purpose Pickup Tray, and check that the left edge margin (L1) and leading edge margin (L2) of the image are within the range indicated below.

- left edge margin L1: 2.5 +/-1.5 mm
- leading edge margin L2: 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm

#### NOTE:

In the case of left edge margin: If the adjustment cannot be made with the setting value of -20 to 20 (adjustment amount: -2.0 to 2.0mm), execute step 7 and later steps.



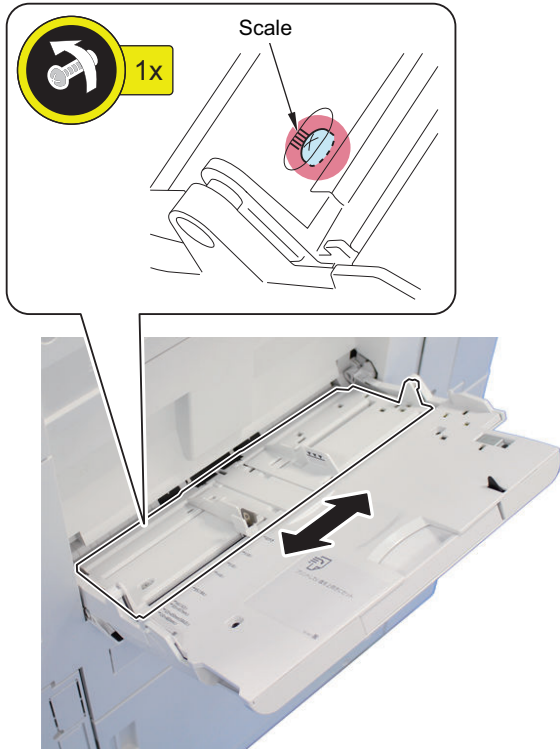
7. Open the Multi-purpose Pickup Tray.





### 8. Loosen the screw and adjust the position of the Slide Guide by referring to the scale.

- In the case of larger margin at the rear side, move the Slide Guide to the front side.
- In the case of larger margin at the front side, move the Slide Guide to the rear side.



### 9. Tighten the screw loosened in step 8.



### 10. Perform printing again from the Multi-purpose Pickup Tray, and check that the left edge margin (L1) and leading edge margin (L2) of the image are within the range indicated below.

- left edge margin L1: 2.5 +/-1.5 mm
- leading edge margin L2: 2.5 +1.5/-0.5 mm

#### NOTE:

When a mechanical adjustment was made, be sure to execute the service mode again.

## ■ Image Position Adjustment (Single Pass ADF)

### ● Checking the Skew

Check the image at ADF stream reading with using the "Test Charts for Image Position Adjustment". If any adjustments have been made, perform all of the following "Adjustment Procedure". If it is confirmed that there is no problem, proceed to "Network Connectivity Check".

1. Adjustment of the White Plate
2. Height Adjustment

3. Light intensity adjustment
4. Automatic Adjustment of the Stream Reading Position (Automatic Adjustment of the Reading Position at ADF Reading)
5. White Level Adjustment
6. Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment

#### NOTE:

Even if the above adjustment is performed, if a fixed skew or image shift occurs, the image is manually adjusted according to the state of the printed image

- Adjustment of leading edge margin of the scanned image for the corrected image Amount of Change per:0.1mm  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-T1 (front side)  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-T2 (back side)
- Adjustment of the left edge margin of the scanned image for the corrected image Amount of Change per:0.1mm  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-L1 (front side)  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-L2 (back side)
- Angle correction of the corrected image Amount of Change per:0.01 degree  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-ROT1 (front side)  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-ROT2 (back side)
- Parallelogram correction amount for corrected image Amount of Change per:0.01 degree  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-PAR1 (front side)  
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-PAR2 (back side)

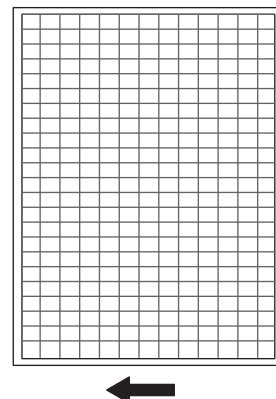
Refer to the following Service Manual

- Adjustment > Original Feed System (Single Pass ADF) > Skew Adjustment (at Stream Scanning of Originals)

## Creating the Test Charts for Image Position Adjustment

#### CAUTION:

Create the test charts for image position adjustment after completing adjustments on the printer side.



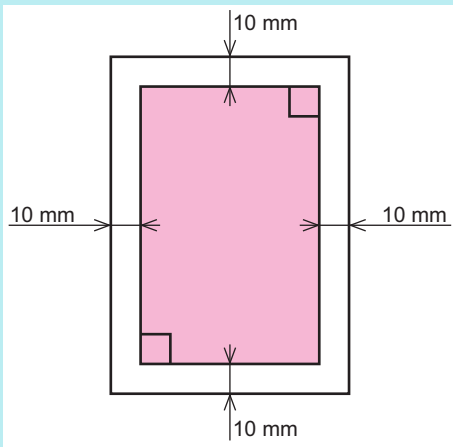
### 1. After setting the service modes as follows, press the Start key to output the test chart.

- COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 6
- COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = To set the Pickup Cassette for test print output.

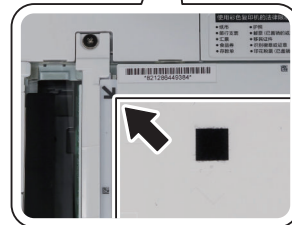
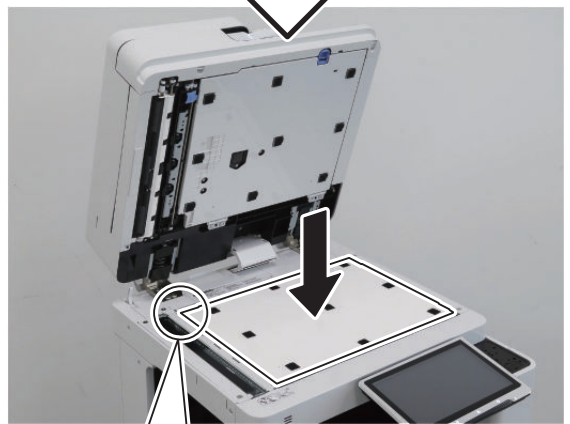
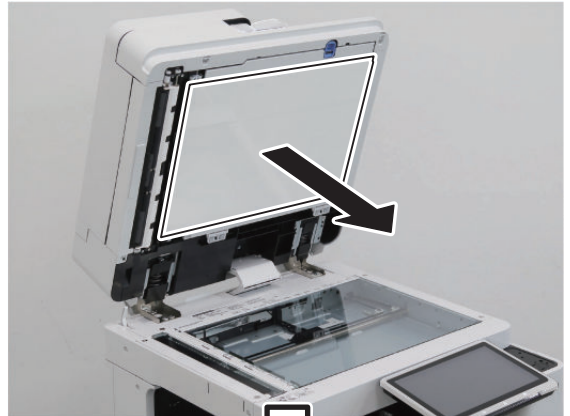


**NOTE:**

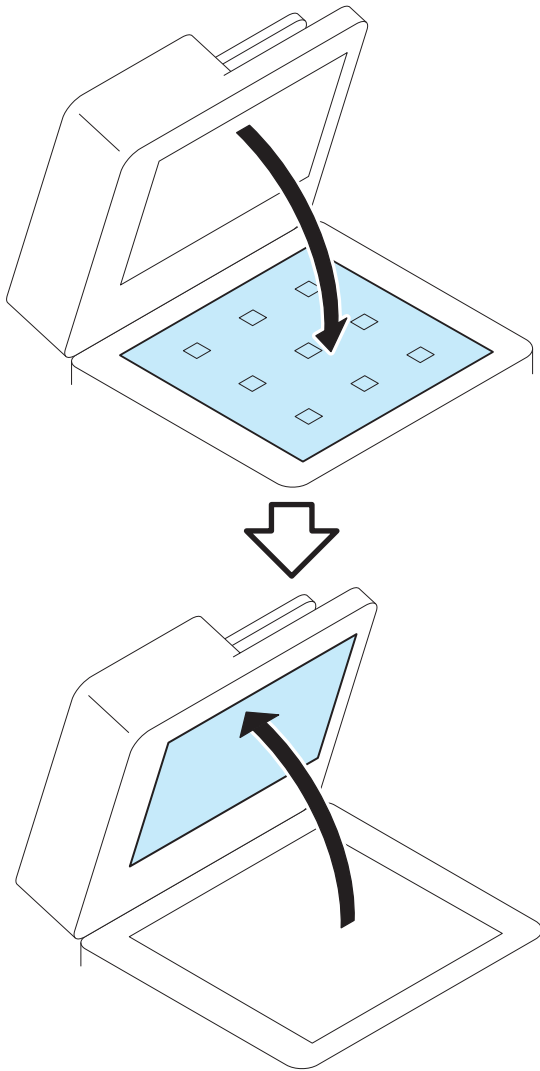
- If the specified test chart cannot be output, draw a test chart on A3 or LDR paper with a rectangle whose four corners are 10 mm smaller than the paper.
- To draw characters and marks so that you can see the direction of the copied image.

**Adjustment of the White Plate**

□  
1.



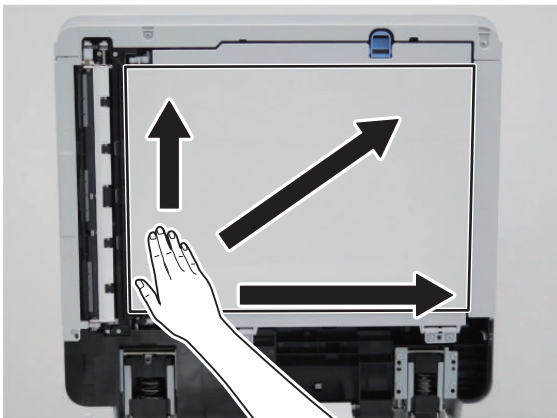
□  
2.



□  
3.

**CAUTION:**

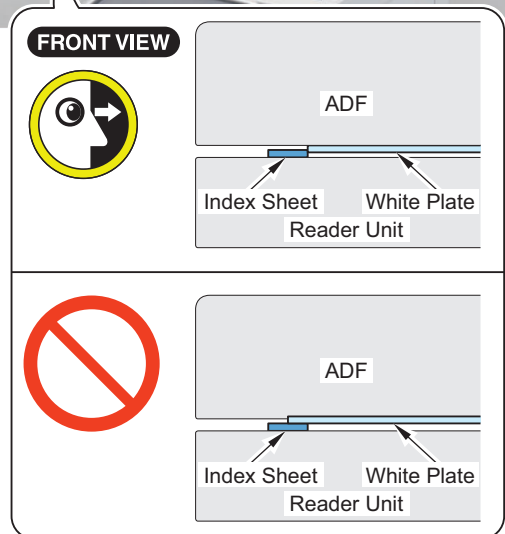
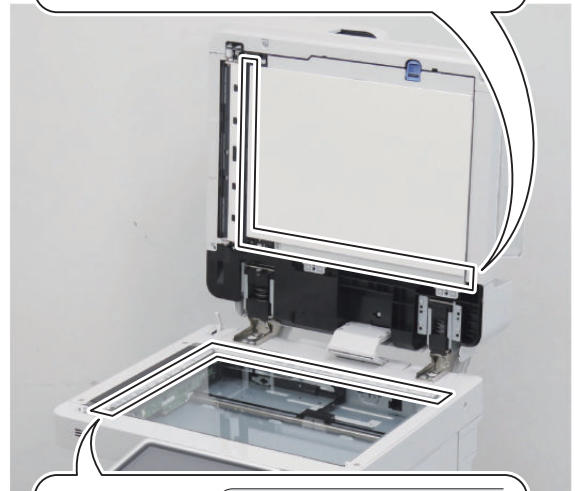
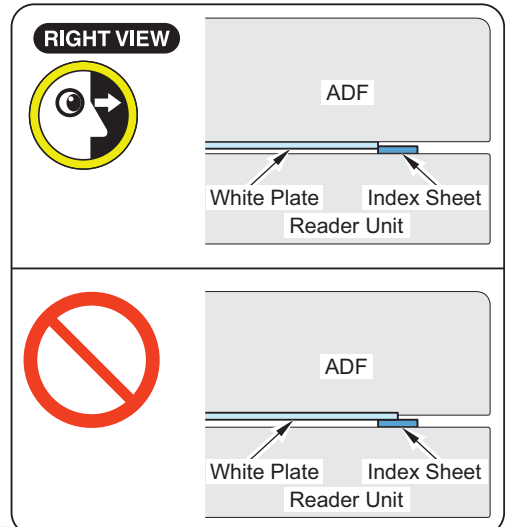
If the White Plate is pressed downward, it is placed on the Index Sheet, so be sure to press it upward.



□  
4.

**NOTE:**

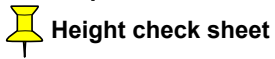
- Be sure that there is no gap (for reference, 0.3 mm or less) between the White Plate and the Index Sheet.
- Check that the White Plate is not placed on the Index Sheet.



## Checking the Height

### Height Check Sheet Preparation or Creation

1. Prepare the check sheet used for height adjustment.



#### NOTE:

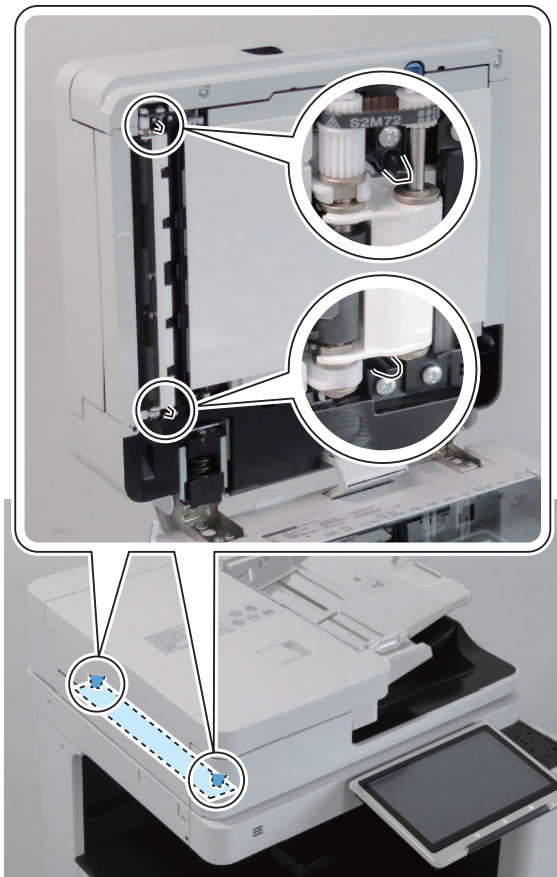
Points to Note when Creating the Check Sheet

- Output with A4 (paper size) or LTR (paper size).
- Use plain paper 1 to 3 (64 to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (Paper Type).

## Height Adjustment

### Checking the Height

1. Check that the 2 Height Adjustment Bosses at the left front side and the left rear side are in contact with the Stream Reading Glass.

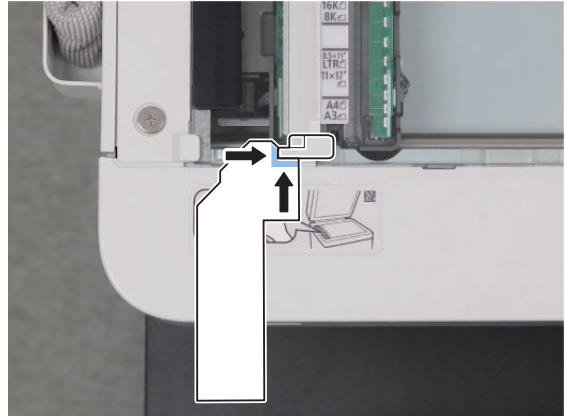


2. If they are not in contact, perform the height adjustment. If it cannot be visually checked, perform "Checking the Height of the Height Adjustment Boss".

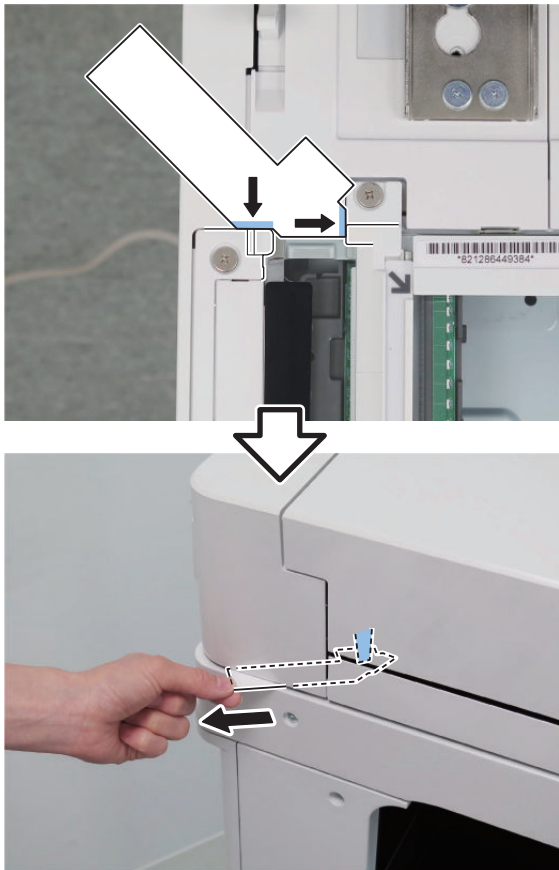
### Checking the Height of the Height Adjustment Boss

1. Put a sheet of paper on the place where the protrusions touch the Stream Reading Glass, and check whether there is any resistance of the paper when closing the ADF.

<The Left Front Side>



<The Left Rear Side>



2. If there is no resistance, perform the height adjustment.

### Height Adjustment Procedure

- 1. Adjust by turning the Fixation Screw on the upper side of Hinge.
  - If both front and rear side (or only front side) are not installed properly: Turn the Right Hinge Fixation Screw clockwise (black arrow) to correctly locate it at the front.



- If the rear side is not installed properly: Turn the Left Hinge Fixation Screw counterclockwise (white arrow).



2. Open th ADF fully and close the ADF and then, Check the height again and see if it is at an appropriate height.

### Light intensity adjustment

**NOTE:**

- This mode automatically performs adjustment.
- If "NG" is displayed after executing this mode, check that PCB and each connector are properly connected.



1. Execute the following service mode with the ADF closed.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > LMPADJ

### Automatic Adjustment of the Stream Reading Position (Automatic Adjustment of the Reading Position at ADF Reading)

#### NOTE:

- If the DADF is opened during adjustment, restart the adjustment.
- Enter the value after adjustment on the Service Label (on the back of the Reader Front Cover or Printer Front Cover). The adjustment result is reflected to COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS.



1. Execute the following service mode.

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS

#### NOTE:

If "NG" is displayed after executing this mode, execute "Right Angle Adjustment (Slant Adjustment)" on the service manual.

### White Level Adjustment



1. Place a sheet of blank A4 or LTR size paper on the Copyboard Glass and close the ADF.

#### CAUTION:

When executing the white level adjustment using paper with smaller width, adjustment may not be executed properly.

2. Execute the service mode item.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLV1
3. Remove the blank paper from the Copyboard Glass, and place it on the Document Pickup Tray of ADF.
4. Execute the service mode item.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLV2
5. Place the blank paper on the Copyboard Glass again and close the ADF.
6. Execute the service mode item.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLV3
7. Remove the blank paper from the Copy Board Glass, and place it on the Document Pickup Tray of ADF.
8. Execute the service mode item.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLV4

### Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment

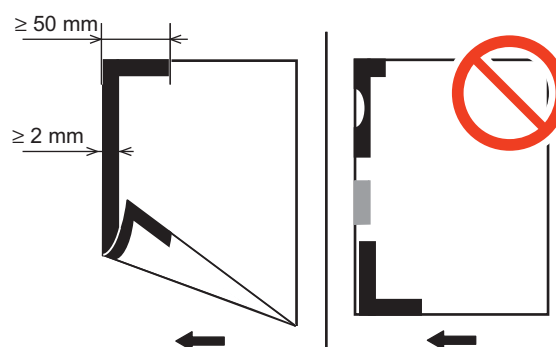
#### Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment

#### NOTE:

If the chart in the following state is used, skew detection may not be possible and correction may not be possible.

- The painted part is not long enough.
- The painted part is chipped.
- The color is light.
- The edges are not painted.
- Broken/torn/chipped.
- Translucent, thin paper manuscript is used.
- The area painted black is not dry enough.

1. Use a chart of a service parts of a Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment, or using A4 or LTR paper, the leading edge and the side edge of the front/back side in the feeding direction are painted black with magic, and a chart for Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment is prepared.



2. Set the value of the service mode to "0" below.

- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-T2/L2/ROT2 = 0

#### NOTE:

- The ADJ-T2/L2/ROT2 is an item for manually fine-adjusting the skew in the case that a deviation remains in the position of the back image to which the skew is automatically corrected after the Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment.
- "0" is the value at the time of shipment from the factory. By resetting to the initial state, there is no unintended deviation due to manual correction with respect to the back surface image in which skew correction is automatically performed, so that a constant accuracy is guaranteed.

3. Set the document tray so that the black-painted portion becomes the leading edge in the feeding direction.
4. Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment is performed in the following service mode.
  - FEEDER > FUNCTION > ADJ-SKW



**NOTE:**

If "NG" is displayed after executing this mode, execute "Right Angle Adjustment (Slant Adjustment)" on the service manual.

**5. Write the adjusted values below on the service label.**

- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DT
- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DL
- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DROT

## ■ Checking the Network Connection

### ● Overview

If the user's network environment is TCP/IP, use the Ping function to check that the network setting is properly performed.

### ● Checking the Network Connection

**CAUTION:**

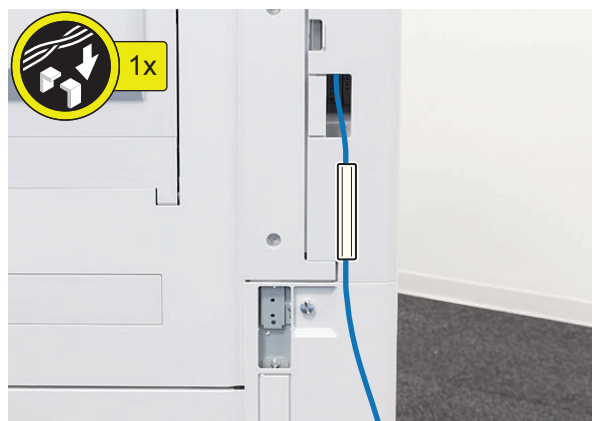
Be sure to use the network cable with Category 5e or higher. In addition, a sealed type (STP cable) is recommended.

Using the non-shield type can affect the peripheral electrical equipment through the network cable.

1. Turn OFF the main power switch.
2. Connect the network cable to the Host Machine and turn ON the main power switch.
3. Remove the cover of the Cord Guide.
4. Remove the release paper, and affix the Cord Guide to the area indicated in the figure.



5. Put the network cable through the Cord Guide, and install the cover of the Cord Guide.



6. Inform the system administrator at the installation site that installation of the Host Machine is complete, and then, ask for the network setting.

**NOTE:**

Network setting cannot be executed unless logging in as an administrator.

Factory default password is as follows.

- System administration division ID: Administrator
- System administration password: 7654321

**CAUTION:**

To perform the network setting, the following Additional Functions items must be set "ON".

- [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [Confirm Network Connection Setting Changes]
- [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 settings] > [Use IPv4]

7. Turn OFF and then ON the main power.

### ● Operation Procedure Using Ping

1. Select the following: [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 settings] > [PING command]
2. Enter the IP address with the numeric keypad on the Control Panel and press "Execute" key. "Response from the host" is displayed if Ping command is succeeded while "no response from the host" is displayed if failed.

### ● Checking by the Remote Host Address

Using the remote host address to execute Ping can check whether connection to the network is enabled or not.

**Remote host address:** IP address of PC terminal connected/running on TCP/IP network environment that connects to this equipment.

1. Inform the system administrator about checking of the network connection using Ping.
2. Confirm the remote host address with the system administrator.
3. Enter the remote host address to Ping.
  - The network is properly connected if the message say "Response from the host".
  - The network is not properly connected if the message say "No response from the host", therefore, execute the following troubleshooting.

## ■ Network Troubleshooting

### ● Checking Connection of the Network Cable

To check whether the network cable is properly connected to the LAN Port.

#### ● Operation Procedure Using Ping

1. Ask the network administrator at the user's site to write down the IP address of the PC that is connected to the network.
2. [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 settings] > [Ping Command]; and enter the IP address of the PC with the numeric keypad and press Execute key.
  - The network is properly connected if the message say "Response from the host".
  - If the message say "No response from the host", check the following.

### ● Checking the Network Setting of the Host Machine

Check if the IP address specified in the Host Machine is correct.

1. Select the following: [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 settings] > [IP address setting]; and write down the address in the IP address field.
2. Select the following: [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4

settings] > [Ping Command]; and enter the IP address.

- The IP address specified in the Host Machine is correct if the message say "Response from the host".
- If "No response from the host." is displayed, check if the IP address information set for the system administrator is correct.

#### NOTE:

When setting the address by manually input, set the Subnet Mask by following the instruction of the administrator.

### ● Checking Network Function on the Main Controller

Perform checking by the loopback address.

1. Select the following: [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 settings] > [Ping Command]; and enter the IP address, "127.0.0.1" with the numeric keypad and enter Execute key.
  - The network function of the Main Controller is working properly if the message say "Response from the host".
  - If the message say "No response from the host", the network function of the Main Controller is faulty.
2. Replace with a Main Controller that works properly, and then check connection.

### ■ Installing the IC Card Reader

#### NOTE:

- When installing the IC Card Reader, the IC Card Reader (sales company's option) is required.
- Use the shorter cable of the IC Card Reader.
- When installing the IC Card Reader and Numeric Keypad at the same time, install the Numeric Keypad first.

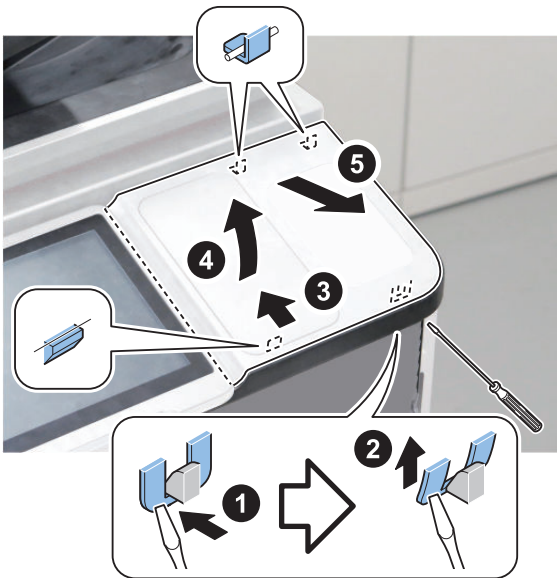


1. ■ If the main power switch of the host machine is ON, turn it OFF.

□  
2.



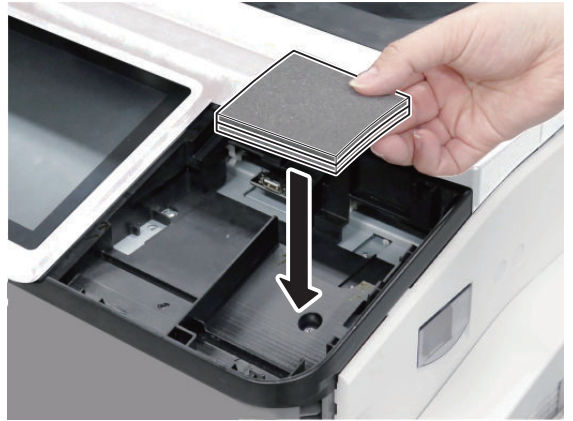
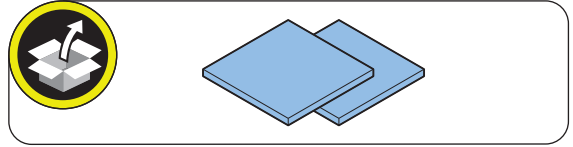
□  
3.



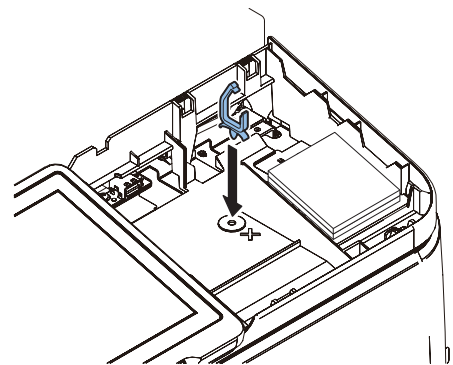
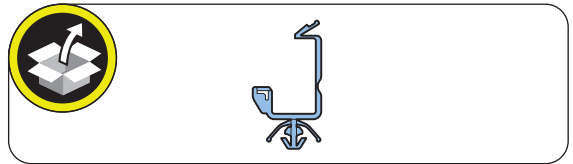
□  
4.

**NOTE:**

Be sure to change the number of cushions according to the thickness of the Card Reader. If it makes the Control Panel Upper Right Cover difficult to install, using one or no cushions is allowed.



□  
5.

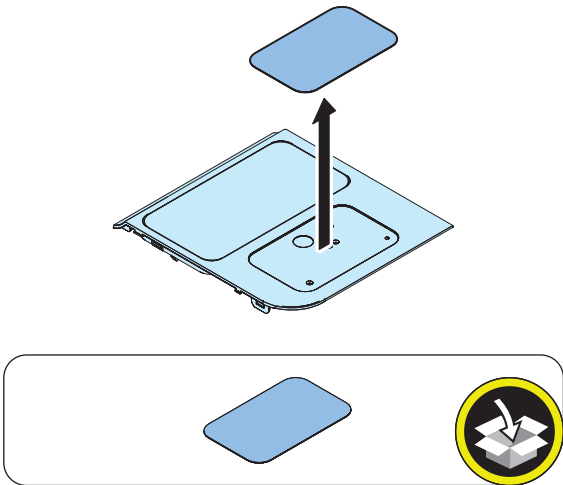




6.

**NOTE:**

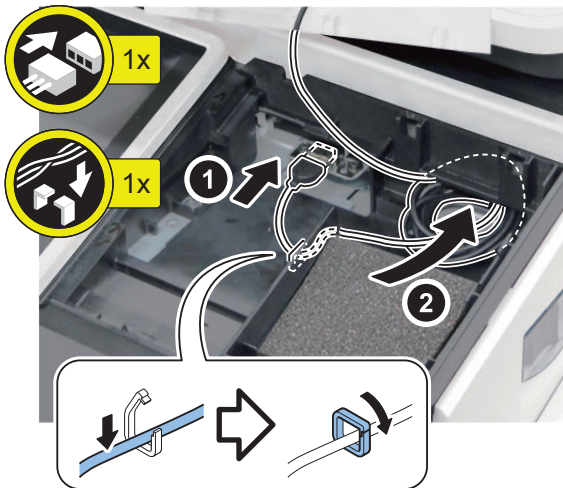
If any paste is remaining on the removed surface, clean with alcohol (to prevent the non-level surface from forming when affixing the Device Port Sheet).



7.

**NOTE:**

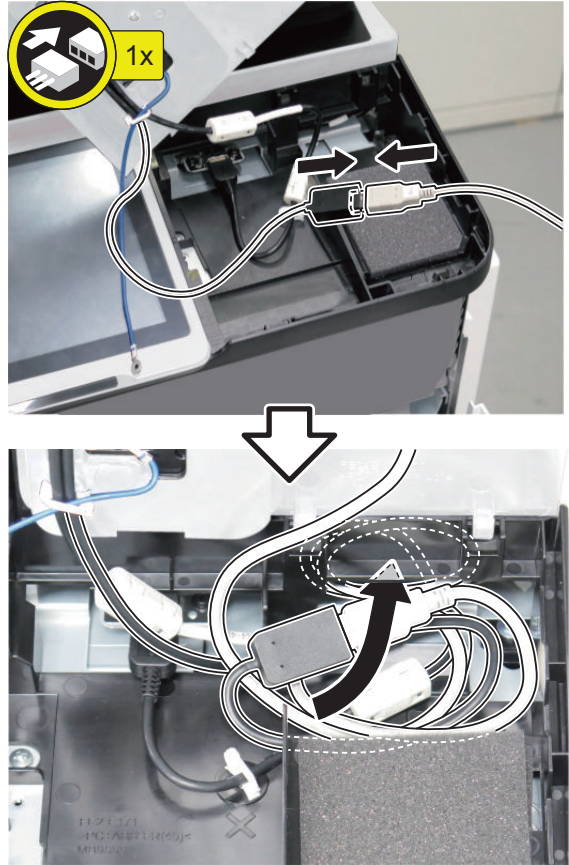
Store the excess length of the cable in the position as shown in the figure.



< When installing with the Numeric Keypad at the same time >

**NOTE:**

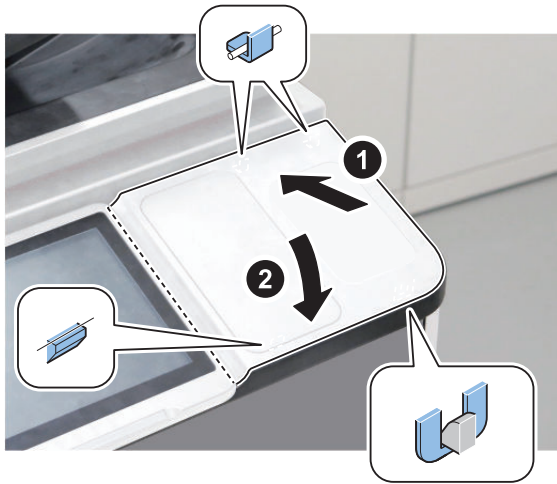
Store the excess length of the cable in the position as shown in the figure.



8.



□  
9.



□  
12. Connect the power plug to the outlet.

13. Turn ON the main power switch.

### ■ Operation when using uniFLOW Online

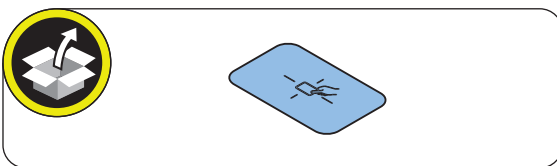
When using uniFLOW Online\*, follow the setup procedures on the uniFLOW\* Online First Steps Guide ([http://www.nt-ware.com/uFO\\_FS](http://www.nt-ware.com/uFO_FS)).

\* China version of "uniFLOW" is called "mdsFLOW".

□  
10.



□  
11.



## When Relocating the Machine

### Points to Note When Relocating the Host Machine

It is basically based on delivery of pre-installed host machines to shops. In the case of relocation from a low humidity environment (an air-conditioned room) to a high humidity environment (high-temperature high-humidity open air), be careful of condensation.

### Overview

#### Works before Relocation

- Image check
- Move the Scanner Unit (service mode).
- Detach the options.
- Works inside the Decks
- Fix the Scanner Unit.
- Fix the covers of the DADF.
- Clean the area around the hopper.
- Clean the area around the Registration Assembly.
- Clean the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly.
- Clean the Developing Assembly.

#### Works after Relocation

- Check for any toner scattering.
- Image check

### Works during Relocation

When relocating an installed host machine to another location, the following works need to be performed.



1. From the following service mode, print 2 sheets each of TYPE 4, TYPE 6, and TYPE 7 in a large size, and check that there is nothing wrong with the image.  
COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE



2. From the following service mode (Lv.2), move the Scanner Unit to the position to secure.  
COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-R > RD-SHPOS

#### CAUTION:

If the Reader is moved after installation, the Scanner Unit of Reader may move and become damaged. Damage can be prevented by moving the Scanner Unit to the specified location and securing it before moving. If the machine is moved with the ADF Reading Glass stopped at a position other than the specified position, the Glass Holder of the ADF may be scraped and the Reading Glass may be soiled, resulting in lined images. In order to prevent it, execute the foregoing service mode to move the ADF Reading Glass to the specified position.

If the Reader Scanner Unit is manually moved back to the fixation position, the ADF Reading Glass does not move along with the Reader Scanner Unit. Be sure to use service mode to move it.



3. Turn OFF the main power switch.



4. Check that the display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off, then disconnect the power plug. Disconnect the Grounding Wire if it is connected.



5. Detach the options.

#### Works inside the Decks

Lower lifters inside the Pickup Decks and cassettes.



1. Pull out all Pickup Decks and cassettes.



2. Confirm that lifters are lowered and close all Pickup Decks and cassettes.

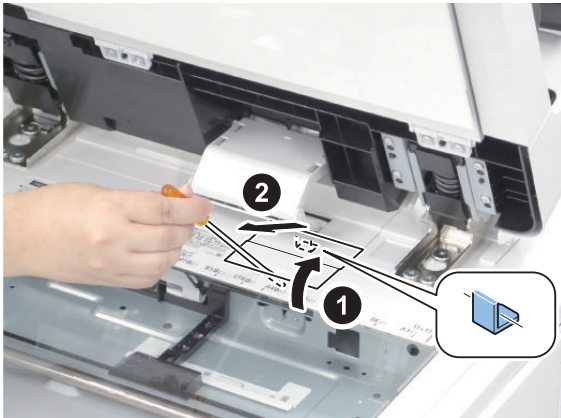
#### CAUTION:

- Make sure to turn the Main Power OFF and then perform these procedures. If the Main Power is ON, lifters may rise again after closing Pickup Decks and cassettes.
- If the machine is moved with lifters raised, the Lifter Drive Gear may be damaged due to the shaking.

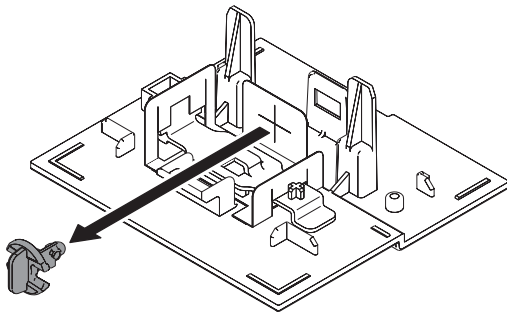
## ■ Fixing the Reader Unit



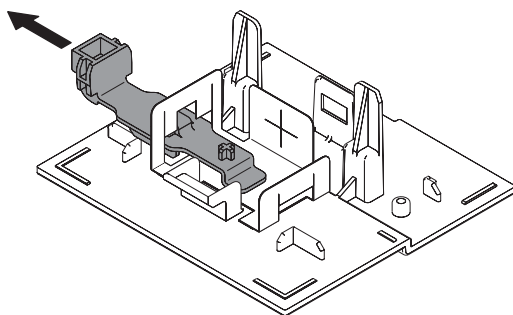
1. Open the DADF, and remove the Maintenance Cover (Upper).



2. Remove the Scanner Fixation Member from the Maintenance Cover (Upper).



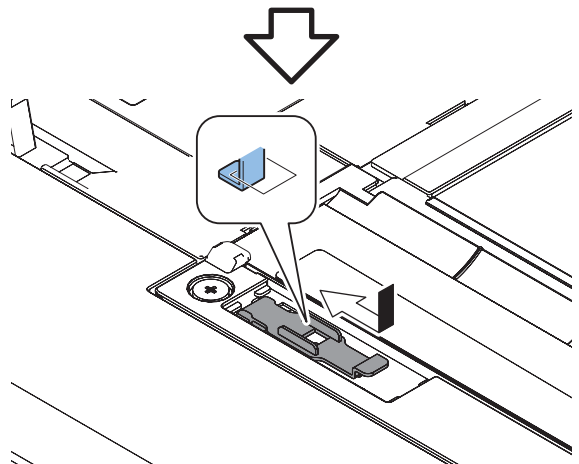
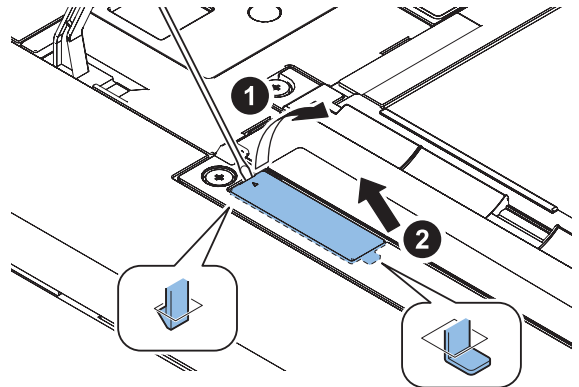
3. Remove the Scanner Fixation Member from the Maintenance Cover (Upper).



4. Remove the Reader Left Upper Cover and install the Scanner Fixation Member.

**NOTE:**

Make sure to keep the Reader Left Upper Cover as it will be used again.



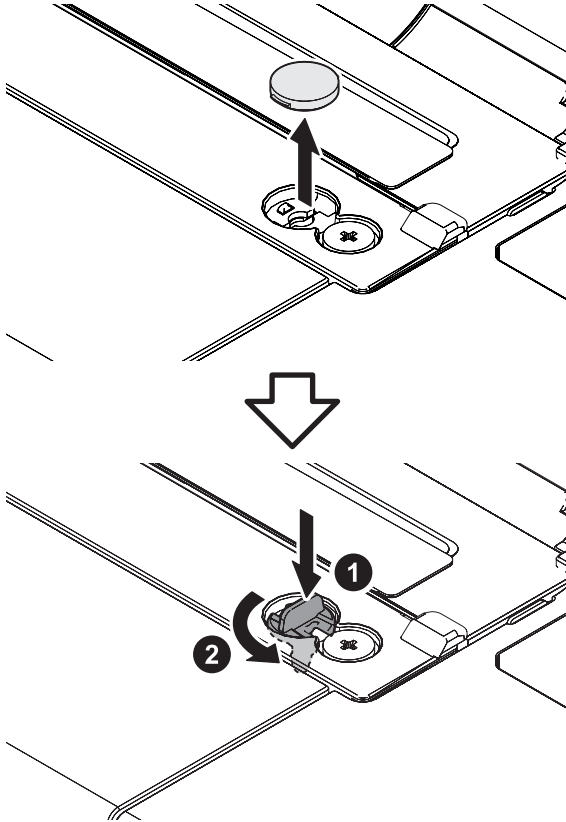




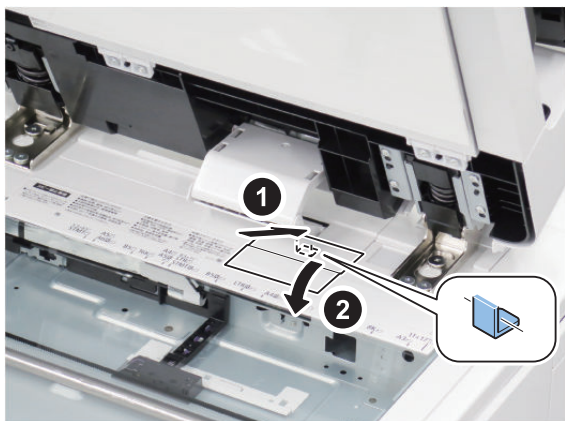
5. Remove the Rubber Cap and install the Scanner Fixation Member.

**NOTE:**

Make sure to keep the Rubber Cap as it will be used again.



6. Install the Maintenance Cover (Upper).



7. Put cushioning material (plastic packing material with air bubbles, etc.) between the DADF and the reader.



8. Close the DADF.



9. Secure the followings with tape to prevent them from opening during delivery.
  - DADF
  - Feeder Cover
  - Document Pickup Tray

■ **Cleaning of the Area around the Hopper**



1. Open the Toner Exchange Cover and remove toner from the area around the hopper.



2. Close the Toner Exchange Cover.

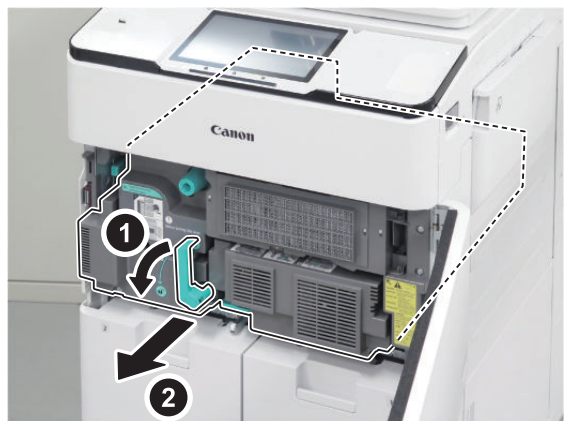
■ **Registration Assembly Cleaning Procedure**



1. Open the Front Cover.

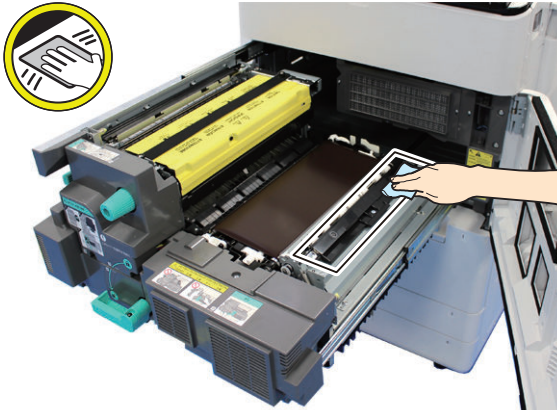


2. Turn the Fixing Feed Unit Pressure Release Lever in the direction of the arrow to pull out the Fixing Feed Unit.





3. Clean the top surface of the Registration Assembly with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

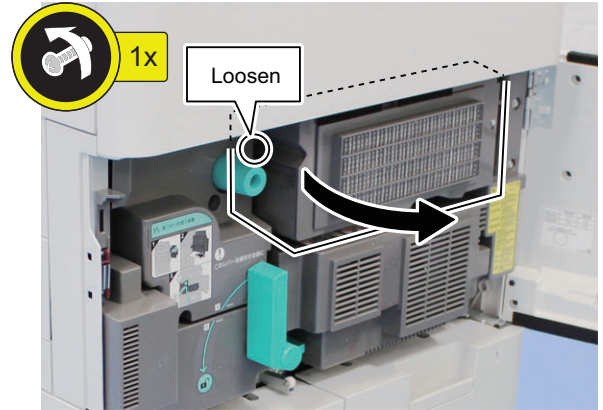


4. Return the Fixing Feed Unit to its original position.

## ■ Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Cleaning Procedure



1. Open the Inner Cover.  
• 1 Screw (to loosen)



### CAUTION:

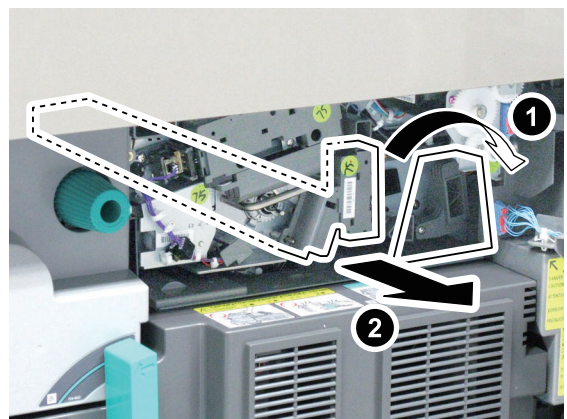
When removing the Primary Charging Assembly and the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly, go through the following procedure while the Charging Shutter is open.

- At sleep mode, press the Power Switch on the Control Panel, check that the machine is in standby condition, turn OFF the Main Power, and then perform removing.
- In the case that the condition of the Charging Shutter (open/close) is unknown while the power of the host machine is OFF, turn ON the power, check that the machine is in standby condition, turn OFF the Main Power, and then perform removing.

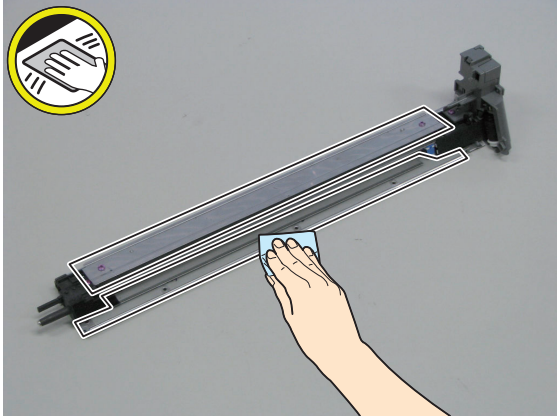
If the above operations are not performed, it may be possible to remove the assembly while the Charging Shutter is closed, which may damage the drum or the shutter.



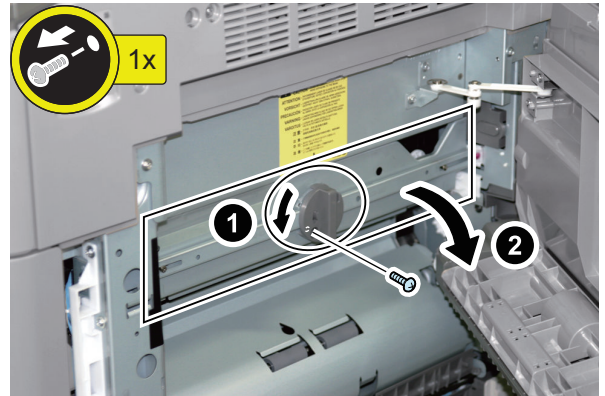
2. Turn the Lock Lever in the direction of the arrow to pull out the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly.



3. Clean the top surface of the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly and the Transfer Inlet Guide with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



3. Turn the Lock Lever, and open the Developing Assembly Pressure Cover.
  - 1 Screw

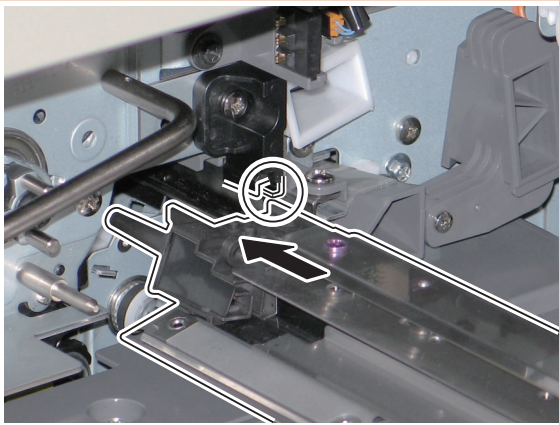


4. Return the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly to its original position.

**CAUTION:**

Points to Caution at Installation

Be sure to fit the Transfer Charging Assembly to the groove on the host machine and install it horizontally.



5. Close the Inner Cover. (1 Screw)

6. Close the Front Cover.

**■ Developing Assembly Cleaning Procedure**

1. Place paper underneath the Developing Assembly.

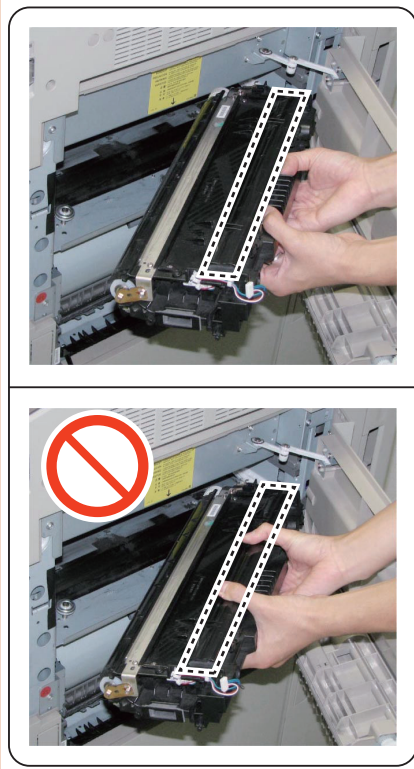
2. Open the Right Cover.



**CAUTION:**

**How to Hold the Developing Assembly**

- When holding the Developing Assembly, be sure to hold the handle of the Developing Assembly as shown in the figure.
- Do not touch the shutter area of the Developing Assembly. The shutter area is slippery, so it may cause a fall of the assembly.



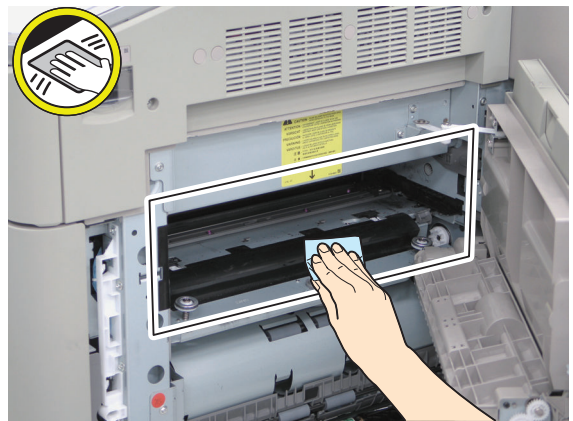
□

5. Clean the top surface of the Developer Container and the lower side of the Developing Assembly with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



□

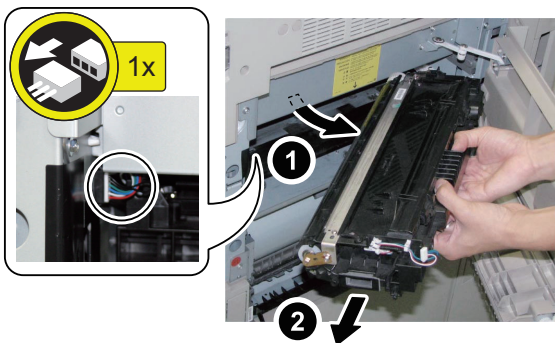
6. Clean the location where the Developing Assembly is going to be installed inside the host machine if necessary.



□

4. Remove the Developing Assembly by following the Rail.

- 1 Connector



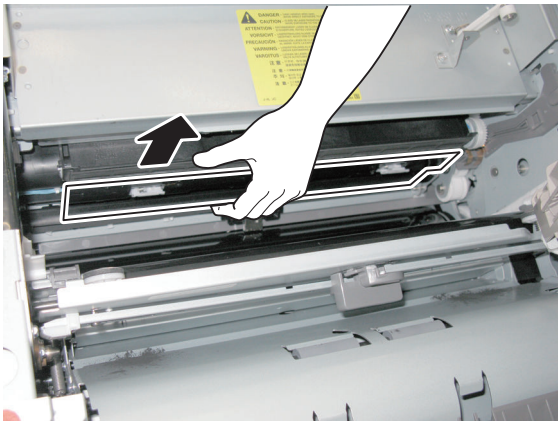


**CAUTION:**

**Points to Caution when Installing the Developing Assembly**

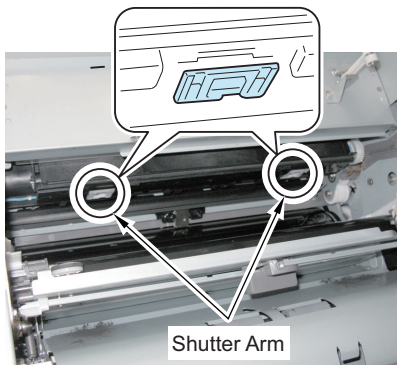
Before installing the Developing Assembly, check that the Buffer Shutter is not open.

If the Developing Assembly is forcibly installed while the Buffer Shutter is open, the shutter may get damage. When the Buffer Shutter is open, pull out the shutter to the front and then close it.

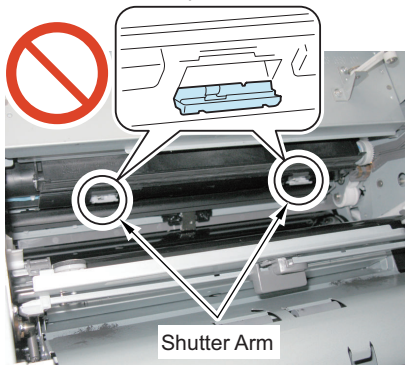


Whether the shutter is open or not can be checked with the Shutter Arm.

<Buffer Shutter is closed>

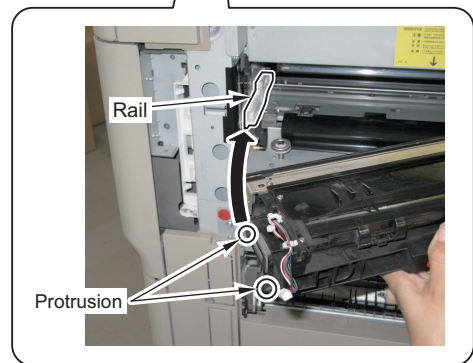
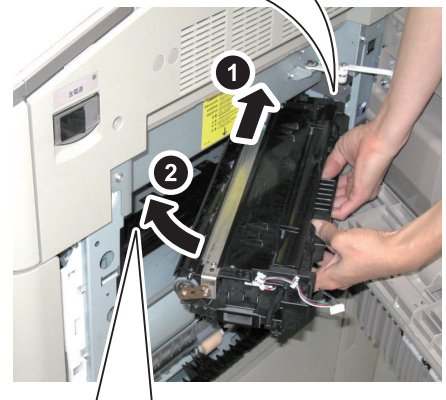
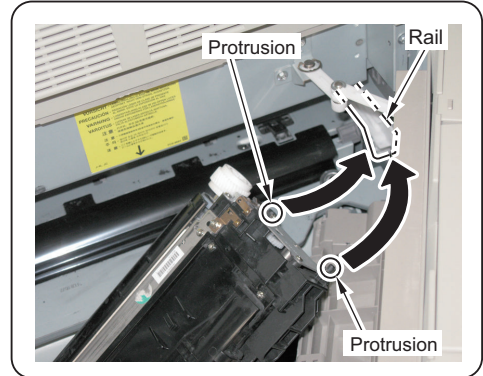


<Buffer Shutter is open>

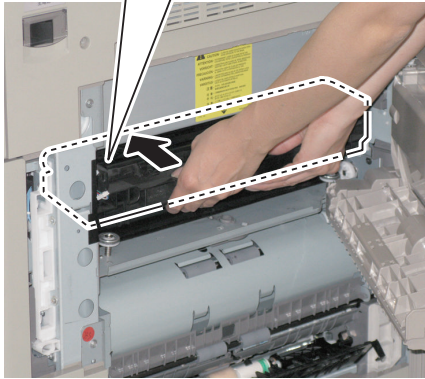
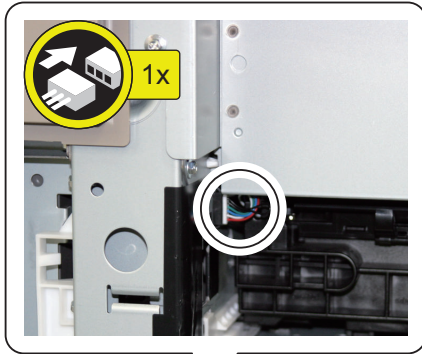


**7. Return the Developing Assembly to its original position.**

1. As shown in the figure, hold the Developing Assembly and fit the protrusions at right and left sides of the Developing Assembly to the rail of the host machine.



2. Install the Developing Assembly horizontally by following the rail. (1 Connector)



3. By following the steps 1 to 6 of "Fixing the Reader Unit" in reverse order, remove the Scanner System Fixation Member and return the Reader Left Upper Cover, Rubber Cap and Maintenance Cover (Upper) to their original position.



4. After turning ON the power, print 2 sheets each of TYPE 4, TYPE 6, and TYPE 7 in a large size, and check that there is nothing wrong with the image.



8. Close the Developing Assembly Pressure Cover. (1 Screw)



9. Close the Right Cover.



10. Lift the 2 adjusters of the host machine off the floor by turning the adjusters with a screwdriver.

## Works after Relocation



1. Check that there is no toner scattering in the area where you cleaned before relocation. If there is any toner scattering, wipe off the toner. The procedure is the same with "Works before Relocation".

- Hopper
- Registration Assembly
- Pre-transfer Charging Assembly
- Developing Assembly



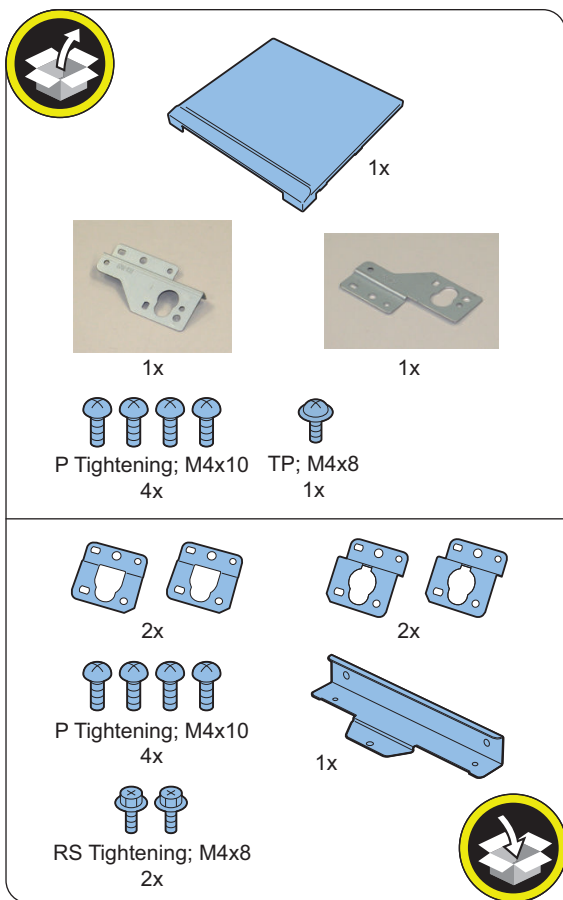
2. Remove the packing materials you put before relocation.

## Printer Cover-H2

### Points to Note before Installation

- After installation of the Printer Cover, be sure to change the setting of the following service mode to "0" before turning OFF the power of the host machine. Otherwise, an error may occur when turning ON the power.  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/SCNR
- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

### Checking the Contents



### Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

#### ⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

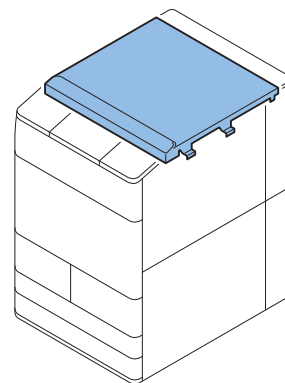
### Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

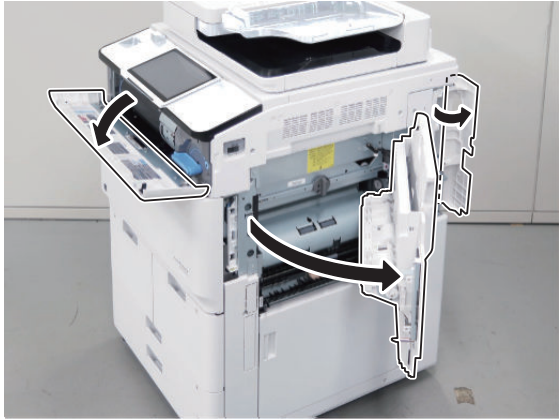
### Installation Outline Drawing



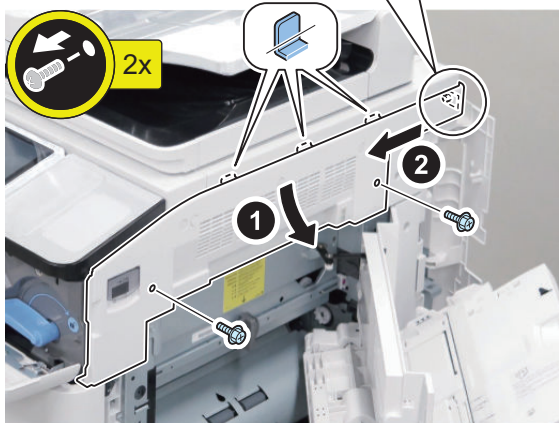
# Installation Procedure

## Removing the Covers

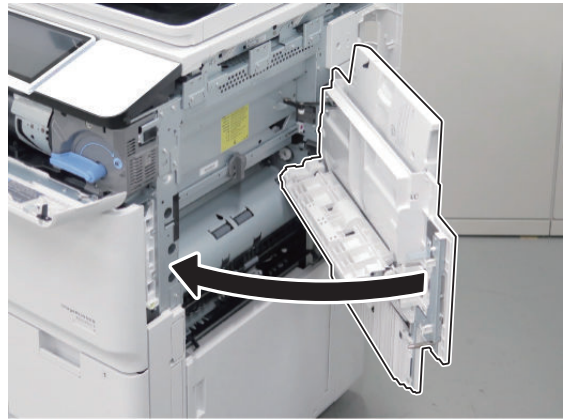
1.



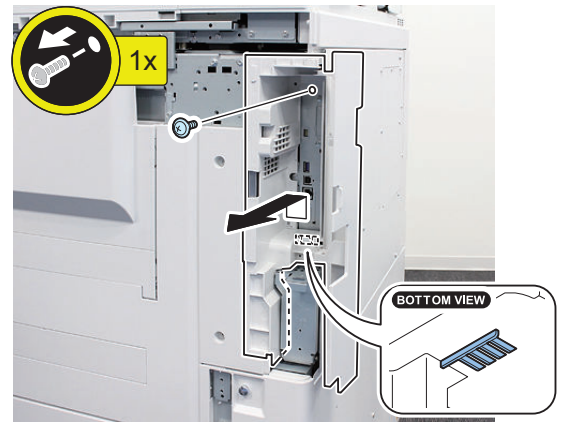
2.



3.

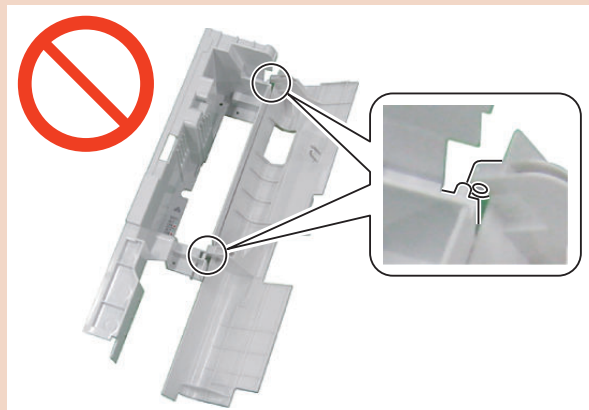


4.



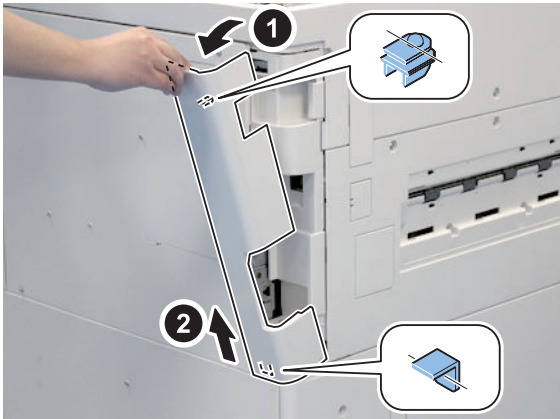
**CAUTION:**

Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.

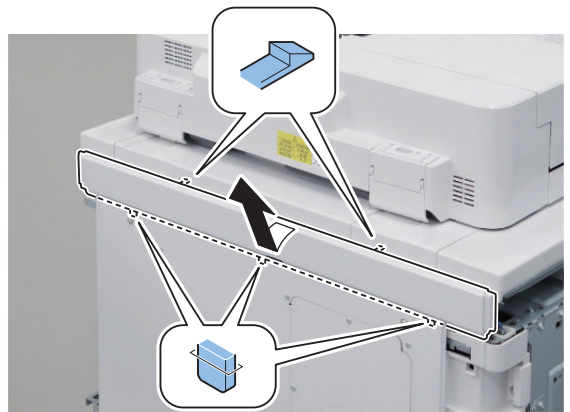




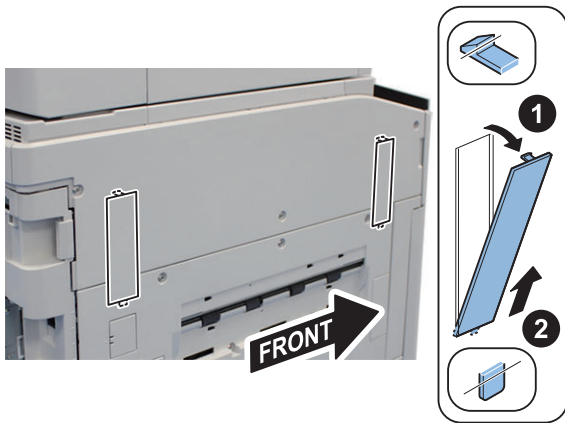
□  
5.



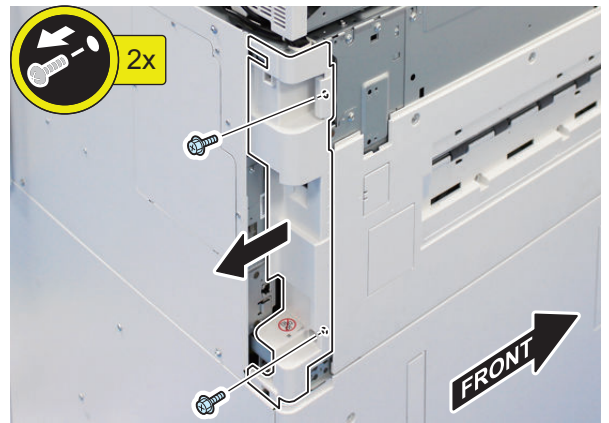
□  
8.



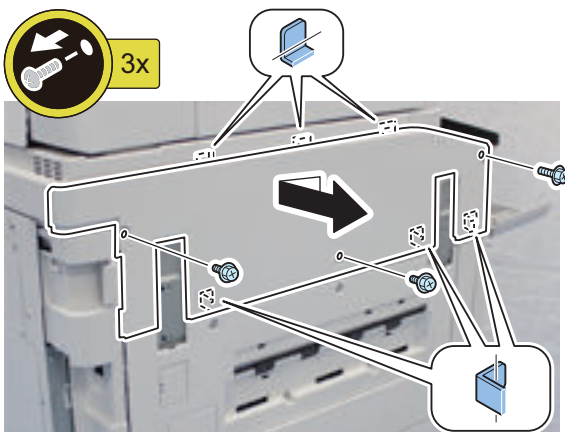
□  
6.



□  
9.



□  
7.



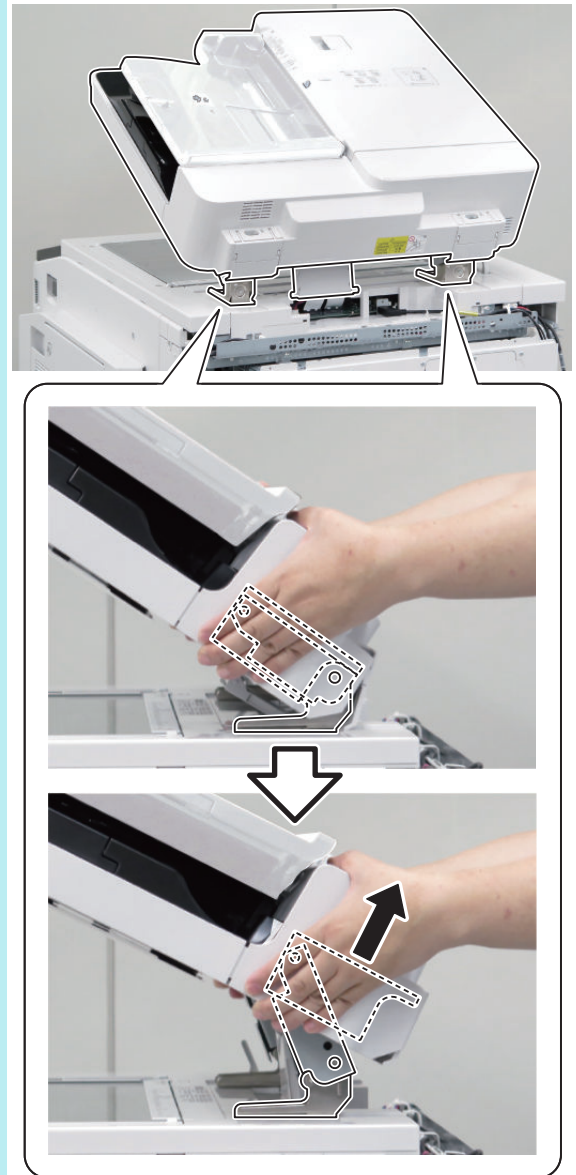
■ Removing the ADF

□  
1.

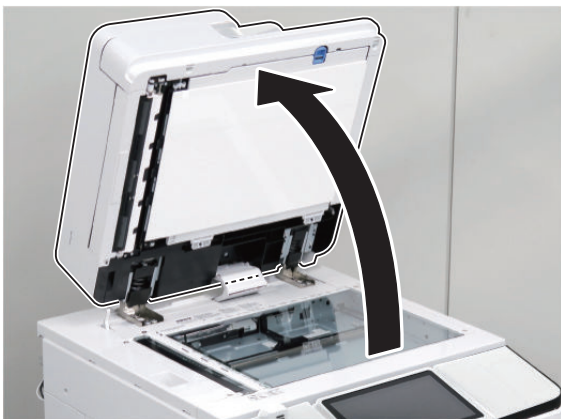


**NOTE:**

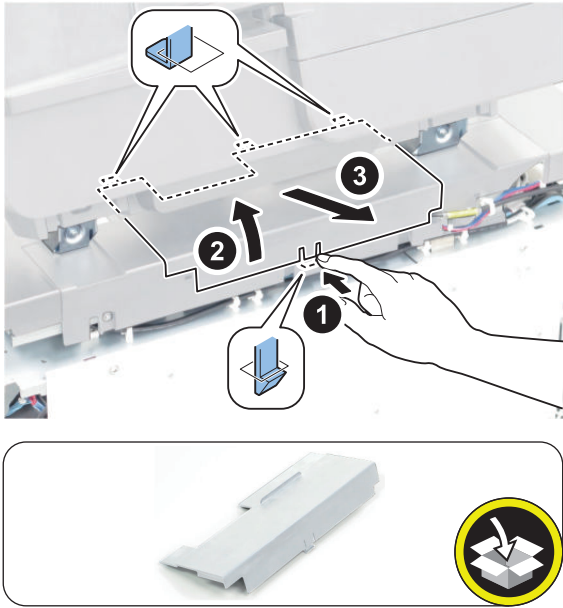
When performing following procedures, using ADF in the book mode as necessary makes the work easy. The book mode is released by opening the ADF.



□  
2.



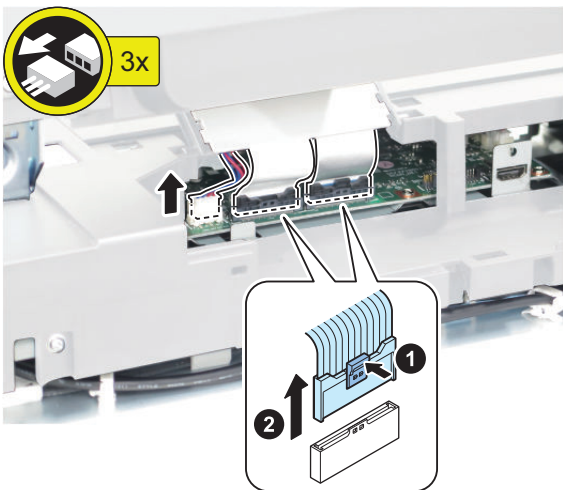
□  
3.



□  
5.

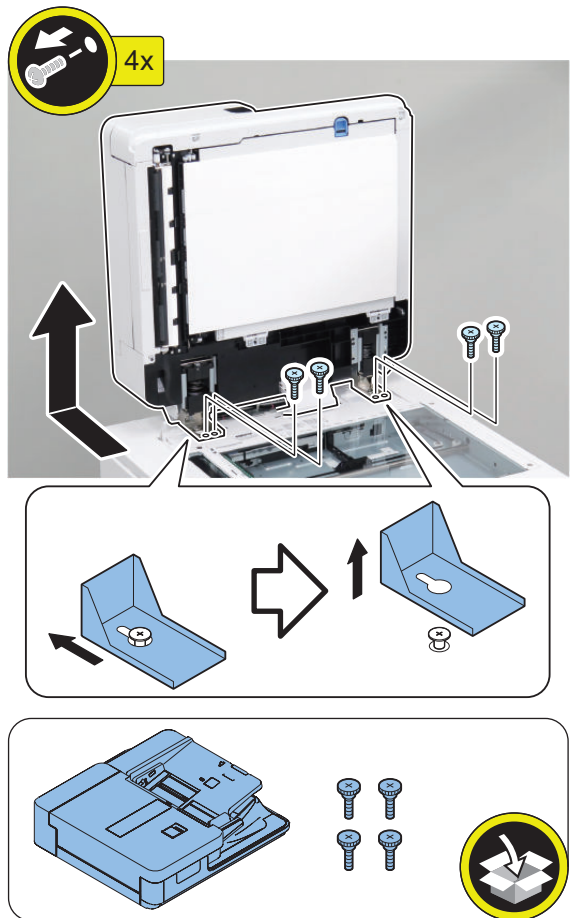


□  
4.



□  
6.

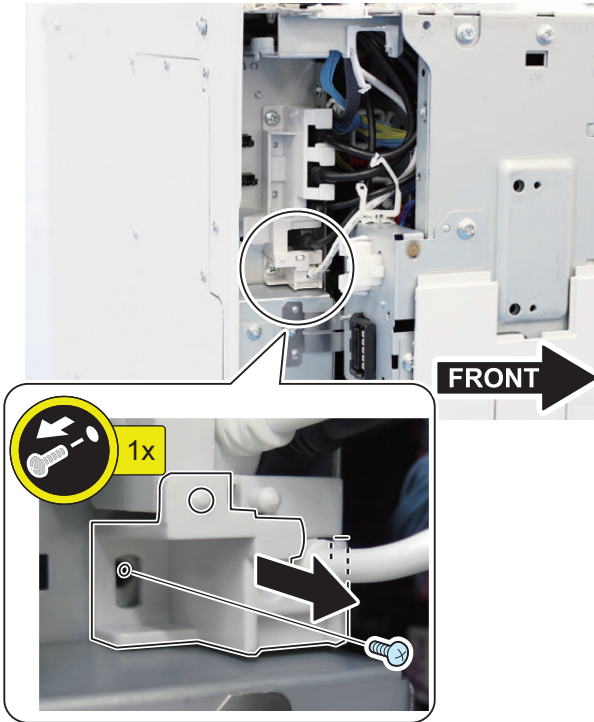
**⚠ CAUTION:**  
Be careful not to drop the ADF.



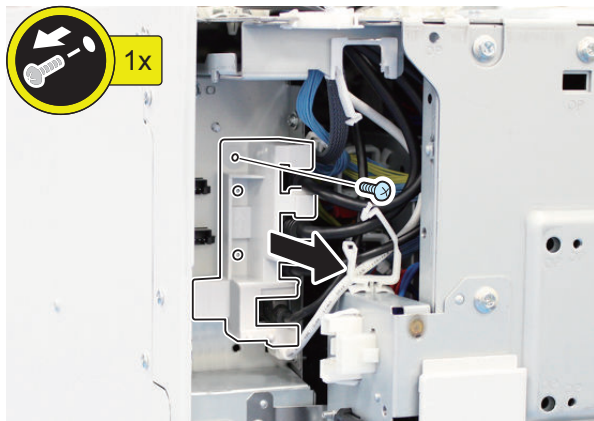


### ■ Removing the Reader Unit

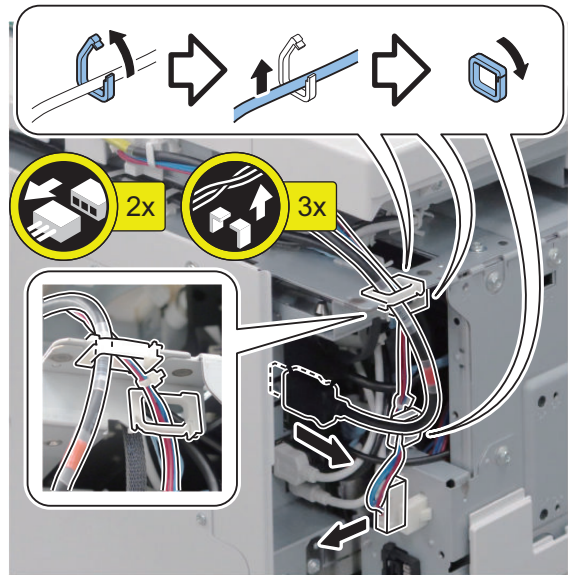
□  
**1.**



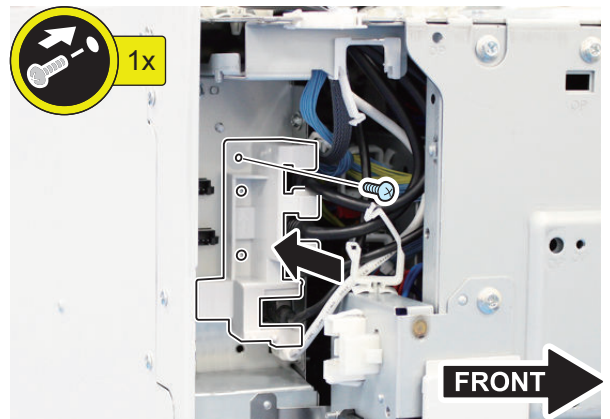
□  
**2.**



□  
**3.**

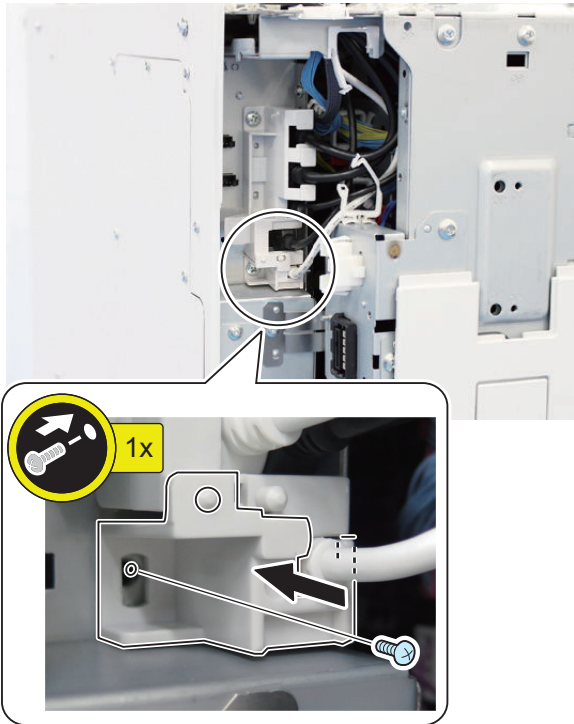


□  
**4.**





□  
5.

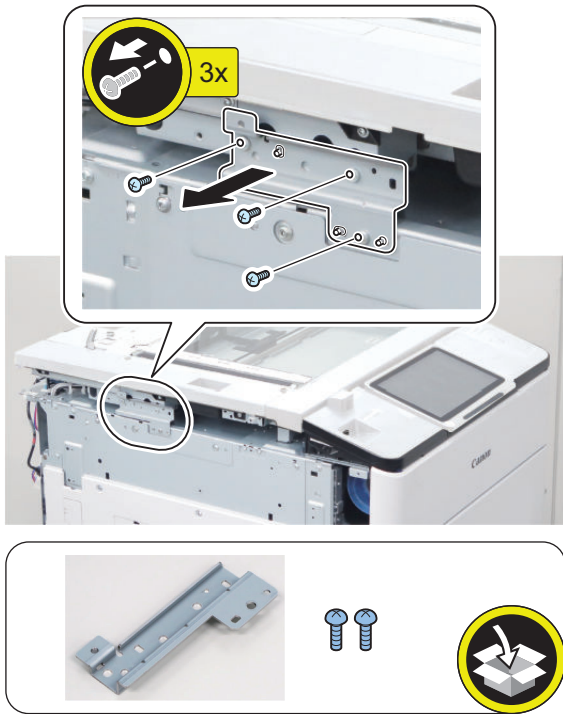


□  
6.



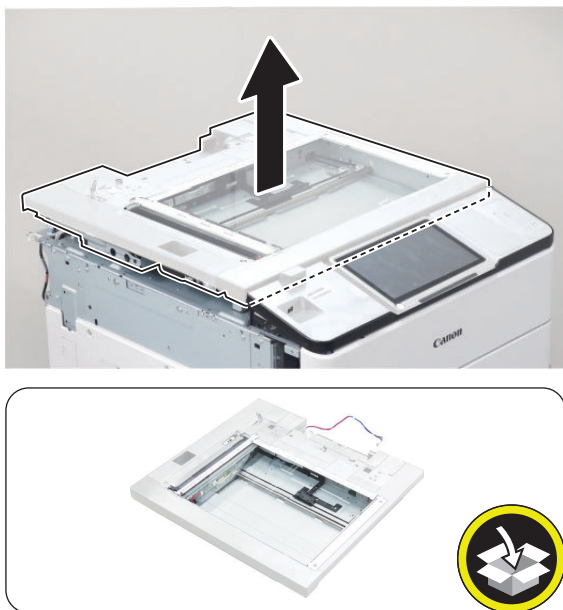
**NOTE:**  
Removed screw will be used in step 1 of "Installing the Printer Cover".

7.



**NOTE:**  
Removed screw will be used in step 2 of "Installing the Printer Cover".

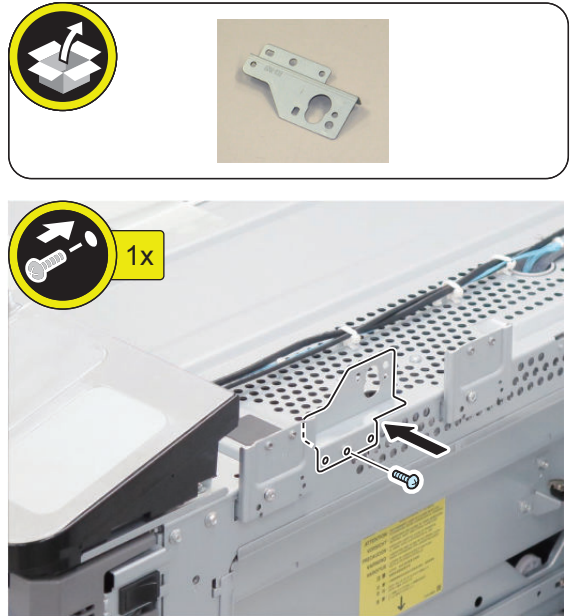
8.



■ Installing the Printer Cover

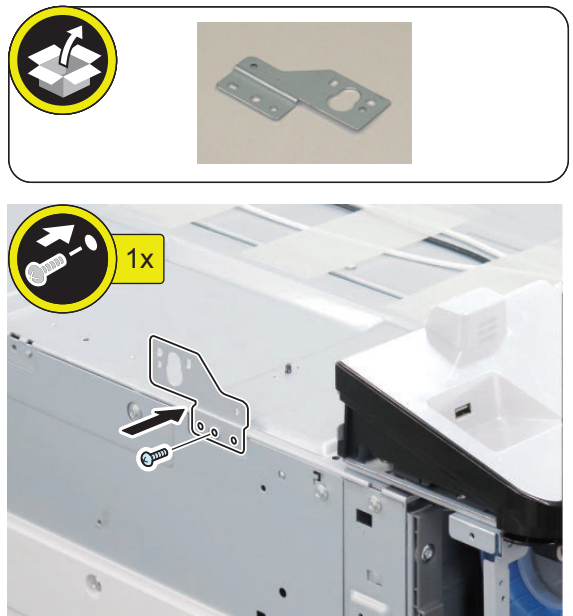
1.

**NOTE:**  
Use screw removed in step 6 of "Removing the Reader Unit".

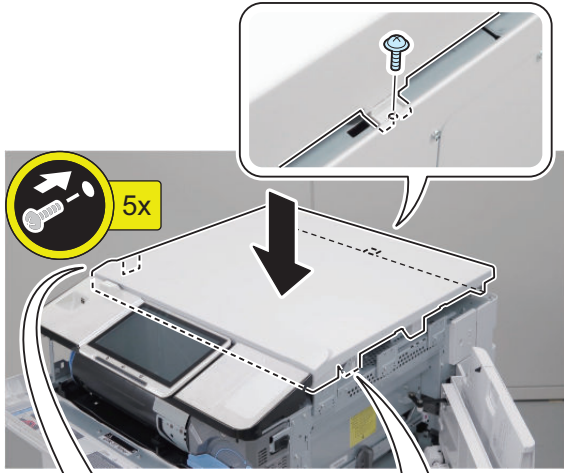
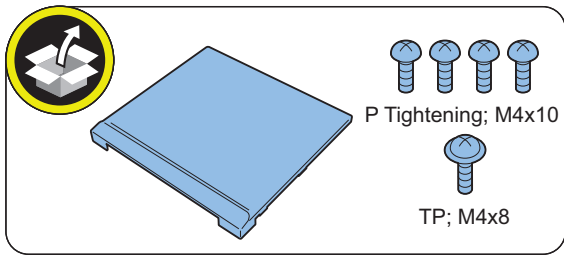


2.

**NOTE:**  
Use screw removed in step 7 of "Removing the Reader Unit".

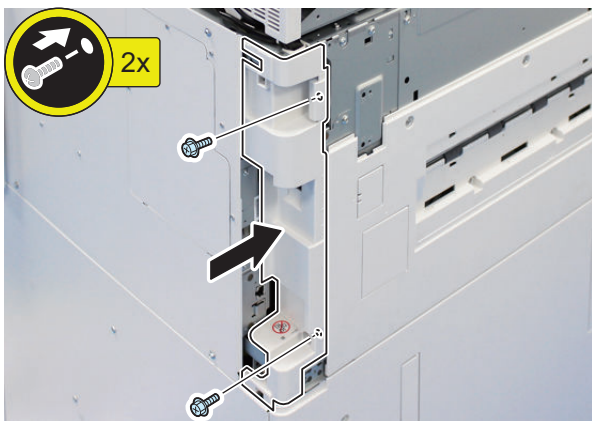


3.

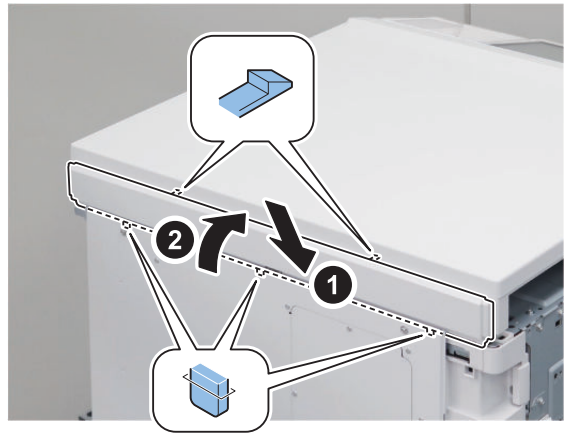


■ Installing the Covers

1.

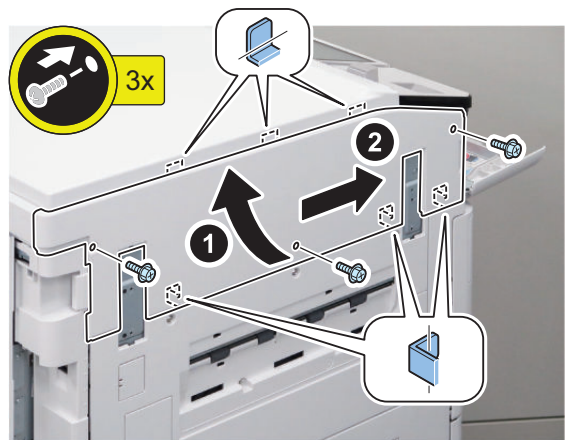


2.



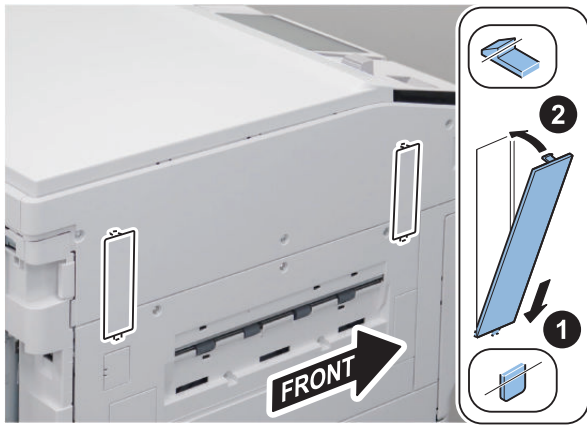
3.

**CAUTION:**  
When installing the Left Upper Cover, be careful not to secure it while it is being slid fully toward the front. Otherwise, the Left Upper Cover may interfere with the Toner Replacement Cover and the magnet cannot work.





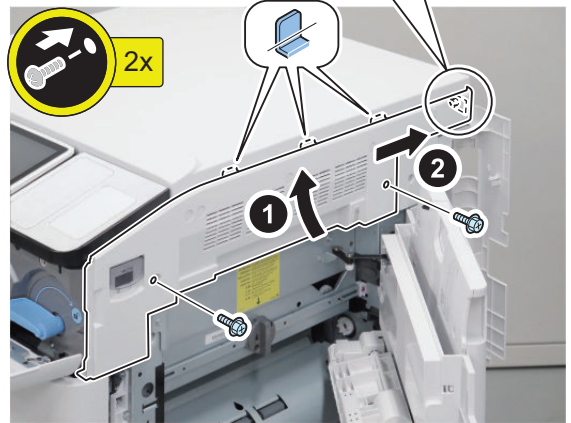
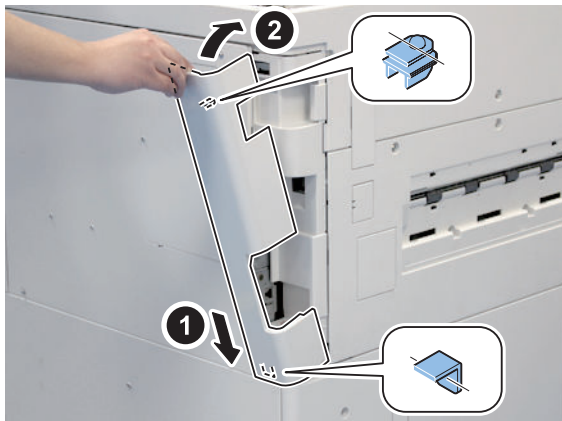
4.



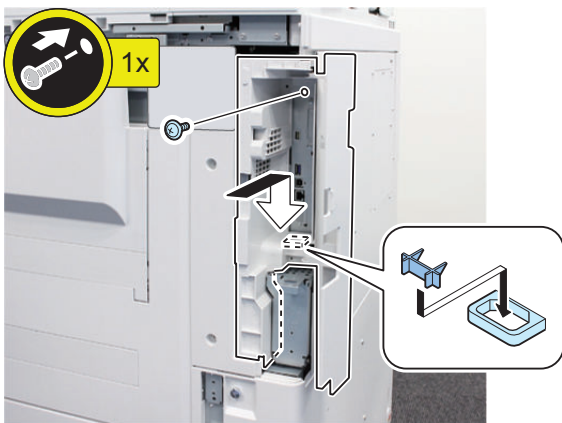
7.



5.



6.



8.



### Operation Check

□

1. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the outlet.

**2. Turn ON the main power switch.****CAUTION:**

If "E732-0023" is displayed after turning ON the main power switch, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch, and then perform the following steps.

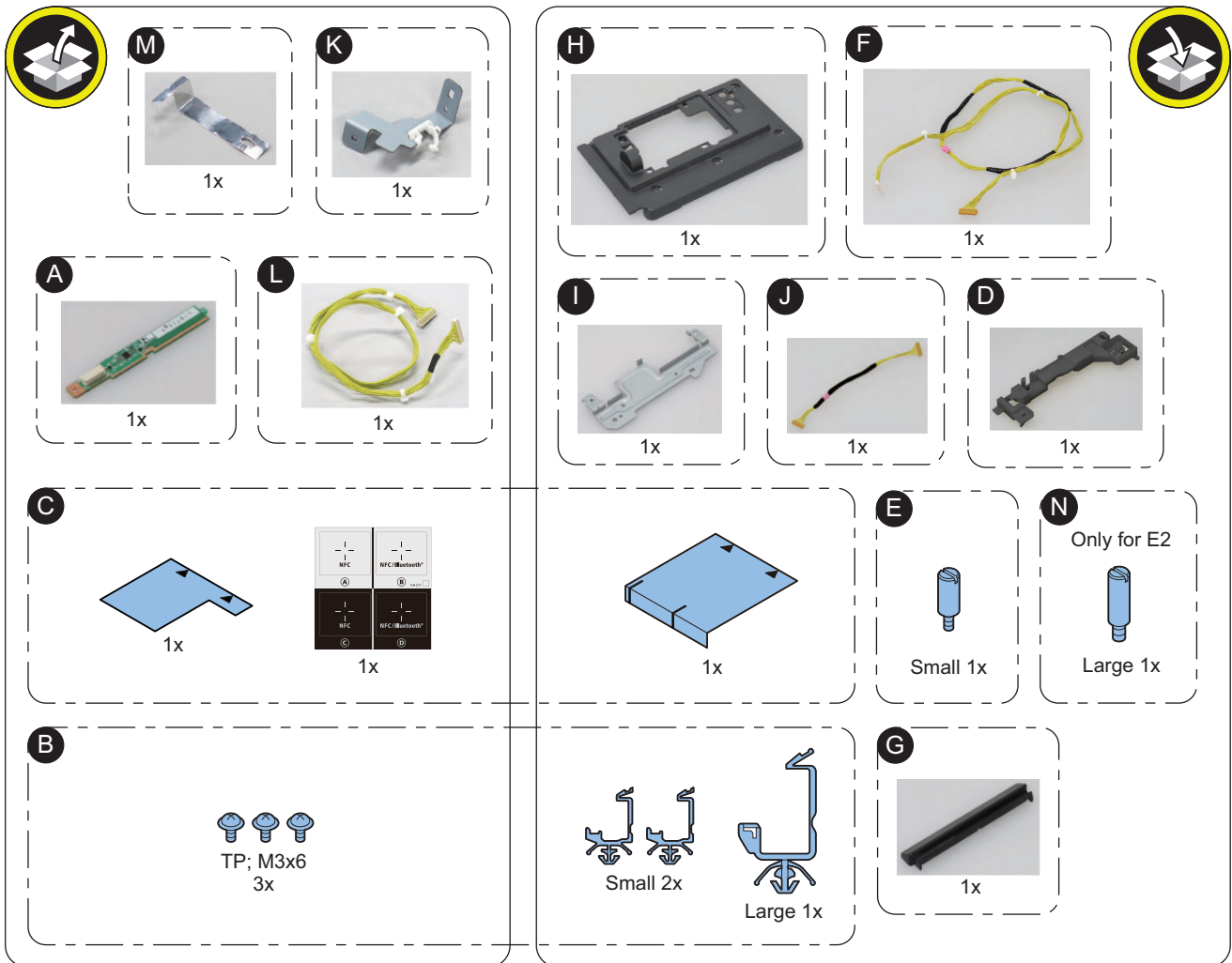
- 3. A message is displayed prompting to check that the Reader Unit Cable is connected properly.**
- 4. Select "0" for the following service mode.**
  - COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/SCNR
- 5. Get out from service mode.**
- 6. Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.**

## NFC Kit-E1/E2

### Points to Note before Installation

The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

### Checking the Contents



< Others >

- Guides are included

### Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

#### **⚠ WARNING:**

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

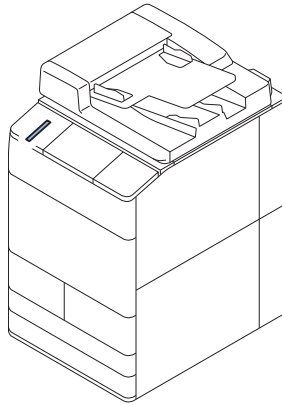
- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

## ● Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.  
If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

## ● Installation Outline Drawing



## ● Installation Procedure

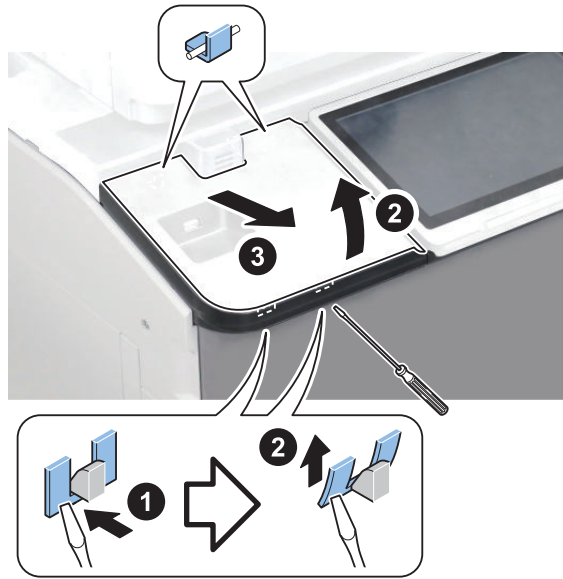
### ■ Installing the NFC PCB

□

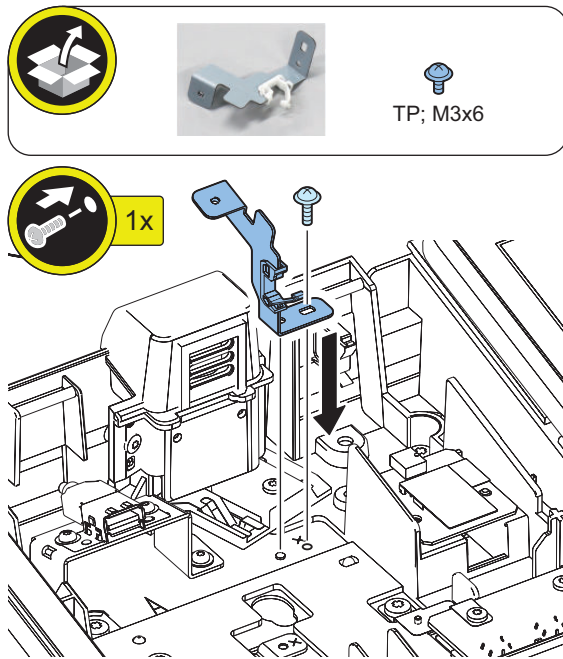
1.



□  
**2.**



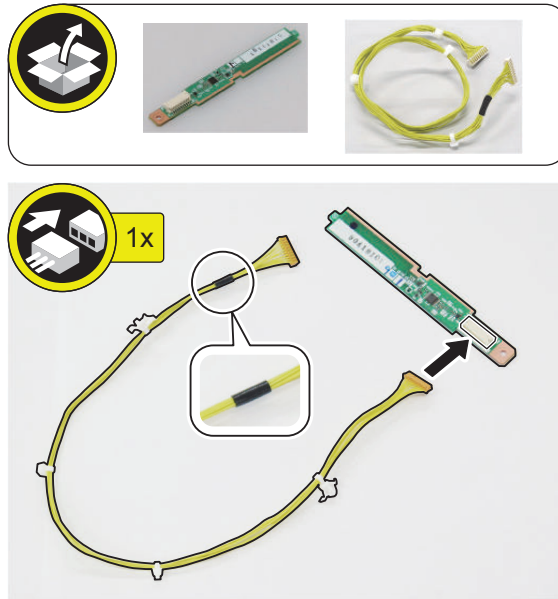
□  
**3.**



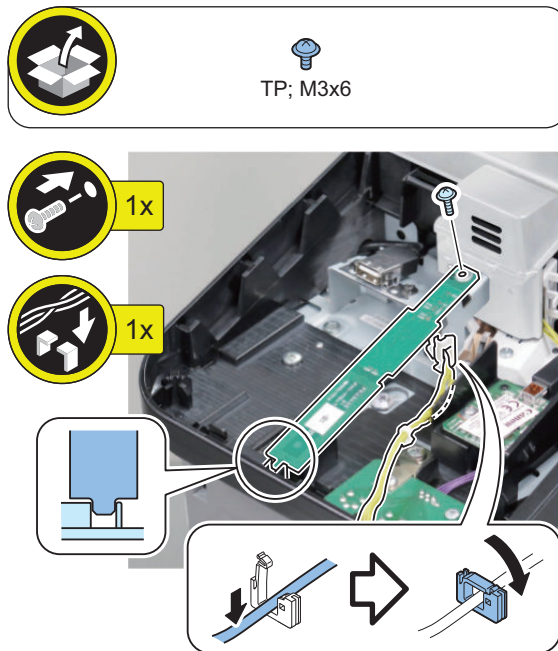


□  
4.

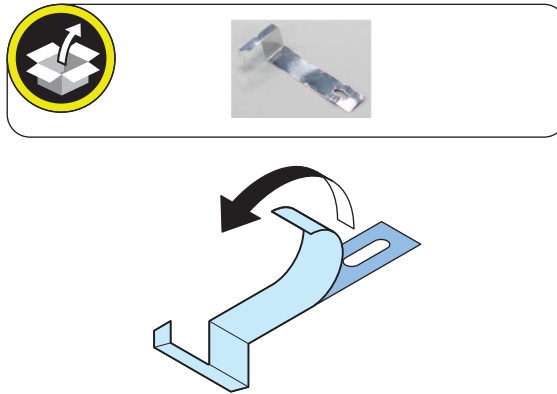
**CAUTION:**  
Connect the cable end which is not wrapped with black tape.



□  
5.



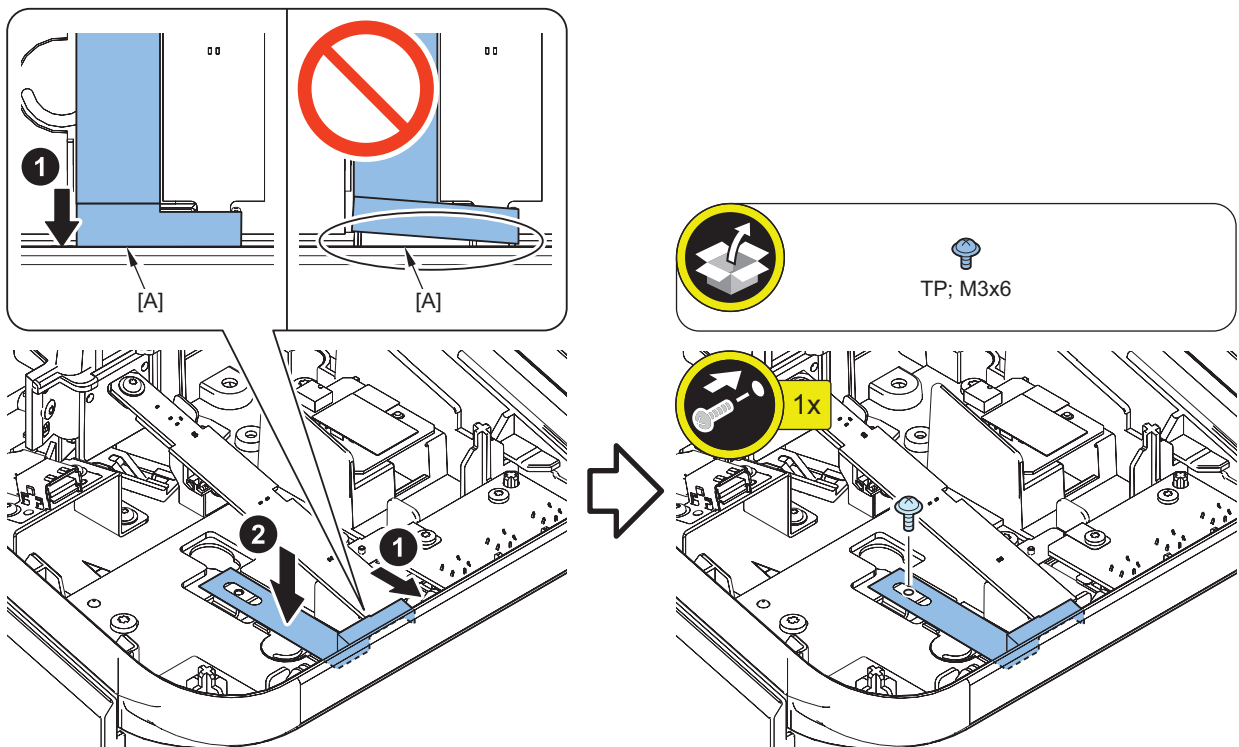
□  
6.



□  
7.

**CAUTION:**

Make sure to affix the shield sheet flat against the cover wall [A] without a gap between the shield sheet and the cover. Static electricity from the gap in the Control Panel Left Upper Cover may cause damage to the NFC PCB.

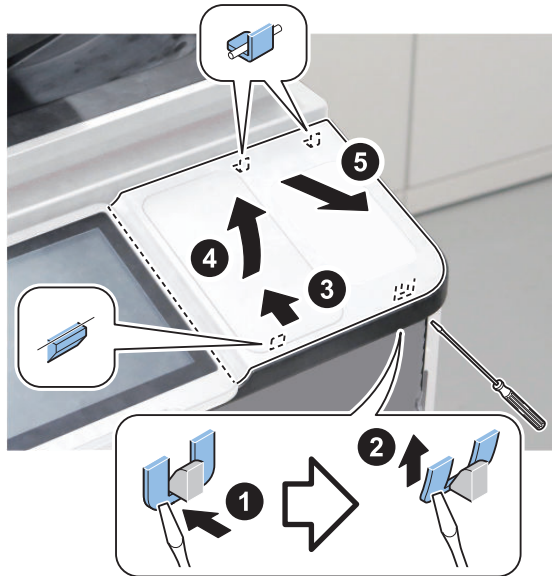


□  
8. Next, proceed to the installation procedure for the target parts.

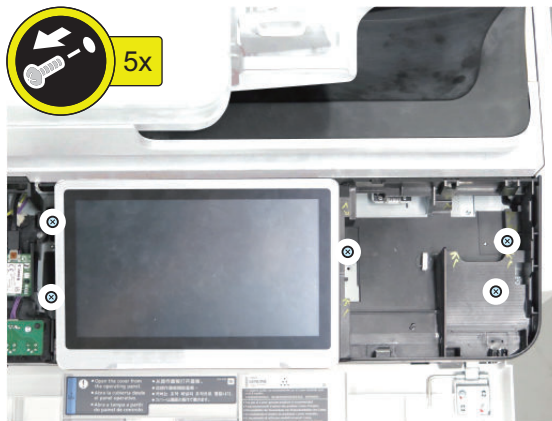
- “Connecting the NFC Cable (for the Flat Control Panel)” on page 1534
- “Connecting the NFC Cable (for the Upright Control Panel)” on page 1539

## ■ Connecting the NFC Cable (for the Flat Control Panel)

□  
**1.**



□  
**2.**



**NOTE:**

The removed screw will be used in step 10.

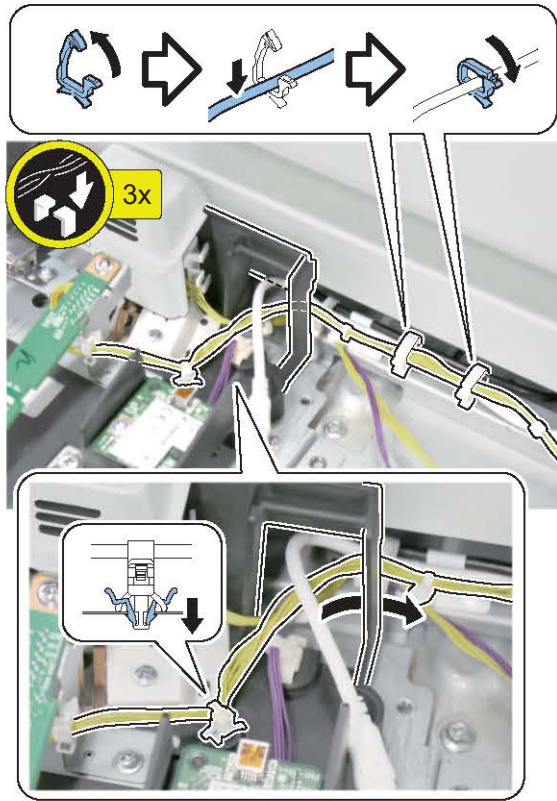
□  
**3.**



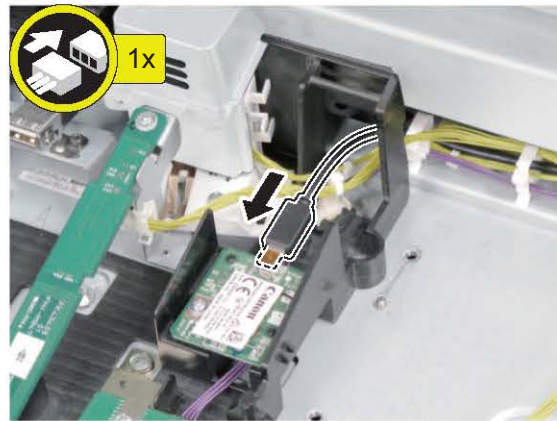
□  
**4.**



□  
**5.**



□  
**6.**



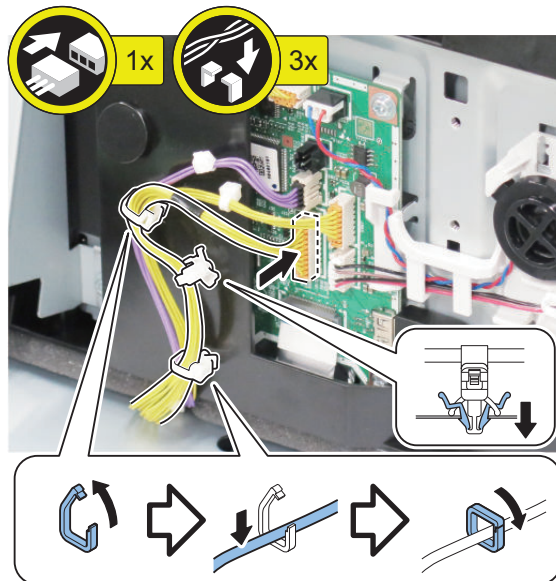
□  
7.



□  
8.

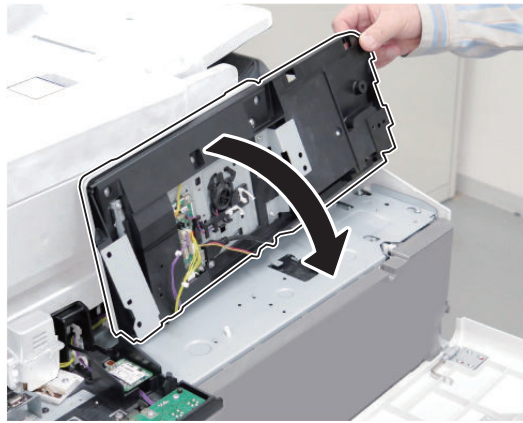
**CAUTION:**

Make sure to check if any connectors are disconnected by pushing again all the connectors connected to the Flat Control Panel Unit.



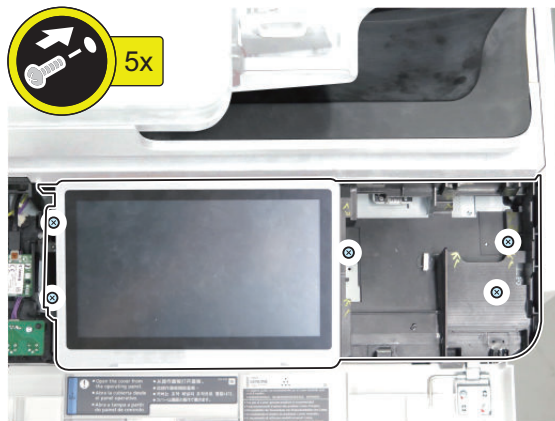


□  
9.

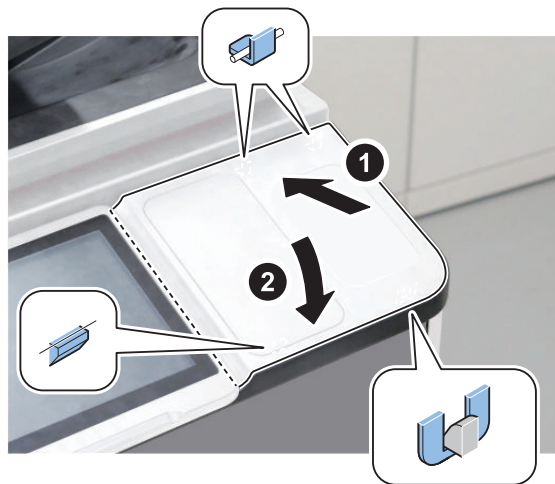


□  
10.

**NOTE:**  
Use the screws removed in step 2.



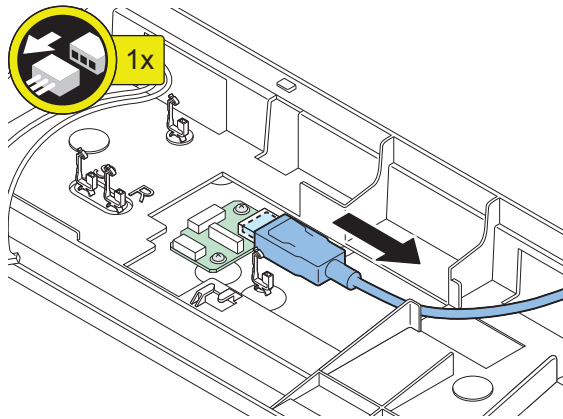
□  
11.







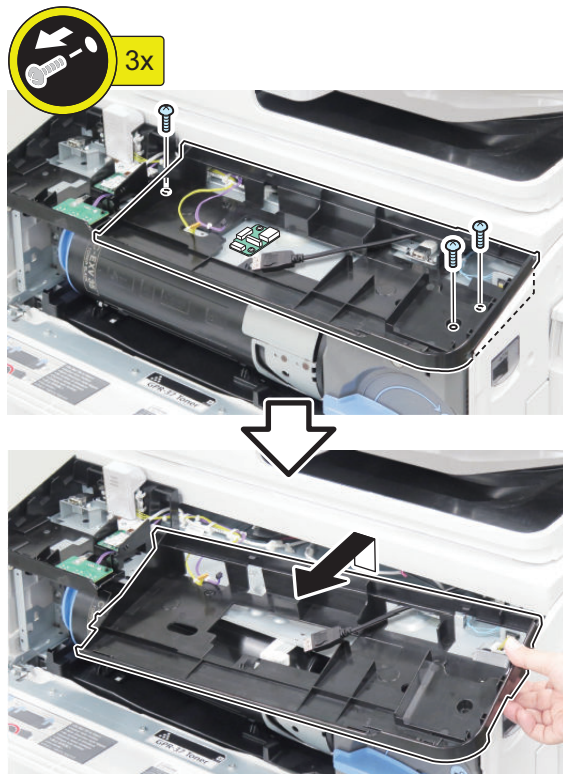
□  
3.



□  
4.

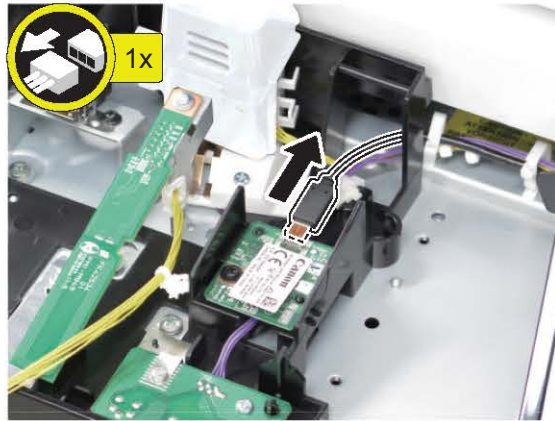
**NOTE:**

Slightly pull the Front Tray Lower Unit without pulling out the cables that pass through it.

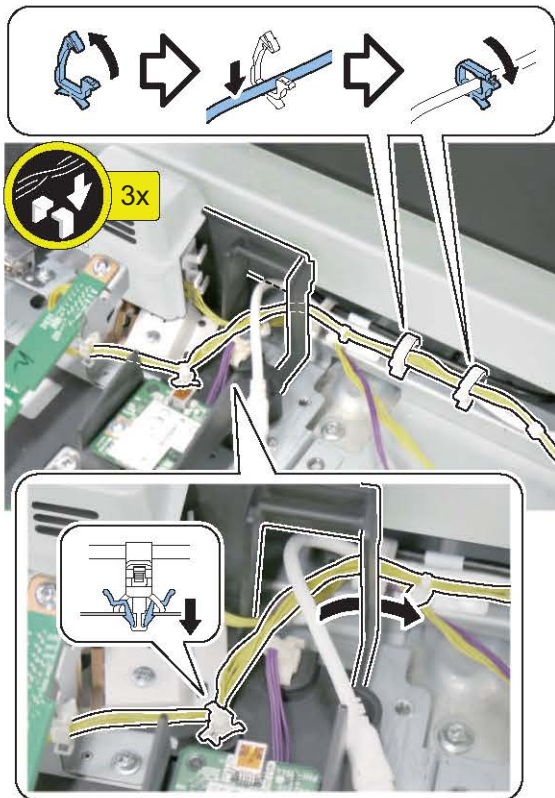
**NOTE:**

The removed screw will be used in step 8.

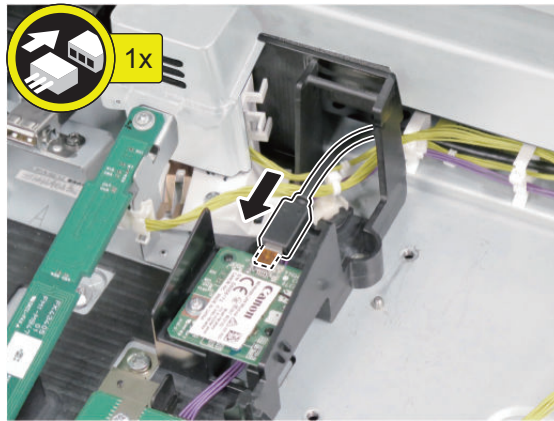
□  
**5.**



□  
**6.**

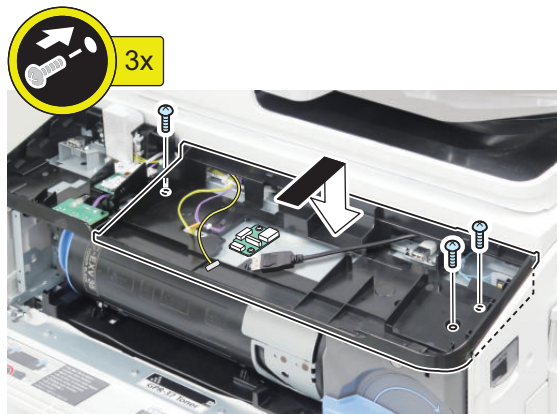


□  
7.

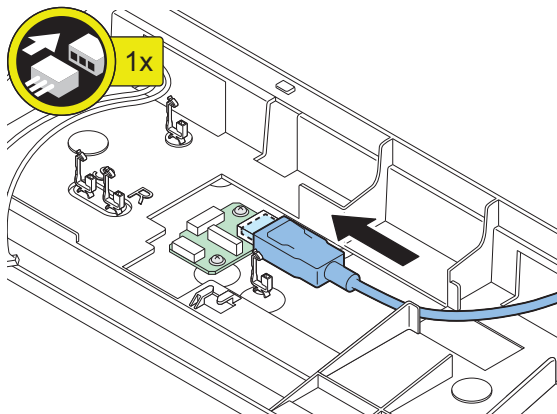


□  
8.

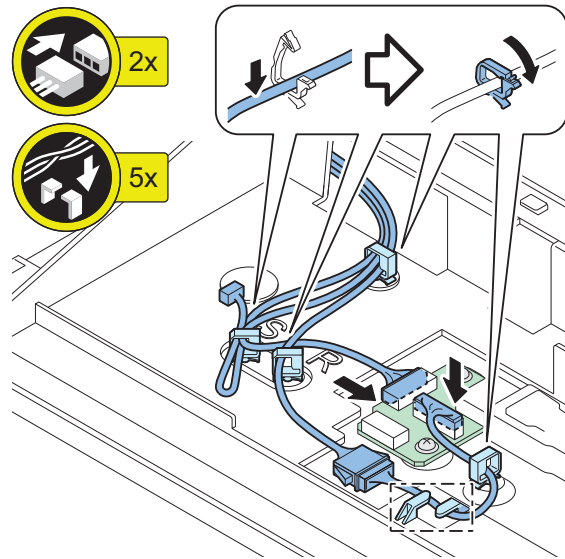
**NOTE:**  
Use the screws removed in step 4.



□  
9.



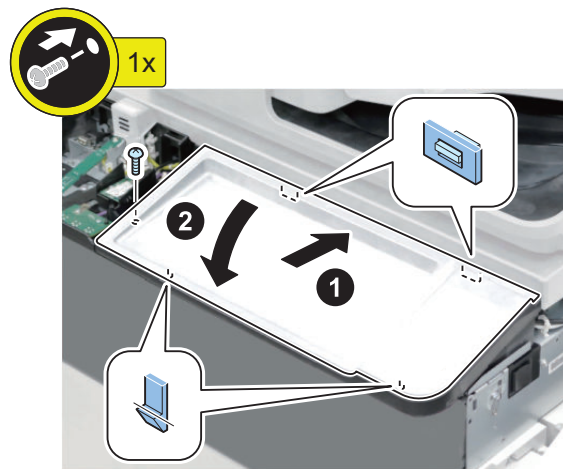
□  
10.



□  
11.

**NOTE:**

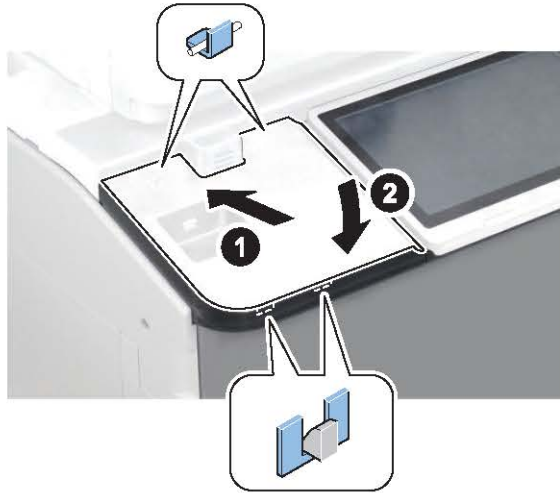
Use the screws removed in step 1.



□  
12. Next, proceed to [“Affixing the NFC Labels”](#) on page 1544.

## ■ Affixing the NFC Labels

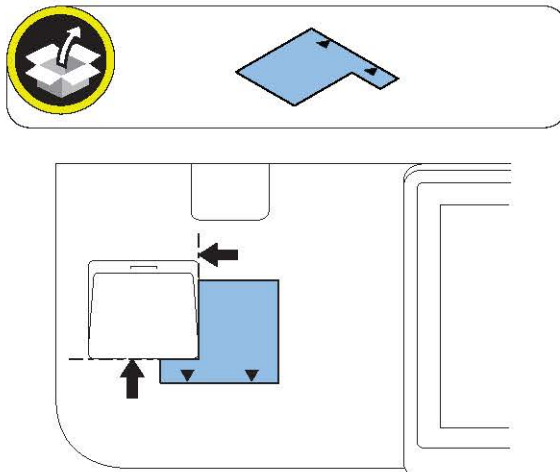
□  
**1.**



□  
**2.**

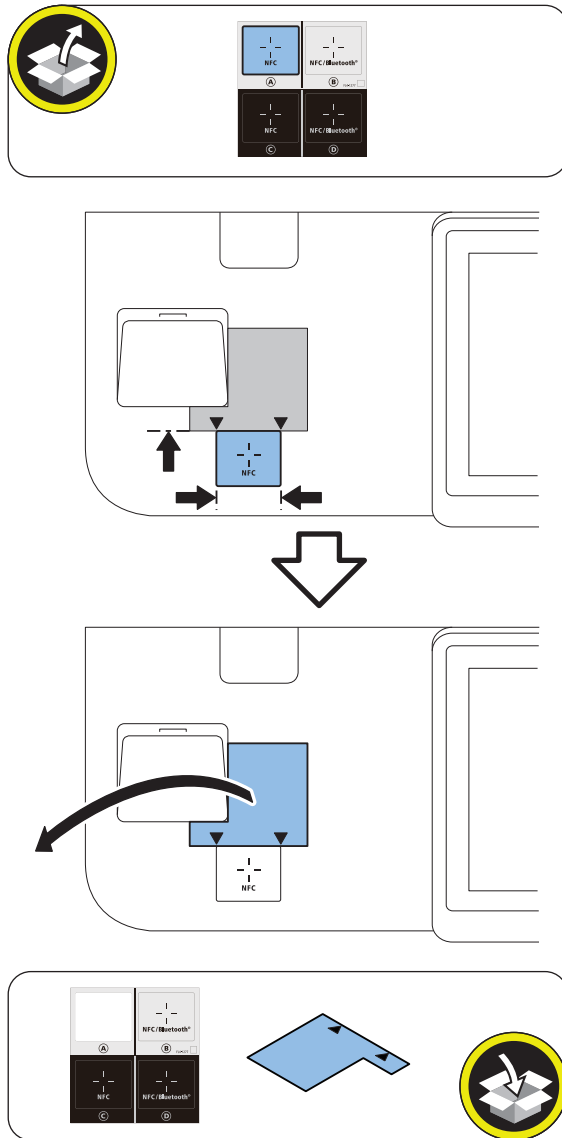


□  
**3.**



□  
4.

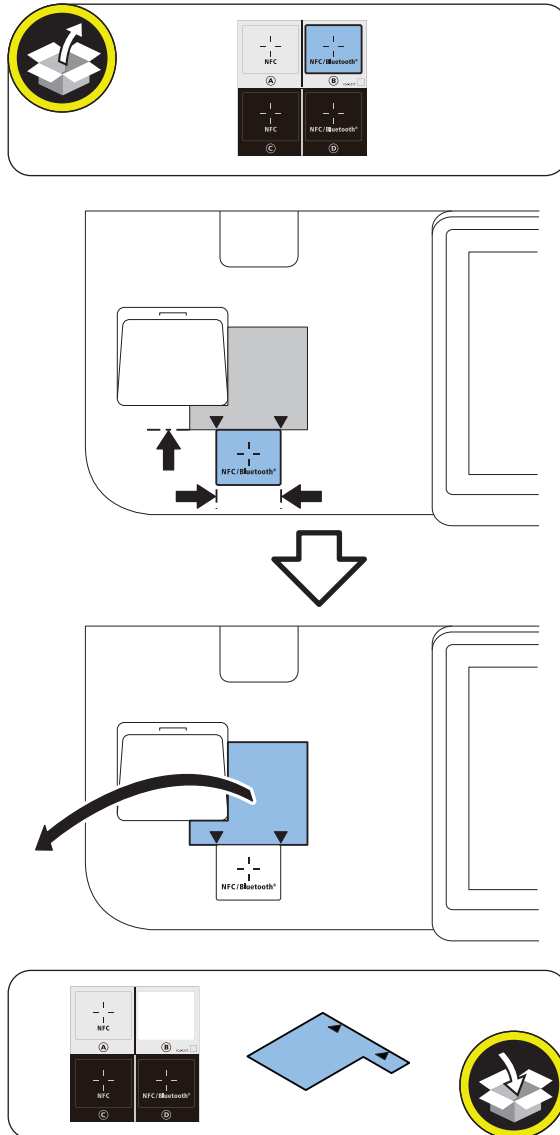
< When installing with the NFC Kit >



< When installing with the Connection Kit-A2 for Bluetooth LE at the same time >

**NOTE:**

If "Bluetooth" Label is already affixed there, remove the label and wipe off the glue with alcohol.



## ■ Setting after Installation



1. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the outlet.
2. Turn ON the main power switch.
3. Enter service mode and set the value to "1".  
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > NFC-USE

**NOTE:**

When [System Manager Information Settings] is set, it is required to log in as a system manager in accordance with instructions of the user administrator.

4. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [Device Management] > [Use NFC Card Emulation], and set the item to "ON".
5. Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.

6. When a message prompting the version update is displayed, press [Update] and automatically update the version of this equipment.

**CAUTION:**

It may take time to display the update screen. (Approx. 1 to 2 min.) During this time, do not operate the screen.

7. Check the end of the following service mode.

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION > PANEL

- If the end is an even number (e.g. 01.26): NFC is not installed.
- If the end is an odd number (e.g. 01.27): NFC is installed.

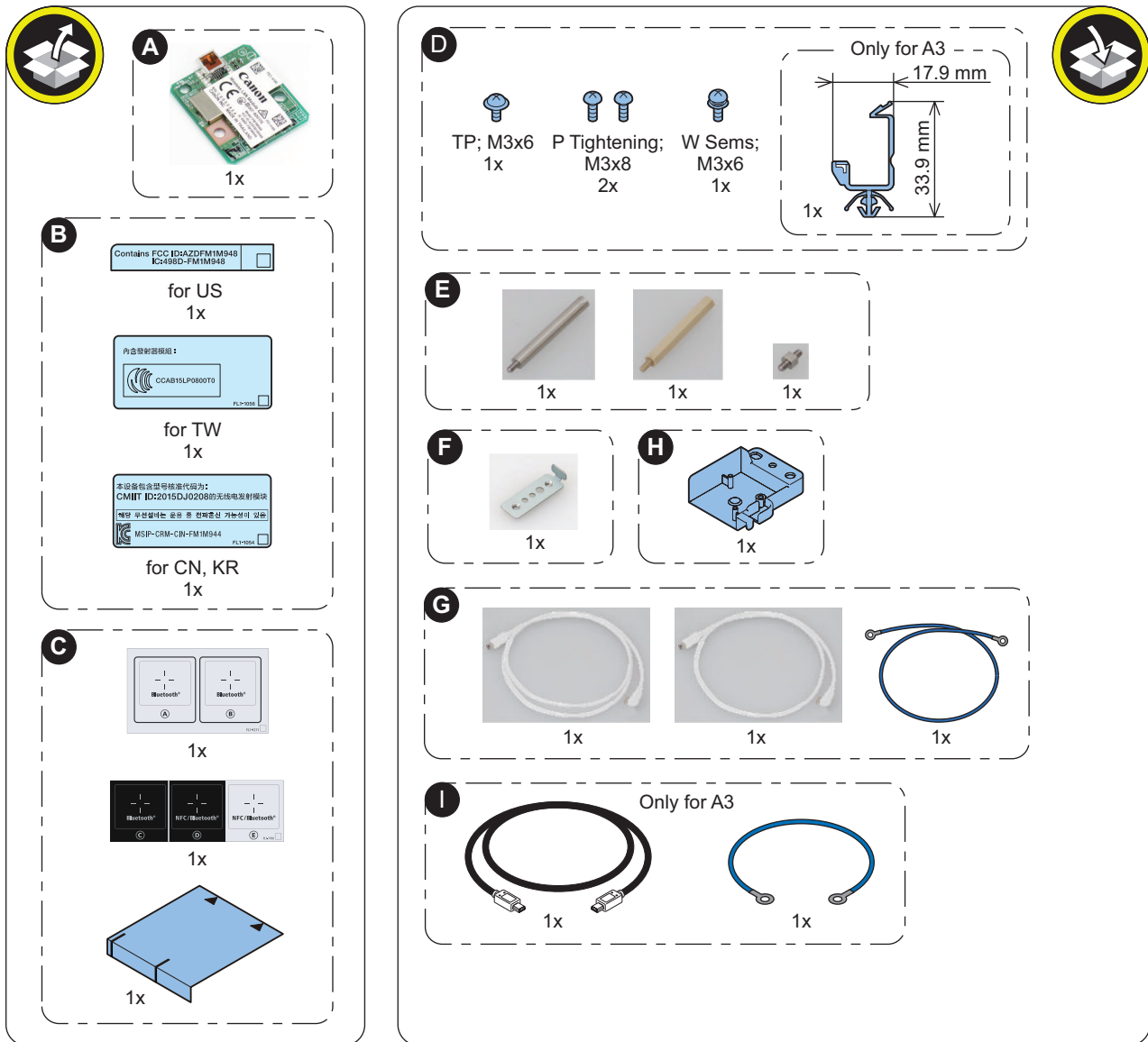


## Connection Kit-A2/A3 for Bluetooth LE

### Points to Note before Installation

The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

### Checking the Contents



### Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

#### ⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

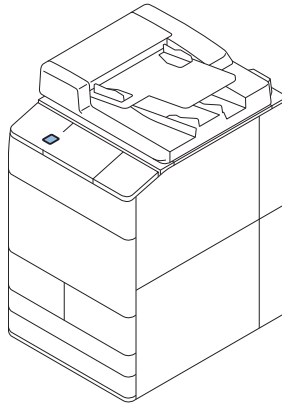
- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

## ● Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.  
If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

## ● Installation Outline Drawing

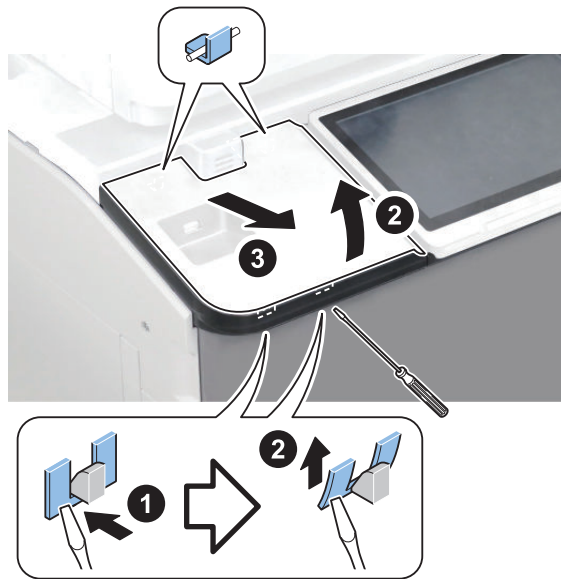


## ● Installation Procedure

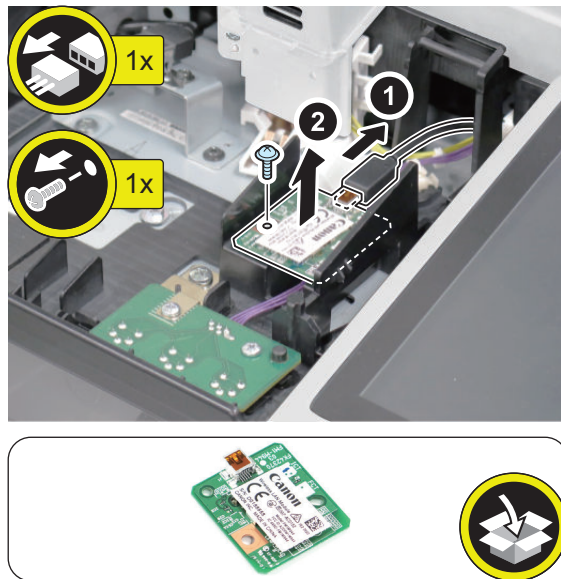
**1.**



□  
2.



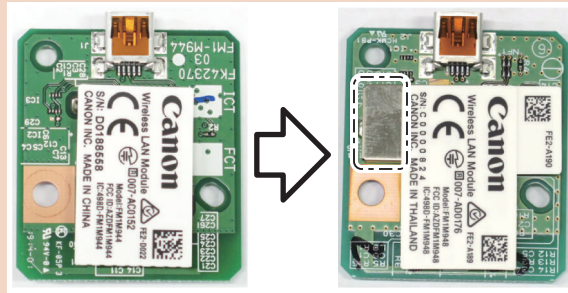
□  
3.

**NOTE:**

The removed screw will be used in a next step.

**CAUTION:**

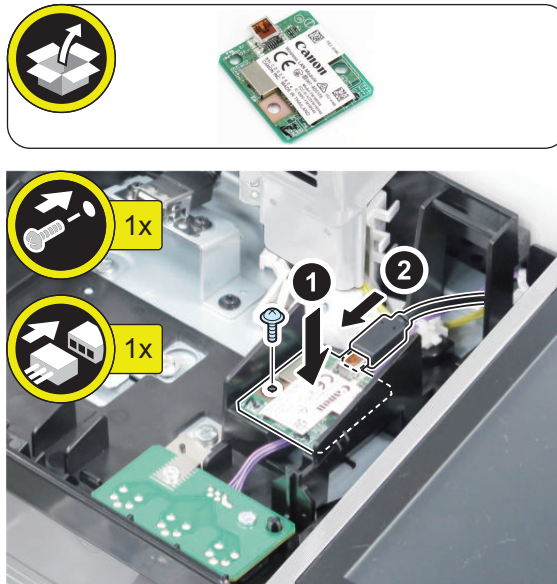
Replace the removed Wi-Fi PCB with the optional Bluetooth PCB. Be sure to mount the correct one.



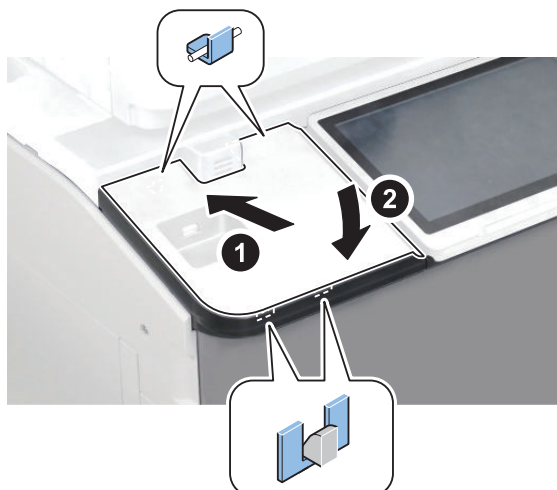
□  
**4.**

**NOTE:**

Use the screw removed in the previous step.



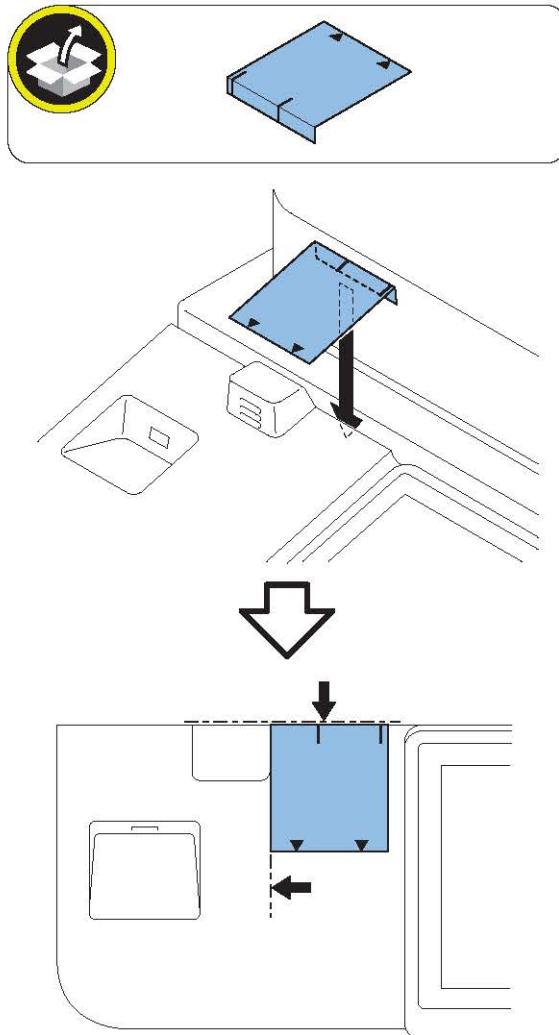
□  
**5.**



□  
**6.**

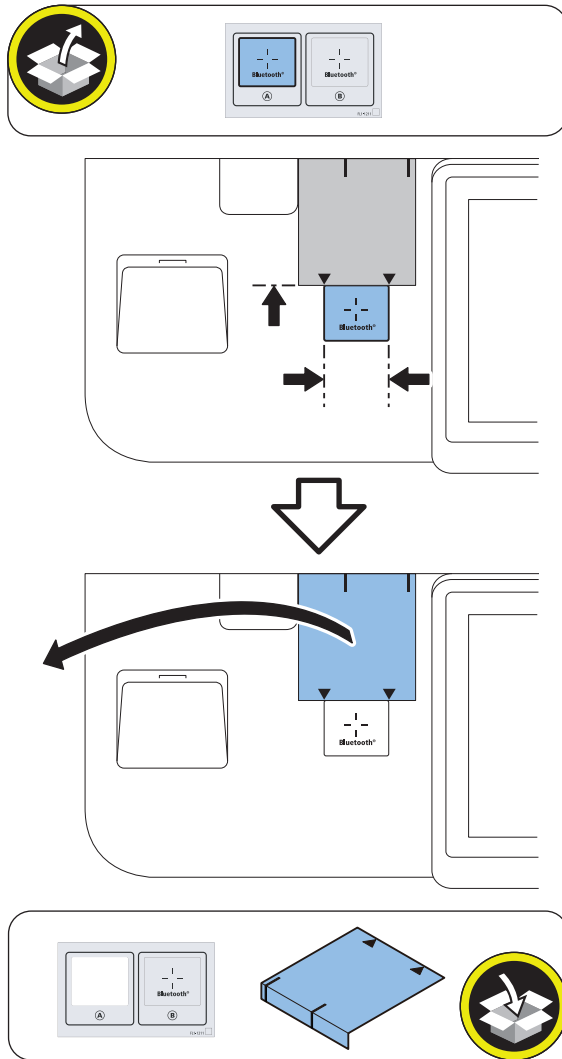


□  
**7.**



□  
**8.**

< When installing with the Connection Kit-A2 for Bluetooth LE >

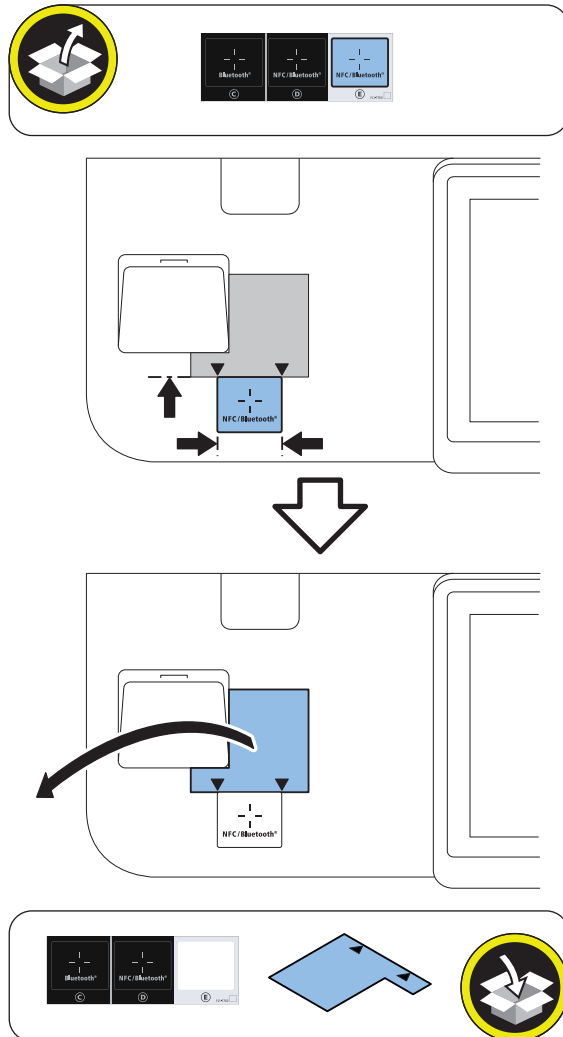


## &lt; When installing with the NFC Kit at the same time &gt;

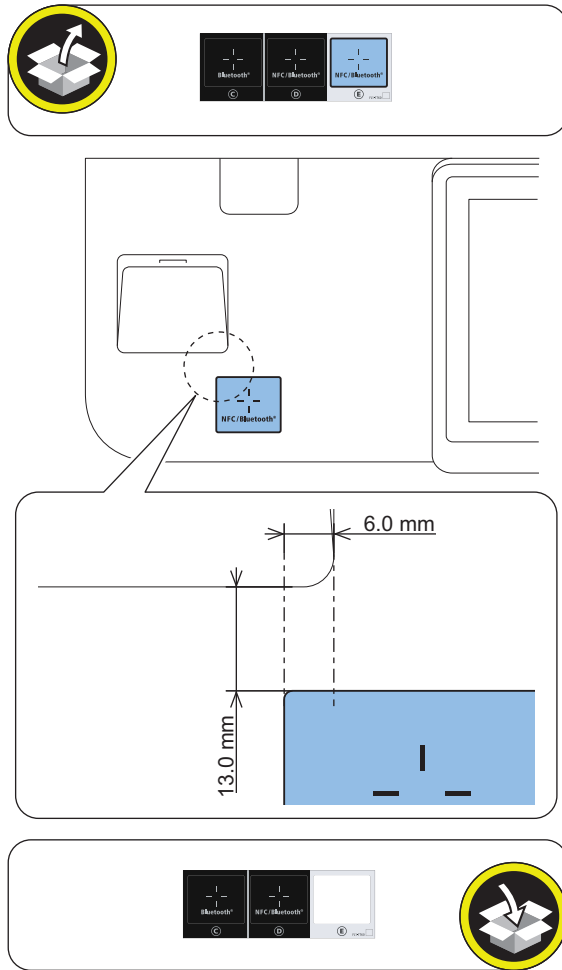
**NOTE:**

If "Bluetooth" Label is already affixed there, remove the label and wipe off the glue with alcohol before affixing the new label.

- When the Target Sheet for the NFC Kit is available



- When the Target Sheet for the NFC Kit is not available





## ■ Affixing the Wireless LAN Approval Label

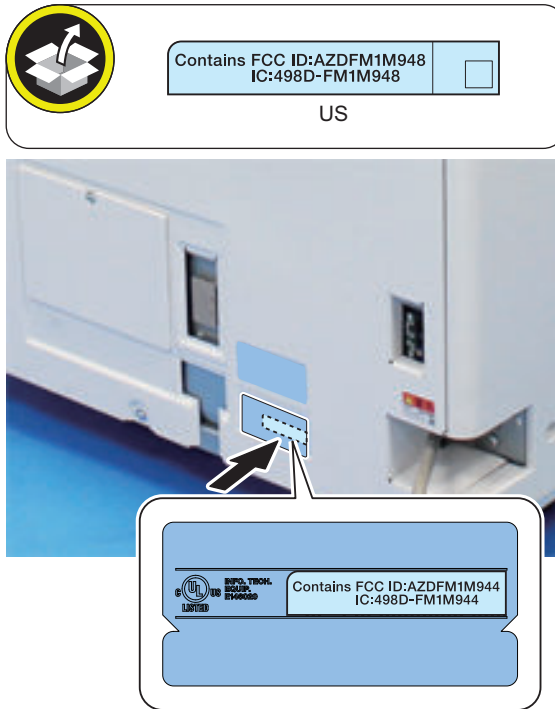
□  
1.

**NOTE:**

In countries other than the following countries, it is not necessary to affix the Approval Label.

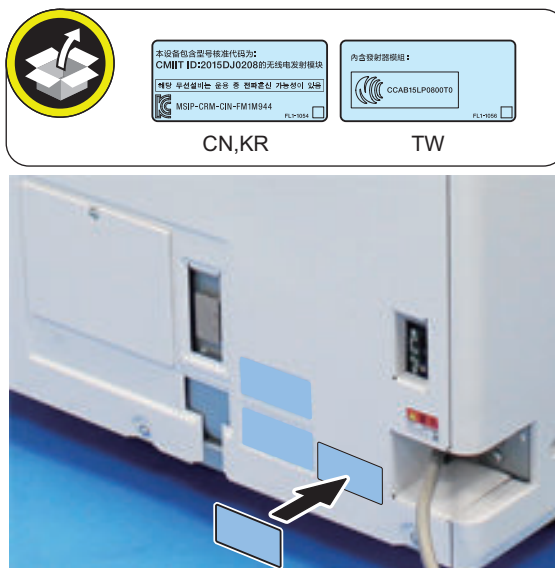
**< For US >**

Affix it over the number on the Wireless LAN Approval Label.



**< For CN, KR, and TW >**

Affix it over the Wireless LAN Approval Label.



## Setting after Installation



1. **Connect the power plug of the host machine to the outlet.**
2. **Turn ON the main power switch.**
3. **In the following Service Mode, set the value to "1."**  
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > BLE-USE

**NOTE:**

When [System Manager Information Settings] is set, it is required to log in as a system manager in accordance with instructions of the user administrator.

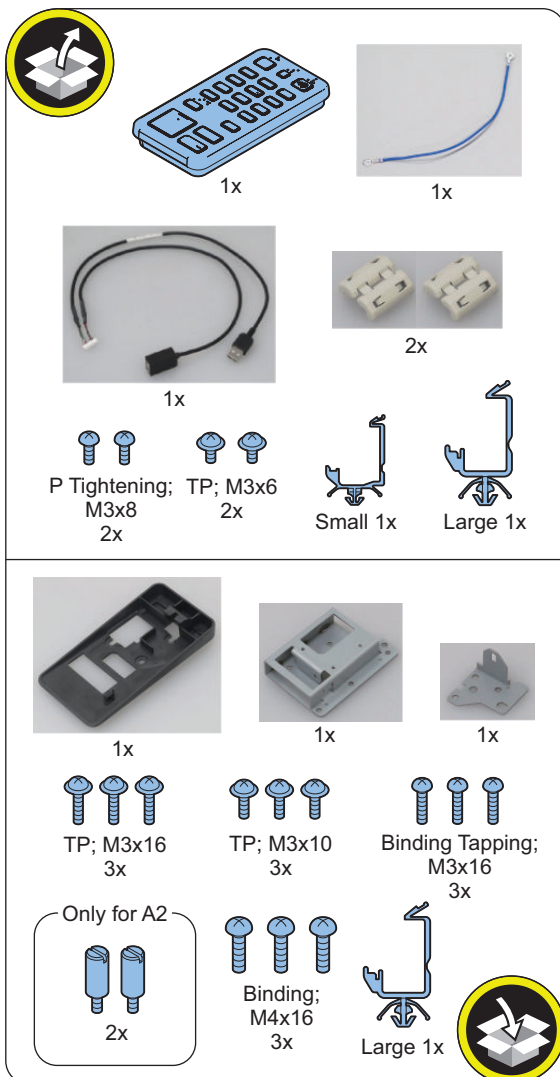
4. **Select [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [Confirm Network Connection Setting Changes], and set the item [ON].**
5. **Select [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [Bluetooth Settings] > [Use Bluetooth] > [ON].**
6. **The message "Perform Apply Setting Changes from Settings/Registration" appears in the Touch Panel Display.**
7. **Perform "Apply Setting Changes."**  
Press [Settings/Registration] > [Yes].

## Numeric Keypad-A1/A2

### Points to Note before Installation

- When installing the Numeric Keypad and the IC Card Reader at the same time, be sure to install the Numeric Keypad first.
- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

### Checking the Contents



### Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

#### **WARNING:**

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

### Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

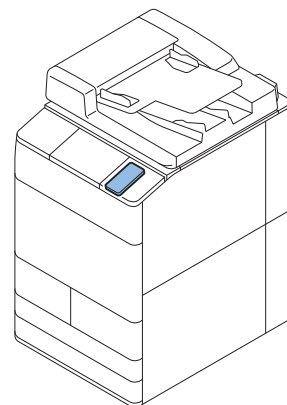
The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

### Installation Outline Drawing

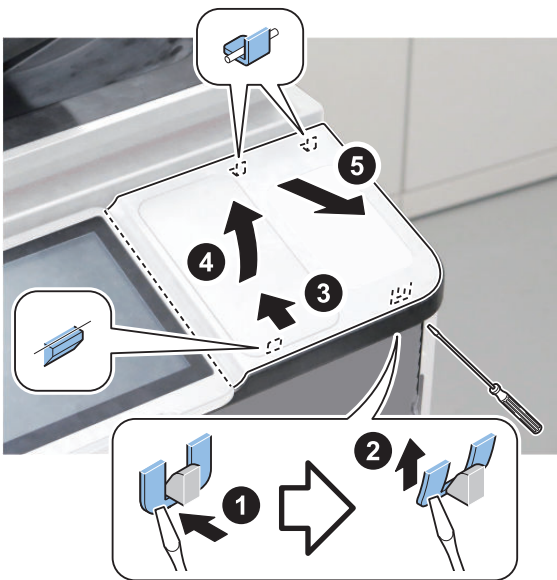


# Installation Procedure

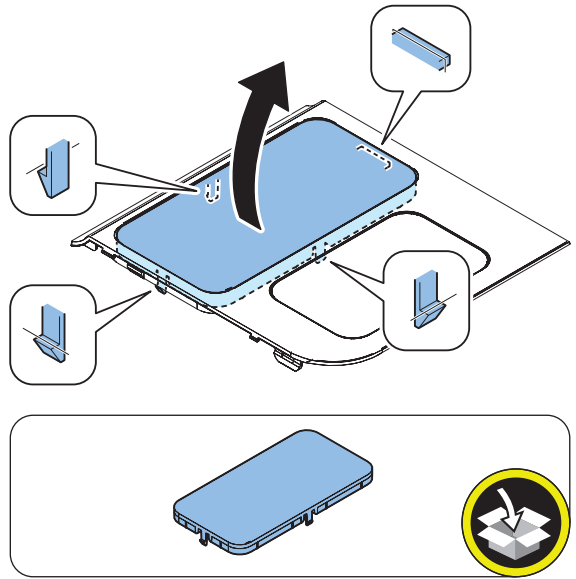
1.



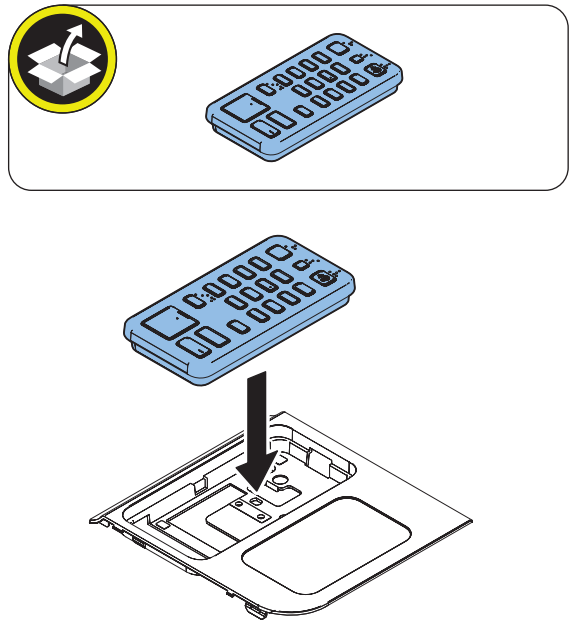
2.



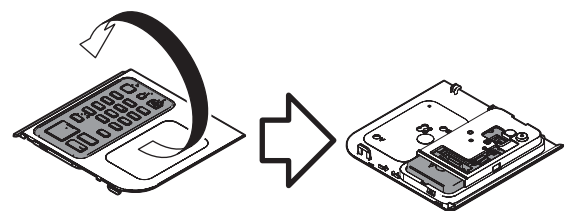
3.



4.



5.



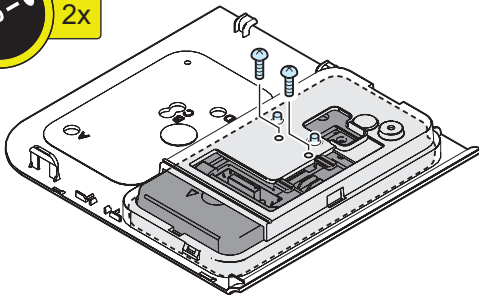
□  
6.

**CAUTION:**

Be sure to check that the 2 bosses are fitted securely. Installing the Control Panel Right Upper Cover while the bosses are not fitted securely will cause rattling.



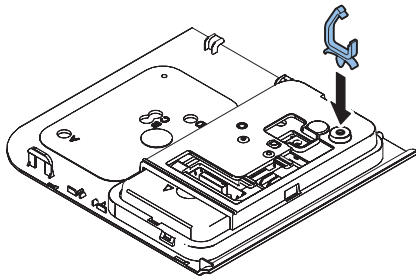
P Tightening; M3x8



□  
7.



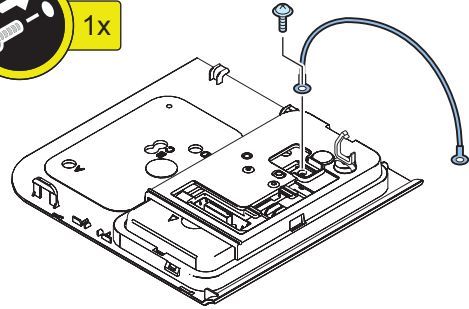
Small



□  
8.



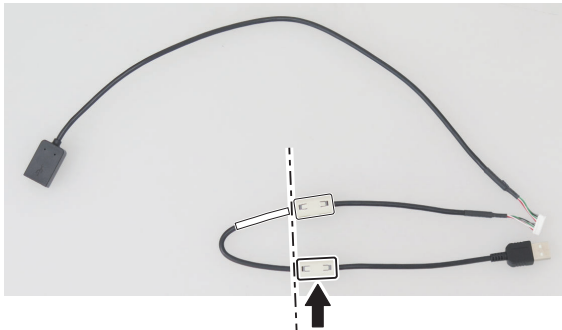
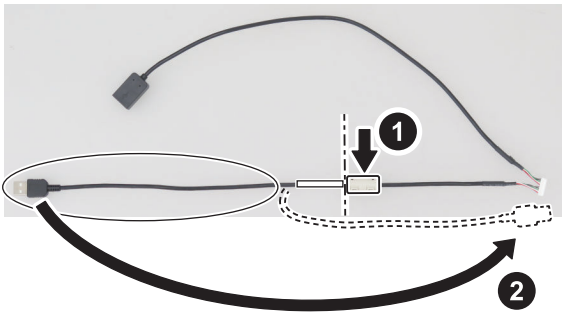
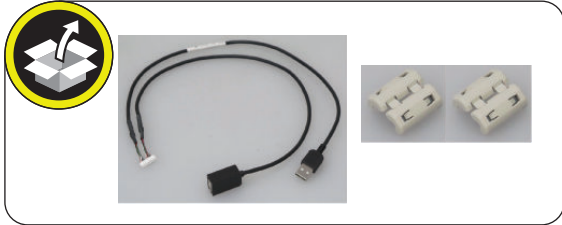
TP; M3x6



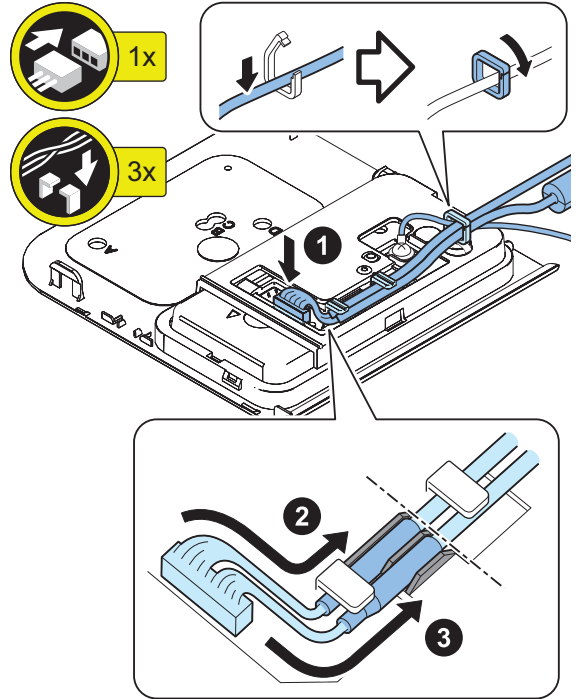
9.

**NOTE:**

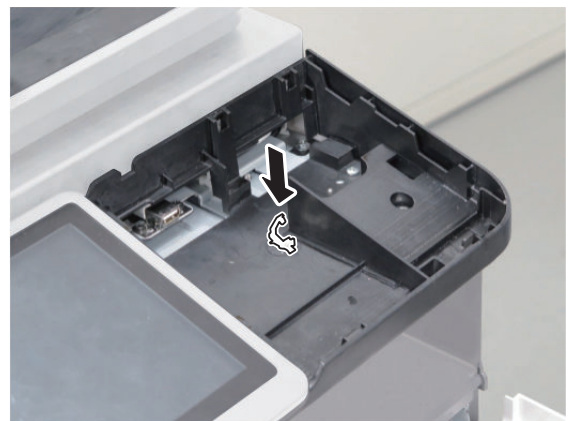
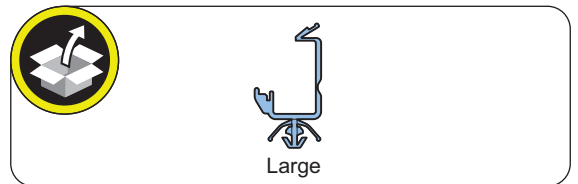
Attach the first core along with the white tape affixed to the Numeric Keypad cable. Fold the cable as shown in the figure, and attach the second core in a line-symmetric position with respect to the core attached first.



10.

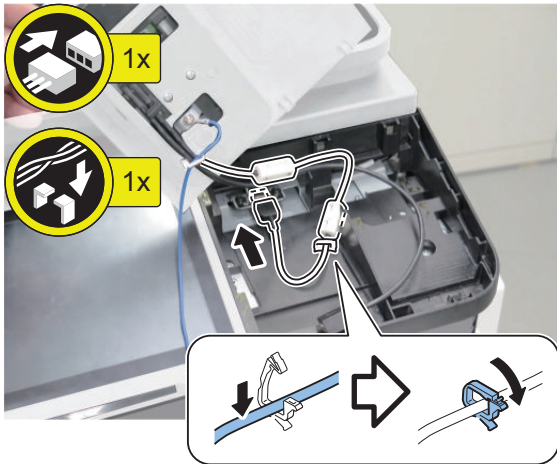


11.





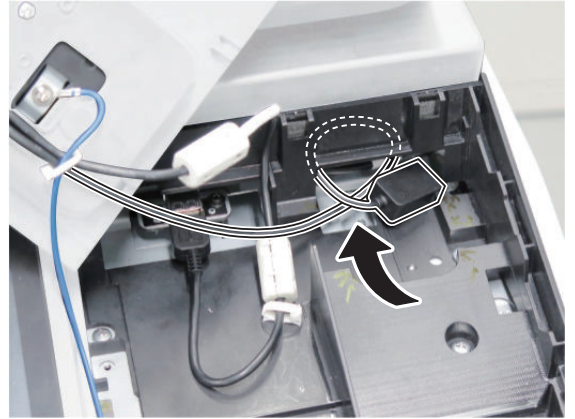
□  
12.



□  
13.

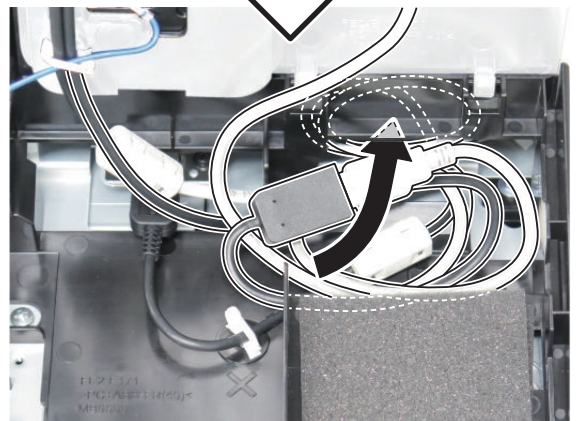
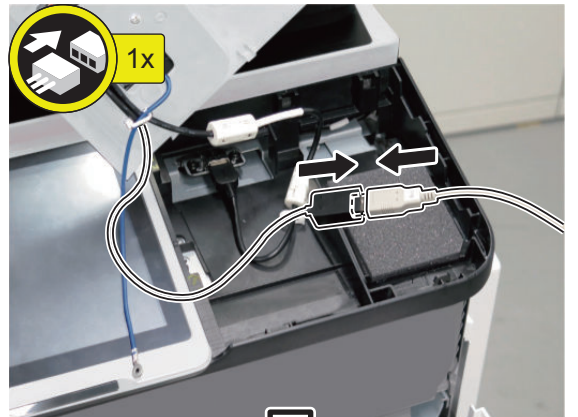
< When installing the Numeric Keypad only >

**NOTE:**  
Store the excess length of the cable in the position as shown in the figure.

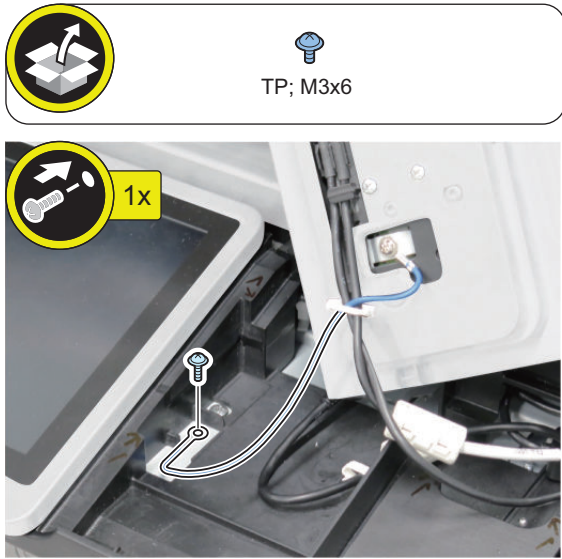


< When installing with the IC Card Reader at the same time >

**NOTE:**  
Store the excess length of the cable in the position as shown in the figure.



□  
14.



□  
16.



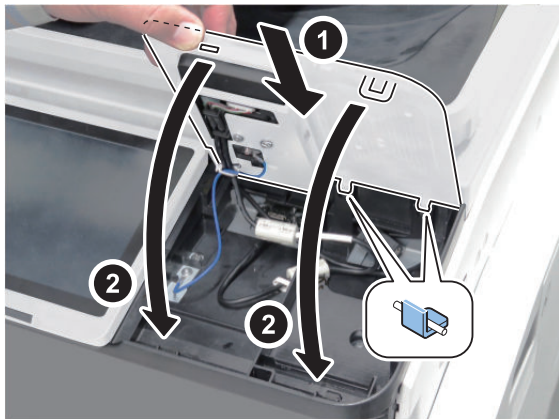
□  
15.

**CAUTION:**  
Place the Core in the position as shown in the figure.



□  
17. Connect the power plug to the outlet.

18. Turn ON the main power switch.



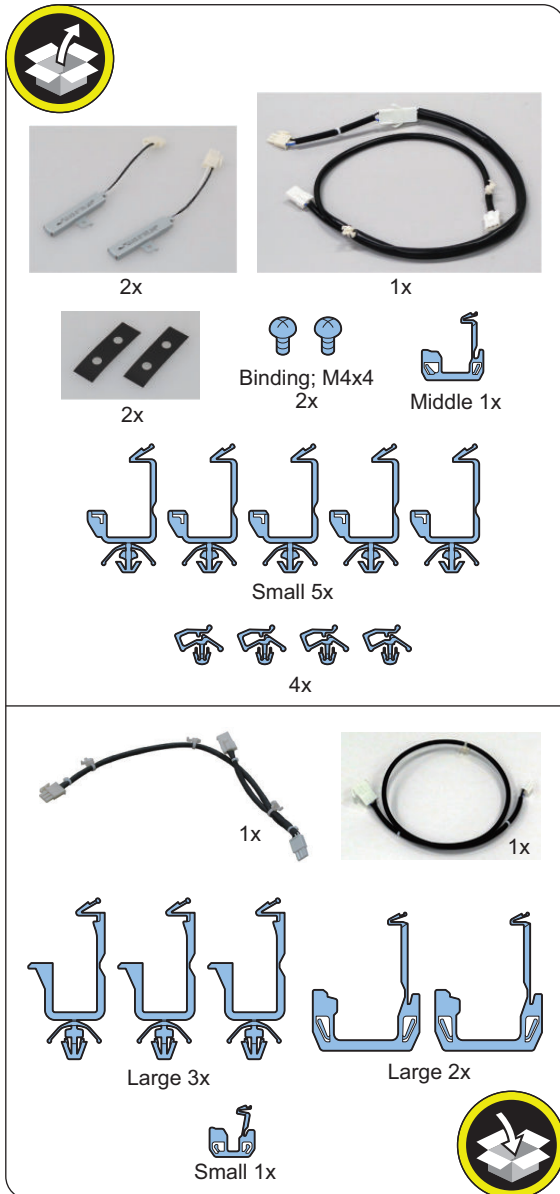


## Reader Heater-P1

### Points to Note before Installation

The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

### Checking the Contents



### Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

#### **WARNING:**

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

### Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

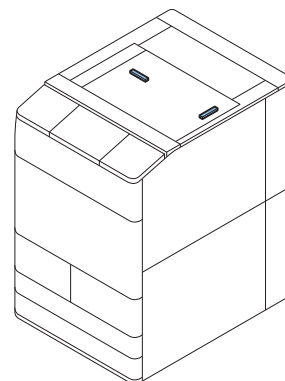
The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

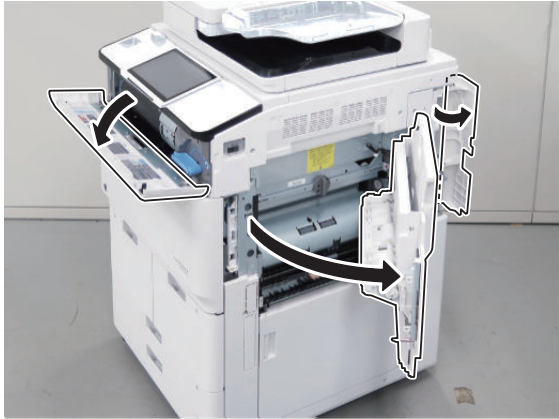
### Installation Outline Drawing



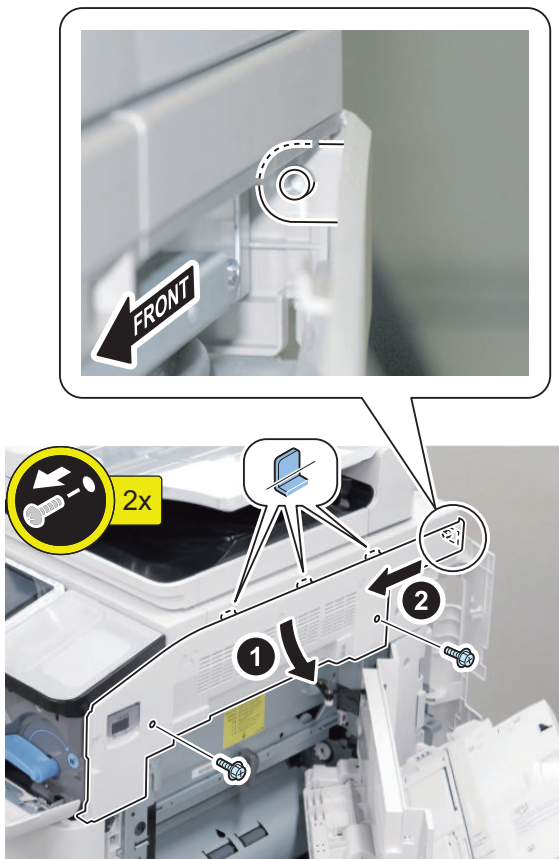
# Installation Procedure

## ■ Installing the Covers

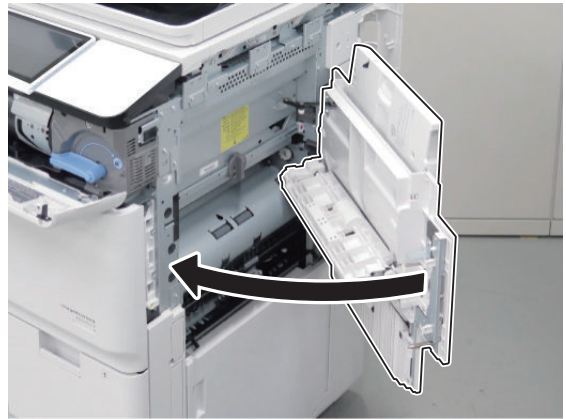
1.



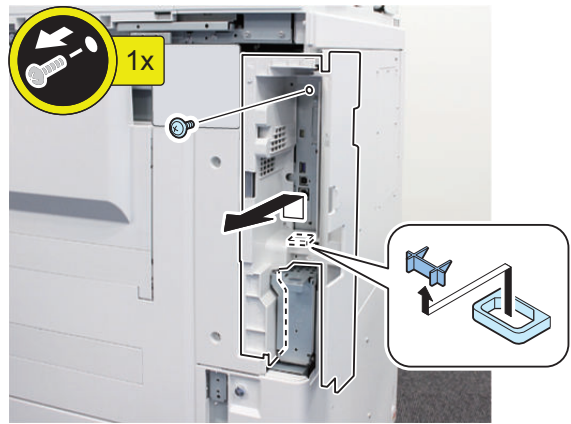
2.



3.

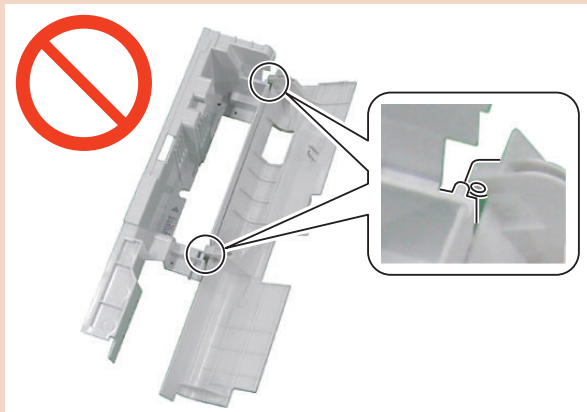


4.

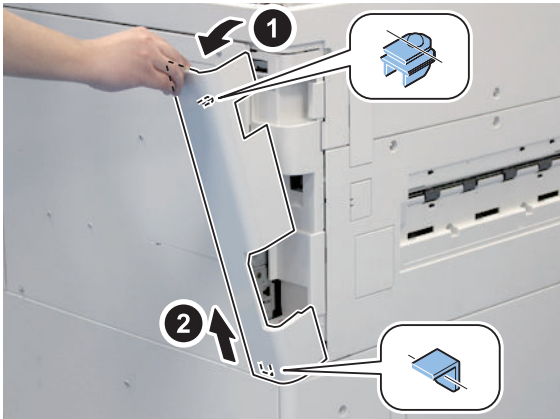


**CAUTION:**

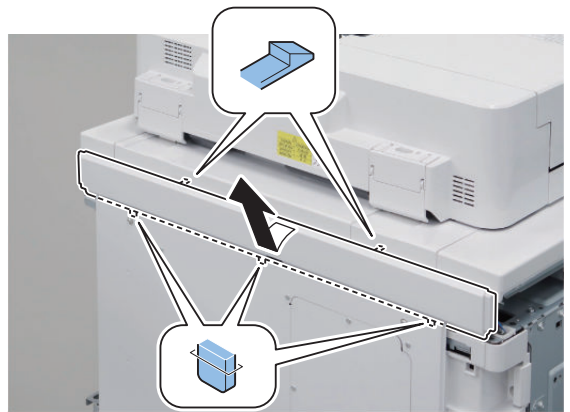
When installing the Left Upper Cover, be careful not to secure it while it is being slid fully toward the front. Otherwise, the Left Upper Cover may interfere with the Toner Replacement Cover and the magnet cannot work.



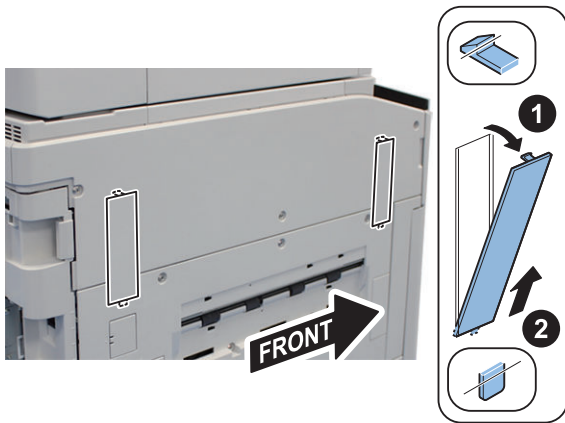
□  
5.



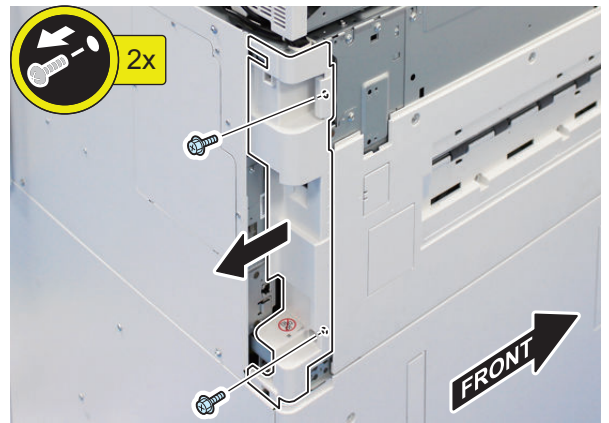
□  
8.



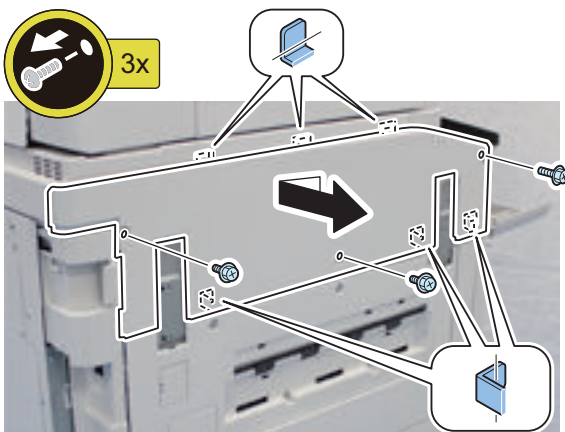
□  
6.



□  
9.

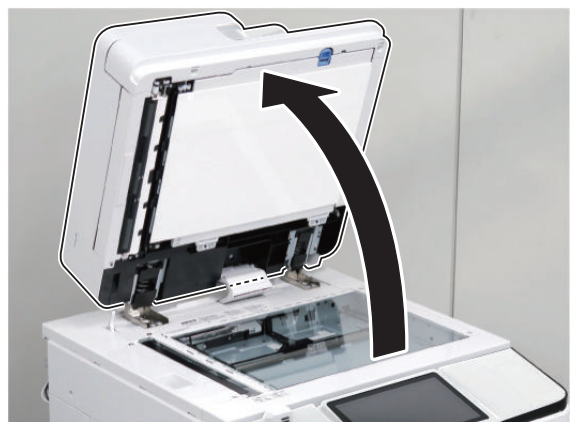


□  
7.



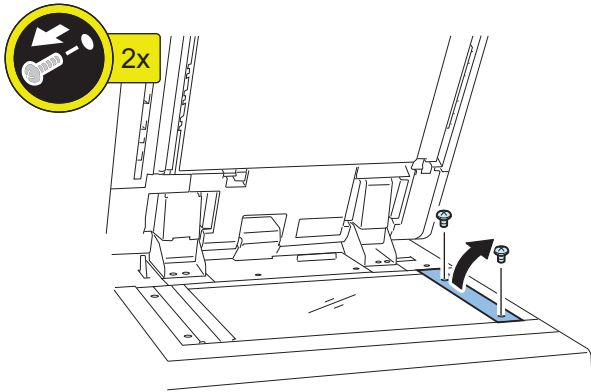
■ Installing the Reader Heater

□  
1.





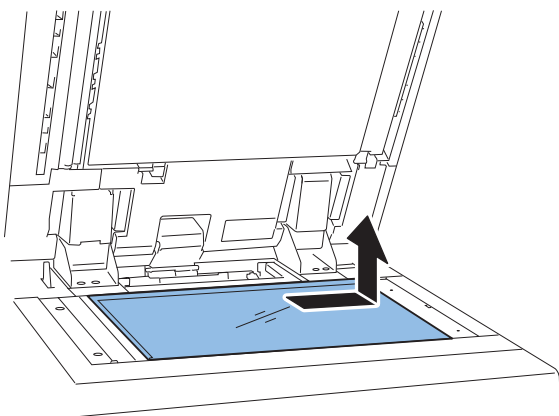
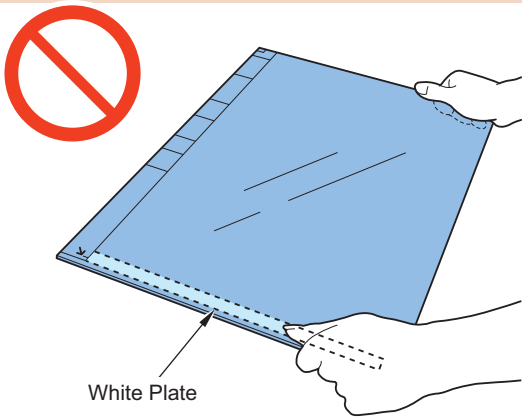
□  
2.



□  
3.

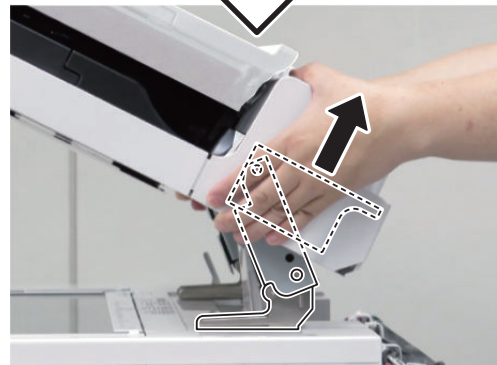
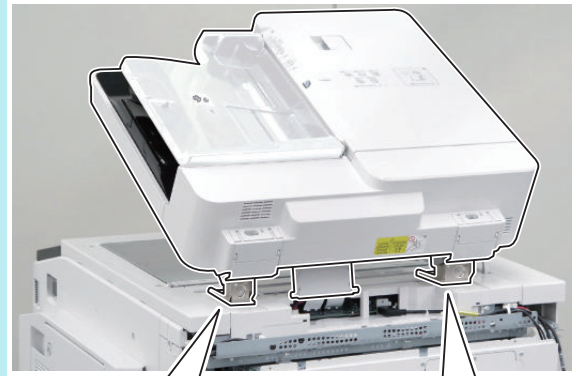
**CAUTION:**

- Soiling on the glass surface and the White Plate affects reading. When removing or installing the Copyboard Glass, be sure not to touch the glass surface and the White Plate.
- If soiling is attached, clean it with lint-free paper.

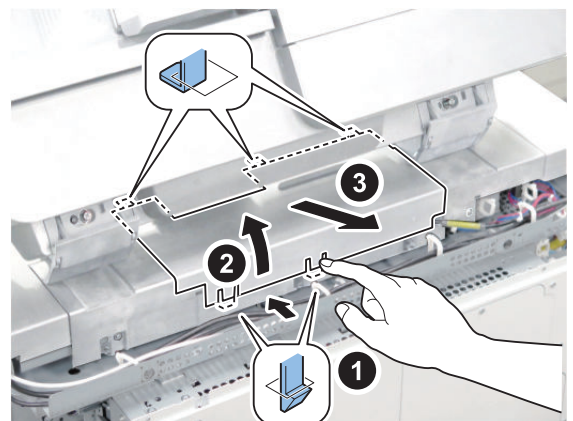


**NOTE:**

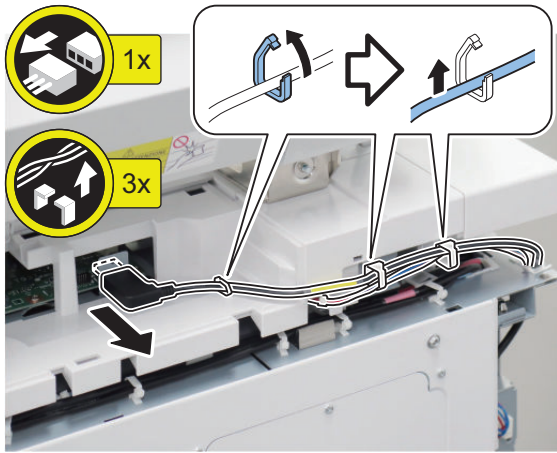
When performing following procedures, using ADF in the book mode as necessary makes the work easy. The book mode is released by opening the ADF.



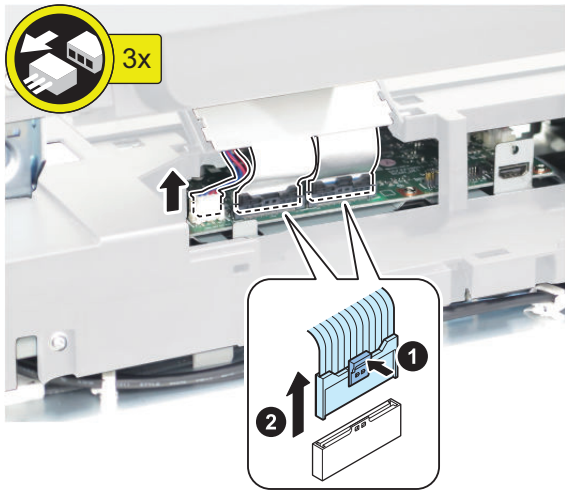
□  
4.



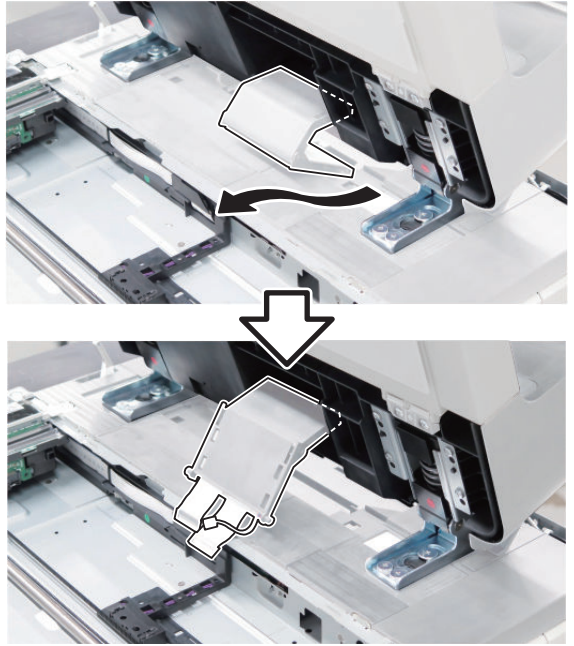
5.



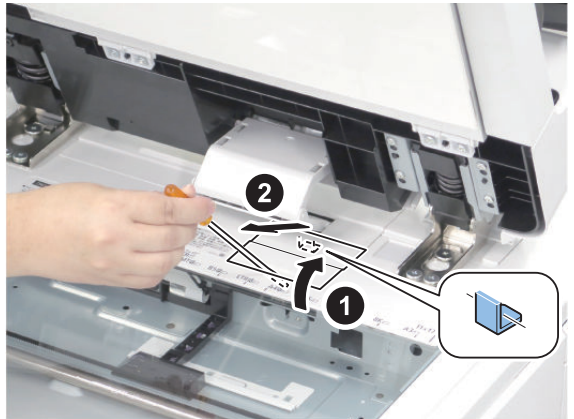
6.



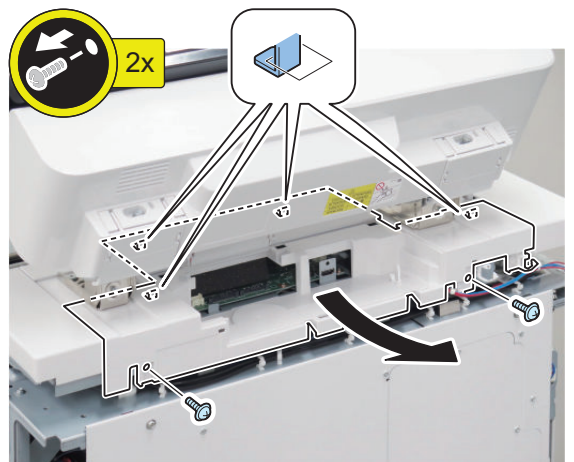
7.



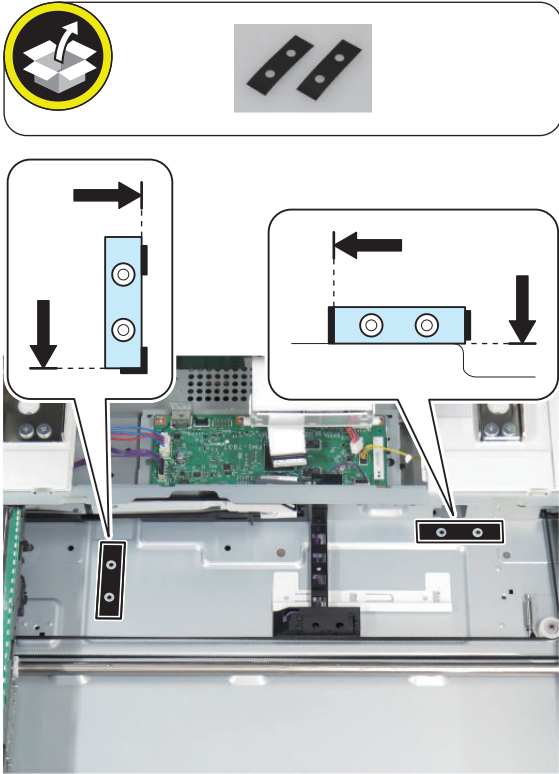
8.



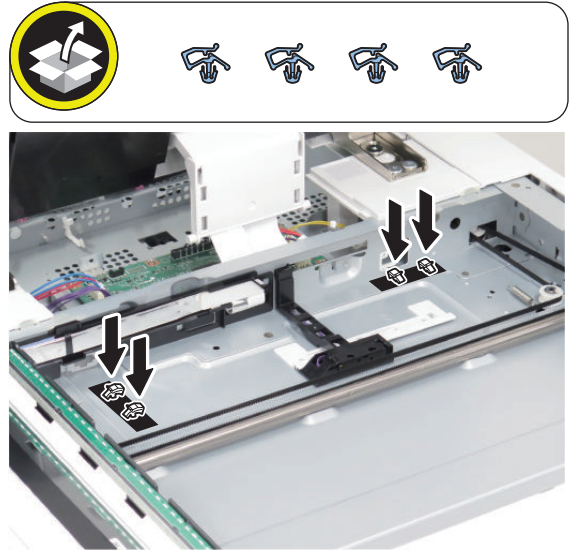
9.



10.



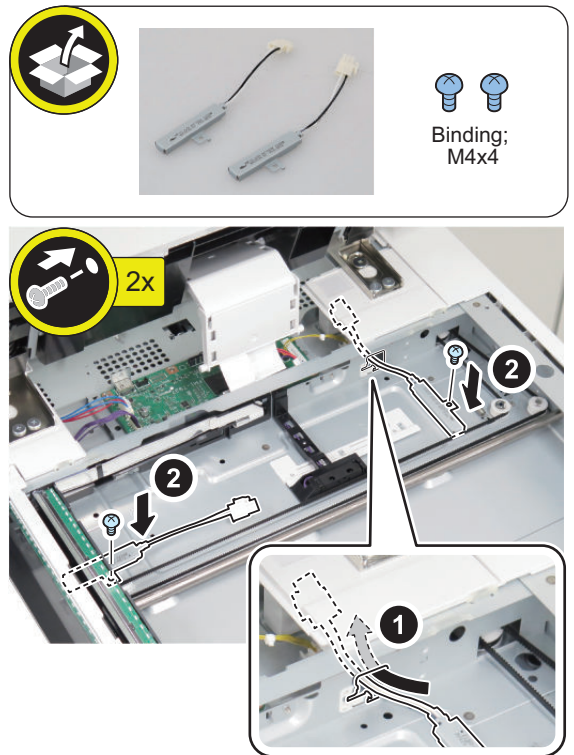
12.



11.

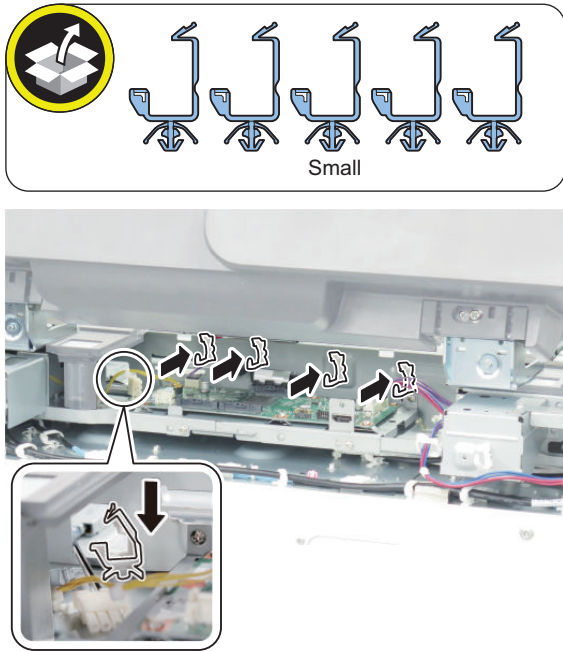


13.

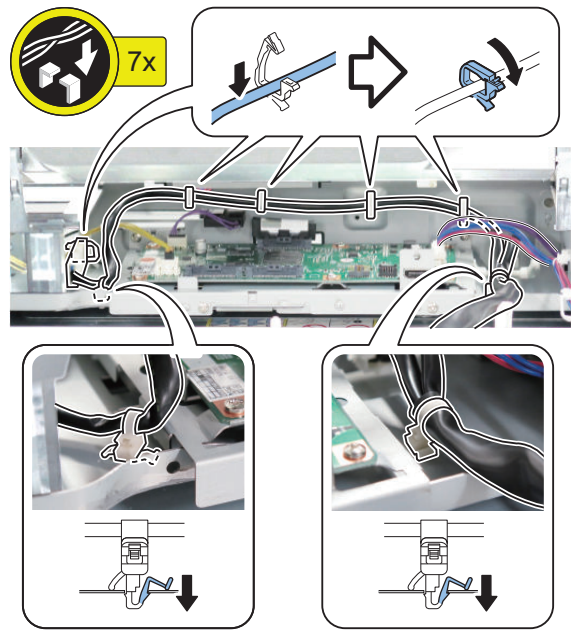




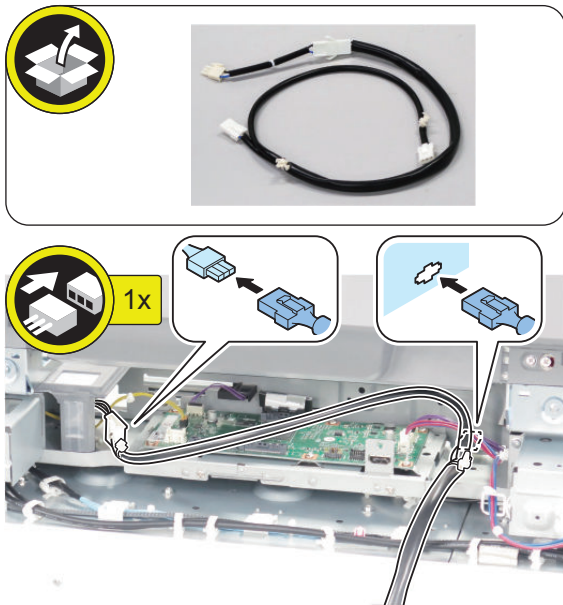
14.



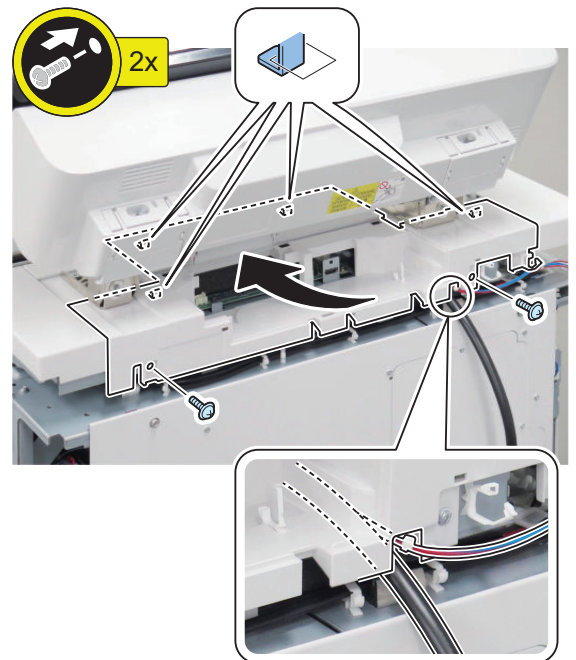
16.



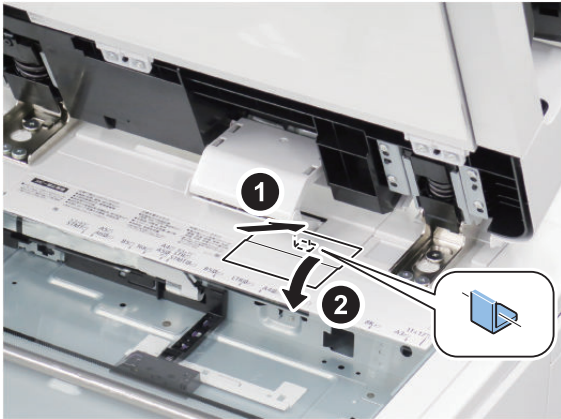
15.



17.



□  
18.

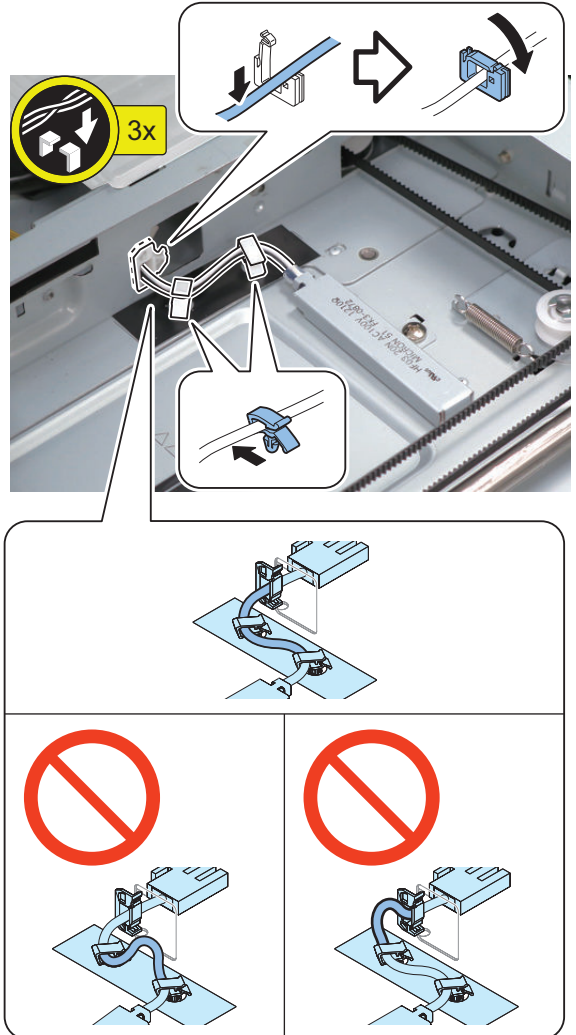
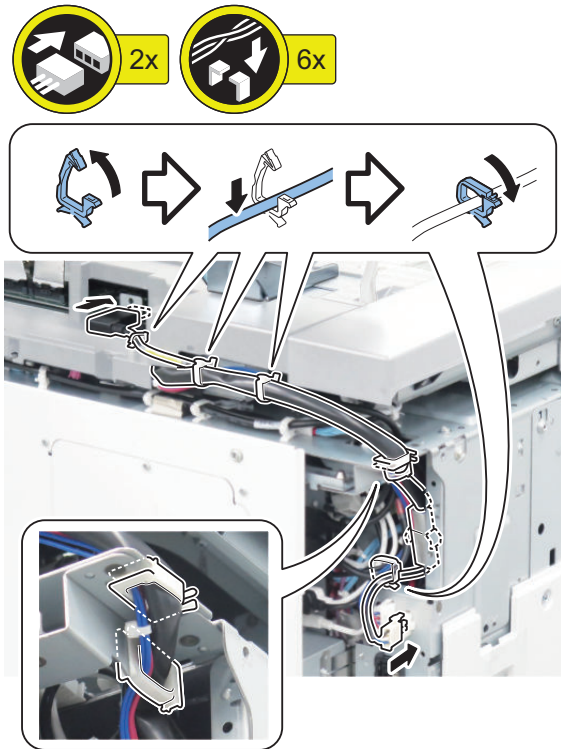


□  
20.

**CAUTION:**

Be sure to hold down the Reader Heater Harness because it may interfere with moving of the Scanner Box if it is not connected properly.

□  
19.

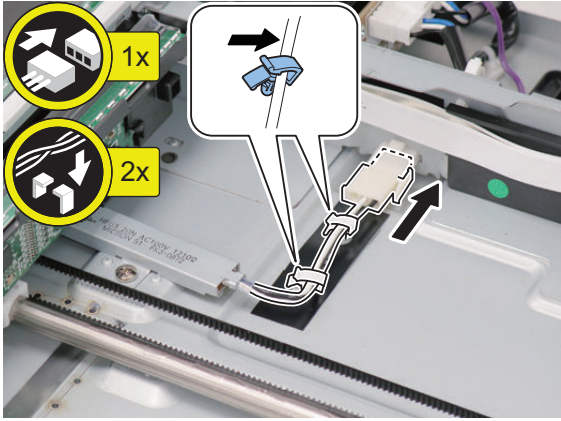




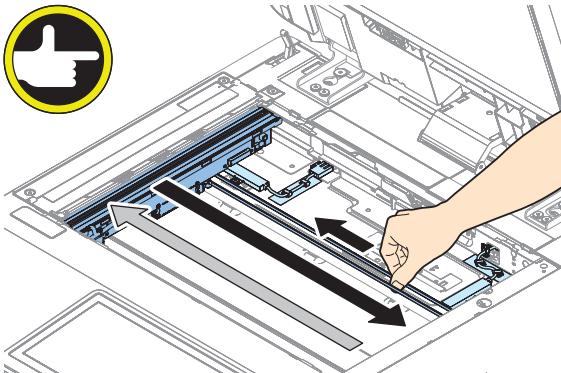
21.

**CAUTION:**

Be sure to hold down the Reader Heater Harness because it may interfere with moving of the Scanner Box if it is not connected properly.

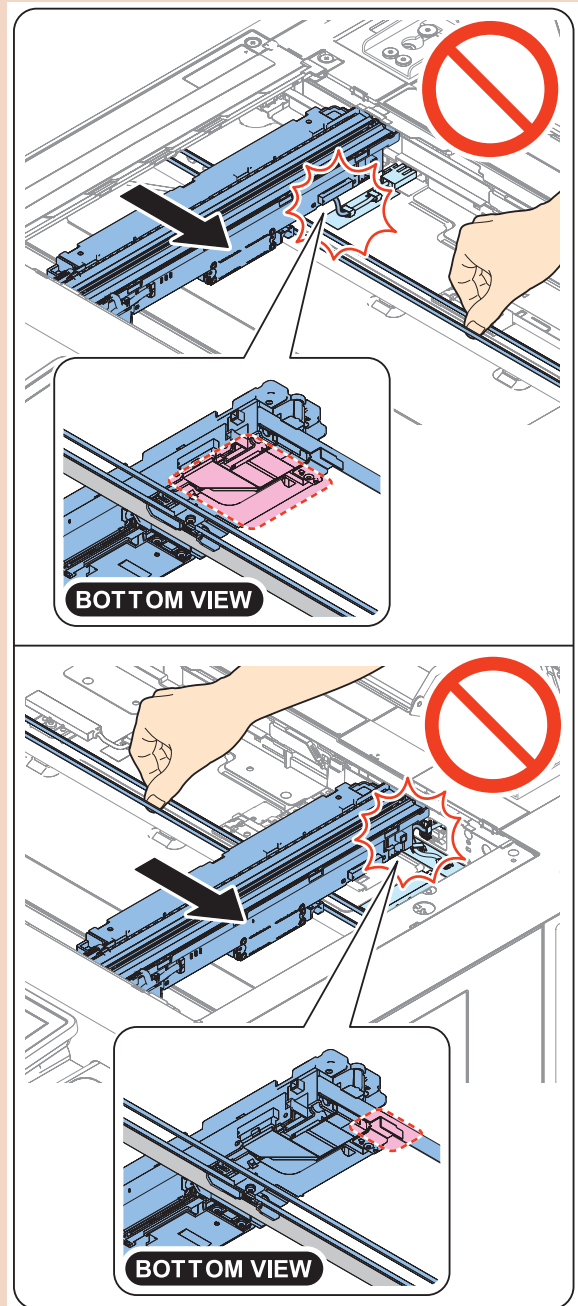


22.

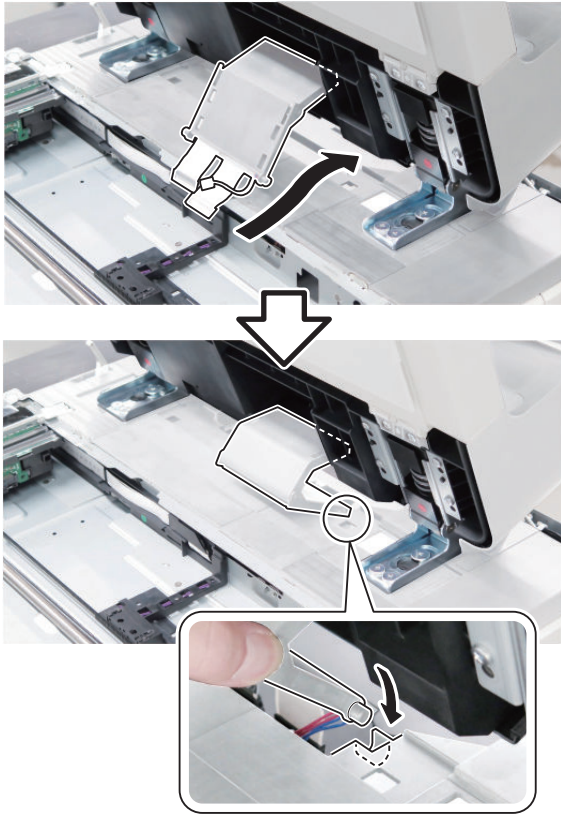


**CAUTION:**

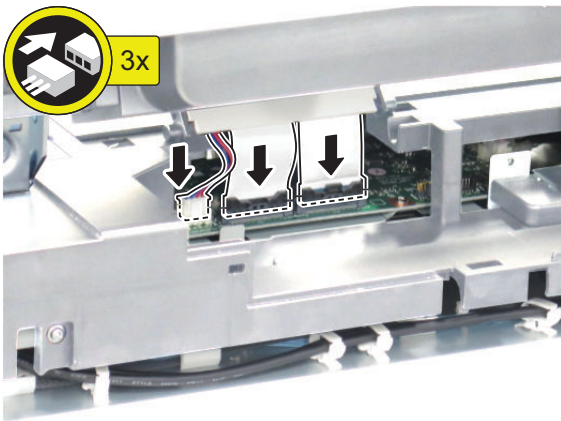
Move the Scanner Box to the right edge, and check if the underside of the Scanner Box and the HP Sensor Flag Plate do not interfere with the Reader Heater harness.



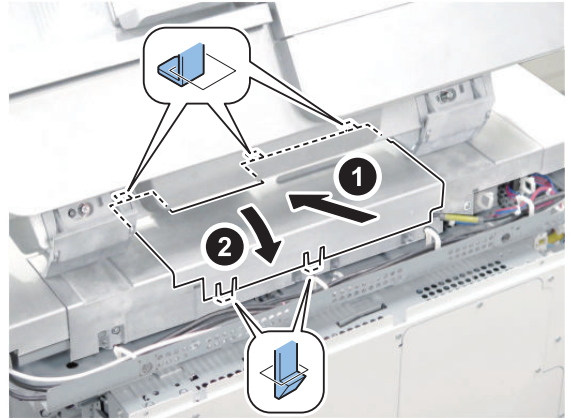
□  
23.



□  
24.



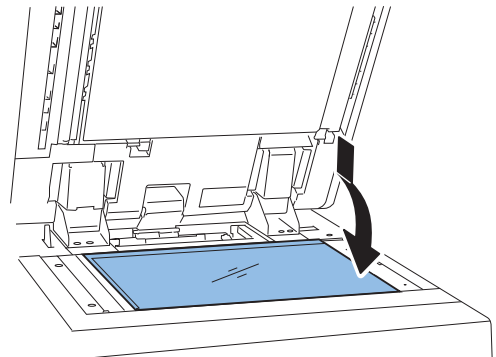
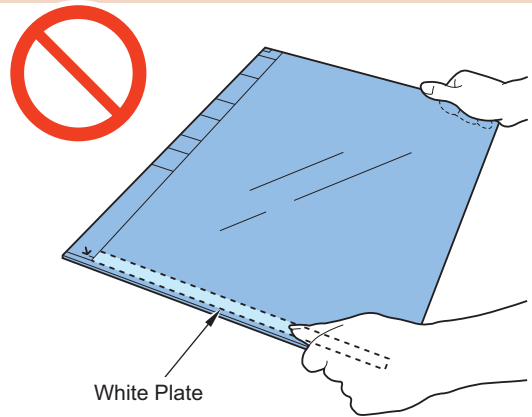
□  
25.



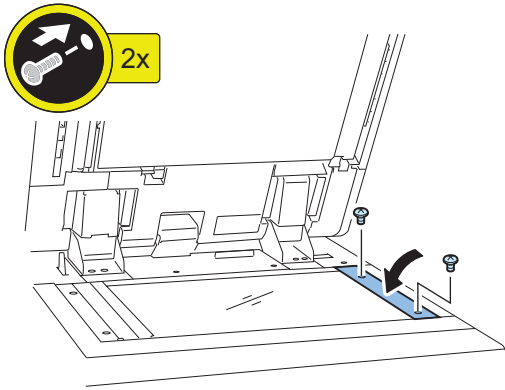
□  
26.

**CAUTION:**

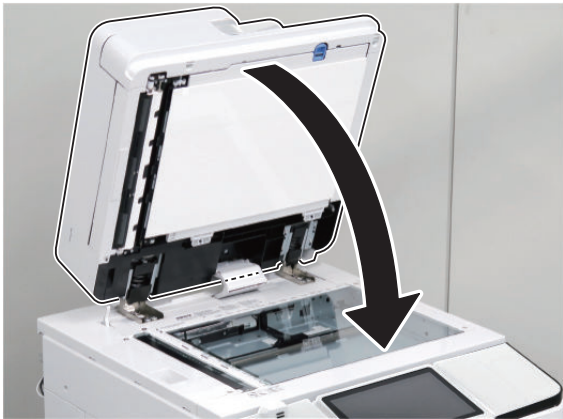
- Soiling on the glass surface and the White Plate affects reading. When removing or installing the Copyboard Glass, be sure not to touch the glass surface and the White Plate.
- If soiling is attached, clean it with lint-free paper.



□  
27.

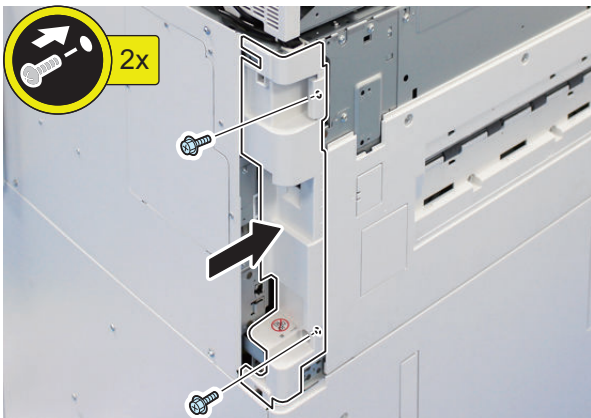


□  
28.

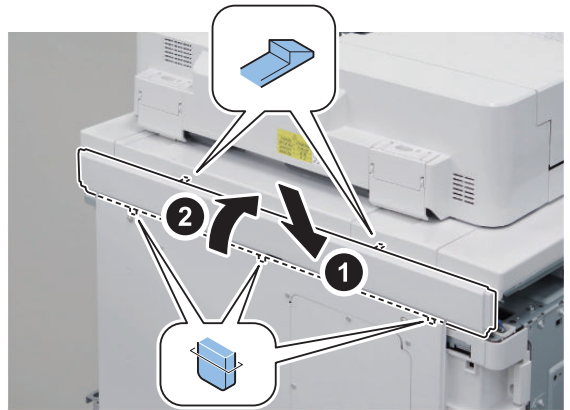


■ Installing the Covers

□  
1.

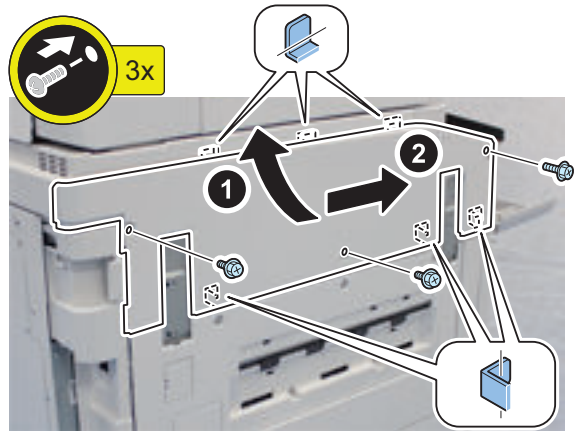


□  
2.

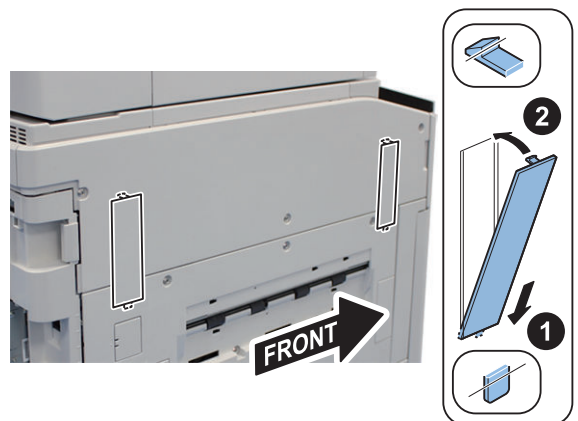


□  
3.

**CAUTION:**  
When installing the Left Upper Cover, be careful not to secure it while it is being slid fully toward the front. Otherwise, the Left Upper Cover may interfere with the Toner Replacement Cover and the magnet cannot work.

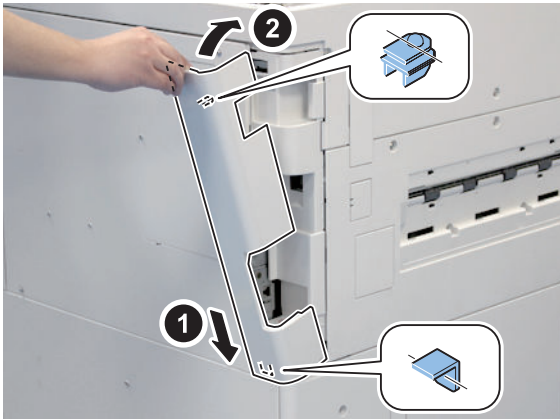


□  
4.

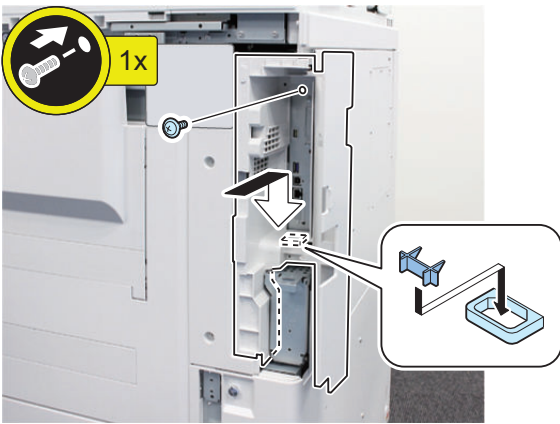




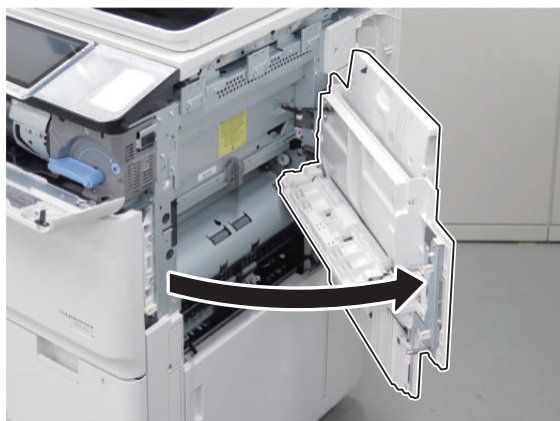
5.



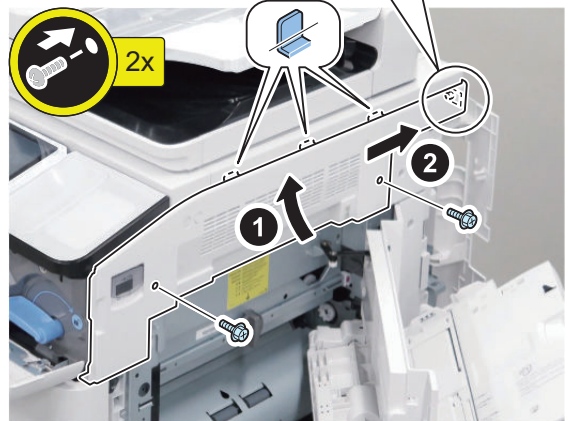
6.



7.



8.



9.



10. Turn ON the Environment Heater Switch.

11. Connect the power plug to the outlet.

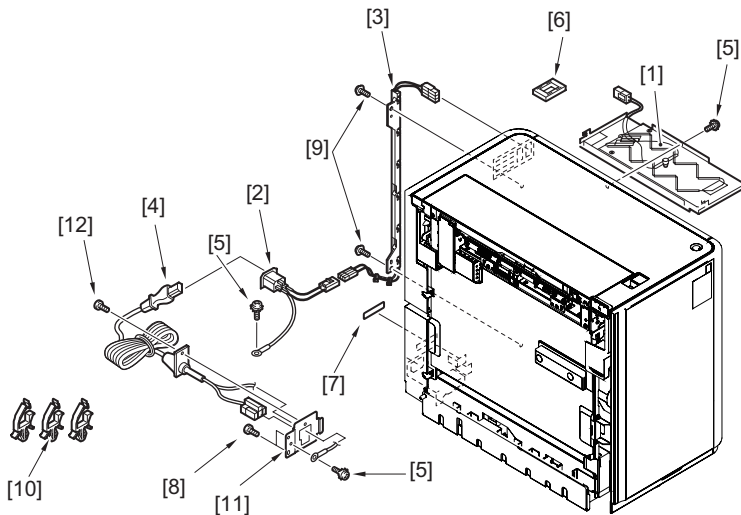
12. Turn ON the main power switch.

## Paper Deck Heater Unit-A1

### Checking the Supplied Parts

#### NOTE:

Each part of the Paper Deck Heater Unit-A1 for the Paper Deck is supplied as a service part according to the location, so prepare the following parts. Also, use the appropriate Paper Deck Heater Unit for each country.



| Item | Parts Name                     | Parts Number                       | Q'ty  |
|------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------|
| [1]  | Heater unit                    | FG6-9650 (100V)<br>FG6-9651 (230V) | 1pc.  |
| [2]  | AC input connector             | FG6-1117                           | 1pc.  |
| [3]  | Relay harness unit             | FG6-2957                           | 1pc.  |
| [4]  | AC cable                       | FK3-0630 (100V)<br>FK3-0631 (230V) | 1pc.  |
| [5]  | Screw (Toothed washer; M4x6)   | XB2-7400-607                       | 3pcs. |
| *[6] | Cable protection bushing       | WT2-5098                           | 1pc.  |
| [7]  | Power supply label             | FS6-8478 (100V)<br>FS6-8725 (230V) | 1pc.  |
| [8]  | Screw (Binding; M4x4)          | XB1-2400-409                       | 2pcs. |
| [9]  | Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8)    | XA9-0732-010                       | 2pcs. |
| [10] | Wire saddle                    | WT2-5730                           | 3pcs. |
| [11] | Cord mount                     | FC7-5473                           | 1pc.  |
| [12] | Screw with flat spring (M4x10) | XB2-8401-007                       | 1pc.  |

\*As for the change of the part number, please refer to the latest parts catalog.

\*[6] Cable protection bushing is not used for the installation.

<Others>

Including guides

### Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

#### ⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

### Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

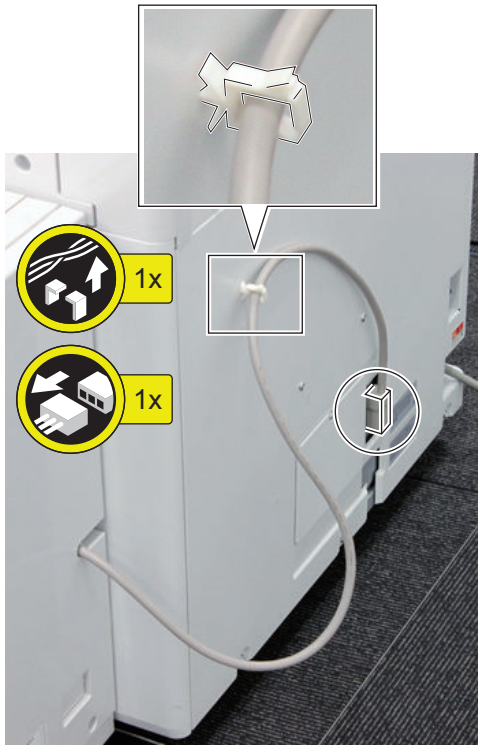
# Installation Procedure

## Preparation of the Paper Deck

□

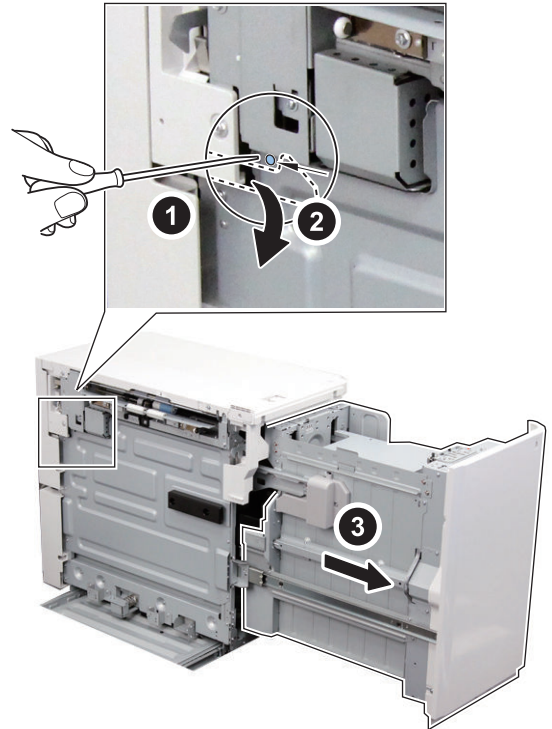
1. Remove the lattice connector from the host machine.

- 1 Wire saddle
- 1 Connector



□

2. Insert screwdrivers into the hole at rear left side of the compartment and then release the lever to open it.



□

3. Remove the right cover.

- 5 Screws

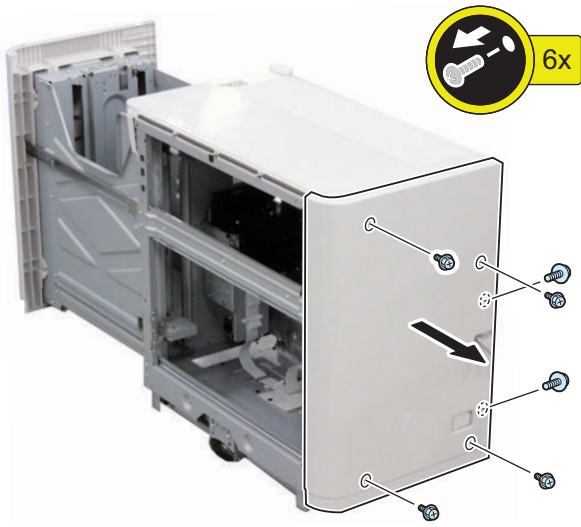






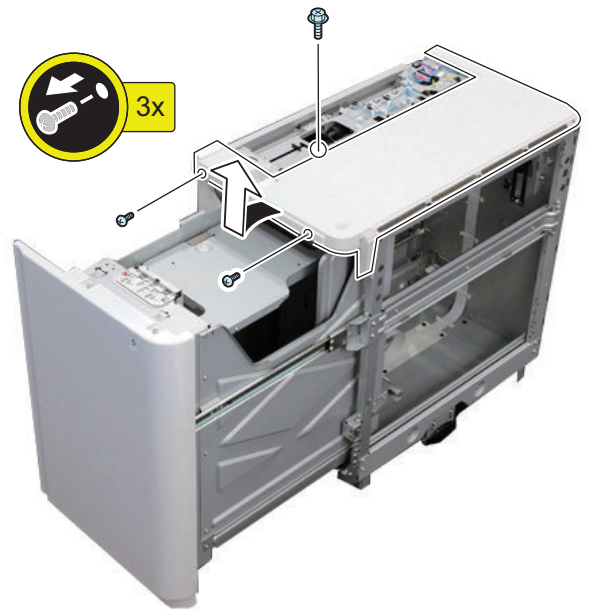
**4. Remove the rear cover.**

- 6 Screws

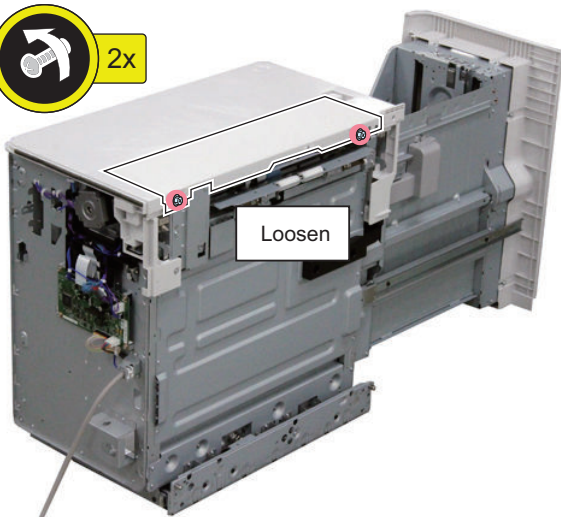


**6. Remove the upper cover.**

- 3 Screws

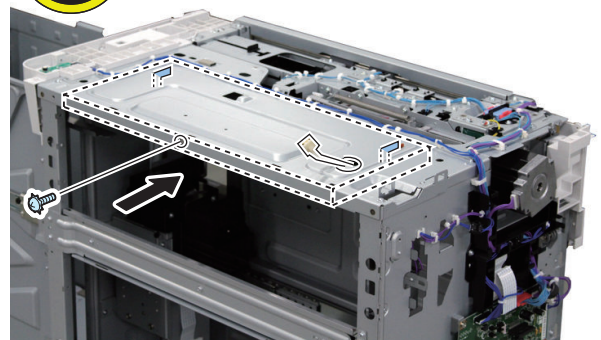
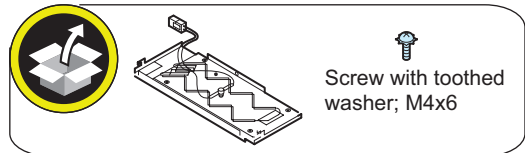


**5. Remove the left upper cover.**



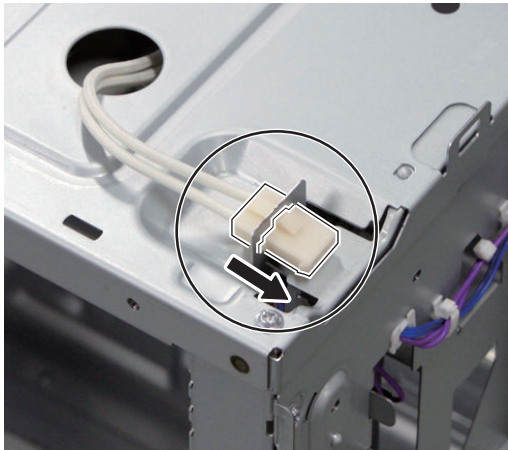
**7. Put the connector through the hole in the top plate and then fix the heater unit in the Paper Deck Unit.**

- 2 Hooks
- 1 Screw (Toothed washer; M4x6)



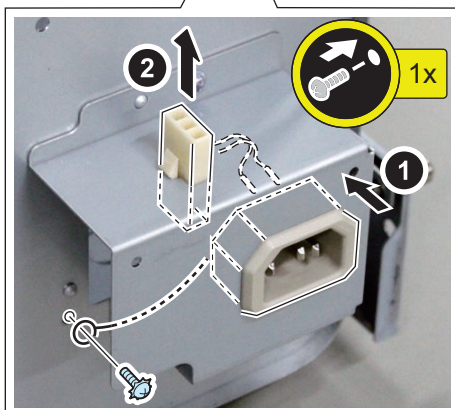
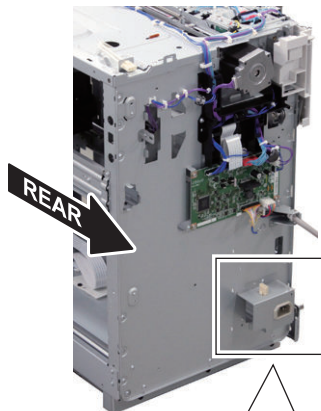
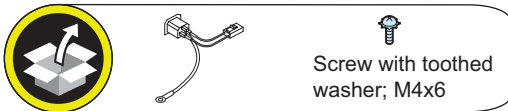


8. Insert the connector of the heater to the panel mount part.



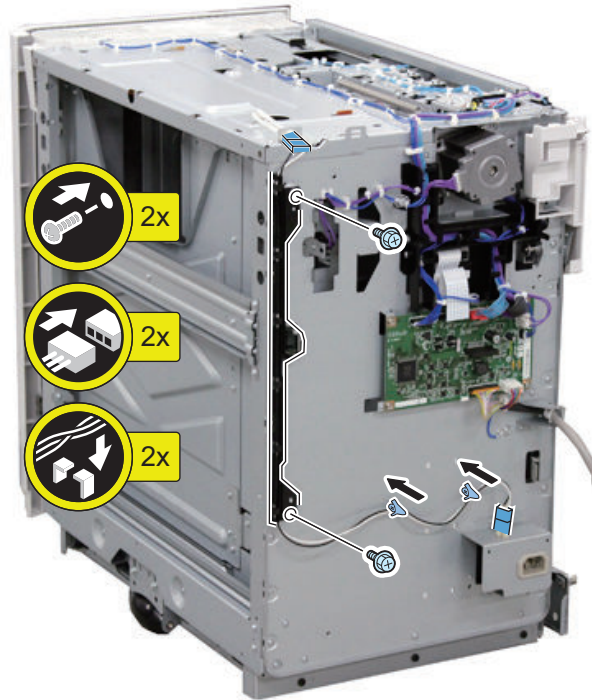
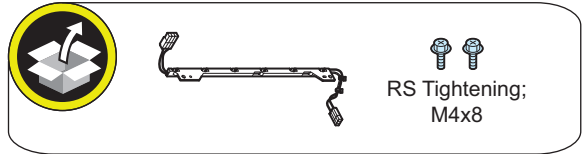
9. Insert the supplied AC input connector and then fix the ground cable.

- 1 Screw (Toothed washer; M4x6)



10. Install the relay harness unit on the rear side panel of the Paper Deck Unit.

- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)
- 2 Connectors
- 2 Snap bands



11. Re-attach the external covers.

### ■ Preparation of the Host Machine



1. Remove the left rear cover.







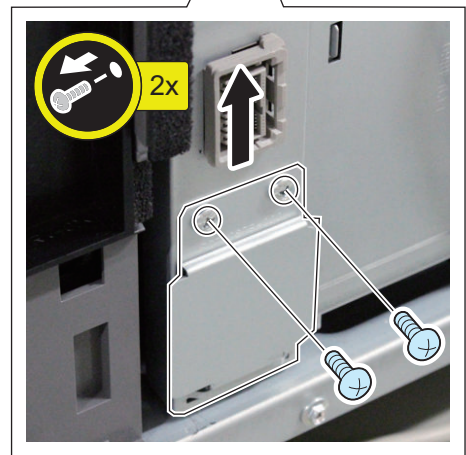
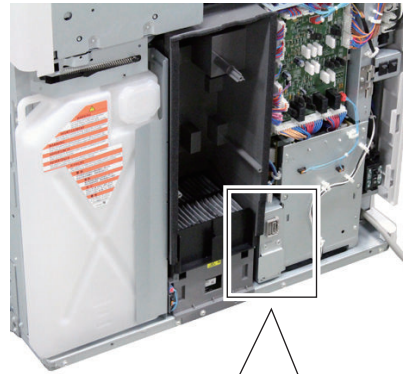
**2. Remove the rear upper cover.**

- 4 Screws



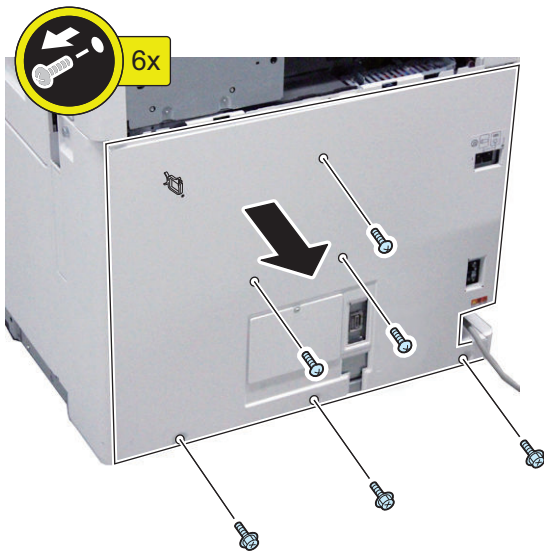
**4. Remove the blindfold plate (the removed cover and screws are not used).**

- 2 Screws



**3. Remove the rear lower cover.**

- 6 Screws

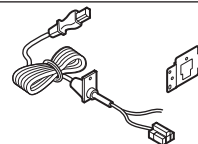


Binding; M4x10

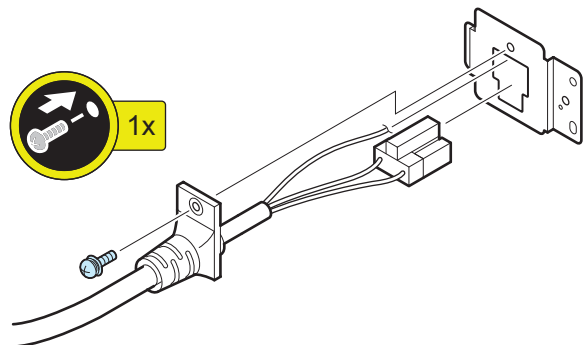


**5. Insert the AC cord into the hole of the cord mount and fix it.**

- 1 Screw (Flat spring; M4x10)



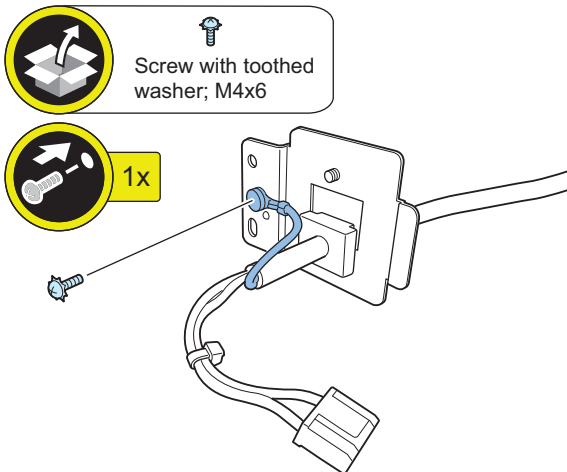
Screw with flat spring; M4x10





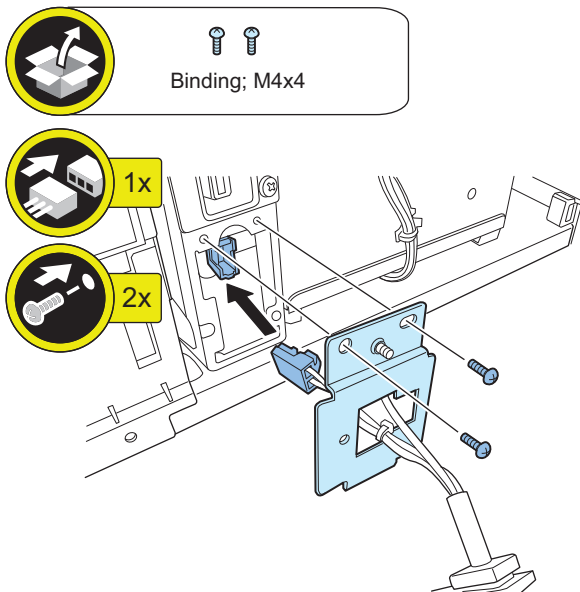
**6. Fix the ground cable to the cord mount.**

- 1 Screw (Toothed washer; M4x6)



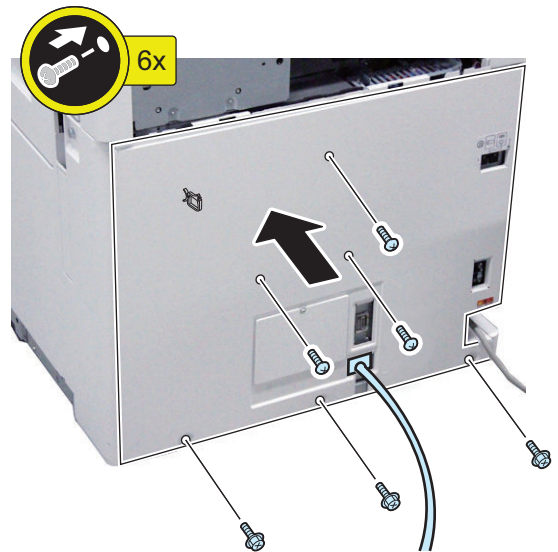
**7. Connect the AC cable to the host machine and then fix it.**

- 2 Screws (Binding; M4x4)



**8. Attach the rear lower cover.**

- 3 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x10)
- 3 Screws (P Tightening; M4x10)



**■ Connection with the Host Machine**

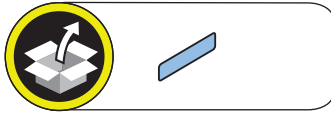


**1. Cut the blindfold cover of the AC input from rear side of the Paper Deck Unit.**





2. Paste the power supply label.

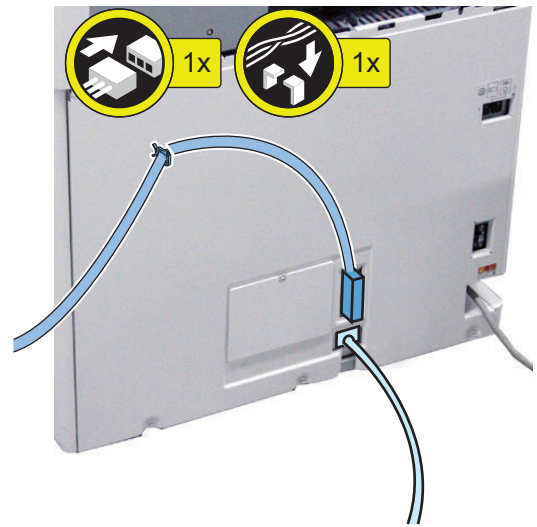


3. Connect the Paper Deck Unit with the host machine.

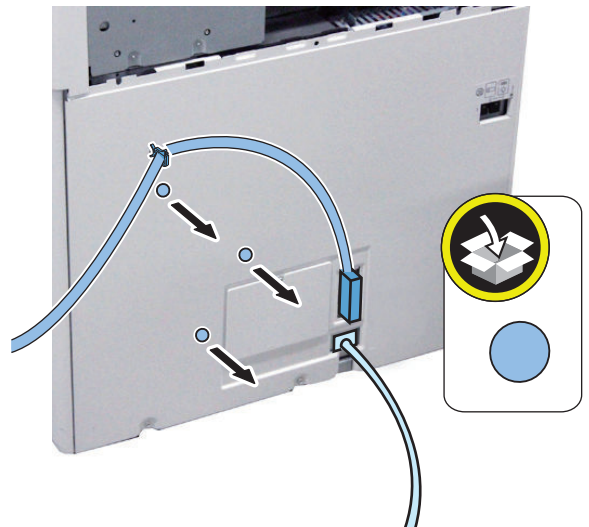


4. Connect the lattice connector of the Paper Deck Unit to the host machine and the fix it with the wire saddle.

- 1 Wire saddle

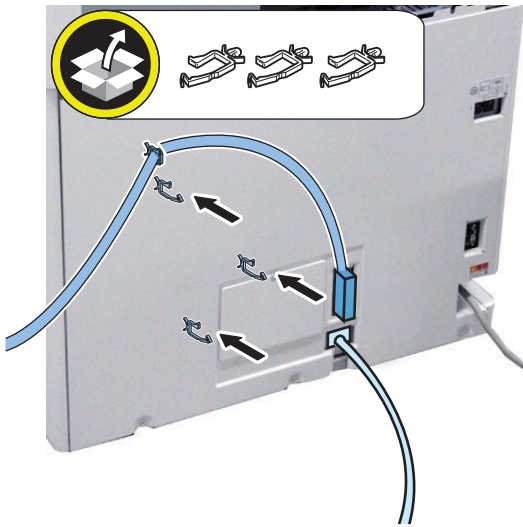


5. Remove the blindfold seals (the removed seals are not used).

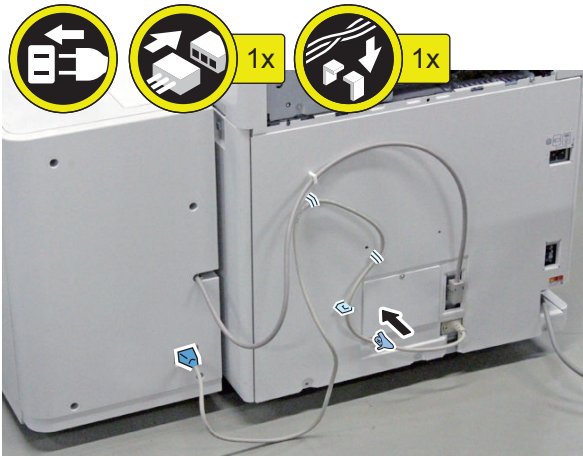


**6. Attach the wire saddles.**

- 3 Wire saddles

**7. Connect the AC cable to the Paper Deck Unit and then fix it as shown in the figure.**

- 1 Snap band
- 3 Wire saddles









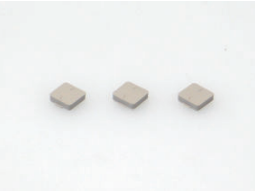
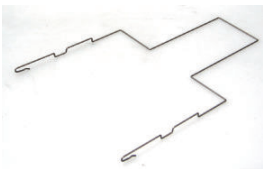
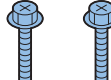
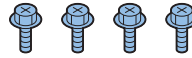



# Shift Tray-F1

## Points to Note before Installation

The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

## Checking the Contents

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] Shift Tray X 1<br>                        | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] Shift Drive Unit X 1<br>   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] Shift Tray Cover X 1<br>                  | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] Shift Tray Support Base X 1<br>  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [5] Reinforcing Plate X 1<br>                | <input type="checkbox"/> [6] Shift Delivery Support Base (1) X 1<br>   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [7] Shift Delivery Support Base (2) X 1<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [8] Face Cover X 1<br>   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [9] Rubber Cap X 3<br>                      | <input type="checkbox"/> [10] Shift Tray Shaft X 1<br>  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [11] Screw (RS Tightening; M4x20) X 2<br>   | <input type="checkbox"/> [12] Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8) X 4<br><br><input type="checkbox"/> [13] Screw (Binding; M4x6) X 2<br> |



## Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

### ⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

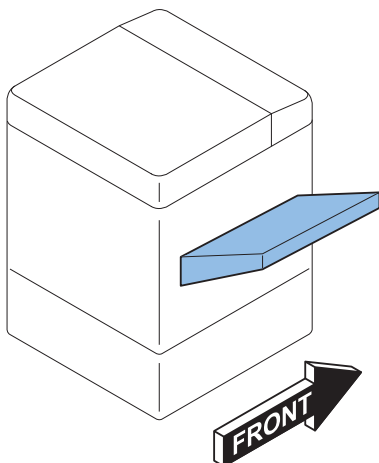
## Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.  
 COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

## Installation Outline Drawing

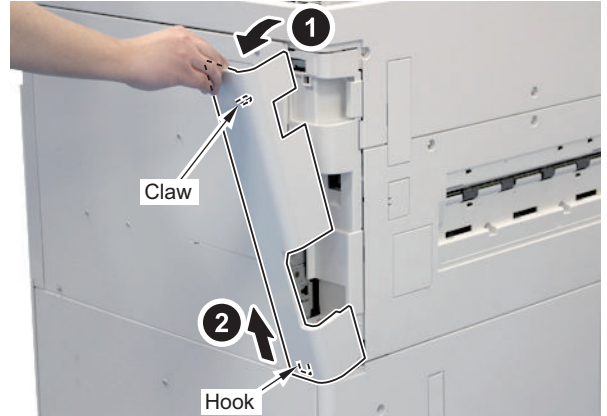


## Installation Procedure



### 1. Remove the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook

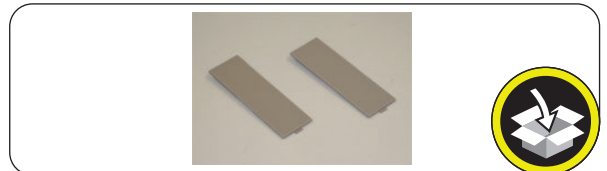
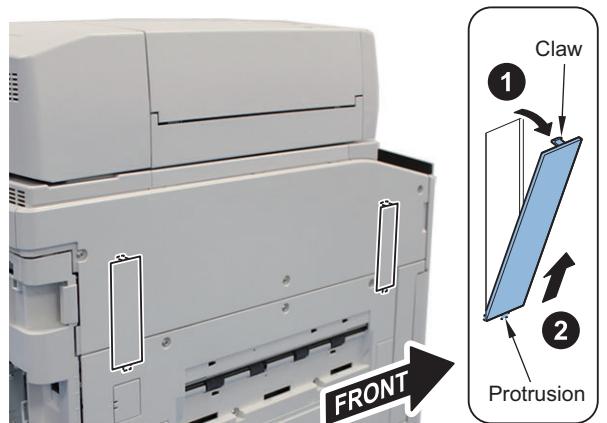


### 2. Open the Toner Replacement Cover.



### 3. Remove the 2 Finisher Connection Covers. (The removed Finisher Connection Cover will not be used.)

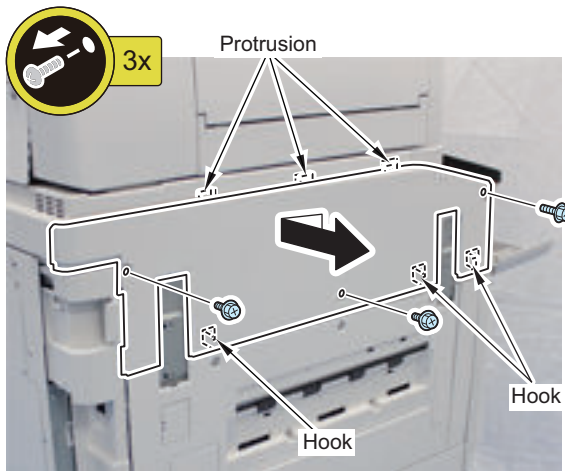
- 1 Claw for each
- 1 Protrusion for each





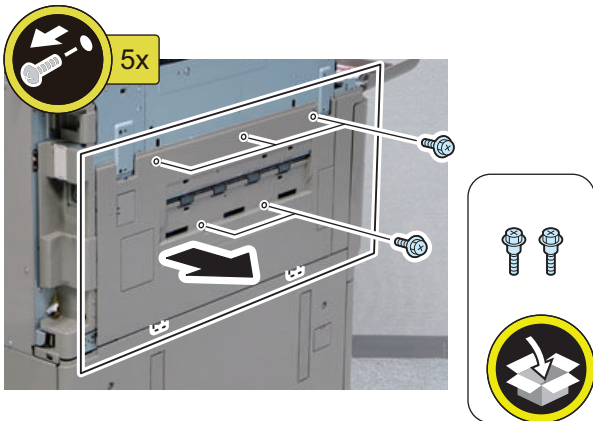
**4. Remove the Left Upper Cover.**

- 3 Screws
- 3 Hooks
- 3 Protrusions

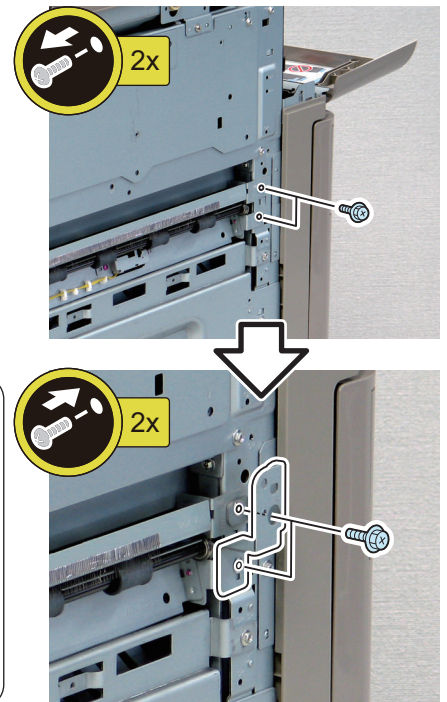


**5. Remove the Delivery Cover.**

- 5 Stepped Screws (The 3 removed Stepped Screws will be used in step 9.)
- 2 Hooks



**6. Remove the 2 screws, and install the Shift Delivery Support Base (1) using the removed screws.**





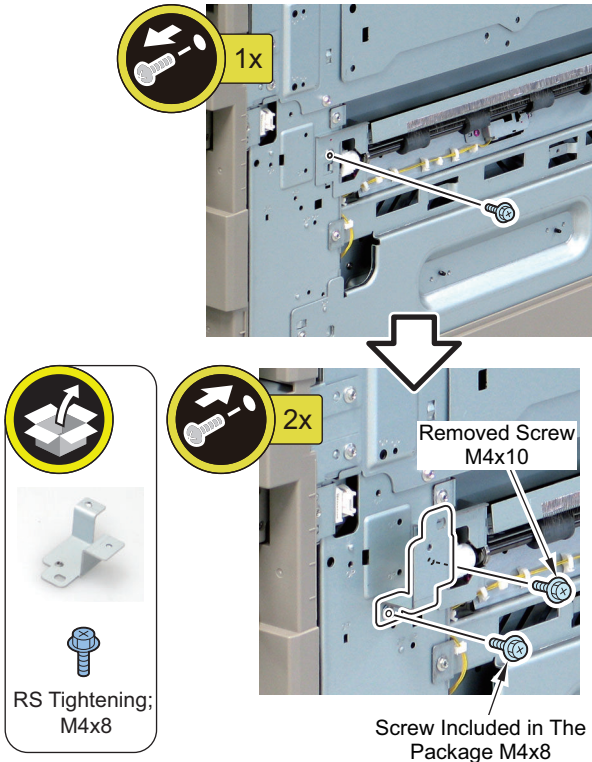


**7. Remove the screw, and install the Shift Delivery Support Base (2) using the removed screw and the screw included in the package.**

- 1 Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8)

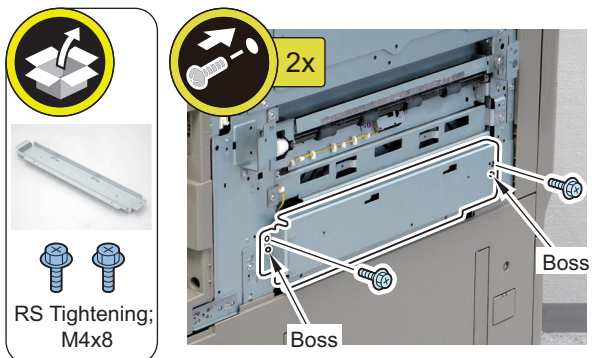
**CAUTION:**

The 2 screws used are different in length. Be sure to install them to the correct positions.



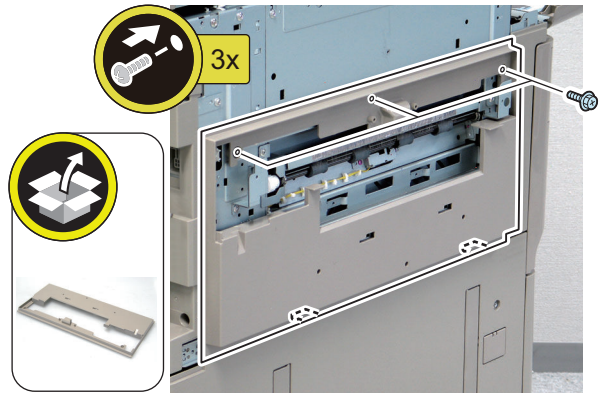
**8. Install the Shift Tray Support Base.**

- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)

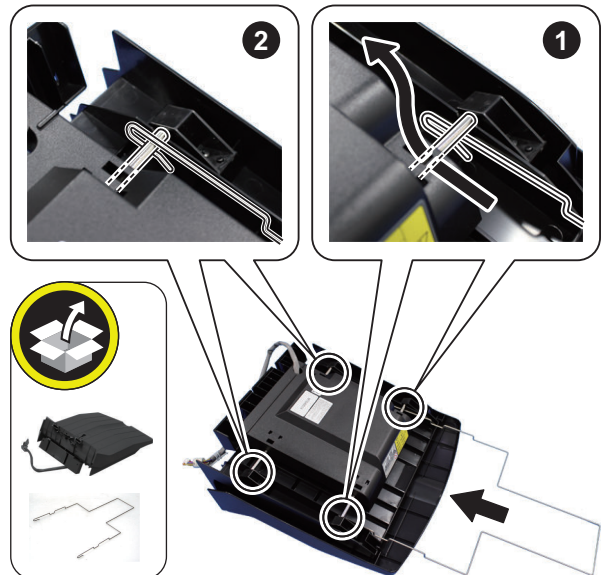


**9. Install the Shift Tray Cover. Install the Shift Tray Cover.**

- 2 Hooks
- 3 Stepped Screws (Use the screws removed in step 5.)

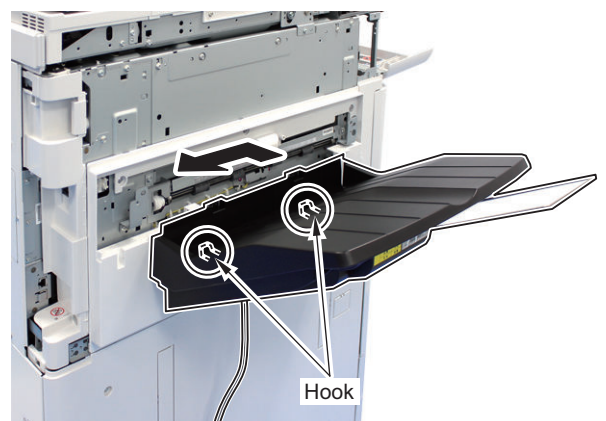


**10. Remove the tapes, and install the Shift Tray Shaft.**



**11. Install the Shift Tray.**

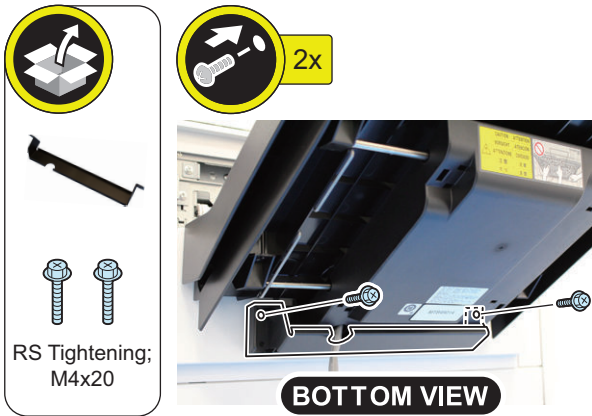
- 2 Hooks





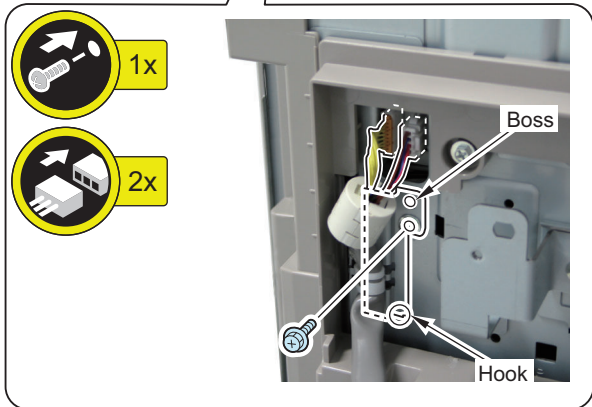
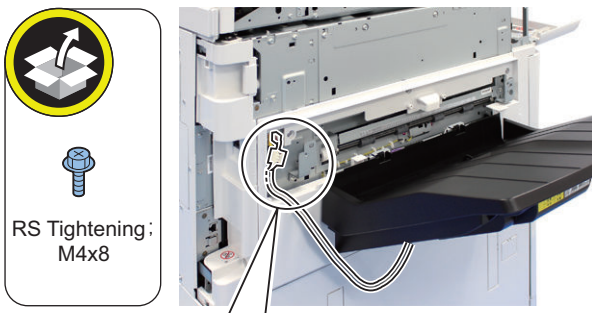
**12. Install the Reinforcing Plate.**

- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x20)



**13. Install the Harness Fixing Plate attached to the end of the Shift Tray Cable.**

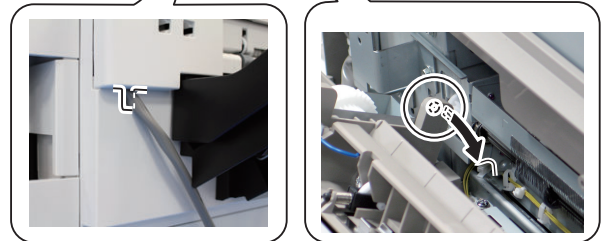
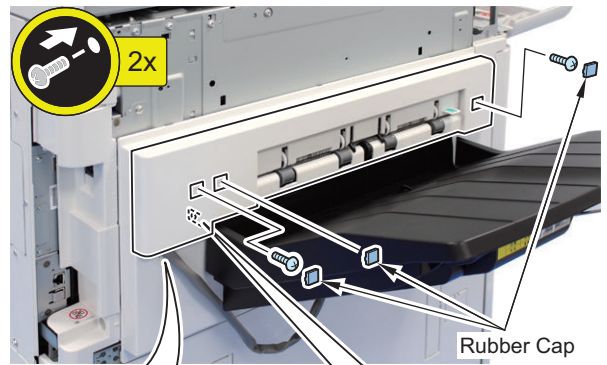
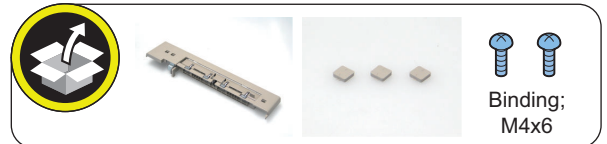
- 1 Hook
- 1 Boss
- 1 Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8)
- 2 Connectors



**14. Remove the tapes, and install the Shift Drive Unit.**

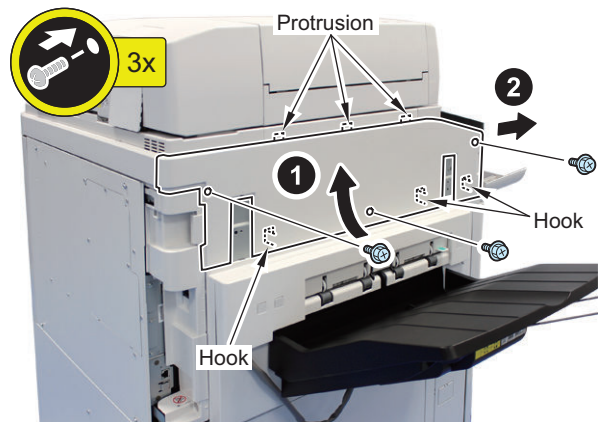
- 2 Screws (Binding; M4x6)
- 3 Rubber Caps

**CAUTION:**  
Be sure to put the harness for connecting to the host machine into the groove when installing the unit.



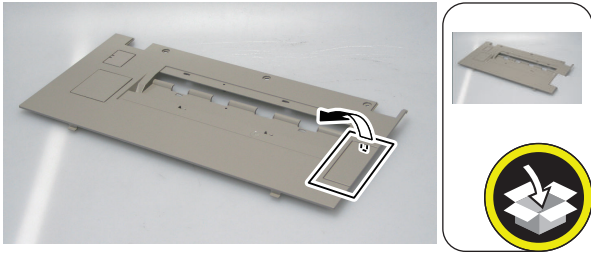
**15. Install the Left Upper Cover.**

- 3 Protrusions
- 3 Hooks
- 3 Screws





16. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, remove the Face Cover from the Delivery Cover removed in step 5 (the Delivery Cover will not be used).



17. Install the Face Cover removed in the previous step and the Face Cover included in the package.
- 1 Protrusion for each
  - 1 Claw for each



18. Close the Toner Replacement Cover.



19. Return the Left Rear Cover to their original position.

## Checking after Installation



1. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the power outlet.
2. Turn ON the main power switch.
3. Press the counter check key on the control panel.
4. Press [Check Device Configuration].
5. Check that "Shift Tray-F1" is displayed in option field.

# Utility Tray-B1

## Points to Note at Installation

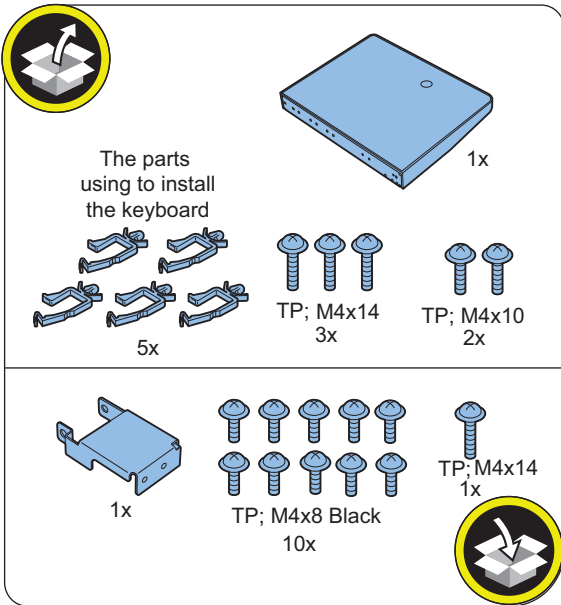
- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.
- Refer to "Table of Options Combination" when installing this equipment before operation.

Table of Options Combination

|              | Voice Operation | Voice Guidance Kit | Copy Card Reader |
|--------------|-----------------|--------------------|------------------|
| Utility Tray | No              | No                 | Yes              |

Yes: Available, No: Unavailable

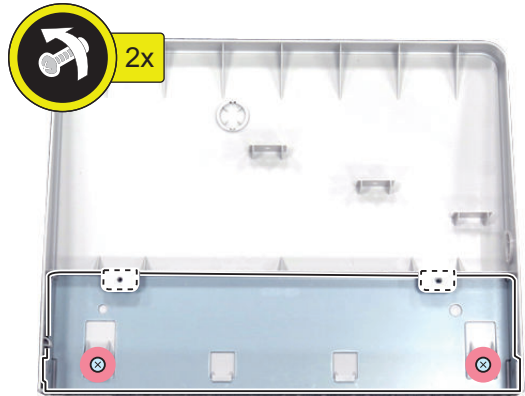
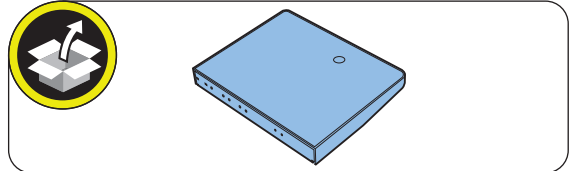
## Checking the Contents



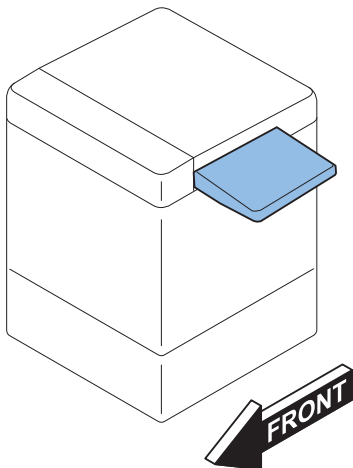
## Installation Procedure

1. Remove packing tapes.

2.



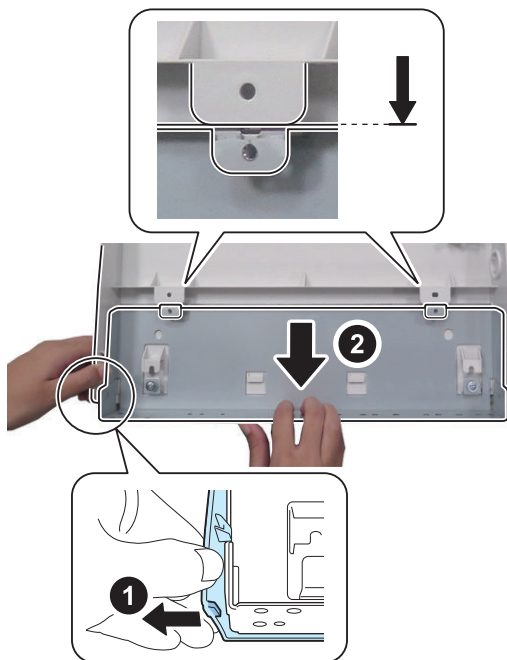
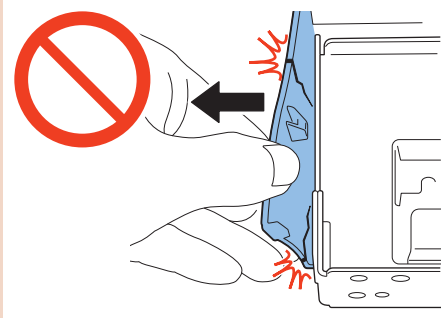
## Installation Outline Drawing





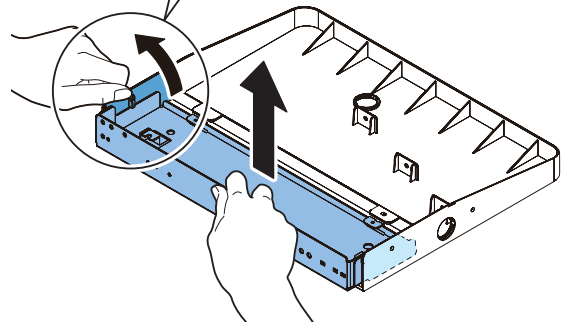
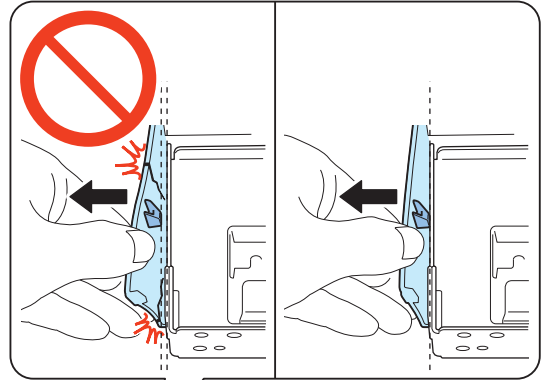
□  
3.

**CAUTION:**  
To avoid damage, do not pull the Utility Tray too much.

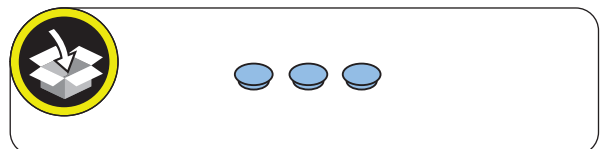


□  
4.

**CAUTION:**  
To avoid damage, do not pull the Utility Tray too much.



□  
5.

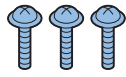
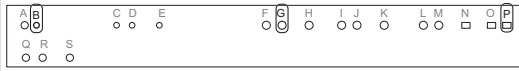


6.

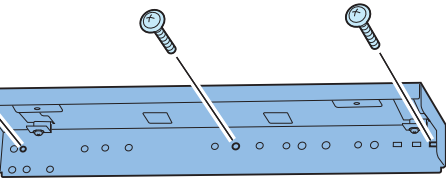
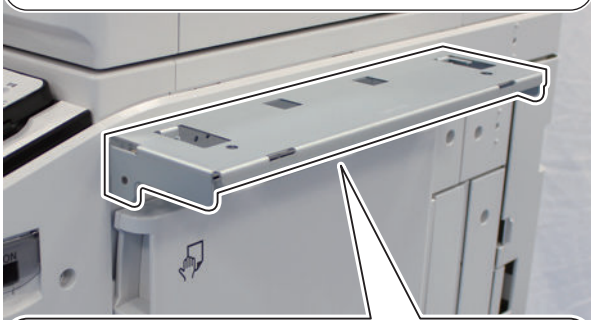
**CAUTION:**

**Points to Note at Installation**

If the holes are marked as shown below, align the holes marked with B, G and P with the holes in the host machine



TP ; M4x14

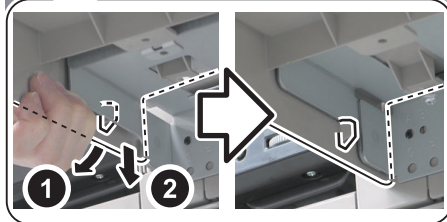
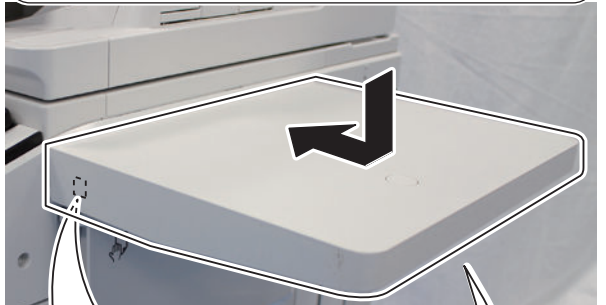


**BOTTOM VIEW**

7.



TP ; M4x10

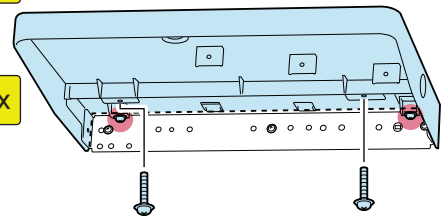


2x

**BOTTOM VIEW**

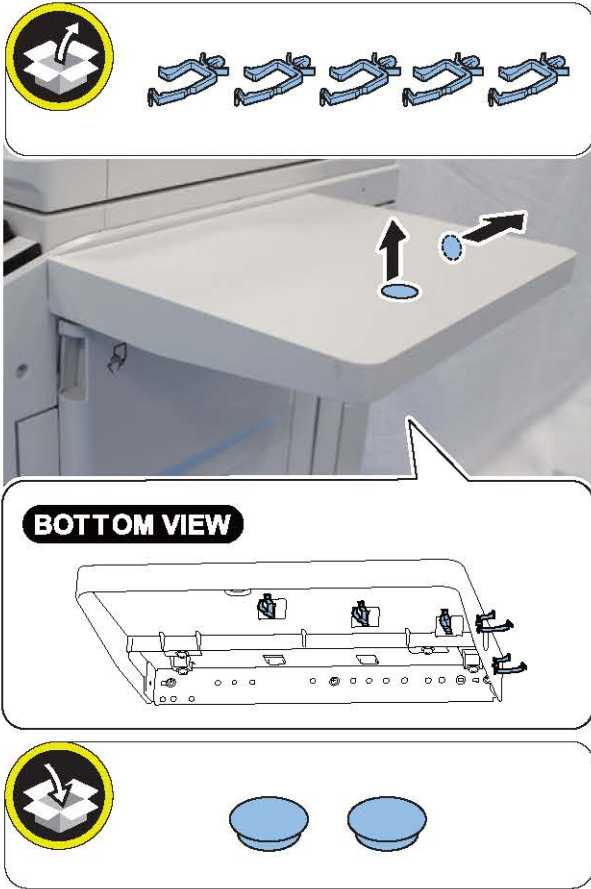


2x



### ■ When Installing the USB Keyboard

□  
1.





# Copy Card Reader-F1

## Points to Note at Installation

- To install this equipment, the Copy Card Reader Attachment is required.
- After installing the Copy Card Reader, input the card number to be used in service mode. Otherwise the card cannot be recognized even though it is inserted. COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD
- When installing this equipment, be sure to install it by referring to "Table of Options Combination".
- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

### Table of Options Combination

|                  | Utility Tray | Voice Operation | Voice Guidance Kit | Serial Interface Kit | Copy Control Interface Kit |
|------------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| Copy Card Reader | Yes          | Yes             | Yes                | No                   | No                         |

Yes: Available, No: Unavailable

## Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

**⚠ WARNING:**

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

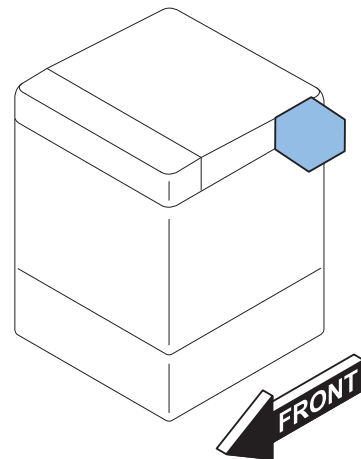
## Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.




If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message. COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

## Installation Outline Drawing

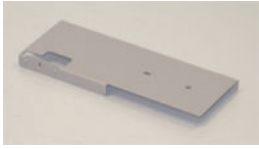

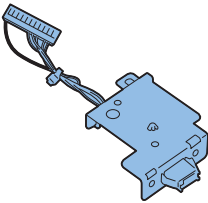
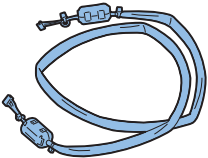


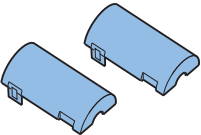
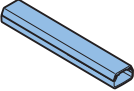
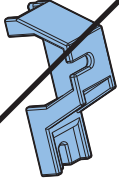










## Checking the Contents

<Copy Card Reader-F1>

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] Card Reader Unit X 1<br>         | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] Toothed washer X 1<br> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] Screw (RS tight; M4x10) X 1<br> |  |

<Copy Card Reader Attachment- A4>

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] Card Reader Mounting Plate X 1<br>Used only for the Upright Control Panel<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] Card Reader Mounting Plate X 1<br>Used only for the Flat Control Panel<br> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] Card Reader Relay Unit X 1<br>  | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] Card Reader External Relay Harness X 1<br>                                 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [5] Connector Cover1 X 1<br>  | <input type="checkbox"/> [6] Connector Cover2 X 1<br>  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [7] Connector Case X 2<br>  | <input type="checkbox"/> [8] Cord Guide X 1<br>   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [9] Connector Cover X 1<br>   | <input type="checkbox"/> [10] PCB Spacer X 1<br>  |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [11] Screw (Binding; M3x6) X 1<br>   | <input type="checkbox"/> [12] Screw (TP; M4x12) X 1<br>Used only for the Upright Control Panel<br>   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [13] Screw (RS tight; M4x8) X 1<br>Used only for the Upright Control Panel<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [14] Screw (Binding; M4x20) X 1<br>Used only for the Flat Control Panel<br> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [15] Screw (Binding; M4x6) X 1<br>Used only for the Flat Control Panel<br>     | <input type="checkbox"/> [16] Relay Harness X 1<br>  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [17] Screw (TP; M3x6) X 1<br>  |   |

## Installation Procedure

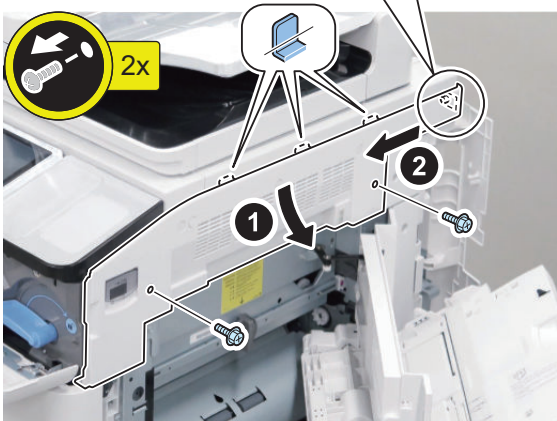
### ■ Installing the Card Reader Mounting Plate <in the case of the Flat Control Panel >



1. Open the Toner Replacement Cover, Right Cover, and Right Rear Cover 1.



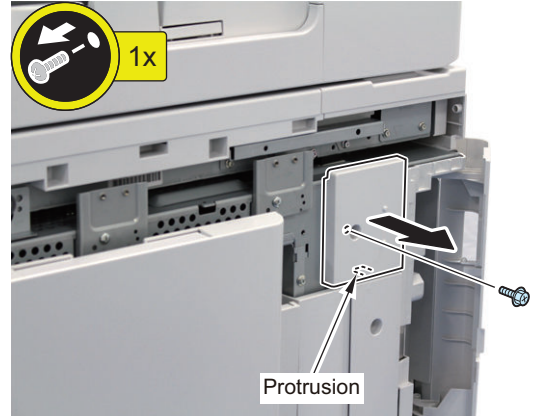
2. Remove the Right Upper Cover.
  - 2 Screws
  - 3 Protrusions
  - 1 Boss



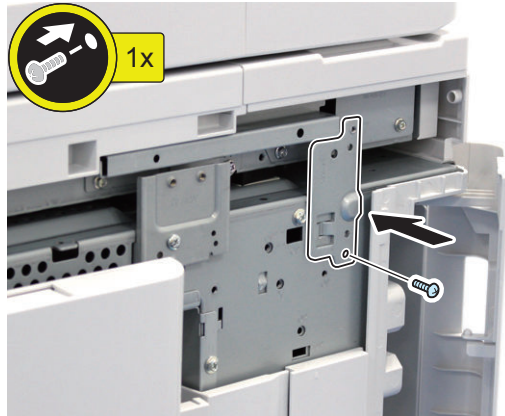
3. Close the Right Cover.



4. Remove the Right Rear Cover 2.
  - 1 Screw
  - 1 Protrusion



5. Install the Card Reader Mounting Plate.
  - 1 Screw (Binding; M4x6)



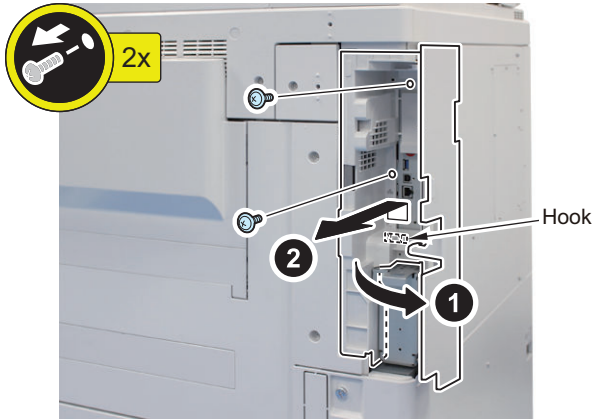
6. Install the Right Rear Cover 2 (1 Screw).
7. Open the Right Cover, and then install the Right Upper Cover (2 Screws).
8. Close the Right Cover and Toner Replacement Cover.

## ■ Installing the Card Reader



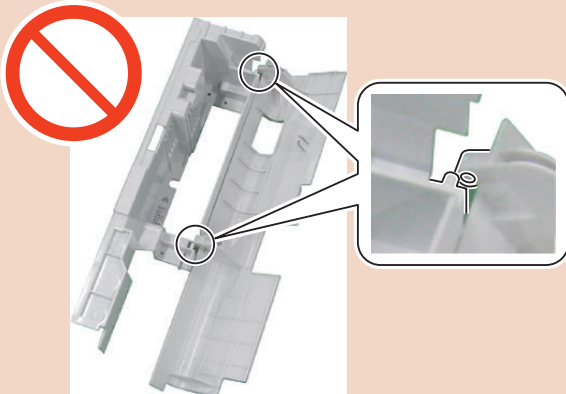
### 1. Remove the Side Cover.

- 2 Screws
- 1 Hook



**CAUTION:**

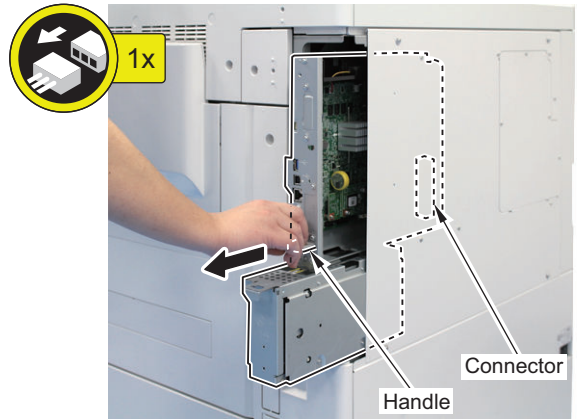
Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.



### 2. Hold the handle to remove the Main Controller PCB

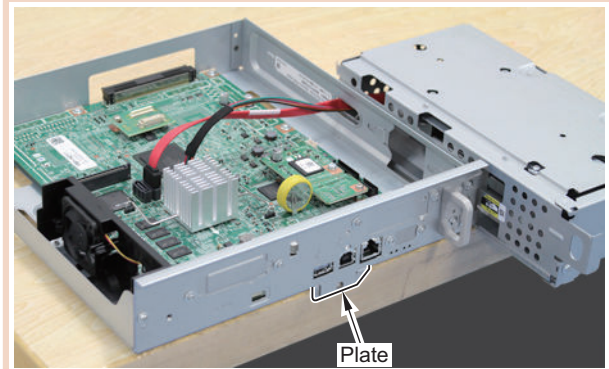
1.

- 1 Connector



**CAUTION:**

Be sure to place the removed Main Controller PCB 1 flatly. Reason: Due to the protruded plate, the PCB may be deformed if work is performed while it is placed at an angle.

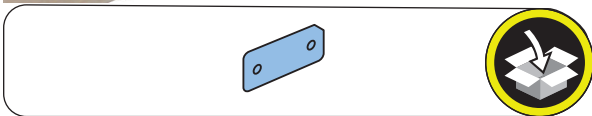
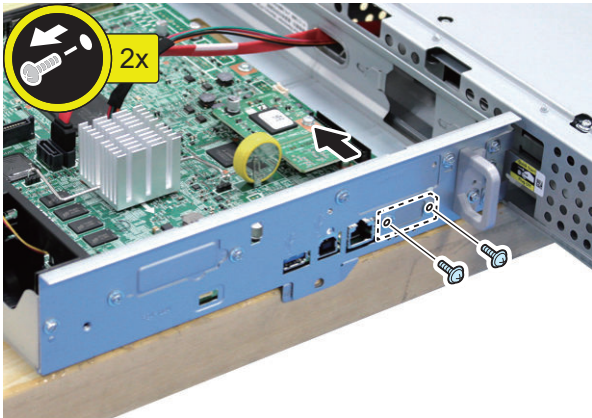




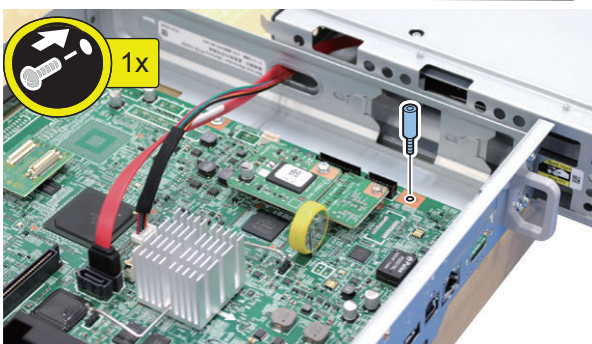
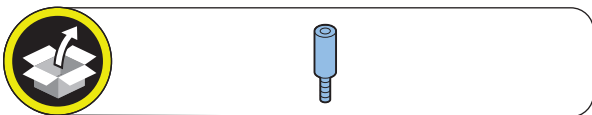
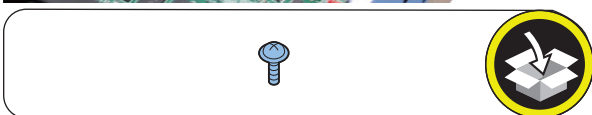
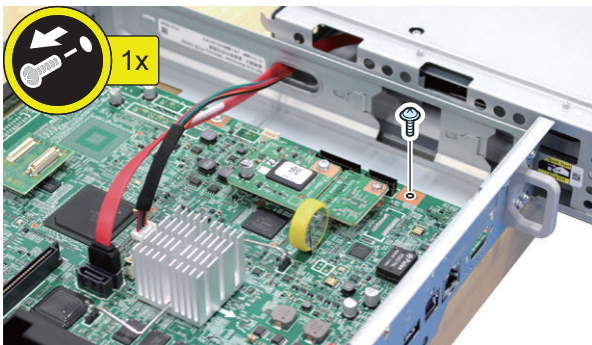


**3. Remove the Face Cover. (The removed Face Cover will not be used.)**

- 2 Screws (The removed screws will be used in step 5)

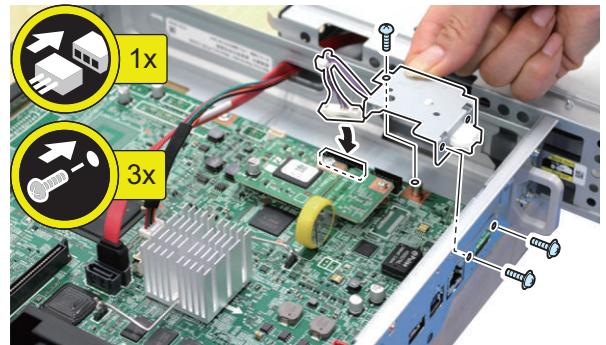
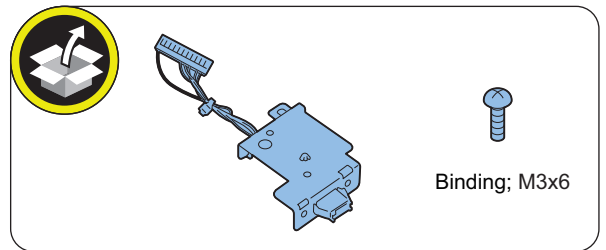


**4. Remove the screw, and install the PCB Spacer. (The removed screws will not be used.)**



**5. Install the Card Reader Reply Unit.**

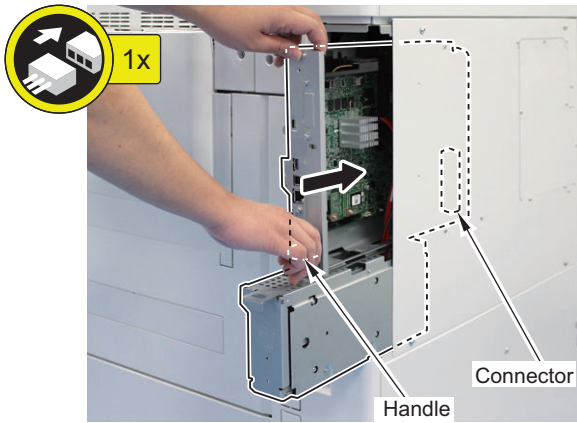
- 1 Connector
- 2 Screws (Use the screws removed in step 3.)
- 1 Screw (Binding; M3x6)



□

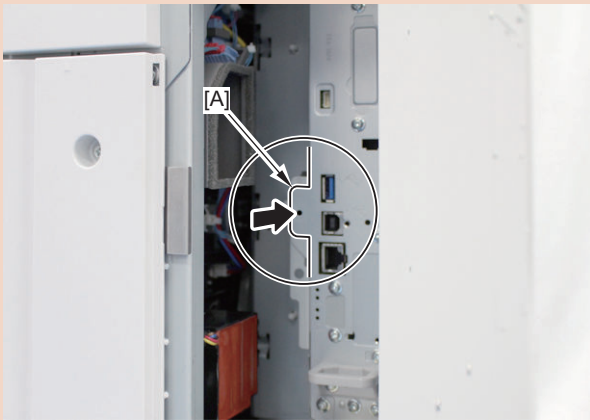
**6. Insert the Main Controller PCB 1 until it stops.**

- 1 Connector



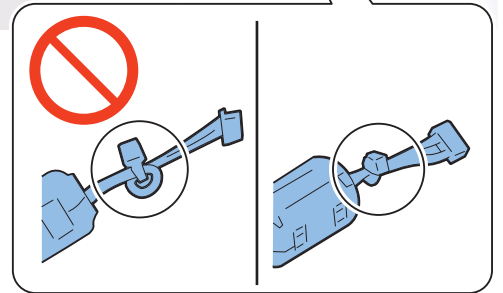
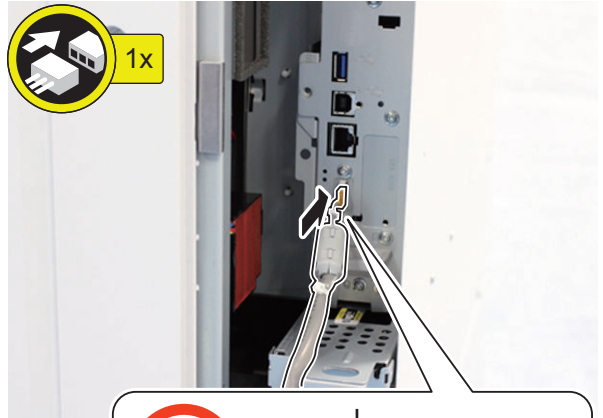
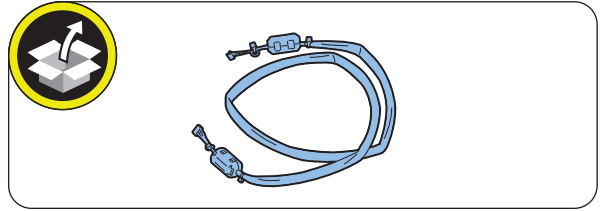
**CAUTION:**

Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.



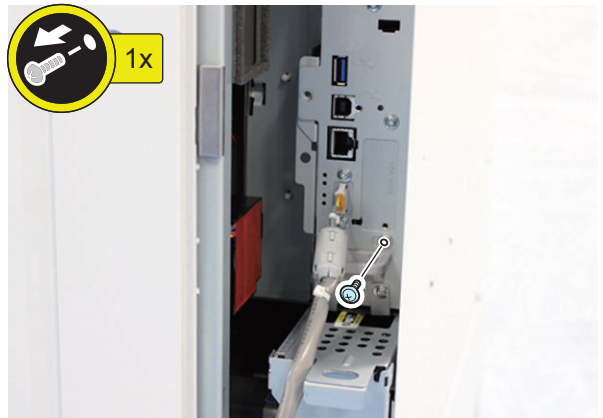
□

**7. Connect the Card Reader External Relay Harness.**



□

**8. Remove the Screw ( The removed screws will be used at next step.)**



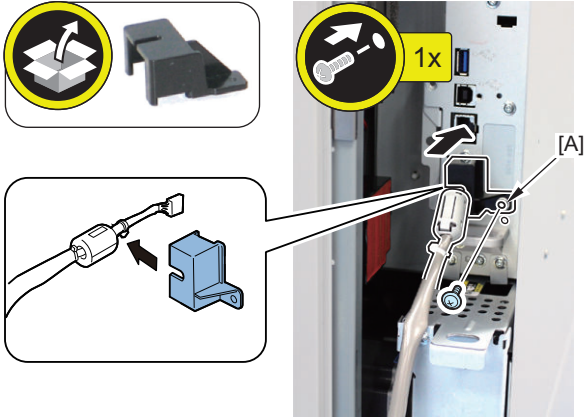


**9. Install the Connector Cover to the Card Reader External Relay Harness.**

- 1 Screw ( Use the screw removed at previous step.)

**CAUTION:**

- Install the screw to the [A] part.
- When installing the Connector Cover, be sure to place the tie-wrap on the Card Reader External Relay Harness on the inside of the Connector Cover.

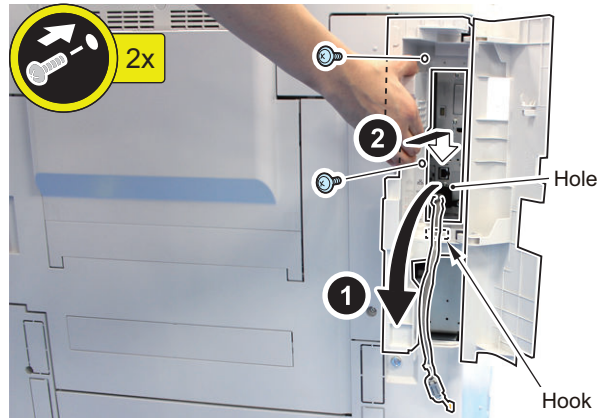
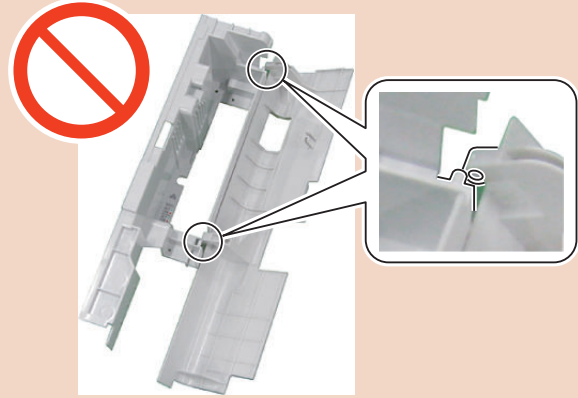


**10. Install the Side Cover by putting the Card Reader External Relay Harness through a hole of the cover.**

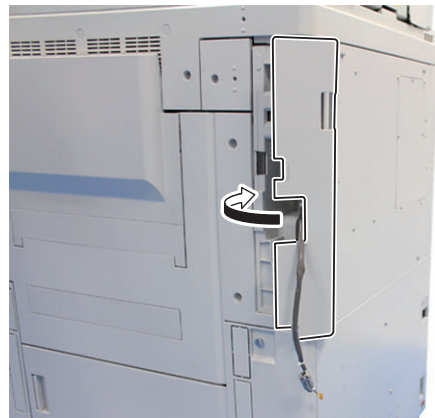
- 1 Hook
- 2 Screws

**CAUTION:**

Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1



**11. Close the Right Rear Cover 1.**

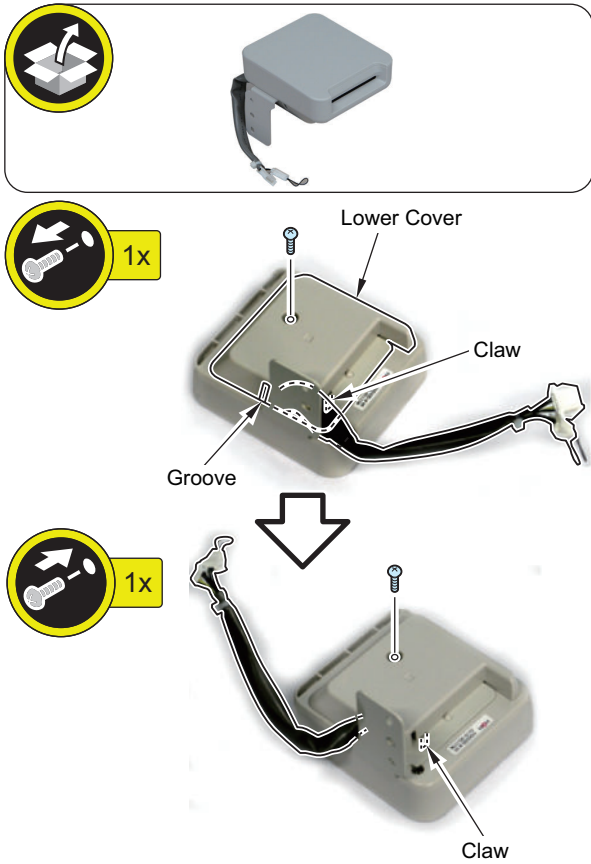




□

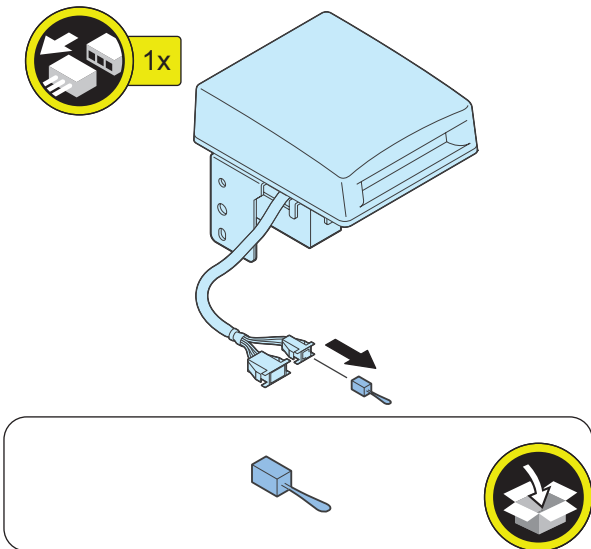
**12. Remove the Lower Cover of the Card Reader Unit, and change the position of the cable.**

- 1 Claw
- 1 Screw



□

**13. Disconnect the Short Connector on the Card Reader. (The removed Short Connector will not be used.)**



□

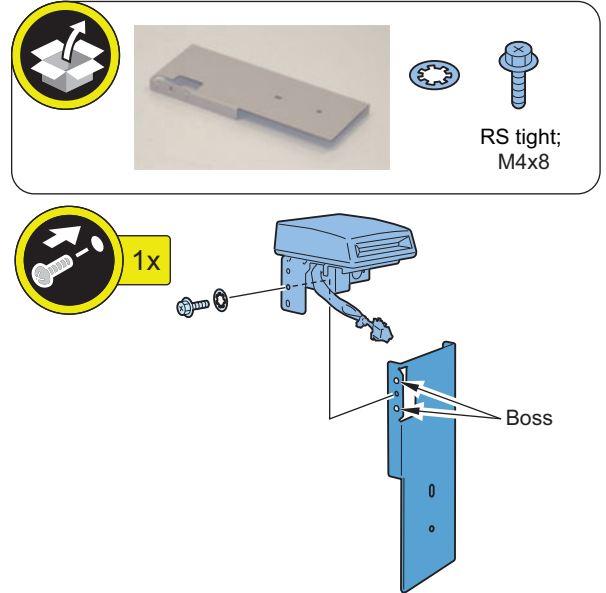
**14. Install the Card Reader.**

<In the Case of Upright Control Panel>

□

**14-1. Install the Card Reader to the Card Reader Mounting Plate.**

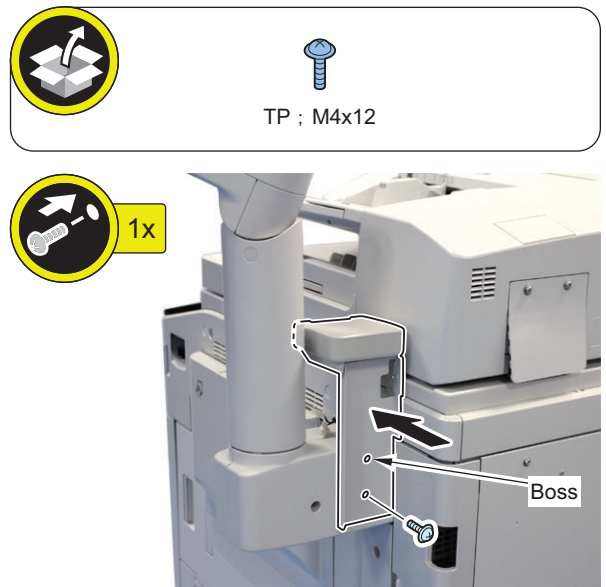
- 2 Bosses
- 1 Toothed Washer
- 1 Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8)



□

**14-2. Install the Card Reader Unit assembled in step 14-1.**

- 1 Boss
- 1 Screw (TP; M4x12)

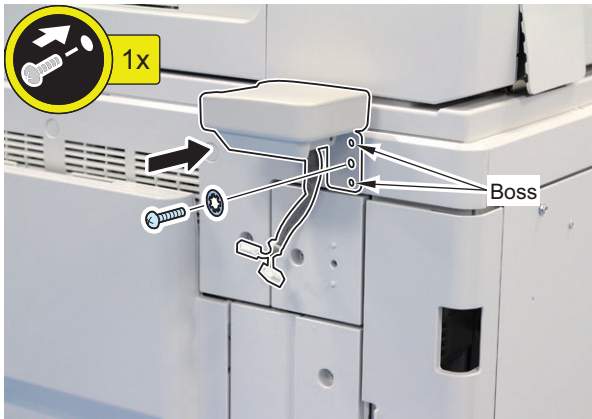
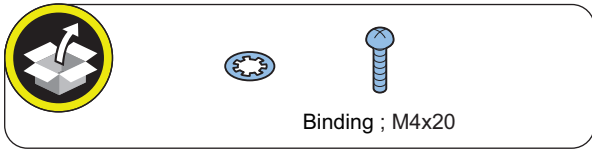


<In the Case of Flat Control Panel>

□

**14-1. Install the Card Reader.**

- 2 Bosses
- 1 Toothed Washer
- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x20)



15. If the Upright Control Panel is installed, put the connector of the Card Reader Unit through the hole on the Card Reader Mounting Plate.

**NOTE:**

While pictures of the Upright Control Panel model are used for explaining the steps 16 and 17, the procedure is the same for the Flat Control Panel model.

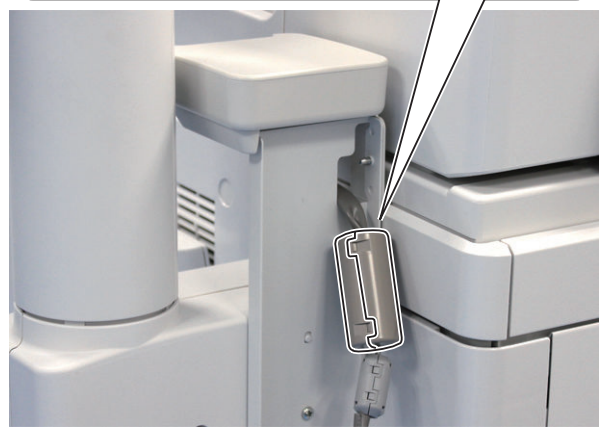
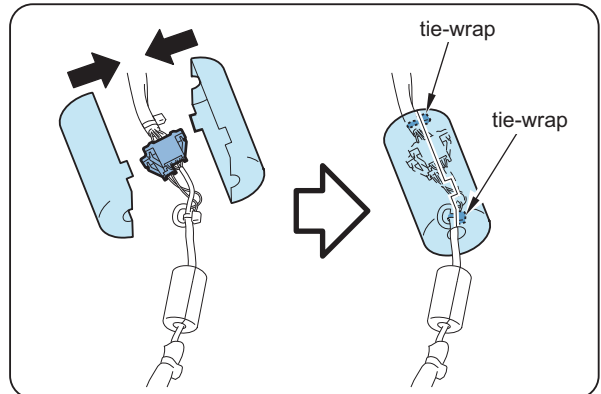
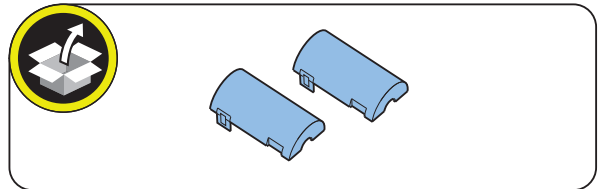
16. Connect the connectors of the Card Reader Unit and the Card Reader External Relay Harness.



17. Install the Connector Case.

**CAUTION:**

When installing the Connector Cases, be sure to place the tie-wrap on the Card Reader External Relay Harness on the inside of the Connector Cases.

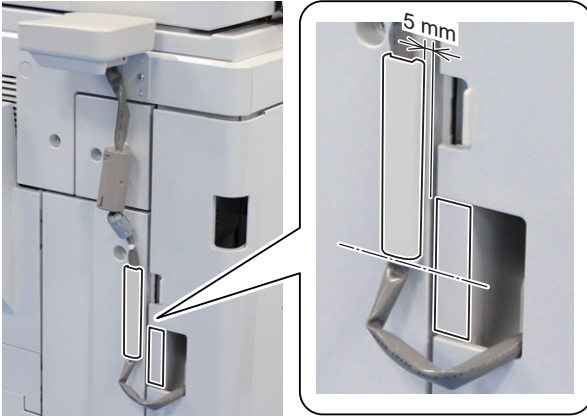
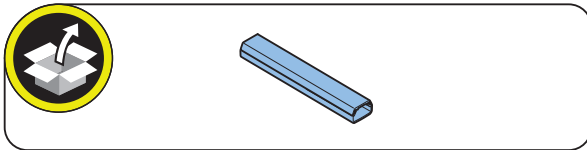


**NOTE:**

While pictures of the Flat Control Panel model are used for explaining the following steps, the procedure is the same for the Upright Control Panel model.

18. Remove the cover of Cord Guide, and affix it to the area indicated in the figure.

19. Put the Card Reader External Relay Harness through the Cord Guide, and install the cover of the Cord Guide.



20. Push the Card Reader External Relay Harness in the Right Rear Cover 1.



5. Use Service Mode to enter the minimum card number to be used by a user (1 to 2001).  
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD  
Starting from the entered card number, the number of cards set in step 4 can be used.

6. Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the setting values.  
7. Insert a card with a card number that has been registered, and check that the machine operates normally.

**NOTE:**

Perform the following operations to change the number of cards (departments) after it has been set. In such a case, counter information for each department is reset.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > CARD

- Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the settings.
- After that, perform from step 3.

## ● Checking after Installation

1. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the power outlet.
2. Turn the main power switch ON.
3. Check the model of the Card Reader in service mode. (Default: 0 "Card Reader-F1")  
COPIER > OPTION > ACC > CR-TYPE

4. Set the number of card (number of department ID) that can be used with the Card Reader in service mode.(Lv.2).  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > CARD-RNG

# Serial Interface Kit-K3 / Copy Control Interface Kit-A1

## Points to Note at Installation

When installing this equipment, be sure to install it by referring to "Table of Options Combination".

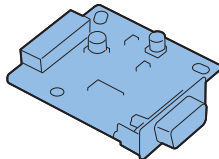
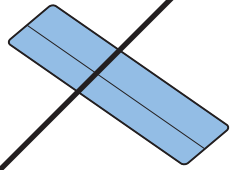
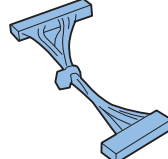
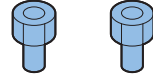



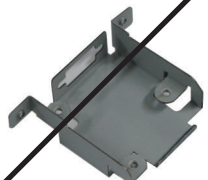
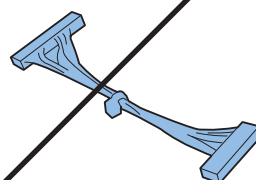

**Table of Options Combination**

|                            | Serial Interface Kit | Copy Control Interface Kit | Voice Operation Kit | Voice Guidance Kit | Copy Card Reader |
|----------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| Serial Interface Kit       | -                    | No                         | Yes                 | Yes                | No               |
| Copy Control Interface Kit | No                   | -                          | Yes                 | Yes                | No               |

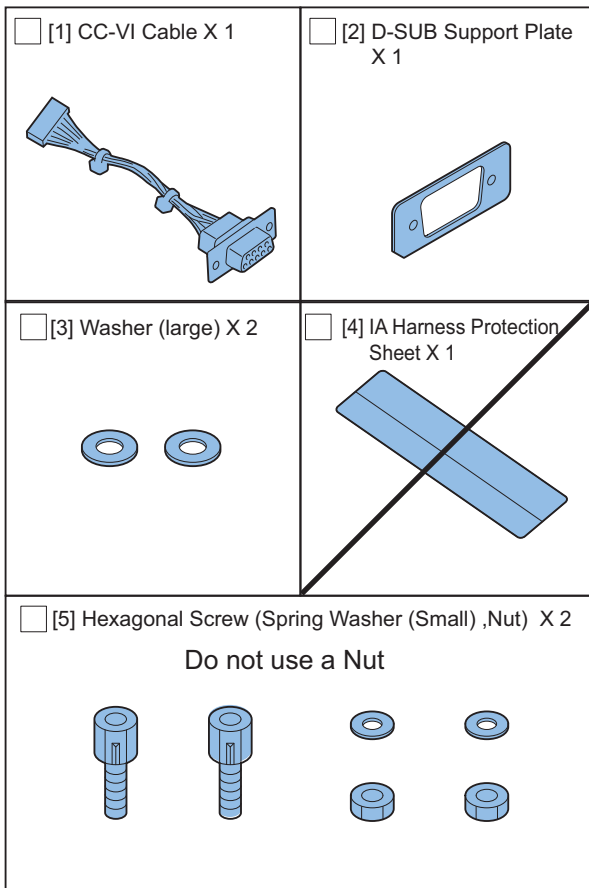
Yes: Available, No: Unavailable

## Checking the Contents

<Serial Interface Kit-K3>

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] Serial RS Conversion Board X 1<br>   | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] IA Harness Protection Sheet X 1<br> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] RS Conversion Cable (Short) X 1<br>  | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] Hexagonal Screw X 2<br>             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [5] Washer X 2<br>                      | <input type="checkbox"/> [6] PCB Spacer X 1<br>                 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [7] Screw (TP; M3x6) X 3<br>           | <input type="checkbox"/> [8] Support Plate X 1<br>             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [9] RS Conversion Cable (Long) X 1<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [10] RS Conversion Cable X 1<br>      |

## &lt;Copy Control Interface Kit-A1&gt;



## Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

### **⚠ WARNING:**

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

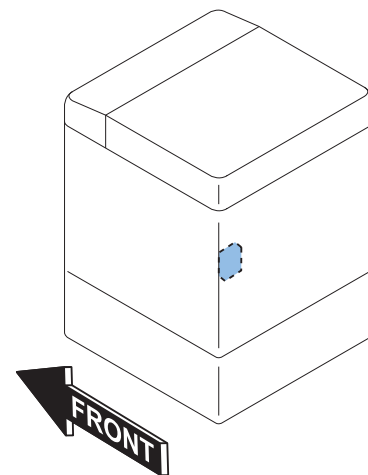
## Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

## Installation Outline Drawing





# Installation Procedure

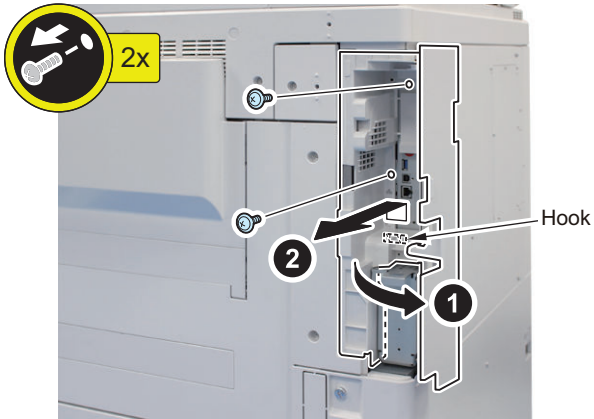
## ■ Removing the Main Controller PCB

1

□

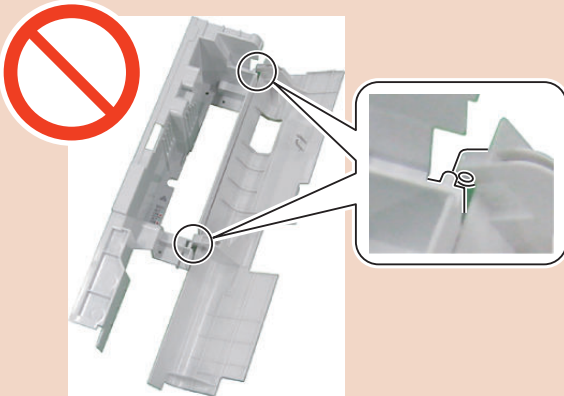
1. Open the Right Rear Cover 1, and remove the Side Cover.

- 2 Screws
- 1 Hook



**CAUTION:**

Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.

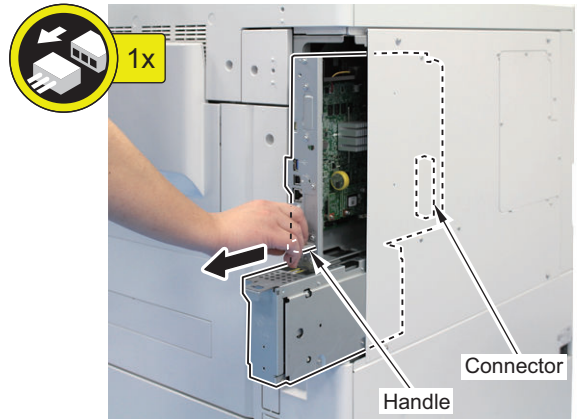


□

2. Hold the handle to remove the Main Controller PCB

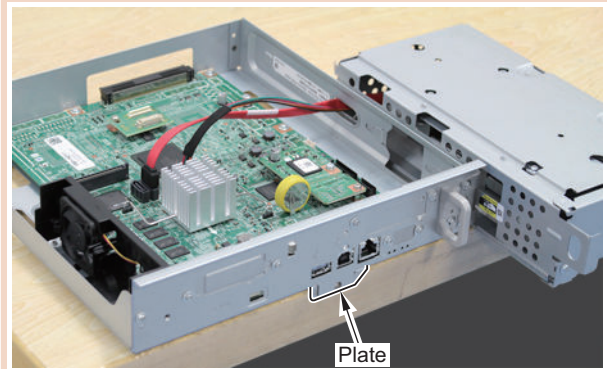
1.

- 1 Connector



**CAUTION:**

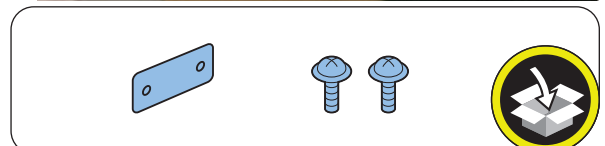
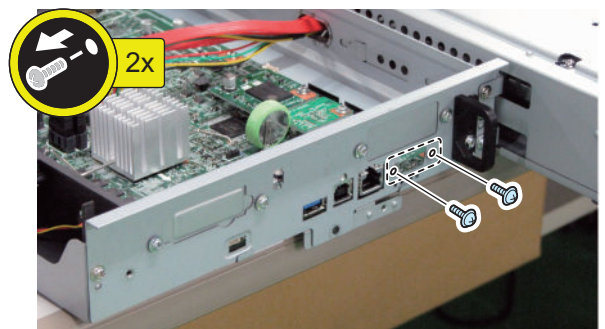
Be sure to place the removed Main Controller PCB 1 flatly. Reason: Due to the protruded plate, the PCB may be deformed if work is performed while it is placed at an angle.



□

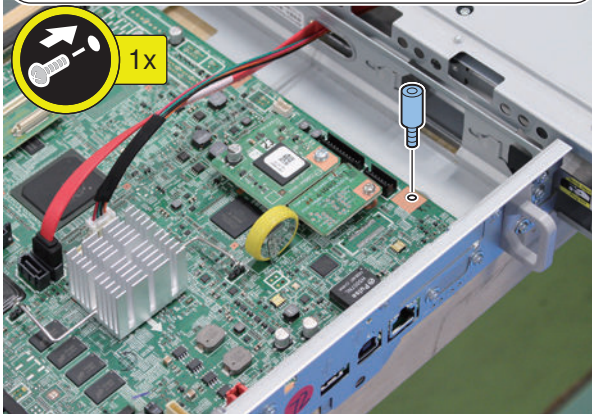
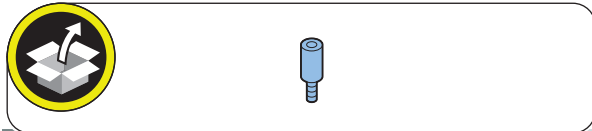
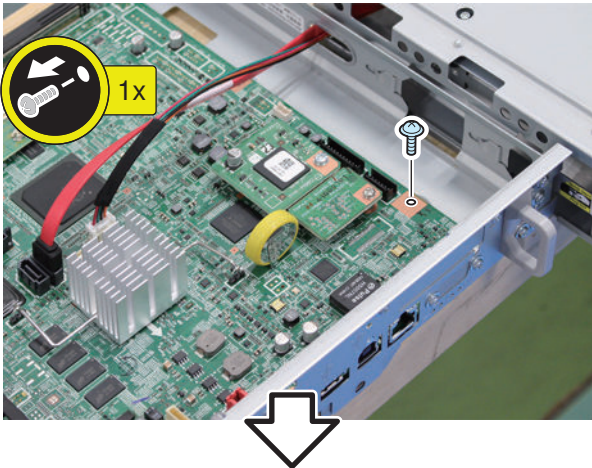
3. Remove the face cover (The removed Face Cover will not be used).

- 2 Screws

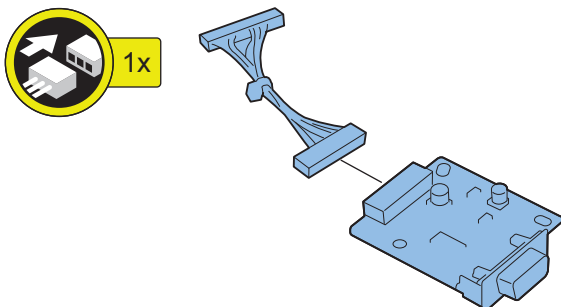
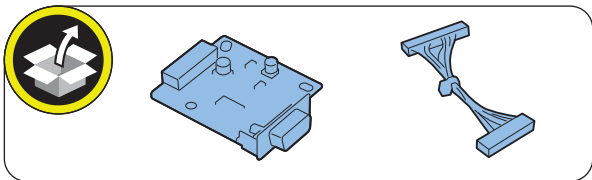


## ■ Installing the Serial Interface Kit

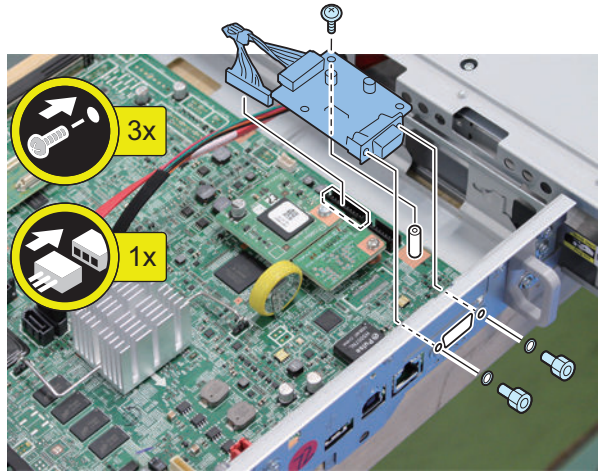
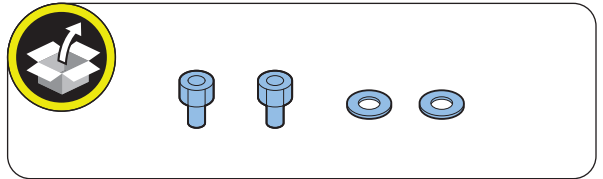
- 
- 1. Remove the screw, and install the PCB Spacer (The removed screw will be used in step 3).



- 
- 2. Connect the RS Conversion Cable (short) to the Serial RS Conversion Board.



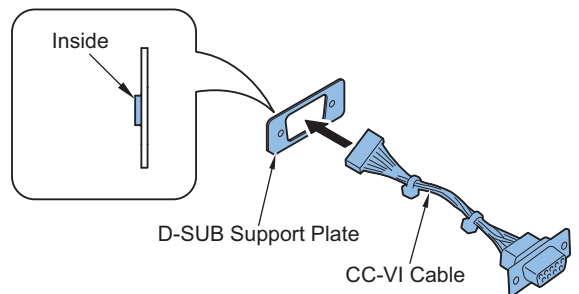
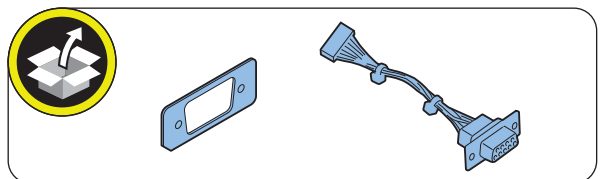
- 
- 3. Install the Serial RS Conversion Board.
  - 1 Screw (Use the screw removed in step 1)
  - 2 Washers
  - 2 Hexagon Screws
  - 1 Connector



## ■ Installing the Copy Control interface Kit

- 
- 1. Put the CC-VI Cable through the D-SUB Support Plate.

**CAUTION:**  
Install the extruded side of the D-SUB Support Plate as shown in the figure.



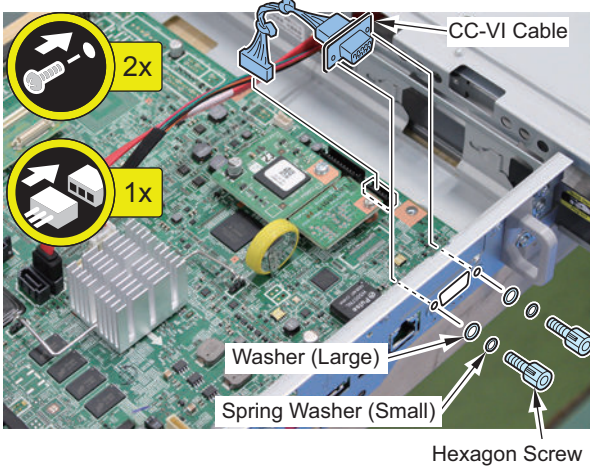
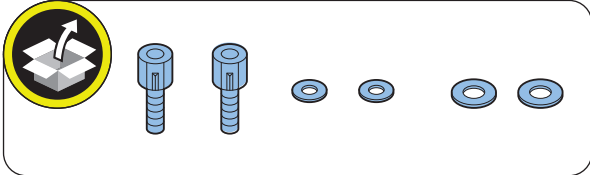




**2. Connect the CC-VI Cable to the Main Controller PCB**

1.

- 2 Hexagon Screws
- 2 Spring Washers (small)
- 2 Washers (Large)
- 1 Connector

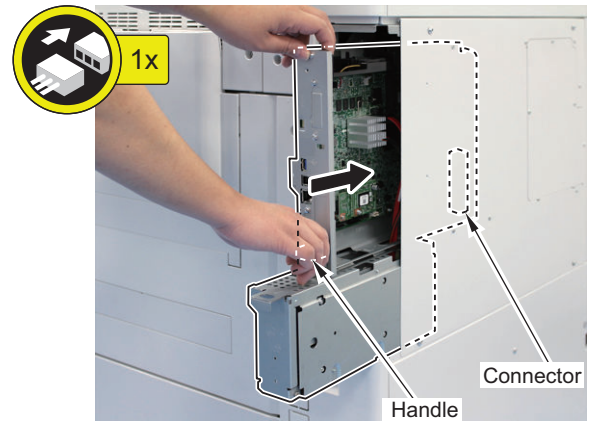


**■ Installing the Main Controller PCB 1**



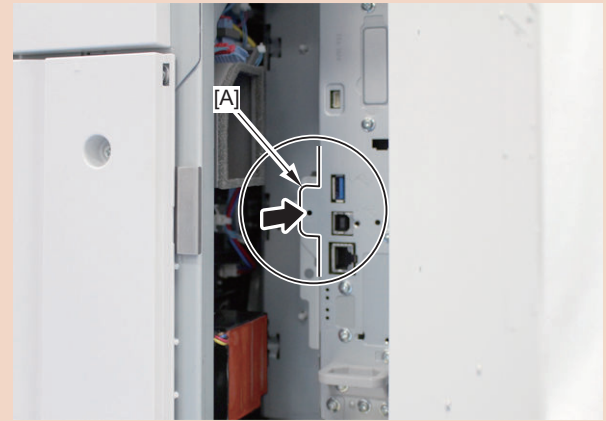
**1. Insert the Main Controller PCB 1 until it stops.**

- 1 Connector



**CAUTION:**

Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.

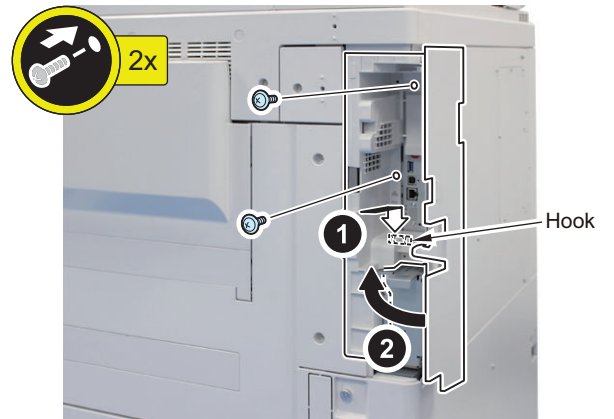
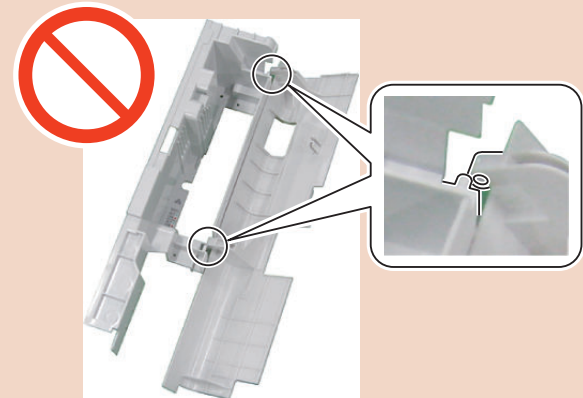


**2. Install the Side Cover, and then Close the Right Rear Cover 1.**

- 1 Hook
- 2 Screws

**CAUTION:**

Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.





3. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the power outlet.
4. Turn the main power switch ON.

# Voice Operation Kit-D1

## Points to Note Before Installation


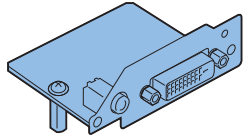
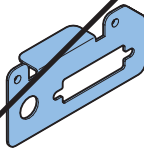
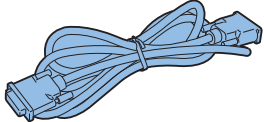
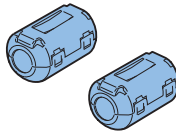
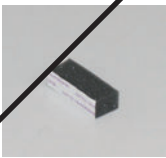
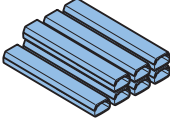

- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.
- When installing this equipment, the option Numeric Keypad is required. Refer to the Installation Procedure for the Numeric Keypad when installing the Numeric Keypad.
- Refer to "Combination of options" when installing this equipment before operation.

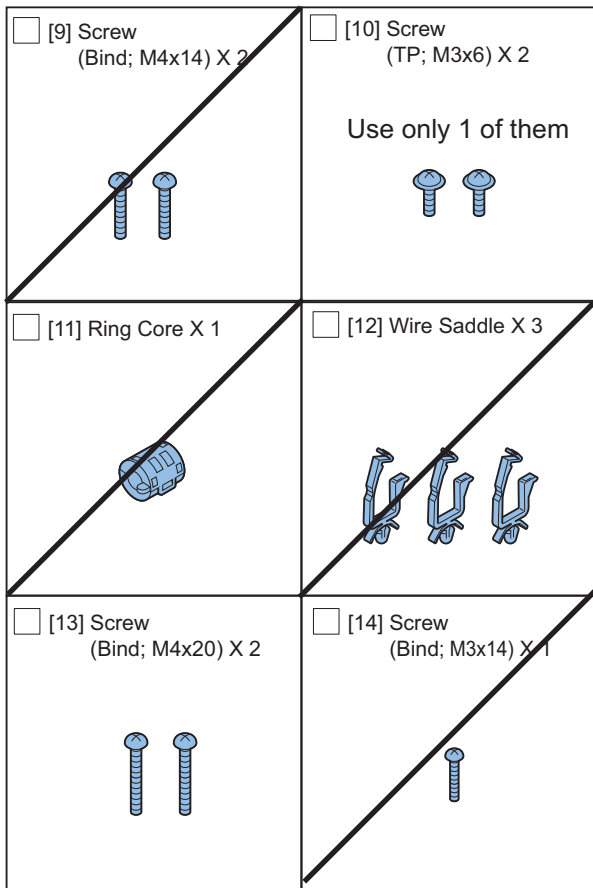
### Table of Options Combination

|                     | Copy Card Reader | Serial Inter-face Kit | Copy Control Interface Kit | Voice Guidance Kit | Utility Tray |
|---------------------|------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|--------------------|--------------|
| Voice Operation Kit | Yes              | Yes                   | Yes                        | No                 | No           |

Yes: Available, No: Unavailable

## Checking the Contents

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] Speaker Unit X 1<br>  | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] Voice Operation Board Unit X 1<br> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] Support Plate X 1<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] DVI Cable X 1<br>                  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [5] Ring Core X 2<br>    | <input type="checkbox"/> [6] Cable Face Seal X 1<br>           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [7] Cord Guide X 7<br>  | <input type="checkbox"/> [8] Card Spacer X 1<br>              |



[7]: Use 6 of them for the Flat Control Panel model.

[11]: This is used for the user installed option and should be handed over to the user.

<Others>

Including guides

## Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

### ⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

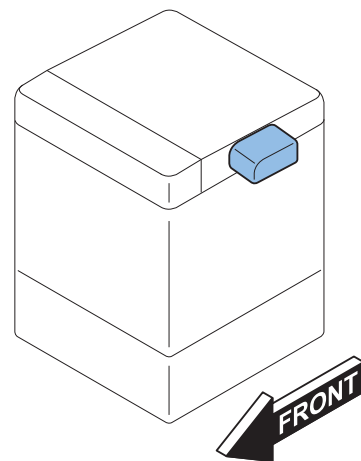
## Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

## Installation Outline Drawing

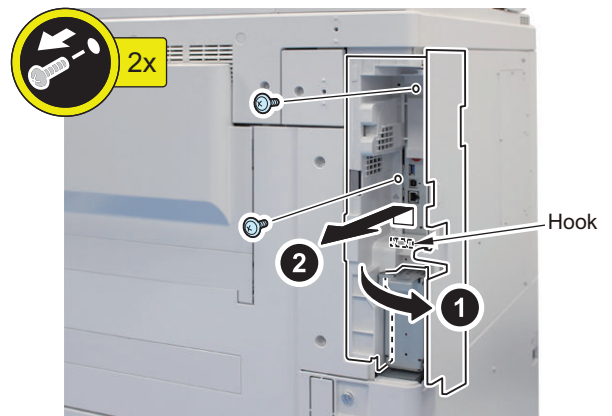


## Installation Procedure



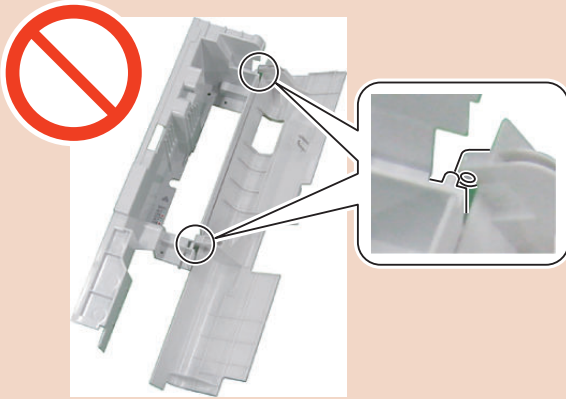
1. Open the Right Rear Cover 1, and then remove the Side Cover.

- 2 Screws
- 1 Hook



**CAUTION:**

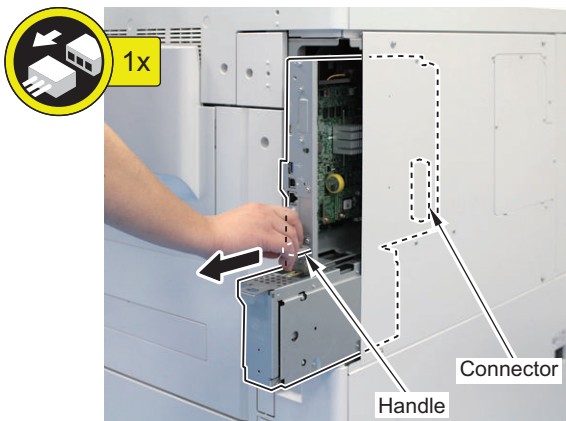
Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.



□

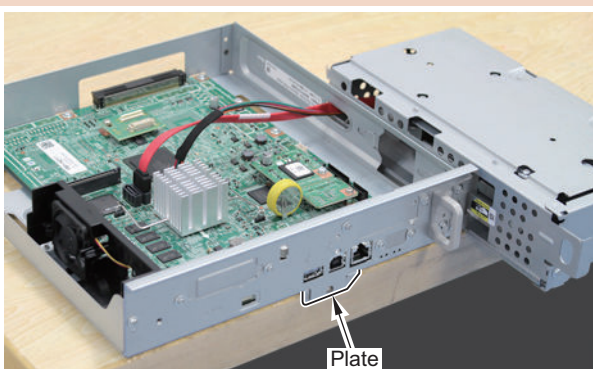
**2. Hold the handle to remove the Main Controller PCB 1.**

- 1 Connector



**CAUTION:**

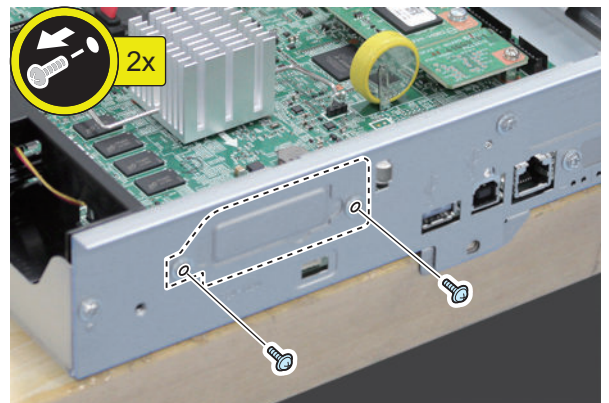
Be sure to place the removed Main Controller PCB 1 flatly. Reason: Due to the protruded plate, the PCB may be deformed if work is performed while it is placed at an angle.



□

**3. Remove the Face Plate. (The removed Face Plate will not be used.)**

- 2 Screws (The removed screws will be used at next step . )



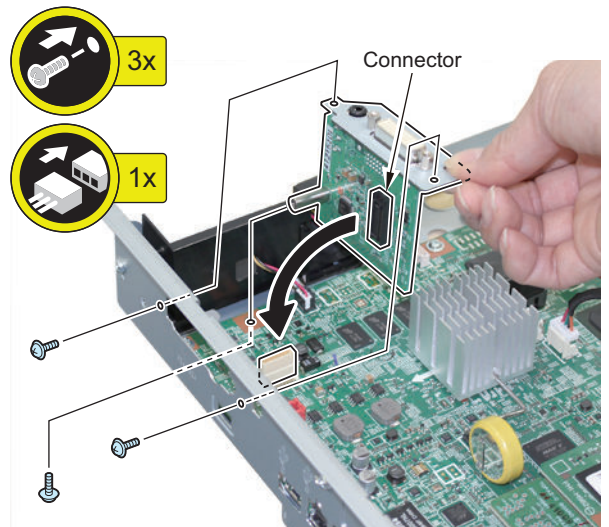
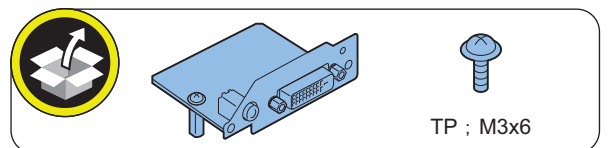
□

**4. Install the Voice Operation Board Unit to the Main Controller PCB 1.**

- 1 Connector
- 2 Screws (Use the screw removed at previous step)
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x6)

**NOTE:**

Check that the connector is connected properly.

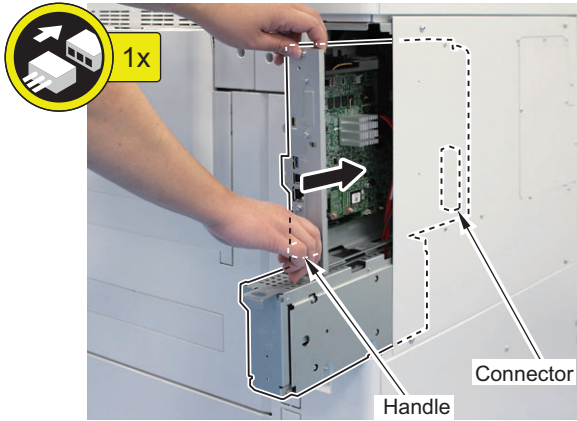






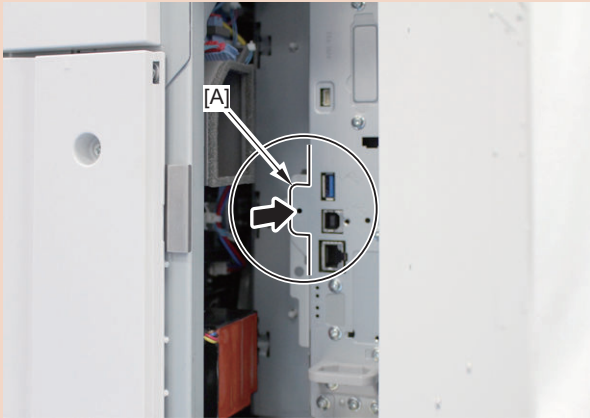
**5. Insert the Main Controller PCB 1 until it stops.**

- 1 Connector



**CAUTION:**

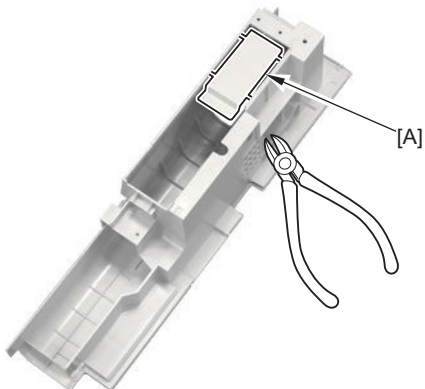
Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.



**6. Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.**

**NOTE:**

When cutting off the part, be sure not to make burrs .

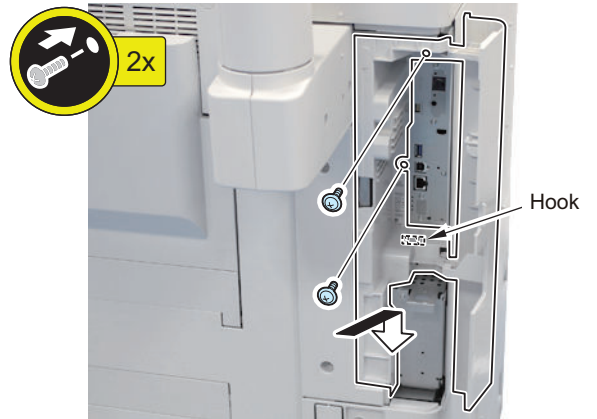
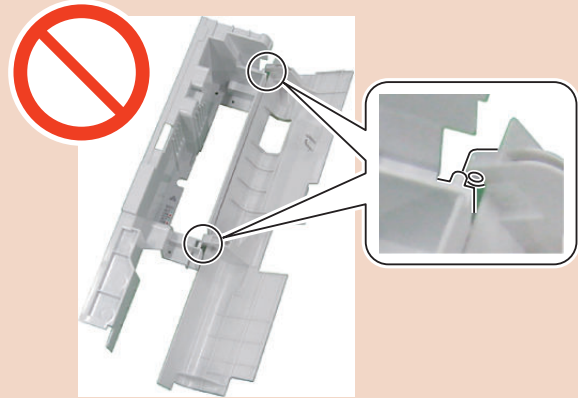


**7. Install the Side Cover.**

- 1 Hook
- 2 Screws

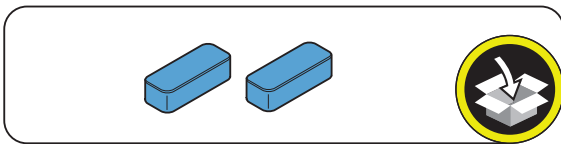
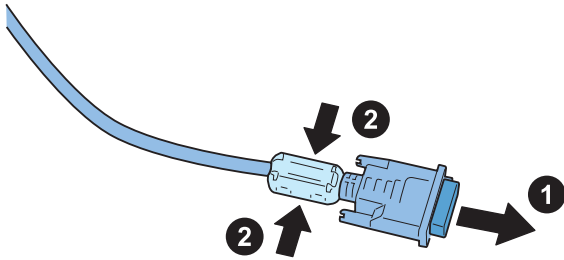
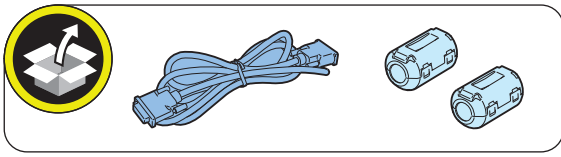
**CAUTION:**

Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.

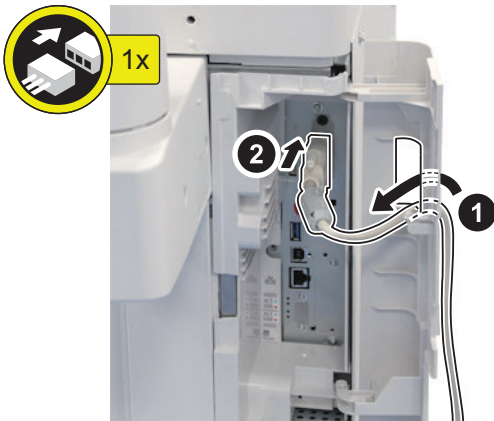




8. Attach the 2 Ring Cores to both ends of the DVI Cable and then remove caps from both ends.



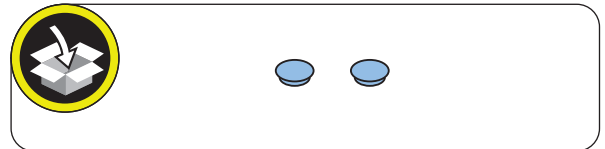
9. Pass the DVI Cable through the hole of the Side Cover, and connect the DVI Cable to the Voice Operation Board Unit.



10. Close the Right Rear Cover 1.



11. Remove the 2 Rubber Caps from the Right Upper Cover. (The removed Rubber Caps will not be used.)

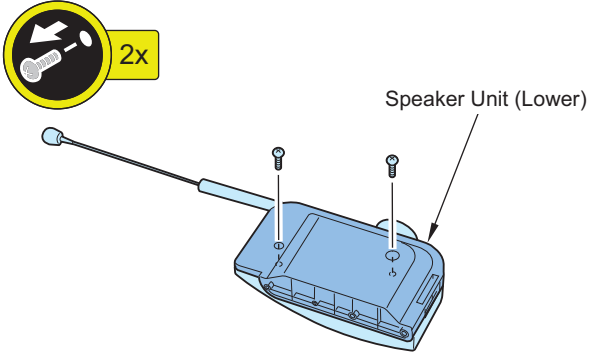
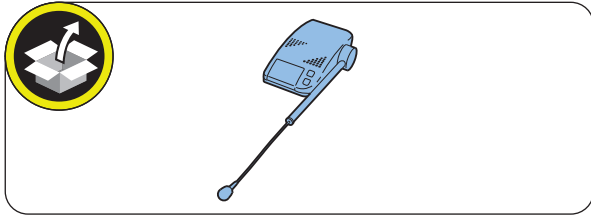




□

**12. Remove the Speaker Unit (Lower) from the Speaker Unit.**

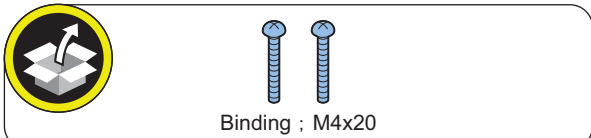
- 2 Screws (The removed screw will be used in step 14)



□

**13. Install the Speaker Unit (Lower).**

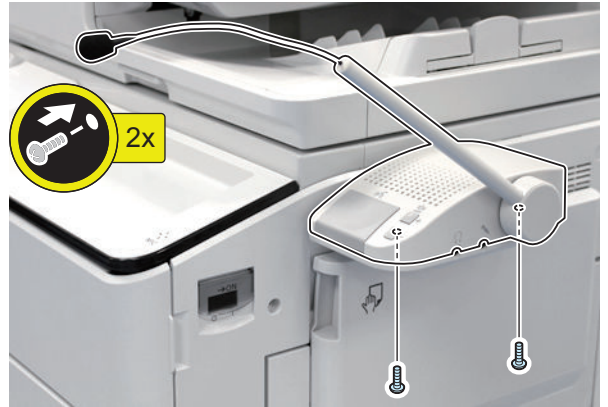
- 2 Screws (Binding; M4x20)



□

**14. Install the Speaker Unit (Upper).**

- 2 Screws (Use the screw removed in step 12.)



□

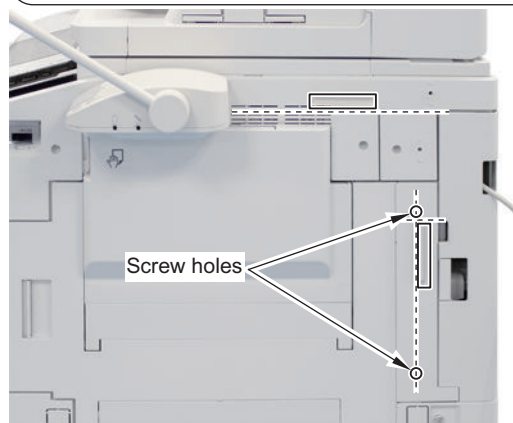
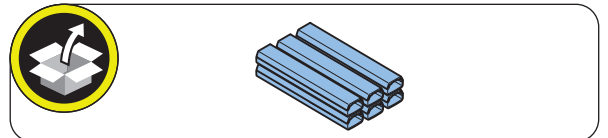
**15. Remove the cover of Cord Guide, and affix it to the area indicated in the figure.**

< In the Case of Flat Control Panel >

**NOTE:**

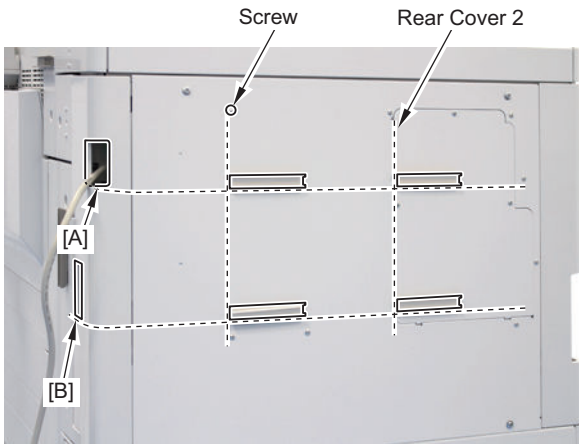
Even when this kit is used in combination with a Copy Card Reader, the positions to install the Cord Guides are the same.

- Use 6 Code Guides
- < Right side >



<Rear side>

**NOTE:**  
Be sure to affix them on the extension lines of [A] and [B].

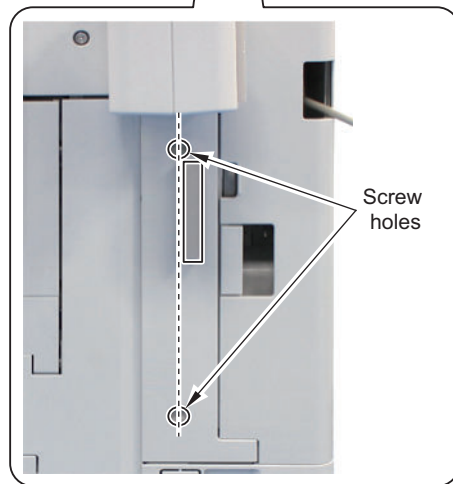
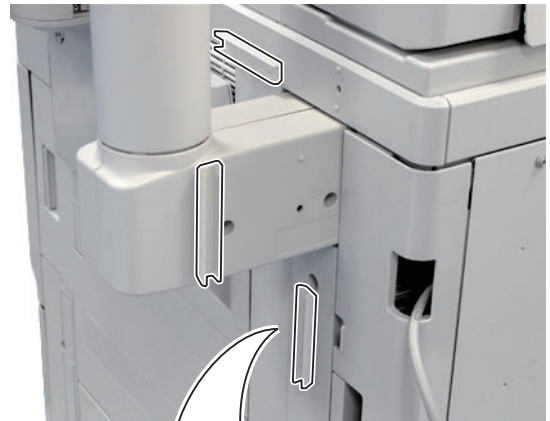
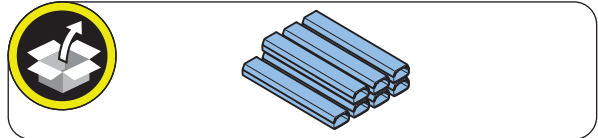


< In the Case of Upright Control Panel>

**NOTE:**  
Even when this kit is used in combination with a Copy Card Reader, the positions to install the Cord Guides are the same.

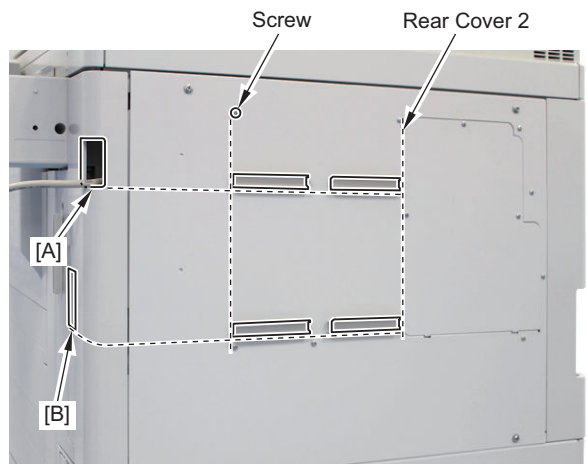
- Use 7 Cord Guides.

<Right side >



<Rear side >

**NOTE:**  
[Be sure to affix them on the extension lines of [A] and [B].



16. Connect the DVI Cable to the Speaker Unit.

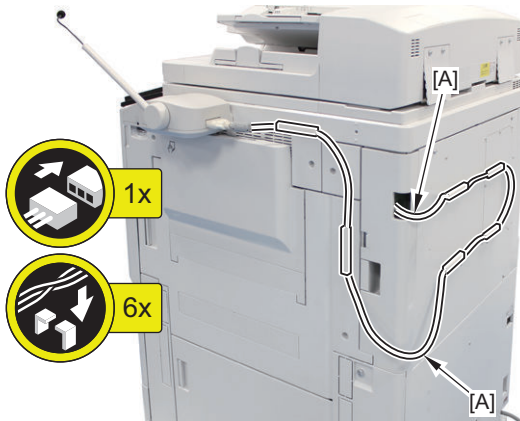
17. Put the Speaker Cable through the Cord Guide, and install the cover of the cord guide.

**CAUTION:**

Be sure to slack off [A] part for not interfering to open/close the Right Rear Cover<sup>1</sup>.

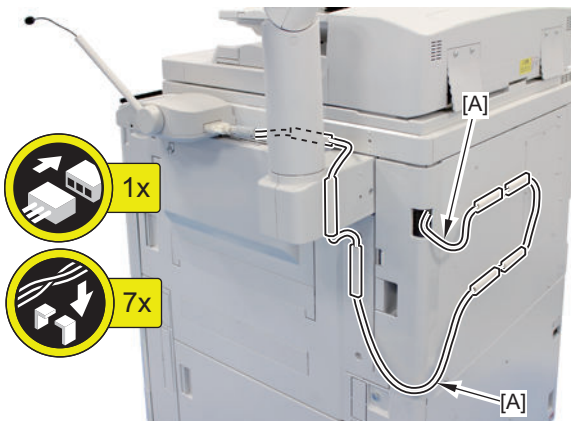
< In the Case of Flat Control Panel >

- Use 6 Cord Guides



< In the Case of Upright Control Panel >

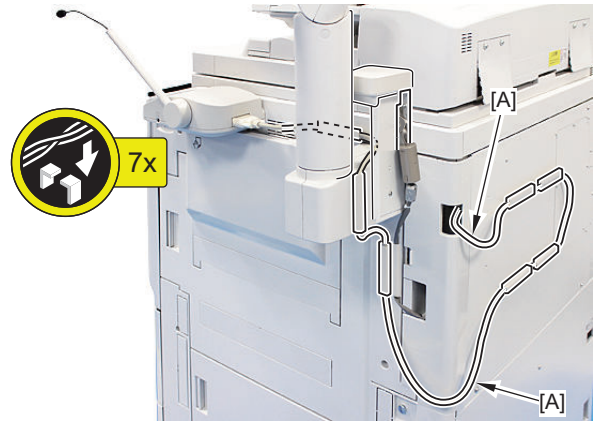
- Use 7 Cord Guides

**CAUTION:**

When using together with the Copy Card Reader

< In the Case of Upright Control Panel >

Be sure to pass the DVI cable between the Upright Arm and Card Reader Mounting Plate.



## Checking after Installation

**NOTE:**

When changing the settings upon user's request, it is required to log in as a system manager in accordance with instructions from the user administrator.



1. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the outlet.
2. Turn ON the main power switch.
3. Select Settings/Registration > Preferences > Accessibility > Voice Navigation Settings > Use Voice Navigation, and check that the setting is ON.
4. Select Settings/Registration > Preferences > Accessibility > Voice Navigation Settings > Voice Navigation at Startup, and check that "Select Mode at Startup" is set.
5. Select Settings/Registration > Preferences > Accessibility > Voice Navigation Settings, and check that "Tune Microphone" is displayed.

## Operation Check

### ■ When Starting to Use



1. Press the Guidance Start button or Voice Recognition button for 3 seconds or longer.

2. In "Select the Voice Navigation type." on the Control Panel screen, select "Manual + Vocal Mode", "Vocal Mode" or "Manual Mode", and press OK.
3. Once the indication on the screen is framed in red, the "Voice Operation Kit" becomes enabled.

**NOTE:**

When "Manual Mode" is selected in "Select the Voice Navigation type.", nothing happens by pressing the Voice Recognition button.

## ■ When Stopping to Use



1. Press the Guidance Start button or Voice Recognition button for 3 seconds or longer.

# Voice Guidance Kit-G1

## Points to Note at Installation

- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.
- When installing this equipment, the option Numeric Keypad is required. Refer to the Installation Procedure for the Numeric Keypad when installing the Numeric Keypad.
- When installing this equipment, be sure to install it by referring to "Table of Options Combination"

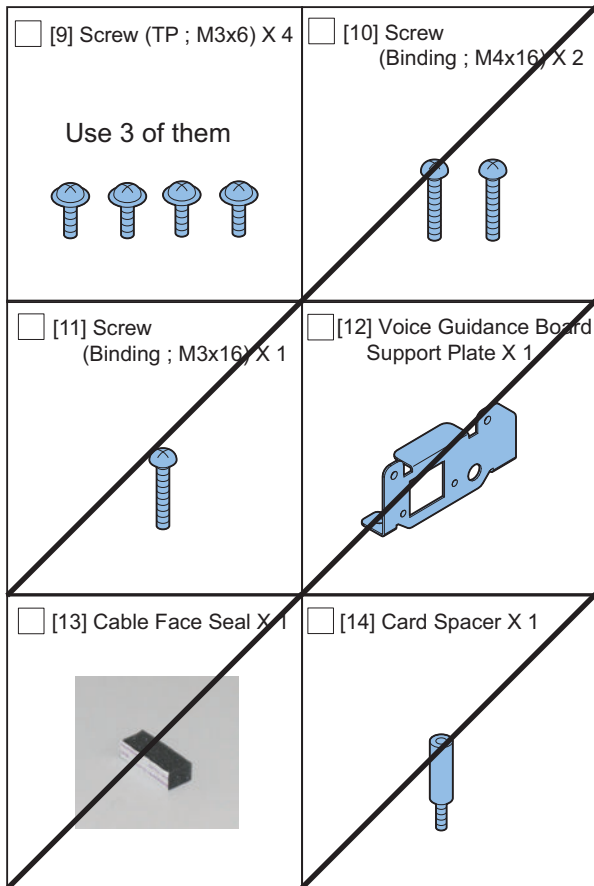
**Table of Options Combination**

|                    | Copy Card Reader | Serial Interface Kit | Copy Control Interface Kit | Voice Operation Kit | Utility Tray |
|--------------------|------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| Voice Guidance Kit | Yes              | Yes                  | Yes                        | No                  | No           |

Yes: Available, No: Unavailable

## Checking the Contents

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] Speaker Unit (Upper) X 1<br>        | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] Speaker Unit (Lower) X 1<br>    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] Voice Guidance Board Unit X 1<br>   | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] Speaker Cable X 1<br>           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [5] Cord Guide X 7<br>Use 4 of them<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [6] Ring Core X 2<br>               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [7] Screw (Binding ; M4x6) X 1<br>      | <input type="checkbox"/> [8] Screw (Binding ; M4x20) X 2<br> |



<Others>  
Including guides

## Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

### ⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

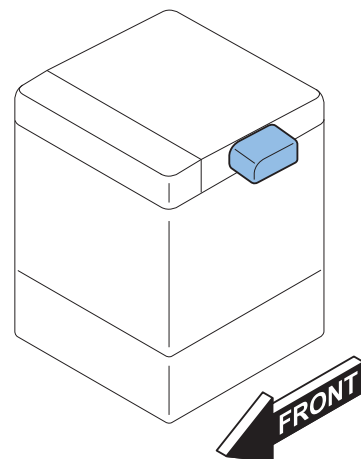
## Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

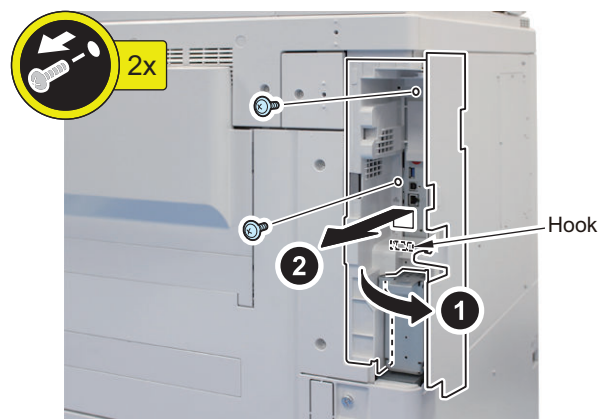
## Installation Outline Drawing



## Installation Procedure

1. Open the Right Rear Cover 1, and remove the Side Cover.

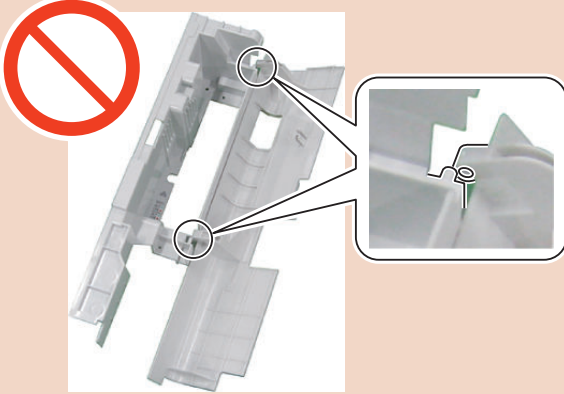
- 2 Screws
- 1 Hook





**CAUTION:**

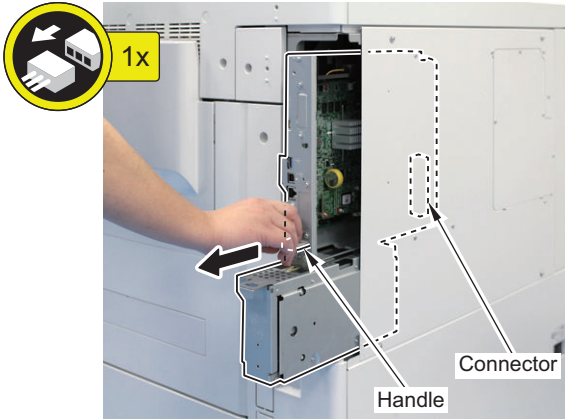
Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.



□

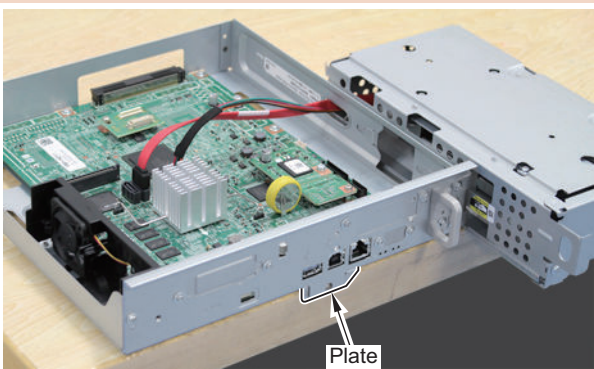
**2. Hold the handle to remove the Main Controller.**

- 1 Connector



**CAUTION:**

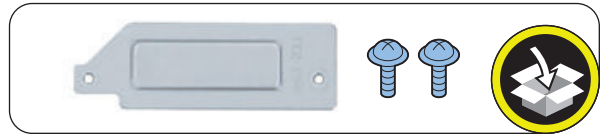
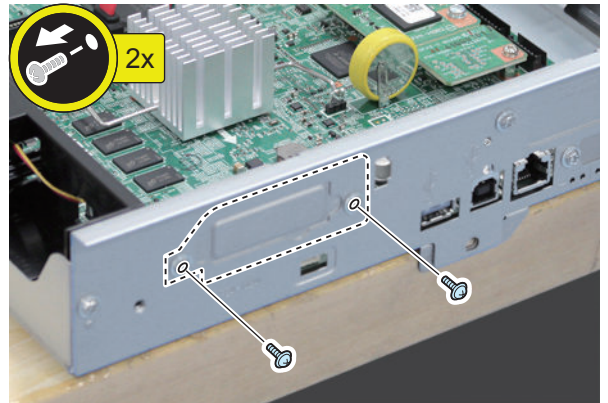
Be sure to place the removed Main Controller PCB 1 flatly. Reason: Due to the protruded plate, the PCB may be deformed if work is performed while it is placed at an angle.



□

**3. Remove the Face Plate (The removed Face Plate and screws will not be used.)**

- 2 screws

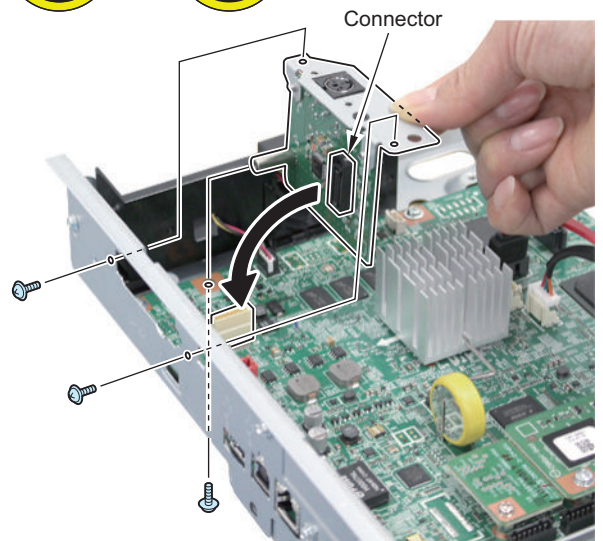
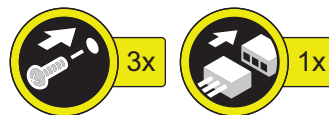
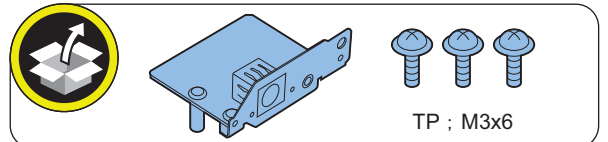


□

**4. Install the Voice Guidance Board Unit to the Main Controller PCB 1.**

- 1 Connector
- 3 Screws (TP; M3x6)

**NOTE:**  
Check that the connector is connected properly.

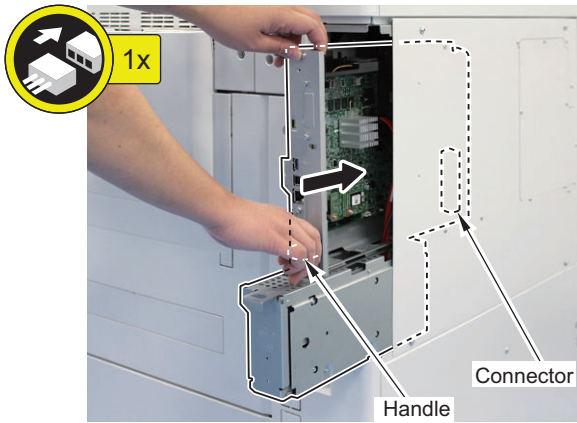






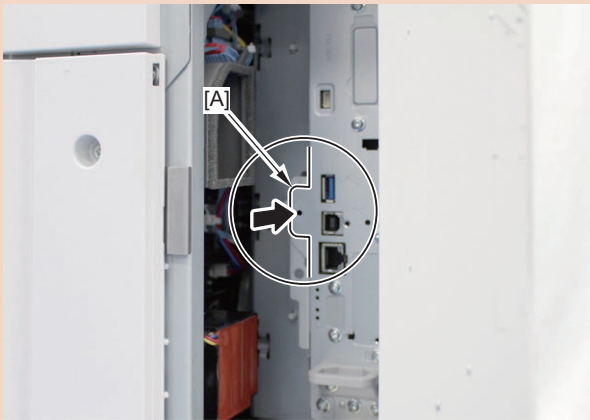
**5. Insert the Main Controller PCB 1 until it stops.**

- 1 Connector



**CAUTION:**

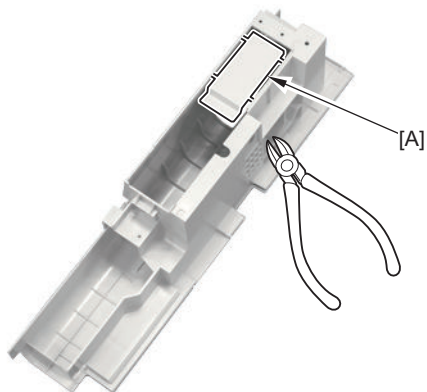
Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected.



**6. Cut off [A] part of the Side Cover with nippers.**

**NOTE:**

When cutting off the part, be sure not to make burrs.

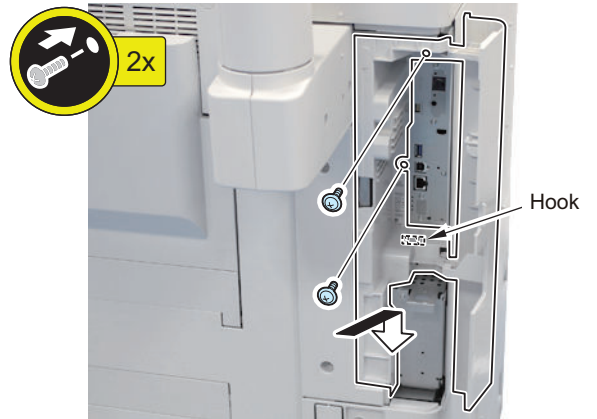
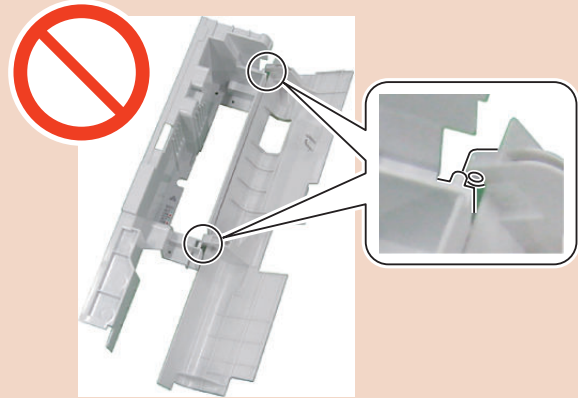


**7. Install the Side Cover.**

- 1 Hook
- 2 Screws

**CAUTION:**

Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.

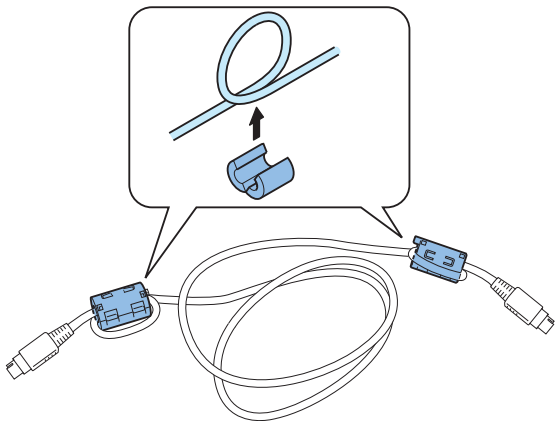
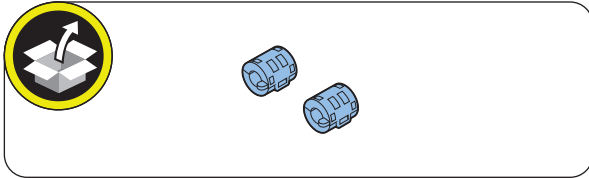




**8. Attach the 2 Ring Cores to both ends of the Speaker Cable.**

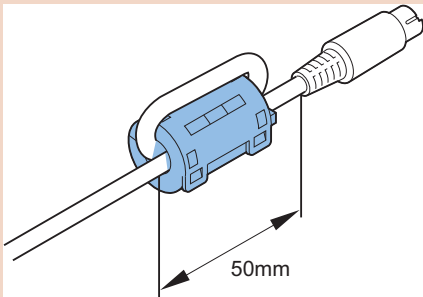
**NOTE:**

< In the Case of Upright Control Panel>  
 <In the Case of Upright Control Panel> When installing the Card Reader at the same time, be sure to install a Ring Core only to one end of the Speaker Cable.

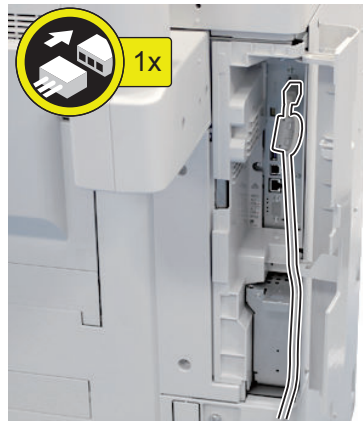


**CAUTION:**

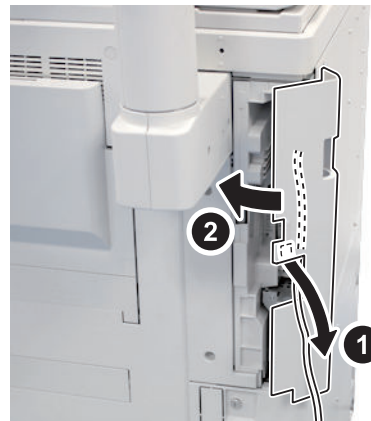
Be sure to attach the Ring Cores within 50mm from the end of the Speaker Cable.



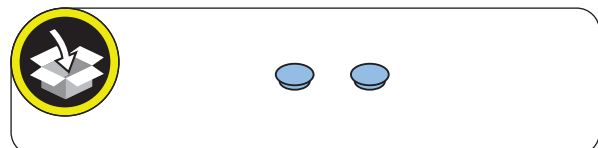
**9. Connect the Speaker Cable to the Voice Guidance Board Unit.**



**10. Retrieve the Speaker Cable from the position shown in the figure, and close the Right Rear Cover 1.**



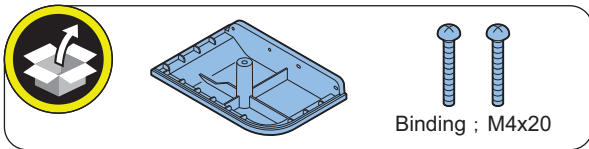
**11. Remove the 2 Rubber Caps from the Right Upper Cover. (The removed Rubber Caps will not be used.)**





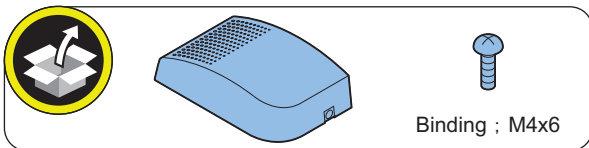
**12. Install the Speaker Unit (Lower).**

- 2 Screws (Binding; M4x20)



**13. Install the Speaker Unit (Upper).**

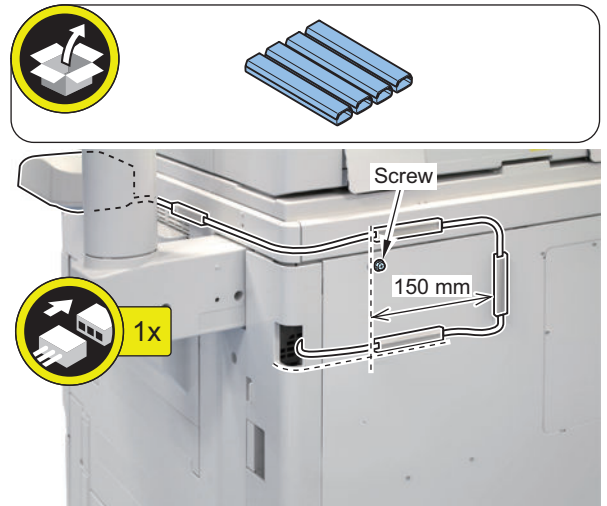
- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x6)



**14. Connect the Speaker Cable to the Speaker Unit.**

**15. Remove the 4 covers from the Cord Guides, and affix them as shown in the figure.**

**16. Pass the Speaker Cable through the Cord Guides, and fit the 4 covers on the Cord Guides.**

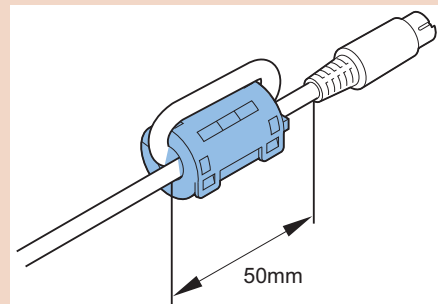


**NOTE:**  
When using together with the Copy Card Reader

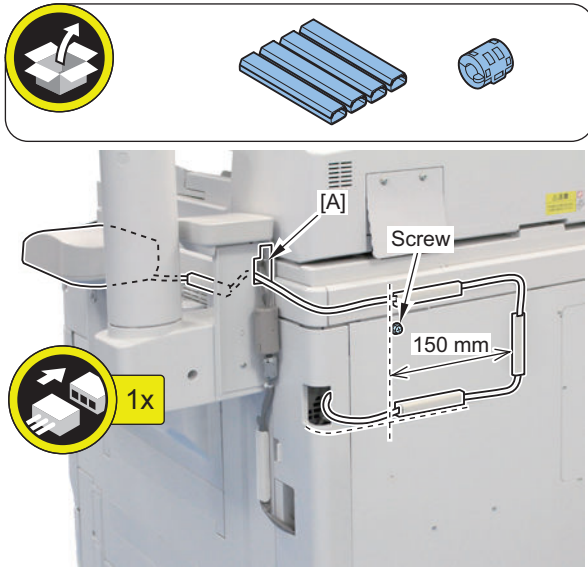
< In the Case of Upright Control Panel >

1. Pass the Speaker Cable through the [A] part, install the Ring Core to the cable, and then connect the cable to the Speaker Unit.

**CAUTION:**  
Be sure to attach the Ring Cores within 50mm from the end of the Speaker Cable.

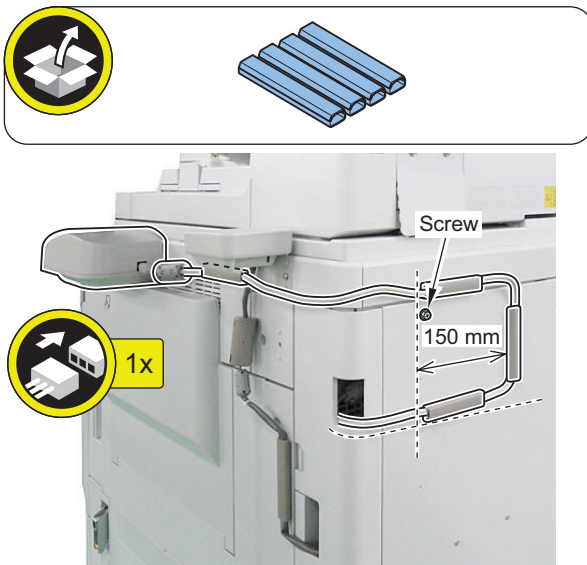


2. Remove the 4 covers from the Cord Guides, and affix them as shown in the figure.
3. Pass the Speaker Cable through the Cord Guides, and fit the 4 covers on the Cord Guides.



< In the Case of Flat Control Panel >

1. Connect the Speaker Cable to the Speaker Unit.
2. Remove the 4 covers from the Cord Guides, and affix them as shown in the figure.
3. Pass the Speaker Cable through the Cord Guides, and fit the 4 covers on the Cord Guides.



3. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Accessibility] > [Voice Navigation Settings] > [Use Voice Navigation], and check that the setting is [ON].
4. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Accessibility] > [Voice Navigation Settings] > [Voice Guide from Speakers], and check that the setting is ON.

## Operation Check

### NOTE:

Perform the following check from the Voice Recognition button on the numeric keypad.

### ■ When Using



1. Press the Voice Guidance Start button.
2. Once the indication on the screen is framed in red, the "Voice Guidance Kit" becomes enabled.

### ■ When Stopping to Use



1. Press the Voice Guidance Start button.

## Checking after Installation

### NOTE:

When changing the settings upon user's request, it is required to log in as a system manager in accordance with instructions from the user administrator.



1. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the power outlet.
2. Turn the main power switch ON.

## HDD-related Option

### Pre-checks

#### Points to Note at Installation

**CAUTION:**

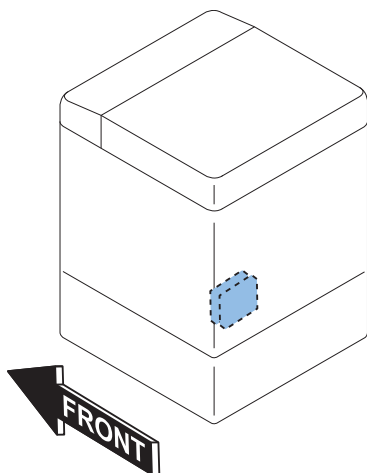
- For TYPE2 to TYPE3, be sure to perform the procedure of each TYPE after performing "Removing the HDD Box Unit" on page 1626.
- When using the mirroring function, be sure to install 2 HDDs of the same capacity.
- The HDD needs to be initialized after replacing the large capacity HDD.
- When replacing a HDD that contains user information with a high-capacity HDD (which is not an initial installation), backup and export of HDD data are necessary. For details, refer to "Backup Data" in the Service Manual.

When installing the HDD-related options (the following 3 products), refer to pages described below.

- 2.5inch/250GB HDD-N1
- 2.5inch/1TB HDD-P1
- HDD Mirroring Kit-J1

| Title  | Combination of Product   |
|--------|--|
| TYPE-1 | "[TYPE-1] Option HDD (1TB)" on page 1629   |
| TYPE-2 | "Removing the HDD Box Unit" on page 1626 + "[TYPE-2] Standard HDD + Option HDD (250GB) + HDD Mirroring Kit" on page 1632 |
| TYPE-3 | "Removing the HDD Box Unit" on page 1626 + "[TYPE-3] 2 Option HDDs (1TB) + HDD Mirroring Kit" on page 1638               |

#### Installation Outline Drawing



#### Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

**WARNING:**

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

#### Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.  
 COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

### Removing the HDD Box Unit

**CAUTION:**

- For [TYPE-1 Option HDD (1TB)], this procedure is not necessary. For other TYPES, be sure to proceed to each installation procedure after performing this procedure.
- The removed screws will be used again in the installation procedure of each TYPE.



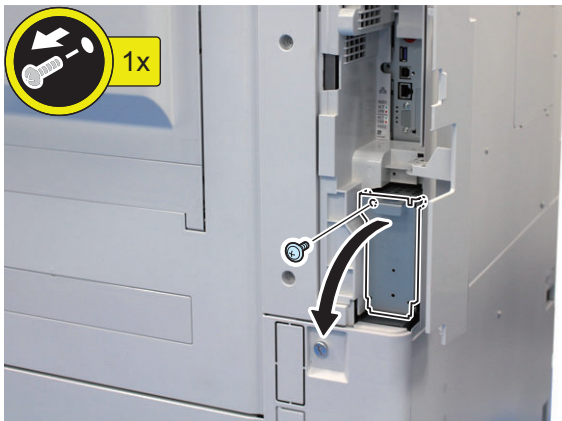


**1. Open the Right Rear Cover 1.**



**2. Open the HDD Lid.**

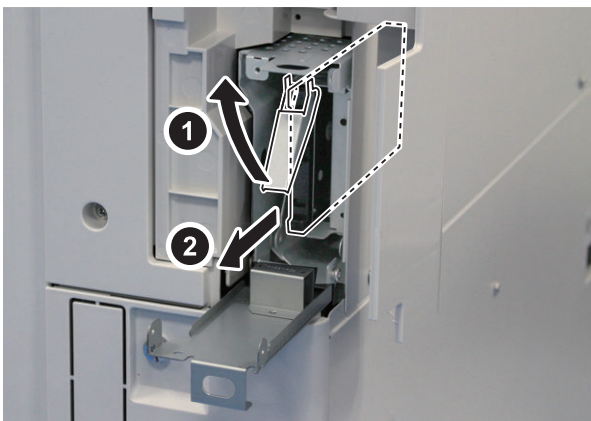
- 1 Screw



**3. Remove the HDD.**

**NOTE:**

When replacing with the Option HDD (1TB), the removed HDD will not be used.



**4. Close the HDD Lid.**

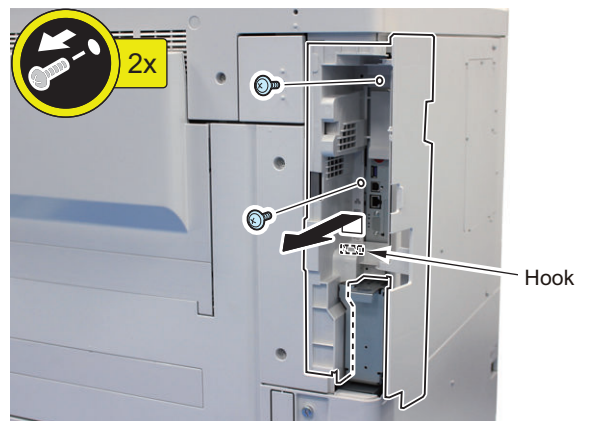
**NOTE:**

Do not tighten the screw here.



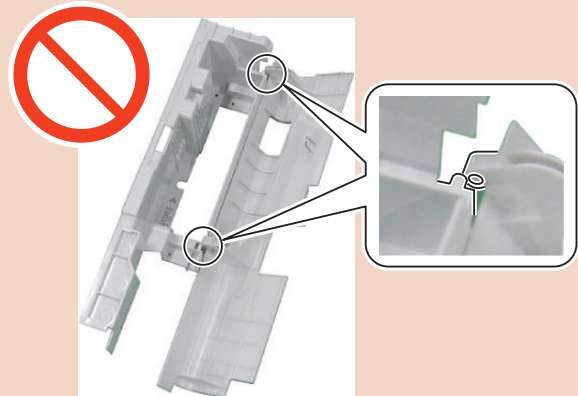
**5. Remove the Side Cover.**

- 2 Screws
- 1 Hook



**CAUTION:**

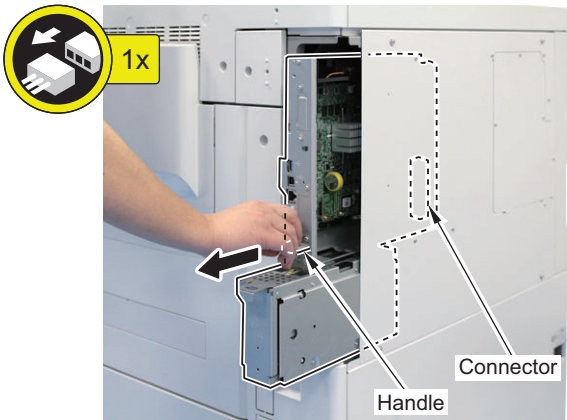
Be careful not to let the 2 bosses of the Side Cover come off from the 2 mounting holes of the Right Rear Cover 1.





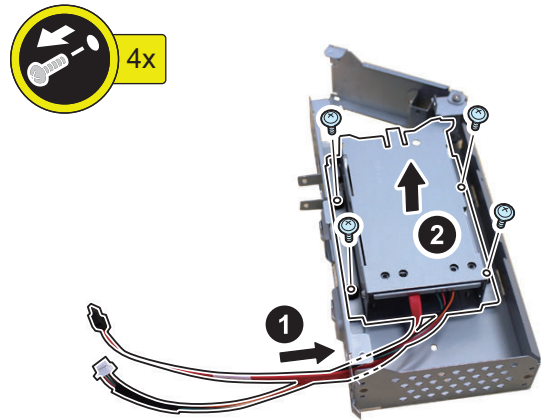
**6. Hold the handle, and remove the Main Controller 1.**

- 1 Connector



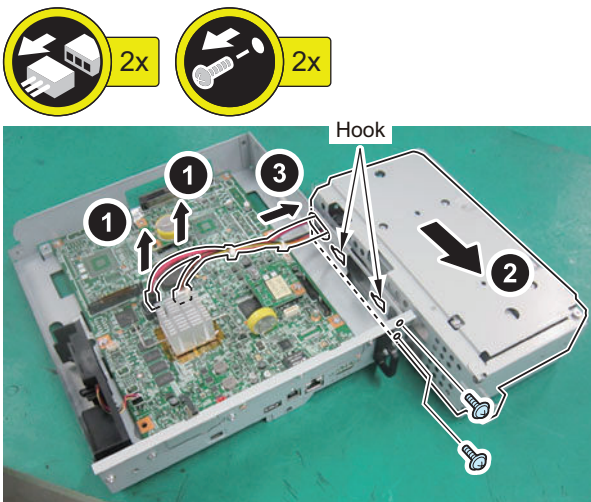
**9. Remove the HDD Unit.**

- 4 Screws



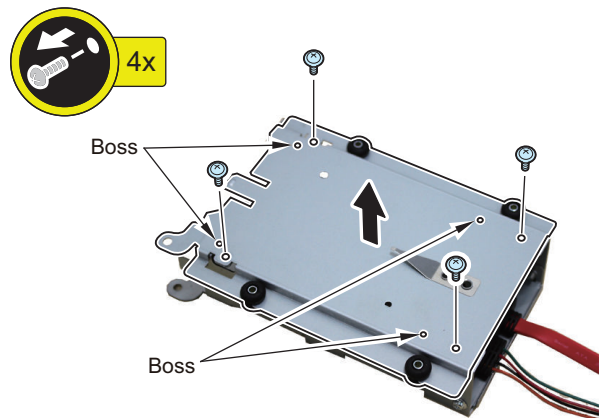
**7. Remove the HDD Box Unit.**

- 2 Connectors
- 2 Screws
- 2 Hooks



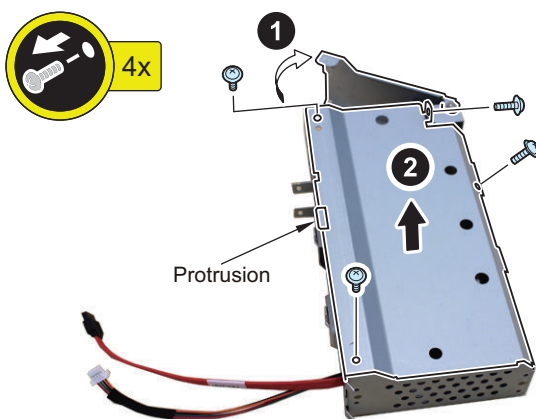
**10. Remove the HDD Side Cover.**

- 4 Screws
- 4 Bosses



**8. Open the HDD Lid, and remove the HDD Outside Cover.**

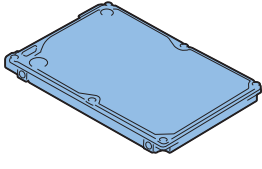
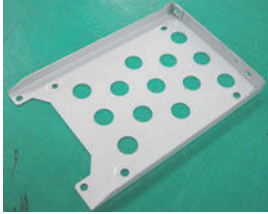


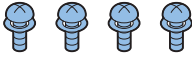

- 4 Screws
- 1 Protrusion





## [TYPE-1] Option HDD (1TB)

### ■ Checking the Contents

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] HDD X 1<br>                   | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] HDD Case X 1<br>                      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] HDD Holder Hinge X 1<br>      | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] HDD Case Hinge Base X 1<br>           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screw (Sems ; M3x4) X 4<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [6] Screw (P Tightening ; M3x8) X 2<br> |

### ■ Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

#### **WARNING:**

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

### ■ Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.  
If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message. COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

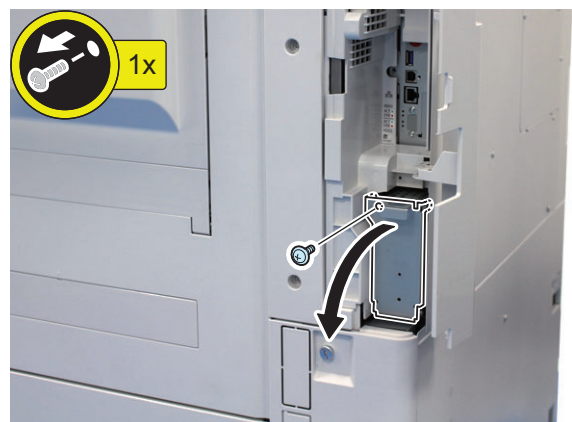
### ■ Installation Procedure

1. Open the Right Rear Cover 1.



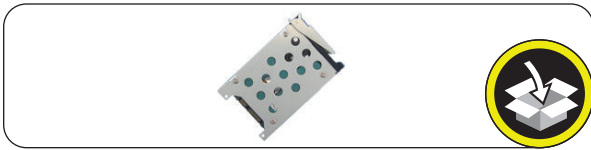
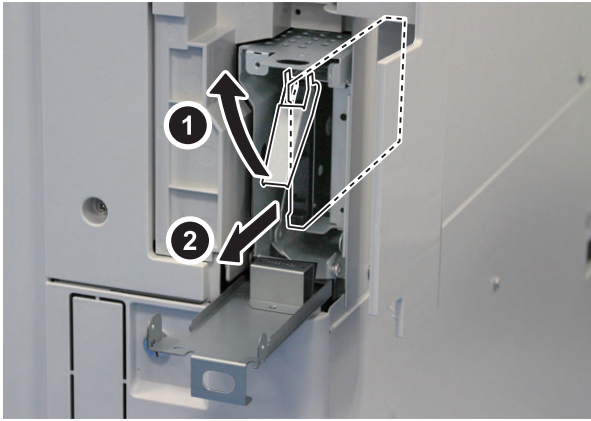
2. Open the HDD Lid.

- 1 Screw (will be used in step 7)



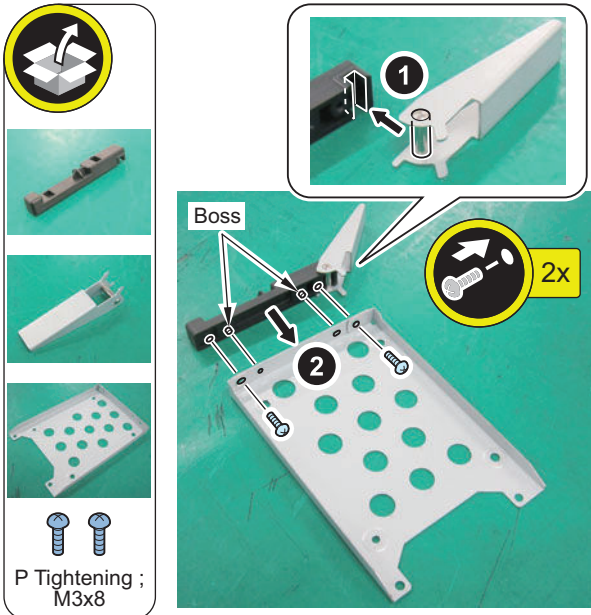


3. Remove the HDD. (The removed HDD will not be used.)



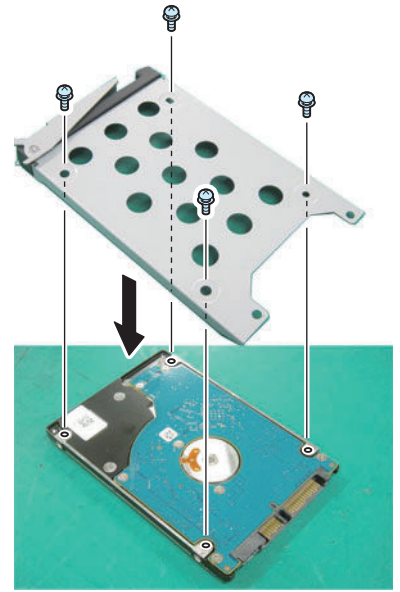
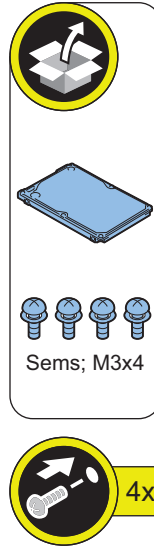
4. Fit the Hinge Pin of the HDD Holder Hinge with the groove of the HDD Case Hinge Base to install it to the HDD Case.

- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (P Tightening; M3x8)

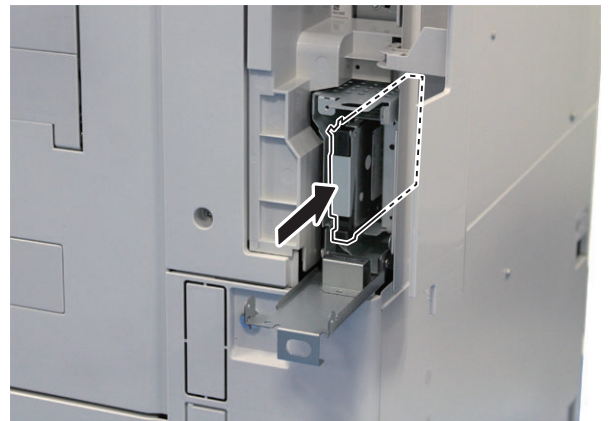


5. Install the assembled HDD Case to the HDD.

- 4 Screws (Sems; M3x4)

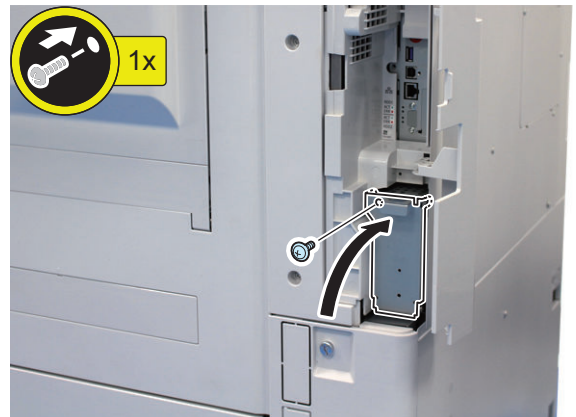


6. Install the Option HDD to the host machine.



7. Close the HDD Lid.

- 1 Screw (screws removed in step 2)





### 8. Close the Right Rear Cover 1.



## ■ HDD Initialization Procedure

### 1. Requirements

1. PC  
Service Support Tool in the version that supports this host machine must be installed.
2. Cross Ethernet Cable (when SST is used)

### 2. Preparing for the Installation of the System Software of Host machine

1. If both PC and the machine are on, turn them off.
2. Connect the PC and the host machine using an Cross Ethernet cable. (when SST is used)
3. Turn on the PC.

### 3. Registering the system software

1. Insert the latest System Software into the PC using the SST.
2. Start the SST.
3. Click 'Register Firmware'.
4. Select the drive where the system software has been inserted, and click the [SEARCH] button.
5. Click the [REGISTER] button.
6. Click [OK].

### 4. Initializing HDD

<In case of SST>

1. Start the host machine with download mode in safe mode.
2. Start the SST.
3. Select the model. Then, select [Single] and click [Start].
4. Click [Format HDD].
5. Select [All], and click [Start].
6. Click [Execute Format].
7. The Format is executed.
8. Select [Shutdown/Restart], and click [Shutdown].
9. Click [OK]
10. The power of the host machine is turned OFF.
11. Terminate the SST.
12. Disconnect the Cross Ethernet Cable from the machine, and connect the user's network cable to the machine.

<In case of USB flash drive>

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the PC.
2. Start up SST, and click the USB icon displayed in the target selection screen.
3. Select the drive, the model series, and the version to be written to the USB flash drive, and click [Confirm].
4. Click [Start], and after the version has been written to the USB flash drive, click [OK] and then remove the USB flash drive.
5. Terminate the SST.
6. Connect the USB flash drive to the host machine, and start the host machine with download mode in safe mode.
7. When the USB menu is displayed, press keys on the Control Panel in the order shown below.
  - [4]: Clear/Format
  - [1]: Disk Format
  - [0]: OK
  - Press any keys.
  - [C]: Return to menu
  - [Reset] : Start shutdown sequence
  - [0]: OK (The power of the host machine is turned OFF automatically.)
8. Remove the USB flash drive.
9. Turn ON the main power switch.

## ■ Executing Auto Gradation Adjustment

When the high-capacity HDD is installed, the machine initializes its HDD, resetting the data used for auto gradation correction.

Therefore, execute full adjustment of auto gradation adjustment after installing the high-capacity HDD to enable proper images to be output.

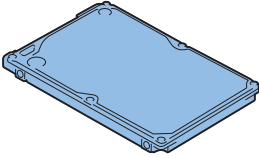



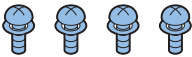

## ■ Execution of the Minimum Installation Work

Be sure to execute the minimum installation work in accordance with the Setup Guide because HDD is initialized when the high-capacity HDD is installed.

# [TYPE-2] Standard HDD + Option HDD (250GB) + HDD Mirroring Kit

## ■ Checking the Contents

<Option HDD (250 GB)>

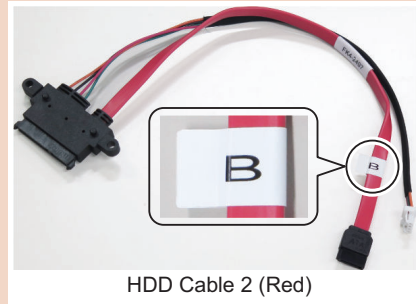
|   |   |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] HDD X 1<br>                   | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] HDD Case X 1<br>                      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] HDD Holder Hinge X 1<br>      | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] HDD Case Hinge Base X 1<br>           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screw (Sems ; M3x4) X 4<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [6] Screw (P Tightening ; M3x8) X 2<br> |





<HDD Mirroring Kit>

**CAUTION:**

Although the red cable shown below may sometimes be supplied in lieu of the HDD Cable 2 (Blue), the procedure for connecting the red cable is the same as that for the blue cable.

When connecting the cable to the Controller PCB, make sure to first confirm that the sticker [B] is attached to the cable and then connect the cable to the Controller PCB.



|  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] HDD Cable 2 (Blue) X 1<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] HDD Connector Support Plate X 1<br> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] Screw (TP; M3x6) X 2<br>  | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] Screw (TP; M3x8 Black) X 2<br>     |

<Others>

- Guides are included



## ■ Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

### ⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

## ■ Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

## ■ Installation Procedure

### CAUTION:

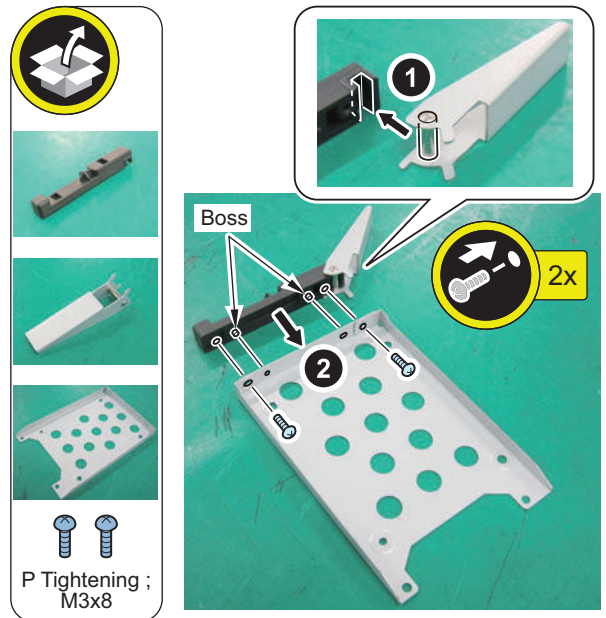
Be sure to perform "[Removing the HDD Box Unit](#)" on page 1626" before performing the following work.

## ● Assembling and Installing the Option



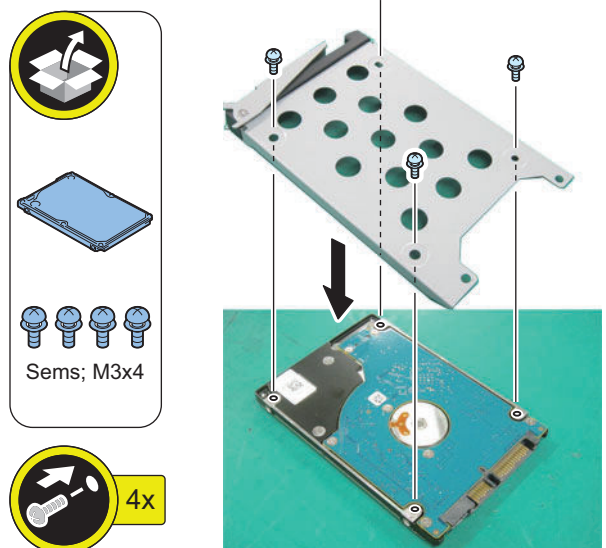
1. Fit the Hinge Pin of the HDD Holder Hinge with the groove of the HDD Case Hinge Base to install it to the HDD Case.

- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (P Tightening; M3x8)



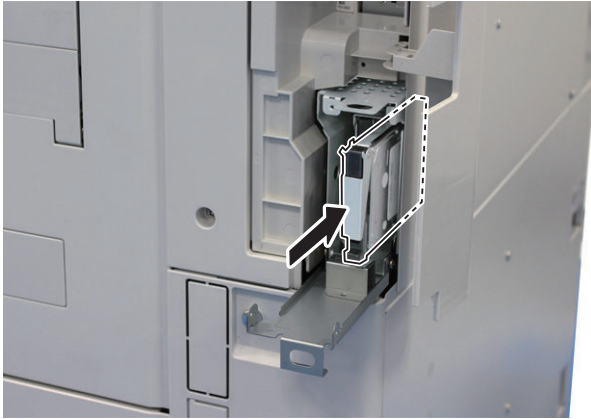
2. Install the assembled HDD Case to the HDD.

- 4 Screws (Sems; M3x4)



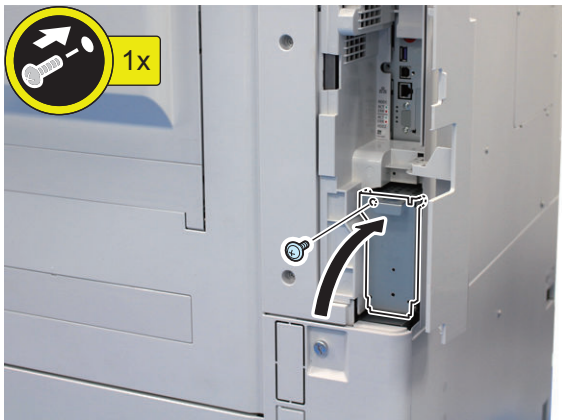


**3. Install the Option HDD to the Slot 2 (Right).**



**4. Close the HDD Lid.**

- 1 Screw (Use the removed screws)



**5. Close the Right Rear Cover 1.**

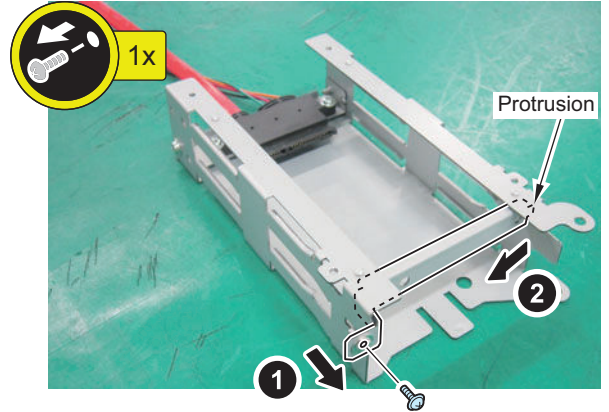


**■ Installing the HDD Mirroring Kit**



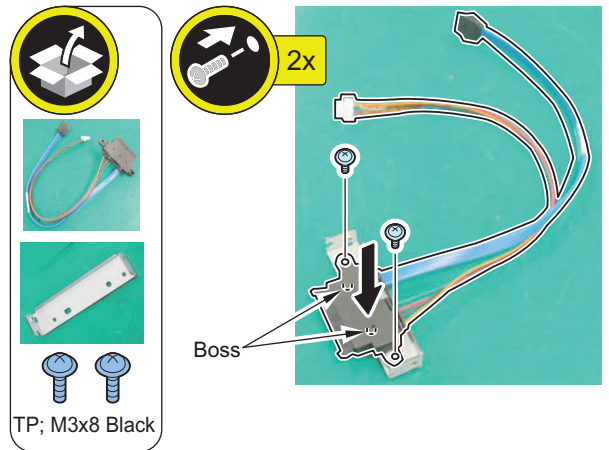
**1. Remove the HDD Wrong Insertion Prevention Plate. (The removed parts will not be used.)**

- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion



**2. Assemble the HDD Cable 2 (Blue or Red) and the HDD Connector Support Plate.**

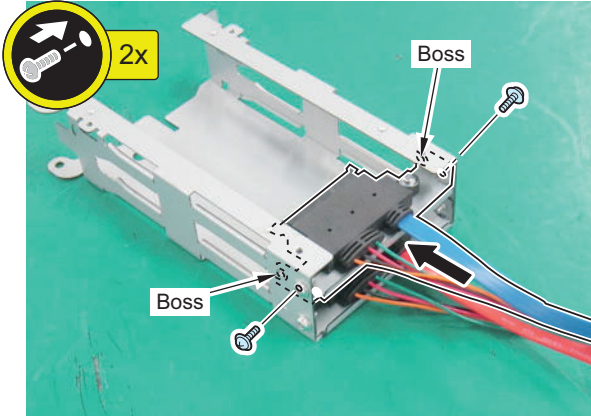
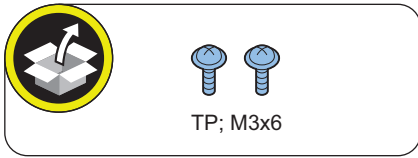
- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (TP; M3x8 Black)





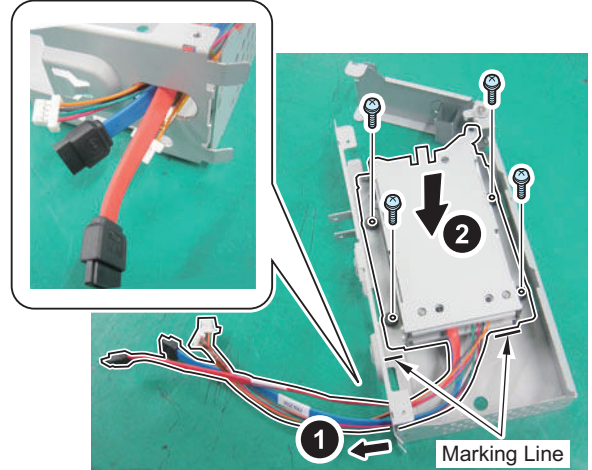
**3. Install the assembled HDD Cable 2 Unit to the HDD Unit.**

- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (TP; M3x6)



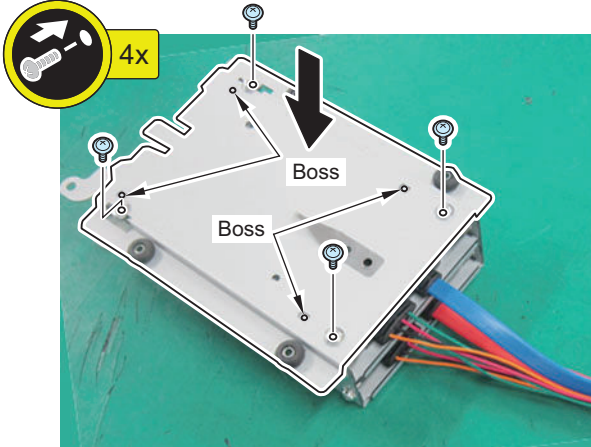
**5. Put the 4 cables through the hole, and install the HDD Unit according to the marking lines.**

- 4 Screws (Use the removed screws)



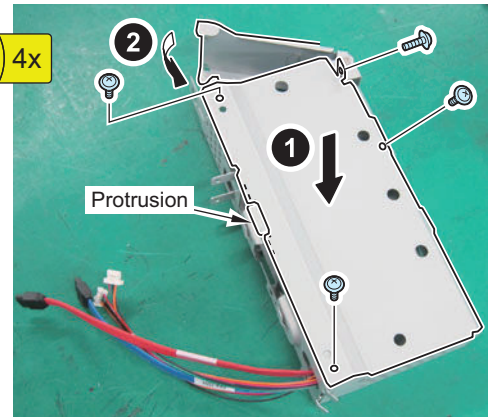
**4. Installing the HDD Side Cover.**

- 4 Bosses
- 4 Screws (Use the removed screws)



**6. Install the HDD Outside Cover, and close the HDD Lid.**

- 1 Protrusion
- 4 Screws (Use the removed screws)

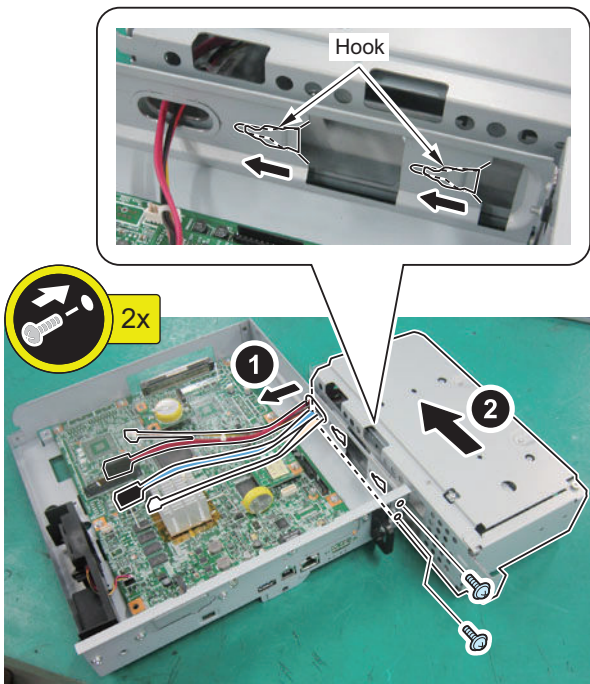






**7. Put the 4 cables through the hole, and install the HDD Box Unit.**

- 2 Hooks
- 2 Screws (Use the removed screws)



**CAUTION:**

Be sure to connect the communication cable to the correct port. The HDD error occurs.

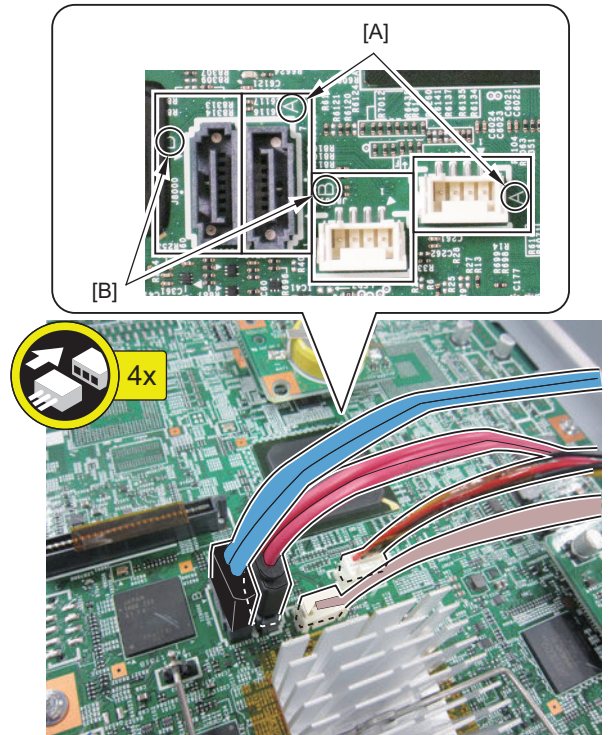
**8. Connect the HDD Cable 1 (Red) to [A] on the Controller PCB.**

- 2 Connectors

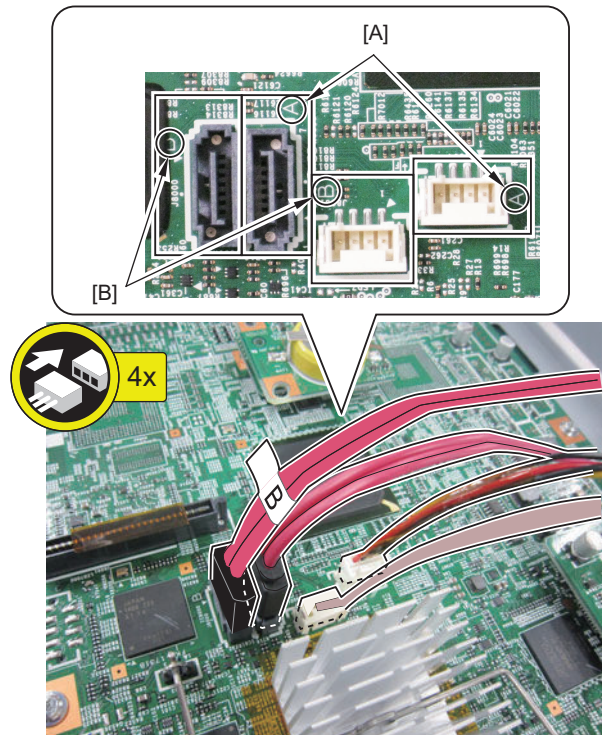
**9. Connect the HDD Cable 2 (Blue) or the HDD Cable 2 (Red) with a sticker labeled [B] to [B] on the Controller PCB.**

- 2 Connectors

< When using the HDD Cable 2 (Blue) >



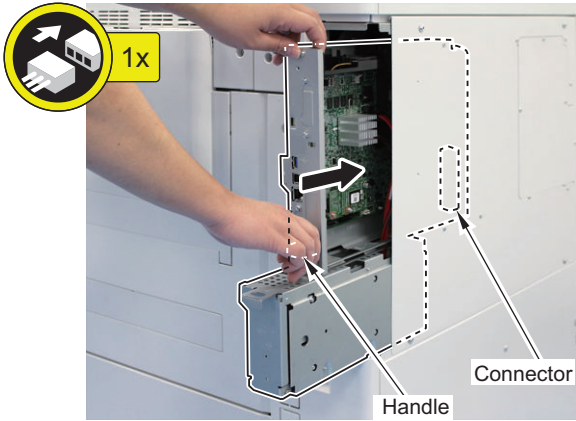
< When using the HDD Cable 2 (Red) >





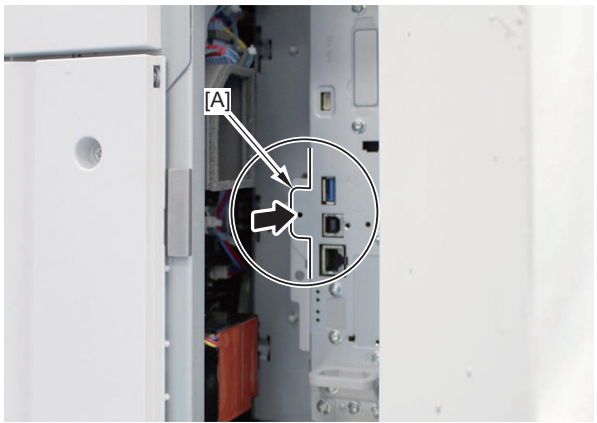
**10. Insert the Main Controller PCB 1 until it stops.**

- 1 Connector



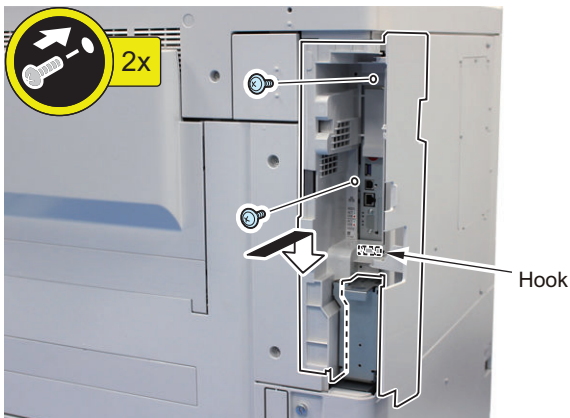
**CAUTION:**

Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.

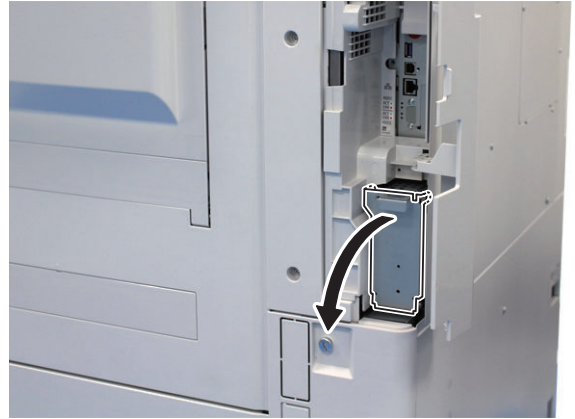


**11. Install the Side Cover. Do not close the Right Rear Cover 1 yet here.**

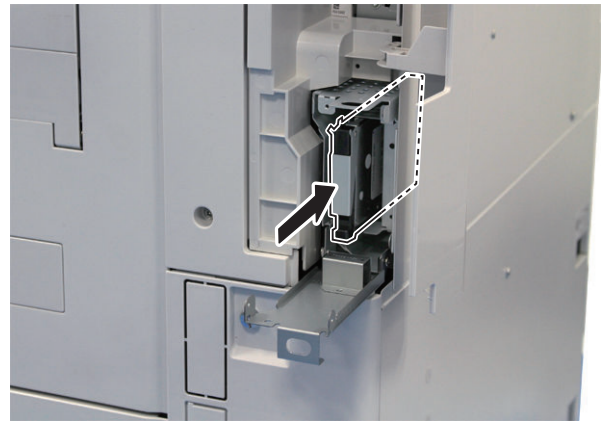
- 1 Hook
- 2 Screws



**12. Open the HDD Lid.**



**13. Return the HDD removed from the host machine to the Slot 1 (Left).**



**■ Setting the Mirroring**



1. Set the setting value for the mirroring to "1" in the following service mode.  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
2. Turn OFF/ON the main power of the host machine to enable the setting value.
3. Make sure that the UI screen is activated correctly.
4. Open the Cover, and make sure that the LED blinks.

**NOTE:**

Rebuilding starts approximately after 3 minutes after turning OFF and then ON the power.

- HDD 1 (Slot 1): The green LED blinks.
- HDD 2 (Slot 2): The green and red LEDs blink.

**CAUTION:**

Rebuild process starts after setting "1" for W/RAID. If an error occurs during the rebuild process at the initial installation the hard disk needs to be replaced. (Call service rep.), reexecute the process with the following procedure.

1. Check that the lighting red LED is HDD2.
2. Select "0" for the following service mode.  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
3. To enable the setting value, turn OFF/ON the Main Power Supply Switch of the host machine.
4. Select "1" for the following service mode.  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
5. To enable the setting value, turn OFF/ON the Main Power Supply Switch of the host machine.

The foregoing procedure is limited to the rebuild process at the initial installation.

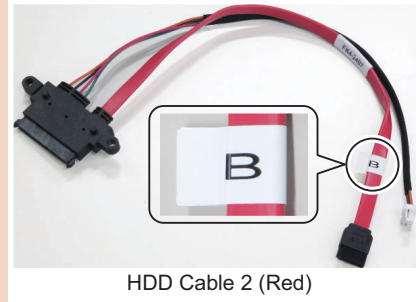
An error during the rebuild process that is executed during operation is not included in the consideration.

<HDD Mirroring Kit>

**CAUTION:**

Although the red cable shown below may sometimes be supplied in lieu of the HDD Cable 2 (Blue), the procedure for connecting the red cable is the same as that for the blue cable.

When connecting the cable to the Controller PCB, make sure to first confirm that the sticker [B] is attached to the cable and then connect the cable to the Controller PCB.

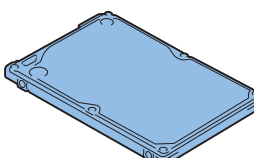
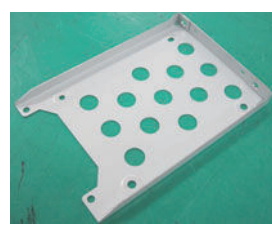


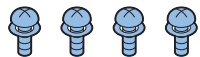







HDD Cable 2 (Red)

**[TYPE-3] 2 Option HDDs (1TB)  
+ HDD Mirroring Kit**

**■ Checking the Contents**

<Option HDD (1TB)>

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] HDD X 1<br>                 | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] HDD Case X 1<br>                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] HDD Holder Hinge X 1<br>    | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] HDD Case Hinge Base X 1<br>         |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screw (Sems ; M3x4) X 4<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [6] Screw (P Tightening ; M3x8) X 2<br> |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] HDD Cable 2 (Blue) X 1<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] HDD Connector Support Plate X 1<br> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] Screw (TP; M3x6) X 2<br>  | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] Screw (TP; M3x8 Black) X 2<br>     |

<Others>

- Guides are included



## ■ Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

### ⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

## ■ Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

## ■ Installation Procedure

### CAUTION:

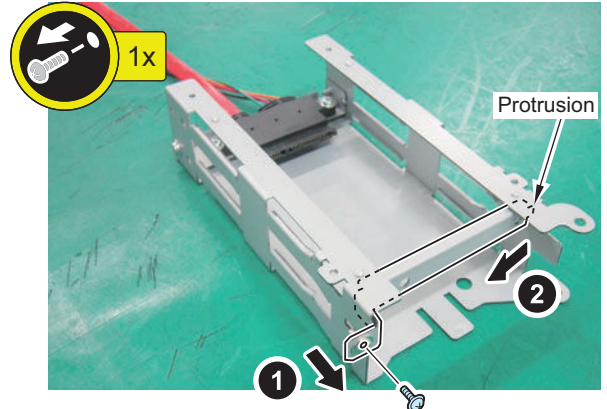
Be sure to perform "[Removing the HDD Box Unit](#)" on [page 1626](#)" before performing the following work.

## ● Installing the HDD Mirroring Kit



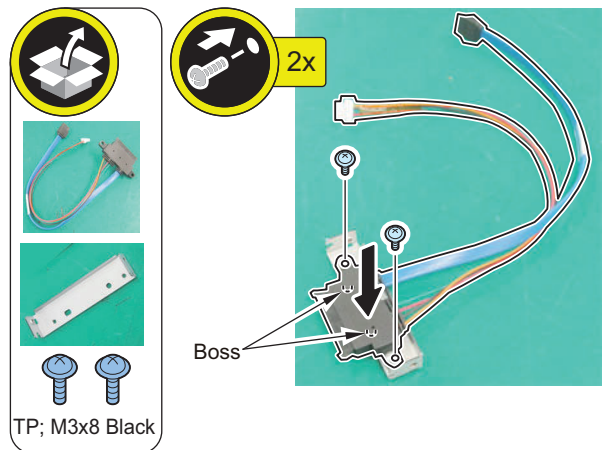
1. Remove the HDD Wrong Insertion Prevention Plate. (The removed parts will not be used.)

- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion



2. Assemble the HDD Cable 2 (Blue or Red) and the HDD Connector Support Plate.

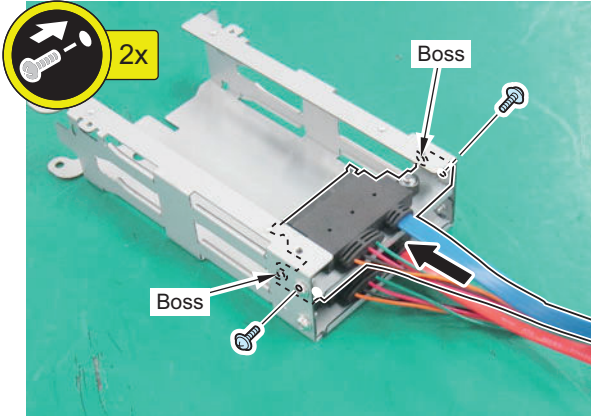
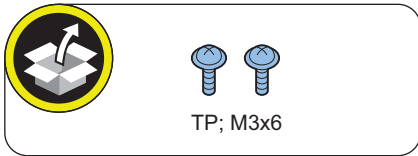
- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (TP; M3x8 Black)





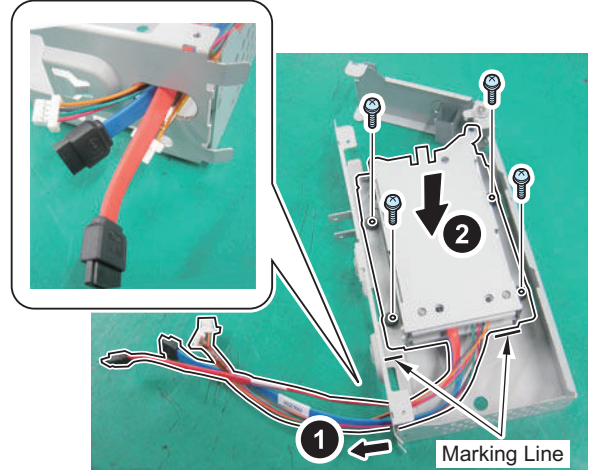
**3. Install the assembled HDD Cable 2 Unit to the HDD Unit.**

- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (TP; M3x6)



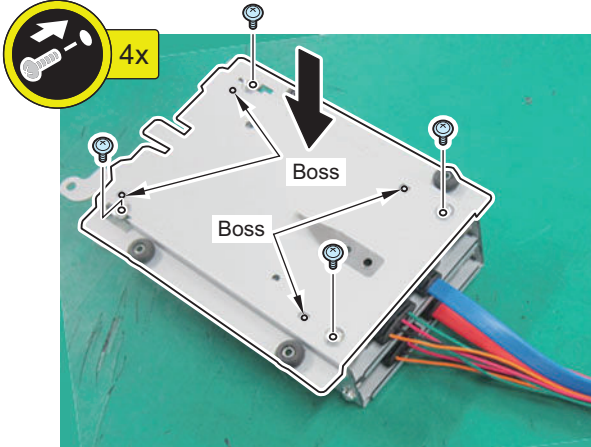
**5. Put the 4 cables through the hole, and install the HDD Unit according to the marking lines.**

- 4 Screws (Use the removed screws)



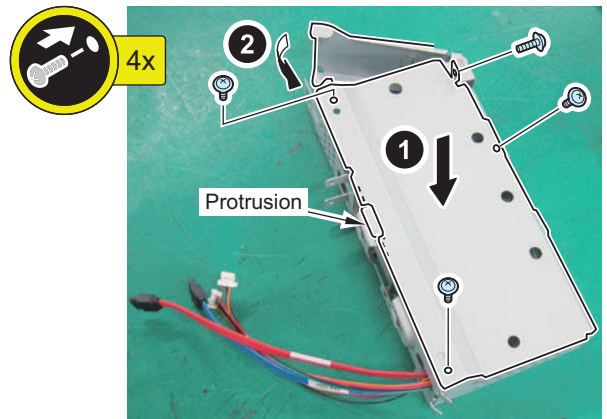
**4. Install the HDD Side Cover.**

- 4 Bosses
- 4 Screws (Use the removed screws)



**6. Install the HDD Outside Cover, and close the HDD Lid.**

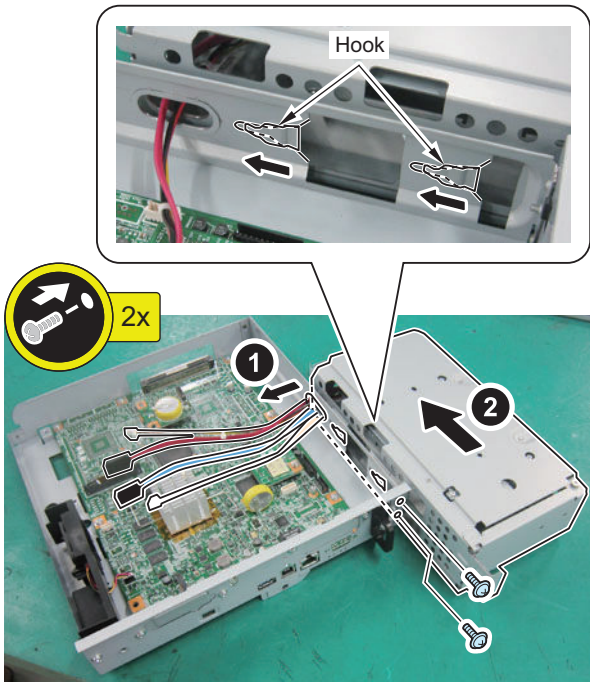
- 1 Protrusion
- 4 Screws (Use the removed screws)





**7. Put the 4 cables through the hole, and install the HDD Box Unit.**

- 2 Hooks
- 2 Screws (Use the removed screws)



**CAUTION:**  
Be sure to connect the communication cable to the correct port. The HDD error occurs.

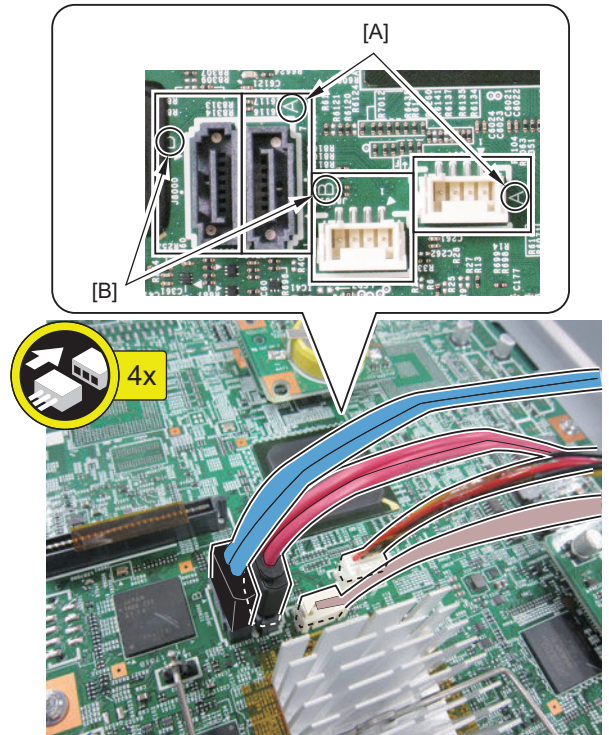
**8. Connect the HDD Cable 1 (Red) to [A] on the Controller PCB.**

- 2 Connectors

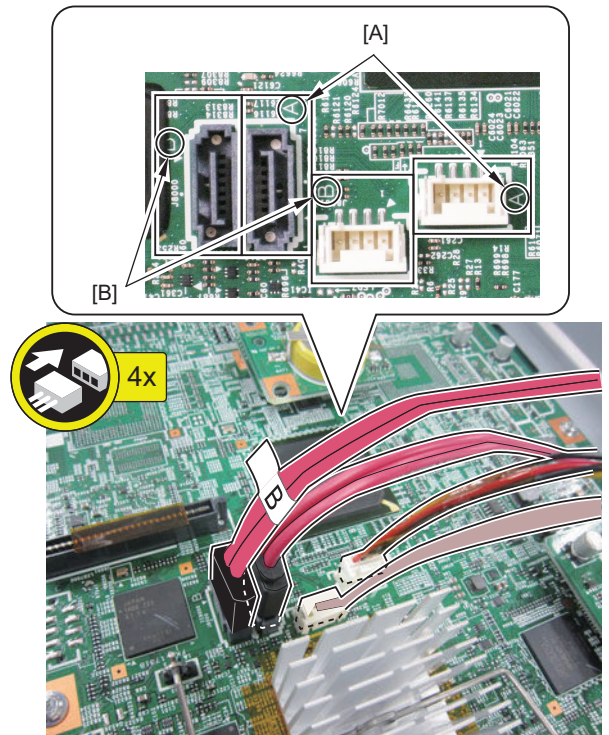
**9. Connect the HDD Cable 2 (Blue) or the HDD Cable 2 (Red) with a sticker labeled [B] to [B] on the Controller PCB.**

- 2 Connectors

< When using the HDD Cable 2 (Blue) >



< When using the HDD Cable 2 (Red) >

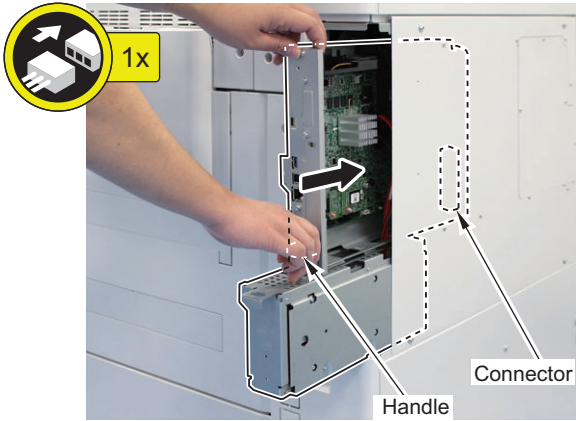






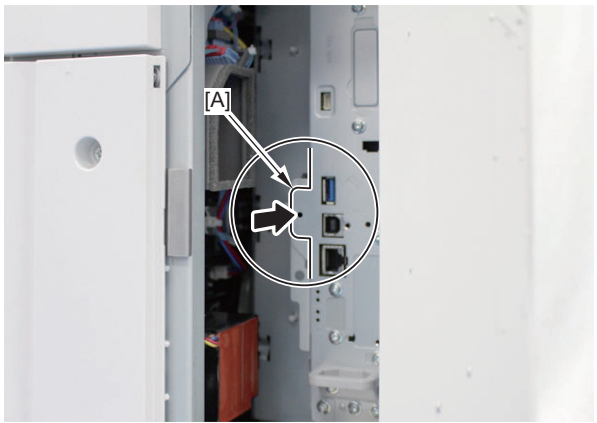
**10. Insert the Main Controller PCB 1 until it stops.**

- 1 Connector



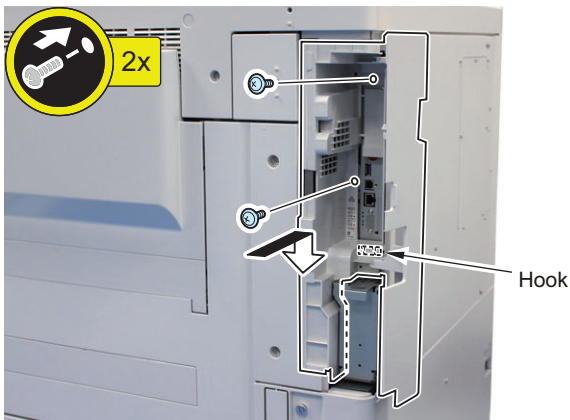
**CAUTION:**

Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.

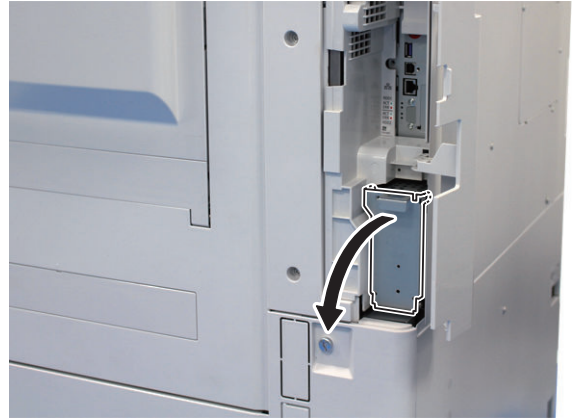


**11. Install the Side Cover. Do not close the Right Rear Cover 1 yet here.**

- 1 Hook
- 2 Screws



**12. Open the HDD Lid.**

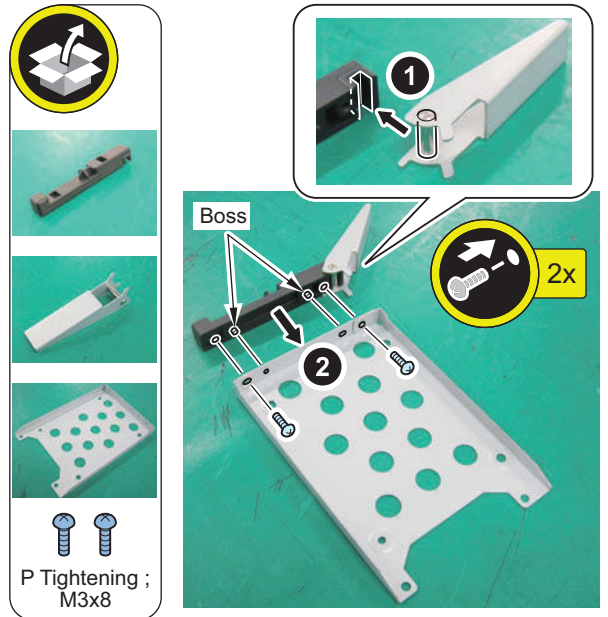


**• Assembling and Installing the Option HDD**



**1. Fit the Hinge Pin of the HDD Holder Hinge with the groove of the HDD Case Hinge Base to install it to the HDD Case.**

- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (P Tightening; M3x8)

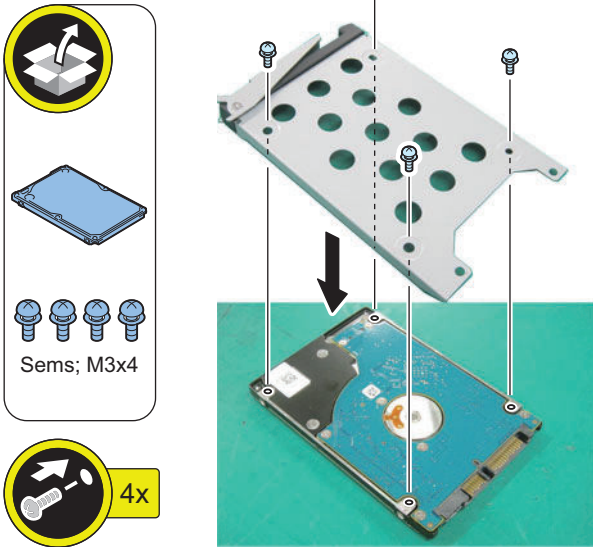




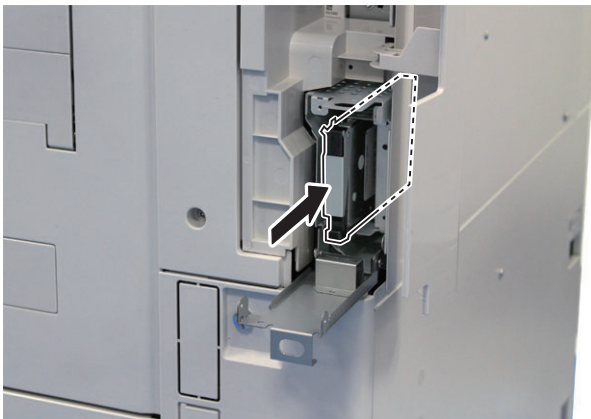


**2. Install the assembled HDD Case to the HDD.**

- 4 Screws (Sems; M3x4)



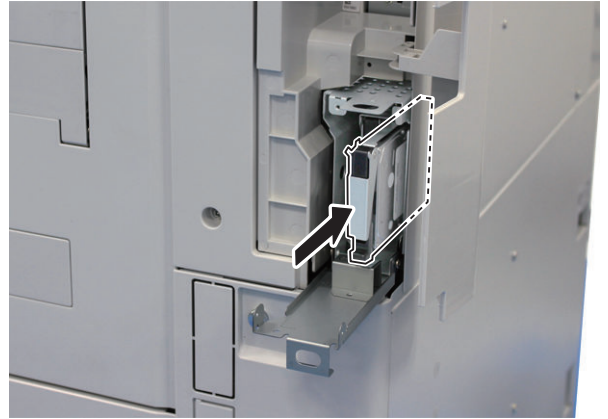
**3. Install the First Option HDD to the Slot 1 (Left).**



**4. Assemble the Second Option HDD with same steps of Step 1 to Step 2.**

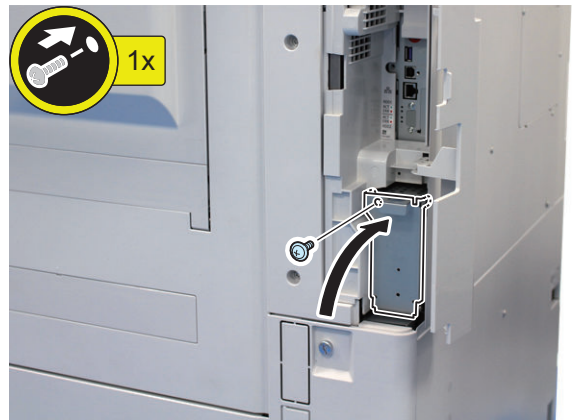


**5. Install the Option HDD to the Slot 2 (Left).**



**6. Close the HDD Lid.**

- 1 Screw (Use the removed screws)



**7. Close the Right Rear Cover 1.**



**■ HDD Initialization Procedure**

**1. Requirements**

1. PC  
Service Support Tool in the version that supports this host machine must be installed.
2. Cross Ethernet Cable (when SST is used)

## 2. Preparing for the Installation of the System Software of Host machine

1. If both PC and the machine are on, turn them off.
2. Connect the PC and the host machine using an Cross Ethernet cable. (when SST is used)
3. Turn on the PC.

## 3. Registering the system software

1. Insert the latest System Software into the PC using the SST.
2. Start the SST.
3. Click 'Register Firmware'.
4. Select the drive where the system software has been inserted, and click the [SEARCH] button.
5. Click the [REGISTER] button.
6. Click [OK].

## 4. Initializing HDD

<In case of SST>

1. Start the host machine with download mode in safe mode.
2. Start the SST.
3. Select the model. Then, select [Single] and click [Start].
4. Click [Format HDD].
5. Select [All], and click [Start].
6. Click [Execute Format].
7. The Format is executed.
8. Select [Shutdown/Restart], and click [Shutdown].
9. Click [OK]
10. The power of the host machine is turned OFF.
11. Terminate the SST.
12. Disconnect the Cross Ethernet Cable from the machine, and connect the user's network cable to the machine.

<In case of USB flash drive>

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the PC.
2. Start up SST, and click the USB icon displayed in the target selection screen.
3. Select the drive, the model series, and the version to be written to the USB flash drive, and click [Confirm].
4. Click [Start], and after the version has been written to the USB flash drive, click [OK] and then remove the USB flash drive.
5. Terminate the SST.
6. Connect the USB flash drive to the host machine, and start the host machine with download mode in safe mode.
7. When the USB menu is displayed, press keys on the Control Panel in the order shown below.
  - [4]: Clear/Format
  - [1]: Disk Format
  - [0]: OK
  - Press any keys.
  - [C]: Return to menu
  - [Reset] : Start shutdown sequence
  - [0]: OK (The power of the host machine is turned OFF automatically.)
8. Remove the USB flash drive.
9. Turn ON the main power switch.

## ■ Setting the Mirroring



1. **Set the setting value for the mirroring to "1" in the following service mode.**  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
2. **Turn OFF/ON the main power of the host machine to enable the setting value.**
3. **Make sure that the UI screen is activated correctly.**
4. **Open the Cover, and make sure that the LED blinks.**

### NOTE:

Rebuilding starts approximately after 3 minutes after turning OFF and then ON the power.

- HDD 1 (Slot 1): The green LED blinks.
- HDD 2 (Slot 2): The green and red LEDs blink.

**CAUTION:**

Rebuild process starts after setting "1" for W/RAID. If an error occurs during the rebuild process at the initial installation the hard disk needs to be replaced. (Call service rep.), reexecute the process with the following procedure.

1. Check that the lighting red LED is HDD2.
2. Select "0" for the following service mode.  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
3. To enable the setting value, turn OFF/ON the Main Power Supply Switch of the host machine.
4. Select "1" for the following service mode.  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
5. To enable the setting value, turn OFF/ON the Main Power Supply Switch of the host machine.

The foregoing procedure is limited to the rebuild process at the initial installation.

An error during the rebuild process that is executed during operation is not included in the consideration.

## ■ Executing Auto Gradation Adjustment

When the high-capacity HDD is installed, the machine initializes its HDD, resetting the data used for auto gradation correction.

Therefore, execute full adjustment of auto gradation adjustment after installing the high-capacity HDD to enable proper images to be output.

## ■ Execution of the Minimum Installation Work

Be sure to execute the minimum installation work in accordance with the Setup Guide because HDD is initialized when the high-capacity HDD is installed.

## Super G3 FAX Board-AS1

### Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F632501

### Points to Note at Installation

- When installing the Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board and this equipment at the same time, after checking "Checking the Contents", and install them following the Installation Procedure for Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board.
- For "Checking the Operation", refer to this document.

### Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

#### **⚠ WARNING:**

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

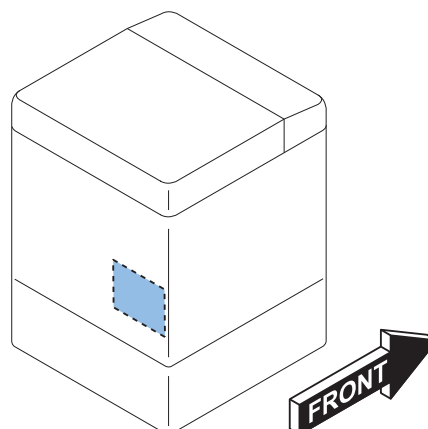
### Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.



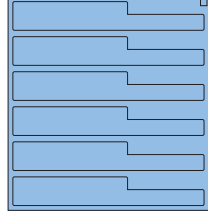

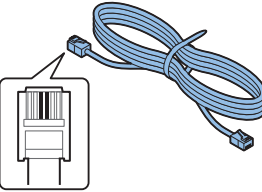
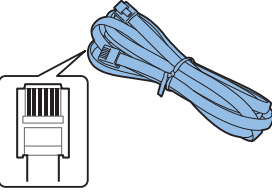
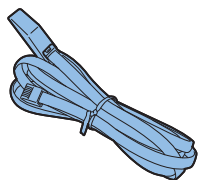
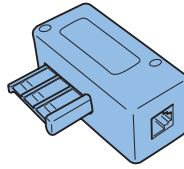
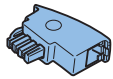
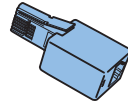

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.  
 COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

### Installation Outline Drawing



## Checking the Contents

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] FAX Unit X 1<br>                           | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] Screw (TP; M3x4 Black) X 1<br>                             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] Modular Label X 1<br>                      | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] Fax Approval Label X 1<br>Included for USA and Taiwan<br>  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [5] Telephone Cord (2 Contact type) X 1<br>   | <input type="checkbox"/> [6] Telephone Cord (6 Contact type) (only for Europe) X 1<br> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [7] PTT Cable (only for Asia) X 1<br>        | <input type="checkbox"/> [8] PTT Plug (Only for France) X 1<br>                       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [9] PTT Plug (Only for Germany) X 1<br>      | <input type="checkbox"/> [10] PTT Plug (Only for U.K.) X 1<br>                        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [11] Modular Cover (only for Europe) X 1<br> |  |

\* These are not used with this machine.

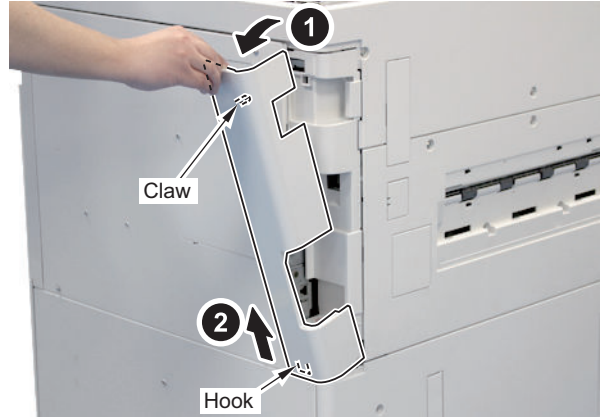
< Others >

- Including guides

## Installation Procedure

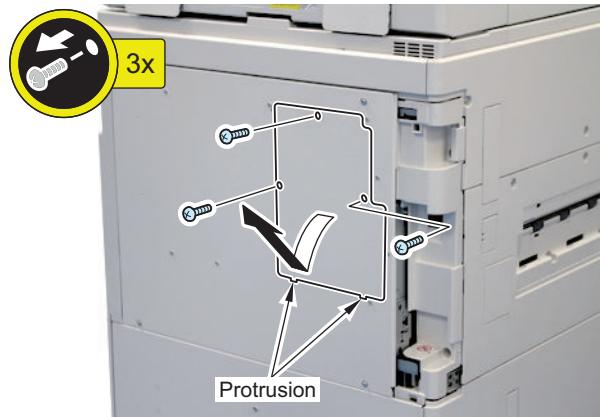
### 1. Remove the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook



### 2. Remove the Rear Cover 2.

- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions

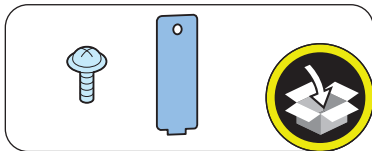






**3. Remove the Face Cover. (The removed parts will not be used.)**

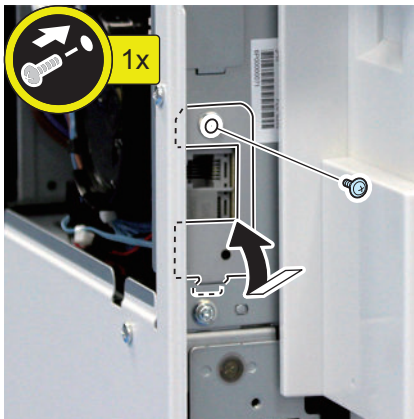
- 1 Screw (used in the next step only in EUR)
- 1 Protrusion



**NOTE:**  
This step is only for Europe.

**4. Install the Modular Cover.**

- 1 Protrusion
- 1 Screw (use the screw removed in the previous step)

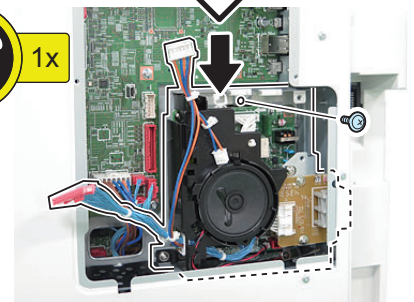
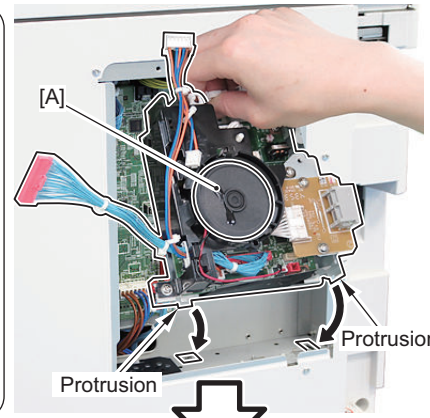
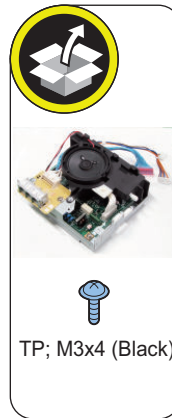


**5. Remove the tape and, install the Fax Unit.**

- 2 Protrusions
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4: Black)

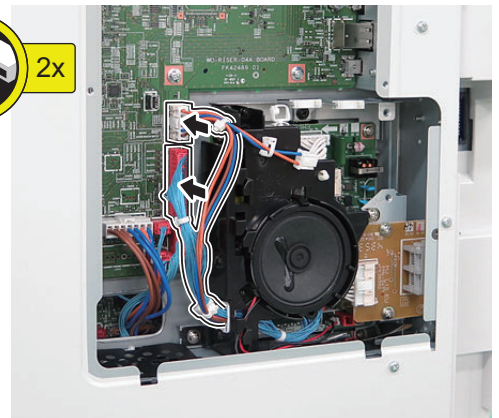
**CAUTION:**

- Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be broken.
- Be sure to tighten the screw while holding the FAX Unit.
- After tightening the screw of the FAX Unit, check for any backlash. If there is backlash, tighten the screw again with the protrusion precisely fitted.



**6. Connect the 2 cables of the FAX Unit.**

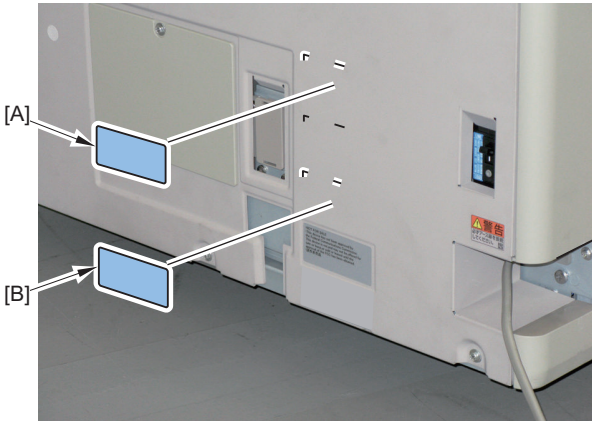
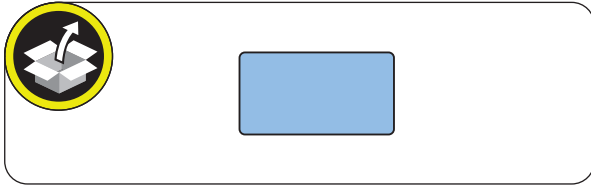
- 2 Connectors



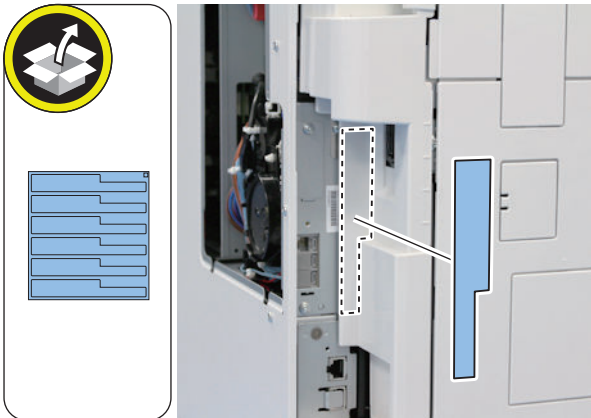


**7. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.**

- [A] For USA
- [B] For Taiwan



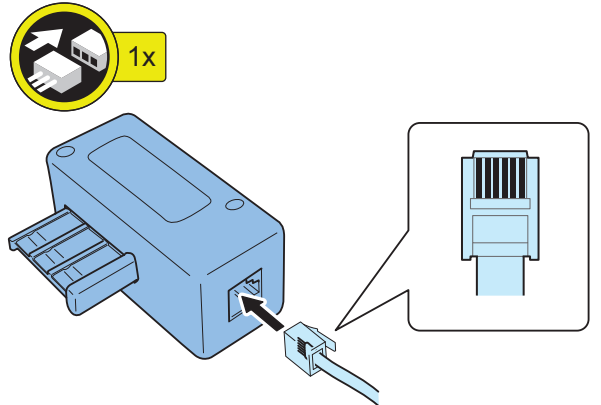
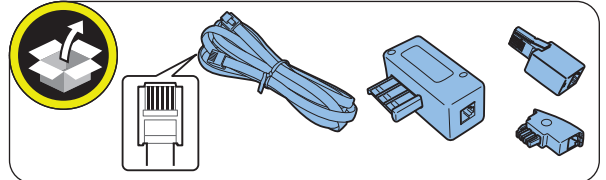
**8. Affix the appropriate Modular Label to the place shown in the figure.**



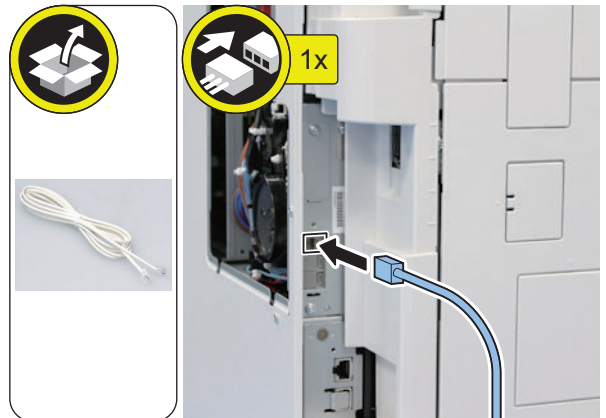
**NOTE:**

This step is only for Europe.  
Do not connect the Telephone Cord (2 contact type) with the PTT Plug.

**9. Connect the PTT Plug matched the field or area to the PTT Cable (6 contact type).**



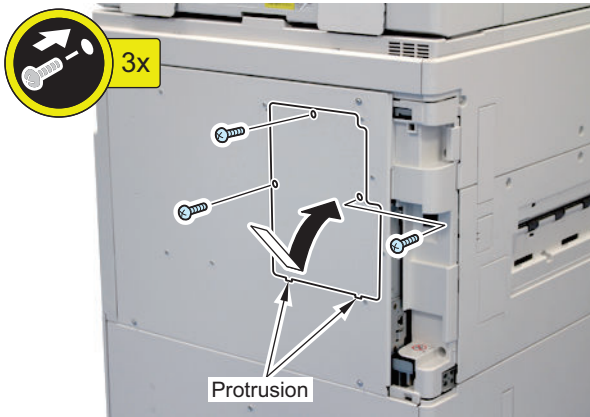
**10. Connect the end of the PTT Cable or Telephone Cord to the modular jack on the Host machine, and connect the other end to the modular jack on the wall.**



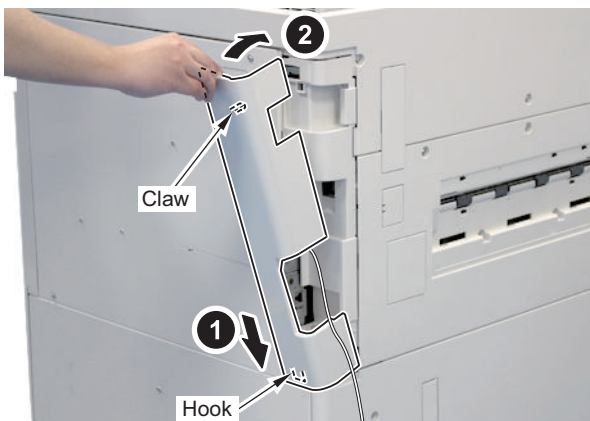


**11. Install the Rear Cover 2.**

- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws

**12. Install the Left Rear Cover.**

- 1 Hook
- 1 Claw

**13. Connect the Power Plug to the outlet.****14. Turn ON the main power switch.****CAUTION:**

If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds. To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

## Checking the Operation

### ■ Type Setting

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode:  
FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.



**1. From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.**

FAX > TYPE > TYPE

**2. Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".**

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

**NOTE:**

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

**3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.**

### ■ Basic Setting

**NOTE:**

- When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.
- This setting can also be set from the Setup Guide ([Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [License/Other] > [Start Setup Guide]).

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



**1. Set the user telephone number.**

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 1] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter the fax number > [OK]

**2. Set Type of telephone line.**

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 1] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]

**3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.**

### ■ FAX Communication Test

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.



**1. Switch the control panel display to Send/Fax display.**

- 2. Send the test document from this machine to another machine that can handle the communication test to check that this machine can send the data correctly.**
- 3. Send the test document from the target to this machine to check if the machine can receive the document properly.**

# Super G3 FAX Board-AS2

## Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F632501

## Points to Note at Installation

- When installing the Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board and this equipment at the same time, after checking "Checking the Contents", and install them following the Installation Procedure for Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board.
- For "Checking the Operation", refer to this document.

## Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

**⚠ WARNING:**

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

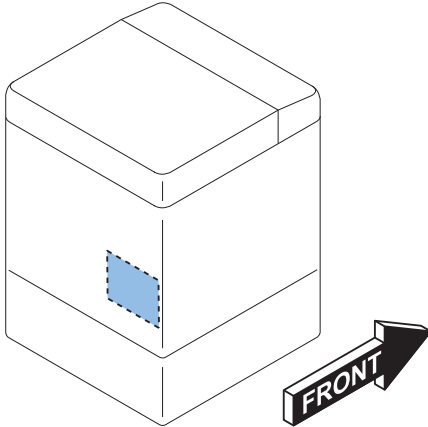
- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

## Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power



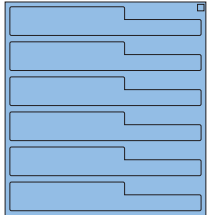

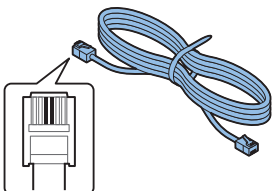
The following message is displayed.

1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.  
 If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.  
 COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

## Installation Outline Drawing



## Checking the Contents

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] FAX Unit X 1<br>                         | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] Screw (TP; M3x4 Black) X 1<br> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] Modular Label X 1<br>                   | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] Fax Approval Label X 1<br>   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [5] Telephone Cord (2 Contact type) X 1<br> |  |

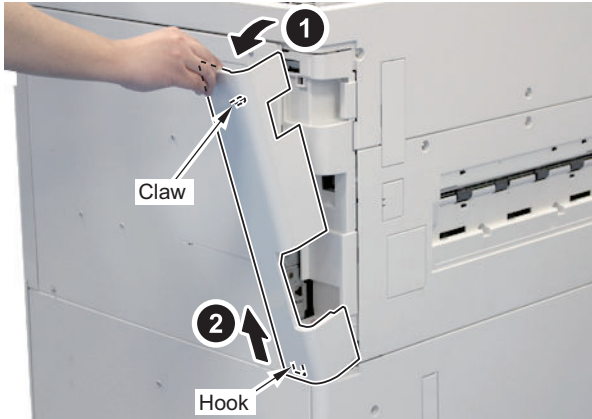
- < Others >
- Including guides

# Installation Procedure



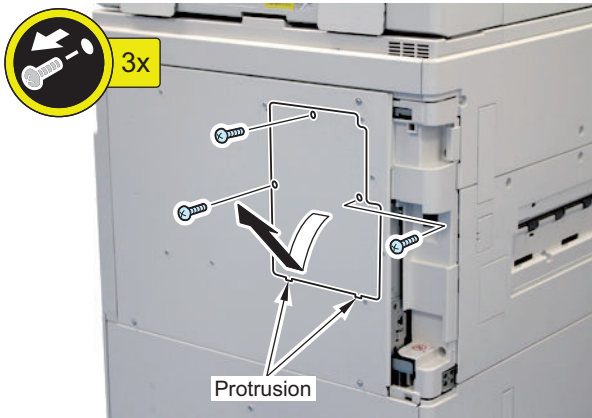
## 1. Remove the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook



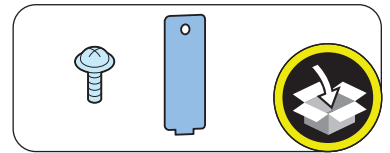
## 2. Remove the Rear Cover 2.

- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions



## 3. Remove the Face Cover. (The removed parts will not be used.)

- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion



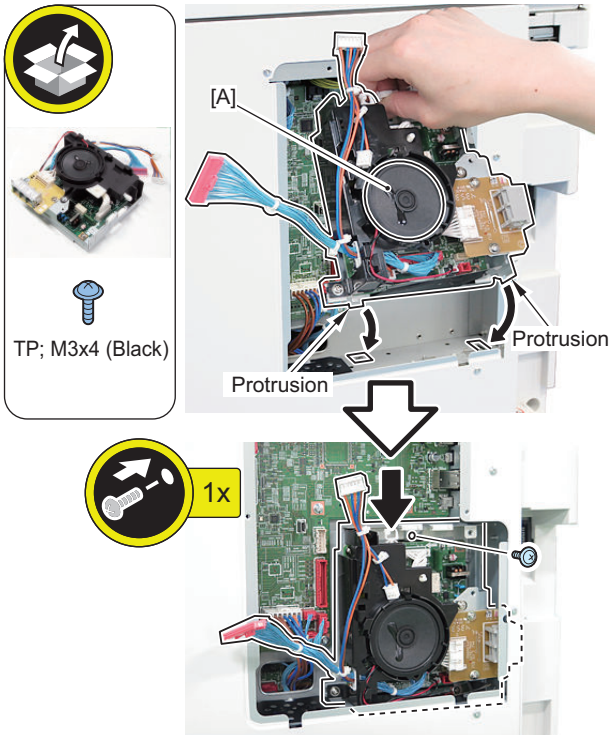


**4. Remove the tape and, install the Fax Unit.**

- 2 Protrusions
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4: Black)

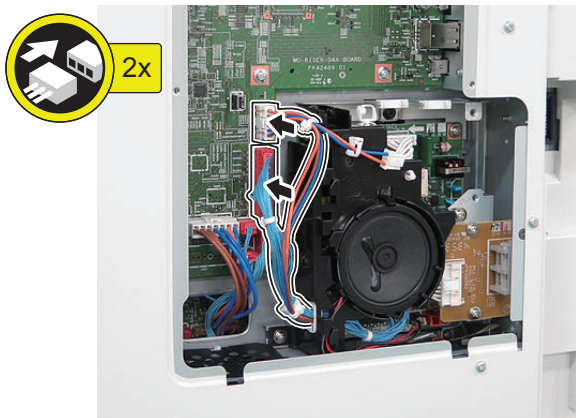
**CAUTION:**

- Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be broken.
- Be sure to tighten the screw while holding the FAX Unit.
- After tightening the screw of the FAX Unit, check for any backlash. If there is backlash, tighten the screw again with the protrusion precisely fitted.

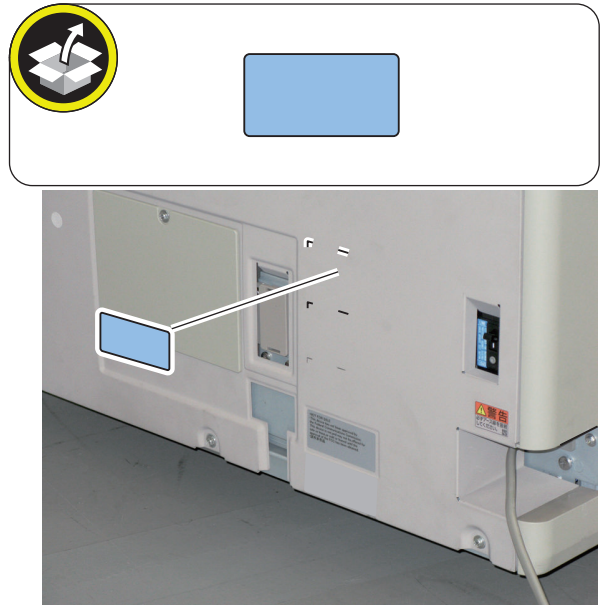


**5. Connect the 2 cables of the FAX Unit.**

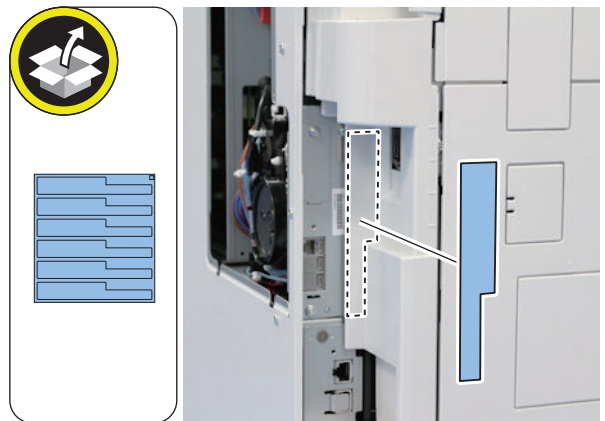
- 2 Connectors



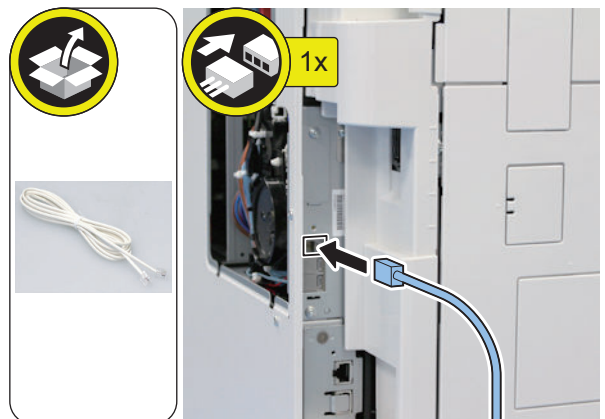
**6. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.**



**7. Affix the appropriate Modular Label to the place shown in the figure.**



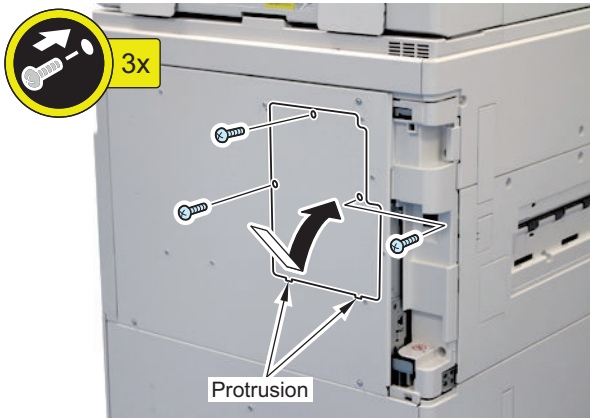
**8. Connect the end of the Telephone Cord to the modular jack on the Host machine, and connect the other end to the modular jack on the wall.**





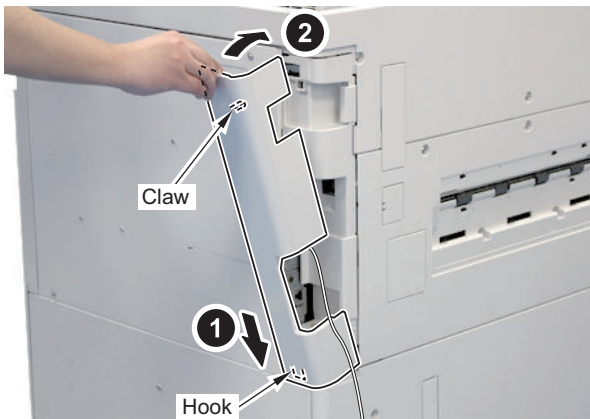
### 9. Install the Rear Cover 2.

- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws



### 10. Install the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Hook
- 1 Claw



### 11. Connect the Power Plug to the outlet.

### 12. Turn ON the main power switch.

#### CAUTION:

If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds. To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

## Checking the Operation

### ■ Type Setting

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode:  
FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.



1. From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.

FAX > TYPE > TYPE

2. Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

#### NOTE:

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.

### ■ Basic Setting

#### NOTE:

- When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.
- This setting can also be set from the Setup Guide ([Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [License/Other] > [Start Setup Guide]).

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



1. Set the user telephone number.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 1] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter the fax number > [OK]

2. Set Type of telephone line.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 1] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.

### ■ FAX Communication Test

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.



1. Switch the control panel display to Send/Fax display.
2. Send the test document from this machine to another machine that can handle the communication test to check that this machine can send the data correctly.

3. Send the test document from the target to this machine to check if the machine can receive the document properly.



## Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS1

### Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F632502

### Points to Note at Installation

When installing the Super G3 FAX Board and this equipment at the same time, be sure to install them by referring to this document after checking "Checking the Contents" of Super G3 FAX Board.

### Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

#### **⚠ WARNING:**

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

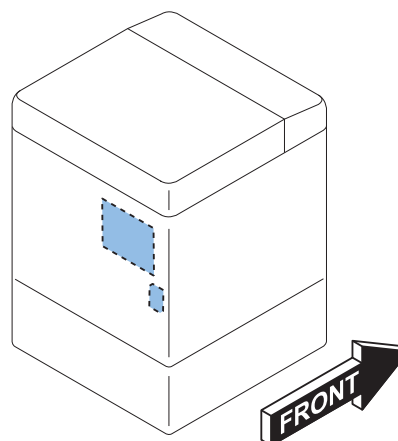
### Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.


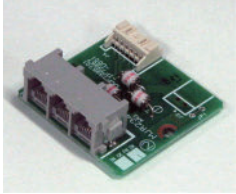



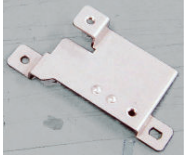



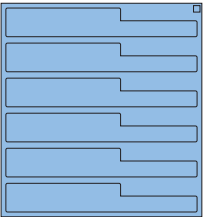
1. **When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.**
2. **If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.**


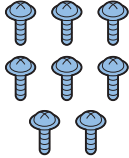


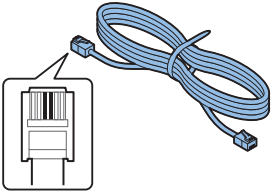
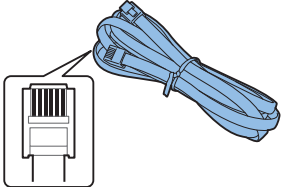
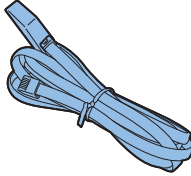
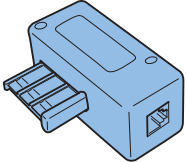
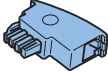
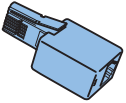
If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

### Installation Outline Drawing



# Checking the Contents

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] G3FAX Expansion PCB X 1<br>     | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] Modular PCB X 1<br>         |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] USB Cable X 1<br>               | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] Modular Cable X 1<br>       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [5] Signal Cable X 1<br>           | <input type="checkbox"/> [6] FAX Shield Plate X 1<br>   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [7] FAX Board Fixed Plate X 1<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [8] PCB Spacer (Long) X 3<br> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [9] PCB Spacer (Short) X 1<br>    | <input type="checkbox"/> [10] Modular Label X 1<br>    |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [11] Dust Cover X 2<br>                      | <input type="checkbox"/> [12] Screw (TP; M3x4) X 8<br>                                  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [13] Screw (Binding; M4x4) X 1<br>           | <input type="checkbox"/> [14] Fax Approval Label (only for Taiwan) X 1<br>              |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [15] Telephone Cord (2 Contact type) X 1<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [16] Telephone Cord (6 Contact type) (only for Europe) X 1<br> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [17] PTT Cable (only for Asia) X 1<br>     | <input type="checkbox"/> [18] PTT Plug (Only for France) X 1<br>                      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [19] PTT Plug (Only for Germany) X 1<br>   | <input type="checkbox"/> [20] PTT Plug (Only for U.K.) X 1<br>                        |

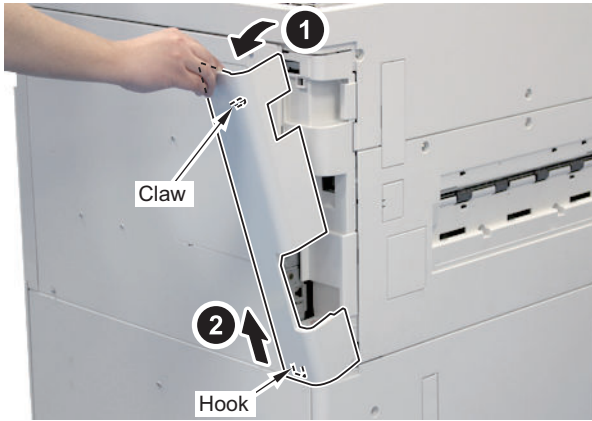
# Installation Procedure

## ■ Preparation



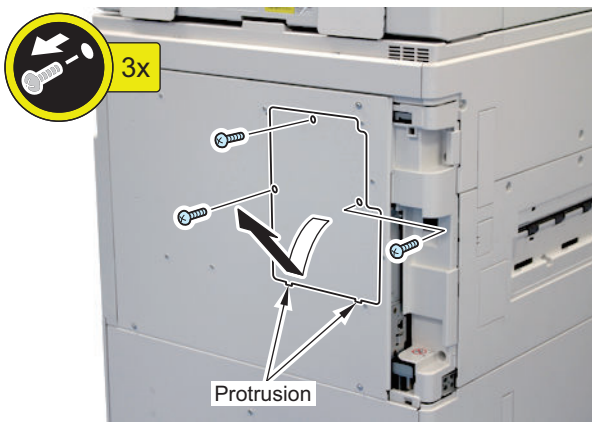
### 1. Remove the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook



### 2. Remove the Rear Cover 2.

- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions

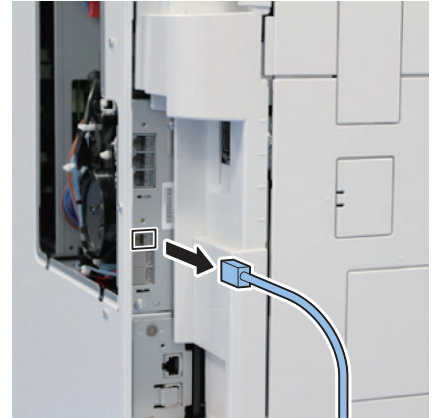


**NOTE:**

- When the Super G3 FAX Board is installed: Perform steps 3 and 4, and proceed to step 7.
- When installing the Super G3 FAX Board at the same time: Proceed to step 5.



### 3. Disconnect the Telephone Cord of the FAX (1-Line).

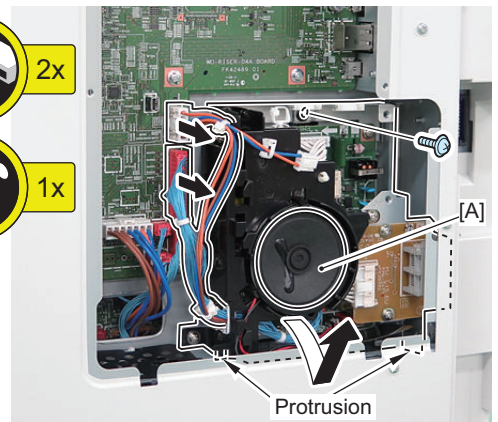


### 4. Remove the FAX Unit.

- 2 Connectors
- 1 Screw
- 2 Protrusions

**CAUTION:**

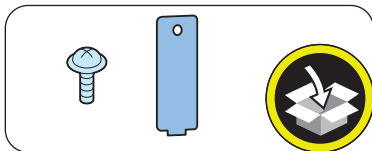
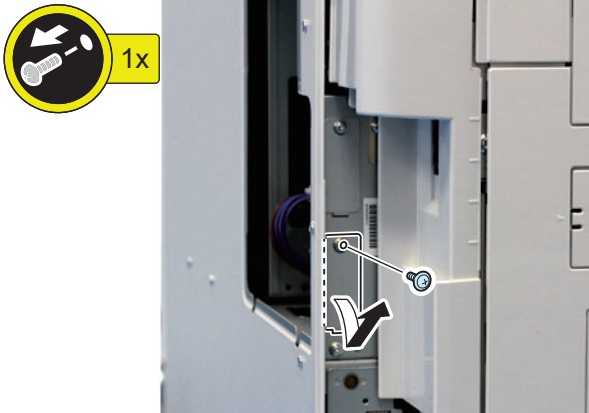
Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be open circuit.





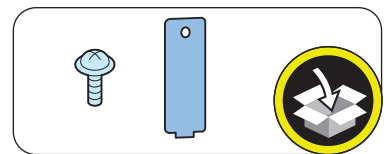
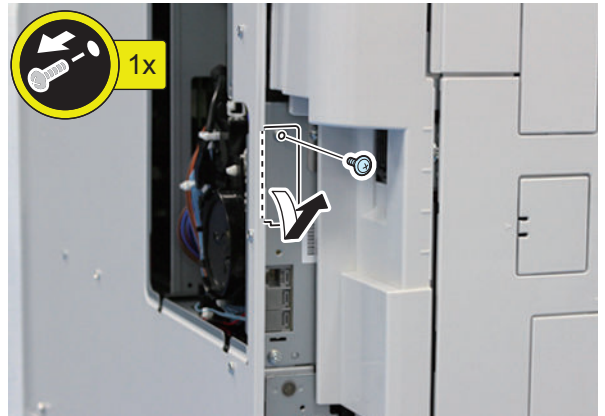
**5. Remove the Face Cover of the FAX (1-Line). (The removed parts will not be used.)**

- 1 Screw (used in the next step only in EUR)
- 1 Protrusion



**7. Remove the Face Cover of the FAX (2-Line). (The removed parts will not be used.)**

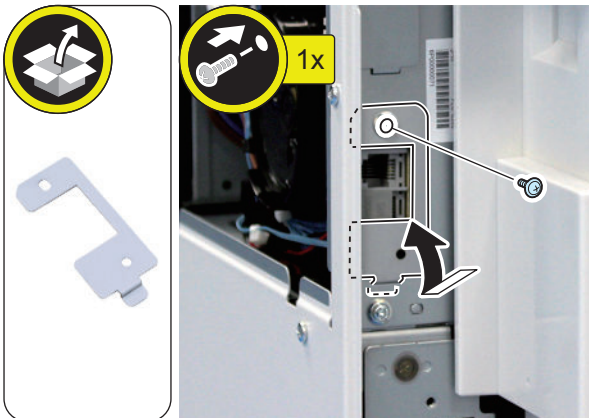
- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion



**NOTE:**  
This step is only for Europe.

**6. Install the Modular Cover.**

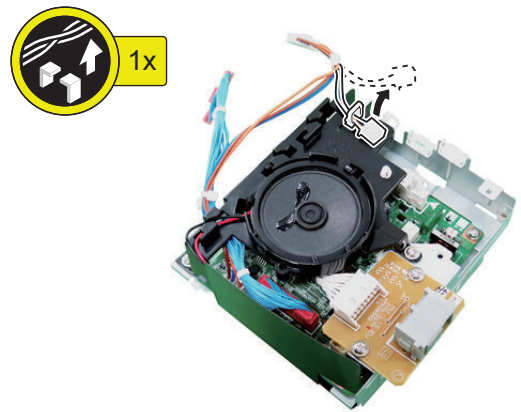
- 1 Protrusion
- 1 Screw (use the screw removed in the previous step)



**■ Installing the Equipment**



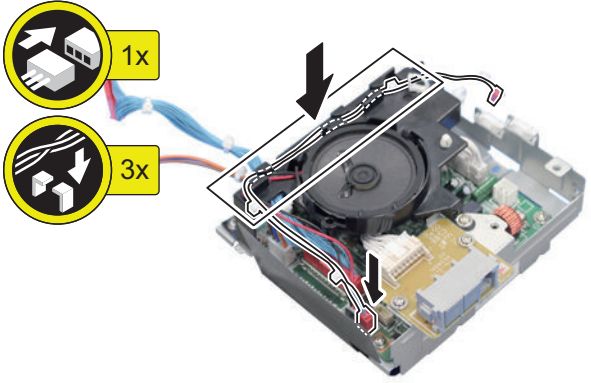
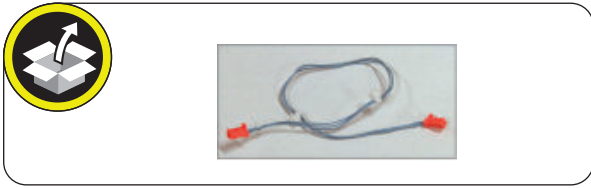
**1. Free the Cable from the Wire Saddle.**





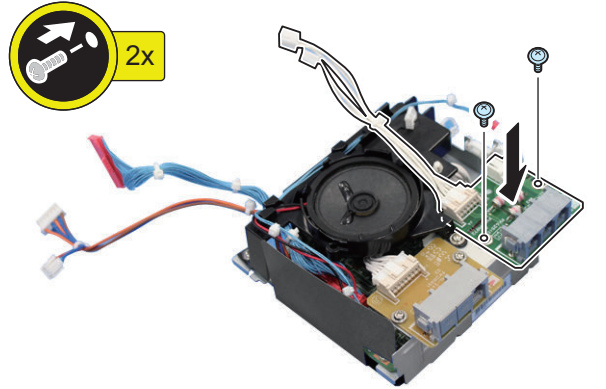
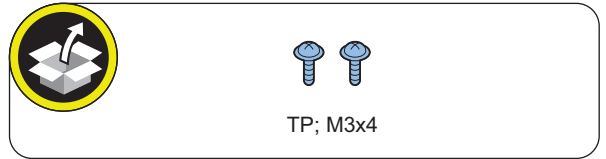
**2. Install the Signal Cable to the FAX Unit.**

- 3 Cable Guides

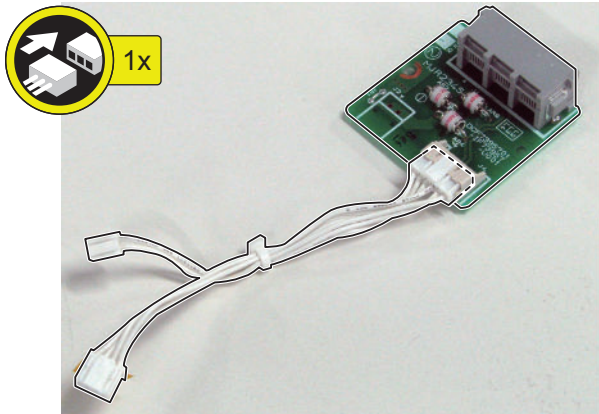
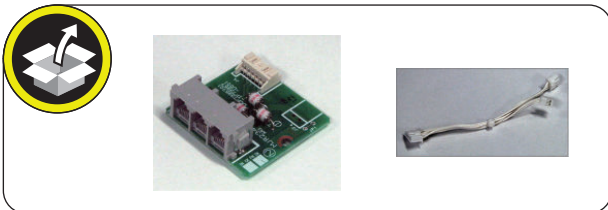


**4. Install the Modular PCB to the FAX Unit.**

- 2 Screws (TP; M3x4)



**3. Install the Modular Cable to the Modular PCB.**





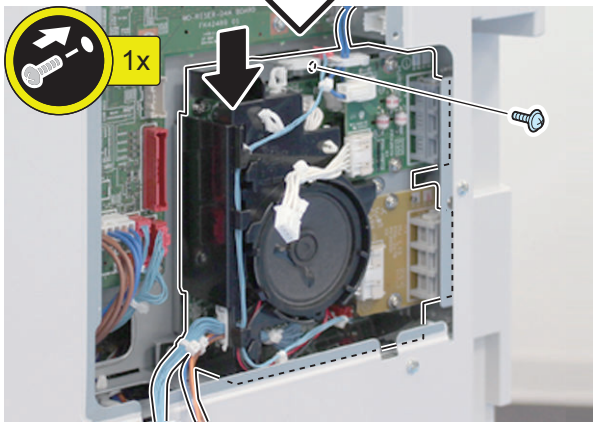
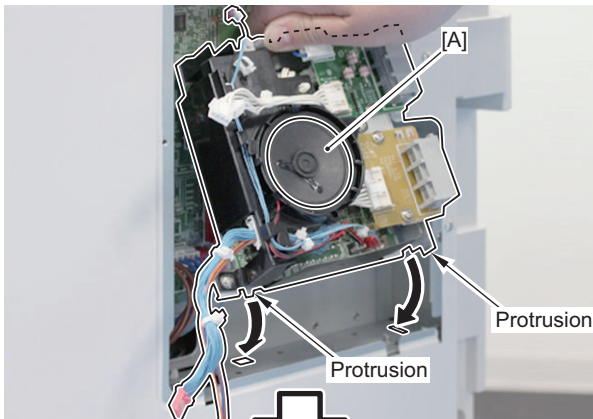


**5. Install the FAX Unit to the Host Machine.**

- 2 Protrusions
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4 Black) (Use the removed screw or those included with the Super G3 FAX Board)

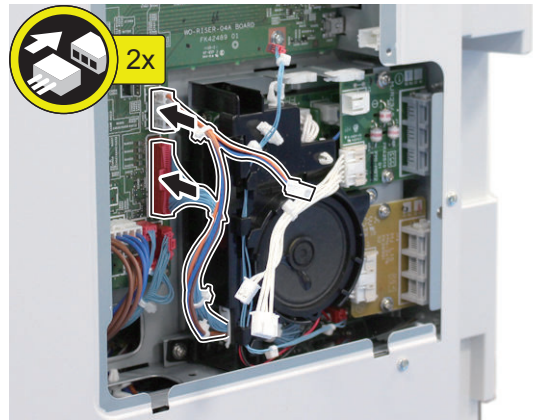
**CAUTION:**

- Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be broken.
- Be sure to tighten the screw while holding the FAX Unit.
- After tightening the screw of the FAX Unit, check for any backlash. If there is backlash, tighten the screw again with the protrusion precisely fitted.

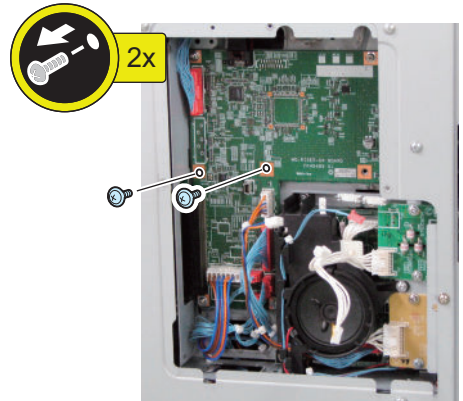


**6. Install the 2 Cable of the FAX Unit.**

- 2 Connectors

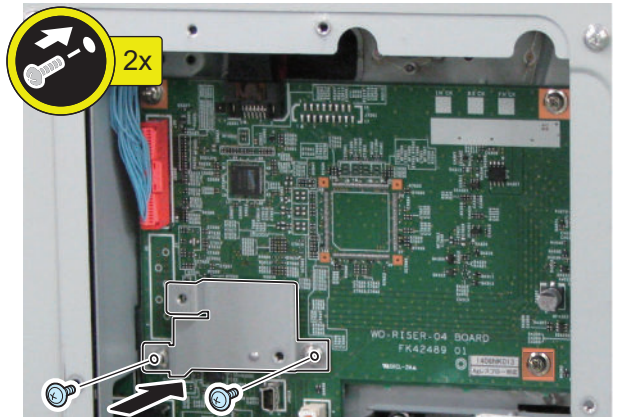
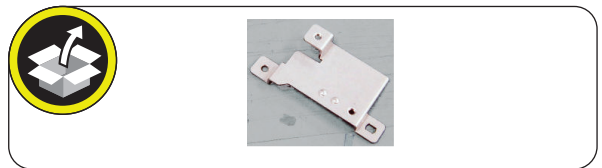


**7. Remove the 2 Screws. (will be used in next step)**



**8. Install the FAX Shield Plate.**

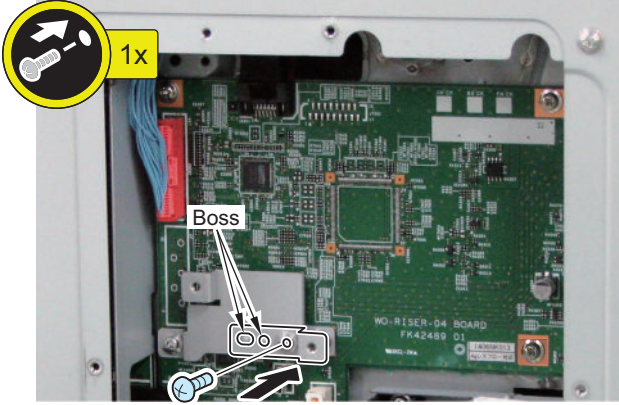
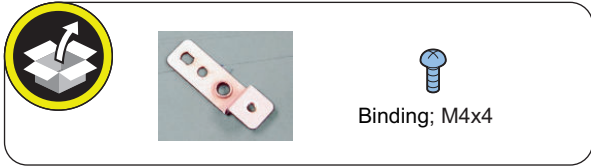
- 2 Screws (screws removed in the previous step)



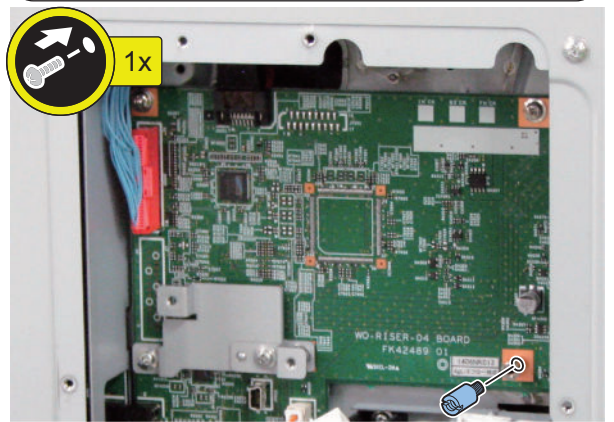
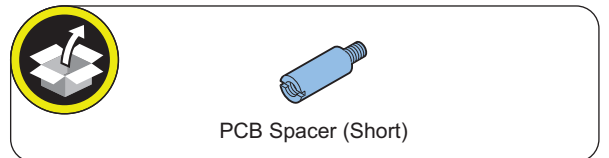
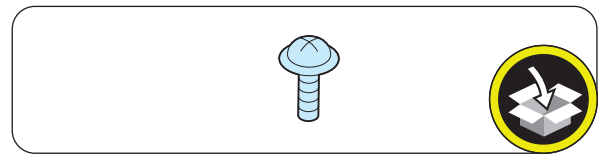
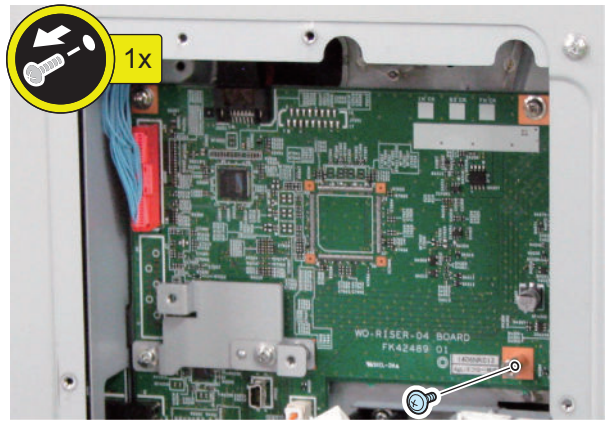


**9. Install the FAX Board Fixed Plate.**

- 2 Bosses
- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x4)



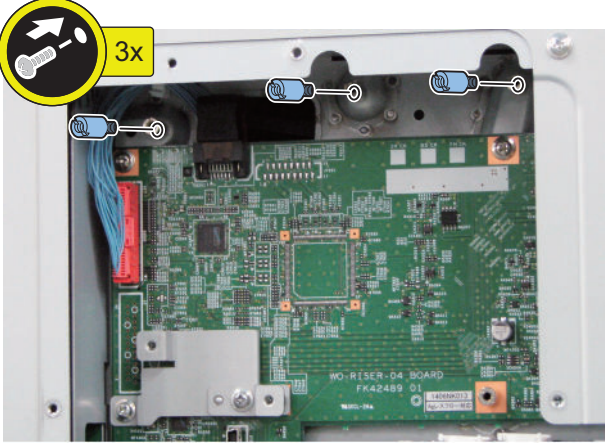
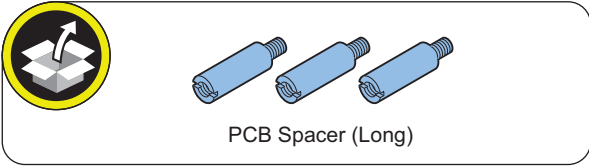
**10. Remove the Screw and install the PCB Spacer (Short). (The removed screw will not be used.)**







11. Install the 3 PCB Spacers (Long).

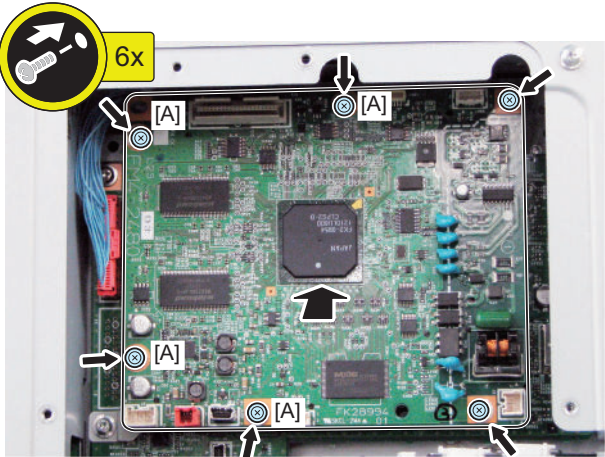
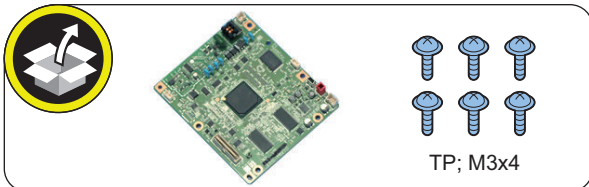


12. Install the G3FAX Expansion PCB.

- 6 Screws (TP; M3x4)

**NOTE:**

Because the 4 screws [A] need to be removed when installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, it is efficient not to tighten them here.

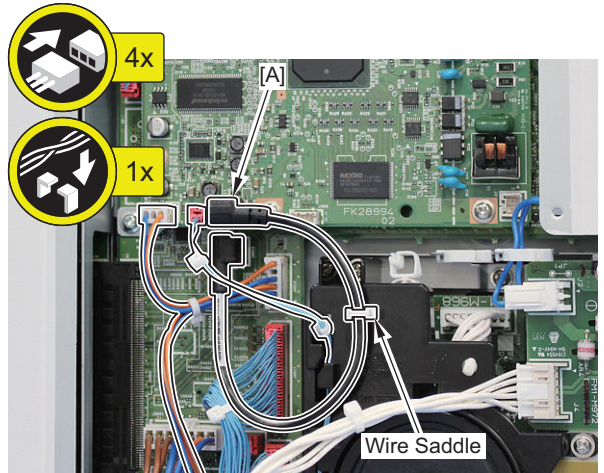


13. Install the Signal Cable, Power Supply Cable and USB Cable to the G3FAX Expansion PCB.

- 1 Wire Saddle

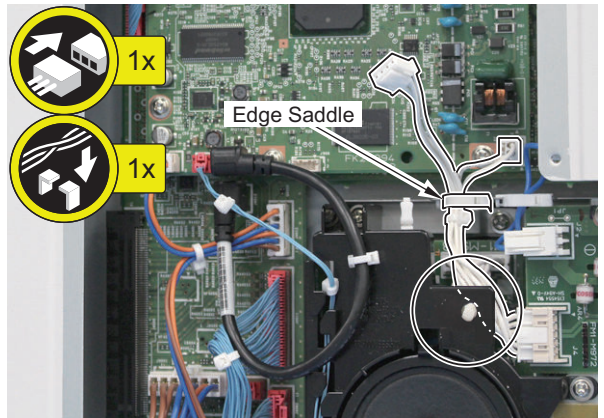
**NOTE:**

Because [A] of the USB Cable needs to be disconnected when installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, it is efficient not to connect it here.



14. Pass the Modular Cable inside the Speaker Holder, and install the G3 FAX Control PCB.

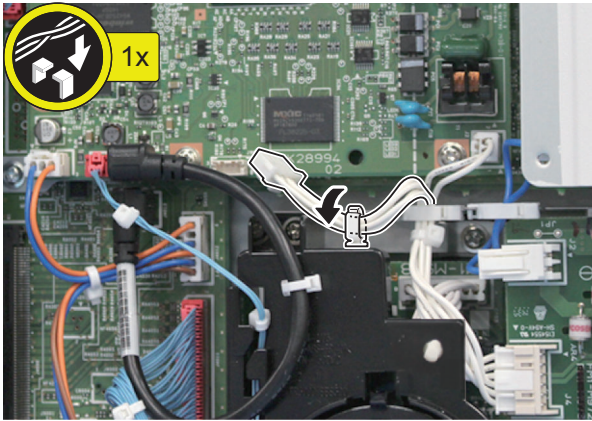
- 1 Edge Saddle



**NOTE:**

When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

15. Secure the cable with the Wire Saddle.



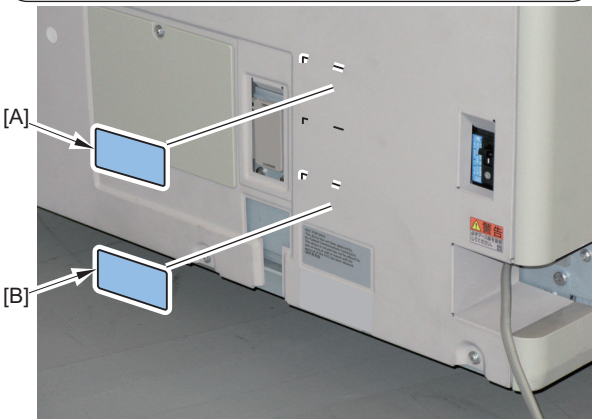
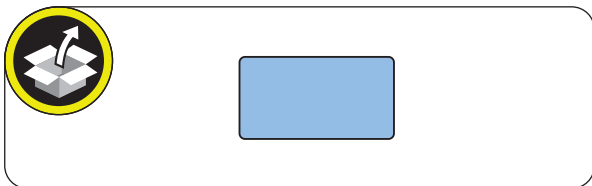
■ Subsequent Work

**NOTE:**

The following work is required only when installing the Super G3 FAX Board at the same time.

1. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.

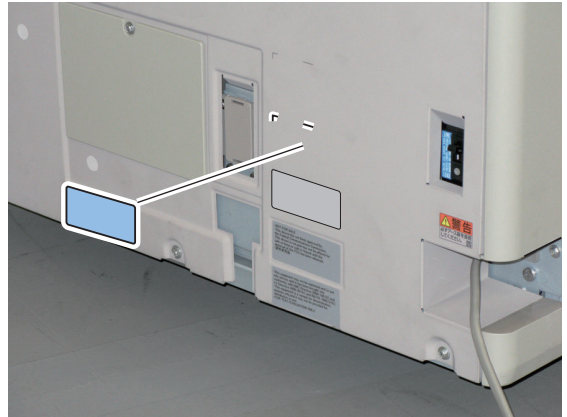
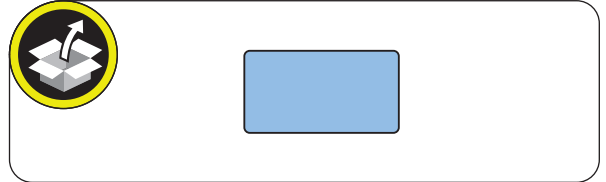
- [A] For USA
- [B] For Taiwan



**NOTE:**

This step is only for Taiwan.

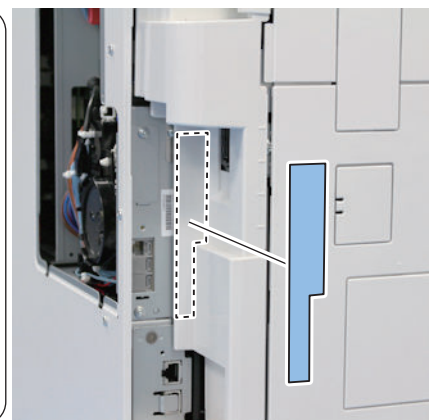
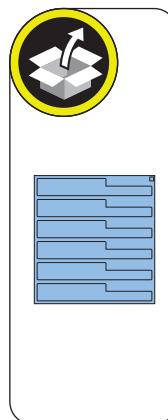
2. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.



**NOTE:**

When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

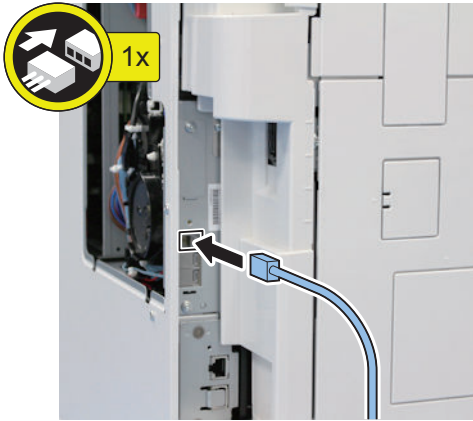
3. Affix the appropriate Modular Label. If a label is already affixed, remove it and then affix the appropriate label.



4. Connect the PTT Cable or Telephone Cord of the FAX (1-Line). When installing this equipment at the

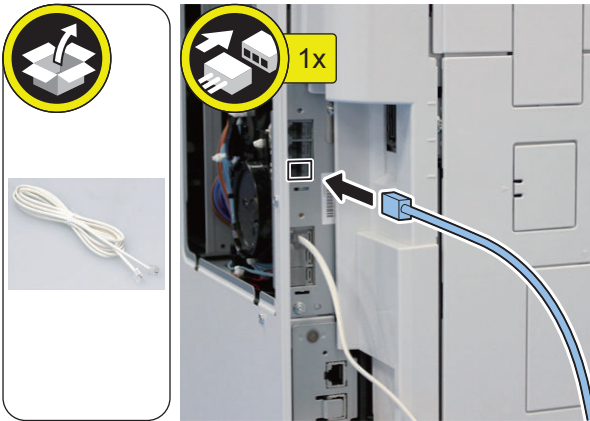


same time, connect the other end to the modular jack on the wall.



□

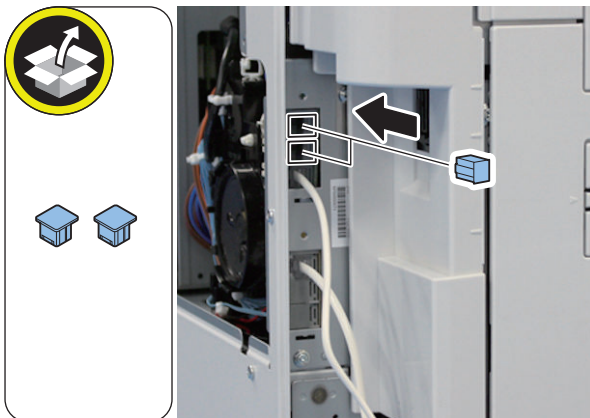
5. Connect the end of the PTT Cable or Telephone Cord to the modular jack on the Host machine, and connect the other end to the modular jack on the wall.



□

**NOTE:**  
When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

6. Install the Dust Cover.

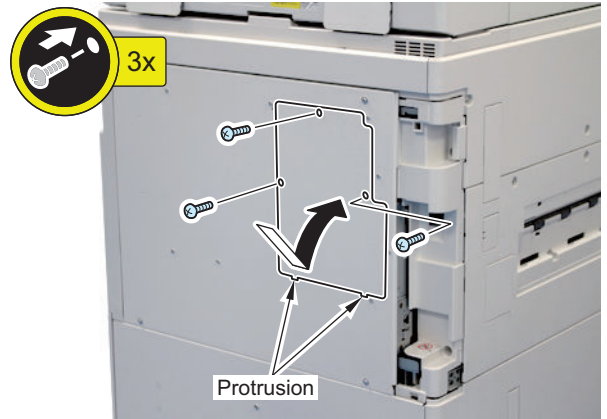


**NOTE:**  
When performing the following steps, it is efficient to install the cover after installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board in case of installing the fax board at the same time.

□

7. Install the Rear Cover 2.

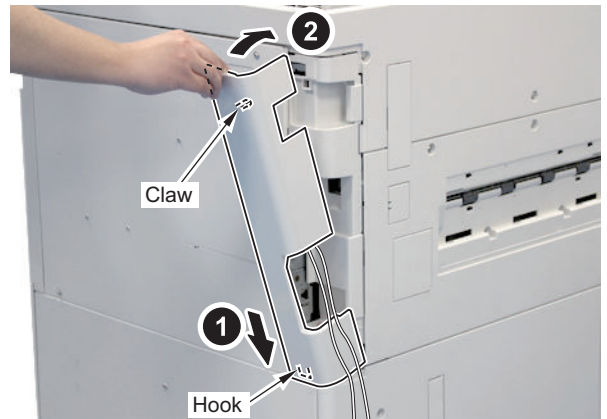
- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws



□

8. Install the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Hook
- 1 Claw



□

9. Connect the power plug to the outlet.

10. Turn ON the main power switch.

**CAUTION:**  
If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds. To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

11. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

**NOTE:**

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started.

In the service mode (Lev. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

## Checking the Operation

### ■ Type Settings

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode:  
FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.



1. From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.

FAX > TYPE > TYPE

2. Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

**NOTE:**

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.

### ■ Basic Settings

**NOTE:**

When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



1. Set the user telephone number.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 2] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter FAX number > [OK]

2. Set the type of telephone line.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 2] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.

### ■ FAX Communication Test

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.



1. Switch the control panel display to Fax display.

2. Select the sending line.

Press [Fax] > [Options] > [Select Line], select the added line, then press [OK] button.

3. Send and receive a test original between the equipment and a remote unit with which a communication test can be performed and check if it can be sent and receive correctly.

1. Press [Status Monitor/Cancel] > [Send] > [Job Log] and select [Fax] from pull down menu.

2. Press [Fax Activity Report] > [OutPut Normally] > [Start Printing].

3. The number printed following colon (:) in "COMM.MODE" field on FAX ACTIVITY REPORT TX/RX shows line type used for sending/receiving. E.g. "ECM:2" => Line 2

**NOTE:**

If E744-5000 error code (Fax software version mismatch error) occurred while sending or receiving fax, upgrade the firmware of 2-line Fax to the latest version.

## Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS2

### Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F632502

### Points to Note at Installation

When installing the Super G3 FAX Board and this equipment at the same time, be sure to install them by referring to this document after checking "Checking the Contents" of Super G3 FAX Board.

### Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

#### **⚠ WARNING:**

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

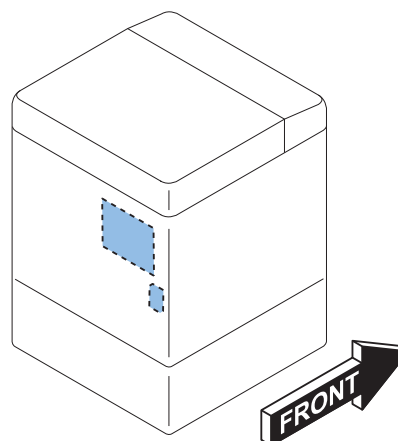
### Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.


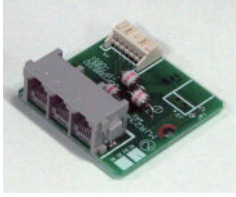



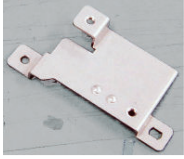



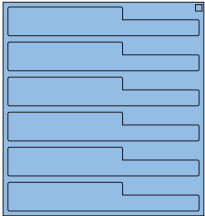
1. **When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.**
2. **If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.**


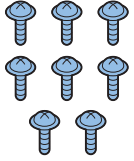

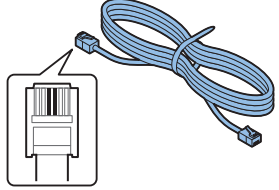
If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.  
 COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

### Installation Outline Drawing



## Checking the Contents

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] G3FAX Expansion PCB X 1<br>     | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] Modular PCB X 1<br>         |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] USB Cable X 1<br>               | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] Modular Cable X 1<br>       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [5] Signal Cable X 1<br>           | <input type="checkbox"/> [6] FAX Shield Plate X 1<br>   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [7] FAX Board Fixed Plate X 1<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [8] PCB Spacer (Long) X 3<br> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [9] PCB Spacer (Short) X 1<br>    | <input type="checkbox"/> [10] Modular Label X 1<br>    |

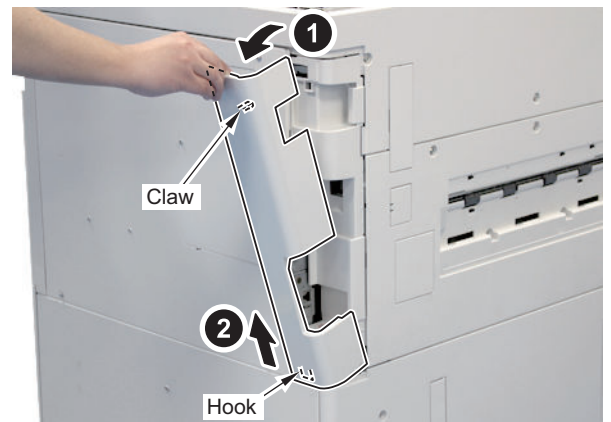
|   |  |
|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [11] Dust Cover X 2<br>            | <input type="checkbox"/> [12] Screw (TP; M3x4) X 8<br>                |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [13] Screw (Binding; M4x4) X 1<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [14] Telephone Cord (2 Contact type) X 1<br> |

## Installation Procedure

### Preparation

#### 1. Remove the Left Rear Cover.

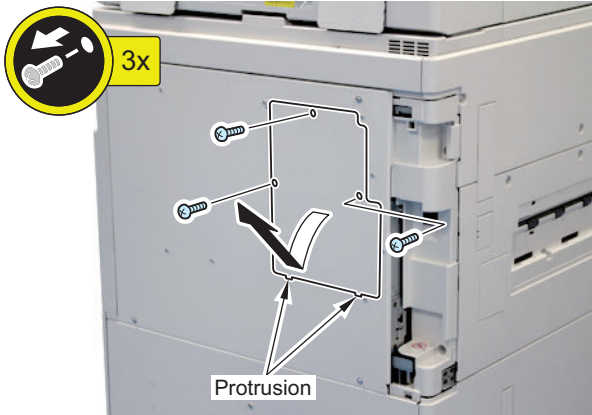
- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook





**2. Remove the Rear Cover 2.**

- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions

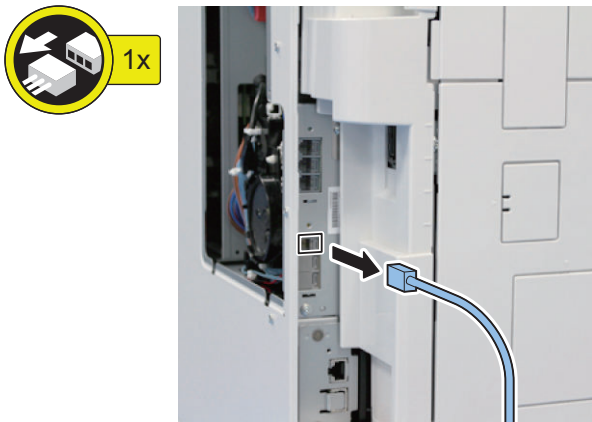


**NOTE:**

- When the Super G3 FAX Board is installed: Perform steps 3 and 4, and proceed to step 6.
- When installing the Super G3 FAX Board at the same time: Proceed to step 5.



**3. Disconnect the Telephone Cord of the FAX (1-Line).**

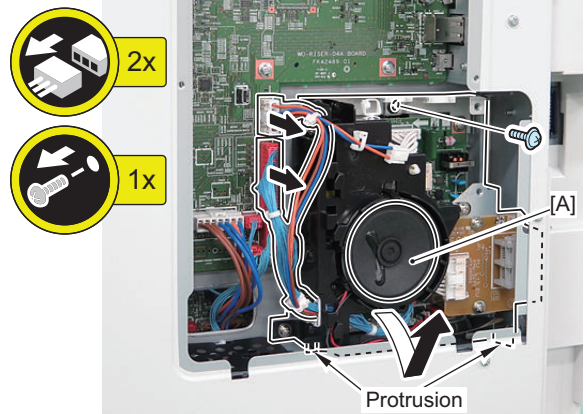


**4. Remove the FAX Unit.**

- 2 Connectors
- 1 Screw
- 2 Protrusions

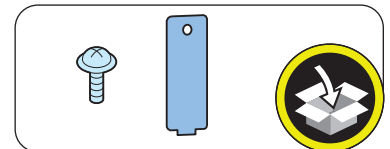
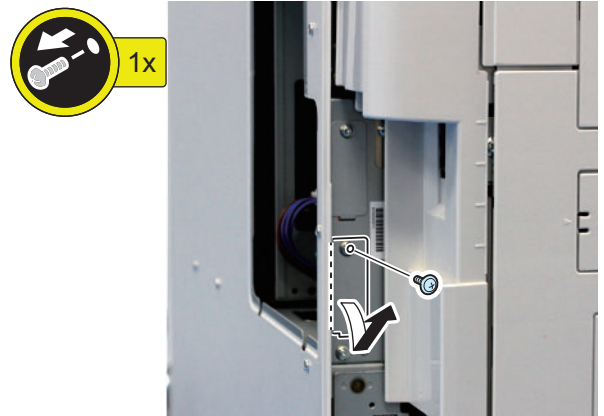
**CAUTION:**

Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be open circuit.



**5. Remove the Face Cover of the FAX (1-Line). (The removed parts will not be used.)**

- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion

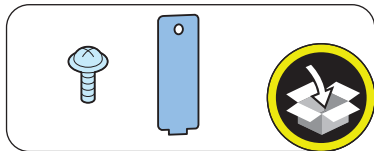
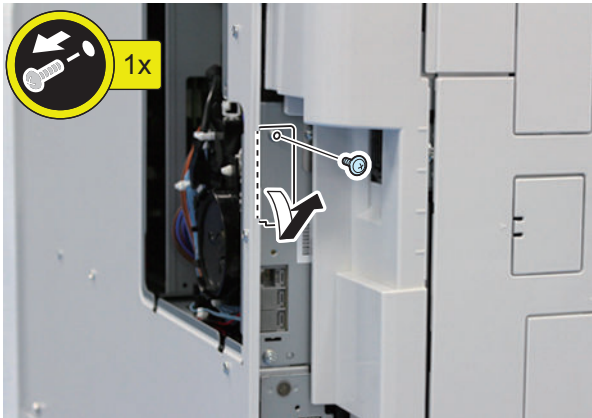






**6. Remove the Face Cover of the FAX (2-Line). (The removed parts will not be used.)**

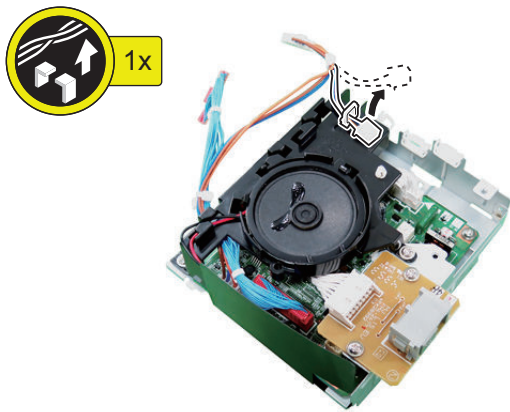
- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion



**■ Installing the Equipment**

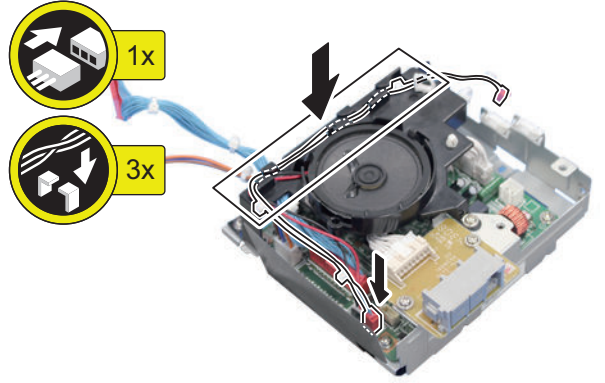
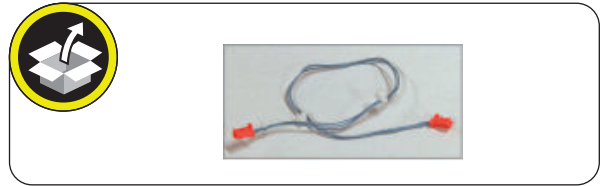


**1. Free the Cable from the Wire Saddle.**

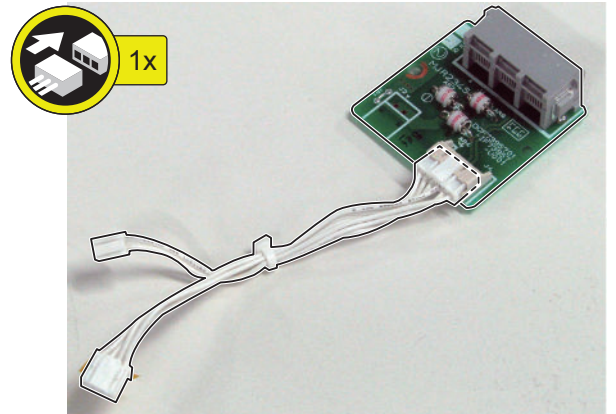
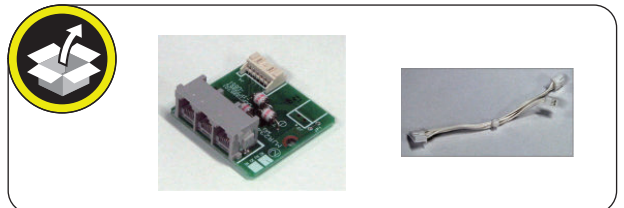


**2. Install the Signal Cable to the FAX Unit.**

- 3 Cable Guides



**3. Install the Modular Cable to the Modular PCB.**



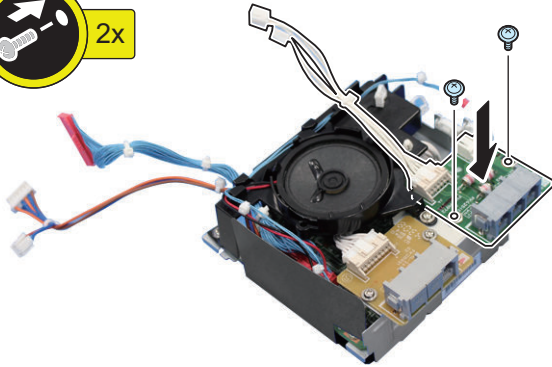


**4. Install the Modular PCB to the FAX Unit.**

- 2 Screws (TP; M3x4)



TP; M3x4

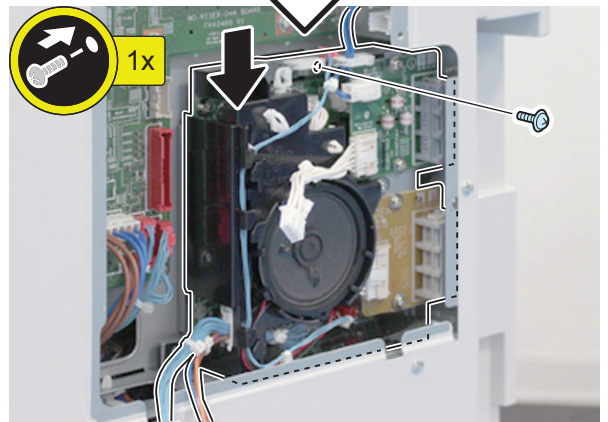
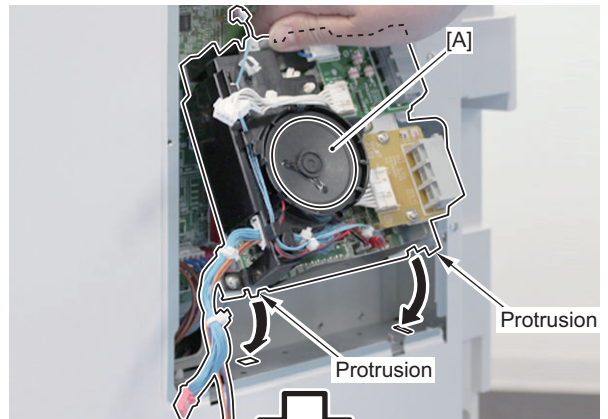


**5. Install the FAX Unit to the Host Machine.**

- 2 Protrusions
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4 Black) (Use the removed screw or those included with the Super G3 FAX Board)

**CAUTION:**

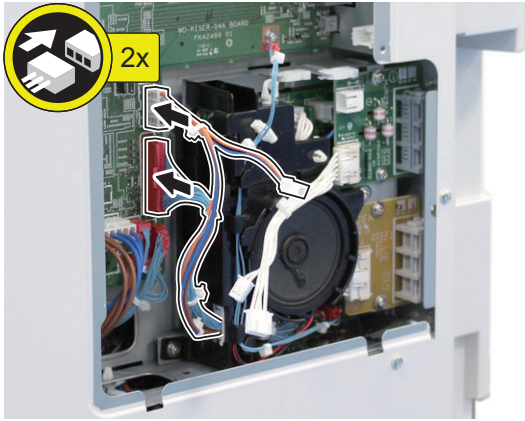
- Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be broken.
- Be sure to tighten the screw while holding the FAX Unit.
- After tightening the screw of the FAX Unit, check for any backlash. If there is backlash, tighten the screw again with the protrusion precisely fitted.



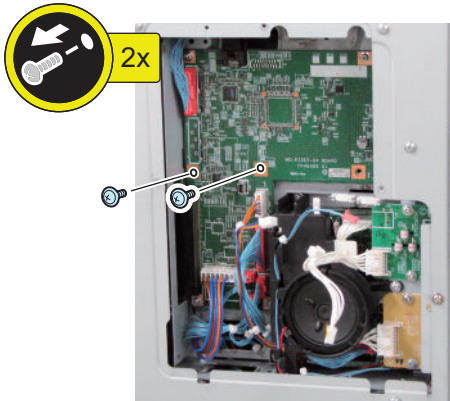


**6. Install the 2 Cable of the FAX Unit.**

- 2 Connectors

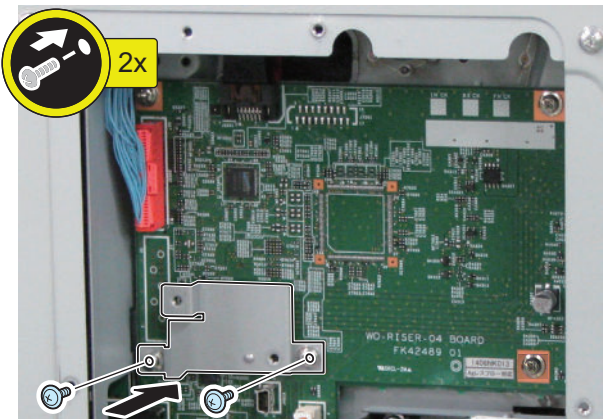
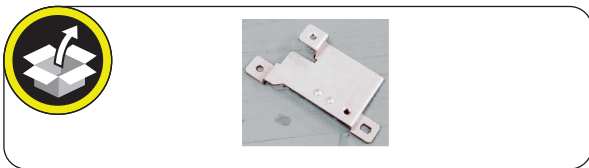


**7. Remove the 2 Screws. (will be used in next step)**



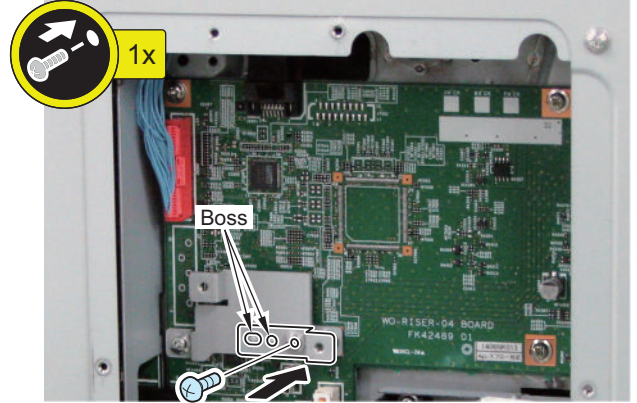
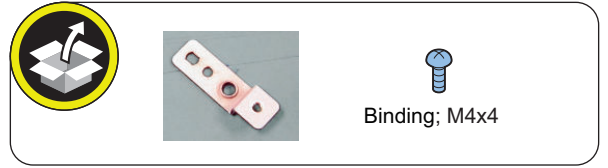
**8. Install the FAX Shield Plate.**

- 2 Screws (screws removed in the previous step)



**9. Install the FAX Board Fixed Plate.**

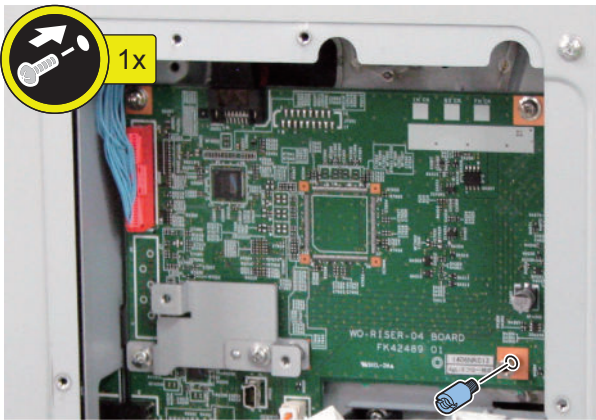
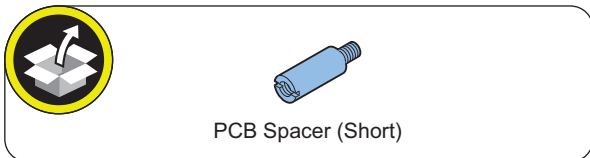
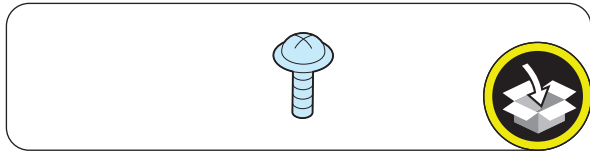
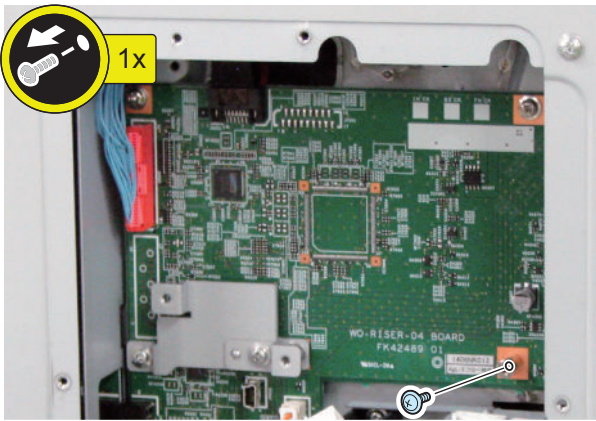
- 2 Bosses
- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x4)



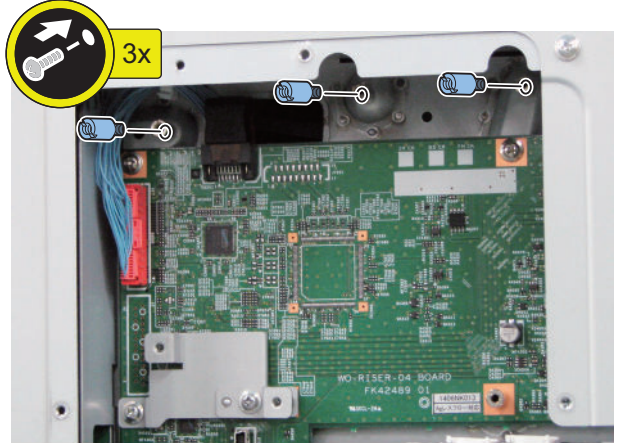
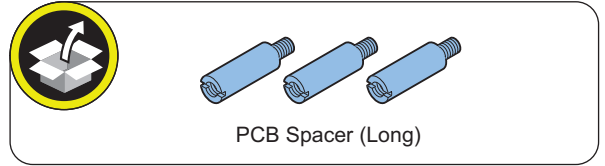




**10. Remove the Screw and install the PCB Spacer (Short).** (The removed screw will not be used.)



**11. Install the 3 PCB Spacers (Long).**

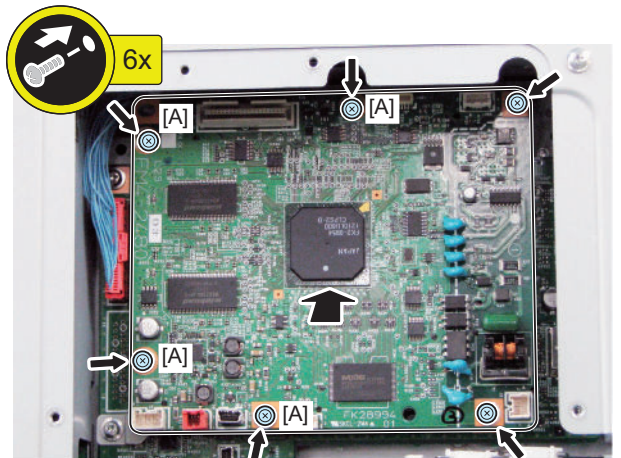
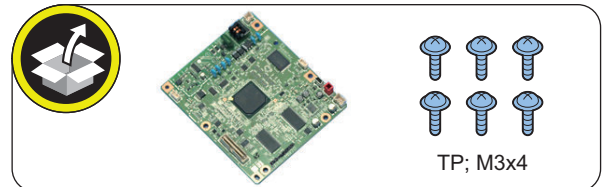


**12. Install the G3FAX Expansion PCB.**

- 6 Screws (TP; M3x4)

**NOTE:**

Because the 4 screws [A] need to be removed when installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, it is efficient not to tighten them here.



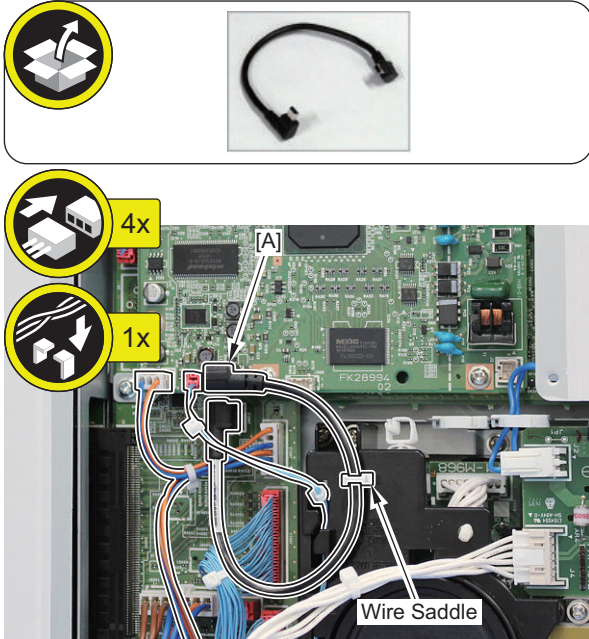


**13. Install the Signal Cable, Power Supply Cable and USB Cable to the G3FAX Expansion PCB.**

- 1 Wire Saddle

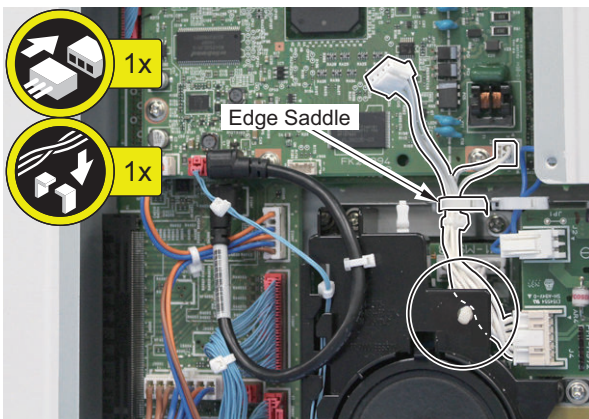
**NOTE:**

Because [A] of the USB Cable needs to be disconnected when installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, it is efficient not to connect it here.



**14. Pass the Modular Cable inside the Speaker Holder, and install the G3 FAX Control PCB.**

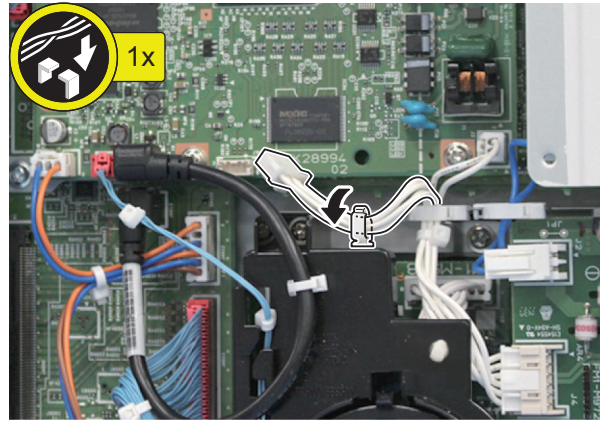
- 1 Edge Saddle



**NOTE:**

When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

**15. Secure the cable with the Wire Saddle.**



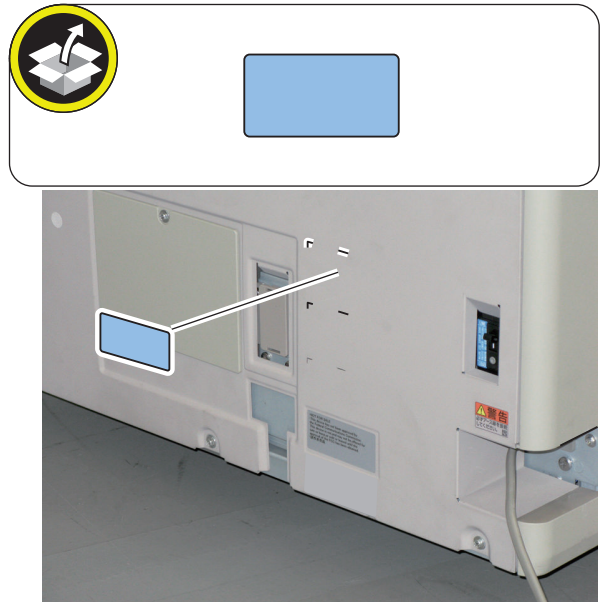
**■ Subsequent Work**



**NOTE:**

The following work is required only when installing the Super G3 FAX Board at the same time.

**1. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.**



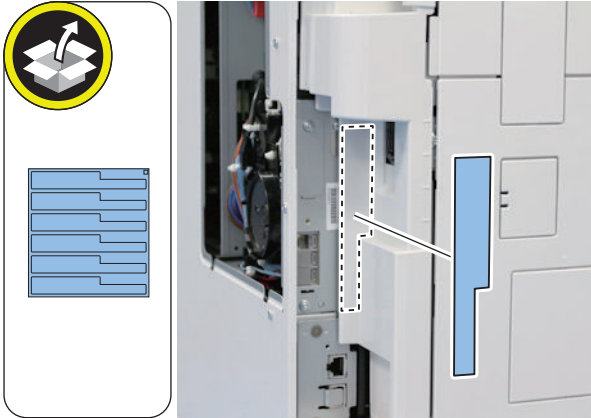


□

**NOTE:**

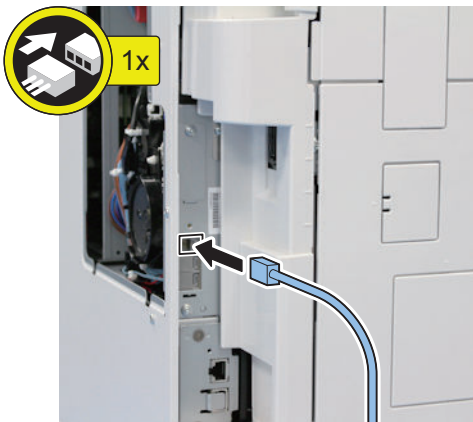
When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

2. Affix the appropriate Modular Label to the place shown in the figure.



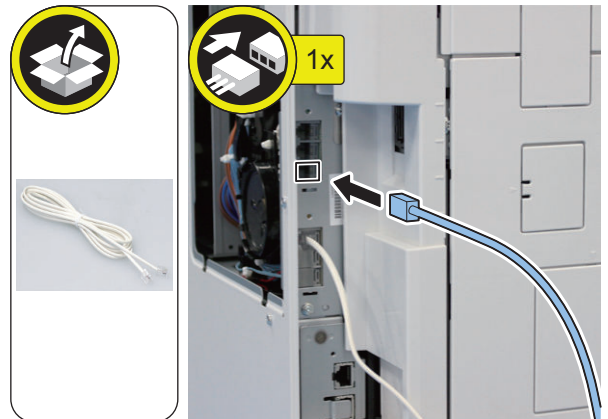
□

3. Connect the Telephone Cord of the FAX (1-Line). When installing this equipment at the same time, connect the other end to the modular jack on the wall.



□

4. Connect the end of the Telephone Cord to the modular jack on the Host machine, and connect the other end to the modular jack on the wall.

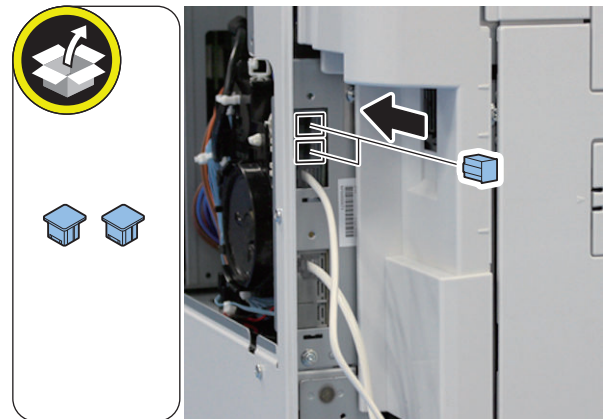


□

**NOTE:**

When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

5. Install the Dust Cover.



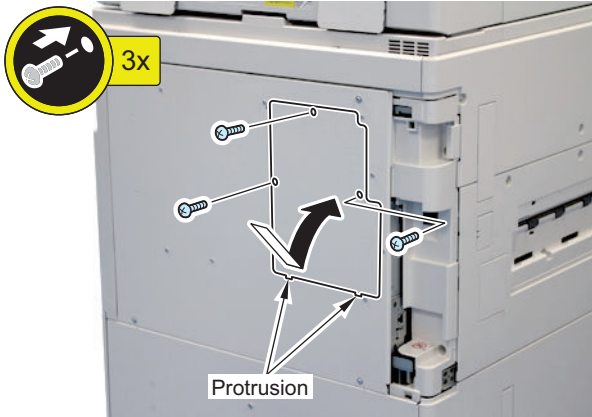
**NOTE:**

When performing the following steps, it is efficient to install the cover after installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board in case of installing the fax board at the same time.



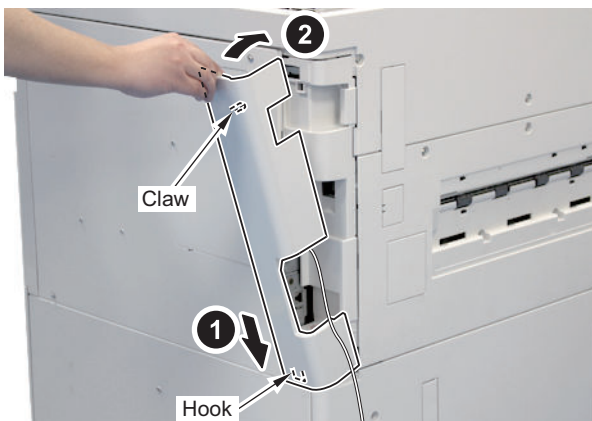
**6. Install the Rear Cover 2.**

- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws



**7. Install the Left Rear Cover.**

- 1 Hook
- 1 Claw



**8. Connect the Power Plug to the outlet.**

**9. Turn ON the main power switch.**

**CAUTION:**

If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds. To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

**10. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.**

**NOTE:**

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started.

In the service mode (Lv.2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

## Checking the Operation

### Type Settings

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode:  
FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.



**1. From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.**

FAX > TYPE > TYPE

**2. Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".**

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

**NOTE:**

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

**3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.**

### Basic Settings

**NOTE:**

When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



**1. Set the user telephone number.**

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 2] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter FAX number > [OK]



**2. Set the type of telephone line.**

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 2] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]

**3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.****■ FAX Communication Test**

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.

**1. Switch the control panel display to Fax display.****2. Select the sending line.**

Press [Fax] > [Options] > [Select Line], select the added line, then press [OK] button.

**3. Send and receive a test original between the equipment and a remote unit with which a communication test can be performed and check if it can be sent and receive correctly.**

1. Press [Status Monitor/Cancel] > [Send] > [Job Log] and select [Fax] from pull down menu.
2. Press [Fax Activity Report] > [OutPut Normally] > [Start Printing].
3. The number printed following colon (:) in "COMM.MODE" field on FAX ACTIVITY REPORT TX/RX shows line type used for sending/receiving. E.g. "ECM:2" => Line 2

**NOTE:**

If E744-5000 error code (Fax software version mismatch error) occurred while sending or receiving fax, upgrade the firmware of 2-line Fax to the latest version.

## Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS1

### Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F632503

### Points to Note at Installation

- Install this equipment after installing the Super G3 FAX Board and Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board.
- When installing Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board at the same time, start from "Installing the Equipment".
- When installing this equipment later, start from "Preparation".

### Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

#### **⚠ WARNING:**

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

### Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

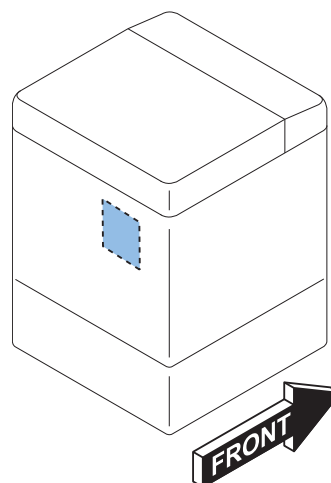
1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.

2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.


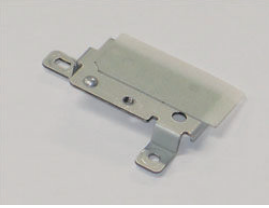

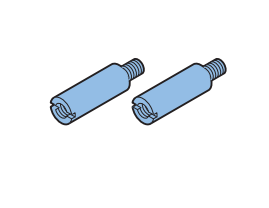
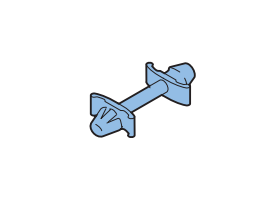
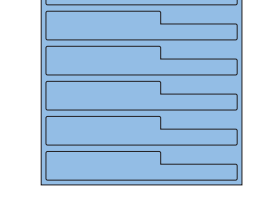
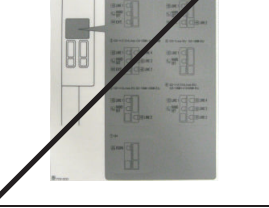
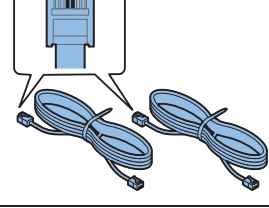
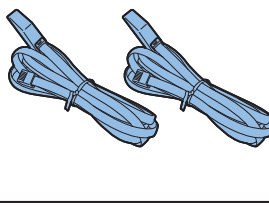
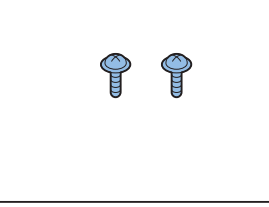
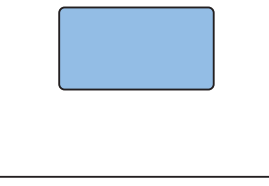
If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

### Installation Outline Drawing



## Checking the Contents

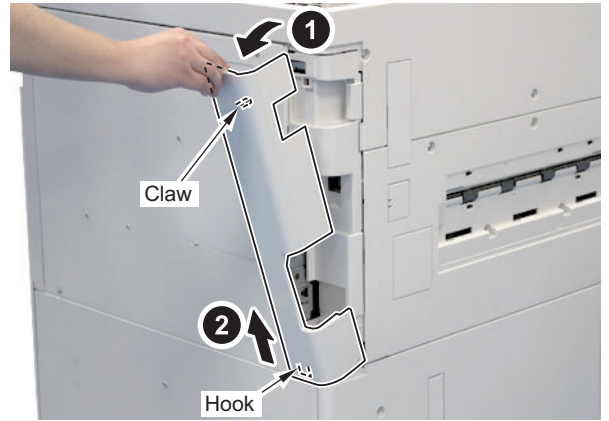
|   |   |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] G3FAX Expansion PCB X 1<br>                     | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] FAX Shield Plate X 1<br>    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] FAX Board Fixed Plate X 1<br>                   | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] PCB Spacer X 2<br>          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [5] Resin Spacer X 1<br>                           | <input type="checkbox"/> [6] Modular Label X 1<br>      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [7] Modular Label X 1<br>                         | <input type="checkbox"/> [8] Telephone Cord X 2<br>    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [9] PTT Cable X 2 (only for Asia)<br>             | <input type="checkbox"/> [10] Screw (TP; M3x4) X 2<br> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [11] FAX Approval Label (only for Taiwan) X 1<br> |   |

## Installation Procedure

### Preparation

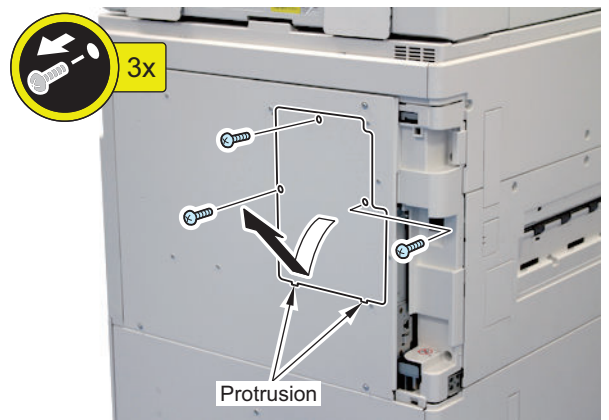
#### 1. Remove the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook

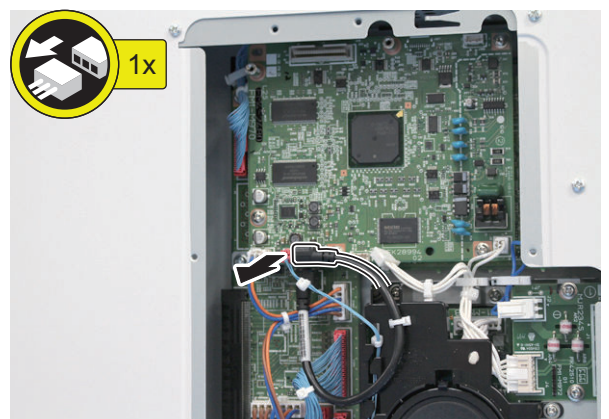


#### 2. Remove the Rear Cover 2.

- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions

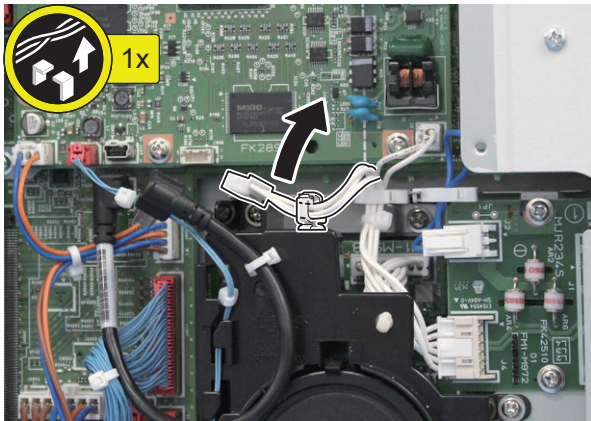


#### 3. Disconnect the USB Cable of the G3FAX Expansion PCB side.

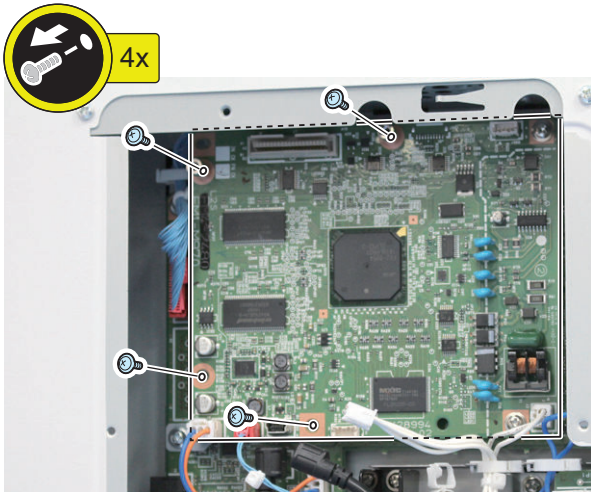




4. Free the Modular Cable from the Wire Saddle. (Close the Wire Saddle.)



5. Remove the 4 Screws. (will be used in Installing the Equipment)

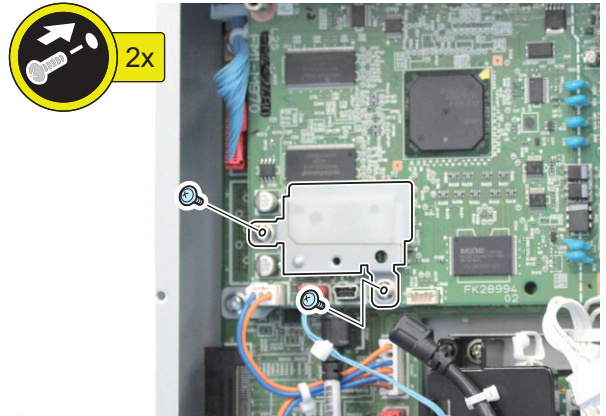
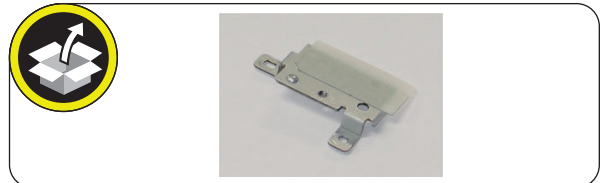


## ■ Installing the Equipment



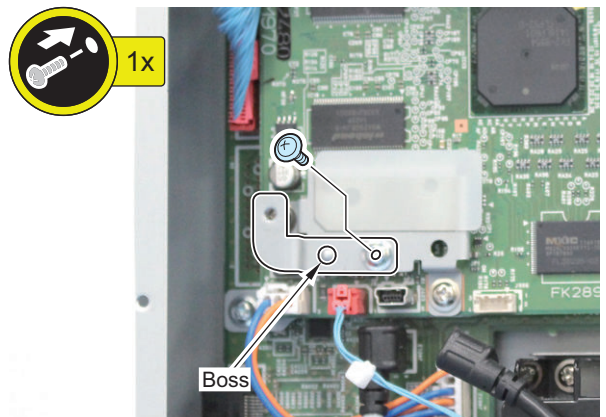
1. Install the FAX Shield Plate.

- 2 Screws (Use the removed screws or TP; M3x4 included with the FAX (2-Line))



2. Install the FAX Board Fixed Plate.

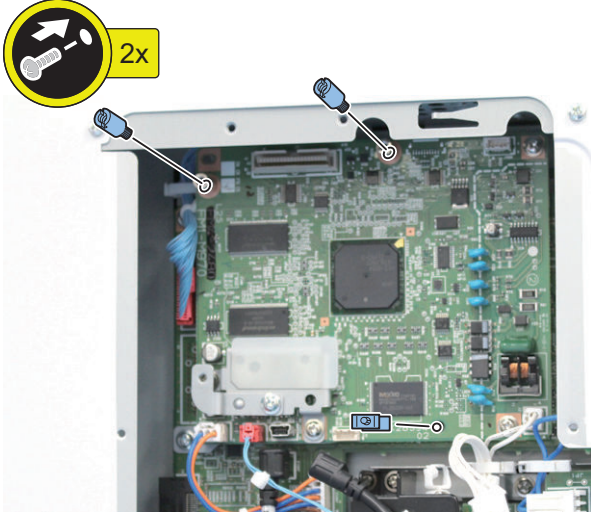
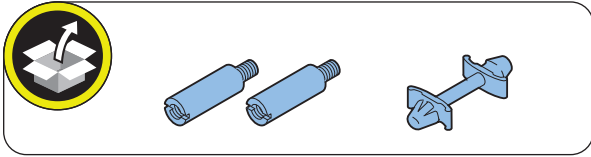
- 1 Boss
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4)





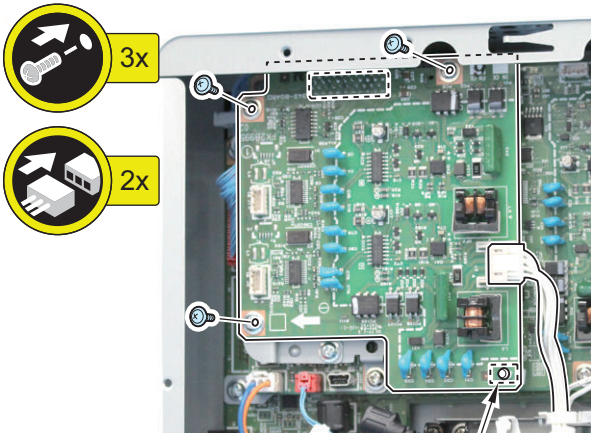
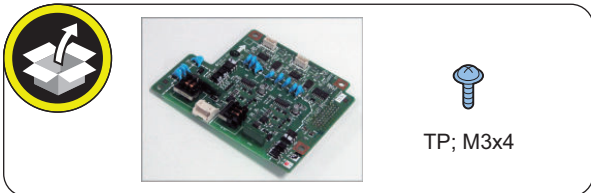


**3. Install the 2 PCB Spacers and Resin Spacer.**

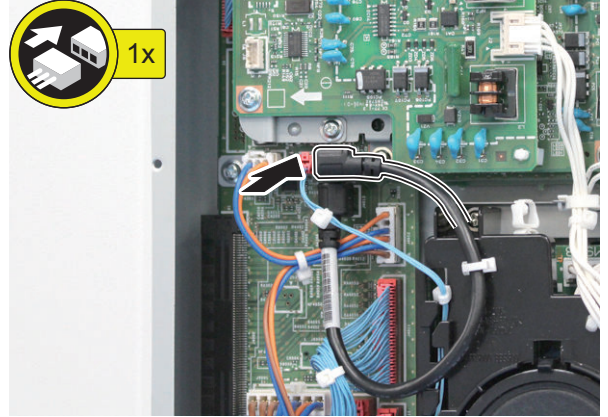


**4. Install the G3FAX Expansion PCB.**

- Upper Side: 2 Screws (Use the removed screws or TP; M3x4 included with the FAX (2-Line))
- Lower Side: 1 Screw (TP; M3x4)
- 1 Resin Spacer
- 2 Connectors



**5. Connect the USB Cable.**

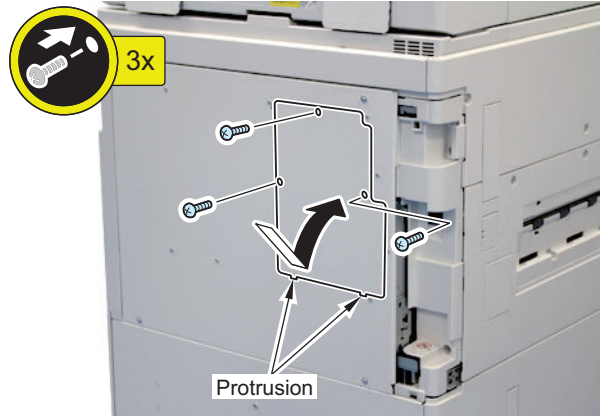


**■ Subsequent Work**



**1. Install the Rear Cover 2.**

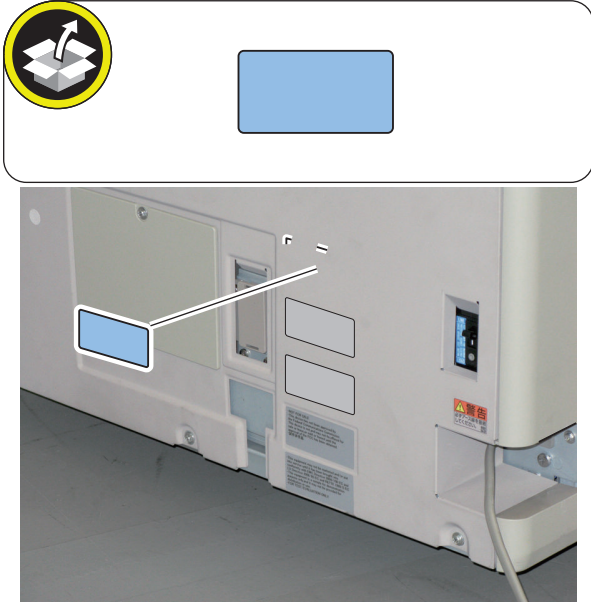
- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws



□

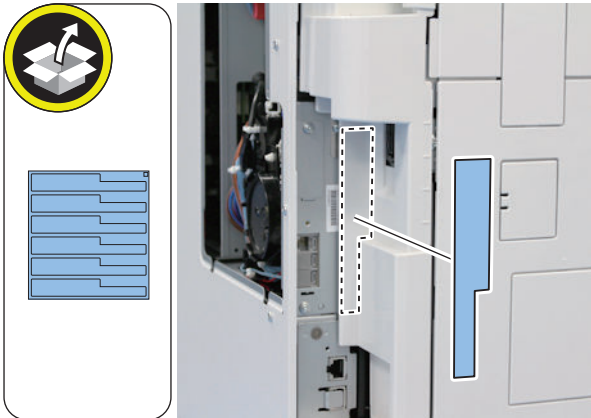
**NOTE:**  
This step is only for Taiwan.

2. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.



□

3. Affix the appropriate Modular Label. If a label is already affixed, remove it and then affix the appropriate label.

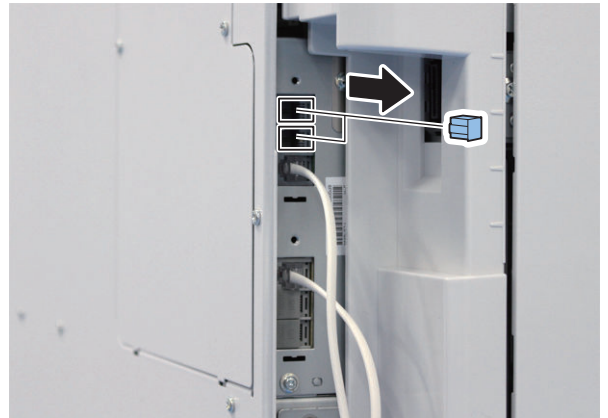


□

4. Remove the 2 Dust Covers if installed.

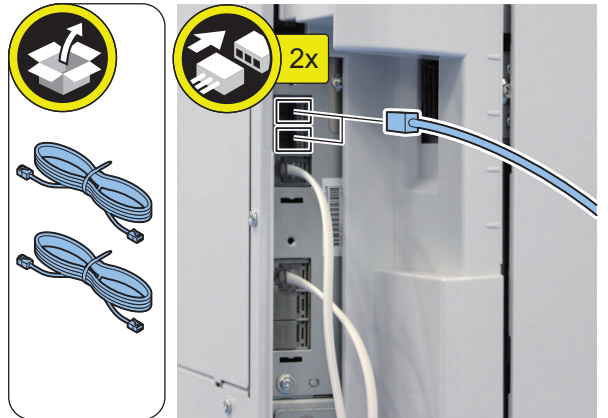
**CAUTION:**  
Do not insert a screwdriver, etc. into the modular terminal.

**NOTE:**  
Keep the removed Dust Cover.



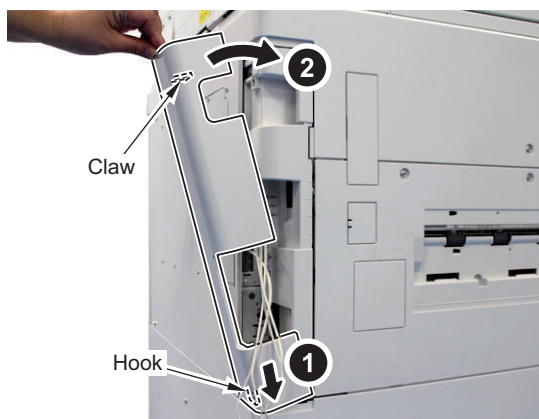
□

5. Connect one of the 2 Telephone Cords or the 2 PTT Cables to the modular jack on the host machine and the other cord to the modular jack on the wall.



**6. Install the Left Rear Cover.**

- 1 Hook
- 1 Claw

**7. Connect the power plug to the outlet.****8. Turn ON the main power switch.****CAUTION:**

If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds.

To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

If the host machine still does not recognize this equipment after performing the foregoing remedy: In the case of installing the Super G3 Fax Board (1-Line) and the Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board at the same time, it is necessary to turn OFF and then ON the power three times in some cases (no message is displayed on the Control Panel).

## Checking the Operation

### ■ Type Settings

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode:  
FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.



**1. From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.**

- Service Mode > FAX > Type > TYPE

**2. Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".**

- COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

**NOTE:**

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

**3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.**

### ■ Basic Settings

**NOTE:**

When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



**1. Set the user telephone number.**

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 3]/[Line 4] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter FAX number > [OK]

**2. Set the type of telephone line.**

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 3]/[Line 4] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]

**3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.**

### ■ FAX Communication Test

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.



**1. Switch the control panel display to Fax display.**

**2. Select the sending line.**

Press [Fax] > [Options] > [Select Line], select the added line, then press [OK] button.

**3. Send and receive a test original between the equipment and a remote unit with which a communication test can be performed and check if it can be sent and receive correctly.**

1. Press [Status Monitor/Cancel] > [Send] > [Job Log] and select [Fax] from pull down menu.
2. Press [Fax Activity Report] > [OutPut Normally] > [Start Printing].



3. The number printed following colon (:) in "COMM.MODE" field on FAX ACTIVITY REPORT TX/RX shows line type used for sending/receiving. E.g. "ECM:3" => Line 3

## Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS2

### Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F632503

### Points to Note at Installation

- Install this equipment after installing the Super G3 FAX Board and Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board.
- When installing Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board at the same time, start from "Installing the Equipment".
- When installing this equipment later, start from "Preparation".

### Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

#### **⚠ WARNING:**

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
- If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.

- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
  1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
  2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

### Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

The following message is displayed.

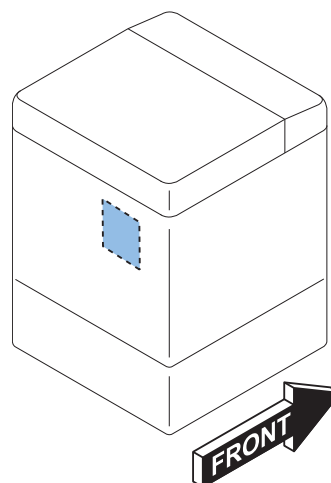
1. When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.

2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.




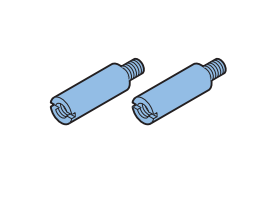
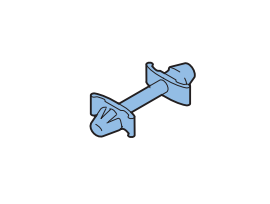
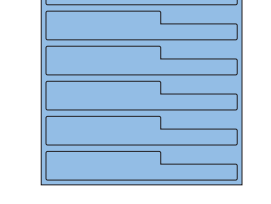
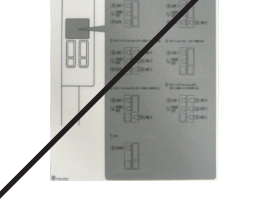
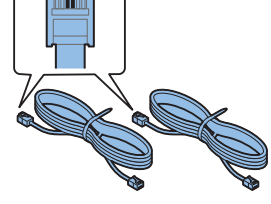
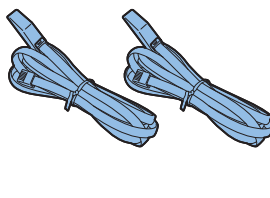
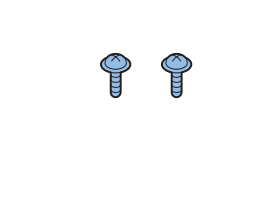
If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

### Installation Outline Drawing



## Checking the Contents

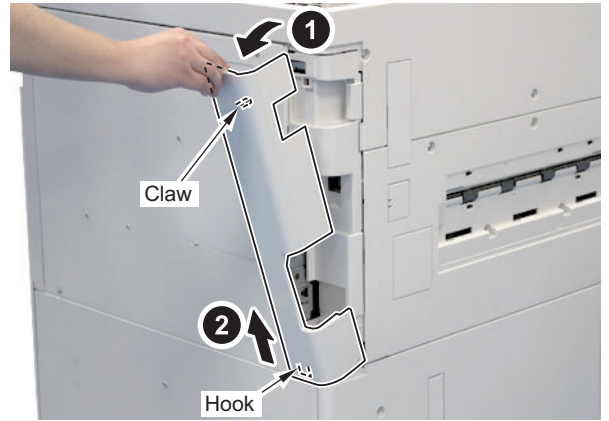
|   |   |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> [1] G3FAX Expansion PCB X 1<br>         | <input type="checkbox"/> [2] FAX Shield Plate X 1<br>    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [3] FAX Board Fixed Plate X 1<br>       | <input type="checkbox"/> [4] PCB Spacer X 2<br>          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [5] Resin Spacer X 1<br>               | <input type="checkbox"/> [6] Modular Label X 1<br>      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [7] Modular Label X 1<br>             | <input type="checkbox"/> [8] Telephone Cord X 2<br>    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> [9] PTT Cable X 2 (only for Asia)<br> | <input type="checkbox"/> [10] Screw (TP; M3x4) X 2<br> |

## Installation Procedure

### Preparation

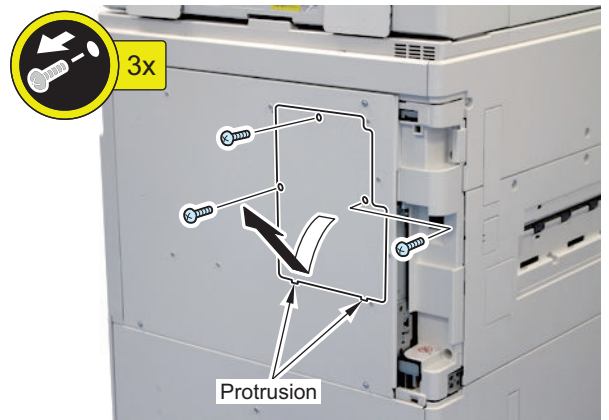
#### 1. Remove the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook

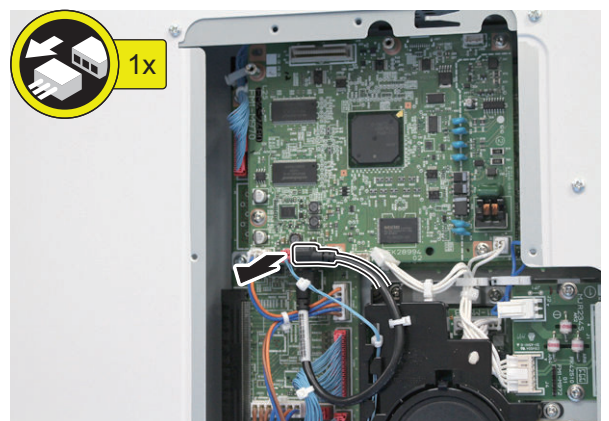


#### 2. Remove the Rear Cover 2.

- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions

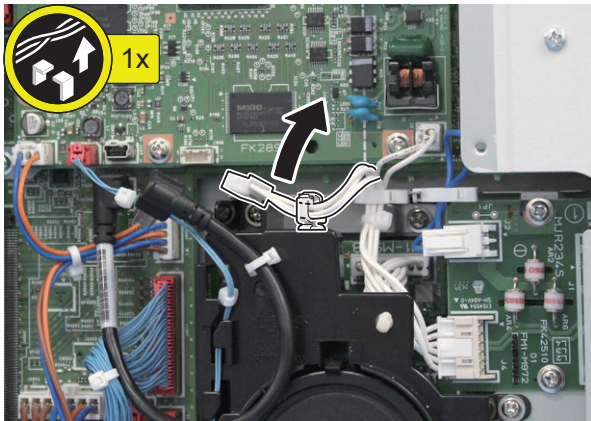


#### 3. Disconnect the USB Cable of the G3FAX Expansion PCB side.

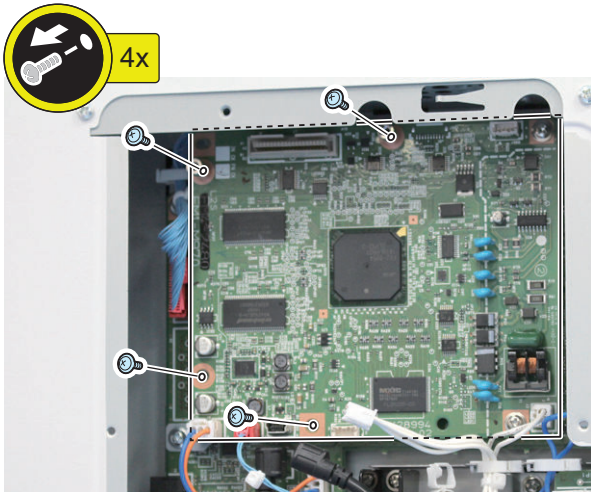




4. Free the Modular Cable from the Wire Saddle. (Close the Wire Saddle.)



5. Remove the 4 Screws. (will be used in Installing the Equipment)

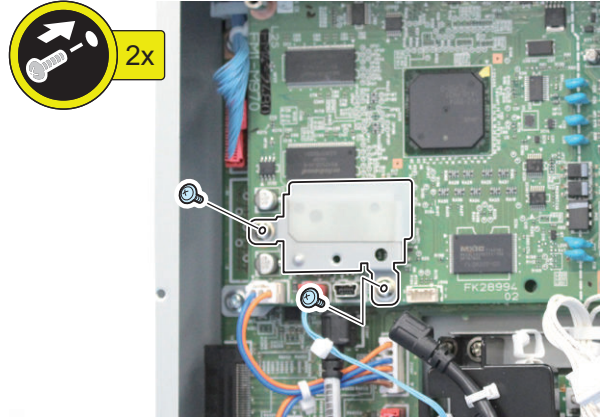
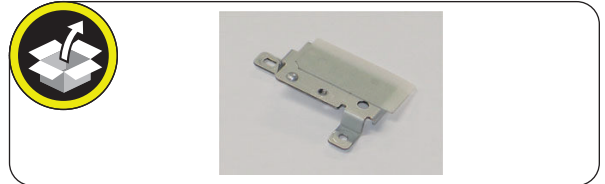


## ■ Installing the Equipment



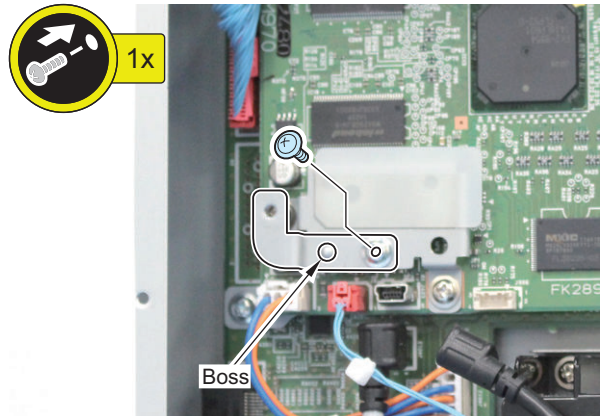
1. Install the FAX Shield Plate.

- 2 Screws (Use the removed screws or TP; M3x4 included with the FAX (2-Line))



2. Install the FAX Board Fixed Plate.

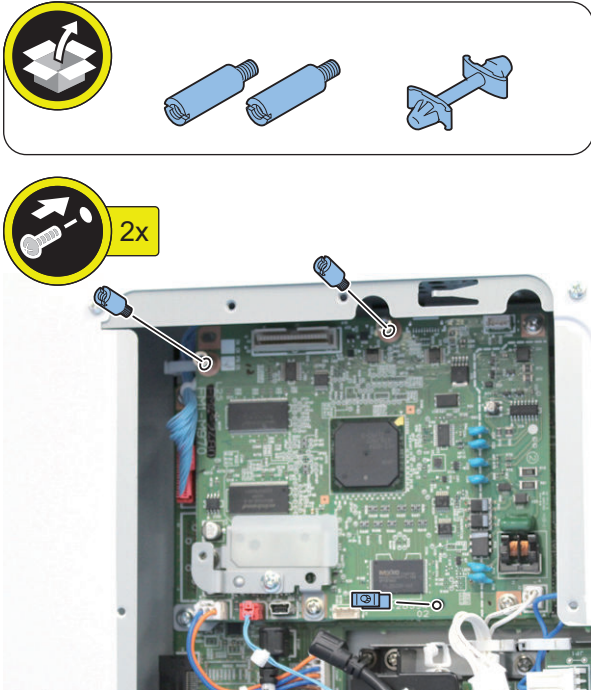
- 1 Boss
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4)





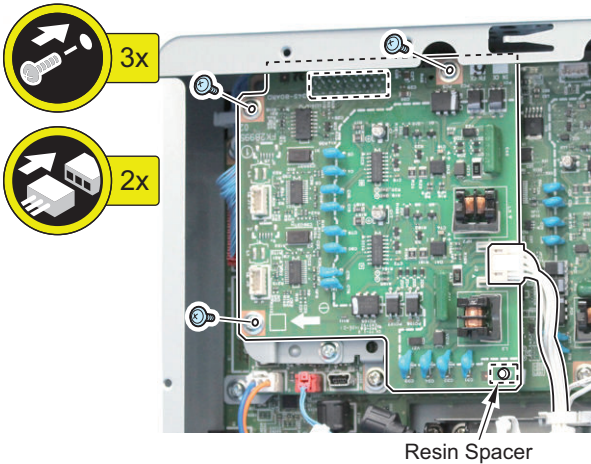
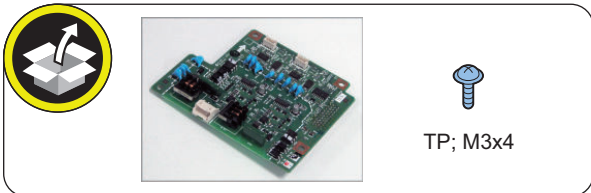


**3. Install the 2 PCB Spacers and Resin Spacer.**

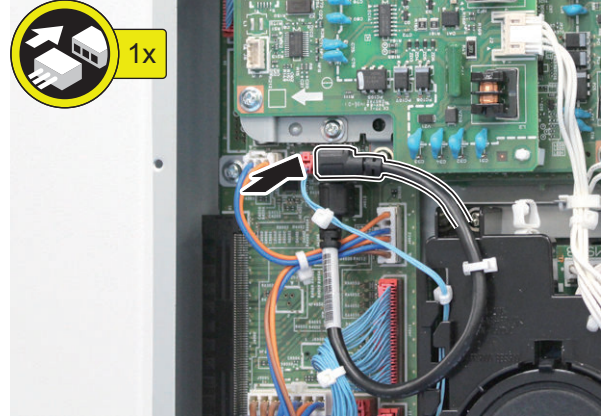


**4. Install the G3FAX Expansion PCB.**

- Upper Side: 2 Screws (Use the removed screws or TP; M3x4 included with the FAX (2-Line))
- Lower Side: 1 Screw (TP; M3x4)
- 1 Resin Spacer
- 2 Connectors



**5. Connect the USB Cable.**

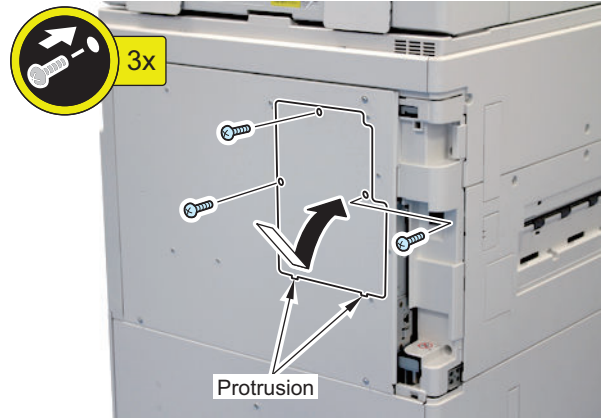


**■ Subsequent Work**

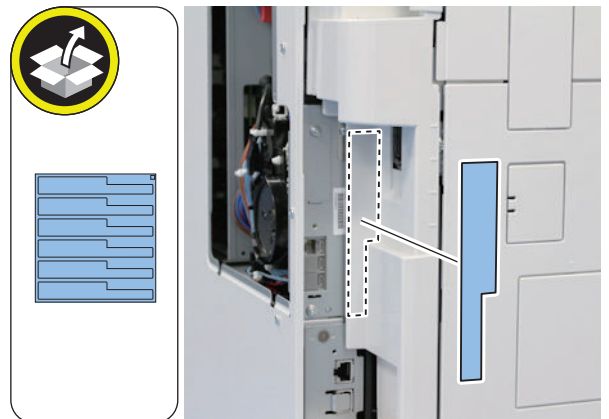


**1. Install the Rear Cover 2.**

- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws



**2. Affix the appropriate Modular Label. If a label is already affixed, remove it and then affix the appropriate label.**





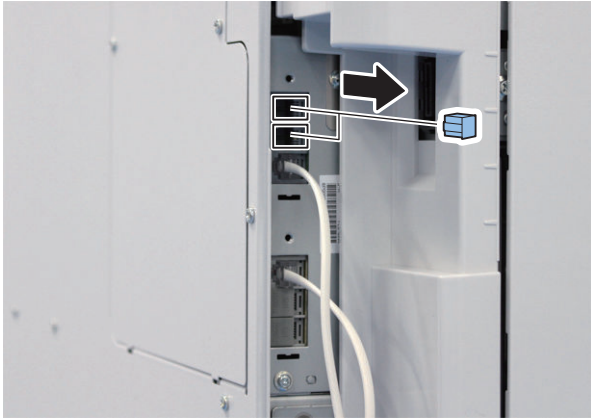
**3. Remove the 2 Dust Covers if installed.**

**CAUTION:**

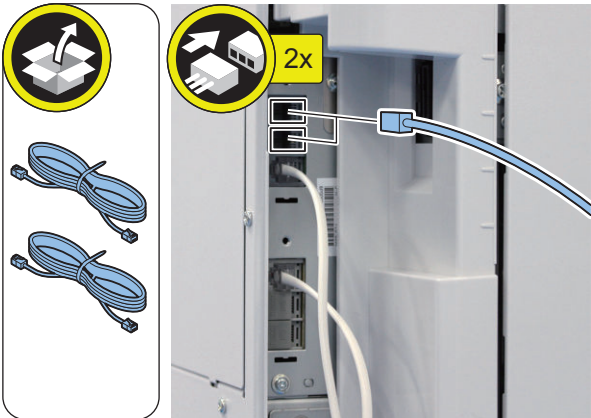
Do not insert a screwdriver, etc. into the modular terminal.

**NOTE:**

Keep the removed Dust Cover.

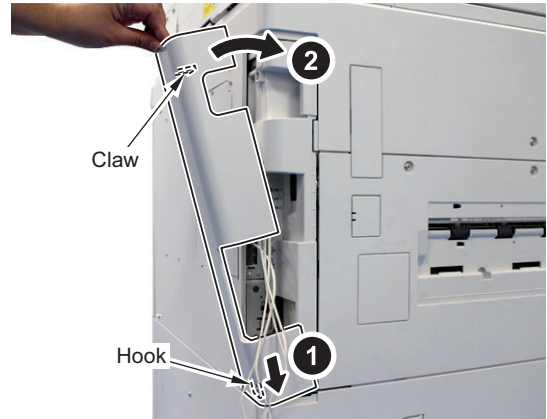


**4. Connect one of the 2 Telephone Cords or the 2 PTT Cables to the modular jack on the host machine and the other cord to the modular jack on the wall.**



**5. Install the Left Rear Cover.**

- 1 Hook
- 1 Claw



**6. Connect the power plug to the outlet.**

**7. Turn ON the main power switch.**

**CAUTION:**

If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds.

To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

If the host machine still does not recognize this equipment after performing the foregoing remedy: In the case of installing the Super G3 Fax Board (1-Line) and the Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board at the same time, it is necessary to turn OFF and then ON the power three times in some cases (no message is displayed on the Control Panel).

## ● Checking the Operation

### ■ Type Settings

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode:  
FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.



**1. From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.**

- Service Mode > FAX > Type > TYPE

2. **Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".**

- COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

**NOTE:**

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

3. **Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.**

## ■ Basic Settings

**NOTE:**

When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



1. **Set the user telephone number.**

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 3]/[Line 4] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter FAX number > [OK]

2. **Set the type of telephone line.**

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 3]/[Line 4] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]

3. **Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.**

## ■ FAX Communication Test

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.



1. **Switch the control panel display to Fax display.**

2. **Select the sending line.**

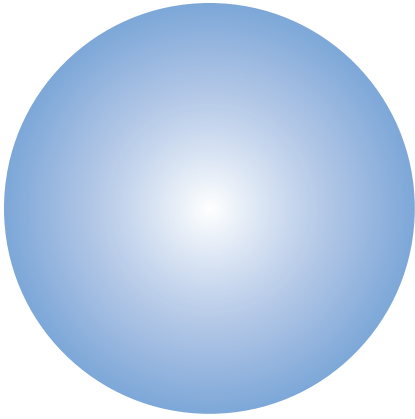
Press [Fax] > [Options] > [Select Line], select the added line, then press [OK] button.

3. **Send and receive a test original between the equipment and a remote unit with which a communication test can be performed and check if it can be sent and receive correctly.**

1. Press [Status Monitor/Cancel] > [Send] > [Job Log] and select [Fax] from pull down menu.
2. Press [Fax Activity Report] > [OutPut Normally] > [Start Printing].

3. The number printed following colon (:) in "COMM.MODE" field on FAX ACTIVITY REPORT TX/RX shows line type used for sending/receiving. E.g. "ECM:3" => Line 3





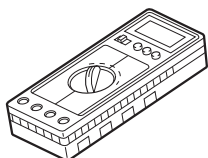
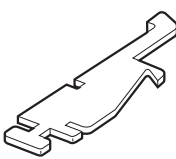
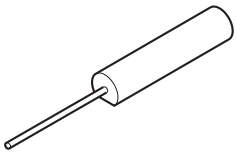
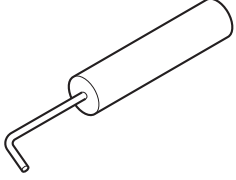
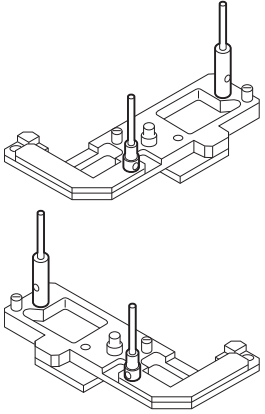
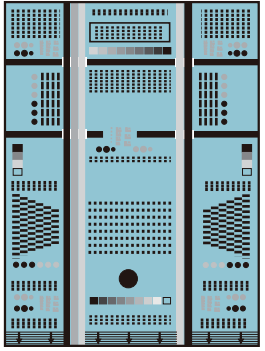
# APPENDICES

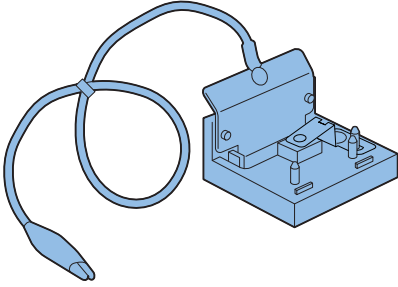
|  |      |
|--|------|
| Service Tools.....                                 | 1693 |
| General Circuit Diagram.....                       | 1695 |
| Soft counter specifications.....                   | 1725 |
| Removal.....                                       | 1729 |
| List of Service Modes That Can Be<br>Restored..... | 1732 |

## Service Tools

### Special Tools

In addition to the standard tools set, the following special tools are required when servicing the machine.

| Tool name                            | Tool No          | Category | Appearance   | Remarks  |
|--------------------------------------|------------------|----------|--|--|
| Digital multimeter                   | FY9-2002         | A        |    | Used for electrical checks; for adjustment of laser power in combination with the laser power checker. |
| Cover switch                         | TKN-0093         | A        |    |  |
| Tester extension pin                 | FY9-3038         | A        |    | Used as a probe extension when making electrical checks.   |
| Tester extension pin(L-shaped)       | FY9-3039         | A        |   | Used as a probe extension when making electrical checks.   |
| Mirror positioning tool(front, rear) | FY9-3046-00<br>0 | B        |  | Used for positioning the mirror mount 1 and the mirror mount 2.  |
| NA-3 Test Sheet                      | FY9-9196         | A        |  | Use for image adjustment / check   |

| Tool name                               | Tool No          | Category | Appearance   | Remarks                                       |
|---|------------------|----------|--|---|
| Electrode for checking potential sensor | FY9-3059-00<br>0 | B        |  | Surface potential sensor for zero-level check |

Reference: Category

A: Must be kept by each service engineer.

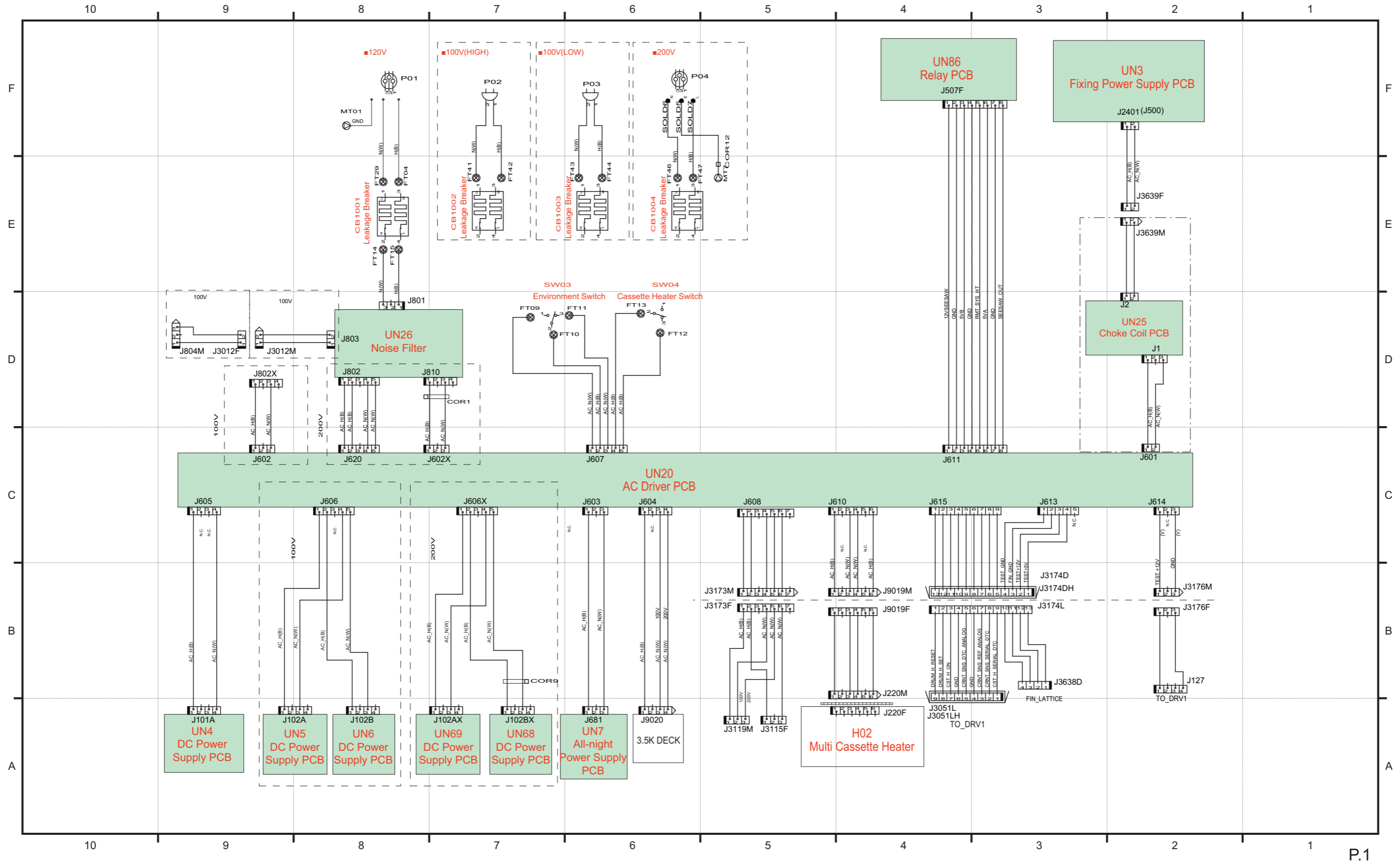
B: Must be kept by each group of about five engineers.

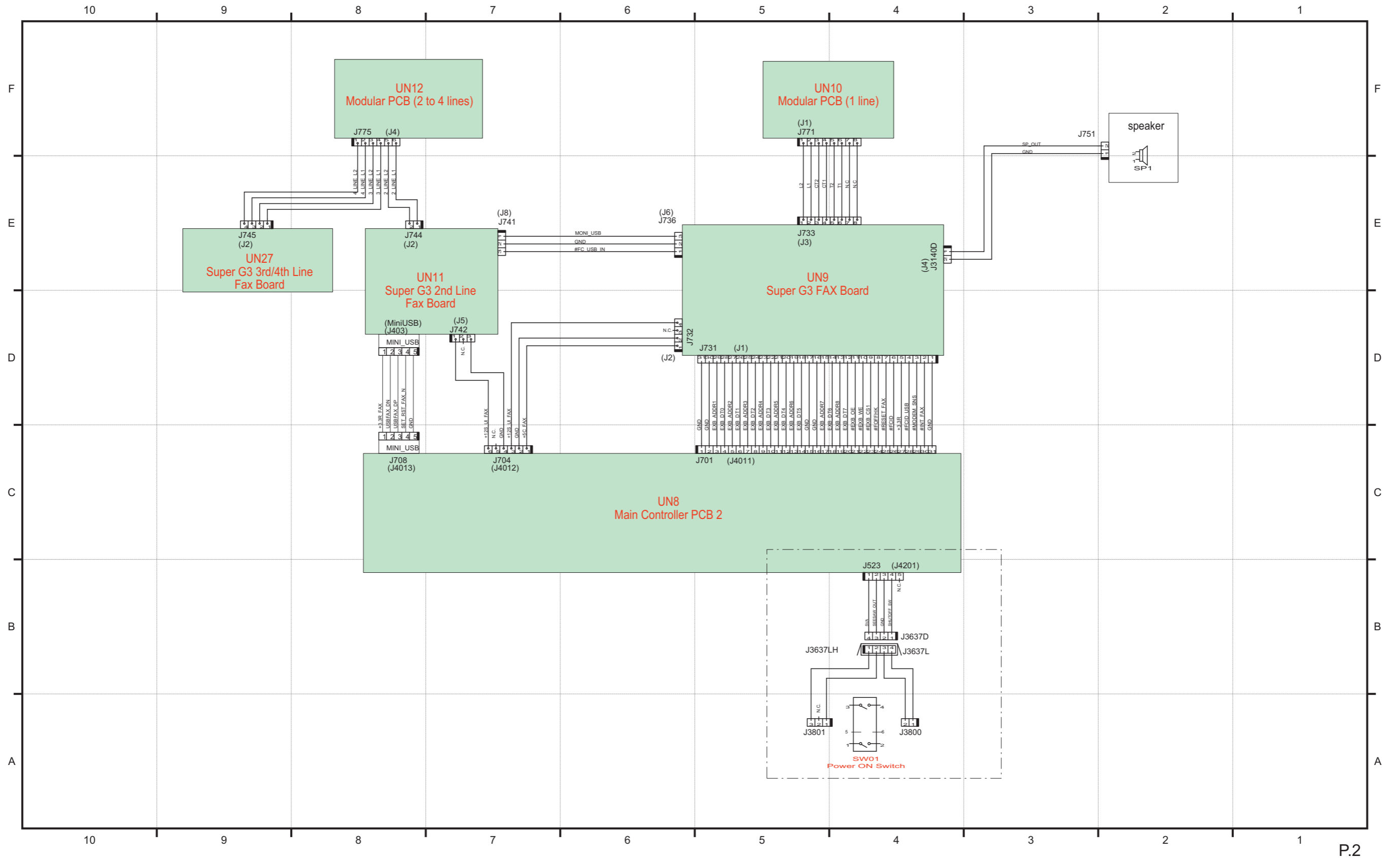
C: Must be kept by each workshop

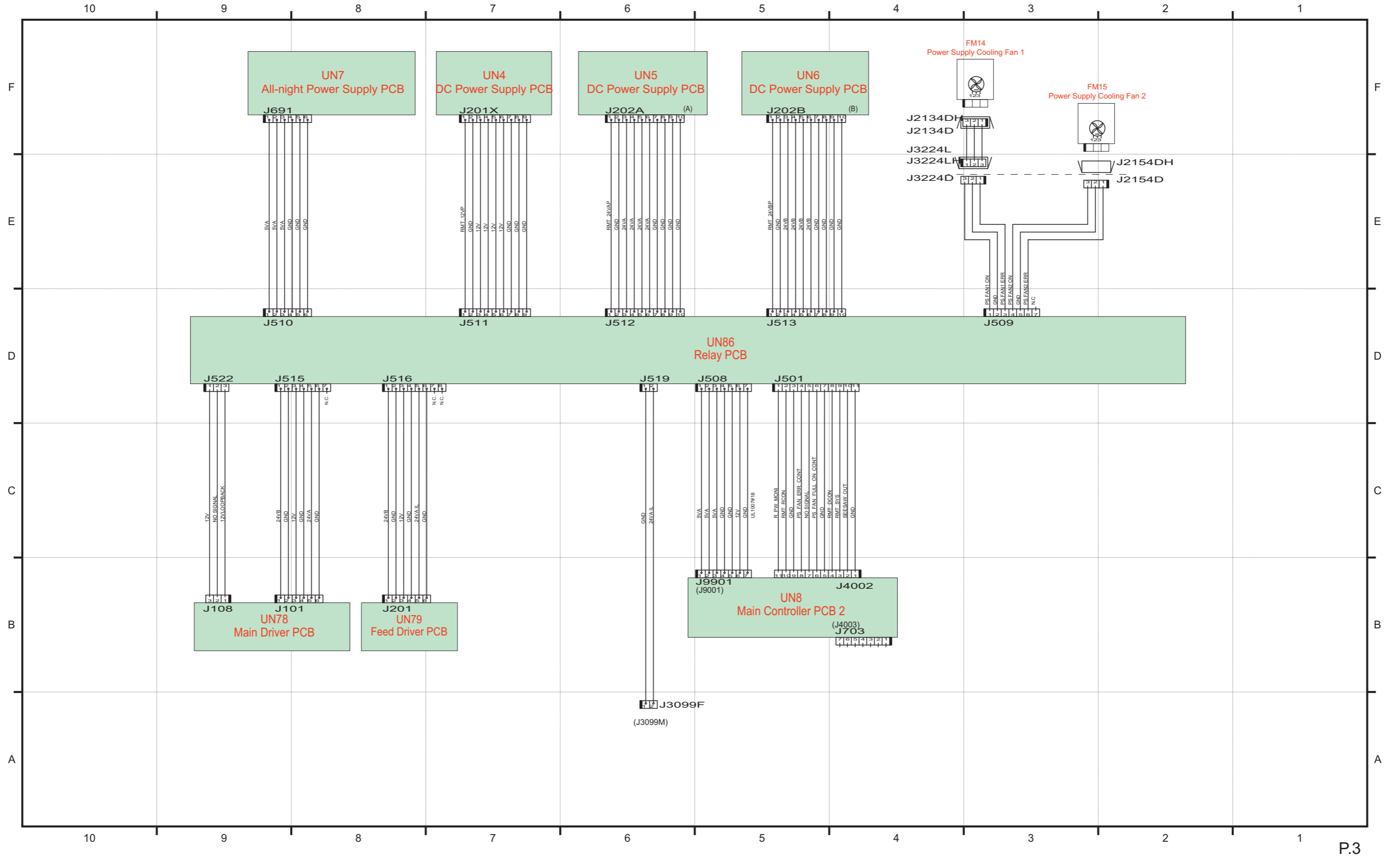
## Solvent/Oil List

| Solvent name         | Location of use                                     | Service parts number                   | Caution                    |
|----------------------|---|--|----------------------------|
| Alcohol              | External Covers, Control Panel, etc.                | None (to be prepared by sales company) | Never put it close to fire |
| Super Lube Grease    | Gears of the Fixing Assembly                        | FY9-6005                               |                            |
| Tospearl 240         | Drum Cleaner Blade                                  | FY9-6007                               |                            |
| MOLYKOTE EM-50L      | Gears   | HY9-0007                               |                            |
| Conductive grease    | Drum Sliding Assembly                               | FY9-6008                               |                            |
| Drum cleaning powder | Cleaning of the Photosensitive Drum                 | FY9-6024                               |                            |
| Oil Glass Cleaner    | Cleaning of the surface of the Stream Reading Glass | FY9-6035                               |                            |
| Cleaning Cloth       | Cleaning of the surface of the Stream Reading Glass | FC5-4430                               |                            |
| MOLYKOTE HP-300      | Insulating Bush of the Fixing Roller                | CK-8012                                |                            |

General Circuit Diagram



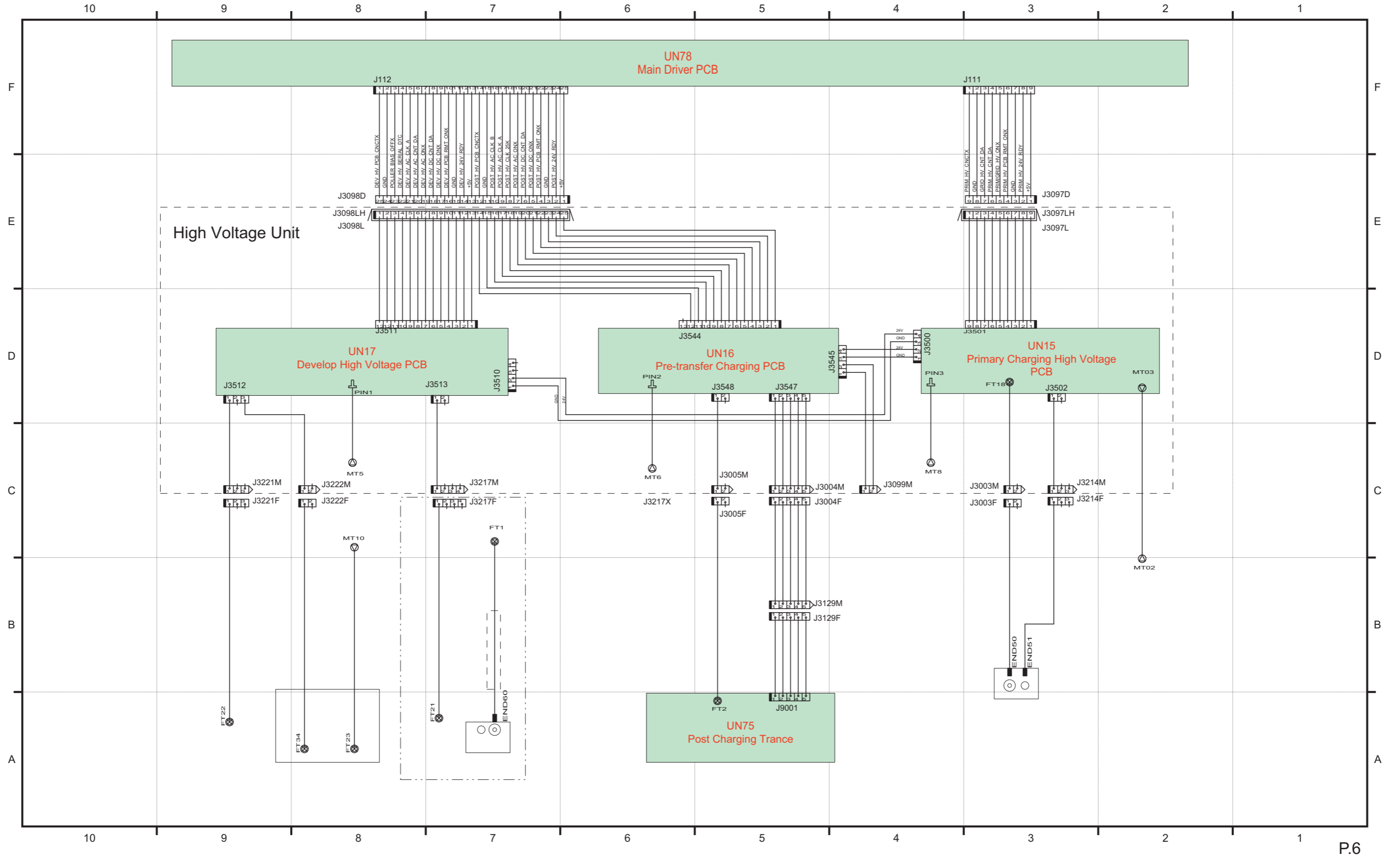


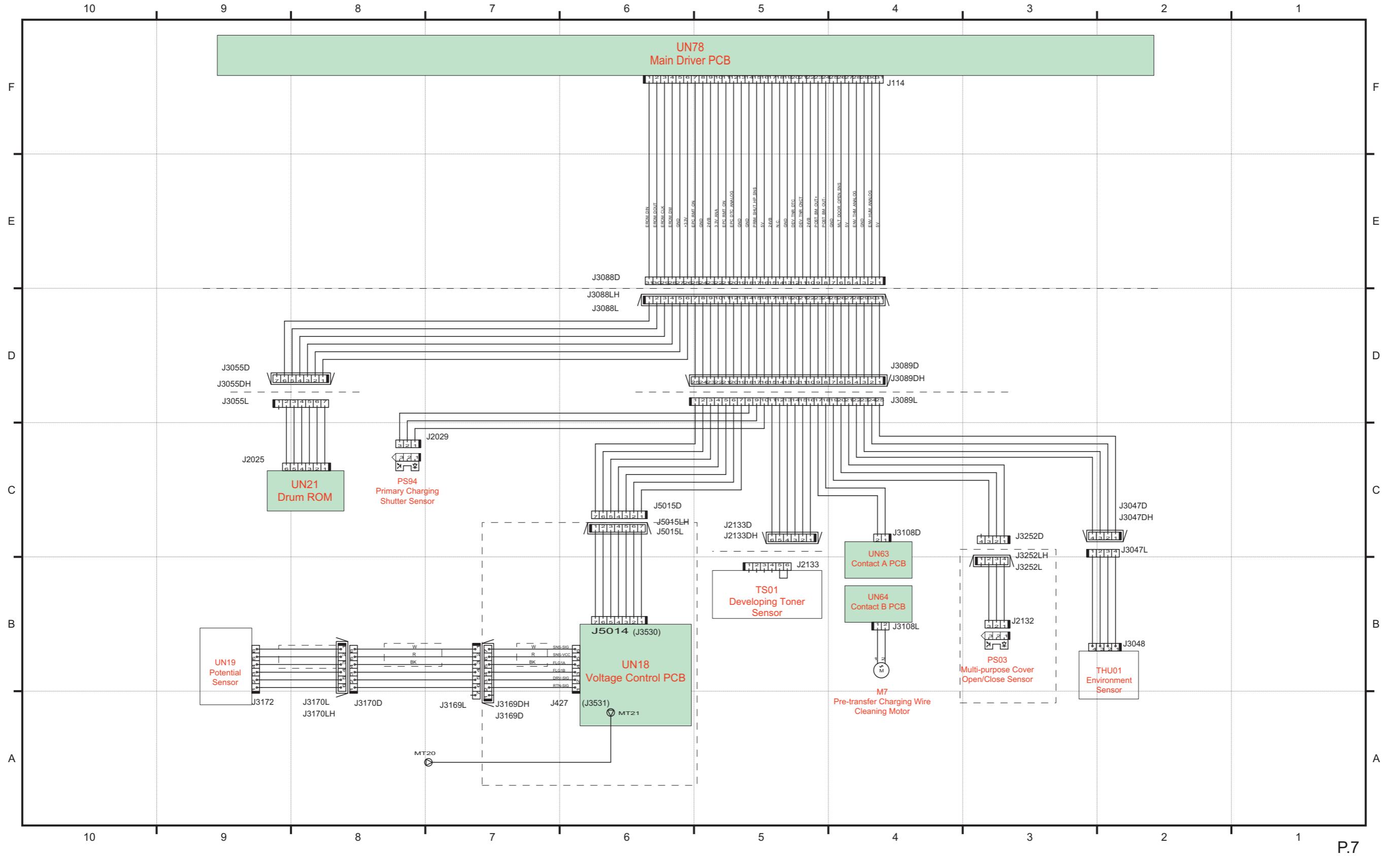




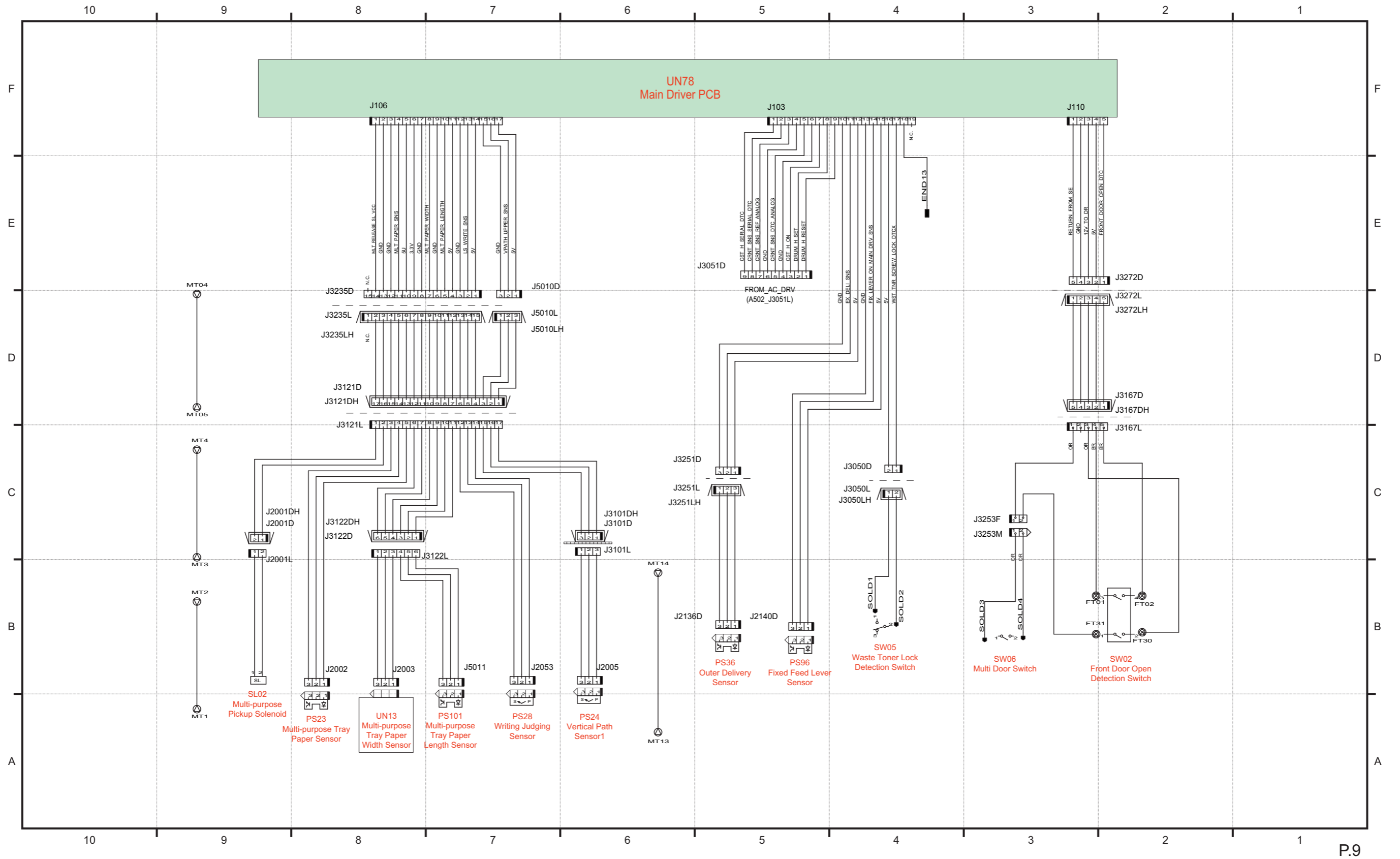


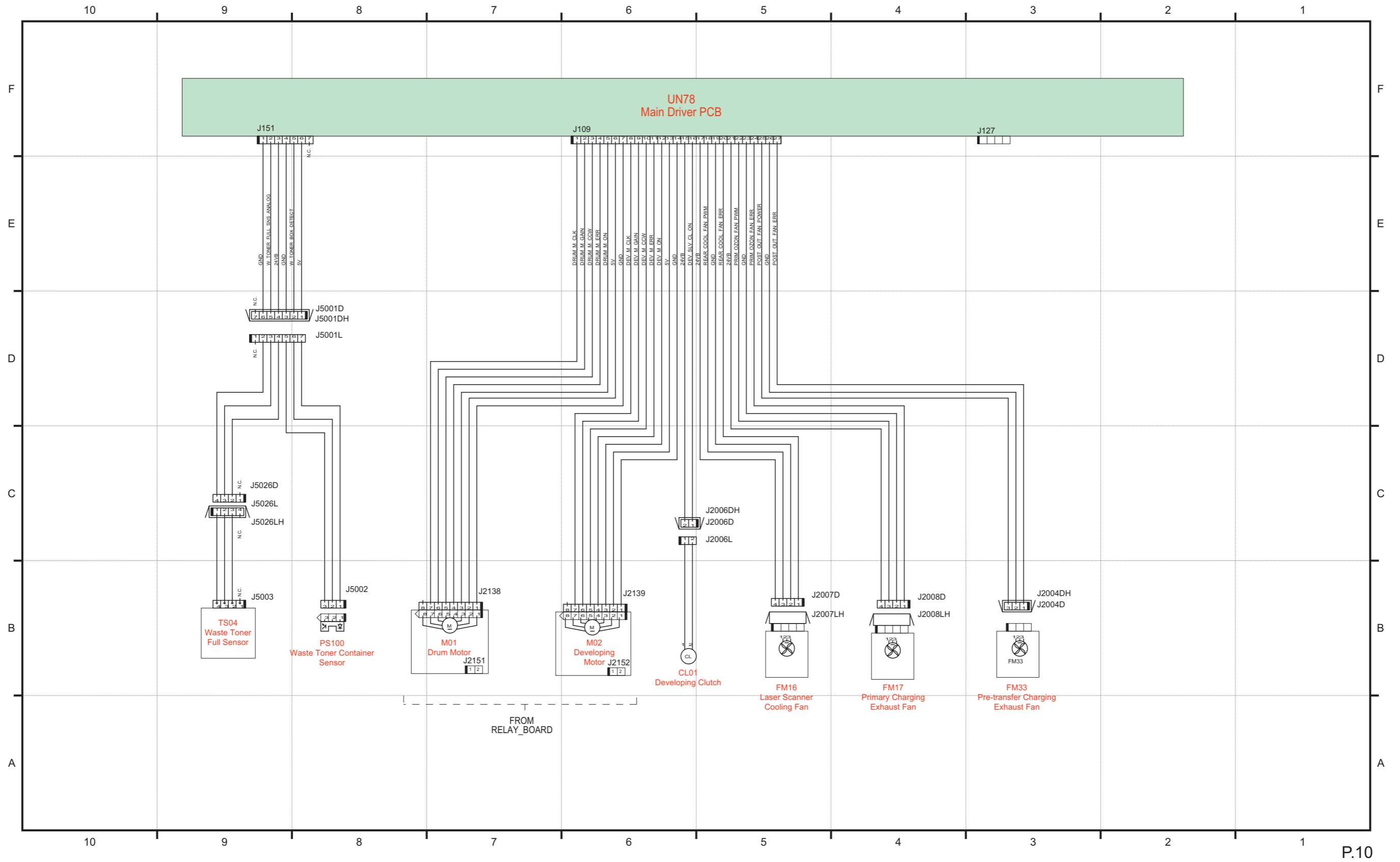


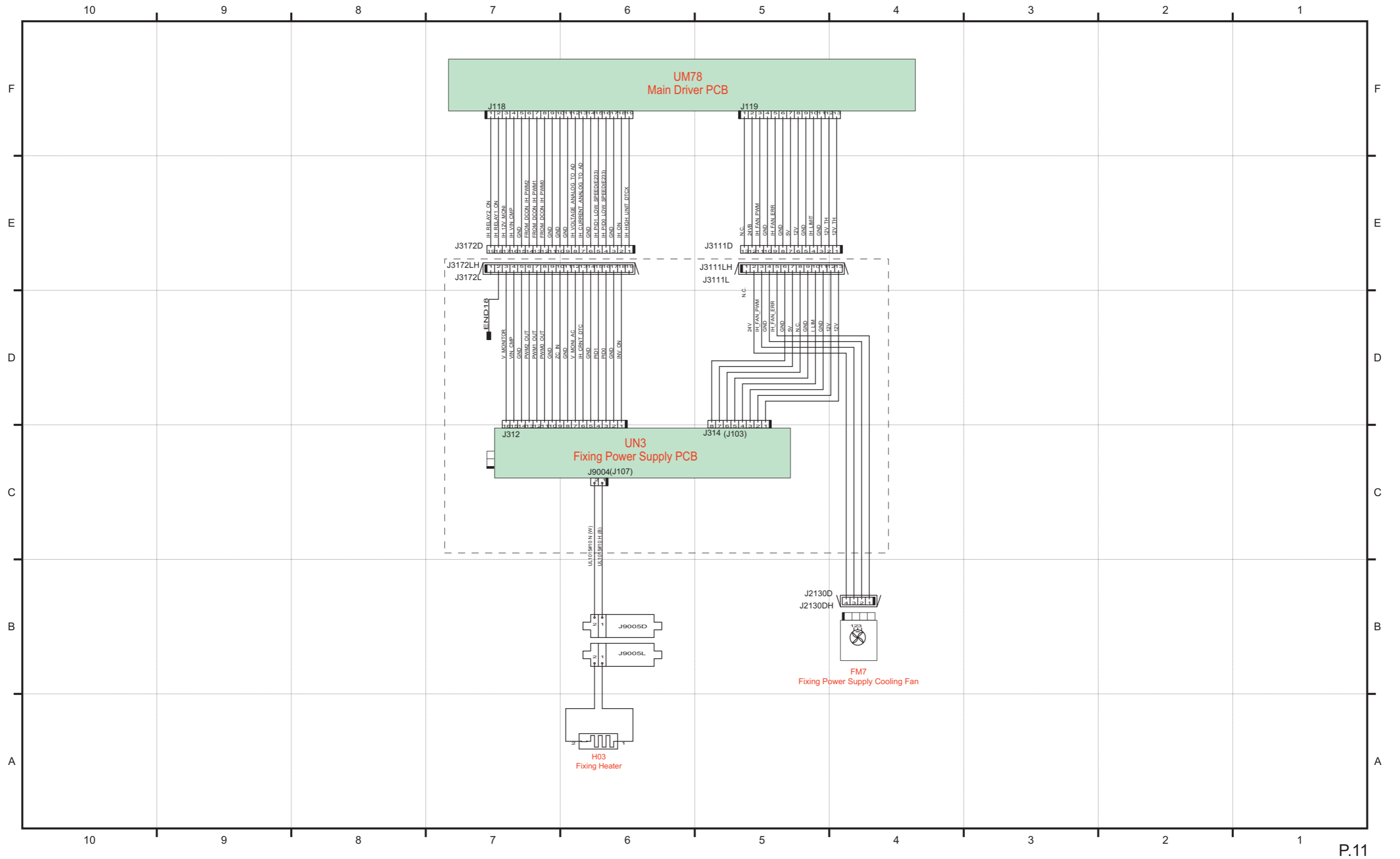




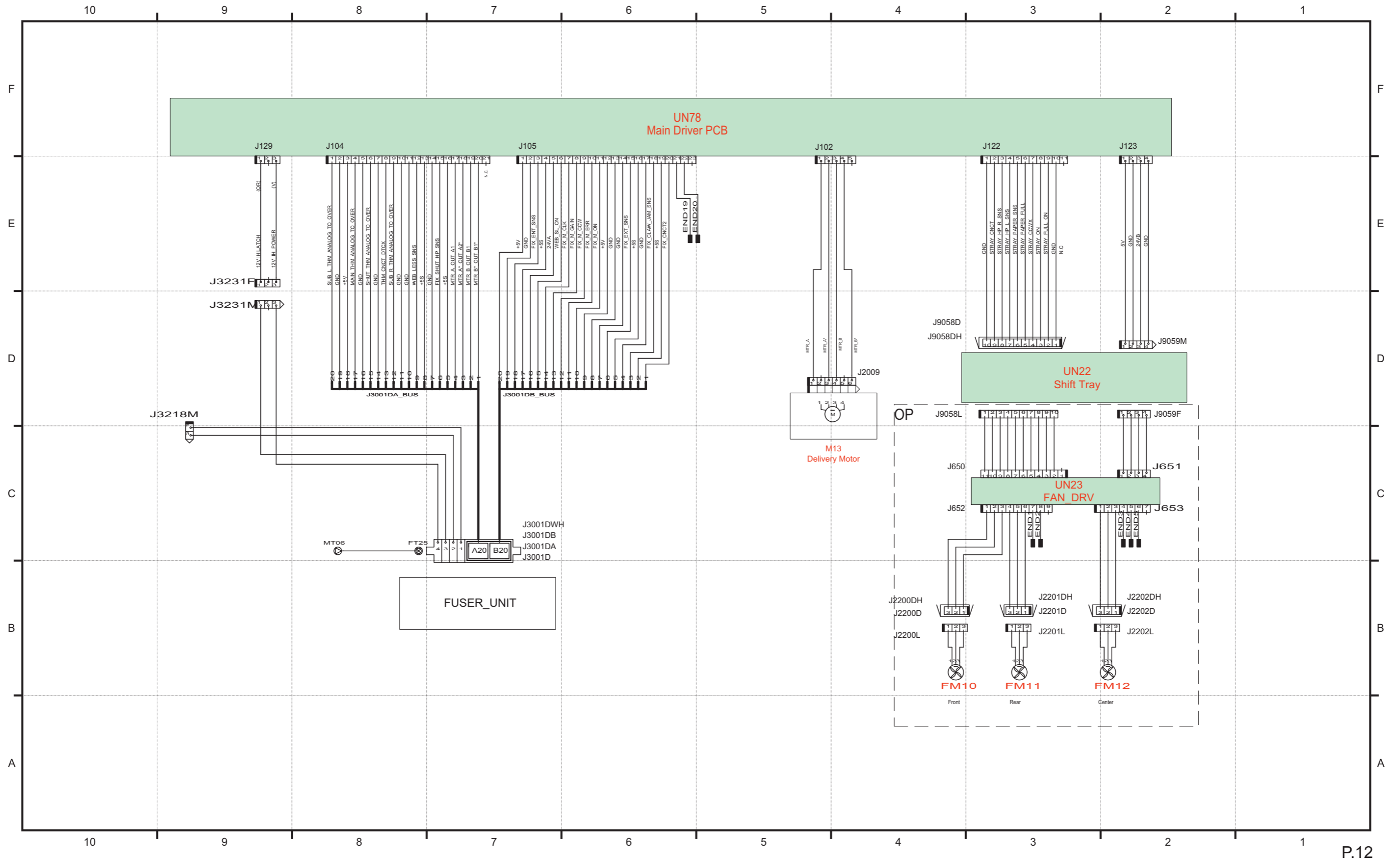




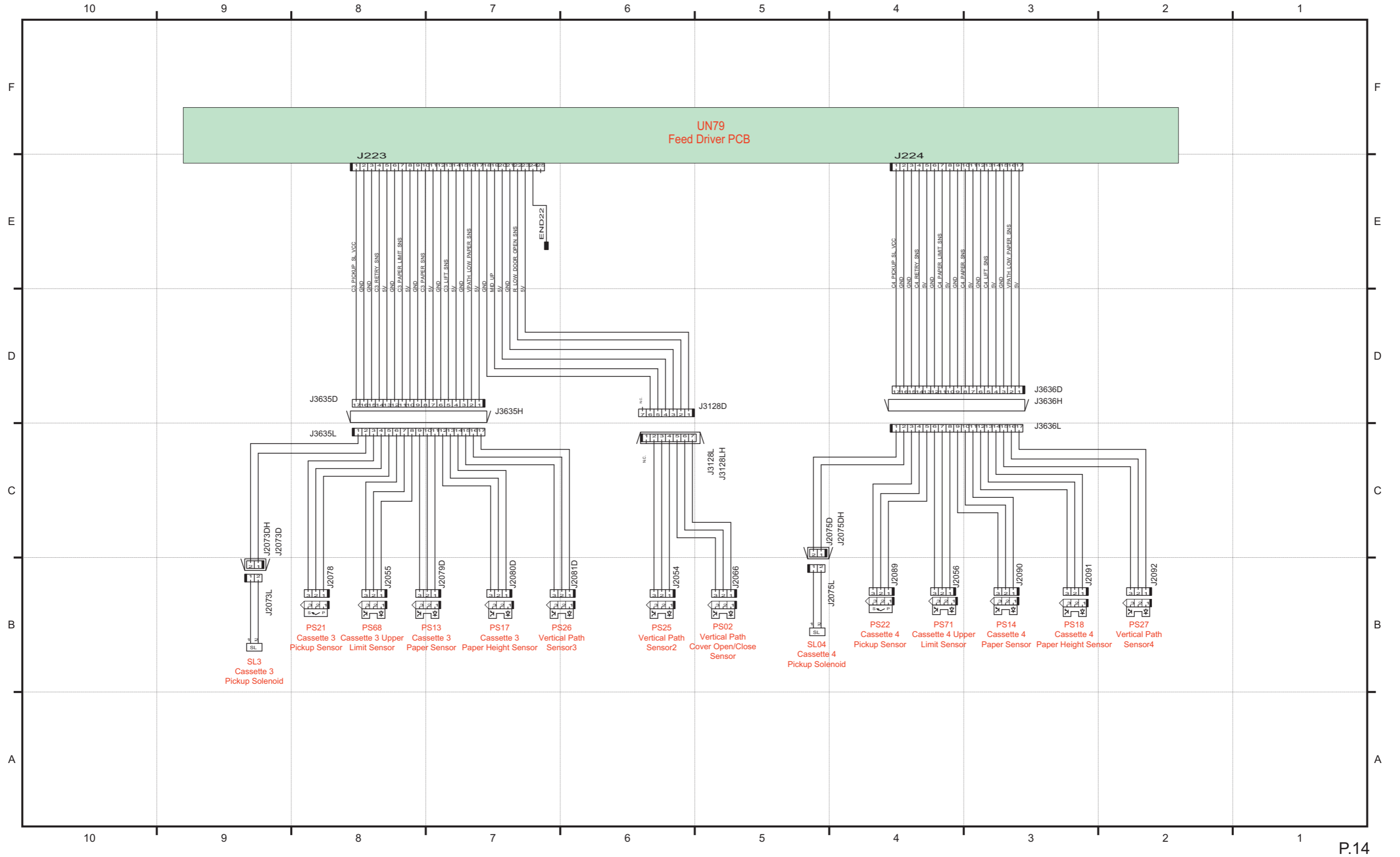


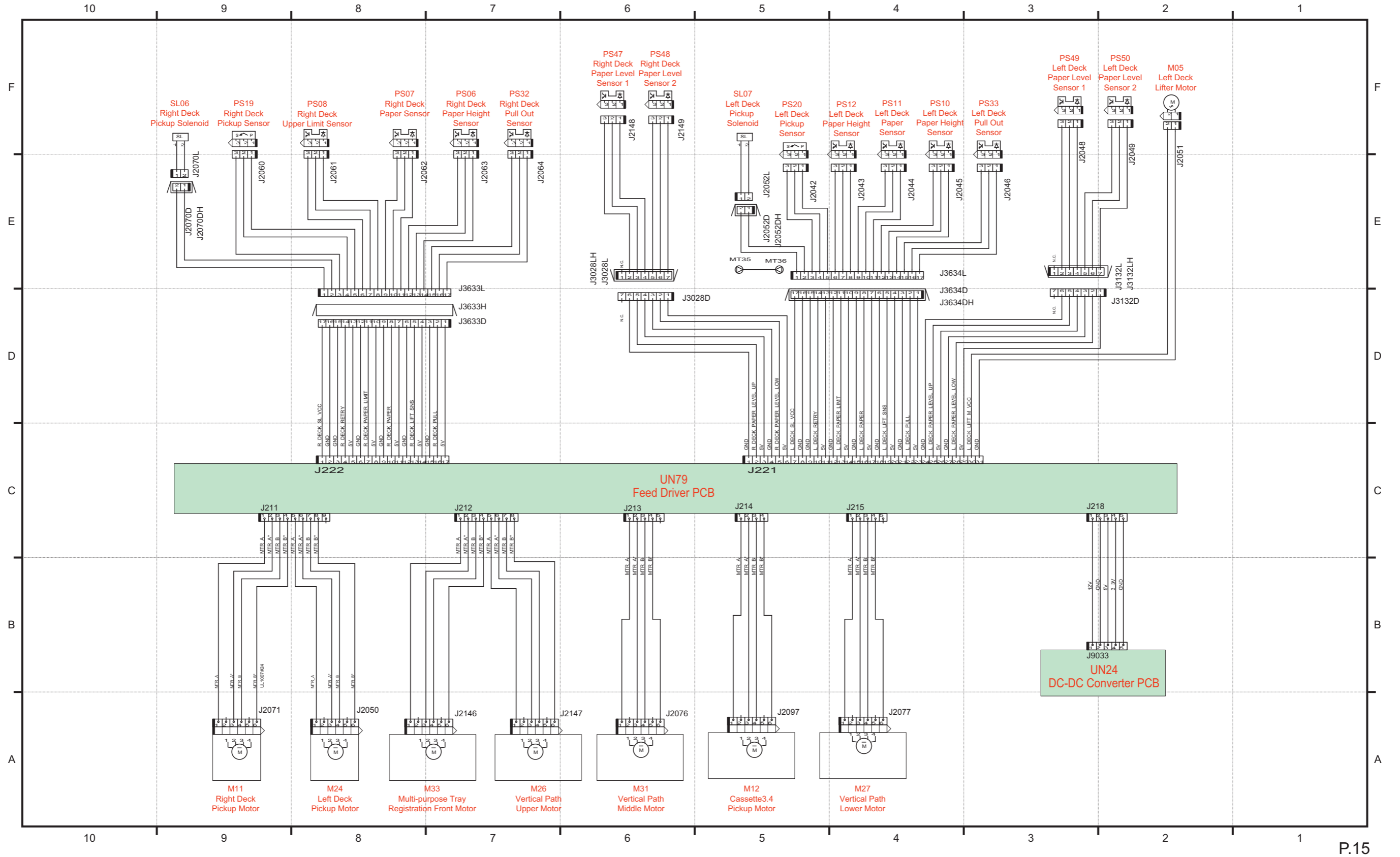


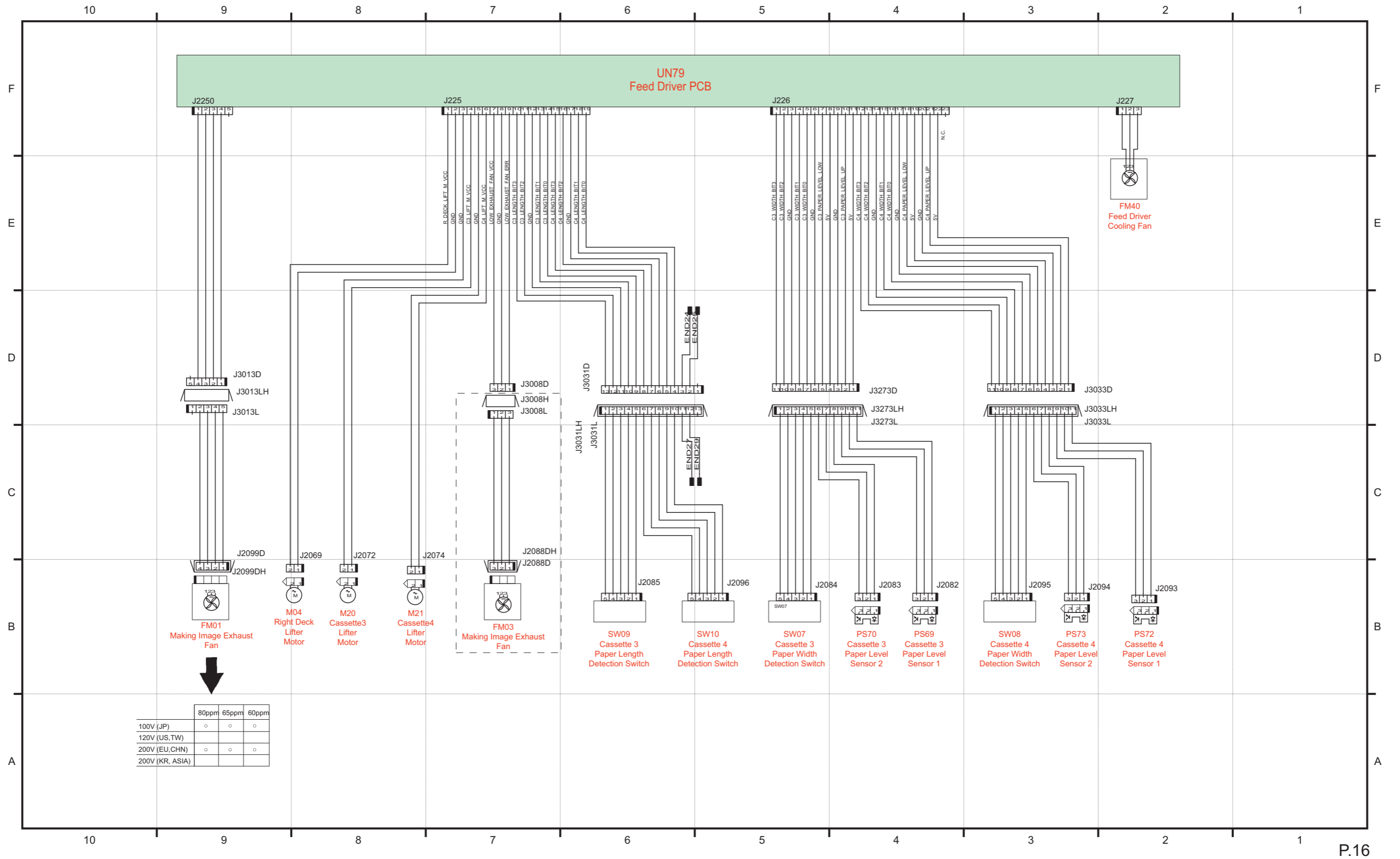






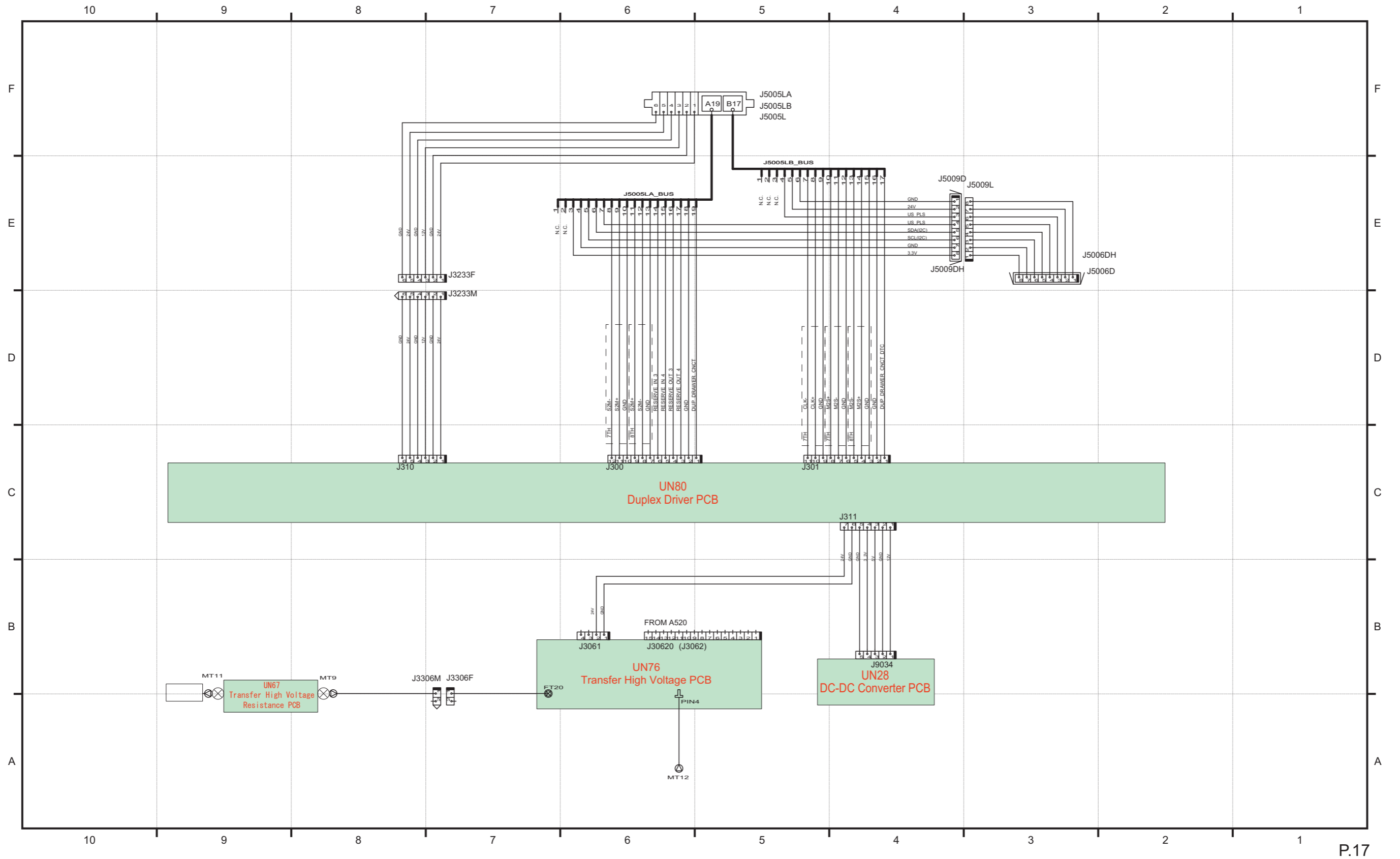


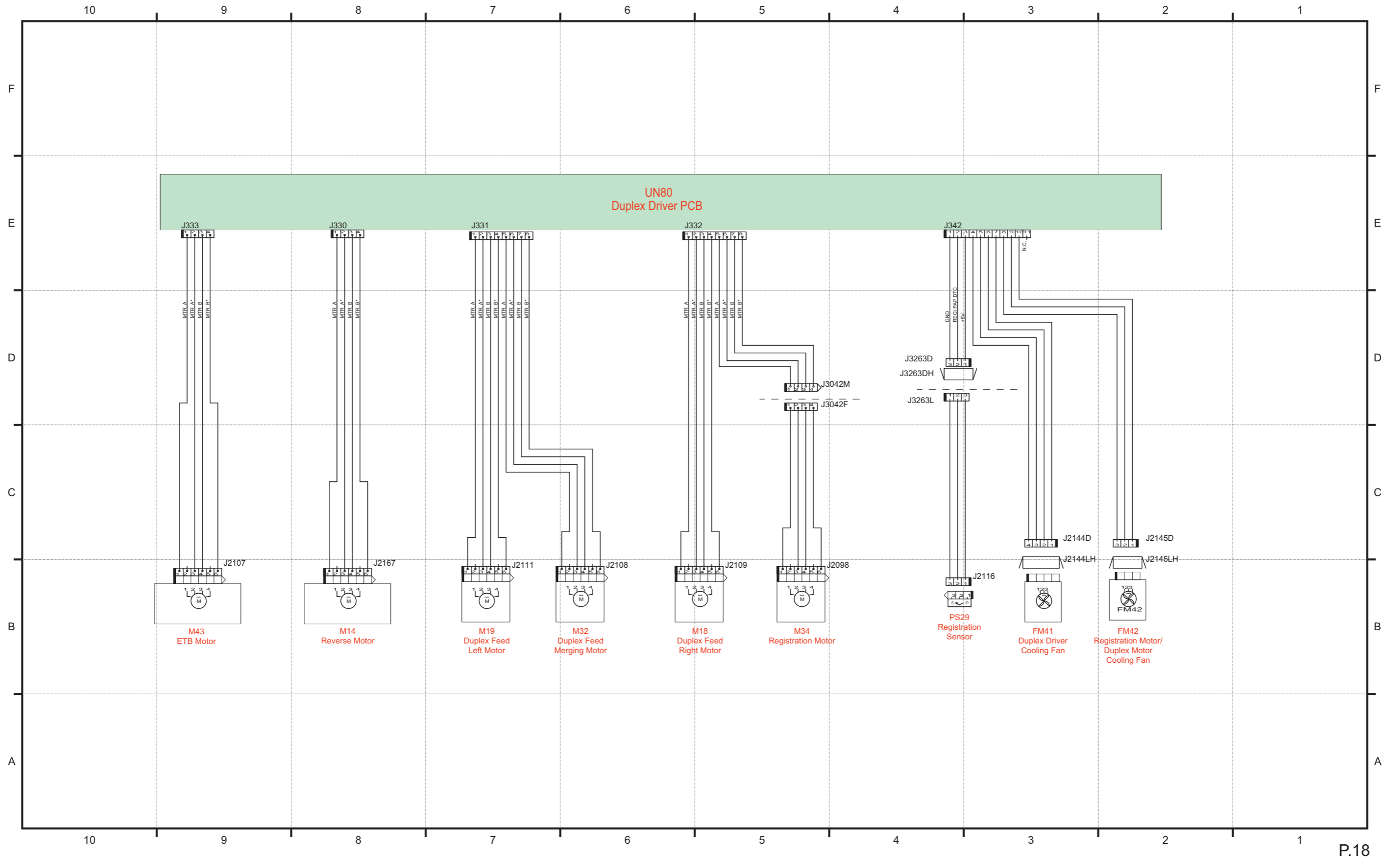




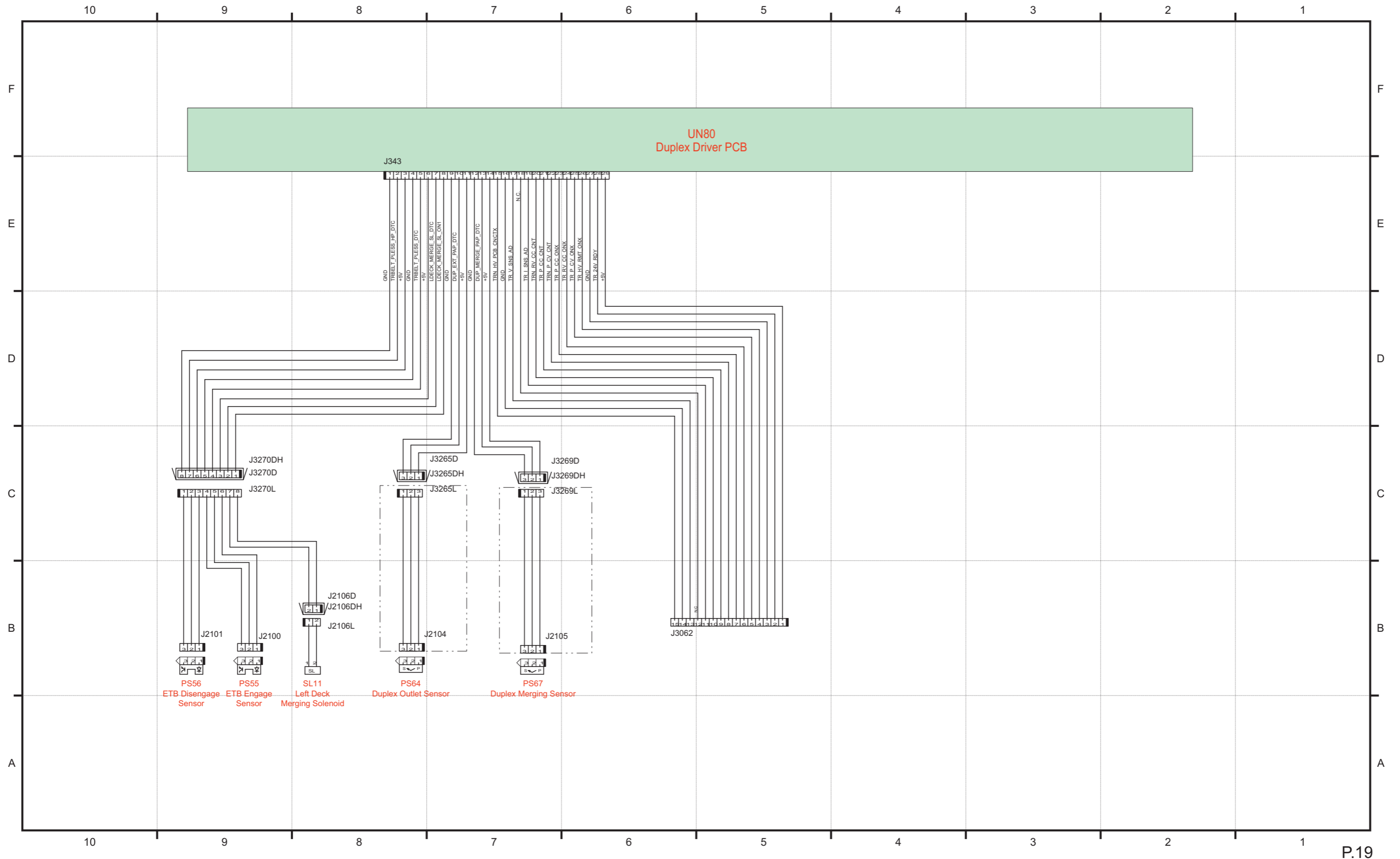
↓

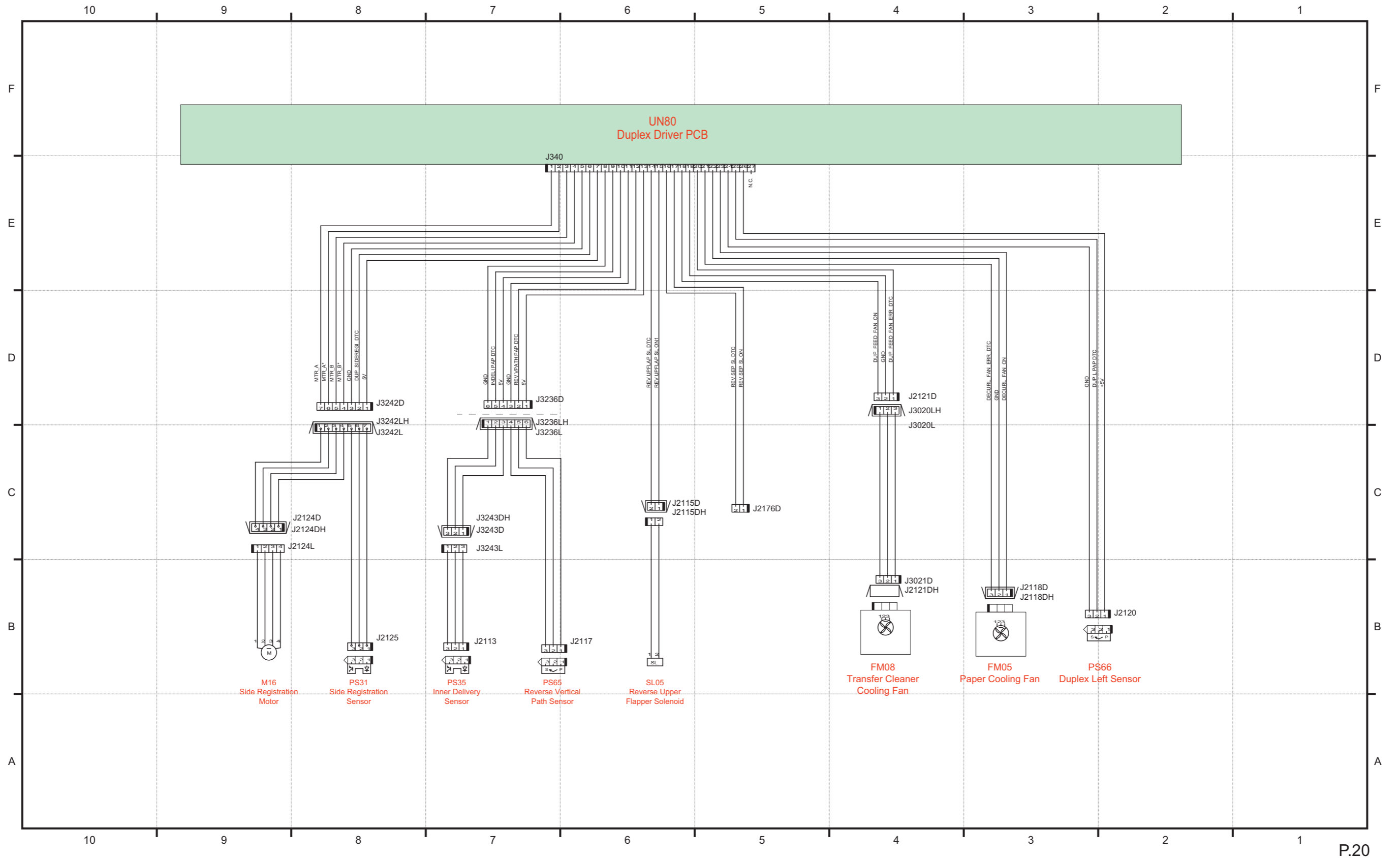
|                | 80ppm | 65ppm | 60ppm |
|----------------|-------|-------|-------|
| 100V (JP)      | ○     | ○     | ○     |
| 120V (US,TW)   |       |       |       |
| 200V (EU,CHN)  | ○     | ○     | ○     |
| 200V (KR,ASIA) |       |       |       |

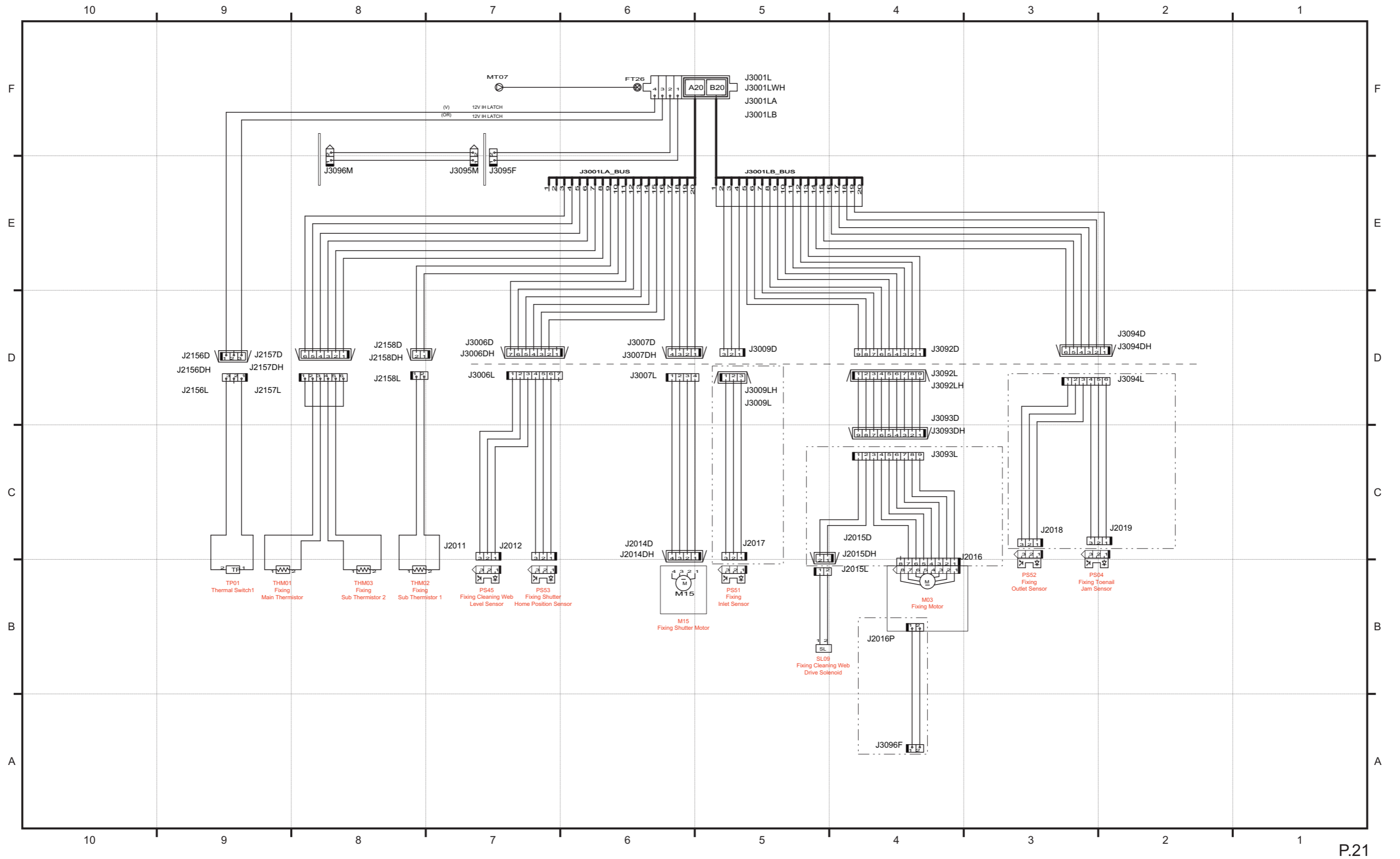


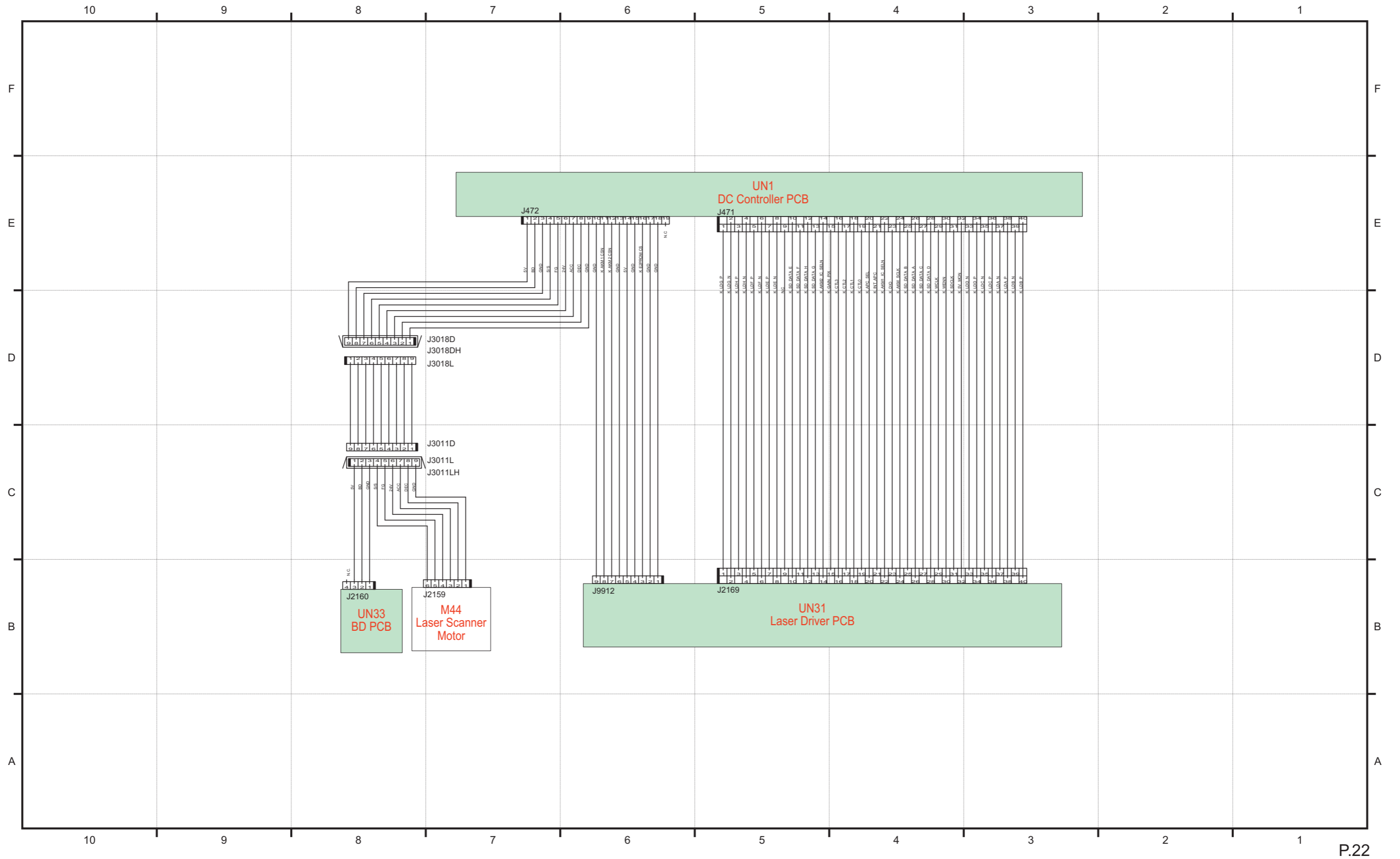


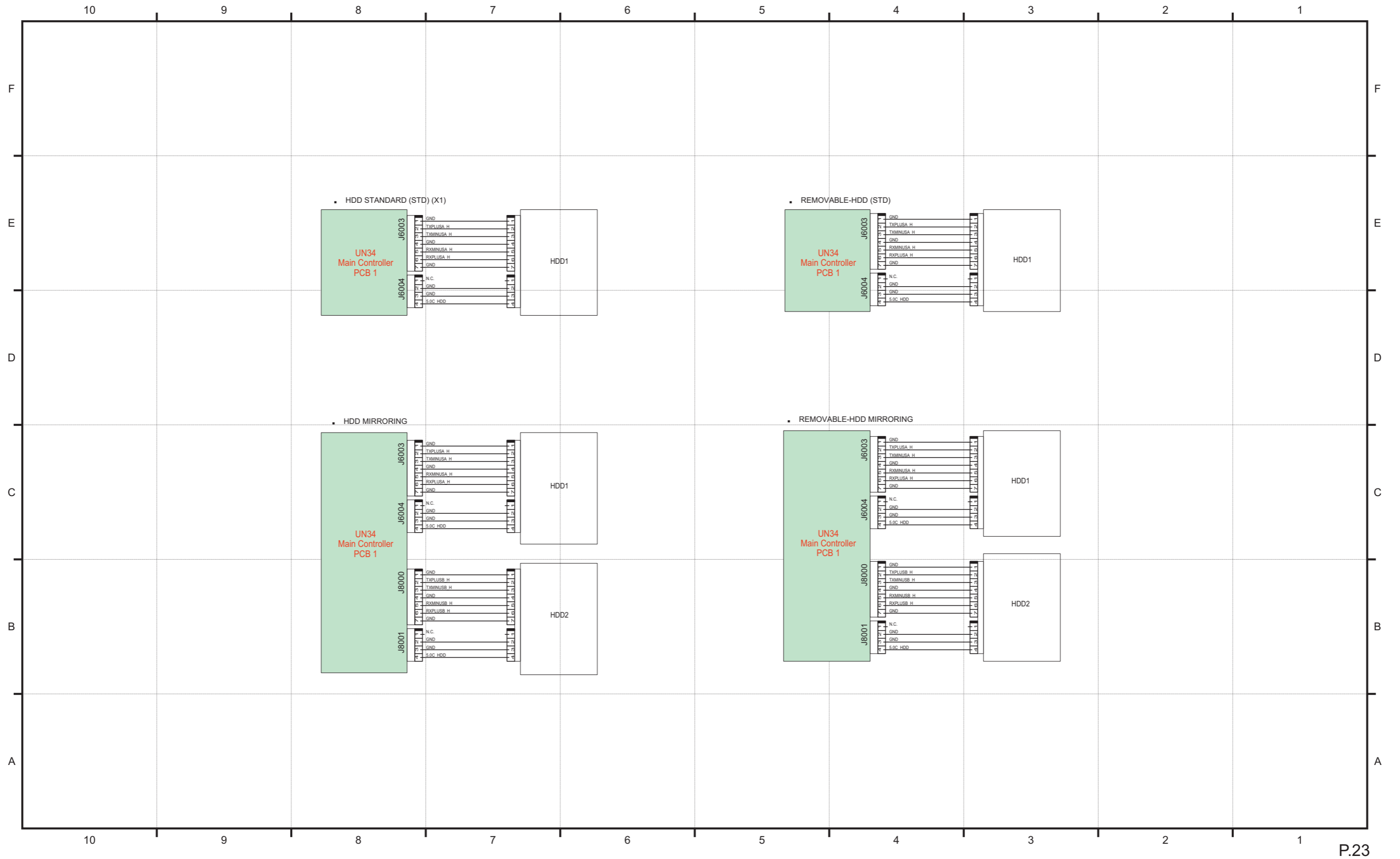




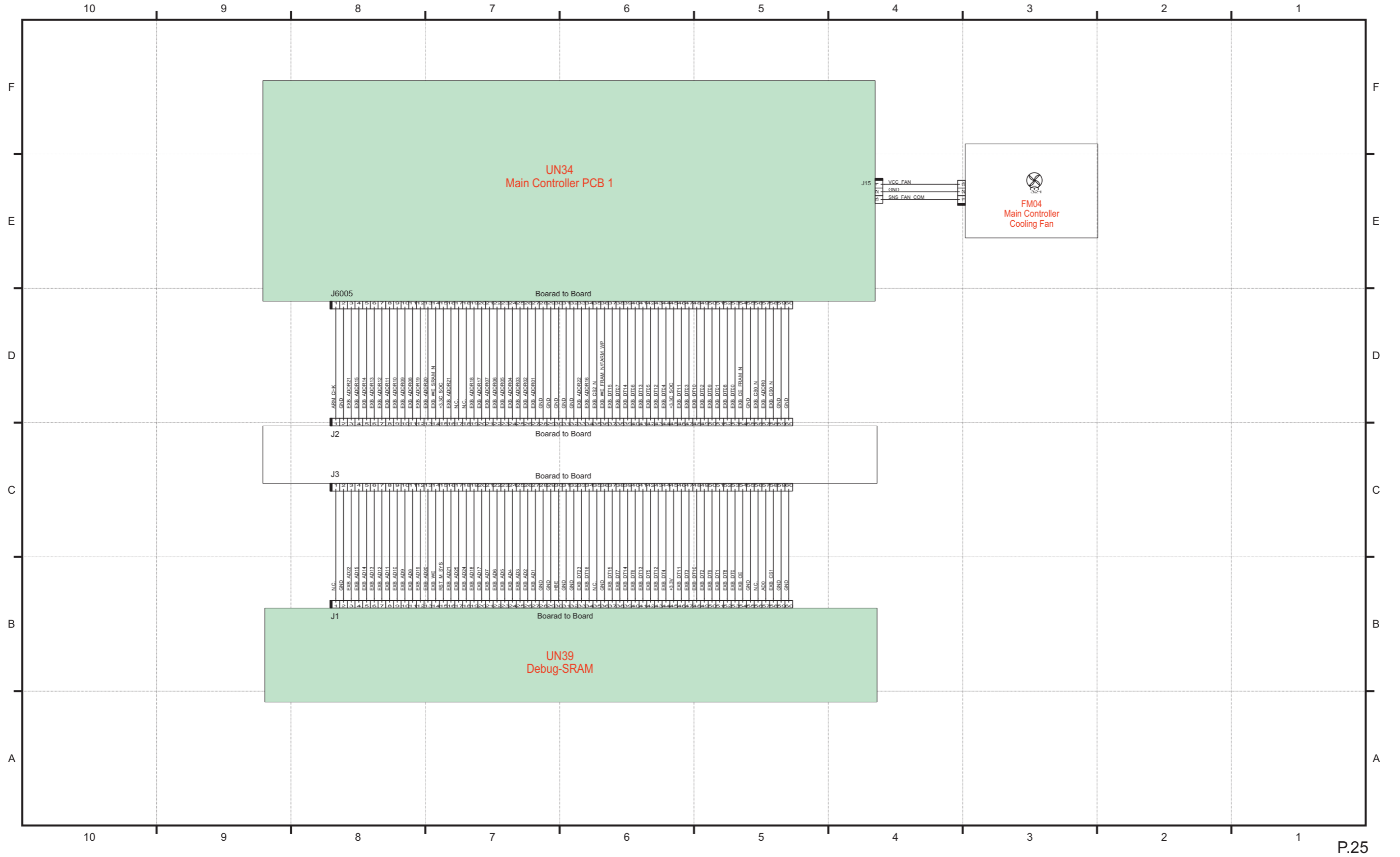






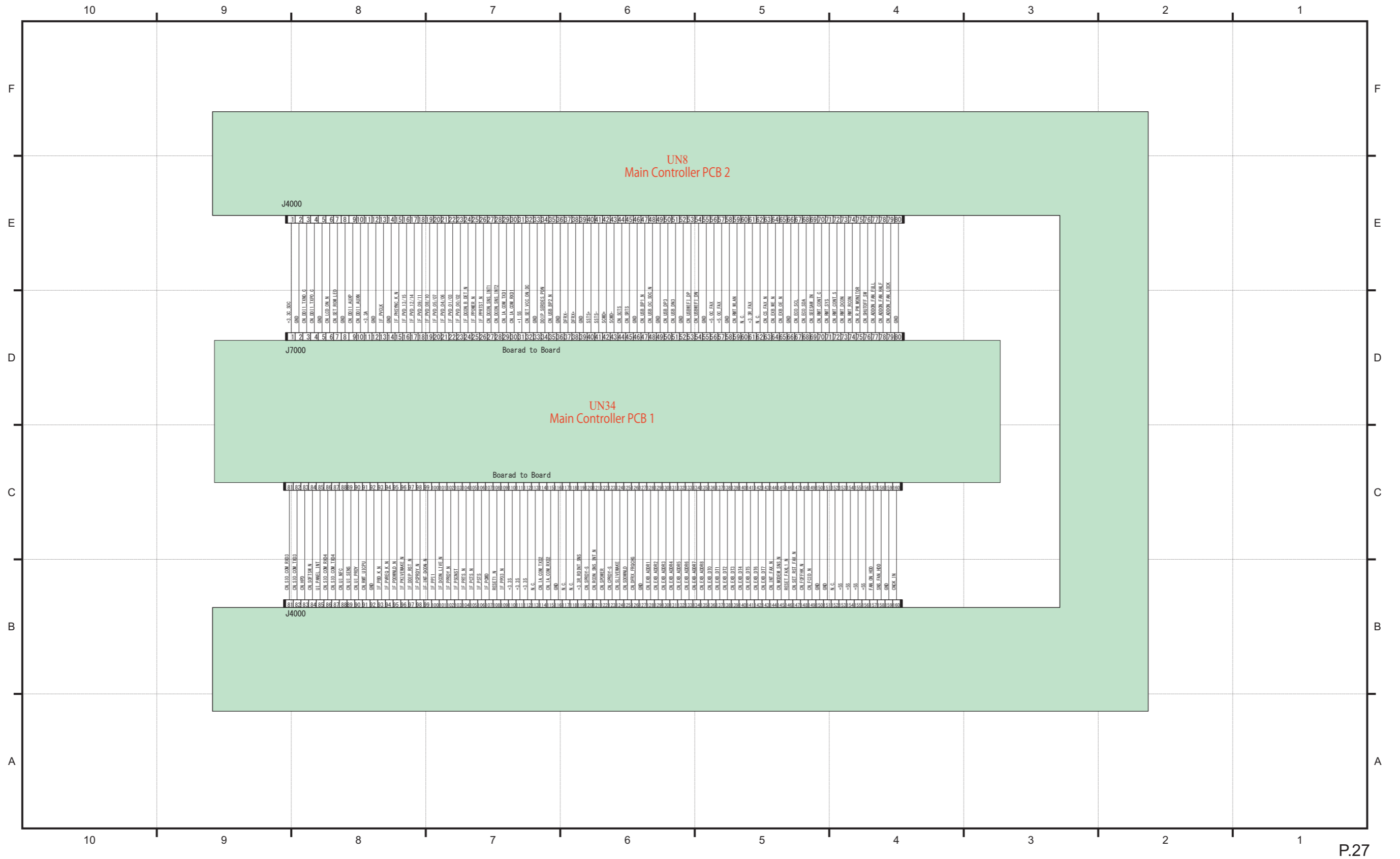


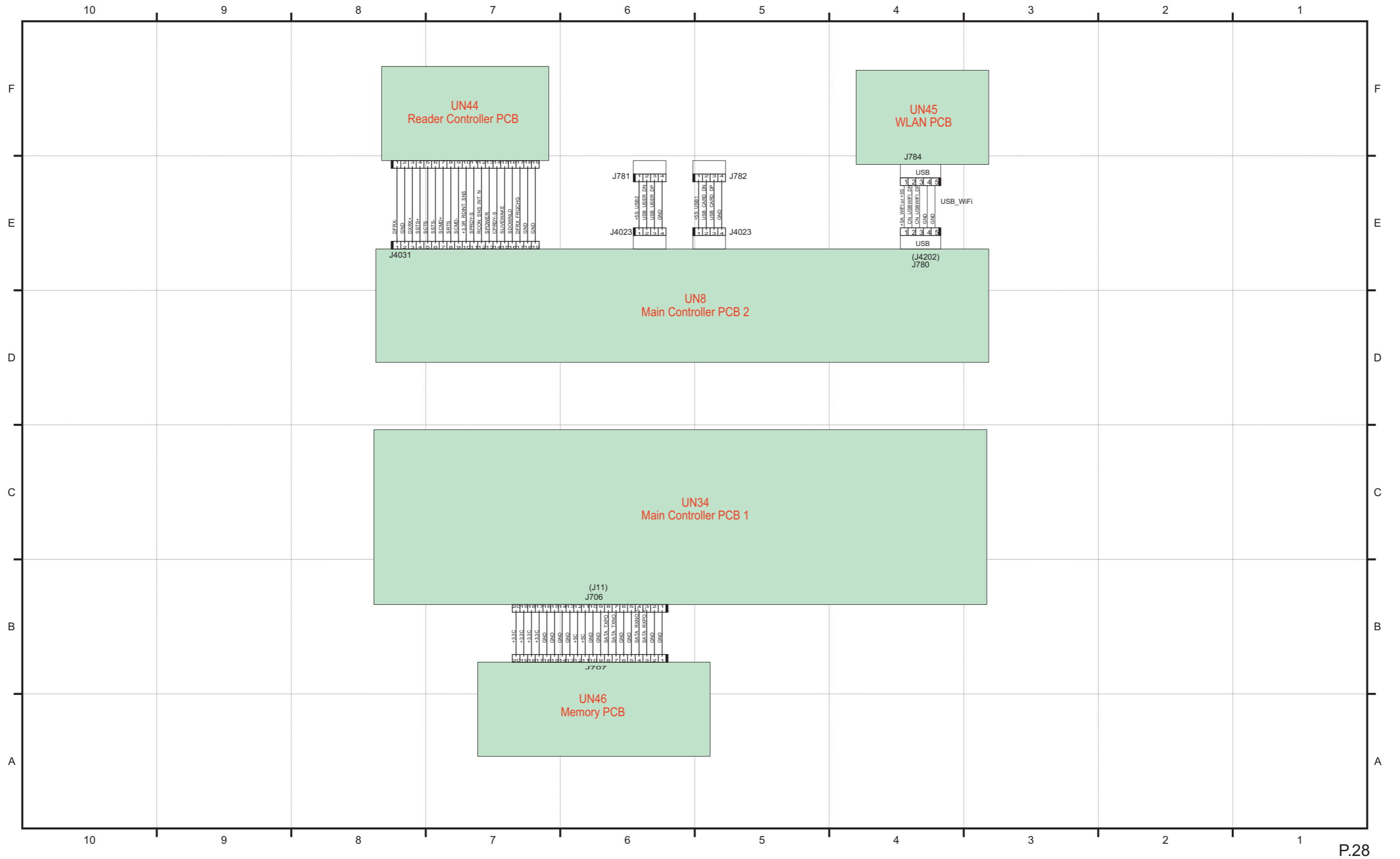


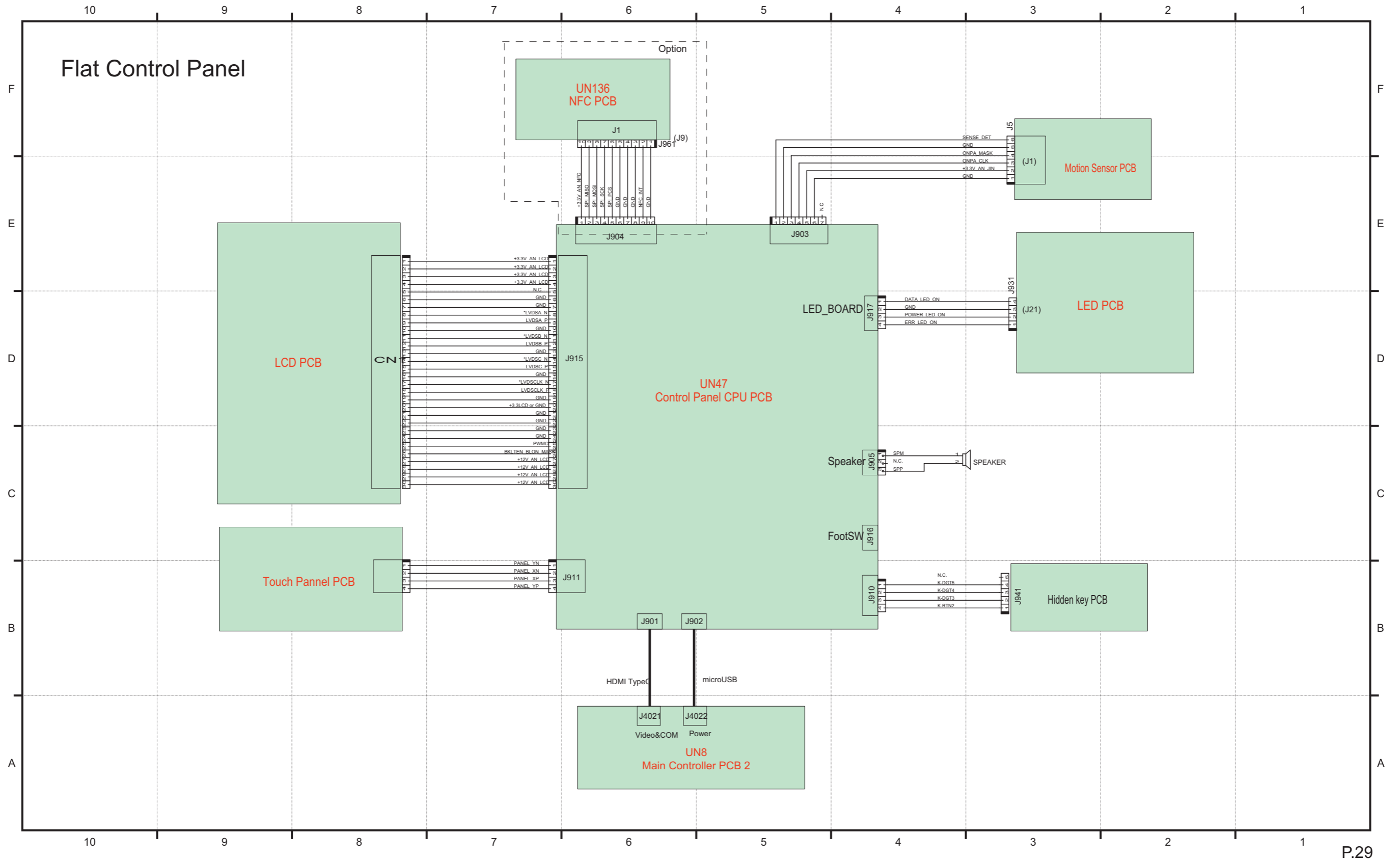














## Soft counter specifications

The numbers entered for software counters are classified as follows:

| No.        | Counter Details |
|------------|-----------------|
| 000 to 099 | Remote copy     |
| 100 to 199 | Total           |
| 200 to 299 | Copy            |
| 300 to 399 | Print           |
| 400 to 499 | Copy and print  |
| 500 to 599 | Scan            |
| 600 to 699 | Box print       |
| 700 to 799 | Reception print |
| 800 to 899 | Report print    |
| 900 to 999 | Transmission    |

Meanings of symbols in tables

- 4C: Full Color
- Mono: Mono Color (Y,M,C / R,G,B / retro monochrome)
- Bk: Single black color
- L: Large size (larger than B4 size)
- S: Small size (smaller than B4 size)
- Numbers 1, 2 indicated under "Counter Details": Number of counts for large size paper  
It can be changed by the service mode (COPIER > OPTION > USER > B4-L-CNT) so that the paper larger than B4 size can be counted as large size paper.
- Copy: Local copy + Remote Copy
- Copy A: Local copy + Remote Copy + Box Print
- Print: PDL print + report print + Box Print
- Print A: PDL print + report print
- Scan: Black and white scan + color scan

### 000 to 099

| No. | Counter Details                  | No. | Counter Details                                 |
|-----|----------------------------------|-----|---|
| 006 | Remote Copy (mono color 1)       | 022 | Remote Copy (mono color / Large / double sided) |
| 007 | Remote Copy (mono color 2)       | 023 | Remote Copy (mono color / Small / double sided) |
| 012 | Remote Copy (mono color / Large) | 071 | Toner bottle counter black                      |
| 013 | Remote Copy (mono color / Small) |     |   |

### 100 to 199

| No. | Counter Details            | No. | Counter Details              |
|-----|----------------------------|-----|------------------------------|
| 101 | Total 1                    | 136 | Total A (mono color / Large) |
| 102 | Total 2                    | 137 | Total A (mono color / Small) |
| 103 | Total (Large)              | 138 | Total A1 (double sided)      |
| 104 | Total (Small)              | 139 | Total A2 (double sided)      |
| 108 | Total (mono color 1)       | 140 | Large A (double sided)       |
| 109 | Total (mono color 2)       | 141 | Small A (double sided)       |
| 112 | Total (mono color / Large) | 150 | Total B1                     |
| 113 | Total (mono color / Small) | 151 | Total B2                     |
| 114 | Total 1 (double sided)     | 152 | Total B (Large)              |
| 115 | Total 2 (double sided)     | 153 | Total B (Small)              |
| 116 | Large (double sided)       | 156 | Total B (mono color 1)       |
| 117 | Small (double sided)       | 157 | Total B (mono color 2)       |
| 126 | Total A1                   | 160 | Total B (mono color / Large) |
| 127 | Total A2                   | 161 | Total B (mono color / Small) |
| 128 | Total A (Large)            | 162 | Total B1 (double sided)      |
| 129 | Total A (Small)            | 163 | Total B2 (double sided)      |

| No. | Counter Details        | No. | Counter Details        |
|-----|------------------------|-----|------------------------|
| 132 | Total A (mono color 1) | 164 | Large B (double sided) |
| 133 | Total A (mono color 2) | 165 | Small B (double sided) |

## 200 to 299

| No. | Counter Details       | No. | Counter Details                                |
|-----|-----------------------|-----|--|
| 201 | Copy (Total 1)        | 222 | Copy (mono color 2)                            |
| 202 | Copy (Total 2)        | 227 | Copy (mono color / Large)                      |
| 203 | Copy (Large)          | 228 | Copy (mono color / Small)                      |
| 204 | Copy (Small)          | 237 | Copy (mono color / Large / double sided)       |
| 205 | Copy A (Total 1)      | 238 | Copy (mono color / Small / double sided)       |
| 206 | Copy A (Total 2)      | 249 | Copy A (mono color 1)                          |
| 207 | Copy A (Large)        | 250 | Copy A (mono color 2)                          |
| 208 | Copy A (Small)        | 255 | Copy A (mono color / Large)                    |
| 209 | Local copy(Total 1)   | 256 | Copy A (mono color / Small)                    |
| 210 | Local copy(Total 2)   | 265 | Copy A (mono color / Large / double sided)     |
| 211 | Local copy(Large)     | 266 | Copy A (mono color / Small / double sided)     |
| 212 | Local copy(Small)     | 277 | Local copy (mono color 1)                      |
| 213 | Remote Copy (Total 1) | 278 | Local copy (mono color 2)                      |
| 214 | Remote Copy (Total 2) | 283 | Local copy (mono color / Large)                |
| 215 | Remote Copy (Large)   | 284 | Local copy (mono color / Small)                |
| 216 | Remote Copy (Small)   | 293 | Local copy (mono color / Large / double sided) |
| 221 | Copy (mono color 1)   | 294 | Local copy (mono color / Small / double sided) |

## 300 to 399

| No. | Counter Details            | No. | Counter Details                               |
|-----|----------------------------|-----|---|
| 301 | Print (Total 1)            | 329 | Print (mono color / Large / double sided)     |
| 302 | Print (Total 2)            | 330 | Print (mono color / Small / double sided)     |
| 303 | Print (Large)              | 331 | PDL Print (Total 1)                           |
| 304 | Print (Small)              | 332 | PDL Print (Total 2)                           |
| 305 | Print A (Total 1)          | 333 | PDL Print (Large)                             |
| 306 | Print A (Total 2)          | 334 | PDL Print (Small)                             |
| 307 | Print A (Large)            | 339 | PDL Print (mono color 1)                      |
| 308 | Print A (Small)            | 340 | PDL Print (mono color 2)                      |
| 313 | Print (mono color 1)       | 345 | PDL Print (mono color / Large)                |
| 314 | Print (mono color 2)       | 346 | PDL Print (mono color / Small)                |
| 319 | Print (mono color / Large) | 355 | PDL Print (mono color / Large / double sided) |
| 320 | Print (mono color / Small) | 356 | PDL Print (mono color / Small / double sided) |

## 400 to 499

| No. | Counter Details                                  | No. | Counter Details                        |
|-----|--|-----|--|
| 403 | Copy + Print (mono color / Large)                | 461 | Long length Counter (Total)            |
| 404 | Copy + Print (mono color / Small)                | 463 | Long length Counter (Black and whiter) |
| 405 | Copy + Print (mono color 2)                      | 466 | Long length Counter (Total)            |
| 406 | Copy + Print (mono color 1)                      | 467 | Long length Counter (Total)            |
| 411 | Copy + Print (Large)                             | 468 | Long length Counter (Total)            |
| 412 | Copy + Print (Small)                             | 469 | Long length Counter (Total)            |
| 413 | Copy + Print (2)                                 | 470 | Long length Counter (Total)            |
| 414 | Copy + Print (1)                                 | 471 | Long length Counter (Total)            |
| 421 | Copy + Print (mono color / Large / double sided) | 473 | Long length Counter (Black and whiter) |
| 422 | Copy + Print (mono color / Small / double sided) |     |  |



## 500 to 599

| No. | Counter Details                | No. | Counter Details              |
|-----|--------------------------------|-----|------------------------------|
| 501 | Scan (Total 1)                 | 507 | Black and white Scan (Large) |
| 502 | Scan (Total 2)                 | 508 | Black and white Scan (Small) |
| 503 | Scan (Large)                   | 509 | Color Scan (Total 1)         |
| 504 | Scan (Small)                   | 510 | Color Scan (Total 2)         |
| 505 | Black and white Scan (Total 1) | 511 | Color Scan (Large)           |
| 506 | Black and white Scan (Total 2) | 512 | Color Scan (Small)           |

## 600 to 699

| No. | Counter Details                               | No. | Counter Details  |
|-----|---|-----|--|
| 601 | Box Print (Total 1)                           | 631 | Memory media Print (Total 1)                           |
| 602 | Box Print (Total 2)                           | 632 | Memory media Print (Total 2)                           |
| 603 | Box Print (Large)                             | 633 | Memory media Print (Large)                             |
| 604 | Box Print (Small)                             | 634 | Memory media Print (Small)                             |
| 609 | Box Print (mono color 1)                      | 639 | Memory media Print (mono color 1)                      |
| 610 | Box Print (mono color 2)                      | 640 | Memory media Print (mono color 2)                      |
| 615 | Box Print (mono color / Large)                | 645 | Memory media Print (mono color / Large)                |
| 616 | Box Print (mono color / Small)                | 646 | Memory media Print (mono color / Small)                |
| 625 | Box Print (mono color / Large / double sided) | 655 | Memory media Print (mono color / Large / double sided) |
| 626 | Box Print (mono color / Small / double sided) | 656 | Memory media Print (mono color / Small / double sided) |

## 700 to 799

| No. | Counter Details  | No. | Counter Details                                   |
|-----|--|-----|---|
| 701 | Reception Print (Total 1)                              | 743 | Network Print (Total 1)                           |
| 702 | Reception Print (Total 2)                              | 744 | Network Print (Total 2)                           |
| 703 | Reception Print (Large)                                | 745 | Network Print (Large)                             |
| 704 | Reception Print (Small)                                | 746 | Network Print (Small)                             |
| 709 | Reception Print (mono color 1)                         | 749 | Network Print (mono color 1)                      |
| 710 | Reception Print (mono color 2)                         | 750 | Network Print (mono color 2)                      |
| 715 | Reception Print (mono color / Large)                   | 753 | Network Print (mono color / Large)                |
| 716 | Reception Print (mono color / Small)                   | 754 | Network Print (mono color / Small)                |
| 725 | Reception Print (mono color / Large / double sided)    | 757 | Network Print (mono color / Large / double sided) |
| 726 | Reception Print (mono color / Small / double sided)    | 758 | Network Print (mono color / Small / double sided) |
| 727 | Advanced Box Print (Total 1)                           | 759 | Mobile Print (Total 1)                            |
| 728 | Advanced Box Print (Total 2)                           | 760 | Mobile Print (Total 2)                            |
| 729 | Advanced Box Print (Large)                             | 761 | Mobile Print (Large)                              |
| 730 | Advanced Box Print (Small)                             | 762 | Mobile Print (Small)                              |
| 733 | Advanced Box Print (mono color 1)                      | 765 | Mobile Print (mono color 1)                       |
| 734 | Advanced Box Print (mono color 2)                      | 766 | Mobile Print (mono color 2)                       |
| 737 | Advanced Box Print (mono color / Large)                | 769 | Mobile Print (mono color / Large)                 |
| 738 | Advanced Box Print (mono color / Small)                | 770 | Mobile Print (mono color / Small)                 |
| 741 | Advanced Box Print (mono color / Large / double sided) | 773 | Mobile Print (mono color / Large / double sided)  |
| 742 | Advanced Box Print (mono color / Small / double sided) | 774 | Mobile Print (mono color / Small / double sided)  |

## 800 to 899

| No. | Counter Details             | No. | Counter Details                                  |
|-----|-----------------------------|-----|--|
| 801 | Report Print (Total 1)      | 810 | Report Print (mono color 2)                      |
| 802 | Report Print (Total 2)      | 815 | Report Print (mono color / Large)                |
| 803 | Report Print (Large)        | 816 | Report Print (mono color / Small)                |
| 804 | Report Print (Small)        | 825 | Report Print (mono color / Large / double sided) |
| 809 | Report Print (mono color 1) | 826 | Report Print (mono color / Small / double sided) |

## 900 to 999

| No. | Counter Details                              | No. | Counter Details                               |
|-----|--|-----|---|
| 915 | Transmission scan total 2 (Color)            | 940 | Remote Scan (Black and whiter)                |
| 916 | Transmission scan total 2 (Black and whiter) | 945 | Transmission Scan / E-mail (Color)            |
| 917 | Transmission scan total 3 (Color)            | 946 | Transmission Scan / E-mail (Black and whiter) |
| 918 | Transmission scan total 3 (Black and whiter) | 959 | Media Scan (Color)                            |
| 921 | Transmission scan total 5 (Color)            | 960 | Media Scan (Black and whiter)                 |
| 922 | Transmission scan total 5 (Black and whiter) | 961 | Application Scan (Total 1)                    |
| 929 | Transmission scan total 6 (Color)            | 962 | Application Black and white Scan (Total 1)    |
| 930 | Transmission scan total 6 (Black and whiter) | 963 | Application Color Scan (Total 1)              |
| 937 | Box Scan (Color)                             | 964 | Super Box LocalScan (Color)                   |
| 938 | Box Scan (Black and whiter)                  | 965 | Super Box LocalScan (Black and whiter)        |
| 939 | Remote Scan (Color)                          |     |   |

# Removal

## Overview

- User data kept by the machine contains address books and inbox documents that users can recognize.
- For security, the Settings/Registration menu for user is provided to delete data on FLASH PCB and perform overwrite deletion to render user data on Storage unrecoverable.
- Before the removal of machine, be sure to explain to the user that the above mode must be used to completely delete data. When performing the user operation as the substitute, make sure that the service staff executes this to prevent the information leak of user data.

## ■ Cancelling the Device Registration

If Data Backup Service is used, it is required to perform the following steps in the order.

1. **Stop using the Data Backup Service. (Operation on CBIO side)**
2. **Delete all the backup data. (Operation on CBIO side)**
3. **Cancel the device registration. (Operation on the device side)**

### NOTE:

For the above-mentioned procedure, see the User's Guide for Data Backup Service or the Service Manual for the imageRUNNER ADVANCE system.

If the User's Guide is not available, see the technical documents published by each sales company.

### CAUTION:

Be sure to cancel the device registration before deleting the user, because the device registration cannot be cancelled after deleting the user data.

## ■ User data deletion

- To delete user data, execute Settings/Registration > Management Settings > System Management > Initialize All Data/Settings. Performing Initialize All Data/Settings returns setting values of Settings/Registration menu to their factory defaults.
- Deletion Mode can be changed. Normally, "Once with 0 (Null) Data" can sufficiently delete data. Note that increasing the number of overwrite increases the time required for the deletion operation.

### NOTE:

- When you perform Initialize All Data/Settings, license and data of MEAP application are initialized to the state same as when the HDD is replaced. If any MEAP application may be used by other users after the machine is removed, disable the MEAP application and uninstall it in advance.
- Performing Initialize All Data/Settings does not delete the license of the system option.

## ■ Deletion of Service Mode Settings

The user mode setting values may have been changed at the user's request. In that case, the service mode setting values should be changed back to the default values before removing the machine.

## Work Procedure

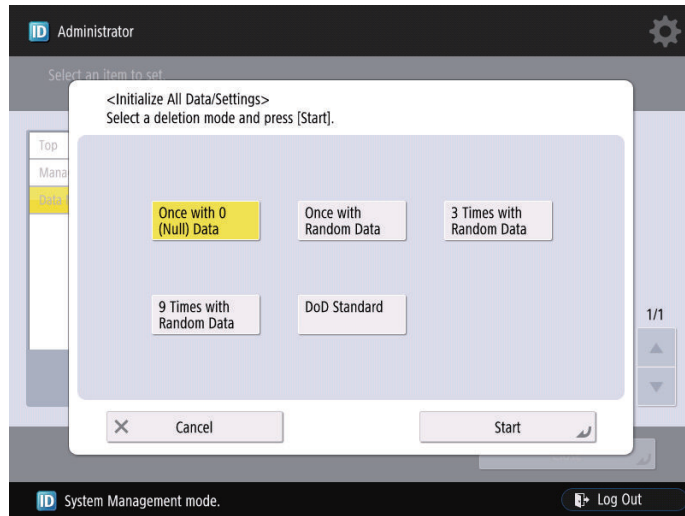
If the user uses MEAP applications, ask the user to uninstall the MEAP applications if necessary.

## ■ User data delete procedure

1. Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Initialize All Data/Settings
2. Select a deletion mode.

3. Press [Start].

If the user has not given any instruction on which item in the deletion mode should be used, select the default "Once with 0 (Null) Data".



**NOTE:**

- When all the data are initialized, the user data on the HDD and the user data on the Flash PCB are deleted. For the items to be deleted, refer to the backup list.
- Performing "Initialize All Data" turns auto gradation adjustment values and TPM settings to OFF. Therefore, to enable normal operation the next time, the operation performed at installation is necessary.
- Performing Initialize All Data/Settings does not delete the license of the system option.

**Report output upon completion of Initialize All Data/Settings**

A report is output after "Initialize All Data/Settings" is completed.

Consider using this report to provide to user as a material to inform of work details when executing Initialize All Data/Settings upon user's request.

**Operation after Initialize All Data/Settings**

The machine is started normally at restart after Initialize All Data/Settings without displaying the message (Turn OFF the main power supply on the right side of the machine) on the screen to prompt shutdown.

The report is output after startup.

```

*****
*** System Information ***
*****

<< Initialize All Data/Settings Report >>

Serial Number          ZZZ99999
Device Name            iR-ADV XXXX (iAXXXX)

Overwrite Method for Deletion Mode  Once with Random Data (*1)

The following data stored in the device has been completely erased.

- Data stored in the temporary data area
- User generated data
- Settings under Settings/Registration (restored to factory defaults)
    
```

\*1 display following one.  
 "Once with 0 (Null) Data"  
 "Once with Random Data"  
 "3 Times with Random Data"  
 "9 Times with Random Data"  
 "DoD Standard"

### Limitations

- The language of the report is only English, and cannot be changed.
- The report is output without fail (a function to select ON/OFF of report output is not provided).
- There is no second output of report when the machine is turned ON without paper.
- Only the output of this report remains in the job log.

## ■ Deletion of Service Mode Setting Values

Service Mode Lev1 > Function> CLEAR > MN-CONT



#### NOTE:

- When MN-CON clear is executed, the address book on the HDD is not deleted. As for the user data, initialize all the data.
- When MN-CON clear is executed, the password for the security policies will be deleted.

## List of Service Modes That Can Be Restored

The following items are restored when a DCM file obtained by using [Settings/Registration] > [Back Up/Restore] or [Backup/Restoration Using Service Mode] is exported.

### Purpose for Using the Function

| Case | Export/ Import   | Use Case   |
|------|--|--|
| A    | Export from and import to the same device                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Used as backup in preparation for a device failure</li> <li>Used as backup before changing settings</li> </ul>  |
| B    | Export from and import to a different device of the same model | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Collectively migrate data when replacing the host machine</li> <li>Copy the settings to multiple devices (during kitting)</li> </ul>  |
| C    | Export from and import to a different model                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Migrate the settings from the old model to the new model when replacing the host machine</li> <li>Migrate the settings of the base machine to a different model for a large-scale user</li> </ul> |

#### NOTE:

For the details of the function, refer to "Backup/Restoration" of the System Service Manual.

### List of Service Modes That Can Be Restored

| Initial screen | Main item | Intermediate item | Sub item | Case A   | Case B   | Case C   |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| BOARD          | OPTION    | -                 | MENU-1   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| BOARD          | OPTION    | -                 | MENU-2   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| BOARD          | OPTION    | -                 | MENU-3   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| BOARD          | OPTION    | -                 | MENU-4   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| BOARD          | OPTION    | -                 | FONTDL   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | ADJ-XY            | ADJ-X    | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | ADJ-XY            | ADJ-Y    | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | ADJ-XY            | ADJ-Y-DF | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | ADJ-XY            | STRD-POS | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | ADJ-XY            | ADJ-X-MG | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | ADJ-XY            | ADJY-DF2 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | AE                | AE-TBL   | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | BLANK             | BLANK-T  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | BLANK             | BLANK-L  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | BLANK             | BLANK-R  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | BLANK             | BLANK-B  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | W-PLT-X  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | W-PLT-Y  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | W-PLT-Z  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | SH-TRGT  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | 100-RG   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | 100-GB   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFTAR-R  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFTAR-G  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFTAR-B  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-M1  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-M2  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-M3  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-M4  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-M5  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-M6  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-M7  | Restored | -        | -        |

| Initial screen | Main item | Intermediate item | Sub item | Case A   | Case B | Case C |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------|----------|----------|--------|--------|
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-M8  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-M9  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-S1  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-S2  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-S3  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-S4  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-S5  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-S6  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-S7  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-S8  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-S9  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | 100DF2GB | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | 100DF2RG | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFCH2R2  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFCH2R10 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFCH2B2  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFCH2B10 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFCH2G2  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFCH2G10 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-M1   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-M2   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-M3   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-M4   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-M5   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-M6   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-M7   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-M8   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-M9   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-S1   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-S2   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-S3   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-S4   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-S5   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-S6   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-S7   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-S8   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-S9   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFCH-R2  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFCH-R10 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFCH-B2  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFCH-B10 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFCH-G2  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFCH-G10 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-M10 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-M11 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-M12 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-S10 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-S11 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF2-S12 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-M10  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-M11  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-M12  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-S10  | Restored | -      | -      |



| Initial screen | Main item | Intermediate item | Sub item | Case A   | Case B | Case C |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------|----------|----------|--------|--------|
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-S11  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | MTF-S12  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFCH2K2  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFCH2K10 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFCH-K2  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFCH-K10 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFTAR-BW | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFTBK-G  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFTBK-B  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFTBK-R  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CCD               | DFTBK-BW | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CST-ADJ           | MF-A4R   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CST-ADJ           | MF-A6R   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CST-ADJ           | MF-A4    | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CST-ADJ           | PDK-A4   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | CST-ADJ           | PDK-A5R  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | DENS              | DENS-ADJ | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | DEVELOP           | BIAS     | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | DEVELOP           | FRQ-DEV  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | EXP-LED           | PR-EXP   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | REGIST   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | ADJ-C1   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | ADJ-C2   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | ADJ-C3   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | ADJ-C4   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | ADJ-MF   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | ADJ-DK   | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | ADJ-REFE | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | RG-MF    | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | REG-THCK | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | REG-OHT  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | REG-DUP1 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | REG-DUP2 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | LP-FEED1 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | LP-MULT1 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | LP-DUP1  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | REG-SPD  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | LP-DK    | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | FEED-ADJ          | DK1-PKLV | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-PRI            | PRI-GRID | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | TR-OFS1  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | TR-OFS2  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | TR-OFS3  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | TR-OFS4  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | TR-OFS5  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | TR-OFS6  | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | TR-L-OF1 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | TR-L-OF2 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | TR-L-OF3 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | TR-L-OF4 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | TR-L-OF5 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | TR-L-OF6 | Restored | -      | -      |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | P-TR-OF1 | Restored | -      | -      |

| Initial screen | Main item | Intermediate item | Sub item | Case A   | Case B   | Case C   |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | P-TR-OF2 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | P-TR-OF3 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | P-TR-OF4 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | P-TR-OF5 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | P-TR-OF6 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | TR-SP1   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | TR-SP2   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | TR-L-SP1 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | TR-L-SP2 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | P-TR-SP1 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | HV-TR             | P-TR-SP2 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | IMG-REG           | MAG-V    | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | LASER             | PVE-OFST | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | LASER             | POWER    | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | MISC              | SEG-ADJ  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | MISC              | K-ADJ    | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | MISC              | ACS-ADJ  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | MISC              | ACS-EN   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | MISC              | ACS-CNT  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | MISC              | ACS-EN2  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | MISC              | ACS-CNT2 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | MISC              | SEG-ADJ3 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | MISC              | K-ADJ3   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | MISC              | ACS-ADJ3 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | MISC              | ACS-EN3  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | MISC              | ACS-CNT3 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | MISC              | TBSIS-WB | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | MISC              | HP-OFST  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | PASCAL            | OFST-P-Y | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | PASCAL            | OFST-P-M | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | PASCAL            | OFST-P-C | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | PASCAL            | OFST-P-K | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | V-CONT            | VL-OFST  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | V-CONT            | VD-OFST  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | V-CONT            | DE-OFST  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | V-CONT            | VCONT-1  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | ADJUST    | V-CONT            | VL-OF-L  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | FUNCTION  | 2D-SHADE          | M-LINE1  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | FUNCTION  | 2D-SHADE          | M-LINE2  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | FUNCTION  | 2D-SHADE          | S-LINE1  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | FUNCTION  | 2D-SHADE          | S-LINE2  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | FUNCTION  | 2D-SHADE          | S-LINE3  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | FUNCTION  | 2D-SHADE          | S-LINE4  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | FUNCTION  | 2D-SHADE          | 2D-SET   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | FUNCTION  | INSTALL           | E-RDS    | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | FUNCTION  | INSTALL           | RGW-PORT | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | FUNCTION  | INSTALL           | RGW-ADR  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | FUNCTION  | INSTALL           | CDS-CTL  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | FUNCTION  | INSTALL           | BIT-SVC  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | FUNCTION  | INSTALL           | NFC-USE  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | FUNCTION  | INSTALL           | BLE-USE  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | FUNCTION  | INSTALL           | FAX-USE  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | ACC               | COIN     | Restored | -        | -        |

| Initial screen | Main item | Intermediate item | Sub item | Case A   | Case B   | Case C   |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| COPIER         | OPTION    | ACC               | DK-P     | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | ACC               | CARD-SW  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | ACC               | CC-SPSW  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | ACC               | UNIT-PRC | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | ACC               | MIN-PRC  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | ACC               | MAX-PRC  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | ACC               | MIC-TUN  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | ACC               | SRL-SPSW | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | ACC               | PDL-THR  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | ACC               | CR-TYPE  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | ACC               | MEAP-SRL | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | ACC               | CV-CSZ   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | ACC               | COIN-AUT | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | PO-CNTMD | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | MODEL-SZ | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-FIX           | FIX-CLN  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-FIX           | FIX-TEMP | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-FIX           | FSPD-S1  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | SCANSLCT | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-MCON          | PASCAL   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-DEV           | DRM-IDL  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | SENS-CNF | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | CONFIG   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-MCON          | SHARP    | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-LSR           | LAPC-SW  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | IFAX-LIM | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-RDR           | DF-BLINE | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | TEMP-TBL | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | W/SCNR   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-MCON          | DRM-H-SW | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | SMTPTXPN | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | SMTPRXPN | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | POP3PN   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | ORG-LGL  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | ORG-LTR  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | ORG-B5   | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | UI-COPY  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | UI-BOX   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | UI-SEND  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | UI-FAX   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-MCON          | SCR-SLCT | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-MCON          | TMC-SLCT | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | FTPTXPN  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | NW-SPEED | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FEED-SW           | TRY-CHG  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | NWERR-SW | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | STS-PORT | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | CMD-PORT | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | MODELSZ2 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-RDR           | DFDST-L1 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-RDR           | DFDST-L2 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | NS-CMD5  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | NS-GSAPI | Restored | Restored | Restored |

| Initial screen | Main item | Intermediate item | Sub item | Case A   | Case B   | Case C   |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | NS-NTLM  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | NS-PLNWS | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | NS-PLN   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | NS-LGN   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | MEAP-PN  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | SVMD-ENT | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | ENV-SET           | ENVP-INT | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | CHNG-STS | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | CHNG-CMD | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | ANIM-SW  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | BASE-SW  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-DEV           | DV-RT-LG | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | MEAP-SSL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | SC-L-CNT | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-FIX           | CBLTINVL | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | KSIZE-SW | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | LPD-PORT | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | PDF-RDCT | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-RDR           | ABC-MODE | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-MCON          | VP-ART   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-MCON          | VP-TXT   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | UI-PRINT | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | SJB-UNW  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | IMGC-ADJ | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | UI-RSCAN | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | UI-EPRNT | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | UI-WEB   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | UI-HOLD  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | CARD-RNG | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | WUEN-LIV | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | MAILYEAR | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-FIX           | TMP-TBL2 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-FIX           | TMP-TBL3 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-FIX           | TMP-TBL4 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | SJOB-CL  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | IFX-CHIG | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-FIX           | RAG-CONT | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | DNSTRANS | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-RDR           | ABC-MD2  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | MIBCOUNT | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | ENV-SET           | DRY-CISU | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | RMT-CNSL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | PDLEVCT1 | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | PROXYRES | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | WOLTRANS | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-RDR           | DF2DSTL1 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-RDR           | DF2DSTL2 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | 802XTOUT | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | NCONF-SW | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | ABK-TOOL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | W/RAID   | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | PSWD-SW  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | SM-PSWD  | Restored | Restored | Restored |

| Initial screen | Main item | Intermediate item | Sub item | Case A   | Case B   | Case C   |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-MCON          | C-PDL-T  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-MCON          | C-S-P-D  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-MCON          | C-S-C-D  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-DEV           | ADJ-VPPN | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-FIX           | RAG-SW   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | DEV-SP1  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | DEV-SP2  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | RPT2SIDE | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | AFS-JOB  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | AFC-EVNT | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | UI-SBOX  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | UI-MEM   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | ILOGMODE | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | ILOGKEEP | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | UI-NAVI  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | STND-PNL | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | INVALPDL | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | CDS-FIRM | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | CDS-MEAP | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | CDS-UGW  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | LOCLFIRM | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | DEV-SP3  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | DEV-SP4  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | DEV-SP5  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | DEV-SP6  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | DEV-SP7  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | DEV-SP8  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | IPTBROAD | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FEED-SW           | DK2-TURN | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FEED-SW           | DK3-TURN | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FEED-SW           | DK4-TURN | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FEED-SW           | DK1-TURN | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FEED-SW           | DK5-TURN | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | PFWFTPRT | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CLEANING          | CLN-SW   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CLEANING          | CLN-ADJ  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-FIX           | FIX-DWN  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-FIX           | FIX-RT   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-DEV           | DRM-IDL2 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | AC-FREQ  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-LSR           | 2D-SHADE | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | T-RUN-LV | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-MCON          | WDREDUCT | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-MCON          | VDADDCNT | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-MCON          | HDADDCNT | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FEED-SW           | DK1-AIR  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | BXNUPLOG | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-MCON          | LIN-OFST | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FEED-SW           | TFL-RTC  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | UI-CUSTM | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-FIX           | P-BETWN  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | SDLMTWRN | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | JLK-PWSC | Restored | Restored | Restored |

| Initial screen | Main item | Intermediate item | Sub item | Case A   | Case B   | Case C   |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | DDNSINTV | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-FIX           | FX-IMGLV | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-FIX           | FX-WNKL  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | FAX-INT  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-DEV           | ATM      | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | CDS-LVUP | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-DEV           | LWDTY-SW | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-DEV           | LWDTYADJ | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-DEV           | BB-CNT   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-DEV           | PRI-SHUT | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-DEV           | TBLTCLSW | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-DEV           | TBLTBIS+ | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-DEV           | TBLTBIS- | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-DEV           | TBLTTMS  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-FIX           | FIX-TMP4 | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-DEV           | DRM-IDL3 | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | AMSOFFSW | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | UA-OFFSW | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | MIB-NVTA | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | MIB-EXT  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | SCT-BTN  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | DFEJCLED | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | SVC-RUI  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | LCDSFLG  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | SDTM-DSP | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | BXSHIFT  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | HOME-SW  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | NO-LGOUT | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | JM-ERR-D | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | JM-ERR-R | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | SIPAUDIO | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | SIPINOUT | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-FIX           | WEB-LIFE | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | SIPREGPR | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | ASLPMAX  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | VLAN-SW  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | SEND-SPD | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | VER-CHNG | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | FTPMODE  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | SSLMODE  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | SSLSTRNG | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FEED-SW           | DK1-ALVD | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FEED-SW           | DK1-ALVU | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FEED-SW           | DK1-LDWN | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FEED-SW           | DK1-PSP  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FEED-SW           | PDK-REST | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | UI-PPA   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | NW-WAIT  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | WLAN-USE | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | CE-DSP   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-MCON          | DOTSCT   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-MCON          | SP-GRAD  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | WLANPORT | Restored | Restored | Restored |



| Initial screen | Main item | Intermediate item | Sub item | Case A   | Case B   | Case C   |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | LOCAL-SZ | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | PAP-TYPE | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | RAW-PORT | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | LINKWAKE | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | PICLOGIN | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | DCM-EXCL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | SND-NAME | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | PCMP-DSP | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | FL-START | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM            | FPOT-MD  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | BLEPOWER | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | WSMC-USE | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | FNC-SW            | 3RDP-MSG | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | ERR-DISP | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | SVC-ACA  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | NETWORK           | INTENT   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | IMG-MCON          | BIN-SEL  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | SVC-SRA  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | LF-DSP-S | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | LF-DSP-U | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | ERRL-DSP | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | JLG-UD-D | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | UFOS-DSP | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | DSPLY-SW          | SVC-DAT  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CST               | P-SZ-C1  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CST               | P-SZ-C2  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B01   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B02   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B03   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B04   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B05   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B06   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B07   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B08   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B09   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B10   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B11   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B12   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B13   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B14   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B15   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B16   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B17   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B18   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B19   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B20   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B21   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B22   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B23   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B24   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B25   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B26   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-B27   | Restored | Restored | Restored |







| Initial screen | Main item | Intermediate item | Sub item | Case A   | Case B   | Case C   |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V54   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V55   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V56   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V57   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V58   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V59   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V60   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V61   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V62   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V63   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V64   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V65   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V66   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V67   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V68   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V69   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V70   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V71   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V72   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V73   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V74   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V75   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V76   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V77   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V78   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V79   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | CUSTOM2           | SP-V80   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | INT-FACE          | IMG-CONT | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | INT-FACE          | AP-OPT   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | INT-FACE          | AP-ACCNT | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | INT-FACE          | AP-CODE  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | INT-FACE          | NWCT-TM  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | INT-FACE          | VTRNS-TO | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | INT-FACE          | ERRHNDL  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | TONER-K  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | WST-TNR  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | PT-DRM   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | PRM-WIRE | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | PRM-CLN  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | PRM-UNIT | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | CLN-BLD  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | BS-SL-F  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | BS-SL-R  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | SP-CLAW  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | EXP-SCRP | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | DV-UNT-K | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | TR-BLT   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | TR-ROLL  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | T-CLN-BD | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | T-CN-BRU | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | PO-WIRE  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | PO-CLN   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | PO-UNIT  | Restored | Restored | Restored |

| Initial screen | Main item | Intermediate item | Sub item | Case A   | Case B   | Case C   |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | FX-UP-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | FIX-TH1  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | FIX-TH2  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | FX-RTNR  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | FX-LW-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | FX-L-STC | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | FX-WEB1  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | C1-PU-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | C1-FD-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | C1-SP-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | C2-PU-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | C2-FD-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | C2-SP-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | C3-PU-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | C3-SP-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | C3-FD-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | C4-PU-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | C4-FD-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | C4-SP-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | M-FD-RL  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | M-SP-RL  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | DLV-UCLW | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | OZ-FIL1  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | AR-FIL1  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | DF-PU-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | DF-FD-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | DF-SP-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | LNT-TAP1 | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | LNT-TAP2 | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | PD-PU-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | PD-SP-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-DLV-D          | PD-FD-RL | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-MSG-D          | TONER-K  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-MSG-D          | WST-TNR  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-PRE-M          | TONER-K  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-PRE-M          | WST-TNR  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-U-DSP          | PT-DRM   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | PM-U-DSP          | FX-REP   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | COPY-LIM | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | SLEEP    | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | SIZE-DET | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | COUNTER2 | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | COUNTER3 | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | COUNTER4 | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | COUNTER5 | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | COUNTER6 | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | DATE-DSP | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | MB-CCV   | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | CONTROL  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | B4-L-CNT | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | MF-LG-ST | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | CNT-DISP | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | PH-D-SEL | Restored | -        | -        |

| Initial screen | Main item | Intermediate item | Sub item  | Case A   | Case B   | Case C   |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------|-----------|----------|----------|----------|
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | COPY-JOB  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | OP-SZ-DT  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | NW-SCAN   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | JOB-INVL  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | TAB-ROT   | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | PR-PSESW  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | IDPRN-SW  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | PCL-COPY  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | CNT-SW    | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | TAB-ACC   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | BCNT-AST  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | PRJOB-CP  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | DOC-REM   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | DPT-ID-7  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | RUI-RJT   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | FREG-SW   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | IFAX-SZL  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | IFAX-PGD  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | MEAPSAFE  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | AFN-PSWD  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | PTJAM-RC  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | PDL-NCSW  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | PS-MODE   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | CNCT-RLZ  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | LDAP-SW   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | FROM-OF   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | FILE-OF   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | MAIL-OF   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | IFAX-OF   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | LDAP-DEF  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | FREE-DSP  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | TNRB-SW   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | DK1-ASST  | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | USBH-DSP  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | USBM-DSP  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | USBI-DSP  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | CTCHKDSP  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | DFLT-ADJ  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | USB-R-DSP | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | POL-SCAN  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | PH-D-SL2  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | W-TN-DSP  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | SCAN-RSL  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | JA-SBOX   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | JA-DFAX   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | JA-REP    | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | JA-FREP   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | JA-BOX    | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | JA-FORM   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | JA-PREV   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | JA-PULL   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | JA-PDLB   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | JA-JOBK   | Restored | Restored | Restored |



| Initial screen | Main item | Intermediate item | Sub item | Case A   | Case B   | Case C   |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | JA-JDF   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | JA-RUI   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | JA-WEB   | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | EXP-CRYP | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | SNDSTREN | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | FAXSTREN | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | SJ-UNMSK | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | SJ-CLMSK | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | PRTDP-SW | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | PDFD-MSW | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | SFT-OUT  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | LGCY-SCP | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | FLM-DSPL | Restored | Restored | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | CNT-PRT  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | C-P-SIZE | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | MF-FEED  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | INSTDT-Y | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | INSTDT-M | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | INSTDT-D | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | INSTDT-H | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | INSTDT-N | Restored | -        | -        |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | STOP-USE | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | LASTREST | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | OPTION    | USER              | SZCHKSW  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| COPIER         | TEST      | NET-CAP           | CAPIF    | Restored | -        | -        |
| FEEDER         | ADJUST    | -                 | DOCST    | Restored | -        | -        |
| FEEDER         | ADJUST    | -                 | LA-SPEED | Restored | -        | -        |
| FEEDER         | ADJUST    | -                 | DOCST2   | Restored | -        | -        |
| FEEDER         | ADJUST    | -                 | LA-SPD2  | Restored | -        | -        |
| FEEDER         | ADJUST    | -                 | ADJMSCN1 | Restored | -        | -        |
| FEEDER         | ADJUST    | -                 | ADJMSCN2 | Restored | -        | -        |
| FEEDER         | OPTION    | -                 | SIZE-SW  | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| FEEDER         | OPTION    | -                 | R-ATM    | Restored | Restored | -        |
| FEEDER         | OPTION    | -                 | R-OVLPLV | Restored | Restored | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | PNCH-Y   | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | STP-F1   | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | STP-R1   | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | STP-2P   | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | BFF-SFT  | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | PNCH-X   | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | BFF-SFT2 | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | SDL-STP  | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | SDL-FLD  | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | SDL-ALG  | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | ST-ALG1  | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | ST-ALG2  | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | SW-UP-RL | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | NST-SPD  | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | FR-ST-PS | Restored | Restored | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | FR-STP-Y | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | RBLT-PRS | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | MSTP-2P  | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | CENT-ALG | Restored | -        | -        |

| Initial screen | Main item | Intermediate item | Sub item | Case A   | Case B   | Case C   |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | SDL-STP2 | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | SDL-FLD2 | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | ESC1-SPD | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | ESC2-SPD | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | SFT-SPD  | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | STP-SPD  | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | RBLT-PS2 | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | ADJUST    | -                 | RBLT-PS3 | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | OPTION    | -                 | MD-SPRTN | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | OPTION    | -                 | BUFF-SW  | Restored | -        | -        |
| SORTER         | OPTION    | -                 | PUCH-SW  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| SORTER         | OPTION    | -                 | 1SHT-SRT | Restored | Restored | -        |
| SORTER         | OPTION    | -                 | NSRT-STC | Restored | Restored | -        |
| SORTER         | OPTION    | -                 | MSTP-TMG | Restored | Restored | Restored |
| SORTER         | OPTION    | -                 | PUN-Y-SW | Restored | Restored | -        |
| SORTER         | OPTION    | -                 | PNCH-SW2 | Restored | Restored | -        |
| SORTER         | OPTION    | -                 | PNCH-SW3 | Restored | Restored | -        |
| SORTER         | OPTION    | -                 | SFT-CHNG | Restored | Restored | -        |
| SORTER         | OPTION    | -                 | STP-ALG  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| SORTER         | OPTION    | -                 | SDL-ALG  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| SORTER         | OPTION    | -                 | TRY-STP  | Restored | Restored | -        |
| SORTER         | OPTION    | -                 | TRY-LMT  | Restored | Restored | -        |